



Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE 17.14.x

First Published: 2024-04-05

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2024 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface **xcix**

Document Conventions **xcix**

Related Documentation **ci**

Communications, services, and additional information **ci**

 Cisco Bug Search Tool **cii**

 Documentation feedback **cii**

CHAPTER 1

Overview of the Controller **1**

Overview of Cisco 9800 Series Wireless Controllers **1**

Elements of the New Configuration Model **1**

Configuration Workflow **2**

Initial Setup **3**

Interactive Help **4**

PART I

System Configuration **7**

CHAPTER 2

New Configuration Model **9**

Information About New Configuration Model **9**

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy (GUI) **12**

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy (CLI) **12**

Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI) **14**

Configuring a Flex Profile **14**

Configuring an AP Profile (GUI) **15**

Configuring an AP Profile (CLI) **20**

Configuring User for AP Management (CLI) **21**

Setting a Private Configuration Key for Password Encryption **22**

Configuring an RF Profile (GUI)	22
Configuring an RF Profile (CLI)	23
Configuring a Site Tag (GUI)	24
Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)	24
Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing	25
Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing	25
Information About Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing	26
Prerequisites for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing	26
Use Cases	27
Configuring Site Load (CLI)	27
Verifying Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing Configuration	27
Configuring Policy Tag (GUI)	28
Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)	28
Configuring Wireless RF Tag (GUI)	29
Configuring Wireless RF Tag (CLI)	30
Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (GUI)	31
Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)	31
Configuring a Radio Profile	32
Information About Wireless Radio Profile	32
Configuring a Wireless Radio Profile (GUI)	33
Configuring a Radio Profile and Beam Selection	34
Configuring the Antenna Count in a Wireless Radio Profile	34
Configuring a Slot Per Radio in the RF Tag Profile	35
Verifying a Radio Profile	35
AP Filter	36
Introduction to AP Filter	36
Set Tag Priority (GUI)	37
Set Tag Priority	37
Create an AP Filter (GUI)	38
Create an AP Filter (CLI)	38
Set Up and Update Filter Priority (GUI)	39
Set Up and Update Filter Priority	39
Verify AP Filter Configuration	40
Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration	41

Information About Location Configuration	41
Prerequisite for Location Configuration	41
Configuring a Location for an Access Point (GUI)	41
Configuring a Location for an Access Point (CLI)	42
Adding an Access Point to the Location (GUI)	43
Adding an Access Point to the Location (CLI)	43
Configuring SNMP in Location Configuration	44
SNMP MIB	44
Verifying Location Configuration	44
Verifying Location Statistics	45

CHAPTER 3

Wireless Management Interface 47

Information About Wireless Management Interface	47
Recommendations for Wireless Management Interface	48
Configuring your Controller with Wireless Management Interface (CLI)	49
Verifying Wireless Management Interface Settings	50
Information About Network Address Translation (NAT)	51
Information About CAPWAP Discovery	52
Configuring Wireless Management Interface with a NAT Public IP (CLI)	53
Configuring CAPWAP Discovery to Respond Only with Public or Private IP (CLI)	53
Configuring the Controller to Respond only with a Public IP (CLI)	54
Configuring the Controller to Respond only with a Private IP (CLI)	54
Verifying NAT Settings	55

CHAPTER 4

BIOS Protection 57

BIOS Protection on the Controller	57
BIOS or ROMMON Upgrade with BIOS Protection	57
Upgrading BIOS	58

CHAPTER 5

Smart Licensing Using Policy 59

Smart Licensing Using Policy	59

CHAPTER 6

Management over Wireless 61

Controller Management over Wireless	61

Restrictions on Management over Wireless	61
Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller (GUI)	62
Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller (CLI)	62

CHAPTER 7
Boot Integrity Visibility 63

Overview of Boot Integrity Visibility	63
Verify software image and hardware	63
Verify platform identity and software integrity	64

CHAPTER 8
SUDI99 Certificate Support 67

SUDI99 Certificate Support	67
Disabling SUDI99 Migration (GUI)	69

CHAPTER 9
Link Aggregation Group 71

Information About Link Aggregation Group	71
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	71
Configuring LAG Using LACP	72
Port Aggregation Protocol	72
Configuring LAG Using PAgP	72
Information About Port Channel Interface Number	72
Information about Flow Control	73
Configuring LAG in ON Mode	73
Multichassis Link Aggregation Group	74
Prerequisites for Multi-LAG	74
Restrictions for Multi-LAG	74
Supported Topologies	74
Configuring a Port Channel Interface (GUI)	76
Create a Port-Channel Interface	77
Configuring LAG in ON Mode	77
Add an Interface to a Port Channel (LACP)	78
Add an Interface to a Port Channel (PAgP)	79
Add a VLAN to a Port Channel	79
Remove a Port Channel Group from a Physical Interface	80
Verify the LAG Configuration	80

CHAPTER 10	Reload Reason History 83
	Feature History for Reload Reason History 83
	Information About Reload Reason History 83
	Verifying Reload Reason History 84
	Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG 86
CHAPTER 11	Best Practices 89
	Introduction 89
PART II	System Upgrade 91
CHAPTER 12	Upgrading the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller Software 93
	Overview of Upgrading the Controller Software 93
	Upgrading the Controller Software (GUI) 94
	Upgrade the Controller Software (CLI) 96
	Converting From Bundle-Mode to Install-Mode 96
	Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller 99
CHAPTER 13	In-Service Software Upgrade 101
	Information About In-Service Software Upgrade 101
	Prerequisites for Performing In-Service Software Upgrade 102
	Guidelines and Restrictions for In-Service Software Upgrade 102
	Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade 103
	Upgrading Software Using ISSU (GUI) 104
	Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade with Delayed Commit 105
	Monitoring In-Service Software Upgrade 106
	Troubleshooting ISSU 108
CHAPTER 14	Software Maintenance Upgrade 111
	Introduction to Software Maintenance Upgrade 111
	Installing a SMU (GUI) 113
	Installing SMU 114
	Roll Back an Image (GUI) 115

Rollback SMU	115
Deactivate SMU	116
Configuration Examples for SMU	116
Information About AP Device Package	116
Installing AP Device Package (GUI)	118
Installing AP Device Package (CLI)	118
Verifying APDP on the Controller	119
Information About Per Site or Per AP Model Service Pack (APSP)	120
Rolling AP Upgrade	121
Rolling AP Upgrade Process	121
Installing AP Service Package (GUI)	122
Installing AP Service Package (CLI)	123
Adding a Site to a Filter	124
Deactivating an Image	124
Roll Back APSP	125
Canceling the Upgrade	125
Verifying the Upgrade	125
Verifying of AP Upgrade on the Controller	128

CHAPTER 15
Efficient Image Upgrade 129

Efficient Image Upgrade	129
Enable Pre-Download (GUI)	130
Enable Pre-Download (CLI)	130
Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)	130
Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)	132
Trigger Predownload to a Site Tag	133
Feature History for Out-of-Band AP Image Download	135
Information About Out-of-Band AP Image Download	135
Restrictions for Out-of-Band AP Image Download	136
Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS (CLI)	136
Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS (GUI)	137
Verifying Image Upgrade	138

CHAPTER 16
Predownloading an Image to an Access Point 141

Information About Predownloading an Image to an Access Point	141
Restrictions for Predownloading an Image to an Access Point	141
Predownloading an Image to Access Points (CLI)	142
Predownloading an Image to Access Points (GUI)	144
Predownloading an Image to Access Points (YANG)	144
Monitoring the Access Point Predownload Process	145
Information About AP Image Download Time Enhancement (OEAP or Teleworker Only)	146
Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement (GUI)	147
Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement (CLI)	147
Verifying AP Image Download Time Enhancement Configuration	148

CHAPTER 17

N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade	149
N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade	149
Configuring Hitless Upgrade	150
Verifying Hitless Upgrade	151
Feature History for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks	152
Information About Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Network	152
Prerequisites for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks	153
Restrictions for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks	153
Use Cases	153
N+1 Upgrade and Move to Destination Controller	153
N+1 Move to Destination Controller	155
Hitless Software Upgrade (N+1 Upgrade)	156
Verifying Site-based Rolling AP Upgrade in a N+1 Network	158
Information About Client Steering Enhancement	163
Deauthenticate Clients	163

CHAPTER 18

NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade	165
NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade	165
Upgrading the NBAR2 Protocol Pack	166

CHAPTER 19

Wireless Sub-Package for Switch	167
Introduction to Wireless Sub-package	167
Bootimg in Install Mode	168

Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step (GUI)	169
Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step	169
Multi-step Installation of Sub-Package	170
Installing on a Stack	170
Upgrading to a Newer Version of Wireless Package	171
Deactivating the Wireless Package	171
Enabling or Disabling Auto-Upgrade	172

PART III
Lightweight Access Points 173

CHAPTER 20
Countries and Regulations 175

Information About Country Codes	175
Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes	175
Configuring Country Codes (GUI)	176
Configuring Country Codes (CLI)	176
Configuration Examples for Configuring Country Codes	178
Viewing Channel List for Country Codes	178
Information About Regulatory Compliance Domain	179
Global Country-Level Domains	179

CHAPTER 21
Access Points Modes 181

Information about Sniffer	182
Information About XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support	183
Feature History for Sniffer Mode	183
Prerequisites for Sniffer	183
Restrictions on Sniffer	183
How to Configure Sniffer	184
Configuring an Access Point as Sniffer (GUI)	184
Configuring an Access Point as Sniffer (CLI)	185
Enabling or Disabling Sniffing on the Access Point (GUI)	185
Enabling or Disabling Sniffing on the Access Point (CLI)	186
Configuring XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support on the Access Point (CLI)	187
Verifying Sniffer Configurations	188
Verifying XOR Radio Role Sniffer Configuration	188

Examples for Sniffer Configurations and Monitoring	189
Introduction to Monitor Mode	189
Enable Monitor Mode (GUI)	190
Enable Monitor Mode (CLI)	190
Feature History for Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Access Points	191
Information About Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Series Access Points	191
Regulatory Domain	192
Configuring Management Mode Migration (GUI)	195
Exporting Meraki Management Mode-Migrated APs (GUI)	196
Configuring the AP Management Mode (CLI)	196
Verifying the Management Mode Migration Details	197
Information About FlexConnect	198
FlexConnect Authentication	199
Guidelines and Restrictions for FlexConnect	202
Configuring a Site Tag	205
Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)	206
Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point (GUI)	207
Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)	208
Linking an ACL Policy to the Defined ACL (GUI)	209
Applying ACLs on FlexConnect	209
Configuring FlexConnect	210
Configuring a Switch at a Remote Site	210
Configuring the Controller for FlexConnect	211
Configuring Local Switching in FlexConnect Mode (GUI)	212
Configuring Local Switching in FlexConnect Mode (CLI)	212
Configuring Central Switching in FlexConnect Mode (GUI)	213
Configuring Central Switching in FlexConnect Mode	213
Configuring an Access Point for FlexConnect	214
Configuring an Access Point for Local Authentication on a WLAN (GUI)	214
Configuring an Access Point for Local Authentication on a WLAN (CLI)	214
Connecting Client Devices to WLANs	215
Configuring FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback	215
Information About FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback	215

Configuring FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback	215
Flex AP Local Authentication (GUI)	216
Flex AP Local Authentication (CLI)	217
Flex AP Local Authentication with External Radius Server	219
Configuration Example: FlexConnect with Central and Local Authentication	222
NAT-PAT for FlexConnect	222
Configuring NAT-PAT for a WLAN or a Remote LAN	223
Creating a WLAN	223
Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and NAT-PAT (GUI)	223
Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and NAT-PAT	224
Mapping a WLAN to a Policy Profile	225
Configuring a Site Tag	225
Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point (GUI)	226
Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point	226
Split Tunneling for FlexConnect	227
Configuring Split Tunneling for a WLAN or Remote LAN	228
Defining an Access Control List for Split Tunneling (GUI)	228
Defining an Access Control List for Split Tunneling	228
Linking an ACL Policy to the Defined ACL	229
Creating a WLAN	229
Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and a Split MAC ACL Name (GUI)	230
Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and a Split MAC ACL Name	230
Mapping a WLAN to a Policy Profile (GUI)	232
Mapping WLAN to a Policy Profile	232
Configuring a Site Tag	232
Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an Access Point	233
VLAN-based Central Switching for FlexConnect	234
Configuring VLAN-based Central Switching (GUI)	234
Configuring VLAN-based Central Switching (CLI)	235
OfficeExtend Access Points for FlexConnect	236
Configuring OfficeExtend Access Points	237
Disabling OfficeExtend Access Point	237
Support for OEAP Personal SSID	238
Information About OEAP Personal SSID Support	238

Configuring OEAP Personal SSID (GUI)	238
Configuring OEAP Personal SSID (CLI)	239
Viewing OEAP Personal SSID Configuration	239
Clearing Personal SSID from an OfficeExtend Access Point	240
Example: Viewing OfficeExtend Configuration	240
Proxy ARP	241
Enabling Proxy ARP for FlexConnect APs (GUI)	241
Enabling Proxy ARP for FlexConnect APs	241
Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment	242
Overview of Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment	242
Enabling Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment (GUI)	242
Enabling Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment	243
Verifying Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment (GUI)	243
Verifying Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment	244
Information About FlexConnect High Scale Mode	245
Enabling PMK Propagation (CLI)	245
Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points	246
Information About Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points	246
Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI)	246
Configuring a Flex Profile (CLI)	247
Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)	248
Configuring a Mesh Profile (CLI)	248
Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)	249
Attaching Site Tag to an Access Point (CLI)	250
Configuring Switch Interface for APs (CLI)	250
Verifying Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points Configuration	251
Feature History for OEAP Link Test	252
Information About OEAP Link Test	252
Configuring OEAP Link Test (CLI)	252
Performing OEAP Link Test (GUI)	253
Verifying OEAP Link Test	253
Feature History for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	254
Information About Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	254
Prerequisites for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	255

Restrictions for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	255
Use Cases for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	256
Workflow to Configure Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	256
Create an IP Address ACL (CLI)	256
Create a URL ACL (CLI)	257
Add an ACL to a FlexConnect Profile	258
Enable Split Tunneling in a Policy Profile	259
Verifying the Cisco OEAP Split Tunnel Configuration	260
AP Survey Mode	260
Information About AP Deployment Mode	261
Use Case for AP Deployment Mode	261
Configuring AP Deployment Mode (GUI)	261
Configuring AP Deployment Mode (CLI)	262
Verifying AP Deployment Mode	263

CHAPTER 22
Security 265

Information About Data Datagram Transport Layer Security	265
Configuring Data DTLS (GUI)	266
Configuring Data DTLS (CLI)	266
Introduction to the 802.1X Authentication	267
EAP-FAST Protocol	268
EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP Protocol	268
Limitations of the 802.1X Authentication	269
Topology - Overview	269
Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type (GUI)	270
Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type	270
Configuring the 802.1X Username and Password (GUI)	272
Configuring the 802.1X Username and Password (CLI)	272
Enabling 802.1X on the Switch Port	273
Verifying 802.1X on the Switch Port	275
Verifying the Authentication Type	275
Feature History for Access Point Client ACL Counter	275
Information About Access Point Client ACL Counter	276

CHAPTER 23**AP Joining 277**

- Failover Priority for Access Points 277
- Setting AP Priority (GUI) 278
- Setting AP Priority 278
- Overview of Access Point Plug-n-Play 278
- Provisioning AP from PnP Server 279
- Verifying AP Tag Configuration 279
- Feature History for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile 280
- Information About AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile 280
- Restrictions for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile 281
- Configure AP Priming Profile 281
- Configure AP Priming Using Filters 282
- Configure Per-AP Priming 283
- Verify the Configuration 283

CHAPTER 24**AP Management 285**

- AP Crash File Upload 286
- Configuring AP Crash File Upload (CLI) 287
- Information About LED States for Access Points 287
- Configuring LED State in Access Points (GUI) 288
- Configuring LED State for Access Points in the Global Configuration Mode (CLI) 289
- Configuring LED State in the AP Profile 289
- Verifying LED State for Access Points 290
- Access Point Support Bundle 290
- Exporting an AP Support Bundle (GUI) 291
- Exporting an AP Support Bundle (CLI) 292
- Monitoring the Status of Support Bundle Export 292
- Information About Access Point Memory Information 292
- Verifying Access Point Memory Information 292
- Information About Access Point Tag Persistency 293
- Configuring AP Tag Persistency (GUI) 293
 - Saving Tags on an Access Point (GUI) 293
 - Deleting Saved Tags on the Access Point 294

Configuring AP Tag Persistency (CLI)	294
Verifying AP Tag Persistency	295
Feature History for AP Power Save	296
Information About AP Power Save	296
Access Point Power Policy	296
Power-Save Mode	297
PoE Profiles	297
Wakeup Threshold for Access Point Power Save Mode	303
AP Power Save Scenarios	303
Configuring Power Policy Profile (GUI)	305
Configuring a Power Policy Profile (CLI)	305
Configuring a Calendar Profile (GUI)	306
Configuring a Calendar Profile (CLI)	307
Configuring a Power Policy in an AP Join Profile (GUI)	308
Mapping a Power Profile Under an AP Profile (CLI)	308
Configuring Client Wakeup Threshold (CLI)	309
Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (GUI)	310
Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (CLI)	310
Configuration Example of Power Profile	311
Verifying Access Point Power Policy (GUI)	311
	312
Verifying the Access Point Power Profile	312
Verifying Radio Spatial Streams	313
Verifying Client Threshold	314
Verifying PoE-Out Details	314
Information About Access Point Real-Time Statistics	314
Feature History for Real Time Access Point Statistics	315
Restrictions for AP Radio Monitoring Statistics	315
Configuring Access Point Real Time Statistics (GUI)	315
Configuring Real-Time Access Point Statistics (CLI)	316
Configuring AP Radio Monitoring Statistics	318
Monitoring Access Point Real-Time Statistics (GUI)	319
Verifying Access Point Real-Time Statistics	320
Feature History for Access Point Auto Location Support	321

Information About Access Point Auto Location Support	321
Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging (GUI)	322
Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging (CLI)	323
Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters (GUI)	323
Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters (CLI)	324
Configuring Access Point Coordinates and Floor Information (CLI)	324
Configuring On-Demand Access Point Ranging (CLI)	325
Enabling Fine Time Measurement (802.11mc) Responder (GUI)	326
Configuring Fine Time Measurement (802.11mc) Responder (CLI)	326
Configuring Air Pressure Reporting (CLI)	327
Verifying Access Point Geolocation Information	327

CHAPTER 25

AP Configuration 331

Feature History for Configuring the Access Point Console	332
Information About Configuring the Access Point Console	332
Configuring the AP Console (GUI)	333
Configuring the AP Console (CLI)	333
Verifying the AP Console Status	333
Information About AP Audit Configuration	334
Restrictions for AP Audit Configuration	334
Configure AP Audit Parameters (CLI)	335
Verifying AP Audit Report Summary	335
Verifying AP Audit Report Detail	335
2.4-GHz Radio Support	336
Configuring 2.4-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number	336
5-GHz Radio Support	338
Configuring 5-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number	338
6-GHz Radio Support	341
Configuring 6-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number	341
Information About Dual-Band Radio Support	343
Configuring Default XOR Radio Support	344
Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number (GUI)	346
Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number	346
Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio Support	348

Information About Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio Support	348
Configuring Receiver Only Dual-Band Parameters for Access Points	349
Enabling CleanAir with Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point (GUI)	349
Enabling CleanAir with Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point	349
Disabling Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point (GUI)	349
Disabling Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point	350
Configuring Client Steering (CLI)	350
Verifying Cisco Access Points with Dual-Band Radios	352
Information About OFDMA Support for 11ax Access Points	352
Supported Modes on 11ax Access Points	352
Configuring 11AX (GUI)	352
Configuring Channel Width	353
Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters (GUI)	354
Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters (CLI)	354
Setting up the 802.11ax Radio Parameters	355
Configuring OFDMA on a WLAN	356
Verifying Channel Width	357
Verifying Client Details	358
Verifying Radio Configuration	359
Information About Cisco Flexible Antenna Port	361
Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port (GUI)	362
Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port (CLI)	362
Verifying Flexible Antenna Port Configuration	362
Feature History for Environmental Sensors in Access Points	363
Information About Environmental Sensors in Access Points	364
Use Cases	364
Configuring Environmental Sensors in an AP Profile (CLI)	364
Configuring Environment Sensors in Privileged EXEC Mode (CLI)	365
Verifying the AP Sensor Status	366
Information About CAPWAP LAG Support	366
Restrictions for CAPWAP LAG Support	367
Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller (GUI)	367
Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller	368
Enabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller	368

Disabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller	368
Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile (GUI)	369
Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile	369
Disabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile	370
Disabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller	370
Verifying CAPWAP LAG Support Configurations	371
Feature History for CAPWAP Message Aggregation	371
Information About CAPWAP Message Aggregation	371
Configuring CAPWAP Message Aggregation (CLI)	372
Verifying CAPWAP Message Aggregation	372
Configuring Bulk AP Provisioning	373

CHAPTER 26
Secure Data Wipe 375

Secure Data Wipe	375

CHAPTER 27
Troubleshooting Lightweight Access Points 377

Overview	377
Support Articles	377
Feedback Request	378
Disclaimer and Caution	378

PART IV
Radio Resource Management 379

CHAPTER 28
Radio Resource Management 381

Information About Radio Resource Management	381
Radio Resource Monitoring	382
Information About RF Groups	382
RF Group Leader	383
RF Group Name	386
Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups	386
Secure RF Groups	386
Transmit Power Control	386
Overriding the TPC Algorithm with Minimum and Maximum Transmit Power Settings	387
Dynamic Channel Assignment	387

Dynamic Bandwidth Selection	389
Coverage Hole Detection and Correction	390
Cisco AI Enhanced RRM	390
Restrictions for Radio Resource Management	391
How to Configure RRM	392
Configuring Neighbor Discovery Type (GUI)	392
Configuring Neighbor Discovery Type (CLI)	393
Configuring RF Groups	393
Configuring RF Group Selection Mode (GUI)	394
Configuring RF Group Selection Mode (CLI)	394
Configuring an RF Group Name (CLI)	395
Configuring a Secure RF Group (CLI)	395
Configuring Members in an 802.11 Static RF Group (GUI)	396
Configuring Members in an 802.11 Static RF Group (CLI)	396
Configuring Transmit Power Control	397
Configuring Transmit Power (GUI)	397
Configuring the Tx-Power Control Threshold (CLI)	398
Configuring the Tx-Power Level (CLI)	398
Configuring 802.11 RRM Parameters	399
Configuring Advanced 802.11 Channel Assignment Parameters (GUI)	399
Configuring Advanced 802.11 Channel Assignment Parameters (CLI)	401
Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (GUI)	403
Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (CLI)	403
Configuring 802.11 Event Logging (CLI)	405
Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (GUI)	406
Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (CLI)	407
Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (GUI)	408
Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (CLI)	408
Configuring Advanced 802.11 RRM	410
Enabling Channel Assignment (GUI)	410
Enabling Channel Assignment (CLI)	410
Restarting DCA Operation	411
Updating Power Assignment Parameters (GUI)	411
Updating Power Assignment Parameters (CLI)	411

Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups	412
Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups (CLI)	412
Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status	413
Monitoring RRM Parameters	413
Verifying RF Group Status (CLI)	414
Examples: RF Group Configuration	415
Information About ED-RRM	415
Configuring ED-RRM on the Cisco Wireless Controller (CLI)	415
Information About Rogue PMF Containment	417
Enabling Rogue PMF Containment	417
Verifying PMF Containment	418
Information About Rogue Channel Width	419
Configuring Rogue Channel Width (CLI)	419
Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI)	420
Verifying Rogue Channel Width	423

CHAPTER 29

Coverage Hole Detection 425

Coverage Hole Detection and Correction	425
Configuring Coverage Hole Detection (GUI)	425
Configuring Coverage Hole Detection (CLI)	426
Configuring CHD for RF Tag Profile (GUI)	428
Configuring CHD for RF Profile (CLI)	429

CHAPTER 30

Optimized Roaming 431

Optimized Roaming	431
Restrictions for Optimized Roaming	432
Configuring Optimized Roaming (GUI)	432
Configuring Optimized Roaming (CLI)	432

CHAPTER 31

Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment 435

Information About Flexible Radio Assignment	435
Configuring an FRA Radio (GUI)	436
Enabling FRA (CLI)	438
Configuring Client FRA in RF Profile (CLI)	440

Verifying FRA XOR 5-GHz and 6-GHz Details	440
Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action	441
Feature History for Flexible Radio Assignment Action	441
Information About Flexible Radio Assignment Action	442
Configuring FRA Action in Default RF Profile (CLI)	442
Configuring FRA Action in 2.4-GHz RF Profile (CLI)	443
Verifying FRA Action Configuration	443

CHAPTER 32**XOR Radio Support 445**

Information About Dual-Band Radio Support	445
Configuring Default XOR Radio Support	446
Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number (GUI)	448
Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number	449

CHAPTER 33**Cisco Receiver Start of Packet 451**

Information About Receiver Start of Packet Detection Threshold	451
Restrictions for Rx SOP	451
Configuring Rx SOP (CLI)	452
Customizing RF Profile (CLI)	452

CHAPTER 34**Client Limit 455**

Information About Client Limit	455
Limitations for Client Limit	455
Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN (GUI)	455
Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN (CLI)	456
Configuring Client Limit Per AP (GUI)	457
Configuring Client Limit Per AP (CLI)	457
Configuring Client Limit Per Radio (GUI)	458
Configuring Client Limit Per Radio (CLI)	458
Verifying Client Limit	459

CHAPTER 35**IP Theft 461**

Introduction to IP Theft	461
Configuring IP Theft (GUI)	462

Configuring IP Theft	462
Configuring the IP Theft Exclusion Timer	462
Adding Static Entries for Wired Hosts	463
Verifying IP Theft Configuration	464

CHAPTER 36

Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery 467

Information About Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery	467
Viewing Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (CLI)	467

CHAPTER 37

Target Wake Time 469

Target Wake Time	469
Extended Power-Savings Using Target Wake Time	469
Configuring Target Wake Time at the Radio Level (CLI)	470
Configuring Target Wake Time on WLAN	471
Enabling Target Wake Time on WLAN (CLI)	471
Disabling Target Wakeup Time on WLAN (CLI)	472
Configuring Target Wake Time (GUI)	473
Verifying Target Wakeup Time	473

CHAPTER 38

Enabling USB Port on Access Points 475

USB Port as Power Source for Access Points	475
Configuring an AP Profile (CLI)	476
Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (CLI)	477
Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (GUI)	477
Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points (CLI)	478

CHAPTER 39

Dynamic Frequency Selection 481

Feature History for Channel Availability Check (CAC)	481
Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection	481
Information About Channel Availability Check (CAC)	482
Verifying DFS	482
Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection	483
Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (CLI)	483
Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (GUI)	483

Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (CLI)	484
Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (GUI)	484
Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration	485

CHAPTER 40
Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio 487

Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio	487
Guidelines and Restrictions for Tri-Radio Access Points	489
Configuring Tri-Radio	489
Configuring Tri-Radio for AP (GUI)	489
Configuring the Tri-Radio (CLI)	490
Configuring 5-GHz Dual Radio Mode for AP (GUI)	490
Configuring the Dual Radio Mode and Enabling Slots (CLI)	491
Setting Radio Roles for Slots (CLI)	491
Configuring the Tri-Radio Dual Radio Role (CLI)	492
Verifying Tri-Radio Configuration on the Controller	492

CHAPTER 41
Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard 493

Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard	493
Configuring Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard Parameters (CLI)	494
Verifying AP DFS Counters (CLI)	495
Verifying Wi-Fi 6 Access Point Parameters	496

CHAPTER 42
Antenna Disconnection Detection 497

Feature History for Antenna Disconnection Detection	497
Information About Antenna Disconnection Detection	497
Recommendations and Limitations	498
Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection (CLI)	498
Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection (GUI)	499
Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap (CLI)	500
Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap (GUI)	500
Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection	501
Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection (GUI)	502

CHAPTER 43
Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode on Access Points 503

Information About Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode	503
Configuring RRM Neighbor Discovery Mode (GUI)	504
Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode (CLI)	504
Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Type (CLI)	504
Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile (GUI)	505
Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile (CLI)	505
Monitoring Radio Statistics-NDP Capability and NDP Mode (GUI)	506
Verifying Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode	507

CHAPTER 44

6-GHz Band Operations 509

Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile (GUI)	509
Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile (CLI)	510
Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile (GUI)	510
Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile (CLI)	511
Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile (GUI)	511
Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile (CLI)	512
Configuring Multi BSSID Profile (GUI)	512
Configuring Multi BSSID Profile	513
Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile (GUI)	513
Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile (CLI)	514
Configuring Dynamic Channel Assignment Freeze (CLI)	514
Information About 6-GHz Client Steering	515
Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering in the Global Configuration Mode (GUI)	515
Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering in the Global Configuration Mode	516
Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering on the WLAN (GUI)	516
Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering on the WLAN	517
Verifying 6-GHz Client Steering	517

PART V

Network Management 519

CHAPTER 45

AP Packet Capture 521

Introduction to AP Client Packet Capture	521
Enabling Packet Capture (GUI)	521
Enabling Packet Capture (CLI)	522

Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile (GUI) 522

Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile 523

Start or Stop Packet Capture 523

CHAPTER 46

DHCP Option82 525

Information About DHCP Option 82 525

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface 527

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Server Override (CLI) 527

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Server Override (CLI) 527

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (GUI) 528

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (CLI) 528

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format 529

Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface 530

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Option-Insert Command (CLI) 530

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through the server-ID-override Command (CLI) 531

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through a Subscriber-ID (CLI) 532

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through server-ID-override and subscriber-ID Commands (CLI) 533

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Different SVIs (CLI) 534

Information About AP DHCP Option 82 Support on FlexConnect Local Switching Mode 535

Configuring AP DHCP Option82 Support 535

Verifying AP DHCP Option82 Support 536

CHAPTER 47

RADIUS Realm 537

Information About RADIUS Realm 537

Enabling RADIUS Realm 538

Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting 538

Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN 539

Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration 541

CHAPTER 48

RADIUS Accounting 545

Information About RADIUS Accounting of AP Events 545

Configuring Accounting Method-List for an AP Profile 545

Verifying the AP Accounting Information 546

AAA Accounting 546

Configuring AAA Accounting Using Default Method List (CLI)	546
Configuring HTTP Command Accounting Using Named Method List (CLI)	547
Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data	548
Information About Device Ecosystem Data	548
Enable Device Ecosystem Data	548
Verify Device Ecosystem Data	549

CHAPTER 49
RADIUS Call Station Identifier 551

RADIUS Call Station Identifier	551
Configuring a RADIUS Call Station Identifier	552

CHAPTER 50
RADIUS VSA 553

Information About RADIUS VSA	553
Create an Attribute List	554
Create a AAA Policy and Map it to Attribute List	555
Map a AAA Policy to the WLAN Policy Profile	556
Map the WLAN Policy Profile to a WLAN	557

CHAPTER 51
Cisco StadiumVision 559

Cisco StadiumVision Overview	559
Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision (GUI)	560
Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision (CLI)	560
Verify StadiumVision Configurations	561

CHAPTER 52
Persistent SSID Broadcast 563

Persistent SSID Broadcast	563
Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast	563
Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast	564

CHAPTER 53
Network Monitoring 565

Network Monitoring	565
Status Information Received Synchronously - Configuration Examples	565
Alarm and Event Information Received Asynchronously - Configuration Examples	567

CHAPTER 54**Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account 569**

- Information About Lobby Ambassador Account 569
- Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account (GUI) 569
 - Creating a User Account 570
 - Logging In Using the Lobby Account 571
- Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account (CLI) 571

CHAPTER 55**Lobby Ambassador Account 573**

- Information About Lobby Ambassador Account 573
- Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account (GUI) 574
 - Creating a User Account 574
 - Logging In Using the Lobby Account 575
- Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account (CLI) 575
- Configuring WLAN (GUI) 576
- Client Allowed List 577
- Restrictions for Client Allowed List 577
- Creating a Client Allowed List (GUI) 577
 - Adding Single MAC Address to Allowed List 577
 - Adding Bulk MAC Address to Allowed List 578
- Managing Guest Users 578
- Viewing a Client Allowed List 579

CHAPTER 56**Guest User Accounts 581**

- Information About Creating Guest User Accounts 581
- Creating a Guest User Account (GUI) 582
- Creating a Guest User Account (CLI) 582
- Verifying Guest User Account 583
- Assigning Username to Guest Users in a WLAN (CLI) 584

CHAPTER 57**Link Local Bridging 585**

- Feature History for Link Local Bridging 585
- Information About Link Local Bridging 585
- Use Case for Link Local Bridging 586

Guidelines and Restrictions for Link Local Bridging	586
Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile (GUI)	586
Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile (CLI)	587
Verifying Link Local Bridging	587

CHAPTER 58
Web Admin Settings 589

Information About Web Admin Settings	589
Configuring HTTP/HTTPS Access	589
Configuring HTTP Trust Point	590
Configuring Netconf Yang	591
Configuring Timeout Policy	591
Configuring VTY	592

CHAPTER 59
Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS Server 595

Feature History for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server	595
Information About Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server	595
Guidelines for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server	596
Configuring AAA Accounting Using Default Method List (CLI)	596
Configuring HTTP Command Accounting Using Named Method List (CLI)	597

CHAPTER 60
Embedded Packet Capture 599

Feature History for Embedded Packet Capture	599
Information About Embedded Packet Capture	599
Configuring Embedded Packet Capture (CLI)	600
Verifying Embedded Packet Capture	602

CHAPTER 61
Layer 3 Access 605

Information About Layer 3 Access	605
Information About OSPF	606
Information About PIM Sparse Mode	606
Information About Network Address Translation	607
Restrictions for Layer 3 Access	608
Use Cases for Layer 3 Access	608
Configuring a Client Gateway (GUI)	609

Configuring a Client Gateway (CLI)	609
Configuring OSPF Interfaces (GUI)	610
Configuring OSPF Protocol (GUI)	610
Configuring OSPF (CLI)	611
Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters (CLI)	612
Configuring OSPF Interfaces (CLI)	612
Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile (GUI)	613
Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile (CLI)	614
Configuring Multicast Traffic	614
Enabling Multicast Traffic without VRF (GUI)	614
Enabling Multicast Traffic without VRF (CLI)	615
Enabling Multicast Traffic with PIM-SSM (CLI)	617
Selective NAT Support	618
Enabling Static NAT without VRF (CLI)	618
Enabling Static NAT with VRF (CLI)	619
Enabling Dynamic NAT without VRF (CLI)	621
Enabling Dynamic NAT with VRF (CLI)	622
Enabling Timeout for NAT (CLI)	624
Selective Internal DHCP with VRF Support	625
Enabling Internal DHCP with VRF (CLI)	625
Verifying Routing Protocol Details	626
Verifying Multicast Traffic Details	634
Verifying Static NAT Details	637
Verifying Dynamic NAT Details	638
Verifying NAT Details	639
Verifying NAT Timeout Details	640
Verifying Internal DHCP with VRF Details	641
Verifying Layer 3 Access Details	642

PART VI
System Management 643

CHAPTER 62
Network Mobility Services Protocol 645

Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol	645
Radioactive Tracing for NMSP	646

Enabling NMSP on Premises Services	646
Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues	647
Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues	647
Configuring NMSP Strong Cipher	648
Verifying NMSP Settings	648
Examples: NMSP Settings Configuration	651
NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX	651
Verifying NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX	651
Probe RSSI Location	653
Configuring Probe RSSI	653
RFID Tag Support	655
Configuring RFID Tag Support	655
Verifying RFID Tag Support	656

CHAPTER 63

Application Visibility and Control 659

Information About Application Visibility and Control	659
Prerequisites for Application Visibility and Control	661
Restrictions for Application Visibility and Control	661
AVC Configuration Overview	662
Create a Flow Monitor	662
Configuring a Flow Monitor (GUI)	663
Create a Flow Record	664
Create a Flow Exporter	665
Configuring a Policy Tag	667
Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI)	667
Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (CLI)	668
Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP	669
Verify the AVC Configuration	669
Default DSCP on AVC	670
Configuring Default DSCP for AVC Profile (GUI)	670
Configuring Default DSCP for AVC Profile	671
Creating Class Map	671
Creating Policy Map	672
AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring	673

Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring	673
Configuring the Flow Exporter	673
Configuring the Flow Monitor	674
Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile	675
Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy	675
Verifying AVC Reanchoring	677

CHAPTER 64
Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control 681

Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control	681
Enabling Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control on a WLAN (CLI)	682
Configuring Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control Global Parameters (CLI)	682

CHAPTER 65
Cisco Hyperlocation 685

Information About Cisco Hyperlocation	685
Restrictions on Cisco Hyperlocation	687
Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation (GUI)	688
Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation (CLI)	688
Information About AP Group NTP Server	689
Configuring an AP Group NTP Server	689
Configuring AP Timezone	690
Information About BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons	691
Verifying BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons	691
Verifying Cisco Hyperlocation	692

CHAPTER 66
FastLocate for Cisco Catalyst Series Access Points 697

Information About FastLocate	697
Restrictions on FastLocate	697
Supported Access Points	698
FastLocate Network Components	698
Configuring FastLocate (GUI)	699
Verifying FastLocate on Cisco Catalyst APs	699

CHAPTER 67
IoT Services Management 701

Information About IoT Services Management	701

Enabling the Dot15 Radio	702
Configuring the gRPC Token	702
Enabling gRPC in an AP Profile	703
Verifying BLE State and Mode	703
Verifying BLE Details	704
Verifying gRPC Summary, Status, and Statistics	705

CHAPTER 68	IoT Module Management in the Controller	707
	Information About IoT Module Management in the Controller	707
	Enabling a USB on the Controller	707
	Verifying the USB Modules	708

CHAPTER 69	Cisco Spaces	711
	Cisco Spaces	711
	Configuring Cisco Spaces	711
	Verifying Cisco Spaces Configuration	712

CHAPTER 70	EDCA Parameters	715
	Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters	715
	Configuring EDCA Parameters (GUI)	715
	Configuring EDCA Parameters (CLI)	716

CHAPTER 71	Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA	719
	Feature History for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA	719
	Information About Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA	719
	Restrictions for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA	720
	Configuration Workflow	720
	Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA (GUI)	720
	Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA (CLI)	721
	Verifying Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA Configuration	721

CHAPTER 72	802.11 parameters and Band Selection	723
	Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters	723

Band Select	723
802.11 Bands	724
802.11n Parameters	724
802.11h Parameters	724
Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters	725
How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters	725
Configuring Band Selection (GUI)	725
Configuring Band Selection (CLI)	726
Configuring the 802.11 Bands (GUI)	727
Configuring the 802.11 Bands (CLI)	728
Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (GUI)	730
Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (CLI)	731
Configuring 802.11n Parameters (GUI)	732
Configuring 802.11n Parameters (CLI)	732
Configuring 802.11h Parameters (CLI)	734
Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters	736
Verifying Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Bands Commands	736
Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 6-GHz Band	736
Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 5-GHz Band	737
Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 2.4-GHz Band	739
Example: Viewing the status of 802.11h Parameters	741
Example: Verifying the Band-Selection Settings	741
Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters	743
Examples: Band Selection Configuration	743
Examples: 802.11 Bands Configuration	743
Examples: 802.11n Configuration	744
Examples: 802.11h Configuration	744

CHAPTER 73
NBAR Protocol Discovery 747

Introduction to NBAR Protocol Discovery	747
Configuring NBAR Protocol Discovery	747
Verifying Protocol Discovery Statistics	748

CHAPTER 74
Conditional Debug, Radioactive Tracing, and Packet Tracing 751

Introduction to Conditional Debugging	751
Introduction to Radioactive Tracing	752
Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing	752
Location of Tracefiles	753
Configuring Conditional Debugging (GUI)	753
Configuring Conditional Debugging	754
Radioactive Tracing for L2 Multicast	755
Recommended Workflow for Trace files	755
Copying Tracefiles Off the Box	756
Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging	757
Verifying Conditional Debugging	757
Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SISF	757
Information About Packet Tracing	758
Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing	759
Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per AP	760
Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client (GUI)	761
Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client	761
Verifying Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing Configuration	762
Feature History for Wireless Client Debug Bundle	762
Information About Wireless Client Debug Bundle	762
Types of Logs Collected	763
Collecting Wireless Client Debug Bundle (CLI)	764

CHAPTER 75
Aggressive Client Load Balancing 767

Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing	767
Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)	768
Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)	768
Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (CLI)	769

CHAPTER 76
RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing 771

Information about RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing	771
Configuring RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing	772
Disabling RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing	774
Verifying Automatic WNCd Load Balancing	775

CHAPTER 77**Accounting Identity List 777**

Configuring Accounting Identity List (GUI) 777

Configuring Accounting Identity List (CLI) 777

Configuring Client Accounting (GUI) 778

Configuring Client Accounting (CLI) 778

CHAPTER 78**Support for Accounting Session ID 781**

Information About Accounting Session ID 781

Configuring an Accounting Session ID (CLI) 781

Verifying an Account Session ID 782

CHAPTER 79**Interim Accounting 785**

Information About Interim Accounting 785

Disabling Interim Accounting (CLI) 786

Verifying Interim Accounting 786

CHAPTER 80**Wireless Multicast 787**

Information About Wireless Multicast 787

Multicast Optimization 788

IPv6 Global Policies 788

Information About IPv6 Snooping 788

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection 788

Prerequisites for Configuring Wireless Multicast 790

Restrictions on Configuring Wireless Multicast 791

Restrictions for IPv6 Snooping 791

Configuring Wireless Multicast 791

Configuring Wireless Multicast-MCMC Mode (CLI) 791

Configuring Wireless Multicast-MCUC Mode 792

Configuring Multicast Listener Discovery Snooping (GUI) 792

Configuring IPv6 MLD Snooping 793

Verifying the Multicast VLAN Configuration 793

IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast 794

Configuring IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast (GUI) 794

Configuring IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast	795
Verifying IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast	795
Verifying the Multicast Connection Between the Controller and the AP	795
Directed Multicast Service	796
Configuring Directed Multicast Service(GUI)	796
Configuring Directed Multicast Service	796
Verifying the Directed Multicast Service Configuration	797
Wireless Broadcast, Non-IP Multicast and Multicast VLAN	798
Configuring Non-IP Wireless Multicast (CLI)	799
Configuring Wireless Broadcast (GUI)	799
Configuring Wireless Broadcast (CLI)	800
Configuring Multicast-over-Multicast for AP Multicast Groups (CLI)	800
Verifying Wireless Multicast	801
Multicast Optimization	802
Configuring IP Multicast VLAN for WLAN (GUI)	802
Configuring IP Multicast VLAN for WLAN	802
Verifying the Multicast VLAN Configuration	803
Multicast Filtering	804
Information About Multicast Filtering	804
Configuring Multicast Filtering	805
Verifying Multicast Filtering	806

CHAPTER 81

Map-Server Per-Site Support	807
Information About Map Server Per Site Support	807
Configuring the Default Map Server (GUI)	808
Configuring the Default Map Server (CLI)	808
Configuring a Map Server Per Site (GUI)	809
Configuring a Map Server Per Site (CLI)	809
Creating a Map Server for Each VNID (GUI)	810
Creating a Map Server for Each VNID	810
Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID (GUI)	811
Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID (CLI)	811
Verifying the Map Server Configuration	812

CHAPTER 82	Volume Metering	815
	Volume Metering	815
	Configuring Volume Metering	815
CHAPTER 83	Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server	817
	Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server	817
	Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller	818
	Information About Syslog Support for Client State Change	818
	Configuring Syslog Support for Client State Change (CLI)	819
	Sample Syslogs	819
	Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (GUI)	820
	Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (CLI)	821
	Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points	822
	AP Logging to the In-Memory Buffer and Flash	823
	AP Logging to Terminal	823
	Configuring AP Logging to a Syslog Server	823
	Configuring Syslog Server for an AP Profile	824
	Configuring AP Syslog Settings (GUI)	826
	Verifying Syslog Server Configurations	826
CHAPTER 84	Login Banner	831
	Information About Login Banner	831
	Configuring a Login Banner (GUI)	831
	Configuring a Login Banner	832
CHAPTER 85	Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband	833
	Introduction to Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband	833
	Limitations of MBO	835
	Configuring MBO on a WLAN	835
	Verifying MBO Configuration	836
CHAPTER 86	SNMP Traps	839

Information About Configuring SNMP Traps	839
Configuring SNMP Traps (GUI)	840
Enabling Access Points Traps (CLI)	840
Enabling Wireless Client Traps (CLI)	841
Enabling Mesh Traps (CLI)	841
Enabling RF Traps (CLI)	842
Enabling Rogue, Mobility, RRM, and General Traps (CLI)	842
Verifying SNMP Wireless Traps	843

CHAPTER 87

Disabling Clients with Random MAC Address 845

Information About Disabling Clients with Random MAC Addresses	845
Configuring Random MAC Address Deny (CLI)	845
Verifying Denial of Clients with a Random MAC Address	846

CHAPTER 88

Dataplane Packet Logging 849

Information About Dataplane Packet Logging	849
Enabling or Disabling Debug Level (CLI)	850
Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Ingress Path (CLI)	850
Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Punt-Inject Path (CLI)	851
Verifying Dataplane Packet Logging	852
Clearing Logs and Conditions in Global and Filtered Trace Buffers	853

CHAPTER 89

Streaming Telemetry 855

Information About Streaming Telemetry	855
Gather Points	855
Subscription	856
Transport	857
Scale Considerations	857
Session	857
gNMI Dial-In-Mode	857
gRPC- Dial-Out-Mode	858
Configuring Telemetry on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller	858
Enabling gNXI in Insecure Mode (CLI)	859
Enabling gNXI in Secure Mode (CLI)	860

Verifying the Status of a Telemetry Subscription on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller	861
Managing Configured Subscriptions on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller	861
Zero Trust Telemetry	862
Define a Protocol	863
Define a Named Receiver	863
Configure Telemetry Subscription	864
On-Change Telemetry Support	865
Supported XPathS for On-Change Subscription	865
Troubleshooting Telemetry Support	869
Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	871
Feature History for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	871
Information About Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	872
Restrictions for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	873
Supported Workflow for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	873
Enabling iCAP Filtering in APs (CLI)	873
Disabling Client Telemetry Data for a WLAN (YANG)	874
Verifying Client Telemetry Data for a WLAN	874

CHAPTER 90
Application Performance Monitoring 875

Feature History for Application Performance Monitoring	875
Information About Application Performance Monitoring	875
Restrictions for Application Performance Monitoring	876
Workflow	876
Create a Flow Monitor	876
Create a Wireless WLAN Profile Policy	877
Create a Policy Tag	879
Attach the Policy Profile to an AP	879
Verify Application Performance Monitoring	880

CHAPTER 91
Wireless Clients Threshold Warning 881

Information About Wireless Clients Threshold Warning	881
Configuring a Warning Period	881
Configuring Client Threshold	882

CHAPTER 92	Intelligent Capture Hardening	883
	Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening	883
	Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening	883
	Anomaly Detection	884
	RF Statistics	884
	Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile (CLI)	884
	Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point (CLI)	885
	Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics	886
CHAPTER 93	Amazon S3 Support	889
	Information About Amazon S3 Support	889
	Configuring Amazon S3 Support	889
	Verifying Amazon S3 Support	891
CHAPTER 94	Amazon Web Services CloudWatch	893
	Information About Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Support	893
	Configuring Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Profile	894
	Verifying AWS CloudWatch Configuration	895
CHAPTER 95	Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade	897
	Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade	897
	Configuring Minidump from Access Point (CLI)	898
	Configuring Minidump from Controller (CLI)	898
	Verifying Minidump Configuration	899
PART VII	Security	901
CHAPTER 96	MAC Filtering	903
	MAC Filtering	903
	MAC Filtering Configuration Guidelines	903
	Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication (CLI)	905
	Configuring MAC Filtering (GUI)	906
	Configuring MAB for External Authentication (CLI)	906

CHAPTER 97**Web-Based Authentication 909**

Local Web Authentication Overview 909

Device Roles 911

Authentication Process 912

Local Web Authentication Banner 913

Customized Local Web Authentication 915

Guidelines 916

Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines 917

How to Configure Local Web Authentication 917

Configuring Default Local Web Authentication 917

Information About the AAA Wizard 918

Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI) 922

Configuring AAA Authentication (CLI) 922

Configuring the HTTP/HTTPS Server (GUI) 924

Configuring the HTTP Server (CLI) 924

Allowing Special Characters for Serial Port 925

Allowing Special Characters for VTY Port 926

Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication 927

Information About Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication 927

Guidelines and Limitations 929

Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication (CLI) 929

Creating a Parameter Map (GUI) 930

Creating Parameter Maps 930

Configuring Local Web Authentication (GUI) 930

Configuring the Internal Local Web Authentication (CLI) 931

Configuring the Customized Local Web Authentication (CLI) 932

Configuring the External Local Web Authentication (CLI) 933

Configuring the Web Authentication WLANs 934

Configuring Pre-Auth Web Authentication ACL (GUI) 935

Configuring Pre-Auth Web Authentication ACL (CLI) 936

Configuring the Maximum Web Authentication Request Retries 937

Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (GUI) 938

Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (CLI) 938

Configuring Type WebAuth, Consent, or Both	939
Configuring Preauthentication ACL	940
Configuring TrustPoint for Local Web Authentication	940
Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication	941
Example: Obtaining Web Authentication Certificate	941
Example: Displaying a Web Authentication Certificate	942
Example: Choosing the Default Web Authentication Login Page	943
Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv4 External Web Server	944
Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv6 External Web Server	944
Example: Assigning Login, Login Failure, and Logout Pages per WLAN	944
Example: Configuring Preauthentication ACL	945
Example: Configuring Webpassthrough	945
Verifying Web Authentication Type	945
External Web Authentication (EWA)	946
Configuring EWA with Single WebAuth Server Address and Default Ports (80/443) (CLI)	946
Configuring EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)	948
Configuring Wired Guest EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)	950
Authentication for Sleeping Clients	951
Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients	951
Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients	952
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)	953
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)	953
Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications	954
Mobility Support for Sleeping Clients	954
Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications	954
Configuring Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications	954
Configuring WLAN for Dot1x and Local Web Authentication	954
Configuring a WLAN for MAC Authentication Bypass and Local Web Authentication	955
Configuring a WLAN for Local Web Authentication and MAC Filtering	956
Configuring a PSK + LWA in a WLAN	958
Configuring a Sleeping Client	959
Verifying a Sleeping Client Configuration	959

Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication	960
Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication	960
Information About Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication	960
Limitations for Multi Authentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication	960
Enabling the Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication (CLI)	961
Verifying Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication	961

CHAPTER 98
Central Web Authentication 963

Information About Central Web Authentication	963
Prerequisites for Central Web Authentication	964
How to Configure ISE	964
Creating an Authorization Profile	964
Creating an Authentication Rule	965
Creating an Authorization Rule	965
How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller	966
Configuring WLAN (GUI)	966
Configuring WLAN (CLI)	967
Configuring Policy Profile (CLI)	969
Configuring a Policy Profile (GUI)	970
Creating Redirect ACL	971
Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication	972
Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (GUI)	973
Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (CLI)	973
Troubleshooting Central Web Authentication	974
Authentication for Sleeping Clients	974
Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients	974
Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients	975
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)	975
Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)	976
Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications	976
Mobility Support for Sleeping Clients	976

Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications	976
Configuring Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications	977
Configuring WLAN for Dot1x and Local Web Authentication	977
Configuring a WLAN for MAC Authentication Bypass and Local Web Authentication	978
Configuring a WLAN for Local Web Authentication and MAC Filtering	979
Configuring a PSK + LWA in a WLAN	980
Configuring a Sleeping Client	981
Verifying a Sleeping Client Configuration	982

CHAPTER 99
Private Shared Key 983

Information About Private Preshared Key	983
Configuring a PSK in a WLAN (CLI)	984
Configuring a PSK in a WLAN (GUI)	985
Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN (GUI)	986
Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN (CLI)	986
Verifying a Private PSK	987

CHAPTER 100
Multi-Preshared Key 991

Information About Multi-Preshared Key	991
Restrictions on Multi-PSK	992
Configuring Multi-Preshared Key (GUI)	992
Configuring Multi-Preshared Key (CLI)	995
Verifying Multi-PSK Configurations	996

CHAPTER 101
Multiple Authentications for a Client 999

Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client	999
Information About Supported Combination of Authentications for a Client	999
Jumbo Frame Support for RADIUS Packets	1001
Combination of Authentications on MAC Failure Not Supported on a Client	1001
Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client	1001
Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (GUI)	1001
Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (CLI)	1002
Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication (GUI)	1003
Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication	1004

Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication (GUI)	1005
Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication	1006
Configuring WLAN	1006
Applying Policy Profile to a WLAN	1007
Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Pre-Shared Key (CLI)	1008
Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with OWE (CLI)	1009
Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (CLI)	1011
Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller (CLIs)	1013
Creating AAA Authentication	1013
Configuring AAA Server for External Authentication	1013
Configuring AAA for Authentication	1015
Configuring Accounting Identity List	1015
Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication	1016
Defining an Access Control List for Radius Server	1016
Configuration Example to Define an Access Control List for Radius Server	1017
Configuring WLAN	1017
Configuring Policy Profile	1018
Mapping WLAN and Policy Profile to Policy Tag	1019
Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x (GUI)	1019
Defining Guest Portal	1019
Defining Authorization Profile for a Client	1020
Defining Authentication Rule	1020
Defining Authorization Rule	1020
Creating Rules to Match Guest Flow Condition	1021
Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations	1021

CHAPTER 102
Wi-Fi Protected Access 3 1025

Simultaneous Authentication of Equals	1025
Opportunistic Wireless Encryption	1026
Hash-to-Element (H2E)	1026
YANG (RPC model)	1027

Transition Disable	1029
WPA3 SAE iPSK	1029
Configuring SAE (WPA3+WPA2 Mixed Mode)	1029
Configuring WPA3 Enterprise (GUI)	1031
Configuring WPA3 Enterprise	1031
Configuring the WPA3 OWE	1033
Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode (GUI)	1034
Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode	1034
Configuring WPA3 SAE (GUI)	1036
Configuring WPA3 SAE	1036
Configuring WPA3 SAE iPSK (CLI)	1038
Configuring a WPA3 SAE iPSK WLAN Profile (CLI)	1038
Configuring a Policy Profile (CLI)	1040
Configuring a Passphrase in a Client Authorization Policy in the RADIUS Server(GUI)	1040
Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E (GUI)	1041
Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E	1041
Configuring WPA3 WLAN for Transition Disable	1043
Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission (GUI)	1044
Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission	1044
Verifying WPA3 SAE and OWE	1045
Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN	1049
Verifying WPA3 Transition Disable in WLAN	1054

CHAPTER 103
IP Source Guard 1059

Information About IP Source Guard	1059
Configuring IP Source Guard (GUI)	1059
Configuring IP Source Guard	1060

CHAPTER 104
802.11w 1061

Information About 802.11w	1061
Prerequisites for 802.11w	1064
Restrictions for 802.11w	1064
How to Configure 802.11w	1065
Configuring 802.11w (GUI)	1065

Configuring 802.11w (CLI) 1065

Disabling 802.11w 1066

Monitoring 802.11w 1067

CHAPTER 105

Management Frame Protection 1069

Information About Management Frame Protection 1069

Restrictions for Management Frame Protection 1070

Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI) 1071

Verifying Management Frame Protection Settings 1071

CHAPTER 106

IPv4 ACLs 1073

Information about Network Security with ACLs 1073

ACL Overview 1073

Access Control Entries 1073

ACL Supported Types 1074

Supported ACLs 1074

ACL Precedence 1074

Port ACLs 1074

Router ACLs 1075

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic 1076

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic Examples 1076

Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs 1077

IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features 1077

Access List Numbers 1077

Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs 1078

Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs 1079

Named IPv4 ACLs 1079

ACL Logging 1080

Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs 1080

IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations 1081

Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists 1081

How to Configure ACLs 1082

Configuring IPv4 ACLs (GUI) 1082

Configuring IPv4 ACLs 1082

Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (GUI)	1083
Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (CLI)	1083
Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (GUI)	1085
Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (CLI)	1085
Creating Named Standard ACLs (GUI)	1089
Creating Named Standard ACLs	1089
Creating Extended Named ACLs (GUI)	1091
Creating Extended Named ACLs	1091
Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface (GUI)	1093
Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface (CLI)	1093
Applying ACL to Policy Profile (GUI)	1094
Applying ACL to Policy Profile	1094
Configuration Examples for ACLs	1095
Examples: Including Comments in ACLs	1095
Examples: Applying an IPv4 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless Environment	1095
IPv4 ACL Configuration Examples	1096
ACLs in a Small Networked Office	1096
Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office	1097
Example: Numbered ACLs	1097
Examples: Extended ACLs	1098
Examples: Named ACLs	1098
Monitoring IPv4 ACLs	1099

CHAPTER 107
Downloadable ACL 1101

Feature History for Downloadable ACL	1101
Information About Downloadable ACL	1102
Scale Considerations for Downloadable ACL	1102
Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL	1102
Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE	1103
Configuring dACL in a Controller (CLI)	1103
Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)	1104
Verifying dACL Configuration	1105

CHAPTER 108
DNS-Based Access Control Lists 1107

Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists	1107
Defining ACLs	1108
Applying ACLs	1109
Types of URL Filters	1109
Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists	1110
Flex Mode	1111
Defining URL Filter List	1111
Applying URL Filter List to Flex Profile	1112
Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication (GUI)	1112
Local Mode	1113
Defining URL Filter List	1113
Applying URL Filter List to Policy Profile (GUI)	1114
Applying URL Filter List to Policy Profile	1115
Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication	1115
Creating Authorization Profiles	1115
Mapping Authorization Profiles to Authentication Rule	1116
Mapping Authorization Profiles to Authorization Rule	1116
Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists	1117
Configuration Examples for DNS-Based Access Control Lists	1117
Verifying DNS Snoop Agent (DSA)	1118
Information About Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL	1120
Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)	1121
Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA	1121
Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)	1123
Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA	1123
Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)	1124
Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA	1124
Verifying Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL	1124

CHAPTER 109

Allowed List of Specific URLs	1127
Allowed List of Specific URLs	1127
Adding URL to Allowed List	1127
Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses	1128
Verifying URLs on the Allowed List	1129

CHAPTER 110	Cisco Umbrella WLAN 1131
	Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN 1131
	Registering Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account 1132
	Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN 1133
	Importing CA Certificate to the Trust Pool 1133
	Creating a Local Domain RegEx Parameter Map 1135
	Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI) 1135
	Configuring the Umbrella Parameter Map 1136
	Enabling or Disabling DNSCrypt (GUI) 1136
	Enabling or Disabling DNSCrypt 1137
	Configuring Timeout for UDP Sessions 1137
	Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI) 1138
	Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN 1138
	Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile 1139
	Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile (GUI) 1139
	Configuring Umbrella Flex Parameters 1140
	Configuring the Umbrella Flex Policy Profile (GUI) 1140
	Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration 1141

CHAPTER 111	RADIUS Server Load Balancing 1143
	Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing 1143
	Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 1145
	Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing 1145
	Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group (CLI) 1146

CHAPTER 112	AAA Dead-Server Detection 1147
	Information About AAA Dead-Server Detection 1147
	Prerequisites for AAA Dead-Server Detection 1148
	Restrictions for AAA Dead-Server Detection 1148
	Configuring AAA Dead-Server Detection (CLI) 1148
	Verifying AAA Dead-Server Detection 1149

CHAPTER 113	ISE Simplification and Enhancements 1151

Utilities for Configuring Security	1151
Configuring Multiple Radius Servers	1152
Verifying AAA and Radius Server Configurations	1153
Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication	1153
Information About Captive Bypassing	1153
Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (GUI)	1154
Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (CLI)	1155
Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE	1156
Information about DHCP Option 55 and 77	1156
Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (GUI)	1156
Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (CLI)	1156
Configuring EAP Request Timeout (GUI)	1157
Configuring EAP Request Timeout	1158
Configuring EAP Request Timeout in Wireless Security (CLI)	1158
Captive Portal	1159
Captive Portal Configuration	1159
Configuring Captive Portal (GUI)	1159
Configuring Captive Portal	1160
Captive Portal Configuration - Example	1162

CHAPTER 114
RADIUS DTLS 1165

Information About RADIUS DTLS	1165
Prerequisites	1167
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server	1167
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Timeout	1168
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Idle Timeout	1169
Configuring Source Interface for RADIUS DTLS Server	1169
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number	1170
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Retries	1171
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Trustpoint	1171
Configuring RADIUS DTLS Match-Server-Identity	1172
Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author	1172
Enabling DTLS for Client	1173
Configuring Client Trustpoint for DTLS	1174

Configuring DTLS Idle Timeout	1174
Configuring Server Trustpoint for DTLS	1175
Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration	1176
Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics	1176

CHAPTER 115	Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring	1177
	Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring	1177
	Configuring Policy Enforcement and Enabling Change-of-Authorization (CLI)	1177
	Example: Configuring Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring	1178
	Verifying Policy Usage and Enforcement	1179

CHAPTER 116	Local Extensible Authentication Protocol	1181
	Information About Local EAP	1181
	Restrictions for Local EAP	1182
	Configuring Local EAP Profile (CLI)	1182
	Configuring Local EAP profile (GUI)	1183
	Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI)	1183
	Configuring AAA Authorization Method (GUI)	1183
	Configuring AAA Authorization Method (CLI)	1184
	Configuring Local Advanced Methods (GUI)	1185
	Configuring WLAN (GUI)	1185
	Configuring WLAN (CLI)	1186
	Creating a User Account (CLI)	1186
	Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI)	1187
	Deploy Policy Tag to Access Points (GUI)	1188

CHAPTER 117	Local EAP Ciphersuite	1189
	Information About Local EAP Ciphersuite	1189
	Restrictions for Local EAP Ciphersuite	1190
	Configuring Local EAP Ciphersuite (CLI)	1191

CHAPTER 118	Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers	1193
	Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers	1193
	Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers	1194

Configuring Explicit Authentication and Authorization Server List (GUI)	1194
Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (GUI)	1195
Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (CLI)	1195
Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (GUI)	1196
Configure Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)	1197
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security (GUI)	1199
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security	1199
Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers	1201
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication (GUI)	1201
Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication	1201
Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration	1202
Configuration Examples	1203

CHAPTER 119
CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting 1205

CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting Request	1205
Adding CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request	1206
Verifying CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request	1206

CHAPTER 120
Secure LDAP 1207

Information About SLDAP	1207
Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP	1209
Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP	1209
Configuring SLDAP	1209
Configuring an AAA Server Group (GUI)	1210
Configuring a AAA Server Group	1211
Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request	1212
Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server	1213
Verifying the SLDAP Configuration	1213

CHAPTER 121
Network Access Server Identifier 1215

Information About Network Access Server Identifier	1215
Creating a NAS ID Policy(GUI)	1216
Creating a NAS ID Policy	1216
Attaching a Policy to a Tag (GUI)	1217

Attaching a Policy to a Tag (CLI)	1218
Verifying the NAS ID Configuration	1218

CHAPTER 122

Locally Significant Certificates 1221

Information About Locally Significant Certificates	1221
Certificate Provisioning in Controllers	1222
Device Certificate Enrollment Operation	1222
Certificate Provisioning on Lightweight Access Point	1222
Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates	1223
Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates	1224
Configuring RSA Key for PKI Trustpoint	1224
Configuring PKI Trustpoint Parameters	1224
Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)	1225
Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI Trustpoint with CA Server (CLI)	1226
Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (GUI)	1227
Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (CLI)	1228
Configuring Subject-Name Parameters in LSC Certificate	1228
Configuring Key Size for LSC Certificate	1229
Configuring Trustpoint for LSC Provisioning on an Access Point	1229
Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (GUI)	1230
Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (CLI)	1230
Configuring LSC Provisioning for all the APs (GUI)	1231
Configuring LSC Provisioning for All APs (CLI)	1232
Configuring LSC Provisioning for the APs in the Provision List	1232
Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (GUI)	1233
Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (CLI)	1233
Cleaning the CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (GUI)	1234
Cleaning CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (CLI)	1234
Creating a New Trustpoint Dedicated to a Single CA Certificate	1235
Verifying LSC Configuration	1235
Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (GUI)	1236
Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (CLI)	1236
Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller	1237
Overview of Support for MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller	1237

Recommendations and Limitations	1237
Configuration Workflow	1237
Configuring LSC on the Controller (CLI)	1238
Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs (CLI)	1238
Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI)	1240
Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller (CLI)	1240
Verifying the Configuration Status	1241
LSC Fallback Access Points	1241
Information About LSC Fallback APs	1241
Troubleshooting LSC Fallback State	1241
Recovery Steps	1242
Configuring Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join	1243
Use Cases	1243
Prerequisites	1243
Configuring Clock Calendar (CLI)	1244
Enabling HTTP Server (CLI)	1244
Configuring CA Server (CLI)	1245
Configuring Trustpoint (CLI)	1246
Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI TrustPoint with CA Server (CLI)	1248
Tagging Wireless Management TrustPoint Name (CLI)	1248
Disable PKI Server	1249
Verifying Controller Certificates for Wireless AP Join	1249

CHAPTER 123
Certificate Management 1251

About Public Key Infrastructure Management (GUI)	1251
Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)	1251
Generating an AP Self-Signed Certificate (GUI)	1252
Adding the Certificate Authority Server (GUI)	1252
Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint (GUI)	1253
Adding and Managing Certificates	1253
	1254

CHAPTER 124
Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join 1257

Use Cases	1257

Prerequisites	1258
Configuring Clock Calendar (CLI)	1258
Enabling HTTP Server (CLI)	1259
Configuring CA Server (CLI)	1259
Configuring Trustpoint (CLI)	1261
Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI TrustPoint with CA Server (CLI)	1262
Tagging Wireless Management TrustPoint Name (CLI)	1263
Disable PKI Server	1264
Verifying Controller Certificates for Wireless AP Join	1264

CHAPTER 125
Managing Rogue Devices 1267

Rogue Detection	1267
Rogue Devices	1267
Information About Rogue Containment (Protected Management Frames (PMF) Enabled)	1270
AP Impersonation Detection	1270
Configuring Rogue Detection (GUI)	1271
Configuring Rogue Detection (CLI)	1271
Configuring RSSI Deviation Notification Threshold for Rogue APs (CLI)	1272
Configuring Management Frame Protection (GUI)	1273
Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI)	1273
Enabling Access Point Authentication	1274
Verifying Management Frame Protection	1274
Verifying Rogue Events	1275
Verifying Rogue Detection	1275
Examples: Rogue Detection Configuration	1277
Configuring Rogue Policies (GUI)	1277
Configuring Rogue Policies (CLI)	1278
Rogue Detection Security Level	1279
Setting Rogue Detection Security-level	1280
Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events	1281
Monitoring Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events	1282
Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities	1282
Feature History for Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities	1282
Rogue AP Scale Modes Per Class	1283

Configuring Rogue AP Scale (CLI) 1284

Verifying Rogue Scale Details 1285

CHAPTER 126

Classifying Rogue Access Points 1287

Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points 1287

Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs 1289

Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points 1289

How to Classify Rogue Access Points 1290

Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (GUI) 1290

Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (CLI) 1290

Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI) 1292

Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (CLI) 1293

Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules 1296

Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points 1296

CHAPTER 127

Advanced WIPS 1297

Feature History for Advanced WIPS 1297

Information About Advanced WIPS 1298

Guidelines and Restrictions 1300

Enabling Advanced WIPS 1301

Syslog Support for Advanced WIPS 1301

Advanced WIPS Solution Components 1302

Supported Modes and Platforms 1302

Enabling Advanced WIPS(GUI) 1303

Enabling Advanced WIPS (CLI) 1303

Configuring Syslog Threshold for Advanced WIPS (CLI) 1304

Viewing Advanced WIPS Alarms (GUI) 1305

Verifying Advanced WIPS 1305

Verifying Syslog Configuration for Advanced WIPS 1306

CHAPTER 128

Cisco TrustSec 1307

Information about Cisco TrustSec 1307

Cisco TrustSec Features 1308

Security Group Access Control List 1309

Inline Tagging	1311
Policy Enforcement	1311
SGACL Support for Wireless Guest Access	1312
Enabling SGACL on the AP (GUI)	1313
Enabling SGACL on the AP	1313
Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Globally (CLI)	1315
Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Per Interface (CLI)	1315
Manually Configure a Device SGT (CLI)	1316
Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode (GUI)	1316
Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode	1317
Configuring ISE for TrustSec	1317
Verifying Cisco TrustSec Configuration	1319

CHAPTER 129

SGT Inline Tagging and SXPv4	1321
Introduction to SGT Inline Tagging on AP and SXPv4	1321
Creating an SXP Profile	1321
Configuring SGT Inline Tagging on Access Points	1322
Configuring an SXP Connection (GUI)	1323
Configuring an SXP Connection	1323
Verifying SGT Push to Access Points	1324

CHAPTER 130

Multiple Cipher Support	1327
Default Ciphersuites Supported for CAPWAP-DTLS	1327
Configuring Multiple Ciphersuites	1328
Setting Server Preference	1329
Verifying Operational Ciphersuites and Priority	1329

CHAPTER 131

Configuring Secure Shell	1331
Information About Configuring Secure Shell	1331
SSH and Device Access	1331
SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions	1331
SSH Configuration Guidelines	1332
Secure Copy Protocol Overview	1332
Secure Copy Protocol	1333

SFTP Support	1333
Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell	1333
Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell	1334
How to Configure SSH	1335
Setting Up the Device to Run SSH	1335
Configuring the SSH Server	1336
Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status	1338

CHAPTER 132	Encrypted Traffic Analytics	1339
	Information About Encrypted Traffic Analytics	1339
	Exporting Records to IPv4 Flow Export Destination	1340
	Exporting Records to IPv6 Flow Export Destination	1341
	Exporting Records to IPv4 and IPv6 Destination over IPFIX	1342
	Allowed List of Traffic	1342
	Configuring Source Interface for Record Export	1344
	Configuring Source Interface for Record Export Without IPFIX	1345
	Configuring ETA Flow Export Destination (GUI)	1345
	Enabling In-Active Timer	1346
	Enabling ETA on WLAN Policy Profile	1346
	Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN (GUI)	1347
	Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN	1347
	Verifying ETA Configuration	1348

CHAPTER 133	FIPS	1355
	FIPS	1355
	Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS	1356
	FIPS Self-Tests	1356
	Configuring FIPS	1357
	Configuring FIPS in HA Setup	1358
	Verifying FIPS Configuration	1359

CHAPTER 134	Internet Protocol Security	1361
	Information about Internet Protocol Security	1361
	Internet Key Exchange Version 1 Transform Sets	1362

Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 1	1363
Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Transform Sets	1365
Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2	1366
IPsec Transforms and Lifetimes	1368
Use of X.509 With Internet Key Exchange Version	1369
For IKEv2 Commands	1369
IPsec Session Interruption and Recovery	1370
Example: Configure IPsec Using ISAKMP	1370
Verifying IPsec Traffic	1370
Example: Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2	1372
Verifying IPsec With Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Traffic	1372

CHAPTER 135
Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support 1375

Information About Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support	1375
Configuring a Transport Layer Security Tunnel	1376
Verifying a Transport Layer Security Tunnel	1377

CHAPTER 136
Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes 1381

Feature History for RFC 5580 Location Attributes	1381
Information About RFC 5580 Location Attributes	1382
Information About Location-Capable Attribute	1384
Restriction for Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes	1384
Configuring Location Delivery Based on Out-of-Band Agreement (CLI)	1384
Configuring Location-Capable Attribute (CLI)	1385
Creating Location Attributes	1385
Configuring a Civic Profile (CLI)	1385
Configuring a Geo Profile (CLI)	1387
Configuring an Operator Name (CLI)	1388
Associating Location Attributes with User Location (CLI)	1389
Associating Location Attributes with the NAS Location (CLI)	1390
Verifying RFC 5580 Location Attribute Configuration	1390

CHAPTER 137
IP MAC Binding 1393

Information About IP MAC Binding	1393

Use Cases for No IP MAC Binding 1394

Disabling IP MAC Binding (CLI) 1394

Verifying IP MAC Binding 1395

CHAPTER 138

Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode 1397

Information About Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode 1397

Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode 1397

Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode (CLI) 1398

Verifying MAC Entries from Database 1398

CHAPTER 139

Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices 1399

Feature History for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices 1399

Information About Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices 1399

Restrictions for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices 1400

Disabling Device Tracking for Wireless Clients (CLI) 1400

Verifying ARP Broadcast 1401

CHAPTER 140

Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode 1403

Information About Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode 1403

Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode 1403

Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode (CLI) 1404

Verifying MAC Entries from Database 1405

Verifying ARP Broadcast 1405

PART VIII

Mobility 1407

CHAPTER 141

Mobility 1409

Introduction to Mobility 1409

SDA Roaming 1414

Definitions of Mobility-related Terms 1415

Mobility Groups 1415

Guidelines and Restrictions 1416

Configuring Mobility (GUI) 1418

Configuring Mobility (CLI) 1419

Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility (GUI)	1421
Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility	1421
Verifying Mobility	1425

CHAPTER 142	NAT Support on Mobility Groups	1431
	Information About NAT Support on Mobility Groups	1431
	Restrictions for NAT Support on Mobility Groups	1432
	Functionalities Supported on Mobility NAT	1432
	Configuring a Mobility Peer	1433
	Verifying NAT Support on Mobility Groups	1433

CHAPTER 143	Static IP Client Mobility	1435
	Information About Static IP Client Mobility	1435
	Restrictions	1435
	Configuring Static IP Client Mobility (GUI)	1436
	Configuring Static IP Client Mobility (CLI)	1436
	Verifying Static IP Client Mobility	1437

CHAPTER 144	Mobility Domain ID - Dot11i Roaming	1439
	Information about Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming	1439
	Verifying Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming	1440

CHAPTER 145	802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication	1441
	Information About 802.11r Support for FlexConnect Local Authentication	1441
	Support Guidelines	1441
	Verifying 802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication	1442

CHAPTER 146	Opportunistic Key Caching	1443
	Information about Opportunistic Key Caching	1443
	Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching	1444
	Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching (GUI)	1444
	Verifying Opportunistic Key Caching	1444

PART IX**High Availability 1447****CHAPTER 147****High Availability 1449**

Feature History for High Availability	1450
Information About High Availability	1451
Prerequisites for High Availability	1452
Restrictions on High Availability	1453
Guidelines for RP Port Configuration	1454
Configuring High Availability (CLI)	1455
Disabling High Availability	1456
Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller	1457
System and Network Fault Handling After 17.5	1458
Handling Recovery Mechanism	1483
Verifying High Availability Configurations	1484
Verifying AP or Client SSO Statistics	1484
Verifying High Availability	1487
High Availability Deployment for Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI) Network	1490
Information About Deploying ACI Network in Controller	1490
Prerequisite for Deploying the ACI Network in the Controller	1491
Disabling the Fast Switchover Notification Mechanism (CLI)	1492
Configuring Gratuitous ARP (GARP) Retransmit (CLI)	1492
Disabling Initial GARP (CLI)	1493
Configuring a Switchover	1493
show platform software rif-mgr chassis active standby r0 gateway-statistics	1494
show platform software rif-mgr chassis active standby R0 resource-status	1495
Redundancy Management Interfaces	1497
Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (GUI)	1502
Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (CLI)	1503
Configuring Gateway Monitoring (CLI)	1505
Configuring Gateway Monitoring Interval (CLI)	1506
Gateway Reachability Detection	1506
Information About Gateway Reachability Detection	1506
Configuration Workflow	1507

Migrating to RMI IPv6	1507
Monitoring the Health of the Standby Controller	1508
Monitoring the Health of Standby Parameters Using SNMP	1509
Standby Monitoring Using Standby RMI IP	1509
Standby Monitoring Using the Active Controller	1510
Standby IOS Linux Syslogs	1510
Standby Interface Status Using Active SNMP	1511
Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using Programmatic Interfaces	1512
Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using CLI	1512
Verifying the Gateway-Monitoring Configuration	1515
Verifying the RMI IPv4 Configuration	1516
Verifying the RMI IPv6 Configuration	1517
Verifying Redundancy Port Interface Configuration	1518
Information About Auto-Upgrade	1520
Use Cases	1520
Configuration Workflow	1521
Configuring Auto-Upgrade (CLI)	1521
Use Case for Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)	1521
Enabling LLDP (CLI)	1522
Enabling LLDP Timers (CLI)	1522
Enabling LLDP TLV-Select (CLI)	1523
Verifying LLDP	1523
Feature History for Reload Reason History	1525
Information About Reload Reason History	1525
Verifying Reload Reason History	1526
Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG	1528

PART X
Quality of Service 1531

CHAPTER 148
Quality of Service 1533

Wireless QoS Overview	1533
Wireless QoS Targets	1534
SSID Policies	1534
Client Policies	1534

Supported QoS Features on Wireless Targets	1534
Wireless QoS Mobility	1535
Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS	1535
Prerequisites for Wireless QoS	1536
Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets	1536
Metal Policy Format	1537
Metal Policy Map	1537
Class Maps	1539
DSCP to UP Mapping for Downstream Traffic	1540
Auto QoS Policy Format	1541
Architecture for Voice, Video and Integrated Data (AVVID)	1543
How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1544
Information about Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1544
Prerequisites for Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1545
Configure Metal Policy on SSID	1546
Configure Metal Policy on Client	1546
Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting for All Traffic	1547
Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Based on Traffic Classification	1548
Apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Policy Map to Policy Profile	1549
Apply Metal Policy with Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1550
How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1551
Information About Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1551
Prerequisites for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1552
Restrictions on Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1552
Configuring Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (GUI)	1553
Verifying Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting	1553
Configuring BDRL Using AAA Override	1554
Verifying Bi-Directional Rate-Limit	1555
How to Configure Wireless QoS	1556
Configuring a Policy Map with Class Map (GUI)	1556
Configuring a Class Map (CLI)	1557
Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (GUI)	1557
Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (CLI)	1558
Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (GUI)	1559

Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (CLI)	1559
Attaching Policy Tag to an AP	1560
Configuring Custom QoS Mapping	1560
Configuring DSCP-to-User Priority Mapping Exception	1562
Configuring Trust Upstream DSCP Value	1563

CHAPTER 149

Wireless Auto-QoS 1565

Information About Auto QoS	1565
How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS	1566
Configuring Wireless AutoQoS on Profile Policy	1566
Disabling Wireless AutoQoS	1567
Rollback AutoQoS Configuration (GUI)	1567
Rollback AutoQoS Configuration	1567
Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile (GUI)	1568
Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile	1568
Viewing AutoQoS on policy profile	1569

CHAPTER 150

Native Profiling 1571

Information About Native Profiling	1571
Creating a Class Map (GUI)	1572
Creating a Class Map (CLI)	1573
Creating a Service Template (GUI)	1575
Creating a Service Template (CLI)	1576
Creating a Parameter Map	1577
Creating a Policy Map (GUI)	1578
Creating a Policy Map (CLI)	1578
Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode	1580
Verifying Native Profile Configuration	1581

CHAPTER 151

Air Time Fairness 1583

Information About Air Time Fairness	1583
Restrictions on Cisco Air Time Fairness	1585
Cisco Air Time Fairness (ATF) Use Cases	1586
Configuring Cisco Air Time Fairness (ATF)	1586

Configuring Cisco Air Time Fairness	1586
Creating a Cisco ATF Profile (GUI)	1586
Creating Cisco ATF Profile (CLI)	1587
Attaching Cisco ATF Profile to a Policy Profile (GUI)	1588
Attaching Cisco ATF Profile to a Policy Profile (CLI)	1588
Enabling ATF in the RF Profile (GUI)	1589
Enabling ATF in the RF Profile (CLI)	1589
Verifying Cisco ATF Configurations	1590
Verifying Cisco ATF Statistics	1590

CHAPTER 152	IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support	1593
	Information About IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support	1593
	Configuring IPv6 Non-AVC QoS	1593
	Marking DSCP Values for an IPv6 Packet	1594
	Dropping an IPv6 Packet with DSCP Values	1594
	Policing IPv6 Traffic	1595
	Verifying IPv6 Non-AVC QoS	1596

CHAPTER 153	QoS Basic Service Set Load	1597
	Information About QoS Basic Set Service Load	1597
	Configuring QBSS Load	1598
	Configuring Wi-Fi Multimedia	1598
	Enabling QoS Basic Set Service Load	1599
	Verifying QoS Basic Set Service Load	1600

PART XI	IPv6	1601

CHAPTER 154	IPv6 Client IP Address Learning	1603
	Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning	1603
	Address Assignment Using SLAAC	1603
	Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment	1604
	Router Solicitation	1605
	Router Advertisement	1605
	Neighbor Discovery	1605

Neighbor Discovery Suppression	1606
Router Advertisement Guard	1606
Router Advertisement Throttling	1607
Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning	1607
IPv6 Address Tracking for Wireless Clients	1607
Configuring Unknown Address Multicast Neighbor Solicitation Forwarding	1608
Configuring RA Throttle Policy (CLI)	1608
Applying RA Throttle Policy on VLAN (GUI)	1609
Applying RA Throttle Policy on a VLAN (CLI)	1610
Configuring IPv6 Interface on a Switch (GUI)	1610
Configuring IPv6 on Interface (CLI)	1611
Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch (GUI)	1612
Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch (CLI)	1612
Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration Without DHCP on Switch (CLI)	1613
Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration With DHCP on Switch	1615
Configuring Stateless Address Auto Configuration Without DHCP on Switch (CLI)	1616
Native IPv6	1617
Information About IPv6	1617
Configuring IPv6 Addressing	1618
Creating an AP Join Profile (GUI)	1619
Creating an AP Join Profile (CLI)	1620
Configuring the Primary and Backup Controller (GUI)	1620
Configuring Primary and Backup Controller (CLI)	1621
Verifying IPv6 Configuration	1621

CHAPTER 155
IPv6 ACL 1623

Information About IPv6 ACL	1623
Understanding IPv6 ACLs	1623
Types of ACL	1623
Per User IPv6 ACL	1623
Filter ID IPv6 ACL	1624
Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL	1624
Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL	1624
Configuring IPv6 ACLs	1624

Default IPv6 ACL Configuration	1625
Interaction with Other Features and Switches	1625
How To Configure an IPv6 ACL	1625
Creating an IPv6 ACL (GUI)	1625
Creating an IPv6 ACL	1626
Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL (GUI)	1630
Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL	1630
Verifying IPv6 ACL	1630
Displaying IPv6 ACLs	1630
Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL	1631
Example: Creating an IPv6 ACL	1631
Example: Applying an IPv6 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless Environment	1632
Displaying IPv6 ACLs	1632
Example: Displaying IPv6 ACLs	1632
Example: Configuring RA Throttling	1633

CHAPTER 156
IPv6 Client Mobility 1635

Information About IPv6 Client Mobility	1635
Using Router Advertisement	1636
Router Advertisement Throttling	1636
IPv6 Address Learning	1637
Handling Multiple IP Addresses	1637
IPv6 Configuration	1637
Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Mobility	1637
Monitoring IPv6 Client Mobility	1638

CHAPTER 157
IPv6 Support on Flex and Mesh 1639

IPv6 Support on Flex + Mesh Deployment	1639
Configuring IPv6 Support for Flex + Mesh	1639
Configuring Preferred IP Address as IPv6 (GUI)	1640
Configuring Preferred IP Address as IPv6	1641
Verifying IPv6 on Flex+Mesh	1641

CHAPTER 158
IPv6 CAPWAP UDP Lite Support 1643

Information About UDP Lite	1643
Enabling UDP Lite Support	1643
Verifying UDP Lite Support Configuration	1644

CHAPTER 159	Neighbor Discovery Proxy	1645
	Information About Neighbor Discovery	1645
	Configure Neighbor Discovery Proxy (CLI)	1645
	Configure Duplicate Address Detection Proxy (CLI)	1646

CHAPTER 160	Address Resolution Protocol Proxy	1649
	Information About Address Resolution Protocol	1649
	Configure Address Resolution Protocol Proxy (CLI)	1649

CHAPTER 161	IPv6 Ready Certification	1651
	Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification	1651
	IPv6 Ready Certification	1651
	Configuring IPv6 Route Information	1652
	Verifying IPv6 Route Information	1652

PART XII	CleanAir	1653

CHAPTER 162	Cisco CleanAir	1655
	Feature History for CleanAir	1655
	Information About Cisco CleanAir	1655
	Cisco CleanAir-Related Terms	1656
	Cisco CleanAir Components	1656
	Interference Types that Cisco CleanAir can Detect	1658
	EDRRM and AQR Update Mode	1659
	Prerequisites for CleanAir	1659
	Restrictions for CleanAir	1659
	How to Configure CleanAir	1660
	Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (GUI)	1660
	Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (CLI)	1660
	Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (GUI)	1660

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (CLI)	1661
Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (GUI)	1663
Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (CLI)	1663
Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (GUI)	1664
Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (CLI)	1664
Configuring Event Driven RRM for a CleanAir Event (GUI)	1666
Configuring EDRRM for a CleanAir Event (CLI)	1666
CleanAir Pro Scanning	1667
Feature History for CleanAir Pro Scanning	1667
Information About CleanAir Pro Scanning	1668
Enabling CleanAir Pro Scanning (CLI)	1669
Monitoring CleanAir Pro Statistics (GUI)	1670
Verifying CleanAir Pro Scanning Details	1670
Verifying CleanAir Parameters	1671
Monitoring Interference Devices	1672
Configuration Examples for CleanAir	1672
CleanAir FAQs	1673

CHAPTER 163
Bluetooth Low Energy 1675

Information About Bluetooth Low Energy	1675
Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon (GUI)	1676
Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon	1676

CHAPTER 164
Persistent Device Avoidance 1679

Information about Cisco Persistent Device Avoidance	1679
Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance (GUI)	1680
Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance (CLI)	1680
Verifying Persistent Device Avoidance	1680

CHAPTER 165
Spectrum Intelligence 1683

Spectrum Intelligence	1683
Configuring Spectrum Intelligence	1684
Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information	1684
Debugging Spectrum Intelligence on Supported APs (CLI)	1685

CHAPTER 166**Spectrum Analysis 1687**

- Information About Spectrum Analysis 1687
- Live Spectrum Analysis 1688
- Performing AP Spectrum Analysis (GUI) 1688
- Configuring Spectrum Analysis 1689
- Verifying Spectrum Analysis 1689

PART XIII**Mesh Access Points 1691**

CHAPTER 167**Mesh Access Points 1693**

- Introduction to the Mesh Network 1695
- Mesh RRM feature support and evolution across AP generations 1696
- Restrictions for Mesh Access Points 1697
- MAC Authorization 1697
- Preshared Key Provisioning 1698
- EAP Authentication 1698
- Bridge Group Names 1699
- Background Scanning 1700
- Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode (Concept) 1700
- Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz 1701
- Information About Mesh Backhaul 1701
- Information About Mesh Serial Backhaul 1701
- Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM 1702
- Dynamic Frequency Selection 1703
- Country Codes 1704
- Intrusion Detection System 1704
- Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers 1704
- Information About DHCP and NAT Functionality on Root AP (RAP) 1705
- Mesh Convergence 1705
 - Noise-Tolerant Fast 1706
- Ethernet Bridging 1706
- Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network 1707
- Radio Resource Management on Mesh 1707

Air Time Fairness on Mesh	1707
Spectrum Intelligence for Mesh	1708
Indoor Mesh Interoperability with Outdoor Mesh	1709
Workgroup Bridge	1709
Link Test	1709
Mesh Daisy Chaining	1710
Mesh Leaf Node	1710
Flex+Bridge Mode	1710
Backhaul Client Access	1711
Mesh CAC	1711
Prerequisites for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1712
Restrictions for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1712
Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure	1712
Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment	1713
Configuring MAC Authorization (GUI)	1713
Configuring MAC Authorization (CLI)	1714
Configuring MAP Authorization - EAP (GUI)	1715
Configuring MAP Authorization (CLI)	1716
Configuring PSK Provisioning (CLI)	1716
Configuring a Bridge Group Name (GUI)	1718
Configuring a Bridge Group Name (CLI)	1718
Configuring Background Scanning (GUI)	1719
Configuring Background Scanning	1719
Configure AP fast ancestor find mode (GUI)	1719
Configuring Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find Mode (Task)	1720
Configuring Backhaul Client Access (GUI)	1721
Configuring Backhaul Client Access (CLI)	1721
Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI)	1722
Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI)	1722
Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI)	1723
Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI)	1724
Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI)	1724
Configuring Mesh Backhaul (CLI)	1725

Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (CLI)	1725
Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (CLI)	1726
Configuring Ethernet Bridging (GUI)	1726
Configuring Ethernet Bridging (CLI)	1727
Configuring Multicast Modes over Mesh	1728
Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (CLI)	1729
Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for Root Access Points Globally	1730
Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for an Access Point	1731
Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI)	1731
Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI)	1731
Changing the Role of an AP (GUI)	1732
Changing the Role of an AP (CLI)	1733
Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (CLI)	1733
Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (GUI)	1734
Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization	1734
Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs (GUI)	1735
Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs	1735
Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI)	1736
Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI)	1736
Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI)	1737
Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul	1737
Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI)	1738
Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP	1738
Configuring Mesh Convergence (CLI)	1739
Configuring DHCP Server on Root Access Point (RAP)	1739
Configuring Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining (CLI)	1740
Enabling Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1740
Configuring Mesh CAC (CLI)	1741
Configuring ATF on Mesh (GUI)	1741
Configuring ATF on Mesh	1742
Create an ATF Policy for a MAP	1742
Creating an ATF Policy (GUI)	1743
Adding an ATF to a Policy Profile (GUI)	1743

Enabling ATF Mode in an RF Profile (GUI)	1744
Enabling Wireless Mesh Profile	1744
Enabling Serial Backhaul in Radio Profile (GUI)	1745
Enabling Mesh Configurations in Radio Profile (CLI)	1745
Enabling Serial Backhaul (CLI)	1746
Configuration Example for Mesh Serial Backhaul	1747
Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)	1747
Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (GUI)	1748
Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (CLI)	1748
Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points	1750
Information About Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points	1750
Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI)	1750
Configuring a Flex Profile (CLI)	1750
Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)	1752
Configuring a Mesh Profile (CLI)	1752
Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)	1753
Attaching Site Tag to an Access Point (CLI)	1754
Configuring Switch Interface for APs (CLI)	1754
Verifying Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points Configuration	1755
Verifying ATF Configuration on Mesh	1756
Verifying Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1757
Verifying Mesh Convergence	1757
Verifying DHCP Server for Root AP Configuration	1757
Verifying Mesh Backhaul	1758
Verifying Mesh Configuration	1758
Verifying Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul	1767
Verifying Mesh Serial Backhaul	1767
Verifying the RRM DCA Status	1768
Verifying Fast Teardown with Default Mesh Profile	1768
Verify background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find	1768

CHAPTER 168

Redundant Root Access Point (RAP) Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1771
Overview of Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining	1771
Prerequisites for Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support	1772

Configuring Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support (CLI)	1772
Verifying Daisy Chain Redundancy (CLI)	1772

PART XIV
VideoStream 1775

CHAPTER 169
VideoStream 1777

Information about Media Stream	1777
Prerequisites for Media Stream	1778
How to Configure Media Stream	1778
Configuring Multicast-Direct Globally for Media Stream (CLI)	1778
Configuring Media Stream for 802.11 Bands (CLI)	1779
Configuring a WLAN to Stream Video(GUI)	1781
Configuring a WLAN to Stream Video (CLI)	1781
Deleting a Media Stream (GUI)	1782
Deleting a Media Stream (CLI)	1782
Monitoring Media Streams	1783
Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (GUI)	1784
Adding Media Stream (CLI)	1784
Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN (GUI)	1785
Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN (CLI)	1785
Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (GUI)	1786
Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (CLI)	1786
Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control (GUI)	1787
Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control (CLI)	1788
Create and Attach Policy-based QoS Profile	1789
Create a QoS Profile (GUI)	1790
Create a QoS Profile (CLI)	1790
Create a Service Template (GUI)	1791
Create a Service Template (CLI)	1792
Map the Service Template to the Policy Map (GUI)	1792
Map the Service Template to the Policy Map (CLI)	1793
Map the Policy Map (GUI)	1794
Map the Policy Map (CLI)	1795
Viewing Media Stream Information	1795

PART XV**Software-Defined Access Wireless 1799**

CHAPTER 170**Software-Defined Access Wireless 1801**

Information about Software-Defined Access Wireless 1801

Information About SD-Access Wireless Mesh Inter Fabric Edge Switch Roaming Protection 1804

Configuring SD-Access Wireless 1806

Configuring Default Map Server (GUI) 1807

Configuring Default Map Server (CLI) 1807

Configuring SD-Access Wireless Profile (GUI) 1807

Configuring SD-Access Wireless Profile (CLI) 1808

Configuring Map Server in Site Tag (GUI) 1809

Configuring Map Server in Site Tag (CLI) 1809

Configuring Map Server per L2-VNID (GUI) 1810

Configuring Map Server per L2-VNID (CLI) 1810

Verifying SD-Access Wireless 1810

CHAPTER 171**Passive Client 1813**

Information About Passive Clients 1813

Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile (GUI) 1814

Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile (CLI) 1814

Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN (GUI) 1815

Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN (CLI) 1815

Configuring Passive Client in Fabric Deployment 1816

Enabling Broadcast Underlay on VLAN 1816

Enabling ARP Flooding 1818

Verifying Passive Client Configuration 1819

CHAPTER 172**Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge 1821**

Introduction to Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge 1821

Configuring a Fabric Profile (CLI) 1821

Configuring a Policy Profile (CLI) 1822

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI) 1823

Configuring a WLAN (CLI) 1824

Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)	1824
Configuring an AP Profile	1825
Configuring Map Server and AP Subnet (CLI)	1825
Configuring Fabric on FiaB Node	1826
Configuring a Fabric Edge Node	1832
Verifying Fabric Configuration	1839

PART XVI
VLAN 1845

CHAPTER 173
VLANs 1847

Information About VLANs	1847
Logical Networks	1847
Supported VLANs	1847
VLAN Port Membership Modes	1847
VLAN Configuration Files	1848
Normal-Range VLAN Configuration Guidelines	1849
Extended-Range VLAN Configuration Guidelines	1849
Prerequisites for VLANs	1850
Restrictions for VLANs	1850
How to Configure VLANs	1851
How to Configure Normal-Range VLANs	1851
Creating or Modifying an Ethernet VLAN	1851
Assigning Static-Access Ports to a VLAN (GUI)	1852
Assigning Static-Access Ports to a VLAN	1852
How to Configure Extended-Range VLANs	1853
Creating an Extended-Range VLAN (GUI)	1854
Creating an Extended-Range VLAN	1854
Monitoring VLANs	1855

CHAPTER 174
VLAN Groups 1857

Information About VLAN Groups	1857
Prerequisites for VLAN Groups	1858
Restrictions for VLAN Groups	1858
Creating a VLAN Group (GUI)	1858

Creating a VLAN Group (CLI)	1859
Adding a VLAN Group to Policy Profile (GUI)	1859
Adding a VLAN Group to a Policy Profile	1860
Viewing the VLANs in a VLAN Group	1860
VLAN Group Support for DHCP and Static IP Clients	1861
Supported Features	1861

PART XVII
WLAN 1863

CHAPTER 175
WLANS 1865

Information About WLANS	1865
Band Selection	1866
Off-Channel Scanning Deferral	1866
DTIM Period	1867
WLAN Radio Policy	1867
Restrictions for WLAN Radio Policy	1867
Prerequisites for Configuring Cisco Client Extensions	1868
Peer-to-Peer Blocking	1868
Diagnostic Channel	1868
Prerequisites for WLANS	1868
Restrictions for WLANS	1869
How to Configure WLANS	1870
WLAN Wizard	1870
Local Mode	1871
FlexConnect Mode	1875
Guest CWA Mode	1879
Creating WLANS (GUI)	1882
Creating WLANS (CLI)	1882
Deleting WLANS (GUI)	1883
Deleting WLANS	1883
Searching WLANS (CLI)	1884
Enabling WLANS (GUI)	1884
Enabling WLANS (CLI)	1884
Disabling WLANS (GUI)	1885

Disabling WLANs (CLI)	1885
Configuring General WLAN Properties (CLI)	1886
Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (CLI)	1887
Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (GUI)	1888
Configuring WLAN Radio Policy (GUI)	1891
Configuring a WLAN Radio Policy (CLI)	1892
Verifying WLAN Properties (CLI)	1893
Verifying WLAN-VLAN Information for an AP	1893
Verifying a WLAN Radio Policy	1893

CHAPTER 176**WLAN Security 1895**

Information About WPA1 and WPA2	1895
Information About AAA Override	1896
Configuring AAA Override	1896
Information About VLAN Override	1897
Configuring Override VLAN for Central Switching	1897
Configuring Override VLAN for Local Switching	1898
VLAN Override on Layer 3 Web Authentication	1899
Verifying VLAN Override on Layer 3 Web Authentication	1899
Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security	1899
Restrictions for WPA2 and WP3	1900
Feature History for Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN	1900
Information About Fallback for AAA- Overridden VLAN	1901
Central Switching and FlexConnect Mode Scenarios	1901
Configuring Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN (CLI)	1902
Verifying Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN	1902
How to Configure WLAN Security	1903
Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (GUI)	1903
Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)	1903
Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (GUI)	1905
Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)	1905

CHAPTER 177**Remote LANs 1909**

Information About Remote LANs	1909

Configuring Remote LANs (RLANs)	1911
Enabling or Disabling all RLANs	1911
Creating RLAN Profile (GUI)	1911
Creating RLAN Profile (CLI)	1911
Configuring RLAN Profile Parameters (GUI)	1912
Configuring RLAN Profile Parameters (CLI)	1913
Creating RLAN Policy Profile (GUI)	1914
Creating RLAN Policy Profile (CLI)	1914
Configuring RLAN Policy Profile Parameters (GUI)	1915
Configuring RLAN Policy Profile Parameters (CLI)	1916
Configuring Policy Tag and Mapping an RLAN Policy Profile to an RLAN Profile (CLI)	1919
Configuring LAN Port (CLI)	1919
Attaching Policy Tag to an Access Point (GUI)	1920
Attaching Policy Tag to an Access Point (CLI)	1920
Verifying RLAN Configuration	1920
Information About RLAN Authentication Fallback	1924
Configuring RLAN Authentication Fallback (CLI)	1924
Modifying 802.1X EAP Timers for RLAN Clients	1924
Verifying RLAN Authentication Fallback	1926

CHAPTER 178
RLAN External Module 1927

Information About External Module	1927
Prerequisites for Configuring External Module	1927
Configuring External Module (GUI)	1927
Configuring External Module (CLI)	1928
Verifying External Module	1928

CHAPTER 179
802.11ax Per WLAN 1929

Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN	1929
Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (GUI)	1929
Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (CLI)	1930
Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN	1930

CHAPTER 180
BSS Coloring 1933

Information About BSS Coloring	1933
BSS Coloring	1934
OBSS-PD and Spatial Reuse	1934
Configuring BSS Color on AP (GUI)	1934
Configuring BSS Color in the Privileged EXEC Mode	1935
Configuring BSS Color Globally (GUI)	1935
Configuring BSS Color in the Configuration Mode	1936
Configuring Overlapping BSS Packet Detect (GUI)	1936
Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse Globally (CLI)	1937
Configuring OBSS PD in an RF Profile (GUI)	1937
Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse in the RF Profile Mode (CLI)	1938
Verifying BSS Color and OBSS-PD	1938

CHAPTER 181

DHCP for WLANs 1941

Information About Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	1941
Internal DHCP Servers	1941
External DHCP Servers	1942
DHCP Assignments	1942
DHCP Option 82	1943
Restrictions for Configuring DHCP for WLANs	1944
Guidelines for DHCP Relay Configuration	1944
How to Configure DHCP for WLANs	1945
Configuring DHCP Scopes (GUI)	1945
Configuring DHCP Scopes (CLI)	1946
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server	1947
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under Client VLAN SVI (GUI)	1947
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under Client VLAN SVI (CLI)	1947
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under a Wireless Policy Profile (GUI)	1950
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under a Wireless Policy Profile	1950
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Globally (GUI)	1953
Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Globally (CLI)	1953
Configuring IP Reservations in the Internal DHCP Server (CLI)	1956
Verifying Internal DHCP Configuration	1956
Configuring DHCP-Required for FlexConnect	1958

Information About FlexConnect DHCP-Required	1958
Restrictions and Limitations for FlexConnect DHCP-Required	1958
Configuring FlexConnect DHCP-Required (GUI)	1958
Configuring FlexConnect DHCP-Required (CLI)	1959
Verifying FlexConnect DHCP-Required	1959

CHAPTER 182**Aironet Extensions IE (CCX IE) 1961**

Information About Aironet Extensions Information Element	1961
Configuring Aironet Extensions IE (GUI)	1961
Configuring Aironet Extensions IE (CLI)	1962
Verifying the Addition of AP Name	1963

CHAPTER 183**Device Analytics 1965**

Device Analytics	1965
Information About Device Analytics	1965
Restrictions for Device Analytics	1965
Configuring Device Analytics (GUI)	1966
Configuring Device Analytics (CLI)	1966
Verifying Device Analytics	1967
Verifying Device Analytics Configuration	1968
Adaptive 802.11r	1969
Information About Adaptive 802.11r	1969
Configuring Adaptive 802.11r (GUI)	1970
Verifying Adaptive 802.11r	1970

CHAPTER 184**Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support 1971**

Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support	1971
Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support	1972
Enabling Device Classifier (CLI)	1975
Updating Dynamic XML File	1975
Verifying TLV Values	1976
Clearing Old Classification Cache	1976

CHAPTER 185**BSSID Counters 1979**

BSSID Counters	1979
Enabling BSSID Statistics and BSSID Neighbor Statistics	1979
Verifying BSSID Statistics on the Controller	1980

CHAPTER 186
Fastlane+ 1983

Information About Fastlane+	1983
Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN (CLI)	1983
Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN (GUI)	1984
Monitoring Fastlane+	1984
Verifying Fastlane+	1985

CHAPTER 187
Workgroup Bridges 1987

Cisco Workgroup Bridges	1987
Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN	1990
Verifying the Status of a Workgroup Bridge on the Controller	1992
Configuring Access Points as Workgroup Bridge	1992
Turning Cisco Aironet 2700/3700/1572 Series AP into Autonomous Mode	1992
Configuring Cisco Wave 2 APs or 11AX APs in Workgroup Bridge or CAPWAP AP Mode (CLI)	1993
Configure an SSID Profile for Cisco Wave 2 and 11AX APs (CLI)	1993
Configuring the Authentication Server (CLI)	1995
Configuring a Dot1X Credential (CLI)	1995
Configuring an EAP Profile (CLI)	1996
Configuring Manual-Enrollment of a Trustpoint for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)	1997
Configuring Auto-Enrollment of a Trustpoint for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)	1998
Configuring Manual Certificate Enrolment Using TFTP Server (CLI)	2000
Importing the PKCS12 Format Certificates from the TFTP Server (CLI)	2001
Configuring Radio Interface for Workgroup Bridges (CLI)	2002
Configuring Workgroup Bridge Timeouts (CLI)	2005
Configuring Bridge Forwarding for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)	2006
Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration	2007
Configuring Multiple WGBs (CLI)	2007
Verifying WGB Configuration	2008

CHAPTER 188
Peer-to-Peer Client Support 2011

Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support 2011

Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support 2011

CHAPTER 189

Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles 2013

Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment 2013

Configuring Daily Calendar Profile 2014

Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile 2015

Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile 2016

Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 2017

Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 2018

Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile 2019

Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration 2020

Verifying Policy Profile Configuration 2020

CHAPTER 190

Ethernet over GRE 2023

Introduction to EoGRE 2023

EoGRE Configuration Overview 2024

Create a Tunnel Gateway 2025

Configuring the Tunnel Gateway (GUI) 2026

Configuring a Tunnel Domain 2026

Configuring Tunnel Domain (GUI) 2027

Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters 2028

Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters (GUI) 2028

Configuring a Tunnel Profile 2029

Configuring the Tunnel Profile (GUI) 2030

Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile 2031

Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP 2032

Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration 2032

CHAPTER 191

Wireless Guest Access 2041

Wireless Guest Access 2041

Foreign Map Overview 2044

Wireless Guest Access: Use Cases 2044

Load Balancing Among Multiple Guest Controllers 2045

Guidelines and Limitations for Wireless Guest Access	2045
Troubleshooting IPv6	2045
Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access (GUI)	2046
Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access (CLI)	2046
Configuring Guest Access Policy (GUI)	2047
Configuring Guest Access Policy (CLI)	2047
Viewing Guest Access Debug Information (CLI)	2049
Verifying Wireless Guest Access Enablement	2049
Configure Guest Access Using Different Security Methods	2050
Open Authentication	2050
Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Open Authentication (GUI)	2050
Configure a WLAN Profile For Guest Access with Open Authentication (CLI)	2050
Configuring a Policy Profile	2051
Local Web Authentication	2052
Configure a Parameter Map (GUI)	2052
Configure a Parameter Map (CLI)	2053
Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Local Web Authentication (GUI)	2053
Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Local Web Authentication (CLI)	2054
Configure an AAA Server for Local Web Authentication (GUI)	2054
Configure an AAA Server for Local Web Authentication (CLI)	2055
Global Configuration	2055
Central Web Authentication	2056
Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Central Web Authentication (GUI)	2056
Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Central Web Authentication (CLI)	2057
AAA Server Configuration (GUI)	2058
AAA Server Configuration (CLI)	2058
Configuring 802.1x with Local Web Authentication	2059
Configuring Local Web Authentication with PSK Protocol	2060
Central Web Authentication with PSK Protocol	2061
Configure WLAN Profile for Central Web Authentication with PSK Protocol	2061
Central Web Authentication with iPSK Protocol	2062
Configure WLAN Profile for Central Web Authentication with iPSK Protocol	2063
Configure Web Authentication on MAC Address Bypass failure (GUI)	2063
Configure Web Authentication on MAC Address Bypass Failure (CLI)	2063

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Pre-Shared Key (CLI)	2065
Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with OWE (CLI)	2067
Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (CLI)	2068
Configuring WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Failure with Dot1x (CLI)	2070

CHAPTER 192
Wired Guest Access 2073

Information About Wired Guest Access	2073
Restrictions for Wired Guest Access	2076
Configuring Access Switch for Wired Guest Client	2076
Configuring Access Switch for Foreign Controller	2077
Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication (GUI)	2078
Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication	2078
Configuring Foreign Controller with Local Web Authentication (GUI)	2080
Configuring Foreign Controller with Local WEB Authentication	2081
Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication (GUI)	2082
Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication	2083
Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication (GUI)	2084
Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication	2085
Configuring Session Timeout for a Profile Policy	2086
Global Configuration (GUI)	2087
Verifying Wired Guest Configurations	2087
Wired Guest Access—Use Cases	2091

CHAPTER 193
User Defined Network 2093

Information About User Defined Network	2093
Restrictions for User Defined Network	2095
Configuring a User Defined Network	2095
Configuring a User Defined Network (GUI)	2097
Verifying User Defined Network Configuration	2097

CHAPTER 194
Hotspot 2.0 2101

Introduction to Hotspot 2.0	2101
Open Roaming	2103
Configuring Hotspot 2.0	2105
Configuring an Access Network Query Protocol Server	2105
Configuring ANQP Global Server Settings (GUI)	2108
Configuring Open Roaming (CLI)	2108
Configuring Open Roaming (GUI)	2109
Configuring NAI Realms (GUI)	2110
Configuring Organizational Identifier Alias (GUI)	2110
Configuring WAN Metrics (GUI)	2111
Configuring WAN Metrics	2111
Configuring Beacon Parameters (GUI)	2113
Configuring Authentication and Venue (GUI)	2113
Configuring 3GPP/Operator (GUI)	2114
Configuring OSU Provider (GUI)	2115
Configuring an Online Sign-Up Provider	2116
Configuring Hotspot 2.0 WLAN	2117
Configuring an Online Subscription with Encryption WLAN	2117
Attaching an ANQP Server to a Policy Profile	2118
Configuring Interworking for Hotspot 2.0	2119
Configuring the Generic Advertisement Service Rate Limit	2120
Configuring Global Settings	2120
Configuring Advice of Charge	2121
Configuring Terms and Conditions	2121
Defining ACL and URL Filter in AP for FlexConnect	2122
Configuring an OSEN WLAN (Single SSID)	2124
Verifying Hotspot 2.0 Configuration	2125
Verifying Client Details	2126

CHAPTER 195
Client Roaming Across Policy Profile 2127

Information about Client Roaming Policy Profile	2127
Configuring Client Roaming Across Policy Profile	2128
Verifying Client Roaming Across Policy Profiles	2129

CHAPTER 196**Assisted Roaming 2135**

- 802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming 2135
- Restrictions for Assisted Roaming 2136
- How to Configure Assisted Roaming 2136
 - Configuring Assisted Roaming (GUI) 2136
 - Configuring Assisted Roaming (CLI) 2137
- Verifying Assisted Roaming 2138
- Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming 2138

CHAPTER 197**802.11r BSS Fast Transition 2141**

- Feature History for 802.11r Fast Transition 2141
- Information About 802.11r Fast Transition 2142
- Information About 802.11r Fast Transition for SAE (FT-SAE) Authenticated Clients 2143
- Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition 2144
- Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI) 2145
- Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN (CLI) 2146
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN (CLI) 2147
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security-Enabled WLAN (CLI) 2149
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a SAE Security-Enabled WLAN (GUI) 2150
- Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on an SAE Security-Enabled WLAN (CLI) 2150
- Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (GUI) 2152
- Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI) 2152
- Verifying 802.11r Fast Transition SAE 2152

CHAPTER 198**802.11v 2157**

- Information About 802.11v 2157
 - Enabling 802.11v Network Assisted Power Savings 2157
- Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v 2158
- Restrictions for 802.11v 2158
- Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management 2158
- Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (GUI) 2159
- Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (CLI) 2159

CHAPTER 199	Virtual Routing and Forwarding	2161
	Information About VRF Support	2161
	Use Cases	2162
	Guidelines and Restrictions for VRF Support	2162
	Create a VRF Instance	2163
	Map VRF to SVI	2164
	Adding VRF Name Through Option 82 for DHCP Relay	2164
	Adding VRF Name to DHCP Server for DHCP Relay	2165
	Verify VRF Support	2166
CHAPTER 200	Automated Frequency Coordination	2171
	Feature History for Automated Frequency Coordination	2171
	Information About Automated Frequency Coordination	2172
	Onboarding the Cloud Controller	2175
	Configuring DNA Services (GUI)	2176
	Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile (CLI)	2177
	Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile (GUI)	2178
	Configuring AP Parameters (GUI)	2178
	Configuring AP Parameters	2179
	Verifying AFC Details	2180
PART XVIII	Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour	2185
CHAPTER 201	Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview	2187
	About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution	2187
	Solution Components	2188
	Supported Platforms	2189
	Supported Network Design	2190
	Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks	2191
	Wired Networks	2191
	Wireless Networks	2193
	Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Networks	2194
	BGP EVPN Networks	2196

CHAPTER 202

Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains	2199
Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview	2199
Restrictions	2199
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Service Workflow	2200
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Supported Network Design	2201
Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks	2201
Cisco SD Access Wired and Wireless Networks	2202
Local and Wide Area Bonjour Policies	2202
Default mDNS Service Configurations	2209
HSRP-Aware mDNS Service-Routing	2209
mDNS Service-Gateway SSO Support	2210
Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains	2211
How to configure Multicast DNS Mode for LAN and Wired Networks	2211
Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device	2211
Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI)	2212
Creating Custom Service Definition	2213
Creating Service List (GUI)	2213
Creating Service List	2214
Creating Service Policy (GUI)	2215
Creating Service Policy	2215
Associating Service Policy to an Interface	2216
How to Configure Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS Mode for Wireless Networks	2218
Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device	2219
Creating Custom Service Definition	2221
Creating Service List	2222
Creating Service Policy	2223
Associating Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy	2224
Configuring Wide Area Bonjour Domain	2224
Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device	2224
Creating Custom Service Definition	2226
Creating Service List	2227
Creating Service Policy	2228
Associating Service Policy with the Controller in Wide Area Bonjour Domain	2229

Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware (HSRP-aware) mDNS Service-Routing on SDG	2230
Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware (HSRP-aware) mDNS Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI)	2230
Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS Mode for LAN and Wireless Networks	2231
Verifying SDG-Agent Status	2231
Verifying Wide Area Bonjour Controller Status	2233
Verifying mDNS Cache Configurations	2234
Verifying Additional mDNS Cache Configurations	2235
Verifying Local Area Bonjour Configuration for LAN and Wireless Networks	2236
Additional References for DNA Service for Bonjour	2237
Feature History for Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour	2237

CHAPTER 203

Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2241
Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2241
Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2241
Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2242
Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2242
Configuring Wireless AP Multicast	2243
Configuring Wireless AP Multicast (GUI)	2244
Configuring Wireless AP Multicast (CLI)	2244
Configuring Multicast in IP Network (CLI)	2245
Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode	2246
Configuring mDNS Service Policy (GUI)	2246
Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI)	2247
Configuring Custom Service Definition (GUI)	2249
Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI)	2250
Configuring mDNS Gateway on WLAN (GUI)	2250
Configuring mDNS Gateway on WLAN (CLI)	2251
Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer	2251
Configuring Location-Based mDNS on Service-Peer (GUI)	2253
Configuring Location-Based mDNS on Service-Peer (CLI)	2255
Verifying mDNS Gateway Configuration	2257
Reference	2259

CHAPTER 204**Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2261**

- Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2261
- Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2261
- Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2262
- Understanding mDNS Gateway Alternatives for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2262
- Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2264
- Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode 2266
 - Configuring mDNS Gateway Mode (CLI) 2266
 - Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI) 2267
 - Configuring mDNS Location-Filter (CLI) 2270
 - Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI) 2273
 - Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI) 2274
 - Configuring Location-Based mDNS 2276
 - Configuring Service-Routing on SDG Agent (CLI) 2276
- Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode 2278
- Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode 2280
- Reference 2282

CHAPTER 205**Configuration Example for Local Mode - Wireless and Wired 2283**

- Overview 2283
- Configuring Wireless AP Multicast Mode 2284
- Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer
Wired and Wireless Endpoints 2285
 - Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration 2285
 - Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration 2286
- Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between
Multilayer Wired and Wireless Endpoints 2287
 - Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration 2287
 - Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration 2289
- Cisco Catalyst Center Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless Configuration 2290
 - Configuring Service Filters for Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode (GUI) 2290
 - Configuring Source SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode
(GUI) 2291

Configuring Query SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode (GUI)	2291
Verifying Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Local Mode	2292
Verifying Wired Service-Peer Configuration	2292
Verifying Wired SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status	2294
Verifying Wireless Service-Peer Configuration and Service Status	2296
Verifying Wireless SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status	2297
Verifying Cisco Catalyst Center Configuration and Service-Routing Status	2298
Reference	2299

CHAPTER 206
Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired 2301

Overview	2301
Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired	2302
Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration	2302
Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration	2304
Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired	2305
Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration	2305
Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration	2306
Cisco Catalyst Center Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless Configuration	2307
Configuring Service Filters for Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)	2307
Configuring Source SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)	2308
Configuring Query SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)	2309
Verifying Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired	2309
Verifying Wired Service-Peer Configuration	2309
Verifying Wired SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status	2311
Verifying Cisco Catalyst Center Configuration and Service Routing Status	2313
Reference	2313

PART XIX
Multicast Domain Name System 2315

CHAPTER 207**Multicast Domain Name System 2317**

Introduction to mDNS Gateway	2318
Guidelines and Restrictions for Configuring mDNS AP	2318
Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI)	2320
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (GUI)	2320
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI)	2321
Creating Default Service Policy	2322
Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI)	2323
Creating Custom Service Definition	2323
Creating Service List (GUI)	2324
Creating Service List	2325
Creating Service Policy (GUI)	2326
Creating Service Policy	2327
Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy	2328
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI)	2329
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI)	2329
Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI)	2330
Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI)	2330
Enabling the mDNS Gateway on the VLAN Interface	2331
Location-Based Service Filtering	2332
Prerequisite for Location-Based Service Filtering	2332
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using SSID	2332
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Name	2332
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Location	2333
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Regular Expression	2334
Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group	2335
Feature History for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)	2335
Information About mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)	2335
Use Cases for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)	2336
Prerequisites for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)	2336
Enabling Location Group (CLI)	2336
Adding APs to a Location Group (CLI)	2337
Verifying AP Location	2338

Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	2339
Feature History for Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	2339
Information About Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	2339
Information About Custom Wired Service Policy Support for FlexConnect Mode	2342
Information About VLAN and MAC Based Wired Service Filtering	2342
Prerequisite for Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	2342
Use Cases	2342
Configuring Wired Service Policy Support in Flex Profile	2343
Creating Service List (CLI)	2343
Creating Service Policy (CLI)	2344
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI)	2345
Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI)	2345
Configuring VLAN and MAC Based Wired Service Filtering (CLI)	2346
Verifying mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	2348
Configuring mDNS AP	2349
Enabling mDNS Gateway on the RLAN Interface	2350
Enabling mDNS Gateway on Guest LAN Interface	2353
Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI)	2354
Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy	2354
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI)	2356
Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN	2356
mDNS Gateway with Guest Anchor Support and mDNS Bridging	2357
Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor	2358
Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest LAN)	2358
Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor	2359
Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest WLAN)	2360
Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations	2360



Preface

This preface describes the conventions of this document and information on how to obtain other documentation. It also provides information on what's new in Cisco product documentation.

- [Document Conventions](#) , on page xcix
- [Related Documentation](#), on page ci
- [Communications, services, and additional information](#), on page ci

Document Conventions

This document uses the following conventions:

Convention	Description
^ or Ctrl	Both the ^ symbol and Ctrl represent the Control (Ctrl) key on a keyboard. For example, the key combination ^D or Ctrl-D means that you hold down the Control key while you press the D key. (Keys are indicated in capital letters but are not case sensitive.)
bold font	Commands and keywords and user-entered text appear in bold font .
<i>Italic font</i>	Document titles, new or emphasized terms, and arguments for which you supply values are in <i>italic font</i> .
Courier font	Terminal sessions and information the system displays appear in <code>courier font</code> .
Bold Courier font	Bold Courier font indicates text that the user must enter.
[x]	Elements in square brackets are optional.
...	An ellipsis (three consecutive nonbolded periods without spaces) after a syntax element indicates that the element can be repeated.
	A vertical line, called a pipe, indicates a choice within a set of keywords or arguments.
[x y]	Optional alternative keywords are grouped in brackets and separated by vertical bars.

Convention	Description
{x y}	Required alternative keywords are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars.
[x {y z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.
< >	Nonprinting characters such as passwords are in angle brackets.
[]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

Reader Alert Conventions

This document may use the following conventions for reader alerts:



Note Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.



Tip Means *the following information will help you solve a problem*.



Caution Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.



Timesaver Means *the described action saves time*. You can save time by performing the action described in the paragraph.

Take note of the following general safety warnings:

**Warning****IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**

Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Read the installation instructions before using, installing, or connecting the system to the power source. Use the statement number at the beginning of each warning statement to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings for this device.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS



Related Documentation

**Note**

Before installing or upgrading the device, refer to the release notes at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-release-notes-list.html>.

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller documentation, located at:
<http://www.cisco.com/go/c9800>
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller documentation, located at:
<http://www.cisco.com/go/c9800>
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller documentation, located at:
<http://www.cisco.com/go/c9800>

Communications, services, and additional information

- To receive timely, relevant information from Cisco, sign up at [Cisco Profile Manager](#).
- To get the business impact you're looking for with the technologies that matter, visit [Cisco Services](#).
- To submit a service request, visit [Cisco Support](#).
- To discover and browse secure, validated enterprise-class apps, products, solutions, and services, visit [Cisco DevNet](#).
- To obtain general networking, training, and certification titles, visit [Cisco Press](#).
- To find warranty information for a specific product or product family, access [Cisco Warranty Finder](#).

Cisco Bug Search Tool

[Cisco Bug Search Tool](#) (BST) is a gateway to the Cisco bug-tracking system, which maintains a comprehensive list of defects and vulnerabilities in Cisco products and software. The BST provides you with detailed defect information about your products and software.

Documentation feedback

To provide feedback about Cisco technical documentation, use the feedback form available in the right pane of every online document.



CHAPTER 1

Overview of the Controller

- [Overview of Cisco 9800 Series Wireless Controllers](#) , on page 1
- [Elements of the New Configuration Model](#), on page 1
- [Configuration Workflow](#), on page 2
- [Initial Setup](#), on page 3
- [Interactive Help](#), on page 4

Overview of Cisco 9800 Series Wireless Controllers

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers are the next generation of wireless controllers built for the Intent-based networking. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers are IOS XE based and integrates the RF Excellence from Aironet with Intent-based Networking capabilities of IOS XE to create the best-in-class wireless experience for your evolving and growing organization.

The controllers are deployable in physical and virtual (private and public cloud) form factors and can be managed using Cisco Catalyst Center, Netconf/YANG, Cisco Prime Infrastructure, web-based GUI, or CLI.

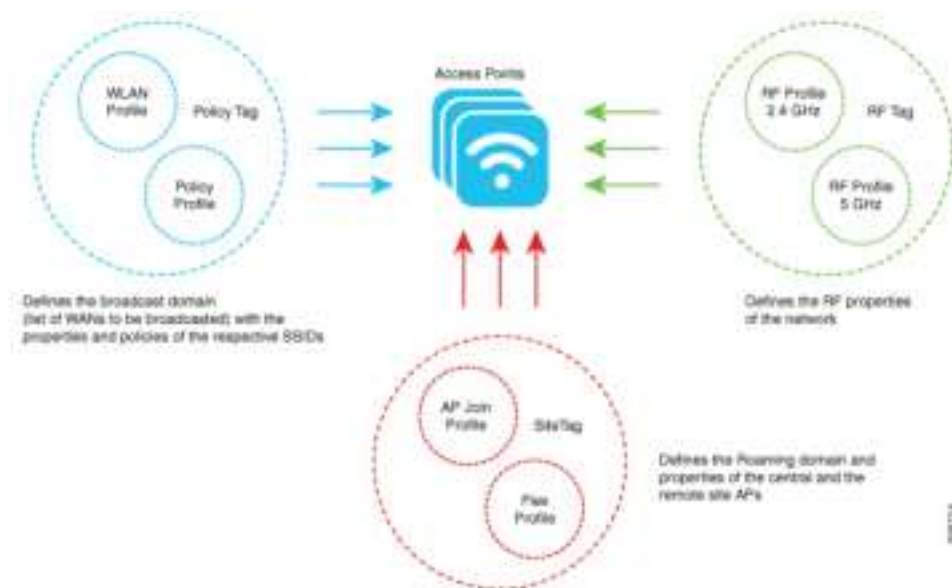
The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers are available in multiple form factors to cater to your deployment options:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Appliance
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for Cloud
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless for Switch

The configuration data model is based on design principles of reusability, simplified provisioning, enhanced flexibility and modularization to help manage networks as they scale up and simplify the management of dynamically changing business and IT requirements.

Elements of the New Configuration Model

The following diagram depicts the elements of the new configuration model.



Tags

The property of a tag is defined by the property of the policies associated to it, which in turn is inherited by an associated client or an AP. There are various type of tags, each of which is associated to different profiles. Every tag has a default that is created when the system boots up.

Profiles

Profiles represent a set of attributes that are applied to the clients associated to the APs or the APs themselves. Profiles are reusable entities that can be used across tags.

Configuration Workflow

The following set of steps defines the logical order of configuration. Apart from the WLAN profile, all the profiles and tags have a default object associated with it.

1. Create the following profiles:

- WLAN
- Policy
- AP Join
- Flex
- RF

2. Create the following tags:

- Policy
- Site

- RF

3. Associate tags to an AP.

Figure 1: Configuration Workflow



Initial Setup

Setting Up the Controller

The initial configuration wizard in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller is a simplified, out-of-the-box installation and configuration interface for the controller. This section provides instructions to set up a controller

to operate in a small, medium, or large network wireless environment, where access points can join and together as a simple solution provide various services, such as corporate employee or guest wireless access on the network.

Setting Up the Controller Using GUI

To set up the controller using the GUI, see the *Configuring Wireless Controller* section in [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller Series Web UI Deployment Guide](#).



Note

- To identify remote users in the GUI, the remote authentication server (RADIUS/TACACS) must send the user-type attribute with value 6.
- If you make configuration changes in the Command Line Interface (CLI) and in the GUI simultaneously, you must click the **Refresh** button in the GUI to synch both the changes. You should always click the **Refresh** button in the GUI, to update the changes done through the CLI.
- The banner text is fetched from the controller when you land on the login page. You are able to see this request on the RADIUS server.
- When you log in to the Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller GUI, you receive a large number CPU alerts due to CPU utilization spike during log in.
- Header size refers to the cookies sent from the browser through the controller GUI to the device WebSocket server in a WebSocket header. If the size of the cookie exceeds 4 KB, then any request that is made to the WebSocket server (query or configuration) via the GUI would fail. In such a case, ensure that you clear the browser cookies and cache, periodically.

Setting Up the Controller Using CLI

To set up the controller using CLIs, see the *Performing the Initial Configuration on the Controller* section of your respective controller installation guides.

- [Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller Hardware Installation Guide](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller Hardware Installation Guide](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller Hardware Installation Guide](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Cloud Wireless Controller Installation Guide](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst CW9800M Wireless Controller Hardware Installation Guide](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst CW9800H1 and CW9800H2 Wireless Controllers Hardware Installation Guide](#)

Interactive Help

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller GUI features an interactive help that walks you through the GUI and guides you through complex configurations.

You can start the interactive help in the following ways:

- By hovering your cursor over the blue flap at the right-hand corner of a window in the GUI and clicking **Interactive Help**.
- By clicking **Walk-me Thru** in the left pane of a window in the GUI.
- By clicking **Show me How** displayed in the GUI. Clicking **Show me How** triggers a specific interactive help that is relevant to the context you are in.

For instance, **Show me How** in **Configure > AAA** walks you through the various steps for configuring a RADIUS server. Choose **Configuration > Wireless Setup > Advanced** and click **Show me How** to trigger the interactive help that walks you through the steps relating to various kinds of authentication.

The following features have an associated interactive help:

- Configuring AAA
- Configuring FlexConnect Authentication
- Configuring 802.1X Authentication
- Configuring Local Web Authentication
- Configuring OpenRoaming
- Configuring Mesh APs



Note

If the WalkMe launcher is unavailable on Safari, modify the settings as follows:

1. Choose **Preferences > Privacy**.
 2. In the **Website tracking** section, uncheck the **Prevent cross-site tracking** check box to disable this action.
 3. In the **Cookies and website data** section, uncheck the **Block all cookies** check box to disable this action.
-



PART I

System Configuration

- [New Configuration Model, on page 9](#)
- [Wireless Management Interface, on page 47](#)
- [BIOS Protection, on page 57](#)
- [Smart Licensing Using Policy, on page 59](#)
- [Management over Wireless, on page 61](#)
- [Boot Integrity Visibility, on page 63](#)
- [SUDI99 Certificate Support, on page 67](#)
- [Link Aggregation Group, on page 71](#)
- [Reload Reason History, on page 83](#)
- [Best Practices, on page 89](#)



CHAPTER 2

New Configuration Model

- [Information About New Configuration Model](#), on page 9
- [Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy \(GUI\)](#), on page 12
- [Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy \(CLI\)](#), on page 12
- [Configuring a Flex Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 14
- [Configuring a Flex Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 14
- [Configuring an AP Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 15
- [Configuring an AP Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 20
- [Configuring User for AP Management \(CLI\)](#), on page 21
- [Setting a Private Configuration Key for Password Encryption](#), on page 22
- [Configuring an RF Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 22
- [Configuring an RF Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 23
- [Configuring a Site Tag \(GUI\)](#), on page 24
- [Configuring a Site Tag \(CLI\)](#), on page 24
- [Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing](#), on page 25
- [Configuring Policy Tag \(GUI\)](#), on page 28
- [Configuring a Policy Tag \(CLI\)](#), on page 28
- [Configuring Wireless RF Tag \(GUI\)](#), on page 29
- [Configuring Wireless RF Tag \(CLI\)](#), on page 30
- [Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP \(GUI\)](#), on page 31
- [Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP \(CLI\)](#), on page 31
- [Configuring a Radio Profile](#), on page 32
- [AP Filter](#), on page 36
- [Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration](#), on page 41

Information About New Configuration Model

The configuration of Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers is simplified using different tags, namely rf-tag, policy-tag, and site-tag. The access points would derive their configuration from the profiles that are contained within the tags.

Profiles are a collection of feature-specific attributes and parameters applied to tags. The rf-tag contains the radio profiles, the site-tag contains flex-profile and ap-join-profile, and the policy-tag contains the WLAN profile and policy profile.

The FlexConnect configuration helps the central controller to manage sites that are geo-distributed, for example, retail, campus, and so on.

Policy Tag

The policy tag constitutes mapping of the WLAN profile to the policy profile. The WLAN profile defines the wireless characteristics of the WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for the client (Quality of Service [QoS] is an exception which constitutes AP policies as well).

The policy tag contains the map of WLAN policy profile. There are 16 such entries per policy tag. Changes to the map entries are effected based on the status of the WLAN profile and policy profile. For example, if a map (WLAN1 and Policy1) is added to the policy tag, and both the WLAN profile and the policy profile are enabled, the definitions are pushed to the APs using the policy tag. However, if one of them is in disabled state, the definition is not pushed to the AP. Similarly, if a WLAN profile is already being broadcast by an AP, it can be deleted using the no form of the command in the policy tag.

Site Tag

The site tag defines the properties of a site and contains the flex profile and the AP join profile. The attributes that are specific to the corresponding flex or remote site are part of the flex profile. Apart from the flex profile, the site tag also comprises attributes that are specific to the physical site (and hence cannot be a part of the profile that is a reusable entity). For example, the list of primary APs for efficient upgrade is a part of a site tag rather than that of a flex profile.

If a flex profile name or an AP profile name is changed in the site tag, the AP is forced to rejoin the controller by disconnecting the Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) session. When a site tag is created, the AP and flex profiles are set to default values (default-ap-profile and default-flex-profile).

RF Tag

The RF tag contains the 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, and 6 GHz RF profiles. The default RF tag contains the global configuration for 2.4 and 5 GHz bands and default RF profile for 6 GHz band. All these profiles contain the same default values for global or RF profile parameters for the respective radios.

Profiles

Profiles are a collection of feature-specific attributes and parameters applied to tags. Profiles are reusable entities that can be used across tags. Profiles (used by tags) define the properties of the APs or its associated clients.

WLAN Profile

WLAN profiles are configured with same or different service set identifiers (SSIDs). An SSID identifies the specific wireless network for the controller to access. Creating WLANs with the same SSID allows to assign different Layer 2 security policies within the same wireless LAN.

To distinguish WLANs having the same SSID, create a unique profile name for each WLAN. WLANs with the same SSID must have unique Layer 2 security policies so that clients can select a WLAN based on the information advertised in the beacon and probe responses. The switching and network policies are not part of the WLAN definition.

Policy Profile

Policy profile broadly consists of network and switching policies. Policy profile is a reusable entity across tags. Anything that is a policy for a client that is applied on an AP or controller is moved to the policy profile, for example, VLAN, ACL, QoS, session timeout, idle timeout, AVC profile, bonjour profile, local profiling, device classification, BSSID QoS, and so on. However, all the wireless-related security attributes and features on the WLAN are grouped under the WLAN profile.

Flex Profile

Flex profile contains policy attributes and remote site-specific parameters. For example, the EAP profiles that can be used when the AP acts as an authentication server for local RADIUS server information, VLAN-ACL mapping, VLAN name-to-ID mapping, and so on.

AP Join Profile

The default AP join profile values will have the global AP parameters and the AP group parameters. The AP join profile contains attributes that are specific to AP, such as CAPWAP, IPv4 and IPv6, UDP Lite, High Availability, Retransmit config parameters, Global AP failover, Hyperlocation config parameters, Telnet and SSH, 11u parameters, and so on.



Note Telnet is not supported for the following Cisco AP models: 1542D, 1542I, 1562D, 1562E, 1562I, 1562PS, 1800S, 1800T, 1810T, 1810W, 1815M, 1815STAR, 1815TSN, 1815T, 1815W, 1832I, 1840I, 1852E, 1852I, 2802E, 2802I, 2802H, 3700C, 3800, 3802E, 3802I, 3802P, 4800, IW6300, ESW6300, 9105AXI, 9105AXW, 9115AXI, 9115AXE, 9117I, APVIRTUAL, 9120AXI, 9120AXE, 9124AXI, 9124AXD, 9130AXI, 9130AXE, 9136AXI, 9162I, 9164I, and 9166I.

RF Profile

RF profile contains the common radio configuration for the APs. RF profiles are applied to all the APs that belong to an AP group, where all the APs in that group have the same profile settings.

Some of the 6-GHz band specific 802.11ax features like Unsolicited Broadcast Probe Response, FILS Discovery, Multi-BSSID reduce the overhead of management traffic in 6-GHz band channels. Preferred Scanning Channels is another feature in 6-GHz band which helps RRM to choose PSC channels to 6-GHz radios.

Association of APs

APs can be associated using different ways. The default option is by using Ethernet MAC address, where the MAC is associated with policy-tag, site tag, and RF tag.

In filter-based association, APs are mapped using regular expressions. A regular expression (regex) is a pattern to match against an input string. Any number of APs matching that regex will have policy-tag, site tag, and RF tag mapped to them, which is created as part of the AP filter.

In AP-based association, tag names are configured at the PnP server and the AP stores them and sends the tag name as part of discovery process.

In location-based association, tags are mapped as per location and are pushed to any AP Ethernet MAC address mapped to that location.

Modifying AP Tags

Modifying an AP tag results in DTLS connection reset, forcing the AP to rejoin the controller. If only one tag is specified in the configuration, default tags are used for other types, for example, if only policy tag is specified, the default-site-tag and default-rf-tag will be used for site tag and RF tag.

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	On the Policy Profile page, click Add .
Step 3	In the Add Policy Profile window, in General tab, enter a name and description for the policy profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces. Do not use spaces as it causes system instability.
Step 4	To enable the policy profile, set Status as Enabled .
Step 5	Use the slider to enable or disable Passive Client and Encrypted Traffic Analytics .
Step 6	In the CTS Policy section, choose the appropriate status for the following: • Inline Tagging—a transport mechanism using which a controller or access point understands the source SGT. • SGACL Enforcement
Step 7	Specify a default SGT . The valid range is from 2 to 65519.
Step 8	In the WLAN Switching Policy section, choose the following, as required: • Central Switching: Tunnels both the wireless user traffic and all control traffic via CAPWAP to the centralized controller where the user traffic is mapped to a dynamic interface/VLAN on the controller. This is the normal CAPWAP mode of operation. • Central Authentication: Tunnels client data to the controller, as the controller handles client authentication. • Central DHCP: The DHCP packets received from AP are centrally switched to the controller and then forwarded to the corresponding VLAN based on the AP and the SSID. • Central Association Enable: When central association is enabled, all switching is done on the controller. • Flex NAT/PAT: Enables Network Address Translation(NAT) and Port Address Translation (PAT) mode.
Step 9	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a wireless profile policy:



Note When a client moves from an old controller to a new controller (managed by Cisco Prime Infrastructure), the old IP address of the client is retained, if the IP address is learned by ARP or data gleaning. To avoid this scenario, ensure that you enable **ipv4 dhcp required** command in the policy profile. Otherwise, the IP address gets refreshed only after a period of 24 hours.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	idle-timeout <i>timeout</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# idle-timeout 1000	(Optional) Configures the duration of idle timeout, in seconds.
Step 4	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 24	Configures VLAN name or VLAN ID.
Step 5	accounting-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list user1-list	Sets the accounting list for IEEE 802.1x.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show wireless profile policy summary Example: Device# show wireless profile policy summary	Displays the configured policy profiles. Note (Optional) To view detailed information about a policy profile, use the show wireless profile policy detailed <i>policy-profile-name</i> command.

Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** Enter the **Name** of the Flex Profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** In the **Description** field, enter a description for the Flex Profile.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Flex Profile

Follow the procedure given below to set a flex profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex rr-xyz-flex-profile	Configures a Flex profile and enters Flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	description Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description xyz-default-flex-profile	(Optional) Enables default parameters for the flex profile.
Step 4	arp-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# arp-caching	(Optional) Enables ARP caching.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	show wireless profile flex summary Example: <pre>Device# show wireless profile flex summary</pre>	(Optional) Displays the flex-profile parameters. Note To view detailed parameters about the flex profile, use the show wireless profile flex detailed flex-profile-name command.

Configuring an AP Profile (GUI)

Before you begin

The default AP join profile values will have the global AP parameters and the AP group parameters. The AP join profile contains attributes that are specific to AP, such as CAPWAP, IPv4/IPv6, UDP Lite, High Availability, retransmit configuration parameters, global AP failover, Hyperlocation configuration parameters, Telnet/SSH, 11u parameters, and so on.

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.

Step 2 On the **AP Join Profile** page, click **Add**.

The **Add AP Join Profile** page is displayed.

Note

DHCP fallback is enabled by default. So, if an AP is assigned a static IP address and unable to reach the controller, the AP falls back to the DHCP. To stop an AP from moving the static IP to DHCP, you must disable the DHCP fallback configuration in an AP join profile.

Step 3 In the **General** tab, enter a name and description for the AP join profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.

Step 4 Check the **LED State** check box to set the LED state of all APs connected to the device to blink so that the APs are easily located. The LED state is enabled by default.

Step 5 In the **Client** tab and **Statistics Timer** section, enter the time in seconds that the AP sends its 802.11 statistics to the controller.

Step 6 In the **TCP MSS Configuration** section, check the **Adjust MSS Enable** check box to enter value for Adjust MSS. You can enter or update the maximum segment size (MSS) for transient packets that traverse a router. TCP MSS adjustment enables the configuration of the maximum segment size (MSS) for transient packets that traverse a router, specifically TCP segments with the SYN bit set.

In a CAPWAP environment, a lightweight access point discovers a device by using CAPWAP discovery mechanisms, and then sends a CAPWAP join request to the device. The device sends a CAPWAP join response to the access point that allows the access point to join the device.

When the access point joins the device, the device manages its configuration, firmware, control transactions, and data transactions.

Step 7 In the **CAPWAP** tab, you can configure the following:

- **High Availability**

You can configure primary and secondary backup controllers for all access points (which are used if primary, secondary, or tertiary controllers are not responsive) in this order: primary, secondary, tertiary, primary backup, and secondary backup. In addition, you can configure various timers, including heartbeat timers and discovery request timers. To reduce the controller failure detection time, you can configure the fast heartbeat interval (between the controller and the access point) with a smaller timeout value. When the fast heartbeat timer expires (at every heartbeat interval), the access point determines if any data packets have been received from the controller within the last interval. If no packets have been received, the access point sends a fast echo request to the controller.

- a) In the **High Availability** tab, enter the time (in seconds) in the **Fast Heartbeat Timeout** field to configure the heartbeat timer for all access points. Specifying a small heartbeat interval reduces the amount of time it takes to detect device failure.

Note

Configure **Fast Heartbeat Timeout** to assist AP in sending primary discovery request periodically to the configured backup controllers along with the primary, secondary, and tertiary-base controllers.

- b) In the **Heartbeat Timeout** field, enter the time (in seconds) to configure the heartbeat timer for all access points. Specifying a small heartbeat interval reduces the amount of time it takes to detect device failure.
- c) In the **Discovery Timeout** field, enter a value between 1 and 10 seconds (inclusive) to configure the AP discovery request timer.
- d) In the **Primary Discovery Timeout** field, enter a value between 30 and 3000 seconds (inclusive) to configure the access point primary discovery request timer.
- e) In the **Primed Join Timeout** field, enter a value between 120 and 43200 seconds (inclusive) to configure the access point primed join timeout.
- f) In the **Retransmit Timers Count** field, enter the number of times that you want the AP to retransmit the request to the device and vice-versa. Valid range is between 3 and 8.
- g) In the **Retransmit Timers Interval** field, enter the time duration between retransmission of requests. Valid range is between 2 and 5.
- h) Check the **Enable Fallback** check box to enable fallback.
- i) Enter the **Primary Controller** name and IP address.
- j) Enter the **Secondary Controller** name and IP address.
- k) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Note

The primary and secondary settings in the AP join profile are not used for AP fallback. This means that the AP will not actively probe for those controllers (which are a part of the AP join profile), when it has joined one of them.

This setting is used only when the AP loses its connection with the controller, and then prioritizes which other controller it should join. These controllers have a priority of 4 and 5, following APs in the **High Availability** tab of the AP page.

The APs that are added as the primary, secondary, and tertiary APs in the **High Availability** tab of the AP configuration page, are actively probed and are used for the AP fallback option.

- **Advanced**

- a) In the **Advanced** tab, check the **Enable VLAN Tagging** check box to enable VLAN tagging.

- b) Check the **Enable Data Encryption** check box to enable Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) data encryption.
- c) Check the **Enable Jumbo MTU** to enable big maximum transmission unit (MTU). MTU is the largest physical packet size, measured in bytes, that a network can transmit. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before transmission. Jumbo frames are frames that are bigger than the standard Ethernet frame size, which is 1518 bytes (including Layer 2 (L2) header and FCS). The definition of frame size is vendor-dependent, as these are not part of the IEEE standard.
- d) Use the **Link Latency** drop-down list to select the link latency. Link latency monitors the round-trip time of the CAPWAP heartbeat packets (echo request and response) from the AP to the controller and back.
- e) From the **Preferred Mode** drop-down list, choose the mode.
- f) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Step 8

In the **AP** tab, you can configure the following:

- General

- a) In the **General** tab, check the **Switch Flag** check box to enable switches.
- b) Check the **Power Injector State** check box if power injector is being used. Power Injector increases wireless LAN deployment flexibility of APs by providing an alternative powering option to local power, inline power-capable multiport switches, and multiport power patch panels.

Power Injector Selection parameter enables you to protect your switch port from an accidental overload if the power injector is inadvertently bypassed.

- c) From the **Power Injector Type** drop-down list, choose power injector type from the following options:
 - **Installed**—This option examines and remembers the MAC address of the currently connected switch port and assumes that a power injector is connected. Choose this option if your network contains older Cisco 6-Watt switches and you want to avoid possible overloads by forcing a double-check of any relocated access points.

If you want to configure the switch MAC address, enter the MAC address in the Injector Switch MAC Address text box. If you want the access point to find the switch MAC address, leave the Injector Switch MAC Address text box blank.

Note

Each time an access point is relocated, the MAC address of the new switch port fails to match the remembered MAC address, and the access point remains in low-power mode. You must then physically verify the existence of a power injector and reselect this option to cause the new MAC address to be remembered.

- **Override**—This option allows the access point to operate in high-power mode without first verifying a matching MAC address. You can use this option if your network does not contain any older Cisco 6-W switches that could be overloaded if connected directly to a 12-W access point. The advantage of this option is that if you relocate the access point, it continues to operate in high-power mode without any further configuration. The disadvantage of this option is that if the access point is connected directly to a 6-W switch, an overload occurs.
- d) In the **Injector Switch MAC** field, enter the MAC address of the switch either in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx, xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx, or xxxx.xxxx.xxxx format.
 - e) From the **EAP Type** drop-down list, choose the EAP type as *EAP-FAST*, *EAP-TLS*, or *EAP-PEAP*.
 - f) From the **AP Authorization Type** drop-down list, choose the type as either *CAPWAP DTLS +* or *CAPWAP DTLS*.

- g) In the **Client Statistics Reporting Interval** section, enter the interval for 5 GHz and 2.4 GHz radios in seconds.
- h) Check the **Enable** check box to enable extended module.
- i) From the **Profile Name** drop-down list, choose a profile name for mesh.
- j) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
 - Hyperlocation: Cisco Hyperlocation is a location solution that allows to track the location of wireless clients with the accuracy of one meter. Selecting this option disables all other fields in the screen, except NTP Server.
- a) In the **Hyperlocation** tab, check the **Enable Hyperlocation** check box.
- b) Enter the **Detection Threshold** value to filter out packets with low RSSI. The valid range is –100 dBm to –50 dBm.
- c) Enter the **Trigger Threshold** value to set the number of scan cycles before sending a BAR to clients. The valid range is 0 to 99.
- d) Enter the **Reset Threshold** value to reset value in scan cycles after trigger. The valid range is 0 to 99.
- e) Enter the **NTP Server** IP address.
- f) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
 - BLE: If your APs are Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) enabled, they can transmit beacon messages that are packets of data or attributes transmitted over a low energy link. These BLE beacons are frequently used for health monitoring, proximity detection, asset tracking, and in-store navigation. For each AP, you can customize BLE Beacon settings configured globally for all APs.
- a) In the **BLE** tab, enter a value in the **Beacon Interval** field to indicate how often you want your APs to send out beacon advertisements to nearby devices. The range is from 1 to 10, with a default of 1.
- b) In the **Advertised Attenuation Level** field, enter the attenuation level. The range is from 40 to 100, with a default of 59.
- c) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
 - Packet Capture: Packet Capture feature allows to capture the packets on the AP for the wireless client troubleshooting. The packet capture operation is performed on the AP by the radio drivers on the current channel on which it is operational, based on the specified packet capture filter.
- a) In the **Packet Capture** tab, choose an **AP Packet Capture Profile** from the drop-down list.
- b) You can also create a new profile by clicking the + sign.
- c) Enter a name and description for the AP packet capture profile.
- d) Enter the **Buffer Size**.
- e) Enter the **Duration**.
- f) Enter the **Truncate Length** information.
- g) In the **Server IP** field, enter the IP address of the TFTP server.
- h) In the **File Path** field, enter the directory path.
- i) Enter the username and password details.
- j) From the **Password Type** drop-down list, choose the type.
- k) In the **Packet Classifiers** section, use the option to select or enter the packets to be captured.
- l) Click **Save**.
- m) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Step 9

In the **Management** tab, you can configure the following:

- Device

- a) In the **Device** tab, enter the **IPv4/IPv6 Address** of the TFTP server, **TFTP Downgrade** section.
- b) In the **Image File Name** field, enter the name of the software image file.
- c) From the **Facility Value** drop-down list, choose the appropriate facility.
- d) Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the host.
- e) Choose the appropriate **Log Trap Value**.
- f) Enable Telnet and/or SSH configuration, if required.
- g) Enable core dump, if required.
- h) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

- User

- a) In the **User** tab, enter username and password details.
- b) Choose the appropriate password type.
- c) In the **Secret** field, enter a custom secret code.
- d) Choose the appropriate secret type.
- e) Choose the appropriate encryption type.
- f) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

- Credentials

- a) In the **Credentials** tab, enter local username and password details.
- b) Choose the appropriate local password type.
- c) Enter 802.1x username and password details.
- d) Choose the appropriate 802.1x password type.
- e) Enter the time in seconds after which the session should expire.
- f) Enable local credentials and/or 802.1x credentials as required.
- g) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

- CDP Interface

- a) In the **CDP Interface** tab, enable the CDP state, if required.
- b) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Step 10 In the **Rogue AP** tab, check the **Rogue Detection** check box to enable rogue detection.

Step 11 In the **Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI** field, enter the RSSI value.

This field specifies the minimum RSSI value for which a Rogue AP should be reported. All Rogue APs with RSSI lower than what is configured will not be reported to controller.

Step 12 In the **Rogue Detection Transient Interval** field, enter the transient interval value.

This field indicates how long the Rogue AP should be seen before reporting the controller.

Step 13 In the **Rogue Detection Report Interval** field, enter the report interval value.

This field indicates the frequency (in seconds) of Rogue reports sent from AP to controller.

Step 14 Check the **Rogue Containment Automatic Rate Selection** check box to enable rogue containment automatic rate selection.

Here, the AP selects the best rate for the target Rogue, based on its RSSI.

Step 15 Check the **Auto Containment on FlexConnect Standalone** check box to enable the feature.

Here, the AP will continue containment in case it moves to FlexConnect standalone mode.

Step 16 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring an AP Profile (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure and AP profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note In an AP profile, the EAP-FAST is the default EAP type. Note When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile will not revert to the default profile.
Step 3	description <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# description "xyz ap profile"	Adds a description for the ap profile.
Step 4	ip dhcp fallback Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# ip dhcp fallback	Configures DHCP fallback. Note DHCP fallback is enabled by default. So, if an AP is assigned a static IP address and unable to reach the controller, the AP falls back to the DHCP. To stop an AP from moving the static IP to DHCP, you must disable the DHCP fallback configuration in an AP join profile.
Step 5	cdp Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# cdp	Enables CDP for all Cisco APs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show ap profile name <i>profile-name</i> detailed Example: Device# show ap profile name xyz-ap-profile detailed	(Optional) Displays detailed information about an AP join profile.

Configuring User for AP Management (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a user for the AP management:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mgmtuser username <username> password {0 8} <password> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# mgmtuser username myusername password 0 12345678	Specifies the AP management username and password for managing all of the access points configured to the controller. • 0: Specifies an UNENCRYPTED password. • 8: Specifies an AES encrypted password. Note While configuring an username, ensure that special characters are not used as it results in error with bad configuration.
Step 4	end Example: Device(configure-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Setting a Private Configuration Key for Password Encryption

Follow the procedure given below to set a private configuration key for password encryption:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	key config-key password encrypt key <config-key> Example: Device(config)# key config-key password-encrypt 12345678	Sets the password encryption keyword. Here, <i>config-key</i> refers to any key value with minimum 8 characters. Note The <i>config-key</i> value must not begin with the following special characters: !, #, and ;
Step 3	password encryption aes Example: Device(config)# password encryption aes	Enables the encrypted preshared key.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring an RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
 - Step 2** On the **RF Profile** page, click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter a name for the RF profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** Choose the appropriate **Radio Band**.
 - Step 5** To enable the profile, set the status as **Enable**.
 - Step 6** Enter a **Description** for the RF profile.

Step 7 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring an RF Profile (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure an RF profile:

Before you begin

Ensure that you use the same RF profile name that you create here, when configuring the wireless RF tag too. If there is a mismatch in the RF profile name (for example, if the RF tag contains an RF profile that does not exist), the corresponding radios will not come up.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rf-profile Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rfprof24_1	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode. Note Use the 24ghz command to configure the 802.11b parameters. Use the 5ghz command to configure the 802.11a parameters. Use the 6ghz command to configure the 802.11 6-GHz parameters.
Step 3	default Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# default	(Optional) Enables default parameters for the RF profile.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# no shutdown	Enables the RF profile on the device.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show ap rf-profile summary Example: Device# show ap rf-profile summary	(Optional) Displays the summary of the available RF profiles.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	show ap rf-profile name <i>rf-profile</i> detail Example: <pre>Device# show ap rf-profile name rfprof24_1 detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays detailed information about a particular RF profile.

Configuring a Site Tag (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags**.
 - Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page, click the **Site** tab.
 - Step 3** Click **Add** to view the **Add Site Tag** window.
 - Step 4** Enter a name and description for the site tag. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 5** Choose the required **AP Join Profile** to be attached to the site tag.
 - Step 6** Choose the required **Control Plane Name**.
 - Step 7** If required, enable the **Local Site**.

Disabling Local Site means that the site is remote and the deployment is FlexConnect mode.
 - Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless tag site rr-xyz-site</pre>	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i>	Configures a flex profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-site-tag) # flex-profile rr-xyz-flex-profile</pre>	Note You cannot remove the flex profile configuration from a site tag if local site is configured on the site tag. Note The no local-site command needs to be used to configure the Site Tag as Flexconnect, otherwise the Flex profile config does not take effect.
Step 4	description <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-site-tag) # description "default site tag"</pre>	Adds a description for the site tag.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-site-tag) # end</pre>	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show wireless tag site summary Example: <pre>Device# show wireless tag site summary</pre>	(Optional) Displays the number of site tags. Note To view detailed information about a site, use the show wireless tag site detailed <i>site-tag-name</i> command. Note The output of the show wireless loadbalance tag affinity wncd <i>wncd-instance-number</i> command displays default tag (site-tag) type, if both site tag and policy tag are not configured.

Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 1: Feature History for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing	The Site Tag-based load balancing is available from Cisco IOS-XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 release. When the first AP from a site joins the controller, it takes the decision to load balance the entire site. However, this is done without knowing the site load. The enhancement to load balancing feature introduced in Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 specifies a site load to help with better load balancing.

Information About Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

Load balancing of APs is done among session handling processes called Wireless Network Control Daemon (WNCD). The load balancer assigns APs to WNCDs based on site tags. The decision to load balance a site tag to a WNCD is taken when the first AP from that site tag joins the controller.

Prior to this enhancement, the controller had no indication about the size of the site. Therefore, the site size is not taken into consideration for this load balancing decision. The system works well only if the sites are of approximately equal size. However, in case where you have sites of disparate sizes, it is possible for some WNCDs to be more loaded than the others. This enhancement allows you to configure a site load, thus allowing the system to take better load balancing decisions.

The behavior of the load balancing feature in the controller reboot case is as follows:

- After you have configured the feature in one or more site tags and rebooted the controller, after the reboot, even before any APs join, the load balancing feature retains the site tags that are used actively in persistent memory and load balances them during bootup. The load balancing during bootup occurs in descending order of the configured site load.
- After you have configured the load balancing feature in a site tag with APs already joined, the load balancing remains unchanged unless all APs, including those not in the site tag, disconnects or the controller reboots.

Prerequisites for Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing

- You must have configured the site load.
- We recommended that you configure all the named sites with a load value.



Note

The configured load is only an estimate. It will only be used for site load balancing. Specifically, it does not prevent APs, or clients from joining or associating.

Use Cases

To cater to a variety of use cases, the site load configuration is designed to be a load factor rather than an absolute number. Specifically, it need not be the number of APs in a site, although, for most practical purposes, the number of APs can be used as a good approximation of the load. The following are the two use cases:

- Sites with normal client density and roaming load. You can use AP count as a good approximate site load in these cases. Examples of such sites are cubicle areas in offices and hospitals.
- Sites with high client density and roaming load. For these, you can use a higher load configuration than the number of APs. For example, if the number of APs in such a site is 200, you can use a load factor of 300 or 400 to compensate for higher client load. Examples of such sites include stadiums, cafeterias, and conference floors.

Configuring Site Load (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site areal	Configures site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	load <i>load</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# load 200	Configures the site load. The <i>load</i> is the estimate of the relative load reserved for the site. Values range between 0 to 1000. The default value 0 means no load recommendation for the site.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Enhanced Site Tag-Based Load Balancing Configuration

To view detailed information about a site, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless tag site detailed areal
Site Tag Name       : areal
Description         :
-----
AP Profile          : default-ap-profile
Local-site          : Yes
Image Download Profile: default
Fabric AP DHCP Broadcast : Disabled
```

Fabric Multicast Group IPv4 Address : 232.255.255.1
Site Load : 200

To view the default site tag type for WNCd instances, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless loadbalance tag affinity
Tag           Tag type      No of AP's Joined  Wncd Instance
-----
area1         SITE TAG      50                 0
area2         SITE TAG      50                 0
area3         SITE TAG      100                1
area4         SITE TAG      150                2
```

Configuring Policy Tag (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.
 - Step 3** Enter a name and description for the policy tag. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** Click **Add** to map WLAN and policy.
 - Step 5** Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.
 - Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a policy tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. • Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy default-policy-tag	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		When performing LWA, the clients connected to a controller gets disconnected intermittently before session timeout.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# description "default-policy-tag"	Adds a description to a policy tag.
Step 5	remote-lan <i>name</i> policy profile-policy-name {ext-module port-id } Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rr-xyz-rlan-aa policy rr-xyz-rlan-policy1 port-id 2	Maps a remote-LAN profile to a policy profile.
Step 6	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy profile-policy-name Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan rr-xyz-wlan-aa policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile. Note Ensure that the WLAN profile is not used by any other profiles. If the AP uses the default profile, ensure that the no central switching command is configured on other profiles.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Exits policy tag configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	show wireless tag policy summary Example: Device# show wireless tag policy summary	(Optional) Displays the configured policy tags. Note To view detailed information about a policy tag, use the show wireless tag policy detailed policy-tag-name command.

Configuring Wireless RF Tag (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** a) Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags > RF**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add RF Tag** window.
- Step 3** Enter a name and description for the RF tag. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.

- Step 4** Choose the required **5 GHz Band RF Profile**, **5 GHz Band RF Profile**, and **2.4 GHz Band RF Profile** to be associated with the RF tag.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Wireless RF Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a wireless RF tag:

Before you begin

- You can use only two profiles (2.4-GHz and 5-GHz band RF profiles) in an RF tag.
- You can use only three profiles (2.4-GHz, 5-GHz and 6GHz band RF profiles) in an RF tag.
- Ensure that you use the same AP tag name that you created when configuring the AP tag task too.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag rf <i>rf-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag rf rftag1	Creates an RF tag and enters wireless RF tag configuration mode.
Step 3	24ghz-rf-policy <i>rf-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# 24ghz-rf-policy rfprof24_1	Attaches an IEEE 802.11b RF policy to the RF tag. To configure a dot11a policy, use the 5ghz-rf-policy command. To configure a 6GHz radio dot11 policy, use the 6ghz-rf-policy command.
Step 4	description <i>policy-description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# description Test	Adds a description for the RF tag.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show wireless tag rf summary Example:	Displays the available RF tags.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show wireless tag rf summary	
Step 7	show wireless tag rf detailed <i>rf-tag</i> Example: Device# show wireless tag rf detailed rftag1	Displays detailed information of a particular RF tag.

Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- The **All Access Points** section displays details of all the APs on your network.
- Step 2** To edit the configuration details of an AP, select the row for that AP.
- The **Edit AP** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab and **Tags** section, specify the appropriate policy, site, RF tags, and radio profile that you created on the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags** page.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy tag and a site tag to an AP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap <i>mac-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures a Cisco AP and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note The <i>mac-address</i> should be a wired mac address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	policy-tag <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag) # policy-tag rr-xyz-policy-tag</pre>	Maps a policy tag to the AP.
Step 4	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag) # site-tag rr-xyz-site</pre>	Maps a site tag to the AP.
Step 5	rf-tag <i>rf-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag) # rf-tag rf-tag1</pre>	Associates the RF tag.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag) # end</pre>	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show ap tag summary Example: <pre>Device# show ap tag summary</pre>	(Optional) Displays AP details and the tags associated to it.
Step 8	show ap name <ap-name> tag info Example: <pre>Device# show ap name ap-name tag info</pre>	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag information.
Step 9	show ap name <ap-name> tag detail Example: <pre>Device# show ap name ap-name tag detail</pre>	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag details.

Configuring a Radio Profile

Information About Wireless Radio Profile

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 onwards, you can configure radio profiles for the slots in access points (APs). In this release, you can configure radio profiles for beam-selection APs with the C-ANT9104 antenna and configure antenna count for Cisco Catalyst 9124AXI/D outdoor Access Points. You can configure the antenna beam-selection for the 5-GHz slots—slot 1 and slot 2. Because there is no default value for the beam-selection configuration, you must explicitly configure the beam selection mode for APs with the C-ANT9104 antenna.

The C-ANT9104 antenna-enabled Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series APs have precise control over the antennae pattern. Therefore, a configuration knob in the controller is introduced to select the beam-steering direction

for the antennae. The C-ANT9104 antenna-enabled Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series APs can operate on the following beam-steering modes:

- Wide beam
- Narrow beam
- Narrow beam with 10 degrees tilt
- Narrow beam with 20 degrees tilt

After creating the radio profile, you must link or attach the radio profile under the radio frequency (RF) tag configuration, so that the radio profile is applied to the APs.



Note When you add Cisco ANT9104 antennas to the wireless controller, RRM configuration is not supported for these antennas.

RRM features such as Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA), Radio Transmit Power Control (TPC), Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA), and so on, are disabled on C-ANT9104 antenna-enabled Cisco Catalyst 9130 Series Access Points.

The sections in this topic describe the steps to configure radio profile, beam selection, antenna count, and how to link the radio profile to the slots.



Note Cisco Catalyst 9130 Series Access Points enabled with Cisco ANT9104 antenna are able to function with unsupported versions, for example, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1.

If the AP that is enabled with Cisco ANT9104 antenna, has a software version that is earlier than Cisco IOS XE 17.6.1, the AP joins the controller but the AP will not be functional as the operation status of the radios will be down.

Configuring a Wireless Radio Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** On the **Radio Profile** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the Radio profile. Enter a description for the Radio profile.
- Step 4** Choose the appropriate **Antenna Beam** selection.

Note

The antenna beam selection is set to **Not Configured** if no settings are detected.

This option is to be configured for APs connected with the C-ANT9104 antenna.

- Step 5** Enter the number in the **Number of antenna to be enabled** field.

Note

The option is available for the Cisco Catalyst 9124AXE Outdoor Access Points.

Step 6 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Radio Profile and Beam Selection

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile radio <i>wireless-radio-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile radio <i>wireless-radio-profile</i>	Configures the radio profile. Enters the wireless radio profile configuration mode.
Step 3	antenna beam-selection { narrow tilt {10 20} wide} Example: Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# antenna beam-selection narrow tilt 10	Configures the beam selection of the antenna under the new radio profile.

Configuring the Antenna Count in a Wireless Radio Profile

To configure the number of antennae for each slot, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile radio <i>wireless-radio-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile radio <i>wireless-radio-profile</i>	Configures the radio profile. Enters the wireless radio profile configuration mode.
Step 3	antenna count <0 - 8> Example:	Configures the number of antennas to be enabled under the new radio profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# antenna count 4	

Configuring a Slot Per Radio in the RF Tag Profile

It is mandatory to link radio profiles under an RF tag for the radio profile configurations to get applied. To configure a radio profile for each slot in an RF tag profile, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag rf <i>wireless-rf-tagname</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag rf <i>wireless-rf-tagname</i>	Configures the RF tag. Enters the wireless RF tag configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11 { 24ghz slot0 5ghz { slot1 slot2 } radio-profile <i>radio-profile-name</i> } Example: Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# dot11 5ghz slot1 radio-profile <i>wireless-radio-profile</i>	Configures the 802.11a/802.11b radio profile.

Verifying a Radio Profile

To view the summary of all the configured radio profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile radio summary
```

```
Number of radio-profiles: 3
```

Antenna Profile Name	Description
radio-profile-1	Custom profile for Slot1
antenna-ewlc	Add description
default_radio_profile	Preconfigured default radio profile

To view detailed information about the parameters configured for a radio profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile radio detailed radio-profile-name
Radio Profile name           : radio-profile-1
Description                   : Custom profile for slot1
Beam-Selection                : Wide beam
```

To view radio profile and RF tag information, use the following command:

```
Device # show ap name Cisco-AP tag info
AP Name           : Cisco-AP
AP Mac            : 04xx.40xx.XXXX
```

Applied Tags :

```
-----
Tag Type           Tag Name
-----
RF Tag             test-rf
Site Tag           default-site-tag
Policy Tag         default-policy-tag
```

Tag/Profile Type Misconfigured

```
-----
RF Tag No
Policy Tag No
Site Tag No
Flex profile No
AP join profile No
2.4GHz Rf Profile No
5 GHz Rf Profile No
5 GHz Slot1 Radio Profile NO
5 GHz Slot2 Radio Profile Yes
```

Resolved Tags :

```
-----
Tag Source         : Static

Tag Type           Tag Name
-----
RF Tag             test-rf
Site Tag           default-site-tag
Policy Tag         default-policy-tag
```

To display beam selection and the number of antennas, run the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless profile radio detailed radio-profile-1
Radio Profile name : radio-profile-1
Description        : Custom profile for slot1
Beam-Selection     : Wide beam

Device# show ap name cisco-ap config slot 1 | section 11n
802.11n Antennas
      Number of Antennas selected           : 2
      Supported Antenna modes               : 1x1 2x2 4x4
      Antenna port mapping                  : AB
      SIA Status                           : Not Present

Device# show ap name cisco-ap config slot 1 | include beam
Beam Selection : Narrow from centre 20
```

AP Filter

Introduction to AP Filter

The introduction of tags in the new configuration model in the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller has created multiple sources for tags to be associated with access points (APs). Tag sources can be static configuration, AP filter engine, per-AP PNP, or default tag sources. In addition to this, the precedence of the tags also plays an important role. The AP filter feature addresses these challenges in a seamless and intuitive manner.

AP filters are similar to the access control lists (ACLs) used in the controller and are applied at the global level. You can add AP names as filters, and other attributes can be added as required. Add the filter criteria as part of the discovery requests.

The AP Filter feature organizes tag sources with the right priority, based on the configuration.

You cannot disable the AP filter feature. However, the relative priority of a tag source can be configured using **ap filter-priority** *priority filter-name* command.



Note You can configure tag names at the PnP server (similar to the Flex group and AP group) and the AP stores and send the tag name as part of discovery and join requests.

Set Tag Priority (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags > AP > Tag Source**.
- Step 2** Drag and Drop the Tag Sources to change priorities.
-

Set Tag Priority

Multiple tag sources might result in ambiguity for network administrators. To address this, you can define priority for tags. When an AP joins the controller, the tags are picked based on priority. If precedence is not set, the defaults are used.

Use the following procedure to set tag priority:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap tag-source-priority <i>source-priority</i> source {filter pnp} Example: Device(config)# ap tag-source-priority 2 source pnp	Configures AP tag source priority. Note It is not mandatory to configure AP filter. It comes with default priorities for Static, Filter, and PnP.
Step 3	end Example:	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# end	
Step 4	ap tag-sources revalidate Example: Device# ap tag-sources revalidate	Revalidates AP tag sources. The priorities become active only after this command is run. Note If you change the priorities for Filter and PnP, and want to evaluate them, run the revalidate command.

Create an AP Filter (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags > AP > Filter**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Associate Tags to AP** dialog box which is displayed, enter the **Rule Name**, the **AP name regex** and the **Priority**. Optionally, you can also choose the policy tag from the **Policy Tag Name** drop-down list, the site tag from the **Site Tag Name** drop-down list and the RF tag from the **RF Tag Name** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Create an AP Filter (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap filter name <i>filter_name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap filter filter-1	Configures an AP filter.
Step 3	ap name-regex <i>regular-expression</i> Example: Device(config-ap-filter)# ap name-regex testany	Configures the AP filter based on regular expression. For example, if you have named an AP as ap-1ab-12 , then you can configure the filter with a regular expression, such as ap-1ab-\d+ , to match the AP name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	tag policy <i>policy-tag</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-filter)# tag policy pol-tag1</pre>	Configures a policy tag for this filter.
Step 5	tag rf <i>rf-tag</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-filter)# tag rf rf-tag1</pre>	Configures an RF tag for this filter.
Step 6	tag site <i>site-tag</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-filter)# tag site site1</pre>	Configures a site tag for this filter.
Step 7	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-filter)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Set Up and Update Filter Priority (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags > AP > Filter**.
- Step 2**
- If you want to setup a new AP filter, then click **Add**. In the **Associate Tags to AP** dialog box which is displayed, enter the **Rule Name**, the **AP name regex** and the **Priority**. Optionally, you can also select the **Policy Tag Name**, the **Site Tag Name** and the **RF Tag Name**. Click **Apply to Device**.
 - If you want to update the priority of an existing AP filter, click on the Filter and in the **Edit Tags** dialog box and change the **Priority**. In case the Filter is Inactive, no priority can be set to it. Click **Update and Apply to Device**.
-

Set Up and Update Filter Priority

Follow the procedure given below to set and update filter priority:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap filter priority <i>priority</i> filter-name <i>filter-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap filter priority 10 filter-name test1	Configure AP filter priority. Valid values range from 0 to 1023; 0 is the highest priority. Note A filter without a priority is not active. Similarly, you cannot set a filter priority without a filter.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config-ap) # end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verify AP Filter Configuration

The following **show** commands are used to display tag sources and filters, and their priorities.

To view the tag source priorities, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag sources
```

```
Priority Tag source
-----
0 Static
1 Filter
2 AP
3 Default
```

To view the available filters, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap filter all
```

```
Filter Name      regex      Policy Tag      RF Tag      Site
Tag
-----
first           abcd       pol-tag1        rf-tag1
site-tag1
test1           testany
filter1         testany
site1
```

To view the list of active filters, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap filters active
```

```
Priority  Filter Name      regex      Policy Tag      RF Tag
Site Tag
-----
10       test1             testany
site1
```

To view the source of an AP tag, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
```

```
Number of APs: 4
```

AP Name	AP Mac	Site Tag Name	Policy Tag Name	RF Tag Name
Misconfigured Tag	Source			
AP002A.1034.CA78	002a.1034.ca78	named-site-tag	named-policy-tag	named-rf-tag No Filter
AP00A2.891C.2480	00a2.891c.2480	named-site-tag	named-policy-tag	named-rf-tag No Filter
AP58AC.78DE.9946	58ac.78de.9946	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag No AP
AP0081.C4F4.1F34	0081.c4f4.1f34	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag No Default

Configuring Access Point for Location Configuration

Information About Location Configuration

During location configuration, you can perform the following:

- Configure a site or location for an AP.
- Configure a set of tags for this location.
- Add APs to this location.

Any location comprises of the following components:

- A set of unique tags, one for each kind, namely: Policy, RF and Site.
- A set of ethernet MAC addresses that applies to the tags.

This feature works in conjunction with the existing tag resolution scheme. The location is considered as a new tag source to the existing system. Similar, to the static tag source.

Prerequisite for Location Configuration

If you configure an access point in one location, you cannot configure the same access point in another location.

Configuring a Location for an Access Point (GUI)

Before you begin



Note When you create local and remote sites in the Basic Setup workflow, corresponding policies and tags are created in the backend. These tags and policies that are created in the Basic Setup cannot be modified using the Advanced workflow, and vice versa.

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless Setup > Basic**.

- Step 2** On the **Basic Wireless Setup** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter a name and description for the location.
- Step 4** Set the **Location Type** as either *Local* or *Flex*.
- Step 5** Use the slider to set **Client Density** as *Low*, *Typical* or *High*.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.

Configuring a Location for an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap location name <i>location_name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap location name location1	Configures a location for an access point. Run the no form of this command to remove location for an access point.
Step 3	tag { policy <i>policy_name</i> rf <i>rf_name</i> site <i>site_name</i> } Example: Device(config-ap-location)# tag policy policy_tag Device(config-ap-location)# tag rf rf_tag Device(config-ap-location)# tag site site_tag	Configures tags for the location.
Step 4	location <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-ap-location)# location description	Adds description to the location.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-location)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Adding an Access Point to the Location (GUI)



Note When the tag source is not set to location, the AP count and AP location tagging will not be correctly reflected on the web UI. To change static tag source on the AP, run the **no ap ap-mac** command on the controller to change AP tag source to default (which is location).

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless Setup > Basic**.
- Step 2** On the **Basic Wireless Setup** page, click **Add** to configure the following:
- General
 - Wireless Networks
 - AP Provisioning
- Step 3** In the **AP Provisioning** tab and **Add/Select APs** section, enter the AP MAC address and click the right arrow to add the AP to the associated list. The MAC address can be either in `xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx`, `xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx`, or `xxxx.xxxx.xxxx` format.
- You can also add a CSV file from your system. Ensure that the CSV has the MAC Address column.
- Step 4** Use the search option in the **Available AP List** to select the APs from the Selected AP list and click the right arrow to add the AP to the associated list.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
-

Adding an Access Point to the Location (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap location name <i>location_name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap location name location1	Configures a location for an access point.
Step 3	ap-eth-mac <i>ap_ethernet_mac</i> Example:	Adds an access point to the location.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config-ap-location) # ap-eth-mac 188b.9dbe.6eac	
Step 4	end Example: Device (config-ap-location) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode. Note After adding an AP to a location, the AP may reset automatically to get the new configuration

Configuring SNMP in Location Configuration

SNMP MIB

The SNMP MIB provides information on a set of managed objects that represent logical and physical entities, and relationships between them.

Table 2: MIB Objects and Notes

MIB Objects	Notes
cLApLocationName	Provides the name of the AP location.
cLApLocationPolicyTag	Provides the policy tag configured on the location.
cLApLocationSitetag	Provides the site tag configured on the location.
cLApLocationRfTag	Provides the RF tag configured on the location.
cLAssociatedApsApMac	Provides the configured APs on the location.

Verifying Location Configuration

To view the summary of AP location configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap location summary
```

Location Name	Description	Policy Tag	RF Tag	Site Tag
first	first floor	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag	default-site-tag
second	second floor	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag	default-site-tag

To view the AP location configuration details for a specific location, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap location details first
```

```

Location Name.....: first
Location description.....: first floor
Policy tag.....: default-policy-tag
Site tag.....: default-site-tag
RF tag.....: default-rf-tag

```

```
Configured list of APs
```

```
005b.3400.0af0
005b.3400.0bf0
```

To view the AP tag summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
```

```
Number of APs: 4
AP Name      AP Mac      Site Tag Name  Policy Tag Name  RF Tag Name
Misconfigured Tag Source
-----
Asim_5-1     005b.3400.02f0  default-site-tag  default-policy-tag  default-rf-tag  Yes
Filter
Asim_5-2     005b.3400.03f0  default-site-tag  default-policy-tag  default-rf-tag  No
Default
Asim_5-9     005b.3400.0af0  default-site-tag  default-policy-tag  default-rf-tag  No
Location
Asim_5-10    005b.3400.0bf0  default-site-tag  default-policy-tag  default-rf-tag  No
Location
```

Verifying Location Statistics

To view the AP location statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap location stats
```

```
Location name  APs joined  Clients joined  Clients on 11a  Clients on 11b
-----
first          2           0              3              4
second         0           0              0              0
```




CHAPTER 3

Wireless Management Interface

- [Information About Wireless Management Interface, on page 47](#)
- [Recommendations for Wireless Management Interface, on page 48](#)
- [Configuring your Controller with Wireless Management Interface \(CLI\), on page 49](#)
- [Verifying Wireless Management Interface Settings, on page 50](#)
- [Information About Network Address Translation \(NAT\), on page 51](#)
- [Information About CAPWAP Discovery, on page 52](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Management Interface with a NAT Public IP \(CLI\), on page 53](#)
- [Configuring CAPWAP Discovery to Respond Only with Public or Private IP \(CLI\), on page 53](#)
- [Verifying NAT Settings, on page 55](#)

Information About Wireless Management Interface

The Wireless Management Interface (WMI) is the mandatory Layer 3 interface on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller. It is used for all communications between the controller and access points. Also, it is used for all CAPWAP or inter-controller mobility messaging and tunneling traffic.

WMI is also the default interface for in-band management and connectivity to enterprise services, such as, AAA, syslog, SNMP, and so on. You can use the WMI IP address to remotely connect to the device using SSH or Telnet (or) access the Graphical User Interface (GUI) using HTTP or HTTPS by entering the wireless management interface IP address of the controller in the address field of your browser.

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller should be able to use Ethernet Service Port (SP) (Management Interface VRF/GigabitEthernet 0) for the below management/control plane protocols from release 17.6.1 onwards:

- SNMP
- RADIUS (both for user authentication to the box and wireless client authorization)
- TACACS
- Syslog
- NTP
- SSH/NETCONF/HTTPS
- NetFlow

Recommendations for Wireless Management Interface

The Wireless Management Interface is a Layer 3 interface, which can be configured only with a single IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) or using a dual-stack configuration.

It is always recommended to use a wireless management VLAN and configure WMI as a Switched VLAN Interface (SVI). If the uplink port or port-channel to the next-hop switch is configured as a dot1q trunk, the wireless management VLAN would be one of the allowed tagged VLAN on the trunk.

The recommendation is true, independent of the deployment mode of APs (local, FlexConnect, or SDA) with the following exceptions:

- The WMI is configured as an L3 port for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller deployed in a Public Cloud environment.
- The WMI is configured as a loopback interface for embedded wireless controller in Cisco Catalyst 9000 switches.

We recommended statically assigning IPv6 address in WMI and not configuring using the **ipv6 auto-config** command.



Note When migrating from VLAN A to VLAN B, ensure to first create VLAN B and SVI B, and associate SVI B with the Wireless Management Interface (WMI) before removing VLAN A and SVI A. This sequence prevents multicast traffic issues, ensuring all devices, including those behind WGB, receive multicast traffic correctly.

Restrictions

- The **ipv6 auto-config** command is not supported.
- You can use only one AP manager interface on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller called the WMI to terminate CAPWAP traffic.
- There is only one Wireless Management Interface (WMI) on the controller.
- Layer 3 interface is not supported in Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Cloud Wireless Controller Guest anchor scenarios.

Instead, it is recommended to use the Layer 2 interfaces and SVI for WMI.

It is recommended to use Layer 3 interface for Public cloud deployments only and not for on-premise as it poses some limitations.

The following are the sample Layer 3 and Layer 2 interface configurations:

Layer 3 interface configuration:

```
interface GigabitEthernet2
no switchport
ip address <ip_address> <mask>
negotiation auto
no mop enabled
no mop sysid
end
```

Layer 2 interface configuration:

```
interface GigabitEthernet2
switchport trunk allowed vlan 25,169,504
switchport mode trunk
negotiation auto
no mop enabled
no mop sysid
end
```

To change the WMI interface when RMI is configured, perform the following:

1. Unconfigure the RMI, save the changes using the **write memory** command, and reload the controller.
2. Change the WMI interface.
3. Reconfigure the RMI in the same interface as WMI, save the changes using the **write memory** command, and reload the controller.

Configuring your Controller with Wireless Management Interface (CLI)

You can configure the Wireless Management interface using CLI by directly accessing the physical console (for the Cisco Catalyst 9800 appliances) (or) using the virtual console in case of the Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Cloud Wireless Controller.



Note The example assumes that:

- You have a Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Cloud Wireless Controller and the GigabitEthernet 2 is connected to a trunk interface on the uplink switch.
- You want to configure multiple VLANs and dedicate one for Wireless Management interface.

Procedure

Step 1 Access the CLI using VGA or monitor console from the hypervisor of your choice.

Step 2 Terminate the configuration wizard.

```
Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]:
no
Would you like to terminate autoinstall? [yes]:
yes
```

Step 3 Enter the configuration mode and add the login credentials using the following command:

```
Device# conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
```

```
Device(config)# username <name> privilege 15 password <yourpwd>
```

Step 4 (Optional) Set a hostname.

```
Device(config)# hostname C9800
```

Step 5 Configure the VLAN for wireless management interface:

```
Device(config)# vlan 201
Device(config-vlan)# name wireless_management
```

Step 6 Configure the L3 SVI for wireless management interface:

```
Device(config)# int vlan 201
Device(config-if)# description wireless-management-interface
Device(config-if)# ip address 172.16.201.21 255.255.255.192
Device(config-if)# no shutdown
```

Step 7 Configure the interface GigabitEthernet 2 as trunk and allow the wireless management VLAN:

```
Device(config-if)# interface GigabitEthernet2
Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk
Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 201,210,211
Device(config-if)# shut
Device(config-if)# no shut
```

Note

VLANs 210 and 211 are added to the trunk to carry client traffic.

Step 8 Configure a default route (or a more specific route) to reach the device:

```
Device(config-if)# ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 172.16.201.1
```

At this point you can use SSH or Telnet, or GUI to access the device, or use the Cisco Catalyst Center or Cisco Prime to continue with the DAY 0 configuration.

Verifying Wireless Management Interface Settings

To verify if the Layer 3 interface is configured correctly, use the following command:

```
Device# show run int vlan 201

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 128 bytes
!
interface Vlan201
  description wireless-management-interface
  ip address 172.16.201.21 255.255.255.0
  no mop enabled
```

```
no mop sysid
end
```

To verify if the wireless management VLAN is active on the uplink to the network, use the following command. In this case the uplink is a trunk interface, so the VLAN needs to be active and forwarding state.

```
Device# show interfaces trunk
```

```
Port      Mode      Encapsulation  Status      Native vlan
Gi2       on        802.1q         trunking    1
.....
Port      Vlans allowed on trunk
Gi2       201,210-211
.....
Port      Vlans allowed and active in management domain
Gi2       201,210-211
.....
Port      Vlans in spanning tree forwarding state and not pruned
Gi2       201,210-211
.....
```

To verify if the wireless management interface is up, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip int brief | i Vlan201
Vlan201  172.16.201.21  YES NVRAM  up   up
```

To verify if the selected interface has been configured as wireless management, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless interface summary
```

```
Wireless Interface Summary
```

Interface Name	Interface Type	VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Netmask	NAT-IP Address	MAC Address
Vlan201	Management	201	172.16.201.21	255.255.255.0	0.0.0.0	001e.e51c.a7ff

Information About Network Address Translation (NAT)

NAT enables private IP networks that use non-registered IP addresses to connect to the Internet. NAT operates on a device, usually connecting two networks. Before packets are forwarded onto another network, NAT translates the private (not globally unique) addresses from the internal network into public addresses. NAT can be configured to advertise to the outside world only few addresses for the entire internal network. This ability provides more security by effectively hiding the private network details.



Note Certain ISP routers performing NAT may assign the same public source port to different APs. This results in the WLC receiving CAPWAP traffic from same IP:PORT but from different APs. The controller is unable to differentiate the packets are from different APs, even if packet A is for DATA and Packet B is for CTRL. The controller does not support CAPWAP connections from different APs behind NAT using same SRC IP:PORT.

If you want to deploy your Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller on a private network and make it reachable from internet, you need to have the controller behind a router, firewall, or other gateway device that uses one-to-one mapping Network Address Translation (NAT).

To do so, perform the following:

- Configure the NAT device with 1:1 static mapping of the Wireless Management interface IP address (private IP) to a unique external (public) IP address configured on the NAT device.
- Enable the NAT feature on the Wireless Controller and specify its external public IP address. This public IP is used in the discovery responses to APs, so that the APs can then send CAPWAP packets to the right destination.
- Make sure that the external APs discover the public IP of the controller using DHCP, DNS, or PnP.



Note You need not enable NAT if the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller is deployed with a public address. Instead you will need to configure the public IP directly on the Wireless Management Interface (WMI).

Information About CAPWAP Discovery

In a CAPWAP environment, a lightweight access point discovers a wireless controller by using CAPWAP discovery mechanisms, and then sends a CAPWAP join request to the controller. The controller sends a CAPWAP join response to the access point that allows the access point to join the controller.

If the wireless controller is behind a NAT device, the controller responds to the discovery response in the following ways:

- Using the public IP.
- Using the private IP.
- Using public and private IP.

The Public IP needs to be mapped to the controller's Private IP using static 1:1 NAT configuration on the router or firewall performing the NAT translation.

If your wireless controller manages only Access Points reachable through the public internet (external APs), you need to configure the controller so it responds with only the Public IP in the discovery response.

If your wireless controller manages both internal and external APs, you need to configure the controller so it responds with both Public and Private IPs in the discovery response.



Note In NAT deployments, the APs running internally and externally must use different AP join profiles with CAPWAP Discovery Private and Public enabled separately. This behaviour was introduced from the 17.9.5 release and applies to APs upgraded to Cisco IOS XE 17.9.5, 17.9.6, 17.9.m (m>=5), 17.12.n (n>=1) and later releases.

Configuring Wireless Management Interface with a NAT Public IP (CLI)

The first step is to configure the controller to use the public NAT IP (this is the public IP that has been configured on the NAT device to statically map 1:1 the WMI's private IP address).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless management interface <i>interface-type</i> <i>interface-number</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless management interface vlan 20	Defines the management interface. Here, • <i>interface-type</i>—Refers to the VLAN, Gigabit, or loopback types. • <i>interface-number</i>—Is the interface number.
Step 3	public-ip <i>external-public-ip</i> Example: Device(config-mgmt-interface)# public-ip 2.2.2.2	Defines the external NAT or Public IP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-mgmt-interface)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring CAPWAP Discovery to Respond Only with Public or Private IP (CLI)



Note

By default, if the wireless management interface is configured with a public IP, the controller responds with both Public and Private IP in the CAPWAP discovery response.

The setting to determine the IP (private or public) to include in the discovery response is available in the AP Join profile.

Configuring the Controller to Respond only with a Public IP (CLI)

Configure the Controller to respond only with a Public IP using commands.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	no capwap-discovery private Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# no capwap-discovery private	Instructs the controller to not respond with the internal IP. Enables AP to join the controller over Public IP only.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the Controller to Respond only with a Private IP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	no capwap-discovery public Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# no capwap-discovery public	Instructs the controller to not respond with the public IP. Enables AP to join the controller over private IP only.
Step 4	end Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ap-profile)# end	

Verifying NAT Settings

Verify NAT Settings using commands.

```
Device# show wireless interface summary
```

Wireless Interface Summary

Interface Name	Interface	Type	VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Netmask	NAT-IP Address	MAC Address
Vlan20	Management	20	10.58.20.25	255.255.255.0	2.2.2.2	001e.4963.1cff	

To verify the settings in the AP join profile, use the following command

```
Device# show run | b ap profile
```

```
ap profile default-ap-profile
  no capwap-discovery private
  description "default ap profile"
...
```




CHAPTER 4

BIOS Protection

- [BIOS Protection on the Controller, on page 57](#)
- [BIOS or ROMMON Upgrade with BIOS Protection, on page 57](#)
- [Upgrading BIOS, on page 58](#)

BIOS Protection on the Controller

BIOS Protection enables you to protect and securely update BIOS flash for Intel-based platforms. If BIOS Protection is not used, the flash utility that stores the BIOS for an Intel platform is not write-protected. As a result, when BIOS updates are applied, malicious code also makes its way through.

By default, BIOS Protection works by bundling the flash containing the BIOS image, and by accepting updates only through the BIOS capsules that enable writing on the BIOS Flash.

BIOS or ROMMON Upgrade with BIOS Protection

To upgrade BIOS or ROMMON use the BIOS Protection feature as follows:

1. The new BIOS image capsule bundled together with the ROMMON binary is inserted into the media of the Cisco device by the ROMMON upgrade scripts.
2. The Cisco device is then reset for the new BIOS/ROMMON upgrade to take place.
3. On reset, the original BIOS detects the updated capsule and determines if the updated BIOS is available.
4. The original BIOS then verifies the digital signature of the BIOS capsule. If the signature is valid, the original BIOS will remove write-protection from the flash utility and update the SPI flash with the new BIOS image. If the BIOS capsule is invalid, the SPI flash is not updated.
5. After the new BIOS/ROMMON image is written to the SPI flash, the required regions of the SPI flash are once again write-protected.
6. After the card is reset, the updated BIOS is rebooted.
7. The capsule is deleted by BIOS.

Upgrading BIOS

Procedure

Use the **upgrade rom-monitor filename** command to update the BIOS capsule.

Example:

```
upgrade rom-monitor filename bootflash:capsule.pkg <slot>
```

Example

The following example shows you how to verify a BIOS Protection upgrade:

```
Device# upgrade rom-monitor filename bootflash:qwlc-rommon-capsule-p106.pkg all
Verifying the code signature of the ROMMON package...
Chassis model AIR-CT5540-K9 has a single rom-monitor.
```

```
Upgrade rom-monitor
```

```
Target copying rom-monitor image file
```

```
Secure update of the ROMMON image will occur after a reload.
```

```
8388608+0 records in
8388608+0 records out
8388608 bytes (8.4 MB, 8.0 MiB) copied, 11.9671 s, 701 kB/s
131072+0 records in
131072+0 records out
131072 bytes (131 kB, 128 KiB) copied, 0.414327 s, 316 kB/s
Copying ROMMON environment
8388608+0 records in
8388608+0 records out
8388608 bytes (8.4 MB, 8.0 MiB) copied, 31.1199 s, 270 kB/s
131072+0 records in
131072+0 records out
131072 bytes (131 kB, 128 KiB) copied, 2.44015 s, 53.7 kB/s
131072+0 records in
131072+0 records out
131072 bytes (131 kB, 128 KiB) copied, 2.43394 s, 53.9 kB/s
ROMMON upgrade complete.
To make the new ROMMON permanent, you must restart the RP.
Device#reload
```



CHAPTER 5

Smart Licensing Using Policy

- [Smart Licensing Using Policy](#), on page 59

Smart Licensing Using Policy

The Smart Licensing Using Policy feature is automatically enabled on the controller. This is also the case when you upgrade to this release. By default, your Smart Account and Virtual Account in Cisco Smart Software Manager (CSSM) are enabled for Smart Licensing Using Policy. For more information, see [Smart Licensing Using Policy](#).



CHAPTER 6

Management over Wireless

- [Controller Management over Wireless, on page 61](#)
- [Restrictions on Management over Wireless, on page 61](#)
- [Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller \(GUI\) , on page 62](#)
- [Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller \(CLI\), on page 62](#)

Controller Management over Wireless

The Controller Management Over Wireless feature allows network administrators to monitor and configure the controller using client devices connected over Wi-Fi to that same controller. This can be helpful in situations where a wired connection is not available.



Attention

By default, this feature is disabled for security reasons. When disabled, the controller blocks any management access attempts from wireless clients that are connected to it. This helps prevent someone connected over Wi-Fi from directly managing the controller they are using.

However, keeping this feature disabled does not block management access from wireless clients that are connected to other controllers in the network. If you need to enforce stricter access control across all wireless clients—such as based on VLANs or IP ranges—you should use **Access Control Lists (ACLs)** or similar mechanisms.

Restrictions on Management over Wireless

- The Management over Wireless feature does not work for Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC).

Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Wireless Global**.
 - Step 2** Check the **Management via Wireless** check box.
 - Step 3** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling Management over Wireless on Controller (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mgmt-via-wireless Example: Device(config)# wireless mgmt-via-wireless	Enables management over wireless. Use the no form of this command to disable the management over wireless.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 7

Boot Integrity Visibility

- [Overview of Boot Integrity Visibility, on page 63](#)
- [Verify software image and hardware, on page 63](#)
- [Verify platform identity and software integrity, on page 64](#)

Overview of Boot Integrity Visibility

Boot Integrity Visibility allows the Cisco platform identity and software integrity information to be visible and actionable. Platform identity provides the platform's manufacturing installed identity. Software integrity exposes boot integrity measurements that can be used to assess whether the platform has booted trusted code.

During the boot process, the software creates a checksum record of each stage of the bootloader activities.

You can retrieve this record and compare it with a Cisco-certified record to verify if your software image is genuine. If the checksum values do not match, you may be running a software image that is either not certified by Cisco or has been altered by an unauthorized party.

Verify software image and hardware

Verify the integrity of the device's software image and hardware by retrieving and reviewing the checksum records created during switch bootup.

This task describes how to retrieve the checksum record that was created during a switch bootup.

Enter the following commands in privileged EXEC mode. The messages **% Error retrieving SUDI certificate** and **% Error retrieving integrity data** signify a real CLI failure.



Note

On executing the following commands, you might see the message **% Please Try After Few Seconds** displayed on the CLI. This does not indicate a CLI failure, but indicates setting up of underlying infrastructure required to get the required output. We recommend waiting for a few minutes and then try the command again.

Procedure

Step 1 `show platform sudi certificate [ sign [ nonce nonce ]]`

Example:

```
Device# show platform sudi certificate sign nonce 123
```

Displays checksum record for the specific SUDI.

- (Optional) **sign** - Show signature.
- (Optional) **nonce** - Enter a nonce value.

Step 2 `show platform integrity [ sign [ nonce nonce ]]`

Example:

```
Device# show platform integrity sign nonce 123
```

Displays checksum record for boot stages.

- (Optional) **sign** - Show signature.
- (Optional) **nonce** - Enter a nonce value.

You obtain the checksum records for the device's software image and hardware, confirming their integrity or identifying any issues.

Verify platform identity and software integrity

Verify platform identity

The following example displays the Secure Unique Device Identity (SUDI) chain in PEM format. Each SUDI includes the Product ID (PID) and serial number (SN), so you can uniquely identify each device on a large network.

The first certificate is the Cisco Root CA 2048, and the second is the Cisco subordinate CA (ACT2 SUDI CA). You can verify both certificates by comparing them with those published on <https://www.cisco.com/security/pki/>. The third certificate is the SUDI certificate.



Important

The CLI outputs in this document are examples for your reference. Your output may differ depending on the configuration of your device.

```
Device# show platform sudi certificate sign nonce 123
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDQzCCAiugAwIBAgIQX/h7KctU3I1CoxWlaMmt/zANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADA1
MRYwFAYDVQQKEw1DaXNjb290IENB
```

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE 17.14.x

[illegible]



CHAPTER 8

SUDI99 Certificate Support

- [SUDI99 Certificate Support](#), on page 67
- [Disabling SUDI99 Migration \(GUI\)](#), on page 69

SUDI99 Certificate Support

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers use Secure Unique Device Identity (SUDI) certificates as device certificates for authentication during secure connection handshakes. These certificates are provisioned in a secure hardware chip, which can hold multiple certificates, during the manufacturing process.



Note Some of the certificates used in the controller and AP platforms are expiring in May 2029 and require migration to a new set of certificates. SUDI99 certificate support is addressing this migration scenario. SUDI99 is valid until December 2099.

The Cisco IOS XE software supports two slots for initializing SUDI certificates from the secure hardware chip. This SUDI99 migration change will rearrange certificate-to-trustpoint mapping as follows:

Table 3: Existing Software Selection for SUDI Trustpoint Certificates

Trustpoint Name	Software Selection Among Programmed Certificate Chains
CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI	CMCA2 SHA2 SUDI (SHA2-2037)
CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI_LEGACY	CMCA SHA1 SUDI

Table 4: New Software Selection for SUDI Trustpoint Certificates

Trustpoint Name	Software Selection Among Programmed Certificate Chains
CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI	CMCA-III SHA2 SUDI99
CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI_LEGACY	CMCA2 SHA2 SUDI (SHA2-2037)



Caution Performing device authentication using expired certificates may lead to service disruption.

The following table lists the SUDI99 certificate and software support:

Table 5: SUDI99 Certificate and Software Support

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controllers	SUDI99 Certificate Support	Software Support for SUDI99 Migration
Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud	Not supported.	—
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers • 9800-40 • 9800-80 • 9800-L	Supported	Yes. From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1.
Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points. • 9105AXI • 9115AXI • 9115AXE • 9117AXI • 9120AXI • 9120AXE • 9120AXP • 9130AXI • 9130AXE	Supported	Yes. From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1.
Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Switches • 9300 Series • 9400 Series • 9500 Series • 9500H Series	Not supported.	—

Backward Compatibility

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers have a default wireless management trustpoint. Some applications use this management trustpoint certificate. If a device (AP or controller) cannot validate the SUDI99 certificate, then the controller uses an older certificate (SHA2-2037) as its device certificate for that particular connection.

For NMSP-TLS connections with Cisco CMX, the client certificate is not validated in default security mode. However, in FIPS mode, Cisco CMX validates the controller certificate.

If Cisco CMX is deployed in FIPS mode, explicitly install the new SUDI CA certificates on the Cisco CMX running the earlier version of Cisco CMX or upgrade Cisco CMX to the latest version.

Some applications, such as HTTPS, RADSEC, and WebAuth, do not use SUDI certificate as their default trustpoint. But, it is possible to configure SUDI trustpoint explicitly in them. The SUDI refresh program alters the certificate selection for such services. However, there is no functional impact.

Restrictions

If a SUDI99 certificate is incorrectly programmed in a device, it is rejected during trustpoint initialization at bootup, and trustpoint-to-certificate mapping falls back to the old behaviour. User can verify the SUDI certificate status using the **show platform sudi pki** command.

Disabling SUDI99 Migration Using CLI

The SUDI99 certificate is set as the default trustpoint in supported hardware units. You can disable it using the **no platform sudi cmca3** command. In high availability (HA) deployments, form the HA pair, and then run the command. Then, save the configuration and reload the controller to disable the SUDI certificate and fall back to the older trustpoint certificate.

To check the certificate validation status, use the **show platform sudi pki** command.

Disabling SUDI99 Migration (GUI)

SHA1 SUDI certificates on hardware controllers have an imminent expiry date and devices using expired certificates face disruption in service. To ensure a smooth migration to the latest SUDI99 certificate issued by CMCA-III authority, the controllers have been programmed with newer certificates in their secure hardware chip. These certificates are enabled by default and are valid till December 2099.

Follow the procedure given below, if you do not wish to migrate at this point.

Procedure

-
Step 1	On the Configuration > Security > PKI Management > Trustpoint tab, go to the SUDI Status section.
Step 2	Disable the Cisco Manufacturing CA III certificate to continue using the older certificate that is mapped to an existing Trustpoint.
Step 3	Click Apply
-

What to do next

Reload the device for the configuration to take effect.



CHAPTER 9

Link Aggregation Group

- [Information About Link Aggregation Group, on page 71](#)

Information About Link Aggregation Group

A link aggregation group (LAG) bundles all of the controller's distribution system ports into a single 802.3ad port channel. This reduces the number of IP addresses required to configure the ports on your controller. When LAG is enabled, the system dynamically manages port redundancy and load balances access points transparently to the corresponding user.

LAG simplifies controller configuration because you no longer have to configure ports for each interface. If any of the controller ports fail, traffic is automatically migrated to one of the other ports. As long as at least one controller port is functioning, the system continues to operate, access points remain connected to the network, and wireless clients continue to send and receive data.



Note The wireless management VLAN can only be part of one port channel.



Note LACP is supported on a standalone controller from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x release. LACP is supported on an SSO pair from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1s onwards.



Note When you use the ISE licensing enforcement, if there is a dual MAC entry generated in the switchport MAC table, it burns two licenses for a single AP. Therefore, if a single port is used in these conditions, use wired0 to avoid this behaviour.

Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) is a part of an IEEE specification (802.3ad) that allows you to bundle several physical ports together to form a single logical channel. LACP allows a switch to negotiate an automatic bundle by sending LACP packets to a peer. By using the LACP, the wireless controller learns the identity of peers that are capable of supporting LACP, and the capabilities of each port. The LACP then

dynamically groups similarly configured ports into a single logical link (channel or aggregate port). Similarly, configured ports are grouped based on hardware, administrative, and port parameter constraints. If any of the controller ports fail, traffic is automatically migrated to one of the other ports. As long as at least one controller port is functioning, the system continues to operate, access points remain connected to the network, and wireless clients continue to send and receive data.

Configuring LAG Using LACP

To configure LAG using LACP, multiple port-channel interfaces must be created, and these interfaces should be added to the corresponding port bundle. LACP should also be configured on the uplink switch for the LACP bundle to come up.

- [Create a port-channel interface](#)
- [Add interface to the port-channel](#)
- [Add VLAN to LAG](#)
- [Add interface to the port-channel](#)

Port Aggregation Protocol

Port Aggregation Protocol (PAgP) is a Cisco-proprietary protocol that you can run on controllers. PAgP facilitates the automatic creation of EtherChannels by exchanging PAgP packets between Ethernet ports. PAgP packets are sent between Fast EtherChannel-capable ports in order to form a channel. When any of the active ports fail, a standby port becomes active.

By using PAgP, the controller learns the identity of partners that are capable of supporting PAgP and the capabilities of each port. PAgP then dynamically groups similarly configured ports (on a single device in a stack) into a single logical link (channel or aggregate port). Similarly, configured ports are grouped based on hardware, administrative, and port parameter constraints.

Configuring LAG Using PAgP

To configure LAG using PAgP, multiple port-channel interfaces must be created, and these interfaces should be added to the corresponding port bundle. PAgP should also be configured on the uplink switch for the PAgP bundle to come up.

- [Create a port-channel interface](#)
- [Add interface to the port-channel](#)

Information About Port Channel Interface Number

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 onwards, the flexibility to number the port channel interface numbers between 1 and 64 is supported on the following Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud: The available range on the CLI is 1 to 64. The maximum supported port channel interfaces are 64.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller: The available range on the CLI is 1 to 64. The maximum supported port channel interfaces are 14.

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller: The available range on the CLI is 1 to 64. The maximum supported port channel interfaces are 16.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller: The available range on the CLI is 1 to 64. The maximum supported port channel interfaces are 64.

For example on the Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller, port-channel interface numbers can be anywhere between 1 and 64, as long as the total number of port-channel interfaces are 14 or lesser.

**Note**

If you have configured 16 port-channel interfaces on the Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, and if the configured port-channel interfaces have reached their limitation, the following error message is displayed when you try to configure the 17th port-channel interface:

```
Device(config)#  
Dec 15 08:58:22.209 CST: %ETC-5-CANNOT_ALLOCATE_AGGREGATOR: Aggregator limit reached, cannot  
allocate aggregator for group 17
```

When you downgrade from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 to an earlier version, and if the port channels are configured with a higher range than the supported range in the earlier version, the following errors are displayed when the earlier version is started. The non supported port channels disappear after the downgrade is completed.

```
interface Port-channel29  
^% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.  
interface Port-channel35  
^% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
```

Note that the HA pairing remains intact after downgrade.

Information about Flow Control

Flow control enables connected Ethernet ports to control traffic rates during congestion by allowing congested nodes to pause link operation at the other end. If one port experiences congestion and cannot receive more traffic, it notifies the other port by sending a pause frame to stop sending until the condition clears. Upon receipt of a pause frame, the sending device stops sending any data packets, preventing any data packet loss during the congestion period.

Flow control is enabled by default for both bay0 and bay1 ports as a day-1 behavior. We suggest turning on flow control on uplink switch if overruns are seen on a Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller due to burst traffic. This will help uplink switch to honor flow control settings enabled on the controller.

**Note**

Though the show command might show the status as flow control off or unsupported on the controller's CLI, the actual & default behavior is turned on. For more information, check <https://bst.cloudapps.cisco.com/bugsearch/bug/CSCwk52366>.

Configuring LAG in ON Mode

To configure LAG in ON mode, multiple port-channel interfaces must be created, and these interfaces should be added to the corresponding port bundle. LACP should also be configured on the uplink switch for the LACP bundle to come up.

- [#unique_111](#)

Multichassis Link Aggregation Group

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, Multichassis Link Aggregation Group (multi-LAG), which provides flexibility in connecting the controller to a switch's infrastructure is supported. Using multi-LAG, you can connect the multiple uplinks from the controller to the separated uplink switches. The controller supports VLAN-based traffic splitting when connected to a multiswitch topology. This provides the ability to distribute traffic on different uplinks, based on VLANs, for example, supporting a use case where guest traffic can be completely isolated to a different switch or network from the enterprise network. Same VLAN cannot be configured on both the uplinks.

You can connect a LAG to a single switch. However, different VLANs must be connected to different LAGs. The redundancy port must be connected to the same distribution switch as the uplinks, or back to back.

Multi-LAG is supported in LAG ON mode, LACP, and PAGP modes.

Prerequisites for Multi-LAG

- Each LAG must be connected to a single switch.
- Different VLANs must be assigned to different LAGs.

Restrictions for Multi-LAG

- If the primary LAG fails, automatic failover to secondary LAG is not supported.
- The interface on the controller does not come up when you shut or unshut the port on the switch port.

**Note**

This is specific to Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Cloud Wireless Controller in KVM environment for SR-IOV.

Supported Topologies

The Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller has eight ports, while the Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 and Cisco Catalyst 9800-L wireless controllers have four ports each. You can create multi-LAGs of ports with similar capabilities, for example, 2.5 G and 2.5 G, or 10 G and 10 G. You cannot have a 2.5 G and a 10 G port in a port channel group with a minimum of two ports in one LAG.

Figure 2: Single Controller with Multi-LAG

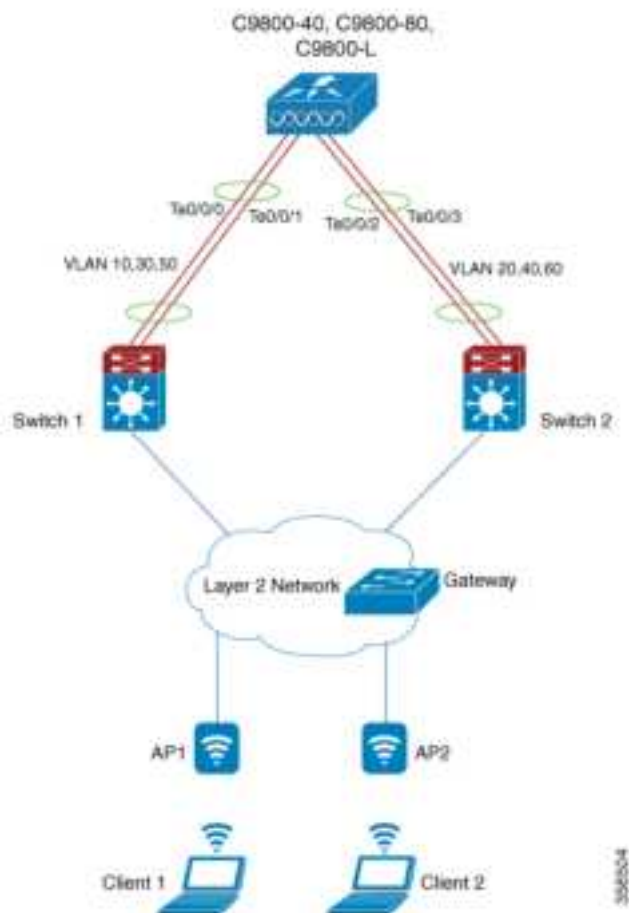
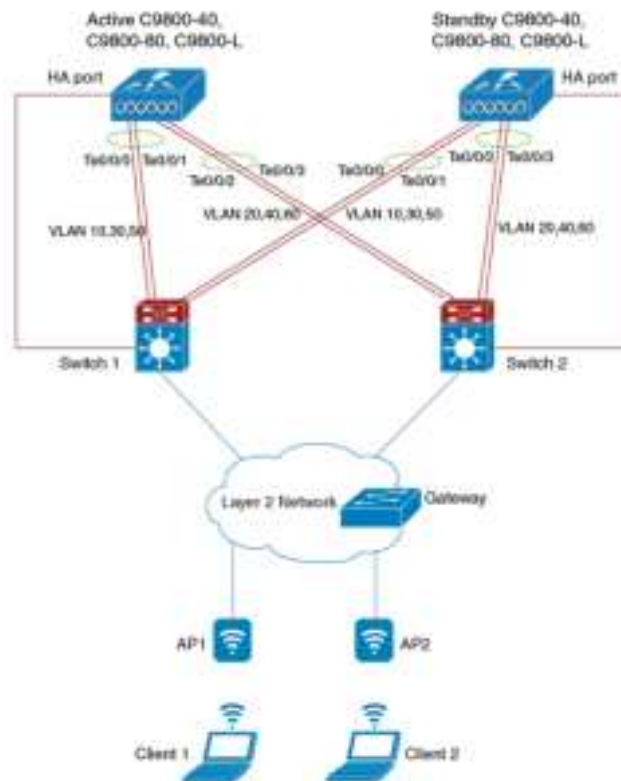


Figure 3: SSO Pair with Multi-LAG



Configuring a Port Channel Interface (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Interface > Logical**.
- Step 2** Click the **Port Channel** tab to configure the Port Channel interface.
The **Port Channel** tab lists all the logical port-channel interfaces on the device.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to add to a new logical port channel interface.
The **Add Port Channel Interface** window is displayed.
- Step 4** In the **Add Port Channel Interface** complete the following procedure:
 - a) In the **Port Channel Number** field, enter the port channel number. The valid values are between 1 to 64.
 - b) In the **Description** field, enter the port channel description.
 - c) Click the **Admin Status** toggle button to set the admin status as *UP* or *DOWN*.
 - d) Click the **Enable Layer 3 Address** toggle button to enable the Layer 3 address.
 - e) In the Port Members section, select the port members from the list displayed in the **Available** list box, and add it to the **Associated** list.
 - f) From the **Switchport Mode** drop-down list, choose a switch mode for the interface.

- If you choose *access* as the switch mode, enter the access VLAN ID in the **Access VLAN** field.
- If you choose *trunk* as the switch mode, enter the VLAN IDs that you want to assign as trunk links. To allow all VLAN IDs as trunk links, set the **Allowed VLANs** to **All**. Specify a native VLAN.
- If you choose *dynamic auto* or *dynamic desirable* as the switch mode, enter the access VLAN ID. Enter the VLAN IDs you want to assign as trunk links. To allow all VLAN IDs as trunk links, set the **Allowed VLANs** to **All**. Specify a native VLAN.

g) Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Create a Port-Channel Interface

Follow the procedure given below to create a port-channel interface.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface port-channel <i>port-channel</i> Example: Device(config)# interface port-channel 2	Configures the port channel and enters interface configuration mode. The valid values for the port channel number ranges from 1 to 64.
Step 3	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Configures the port as trunk.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-if)# no shutdown	Enables the interface.

Configuring LAG in ON Mode

Follow the procedure given below to configure LAG in ON mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	interface TenGigabitEthernet <i>port-slot</i> Example: Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0	Configures the port.
Step 3	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Configures the port as trunk.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-if)# no shutdown	Disables the interface.
Step 5	channel-group <i>group-number</i> mode on Example: Device(config-if)# channel-group 3 mode on	Assigns the port to a channel group, and specifies the ON mode. The valid values for the port channel number ranges from 1 to 64.
Step 6	switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 16,17	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.

Add an Interface to a Port Channel (LACP)

Follow the procedure given below to add an interface to a port channel using the LACP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface TenGigabitEthernet <i>port-slot</i> Example: Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0	Configures the port.
Step 3	channel-group <i>group-number</i> {active passive} Example:	Assigns the port to a channel group, and specifies the LACP mode. The valid values for the port channel number ranges from 1 to 64.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode active	
Step 4	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Configures the port as trunk.

Add an Interface to a Port Channel (PAgP)

Follow the procedure given below to add an interface to a port channel using the PAgP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface TenGigabitEthernet <i>port-slot</i> Example: Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0	Configures the TenGigabit Ethernet interface.
Step 3	channel-group <i>group-number</i> {auto desirable} Example: Device(config-if)# channel-group 1 mode auto	Assigns the port to a channel group, and specifies the PAgP mode. The valid values for the port channel number ranges from 1 to 64.
Step 4	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Configures the port as trunk.

Add a VLAN to a Port Channel

Follow the procedure given below to add different VLANs under a port channel.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	interface port-channel <i>port-channel</i> Example: Device(config)# interface port-channel 1	Configures the port channel. Valid values for the port channel number range from 1 to 64.
Step 3	switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 10,30,50	Adds VLANs to the list of allowed VLANs.

Remove a Port Channel Group from a Physical Interface

Perform this task to remove a port channel group from a physical port.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface TenGigabitEthernet <i>port-slot</i> Example: Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0	Enters the TenGigabit Ethernet interface.
Step 3	no channel-group Example: Device(config-if)# no channel-group	Removes the port channel group from the physical port.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits interface configuration mode.

Verify the LAG Configuration

To view a port channel's state, use the following command:

Device# **show etherchannel summary**

```

Flags:  D - down          P - bundled in port-channel
        I - stand-alone  s - suspended
        H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        R - Layer3       S - Layer2
        U - in use       f - failed to allocate aggregator

```

```

      M - not in use, minimum links not met
      u - unsuitable for bundling
      w - waiting to be aggregated
      d - default port
      A - formed by Auto LAG
Number of channel-groups in use: 1
Number of aggregators:           1
Group Port-channel Protocol Ports
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
3      Po3 (SU)          LACP      Tw0/0/0 (P)    Tw0/0/1 (P)
4      Po4 (SU)          LACP      Tw0/0/2 (P)    Tw0/0/3 (P)

```

To verify an LACP or PAgP configuration, use the following commands:

```
Device# show running-config interface tenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0
```

```
Building configuration...
```

```

Current configuration : 114 bytes
!
interface TwoGigabitEthernet0/0/0
 switchport trunk allowed vlan 16,17
 switchport mode trunk
 speed 1000
 no negotiation auto
 no snmp trap link-status
 channel-group 3 mode on

```

```
Device# show running-config interface port-channel 1
```

```
Building configuration...
```

```

Current configuration : 54 bytes
!
interface Port-channel1
 switchport mode trunk
 switchport trunk allowed vlan 10,30,50
end

```




CHAPTER 10

Reload Reason History

- [Feature History for Reload Reason History, on page 83](#)
- [Information About Reload Reason History, on page 83](#)
- [Verifying Reload Reason History , on page 84](#)
- [Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG, on page 86](#)

Feature History for Reload Reason History

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 6: Feature History for Reload Reason History

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Reload Reason History	The Reload Reason History feature tracks the reasons for controller reload. This is done for the last 10 reloads. In Cisco IOS-XE Dublin 17.10.x and earlier releases, it was possible to track only the reason for the last reload.

Information About Reload Reason History

The Reload Reason History feature tracks the reasons for controller reload. This is done for the last 10 reloads. You will be able to view the history using the show version and the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF). This history is useful for serviceability and troubleshooting.



Note When you reload the standby controller, the system report files are generated in the controller hard disk.

Verifying Reload Reason History

To view the reload history details, use the following command:

```
Device# show reload-history
```

Reload History:

```
Reload Index: 1
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:33:44 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 2
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:31:11 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 3
Reload Code: Image Install
Reload Description: Image Install
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:25:03 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 4
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:13:08 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 5
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:08:26 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 6
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:05:23 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 7
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:01:09 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 8
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 00:57:27 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 9
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
```

Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 00:22:34 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022

Reload Index: 10
Reload Code: Fast Switchover
Reload Description: redundancy force-switchover
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 23:40:01 UTC Tue Nov 29 2022

To view reason for the last reload, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software tdl-database content ios device data
Device Current time: 04:06:04
Device boot time: 01:33:37
Software version: Cisco IOS Software [Dublin], C9800-CL Software (C9800-CL-K9_IOSXE),
Experimental Version 17.11.20221012:120806
[BLD_POLARIS_DEV_S2C_20221010_023625-1-g5ebdd5c35512:/nobackup/saikarth/polaris_relhis 103]
Copyright (c) 1986-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Wed 12-Oct-22 05:08 by saikarth
Rommon version: IOS-XE ROMMON
Last Reboot reason: Reload Command
Reboot reason severity: Normal Reboot
Unsaved configuration: * Unknown boolean *
```

Reload History:

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:33:44 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:31:11 UTC

Reload Category: Image Install
Reload Description: Image Install
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:25:03 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:13:08 UTC

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:08:26 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:05:23 UTC

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:01:09 UTC

Reload Category: Reload

```
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 00:57:27 UTC
```

```
Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 00:22:34 UTC
```

```
Reload Category: Fast Switchover
Reload Description: redundancy force-switchover
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/29/2022 23:40:01 UTC
```

Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG

Use YANG with NETCONF and RESTCONF to provide the desired solution for automated and programmable network operations.

Use the following RPC to create a NETCONF GET request for reload history data:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:da15955f-5bb7-437c-aeb5-0fc7901a1e9e">
  <nc:get>
    <nc:filter>
      <device-hardware-data
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-device-hardware-oper">
        <device-hardware>
          <device-system-data>
            <reload-history/>
          </device-system-data>
        </device-hardware>
      </device-hardware-data>
    </nc:filter>
  </nc:get>
</nc:rpc>

<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:da15955f-5bb7-437c-aeb5-0fc7901a1e9e"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <device-hardware-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-device-hardware-oper">

      <device-hardware>
        <device-system-data>
          <reload-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
              <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
              <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:33:44+00:00</reload-time>
              <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
            </rl-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
              <reload-desc>Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system
report at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
              <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:31:11+00:00</reload-time>
              <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
            </rl-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-img-install</reload-category>
```



```

        <reload-desc>Image Install </reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:25:03+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report
at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:13:08+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:08:26+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report
at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:05:23+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:01:09+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T00:57:27+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T00:22:34+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
    <rl-history>
        <reload-category>rc-force-switchover</reload-category>
        <reload-desc>redundancy force-switchover</reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-29T23:40:01+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
</reload-history>
</device-system-data>
</device-hardware>
</device-hardware-data>
</data>
</rpc-reply>

```

For more information about the YANG models, see the following documents: The Cisco IOS XE Programmability Configuration Guide at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-installation-and-configuration-guides-list.html>

The YANG Data Models on Github at <https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/main/vendor/cisco/xe>.

Contact the Developer Support Community for NETCONF and YANG features at:

<https://developer.cisco.com/>



CHAPTER 11

Best Practices

- [Introduction, on page 89](#)

Introduction

This chapter covers the best practices recommended for configuring a typical Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series wireless infrastructure. The objective is to provide common settings that you can apply to most wireless network implementations. However, not all networks are the same. Therefore, some of the tips might not be applicable to your installation. Always verify them before you perform any changes on a live network.

For more information, see [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Best Practices](#) guide.



PART II

System Upgrade

- [Upgrading the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller Software, on page 93](#)
- [In-Service Software Upgrade, on page 101](#)
- [Software Maintenance Upgrade, on page 111](#)
- [Efficient Image Upgrade, on page 129](#)
- [Predownloading an Image to an Access Point, on page 141](#)
- [N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade, on page 149](#)
- [NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade, on page 165](#)
- [Wireless Sub-Package for Switch, on page 167](#)



CHAPTER 12

Upgrading the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller Software

- [Overview of Upgrading the Controller Software, on page 93](#)
- [Upgrading the Controller Software \(GUI\), on page 94](#)
- [Upgrade the Controller Software \(CLI\), on page 96](#)
- [Converting From Bundle-Mode to Install-Mode, on page 96](#)
- [Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller, on page 99](#)

Overview of Upgrading the Controller Software

This section describes the upgrade process and the methods to upgrade the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software.

Newer versions of the controller software are released at regular intervals. This includes major releases as well as rebuild releases that focus on bug fixes. The version of the AP software is also tied to the controller software release. Every major Cisco IOS XE software release contains new sets of features that are essential for the enterprise-class customers.

Each Cisco IOS XE software release is classified as either a Standard-Support release or an Extended-Support release.

Standard-Support Release

- A sustaining support lifetime of 12 months from First Customer Shipment (FCS) with two scheduled rebuilds
- Rebuilds are typically released at 6 months intervals after FCS.

Extended-Support release Details

- A sustaining support lifetime of 36 months from FCS with ten scheduled rebuilds.
- These rebuilds are at 3, 4, 4, 6, 7 months intervals after FCS or via SMU support. Last 12 months of support will be via SMU.

Based on your requirement, such as upgrading the full image or applying a software patch for bugs, you can go for an appropriate software upgrade, using either GUI or CLI.

- [Upgrade the Controller Software \(GUI\)](#)

- [Upgrade the Controller Software \(CLI\)](#)

Software Upgrade Options

- **Software Maintenance Upgrade:** This method installs a software package on the system to provide a patch fix or a security resolution to a released image. This upgrade package is provided on a per release and per component basis, and is specific to the platform.
- **Hitless Upgrade:** This method allows the APs to be upgraded in a staggered manner, while still being connected to the same controller. This avoids upgrade downtime even for N+1 networks.
- **In-Service Software Upgrade:** This method upgrades a wireless controller image to a later release while the network forwards packets. This feature is supported only within and between major releases.



Note We recommend In-Service Software Upgrade if you are upgrading the entire image or cold controller SMU. Use [Software Maintenance Upgrade](#) for software patches or bug fixes.

The software upgrade time is estimated to be less than 6 hours for a large network. However, the upgrade time depends on factors such as the number of APs, the percentage of APs to upgrade in each iteration, the controller type (9800-80, 9800-L, and so on), and the connectivity between the controller and the APs.

Device Upgrade Options

The following device upgrade options are available:

- **NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade:** Protocol packs are software packages that update the Network-Based Application Recognition (NBAR) engine protocol support on a device without replacing the Cisco software on the device. A protocol pack contains information on applications that are officially supported by NBAR, and are compiled and packed together.
- **Field Programmable Upgrade:** These are hardware programmable packages released by Cisco to upgrade the hardware programmable firmware. Hardware programmable package upgrade is necessary only when a system message indicates that one of the field programmable devices needs an upgrade or when a Cisco technical support representative suggests an upgrade.

Upgrading the Controller Software (GUI)

Before you begin

Clean up the old installation files using the **Remove Inactive Files** link.



Note For GUI options such as *Software Maintenance Upgrade*, *AP Service Package*, and *AP Device Package*, see the respective feature sections.

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Administration > Software Management**.

Step 2 Choose an option from the **Upgrade Mode** drop-down list:

- **INSTALL**: The Install mode uses a package-provisioning file named *packages.conf* in order to boot a device.
- **BUNDLE**: The Bundle mode uses monolithic Cisco IOS images to boot a device. The Bundle mode consumes more memory than the Install mode because the packages are extracted from the bundle and copied to RAM.

Note

You get to view the **Destination** field only for BUNDLE upgrade mode.

Step 3 From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose the transfer type to transfer the software image to your device as **TFTP**, **SFTP**, **FTP**, **Device**, or **Desktop (HTTP)**.

- If you choose **TFTP** as the **Transport Type**, enter the **Server IP Address** of the TFTP server that you want to use. Also, enter the complete **File Path**.

In controllers, the IP TFTP source is mapped to the service port by default.

- If you choose **SFTP** as the **Transport Type**, enter the **Server IP Address** of the SFTP server that you want to use. Also, enter the **SFTP Username**, **SFTP Password**, and the complete **File Path**.
- If you choose **FTP** as the **Transport Type**, enter the **Server IP Address** of the FTP server that you want to use. Also, enter the **FTP Username**, **FTP Password**, and the complete **File Path**.
- If you choose **Device** as the **Transport Type**, choose the **File System** from the drop-down list. In the **File Path** field, browse through the available images or packages from the device and select one of the options, and click **Select**.
- If you choose **Desktop (HTTPS)** as the **Transport Type**, choose the **File System** from the drop-down list. In the **Source File Path** field, click **Select File** to select the file, and click **Open**.

Step 4 Click **Download & Install**.

Step 5 To boot your device with the new software image, click **Save Configuration & Activate**.

Step 6 Click **Commit** after the device reboots to make the activation changes persistent across reloads.

Note

For 17.4 and later releases, this step is mandatory for the upgrade to be persistent. If you do not click **Commit**, the auto-timer terminates the upgrade operation after 6 hours, and the controller reverts back to the previous image.

Upgrade the Controller Software (CLI)

Before you begin

- Determine the Cisco IOS release that is currently running on your controller, and the filename of the system image using the **show version** command in user EXEC or privileged EXEC mode.
- Clean up the old installation files using the **install remove inactive** command.
- Use the **show version | include Installation mode** to verify the boot mode.



Note We recommend that you use install mode for the software upgrade.

For steps on converting the device from bundle-mode to install-mode, see [Converting from Bundle-Mode to Install-Mode](#).

Procedure

Step 1 Download the software from Cisco.com: <https://software.cisco.com/download/home/286322524>

- Click IOS XE Software link.
- Select the release number you want to install, for example Gibraltar-16.12.3.

Note

Cisco recommended release is selected by default. For release designation information, see: <https://software.cisco.com/download/static/assets/i18n/reldesignation.html?context=sds>

- Click **Download**.

Step 2 Copy the new image to flash using the command: **copy tftp:image flash:**

Step 3 Verify that the image has been successfully copied to flash using the command: **dir flash:**

Step 4 Upgrade the software by choosing an upgrade process from the options that are currently supported.

For a list of upgrade options, see [Software Upgrade Options, on page 94](#).

Converting From Bundle-Mode to Install-Mode

Use the procedure given below to boot in install-mode:

Before you begin

- Clean up the old installation files using the command **install remove inactive**
- Verify the boot mode using the command: **show version | include Installation mode**
- Download the software image from Cisco.com.

For steps on how to download the software, see *Upgrading the Controller Software (CLI)*.

Procedure

Step 1 Copy the new image to flash using the command: **copy tftp:image flash:**

```
Device# copy tftp://xx.x.x.x//C9800-universalk9_wlc.xx.xx.xx.SSA.bin flash:

Destination filename [C9800-universalk9_wlc.xx.xx.xx.SSA.bin]?
Accessing tftp://xx.x.x.x//C9800-universalk9_wlc.xx.xx.xx.SSA.bin...
Loading /C9800-universalk9_wlc.xx.xx.xx.SSA.bin from xx.x.x.x (via GigabitEthernet0/0):
!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!
[OK - 601216545 bytes]
601216545 bytes copied in 50.649 secs (11870255 bytes/sec)
```

Step 2 Verify that the image has been successfully copied to flash using the command: **dir flash:**

```
Device# dir flash:*.bin

Directory of bootflash:/*.bin

On Active

Directory of bootflash:/

   12 -rw- 1231746613 Jun 11 2020 23:15:49 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200611_101837.SSA.bin
   17 -rw- 1232457039 Jun 9 2020 21:14:40 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200609_031801.SSA.bin
   21 -rw- 1219332990 Jun 10 2020 02:06:14 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_V173_THROTTLE_LATEST_20200608_003622_V17_3_0_183.SSA.bin
   18 -rw- 1232167230 Jun 8 2020 02:42:22 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200607_002322.SSA.bin
24811823104 bytes total (16032391168 bytes free)

On Standby
Directory of stby-bootflash:/*.bin

Directory of stby-bootflash:/

   18 -rw- 1232167230 Jun 8 2020 02:42:22 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200607_002322.SSA.bin
   20 -rw- 1231746613 Jun 11 2020 23:15:49 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200611_101837.SSA.bin
   17 -rw- 1232457039 Jun 9 2020 21:14:40 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20200609_031801.SSA.bin
   16 -rw- 1219332990 Jun 10 2020 02:06:14 +00:00
C9800-universalk9_wlc.BLD_V173_THROTTLE_LATEST_20200608_003622_V17_3_0_183.SSA.bin
26462998528 bytes total (17686335488 bytes free)
```

Step 3 Set the boot variable to **bootflash:packages.conf**.

```
Device(config)# boot sys flash bootflash:packages.conf
```

Step 4 Save your changes by entering this command: **write memory**.

```
Device(config)# write memory
```

Note

For this configuration, the mode changes from enable to config mode.

Step 5 Verify whether the boot variable is set to bootflash:packages.conf using the command: **show boot**

```
Device# show boot

BOOT variable = bootflash:packages.conf,12;
CONFIG_FILE variable =
BOOTLDR variable does not exist
Configuration register is 0x2102

Standby BOOT variable = bootflash:packages.conf,12;
Standby CONFIG_FILE variable =
Standby BOOTLDR variable does not exist
Standby Configuration register is 0x2102
```

Step 6 Move the device from bundle-mode to install-mode using the command: **install add file image.bin location activate commit**

```
Device# install add file bootflash:C9800-universalk9_wlc.xx.xx.xx.SPA.bin activate commit

install_add_activate_commit: START Thu Dec 6 15:43:57 UTC 2018
Dec 6 15:43:58.669 %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_START_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Started install
one-shot bootflash:C9800-xx-universalk9.xx.xx.xx.SPA.bin
install_add_activate_commit: Adding PACKAGE

--- Starting initial file syncing ---
Info: Finished copying bootflash:C9800-xx-universalk9.xx.xx.xx.SPA.bin to the selected
chassis
Finished initial file syncing

--- Starting Add ---
Performing Add on all members
[1] Add package(s) on chassis 1
[1] Finished Add on chassis 1
Checking status of Add on [1]
Add: Passed on [1]
Finished Add

Image added. Version: xx.xx.xx.216
install_add_activate_commit: Activating PACKAGE
Following packages shall be activated:
/bootflash/C9800-xx-rpboot.xx.xx.xx.SPA.pkg
/bootflash/C9800-xx-mono-universalk9.xx.xx.xx.SPA.pkg
This operation requires a reload of the system. Do you want to proceed? [y/n]y
--- Starting Activate ---
Performing Activate on all members
[1] Activate package(s) on chassis 1
--- Starting list of software package changes ---
Old files list:
Removed C9800-xx-mono-universalk9.BLD_Vxxxx_THROTTLE_LATEST_20181022_153332.SSA.pkg
Removed C9800-xx-rpboot.BLD_Vxxxx_THROTTLE_LATEST_20181022_153332.SSA.pkg
New files list:

Added C9800-xx-mono-universalk9.xx.xx.xx.SPA.pkg
Added C9800-xx-rpboot.xx.xx.xx.SPA.pkg
Finished list of software package changes
[1] Finished Activate on chassis 1
Checking status of Activate on [1]
Activate: Passed on [1]
Finished Activate
```

```

--- Starting Commit ---
Performing Commit on all members
[1] Commit package(s) on chassis 1
[1] Finished Commit on chassis 1
Checking status of Commit on [1]
Commit: Passed on [1]
Finished Commit

Install will reload the system now!
SUCCESS: install_add_activate_commit Thu Dec 6 15:49:21 UTC 2018
Dec 6 15:49:21.294 %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_COMPLETED_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Completed
install one-shot PACKAGE bootflash:C9800-xx-universalk9.xx.xx.xx.SPA.bin

```

Note

The system reloads automatically after executing the **install add file activate commit** command. You do not have to manually reload the system.

If upgrade fails, cleanup is required before attempting the upgrade procedure again. An upgrade failure may occur due lack of disk space, validation failure of extracted image, system crashes, and so on. Should a system failure occurs during upgrade process, wait till the system is back in service and check the system image version.

- If it is a new image, check for the stability and functionality of the system, and decide whether to commit and complete the upgrade procedure or discard the upgrade procedure.
- If it is a new image, use the cleanup procedure and reattempt the upgrade procedure.

Step 7 Click **yes** to all the prompts.

Step 8 Verify the boot mode using the command: **show version**

```

Device# show version | in Installation mode is

Installation mode is INSTALL

```

Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller

Use the following procedure to copy a WebAuth tar bundle to the standby controller, in a high-availability configuration.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > Backup & Restore**.
- Step 2** From the **Copy** drop-down list, choose **To Device**.
- Step 3** From the **File Type** drop-down list, choose **WebAuth Bundle**.
- Step 4** From the **Transfer Mode** drop-down list, choose **TFTP**, **SFTP**, **FTP**, or **HTTP**.
The **Server Details** options change based on the file transfer option selected.
 - **TFTP**

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the TFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.

The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (`_`) and hyphen (`-`) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with `.tar`, for example, `webauthbundle.tar`.

• SFTP

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the SFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.

The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (`_`) and hyphen (`-`) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with `.tar`, for example, `webauthbundle.tar`.

- **Server Login UserName:** Enter the SFTP server login user name.
- **Server Login Password:** Enter the SFTP server login passphrase.

• FTP

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the TFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.

The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (`_`) and hyphen (`-`) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with `.tar`, for example, `webauthbundle.tar`.

- **Logon Type:** Choose the login type as either **Anonymous** or **Authenticated**. If you choose **Authenticated**, the following fields are activated:
 - **Server Login UserName:** Enter the FTP server login user name.
 - **Server Login Password:** Enter the FTP server login passphrase.

• HTTP

- **Source File Path:** Click **Select File** to select the configuration file, and click **Open**.

Step 5 Click the **Yes** or **No** radio button to back up the existing startup configuration to Flash.

Save the configuration to Flash to propagate the WebAuth bundle to other members, including the standby controller. If you do not save the configuration to Flash, the WebAuth bundle will not be propagated to other members, including the standby controller.

Step 6 Click **Download File**.



CHAPTER 13

In-Service Software Upgrade

- [Information About In-Service Software Upgrade, on page 101](#)
- [Prerequisites for Performing In-Service Software Upgrade, on page 102](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for In-Service Software Upgrade, on page 102](#)
- [Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade , on page 103](#)
- [Upgrading Software Using ISSU \(GUI\), on page 104](#)
- [Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade with Delayed Commit, on page 105](#)
- [Monitoring In-Service Software Upgrade, on page 106](#)
- [Troubleshooting ISSU, on page 108](#)

Information About In-Service Software Upgrade

In-Service Software Upgrade (ISSU) is a procedure to upgrade a wireless controller image to a later release while the network continues to forward packets. ISSU helps network administrators avoid a network outage when performing a software upgrade.

ISSU can also be used to apply cold patches without impacting the active network.

ISSU is supported only on the following Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers, and supports only upgrade.

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller (Private Cloud)

High-Level Workflow of ISSU

1. Onboard the controller software image to the flash memory.
2. Download the AP image to the AP.
3. Install the controller software image.
4. Commit the changes.

Prerequisites for Performing In-Service Software Upgrade

- Ensure that both Active and Standby controllers are in install mode and are booted from *bootflash:/packages.conf*.
- Ensure that the network or device is not being configured during the upgrade.
- Schedule the upgrade when your network is stable and steady.
- Ensure uninterrupted power supply. A power interruption during upgrade procedure might corrupt the software image.

Guidelines and Restrictions for In-Service Software Upgrade

- If you do not run the **install commit** command within 6 hours of the **install activate issu** command, the system will revert to the original commit position. You can choose to delay the commit using the [Delayed Commit](#) procedure.
- During ISSU upgrade, while AP rolling upgrade is in progress, the **install abort** command won't work. You should use the **install abort issu** command, instead to cancel the upgrade.
- During ISSU upgrade, the system displays a warning message similar to:

```
found 46 disjoint TDL objects
```

. You can ignore the warning message because it doesn't have any functional impact.
- During ISSU upgrade, if both the controllers (active and standby) have different images after the power cycle, an auto cancel of ISSU is triggered to bring both the controllers to the same version. The following is a sample scenario: Install Version1 (V1) software on the active controller and then apply a SMU hot patch and perform a commit. Now, upgrade the software to Version2 using ISSU, and then power cycle the active controller. At this point, the system has a version mismatch (V1 and V2). The active controller reloads at this stage, after the completion of bulk synchronization. Now, both the controllers come up with the same version (V1 and V1).
- An ISSU upgrade that is canceled because of configuration synchronization failure on the standby controller rolls back to V1 of the software image. However, this information isn't available in the **show install** command log. Run the **show issu state detail** command to see the current ISSU state.
- To enable the **clear install** command, you should first run the **service internal** command in global configuration mode, and then run the **clear install** command in privileged EXEC mode.
- Image rollback could be affected if the controller has a stale rollback history and the stack gets formed afterwards. We recommend that you run the **clear install state** command to clear stale information and boot the controller in bundle mode.
- The **clear install state** command doesn't delete the SMU file from flash or storage. To remove a SMU, use either the **install remove file** command or the **install remove inactive** command.
- When the new active controller comes up, after the image upgrade, it doesn't retain the old logs on web GUI window as part of show logs.

- If a stateful switchover (SSO) or a high-availability (HA) event occurs during the rolling AP upgrade procedure of the ISSU feature, the rolling AP upgrade stops. You should then use the **ap image upgrade** command to restart the upgrade process.
- If HA fails to form after the ISSU procedure, you should reload any one chassis again to form HA again.
- Use clear **ap predownload statistics** command before using the **show ap image** command. This ensures that you get the right data after every pre-download.
- Manually cancel the ISSU process using the **install issu abort** command in the scenarios given below, to avoid a software version mismatch between the active controller and the standby controller.
 - An RP link is brought down after standby HOT during an ISSU procedure and the links remains down even after the auto-abort timer expiry.
 - An RP link is brought down before the standby controller reaches standby HOT during an ISSU procedure.
- Cisco TrustSec (CTS) is not supported on the RMI interfaces.
- If a switchover occurs while performing an AP upgrade using ISSU, the upgrade process will restart automatically after the switchover.

Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade

Use the following procedure to perform a complete image upgrade, that is, from one image to another.



Note ISSU is supported only within and between major releases, for example, 17.3.x to 17.3.y, 17.6.x to 17.6.y (within a major release) and 17.3.x to 17.6.x, 17.3.x to 17.9.x (among major releases). For more information, check https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/9800/tech-notes/b_issu_9800.html#id_129557. ISSU is NOT supported within and between minor releases or between minor and major releases, for example 17.4.x to 17.4.y or 17.4.x to 17.5.x or 17.3.x to 17.4.x.

ISSU downgrade is not supported for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller platforms.



Note We recommend that you configure the percentage of APs to be upgraded by using the **ap upgrade staggered** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install add file <>	The controller software image is added to the flash and expanded. Note In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Switch, run the install add file

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>sub-package-file-name</i> command to expand the wireless subpackage file.
Step 2	ap image predownload Example: Device# ap image predownload	Performs predownload of the AP image. To see the progress of the predownload, use the show ap image command.
Step 3	install activate issu [auto-abort-timer timer] Example: Device# install activate issu	Runs compatibility checks, installs the package, and updates the package status details. Optionally, you can configure the time limit to cancel the addition of new software without committing the image. Valid values are from 30 to 1200 minutes.
Step 4	Run either of the following commands: • install abort issu Device# install abort issu Cancels the upgrade process and returns the device to the previous installation state. This is applicable for both controller and the AP. • install commit Device# install commit Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads. Note If you do not run the install commit command within 6 hours of completing the previous step, the system will revert to the original commit position.	

Upgrading Software Using ISSU (GUI)

Before you begin

1. The device should be in Install mode.
2. The device should have an HA pair. The standby controller should be online and is in SSO mode.
You can verify the details using **show issu state detail** command.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Software Management**.
- Step 2** Under the **Software Upgrade** tab, check the **ISSU Upgrade (HA Upgrade) (Beta)** check box.
- Step 3** In the **AP Upgrade Configuration** section, from the **AP Upgrade per Iteration** drop-down list choose the percentage of APs to be upgraded.
- Step 4** Click **Download & Install**.

This initiates the upgrade process and you can view the progress in the **Status** dialog box.

Click the **Show Logs** link to view the upgrade process details.

Note

An SSO takes place while activating the image on the active controller. After the SSO, you should login again to the controller.

- Step 5** The system enables the **Commit** and **ISSU Abort** buttons after the upgrade.
- Click **Commit** to commit the activation changes, or **ISSU Abort** to terminate the upgrade process and return the device to the previous installation state.

Upgrading Software Using In-Service Software Upgrade with Delayed Commit

Use this procedure to upgrade the controller software with delayed commit, which will help you to run and test the new software without committing the image.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install add file <file>	Adds and expands the controller software image to the flash. Note In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Switch, run the install add file sub-package-file-name command to expand the wireless subpackage file.
Step 2	ap image predownload Example: Device# ap image predownload	Performs predownload of the AP image.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	install activate issu Example: Device# install activate issu	Runs compatibility checks, installs the package, and updates the package status details. The ISSU completes activation and a message that the 'terminal state is reached', is displayed in the show issue state detail command output.
Step 4	install auto-abort-timer stop Example: Device# install auto-abort-timer stop	Stops the termination timer so that the upgrade process is not terminated after the default termination time of 6-8 hours.
Step 5	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads.
Step 6	(Optional) install abort issu Example: Device# install abort issu	Aborts ISSU and goes back to the previous version.

Monitoring In-Service Software Upgrade

To view the ISSU state after the install add ISSU and before the install activate ISSU, use the following command:

```
Device# show issu state detail

-- Starting local lock acquisition on chassis 1 ---
Finished local lock acquisition on chassis 1
Current ISSU Status: Enabled
Previous ISSU Operation: Abort Successful
=====
System Check Status
-----
Platform ISSU Support Yes
Standby Online Yes
Autoboot Enabled Yes
SSO Mode Yes
Install Boot Yes
Valid Boot Media Yes
=====
No ISSU operation is in progress
show install summary
[ Chassis 1 2 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type St Filename/Version
-----
IMG I 17.1.1.0.432
IMG C 16.12.2.0.2707
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
```

To view the ISSU state after activating ISSU, use the following command:

```
Device# show issu state detail

Current ISSU Status: In Progress
Previous ISSU Operation: Abort Successful
=====
System Check Status
-----
Platform ISSU Support Yes
Standby Online Yes
Autoboot Enabled Yes
SSO Mode Yes
Install Boot Yes
Valid Boot Media Yes
=====
Operation type: Step-by-step ISSU
Install type : Image installation using ISSU
Current state : Activated state
Last operation: Switchover
Completed operations:
Operation Start time
-----
Activate location standby Chassis 2 2019-09-17:23:41:12
Activate location active Chassis 1 2019-09-17:23:50:06
Switchover 2019-09-17:23:52:03
State transition: Added -> Standby activated -> Active switched-over
Auto abort timer: automatic, remaining time before rollback: 05:41:53
Running image: bootflash:packages.conf
Operating mode: sso, terminal state reached
show install summary
[ Chassis 1/R0 2/R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type St Filename/Version
-----
IMG U 17.1.1.0.432
-----
Auto abort timer: active on install_activate, time before rollback - 05:41:49
-----
```

To view the ISSU state after installing the commit, use the following command:

```
Device# show issu state detail

--- Starting local lock acquisition on chassis 1 ---
Finished local lock acquisition on chassis 1
Current ISSU Status: Enabled
Previous ISSU Operation: Successful
=====
System Check Status
-----
Platform ISSU Support Yes
Standby Online Yes
Autoboot Enabled Yes
SSO Mode Yes
Install Boot Yes
Valid Boot Media Yes
=====
No ISSU operation is in progress
show install summary
[ Chassis 1/R0 2/R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```

-----
Type St Filename/Version
-----
IMG C 17.1.1.0.432
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----

```

To view the ISSU state after terminating the ISSU process, use the following command:

```

Device# show issu state detail
Current ISSU Status: In Progress
Previous ISSU Operation: Abort Successful
=====
System Check Status
-----
Platform ISSU Support Yes
Standby Online Yes
Autoboot Enabled Yes
SSO Mode Yes
Install Boot Yes
Valid Boot Media Yes
=====
Operation type: Step-by-step ISSU
Install type : Image installation using ISSU
Current state : Timeout-error state
Last operation: Commit Chassis 1
Completed operations:
Operation Start time
-----
Activate location standby Chassis 2 2019-09-17:23:41:12
Activate location active Chassis 1 2019-09-17:23:50:06
Switchover 2019-09-17:23:52:03
Abort 2019-09-18:00:14:13
Commit Chassis 1 2019-09-18:00:28:23
State transition: Added -> Standby activated -> Active switched-over -> Activated ->
Timeout-error
Auto abort timer: inactive
Running image: bootflash:packages.conf
Operating mode: sso, terminal state reached

```

To view the summary of the active packages in a system, use the following command:

```

Device# show install summary

[ Chassis 1 2 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type St Filename/Version
-----
IMG C 16.12.2.0.2707
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----

```

Troubleshooting ISSU

Using **install activate issu** command before completing AP pre-download.

The following scenario is applicable when you run the **install activate issu** command before completing AP pre-download. In such instances, you should run the **ap image predownload** command and then proceed with the activation.

```
Device# install activate issu

install_activate: START Wed Jan  8 04:48:04 UTC 2020
System configuration has been modified.
Press Yes(y) to save the configuration and proceed.
Press No(n) for proceeding without saving the configuration.
Press Quit(q) to exit, you may save configuration and re-enter the command. [y/n/q]
y
Building configuration...
[OK]Modified configuration has been saved
install_activate: Activating ISSU
NOTE: Going to start Activate ISSU install process
STAGE 0: System Level Sanity Check
=====
--- Verifying install_issu supported ---
--- Verifying standby is in Standby Hot state ---
--- Verifying booted from the valid media ---
--- Verifying AutoBoot mode is enabled ---
--- Verifying Platform specific ISSU admission criteria ---
CONSOLE: FAILED: Install operation is not allowed.
Reason -> AP pre-image download is mandatory f
or hitless software upgrade.
Action -> Trigger AP pre-image download.
FAILED: Platform specific ISSU admission criteria
ERROR: install_activate exit(2 ) Wed Jan  8 04:48:37 UTC 2020
```




CHAPTER 14

Software Maintenance Upgrade

- [Introduction to Software Maintenance Upgrade, on page 111](#)
- [Information About AP Device Package, on page 116](#)
- [Information About Per Site or Per AP Model Service Pack \(APSP\), on page 120](#)

Introduction to Software Maintenance Upgrade

Software Maintenance Upgrade (SMU) is a package that can be installed on a system to provide a patch fix or a security resolution to a released image. A SMU package is provided for each release and per component basis, and is specific to the corresponding platform.

A SMU provides a significant benefit over classic Cisco IOS software because it allows you to address the network issue quickly while reducing the time and scope of the testing required. The Cisco IOS XE platform internally validates the SMU compatibility and does not allow you to install noncompatible SMUs.

All the SMUs are integrated into the subsequent Cisco IOS XE software maintenance releases. A SMU is an independent and self-sufficient package and does not have any prerequisites or dependencies. You can choose which SMUs to install or uninstall in any order.



Note SMUs are supported only on Extended Maintenance releases and for the full lifecycle of the underlying software release.



Note You can activate the file used in the **install add file** command only from the filesystems of the active device. You cannot use the file from the standby or member filesystems; the **install add file** command will fail in such instances.



Note When the SMU file is deleted and a reboot is performed, the device may display the following error message:

```
--- Starting SMU Add operation ---
Performing SMU_ADD on all members
  FAILED: Improper State./bootflash/<previously-installed-smu-filename>.smu.bin not
present. Please restore file for stability.
Checking status of SMU_ADD on [1/R0]
SMU_ADD: Passed on []. Failed on [1/R0]
Finished SMU Add operation
FAILED: add_activate_commit /bootflash/<tobeinstalled-wlc-smu-filename>.smu.bin Wed Aug 02
08:30:18 UTC 2023.
```

This error occurs because the previous SMU file was not properly removed from the controller. It may lead to functional errors, such as the inability to install new SMU or APSP files.

We recommend that you use the `install remove file` command to remove previous instances of APSP or SMU files from the bootflash.

SMU infrastructure can be used to meet the following requirements in the wireless context:

- Controller SMU: Controller bug fixes or Cisco Product Security Incident Response information (PSIRT).
- APSP: AP bug fixes, PSIRTs, or minor features that do not require any controller changes.
- APDP: Support for new AP models without introduction of new hardware or software capabilities.



Note The **show ap image** command displays cumulative statistics regarding the AP images in the controller. We recommend that you clear the statistics using the **clear ap predownload statistics** command, before using the **show ap image** command, to ensure that correct data is displayed.

SMU Workflow

The SMU process should be initiated with a request to the SMU committee. Contact your customer support to raise an SMU request. During the release, the SMU package is posted on the Cisco Software Download page and can be downloaded and installed.

Warning: Commit changes within 6 hours of activation or deactivation to avoid rollback

Always run the `install commit` command within 6 hours after executing either `install activate` or `install deactivate`.

If you do not commit the changes within this window:

- The system automatically reverts to the previous commit state.
- This can lead to service interruption, especially over low-bandwidth links where image transfers may not complete in time.
- Remote deployments with slow transfer rates are particularly vulnerable to rollbacks during the delay.

To avoid these risks:

- Immediately run `install commit` after activation or deactivation.

- Monitor image transfer progress proactively.
- Plan for available bandwidth and duration at remote sites.

SMU Package

An SMU package contains the metadata and fix for the reported issue the SMU is requested for.

SMU Reload

The SMU type describes the effect on a system after installing the corresponding SMU. SMUs can be nontraffic-affecting or can result in device restart, reload, or switchover.

A controller cold patch require a cold reload of the system during activation. A cold reload is the complete reload of the operating system.

This action affects the traffic for the duration of the following two phases:

- The reload of the wireless controller.
- The time it takes for all the access points to rejoin the controller, receive the new image from the controller, and upgrade to the new SMU patch. This reload ensures that all processes are started with the correct libraries and files that are installed as part of the SMU.

This reload ensures that all the processes are started with the correct libraries and files that are installed as part of the corresponding SMU.

Controller hot patching support allows the SMU to be effective immediately after activation, without reloading the system. After the SMU is committed, the activation changes are persistent across reloads. Hot patching SMU packages contain metadata that lists all processes that need to be restarted in order to activate the SMU. During SMU activation, each process in this list will be restarted one at a time until the SMU is fully applied.

Installing a SMU (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Administration > Software Management and click the Software Maintenance Upgrade tab.
Step 2	Click Add to add a SMU image.
Step 3	From the Transport Type drop-down list, choose the transfer type to transfer the software image to your device as TFTP, SFTP, FTP, Device, or Desktop (HTTP). a) If you choose TFTP as the Transport Type, you need to enter the Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6), File path and choose a File System from the drop-down list. For example, if the SMU file is at the root of the TFTP server you can enter <code>/C9800-universalk9_wlc.17.03.02a.CSCvw55275.SPA.smu.bin</code> in the File path field. b) If you choose SFTP as the Transport Type, you need to enter the Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6), SFTP Username, SFTP Password, File path and choose a File System from the drop-down list. c) If you choose FTP as the Transport Type, you need to enter the Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6), FTP Username, FTP Password, File path, and choose a File System from the drop-down list.

- d) If you choose **Device** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list. This is possible when the software is already present on the device due to an earlier download and activation, followed by a subsequent deactivation.

Note

The File System depends upon the kind of device you are using. On physical controllers, you have the option to store the file to the bootflash or hard disk, whereas in case of virtual controllers, you can only store it in the bootflash.

- e) If you choose **Desktop (HTTPS)** as the **Transport Type**, you need to choose a **File System** from the drop-down list and click **Select File** to navigate to the **Source File Path**.

Step 4 Enter the **File Name** and click **Add File**.

This operation copies the maintenance update package from the location you selected above to the device and performs a compatibility check for the platform and image versions and adds the SMU package for all the members. After a SMU is successfully added to the system, a message is displayed about the successful operation and that the SMU can be activated on the device. The message displays the name of the package (SMU) that is now available to be activated. It lists the SMU Details - Name, Version, State (active or inactive), Type (reload, restart, or non-reload) and other compatibility details. If SMU is of the Type - reload, then any operation (activate, deactivate or rollback) will cause the device to reload; restart involves only a process restart and if it is non reload- no change in process takes place.

Step 5 Select the SMU and click on **Activate** to activate the SMU on the system and install the package, and update the package status details.

Step 6 Select the SMU and click **Commit** to make the activation changes persistent across reloads.

The Commit operation creates commit points. These commit points are similar to snapshots using which you can determine which specific change you want to be activated or rolled back to, in case there is any issue with the SMU. The commit can be done after activation when the system is up, or after the first reload. If a package is activated, but not committed, it remains active after the first reload, but not after the second reload.

Installing SMU

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example: <pre>Device# install add file bootflash:<Filename></pre>	Copies the maintenance update package from a remote location to the device, and performs a compatibility check for the platform and image versions. This command runs base compatibility checks on a file to ensure that the SMU package is supported on the platform. It also adds an entry in the package/SMU.sta file, so that its status can be monitored and maintained.
Step 2	install activate file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example:	Runs compatibility checks, installs the package, and updates the package status details.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# install activate file bootflash:<Filename>	For a restartable package, the command triggers the appropriate post-install scripts to restart the necessary processes, and for non-restartable packages it triggers a reload.
Step 3	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads. The commit can be done after activation while the system is up, or after the first reload. If a package is activated but not committed, it remains active after the first reload, but not after the second reload.
Step 4	show version Example: Device# show version	Displays the image version on the device.
Step 5	show install summary Example: Device# show install summary	Displays information about the active package. The output of this command varies according to the install commands that are configured.

Roll Back an Image (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Software Management**.
 - Step 2** Go to **SMU, APSP or APDP**.
 - Step 3** Click **Rollback**.
 - Step 4** In the **Rollback to** drop-down list, choose **Base, Committed or Rollback Point**.
 - Step 5** Click **Add File**.
-

Rollback SMU

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install rollback to { base committed id committed } committed ID Example:	Returns the device to the previous installation state. After the rollback, a reload is required.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# install rollback to id 1234	
Step 2	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads.

Deactivate SMU

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install deactivate file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example: Device# install deactivate file bootflash:<Filename>	Deactivates an active package, updates the package status, and triggers a process to restart or reload.
Step 2	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads.

Configuration Examples for SMU

The following is sample of the SMU configuration, after the install add for the SMU is done:

```
Device#show install summary
```

```
[ Chassis 1 2 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
           C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
```

```
IMG   C    16.8.1.0.39751
```

```
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
```

Information About AP Device Package

The controller supports rolling out critical bug fixes using Software Maintenance Upgrade (SMU). Similarly, if any new AP hardware model is introduced, the AP models need to be connected to the existing wireless network.

Currently, when a new AP hardware model is introduced, those get shipped along with the corresponding controller related major software version. Then you need to wait for the release of a corresponding controller version relative to the new AP model and upgrade the entire network.

From 16.11.1 onwards, you can introduce the new AP model into your wireless network using the SMU infrastructure without the need to upgrade to the new controller version. This solution is termed as AP Device Package (APDP).

SMU Process or Workflow

The SMU process builds APDP to detect code changes and build APDP. It also supports addition of a new file (AP image file) to APDP and inclusion of those AP images into APDP.

The workflow is as follows:

- install add
- install activate
- install commit

For more details, see *Managing AP Device Package*.

Warning: Commit changes within six hours of activation or deactivation

To ensure completion of the APSP or APDP activation or deactivation process, always run the `install commit` command within six hours after executing either `install activate` or `install deactivate`.

If you do not commit the changes within this window, the system automatically reverts to the previous commit state. Potential issues include:

- Service interruption, especially over low bandwidth links where image transfers may not complete in time.
- Rollbacks during delays for remote deployments with slow transfer rates

To avoid these risks:

- Run the `install commit` command immediately after activation or deactivation.
- Monitor the progress of the image transfer.
- Plan for available sufficient and enough time at remote sites.

SMU Package

A SMU package contains the metadata that carry AP model and its capability related details.

AP Image Changes

When new AP models are introduced, there may or may not be corresponding new AP images. This means that AP images are mapped to the AP model families. If a new AP model belongs to an existing AP model family then you will have existing AP image entries (Example: ap3g3, ap1g5, and so on). For instance, if an AP model belongs to either ap3g3 or ap1g5, the respective image file is updated with the right AP image location. Also, the corresponding metadata file is updated with the new AP model capability information.

If a new AP model belongs to a new AP model family and new image file, the new image entry file is created in the right AP image location. Also, the corresponding metadata file is updated with the new AP model capability information.

During AP image bundling and packaging of APDP, the new AP model images and metadata file are packaged into APDP.



Note The APDP images must not be renamed to avoid impact on its functionality.

Installing AP Device Package (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Software Management**.
- Step 2** Click **AP Device Package (APDP)** tab.
- Step 3** Click **Add**.
- Step 4** From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose the transfer type to transfer the software image to your device as TFTP, SFTP, FTP, Device, or Desktop (HTTP).
- If you choose **TFTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **SFTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **SFTP Username**, **SFTP Password**, **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **FTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **FTP Username**, **FTP Password**, **File path**, and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **Device** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
 - If you choose **Desktop (HTTPS)** as the **Transport Type**, you need to choose a **File System** from the drop-down list and click **Select File** to navigate to the **Source File Path**.
- Step 5** Enter the **File Name** and click **Add File**.
- Step 6** From the **AP Upgrade Configuration** section, choose the percentage of APs to be included from the **AP Upgrade per iteration** drop-down list.
- Step 7** Click **Apply**.
-

Installing AP Device Package (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example:	Extracts AP images from APDP and places them in SMU or APDP specific mount location.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# install add file bootflash:<Filename>	Note Here, the SMU does not trigger the Wireless module.
Step 2	install activate file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example: Device# install activate file bootflash:<Filename>	Adds the AP software in APDP to the existing current active AP image list. Also, updates the capability information for the new AP models in the controller . Note Even if the new AP module supports new hardware capabilities, the controller recognizes only the capability information that its base version supports. At this point, the controller accepts the new connection from the new AP model. The new AP model then joins the controller .
Step 3	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the new AP software to be persistent across reloads. The commit can be done after activation while the system is up, or after the first reload. If a package is activated but not committed, it remains active after the first reload, but not after the second reload.
Step 4	install deactivate file bootflash: <i>filename</i> Example: Device# install deactivate file bootflash:<Filename>	(Optional) Deactivates an active APDP, updates the package status, and triggers a process to restart or reload.
Step 5	show version Example: Device# show version	Displays the image version on the device.

Verifying APDP on the Controller

To verify the status of APDP packages on the controller , use the following command:

```
Device# show install summary
```

```
[ Chassis 1 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
            C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```
-----
Type  St  Filename/Version
-----
APDP  I    bootflash:apdp_CSCvp12345.bin
IMG   C    17.1.0.0
```

```
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
```



Note The output of this command varies based on the packages, and the package states that are installed.

Information About Per Site or Per AP Model Service Pack (APSP)

The controller supports critical updates to the access points (APs) using Software Maintenance Update (SMU). Using the Per Site or Per AP Model Service Pack feature, you can roll out critical AP bug fixes to a subset of APs, on a site or group of sites, using SMU in a staggered manner.

This feature allows to control the propagation of a SMU in your network by selecting the sites, to be included in the SMU activation, using Per Site AP SMU rollout. However, all sites should be brought to the same SMU level before a new SMU can be rolled out to a subset of sites or for a subsequent image upgrade to be initiated on the system..

Using Per AP model SMU, you can limit the update to only certain AP models. The software is predownloaded and is activated only to certain AP models, within a site. Note that if a certain number of model images are included in a SMU, all the future updates must contain software images for those models.

This feature is supported in the flex-connect mode, local mode, and Software-Defined Access (SD-Access) wireless scenarios.



Note After applying the AP site filter for per site SMU upgrade, a new image installation will not be allowed without applying the site filter to all the other sites, or removing the existing site filter.

Restrictions

- If APs are not configured to a primary controller, the APs will see the same discovery response from controllers with the APSP image and without the APSP image, causing the APs to flap between two controllers.

Workflow of AP SMU Upgrade

- Run a query to check whether there are ongoing activities, such as AP image predownload or AP rolling upgrade.
- Identify the site or sites to install the SMU in, and set up a site filter.
- Trigger the predownload of SMU to the sites in the site filter.
- Activate the SMU after the predownload is complete.
- Commit the update.



Note You can add more sites to a filter after setting up the filter. However, you have to apply the filter again using the **ap image site-filter file *file-name* apply** command. If you clear the site filter, the update is made on all the remaining sites. Deactivation and rollback of the images are not filtered per site, and are applicable to all the sites.

Rolling AP Upgrade

Rolling AP upgrade is a method of upgrading the APs in a staggered manner such that some APs are always up in the network and provide seamless coverage to clients, while the other APs are selected to be upgraded.



Note The AP images should be downloaded before the rolling upgrade is triggered, so that all the APs that are to be upgraded have the new image version.



Note The time required to complete Rolling AP upgrade depends on factors such as the number of APs, the percentage of APs in each iteration, the controller type, and the connectivity between the controller and the APs. In general, Rolling AP upgrade completion time is the max iteration time (where each iteration can take up to 5 minutes) * expected number of iterations. You use the *iteration expiry time* field of the **show ap upgrade** command output to see the end time.

Rolling AP Upgrade Process

Rolling AP upgrade is done on a per controller basis. The number of APs to be upgraded at a given time, is the percentage of the total number of APs that are connected to the controller. The percentage is capped at a user configured value. The default percentage is 15. The non-client APs will be upgraded before the actual upgrade of APs begin.

The upgrade process is as follows:

1. Candidate AP Set Selection

In this stage, a set of AP candidates are selected based on neighboring AP information. For example, if you identify an AP for upgrade, a certain number (N) of its neighbors are excluded from candidate selection. The N values are generated in the following manner:

If the user configurable capped percentage is 25%, then N=6 (Expected number of iterations =5)

If the user configurable capped percentage is 15%, then N=12 (Expected number of iterations=12)

If the user configurable capped percentage is 5%, then N=24 (Expected number of iterations =22)

If the candidates cannot be selected using the neighboring AP information, select candidates from indirect neighbors. If you still are not able to select candidates, the AP will be upgraded successfully without any failure.



Note After the candidates are selected, if the number of candidates are more than the configured percentage value, the extra candidates are removed to maintain the percentage cap.

2. Client Steering

Clients that are connected to the candidate APs are steered to APs that are not there in the candidate AP list, prior to rebooting the candidate APs. The AP sends out a request to each of its associated clients with a list of APs that are best suited for them. This does not include the candidate APs. The candidate APs are marked as unavailable for neighbor lists. Later, the markings are reset in the AP rejoin and reload process.

3. AP Rejoin and Reload Process

After the client steering process, if the clients are still connected to the candidate AP, the clients are sent a de-authorization and the AP is reloaded and comes up with a new image. A three-minute timer is set for the APs to rejoin. When this timer expires, all the candidates are checked and marked if they have either joined the controller or the mobility peer. If 90% of the candidate APs have joined, the iteration is concluded; if not, the timer is extended to three more minutes. The same check is repeated after three minutes. After checking thrice, the iteration ends and the next iteration begins. Each iteration may last for about 10 minutes.

For rolling AP upgrade, there is only one configuration that is required. It is the number of APs to be upgraded at a time, as a percentage of the total number of APs in the network.

Default value will be 15.

```
Device (config)#ap upgrade staggered <25 | 15 | 5>
```

Use the following command to trigger the rolling AP upgrade:

```
Device#ap image upgrade [test]
```



Note Rolling AP upgrade is not resumed after an SSO. You should run the **ap image upgrade** command to restart the rolling AP upgrade from the beginning and it affects all the APs, including the Mesh APs.

Installing AP Service Package (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Software Management**.
 - Step 2** Click **AP Service Package (APSP)** tab.
 - Step 3** Click **Add**.
 - Step 4** From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose the transfer type to transfer the software image to your device as TFTP, SFTP, FTP, Device, or Desktop (HTTP).
 - a) If you choose **TFTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.

- b) If you choose **SFTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **SFTP Username**, **SFTP Password**, **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
- c) If you choose **FTP** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **FTP Username**, **FTP Password**, **File path**, and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
- d) If you choose **Device** as the **Transport Type**, you need to enter the **File path** and choose a **File System** from the drop-down list.
- e) If you choose **Desktop (HTTPS)** as the **Transport Type**, you need to choose a **File System** from the drop-down list and click **Select File** to navigate to the **Source File Path**.

Step 5 Enter the **File Name** and click **Add File**.

Step 6 From the **AP Upgrade Configuration** section, choose the percentage of APs to be included from the **AP Upgrade per iteration** drop-down list.

Step 7 Click **Apply**.

Installing AP Service Package (CLI)

Use the following procedure to roll out critical bug fixes to a subset of APs using SMU.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install add file flash:<file-name>	Checks for ongoing activities, such as AP image predownload or AP rolling upgrade. If there are no such activities, populates the predownload directory to install a package file to the system.
Step 2	ap image site-filter file <i>file-name</i> add <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device# ap image site-filter file flash:<file-name> add bg118	Adds a site tag to a site filter.
Step 3	ap image site-filter file <i>file-name</i> remove <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device# ap image site-filter file flash:<file-name> remove bg118	(Optional) Removes a site tag from a site filter.
Step 4	ap image predownload Example: Device# ap image predownload	(Optional) Performs predownload of an AP image. This image predownload will be filtered by the site filter, set up in the previous step.
Step 5	install activate file <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install activate file flash:<file-name>	Triggers the AP upgrade in rolling a staggered fashion for the APs added in site filter.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the image update. During the commit, the mapping from file to site is saved in the persistent database so that it is available even after a reload.

Adding a Site to a Filter

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap image site-filter file <i>file-name</i> add <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device# ap image site-filter file flash:<file-name> add bg118	Adds a site tag to a site filter. Repeat this step again to set up a multisite filter.
Step 2	ap image site-filter file <i>file-name</i> apply Example: Device# ap image site-filter file flash:<file-name> apply	Predownloads the image and upgrades the APs based on the site filter.
Step 3	ap image site-filter file <i>file-name</i> clear Example: Device# ap image site-filter file flash:<file-name> clear	Clears the site filter table and predownloads the image and does a rolling AP upgrade to all sites where it is not active.

Deactivating an Image

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install deactivate file flash <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install deactivate file flash:<file-name>	Performs rolling AP upgrade based on the AP models present in the prepare file. Deactivation is not filtered by site. Therefore, deactivation applies to all the sites. Note Action is taken if the APs in a site are not running the SMU that is being deactivated. Only internal tables are updated to remove the SMU.

Roll Back APSP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add profile <i>rollback_profile-name</i> Example: Device# install add profile rollback_id1	(Optional) Moves back to any rollback points in a graceful way with AP image predownload support. Note To get a list of available rollback profile names, use show install profile command.
Step 2	ap image predownload Example: Device# ap image predownload	(Optional) Performs predownload of an AP image. This image predownload will be filtered by the site filter, set up in the previous step.
Step 3	install rollback to <i>rollback_id</i> Example: Device# install rollback to rollback_id1	Performs rollback of the image for the affected AP models. The roll back action is not filtered by site. Therefore, rollback applies to all the sites. Note The APs that are in the base image or in a point before the rollback action takes effect are not affected.

Canceling the Upgrade

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install abort Example: Device# install abort	Aborts the upgrade by resetting the APs in rolling fashion.

Verifying the Upgrade

To see the summary of the AP software install files, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap image file summary
```

```
AP Image Active List
=====
Install File Name: base_image.bin
-----
```

AP Image Type	Capwap Version	Size (KB)	Supported AP models
-----	-----	-----	-----
ap1g1	17.3.0.30	13300 NA	
ap1g2	17.3.0.30	34324 NA	
ap1g3	17.3.0.30	98549 AP803	
ap1g4 OEAP1810	17.3.0.30	34324	AP1852E, AP1852I, AP1832I, AP1830I, AP1810W,
ap1g5	17.3.0.30	23492	AP1815W, AP1815T, OEAP1815, AP1815I, AP1800I, AP1800S, AP1815M, 1542D, AP1542I, AP1100AC, AP1101AC, AP1840I
ap1g6	17.3.0.30	93472	AP2900I, C9117AXI
ap1g6a C9140AXT	17.3.0.30	247377	C9130AXI, C9130AXE, C9140AXI, C9140AXD,
ap1g7	17.3.0.30	23988	AP1900I, C9115AXI, AP1900E, C9115AXE, C9120AXE, C9120AXP, C9120AXI
ap1g8	17.3.0.30	23473	C9105AXI, C9105AXW, C9110AXI, C9110AXE
ap3g1	17.3.0.30	23422 NA	
ap3g2	17.3.0.30	23411 AP1702I	
ap3g3	17.3.0.30	23090	AP3802E, AP3802I, AP3802P, AP4800, AP2802E, AP2802I, AP2802H, AP3800, AP1562E, AP1562I, AP1562D, AP1562PS, IW-6300H-DC, IW-6300H-AC, IW-6300H-DCW, ESW-6300
c1570	17.3.0.30	13000	AP1572E, 1573E, AP1572I
c3700	17.3.0.30	14032	AP3702E, AP3701E, AP3701I, AP3702I, AP3701P, AP3702P, AP2702E, AP2702I, AP3702, IW3702, AP3701, AP3700C
virtApImg	17.3.0.30	177056	APVIRTUAL

AP Image Prepare List**

```
=====
Install File Name: base_image.bin
-----
```

```
=====
Install File Name: base_image.bin
-----
```

AP Image Type	Capwap Version	Size (KB)	Supported AP models
-----	-----	-----	-----
ap1g1	17.3.0.30	13300 NA	
ap1g2	17.3.0.30	34324 NA	
ap1g3	17.3.0.30	98549 AP803	
ap1g4 AP1810W, OEAP1810	17.3.0.30	34324	AP1852E, AP1852I, AP1832I, AP1830I,
ap1g5	17.3.0.30	23492	AP1815W, AP1815T, OEAP1815, AP1815I, AP1800I, AP1800S, AP1815M, 1542D, AP1542I, AP1100AC, AP1101AC, AP1840I
ap1g6	17.3.0.30	93472	AP2900I, C9117AXI


```

    ap1g6a      17.3.0.30      247377      C9130AXI, C9130AXE, C9140AXI,
C9140AXD, C9140AXT

    ap1g7      17.3.0.30      23988      AP1900I, C9115AXI, AP1900E, C9115AXE,
C9120AXE, C9120AXP, C9120AXI

    ap1g8      17.3.0.30      23473      C9105AXI, C9105AXW, C9110AXI, C9110AXE

    ap3g1      17.3.0.30      23422      NA

    ap3g2      17.3.0.30      23411      AP1702I

    ap3g3      17.3.0.30      23090      AP3802E, AP3802I, AP3802P, AP4800, AP2802E,
AP2802I, AP2802H, AP3800, AP1562E, AP1562I, AP1562D, AP1562PS, IW-6300H-DC, IW-6300H-AC,
IW-6300H-DCW, ESW-6300

    c1570      17.3.0.30      13000      AP1572E, 1573E, AP1572I

    c3700      17.3.0.30      14032      AP3702E, AP3701E, AP3701I, AP3702I, AP3701P,
AP3702P, AP2702E, AP2702I, AP3702, IW3702, AP3701, AP3700C

    virtApImg   17.3.0.30      177056      APVIRTUAL

```

**Difference of Active and Prepare list gives images being predownloaded to Access Points.

To see the summary of the AP site-filtered upgrades, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap image site summary
```

```
Install File Name: vwlc_apsp_16.11.1.0_74.bin
```

Site Tag	Prepared	Activated	Committed
bgl-18-1	Yes	Yes	Yes
bgl-18-2	Yes	Yes	Yes
bgl-18-3	Yes	Yes	Yes
default-site-tag	Yes	Yes	Yes

To see the summary of AP upgrades, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap upgrade summary
```

To check the status of an APSP, use the following command:

```
Device# show install summary
```

```
[ Chassis 1 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
```

```
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
```

```
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```
-----
Type St Filename/Version
-----
```

```
APSP I bootflash:vwlc_apsp_16.11.1.0_74.bin
```

```
IMG C 16.11.1.0.1249
```

```
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
```

Verifying of AP Upgrade on the Controller

Use the following **show** command to verify the AP upgrade on the controller:

```
Device #show ap upgrade
```

```
AP upgrade is in progress
From version: 8 16.9.1.6
To version: 9 16.9.1.30
Started at: 03/09/2018 21:33:37 IST
Percentage complete: 0
Expected time of completion: 03/09/2018 22:33:37 IST
Progress Report
-----
```

```
Iterations
-----
```

```
Iteration Start time End time AP count
```

```
-----
0 03/09/2018 21:33:37 IST 03/09/2018 21:33:37 IST 0
```

```
1 03/09/2018 21:33:37 IST ONGOING 0
```

```
Upgraded
-----
```

```
Number of APs: 0
```

```
AP Name Ethernet MAC Iteration Status
-----
```

```
In Progress
-----
```

```
Number of APs: 1
```

```
AP Name Ethernet MAC
-----
```

```
APf07f.06a5.d78c f07f.06cf.b910
```

```
Remaining
-----
```

```
Number of APs: 3
```

```
AP Name Ethernet MAC
-----
```

```
APCC16.7EDB.6FA6 0081.c458.ab30
```

```
AP38ED.18CA.2FD0 38ed.18cb.25a0
```

```
AP881d.fce7.5ee4 d46d.50ee.33a0
```



CHAPTER 15

Efficient Image Upgrade

- [Efficient Image Upgrade, on page 129](#)
- [Enable Pre-Download \(GUI\), on page 130](#)
- [Enable Pre-Download \(CLI\), on page 130](#)
- [Configuring a Site Tag \(CLI\), on page 130](#)
- [Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP \(CLI\), on page 132](#)
- [Trigger Predownload to a Site Tag, on page 133](#)
- [Feature History for Out-of-Band AP Image Download, on page 135](#)
- [Information About Out-of-Band AP Image Download, on page 135](#)
- [Restrictions for Out-of-Band AP Image Download, on page 136](#)
- [Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS \(CLI\), on page 136](#)
- [Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS \(GUI\), on page 137](#)
- [Verifying Image Upgrade, on page 138](#)

Efficient Image Upgrade

Efficient Image upgrade is an optimized method of predownloading images to FlexConnect APs. For each Site Tag with FlexConnect APs joined, one AP per model in that Site Tag is selected as the primary AP, and downloads its image from the controller through the WAN link. Once the primary AP has the downloaded image, the APs in that Site Tag start downloading the image from the primary AP, via TFTP. At most three subordinate APs can download simultaneously from the primary. This reduces load on the WAN link.



Note Make sure that all APs joined via a Site Tag are at the same location, before enabling this feature.



Note By default, the efficient AP image download feature uses port 8443 for HTTPS connections. The listener also uses this port for uploading client debug bundles and transferring Clean Air spectral recording files from the AP to the controller. The port remains open even if you disable the efficient AP image download feature as multiple services map to this listener.

Enable Pre-Download (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Access Points** page, expand the **All Access Points** section and click the name of the AP to edit.
- Step 3** In the **Edit AP** page, click the **Advanced** tab and from the **AP Image Management** section, click **Predownload**.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Enable Pre-Download (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex rr-xyz-flex-profile	Configures a flex profile and enters the flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	predownload Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# predownload	Enables predownload of the image.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site rr-xyz-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile rr-xyz-flex-profile	Configures a flex profile. Note You cannot remove the flex profile configuration from a site tag if local site is configured on the site tag. Note The no local-site command needs to be used to configure the Site Tag as Flexconnect, otherwise the Flex profile config does not take effect.
Step 4	description <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# description "default site tag"	Adds a description for the site tag.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show wireless tag site summary Example: Device# show wireless tag site summary	(Optional) Displays the number of site tags. Note To view detailed information about a site, use the show wireless tag site detailed <i>site-tag-name</i> command. Note The output of the show wireless loadbalance tag affinity wncd <i>wncd-instance-number</i> command displays default tag (site-tag) type, if both site tag and policy tag are not configured.

Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy tag and a site tag to an AP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures a Cisco AP and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note The <i>mac-address</i> should be a wired mac address.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag rr-xyz-policy-tag	Maps a policy tag to the AP.
Step 4	site-tag site-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag rr-xyz-site	Maps a site tag to the AP.
Step 5	rf-tag rf-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# rf-tag rf-tag1	Associates the RF tag.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show ap tag summary Example: Device# show ap tag summary	(Optional) Displays AP details and the tags associated to it.
Step 8	show ap name <ap-name> tag info Example: Device# show ap name ap-name tag info	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag information.
Step 9	show ap name <ap-name> tag detail Example:	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag details.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ap name <i>ap-name</i> tag detail	

Trigger Predownload to a Site Tag

Follow the procedure given below to trigger image download to the APs:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> configure terminal	Enters the privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap image predownload site-tag <i>site-tag</i> start Example: Device# ap image predownload site-tag rr-xyz-site start	Instructs the primary APs to start image predownload.
Step 3	show ap primary list Example: Device# show ap primary list	Displays the list of primary APs per AP model per site tag.
Step 4	show ap image Example: Device# show ap image	Displays the predownloading state of primary and subordinate APs . Note To check if Flexefficient image upgrade is enabled in the AP, use the show capwap client rcb command on the AP console.

The following sample outputs display the functioning of the Efficient Image Upgrade feature:

The following output displays the primary AP.

```
Device# show ap primary list
AP Name                               WTP Mac                AP Model                Site Tag
-----
AP0896.AD9D.3124                      f80b.cb20.2460         AIR-AP2802I-D-K9 ST1
```

The following output shows that the primary AP has started predownloading the image.

```
Device# show ap image
Total number of APs: 6

AP Name           Primary Image  Backup Image  Predownload Status  Predownload Version
Next Retry Time  Retry Count
```

APE00E.DA99.687A	16.6.230.37	0.0.0.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4208	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4480	16.6.230.37	0.0.0.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.5E28	16.6.230.37	16.4.230.35	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP0896.AD9D.3124	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	Predownloading	16.6.230.36
0	0			
AP2C33.1185.C4D0	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			

The following output shows that the primary AP has completed predownload and the predownload has been initiated in the subordinate AP.

Device# **show ap image**

```
Total number of APs: 6
```

AP Name Next Retry Time	Primary Image Retry Count	Backup Image	Predownload Status	Predownload Version
APE00E.DA99.687A	16.6.230.37	0.0.0.0	Initiated	16.6.230.36
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4208	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4480	16.6.230.37	0.0.0.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.5E28	16.6.230.37	16.4.230.35	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP0896.AD9D.3124	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	Complete	16.6.230.36
0	0			
AP2C33.1185.C4D0	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	Initiated	16.6.230.36
0	0			

The following output shows image status of a particular AP.

Device# **show ap name APe4aa.5ddl.99b0 image**

```
AP Name : APe4aa.5ddl.99b0
Primary Image : 16.6.230.46
Backup Image : 3.0.51.0
Predownload Status : None
Predownload Version : 000.000.000.000
Next Retry Time : N/A
Retry Count : 0
```

The following output shows predownload completion on all APs.

Device# **show ap image**

```
Total number of APs: 6
```

```
Number of APs
```

```
Initiated : 0
Predownloading : 0
Completed predownloading : 3
Not Supported : 0
Failed to Predownload : 0
```

AP Name Next Retry Time	Primary Image Retry Count	Backup Image	Predownload Status	Predownload Version
APE00E.DA99.687A	16.6.230.37	16.6.230.36	Complete	16.6.230.36

N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4208	16.6.230.37	8.4.100.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.4480	16.6.230.37	0.0.0.0	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP188B.4500.5E28	16.6.230.37	16.4.230.35	None	0.0.0.0
N/A	0			
AP0896.AD9D.3124	16.6.230.37	16.6.230.36	Complete	16.6.230.36
0	0			
AP2C33.1185.C4D0	16.6.230.37	16.6.230.36	Complete	16.6.230.36
0	0			

Feature History for Out-of-Band AP Image Download

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 7: Feature History for Out-of-Band AP Image Download

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Out-of-Band AP Image Download	The AP image upgrade method is enhanced to make the upgrades faster and more flexible.

Information About Out-of-Band AP Image Download

In WLAN deployments, the APs gather their software image and configuration from the controller (in-band) during the join, predownload, and upgrade phases over the CAPWAP control path. This mechanism has limitations in the context of CAPWAP window size, processing of CAPWAP packets, and parallel image downloads. With image upgrade being a significant activity in the lifecycle of APs, upgrades become a time-consuming activity when the deployment size increases, especially for remote deployments, because the image always comes from the controller, irrespective of the deployment types.

To make upgrades faster and more flexible, the AP image upgrade method is enhanced in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 release. An enhanced webserver (nginx) running on the controller helps the AP image downloads to be available out of the CAPWAP path (out of band).

Note

- HTTPS configuration done at the global level applies to all the APs joining the controller.
- When AP image download over an Out-of-Band method fails, the download falls back to the CAPWAP method, as a result of which the APs will not be stranded.
- AP image download over HTTPS may fail if the HTTPS server Trustpoint has a chain of CA certificates.
- Before you downgrade from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 to an earlier version, ensure that the Out-of-Band AP Image Download feature is disabled, as it is not supported in previous releases.

Restrictions for Out-of-Band AP Image Download

This feature is not supported on the following platforms:

- Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points
- Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Switches
- Cisco Wave 1 Access Points

Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS (CLI)

Before you begin

- HTTPS configuration must be enabled.
- The nginx server must be running on the controller. Use the **show platform software yang-management process** command to check whether the nginx server is running.
- The custom-configured port must be reachable between the controller and the corresponding AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap upgrade method https Example: Device(config)# ap upgrade method https	Configures the corresponding AP to download the image over HTTPS from the controller if the AP supports out-of-band AP image download method. You can check whether the AP supports efficient download method using the show ap config general command. Use the no form of this command to disable out-of-band AP image download method.
Step 3	ap file-transfer https port <i>port_number</i> Example: Device(config)# ap file-transfer https port 8445	Configures a custom port for image download from the nginx server running on the controller. For HTTPS port, the valid values range from 0 to 65535, with a default of 8443. You cannot use port 443 for AP file transfers because it is the default port used for other HTTPS requests. Also, avoid configuring standard and

	Command or Action	Purpose
		well-known ports because the configuration may fail. By default, the Efficient AP image download feature uses port 8443 for HTTPS. If the same port is configured for HTTPS access for controller GUI, then GUI access will not work. In such instances, use a port number other than 8443 for controller GUI Access or configure a different port for AP file transfer over HTTPS instead of 8443. The port 8443 is customazible. A sample config is given below: <pre>Source= wireless controller Destination= Access Point Protocol=HTTPS Destination Port=8443 Source Port=any Description= "Out of Band AP Image Download"</pre>
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Download AP Image from Controller Using HTTPS (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Wireless Global**.
- Step 2** In the **AP Image Upgrade** section, enable the **HTTPS Method** to allow image download on APs from the controller, over HTTPS. This out-of-band file transfer is an efficient method for AP image upgrade.
- Note**
The AP should support out-of-band image download. You can verify this in the **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points** window. Select the AP, and in the **Edit AP > Advanced** tab, view the details of the support in the **AP Image Management** section.
- Step 3** Enter the **HTTPS Port** to designate AP file transfers on that port. Valid values range from 0 to 65535, with the default being 8443. Note that you cannot use port 443 for AP file transfers because that is the default port for other HTTPS requests.
- By default, the Efficient AP image download feature uses port 8443 for HTTPS. If the same port is configured for HTTPS access for controller GUI, then GUI access will not work. In such instances, use a port number other than 8443 for controller GUI Access or configure a different port for AP file transfer over HTTPS instead of 8443.

Step 4 Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

Verifying Image Upgrade

To check whether an AP supports efficient download method, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general

Cisco AP Name : AP002C.C862.E880
=====

Cisco AP Identifier : 002c.c88b.0300
Country Code : Multiple Countries : IN,US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-ABDN
AP Country Code : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
802.11bg : -A
AP Upgrade Out-Of-Band Capability : Enabled
AP statistics : Disabled
```

To view the AP image download statistics, use the following command.

Use the **show ap image** command to see the detailed output.

```
Device# show ap image summary

Total number of APs : 1
Number of APs
    Initiated : 0
    Downloading : 0
    Predownloading : 0
    Completed downloading : 0
    Completed predownloading : 0
    Not Supported : 0
    Failed to Predownload : 0
    Predownload in progress : No
```

To view the method used to download the AP image, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats ap image-download

AP image download info for last attempt
AP Name Count ImageSize StartTime EndTime Diff(secs) Predownload Aborted
Method
-----
mysore1 1 40509440 08/23/21 22:17:59 08/23/21 22:19:06 67 No No
CAPWAP
```

To view the method used to download the AP image, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap upgrade method

AP upgrade method HTTPS : Disabled
```

To view the port used for the AP image transfer, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap file-transfer https summary
```

```
Configured port          : 8443
Operational port         : 8443
```

!If different ports are shown under 'Configured port' and 'Operations port'
!that means custom port configuration has failed and is continuing with the previous port.

!The failure reason could be the input port, which is a well-known port and already in use.

To view the whether an AP supports image download over HTTPS, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP2800 config general | sec Upgrade
```

```
AP Upgrade Out-Of-Band Capability      : Enabled
```

To view the detailed output an AP's pre-image, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap image
```

```
Total number of APs : 2
```

```
Number of APs
```

```
Initiated          : 0
Downloading        : 0
Predownloading     : 0
Completed downloading : 2
Completed predownloading : 0
Not Supported      : 0
Failed to Predownload : 0
Predownload in progress : No
```

```
AP Name      Primary Image Backup Image Predownload Status Predownload Version Next Retry
Time Retry Count Method
```

AP_3800_1	17.11.0.69	17.11.0.71	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	HTTPS				
AP2800	17.11.0.69	17.11.0.71	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	HTTPS				

!The 'method' column indicates the download method used by the AP.



CHAPTER 16

Predownloading an Image to an Access Point

- [Information About Predownloading an Image to an Access Point, on page 141](#)
- [Restrictions for Predownloading an Image to an Access Point, on page 141](#)
- [Predownloading an Image to Access Points \(CLI\), on page 142](#)
- [Predownloading an Image to Access Points \(GUI\), on page 144](#)
- [Predownloading an Image to Access Points \(YANG\), on page 144](#)
- [Monitoring the Access Point Predownload Process, on page 145](#)
- [Information About AP Image Download Time Enhancement \(OEAP or Teleworker Only\), on page 146](#)
- [Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement \(GUI\), on page 147](#)
- [Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement \(CLI\), on page 147](#)
- [Verifying AP Image Download Time Enhancement Configuration, on page 148](#)

Information About Predownloading an Image to an Access Point

To minimize network outages, download an upgrade image to an access point from the device without resetting the access point or losing network connectivity. Previously, you could download an upgrade image to the device and reset it, causing the access point to go into discovery mode. After the access point discovered the controller with the new image, the access point would download the new image, reset it, go into discovery mode, and rejoin the device.

You can now download the upgrade image to the controller. When the controller is up with the upgrade image, the AP joins the controller and moves to Registered state, because the AP image has been predownloaded to the AP.

Restrictions for Predownloading an Image to an Access Point

The following are the restrictions for predownloading an image to an access point:

- The maximum number of concurrent predownloads are limited to 100 per wncd instance (25 for 9800-L) in the controller. However, the predownloads are triggered in sets of 16 per wncd instance at the start, and is repeated every 60 seconds.
- Access points with 16-MB total available memory may not have enough free memory to download an upgrade image and may automatically delete crash information files, radio files, and backup images, if any, to free up space. However, this limitation does not affect the predownload process because the predownload image replaces backup image, if any, on the access point.

- All of the primary, secondary, and tertiary controllers should run the same images. Otherwise, the feature will not be effective.
- At the time of reset, you must make sure that all of the access points have downloaded the image.
- An access point can store only 2 software images.
- The Cisco Wave 1 APs may download the image twice while moving from Cisco AireOS Release 8.3 to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1. This increases the AP downtime during migration.
- The **show ap image** command displays cumulative statistics regarding the AP images in the controller. We recommend that you clear the statistics using the **clear ap predownload statistics** command, before using the show ap image command, to ensure that correct data is displayed.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller supports only self-signed certificates and does not support Cisco certificates. When you move the access points between Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controllers, and if the AP join failure occurs on the Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL controller, execute the **capwap ap erase all** command to remove the hash string stored on the APs.
- During AP image pre-download, the WNCD CPU may rise to 99 percent, which is normal and doesn't cause a crash or client or AP disconnect problems.

Predownloading an Image to Access Points (CLI)

Before you begin

There are some prerequisites that you must keep in mind while predownloading an image to an access point:

- Predownloading can be done only when the device is booted in the install mode.



Note Predownload of the AP image is based on the AP model rather than the image type. Predownload is allowed only when the model exists in the new capability XML file stored and maintained internally in the controller. With the appropriate modification of the capability XML through a controller upgrade, APSP, or APDP installation, the controller can override the existing AP image for a particular model.

- You can copy the new image either from the TFTP server, flash image, or USB.
- If the latest upgrade image is already present in the AP, predownload will not be triggered. Check whether the primary and backup image versions are the same as the upgrade image, using the **show ap image** command.
- The **show ap image** command displays cumulative statistics regarding the AP images in the controller. We recommend that you clear the statistics using the **clear ap predownload statistics** command, before using the **show ap image** command, to ensure that correct data is displayed.
- AP continues to be in predownloading state, if AP flaps post SSO during AP predownload. We recommend that you issue the **ap image predownload abort** command and then the **clear ap predownload stats** command only then the predownload can be initiated again.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install add file bootflash: <i>file-name</i> Example: Device# install add file bootflash:image.bin	The controller software image is added to the flash and expanded.
Step 2	ap image predownload or ap name <i>ap-name</i> image predownload Example: Device# ap image predownload Device# ap name ap1 image predownload	Downloads the new image to all the access points or a specific access point connected to the device.
Step 3	show ap image Example: Device# show ap image	Verifies the access point's predownload status. This command initially displays the status as Predownloading and then moves to Completed, when download is complete.
Step 4	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> image Example: Device# show ap name ap1 image	Provides image details of a particular AP.
Step 5	ap image swap <i>or</i> ap name <i>ap-name</i> image swap <i>or</i> ap image swap completed Example: Device# ap image swap	Swaps the images of the APs that have completed predownload. Note You can swap the AP images using ap image swap command even without pre-downloading a new image to the AP and there are no restrictions or prerequisites to swap the image.
Step 6	install activate Example: Device# install activate	Runs compatibility checks, installs the package, and updates the package status details. For a restartable package, the command triggers the appropriate post-install scripts to restart the necessary processes, and for non-restartable packages it triggers a reload. Note This step reloads the complete controller stack (both primary and secondary controllers, if HA is used).
Step 7	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the activation changes to be persistent across reloads. The commit can be done after activation while the system is up, or after the first reload. If the

	Command or Action	Purpose
		package is activated but not committed, it remains active after the first reload, but not after the second reload.

Predownloading an Image to Access Points (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration** > **Software Management** and click the **Software Upgrade** tab.
- Note that you must be in the Install Mode to continue with the following steps.
- Step 2** Select the **Transport Type**, **File System** and **File Path** of your choice to from receive the file.
- Step 3** Select the **AP Image Predownload** check box.
- If you already have an inactive image file on your device, a dialog box prompts you to remove the unused image and proceed with the latest image download.
- Step 4** Click **Download & Install**.
- This initiates the upgrade process and you can view and verify the predownload progress in the **Status** dialog box. You can also check the progress log by clicking on **Show Logs** icon.
- Step 5** Click the **Save Configuration & Activate** button after the predownload operation is successful.
- Step 6** Click **Yes** to confirm the activate operation.
- This operation runs compatibility checks, installs the package, and updates the package status details. The device reloads after a successful activation. If there are uncommitted files, you are prompted to remove those.
- Step 7** Click the **Commit** button to complete the upgrade process.
-

Predownloading an Image to Access Points (YANG)

YANG can be used with NETCONF and RESTCONF to provide the desired solution of automated and programmable network operations.

The following RPC is used for Predownloading an Image to an Access Point:

```
<rpc xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0" message-id="101">
  <set-rad-predownload-all
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-access-point-cmd-rpc">
    <uuid>12312341231234</uuid>
  </set-rad-predownload-all>
</rpc>
```

For more information on the YANG models, see the Cisco IOS XE Programmability Configuration Guide and YANG Data Models on Github at <https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xr>.

You can contact the Developer Support Community for NETCONF/YANG features using the following link:

<https://developer.cisco.com/>

Monitoring the Access Point Predownload Process

This section describes the commands that you can use to monitor the access point predownload process.

While downloading an access point predownload image, enter the **show ap image** command to verify the predownload progress on the corresponding access point:

```
Device# show ap image
Total number of APs : 1
```

```
Number of APs
  Initiated           : 1
  Predownloading      : 1
  Completed predownloading : 0
  Not Supported       : 0
  Failed to Predownload : 0
```

AP Name	Predownload Ver...	Next Retry Time	Primary Image Retry Count	Backup Image	Predownload Status
AP1	10.0.1.67	NA	10.0.1.66 0	10.0.1.66	Predownloading

```
Device# show ap image
```

```
Total number of APs : 1
```

```
Number of APs
  Initiated           : 1
  Predownloading      : 0
  Completed predownloading : 1
  Not Supported       : 0
  Failed to Predownload : 0
```

AP Name	Predownload Ver...	Next Retry Time	Primary Image Retry Count	Backup Image	Predownload Status
AP1	10.0.1.67	NA	10.0.1.66 0	10.0.1.67	Complete

Use the following command to view the image details of a particular AP:

```
Device# show ap name APe4aa.5dd1.99b0 image
```

```
AP Name : APe4aa.5dd1.99b0
Primary Image : 16.6.230.46
Backup Image : 3.0.51.0
Predownload Status : None
Predownload Version : 000.000.000.000
Next Retry Time : N/A
Retry Count : 0
```

Information About AP Image Download Time Enhancement (OEAP or Teleworker Only)

The wireless controller and the access point (AP) communicate with each other using CAPWAP. The CAPWAP has two channels, namely control and data. The control channel is used to send configuration messages, download images and client keys, or the context to the AP. The control channel has a single window in the current implementation. A single window means that every message that is sent from the controller has to be acknowledged by the AP. The next control packet is not transmitted till the earlier one is acknowledged by the AP.

The AP Image Download Time Enhancement feature adds support to multiple sliding windows for control packets going from controller to AP. The sliding window can be set to N (static) instead of a single window. The request queue size is decided based on the maximum window size the AP supports.

Table 8: Recommended Window Size

Link Bandwidth ¹	Less than 200 ms RTT	Greater than 200 ms RTT
More than 20 Mbps	10	15
Between 5 and 20 Mbps	10	15
Between 1 and 5 Mbps	5	10
Less than 1 Mbps	3	5

¹ The window size recommendation provided in the table is for packet loss of less than one percent (< 1%). If the network supporting the CAPWAP link has packet loss of more than one percent (> 1%), use a smaller value for window size. For good links with round-trip time (RTT) of about 100ms and packet drops of less than half a percent (< 0.5%), use a window size of up to 20 for better performance.



Note

- The window size can be changed only during the AP join process.
- All image upgrades should be in the **install** mode for faster upgrade. Image upgrade should be done from the **one-shot** command to include OEAP predownload.
- Configure the window size only for AP profiles that are exclusively used for Teleworker or Office Extend Access Points (OEAP).
- An AP reload is not required after disabling this feature.
- This feature is supported only on the OEAP profiles.
- GUI does not support AP predownload. Therefore, the AP downloads after disjoining the controller during CAPWAP join phase. This causes a long disruption in the network as the Image download for AP can take upto one hour.

**Important**

If you downgrade the software to Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.4 or earlier from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.1, you should reset the CAPWAP multi window to a single window prior to the downgrade. Failure to do so necessitates a manual AP recovery.

High-Level Workflow of AP Image Download Time Enhancement

1. Select an existing AP join profile or create a new one.
2. Set the CAPWAP window size.
3. Associate the AP join profile to an existing site tag or new one.
4. Apply the site tag to the AP using: Static, Filter, Location, AP, or Default mapping method.

Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join > CAPWAP > Advanced .
Step 2	In the CAPWAP Window Size field, enter the unit of measurement of the window.
Step 3	Click Save & Apply to Device .

Configuring AP Image Download Time Enhancement (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap-profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile capwap_multiwindow	Configures an AP profile.
Step 3	capwap window size <i>window-size</i> Example:	Configures the AP CAPWAP control packet transmit queue size. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ap-profile)# capwap window size 20	Configure the window size only for AP profiles that are exclusively used for teleworker or OEAP. Be aware that any change in window size may impact other APs.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying AP Image Download Time Enhancement Configuration

To view the CAPWAP window size present in an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed | in wind
Capwap window size : 10
```

To view the CAPWAP status and modes, use the following command:

```
Device# show capwap client rcb

OperationState           : UP
Name                     : AP4001.7A39.2D5A
MwarHwVer                : 0.0.0.0
Location                 : default location
ApMode                   : Remote Bridge
ApSubMode                : Not Configured
CAPWAP Path MTU          : 1485
Software Initiated Reload Reason : Reload command
CAPWAP Sliding Window
Active Window Size       : 10
Last Request Send To Application : 184
Expected Seq Num         : 185
Received Seq Num         : 184
Request Packet Count     : 42424
Out Of Range Packets Count : 0
Window Moved Packets Count : 0
In Range Packets Count   : 960
Expected Packets Count   : 41464
```

To view the AP configuration details, including the CAPWAP window size, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general | in Wind

Capwap Active Window Size : 5
Capwap Active Window Size : 10
Capwap Active Window Size : 1
```



CHAPTER 17

N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade

- [N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade, on page 149](#)
- [Configuring Hitless Upgrade, on page 150](#)
- [Verifying Hitless Upgrade, on page 151](#)
- [Feature History for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks, on page 152](#)
- [Information About Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Network, on page 152](#)
- [Prerequisites for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks, on page 153](#)
- [Restrictions for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks, on page 153](#)
- [Use Cases, on page 153](#)
- [N+1 Upgrade and Move to Destination Controller, on page 153](#)
- [N+1 Move to Destination Controller, on page 155](#)
- [Hitless Software Upgrade \(N+1 Upgrade\), on page 156](#)
- [Verifying Site-based Rolling AP Upgrade in a N+1 Network, on page 158](#)
- [Information About Client Steering Enhancement, on page 163](#)
- [Deauthenticate Clients, on page 163](#)

N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade

The existing CAPWAP implementation on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller requires that the controller and all its associated APs have the same software version. It is possible to upgrade a set of APs using the N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade feature. However, all the APs cannot be upgraded at the same time without network downtime.

You can upgrade wireless networks without network downtime when the same version skew is supported between the controller and the APs. This enables the APs to be upgraded in a staggered manner, while still being connected to the same controller. The version skew method can avoid upgrade downtime even for N+1 networks by using N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade feature and a spare controller.

The following is the workflow for the N+1 Hitless Rolling AP Upgrade feature:

1. Establish a mobility tunnel from the controller (WLC1) to a mobility member (WLC2).
2. Upgrade the controller software (WLC1) using the command **install add file bootflash:new_version.bin**.
3. Optionally, you can also upgrade the AP image. For more information, see [Predownloading an Image to an Access Point](#) chapter.

4. Use the **ap image upgrade destination** *controller-name controller-ip report-name* privileged EXEC command to upgrade and move all the APs from WLC1 (source) to WLC2 (destination).
5. Activate the new image in WLC1 using the **install activate** command.
6. Commit the changes using the **install commit** command.
7. Move the APs back to WLC1 from WLC2 using the **ap image move destination** *controller-name controller-ip report-name* command.



Note The **ap image upgrade destination** command does not work without an image pre-download. If you do not perform an image pre-download, use the **ap image move** command to move the APs. When APs download the image and join the destination controller, you must set the iteration time as high. Also, you can customize the iteration time by configuring the **ap upgrade staggered iteration timeout** command.

Configuring Hitless Upgrade

Follow the procedure given below to achieve a zero downtime network upgrade in an N+1 deployment.

Before you begin

- Ensure that the hostname and wireless management IP of the destination controller is provided in the privileged EXEC command.
- Ensure that access points are predownloaded with the image running on the destination controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap image upgrade destination <i>wlc-name wlc-ip</i> Example: Device# ap image upgrade destination wlc2 10.7.8.9	Moves APs to the specified destination controller with the swap and reset command. After this, the parent controller activates new image, and reloads with the new image. After the mobility tunnel comes up, APs are moved back to the parent controller without a swap and reset. Note Ensure that you establish a mobility tunnel from controller (WLC1) to a mobility member (WLC2) before image upgrade.
Step 2	ap image upgrade destination <i>wlc-name wlc-ip</i> Example: Device# ap image upgrade destination wlc2 10.7.8.9	(Optional) Moves APs to the specified destination controller with a swap and reset command. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Perform Steps 2 to 4 only if you are not performing Step 1.
Step 3	ap image move destination <i>wlc-name wlc-ip</i> Example: Device# ap image move destination wlc1 10.7.8.6	Move the APs back to the parent controller.
Step 4	ap image upgrade destination <i>wlc-name wlc-ip [fallback]</i> Example: Device# ap image upgrade destination wlc2 10.7.8.9 fallback	(Optional) Moves APs to the specified destination controller with a swap and reset command. After that, APs are moved back to the parent controller (without a swap and reset) after manual install activate of the new image and reloading of the parent controller.
Step 5	ap image upgrade destination <i>wlc-name wlc-ip [reset]</i> Example: Device# ap image upgrade destination wlc2 10.7.8.9 reset	(Optional) Moves APs to the specified destination controller with a swap and reset command. After this, the parent controller activates the new image and reloads with the new image.

Verifying Hitless Upgrade

Use the following **show** commands to verify hitless upgrade.

To view all the upgrade report names, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap upgrade summary
```

```
Report Name      Start time
-----
AP_upgrade_from_VIGK_CSR_2042018171639 05/20/2018 17:16:39 UTC
```

To view AP upgrade information based on the upgrade report name, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap upgrade name test-report
```

```
AP upgrade is complete
From version: 16.10.1.4
To version: 16.10.1.4
Started at: 05/20/2018 17:16:39 UTC
Percentage complete: 100
End time: 05/20/2018 17:25:39 UTC
Progress Report
-----
Iterations
-----
Iteration Start time End time AP count
-----
0 05/20/2018 17:16:39 UTC 05/20/2018 17:16:39 UTC 0
1 05/20/2018 17:16:39 UTC 05/20/2018 17:25:39 UTC 1
Upgraded
-----
```

```

Number of APs: 1
AP Name Ethernet MAC Iteration Status
-----
AP-SIDD-CLICK 70db.9848.8f60 1 Joined
In Progress
-----
Number of APs: 0
AP Name Ethernet MAC
-----
Remaining
-----
Number of APs: 0
AP Name Ethernet MAC
-----

```

Feature History for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks

This table provides release and related information for the features explained in this module.

These features are available in all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 9: Feature History for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE 17.9.1	Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Network	This feature helps to achieve a zero downtime network upgrade in N+1 networks.

Information About Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Network

The Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in an N+1 Network feature allows you to perform a staggered upgrade of APs in each site in an N+1 deployment.

This feature helps you to effectively achieve a zero-downtime network upgrade in an N+1 network. The existing site filter functionality allows you to perform a software upgrade of a site or all the sites managed by the controller.

In a typical scenario, the software of the APs belonging to a site is upgraded and the network is monitored to see whether it is functioning as intended, before adding more sites to the site filter. If the upgrade fails to meet the objectives, all the sites in the site filter can be removed using the **ap image site-filter file any-image remove-all** command. The **ap image site-filter** command is modified to include the **any-image** keyword as a substitute for the image file name to support the N+1 AP move site filter.

Prerequisites for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks

- The source and destination controllers should be in the same mobility group (preferably running the latest image) but with different AP image versions.
- Image of the destination controller should be available on the source controller.
- Both the source and destination controllers should be in INSTALL mode.

Restrictions for Site-Based Rolling AP Upgrade in N+1 Networks

- Site filter operations are supported only for N+1 upgrade and N+1 move; **fallback** and **reset** options of the **ap image upgrade destination** command are not supported.
- APs can only move across the controllers having the same software.
- The **any** and **remove-all** keywords of the **ap image site-filter** command work only for the N+1 AP upgrade or move. It will not work for other site filter operations such as AP Model Service Pack (APSP) or AP Device Package (APDP).
- A reboot of the source or the destination controller during the N+1 upgrade requires a re-execution of the procedure.

Use Cases

The N+1 deployments are more common compared to 1+1 redundancy deployments. In the N+1 deployments, spare controllers are used and APs can fail over to it whenever their primary controller goes down. For local mode networks, this results in a small network downtime (30 to 40 seconds), during which APs re-discover and re-join the network. However, during network upgrades, the downtime is much longer, and all the devices have to reboot and converge. The feature can effectively provide a zero-downtime network upgrade in an N+1 deployment.

N+1 Upgrade and Move to Destination Controller



Note

- Run all the commands only on the source controller.
- By default, the Rolling AP Upgrade feature sends a basic service set (BSS) transition message to 11v clients to notify them that the AP they are connected to is going down, along with a list of alternate APs. In scenarios where clients are sensitive to roaming, this feature can cause unnecessary packet drops. In such instances, you can disable the 11v message using the **no ap upgrade staggered client-steering** command.

Before you begin

See the *Prerequisites for Site-based Rolling AP Upgrade in an N+1 Network* section.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no ap upgrade staggered client-steering Example: Device# no ap upgrade staggered client-steering	(Optional) Disables client steering.
Step 3	ap upgrade staggered iteration completion min-percent Example: Device(config)# ap upgrade staggered iteration completion 50	(Optional) Configures the minimum percentage of APs that must join the destination controller to signal iteration completion.
Step 4	ap upgrade staggered iteration error action stop Example: Device(config)# ap upgrade staggered iteration error action stop	(Optional) Configures the action to be taken when APs are missing after an iteration during AP upgrade.
Step 5	ap upgrade staggered iteration timeout timeout-duration Example: Device(config)# ap upgrade staggered iteration timeout 18	(Optional) Configures the maximum time allowed per iteration during AP upgrade. Valid values range from 9 to 60.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	ap image site-filter any-image add site-tag Example: Device# ap image site-filter any-image add sitel	Adds a site tag to a site filter. You can repeat this step to set up a multisite filter.
Step 8	ap image move destination controller-name controller-ip Example: Device# ap image move destination controller2 10.9.34.4	Moves the APs to a different controller in the mobility group. Note It is preferable to move the APs to a different controller running the same image.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Wait for the upgrade to complete. If upgrade is not completed successfully, you can use the ap image upgrade destination or ap image move destination commands to restart the upgrade process.
Step 9	ap image site-filter any-image add <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device# ap image site-filter file any-image add site2	Adds additional site tag to a site filter.
Step 10	ap image site-filter any-image apply Example: Device# ap image site-filter file any-image apply	Predownloads the image and upgrades the APs based on the site filter. Note Wait for the upgrade to complete.
Step 11	ap image site-filter any-image clear Example: Device# ap image site-filter file any-image clear	(Optional) Clears the site filter table and predownloads the image and does a rolling AP upgrade to all the sites.
Step 12	ap image site-filter file any-image remove-all Example: Device# ap image site-filter file any-image remove-all	(Optional) Removes all the site filters.

N+1 Move to Destination Controller



Note Run all the commands only on the source controller.

Before you begin

See the *Prerequisites for Site-based Rolling AP Upgrade in an N+1 Network* section.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap image site-filter any-image add <i>site-tag</i> Example:	Adds a site tag to a site filter.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# ap image site-filter any-image add site1	
Step 2	ap image move destination <i>image-name</i> <i>controller-ip</i> Example: Device# ap image move destination controller2 10.9.34.2	Moves the APs back to the parent controller. Note Wait for the upgrade to complete.
Step 3	ap image site-filter any-image add <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device# ap image site-filter any-image add site2	Adds an additional site tag to a site filter.
Step 4	ap image site-filter any-image apply Example: Device# ap image site-filter any-image apply	Upgrades the APs based on the site filter. Note Wait for the upgrade to complete. If upgrade is not completed successfully, use the ap image upgrade destination or ap image move destination command to restart the upgrade process.
Step 5	ap image site-filter any-image clear Example: Device# ap image site-filter any-image clear	(Optional) Clears the site filter table and predownloads the image and does a rolling AP upgrade to all the sites where it is not active.

Hitless Software Upgrade (N+1 Upgrade)

Hitless software upgrade uses the concept of N+1 high availability using a spare controller to upgrade the CAPWAP infrastructure comprising controllers and access points (AP). Depending on what you choose, the APs are upgraded in a staggered fashion, per site, or on all sites, using the Rolling AP upgrade feature thereby avoiding network disruption. This ensures that the clients are serviced by the neighboring APs while one or the selected APs undergo the upgrade process.

The upgrade workflow is as follows :

1. Initiate upgrade on the source controller. You can choose to upgrade all sites or per site based on your preference.
2. Move the APs to the destination controller. APs are upgraded in a staggered fashion using the rolling AP upgrade algorithm.
3. Once all the APs move to the destination controller in multiple iterations, activate the target image on the source controller.
4. The source controller reloads for the new image to take effect.
5. (Optional) Move the APs back to the source controller using the cli commands.

Before you begin

- The controller should be in **INSTALL** mode.
- The controller should be paired with another controller and both should be part of the same mobility group.

The spare controller should be upgraded with the target image.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Software Management**.
- Step 2** From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose an option.
- a) If you choose **My Desktop** as the transport type, click **Select File** to navigate to the file from the **Source File Path** field.
 - b) If you choose **SFTP** as the transport type, enter the source IP address, SFTP username, SFTP password, file path, and select the destination.
 - c) If you choose **FTP** as the transport type, enter the source IP address, FTP username, FTP password, file path, and select the destination.
 - d) If you choose **TFTP** as the transport type, enter the source IP address, file path, and select the destination.
- Note**
In controllers, the IP TFTP source is mapped to the service port by default.
- e) If you choose **Device** as the transport type, choose the file system and file path.
- Note**
In the **File Path** field, enter the complete path from where you want to download the software image file, including the name of the file.
- Step 3** Check the **Enable Hitless Upgrade** check box to allow the APs and the controller to be upgraded.
- Step 4** From the **Site Filter** drop-down list, choose **All Sites** or one or more **Custom Sites**.
- In case you choose to upgrade for **All Sites**, you can optionally enable **Fallback after Upgrade** so that the APs move back to the parent controller after the new image has been activated and the parent controller has reloaded.
- In case you choose a **Custom Site**, select the site from the **Site Tags** drop-down list. In this case, the APs do not move back to the parent controller automatically and you will have to manually move them using CLIs.
- Step 5** In the **Controller IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)** field, enter the source controller's IPv4/IPv6 address.
- Step 6** In the **Controller Name** field, enter the source controller's name.
- Step 7** In the **AP Upgrade Configuration** section, use the **AP Upgrade per Iteration** drop-down list to select the percentage of APs to be upgraded per iteration. This configures the minimum percentage of APs that must join the destination controller to signal completion of iteration.
- Step 8** Check the **Client Steering** check box to move clients attached to APs undergoing an upgrade to other APs. If the clients still persist on the candidate APs, they are disconnected and the APs will reload with the new image.
- Step 9** In the **Accounting Percentage** field, choose the percentage of APs that should join the destination controller after each iteration (of the staggered AP upgrade) to consider the iteration as successful. The default value is 90%.

- Step 10** Tap to select the type of **Accounting Action** to configure for the APs. If you enable **Terminate**, the upgrade is terminated if the configured percentage of APs does not join the mobility peer, and a notification is sent via Syslog message. If you choose **Ignore**, the upgrade continues irrespective of whether the configured percentage of APs are joining the controller or not.
- Step 11** In the **Iteration Expiry** field, select the number of minutes from the drop-down list to configure the expiry time for each iteration.
- Step 12** Click **Download & Install**.
- Step 13** Click **Save Configuration & Activate**.
- Step 14** Click **Commit** to make the activation changes persistent across reloads.

Verifying Site-based Rolling AP Upgrade in a N+1 Network

Use the following **show** commands to check the progress of the upgrade and debugging:

- **show ap summary**
- **show ap tag summary**
- **show ap status**
- **show wireless mobility summary**
- **show ap image**
- **show ap upgrade**
- **show ap upgrade site**
- **show ap upgrade site summary**
- **show ap upgrade name** *report-name*
- **show wireless mobility ap-list**

To view the summary of all the connected Cisco APs, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap summary
```

Number of APs: 8

AP Name	Slots	AP Model	Ethernet MAC	Radio MAC	Location
Country IP Address State					
AP00D7.8F9A.43DE	2	AIR-AP2802I-D-K9	00d7.8f9a.43de	002c.c8df.3ca0	default
location IN	10.9.48.254	Registered			
AP4C77.6D21.9098	2	AIR-AP2802E-N-K9	4c77.6d21.9098	00be.7573.b340	default
location IN	10.10.10.52	Registered			
AP00F2.8B27.BB2C	2	AIR-AP2802I-D-K9	00f2.8b27.bb2c	0896.ad9b.f9e0	default
location IN	10.9.44.51	Registered			
APA023.9F41.5A38	2	AIR-AP2802I-D-K9	a023.9f41.5a38	1880.90f4.7b00	default
location IN	10.10.10.51	Registered			
AP00A3.8E4A.762C	2	AIR-AP2802I-D-K9	00a3.8e4a.762c	1880.90f5.14e0	default
location IN	10.9.48.54	Registered			
AP40CE.2485.D616	2	AIR-AP3802I-D-K9	40ce.2485.d616	4001.7aca.5960	default
location IN	10.9.50.42	Registered			
AP40CE.2485.D62C	2	AIR-AP3802I-D-K9	40ce.2485.d62c	4001.7aca.5aa0	default


```

location      IN      10.10.10.53  Registered
AP2C57.4188.4BC4  3      C9130AXE-D      2c57.4188.4bc4  cc7f.75a8.78e0  default
location      IN      10.9.34.207  Registered

```

To view the summary of all the access points with policy tags, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 8

```

AP Name Misconfigured	AP Mac Tag Source	Site Tag Name	Policy Tag Name	RF Tag Name
AP00D7.8F9A.43DE No	00d7.8f9a.43de Static	site3	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP4C77.6D21.9098 No	4c77.6d21.9098 Static	site3	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP00F2.8B27.BB2C No	00f2.8b27.bb2c Static	site3	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
APA023.9F41.5A38 No	a023.9f41.5a38 Default	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP00A3.8E4A.762C No	00a3.8e4a.762c Static	site1	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP40CE.2485.D616 No	40ce.2485.d616 Static	site2	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP40CE.2485.D62C No	40ce.2485.d62c Static	site2	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag
AP2C57.4188.4BC4 No	2c57.4188.4bc4 Default	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag

To view the status of the access points, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap status
AP Name                                     Status      Mode      Country
-----
AP00A3.8E4A.762C                           Enabled     Local     IN
AP00D7.8F9A.43DE                           Enabled     Monitor   IN
AP00F2.8B27.BB2C                           Enabled     Local     IN
AP2C57.4188.4BC4                           Enabled     Local     IN
AP40CE.2485.D616                           Enabled     Local     IN
AP40CE.2485.D62C                           Enabled     Local     IN
AP4C77.6D21.9098                           Enabled     Local     IN
APA023.9F41.5A38                           Enabled     Local     IN

```

To display the summary of the mobility manager, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless mobility summary

```

Mobility Summary

```

Wireless Management VLAN: 34
Wireless Management IP Address: 10.9.34.5
Wireless Management IPv6 Address:
Mobility Control Message DSCP Value: 48
Mobility High Cipher : False
Mobility DTLS Supported Ciphers: TLS_ECDHE_RSA_AES128_GCM_SHA256, TLS_RSA_AES256_GCM_SHA384,
  TLS_RSA_AES128_CBC_SHA
Mobility Keepalive Interval/Count: 10/3
Mobility Group Name: mobility-1
Mobility Multicast Ipv4 address: 10.0.0.1

```

```

Mobility Multicast Ipv6 address: ::
Mobility MAC Address: 001e.14a5.b3ff
Mobility Domain Identifier: 0x39ab

```

Controllers configured in the Mobility Domain:

IP PMTU	Public Ip	MAC Address	Group Name	Multicast IPv4	Multicast IPv6	Status
10.9.34.5	N/A	001e.14a5.b3ff	mobility-1	0.0.0.0	::	N/A
10.9.34.2	10.9.34.2	001e.bd2d.f2ff	mobility-1	0.0.0.0	::	Up
1385						
10.9.34.3	10.9.34.3	001e.14c1.cbff	mobility-1	0.0.0.0	::	Up
1385						
10.9.34.4	10.9.34.4	001e.140e.4bff	mobility-1	0.0.0.0	::	Up
1385						

To view the cumulative statistics regarding the AP images in the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap image
```

```
Total number of APs : 8
```

```
Number of APs
```

```

Initiated           : 0
Downloading         : 0
Predownloading      : 0
Completed downloading : 0
Completed predownloading : 0
Not Supported       : 0
Failed to Predownload : 0
Predownload in progress : No

```

AP Name	Primary Image	Backup Image	Predownload Status	Predownload Version	Next
Retry Time	Retry Count	Method			
AP00D7.8F9A.43DE	17.9.0.19	17.8.0.74	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP4C77.6D21.9098	17.9.0.19	17.8.0.74	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP00F2.8B27.BB2C	17.9.0.19	17.9.1.19	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
APA023.9F41.5A38	17.9.0.19	17.8.0.74	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP00A3.8E4A.762C	17.9.0.19	17.9.1.19	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP40CE.2485.D616	17.9.0.19	17.9.1.19	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP40CE.2485.D62C	17.9.0.19	17.8.0.82	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				
AP2C57.4188.4BC4	17.9.0.19	17.9.1.19	None	0.0.0.0	N/A
0	N/A				

To verify the AP upgrade on the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap upgrade
```

```
AP upgrade is in progress
```

```

From version: 17.9.0.19
To version: 17.9.1.25

```

```

Started at: 01/28/2022 09:53:07 IST
Configured percentage: 5

```

Percentage complete: 0
 Expected time of completion: 01/28/2022 13:33:07 IST

Client steering: Enabled
 Iteration expiry time: 15 minutes
 Accounting percentage: 95%
 Accounting action: Abort

Rolling AP Upgrade Site Summary

 site3

Progress Report

----- Iterations

Iteration	Start time	End time	AP count
0	01/28/2022 09:53:07 IST	01/28/2022 09:53:07 IST	1
1	01/28/2022 09:53:07 IST	ONGOING	0

Upgraded

 Number of APs: 1

AP Name	Radio MAC	Iteration	Status	Site
AP00D7.8F9A.43DE	002c.c8df.3ca0	0	Rebooted	site3

In Progress

 Number of APs: 1

AP Name	Radio MAC
AP00F2.8B27.BB2C	0896.ad9b.f9e0

Remaining

 Number of APs: 1

AP Name	Radio MAC
AP4C77.6D21.9098	00be.7573.b340

APs not handled by Rolling AP Upgrade

AP Name	Radio MAC	Status	Reason for not handling by Rolling AP Upgrade

To verify the AP upgrade information on the sites, use the following command:

Device# show ap upgrade site

Site-filtered AP upgrade report data

=====

Source controller:	Controller1
Destination controller:	Controller2

From version: 17.9.0.19
 To version: 17.9.1.25
 Site-filters present: Yes

AP image upgrade site summary

Operation: N+1 upgrade

Site Tag	Status
site3	In Progress

AP upgrade reports linked to these site-filters

Start time	Operation type	Report name
01/28/2022 09:53:07 IST	AP image upgrade/move CLI	AP_upgrade_to_Device2_28020229536

To verify the AP image upgrade site summary, use the following command:

Device# show ap upgrade site summary

AP image upgrade site summary

Operation: N+1 upgrade

Site Tag	Status
site3	In Progress

To view AP upgrade information based on the upgrade report name, use the following command:

Device# show ap upgrade name AP_upgrade_to_Device2

AP upgrade is complete

From version: 17.9.0.19

To version: 17.9.1.25

Started at: 01/28/2022 14:12:49 IST
 Configured percentage: 5
 Percentage complete: 100
 End time: 01/28/2022 14:18:59 IST

Client steering: Enabled
 Accounting percentage: 95%
 Iteration expiry time: 15 minutes
 Accounting action: Abort

Rolling AP Upgrade Site Summary

site1
 site2

Progress Report

Iterations

Iteration	Start time	End time	AP count
0	01/28/2022 14:12:49 IST	01/28/2022 14:12:49 IST	0
1	01/28/2022 14:12:49 IST	01/28/2022 14:15:54 IST	1
2	01/28/2022 14:15:54 IST	01/28/2022 14:18:59 IST	1

Upgraded

Number of APs: 2

AP Name	Radio MAC	Iteration	Status	Site
AP40CE.2485.D616	4001.7aca.5960	1	Joined Member	site2

```
AP40CE.2485.D62C      4001.7aca.5aa0      2      Joined Member      site2
```

```
In Progress
```

```
-----
Number of APs: 0
```

```
AP Name                      Radio MAC
```

```
-----
Remaining
```

```
-----
Number of APs: 0
```

```
AP Name                      Radio MAC
```

```
-----
APs not handled by Rolling AP Upgrade
```

```
-----
AP Name      Radio MAC      Status      Reason for not handling by Rolling AP Upgrade
```

To display the list of access points known to the mobility group, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mobility ap-list
```

AP name	AP radio MAC	Controller IP	Learnt from
Unknown	002c.c8df.3ca0	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	00be.7573.b340	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	0896.ad9b.f9e0	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	1880.90f4.7b00	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	1880.90f5.14e0	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	4001.7aca.5960	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	4001.7aca.5aa0	10.9.34.5	Self
Unknown	687d.b45e.4b60	10.9.34.3	Mobility Group
Unknown	cc7f.75a8.78e0	10.9.34.5	Self

Information About Client Steering Enhancement

When access points (APs) of a wireless network are upgraded in a staggered manner, the clients connected to those APs are moved to other APs. During this period, clients that are unaware of an ongoing upgrade may try to reassociate with the same AP. Similarly, new clients may also try to join the AP. To avoid this scenario, Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 introduces the option to not deauthenticate clients connected to the APs that are selected for the upgrade. Using the **no ap upgrade staggered client-deauth** command, you can stop deauthenticating clients before the AP performs an upgrade.

Deauthenticate Clients

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	no ap upgrade staggered client-deauth Example: <pre>Device(config)# no ap upgrade staggered client-deauth</pre>	Stops deauthentication of the clients associated with the AP before the AP starts to upgrade. Client deauthentication affects both the 802.11v clients and non-802.11v clients. If client steering is enabled, then 802.11v clients are sent Basic Set Service (BSS) transition frames. If client steering is disabled and client deauthentication is enabled, deauthentication message is sent to 802.11v clients as well.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 18

NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade

- [NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade, on page 165](#)
- [Upgrading the NBAR2 Protocol Pack, on page 166](#)

NBAR Dynamic Protocol Pack Upgrade

Protocol packs are software packages that update the Network-Based Application Recognition (NBAR) engine protocol support on a device without replacing the Cisco software on the device. A protocol pack contains information on applications that are officially supported by NBAR, and are compiled and packed together. In each application, the protocol pack includes information on application signatures and application attributes. Each software release has a built-in protocol pack bundled with it.

The Application Visibility and Control (AVC) feature (used for deep-packet inspection [DPI]) supports wireless products using a distributed approach that benefits from NBAR running on the access points (AP) or controller whose goal is to run DPI and report the result using NetFlow messages.

The AVC DPI technology supports the ability to update recognized traffic and to define the custom type of traffic (known as custom applications). The NBAR runs on the controller in local mode, and on the APs in Flex and Fabric modes. In local mode, all the traffic coming from the APs are tunneled towards the wireless controller.



Note

- Although NBAR is supported in all the modes, upgrade of NBAR protocol packs is supported only in local mode (central switching) and in FlexConnect mode (central switching).
- Custom applications are available only in local mode (central switching) and in FlexConnect mode (central switching).
- When you upgrade the AVC protocol pack, copy the protocol pack to both RPs (active and standby). Otherwise, the protocol pack on the standby upgrade will fail and cause the synchronization failure crash.
- NBAR is not able to classify traffic accurately when SaaS applications use end-to-end encryption, QUIC, or DoH due to the encryption's impact on classification. In such a case, the encrypted traffic, including DoH and QUIC without SNI, limits the NBAR's ability to send the correct Protocol ID, causing issues with traffic classification.

Protocol packs provide the following features:

- They can be loaded easily and quickly.
- They can be upgraded to a later version protocol pack or revert to an earlier version protocol pack.
- Device reload is not required.
- They do not disrupt any service.

Protocol Pack Upgrade

Using protocol pack upgrades, you can update the NBAR engine to recognize new types of protocols or traffic without updating the entire switch or appliance image. It also eliminates the need to restart the entire system.

NBAR protocol packs are available for download from Cisco Software Center: <https://software.cisco.com/download/navigator.html>

Custom Applications

Using custom applications, you can force the NBAR engine to recognize traffic based on a set of custom rules, for example, destination IP, hostname, URL, and so on.

The custom application names then appear in the web UI or in the NetFlow collector.

Upgrading the NBAR2 Protocol Pack

Follow the procedure given below to upgrade the NBAR2 protocol pack:

Before you begin

Download the protocol pack from [Software Download](#) page and copy it into the bootflash.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip nbar protocol-pack bootflash:pack-name Example: Device(config)# ip nbar protocol-pack bootflash:mypp.pack	Loads the protocol pack.



CHAPTER 19

Wireless Sub-Package for Switch

- [Introduction to Wireless Sub-package, on page 167](#)
- [Booting in Install Mode, on page 168](#)
- [Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step \(GUI\), on page 169](#)
- [Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step, on page 169](#)
- [Multi-step Installation of Sub-Package, on page 170](#)
- [Installing on a Stack, on page 170](#)
- [Upgrading to a Newer Version of Wireless Package, on page 171](#)
- [Deactivating the Wireless Package, on page 171](#)
- [Enabling or Disabling Auto-Upgrade, on page 172](#)

Introduction to Wireless Sub-package

Wireless-only Fabric uses fabric constructs to garner the benefits of a fabric. In this architecture, a fabric is built on top of existing traditional network designs such as multi-tier, Routed Access, and VSS network. It uses a LISP control plane together with VXLAN encapsulation for the overlay data plane traffic. The wireless control plane remains intact with CAPWAP tunnels initiating on the APs and terminating on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller or AireOS controller. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller can function in a dedicated appliance, directly in a switch, or in a VM.

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Switch delivers all the benefits of a centralized control and management plane (easy to configure, upgrade, troubleshoot, etc) and the maximum throughput or performance of a distributed forwarding plane. The distributed data plane allows services such as AVC to scale. In this new model, the wireless control plane is not split between MC and MA. The switch is detached from the wireless control plane and the controller takes care of the wireless function and the traffic switching is done by the Cisco Access Switch.

Since the wireless functionality is required to be enabled only on few nodes of the network, you can install Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller as a separate package on the switch on a need basis. The sub-package is installed on top of the base image and a reload is required to activate the sub-package.



Note

The sub-package is an optional binary that contains the entire Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller software.



Note SNMP is not supported on Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless Controller for Switch.

How to Install Wireless Package

1. Install the base image (without wireless) on the switch.
2. Install the wireless package on the switch.
3. Upgrade the AP image.
4. Reload the switch.
5. Enable wireless on the switch using the **wireless-controller** configuration command, and configure wireless features.

How to Remove Wireless Package

1. Uninstall the wireless package from the switch.
2. Reload the switch.
3. Run the **write** command. This removes the wireless configuration from the startup-configuration.

Upgrading to a Newer Version of Wireless Package

1. Install the base image (without wireless) on the switch.
2. Install the updated wireless package.
3. Reload the switch.
4. Commit the installation.

Booting in Install Mode

Use the procedure given below to boot the switch in install-mode:

Before you begin

The sub-package does not work in bundle-mode. Use the **show version** command to verify the boot mode.

Procedure

Step 1 **install add file** *image.bin* **location activate commit.**

This command moves the switch from bundle-mode to install-mode. Note that *image.bin* is the base image.

Step 2 Click **yes** to all the prompts.

Step 3 **reload**

Reloads the switch. Ensure that you boot from *flash:packages.conf*. After the reload, the switch will be in install-mode.

Note

During Install mode image upgrade/downgrade, “Install add file” with *flash:<file_name>* command is not supported. Instead of that “bootflash:<filename>” needs to be used.

```
Install add file bootflash:<file_name> activate commit
```

What to do next

Verify the boot mode using the **show version** command.

Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Administration > Software Management > Software Upgrade .
Step 2	Choose the upgrade mode from the Upgrade Mode drop-down list, the transport type from the Transport Type drop-down list and enter the Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6) , the File System and choose the location from the Source File Path drop-down list.
Step 3	Click Download & Install .
-

Installing Sub-Package in a Single Step

Use the procedure given below to install sub-package in a single step:

Before you begin

- Ensure that the switch is in install-mode.
- Ensure that you boot only from *flash:packages.conf*.

Procedure

-
Step 1	install add file <i>flash:<controller>.bin</i> activate commit
- Installs the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Switch sub-package.

Note

The sub-package (flash:<controller>.bin) is available on www.cisco.com. You can also install the sub-package directly from TFTP server.

Step 2 Click **yes** to all the prompts.

What to do next

Use the **show install summary** command to verify the installed image or package.

Multi-step Installation of Sub-Package

Use the procedure given below to install sub-package:

Before you begin

- Ensure that the switch is in install-mode.
- Ensure that you boot only from *flash:packages.conf*.

Procedure

- Step 1** **install add file** *flash:<controller>.bin*
- The sub-package is added to the flash and expanded.
- Step 2** **install activate file** *flash:<controller>.bin*
- Installs the sub-package.
- Step 3** **install commit**
- Completes the installation by writing the files.
-

What to do next

Use the **show install summary** command to verify the installed image or package.

Installing on a Stack

You can install the package on a stack using either [Single-step Package Installation](#) or [#unique_222](#).

If a new member joins the stack, the two possible scenarios are:

- **If auto-upgrade is enabled:** The required software is installed on to the new member. It will match the version of software running on the stack as well as the wireless package.

- **If auto-upgrade is disabled:** As the software version is not the same as in the stack, the new member will remain in version mismatch state and it will not join the stack. You have to manually run the **install autoupgrade** command in EXEC mode to initiate the auto-upgrade procedure.

Upgrading to a Newer Version of Wireless Package

Use the procedure given below to upgrade to a newer version of wireless package:

Procedure

-
Step 1	install add file <i>flash:<base-image>.bin</i> The base image (without wireless) is added to the flash and expanded.
Step 2	install add file <i>flash:<controller-sub-package>.bin</i> The sub-package is added to the flash and expanded.
Step 3	install active Installs the base image and sub-package and triggers a reload. However, you can also rollback to the previous state after the reload.
Step 4	install commit Completes the installation by writing the files.
-

Deactivating the Wireless Package

Follow the procedure given below to deactivate the wireless sub-package:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	install deactivate file <i>flash:<controller>.bin</i> Example: Device# install deactivate file flash:<controller>.bin	Removes the package and forces the switch to reboot.
Step 2	install commit Example: Device# install commit	Commits the switch without wireless package.

Enabling or Disabling Auto-Upgrade

Follow the procedure given below to enable or disable auto-upgrade:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	software auto-upgrade enable Example: Device(config)# software auto-upgrade enable	Enables software auto-upgrade.
Step 2	no software auto-upgrade enable Example: Device(config)# no software auto-upgrade enable	Disables software auto-upgrade.



PART III

Lightweight Access Points

- [Countries and Regulations, on page 175](#)
- [Access Points Modes , on page 181](#)
- [Security, on page 265](#)
- [AP Joining, on page 277](#)
- [AP Management, on page 285](#)
- [AP Configuration, on page 331](#)
- [Secure Data Wipe, on page 375](#)
- [Troubleshooting Lightweight Access Points, on page 377](#)



CHAPTER 20

Countries and Regulations

- [Information About Country Codes, on page 175](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes, on page 175](#)
- [Configuring Country Codes \(GUI\), on page 176](#)
- [Configuring Country Codes \(CLI\), on page 176](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Configuring Country Codes, on page 178](#)
- [Information About Regulatory Compliance Domain, on page 179](#)

Information About Country Codes

Controllers and access points are designed for use in many countries with varying regulatory requirements. The radios within the access points are assigned to a specific regulatory domain at the factory (such as -E for Europe), but the country code enables you to specify a particular country of operation (such as FR for France or ES for Spain). Configuring a country code ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels are compliant with country-specific regulations.

Information About Japanese Country Codes

Country codes define the channels that can be used legally in each country. These country codes are available for Japan:

- J2: Allows only -P radios to join the controller
- J4: Allows 2.4G JPQU and 5G PQU to join the controller.

Prerequisites for Configuring Country Codes

- Generally, you should configure one country code per device; you configure one code that matches the physical location of the device and its access points. You can configure up to 200 country codes per device. This multiple-country support enables you to manage access points in various countries from a single device.
- When the multiple-country feature is used, all the devices that are going to join the same RF group must be configured with the same set of countries, configured in the same order.
- Access points are capable of using all the available legal frequencies. However, access points are assigned to the frequencies that are supported in their relevant domains.

- The country list configured on the RF group leader determines which channels the members will operate on. This list is independent of which countries have been configured on the RF group members.
- For devices in the Japan regulatory domain, you should have one or more Japan country codes (JP, J2, or J3) configured on your device at the time you last booted your device.
- For devices in the Japan regulatory domain, you should have one or more Japan country codes (J2, or J4) configured on your device at the time you last booted your device.
- For devices in the Japan regulatory domain, you must have at least one access point with a -J regulatory domain joined to your device.
- You cannot delete any country code using the configuration command **wireless country country-code** if the specified country was configured using the **ap country list** command and vice-versa.

Configuring Country Codes (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Access Points > Country .
Step 2	On the Country page, select the check box for each country where your access points are installed. If you selected more than one check box, a message is displayed indicating that RRM channels and power levels are limited to common channels and power levels.
Step 3	Click Apply .
-

Configuring Country Codes (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	show wireless country supported Example: Device# show wireless country supported	Displays a list of all the available country codes.
Step 3	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11b/g network, if you use 24ghz. Disables the 802.11a network, if you use 5ghz. Disables the 802.11 6GHz network, if you use 6ghz.
Step 5	ap country <i>country_code</i> Example: Device(config)# ap country IN	Configures country code on the controller, so that access points joining controller matches the country code and its corresponding regulatory domain codes for the AP. Note More than one country code can be configured.
Step 6	wireless country <i>country_code</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless country IN	Configures 200 country codes per device. Note This CLI is applicable for deployments having more than 20 countries.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	show wireless country configured Example: Device# show wireless country configured	Displays the configured countries.
Step 9	show wireless country channels Example: Device# show wireless country channels	Displays the list of available channels for the country codes configured on your device. Note Perform Steps 9 through 17 only if you have configured multiple country codes in Step 6.
Step 10	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 11	no ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Enables the 802.11b/g network, if you use 24ghz. Enables the 802.11a network, if you use 5ghz. Enables the 802.11 6-GHz network, if you use 6ghz.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 12	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 13	ap name cisco-ap shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP02 shutdown	Disables the access point. Note Ensure that you disable only the access point for which you are configuring country codes.
Step 14	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 15	ap name cisco-ap country country_code Example: Device# ap name AP02 country US	Assigns each access point with a country code from the controller country code list. Note • Ensure that the country code that you choose is compatible with the regulatory domain of at least one of the access point's radios. • Disable the access point before changing country code.
Step 16	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 17	ap name cisco-ap no shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP02 no shutdown	Enables the access point.

Configuration Examples for Configuring Country Codes

Viewing Channel List for Country Codes

This example shows how to display the list of available channels for the country codes on your device:

```
Device# show wireless country channels
```

```
Configured Country.....: US - United States
KEY: * = Channel is legal in this country and may be configured manually.
      A = Channel is the Auto-RF default in this country.
      . = Channel is not legal in this country.
      C = Channel has been configured for use by Auto-RF.
```

```

      x = Channel is available to be configured for use by Auto-RF.
      (-,-) = (indoor, outdoor) regulatory domain allowed by this country.
-----:+++++-----
802.11bg      :
Channels      :           1 1 1 1 1
              : 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4
-----:+++++-----
(-A , -AB ) US : A * * * * A * * * * A . . .
Auto-RF        : . . . . .
-----:+++++-----
802.11a      :           1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Channels      : 3 3 3 4 4 4 4 4 5 5 6 6 0 0 1 1 2 2 2 3 3 4 4 5 5 6 6
              : 4 6 8 0 2 4 6 8 2 6 0 4 0 4 8 2 6 0 4 8 2 6 0 9 3 7 1 5
-----:+++++-----
(-A , -AB ) US : . A . A . A . A A A A A * * * * * . . . * * * A A A A *
Auto-RF        : . . . . .
-----:+++++-----
4.9GHz 802.11a :
Channels      :           1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 2
              : 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 1 2 3 4 5 6
-----:+++++-----
US (-A , -AB ) : * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * A * * * * * A
Auto-RF        : . . . . .

```

Information About Regulatory Compliance Domain

Controllers and access points (AP) are designed for use in many countries with varying regulatory requirements. Country code enables to specify a particular country of operation (such as FR for France or ES for Spain). Configuring a country code ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels are compliant with country-specific regulations.

This feature helps to reduce the number of regulatory domains by modifying the existing pre-provision domains workflow to determine the regulatory domain at runtime for each country code. A new Rest of World (RoW) domain has been introduced and merged to include the nine pre-existing domains. Every AP can determine its own regulatory domain from one of these domains, with the regulated power table and the allowed radio channels.



Note The transmission power value in the TPC IE of the beacon can differ from that of the transmission power value of the AP displayed in the **show controllers dot11radio** command, by a maximum difference of 2 dB. The maximum deviation allowed in TPC IE of beacon is 2 dB.

Global Country-Level Domains

For detailed information about the power table and supported channels of countries in the global domain for 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, 6-GHz, and Rest of World domains, see [Cisco Catalyst 9100AX Access Points Technical Reference](#).



CHAPTER 21

Access Points Modes

- [Information about Sniffer, on page 182](#)
- [Information About XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support, on page 183](#)
- [Feature History for Sniffer Mode, on page 183](#)
- [Prerequisites for Sniffer, on page 183](#)
- [Restrictions on Sniffer, on page 183](#)
- [How to Configure Sniffer, on page 184](#)
- [Verifying Sniffer Configurations, on page 188](#)
- [Verifying XOR Radio Role Sniffer Configuration, on page 188](#)
- [Examples for Sniffer Configurations and Monitoring, on page 189](#)
- [Introduction to Monitor Mode, on page 189](#)
- [Enable Monitor Mode \(GUI\), on page 190](#)
- [Enable Monitor Mode \(CLI\), on page 190](#)
- [Feature History for Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Access Points, on page 191](#)
- [Information About Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Series Access Points, on page 191](#)
- [Regulatory Domain, on page 192](#)
- [Configuring Management Mode Migration \(GUI\), on page 195](#)
- [Configuring the AP Management Mode \(CLI\), on page 196](#)
- [Verifying the Management Mode Migration Details, on page 197](#)
- [Information About FlexConnect, on page 198](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for FlexConnect, on page 202](#)
- [Configuring a Site Tag, on page 205](#)
- [Configuring a Policy Tag \(CLI\), on page 206](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point \(GUI\), on page 207](#)
- [Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP \(CLI\), on page 208](#)
- [Linking an ACL Policy to the Defined ACL \(GUI\), on page 209](#)
- [Applying ACLs on FlexConnect, on page 209](#)
- [Configuring FlexConnect, on page 210](#)
- [Flex AP Local Authentication \(GUI\), on page 216](#)
- [Flex AP Local Authentication \(CLI\), on page 217](#)
- [Flex AP Local Authentication with External Radius Server, on page 219](#)
- [Configuration Example: FlexConnect with Central and Local Authentication , on page 222](#)
- [NAT-PAT for FlexConnect, on page 222](#)

- [Split Tunneling for FlexConnect, on page 227](#)
- [VLAN-based Central Switching for FlexConnect, on page 234](#)
- [OfficeExtend Access Points for FlexConnect, on page 236](#)
- [Proxy ARP, on page 241](#)
- [Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment, on page 242](#)
- [Information About FlexConnect High Scale Mode, on page 245](#)
- [Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points, on page 246](#)
- [Feature History for OEAP Link Test, on page 252](#)
- [Information About OEAP Link Test, on page 252](#)
- [Configuring OEAP Link Test \(CLI\), on page 252](#)
- [Performing OEAP Link Test \(GUI\), on page 253](#)
- [Verifying OEAP Link Test, on page 253](#)
- [Feature History for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 254](#)
- [Information About Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 254](#)
- [Prerequisites for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 255](#)
- [Restrictions for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 255](#)
- [Use Cases for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 256](#)
- [Workflow to Configure Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling, on page 256](#)
- [Create an IP Address ACL \(CLI\), on page 256](#)
- [Create a URL ACL \(CLI\), on page 257](#)
- [Add an ACL to a FlexConnect Profile, on page 258](#)
- [Enable Split Tunneling in a Policy Profile, on page 259](#)
- [Verifying the Cisco OEAP Split Tunnel Configuration, on page 260](#)
- [AP Survey Mode, on page 260](#)
- [Information About AP Deployment Mode, on page 261](#)
- [Use Case for AP Deployment Mode, on page 261](#)
- [Configuring AP Deployment Mode \(GUI\), on page 261](#)
- [Configuring AP Deployment Mode \(CLI\), on page 262](#)
- [Verifying AP Deployment Mode, on page 263](#)

Information about Sniffer

The controller enables you to configure an access point as a network “sniffer”, which captures and forwards all the packets on a particular channel to a remote machine that runs packet analyzer software. These packets contain information on time stamps, signal strength, packet sizes, and so on.

Sniffers allow you to monitor and record network activity, and detect problems.

The packet analyzer machine configured receives the 802.11 traffic encapsulated using the Airopeek protocol from the controller management IP address with source port UDP/5555 and destination UDP/5000.

You must use **Clear** in AP mode to return the AP back to client-serving mode, for example the local mode or FlexConnect mode depending on the remote site tag configuration.



Note It is recommended not to use the AP command to change the CAPWAP mode.

Information About XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support

The XOR radio in APs like Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and the 9100 series AP models support sniffer role in single radio interface.

The XOR radio offers the ability to operate as a single radio interface in many modes. This eliminates the need to place the entire AP into a mode. When this concept is applied to a single radio level, it is termed as role.

From this release onwards, Sniffer is the new supported role along with the Client Serving and Monitor roles.



Note The radio role is supported in Local and FlexConnect modes.

Feature History for Sniffer Mode

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 10: Feature History for Sniffer Mode

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1	XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support on the Access Point	The XOR radio in APs like Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and the 9100 series AP models support sniffer role in single radio interface.

Prerequisites for Sniffer

To perform sniffing, you need the following hardware and software:

- A dedicated access point—An access point configured as a sniffer cannot simultaneously provide wireless access service on the network. To avoid disrupting coverage, use an access point that is not part of your existing wireless network.
- A remote monitoring device—A computer capable of running the analyzer software.
- Software and supporting files, plug-ins, or adapters—Your analyzer software may require specialized files before you can successfully enable.

Restrictions on Sniffer

- Supported third-party network analyzer software applications are as follows:

- Wireshark
- Wildpackets Omnipcap or Airocap
- AirMagnet Enterprise Analyzer
- Wireshark
- The latest version of Wireshark can decode the packets by going to the Analyze mode. Select **decode as**, and switch UDP5555 to decode as PEEKREMOTE..
- Sniffer mode is not supported when the controller L3 interface is the Wireless Management Interface (WMI).
- When an AP or a radio operates in the sniffer mode, irrespective of its current channel width settings, the AP sniffs or captures only on the primary channel.

**Note**

As both Cisco Catalyst 9166I and 9166D APs have XOR radios, a Board Device File (BDF) has to be loaded to initialize radio 2 for the radios of these APs to work as expected. While the BDF is being loaded and for the file to be loaded correctly, the firmware has to be made non-operational and radios have to be reset. This operation of radio reset due to firmware being non-operational for the purposes of loading the BDFs is deliberate and is an expected behavior. This operation can be observed in both the controller and Cisco Catalyst Center. We recommend that you ignore the core dump that is generated due to this deliberate operation.

How to Configure Sniffer

Configuring an Access Point as Sniffer (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** On the **General** tab, update the name of the AP. The AP name can be ASCII characters from 33 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
- Step 3** Specify the physical location where the AP is present.
- Step 4** Choose the **Admin Status** as **Enabled** if the AP is to be in enabled state.
- Step 5** Choose the mode for the AP as *Sniffer*.
- Step 6** In the **Tags** section, specify the appropriate policy, site, and RF tags that you created on the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags** page.

Note

If the AP is in sniffer mode, you do not want to assign any tag.

- Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
- Step 8** Choose the mode for the AP as **Clear** to return the AP back to the client-serving mode depending on the remote site tag configuration.

Note

All the radios will be set to manual mode when you change the AP mode to Sniffer mode. Simultaneously, a warning message will be displayed informing you to convert the radio submode back to AUTO, if required, while changing the mode from Sniffer to other.

Configuring an Access Point as Sniffer (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mode sniffer Example: Device# ap name access1 mode sniffer	Configures the access point as a sniffer. Where, <i>ap-name</i> is the name of the Cisco lightweight access point. Use the no form of this command to disable the access point as a sniffer.

Enabling or Disabling Sniffing on the Access Point (GUI)

Before you begin

Change the access point AP mode to sniffer mode.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** On the **Access Points** page, click the AP name from the 6 GHz, 5 GHz, or 2.4 GHz list.
- Step 3** In the **Role Assignment** section, select the **Assignment Method** as *Sniffer*.
- Step 4** In the **Sniffer Channel Assignment** section, check the **Sniffer Channel Assignment** checkbox to enable.
Uncheck the checkbox to disable sniffing on the access point.
- Step 5** From the **Sniff Channel** drop-down list, select the channel.

Note
By default, the **Sniff Channel** is set to 36 for the **5 GHz** and 1 for the **2.4 GHz**.
- Step 6** Enter the IP address in the **Sniffer IP** field.

To validate the IP address, click **Update & Apply to Device**. If the IP address is valid, the **Sniffer IP Status** displays *Valid*.

Step 7**Note**

The section will be enabled for editing only if the **Assignment Method** is set to **Custom**.

In the **RF Channel Assignment** section, configure the following:

- From the **RF Channel Width** drop-down list, select the channel width.
- From the **Assignment Method** drop-down list, choose the type of assignment.

Note

If you choose Custom, you must select a channel width and specify an RF channel number to the access point radio.

Step 8

Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Enabling or Disabling Sniffing on the Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> sniff { dot11 6Ghz slot 3 channel <i>server-ip-address</i> dot11a <i>channel server-ip-address</i> dot11b <i>channel server-ip-address</i> dual-band <i>channel server-ip-address</i> } Example: Device# ap name access1 sniff dot11b 1 9.9.48.5	Enables sniffing on the access point. • <i>channel</i> is the valid channel to be sniffed. For 802.11a, the range is 36 to 165. For 802.11b, the range is 1 to 14. For dot11 6Ghz, the range is between 1 and 233. • <i>server-ip-address</i> is the IP address of the remote machine running Omnippeek, Airopeek, AirMagnet, or Wireshark software.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> no sniff { dot116Ghz dot11a dot11b dual-band } Example: Device# ap name access1 no sniff dot116ghz	Disables sniffing on the access point.

Configuring XOR Radio Role Sniffer Support on the Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {dual-band} shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP687D.B45C.189C dot11 dual-band shutdown	Shutdown the XOR radio.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {dual-band} role manual {client-serving} Example: Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving	Converts the XOR radio role to manual.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {dual-band} band {5ghz 24ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP687D.B45C.189C dot11 dual-band band 5ghz	Configures XOR radio to manually operate in a specific band.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {dual-band} radio role manual sniffer channel <i>channel-number</i> ip <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device# ap name AP687D.B45C.189C dot11 dual-band radio role manual sniffer channel 100 ip 9.4.197.85	Enables XOR radio role Sniffer support on AP from the controller. Where, • <i>ap-name</i> is the name of the Cisco lightweight access point. • <i>channel-number</i> is the channel number.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> no dot11 {dual-band} shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP687D.B45C.189C no dot11 dual-band shutdown	Unshuts the XOR radio.
Step 7	end Example: Device# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Note When configuring the radio to work as a Sniffer in the 5-GHz band, you will need to change the band of the radio manually as in Step 4 .

Verifying Sniffer Configurations

Table 11: Commands for verifying sniffer configurations

Commands	Description
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> config dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz dual-band}	Displays the sniffing details.
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> config slot <i>slot-ID</i>	Displays the sniffing configuration details. <i>slot-ID</i> ranges from 0 to 3. All access points have slot 0 and 1.

Verifying XOR Radio Role Sniffer Configuration

To verify the XOR radio role sniffer configuration for a given AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.189C config slot 0
```

```

Sniffing                               : Enabled
Sniff Channel                           : 6
Sniffer IP                             : 9.4.197.85
Sniffer IP Status                       : Valid
ATF Mode                               : Disable
ATE Optimization                        : N/A
AP Submode                             : Not Configured
Remote AP Debug                         : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level             : information
Software Version                       : 17.9.0.18
Boot Version                           : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version                       : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period                  : 60
primary_discovery_timer                 : 120
LED State                              : Enabled
LED Flash State                        : Enabled
LED Flash Timer                        : 0
PoE Pre-Standard Switch                 : Disabled
PoE Power Injector MAC Address          : Disabled
Power Type/Mode                        : PoE/Full Power
Number of Slots                        : 4
AP Model                               : C9136I-B
IOS Version                            : 17.9.0.18
Reset Button                           : Disabled
AP Serial Number                       : FOC25322JJZ
AP Certificate Type                     : Manufacturer Installed Certificate
AP Certificate Expiry-time              : 08/09/2099 20:58:26
AP Certificate issuer common-name       : High Assurance SUDI CA
AP Certificate Policy                   : Default
AP CAPWAP-DTLS LSC Status
    Certificate status                   : Not Available
AP 802.1x LSC Status
    Certificate status                   : Not Available
AP User Name                           : admin
AP 802.1X User Mode                     : Global
AP 802.1X User Name                     : Not Configured
Cisco AP System Logging Host            : 255.255.255.255

```

```

AP Up Time : 4 hours 20 minutes 55 seconds
AP CAPWAP Up Time : 4 hours 16 minutes 17 seconds
Join Date and Time : 01/19/2022 03:06:12

Attributes for Slot 0
  Radio Type : 802.11ax - 2.4 GHz
  Radio Mode : Sniffer
  Radio Role : Sniffer
  Maximum client allowed : 400
  Radio Role Op : Manual
  Radio SubType : Main
  Administrative State : Enabled
  Operation State : Up

```

Examples for Sniffer Configurations and Monitoring

This example shows how to configure an access point as Sniffer:

```
Device# ap name access1 mode sniffer
```

This example shows how to enable sniffing on the access point:

```
Device# ap name sniffer dot11 5ghz sniff 44 1.1.1.1
```

This example shows how to disable sniffing on the access point:

```
Device# ap name access1 no sniff dot11b
```

This example shows how to display the sniffing configuration details:

```
Device# show ap name access1 config dot11 24ghz
Device# show ap name access1 config slot 0
```

Introduction to Monitor Mode

To optimize the monitoring and location calculation of RFID tags, you can enable tracking optimization on up to four channels within the 2.4-GHz band of an 802.11b/g/x access point radio. This feature allows you to scan only the channels on which tags are usually programmed to operate (such as channels 1, 6, and 11).



Note You can move an AP to a particular mode (sensor mode to local mode or flex mode) using the site tag with the corresponding mode. If the AP is not tagged to any mode, it will fall back to the mode specified in the default site tag.

You must use clear in AP mode to return the AP back to client-serving mode, for example the local mode or FlexConnect mode depending on the remote site tag configuration.

Enable Monitor Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Access Points** page, expand the **All Access Points** section and click the name of the AP to edit.
- Step 3** In the **Edit AP** page, click the **General** tab and from the **AP Mode** drop-down list, choose **Monitor**.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
- Step 5** Choose the mode for the AP as **clear** to return the AP back to the client-serving mode depending on the remote site tag configuration.
-

Enable Monitor Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mode monitor Example: Device# ap name 3602a mode monitor	Enables monitor mode for the access point.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> monitor tracking-opt Example: Device# ap name 3602a monitor tracking-opt	Configures the access point to scan only the Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) channels supported by its country of operation.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> monitor-mode dot11b fast-channel [<i>first-channel second-channel third-channel fourth-channel</i>] Example: Device# ap name 3602a monitor dot11b 1 2 3 4	Chooses up to four specific 802.11b channels to be scanned by the access point. In the United States, you can assign any value from 1 to 11 (inclusive) to the channel variable. Other countries support additional channels. You must assign at least one channel.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 radio role manual monitor Example: Device# ap name cisco-ap dot11 6ghz slot 3 radio role manual monitor	slot 3 radio role manual monitor Configures the 802.11 6-GHz radio role manual monitor
Step 5	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} channel Example:	Shows configuration and statistics of 802.11a or 802.11b or 6-GHz channel assignment.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ap dot11 5ghz channel	
Step 6	show ap dot11 6ghz summary Example: Device# show ap dot11 6ghz summary	Shows configuration and statistics summary of 6 the GHz band Cisco APs.

Feature History for Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Access Points

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 12: Feature History for Management Mode Migration in Cisco Wireless Catalyst Wireless 916X Series Access Points

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Series Access Points	This feature allows you to convert the AP mode between DNA Management mode and Meraki Management mode, depending on your requirements. Note The document explains the conversion from DNA Management mode to Meraki Management mode and not vice versa.

Information About Management Mode Migration in Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916X Series Access Points

Cisco Catalyst Wireless 916x APs (CW9164I-x and CW9166I-x) support both cloud and controller architecture. You can migrate between cloud and controller deployments, depending on your requirements. The CW916x APs join and operate either in the DNA Management mode or in the Meraki Management mode. You can configure the management mode migration with the help of CLI commands in the privileged EXEC mode, at the AP level, and from the controller GUI.

CW916x APs support dual-band slot 3 radios, which in turn support both 6-GHz and 5-GHz bands.



Note The section explains the migration from DNA Management mode to the Meraki Management mode and not vice versa.

Regulatory Domain

For regulatory domain support, Cisco Catalyst 916x (CW916x) supports Rest of the World (RoW) and a few other fixed domains as shown here:

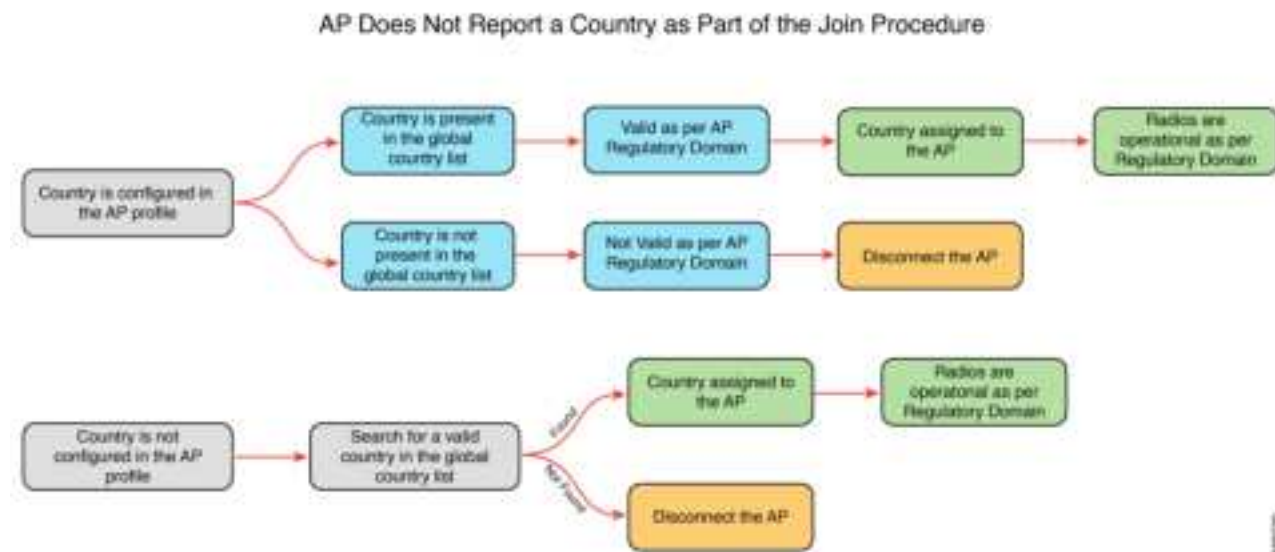
- -B
- -E
- -A
- -Z
- -Q
- -I
- -R

During the AP join flow, the regulatory domain details and the details of the country that is configured is passed on to the controller from the AP. The controller assigns or validates the right country of operation. After the country is validated based on the decision tree, the controller informs the AP about which country the AP should be configured with.

The following are the scenarios that determine the country that an AP should be configured with:

AP Configured with Non-RoW Regulatory Domain

Case 1: AP does not report a country as part of the join procedure.



In the non-RoW regulatory domain, when an AP does not report a country as part of the join procedure, the following takes place:

- AP profile has a country configured.

- If the country configured in the AP profile is present in the global country list, and is valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the country that is configured in the AP profile is assigned to the AP. Radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
- If the country configured the AP profile is not present in the global country list, and is not valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the AP is disconnected.
- AP profile does not have a country configured. Find a valid country from the global country list (the first match), as per the AP regulatory domain.
 - If the country is found, the country is assigned to the AP and the radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
 - If the country is not found, the AP is disconnected.

Case 2: AP reports a country as part of the join procedure.



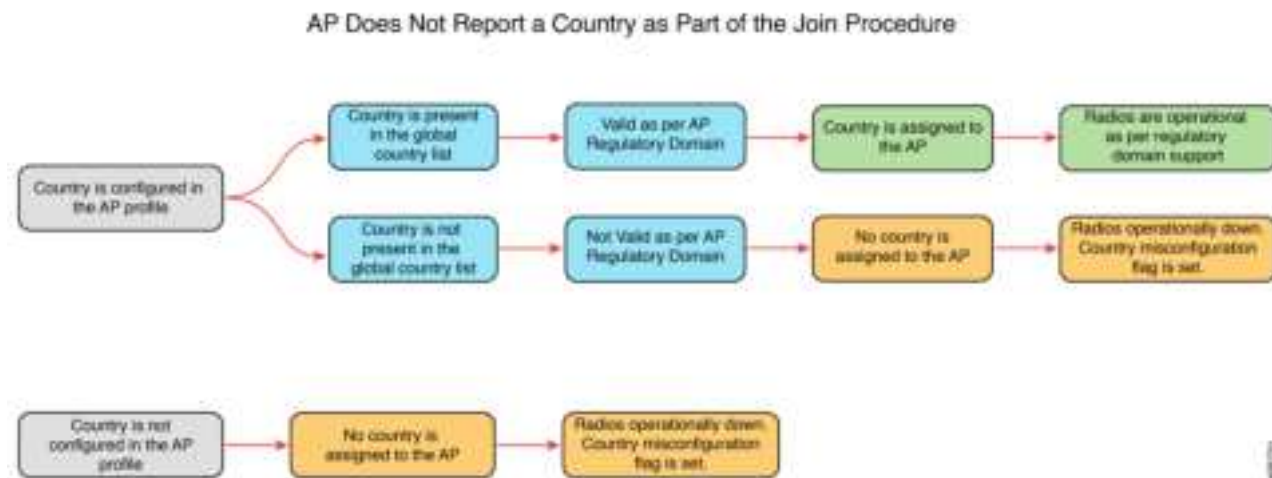
In the non-RoW regulatory domain, when an AP reports a country as part of the join procedure, the following takes place:

- The AP profile has a country configured.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is present in the global country list, and it is valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the country that is configured in the AP profile is assigned to the AP. Radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is not present in the global country list, and is not valid as per the AP regulatory domain, check the global country list to confirm if the country is present in the list. If the country is present in the global list, the AP retains the previous country configuration and the radios are not operational with the country misconfiguration flag set. If the country is not located in the global list, the AP is disconnected.
- The AP profile does not have a country configured.

- If the country reported by the AP is found in the global country list, and is valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the country is assigned to the AP and the radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
- If the country is not present in the list, search for the first country match from the global list. If the country is found, the country is assigned to the AP and the radios become operational. If the country is not found, the AP is disconnected.

AP Configured with RoW Regulatory Domain

Case 1: The AP does not report a country as part of the join procedure.



In the RoW regulatory domain, when an AP does not report a country as part of the join procedure, the following takes place:

- The AP profile has a country configured.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is present in the global country list, and is valid as per the AP regulatory domain, country that is configured in the AP profile is assigned to the AP. Radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is not present in the global country list, and is not valid as per the AP regulatory domain, country is not assigned to the AP and radios are not operational, and the country misconfiguration flag is set.
- If the AP profile does not have a country configured, the country is not assigned to the AP and radios are not operational, and the country misconfiguration flag is set.

Case 2: The AP reports a country as part of the join procedure.



In the RoW regulatory domain, when an AP reports a country as part of the join procedure, the following takes place:

- The AP profile has a country configured.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is present in the global country list, and it is valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the country that is configured in the AP profile is assigned to the AP. Radios become operational as per the country or regulatory domain support.
 - If the country configured in the AP profile is not present in the global country list, and is not valid as per the AP regulatory domain, the AP retains the previous country configuration and the radios are not operational with the country misconfiguration flag set.
- The AP retains the previous country configuration and the radios are not operational with the country misconfiguration flag set.

Configuring Management Mode Migration (GUI)

Before you begin

The country code must be configured on the AP profile. To configure the country code, navigate to **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join** page. Click an AP profile to edit. In the **General** tab, select the country code from the drop-down list.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Migrate to Meraki Management Mode**.
- Step 2** Select the required APs by clicking on the check box(es), from the displayed APs. The **Migrate to Meraki Management Mode** button is enabled.
- Step 3** Click **Migrate to Meraki Management Mode** button to perform a validation check on the selected APs. If the validation check is successful, the **Next** button is enabled.
- Step 4** Click **Next** to start the process.

Step 5 On the **Confirm Management Mode Migration** window, do the following:

- a. Select the **Agree and continue** check box.
- b. Click **Yes** to confirm.

The **Management Mode Migration Successful** section displays the APs that were migrated to the Meraki management mode. The **Management Mode Migration Failed** section displays the APs that were retained in DNA management mode.

Step 6 Click **Restart Workflow** to restart the workflow for APs that did not migrate from DNA management mode to Meraki management mode.

Exporting Meraki Management Mode-Migrated APs (GUI)

You can export the details about the Meraki management mode-migrated APs either from the **Change to Meraki Persona** tab after the workflow is completed or from the **Previously changed APs** tab.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Migrate to Meraki Management Mode .	
Step 2	Click the Export button to export the list of APs.	
Step 3	Select whether you want to export only the current page or all pages. Click Yes to continue.	
Step 4	On the Export window, select the export method. The available options are:	• Serial Number • JSON • Export to Meraki Dashboard Note We recommend the Export to Meraki Dashboard option as you can directly export the migrated APs information into the Meraki Dashboard.
Step 5	Click Copy to copy the migrated APs. Click Download and save the file location.	

Configuring the AP Management Mode (CLI)

Before you begin

- Ensure that the AP is Meraki-capable to run any of the EXEC commands. To view the list of Meraki-capable APs, use the **show ap management-mode meraki capability summary** command.



Note If the country code is misconfigured, the change of management mode will not be allowed for any of the EXEC commands, except the **force** command.

If the regulatory domain is misconfigured for any slot, the change of management mode is not allowed for any of the EXEC commands, except the **force** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter the password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> management-mode meraki [force] [noprompt] Example: Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> management-mode meraki Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> management-mode meraki force Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> management-mode meraki noprompt Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> management-mode meraki force noprompt	Changes the AP management mode to Meraki. Here, force skips the validations at the controller and attempts Meraki management mode change at the AP. noprompt skips the user prompt for attempting AP management mode change.
Step 3	(Optional) clear ap meraki stats Example: Device# clear ap meraki stats	Clears the Meraki AP-related data.

Verifying the Management Mode Migration Details

To view the summary of the Meraki-capable AP information, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap management-mode meraki capability summary
AP Name          AP Model          Radio MAC          MAC Address          AP Serial
Number          Meraki Serial Number
-----
APXXxD.BXXX.1XXX    CW9162I          6XXd.bXXe.eXX0    6XXd.bXXe.eXX0    FOCXXXXXB90
FOCXXXXXB90
```

To view the failure summary of the AP along with the migration attempt timestamp, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap management-mode meraki failure summary
AP Name          AP Model          Radio MAC          MAC Address          Conversion Attempt
AP Serial Number    Meraki Serial Number    Reason Code
-----
APXXxD.BXXC.1      CW9162I          6XXd.bXXe.eXX0    6XXd.bXXe.eXX0    03/03/2022 17:17:42
IST    FOCXXXXXB90    FOCXXXXXB90    Regulatory domain not set
```

To view the successful Meraki management mode migration attempts of all the APs, run the following command:

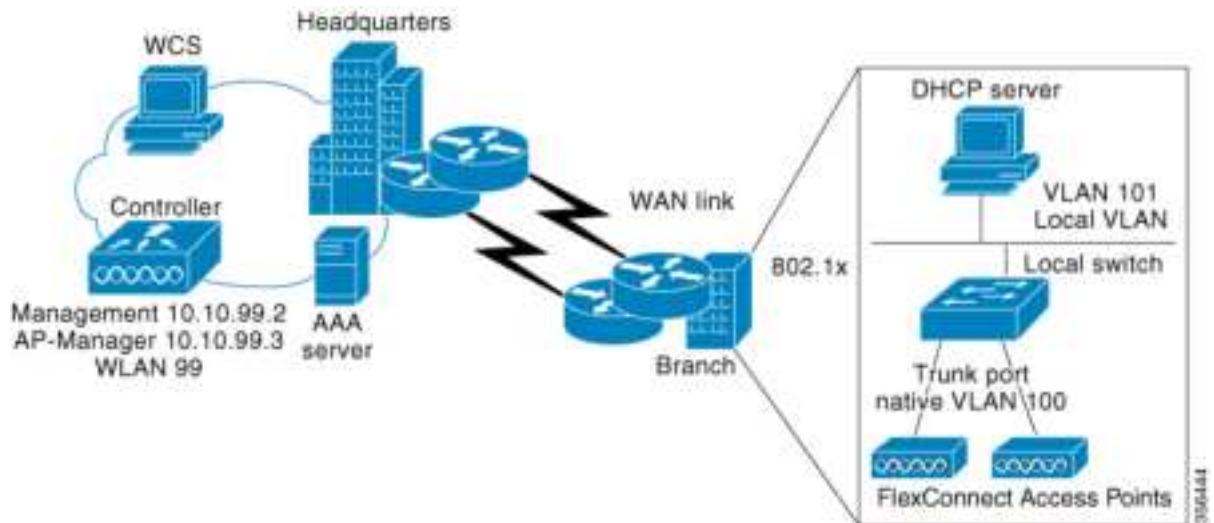
```
Device# show ap management-mode meraki change summary
```

AP Name	AP Model	Radio MAC	MAC Address	Conversion
Timestamp	AP Serial Number	Meraki Serial Number		
APXXXX.3XXX.EXXX	CW9166I-B	1XXX.2XXX.1100	ccXX.3XXX.eXX0	05/02/2022
07:48:56 CST	KWC2XXXXX5G	Q5XX-4XXX-K7XX		

Information About FlexConnect

FlexConnect is a wireless solution for branch office and remote office deployments. It enables customers to configure and control access points (AP) in a branch or remote office from the corporate office through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a controller in each office. The FlexConnect access points can also switch client data traffic locally and perform client authentication locally when their connection to the controller is lost. When they are connected to the controller, they can also send traffic back to the controller. FlexConnect access points support multiple SSIDs. In the connected mode, the FlexConnect access point can also perform local authentication.

Figure 4: FlexConnect Deployment



The controller software has a more robust fault tolerance methodology to FlexConnect access points. In previous releases, whenever a FlexConnect access point disassociates from a controller, it moves to the standalone mode. The clients that are centrally switched are disassociated. However, the FlexConnect access point continues to serve locally switched clients. When a FlexConnect access point loses and rejoins its primary controller, or a secondary controller with the same identical configuration as the primary, existing locally switched client sessions are still maintained and clients experience seamless connectivity.

After the client connection is established, the controller does not restore the original attributes of the client. The client username, current rate and supported rates, and listen interval values are reset to the default or new configured values only after the session timer expires.

The controller can send multicast packets in the form of unicast or multicast packets to an access point. In FlexConnect mode, an access point can receive only multicast packets.

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, you can define a flex connect site. A flex connect site can have a flex connect profile associate with it. You can have a maximum of 100 access points for each flex connect site.

FlexConnect access points support a 1-1 network address translation (NAT) configuration. They also support port address translation (PAT) for all features except true multicast. Multicast is supported across NAT boundaries when configured using the Unicast option. FlexConnect access points also support a many-to-one NAT or PAT boundary, except when you want true multicast to operate for all centrally switched WLANs.

Workgroup bridges and Universal Workgroup bridges are supported on FlexConnect access points for locally switched clients.

FlexConnect supports IPv6 clients by bridging the traffic to local VLAN, similar to an IPv4 operation. FlexConnect supports Client Mobility for a group of up to 100 access points.

An access point does not have to reboot when moving from local mode to FlexConnect mode and vice-versa.

FlexConnect Authentication

When an access point boots up, it looks for a controller. If it finds one, it joins the controller, downloads the latest software image and configuration from the controller, and initializes the radio. It saves the downloaded configuration in nonvolatile memory for use in standalone mode.



Note Once the access point is rebooted after downloading the latest controller software, it must be converted to the FlexConnect mode.



Note 802.1X is not supported on the AUX port for Cisco Aironet 2700 series APs.

A FlexConnect access point can learn the controller IP address in one of these ways:

- If the access point has been assigned an IP address from a DHCP server, it can discover a controller through the regular CAPWAP or LWAPP discovery process.



Note OTAP is not supported.

- If the access point has been assigned a static IP address, it can discover a controller through any of the discovery process methods except DHCP option 43. If the access point cannot discover a controller through Layer 3 broadcast, we recommend DNS resolution. With DNS, any access point with a static IP address that knows of a DNS server can find at least one controller.
- If you want the access point to discover a controller from a remote network where CAPWAP or LWAPP discovery mechanisms are not available, you can use priming. This method enables you to specify (through the access point CLI) the controller to which the access point is to connect.



Note The LEDs on the access point change as the device enters different FlexConnect modes. See the hardware installation guide for your access point for information on LED patterns.

When a client associates to a FlexConnect access point, the access point sends all authentication messages to the controller and either switches the client data packets locally (locally switched) or sends them to the controller (centrally switched), depending on the WLAN configuration. With respect to client authentication (open, shared, EAP, web authentication, and NAC) and data packets, the WLAN can be in any one of the following states depending on the configuration and state of controller connectivity:



Note For the FlexConnect local switching, central authentication deployments, whenever passive client is enabled, the IP Learn timeout is disabled by default.

- central authentication, central switching—In this state, the controller handles client authentication, and all client data is tunneled back to the controller. This state is valid only in connected mode.
- central authentication, local switching—In this state, the controller handles client authentication, and the FlexConnect access point switches data packets locally. After the client authenticates successfully, the controller sends a configuration command with a new payload to instruct the FlexConnect access point to start switching data packets locally. This message is sent per client. This state is applicable only in connected mode.
- local authentication, local switching—In this state, the FlexConnect access point handles client authentication and switches client data packets locally. This state is valid in standalone mode and connected mode.

In connected mode, the access point provides minimal information about the locally authenticated client to the controller. The following information is not available to the controller:

- Policy type
- Access VLAN
- VLAN name
- Supported rates
- Encryption cipher

Local authentication is useful where you cannot maintain a remote office setup of a minimum bandwidth of 128 kbps with the round-trip latency no greater than 100 ms and the maximum transmission unit (MTU) no smaller than 576 bytes. In local authentication, the authentication capabilities are present in the access point itself. Local authentication reduces the latency requirements of the branch office.

- Notes about local authentication are as follows:
 - Guest authentication cannot be done on a FlexConnect local authentication-enabled WLAN.
 - Local RADIUS on the controller is not supported.
 - Once the client has been authenticated, roaming is only supported after the controller and the other FlexConnect access points in the group are updated with the client information.

- authentication down, switch down—In this state, the WLAN disassociates existing clients and stops sending beacon and probe requests. This state is valid in both standalone mode and connected mode.
- authentication down, local switching—In this state, the WLAN rejects any new clients trying to authenticate, but it continues sending beacon and probe responses to keep existing clients alive. This state is valid only in standalone mode.

When a FlexConnect access point enters standalone mode, WLANs that are configured for open, shared, WPA-PSK, or WPA2-PSK authentication enter the “local authentication, local switching” state and continue new client authentications. This configuration is also correct for WLANs that are configured for 802.1X, WPA-802.1X, WPA2-802.1X, or Cisco Centralized Key Management, but these authentication types require that an external RADIUS server be configured.

Other WLANs enter either the “authentication down, switching down” state (if the WLAN was configured for central switching) or the “authentication down, local switching” state (if the WLAN was configured for local switching).

When FlexConnect access points are connected to the controller (rather than in standalone mode), the controller uses its primary RADIUS servers and accesses them in the order specified on the RADIUS Authentication Servers page or in the **config radius auth add** CLI command (unless the server order is overridden for a particular WLAN). However, to support 802.1X EAP authentication, FlexConnect access points in standalone mode need to have their own backup RADIUS server to authenticate clients.



Note A controller does not use a backup RADIUS server. The controller uses the backup RADIUS server in local authentication mode.

You can configure a backup RADIUS server for individual FlexConnect access points in standalone mode by using the controller CLI or for groups of FlexConnect access points in standalone mode by using either the GUI or CLI. A backup server configured for an individual access point overrides the backup RADIUS server configuration for a FlexConnect.

When web-authentication is used on FlexConnect access points at a remote site, the clients get the IP address from the remote local subnet. To resolve the initial URL request, the DNS is accessible through the subnet's default gateway. In order for the controller to intercept and redirect the DNS query return packets, these packets must reach the controller at the data center through a CAPWAP connection. During the web-authentication process, the FlexConnect access points allows only DNS and DHCP messages; the access points forward the DNS reply messages to the controller before web-authentication for the client is complete. After web-authentication for the client is complete, all the traffic is switched locally.

When a FlexConnect access point enters into a standalone mode, the following occurs:

- The access point checks whether it is able to reach the default gateway via ARP. If so, it will continue to try and reach the controller.

If the access point fails to establish the ARP, the following occurs:

- The access point attempts to discover for five times and if it still cannot find the controller, it tries to renew the DHCP on the ethernet interface to get a new DHCP IP.
- The access point will retry for five times, and if that fails, the access point will renew the IP address of the interface again, this will happen for three attempts.
- If the three attempts fail, the access point will fall back to the static IP and will reboot (only if the access point is configured with a static IP).

- Reboot is done to remove the possibility of any unknown error the access point configuration.

Once the access point reestablishes a connection with the controller, it disassociates all clients, applies new configuration information from the controller, and allows client connectivity again.

Guidelines and Restrictions for FlexConnect

- FlexConnect mode can support only 16 VLANs per AP.
- You can deploy a FlexConnect access point with either a static IP address or a DHCP address. In the context of DHCP, a DHCP server must be available locally and must be able to provide the IP address for the access point at bootup.
- FlexConnect supports up to 4 fragmented packets, or a minimum 576-byte maximum transmission unit (MTU) WAN link.
- Round-trip latency must not exceed 300 milliseconds (ms) between the access point and the controller, and CAPWAP control packets must be prioritized over all other traffic. In scenarios where you cannot achieve the 300-ms round-trip latency, configure the access point to perform local authentication.
- Client connections are restored only for locally switched clients that are in the RUN state when the access point moves from standalone mode to connected mode.
- When APs are in standalone mode, if a client roams to another AP, the source AP cannot determine whether the client has roamed or is just idle. So, the client entry at source AP will not be deleted until idle timeout.
- The configuration on the controller must be the same between the time the access point went into standalone mode and the time the access point came back to connected mode. Similarly, if the access point is falling back to a secondary or backup controller, the configuration between the primary and the secondary or backup controller must be the same.
- A newly connected access point cannot be booted in FlexConnect mode.
- FlexConnect mode requires that the client send traffic before learning the client's IPv6 address. Compared to in local mode where the controller learns the IPv6 address by snooping the packets during Neighbor Discovery to update the IPv6 address of the client.
- 802.11r fast transition roaming is not supported on APs operating in local authentication.
- The primary and secondary controllers for a FlexConnect access point must have the same configuration. Otherwise, the access point might lose its configuration, and certain features, such as WLAN overrides, VLANs, static channel number, and so on, might not operate correctly. In addition, make sure you duplicate the SSID of the FlexConnect access point and its index number on both controllers.
- If you configure a FlexConnect access point with a syslog server configured on the access point, after the access point is reloaded and the native VLAN other than 1, at the time of initialization, a few syslog packets from the access point are tagged with VLAN ID 1.
- MAC filtering is not supported on FlexConnect access points in standalone mode. However, MAC filtering is supported on FlexConnect access points in connected mode with local switching and central authentication. Also, Open SSID, MAC Filtering, and RADIUS NAC for a locally switched WLAN with FlexConnect access points is a valid configuration, where MAC is checked by Cisco ISE.
- FlexConnect does not display any IPv6 client addresses in the Client Detail window.

- FlexConnect access points with locally switched WLANs cannot perform IP source guard and prevent ARP spoofing. For centrally switched WLANs, the wireless controller performs IP source guard and ARP spoofing.
- To prevent ARP spoofing attacks in FlexConnect APs with local switching, we recommend that you use ARP inspection.
- Proxy ARP for VM clients (with any wireless host) does not work since the client includes many IP addresses for the same MAC. To avoid this issue, disable the ARP-caching option in the Flex profile.
- When you enable local switching on policy profile for FlexConnect APs, the APs perform local switching. However, for the APs in local mode, central switching is performed.

In a scenario where the roaming of a client between FlexConnect mode AP and Local mode AP is not supported, the client may not get the correct IP address due to VLAN difference after the move. Also, L2 and L3 roaming between FlexConnect mode AP and Local mode AP are not supported.

FlexConnect local switching is not supported on Cisco Aironet Cisco 1810T and 1815T (Teleworker) APs.

- For Wi-Fi Protected Access Version 2 (WPA2) in FlexConnect standalone mode or local authentication in connected mode or Cisco Centralized Key Management fast roaming in connected mode, only Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is supported.
- For Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) in FlexConnect standalone mode or local-auth in connected mode or Cisco Centralized Key Management fast-roaming in connected mode, only Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) is supported.
- WPA2 with TKIP and WPA with AES is not supported in standalone mode, local-auth in connected mode, and Cisco Centralized Key Management fast-roaming in connected mode.
- WPA with TKIP is supported in non-FIPS mode.
- AVC on locally switched WLANs is supported on second-generation APs.
- Local authentication fallback is not supported when a user is not available in the external RADIUS server.
- For WLANs configured for FlexConnect APs in local switching and local authentication, synchronization of dot11 client information is supported.
- VLAN group is not supported in Flex mode under flex-profile.
- Configuring maximum number of allowed media streams on individual client or radio is not supported in FlexConnect mode.
- The WLAN client association limit will not work when the AP is in FlexConnect mode (connected or standalone) and is performing local switching and local authentication.
- A local switching client on FlexConnect mode will not get IP address for RLAN profile on the Cisco Aironet 1810 Series AP.
- Standard ACL is not supported on FlexConnect AP mode.
- IPv6 RADIUS Server is not configurable for FlexConnect APs. Only IPv4 configuration is supported.
- In Flex mode, IPv4 ACLs configured on WLAN gets pushed to AP but IPv6 ACLs does not.
- The client delete reason counters that are a part of the **show wireless stats client delete reasons** command, will be incremented only when the client record entry persists for join.

For example, when an AP in the FlexConnect mode performs local authentication with ACL mismatch, then the AP deletes the client, and the controller does not create any client record.

- Cisco Centralized Key Management (CCKM) is supported in wave 1 APs in FlexConnect when you use local association.
- If the client roams from one AP to another and the roaming is successful, the following occurs:
 - The client does not send any traffic to the new AP.
 - The client's state is IP LEARN pending.
 - The client is deauthenticated after 180 seconds, if there is no traffic for the entire duration. In case the DHCP Required flag is set, the deauthentication occurs after 60 seconds.
- Using custom VLANs under the policy profile of the FlexConnect locally switched WLANs stops the SSID broadcast. In such scenarios, run the **shut** and **no shut** commands on the policy profile to start the SSID broadcast.

SSIDs are broadcasted when you:

- Perform VLAN name to id mapping under FlexConnect profile and map the custom VLAN name under the policy profile.
- Use VLAN ID or standard VLAN name, for example, VLANxxxx.
- In the FlexConnect mode, the group temporal key (GTK) timer is set to 3600 seconds by default on Cisco Wave 2 AP, and this value cannot be reconfigured.
- When FlexConnect AP sends CAPWAP discovery request and the FlexConnect AP does not get any response after 18 CAPWAP discovery requests, the AP performs DHCP renew.



Note The clients must not disconnect when AP performs DHCP renew.

- For Flex mode deployments, local association configured policy profiles are not supported at a given time on the WLAN. Only the local association command must be enabled.
- From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 release onwards, the policy rate per client in the flex connect APs in the controller, is represented as **rate_out** for Ingress (input) and **rate_in** for Egress (output). To verify policy rate on the flex AP, use the **show rate-limit client** command.
- FlexConnect APs do not forward the DHCP packets after Change of Authorization (CoA) and change of VLANs using 802.1X encryption. You must disconnect the client from the WLAN and reconnect the client to enable the client to get an IP address in the second VLAN.
- In Cisco Catalyst 9136I APs, in FlexConnect local authentication, the ongoing session timeout for a client gets reset after every roam.
- Network access control (NAC) is not supported in FlexConnect local authentication.
- Multicast traffic on an AAA overridden VLAN is not supported. Using this configuration may result in potential traffic leaks between VLANs.



Note Cisco Wave 2 and Catalyst Wi-Fi6 APs in FlexConnect local switching Layer2(PSK, 802.1X) + Layer3(LWA, CWA, redirection-based posturing) + Dynamic AAA override + NAC is supported from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.2 onwards.

- The SuiteB-192 AKM in FlexConnect mode is not supported in Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.x.
- When you apply an ACL to a centrally switched client, the controller permits all the TCP ports and blocks the rest. However, when you try to add this ACL to a FlexConnect group, the AP alters the ACL.

The use of EQ operator with multiple ports in an ACE is not supported on the controller. For example:

```
ip access-list extended MULTIPLE_EQ_ACL
 10 permit tcp any any eq 5246 16666 16667 57 69
```

This should be split into several ACE entries. For example:

```
ip access-list extended SPLITTED_EQ_ACL
 10 permit tcp any any eq 5246
 20 permit tcp any any eq 16666
 30 permit tcp any any eq 16667
 40 permit tcp any any eq 57
 50 permit tcp any any eq 69
```

The only ACE supported operator to aggregate multiple ports is the range operator. For example:

```
ip access-list extended RANGE_ACL
 10 permit tcp any any range 16666 16668
```

- For 6-GHz band radios: In an MBSSID group that links SSIDs together, if the AP has a mix of central and locally switched WLANs that belong to the same MBSSID group, the radio may be reset. The radio reset may cause a deauthentication of all the 6-GHz clients, regardless of whether they are central or locally switched.

This issue is not observed in the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz band radios.

- In the FlexConnect mode, use a named site tag instead of default-site-tag. If you use default-site-tag, the client Pairwise Master Key (PMK) is not sent to APs. This results in client roam and reassociation issues.

Configuring a Site Tag

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site default-site-tag	Configures site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	no local-site Example: Device(config-site-tag) # no local-site	Moves the access point to FlexConnect mode. Note "no local-site" must be configured before configuring flex-profile. Otherwise, flex-profile will not be applied to the site tag.
Step 4	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag) # flex-profile rr-xyz-flex-profile	Maps a flex profile to a site tag.
Step 5	ap-profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag) # ap-profile xyz-ap-profile	Assigns an AP profile to the wireless site.
Step 6	description <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag) # description "default site tag"	Adds a description for the site tag.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-site-tag) # end	Saves the configuration, exits the configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	show wireless tag site summary Example: Device# show wireless tag site summary	(Optional) Displays the summary of site tags.

Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a policy tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. • Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	
Step 3	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # <code>wireless tag policy default-policy-tag</code>	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode. Note When performing LWA, the clients connected to a controller gets disconnected intermittently before session timeout.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # <code>description "default-policy-tag"</code>	Adds a description to a policy tag.
Step 5	remote-lan <i>name</i> policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> {<i>ext-module</i> <i>port-id</i> } Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # <code>remote-lan rr-xyz-rlan-aa policy rr-xyz-rlan-policy1 port-id 2</code>	Maps a remote-LAN profile to a policy profile.
Step 6	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # <code>wlan rr-xyz-wlan-aa policy rr-xyz-policy-1</code>	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile. Note Ensure that the WLAN profile is not used by any other profiles. If the AP uses the default profile, ensure that the no central switching command is configured on other profiles.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # <code>end</code>	Exits policy tag configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	show wireless tag policy summary Example: Device# <code>show wireless tag policy summary</code>	(Optional) Displays the configured policy tags. Note To view detailed information about a policy tag, use the show wireless tag policy detailed <i>policy-tag-name</i> command.

Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.

- Step 2** Click the **Access Point** name.
- Step 3** Go to the **Tags** section.
- Step 4** Choose the **Policy Tag** from the **Policy** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Choose the **Site Tag** from the **Site** drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

Attaching Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy tag and a site tag to an AP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures a Cisco AP and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note The <i>mac-address</i> should be a wired mac address.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag rr-xyz-policy-tag	Maps a policy tag to the AP.
Step 4	site-tag site-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag rr-xyz-site	Maps a site tag to the AP.
Step 5	rf-tag rf-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# rf-tag rf-tag1	Associates the RF tag.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show ap tag summary Example:	(Optional) Displays AP details and the tags associated to it.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show ap tag summary	
Step 8	show ap name <ap-name> tag info Example: Device# show ap name ap-name tag info	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag information.
Step 9	show ap name <ap-name> tag detail Example: Device# show ap name ap-name tag detail	(Optional) Displays the AP name with tag details.

Linking an ACL Policy to the Defined ACL (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the Flex Profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** In the **Policy ACL** tab, click **Add**.
 - Step 5** Select the ACL from the **ACL Name** drop-down list and click **Save**.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Applying ACLs on FlexConnect

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex flex-profile-name Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex Flex-profile-1	Configures a wireless flex profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	acl-policy <i>acl-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile) # acl-policy ACL1	Configures an ACL policy. Access control lists (ACLs) perform packet filtering to control the movement of packets through a network.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl) # exit	Returns to wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 5	native-vlan-id Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile) # native-vlan-id 25	Configures native vlan-id information.
Step 6	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile) # vlan-name VLAN0169	Configures a VLAN.
Step 7	acl <i>acl-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-vlan) # acl ACL1	Configures an ACL for the interface.
Step 8	vlan-id <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-vlan) # vlan-id 169	Configures VLAN information.

Configuring FlexConnect

Configuring a Switch at a Remote Site

Procedure

Step 1 Attach the access point, which will be enabled for FlexConnect, to a trunk or access port on the switch.

Note

The sample configuration in this procedure shows the FlexConnect access point connected to a trunk port on the switch.

Step 2 The following example configuration shows you how to configure a switch to support a FlexConnect access point.

In this sample configuration, the FlexConnect access point is connected to the trunk interface FastEthernet 1/0/2 with native VLAN 100. The access point needs IP connectivity on the native VLAN. The remote site has local servers or resources on VLAN 101. A DHCP pool is created in the local switch for both the VLANs in the switch. The first DHCP pool (NATIVE) is used by the FlexConnect access point, and the second DHCP pool (LOCAL-SWITCH) is used by the clients when they associate to a WLAN that is locally switched.

```
.
.
.
ip dhcp pool NATIVE
  network 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224
  default-router 209.165.200.225
  dns-server 192.168.100.167
!
ip dhcp pool LOCAL-SWITCH
  network 209.165.201.224 255.255.255.224
  default-router 209.165.201.225
  dns-server 192.168.100.167
!
interface Gig1/0/1
  description Uplink port
  no switchport
  ip address 209.165.202.225 255.255.255.224
!
interface Gig1/0/2
  description the Access Point port
  switchport trunk encapsulation dot1q
  switchport trunk native vlan 100
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
  switchport mode trunk
!
interface Vlan100
  ip address 209.165.200.225 255.255.255.224
!
interface Vlan101
  ip address 209.165.201.225 255.255.255.224
end
!
.
.
.
```

Configuring the Controller for FlexConnect

You can configure the controller for FlexConnect in two environments:

- Centrally switched WLAN
- Locally switched WLAN

The controller configuration for FlexConnect consists of creating centrally switched and locally switched WLANs. This table shows three WLAN scenarios.

Table 13: WLAN Scenarios

WLAN	Security	Authentication	Switching	Interface Mapping (GUEST VLAN)
Employee	WPA1+WPA2	Central	Central	Management (centrally switched GUEST VLAN)
Employee-local	WPA1+WPA2 (PSK)	Local	Local	101 (locally switched GUEST VLAN)
Guest-central	Web authentication	Central	Central	Management (centrally switched GUEST VLAN)
Employee-local-auth	WPA1+WPA2	Local	Local	101 (locally switched VLAN)

Configuring Local Switching in FlexConnect Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click the name of a policy profile to edit it or click **Add** to create a new one.
 - Step 3** In the **Add/Edit Policy Profile** window that is displayed, uncheck the **Central Switching** check box.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Local Switching in FlexConnect Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy profile-policy Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	no central switching Example:	Configures the WLAN for local switching.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching</code>	
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Central Switching in FlexConnect Mode (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that the policy profile is configured. If the policy profile is not configured, see *Configuring a Policy Profile (GUI)* section.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, select a policy.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit Policy Profile** window, in General Tab, use the slider to enable or disable **Central Switching**.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Central Switching in FlexConnect Mode

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1</code>	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	central switching Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching</code>	Configures the WLAN for central switching.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring an Access Point for FlexConnect

For more information, see *Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)* topic in New Configuration Model chapter.

Configuring an Access Point for Local Authentication on a WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** In the **Policy Profile** page, select a policy profile name. The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** In the General tab, deselect **Central Authentication** check box.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring an Access Point for Local Authentication on a WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy profile-policy Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	no central authentication Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central authentication	Configures the WLAN for local authentication.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Connecting Client Devices to WLANs

Follow the instructions for your client device to create profiles to connect to the WLANs you created, as specified in the [#unique_283](#).

In the example scenarios (see [#unique_283](#)), there are three profiles on the client:

1. To connect to the *employee* WLAN, create a client profile that uses WPA or WPA2 with PEAP-MSCHAPV2 authentication. After the client is authenticated, the client is allotted an IP address by the management VLAN of the controller.
2. To connect to the *local-employee* WLAN, create a client profile that uses WPA or WPA2 authentication. After the client is authenticated, the client is allotted an IP address by VLAN 101 on the local switch.
3. To connect to the *guest-central* WLAN, create a client profile that uses open authentication. After the client is authenticated, the client is allocated an IP address by VLAN 101 on the network local to the access point. After the client connects, a local user can enter any HTTP address in the web browser. The user is automatically directed to the controller to complete the web authentication process. When the web login window appears, the user should enter the username and password.

Configuring FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback

Information About FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback

You can configure an AP to shut down its radio when the Ethernet link is not operational. When the Ethernet link comes back to operational state, you can configure the AP to set its radio back to operational state. This feature is independent of the AP being in connected or standalone mode. When the radios are shut down, the AP does not broadcast the WLANs, and therefore, the clients cannot connect to the AP, either through first association or through roaming.

Configuring FlexConnect Ethernet Fallback

Before you begin

This feature is not applicable to APs with multiple ports.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex test	Configures a wireless flex profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	fallback-radio-shut Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# fallback-radio-shut	Enables radio interface shutdown.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show wireless profile flex detailed <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device# show wireless profile flex detailed test	(Optional) Displays detailed information about the selected profile.

Flex AP Local Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Flex**.

Step 2 In the **Flex** page, click the name of the **Flex Profile** or click **Add** to create a new one.

Step 3 In the **Add/Edit Flex Profile** window that is displayed, click the **Local Authentication** tab.

When local authentication and association is enabled in Access Point with Flex mode, the following occurs:

- AP handles the authentication.
- AP handles the rejection of client joins (in Mobility).

Note

The controller does not increment statistics when AP rejects client association.

Step 4 Choose the server group from the **RADIUS Server Group** drop-down list.

Step 5 Use the **Local Accounting Radius Server Group** drop down to select the RADIUS server group.

Step 6 Check the **Local Client Roaming** check box to enable client roaming.

Step 7 Choose the profile from the **EAP Fast Profile** drop-down list.

Step 8 Choose to enable or disable the following:

- LEAP: Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is an 802.1X authentication type for wireless LANs and supports strong mutual authentication between the client and a RADIUS server using a logon password as the shared secret. It provides dynamic per-user, per-session encryption keys.

- PEAP: Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a protocol that encapsulates the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) within an encrypted and authenticated Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel.
- TLS: Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol that provide communications security over a computer network.
- RADIUS: Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a networking protocol that provides centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA or Triple A) management for users who connect and use a network service.

- Step 9** In the **Users** section, click **Add**.
- Step 10** Enter username and password details and click **Save**.
- Step 11** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Flex AP Local Authentication (CLI)



Note The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller + FlexConnect local authentication + AP acting as RADIUS are not supported on Cisco COS and IOS APs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Creates a AAA authentication model.
Step 2	aaa session-id common Example: Device(config)# aaa session-id common	Ensures that all the session IDs information that is sent out from the RADIUS group for a given call are identical.
Step 3	dot1x system-auth-control Example: Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control	Enables system authorization control for the RADIUS group.
Step 4	eap profile name Example: Device(config)# eap profile aplocal-test	Creates an EAP profile.
Step 5	method fast Example:	Configures the FAST method on the profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-eap-profile)# method fast	
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-radius-server)# exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 7	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile	Configures the flex policy.
Step 8	local-auth ap eap-fast <i>name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth ap eap-fast aplocal-test	Configures EAP-FAST profile details.
Step 9	local-auth ap leap Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth ap leap	Configures the LEAP method.
Step 10	local-auth ap peap Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth ap peap	Configures the PEAP method.
Step 11	dhcp broadcast Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# dhcp broadcast	Configures DHCP broadcast for locally switched clients
Step 12	local-auth ap username <i>username</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth ap username test1 test1	Configures username and password.
Step 13	local-auth ap username <i>username password</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth ap username test2 test2	Configures another username and password.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# exit	Returns to configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 15	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Configures profile policy.
Step 16	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>	Disables the policy profile.
Step 17	no central authentication Example: <pre>Device(config)# no central authentication</pre>	Disables central (controller) authentication.
Step 18	vlan-id <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# vlan-id 54</pre>	Configures VLAN name or VLAN ID.
Step 19	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the configuration.

Flex AP Local Authentication with External Radius Server

In this mode, an access point handles client authentication and switches client data packets locally. This state is valid in standalone mode and connected mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa new-model Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa new-model</pre>	Creates a AAA authentication model.
Step 2	aaa session-id common Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa session-id common</pre>	Ensures that all the session ID's information that is sent out, from the RADIUS group for a given call are identical.
Step 3	dot1x system-auth-control Example: <pre>Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control</pre>	Enables the system authorization control for the RADIUS group.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER1</pre>	Specifies the RADIUS server name. Note To authenticate clients with freeradius over RADSEC, you should generate an RSA key longer than 1024 bit. Use the crypto key generate rsa general-keys exportable label name command to achieve this. Do not configure key-wrap option under the radius server and radius server group, as it may lead to clients getting stuck in authentication state.
Step 5	address {ipv4 ipv6} ip address {auth-port port-number acct-port port-number } Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.3.50.62 auth-port 1112 acct-port 1113 Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv6 2001:DB8:0:20::15 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813</pre>	Specifies the primary RADIUS server parameters.
Step 6	key string Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# key test123</pre>	Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. Note The maximum number of characters allowed for the shared secret is 63.
Step 7	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER2</pre>	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 8	address {ipv4 ipv6} ip address {auth-port port-number acct-port port-number } Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.3.52.62 auth-port 1112 acct-port 1113 Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv6 2001:DB8:0:21::15 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813</pre>	Specifies the secondary RADIUS server parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	key string Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# key test113</pre>	Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.
Step 10	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</pre>	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 11	aaa group server radius server-group Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa group server radius aaa_group_name</pre>	Creates a RADIUS server group identification. Note <i>server-group</i> refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 12	radius server server-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER1</pre>	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 13	radius server server-name Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# radius server Test-SERVER2</pre>	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 14	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</pre>	Exit from RADIUS server configuration mode.
Step 15	wireless profile flex flex-profile Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile</pre>	Creates a new flex policy.
Step 16	local-auth radius-server-group server-group Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# local-auth radius-server-group aaa_group_name</pre>	Configures the authentication server group name.
Step 17	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# exit</pre>	Returns to configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 18	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Configures a WLAN policy profile.
Step 19	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>	Disables a policy profile.
Step 20	no central authentication Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central authentication</pre>	Disables central (controller) authentication.
Step 21	vlan-id <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan-id 54</pre>	Configures a VLAN name or VLAN Id.
Step 22	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the configuration.

Configuration Example: FlexConnect with Central and Local Authentication

To see configuration example on how to configure a controller for FlexConnect central and local authentication, see the [FlexConnect Configuration with Central and Local Authentication on Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controllers](#) document.

NAT-PAT for FlexConnect

If you want to use a central DHCP server to service clients across remote sites, NAT-PAT should be enabled. An AP translates the traffic coming from a client and replaces the client's IP address with its own IP address.



Note You must enable local switching, central DHCP, and DHCP required using the (**ipv4 dhcp required**) command to enable NAT and PAT.

Configuring NAT-PAT for a WLAN or a Remote LAN

Creating a WLAN

Follow the steps given here to create a WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>wlan-name</i>—Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>—Enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID-name</i>—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note If you have already configured WLAN, enter <i>wlan wlan-name</i> command.
Step 3	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Shut down the WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and NAT-PAT (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the policy.

- Step 4** Disable the **Central Switching** toggle button.
- Step 5** Enable the **Central DHCP** toggle button.
- Step 6** Enable the **Flex NAT/PAT** toggle button.
- Step 7** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **DHCP** Settings, check the **IPv4 DHCP Required** check box.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and NAT-PAT

Follow the procedure given below to configure a wireless profile policy and NAT-PAT:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy nat-enabled-policy	Configures the policy profile for NAT.
Step 3	no central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	Configures the WLAN for local switching.
Step 4	ipv4 dhcp required Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required	Configures the DHCP parameters for WLAN.
Step 5	central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central dhcp	Configures the central DHCP for locally switched clients.
Step 6	flex nat-pat Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# flex nat-pat	Enables NAT-PAT.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	end Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Mapping a WLAN to a Policy Profile

Follow the procedure given below to map a WLAN to a policy profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless tag policy demo-tag</code>	Configures a policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy profile-<i>policy-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan-demo policy nat-enabled-policy</code>	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config-policy-tag)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a Site Tag

Follow the procedure given below to configure a site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example:	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# wireless tag site flex-site</code>	
Step 3	no local-site Example: <code>Device(config-site-tag) # no local-site</code>	Moves an access point to FlexConnect mode.
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device (config-site-tag) # end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click the **Access Point** name.
 - Step 3** Go to the **Tags** section.
 - Step 4** Choose the **Policy Tag** from the **Policy** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Choose the **Site Tag** from the **Site** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.
-

Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an Access Point

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy tag and a site tag to an access point:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: <code>Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB</code>	Configures Cisco APs and enters ap-tag configuration mode.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: <code>Device (config-ap-tag) # policy-tag demo-tag</code>	Maps a policy tag to the AP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag flex-site	Maps a site tag to the AP.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Split Tunneling for FlexConnect

If a client that connects over a WAN link that is associated with a centrally switched WLAN has to send traffic to a device present in the local site, this traffic should be sent over CAPWAP to the controller, and the same traffic is sent back to the local site either over CAPWAP or with the help of some off-band connectivity.

This process consumes WAN link bandwidth unnecessarily. To avoid this, you can use the Split Tunneling feature, which allows the traffic sent by a client to be classified based on the packet contents. The matching packets are locally switched and the rest of the traffic is centrally switched. The traffic that is sent by the client that matches the IP address of the device present in the local site can be classified as locally switched traffic, and the rest of the traffic as centrally switched.

To configure local split tunneling on an AP, ensure that you have enabled DHCP Required on the policy profile using the (**ipv4 dhcp required**) command. This ensures that the client that is associating with the split WLAN does DHCP.



Note Apple iOS clients need option 6 (DNS) to be set in DHCP offer for split tunneling to work.



- Note**
- VLAN-based central switching for FlexConnect on auto-anchor deployment is not supported.
 - Split tunneling does not work on RLAN clients. When the **split-tunnel** option is enabled on RLAN, traffic denied by the split tunnel ACL is not translated based on the IP address, instead the traffic is sent back to the controller through CAPWAP.
 - URL filter must not be configured with wildcard URLs such as * and *.*.

Configuring Split Tunneling for a WLAN or Remote LAN

Defining an Access Control List for Split Tunneling (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > ACL**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** dialog box, enter the **ACL Name**.
- Step 4** Choose the ACL type from the **ACL Type** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Under the **Rules** settings, enter the **Sequence** number and choose the **Action** as either **permit** or **deny**.
- Step 6** Choose the required source type from the **Source Type** drop-down list.
- a) If you choose the source type as **Host**, then you must enter the **Host Name/IP**.
 - b) If you choose the source type as **Network**, then you must specify the **Source IP** address and **Source Wildcard** mask.
- Step 7** Check the **Log** check box if you want the logs.
- Step 8** Click **Add**.
- Step 9** Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.
-

Defining an Access Control List for Split Tunneling

Follow the procedure given below to define an Access Control List (ACL) for split tunneling:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip access-list extended <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip access-list extended split_mac_acl	Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enters access-list configuration mode.
Step 3	deny ip any host <i>hostname</i> Example: Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip any host 9.9.2.21	Allows the traffic to switch centrally.
Step 4	permit ip any any Example:	Allows the traffic to switch locally.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit ip any any</code>	
Step 5	end Example: <code>Device(config-ext-nacl)# end</code>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Linking an ACL Policy to the Defined ACL

Follow the procedure given below to link an ACL policy to the defined ACL:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless profile flex flex-profile</code>	Configures the Flex profile and enters flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	acl-policy <i>acl policy name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy split_mac_acl</code>	Configures an ACL policy for the defined ACL.
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end</code>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Creating a WLAN

Follow the procedure given below to create a WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name</i>	Specifies the WLAN name and ID:

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo</pre>	• <i>wlan-name</i>—Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>—Enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID-name</i>—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID.
Step 3	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and a Split MAC ACL Name (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the policy.
 - Step 4** Enable the **Central Switching** toggle button.
 - Step 5** Enable the **Central DHCP** toggle button.
 - Step 6** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **DHCP** settings, check the **IPv4 DHCP Required** check box and enter the **DHCP Server IP Address**.
 - Step 7** Under the **WLAN Flex Policy** settings, choose the split MAC ACL from the **Split MAC ACL** drop-down list.
 - Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Wireless Profile Policy and a Split MAC ACL Name

Follow the procedure given below to configure a wireless profile policy and a split MAC ACL name:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy split-tunnel-enabled-policy	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	flex split-mac-acl <i>split-mac-acl-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# flex split-mac-acl split_mac_acl	Configures a split MAC ACL name. Note You should use the same ACL name for linking the flex and the policy profile.
Step 4	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Configures WLAN for central switching.
Step 5	central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central dhcp	Enables central DHCP for centrally switched clients.
Step 6	ipv4 dhcp required Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required	Configures the DHCP parameters for a WLAN.
Step 7	ipv4 dhcp server <i>ip_address</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp server 9.1.0.100	Configures the override IP address of the DHCP server.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables a policy profile.

Mapping a WLAN to a Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** Enter the **Name** of the Tag Policy.
 - Step 4** Under **WLAN-POLICY Maps** tab, click **Add**.
 - Step 5** Choose the WLAN Profile from the **WLAN Profile** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Choose the Policy Profile from the **Policy Profile** drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Click the **Tick** Icon.
 - Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Mapping WLAN to a Policy Profile

Follow the procedure given below to map WLAN to a policy profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy split-tunnel-enabled-tag	Configures a policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan-demo policy split-tunnel-enabled-policy	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a Site Tag

Follow the procedure given below to configure a site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site flex-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	no local-site Example: Device(config-site-tag)# no local-site	Local site is not configured on the site tag.
Step 4	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile flex-profile	Configures a flex profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an Access Point

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy tag and site tag to an access point.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap <i>ethernet-mac-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ap 188b.9dbe.6eac	Configures an AP and enters ap tag configuration mode.
Step 3	policy-tag <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag split-tunnel-enabled-tag	Maps a policy tag to an AP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-tag) # site-tag flex-site	Maps a site tag to an AP.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

VLAN-based Central Switching for FlexConnect

In FlexConnect local switching, if the VLAN definition is not available in an access point, the corresponding client does not pass traffic. This scenario is applicable when the AAA server returns the VLAN as part of client authentication.

When a WLAN is locally switched in flex and a VLAN is configured on the AP side, the traffic is switched locally. When a VLAN is not defined in an AP, the VLAN drops the packet.

When VLAN-based central switching is enabled, the corresponding AP tunnels the traffic back to the controller. The controller then forwards the traffic to its corresponding VLAN.

If you add a second policy profile to a policy tag with a VLAN-based central switching SSID and the central switching VLAN is also present in the AP's VLAN database, all the clients on that SSID are locally switched. This occurs because the presence of the VLAN in the AP database overrides central switching, defaulting to local switching for client traffic.



Note

- For VLAN-based central switching, ensure that VLAN is defined on the controller.
- VLAN-based central switching is not supported by mac filter.
- For local switching, ensure that VLAN is defined on the policy profile and FlexConnect profile.
- VLAN-based central switching with central web authentication enabled in Flex profile is not supported.

Configuring VLAN-based Central Switching (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the policy profile.
- Step 3** In the **Edit Policy Profile** window, perform these tasks:
 - a) Set **Central Switching** to **Disabled** state.
 - b) Set **Central DHCP** to **Disabled** state.

c) Set **Central Authentication** to **Enabled** state.

- Step 4** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 5** Under **AAA Policy**, check the **Allow AAA Override** check box to enable AAA override.
- Step 6** Under **WLAN Flex Policy**, check the **VLAN Central Switching** check box, to enable VLAN-based central switching on the policy profile.
- Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring VLAN-based Central Switching (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure VLAN-based central switching.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures a wireless policy profile.
Step 3	no central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	Configures a WLAN for local switching.
Step 4	no central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central dhcp	Configures local DHCP mode, where the DHCP is performed in an AP.
Step 5	central authentication Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central authentication	Configures a WLAN for central authentication.
Step 6	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA policy override.
Step 7	flex vlan-central-switching Example:	Configures VLAN-based central switching.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# flex vlan-central-switching	
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 9	show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile Example: Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile	(Optional) Displays detailed information of the policy profile.

OfficeExtend Access Points for FlexConnect

A Cisco OfficeExtend access point (OEAP) provides secure communications from a controller to a Cisco AP at a remote location, seamlessly extending the corporate WLAN over the Internet to an employee's residence. A user's experience at the home office is exactly the same as it would be at the corporate office. Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) encryption between an access point and the controller ensures that all communications have the highest level of security.



Note Preconfigure the controller IP for a zero-touch deployment with OEAP. All other home users can use the same access point to connect for home use by configuring the local SSID from AP.



Note In releases prior to Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.2, when an AP is converted to OEAP, the local DHCP server on the AP is enabled by default. If the DHCP server on home router has a similar configuration, a network conflict occurs and AP will not be able to join back to the controller. In such a scenario, we recommend that you change the default DHCP server on the Cisco AP using OEAP GUI.



Note For OEAP, when configuration changes are made from the OEAP GUI to the following: Radio Status, Radio Interface Status, 802.11 n-mode, 802.11 ac-mode, Bandwidth, and Channel Selection (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz), CAPWAP should be restarted for the configuration sync to take place between the AP and the controller. During this interval, the AP GUI may not respond until the AP rejoins the controller. We recommend that you wait for the AP to rejoin the controller (for about 1-2 minutes), before you make further changes from the OEAP GUI.



Note In Cisco OfficeExtend access point (Cisco OEAP), if the OEAP local DHCP server is enabled and the user configures DNS IP from OEAP GUI, the wireless and wired clients connected to Cisco OEAP will receive that IP as DNS server IP in DHCP ACK.

Configuring OfficeExtend Access Points

Follow the procedure given below to configure OfficeExtend access points.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex test	Configures a wireless flex profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	office-extend Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# office-extend	Enables the OfficeExtend AP mode for a FlexConnect AP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. Note After creating a flex profile, ensure that OEAP is in flex connect mode and mapped to its corresponding site tag. OfficeExtend is disabled by default. To clear the access point's configuration and return it to the factory-defaults, use the clear ap config cisco-ap command.

Disabling OfficeExtend Access Point

Follow the procedure given below to disable an OfficeExtend access point.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex test	Configures a wireless flex profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	no office-extend Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# no office-extend	Disables OfficeExtend AP mode for a FlexConnect AP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Support for OEAP Personal SSID

Information About OEAP Personal SSID Support

The Cisco OfficeExtend Access Point supports personal SSID. This enables a local home client to use the same OfficeExtend Access Point for local networking and internet connectivity. With the help of the OEAP personal SSID feature, you can enable or disable personal SSID, enable or disable Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) encryption between an access point and the controller, and enable rogue detection, using the knobs that are present on the AP profile page in the GUI. The local network access and DTLS encryption are enabled by default. The configurations described in this chapter is applicable for OEAP or for APs in the OEAP mode.

Configuring OEAP Personal SSID (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > AP Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
The **AP Join Profile** section displays all the AP Join profiles.
- Step 2** To edit the configuration details of an AP Join profile, select APs in the OEAP mode.
The **Edit AP Join Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, under the **OfficeExtend AP Configuration** section, configure the following:

- a) Check the **Local Access** check box to enable the local network. By default, **Local Access** is enabled. After the AP joins the controller using AP join profile where local access is enabled, the AP will not broadcast the default personal SSID. Since the local access is enabled, you can login to the AP GUI and configure the personal SSID.
- b) Check the **Link Encryption** check box to enable data DTLS. By default, **Link Encryption** is enabled.
- c) Check the **Rogue Detection** check box to enable rogue detection. Rogue detection is disabled by default for OfficeExtend APs because these APs, deployed in a home environment, are likely to detect a large number of rogue devices.

Configuring OEAP Personal SSID (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile</i>	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] oeap local-access Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# oeap local-access	Enables the local access to AP. Local access consist of local AP GUI, LAN ports and personal SSID. The no form of this command disables the feature. If the local access is disabled, you will not be able to access the AP GUI, the local LAN port will be disabled, and personal SSID will not be broadcasted.
Step 4	[no] oeap link-encryption Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# oeap link-encryption	Enables DTLS encryption for OEAP APs or APs moving to the OEAP mode. The no form of this command disables the feature. This feature is enabled by default.
Step 5	[no] oeap rogue-detection Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# no oeap rogue-detection	Enables OEAP DTLS encryption in the AP profile configuration mode. This feature is disabled by default.

Viewing OEAP Personal SSID Configuration

To view the OEAP personal SSID configuration, run the following command.

```
Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed
.
```

```
.
OEAP Mode Config
Link Encryption : ENABLED
Rogue Detection : DISABLED
Local Access : ENABLED
```

Clearing Personal SSID from an OfficeExtend Access Point

To clear the personal SSID from an access point, run the following command:

```
ap name Cisco_AP clear-personal-ssid
```

Example: Viewing OfficeExtend Configuration

This example displays an OfficeExtend configuration:

```
Device# show ap config general

Cisco AP Name      : ap_name
=====

Cisco AP Identifier           : 70db.986d.a860
Country Code                 : Multiple Countries : US,IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-ABDN
AP Country Code              : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
  Slot 0                     : -A
  Slot 1                     : -D
MAC Address                  : 002c.c899.7b84
IP Address Configuration    : DHCP
IP Address                   : 9.9.48.51
IP Netmask                   : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address          : 9.9.48.1
CAPWAP Path MTU              : 1485
Telnet State                 : Disabled
SSH State                    : Disabled
Jumbo MTU Status             : Disabled
Cisco AP Location            : default location
Site Tag Name                : flex-site
RF Tag Name                  : default-rf-tag
Policy Tag Name              : split-tunnel-enabled-tag
AP join Profile              : default-ap-profile
Primary Cisco Controller Name : uname-controller
Primary Cisco Controller IP Address : 9.9.48.34
Secondary Cisco Controller Name : uname-controller1
Secondary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Tertiary Cisco Controller Name : uname-ewlc2
Tertiary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Administrative State         : Enabled
Operation State              : Registered
AP Mode                      : FlexConnect
AP Submode                   : Not Configured
Office Extend Mode           : Enabled
Remote AP Debug              : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level  : information
Software Version             : 16.8.1.1
Boot Version                  : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version             : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period       : 0
LED State                    : Enabled
```

```

PoE Pre-Standard Switch           : Disabled
PoE Power Injector MAC Address    : Disabled
Power Type/Mode                   : PoE/Full Power (normal mode)

```

Proxy ARP

Proxy address resolution protocol (ARP) is the most common method for learning about MAC address through a proxy device. Enabling Proxy ARP known as ARP caching in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller means that the AP owning client is the destination of the ARP request, replies on behalf of that client and therefore does not send the ARP request to the client over the air. Access points not owning the destination client and receiving an ARP request through their wired connection will drop the ARP request. When the ARP caching is disabled, the APs bridge the ARP requests from wired-to-wireless and vice-versa increasing the air time usage and broadcasts over wireless.

The AP acts as an ARP proxy to respond to ARP requests on behalf of the wireless clients.

Enabling Proxy ARP for FlexConnect APs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the Flex Profile and check the **ARP Caching** check box. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling Proxy ARP for FlexConnect APs

Follow the procedure given below to configure proxy ARP for FlexConnect APs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex flex-test	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	arp-caching	Enables ARP caching.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device (config-wireless-flex-profile) # arp-caching	Note Use the no arp-caching command to disable ARP caching.
Step 4	end Example: Device (config-wireless-flex-profile) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show running-config section wireless profile flex Example: Device# show running-config section wireless profile flex	Displays ARP configuration information.
Step 6	show wireless profile flex detailed flex-profile-name Example: Device# show wireless profile flex detailed flex-test	(Optional) Displays detailed information of the flex profile.
Step 7	show arp summary Example: Device# show arp summary	(Optional) Displays ARP summary.

Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment

Overview of Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment

In flex deployments, you can use cookie cutter configuration across sites and branches which also includes local DHCP servers configured with the same subnet. In this topology, controllers detect multiple client sessions with the same IP as IP THEFT and clients are put in blocked list.

The Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment feature offers overlapping IP address across various flex sites and provides all the functionalities that are supported in flex deployments.

Enabling Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex** and click **Add**.
- Step 2** On the **Add Flex Profile** window and **General** tab.

- Step 3** Check the **IP Overlap** check box to enable overlapping client IP Address in Flex deployment.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.

Enabling Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex flex1	Configures a Flex profile and enters Flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] ip overlap Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# [no] ip overlap	Enables overlapping client IP address in flex deployment. Note By default, the configuration is disabled.

Verifying Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > Clients**.
- Step 2** Click the client in the table to view properties and statistics for each client.
- Step 3** On the **Client** window and **General** tab, click **Client Statistics** tab to view the following details:
- Number of Bytes Received from Client
 - Number of Bytes Sent to Client
 - Number of Packets Received from Client
 - Number of Packets Sent to Client
 - Number of Policy Errors
 - Radio Signal Strength Indicator
 - Signal to Noise Ratio
 - IP - Zone ID Mapping

Step 4 Click OK.

Verifying Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment

To verify if the overlapping client IP address in Flex deployment feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile flex detailed flex1
Fallback Radio shut      : DISABLED
ARP caching              : ENABLED
Efficient Image Upgrade  : ENABLED
OfficeExtend AP         : DISABLED
Join min latency        : DISABLED
IP overlap status       : DISABLED
```

To view additional details about the overlapping client IP address in Flex deployment feature, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database ip
```

IP	ZONE-ID	STATE	DISCOVERY	MAC
9.91.59.154	0x00000002	Reachable	IPv4 Packet	
6038.e0dc.3182				
1000:1:2:3:90d8:dd1a:11ab:23c0	0x00000002	Reachable	IPv6 Packet	
58ef.680d.c6c3				
1000:1:2:3:f9b5:3074:d0da:f93b	0x00000002	Reachable	IPv6 Packet	
58ef.680d.c6c3				
2001:9:3:59:90d8:dd1a:11ab:23c0	0x00000002	Reachable	IPv6 NDP	
58ef.680d.c6c3				
2001:9:3:59:f9b5:3074:d0da:f93b	0x00000002	Reachable	IPv6 NDP	
58ef.680d.c6c3				
fe80::f9b5:3074:d0da:f93b	0x80000001	Reachable	IPv6 NDP	
58ef.680d.c6c3				

To view APs in various site tags, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 5
```

AP Name	AP Mac	Site Tag Name	Policy Tag Name	RF Tag Name	Misconfigured Tag	Source
AP3802	70b3.17f6.37aa	flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-3	flex_ip_overlap_policy_tag_1			
		default-rf-tag	No Static			
AP-9117AX	0cd0.f894.0f8c	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	default-rf-tag	No Default	
AP1852JJ9	38ed.18ca.2b48	flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-2	flex_ip_overlap_policy_tag_2			
		default-rf-tag	No Static			
AP1852I	38ed.18cc.61c0	flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-1	flex_ip_overlap_policy_tag_1			
		default-rf-tag	No Static			
AP1542JJ9	700f.6a84.1b30	flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-2	flex_ip_overlap_policy_tag_2			
		default-rf-tag	No Static			

To view APs in FlexConnect mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap status
```

AP Name	Status	Mode	Country
AP3802	Disabled	FlexConnect	IN
AP1852I	Enabled	FlexConnect	US
AP-9117AX	Enabled	FlexConnect	IN

```

AP1542JJ9   Disabled   FlexConnect   US
AP1852JJ9   Enabled    FlexConnect   US

```

Troubleshooting Overlapping Client IP Address in Flex Deployment

To verify the WNCD instance for each of the APs, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless loadbalance ap affinity wncd 0
AP Mac                Discovery Timestamp    Join Timestamp          Tag
-----
0cd0.f894.0f8c        10/27/20 22:11:05      10/27/20 22:11:14      default-site-tag
38ed.18ca.2b48        10/27/20 22:06:09      10/27/20 22:06:19      flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-2
700f.6a84.1b30        10/27/20 22:25:03      10/27/20 22:25:13      flex_ip_overlap-site-tag-auto-2

```

Information About FlexConnect High Scale Mode

This feature helps to scale up the FlexConnect site capacity to accommodate 300 APs and 3000 802.1x clients per site. The FlexConnect site capability is scaled up by using the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) option to skip Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) exchange while performing client roaming.

When a client associates with an AP under an 802.1x authentication architecture, an EAP exchange takes place, followed by a four-way handshake to verify the encryption keys. Using PMK caching, an AP can cache the PMK identifier of the EAP exchange, and for the subsequent client join. In PMK caching, the EAP exchange process is eliminated, and the authentication time process is decreased.

The PMK propagation feature is disabled by default. Until Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1, the wireless controller used to push the PMK cache to every FlexConnect AP in the site. From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1 onwards, when PMK propagation is enabled, the controller pushes the PMK cache only to selective FlexConnect APs. These FlexConnect APs then forward the PMK identifier to the other FlexConnect APs within the same site.

Enabling PMK Propagation (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex test-flex-profile Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex test-flex-profile	Creates a FlexConnect profile.
Step 3	pmk propagate Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# pmk propagate	Propagates PMK information to the other APs in the site. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The PMK propagation feature is disabled by default.

Examples

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile flex test-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# pmk propagate
```

Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points

Information About Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points

The Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points describe how to set up a controller with Flex+Bridge mode Access Points (APs) and Flex Resilient feature. The Flex Resilient feature works only in Flex+Bridge mode APs. The feature resides in Mesh link formed between RAP - MAP, once the link is UP and RAP loses connection to the CAPWAP controller, both RAP and MAP continue to bridge the traffic. A child Mesh AP (MAP) maintains its link to a parent AP and continues to bridge till the parent link is lost. A child MAP cannot establish a new parent or child link till it reconnects to the CAPWAP controller.



Note Existing wireless clients in locally switching WLAN can stay connected with their AP in this mode. No new or disconnected wireless client can associate to the Mesh AP in this mode. Client traffic in Flex+Bridge MAP is dropped at RAP switchport for the locally switched WLANs.

Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
- Step 2** Click a **Flex Profile Name**. The **Edit Flex Profile** dialog box appears.
- Step 3** Under the **General** tab, choose the **Flex Resilient** check box to enable the Flex Resilient feature.
- Step 4** Under the **VLAN** tab, choose the required VLANs.
- Step 5** (Optionally) Under the **Local Authentication** tab, choose the desired server group from the **Local Accounting RADIUS Server Group** drop-down list. Also, choose the **RADIUS** check box.
- Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Flex Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex new-flex-profile	Configures a Flex profile and enters Flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	arp-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# arp-caching	Enables ARP caching.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "new flex profile"	Enables default parameters for the Flex profile.
Step 5	native-vlan-id Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# native-vlan-id 2660	Configures native vlan-id information.
Step 6	resilient Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# resilient	Enables the resilient feature.
Step 7	vlan-name <i>vlan_name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-name VLAN2659	Configures VLAN name.
Step 8	vlan-id <i>vlan_id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-id 2659	Configures VLAN ID. The valid VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4096.
Step 9	end Example:	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site new-flex-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile new-flex-profile	Configures a flex profile.
Step 4	no local-site Example: Device(config-site-tag)# no local-site	Local site is not configured on the site tag.
Step 5	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# site-tag new-flex-site	Maps a site tag to an AP.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Mesh Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh Mesh_Profile	Configures a Mesh profile and enters the Mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	no ethernet-vlan-transparent Example: Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# no ethernet-vlan-transparent	Disables VLAN transparency to ensure that the bridge is VLAN aware.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile new-ap-join-profile	Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mesh-profile <i>mesh-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# mesh-profile Mesh_Profile	Configures the Mesh profile in AP profile configuration mode.
Step 4	ssh Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# ssh	Configures the Secure Shell (SSH).
Step 5	mgmtuser <i>username username password {0 8} password</i> Example:	Specifies the AP management username and password for managing all of the access points configured to the controller. • 0: Specifies an UNENCRYPTED password.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# mgmtuser username Cisco password 0 Cisco secret 0 Cisco</pre>	• 8: Specifies an AES encrypted password. Note While configuring an username, ensure that special characters are not used as it results in error with bad configuration.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Attaching Site Tag to an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap <i>mac-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB</pre>	Configures Cisco APs and enters ap-tag configuration mode.
Step 3	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag new-flex-site</pre>	Maps a site tag to the AP. Note Associating Site Tag causes the associated AP to reconnect.
Step 4	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-tag)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Switch Interface for APs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface <int-id>	Enters the interface to be added to the VLAN.
Step 3	switchport trunk native vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 2660	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.
Step 4	switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 2659,2660	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.
Step 5	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Sets the trunking mode to trunk unconditionally. Note When the controller works as a host for spanning tree, ensure that you configure portfast trunk, using spanning-tree portfast trunk command, in the uplink switch to ensure faster convergence.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points Configuration

To view the AP mode and model details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name <ap-name> config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                               : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                              : AIR-CAP3702I-A-K9
```

To view the MAP mode details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name MAP config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                               : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                              : AIR-CAP3702I-A-K9
```

To view the RAP mode details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name RAP config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                               : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                              : AIR-AP2702I-A-K9
```

To view if the Flex Profile - Resilient feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile flex detailed FLEX_TAG | inc resilient
Flex resilient                        : ENABLED
```

Feature History for OEAP Link Test

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 14: Feature History for OEAP Link Test

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	OEAP Link Test	The Cisco OEAP Link Test feature allows you to determine the DTLS upload, link latency, and jitter of the link between an AP and the controller.

Information About OEAP Link Test

The Cisco OEAP Link Test feature allows you to determine the DTLS upload speed of the link between an AP and the controller. This feature helps in identifying network bottlenecks and reasons for functionality failures. You can determine the link latency by running a test on demand.

A link test is used to determine the quality of the link between the controller and an AP in OEAP mode. The AP sends synthetic packets to the controller and the controller echoes them back to the AP, which can then estimate the link quality.

Feature Scenarios

Cisco OfficeExtend Access Point (OEAP) users are complaining of poor performance when connected to a teleworker AP.

Use Cases

This feature allows OEAP network admins to troubleshoot low throughput from the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controller GUI by running OEAP link test.

The OEAP link test provides DTLS upload speed, link latency, and link jitter, all of which help the network administrators to narrow down the problem.

Configuring OEAP Link Test (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> network-diagnostic Example: Device# ap name ap18 network-diagnostic	Triggers network diagnostics on an OfficeExtend AP.

Performing OEAP Link Test (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > AP Statistics**.
- In the list of APs, a **Link Test** icon is displayed in the **AP Name** column for OEAP-capable APs.
- Note**
The **Link Test** icon is displayed only if an AP is OEAP capable and is configured to operate as OEAP.
- Step 2** Click **Link Test**.
- A link test is run and the results are shown.
-

Verifying OEAP Link Test

The following example shows how to verify network diagnostics information:

```
Device# show FlexConnect office-extend diagnostics
```

```
Summary of OfficeExtend AP Link Latency
```

```
CAPWAP Latency Heartbeat
```

```
Current: current latency (ms)
```

```
Min: minimum latency (ms)
```

```
Max: maximum latency (ms)
```

```
Link Test
```

```
Upload: DTLS Upload (Mbps)
```

```
Latency: DTLS Link Latency (ms)
```

```
Jitter: DTLS Link Jitter (ms)
```

```
AP Name Last Latency Heartbeat from AP Current Max Min Last Link Test Run Upload Latency Jitter
```

```
-----
```

ap-18	1 minute 1 second	0	0	0	12/04/20 09:19:48	8	2
	0						

Feature History for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 15: Feature History for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1	IPv6 Support	IPv6 addressing is supported on the Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling feature.
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1	Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling	The Split Tunneling feature in Cisco OfficeExtend Access Point (OEAP) provides a mechanism to classify client traffic, based on packet content, using access control lists (ACLs).

Information About Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

The global pandemic has redefined the way people interact and work. The workplace has shifted from office cubicles to home desks, which requires applications that enable seamless collaboration among the workforce. For home-based workers, access to business services must be reliable, consistent, and secure. It should provide an experience that is similar to the office facility. Routing all of the traffic through the corporate network using traditional VPNs increases the traffic volume, slows down access to resources, and negatively impacts the remote user experience.

Cisco OEAP provides secure communications from a controller to an access point (AP) at a remote location, seamlessly extending the corporate WLAN over the internet to an employee's residence. Cisco OEAP provides segmentation of home and corporate traffic using the Split Tunnelling feature, which allows for home device connectivity without security risks to corporate policy.

Split tunnelling classifies the traffic sent by a client, based on packet content, using ACLs. Matching packets are switched locally from Cisco OEAP, and other packets are centrally switched over CAPWAP. Clients on a corporate SSID can talk to devices on a local network (printers, wireless devices on a personal SSID, and so on) directly without consuming WAN bandwidth, by sending packets over CAPWAP.

Traffic to Software as a Service (SaaS) applications such as Cisco WebEx, Microsoft SharePoint, Microsoft Office365, Box, Dropbox, and so on that is required as part of the work routine, need not go through the corporate network, by using the Split Tunnelling feature.

The Cisco OEAP advertises two SSIDs, one corporate and one personal. Corporate SSID clients obtain their IP address from the central DHCP server in the corporate network. If split tunneling is enabled and a client wants to access a device in the home network, the AP performs NAT (PAT) translation between the wireless client corporate network subnet and the home network where the AP is located.

The personal SSID is configurable by a Cisco OEAP user. Clients will either get their IP address from the home router (when the AP personal SSID firewall is disabled) or from the internal AP DHCP server (when the AP personal SSID firewall is enabled). In the latter scenario, if the clients want to reach the home network

devices, the AP perform sNAT (PAT) translation between the wireless client's internal network and the home network where the AP is located.

IPv6 Address Support

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, IPv6 addressing is supported. You can disable IPv6 addressing only by disabling the feature.

**Note**

The end-to-end network should support IPv6, that is, both the corporate network (controller, corporate gateway, and so on) and the home network (wireless clients, home router, and so on) should support IPv6.

Prerequisites for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

- Cisco Wave 2 APs or Cisco Catalyst 9100AX Series Access Points
- URL filter list that matches the ACL name configured in split tunneling

Restrictions for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

- Cisco OEAPs are not supported when Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points (EWC) is used as a controller.
- Mesh topology is not supported.
- Clients connected on personal SSID or on home network (AP native VLAN) cannot discover devices on the corporate network.
- Split tunnelling is not supported in standalone mode.
- URL split tunnelling supports only up to 512 URLs.
- Action (deny or permit) can be specified only on the URL filter list, not for each individual entry.
- If URL-based ACL contains wild-card URLs, a maximum of 10 URLs are supported.
- The amount of snooped DNS IP addresses is limited as follows:
 - An AP can snoop 4095 IP addresses per DNS response, if IP addresses are less than 150,000.
 - An AP can snoop 10 IP addresses per DNS response, if IP addresses are between 150,000 and 200,000.
 - An AP can snoop five IP addresses per DNS response, if IP addresses are between 200,000 and 250,000.
 - An AP can snoop one IP address per DNS response, if IP addresses are greater than 250,000.
- A maximum of 128 IP address ACE (rules) can be used in the IP ACL for split tunnelling.
- URL-based split tunnelling only works with IPv4 addresses.

- The following restrictions are specific to IPv6 addressing
 - Multihoming (multiple router advertisement prefixes) is not supported (If a home network receives multiple prefixes, the one used by the AP that is connected to the controller is used.)
 - Roaming is not supported.
 - Filtering is not supported on the upstream traffic towards the wireless client.
 - Split tunneling is disabled for clients with duplicate IPv6 addresses. Traffic for these clients is forwarded centrally to the controller.
 - DHCPv6 prefix delegation is not supported for wireless clients.
 - If the corporate prefix length is smaller than the home prefix length, split tunneling for a particular client is disabled.

Use Cases for Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

Before Release 17.7.1, split tunneling used IP ACLs. This meant that cloud services such as Cisco Webex were accessed directly without going through the corporate network. The network administrator maintained the list of IP addresses that Cisco Webex used, which was a daunting task. From Release 17.7.1, using the Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling feature, the network administrator needs to provide only the DNS names that Cisco Webex uses. The AP ensures that traffic from these DNS names is routed directly to the internet without using the corporate network.

Workflow to Configure Cisco OEAP Split Tunneling

1. Create an IP address ACL or URL ACL
2. Add ACL to FlexConnect Profile
3. Enable Split Tunneling on Policy Profile
4. Verify the Configuration

Create an IP Address ACL (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ip access-list extended <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip access-list extended vlan_oeap</pre>	Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name. Note IP ACL can be used to define a default action if there is no match in the URL ACL.
Step 3	seq-num deny ip any host <i>hostname</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 deny ip any 10.10.0.0 0.0.255.255</pre>	Denies IP traffic from any host.
Step 4	seq-num permit ip any any <i>hostname</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 20 permit ip any any</pre>	Permits IP traffic from any source or destination host.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Create a URL ACL (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	urlfilter list <i>list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# urlfilter list vlan_oeap</pre>	Configures the URL filter list. The list name must not exceed 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	action permit Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit</pre>	Configures the action: Permit (traffic is allowed directly on the home network) or Deny (traffic is directed to the corporate network).
Step 4	filter-type post-authentication Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# filter-type post-authentication</pre>	Configures the URL list as post authentication filter.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	url <i>url-name</i> Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url wiki.cisco.com	Configures a URL.
Step 6	url <i>url-name</i> Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url example.com	(Optional) Configures a URL. Use this option when you want to add multiple URLs.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Add an ACL to a FlexConnect Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile	Configures a FlexConnect profile.
Step 3	acl-policy <i>acl-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy vlan_oep	Configures an ACL policy.
Step 4	urlfilter list <i>url-filter</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list vlan_oep	Configures a URL filter list.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# exit	Returns to FlexConnect profile configuration mode..

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	office-extend Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# office-extend</pre>	Enables the OEAP mode for a FlexConnect AP.
Step 7	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enable Split Tunnelling in a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile</pre>	Configures a FlexConnect profile.
Step 3	no central association Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# no central association</pre>	Disables central association and enables local association for locally switched clients.
Step 4	flex split-mac-acl <i>split-mac-acl-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# flex split-mac-acl vlan_oeap</pre>	Configures a split MAC ACL name. Note Ensure that you use the same <i>acl-policy-name</i> in the FlexConnect profile.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying the Cisco OEAP Split Tunnel Configuration

To verify the split tunneling DNS ACLs per wireless client on the AP side, use the following command:

```
Device# show split-tunnel client 00:11:22:33:44:55 access-list
```

```
Split tunnel ACLs for Client: 00:11:22:33:44:55
```

```
IP ACL: SplitTunnelACL
```

```
Tunnel packets Tunnel bytes NAT packets NAT bytes
              1           242              3           768
```

```
URL ACL: SplitTunnelACL
```

```
Tunnel packets Tunnel bytes NAT packets NAT bytes
              3           778              0              0
```

```
Resolved IPs for Client: 00:11:22:33:44:55 for Split tunnel
```

HIT-COUNT	URL	ACTION	IP-LIST
1	base1.com	deny.	20.0.1.1 20.0.1.10
2	base2.com	deny.	20.0.1.2
3	base3.com	deny.	20.0.1.3

To verify the current binding between a WLAN and an ACL, use the following command:

```
Device# show split-tunnel mapping
```

VAP-Id	ACL Name
0	SplitTunnelACL

To verify the content of the current URL ACL, use the following command:

```
Device# show flexconnect url-acl
```

ACL-NAME	ACTION	URL-LIST
SplitTunnelACL	deny	base.com

AP Survey Mode

To enable the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs and other upcoming AP models for site survey at customer sites, a new AP command is introduced to help APs to switch to survey mode. When an AP is in survey mode, the AP GUI is enabled and is used for configuring the RF parameters for site survey investigation.

To enable survey mode on an AP, run the **ap-type site-survey** command from the AP CLI.

The following features in the AP GUI are hidden, when the AP is in the survey mode:

- WAN
- Firewall

- Network Diagnostics



Note To make the hidden features visible on the AP GUI, you must switch the AP back to the CAPWAP mode, by running the **ap-type capwap** command from the AP CLI. In CAPWAP mode, the AP GUI becomes available only when the **OfficeExtend AP** field is enabled in the flex profile page associated to that AP.



Note To access the AP survey mode from the GUI, you must enter the default login as 'admin' and the default password as 'admin' (both case sensitive).

When the AP is in survey mode, it broadcasts an SSID by default. The default password to connect to this SSID is 'password' (case sensitive).

Information About AP Deployment Mode

The AP Deployment Mode feature enables you to configure Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Outdoor Access Points to operate in Indoor mode (in -E regulatory domain only) to increase the available channel list. The -E regulatory domain specifies the country of operation assigned to the AP. For more information on the regulatory domain, see [Countries and Regulations](#).

The -E regulatory domain currently supports only Unlicensed National Information Infrastructure U-NII-2C channels. This feature configures the Outdoor AP to operate in Indoor mode and expands the channels to include U-NII-1 and U-NII-2 in 5-GHz WLAN. For more information on U-NII-1 and U-NII-2, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unlicensed_National_Information_Infrastructure.



Note This feature applies to Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Outdoor APs only.

Use Case for AP Deployment Mode

A typical use case is to operate the Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Outdoor APs in Indoor mode in greenhouses, walk-in freezers, and so on.

Configuring AP Deployment Mode (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Go to **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.

To add a new AP join profile, see *Configuring an AP Profile (GUI)*. To modify an existing AP join profile, select the required AP join profile.

Step 2 Click the **General** tab.

Step 3 From the **Deployment mode** drop-down list, select one of the following:

- *Default or Outdoor*: Select this option if you want to configure the AP in outdoor mode. By default, Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Access Points are configured in outdoor mode.
- *Indoor*: Select this option if you want to configure the AP in indoor mode for enclosed spaces like green-houses or walk-in freezers.

Note

When the deployment mode is changed, the system prompts you to confirm the change. Select **Yes** to accept the change.

Step 4 Click **Apply to Device**.

To view the deployment status, go to **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**. On the **All Access Points** tab, click on a Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Access Point access point. In the **Edit AP** window, select the **Advanced** tab to view the default and current mode of the AP.

Configuring AP Deployment Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile1	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	dual-mode-ap-deployment-mode indoor Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dual-mode-ap-deployment-mode indoor	Configures the outdoor AP to operate in Indoor mode.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying AP Deployment Mode

To verify whether the AP indoor mode is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name APXXXX.31XX.83XX config general
Cisco AP Name      : APXXXX.31XX.83XX
=====

Cisco AP Identifier      : 4ca6.4d22.f140
Country Code            : Multiple Countries : CZ,US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-AE 802.11a:-ABE 802.11
6GHz:-BE
Radio Authority IDs     : None
AP Country Code         : CZ - Czech Republic
AP Regulatory Domain
    802.11bg             : -E
    802.11a             : -E
.
.
.AP Indoor Mode         : Enabled
```

To verify the available channel list in AP console, use the following command:

```
AP# show rrm receive configuration
RRM configuration slot 1
=====
Group Id
Switch Id      :0904640500ff
Group Cnt      :57454
IP address     :9.4.100.5
Encrypted      :0
Version        :1
Key            :ff3fff55ffffff42ffff2cff6d0affff
Domain         :default
Key Name       :Channel Count      :19
TX Chans       :36 40 44 48 52 56 60 64 100 104 108 112 116 120 124 128 132 136 140
```

To view the indoor deployment details in AP console, use the following command:

```
AP# show capwap client configuration
AdminState      : ADMIN_ENABLED(1)
Name            : AP3C57.31C5.9478
Location        : default location
Primary controller name : Rack10_katar
Primary controller IP   : 9.4.100.5
Secondary controller name :
Tertiary controller name :
.
.
.Indoor Deployment      : 2!Indoor Deployment: 2 signifies that the AP is in
Indoor mode.
!Indoor Deployment: 0 signifies that the AP is in Outdoor mode.
```




CHAPTER 22

Security

- [Information About Data Datagram Transport Layer Security, on page 265](#)
- [Configuring Data DTLS \(GUI\), on page 266](#)
- [Configuring Data DTLS \(CLI\), on page 266](#)
- [Introduction to the 802.1X Authentication, on page 267](#)
- [Limitations of the 802.1X Authentication, on page 269](#)
- [Topology - Overview, on page 269](#)
- [Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type \(GUI\), on page 270](#)
- [Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type, on page 270](#)
- [Enabling 802.1X on the Switch Port, on page 273](#)
- [Verifying 802.1X on the Switch Port, on page 275](#)
- [Verifying the Authentication Type, on page 275](#)
- [Feature History for Access Point Client ACL Counter, on page 275](#)
- [Information About Access Point Client ACL Counter, on page 276](#)

Information About Data Datagram Transport Layer Security

Data Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) enables you to encrypt CAPWAP data packets that are sent between an access point and the controller using DTLS, which is a standards-track IETF protocol that can encrypt both control and data packets based on TLS. CAPWAP control packets are management packets that are exchanged between a controller and an access point while CAPWAP data packets encapsulate forwarded wireless frames. CAPWAP control and data packets are sent over separate UDP ports: 5246 (control) and 5247 (data).



Note The supported version of DTLS is v1.2

If an access point does not support DTLS data encryption, DTLS is enabled only for the control plane, and a DTLS session for the data plane is not established.

If an access point supports Data DTLS, it enables data DTLS after receiving the new configuration from the controller. The access point performs a DTLS handshake on port 5247 and after successfully establishing the DTLS session. All the data traffic (from the access point to the controller and the controller to the access point) is encrypted.



Note The throughput is affected for some APs that have data encryption enabled.

The controller does not perform a DTLS handshake immediately after processing client-hello with a cookie, if the following incorrect settings are configured:

- ECDHE-ECDSA cipher in “ap dtls-cipher ◇” and RSA-based certificate in “wireless management trustpoint”.
- RSA cipher in “ap dtls-cipher ◇” and EC-based certificate in “wireless management trustpoint”.



Note This is applicable when you move from CC -> FIPS -> non-FIPS mode.



Note If the AP's DHCP lease time is less and the DHCP pool is small, access point join failure or failure in establishing the Data Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) session may occur. In such scenarios, associate the AP with a named site-tag and increase the DHCP lease time for at least 8 days.

Configuring Data DTLS (GUI)

Follow the procedure to enable DTLS data encryption for the access points on the controller :

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Tags and Profile > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add** to create a new **AP Join Profile** or click an existing profile to edit it.
 - Step 3** Click **CAPWAP > Advanced**.
 - Step 4** Check **Enable Data Encryption** check box to enable Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) data encryption.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Data DTLS (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to enable DTLS data encryption for the access points on the controller :

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile test-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note You can use the default AP profile (default-ap-profile) or create a named AP profile, as shown in the example.
Step 3	link-encryption Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# link-encryption	Enables link encryption based on the profile. Answer yes, when the system prompts you with this message: Note If you set stats-timer as as zero (0) under the AP profile, then the AP will not send the link encryption statistics. Enabling link-encryption will reboot the APs with link-encryption. Are you sure you want to continue? (y/n) [y]:
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show wireless dtls connections Example: Device# show wireless dtls connections	(Optional) Displays the DTLS session established for the AP that has joined this controller.
Step 6	show ap link-encryption Example: Device# show ap link-encryption	(Optional) Displays the link encryption-related statistics (whether link encryption is enabled or disabled) counter received from the AP.

Introduction to the 802.1X Authentication

IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication is configure on a device to prevent unauthorized devices from gaining access to the network. The device can combine the function of a router, switch, and access point, depending on the fixed configuration. Any device connecting to a switch port where 802.1X authentication is enabled must go through relevant EAP authentication model to start exchanging traffic.

Currently, the Cisco Wave 2 and Wi-Fi 6 (802.11AX) APs support 802.1X authentication with switch port for EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS and EAP-PEAP methods. Now, you can enable configurations and provide credentials to the AP from the controller .



Note If the AP is dot1x EAP-FAST, when the AP reboots, it should perform an anonymous PAC provision. For performing PAC provision, the ADH cipher suites should be used to establish an authenticated tunnel. If the ADH cipher suites are not supported by radius servers, AP will fail to authenticate on reload.

EAP-FAST Protocol

In the EAP-FAST protocol developed by Cisco, in order to establish a secured TLS tunnel with RADIUS, the AP requires a strong shared key (PAC), either provided via in-band provisioning (in a secured channel) or via out-band provisioning (manual).



Note The EAP-FAST type configuration requires 802.1x credentials configuration for AP, since AP will use EAP-FAST with MSCHAP Version 2 method.



Note Local EAP is not supported on the Cisco 7925 phones.



Note In Cisco Wave 2 APs, for 802.1x authentication using EAP-FAST after PAC provisioning (caused by the initial connection or after AP reload), ensure that you configure the switch port to trigger re-authentication using one of the following commands: **authentication timer restart num** or **authentication timer reauthenticate num**.

Starting from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1, TLS 1.2 is supported in EAP-FAST authentication protocol.

EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP Protocol

The EAP-TLS protocol or EAP-PEAP protocol provides certificate based mutual EAP authentication.

In EAP-TLS, both the server and the client side certificates are required, where the secured shared key is derived for the particular session to encrypt or decrypt data. Whereas, in EAP-PEAP, only the server side certificate is required, where the client authenticates using password based protocol in a secured channel.



Note The EAP-PEAP type configuration requires Dot1x credentials configuration for AP; and the AP also needs to go through LSC provisioning. AP uses the PEAP protocol with MSCHAP Version 2 method.

Limitations of the 802.1X Authentication

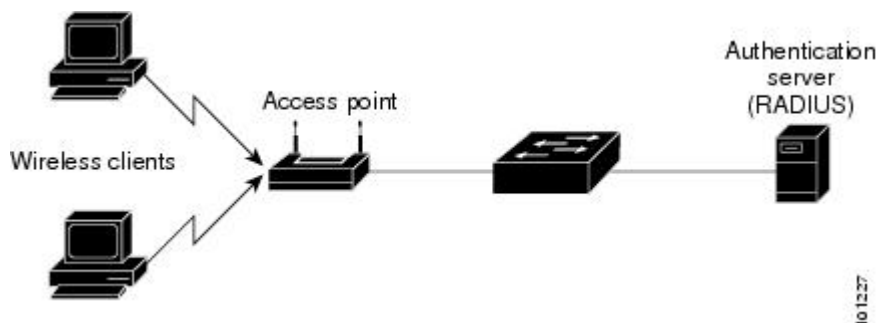
- When an AP migrates from a Cisco AireOS controller to a Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller, it loses its 802.1X credentials and configuration. To restore them, the AP must join the new Catalyst 9800 controller, which will push the necessary credentials and configuration for authentication on the switchport. You can either temporarily disable 802.1X authentication on the switchport to allow the AP to connect and receive its configuration, or use MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) to provide network access to the AP for staging. After staging, reload the AP or restart 802.1X authentication on the switch to complete the setup.
- 802.1X is not supported on dynamic ports or Ethernet Channel ports.
- 802.1X is not supported in a mesh AP scenario.
- There is no recovery from the controller on credential mismatch or the expiry/invalidity of the certificate on AP. The 802.1X authentication has to be disabled on the switch port to connect the AP back to fix the configurations.
- There are no certificate revocation checks implemented on the certificates installed in AP.
- Only one Locally Significant Certificates (LSC) can be provisioned on the AP and the same certificate must be used for CAPWAP DTLS session establishment with controller and the 802.1X authentication with the switch. If global LSC configuration on the controller is disabled; AP deletes LSC which is already provisioned.
- If clear configurations are applied on the AP, then the AP will lose the 802.1X EAP type configuration and the LSC certificates. AP should again go through staging process if 802.1X is required.
- 802.1X for trunk port APs on multi-host authentication mode is supported. Network Edge Authentication Topology (NEAT) is not supported on COS APs.
- The DHCP requests are sent in incremental periodic value of: "2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 11, 15, 20, 27, 30, 30, 30, 30, 30...". The Cisco Catalyst 9100 Access Points perform an interface reset following a 100-second timeout, which in turn resets the timers on the associated switch port to which they are connected.

Topology - Overview

The 802.1X authentication events are as follows:

1. The AP acts as the 802.1X supplicant and is authenticated by the switch against the RADIUS server which supports EAP-FAST along with EAP-TLS and EAP-PEAP. When dot1x authentication is enabled on a switch port, the device connected to it authenticates itself to receive and forward data other than 802.1X traffic.
2. In order to authenticate with EAP-FAST method, the AP requires the credentials of the RADIUS server. It can be configured at the controller, from where it will be passed on to the AP via configuration update request. For, EAP-TLS or EAP-PEAP the APs use the certificates (device/ID and CA) made significant by the local CA server.

Figure 5: Figure: 1 Topology for 802.1X Authentication



Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** page, click **Add**.
The **Add AP Join Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **AP > General** tab, navigate to the **AP EAP Auth Configuration** section.
- Step 4** From the **EAP Type** drop-down list, choose the EAP type as *EAP-FAST*, *EAP-TLS*, or *EAP-PEAP* to configure the dot1x authentication type.
- Step 5** From the **AP Authorization Type** drop-down list, choose the type as either *CAPWAP DTLS +* or *CAPWAP DTLS*.
- Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring 802.1X Authentication Type and LSC AP Authentication Type

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ap profile profile-name Example: Device(config)# ap profile new-profile	Specify a profile name.
Step 4	dot1x {max-sessions username eap-type lsc-ap-auth-state} Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type	Configures the dot1x authentication type. max-sessions: Configures the maximum 802.1X sessions initiated per AP. username: Configures the 802.1X username for all Aps. eap-type: Configures the dot1x authentication type with the switch port. lsc-ap-auth-state: Configures the LSC authentication state on the AP.
Step 5	dot1x eap-type {EAP-FAST EAP-TLS EAP-PEAP} Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type	Configures the dot1x authentication type: EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS, or EAP-PEAP.
Step 6	dot1x lsc-ap-auth-state {CAPWAP-DTLS Dot1x-port-auth Both} Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x lsc-ap-auth-state Dot1x-port-auth	Configures the LSC authentication state on the AP. CAPWAP-DTLS: Uses LSC only for CAPWAP DTLS. Dot1x-port-auth: Uses LSC only for dot1x authentication with port. Both: Uses LSC for both CAPWAP-DTLS and Dot1x authentication with port.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits the AP profile configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the 802.1X Username and Password (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	On the AP Join page, click the name of the AP Join profile or click Add to create a new one.
Step 3	Click the Management tab and then click the Credentials tab.
Step 4	Enter the local username and password details.
Step 5	Choose the appropriate local password type.
Step 6	Enter 802.1X username and password details.
Step 7	Choose the appropriate 802.1X password type.
Step 8	Enter the time in seconds after which the session should expire.
Step 9	Enable local credentials and/or 802.1X credentials as required.
Step 10	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring the 802.1X Username and Password (CLI)

The following procedure configures the 802.1X password for all the APs:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile new-profile	Specify a profile name.
Step 4	dot1x { max-sessions username eap-type lsc-ap-auth-state } Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot1x eap-type	Configures the dot1x authentication type. max-sessions: Configures the maximum 802.1X sessions initiated per AP. username: Configures the 802.1X username for all Aps. eap-type: Configures the dot1x authentication type with the switch port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		lsc-ap-auth-state: Configures the LSC authentication state on the AP.
Step 5	dot1x username <username> password {0 8} <password> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)#dot1x username username password 0 password	Configures the dot1x password for all the APs. 0: Specifies an unencrypted password will follow. 8: Specifies an AES encrypted password will follow.

Enabling 802.1X on the Switch Port

The following procedure enables 802.1X on the switch port:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Enables AAA.
Step 4	aaa authentication dot1x {default listname} method1[method2...] Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default group radius	Creates a series of authentication methods that are used to determine user privilege to access the privileged command level so that the device can communicate with the AAA server.
Step 5	aaa authorization network group Example: aaa authorization network group	Enables AAA authorization for network services on 802.1X.
Step 6	dot1x system-auth-control Example: Device(config)# dot1x system-auth-control	Globally enables 802.1X port-based authentication.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	interface type slot/port Example: <pre>Device(config)# interface fastethernet2/1</pre>	Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the interface to be enabled for 802.1X authentication.
Step 8	authentication port-control {auto force-authorized force-unauthorized} Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# authentication port-control auto</pre>	Enables 802.1X port-based authentication on the interface. auto—Enables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port changes from down to up or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The Device requests the identity of the supplicant and begins relaying authentication messages between the supplicant and the authentication server. Each supplicant attempting to access the network is uniquely identified by the Device by using the supplicant MAC address. force-authorized—Disables IEEE 802.1X authentication and causes the port to change to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. The port sends and receives normal traffic without IEEE 802.1X-based authentication of the client. This is the default setting. force-unauthorized—Causes the port to remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the supplicant to authenticate. The Device cannot provide authentication services to the supplicant through the port.
Step 9	dot1x pae [supplicant authenticator both] Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator</pre>	Enables 802.1X authentication on the port with default parameters.
Step 10	end Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# end</pre>	Enters privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying 802.1X on the Switch Port

The following show command displays the authentication state of 802.1X on the switch port:

```
Device# show dot1x all
Sysauthcontrol          Enabled
Dot1x Protocol Version  2
Dot1x Info for FastEthernet1
-----
PAE                      = AUTHENTICATOR
PortControl              = AUTO
ControlDirection        = Both
HostMode                 = MULTI_HOST
ReAuthentication         = Disabled
QuietPeriod              = 60
ServerTimeout            = 30
SuppTimeout              = 30
ReAuthPeriod             = 3600 (Locally configured)
ReAuthMax                = 2
MaxReq                   = 2
TxPeriod                 = 30
RateLimitPeriod          = 0
Device#
```

Verifying the Authentication Type

The following show command displays the authentication state of an AP profile:

```
Device#show ap profile <profile-name> detailed ?
  chassis  Chassis
  |        Output modifiers
  <cr>

Device#show ap profile <profile-name> detailed

AP Profile Name      : default-ap-profile
Description          : default ap profile
...
Dot1x EAP Method     : [EAP-FAST/EAP-TLS/EAP-PEAP/Not-Configured]
LSC AP AUTH STATE    : [CAPWAP DTLS / DOT1x port auth / CAPWAP DTLS + DOT1x port auth]
```

Feature History for Access Point Client ACL Counter

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 16: Feature History for Access Point Client ACL Counter

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.13.1	Access Point Client ACL Counter	The AP Client ACL Counter feature provides a statistical count for client ACL rules. This feature allows you to count the number of packets that hit a specific rule in the client ACL.

Information About Access Point Client ACL Counter

From the Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.13.1 release, the AP Client ACL Counter feature provides a statistical count for client ACL rules. Until the Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 release, there was no per-rule counter to determine which rule was passing or dropping the packets.

Use this feature to enable the counter in the AP to count the number of packets that hit a specific rule in the client ACL, using the following AP commands:

- **[no] debug flexconnect access-list counter [all | vlan-acl | client-acl]**
- **[no] debug flexconnect access-list event [all | vlan-acl | client-acl]**
- To clear ACL counters use the following command:
 - **clear counters access-list client <MAC> all**

AP Client ACL Counter is supported in the FlexConnect mode and local switching central authentication sub-mode.



CHAPTER 23

AP Joining

- [Failover Priority for Access Points, on page 277](#)
- [Setting AP Priority \(GUI\), on page 278](#)
- [Setting AP Priority, on page 278](#)
- [Overview of Access Point Plug-n-Play, on page 278](#)
- [Provisioning AP from PnP Server, on page 279](#)
- [Verifying AP Tag Configuration, on page 279](#)
- [Feature History for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile, on page 280](#)
- [Information About AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile, on page 280](#)
- [Restrictions for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile, on page 281](#)
- [Configure AP Priming Profile, on page 281](#)
- [Configure AP Priming Using Filters, on page 282](#)
- [Configure Per-AP Priming, on page 283](#)
- [Verify the Configuration, on page 283](#)

Failover Priority for Access Points

Each controller has a defined number of communication ports for access points. When multiple controllers with unused access point ports are deployed on the same network and one controller fails, the dropped access points automatically poll for unused controller ports and associate with them.

The following are some guidelines for configuring failover priority for access points:

- You can configure your wireless network so that the backup controller recognizes a join request from a higher-priority access point, and if necessary, disassociates a lower-priority access point as a means to provide an available port.
- Failover priority is not in effect during the regular operation of your wireless network. It takes effect only if there are more associations requests to controller than the available AP capacity on the controller.
- AP priority is checked while connecting to the controller when the controller is in full scale or the primary controller fails, the APs fallback to the secondary controller.
- You can enable failover priority on your network and assign priorities to the individual access points.
- By default, all access points are set to priority level 1, which is the lowest priority level. Therefore, you need to assign a priority level only to those access points that warrant a higher priority.

Setting AP Priority (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click the Access Point.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit AP** dialog box, go to **High Availability** tab.
 - Step 4** Choose the priority from the **AP failover priority** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.
-

Setting AP Priority



Note Priority of access points ranges from 1 to 4, with 4 being the highest.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap-name</i> priority <i>priority</i> Example: Device# ap name AP44d3.ca52.48b5 priority 1	Specifies the priority of an access point.
Step 2	show ap config general Example: Device# show ap config general	Displays common information for all access points.
Step 3	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> config general Example: Device# show ap name AP44d3.ca52.48b5 config general	Displays the configuration of a particular access point.

Overview of Access Point Plug-n-Play

The Plug and Play (PnP) server provides staging parameters to an access point (AP) before it joins a controller. Using this staging configuration, the AP receives the runtime configuration when it joins the controller.

The AP PnP feature enables the PnP server to provide all tag-related information, as part of the preconfigured information to the AP and in turn, to the controller.

You can upload configuration in PNP server in either *TXT* or *JSON* format and also add the AP details. The AP details are then mapped with the details in the *TXT* or *JSON* configuration file. While provisioning AP from PnP server, the AP acquires this configuration details. Based on the configuration details, the AP then joins the corresponding controller with the tag details.

Provisioning AP from PnP Server

You can provision AP from PnP Server in either ways:

- Configure DHCP server or switch with *Option 43*. For example, you can refer to the following code sample:

```
ip dhcp pool vlan10
network 9.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
default-router 9.10.10.1
option 43 ascii 5A1D;B2;K4;|9.10.60.5;J80
```

- Configure DHCP server with DNS. For example, you can refer to the following code sample:

```
ip dhcp pool vlan10
network 9.10.10.0 255.255.255.0
default-router 9.10.10.1
dns-server 9.8.65.5
domain-name dns.com
```

Verifying AP Tag Configuration

The following example shows how to verify the AP tag configuration:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 5
```

AP Name RF Tag Name	AP Mac Misconfigured	Site Tag Name Tag Source	Policy Tag Name
APd42c.4482.6102 default-rf-tag	d42c.4482.6102 No	default-site-tag Default	default-policy-tag
AP00c1.64d8.6af0 named-rf-tag	00c1.64d8.6af0 No	named-site-tag AP	named-policy-tag



Note The details in the second row reflect the tag source coming from a PNP server.

Feature History for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

Table 17: Feature History for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.2	AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile	This feature helps to configure primary, secondary, and tertiary controllers for a group of APs matching regular expression or for an individual AP using priming profiles.

Information About AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile

In large networks, accessing every AP console and configuring AP priming for primary, secondary, and tertiary controllers are not easy tasks. The AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile feature allows you to simplify the task of priming APs by using profiles defined in the controller.

Using the AP priming profile under the AP filter profile, you can configure primary, secondary, and tertiary controllers for a group of APs matching regular expressions, or for an individual AP using AP Ethernet MAC. When the AP joins the controller, the AP priming configuration gets pushed to the AP depending on whether priming override is enabled or not.



Note When the controller sends a priming profile to the AP, the AP disconnects from the current controller and joins the controller in the priming profile. A CAPWAP restart or device reboot is not required.



Note When an AP's primary controller comes back online, it reconnects to it, disassociating from any backup controllers. The AP does not switch to secondary controllers even if they are available.

When configured with primary, secondary, and tertiary controllers, the AP connects to the tertiary controller if the primary and secondary are unresponsive. If the secondary recovers while the primary is down, the AP stays connected to the tertiary controller until the primary is available. If the tertiary fails while the primary is still down, the AP switches to the available secondary controller.



Note Using the AP Onboarding VLAN for client on board results in error due to address overlap.

Restrictions for AP Fallback to Controllers Using AP Priming Profile

- To complete the AP priming process, you must create a filter. Without a filter, the system cannot determine which APs to apply the priority to, and the priming operation will not proceed.
- Rolling AP upgrade will not work if priming override is enabled.
- The maximum number of priming profiles permitted is 128. The length of each profile can be up to 32 ASCII characters.

Configure AP Priming Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile ap priming <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile ap priming Prime-FX	Configures the profile to prime APs.
Step 3	primary <i>controller-name ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-priming)# primary aaaa 209.165.201.2	Configures name and IP address of the primary controller for AP fallback.
Step 4	secondary <i>controller-name ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-priming)# secondary bbbb 209.165.201.3	Configures name and IP address of the secondary controller for AP fallback.
Step 5	tertiary <i>controller-name ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-priming)# tertiary bbbb 209.165.201.4	Configures name and IP address of the tertiary controller for AP fallback.
Step 6	priming-override Example: Device(config-priming)# priming-override	Sends the priming details to the AP. Priming override is disabled by default. When disabled, information stored in the AP priming profile is not sent to the APs. .

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Note N+1 upgrade may not work as expected when priming override is enabled. Before using N+1 upgrade, ensure that priming override is disabled using the no priming-override command.

Configure AP Priming Using Filters

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap filter name <i>filter-name</i> type priming Example: Device(config)# ap filter name test-filter type priming	Configures the AP filter and sets the type as priming. Ensure that you set type as priming because the default filter type is tag. Note The existing filter type cannot be modified unless the filter is deleted and created with a different type. Use the no ap filter name command to delete a filter.
Step 3	ap name-regex <i>reg-ex</i> Example: Device(config-ap-pr-filter)# ap name-regex BGL18	Configures the AP name regular expression match.
Step 4	profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-pr-filter)# profile Prime-FX	Maps the priming profile to the filter.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-ap-pr-filter)# exit	Returns to global configuration.
Step 6	ap filter priority <i>priority</i> filter-name <i>filter-name</i> Example:	Configures priority for a named AP filter. You can configure multiple AP priming profiles with unique priority levels. This allows you to

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap filter priority 12 filter-name test-filter	set different priority levels for each AP priming profile.

Configure Per-AP Priming

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap 00:00:5e:00:53:af	Enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	priming profile-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# priming Prime-FX	Maps a priming profile to an AP.

Verify the Configuration

To view the list of all the priming filters, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap filters all type priming
```

Filter Name	regex	Priming profile
FLR1	*AP-FLOOR-1*	AP-PRIMING-1
FLR2	*AP-FLOOR-2*	AP-PRIMING-2

To view the list of all the active priming filters, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap filters active type priming
```

Priority	Filter Name	regex	Priming profile
0	FLR2	*AP-FLOOR-2*	AP-PRIMING-2
1	FLR1	*AP-FLOOR-1*	AP-PRIMING-1

To view the summary of the priming profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile ap priming summary
```

```

Number of AP Priming Profiles: 2
Priming profile
-----
AP-PRIMING-1
AP-PRIMING-2

```

To view the details of the priming profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile ap priming all
```

Profile Name	Primary Controller Name	Primary Controller IP	Secondary Controller Name	Secondary Controller IP	Tertiary Controller Name	Tertiary Controller IP	Override
AP-PRIMING-1	BGL18-wlc	209.165.201.1	BGL17-wlc				
	209.165.201.2		0.0.0.0				Disabled
AP-PRIMING-2	BGL18-wlc	209.165.201.2	BGL17-wlc				
	209.165.201.2	BGL12-wlc	209.165.201.3				Disabled

To view the priming information for each AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 config general | sec Priming
```

```

Priming Profile           : AP-PRIMING-1
Priming Override          : Disabled
Priming Source            : MAC/FILTER/NONE
Filter Name               : FLR1

```



CHAPTER 24

AP Management

- AP Crash File Upload, on page 286
- Configuring AP Crash File Upload (CLI), on page 287
- Information About LED States for Access Points, on page 287
- Configuring LED State in Access Points (GUI), on page 288
- Configuring LED State for Access Points in the Global Configuration Mode (CLI), on page 289
- Configuring LED State in the AP Profile, on page 289
- Verifying LED State for Access Points, on page 290
- Access Point Support Bundle, on page 290
- Exporting an AP Support Bundle (GUI), on page 291
- Exporting an AP Support Bundle (CLI), on page 292
- Monitoring the Status of Support Bundle Export, on page 292
- Information About Access Point Memory Information, on page 292
- Verifying Access Point Memory Information, on page 292
- Information About Access Point Tag Persistency, on page 293
- Configuring AP Tag Persistency (GUI), on page 293
- Configuring AP Tag Persistency (CLI), on page 294
- Verifying AP Tag Persistency, on page 295
- Feature History for AP Power Save, on page 296
- Information About AP Power Save, on page 296
- Wakeup Threshold for Access Point Power Save Mode, on page 303
- AP Power Save Scenarios, on page 303
- Configuring Power Policy Profile (GUI), on page 305
- Configuring a Power Policy Profile (CLI), on page 305
- Configuring a Calendar Profile (GUI), on page 306
- Configuring a Calendar Profile (CLI), on page 307
- Configuring a Power Policy in an AP Join Profile (GUI), on page 308
- Mapping a Power Profile Under an AP Profile (CLI), on page 308
- Configuring Client Wakeup Threshold (CLI), on page 309
- Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (GUI), on page 310
- Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (CLI), on page 310
- Configuration Example of Power Profile, on page 311
- Verifying Access Point Power Policy (GUI), on page 311
- Verifying the Access Point Power Profile, on page 312

- [Verifying Radio Spatial Streams, on page 313](#)
- [Verifying Client Threshold, on page 314](#)
- [Verifying PoE-Out Details, on page 314](#)
- [Information About Access Point Real-Time Statistics, on page 314](#)
- [Feature History for Real Time Access Point Statistics, on page 315](#)
- [Restrictions for AP Radio Monitoring Statistics , on page 315](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Real Time Statistics \(GUI\), on page 315](#)
- [Configuring Real-Time Access Point Statistics \(CLI\), on page 316](#)
- [Configuring AP Radio Monitoring Statistics, on page 318](#)
- [Monitoring Access Point Real-Time Statistics \(GUI\), on page 319](#)
- [Verifying Access Point Real-Time Statistics, on page 320](#)
- [Feature History for Access Point Auto Location Support, on page 321](#)
- [Information About Access Point Auto Location Support, on page 321](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging \(GUI\) , on page 322](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging \(CLI\), on page 323](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters \(GUI\), on page 323](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters \(CLI\), on page 324](#)
- [Configuring Access Point Coordinates and Floor Information \(CLI\), on page 324](#)
- [Configuring On-Demand Access Point Ranging \(CLI\), on page 325](#)
- [Enabling Fine Time Measurement \(802.11mc\) Responder \(GUI\), on page 326](#)
- [Configuring Fine Time Measurement \(802.11mc\) Responder \(CLI\), on page 326](#)
- [Configuring Air Pressure Reporting \(CLI\), on page 327](#)
- [Verifying Access Point Geolocation Information, on page 327](#)

AP Crash File Upload

When a converted access point unexpectedly reboots, the access point stores a crash file on its local flash memory at the time of the crash. After the unit reboots, it sends the reason for the reboot to the device. If the unit rebooted because of a crash, the device pulls up the crash file using the existing CAPWAP messages and stores it in the device flash memory. The crash information copy is removed from the access point's flash memory when the device pulls it from the access point:



Note The system does not generate reports in case of a reload.

During a process crash, the following are collected locally from the device:

- Full process core
- Trace logs
- Cisco IOS syslogs (not guaranteed in case of nonactive crashes)
- System process information
- Bootup logs
- Reload logs

- Certain types of proc information

All this information is stored in separate files, which are then archived and compressed into one bundle. This makes it convenient to get a crash snapshot in one place, and can be then moved off the box for analysis. This report is generated before the device goes down to ROMMON/bootloader.



Note Except for the full core and tracelogs, everything else is a text file.

Configuring AP Crash File Upload (CLI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	enable Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> crash-file get-crash-data Collects AP crash information. The crash file is uploaded automatically after the AP reloads to ready state. Therefore, this command does not have to be manually executed.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> crash-file get-radio-core-dump slot {0 1} Collects the AP core dump file for slot 0 or slot 1.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> core-dump <i>tftp-ip crash-file</i> uncompress Uploads the AP crash coredump file to the given TFTP location.
Step 5	show ap crash-file Displays the AP crash file, as well as the radio crash file.
Step 6	dir bootflash Displays the crash file in bootflash with .crash extension.
-

Information About LED States for Access Points

In a wireless LAN network where there are a large number of access points, it is difficult to locate a specific access point associated with the controller. You can configure the controller to set the LED state of an access point so that it blinks and the access point can be located. This configuration can be done in the wireless network on a global as well as per-AP level.

The LED state configuration at the global level takes precedence over the AP level.



Note When disabling the LED on an access point, note that the LED state is controlled by the AP-Join profile on the Cisco 9800 controller. To maintain the LED in a disabled state, it is recommended to create a separate AP-Join profile and Site Tag specifically for APs with the LED disabled.



Note For APs that have Ethernet LEDs in addition to the main system LED, the Ethernet LEDs are enabled or disabled (switched ON or OFF) as per the system LED. For example, if the system LED is ON, the Ethernet LED will also be ON.

Configuring LED State in Access Points (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click an AP from the AP list.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, under the General section, go to **LED Settings**.
- a) Click the box adjacent to the **LED State** field to enable or disable the LED state.
 - b) From the **LED Brightness Level** drop-down list, choose a value from 1 to 8.
- Step 4** Under the **Flash Settings** section, perform the following steps:
- a) Click the box adjacent to the **Flash State** field to enable or disable the flash state.
When the flash state is enabled, the current status of the flash and the flash duration fields are displayed.
 - b) From the **Flash Duration** drop-down list, choose either **Always ON** or **Timed**.
If you choose the **Timed** option, the **Time Duration** field is displayed.
 - c) In the **Time Duration** field, specify the flash duration time, in seconds. The default value is one second.
The valid range is between 1 second and 3600 seconds.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring LED State for Access Points in the Global Configuration Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led Example: Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led	Enables the LED state for Cisco APs, globally.
Step 3	ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led flash {start duration <i>duration</i> stop} Example: Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led flash start duration 20 Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led flash stop	Configures the starting and the stopping of the AP LED flash. The valid start duration range is between 0 and 3600 seconds.
Step 4	ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led-brightness-level 1-8 Example: Device# ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> led-brightness-level 4	Configures the LED brightness level. Value of the brightness is from 1 to 8.

Configuring LED State in the AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>default-ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)#ap profile <i>default-ap-profile</i>	Enters the AP profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	led Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# led	Enables the LED-state for all Cisco APs.

Verifying LED State for Access Points

To verify the LED state of the access points, use the following command:

show ap name AXXX-APXXXX.bdXX.f2XX config general

```
Device# show ap name AXXX-APXXXX.bdXX.f2XX config general
Cisco AP Name : AXXX-APXXXX.bdXX.f2XX
=====
Cisco AP Identifier : 0cXX.bdXX.65XX
Country Code : Multiple Countries : FR,IN,US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-AE 802.11a:-ABDEN
AP Country Code : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
802.11bg : -A
802.11a : -B
.
.
.
CAPWAP Preferred mode : IPv4
CAPWAP UDP-Lite : Not Configured
AP Submode : WIPS
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Dhcp Server : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : information
Logging Syslog facility : kern
Software Version : 17.X.0.XXX
Boot Version : 1.1.X.X
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
LED State : Enabled
MDNS Group Id : 0
.
.
.
```

Access Point Support Bundle

An access point (AP) support bundle contains core files, crash files, **show run-configuration**, configuration commands, msglogs, and traplogs.

This topic describes how you can retrieve the support bundle information of an AP and export it to the controller or to an external server. (Until Cisco IOS XE, Release 17.2.1, you had to log in to the AP console to retrieve the AP support-bundle information.)

The Access Point Support Bundle feature is supported only on Cisco Wave2 APs and Cisco Catalyst APs.



Note The destination file path for a Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller-initiated SCP copy of an AP's support bundle must be a pre-existing folder name. For example:

```
ap name APNAME export support-bundle mode scp target ip-address 10.11.12.13 path /  
ap name APNAME export support-bundle mode scp target ip-address 10.11.12.13 path flash:  
ap name APNAME export support-bundle mode scp target ip-address 10.11.12.13 path /BUNDLE
```

Exporting an AP Support Bundle (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.

Step 2 Click the corresponding AP name.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.

Step 3 Click the **Support Bundle** tab.

Step 4 From the **Destination** drop-down list, choose one of the following:

- **This Device:** If you choose this, enter the values for the **Server IP**, **Destination File Path**, **Controller Username**, and **Password** fields.

Note

When you choose **This Device**, a bundle is sent through Secure Copy (SCP) to the controller (if you have configured the **ip scp server enable** command globally on the controller). You can easily retrieve the bundle later from your browser, using the controller file manager.

- **External Server:** If you choose this, from the **Transfer Mode** drop-down list, choose either **scp** or **tftp**.
If you choose the **scp** transfer mode, enter the values for the **Server IP**, **Destination File Path**, **Controller Username**, and **Password** fields.

If you choose the **tftp** transfer mode, enter the values for the **Server IP**, and **Destination File Path** fields.

Note

Information about the **Last Export Status**, such as **State**, **Transfer Mode**, **Server IP**, **File Path**, and **Time of Export**, is displayed on the right-hand side of the window.

Step 5 Click **Start Transfer**.

Exporting an AP Support Bundle (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> export support-bundle mode { scp tftp } target ip-address { <i>A.B.C.D</i> <i>X:X:X:X::X</i> } path <i>file-path</i> Example: Device> ap name <i>Cisco-AP-name</i> export support-bundle mode scp target ip-address 10.1.1.1 path <i>file-path</i>	Exports the AP support bundle through the SCP or TFTP transfer modes. If you select the scp , you will be prompted to provide your username and password. For tftp , username and password is not required.

Monitoring the Status of Support Bundle Export

To monitor the status of a support bundle export, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap support-bundle summary
AP Name      Server-IP    Status      Last Successful Time    Path File-name
-----
AP_28XXX     81.1.1.10    Copy Success 04/24/2020 07:27:38 UTC
AP_28XXX_support.17.4.0.2.2020.07XXX.tgz
```

Information About Access Point Memory Information

With the introduction of the Access Point Memory Information feature, you can view the access point (AP) memory type, the CPU type, and the memory size per AP, after single sign-on authentication. APs share the memory information with the controller during the join phase.

To view the memory information of a specific AP, use the **show ap name** *AP-NAME* **config general** command.

Verifying Access Point Memory Information

To verify the memory information of a specified AP, including the CPU type, memory type and memory size, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP-NAME config general
Cisco AP Name      : AP-NAME
=====
Cisco AP Identifier : 00XX.f1XX.e0XX
Country Code       : Multiple Countries : FR,IN,US
```

```
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country      : 802.11bg:-AE   802.11a:-ABDEN
AP Country Code                           : US   - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
    802.11bg                               : -A
    802.11a                               : -B
.
.
.
CPU Type                                 : ARMv7 Processor rev 1 (v7l)
Memory Type                             : DDR4
Memory Size                             : 1028096 KB
.
.
.
```

Information About Access Point Tag Persistency

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 onwards, AP tag persistency can be enabled globally on the controller. By default it is disabled. When APs join a controller with tag persistency enabled, the mapped tags are saved on the APs. This eliminates the need to write the tag configurations on each AP individually.

Configuring AP Tag Persistency (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags**.
- Step 2** Click the **AP** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Tag Source** tab, check the **Enable AP Tag Persistency** check box to configure AP Tag persistency globally.
- When APs join a controller with the tag persistency enabled, the mapped tags are saved on the AP without having to write the tag configurations on each AP individually.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

What to do next

Save tags on an AP.

Saving Tags on an Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click an AP from the list.

- The **Edit AP** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **General** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Tags** section, specify the appropriate policy, site, and RF tags that you created in the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags** page.
 - Step 5** From the **Policy** drop-down list, select a value.
 - Step 6** From the **Site** drop-down list, select a value.
 - Step 7** From the **RF** drop-down list, select a value.
 - Step 8** Check the **Write Tag Config to AP** check box to push the tags to the AP so that the AP can save and remember this information even when the AP is moved from one controller to another.
 - Step 9** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Deleting Saved Tags on the Access Point

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click an AP from the list of APs.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit AP** window, choose the **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Set to Factory Default** section, check the **Clear Resolved Tag Config** check box to clear the saved tags on an AP.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring AP Tag Persistency (CLI)

Before you begin

For an AP to preserve its policy tag, site tag, and RF tag configured from the primary controller, these tags must also exist on the other controllers that the AP connect to. If all the three tags do not exist, the AP applies the default policy tag, site tag, and RF tag. Similarly, the tag policy is applicable even if one or two tags exist. AP tag persistency helps in priming an AP in N+1 redundancy scenarios. For more information about configuring tags, see

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/9800/17-6/config-guide/b_wl_17_6_cg/m_config_model.html.



Note After being enabled, AP tag persistency is performed during AP join. Therefore, if there are any APs that are already joined to the controller, those APs must rejoin the controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap tag persistency enable Example: Device(config)# ap tag persistency enable	Configures AP tag persistency.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying AP Tag Persistency

To verify AP tag persistency in the primary controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 1
```

AP Name	AP Mac Misconfigured	Site Tag Name Tag Source	Policy Tag Name	RF Tag Name
Cisco01_AP No	xxxx.xxxx.xxxx	default-site-tag Static	OpenRoaming	default-rf-tag



Note If the Tag Source displays **Static** or **Filter**, it means that the AP tag mappings were configured on the primary controller. If the source displays **Default**, it means that the AP received the default tags when joining the controller.

To verify the AP tag persistency in the secondary controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 1
```

AP Name	AP Mac Misconfigured	Site Tag Name Tag Source	Policy Tag Name	RF Tag Name
Cisco01_AP No	xxxx.xxxx.xxxx AP	default-site-tag	OpenRoaming	default-rf-tag



Note If the Tag Source displays **AP**, it means that the policy tag, site tag, and RF tag match what was configured on the primary controller, indicating that the AP tags have persisted across controllers.

Feature History for AP Power Save

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 18: Feature History for AP Power Save

Release	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1	This feature allows a network administrator to force APs to operate in low-power mode to reduce power consumption.
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Feature support for the following APs: • Cisco Catalyst 9164 Series Access Points • Cisco Catalyst 9166 Series Access Points
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	The following features are supported: • Radio spatial streams • Flexible PoE profiles
Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1	AP Power Distribution support in Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs.
Cisco IOS XE 17.18.1	Support for Multi-Link Operation (MLO) in low power mode is added, enabling MLO even when one or more radios are operating in low power mode. This feature is applicable for the Cisco Wireless 9178 Series Access Points only

Information About AP Power Save

The power-save mode in APs allows a network administrator to force APs to operate in low-power mode to reduce power consumption.

For more information about the APs that support the AP Power Save feature, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

Access Point Power Policy

The access point power policy allows you to define the power budget utilization available for an AP, wherein, you can define a set of policies for different interfaces on an AP. You can manage interfaces such as Wi-Fi radios, USB, and so on, as required.

Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXI/D APs support up to two radio interfaces (single 5 GHz), and Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXE APs support up to three (dual 5 GHz) radio interfaces. When Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs operate under 802.3at/PoE+/30W insufficient power condition, the new operating modes support both dual or Tri-Radio mode.

Use Case for AP Power Policy

The following is the use case of an AP power policy:

- You can define a power policy for the available power inputs, such as, 802.3af, 802.3at, 802.3bt (for multiple levels), DC power, and so on. With tri-radio and quad-radio APs, the power requirement has gone beyond the capability of the 802.3at Power over Ethernet (PoE) mode. Therefore, with the AP power policy, for example, we statically predefine an AP operation when provided with non-802.3bt power (such, as TX power, radio chains, USB port, SFP, and so on).

Power-Save Mode

The power-save mode enables an AP to switch to a low-power mode when no clients are associated with the AP. For example, when this mode is enabled in workspaces, the AP falls asleep during after hours, thereby saving power consumption of the AP throughout the night.

From Cisco IOS-XE Cupertino 17.10.1 onwards, you can shut down AP radios or lower the radio spatial streams, to reduce usage of power. You can enforce radio speed by configuring the number of spatial streams on the radios. The combinations for radio spatial stream policies are: 1X1, 2X2, 3X3 (only for Cisco Catalyst 9130 Series Access Points), 4X4, and 8X8.

In Cisco IOS XE Release 17.15.x, Multi-Link Operation (MLO) is not supported if any radio operates in low power mode.

However, from Cisco IOS XE Release 17.18.1 onwards, MLO support is enabled even when any of the radios are in low power mode. This feature is applicable for the Cisco Wireless 9178 Series Access Points only

The following are the advantages of the power-save mode:

- Increases the energy saving per AP: In the power save mode you can reduce AP functions during off-peak hours and save an additional 20% in energy costs compared to the regular idle mode.
- Enables environmentally conscious purchases: Large enterprises and companies track environmental performance as one of their key indices. They have a centralized energy team to monitor their energy efficiency, which magnifies the importance of the power-save feature.

PoE Profiles

- Fixed PoE Profile: The APs negotiate the power that is required, from the switches they are connected to. The power required varies from one AP model to another AP model. If an AP is not granted the power it requested, it operates under the power budget. In such conditions, some of the interfaces operate under *degraded conditions*.

For example, some radios may operate at 2SS instead of at 4SS, which they are capable of. The operating conditions for each of the AP interfaces differs from one power level to another. These are referred to as fixed PoE profiles. Fixed PoE profiles are applied when the AP is operating in normal mode, that is, nonpower-save mode. When the AP operates in power-save mode, the configured PoE power policies are applied.

- PoE Power Policy: With power policies or profiles, you can configure interfaces that you want to set at certain speeds. With this policy, you can configure a profile of your choice that will be pushed to the AP based on your calendar or timing. For example, on a group of APs in the second floor, push a profile where you want to turn off all APs, except 2.4-GHz radio, from 7 p.m. to 7 a.m.

- **Flexible PoE Profile:** With flexible PoE profiles, you can configure different interfaces and set specific parameter values and states for each interface, instead of following fixed PoE profile rules. If an AP does not get the power it requires, it operates under the power budget by using the flexible PoE profile.

In Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1, PoE-out is a new interface introduced in Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs, in addition to the USB, Ethernet, and LAN interfaces. The PoE-out for Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series AP RLAN works only if you have enabled the RLAN port.

The operational parameter values for each interface of the AP may be adjusted based on the AP's hardware specifications as the following Table 2 to 7.

Table 19: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9115, 9120, 9130 Series APs

Access Points	PoE-In-Mode/DC Mode	Consumption @ Power Device	Consumption @ Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode						
		AP	Worst-Case Cable	Radio 1	Radio 2	Radio 3	Ethernet	USB	Module	PoEOut
Cisco Catalyst 9115AXI Access Points	.3af	13.0	15.4	2X2	2X2	—	1G	N	—	—
	.3at	16.0	18.9	4X4	4X4	—	2.5G	N	—	—
	.3at	20.4	24.1	4X4	4X4	—	2.5G	Y(3.75W)	—	—
Cisco Catalyst 9115AXE Access Points	.3af	13.0	15.4	2X2	2X2	—	1G	N	—	—
	.3at	17.0	20.1	4X4	4X4	—	2.5G	N	—	—
	.3at	21.4	25.3	4X4	4X4	—	2.5G	Y(3.75W)	—	—
Cisco Catalyst 9120AXI Access Points	.3af	13.8	15.4	1X1	1X1	Enabled	1G	N	—	—
	.3at	20.5	23.2	4X4	4X4	Enabled	2.5G	N	—	—
	.3at	25.5	30.0	4X4	4X4	Enabled	2.5G	Y(4.5W)	—	—

Access Points	PoE-In-Mode/DC Mode	Consumption @ Power Device	Consumption @ Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode						
		AP	Worst-Case Cable	Radio 1	Radio 2	Radio 3	Ethernet	USB	Module	PoEOut
Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points	.3af	13.8	15.4	1X1	1X1	Enabled	1G	N	—	—
	.3at	25.5	30.0	8X8	4X4	Enabled	5G	N	—	—
	.3at	25.5	30.0	Primary 4X4 Secondary Off	4X4	Enabled	5G	Y(4.5W)	—	—
	.3at	25.5	30.0	Primary 4X4 Secondary 4X4	Disabled	Enabled	5G	Y(4.5W)	—	—
	.3bt	30.5	33.3	8X8	4X4	Enabled	5G	Y(4.5W)	—	—

Table 20: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs

Access Points	Mode	Consumption @ Power Device	Consumption @ Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode								
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	5G Radio	2G Radio	6G Radio	AUX Radio	Mgig0	Mgig1	USB	Module	PoEOut
Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points	.3af - Fixed	13.9	15.4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	1G	Disabled	Disabled	—	—
	.3at - Fixed	24.0	27.90	Primary - 4X4 Secondary - Disabled	2X2	2X2	Enabled	2.5G	2.5G (hitless failover standby)	Disabled	—	—
	.3bt - Fixed	43.4	54.81	8X8 or Dual 4X4	4X4	4X4	Enabled	5G	5G	Y(9W)	—	—
	.3bt - PoE Policy 1	37.3	41.63	8X8 or Dual 4X4	4X4	4X4	Enabled	5G	5G	Disabled	—	—

Table 21: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9166 Series APs

Access Points	Profile	Consumption @Power Device	Consumption @Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode								
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	5G Radio	2G Radio	6G Radio	AUX Radio	Mgig0	Mgig1	USB	Module	PoEOut
Cisco Catalyst 9166 Series Access Points	.3af - Fixed	13.9	15.4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	1G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3at - Fixed Policy	25.5	30.0	4X4	4X4	4X4	Enabled	5G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3bt - Fixed	30.5	32.8	4X4	4X4	4X4	Enabled	5G	—	Y (4.5 W)	—	—
	DC Jack - Fixed	30.5	—	4X4	4X4	4X4	Enabled	5G	—	Y (4.5 W)	—	—

Table 22: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9164 Series APs

Access Points	Profile	Consumption @Power Device	Consumption @Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode								
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	5G Radio	2G Radio	6G Radio	AUX Radio	Mgig0	Mgig1	USB	Module	PoEOut
Cisco Catalyst 9164 Series Access Points	.3af - Fixed	13.9	15.4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Enabled	1G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3at - Fixed	25.5	30.0	4X4	2X2	4X4	Enabled	2.5G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3bt - Fixed	30.1	32.8	4X4	2X2	4X4	Enabled	2.5G	—	Y (4.5 W)	—	—
	DC Jack - Fixed	30.1	—	4X4	2X2	4X4	Enabled	2.5G	—	Y (4.5 W)	—	—

Table 23: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9162 Series APs

Access Points	Radio Mode	Consumption @Power Device	Consumption @Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode								
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	5G Radio	2G Radio	6G Radio	AUX Radio	Mgig0	Mgig1	USB	Module	Port
Cisco Catalyst 9162 Series Access Points	.3af	13.3	14.32	1X1	Disabled	1X1	Enabled	1G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3at	20.1	22.67	2X2	2X2	2X2	Enabled	2.5G	—	Disabled	—	—
	.3at	25.5	30	2X2	2X2	2X2	Enabled	2.5G	—	Y (4.5W)	—	—

Table 24: AP Power Draw Specifications: Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs

Access Points	Radio Mode	Consumption @Power Device	Consumption @Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode										
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	Radio 0	R0 dBm Per Path	Radio 1	R1 dBm Per Path	Radio 2	R2 dBm Per Path	AUX Radio	Port Mgig	SFP Module	GbE PHY	Port
				2.4 GHz Radio		5 GHz Primary Radio		5 GHz Secondary Radio		Other				
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXI	.3af	13.8	15.4	Disabled	—	Disabled	—	NA	NA	Enabled	1G	N	N	N
	.3at	25.5	30	2X2	23	2X2	23	NA	NA	Enabled	1G	N	Y	N
	.3bt	33.6	39.5	4X4	24	4X4	24	NA	NA	Enabled	2.5G	Y	Y	N
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXD	UPE /DC													
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXE Dual Radio Mode	.3bt	51	60	4X4	24	4X4	24	NA	NA	Enabled	2.5G	Y	Y	Y
	UPE /DC													

Access Points	RPM	Consumption @Power Device	Consumption @Power Source Equipment	Feature Mode										
		at AP	Worst-Case Cable	Radio 0	R0 dBm Per Path	Radio 1	R1 dBm Per Path	Radio 2	R02 dBm Per Path	AUX Radio	Band Mgmt	SFP Module	GbE PHY	REQ
				2.4 GHz Radio		5 GHz Primary Radio		5 GHz Secondary Radio		Other				
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXI	.3at	25.5	30	Shutdn	—	4X4	24	Shutdn	—	Enbld	2.5G	Y	N	N
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXD														
Single 5G Radio														
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXE TriBand Mode	.3af	13.8	15.4	Disbld	—	Disbld	—	Disbld	—	Enbld	1G	N	N	N
	.3at	25.5	30	Disbld	—	Disbld	—	Disbld	—	Enbld	1G	N	N	N
	.3bt / UCE / DC	33.6	39.5	2X2	24	2X2	24	2X2	24	Enbld	2.5G	Y	Y	N
	.3bt / UCE / DC	51	60	2X2	24	2X2	24	2X2	24	Enbld	2.5G	Y	Y	Y
Cisco Catalyst 9124 AXE Dual 5G Radio	.3at	25.5	30	Shutdn	—	2X2	23	2X2	23	Enbld	1G	N	Y	N

Wakeup Threshold for Access Point Power Save Mode

The Wakeup Threshold feature enables you to define the client threshold in the AP power profile configuration to determine when the AP wakes up from the power save mode or enter into the power save mode.

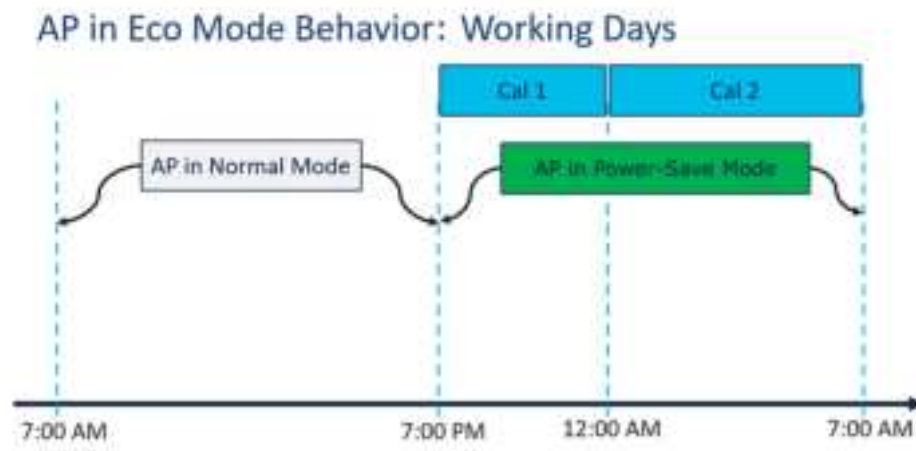
When the AP applies the calendar associated power profile (for an active calendar), and the number of connected clients reach the wakeup threshold, the AP wakes up from power save mode and goes into the Fixed power profile mode or the Regular power profile (insufficient power) mode.

When the AP applies the calendar associated power profile (for an active calendar), and the number of connected clients is less than the wakeup threshold, the AP applies the calendar associated power profile to shut down the interface or to lower the interface speed to save power.

AP Power Save Scenarios

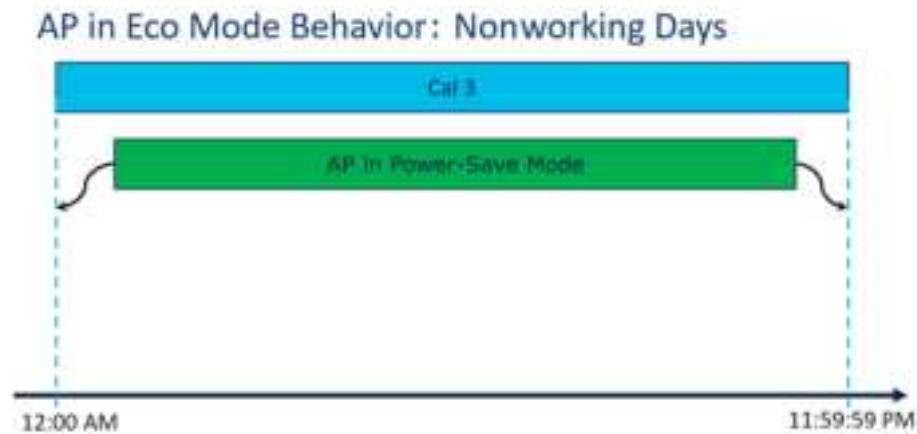
The AP Power Save feature helps APs to enter into a power-save mode or low-power mode by applying a calendar, for example, for after hours, associated with the corresponding power profile. The AP profile is enhanced to associate a PoE power policy with calendar profiles. The following are the scenarios for Eco mode APs:

- **Figure 6: AP in Eco Mode Behavior: Working Days**



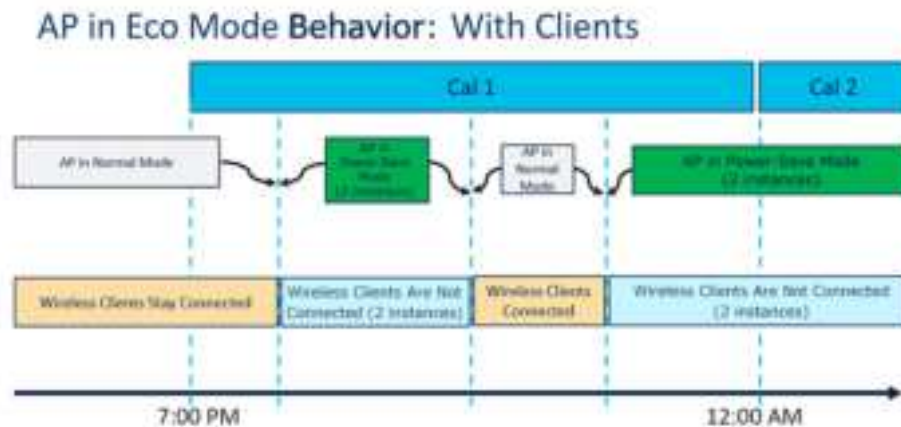
On working days, from 7:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m., the AP functions in normal mode or fixed mode, when the maximum number of clients are connected to the AP. From 7:00 p.m. to 12:00 a.m., the **Cal1** calendar profile timer starts to put the AP in the power-save mode. Likewise, the **Cal2** calendar profile timer starts, and extends the power-save mode from 12:00 a.m. to 7:00 a.m. Again, at 7:00 a.m., the AP goes into normal mode.

• **Figure 7: AP in Eco Mode Behavior: Nonworking Days**



On nonworking days, the AP goes into power-saving mode from 12:00 a.m. to 11:59:59 p.m. The **Cal3** calendar profile is applied here. This profile defines the timer for the power-save mode. This means that there are no clients connected to the AP, and that the AP is asleep.

• **Figure 8: AP in Eco Mode Behavior: With Clients**



When clients are connected to the AP, the AP automatically switches to the normal mode. For example, in the calendar profile **Cal1**, the AP is in normal mode, because wireless clients are connected to the AP. At 8:00 p.m., clients get dissociated from the AP, and the AP goes into power-save mode. When clients enter the AP coverage area at 9:30 p.m., the AP automatically switches from power-save mode to normal mode of operation.

Configuring Power Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Power Profile .
Step 2	Click Add . The Add Power Profile window is displayed.
Step 3	Enter a name and description for the power profile. The name must be ASCII characters of up to 128 characters, without leading or trailing spaces.
Step 4	Click Add to add rules for the power profile.
Step 5	In the Sequence number field, enter a unique sequence number to designate the priority in which power should be disabled for the component. The sequence number of 0 indicates that the component should be disabled first.
Step 6	From the Interface and Interface ID drop-down list, choose interface and interface ID to designate to the component for which the power derating rule applies.
Step 7	From the Parameter and Parameter value drop-down list, choose the values depending on the interface you chose in step 6. For example, if you chose Ethernet as an interface, you can further customize the rule for the interface by choosing the associated speed. This rule ensures that the AP disables power for the Ethernet interface that is operating at a higher speed, and thereby consuming more power.
Step 8	Click the check mark to save and then click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring a Power Policy Profile (CLI)

Before you begin

You must keep at least one radio interface up and running before you configure a power policy profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile power <i>power-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile power <i>power-profile-name</i>	Configures the power policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	<i>sequence-number</i> ethernet {GigabitEthernet0 GigabitEthernet1 speed {1000mbps 100mbps 2500mbps 5000mbps} LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 state disable} Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-power-profile) # 10 ethernet gigabitethernet1 speed 1000mbps</pre>	Configures the power policy for Ethernet. <i>sequence-number</i>: The power profile settings are ordered by sequence numbers. AP derating takes place as per the sequence number entered. The same combination of interface identifiers and parameter values does not appear in another sequence number. The same interface with the same parameter can appear multiple times with different parameter values, however, the parameter value that yields the lowest power consumption is the one that gets selected, irrespective of the sequence number if there is active calendar. Note • The Ethernet interface is used to join the controller. The uplink interface is not disabled even if it is defined in the power policy. • Ethernet speed configuration is not operational in Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 and later releases.
Step 4	<i>sequence-number</i> usb 0 state disable Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-power-profile) # 60 usb 0 state disable</pre>	Configures the power policy for USB.

Configuring a Calendar Profile (GUI)

Configure calendar profiles to set up a daily, weekly, or monthly recurrence schedule.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Calendar**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Calendar Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Enter a name for the calendar profile. The name must be ASCII characters of up to 32 characters, without leading or trailing spaces.
- Step 4** From the **Recurrence** drop-down list, choose the schedule for which you want to create a profile.
- Step 5** Select the **Start Time** and the **End Time** for the recurrence schedule.

Note

- For daily recurrences, you can select the start time and end time. For example, if you want the AP to derate the power on certain interfaces between 7 p.m. to 7 a.m. daily, or if you want the controller to not allow any clients to be associated during this period, you can set up this daily recurrence schedule.

To cover this timespan, you must create two calendar profiles, one for 7 p.m. till 23:59:59, and another one from midnight to 7 a.m. of the next calendar day, and map it to the same power profile. After this, assign it to the AP Join profile.

- For weekly recurrences, select the specific days of the week along with the start and end time.
- For monthly recurrence, select the specific days of the month along with the start and end time.

Step 6 Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

Configuring a Calendar Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile calendar-profile name <i>calendar_profile_ap_power</i> Example: Device# wireless profile calendar-profile name ap_power_calendar	Configures a calendar profile. Enters the calendar profile configuration mode. Here, name refers to the name of the calendar profile.
Step 3	recurrence daily Example: Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence daily	Configures daily recurrence for daily profile.
Step 4	start start-time end end-time Example: Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 16:00:00 end 20:00:00	Configures the start time and end time for calendar profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-calendar-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Power Policy in an AP Join Profile (GUI)

Power policy supports the use of a power profile or a mapped configuration of a power profile and a calendar profile that are pushed to an AP during an AP join session. You can map a maximum of five combination profiles (calendar and power) per AP profile.

Before you begin

Ensure that the power profile and calendar profile are created and displayed in the respective drop-down lists in the GUI.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
The **Add AP Join Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 2** Click the **AP** tab.
 - Step 3** Under the AP tab, click the **Power Management** tab.
 - Step 4** From the **Regular Power Profile** drop-down list, choose the power profile.
The AP applies these settings to derate the power based on the configured priority list.

Note

If you want the AP to apply the power profile configuration during a specific time period, choose the **Calendar Profile** and map it to the power profile from the drop-down list.

- Step 5** Click the check mark to associate the mapping.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.
-

Mapping a Power Profile Under an AP Profile (CLI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have defined a calendar profile in the wireless profile, before you map the calendar profile to an AP join profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example:	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i>	
Step 3	power-profile <i>power-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# power-profile <i>power-profile-name</i>	Configures the AP power profile. This power profile is used during non-calendar hours to meet the power budget provided by the switch connected to the AP.
Step 4	calendar-profile <i>calendar-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# calendar-profile <i>ap-calendar-profile</i>	Maps a calendar profile to the AP profile. Enters the AP profile calendar configuration mode.
Step 5	[no] action power-saving-mode power-profile <i>power-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile-calendar)# action power-saving-mode power-profile <i>power-profile1</i>	Maps a specific power profile to a specific calendar profile. Maps the power-saving mode action for the calendar profile. Use the no form of this command to disable the command. Note You can have more than one mapping of calendar profile to power profile.

Configuring Client Wakeup Threshold (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile power <i>power-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile power <i>power-profile1</i>	Configures the power policy profile.
Step 3	power-save-client-threshold <i>client-threshold</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-power-profile)# power-save-client-threshold 5	Configures the client threshold up to which the AP can stay in the power save mode. The valid range is between 1 and 32 clients. The default value is 1.

Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (GUI)

Before you begin

Enable the RLAN port for the AP.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Power Profile**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Power Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Enter a name and description for the power profile. The name can contain up to 128 ASCII characters, without leading or trailing spaces.
- Step 4** (Optional) From the **Power Save Client Threshold** counter, select a value to set a limit to the number of client associations with the AP. The default value is 1. The valid range is between 1 to 32.
- Step 5** Click **Add** to create a rule for the PoE-Out interface.
The **Rule** section is displayed in the window.
- Step 6** In the **Rule** section, complete the following steps:
- In the **Sequence number** field, enter a unique sequence number to assign the priority in which power should be disabled for the component. A sequence number of 0 indicates that the component should be disabled first.
 - From the **Interface** drop-down list, choose **Ethernet** as the interface.
 - From the **Interface ID** drop-down list, choose one of the following interfaces: **LAN1**, **LAN2**, or **LAN3**.
 - From the **Parameter** drop-down list, choose **POE-out**.
- A POE-out port on an AP is used to provide power to the another device, for example, a camera. This selection ensures that the power usage of the port is reduced or shut down at the specified sequence.
- Step 7** Click the check mark button to save.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring PoE-Out Interface in Power Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile power <i>power-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile power poe-out-power-profile	Configures the power policy profile. Enters the wireless power profile configuration mode.
Step 3	<i>sequence-number</i> ethernet LAN1 poe-out disable Example: Device(config-wireless-power-profile)# 1 ethernet LAN1 poe-out disable	Disables the PoE-out state.

Configuration Example of Power Profile

The following example shows how to define a power save policy:

```
wireless profile power power-save
  10 radio 5ghz state shutdown
  20 radio secondary-5ghz state shutdown
  30 radio 6ghz state shutdown
  40 usb 0 state disable
```

The following example shows how to define a calendar profile:

```
wireless profile calender-profile name eve-to-midnight
  recurrence daily
  start 19:00:00 end 23:59:59
wireless profile calender-profile name midnight-to-morning
  recurrence daily
  start 00:00:00 end 07:00:00
wireless profile calender-profile name weekends
  recurrence weekly
  day Saturday
  day Sunday
  start 00:00:00 end 23:59:59
```

The following example shows how to define an AP join profile and map a calendar profile to a power profile:

```
ap profile wireless-prof-sitel
  calendar-profile eve-to-midnight
  action power-saving-mode power-profile power-save
  calendar-profile midnight-to-morning
  action power-saving-mode power-profile power-save
  calendar-profile weekends
  action power-saving-mode power-profile power-save
```

Verifying Access Point Power Policy (GUI)

To verify the applied configuration on the GUI, follow these steps:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > AP Statistics**.
 - Step 2** Click a Cisco Catalyst 9136 series AP from the list of APs.
The **General** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** Click the **Power** tab.
The **Power Operational Status** and the **AP Fixed Power Policy** details are displayed.
 - Step 4** Click **OK**.
-

To verify the AP fixed power policy details from the list of configured APs, follow these steps:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click a Cisco Catalyst 9136 series AP from the list of APs.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** Click the **Interfaces** tab.
The **AP Fixed Power Policy** details are displayed.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply**.
-

Verifying the Access Point Power Profile

To view the calendar profile and its mapping, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed
AP Profile Name           : default-ap-profile
Description               : default ap profile
Power profile name        : power_prof_day
AP packet capture profile : Not Configured
AP trace profile          : Not Configured
Mesh profile name         : default-mesh-profile
Power profile name        : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
  Profile Name             : cal47
  Power saving mode profile name : pow_da
  -----
  Profile Name             : cal48
  Power saving mode profile name : pow23
  -----
```

To view the operational details of the AP, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap name cisco-ap power-profile summary
AP power derate Capability : Capable

Power saving mode
Power saving mode profile : pow2
Associated calendar profile : call
```

AP power profile status : Insufficient De-rating

Interface	Interface-ID	Parameter	Parameter value	Status
Radio	5 GHz	State	DISABLED	Success
Radio	6 GHz	State	DISABLED	Not Applicable
Ethernet	LAN1	State	DISABLED	Not Applicable
Radio	2.4 GHz	State	DISABLED	Success
Ethernet	Gig0	Speed	5000 MBPS	Fixed Policy

AP power derate capability is displayed in the output as **Capable** only for those APs that support power policy. For the other APs, it is displayed as **Not Capable**.

In the **show ap name cisco-ap power-profile summary** output, in the power saving mode, the status of the interface configured in the power profile (for example, **pow2**) is applied on the AP, and the AP sends the details (that are displayed in the show command) such as, the name of the power saving profile and the associated calendar profile.

The table that is displayed shows the interfaces and the parameter status of the power saving profile. The AP sends the information as to which of the interfaces are disabled. For example, if the AP does not have a 6-GHz radio interface, the **Status** is displayed as **Not Applicable**. If the interfaces are applied without any errors, then **Success** is displayed.



Note When the AP uses the fixed power policy, due to inactive calendar or client connectivity, the interfaces are not displayed in the power profile summary if their status is UP on the AP.

Verifying Radio Spatial Streams

To view the configuration and operational details of radio spatial stream rules in the power profile, run the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless profile power detailed wireless_pow_profile_name
Power profile name : wireless_pow_profile_name
-----
Description :
.
.
Seq No      Interface  Interface-id  Parameter      Parameter value
-----
100         Radio      6 GHz        Spatial Stream  2 x 2
200         Radio      5 GHz        Spatial Stream  8 x 8
400         USB        USB0         State           DISABLED
500         Ethernet  Gig0         Speed           100 MBPS
600         Radio      6 GHz        State           DISABLED
700         Radio      2.4 GHz     State           DISABLED
900         Radio      5 GHz        State           DISABLED
```

```
Device# show ap name cisco-ap-name power-profile summary
AP power derate Capability : Capable
```

AP fixed power policy

Interface	Interface-ID	Parameter	Parameter value	Status
Ethernet	Gig0	Speed	5000 MBPS	Fixed Policy

Radio	2.4 GHz	Spatial Stream	4 x 4	Fixed Policy
Radio	5 GHz	Spatial Stream	8 x 8	Fixed Policy
Radio	Sec 5 GHz	Spatial Stream	4 x 4	Fixed Policy
USB	USB0	State	DISABLED	Fixed Policy

Verifying Client Threshold

To view the client threshold details, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile power detailed profile1
Power profile name          : profile1
-----
Description                  : Power profile 1
Power save client threshold  : 5
Seq No      Interface      Interface-id      Parameter          Parameter value
-----
0           Radio          6 GHz            State              DISABLED
1           Radio          5 GHz            Spatial Stream     1 x 1
2           Radio          2.4 GHz          Spatial Stream     2 x 2
3           USB            USB0             State              DISABLED
```

Verifying PoE-Out Details

To view the PoE-out details in the wireless power profile, run the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless profile power detailed poe-out_profile_name
Power profile name          : poe-out_profile_name
-----
Description                  : profile-description
Seq No      Interface      Interface-id      Parameter          Parameter value
-----
10 ...
20           Ethernet      LAN 1            POE_OUT            DISABLED
30 ...

Device# show ap name Cisco-Ap1 power-profile summary
AP power derate Capability  : Capable

AP fixed power policy
-----

Interface      Interface-ID      Parameter          Parameter value      Status
-----
...
Ethernet       LAN 1            POE_OUT            DISABLED              Fixed Policy
...
```

Information About Access Point Real-Time Statistics

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 onwards, you can track the CPU utilization and memory usage of an AP, and monitor the health of an AP, by generating real-time statistics for an AP.

SNMP traps are defined for CPU and memory utilization of APs and the controller. An SNMP trap is sent out when the threshold is crossed. The sampling period and statistics interval can be configured using SNMP, YANG, and CLI.

Statistics interval is used to process the data coming from an AP, and the average CPU utilization and memory utilization is computed over time. You can also configure an upper threshold for these statistics. When a statistic value surpasses the upper threshold, an alarm is enabled, and an SNMP trap is triggered.

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 release onwards, for radio monitoring, you can reset the radios based on the statistics sent by the AP for a sampling period. When you configure the radios in the controller, if there is no increment in the Tx or Rx statistics when the radio is up, then the radio reset is triggered.

Feature History for Real Time Access Point Statistics

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

Table 25: Feature History for Real Time Access Point Statistics

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1	Real Time Access Point Statistics	This feature is enhanced with the implementation of AP threshold values between 0 and 50 to trigger an alarm.

Restrictions for AP Radio Monitoring Statistics

You cannot reset the radio firmware from the controller. The controller will shut and unshut the radio if the Rx or Tx count is not incremented for a radio slot in a specified period.

Configuring Access Point Real Time Statistics (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**. The **Add AP Join Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Under the **AP** tab, click the **AP Statistics** tab.
- Step 4** In the **System Monitoring** section:
 - a) Enable **Monitor Real Time Statistics** to get calculated statistics and alarms of the AP.
 - b) To receive an alarm when the upper threshold is surpassed for parameters such as CPU utilization and memory, enable **Trigger Alarm for AP**.
 - c) Enter the threshold percentage for CPU and memory usage in the **CPU Threshold to Trigger Alarm** field and **Memory Threshold to Trigger Alarm** fields, respectively. The valid range is between 0 to 50. An SNMP trap is sent out when this threshold is crossed.
 - d) In the **Interval to Hold Alarm** field, enter the time for which the alarm is held before it gets triggered. The valid range is between 0 and 3600 seconds.
 - e) In the **Trap Retransmission Time** field, enter the time between retransmissions of the alarm. The valid range is between 0 and 65535 seconds.

- f) To define how often data should be collected from the AP, enter a value in the **Sampling Interval** field. The valid range is between 720 and 3600 seconds.
- g) To define the interval at which AP statistics are to be calculated, enter a value in the **Statistics Interval** field. The valid range is between 2 and 900 seconds.
- h) To automatically reload the AP when there is high CPU and memory usage in the defined sampling interval, select the **Reload the AP** check box.

Step 5 Under the **Radio Monitoring** section:

- a) Select the **Monitoring of AP Radio stuck** check box to verify that the Tx and Rx statistics of the AP are updated each time the payloads are coming in from the AP to the controller.
- b) To generate an alarm for the radio of the AP when there is no increment in the Tx and RX statistics for the payloads, select the **Alarms for AP Radio stuck** check box.
- c) Select the **Reset the stuck AP Radio** check box to recover the radio from the bad state. A radio admin state payload will be sent from the controller to toggle the radio and the radio will be shut when there is no increment in the Tx and Rx statistics.
- d) To define how often data should be collected from the radio, enter a value in the **Sampling Interval** field. The valid range is between 720 and 3600 seconds.

Step 6 Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

Configuring Real-Time Access Point Statistics (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile doc-test	Configures the AP profile. The default AP join profile name is <i>default-ap-profile</i> .
Step 3	stats-timer <i>frequency</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# stats-timer 60	(Optional) Configures the statistics timer. This command is used to change the frequency of the statistics reports coming from the AP. The valid values range between 0 and 65535 seconds.
Step 4	statistics ap-system-monitoring enable Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring enable	(Optional) Enables monitoring of AP real-time statistics (CPU and memory).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-enable Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-enable</pre>	Enables alarms for AP real-time statistics (CPU and memory).
Step 6	statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-hold-time duration Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-hold-time 400</pre>	Defines the alarms for AP real-time statistics (CPU and Memory). The valid values range between 0 and 3600 seconds.
Step 7	ap-system-monitoring alarm-retransmit-time duration Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# ap-system-monitoring alarm-retransmit-time 100</pre>	Defines the interval between retransmissions of the trap alarm. The valid values range between 0 and 65535 seconds.
Step 8	statistics ap-system-monitoring cpu-threshold percentage Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring cpu-threshold 30</pre>	Defines the threshold for CPU usage on the AP (percentage) to trigger alarms. Note From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 release onwards, the valid threshold value for CPU on the AP to trigger the alarms is between 0 and 50.
Step 9	ap-system-monitoring mem-threshold percentage Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# ap-system-monitoring mem-threshold 40</pre>	Defines the threshold for memory usage on AP to trigger alarms. The percentage of threshold for memory usage on the AP to trigger is between 0 and 100. Note From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 release onwards, the valid threshold value for memory usage on the AP to trigger the alarms is between 0 and 50.
Step 10	ap-system-monitoring sampling-interval duration Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring sampling-interval 600</pre>	(Optional) Defines the sampling interval. The valid values range between 2 and 900 seconds.
Step 11	exit Example:	Exits from AP profile configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ap-profile)# exit	
Step 12	trapflags ap ap-stats Example: Device(config)# trapflags ap ap-stats	Enables sending AP-related traps. Traps are sent when statistics exceed the configured threshold.

Example

```

Device(config)# ap profile default-policy-profile
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-system-monitoring enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring sampling-interval 90
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring stats-interval 120
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-hold-time 3
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring alarm-retransmit-time 10
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring cpu-threshold 90
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistics ap-system-monitoring mem-threshold 90
Device(config)# trapflags ap ap-stats

```

Configuring AP Radio Monitoring Statistics

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile test1	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	statistic ap-radio-monitoring enable Example: (config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring enable	Enables the monitoring of AP radio stuck statistics.
Step 4	statistic ap-radio-monitoring alarm-enable Example: (config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring alarm-enable	(Optional) Enables the alarm for AP radio stuck statistics.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap interval <i>duration</i> Example: <pre>(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action reload-ap interval850</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the sampling interval in seconds. The valid values range between 720 and 3600 seconds.
Step 6	statistic ap-radio-monitoring action radio-reset Example: <pre>(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action radio-reset</pre>	(Optional) Generates an alarm and resets the radio if the radio is stuck.
Step 7	statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap Example: <pre>(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap</pre>	Reloads the AP.

Example

```
Device(config)# ap profile test1
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistics ap-radio-monitoring enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring alarm-enable
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-radio-monitoring sampling-interval 750
Device(config-ap-profile)# statistic ap-radio-monitoring action radio-reset
Device(config-ap-profile)#statistic ap-system-monitoring action reload-ap
```

Monitoring Access Point Real-Time Statistics (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > AP Statistics**.
- Step 2** Click the **General** tab.
- Step 3** Click an AP name. The **General** window is displayed.
- Step 4** To view the AP Statistics data, click the **AP Statistics** tab.

The following information is displayed:

- **Memory alarm last send time:** Displays the time of the last memory trap sent.
- **Memory Alarm Status:** Displays the state of the memory alarm. An alarm can be **ACTIVE**, **INACTIVE**, **INACTIVE_SOAKING**, **ACTIVE_SOAKING**. An alarm is soaked until the configured hold time has passed.

- **Memory alarm raise time:** Displays the last time the memory alarm was active.
- **Memory alarm clear time:** Displays the last time the memory alarm was inactive.
- **Last statistics received:** Displays the time of the last statistics report received from the AP.
- **Current CPU Usage:** Displays the latest percentage of CPU usage reported.
- **Average CPU Usage:** Displays the average CPU usage calculated.
- **Current Memory Usage:** Displays the latest percentage of memory usage reported.
- **Average Memory Usage:** Displays the average memory usage calculated.
- **Current window size:** Displays the window size. The window size is calculated by dividing the statistics interval by the sampling interval. The average CPU and memory usage is calculated by the window size.
- **CPU alarm last send time:** Displays the time of the last CPU trap sent.
- **CPU Alarm Status:** Displays the state of the CPU alarm. An alarm can be **ACTIVE**, **INACTIVE**, **INACTIVE_SOAKING**, **ACTIVE_SOAKING**. An alarm is soaked until the configured hold time has passed.
- **CPU alarm raise time:** Displays the last time the CPU alarm was active.
- **CPU alarm clear time:** Displays the last time the CPU alarm was inactive.

Step 5 Click OK.

Verifying Access Point Real-Time Statistics

To verify AP real-time statistics, run the **show ap config general | section AP statistics** command:

```
Device# show ap config general | section AP statistics
!Last Statistics
AP statistics : Enabled
Current CPU usage : 4
Average CPU usage : 49
Current memory usage : 35
Average memory usage : 35
Last statistics received : 03/09/2021 15:25:08
!Statistics Configuration
Current window size : 1
Sampling interval : 30
Statistics interval : 300
AP statistics alarms : Enabled
!Alarm State - Active, Inactive, Inactive_Soaking, Inactive_Soaking
Memory alarm status : Active
Memory alarm raise time : 03/09/2021 15:24:29
Memory alarm clear time : NA
Memory alarm last send time : 03/09/2021 15:24:59
CPU alarm status : Inactive
CPU alarm raise time : 03/09/2021 15:24:25
CPU alarm clear time : 03/09/2021 15:25:05
CPU alarm last send time : 03/09/2021 15:25:05
!Alarm Configuration
Alarm hold time : 6
Alarm retransmission time : 30
```

```
Alarm threshold cpu : 30
Alarm threshold memory : 32
```

To verify the statistics reporting period, run the **show ap config general | i Stats Reporting Period** command:

```
Device# show ap config general | i Stats Reporting Period
Stats Reporting Period : 10
```

Feature History for Access Point Auto Location Support

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 26: Feature History for Access Point Auto Location Support

Release	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1	The Access Point Auto Location Support feature helps to effectively self-locate APs in a global coordinate by combining various ranging technologies and algorithms.
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.13.1	The improved Access Point Auto Location Support feature helps wireless clients to leverage Fine Timing Measurement (FTM) and AP GNSS for indoor navigation.

Information About Access Point Auto Location Support

In all enterprise wireless deployments, AP location is manually entered. In many cases, the AP location is not entered because it is a tedious process to identify the location manually and enter it in the system, or, the AP location is entered only to provide a reference for client location. A Global Positioning System (GPS) or a Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) solution is not feasible because of the indoor nature of the deployments.

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 onwards, a solution to effectively self-locate the APs in a global coordinate by combining various ranging technologies and algorithms, is introduced through the AP Location feature.

Location of an object, by definition, is dependent on a reference point. Here, reference points are based as a few subsets of sparse nodes from a group of nodes serving a continuous RF domain. These are the ones that have visibility to the open sky, namely, the ones located near the windows, or the ones at the periphery of the building or floor.

The AP Auto Location solution delivers accurate, automated, up-to-date AP location leveraging Fine Timing Measurement (FTM) and GNSS when available. If GNSS is not accessible, a few manual anchors need to be provided per floor. This feature requires an AP density such that neighboring APs can hear each other at maximum power. The accuracy of the feature depends on the building type and the distances between APs.

The process includes:

- Segmentation of a large number of APs into smaller segments with floor-level labels and the calculation of the geolocations of all the APs at the end of the process.

- Geolocation of an AP is determined at the controller, Cisco Spaces, or both the controller and Cisco Spaces.
- Highly accurate GNSS positioning of the APs that have good GNSS signal reception and, geolocating the APs with no GNSS reception by running the locationing algorithm to determine the geolocation based on inter-APs ranging data (FTM) to GNSS-enabled APs.

From Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1 onwards, the AP Auto Location Support feature has been improved to help wireless clients to leverage FTM and AP GNSS for indoor navigation.

- Client FTM: You can enable the FTM responder in the designated WLANs for indoor navigation. The APs support ranging from unassociated clients through the FTM responders in the 5-GHz and 6-GHz bands.
- Air Pressure Reporting Updates: APs send air pressure report to the controller. As an enhancement to this feature, in Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1, remote procedure calls (RPC) and the Privileged EXEC mode commands enable the collection of air pressure details for a specific duration. For example, if you set the duration as 10 minutes, then the AP will send samples every 30 seconds, for 10 minutes.
- AP Band Filters: In Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, the area optimization for AP-to-AP ranging was triggered on a per site-tag basis. From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.13.1 onwards, band filters such as 5 GHz or 6 GHz are enhanced for effective ranging.
- AP Ranging Completion Notification: The controller monitors all APs in a given site for ranging completion. Ranging is considered as complete only after the AP sends the ranging report back to the controller, in response to the ranging requests made by the controller.

The controller notifies the APs and Cisco Spaces when ranging is complete for a given site.

- AP Movement Alarm: When an AP gets disconnected and later reconnects in a different location, the AP sends an alarm to the controller. The controller prints a syslog and sends an event to Cisco Spaces, to notify the user about the AP movement.

Use Case

A typical use case of the solution in the controller is either self-locating APs in one building or APs in one floor of a building.

Supported Access Points

For information about APs that support this feature see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Wireless Global**.

- Step 2** In the **AP Geolocation** section, click the **Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging** toggle button to enable geolocation derivation.
When you enable **Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging**, it allows the corresponding AP to be a part of the location services that use ranging to determine the geolocation of the AP.
- Step 3** Click **Apply**.
After you enable **Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging**, it will take around 30 minutes for the AP ranging capability to be updated on Cisco Spaces.

Configuring Access Point Geolocation Derivation Using Ranging (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap geolocation derivation ranging Example: Device(config)# ap geolocation derivation ranging	Enables geolocation derivation using ranging. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the name and description of the corresponding AP join profile.
- Step 4** Click the **Geolocation** tab.
- Step 5** In the **Fine Time Management (FTM)** section, complete the following:
- Click the **FTM** toggle button to allow APs to use FTM for inter AP ranging.
 - In the **FTM Initiator Burst Size** field, specify the burst size value. The burst size determines the size of the transmitted frames. The valid range is between 2 and 31 frames. The default value is 16 frames per burst.
 - From the **FTM Initiator Burst Duration** drop-down list, choose a value. The burst duration determines the interval of the transmitted frames. The default value is 32 microseconds.

Step 6 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Access Point Ranging Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile1	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] geolocation ftm Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# geolocation ftm	Enables geolocation Fine Timing Measurement (FTM).
Step 4	[no] geolocation ftm initiator burst-size <i>burst-size</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# geolocation ftm initiator burst-size 8	Configures the geolocation FTM burst size. The burst size values are 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64 frames. The default value is 8 frames per burst.
Step 5	[no] geolocation ftm initiator burst-duration {128ms 16ms 1ms 250us 2ms 32ms 4ms 500us 64ms 8ms} Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# geolocation ftm initiator burst-duration 32ms	Configures the geolocation FTM burst duration. The default value is 32 microseconds.

Configuring Access Point Coordinates and Floor Information (CLI)

The following steps help you to configure the AP coordinates and the corresponding floor information.



Note There are no corresponding GUI steps for this configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> geolocation coordinates <i>longitude latitude</i> Example: Device# ap name cisco-ap1 geolocation coordinates 90 45	Configures the longitude and latitude of the AP. The value range for longitude is between -180 and 180 degrees. The value range for latitude is between -90 to 90 degrees.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> floor <i>floor-id</i> Example: Device# ap name cisco-ap1 floor 2147483647	Configures the floor ID for the AP. The floor ID range is between -2147483648 and 2147483647.

Configuring On-Demand Access Point Ranging (CLI)

The following steps help you to configure on-demand AP ranging.



Note There are no corresponding GUI steps for this configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap geolocation ranging site <i>ap-site-tag</i> accurate [5ghz 6ghz] Example: Device# ap geolocation ranging site ap-site-tag accurate 5ghz	Enables accurate ranging using the 5-GHz or 6-GHz bands on APs under the configured site tag. Note Client connections may be disrupted.
Step 3	ap geolocation ranging all accurate [5ghz 6ghz] Example:	Enables accurate ranging using the 5-GHz or 6-GHz bands on all APs. Caution Client connections may be disrupted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# ap geolocation ranging all accurate 5ghz	

Enabling Fine Time Measurement (802.11mc) Responder (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- The **Add WLAN** page is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.
- Step 4** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **Geolocation** section, click the **Fine Time Measurement (FTM) Responder** toggle button to enable the AP to respond to time measurement queries sent from a client. The client sends time measurement queries to measure its distance to the AP and determine their indoor location. The **Advertise AP Location** field is displayed.
- Step 5** Click the **Advertise AP Location** toggle button to enable the AP to advertise its geolocation coordinates.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.
-

Configuring Fine Time Measurement (802.11mc) Responder (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid-name <i>profile-name wlan-id ssid-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile 36 ssid1	Specifies the WLAN name and ID. <i>profile-name</i> is the WLAN name. Valid WLAN names can contain upto 32 alphanumeric characters <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 4096. <i>ssid-name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	[no] geolocation ftm-responder Example: Device(config-wlan)# geolocation ftm-responder	Configures the FTM responder.
Step 4	[no] geolocation ftm-responder advertise-ap-location Example: Device(config-wlan)# geolocation ftm-responder advertise-ap-location	Configures the advertisement of AP location to clients.
Step 5	(Optional) clear ap geolocation ranging Example: Device# clear ap geolocation ranging	Clears the AP geolocation best known FTM report.

Configuring Air Pressure Reporting (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap sensor air-pressure {all site site-tag-name} [duration duration-time] Example: Device# ap sensor air-pressure site sitetag1 duration 10	Configures the sensor air pressure data collection for all APs or for APs in a specific site tag. The value range of the duration of the air pressure reporting is between 1 minute and 1440 minutes. The default is 10 minutes. From Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1, the default air pressure sample interval is changed from 30 seconds to 60 seconds. For example, if the duration is set to 10 minutes, the APs send 10 samples spaced at 60 seconds each.

Verifying Access Point Geolocation Information

Verifying AP Geolocation Ranging Report

To view the AP geolocation ranging report, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation ranging report
AP RadioMAC      NeighbourMAC    Type  Method  Dist (cm)  Channel  Band  Width
Duration(ms)    RSSIAvg  Frames      Time
-----
10f9.20fd.b6e0  10f9.20fd.f640  BEST   FTM      122      213     6 GHz  20 MHz  32
-60              1/0           02/16/2023 15:25:04 UTC
10f9.20fd.b6e0  10f9.20fd.f640  LATEST FTM      122      213     6 GHz  20 MHz  32
-60              1/0           02/16/2023 15:25:04 UTC
10f9.20fd.f640  10f9.20fd.b6e0  BEST   FTM      118       1     6 GHz  20 MHz  11
-71              1/0           01/25/1970 20:31:23 UTC
10f9.20fd.f640  10f9.20fd.b6e0  LATEST FTM      124       1     6 GHz  20 MHz  12
-60              1/0           02/16/2023 14:36:44 UTC

```

To view an AP geolocation ranging request, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation ranging request
Request ID      SiteTag/All APs  Mode      Band  Requests  Responses  Reports
Start Time      End Time
-----
3              ALL APs          Accurate   All    2          2          4
09/22/2023 16:29:28 IST  09/22/2023 16:29:36 IST
2              ALL APs          Normal     All    2          0          0
09/22/2023 16:21:13 IST  09/22/2023 16:21:35 IST
1              ALL APs          Accurate   All    2          2          6
09/22/2023 16:18:39 IST  09/22/2023 16:18:49 IST

```

To view the AP geolocation summary, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation summary
AP Name      Radio MAC      Location  Location Longitude  Latitude
Major-axis  Minor-axis  Orientation Height Height  Height  Height
(meters)    (degrees)   Type      (meters) Uncertainty Source  (degrees) (degrees) (meters)
                                         (meters)
-----
APCC9C.3EF1.0F30  10f9.20fd.f640  Ellipse  Manual  90.000000  90.000000  0
0              0.000000  NA      NA      NA      NA

```

To view the AP geolocation statistics, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation statistics
Num APs with GNSS      : 1
Num APs with manual height : 0
Num APs with derived geolocation : 0
Last geolocation derivation run : 07/21/2023 08:54:21

```

To view the AP geolocation GNSS-capable summary, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation gnss-capable summary
-----
AP Name      Radio MAC      GPS Coverage  Antenna Type  Last GPS fix
-----
APCC9C.3EF4.CF00  10f9.20fd.b6e0  No           Internal      NA

```

To view the AP geolocation ranging status, run the following commands:

```

Device# show ap geolocation ranging status
Device# show ap name geolocation ranging status

```

To view the ranging capability of APs, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap geolocation ranging capability
AP Name      FTM Responder  FTM Initiator
-----
AP0001.Cisco.CF00  Yes           Yes

```

AP0002.Cisco.0F30	Yes	Yes
AP-2800	No	No
AP0003.Cisco.82a0	No	No



CHAPTER 25

AP Configuration

- [Feature History for Configuring the Access Point Console, on page 332](#)
- [Information About Configuring the Access Point Console, on page 332](#)
- [Configuring the AP Console \(GUI\), on page 333](#)
- [Configuring the AP Console \(CLI\), on page 333](#)
- [Verifying the AP Console Status, on page 333](#)
- [Information About AP Audit Configuration, on page 334](#)
- [Restrictions for AP Audit Configuration, on page 334](#)
- [Configure AP Audit Parameters \(CLI\), on page 335](#)
- [Verifying AP Audit Report Summary, on page 335](#)
- [Verifying AP Audit Report Detail, on page 335](#)
- [2.4-GHz Radio Support, on page 336](#)
- [5-GHz Radio Support, on page 338](#)
- [6-GHz Radio Support, on page 341](#)
- [Information About Dual-Band Radio Support , on page 343](#)
- [Configuring Default XOR Radio Support, on page 344](#)
- [Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number \(GUI\), on page 346](#)
- [Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number, on page 346](#)
- [Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio Support, on page 348](#)
- [Configuring Client Steering \(CLI\), on page 350](#)
- [Verifying Cisco Access Points with Dual-Band Radios, on page 352](#)
- [Information About OFDMA Support for 11ax Access Points, on page 352](#)
- [Configuring 11AX \(GUI\), on page 352](#)
- [Configuring Channel Width, on page 353](#)
- [Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters \(GUI\), on page 354](#)
- [Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters \(CLI\), on page 354](#)
- [Setting up the 802.11ax Radio Parameters, on page 355](#)
- [Configuring OFDMA on a WLAN, on page 356](#)
- [Verifying Channel Width, on page 357](#)
- [Verifying Client Details, on page 358](#)
- [Verifying Radio Configuration, on page 359](#)
- [Information About Cisco Flexible Antenna Port, on page 361](#)
- [Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port \(GUI\), on page 362](#)
- [Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port \(CLI\), on page 362](#)

- [Verifying Flexible Antenna Port Configuration](#), on page 362
- [Feature History for Environmental Sensors in Access Points](#), on page 363
- [Information About Environmental Sensors in Access Points](#), on page 364
- [Use Cases](#), on page 364
- [Configuring Environmental Sensors in an AP Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 364
- [Configuring Environment Sensors in Privileged EXEC Mode \(CLI\)](#), on page 365
- [Verifying the AP Sensor Status](#), on page 366
- [Information About CAPWAP LAG Support](#), on page 366
- [Restrictions for CAPWAP LAG Support](#), on page 367
- [Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller \(GUI\)](#), on page 367
- [Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller](#), on page 368
- [Enabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller](#), on page 368
- [Disabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller](#), on page 368
- [Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 369
- [Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile](#), on page 369
- [Disabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile](#), on page 370
- [Disabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller](#), on page 370
- [Verifying CAPWAP LAG Support Configurations](#), on page 371
- [Feature History for CAPWAP Message Aggregation](#), on page 371
- [Information About CAPWAP Message Aggregation](#), on page 371
- [Configuring CAPWAP Message Aggregation \(CLI\)](#), on page 372
- [Verifying CAPWAP Message Aggregation](#), on page 372
- [Configuring Bulk AP Provisioning](#), on page 373

Feature History for Configuring the Access Point Console

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 27: Feature History for Configuring the Access Point Console

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Configuring the Access Point Console	This feature allows you to configure the Access Point (AP) console from the controller. In Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.x and earlier releases, the AP console could be disabled from the controller, only by enabling the Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) mode or the Common Criteria (CC) mode.

Information About Configuring the Access Point Console

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards, a new option (a configuration knob) is introduced to enable the Access Point console from the controller, which is independent of the FIPS mode or the high-security

mode (CC mode). (Until Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, the console was enabled by default). This configuration knob can be activated through the controller GUI and CLI.

Console enablement is isolated from the FIPS mode and is configured through the AP join profile. In the CC mode, the console and SSH are disabled. When you enable the CC mode, it overrides the AP console configurations, if any, done from the AP profile.

Configuring the AP Console (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	In the Management tab, in the Telnet/SSH Configuration section, check the Serial Console check box.
Step 3	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring the AP Console (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] console Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# console	Enables the AP serial console port. Use the no form of this command to disable the AP serial console port.

Verifying the AP Console Status

To verify the AP console status from the controller, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general | include ap-Name | console
Cisco AP Name : CiscoAP
=====
```

```

Cisco AP Identifier : 6XXX.bXXX.aXXX
Country Code : US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-AB 802.11 6GHz:-B
AP Country Code : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain
802.11bg : -A
802.11a : -B
MAC Address : 6XXX.bXXX.0XXX
IP Address Configuration : DHCP
IP Address : 30.30.30.26
IP Netmask : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address : 30.30.30.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain :
Name Server :
CAPWAP Path MTU : 1485
Capwap Active Window Size : 1
Telnet State : Disabled
CPU Type : ARMv8 Processor rev 4 (v8l)
Memory Type : DDR3
Memory Size : 1752064 KB
SSH State : Enabled
Serial Console State : Enabled

```

Information About AP Audit Configuration

The AP Audit Configuration feature helps to detect wireless service synchronization issues between the controller and an AP. In Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, Release 17.3.1, two methods are implemented to support AP audit configuration.

- **Config Checker:** This functionality helps in auditing the application of wireless policies during the AP join phase. Any discrepancies at this stage is reported on the controller. This is a built-in functionality and you cannot disable the same. When you try to configure any of the AP attributes such as name, IP address, controller information, tag, mode, radio mode, and radio admin state, the AP parses the CAPWAP payload configuration from the controller and reports errors detected back to the controller with proper code. If a discrepancy is detected, the controller flags errors using the syslog.
- **Config Audit:** This functionality helps to perform periodic comparison of operational states between an AP and the controller after the AP join phase and while the corresponding AP is still connected. Discrepancies, if any, are reported immediately on the controller. The consolidated report is available at the controller anytime. This functionality is disabled by default. The periodic auditing interval is a configurable parameter.

Use the **ap audit-report** command to enable and configure audit report parameters. When triggered, AP sends configurations from the database to the controller, and the controller compares the configurations against the current configuration. If a discrepancy is detected, the controller flags the error using the syslog.

Restrictions for AP Audit Configuration

- Config checker alerts are available only through the syslog.
- IOS AP is not supported.

- The audit reports are not synchronized from the active to the standby controller. After SSO, they are not readily available until the next reporting interval of the already-connected APs.
- The audit reports are not available when an AP is in standalone mode.
- This feature is supported only on APs in FlexConnect mode.

Configure AP Audit Parameters (CLI)

The AP Audit Configuration feature helps you compare the operational states between an AP and the controller. The AP sends state view details to the controller, and the controller compares it with what it perceives as the AP state. This feature is disabled by default.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap audit-report enable Example: Device(config)# ap audit-report enable	Enables audit reporting.
Step 3	ap audit-report interval <i>interval</i> Example: Device(config)# ap audit-report interval 1300	Configures AP audit reporting interval. The default value for interval is 1440 minutes. The valid range is from 10 to 43200.

Verifying AP Audit Report Summary

To verify the AP audit report summary, use the **ap audit-report summary** command:

```
Device# show ap audit-report summary
WTP Mac              Radio              Wlan              IPv4 Acl
IPv6 Acl              Last Report Time
-----
1880.90fd.6b40      OUT_OF_SYNC      OUT_OF_SYNC      IN_SYNC          IN_SYNC          01/01/1970
05:30:00 IST
```

Verifying AP Audit Report Detail

To verify an AP audit report's details, use the **show ap name ap-name audit-report detail** command:

```
Device# show ap name Cisco-AP audit-report detail
Cisco AP Name       : Cisco-AP
=====
IPv4 ACL Audit Report Status      : IN_SYNC
```

```

IPv6 ACL Audit Report Status      : IN_SYNC

Radio Audit Report Status         : IN_SYNC

WLAN Audit Report Status          :
Slot-id  Wlan-id  Vlan            State            SSID            Auth-Type        Other-Flag
-----
0         4        IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC
1         4        IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC

bh-csr1#show ap audit-report summary
WTP-Mac          Radio            Wlan            IPv4-Acl        IPv6-Acl        Last-Report-Time
-----
4001.7aca.5140   IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         06/22/2020
13:17:39 IST
4001.7aca.5a60   IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         06/22/2020
13:18:25 IST
7070.8b23.a1a0   IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         06/22/2020
13:18:29 IST
a0f8.49dc.9460   IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         06/22/2020
13:16:43 IST
a0f8.49dc.96e0   IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         IN_SYNC         06/22/2020
13:17:55 IST

```

2.4-GHz Radio Support

Configuring 2.4-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number

Before you begin



Note The term *802.11b radio* or *2.4-GHz radio* will be used interchangeably.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 SI Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 SI	Enables Spectrum Intelligence (SI) for the dedicated 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. For more information, <i>Spectrum Intelligence</i> section in this guide. Here, 0 refers to the Slot ID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 antenna {ext-ant-gain <i>antenna_gain_value</i> selection [internal external]} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 antenna selection internal</pre>	Configures 802.11b antenna hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. • ext-ant-gain: Configures the 802.11b external antenna gain. • <i>antenna_gain_value</i>- Refers to the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi units. The valid range is from 0 to 40, the maximum gain being 20 dBi. • selection: Configures the 802.11b antenna selection (internal or external). Note • For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration. • For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model. • Cisco Catalyst 9120E and 9130E APs support self-identifying antennas (SIA). Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs do not support SIA antennas. Although Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs work with SIA antennas, the APs do not auto-detect SIA antennas nor add the correct external gain.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 beamforming Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 beamforming</pre>	Configures beamforming for the 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 channel {<i>channel_number</i> auto} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 channel auto</pre>	Configures advanced 802.11 channel assignment parameters for the 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 cleanair Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 cleanair</pre>	Enables CleanAir for 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 dot11n antenna A	Configures 802.11n antenna for 2.4-GHz radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. Here, A: Is the antenna port A. B: Is the antenna port B. C: Is the antenna port C. D: Is the antenna port D.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 shutdown	Disables 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 txpower { <i>tx_power_level</i> auto } Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 24ghz slot 0 txpower auto	Configures transmit power level for 802.11b radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. • <i>tx_power_level</i>: Is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from 1 to 8. • auto: Enables auto-RF.

5-GHz Radio Support

Configuring 5-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number

Before you begin



Note The term *802.11a radio* or *5-GHz radio* will be used interchangeably in this document.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 SI Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 SI</pre>	Enables Spectrum Intelligence (SI) for the dedicated 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point. Here, 1 refers to the Slot ID.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna ext-ant-gain <i>antenna_gain_value</i> Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna ext-ant-gain</pre>	Configures external antenna gain for 802.11a radios for a specific access point hosted on slot 1. <i>antenna_gain_value</i>—Refers to the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi units. The valid range is from 0 to 40, the maximum gain being 20 dBi. Note - For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration. - For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model. - Cisco Catalyst 9120E and 9130E APs support self-identifying antennas (SIA). Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs do not support SIA antennas. Although Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs work with SIA antennas, the APs do not auto-detect SIA antennas nor add the correct external gain.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna mode [omni sectorA sectorB] Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna mode sectorA</pre>	Configures the antenna mode for 802.11a radios for a specific access point hosted on slot 1.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna selection [internal external] Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 antenna selection internal</pre>	Configures the antenna selection for 802.11a radios for a specific access point hosted on slot 1.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 beamforming Example:	Configures beamforming for the 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 beamforming	
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 channel {<i>channel_number</i> auto width [20 40 80 160]} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 channel auto	Configures advanced 802.11 channel assignment parameters for the 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point. Here, <i>channel_number</i> - Refers to the channel number. The valid range is from 1 to 173.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 cleanair Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 cleanair	Enables CleanAir for 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a given or specific access point.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 dot11n antenna A	Configures 802.11n for 5-GHz radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point. Here, A- Is the antenna port A. B- Is the antenna port B. C- Is the antenna port C. D- Is the antenna port D.
Step 10	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 rrm channel <i>channel</i> Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 rrm channel 2	Is another way of changing the channel hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point. Here, <i>channel</i> - Refers to the new channel created using 802.11h channel announcement. The valid range is from 1 to 173, provided 173 is a valid channel in the country where the access point is deployed.
Step 11	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 shutdown	Disables 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point.
Step 12	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 txpower {<i>tx_power_level</i> auto} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 txpower auto	Configures 802.11a radio hosted on slot 1 for a specific access point. • <i>tx_power_level</i>- Is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from 1 to 8. • auto- Enables auto-RF.

6-GHz Radio Support

Configuring 6-GHz Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number

Before you begin

Static channel must be set before changing the channel width.

As there are no external antenna APs, as by regulatory requirements, antennas have to be captive (internal always) for 6-GHz.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 antenna port {A B C D} Example: Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 antenna port A	Configures the antenna port for 802.11 6-GHz radios for a specific access point. Here, A: Is the antenna port A. B: Is the antenna port B. C: Is the antenna port C. D: Is the antenna port D.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 antenna selection [internal external] Example: Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 1 antenna selection internal	Configures the antenna selection, either internal or external, for 802.11 6-GHz radios for a specific access point. Note - For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration. - For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model. - Cisco Catalyst 9120E and 9130E APs support self-identifying antennas (SIA). Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs do not support SIA antennas. Although Cisco Catalyst 9115E APs work with SIA antennas, the

	Command or Action	Purpose
		APs do not auto-detect SIA antennas nor add the correct external gain.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 channel {<i>channel_number</i> auto width [160 20 40 80]} Example: <pre>Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 channel auto</pre>	Configures advanced 802.11 channel assignment parameters for the 6-GHz radio hosted on slot 3 for a specific access point. Here, <i>channel_number</i> : Refers to the channel number. The valid range is from 1 to 233.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 dot11ax bss-color {<i>bss-color-number</i> auto} Example: <pre>Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 dot11ax bss-color auto</pre>	Enables basic service set (BSS) color for 802.11 6-GHz radio for a given or specific access point. Here, <i>bss-color-number</i> : Refers to the BSS color number. The valid range is from 1 to 63.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 radio role {auto manual {client-serving monitor sniffer}} Example: <pre>Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 radio role auto</pre>	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz radio role, which is either auto or manual .
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 rrm channel <i>channel</i> Example: <pre>Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 rrm channel 1</pre>	Configures a new channel using 802.11h channel announcement. Here, <i>channel</i> : Refers to the new channel created using 802.11h channel announcement. The valid range is from 1 to 233.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 shutdown Example: <pre>Device# ap name Cisco-AP dot11 6ghz slot 3 shutdown</pre>	Disables the 802.11 6-GHz radio on the Cisco AP.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 6ghz slot 3 txpower {<i>tx_power_level</i> auto} Example: <pre># ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 5ghz slot 1 txpower auto</pre>	Configures 802.11 6-GHz Tx power level. • <i>tx_power_level</i>: Is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from 1 to 8. • auto: Enables auto-RF.

Information About Dual-Band Radio Support

The Dual-Band (XOR) radio in Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and the 9120 series AP models offer the ability to serve 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz bands or passively monitor both the bands on the same AP. These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5-GHz radio serves clients.

Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166 AP (CW9166) now has XOR function for a dual 5-GHz 4x4 or 5-GHz 4x4 and 6-GHz 4x4 radios. These radios can also be configured as client serving, monitor or as a sniffer interface like the earlier XOR radios.



Note For all countries that do not support 6-GHz spectrum for use of Wi-Fi, when the Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166I AP operates as dual 5-GHz, the 5-GHz channels will be locked on both the radios even if slot 2 is disabled or set up for monitoring.

Cisco APs models up and through the Cisco 9120 APs are designed to support dual 5-GHz band operations with the *i* model supporting a dedicated Macro/Micro architecture and the *e* and *p* models supporting Macro/Macro. The Cisco 9130AXI APs support dual 5-GHz operations as Macro/Micro cell. The CW9166I supports Macro/Macro cell.

When a radio moves between bands (from 2.4-GHz to 5-GHz and vice versa), clients need to be steered to get an optimal distribution across radios. When an AP has two radios in the 5-GHz band, client steering algorithms contained in the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) algorithm are used to steer a client between the same band co-resident radios.

The XOR radio support can be steered manually or automatically:

- Manual steering of a band on a radio—The band on the XOR radio can only be changed manually.
- Automatic client and band steering on the radios is managed by the FRA feature that monitors and changes the band configurations as per site requirements.



Note RF measurement will not run when a static channel is configured on slot 1. Due to this, the dual band radio slot 0 will move only with 5-GHz radio and not to the monitor mode.

When slot 1 radio is disabled, RF measurement will not run, and the dual band radio slot 0 will be only on 2.4-GHz radio.



Note Only one of the 5-GHz radios can operate in the UNII band (100 - 144), due to an AP limitation to keep the power budget within the regulatory limit.

Configuring Default XOR Radio Support

Before you begin



Note The default radio points to the XOR radio hosted on slot 0.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain <i>antenna_gain_value</i> Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain 2	Configures the 802.11 dual-band antenna on a specific Cisco access point. <i>antenna_gain_value</i> : The valid range is from 0 to 40.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> [no] dot11 dual-band shutdown Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band shutdown	Shuts down the default dual-band radio on a specific Cisco access point. Use the no form of the command to enable the radio.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving	Switches to client-serving mode on the Cisco access point.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band band 24ghz Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band band 24ghz	Switches to 2.4-GHz radio band.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band txpower {<i>transmit_power_level</i> auto} Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band txpower 2	Configures the transmit power for the radio on a specific Cisco access point. Note When an FRA-capable radio (slot 0 on 9120 AP[for instance]) is set to Auto, you cannot configure static channel and Txpower on this radio.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		If you want to configure static channel and Txpower on this radio, you will need to change the radio role to Manual Client-Serving mode. This note is not applicable for Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166 AP (CW9166).
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel <i>channel-number</i> Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel 2	Enters the channel for the dual band. <i>channel-number</i>—The valid range is from 1 to 173.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel auto Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel auto	Enables the auto channel assignment for the dual-band.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel width {20 MHz 40 MHz 80 MHz 160 MHz} Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel width 20 MHz	Chooses the channel width for the dual band.
Step 10	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair	Enables the Cisco CleanAir feature on the dual-band radio.
Step 11	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair band {24 GHz 5 GHz} Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz	Selects a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature. Use the no form of this command to disable the Cisco CleanAir feature.
Step 12	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna A	Configures the 802.11n dual-band parameters for a specific access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 13	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> auto-rf dot11 dual-band Example: Device# show ap name <i>ap-name</i> auto-rf dot11 dual-band	Displays the auto-RF information for the Cisco access point.
Step 14	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> wlan dot11 dual-band Example: Device# show ap name <i>ap-name</i> wlan dot11 dual-band	Displays the list of BSSIDs for the Cisco access point.

Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** section, select the AP for which you want to configure dual-band radios.
- The AP name, MAC address, CleanAir capability and slot information for the AP are displayed. If the Hyperlocation method is HALO, the antenna PID and antenna design information are also displayed.
- Step 3** Click **Configure**.
- Step 4** In the **General** tab, set the **Admin Status** as required.
- Step 5** Set the **CleanAir Admin Status** field to Enable or Disable.
- Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain <i>external_antenna_gain_value</i> Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain 2	Configures dual-band antenna for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. <i>external_antenna_gain_value</i> - Is the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi unit. The valid range is from 0 to 40. Note - For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration. - For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 band {24ghz 5ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 band 24ghz	Configures current band for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel {channel_number auto width [160 20 40 80]} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel 3	Configures dual-band channel for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. <i>channel_number</i> - The valid range is from 1 to 165.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band {24Ghz 5Ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band 24Ghz	Enables CleanAir features for dual-band radios hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna A	Configures 802.11n dual-band parameters hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. Here, A - Enables antenna port A. B - Enables antenna port B. C - Enables antenna port C. D - Enables antenna port D.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 role { auto manual [client-serving monitor]} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 role auto</pre>	Configures dual-band role for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. The following are the dual-band roles: • auto- Refers to the automatic radio role selection. • manual- Refers to the manual radio role selection.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown</pre>	Disables dual-band radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. Use the no form of this command to enable the dual-band radio.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower { <i>tx_power_level</i> auto } Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower 2</pre>	Configures dual-band transmit power for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. • <i>tx_power_level</i>- Is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from 1 to 8. • auto- Enables auto-RF.

Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio Support

Information About Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio Support

This feature configures the dual-band Rx-only radio features for an access point with dual-band radios.

This dual-band Rx-only radio is dedicated for Analytics, Hyperlocation, Wireless Security Monitoring, and BLE AoA*.

This radio will always continue to serve in monitor mode, therefore, you will not be able to make any channel and *tx-rx* configurations on the 3rd radio.

Configuring Receiver Only Dual-Band Parameters for Access Points

Enabling CleanAir with Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Access Points .
Step 2	In the Dual-Band Radios settings, click the AP for which you want to configure the dual-band radios.
Step 3	In the General tab, enable the CleanAir toggle button.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Enabling CleanAir with Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 cleanair band {24Ghz 5Ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 cleanair band 24Ghz Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 cleanair band 24Ghz	Enables CleanAir with receiver only (Rx-only) dual-band radio on a specific access point. Here, 2 refers to the slot ID. Use the no form of this command to disable CleanAir.

Disabling Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Access Points .
Step 2	In the Dual-Band Radios settings, click the AP for which you want to configure the dual-band radios.
Step 3	In the General tab, disable the CleanAir Status toggle button.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Disabling Receiver Only Dual-Band Radio on a Cisco Access Point

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 shutdown Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 shutdown Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 rx-dual-band slot 2 shutdown	Disables receiver only dual-band radio on a specific Cisco access point. Here, 2 refers to the slot ID. Use the no form of this command to enable receiver only dual-band radio.

Configuring Client Steering (CLI)

Before you begin

Enable Cisco CleanAir on the corresponding dual-band radio.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold balancing-window number-of-clients(0-65535) Example: Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold balancing-window 10	Configures the micro-macro client load-balancing window for a set number of clients.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold client count <i>number-of-clients(0-65535)</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold client count 10</pre>	Configures the macro-micro client parameters for a minimum client count for transition.
Step 5	wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold macro-to-micro <i>RSSI-in-dBm(-128—0)</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold macro-to-micro -100</pre>	Configures the macro-to-micro transition RSSI.
Step 6	wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold micro-to-macro <i>RSSI-in-dBm(-128—0)</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering transition-threshold micro-to-macro -110</pre>	Configures the micro-to-macro transition RSSI.
Step 7	wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression aggressiveness <i>number-of-cycles(-128—0)</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression aggressiveness -110</pre>	Configures the number of probe cycles to be suppressed.
Step 8	wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression hysteresis <i>RSSI-in-dBm</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression hysteresis -5</pre>	Configures the macro-to-micro probe in RSSI. The range is between -6 to -3.
Step 9	wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-only Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-only</pre>	Enables probe suppression mode.
Step 10	wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-auth Example:	Enables probe and single authentication suppression mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless macro-micro steering probe-suppression probe-auth	
Step 11	show wireless client steering Example: Device# show wireless client steering	Displays the wireless client steering information.

Verifying Cisco Access Points with Dual-Band Radios

To verify the access points with dual-band radios, use the following command:

Device# **show ap dot11 dual-band summary**

```

AP Name Subband Radio      Mac      Status Channel Power Level Slot ID Mode
-----
4800    All 3890.a5e6.f360 Enabled (40) * 1/8      (22 dBm)      0  Sensor
4800    All 3890.a5e6.f360 Enabled N/A      N/A           2  Monitor

```

Information About OFDMA Support for 11ax Access Points

The Cisco Catalyst 9100 series access points are the next generation WiFi 802.11ax access point, which is ideal for high-density high-definition applications.

The IEEE 802.11ax protocol aims to improve user experience and network performance in high density deployments for both 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz. The 802.11ax APs supports transmission or reception to more than one client simultaneously using Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDMA).

The IEEE 802.11ax supports uplink MU-MIMO and also adds OFDMA for multiple users in the uplink and downlink. All the users in IEEE 802.11ax OFDMA have the same time allocations and it ends at the same time. In MU-MIMO and OFDMA, multiple stations (STAs) either simultaneously transmit to a single STA or simultaneously receive from a single STA independent data streams over the same radio frequencies.

Supported Modes on 11ax Access Points

The following AP modes are supported:

- Local mode
- Flex-connect mode
- Bridge mode
- Flex+Mesh mode

Configuring 11AX (GUI)

You can configure 11ax for the frequencies, 5 GHz and 2.4 GHz.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > High Throughput**.
- Step 2** Click the **5 GHz Band** tab.
- Expand the **11ax** section.
 - Select the **Enable 11ax** and **Multiple Bssid** check boxes, if required.
 - Check either the **Select All** check box to configure all the data rates or select the desired options from the available data rates list.
- Step 3** Click the **2.4 GHz Band** tab.
- Expand the **11ax** section.
 - Select the **Enable 11ax** and **Multiple Bssid** check boxes, if required.
 - Check either the **Select All** check box to configure all the data rates or select the desired options from the available data rates list.
-

Configuring Channel Width

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel dca chan-width 160 Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width 160	Configures channel width for 802.11 radios as 160. Use the no form of the command to disable the configuration. Note Cisco Catalyst 9115 and C9120 series APs do not support 80+80 channel width. Cisco Catalyst 9117 series APs do not support OFDMA in 160 channel width.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rf-profile profile-name Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile ax-profile	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 4	channel chan-width 160 Example:	Configures the RF profile DCA channel width.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-rf-profile)# channel chan-width 160	

Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > High Throughput > 5 GHz Band > 11ax**.
- Step 2** Check or uncheck the **Enable 11 n** check box.
- Step 3** Check the check boxes for the desired MCS/(data rate) or to select all of them, check the **Select All** check box.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
- Step 5** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > High Throughput > 2.4 GHz Band > 11ax**.
- Step 6** Check or uncheck the **Enable 11 n** check box.
- Step 7** Check the check boxes for the desired MCS/(data rate) or to select all of them, check the **Select All** check box.
- Step 8** Click **Apply**.
- Step 9** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 10** Click the Access Point.
- Step 11** In the **Edit AP** dialog box, enable the **LED State** toggle button and choose the LED brightness level from the **LED Brightness Level** drop-down list.
- Step 12** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring 802.11ax Radio Parameters (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure radio parameters:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } dot11ax Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz dot11ax	Configures 802.11 6GHz dot11ax parameters. Use the no form of the command to disable the configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} dot11ax mcs tx index <i>index</i> spatial-stream <i>spatial-stream-value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11ax mcs tx index 11 spatial-stream 8	Enables the 11ax 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, or 6-GHz band modulation and coding scheme (MCS) transmission rates.
Step 4	ap led-brightness <i>brightness-level</i> Example: Device(config)# ap led-brightness 6	(Optional) Configures the led brightness level.

Setting up the 802.11ax Radio Parameters

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> led-brightness-level <i>brightness-level</i> Example: Device# ap name ax-ap led-brightness-level 6	Configures the led brightness level.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} dot11n antenna <i>antenna-port</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 dot11 5ghz dot11n antenna A	Configures the 802.11n - 5 GHz antenna selection. Use the no form of the command to disable the configuration.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} channel width <i>channel-width</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 dot11 5ghz channel width 160	Configures 802.11 channel width.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} secondary-80 <i>channel-num</i> Example:	Configures the advanced 802.11 secondary 80Mhz channel assignment parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# ap name ap1 dot11 5ghz secondary-80 12	

Configuring OFDMA on a WLAN



Note For Cisco Catalyst 9115 and 9120 series APs, the configuration given below are per radio, and not per WLAN. This feature remains enabled on the controller, if it is enabled on any of the WLANs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan1 Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1	Enters the WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11ax downlink-ofdma Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax downlink-ofdma	Enables the downlink connection that uses the OFDMA technology. Use the no form of the command to disable the configuration.
Step 4	dot11ax uplink-ofdma Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax uplink-ofdma	Enables the uplink connection that uses the OFDMA technology .
Step 5	dot11ax downlink-mumimo Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax downlink-mumimo	Enables the downlink connection that uses the MUMIMO technology.
Step 6	dot11ax uplink-mumimo Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax uplink-mumimo	Enables the uplink connection that uses the MUMIMO technology.
Step 7	dot11ax twt-broadcast-support Example: Device (config-wlan)# dot11ax twt-broadcast-support	Enables the TWT broadcast support operation.

Verifying Channel Width

To verify the channel width and other channel information, use the following **show** commands:

Device# **show ap dot11 5ghz summary**

AP Name Txpwr	Mac Address	Slot	Admin State	Oper State	Channel	Width
AP80e0.1d75.6954 1 (*)	80e0.1d7a.7620	1	Enabled	Up	(52) *	160

Device# **show ap dot11 dual-band summary**

AP Name Mode	Subband	Radio Mac	Status	Channel	Power Level	Slot ID
kart128021mi REAP	All	002a.1058.38a0	Enabled	(52) *	(1) *	1

Device# **show ap name <ap-name> channel**

```

802.11b/g Current Channel           : 11
Slot ID                             : 0
Allowed Channel List                 : 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11
802.11a Current Channel ..... 52 (160 MHz)
Slot ID                             : 1
Allowed Channel List                 :
36,40,44,48,52,56,60,64,100,104,108,112,116,132,136,140,149,153,157,161,165

```

Device# **show ap name <ap-name> config slot <slot-num>**

```

.
.
.
Phy OFDM Parameters
    Configuration                     : Automatic
    Current Channel                   : 52
    Extension Channel                  : No Extension
    Channel Width                     : 160 MHz
    Allowed Channel List               :
36,40,44,48,52,56,60,64,100,104,108,112,116,132,136,140,149,153,157,161,165
    TI Threshold                      : 0

```

Device# **show ap dot11 5ghz channel**

```

.
.
.
DCA Sensitivity Level                : MEDIUM : 15 dB
DCA 802.11n/ac Channel Width         : 160 MHz
DCA Minimum Energy Limit              : -95 dBm
.
.
.

```

Device# **show ap rf-profile name <name> detail**

```

.
.
.
Unused Channel List                  : 165
DCA Bandwidth                        : 160 MHz
DCA Foreign AP Contribution          : Enabled
.

```

Verifying Client Details

To verify the client information, use the following **show** commands:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <mac-address> detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : a886.ddb2.05e9
Client IPv4 Address : 169.254.175.214
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::b510:a381:8099:4747
                      2009:300:300:57:4007:6abb:2c9a:61e2
Client Username: N/A
Voice Client Type : Unknown
AP MAC Address : c025.5c55.e400
AP Name: APe4c7.22b2.948e
Device Type: N/A
Device Version: N/A
AP slot : 0
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : default-flex-profile
Wireless LAN Id : 1
Wireless LAN Name: SSS_OPEN
BSSID : c025.5c55.e406
Connected For : 23 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Channel : 8
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Client CCX version : No CCX support
Session Timeout : 86400 sec (Remaining time: 86378 sec)
```

```
.
.
.
```

```
Device# show wireless client summary
```

```
Number of Local Clients: 1
```

MAC Address Role	AP Name	WLAN	State	Protocol Method
a886.ddb2.05e9 Local	APe4c7.22b2.948e	1	Run	11ax(5) None

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
```

```
Total Number of Clients : 1
```

```
Protocol Statistics
```

```
-----
Protocol          Client Count
802.11b           : 0
```



```

802.11g           : 0
802.11a           : 0
802.11n-2.4GHz   : 0
802.11n-5 GHz    : 0
802.11ac         : 0
802.11ax-5 GHz   : 0
802.11ax-2.4 GHz : 0
802.11ax-6 GHz   : 1

```

Verifying Radio Configuration

To verify the radio configuration information, use the following **show** commands:

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network
```

```

802.11a Network           : Enabled
.
.
.
802.11ax                 : Enabled
  DynamicFrag             : Enabled
  MultiBssid              : Disabled
802.11ax MCS Settings:
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 1 : Disabled
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 1 : Disabled
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 1 : Disabled
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 2 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 2 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 2 : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 3 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 3 : Disabled
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 3 : Disabled
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 4 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 4 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 4 : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 5 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 5 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 5 : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 6 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 6 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 6 : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 7 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 7 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 7 : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 8 : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 8 : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 8 : Supported
Beacon Interval          : 100
.
.
.
Maximum Number of Clients per AP Radio : 200

```

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz network
```

```

802.11b Network           : Enabled
.
.
.
802.11axSupport..... Enabled
  dynamicFrag..... Disabled
  multiBssid..... Disabled

```

```

802.11ax                               : Enabled
  DynamicFrag                          : Enabled
  MultiBssid                           : Enabled
802.11ax MCS Settings:
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 1           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 1           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 1          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 2           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 2           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 2          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 3           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 3           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 3          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 4           : Disabled
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 4           : Disabled
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 4          : Disabled
Beacon Interval                        : 100
.
.
.
Maximum Number of Clients per AP Radio : 200

Device# show ap dot11 6ghz network
802.11 6Ghz Network                   : Enabled
802.11ax                               : Enabled
.
.
.
802.11ax MCS Settings:
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 1           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 1           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 1          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 2           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 2           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 2          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 3           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 3           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 3          : Supported
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 4           : Supported
  MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 4           : Supported
  MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 4          : Supported
Beacon Interval                        : 95
.
.
.
Maximum Number of Clients per AP Radio : 200
WiFi to Cellular RSSI Threshold        : -85 dbm
Client Network Preference               : default

#show wlan id 1
WLAN Profile Name                      : wlanon66
=====
Identifier                            : 1
Description                           :
Network Name (SSID)                   : wlanon66
Status                                : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                        : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                      : Enabled
Universal AP Admin                    : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN        : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
OKC                                   : Enabled
Number of Active Clients               : 0
CHD per WLAN                          : Enabled

```

```

WMM                                     : Allowed
WiFi Direct Policy                     : Disabled
.
.
.
Operational State of Radio Bands
  2.4ghz                               : UP
  5ghz                                 : UP
  6ghz                                 : DOWN (Required config: Disable WPA2 and
Enable WPA3 & dot11ax)
DTIM period for 802.11a radio           :
DTIM period for 802.11b radio           :
Local EAP Authentication                : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name       : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name : Disabled
Accounting list name                    :
802.1x authentication list name          : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name           : Disabled
Security
  802.11 Authentication                 : Open System
.
.
.
802.11ac MU-MIMO                       : Enabled
802.11ax parameters
  802.11ax Operation Status             : Enabled
  OFDMA Downlink                        : Enabled
  OFDMA Uplink                          : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Downlink                      : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Uplink                        : Enabled
  BSS Target Wake Up Time               : Enabled
  BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support : Enabled
.
.
.

```



Note For 6-GHz radio, the 802.11ax parameters are taken from the multi BSSID profile tagged to the corresponding 6-GHz RF profile of the AP. So, the WLAN dot11ax parameters are overridden by multi BSSID profile parameters in the case of 6-GHz. There are no changes for 2.4 and 5-GHz band WLANs. They continue to use the WLAN parameters for 802.11ax.

Device# **show ap led-brightness-level summary**

AP Name	LED Brightness level
AP00FC.BA01.CC00	Not Supported
AP70DF.2FA2.72EE	8
AP7069.5A74.6678	2
APb838.6159.e184	Not Supported

Information About Cisco Flexible Antenna Port

The presence of multiple antennas on the transmitters and the receivers of access points (APs), results in better performance and reliability of the APs. Multiple antennas improve reception through the selection of stronger signals or a combination of individual signals, at the receiver. You can configure the antenna ports to be used in the APs as either dual-band antennas or as single-band antennas to optimize radio coverage.

- Dual-band antenna mode: APs operate in both the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bandwidth with all the four antennas—A, B, C, and D. An example of a dual-band antenna mode AP is the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 AP.
- Single-band antenna mode: Among the APs, antennas A and B operate in the 2.4-GHz bandwidth, and the antennas C and D operate in the 5-GHz bandwidth. An example of a single-band antenna mode AP is the Cisco Catalyst Industrial Wireless 6300 AP.

Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click **AP Name**.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** From the **Antenna Mode** drop-down list, choose the antenna mode.
- Step 5** Click **Apply & Update**.
-

Configuring a Cisco Flexible Antenna Port (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap-name</i> antenna-band-mode { dual single } Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> antenna-brand-mode single	Configures antenna band mode as single or dual.

Verifying Flexible Antenna Port Configuration

The following is a sample output of the **show ap name *ap_name* config general** command that shows the bands selected on a specific AP:

```
Device# show ap name APXXXX.31XX.83XX config general
Cisco AP Name      : APXXXX.31XX.83XX
=====
Cisco AP Identifier           : b4de.312e.00c0
Country Code                : Multiple Countries : US,IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-ABDN
```

```

AP Submode                               : Not Configured
Antenna Band Mode                         : Dual

```

The following is a sample output of the **show ap name *ap_name* config slot 0** command that shows the bands selected on a specific AP with dual-band mode enabled:

```

Device# show ap name APXXXX.31XX.83XX config slot 0 | sec 802.11n Antennas
      802.11n Antennas
        A                               : ENABLED
        B                               : ENABLED
        C                               : ENABLED
        D                               : ENABLED

      802.11n Antennas
        MIMO                            : x
        Tx                              : Unknown
        Rx                              : Unknown

```

The following is a sample output of the **show ap name *ap_name* config slot 1** command that shows the bands selected on a specific AP with single-band mode enabled:

```

Device# show ap name APXXXX.31XX.83XX config slot 1 | sec 802.11n Antennas
      802.11n Antennas
        A                               : DISABLED
        B                               : DISABLED
        C                               : ENABLED
        D                               : ENABLED

      802.11n Antennas
        MIMO                            : x
        Tx                              : Unknown
        Rx                              : Unknown

```

Feature History for Environmental Sensors in Access Points

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 28: Feature History for Environmental Sensors on Access Points

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1	Environmental Sensors in Access Points	The Environmental Sensors in Access Points feature helps you collect real-time environmental data, such as, air quality, temperature, and humidity, from the environmental sensors that are embedded in the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points.
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Environmental Sensors in Access Points	This feature is supported on Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166I Series Access Points.

Information About Environmental Sensors in Access Points

You can collect real-time environmental data, such as, air quality, temperature, and humidity, from the environmental sensors that are embedded in the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points, and make this data available to customers and partners through the Cisco Spaces solution. You can disable, enable, and configure the scan interval of the sensors from the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller CLIs.



Note From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, this feature is supported on Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs.

In Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1, air quality, temperature, and humidity are supported on Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166I Series Access Points.

Currently, two sensors are added to Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs:

- Total volatile organic compounds (TVOC) air quality sensor
- Combined Temperature and Humidity sensor

Use Cases

The following are the use cases for the environmental sensors in APs:

- In the healthcare industry, environmental sensors help reduce wastage and spoilage of pharmaceuticals by maintaining a consistent environment.
- In the hospitality industry, environmental sensors help improve customer experience by monitoring the air quality of a room.
- In the retail industry, these sensors prevent spoilage of products.

Configuring Environmental Sensors in an AP Profile (CLI)

To configure the environmental sensor in the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers under an AP profile, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example:	Configures an AP profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name	
Step 3	sensor environment air-quality Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# sensor environment air-quality	Configures AP environmental air quality sensor. Enters AP sensor configuration mode.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-ap-sensor)# no shutdown	Enables the AP air quality sensor configuration.
Step 5	sensor environment temperature Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# sensor environment temperature	Configures AP environmental temperature sensor. Enters AP sensor configuration mode.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-ap-sensor)# no shutdown	Enables the AP temperature sensor configuration.
Step 7	sampling data-sampling-interval Example: Device(config-ap-sensor)# sampling 200	Configures data sampling interval, in seconds. The valid range is between 5 and 3600. The default value is 5. Use the no form of this command to set the data sampling interval to the default time of 5.
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-ap-sensor)# exit	Exits the sub mode.

Configuring Environment Sensors in Privileged EXEC Mode (CLI)

To disable the sensor on an AP that might be sending invalid data (an AP near an air vent or near a coffee machine), you can disable the sensor by running the corresponding commands in the privileged EXEC mode of the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.



Note For a sensor to be operational in the **Up** state, both, the AP profile configuration state and the AP administrative state should be enabled. If any of the two is disabled, the sensor operational status will stay **Down**.

To disable and enable the admin state of the sensor, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter the password if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> sensor environment{air-quality temperature} shutdown Example: Device# ap name CiscoAP sensor environment air-quality shutdown	Disables the sensor admin state of the AP.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> no sensor environment{air-quality temperature} shutdown Example: Device# ap name CiscoAP no sensor environment air-quality shutdown	Enables the sensor admin state of the AP.

Verifying the AP Sensor Status

To verify the status of the AP sensors, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap sensor status
```

AP Name	Admin-State	Oper-Status	MAC-address	Sampling-Interval	Sensor-type	Config-State
Cisco.1DBC	Enabled	Down	xxxx.xxxx.xxx1	5	Air-quality	Disabled
Cisco.1DBC	Enabled	Down	xxxx.xxxx.xxx2	5	Temperature	Disabled
Cisco.1E24	Enabled	Down	xxxx.xxxx.xxx3	5	Air-quality	Disabled
Cisco.1E24	Enabled	Down	xxxx.xxxx.xxx4	5	Temperature	Disabled

Information About CAPWAP LAG Support

Link aggregation (LAG) simplifies controller configuration because you no longer require to configure primary and secondary ports for each interface. If any of the controller ports fail, traffic is automatically migrated to one of the other ports. As long as at least one controller port is functioning, the system continues to operate, access points remain connected to the network, and wireless clients continue to send and receive data.

The CAPWAP LAG support feature is applicable for access points that support multiple ethernet ports for CAPWAP.

The 11AC APs with dual ethernet ports require the CAPWAP AP LAG support for data channel.

Cisco Aironet 1850, 2800, and 3800 Series APs' second Ethernet port is used as a link aggregation port, by default. It is possible to use this LAG port as an RLAN port when LAG is disabled.

The following APs use LAG port as an RLAN port:

- 1852E
- 1852I
- 2802E
- 2802I
- 3802E
- 3802I
- 3802P
- 9136I

Restrictions for CAPWAP LAG Support

- APs must be specifically enabled for CAPWAP AP LAG support.
- CAPWAP data does not support IPv6.
- Data DTLS must not be enabled when LAG is enabled.
- APs behind NAT and PAT are not supported.

Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Wireless Global .
Step 2	Check the AP LAG Mode check box.
Step 3	Click Apply .
-

Enabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lag support Example: Device(config)# <code>ap lag support</code>	Enables CAPWAP LAG support on the controller. Note After executing this command, you get to view the following warning statement: <i>Changing the lag support will cause all the APs to disconnect.</i> Thus, all APs with LAG capability reboots and joins the enabled CAPWAP LAG.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller

If the CAPWAP LAG is enabled globally on the controller, the following occurs:

- AP joins the controller.
- AP exchanges its CAPWAP support.
- LAG mode starts, if LAG is enabled on AP.

Disabling CAPWAP LAG Globally on Controller

If the CAPWAP LAG is disabled globally on the controller, the following occurs:

- AP joins the controller.
- AP exchanges its CAPWAP support.
- AP LAG config is sent to AP, if LAG is already enabled on AP.
- AP reboots.

- AP joins back with the disabled LAG.

Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Under the General tab, enter the Name of the AP Profile and check the LAG Mode check box to set the CAPWAP LAG for the AP profile.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Enabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap profile xyz-ap-profile</code>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile will not revert to the default profile.
Step 3	lag Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>lag</code>	Enables CAPWAP LAG for an AP profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>end</code>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Disabling CAPWAP LAG for an AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap profile xyz-ap-profile</code>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile will not revert to the default profile.
Step 3	no lag Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>no lag</code>	Disables CAPWAP LAG for an AP profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>end</code>	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Disabling CAPWAP LAG Support on Controller

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no ap lag support Example: Device(config)# <code>no ap lag support</code>	Disables CAPWAP LAG support on the controller . Note All APs with LAG capability reboots and joins the disabled CAPWAP LAG.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying CAPWAP LAG Support Configurations

To verify the global LAG status for all Cisco APs, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap lag-mode
AP Lag-Mode Support Enabled
```

To verify the AP LAG configuration status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name <ap-name> config general
Cisco AP Identifier : 0008.3291.6360
Country Code : US
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-AB
AP Country Code : US - United States
::
AP Lag Configuration Status : Enabled/Disabled
Has AP negotiated lag based on AP capability and per AP config.
```

Feature History for CAPWAP Message Aggregation

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 29: Feature History for CAPWAP Message Aggregation

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1	CAPWAP Message Aggregation	The CAPWAP Message Aggregation feature aggregates the CAPWAP control messages of the same type waiting in the queue to be transmitted to the AP.

Information About CAPWAP Message Aggregation

The CAPWAP Message Aggregation feature aggregates the CAPWAP control messages to be sent to APs. When APs are busy processing packets, the messages to be sent to the APs are stored in the controller. When you enable the feature, if the last message type in the queue and the current message type are the same, the CAPWAP messages are aggregated and capped at Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU). This improves the performance of the system.

Guidelines

- Applicable to all AP modes.
- The CAPWAP Message Aggregation feature is disabled by default.

Use Case

Flex deployment use case: You can expect a round-trip delay when packets are sent over wide area network (WAN) in Flex deployments. With the CAPWAP message aggregation, the round-trip time reduces significantly. Also, the client join and client roam are faster.

Configuring CAPWAP Message Aggregation (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	capwap aggregation Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# capwap aggregation	Enables CAPWAP message aggregation. This feature is disabled by default.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying CAPWAP Message Aggregation

To view the total number of aggregated CAPWAP control packets for the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats ap packet
```

```
Packet stats
```

```
Capwap Control Packets Received* : 11183016
Capwap Data Keep Alive Packets Received : 160399
Capwap Data DOT1X EAP Packets Received: 549
```

```

Capwap Data DOT1X Mgmt Packets Received: 6003
Capwap Data DOT1X Key Type Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data DOT1X Control Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data ARP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IPV6 Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data RRM Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data DHCP Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data RFID Packets Received: 0
Capwap Data IAPP Packets Received: 2531939
Capwap Dgram Input Errors : 0
Capwap Discovery Packets Received : 22299
Capwap Discovery Dgram Input Errors : 0
Aggregated Capwap Control Packets Sent: 119337
**** Note: Capwap control packets exclude discovery/primary discovery packets ****

```

To verify the status of the CAPWAP message aggregation feature, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed
AP Profile Name           : default-ap-profile
Description               : default custom profile
Country code             : Not configured
Stats Timer              : 180
Link Latency             : ENABLED
Data Encryption          : DISABLED
LED State                : ENABLED
NTP server               : 0.0.0.0
NTP Authentication       : DISABLED
Jumbo MTU                : ENABLED
24ghz Report Interval    : 90
5ghz Report Interval     : 90
bssid stats status       : ENABLED
bssid stats frqncy interval : 120
bssid neighbor stats status : ENABLED
bssid neighbor stats interval : 120
CAPWAP Control Aggregation : ENABLED

```

Configuring Bulk AP Provisioning

Bulk AP provisioning allows you to configure multiple AP parameters for more than one AP at a time. You can configure AP parameters such as admin status and floor location, geolocation parameters, and high availability parameters.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Navigate to the **Configuration > Wireless > Bulk AP Provisioning** page.
You can view the current tasks along with its status.
 - Step 2** Click **Start a workflow to create an AP Provisioning task** to start a new bulk AP provisioning task.
 - Step 3** In the **Select AP** page, configure the following:
 - a) Change the name of the task.
 - b) Select the APs you wish to provision.
 - c) Click **Next**.
 - Step 4** In the **Select Parameters** page, configure the following as required:

- a) Change the admin status by clicking on the drop-down list.
- b) Enter the location.
- c) Enter the above ground level height in meters. The range is from -100 to 1000.
- d) Enter the tolerance as uncertainty height in meters. The range is from 0 to 100.
- e) Enter the cable length in meters. The range is from 1 to 100. The default is 10.

We recommend that you keep the default value of 10 meters with the Cisco provided external antenna.

Note

This option is available on selected models that support adding an external antenna.

- f) Enter the floor ID.
- g) Enter the name and management IP address of the primary, secondary, and tertiary controller.
- h) Click **Next**.

Step 5 In the **Summary** page, click **Apply** after confirming the changes.

You can view changes in the task status from its provisioning to completion. On clicking the task, you can view the count of the configurations that were applied and not applied on each of the selected APs.



CHAPTER 26

Secure Data Wipe

- [Secure Data Wipe, on page 375](#)

Secure Data Wipe

The Secure Data Wipe feature allows you to securely erase files from the file system of Cisco APs by using the **clear ap config command**. This new command triggers a secure data wipe in an AP. Additionally, this feature also stores basic information about the wipeout along with the wipeout status. The data stored in the AP flash helps to verify the files erased from the AP file system, and troubleshoot issues. Use the **clear ap config** to view the wipeout history details.

The following files are securely erased, without scope of recovery:

- Configuration and backup configuration files
- Crash files
- Log files
- Boot variables
- Package logs

To check the output of the data wipe, run the following AP command:

```
Cisco-AP# show flash wipeout-log
DATA SANITATION LOGS
Filesystem Name      :   Flash
Filesystem size      :   519 M (bytes)
Total Files          :    95
Data Wipe Time       :   Fri Mar  8 09:50:49 UTC 2024
Data Wipe method     :   CLEAR
Files cleared        :    92
Bytes cleared        :   5484544 (bytes)
Total Free byte      :   458846208 (bytes)
Device PID          :   C9130AXI-E
Serial number        :   KWC233202MN
Data Wipe Status     :   SUCCESS
```

**Note**

- Data wipe for APs in Work Group Bridge mode can be done only through the mode button, which needs to be pressed for a duration of 20 to 60 seconds to remove storage content.
- Cisco Wave 1 APs are supported in Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3 and Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.3 and its later versions. Cisco Wave 1 APs are not supported in 17.4, 17.5, 17.6, 17.7, 17.8, 17.10 and later releases.
- Cisco Wave 2 APs are supported in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11 and Cisco IOS XE 17.13.
- Cisco Wave 1 APs and Cisco Wave 2 APs are supported in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.

Table 30: Supported AP models

Cisco IOS APs	Cisco COS APs	Cisco Catalyst APs
3700 (I/E/P)	3800 (I/E/P)	9162I 9164I 9166I 9166D1 9163E
2700 (I/E)	2800 (I/E)	9124AX (I/D/E)
1700I	1815 (I/W)	9136I
702W	1840 (I)	9130AX (I/E)
1532I/E	1850 (I/E)	9120AX (I/E)
1570	1830 (I/W)	9117AXI
—	1810	9115AX (I/E)
—	1800I	9105AX (I/W)
—	1540	—
—	1560	—
—	4800	—



CHAPTER 27

Troubleshooting Lightweight Access Points

-
- [Overview, on page 377](#)
- [Support Articles, on page 377](#)
- [Feedback Request, on page 378](#)
- [Disclaimer and Caution, on page 378](#)

Overview

This chapter provides links to documents authored by Cisco subject matter experts (SMEs). They aim to help you resolve technical issues without requiring a support ticket. If these documents are unable to resolve your issue, we recommend visiting the applicable [Cisco Community](#). There is a wealth of information and advice available from fellow Cisco customers who may have experienced this issue already and provided a solution. If you are not able to find a resolution on the Community, it may be best that you raise a support ticket at [Cisco Support](#). In cases where a support ticket has to be raised, these documents provide guidance about the data that should be collected and added to the support ticket. Specify the support document you referred, and TAC can create an improvement request with the document owner.

Support Articles

The documents in this section were created using specific software and hardware listed in the Components Used section of each article. However, this does not mean that they are limited to what is listed in Components Used, and generally remain relevant for later versions of software and hardware. Note that there could be some changes in the software or hardware that can cause commands to stop working, the syntax to change, or GUIs and CLIs to look different from one release to another.

The following are the support articles associated with this technology:

Document	Description
Troubleshoot Access Point Disassociation from Controller	This document provides use cases to understand the reason for the Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP)/Lightweight Access Point Protocol (LWAPP) tunnel break between Access Points (APs) and the Wireless Controller.

Feedback Request

Your input helps. A key aspect to improving these support documents is customer feedback. Note that these documents are owned and maintained by multiple teams within Cisco. If you find an issue specific to the document (unclear, confusing, information missing, etc):

- Provide feedback using the **Feedback** button located at the right panel of the corresponding article. The document owner will be notified, and will either update the article, or flag it for removal.
- Include information regarding the section, area, or issue you had with the document and what could be improved. Provide as much detail as possible.

Disclaimer and Caution

The information in this document was created from the devices in a specific lab environment. All of the devices used in this document started with a cleared (default) configuration. If your network is live, ensure that you understand the potential impact of any command.



PART IV

Radio Resource Management

- [Radio Resource Management, on page 381](#)
- [Coverage Hole Detection, on page 425](#)
- [Optimized Roaming, on page 431](#)
- [Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment, on page 435](#)
- [XOR Radio Support, on page 445](#)
- [Cisco Receiver Start of Packet, on page 451](#)
- [Client Limit, on page 455](#)
- [IP Theft, on page 461](#)
- [Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery, on page 467](#)
- [Target Wake Time, on page 469](#)
- [Enabling USB Port on Access Points, on page 475](#)
- [Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 481](#)
- [Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio, on page 487](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard, on page 493](#)
- [Antenna Disconnection Detection, on page 497](#)
- [Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode on Access Points, on page 503](#)
- [6-GHz Band Operations, on page 509](#)



CHAPTER 28

Radio Resource Management

- [Information About Radio Resource Management, on page 381](#)
- [Restrictions for Radio Resource Management, on page 391](#)
- [How to Configure RRM, on page 392](#)
- [Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status, on page 413](#)
- [Examples: RF Group Configuration, on page 415](#)
- [Information About ED-RRM, on page 415](#)
- [Information About Rogue PMF Containment, on page 417](#)
- [Enabling Rogue PMF Containment, on page 417](#)
- [Verifying PMF Containment, on page 418](#)
- [Information About Rogue Channel Width, on page 419](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Channel Width \(CLI\), on page 419](#)
- [Configuring Rogue Classification Rules \(GUI\), on page 420](#)
- [Verifying Rogue Channel Width, on page 423](#)

Information About Radio Resource Management

The Radio Resource Management (RRM) software that is embedded in the device acts as a built-in Radio Frequency (RF) engineer to consistently provide real-time RF management of your wireless network. RRM enables devices to continually monitor their associated lightweight access points for the following information:

- **Traffic load**—The total bandwidth used for transmitting and receiving traffic. It enables wireless LAN managers to track and plan network growth ahead of client demand.
- **Interference**—The amount of traffic coming from other 802.11 sources.
- **Noise**—The amount of non-802.11 traffic that is interfering with the currently assigned channel.
- **Coverage**—The Received Signal Strength (RSSI) and signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) for all connected clients.
- **Other** —The number of nearby access points.

RRM performs these functions:

- Radio resource monitoring
- Power control transmission

- Dynamic channel assignment
- Coverage hole detection and correction
- RF grouping



Note RRM grouping does not occur when an AP operates in a static channel that is not in the DCA channel list. The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) is sent only on DCA channels; therefore, when a radio operates on a non-DCA channel, it does not receive NDP on the channel.

Radio Resource Monitoring

RRM automatically detects and configures new devices and lightweight access points as they are added to the network. It then automatically adjusts the associated and nearby lightweight access points to optimize coverage and capacity.

Lightweight access points can scan all the valid channels for the country of operation as well as for channels available in other locations. The access points in local mode go *offchannel* for a period not greater than 70 ms to monitor these channels for noise and interference. Packets collected during this time are analyzed to detect rogue access points, rogue clients, ad-hoc clients, and interfering access points.



Note In the presence of voice traffic or other critical traffic (in the last 100 ms), access points can defer off-channel measurements. The access points also defer off-channel measurements based on the WLAN scan priority configurations.

Each access point spends only 0.2 percent of its time off channel. This activity is distributed across all the access points so that adjacent access points are not scanning at the same time, which could adversely affect wireless LAN performance.

Information About RF Groups

An RF group is a logical collection of controllers that coordinate to perform RRM in a globally optimized manner to perform network calculations on a per-radio basis. Separate RF groups exist for 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz networks. Clustering Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller into a single RF group enables the RRM algorithms to scale beyond the capabilities of a single Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller.

An RF group is created based on the following parameters:

- User-configured RF network name.
- Neighbor discovery performed at the radio level.
- Country list configured on the controller.

Configuration recommendations:

- List of country code configuration on leader and member controllers should match (should be same).
- RF grouping formation does not happen if:

- The group leader has IPv4 address and the group member has IPv6 address.
- The group leader has IPv6 address and the group member has IPv4 address.
- If RF grouping happens between leader and member using IPv6 address, you should also configure the IPv4 address on the group leader.
- We recommend having the same RF profile configurations on the RF group leader and member controllers.
 - Since the RRM algorithms run on the group leader, they refer to the RF profile configurations of the leader controller. For example, if there are additional channels in the member controller allowed channel list, the group leader does not consider them when assigning a channel to the radio. Similarly, if there is a difference in configuration for DBS channel width between the leader and member controller, the algorithm only refers to the configurations of the group leader.
- If any customer premise has more than 20 controllers, we recommend you have a common (non-default) RF network name for a maximum of 20 controllers. The rest of the controllers can be mapped under different RF network names.
- To have better control of the network, making a controller a static leader is preferred.

RF grouping runs between controllers .

Lightweight APs periodically send out neighbor messages over the air. APs using the same RF group name validate messages from each other.

When APs on different controllers hear validated neighbor messages at a signal strength of –80 dBm or stronger, the controllers dynamically form an RF neighborhood in auto mode. In static mode, the leader is manually selected and the members are added to the RF Group.



Note RF groups and mobility groups are similar, in that, they both define clusters of controllers , but they are different in terms of their use. An RF group facilitates scalable, system-wide dynamic RF management, while a mobility group facilitates scalable, system-wide mobility and controller redundancy.

RF Group Leader

RF Group Leader can be configured in two ways as follows:



Note RF Group Leader is selected based on the controller with the greatest AP capacity (platform limit). If multiple controllers have the same capacity, the leader is selected based on the Group ID, which is a combination of the management IP address, AP capacity, random number, and so on. The one with the highest Group ID is selected as the leader.

- Auto Mode: In this mode, the members of an RF group elect an RF group leader to maintain a *primary* power and channel scheme for the group. The RF grouping algorithm dynamically chooses the RF group leader and ensures that an RF group leader is always present. Group leader assignments can and do change (for instance, if the current RF group leader becomes inoperable or RF group members experience major changes).

- **Static Mode:** In this mode, a user selects a controller as an RF group leader manually. In this mode, the leader and the members are manually configured and fixed. If the members are unable to join the RF group, the reason is indicated. The leader tries to establish a connection with a member every minute if the member has not joined in the previous attempt.

The RF group leader analyzes real-time radio data collected by the system, calculates the power and channel assignments, and sends them to each of the controllers in the RF group. The RRM algorithms ensure system-wide stability, and restrain channel and power scheme changes to the appropriate local RF neighborhoods.



Note When a controller becomes both leader and member for a specific radio, you get to view the IPv4 and IPv6 address as part of the group leader.

When a Controller A becomes a member and Controller B becomes a leader, the Controller A displays either IPv4 or IPv6 address of Controller B using the address it is connected.

So, if both leader and member are not the same, you get to view only one IPv4 or IPv6 address as a group leader in the member.

If Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) needs to use the worst-performing radio as the single criterion for adopting a new channel plan, it can result in pinning or cascading problems.

The main cause of both pinning and cascading is that any potential channel plan changes are controlled by the RF circumstances of the worst-performing radio. The DCA algorithm does not do this; instead, it does the following:

- **Multiple local searches:** The DCA search algorithm performs multiple local searches initiated by different radios in the same DCA run rather than performing a single global search that is driven by a single radio. This change addresses both pinning and cascading, while maintaining the desired flexibility and adaptability of DCA and without jeopardizing stability.
- **Multiple Channel Plan Change Initiators (CPCIs):** Previously, the single worst radio was the sole initiator of a channel plan change. Now each radio in an RF group is evaluated and prioritized as a potential initiator. Intelligent randomization of the resulting list ensures that every radio is eventually evaluated, which eliminates the potential for pinning.
- **Limiting the propagation of channel plan changes (Localization):** For each CPCI radio, the DCA algorithm performs a local search for a better channel plan, but only the CPCI radio itself and its one-hop neighboring access points are actually allowed to change their current transmit channels. The impact of an access point triggering a channel plan change is felt only to within two RF hops from that access point, and the actual channel plan changes are confined to within a one-hop RF neighborhood. Because this limitation applies across all CPCI radios, cascading cannot occur.
- **Non-RSSI-based cumulative cost metric:** A cumulative cost metric measures how well an entire region, neighborhood, or network performs with respect to a given channel plan. The individual cost metrics of all the access points in that area are considered in order to provide an overall understanding of the channel plan's quality. These metrics ensure that the improvement or deterioration of each single radio is factored into any channel plan change. The objective is to prevent channel plan changes in which a single radio improves, but at the expense of multiple other radios experiencing a considerable performance decline.

The RRM algorithms run at a specified updated interval, which is 600 seconds by default. Between update intervals, the RF group leader sends keepalive messages to each of the RF group members and collects real-time RF data.



Note Several monitoring intervals are also available. See the Configuring RRM section for details.

RF Grouping Failure Reason Codes

RF Grouping failure reason codes and their explanations are listed below:

Table 31: RF Grouping Failure Reason Codes

Reason Code	Description
1	Maximum number (20) of controllers are already present in the group.
2	If the following conditions are met: • The request is from a similar powered controller and, • Controller is the leader for the other band, OR • Requestor group is larger.
3	Group ID do not match.
4	Request does not include source type.
5	Group spilt message to all member while group is being reformed.
6	Auto leader is joining a static leader, during the process deletes all the members.
9	Grouping mode is turned off.
11	Country code does not match.
12	Controller is up in hierarchy compared to sender of join command (static mode). Requestor is up in hierarchy (auto mode).
13	Controller is configured as static leader and receives join request from another static leader.
14	Controller is already a member of static group and receives a join request from another static leader.
15	Controller is a static leader and receives join request from non-static member.
16	Join request is not intended to the controller. Controller name and IP do not match.
18	RF domain do not match.
19	Controller received a Hello packet at incorrect state.

Reason Code	Description
20	Controller has already joined Auto leader, now gets a join request from static leader.
21	Group mode change. Domain name change from CLI. Static member is removed from CLI.
22	Max switch size (350) is reached

Additional Reference

Radio Resource Management White Paper: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/technotes/8-3/b_RRM_White_Paper/b_RRM_White_Paper_chapter_011.html

RF Group Name

A controller is configured in an RF group name, which is sent to all the access points joined to the controller and used by the access points as the shared secret for generating the hashed MIC in the neighbor messages. To create an RF group, you configure all of the controllers to be included in the group with the same RF group name.

If there is any possibility that an access point joined to a controller might hear RF transmissions from an access point on a different controller, you should configure the controller with the same RF group name. If RF transmissions between access points can be heard, then system-wide RRM is recommended to avoid 802.11 interference and contention as much as possible.

Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups

After you have created an RF group of controller, you need to configure the access points connected to the controller to detect rogue access points. The access points will then select the beacon or probe-response frames in neighboring access point messages to see if they contain an authentication information element (IE) that matches that of the RF group. If the selection is successful, the frames are authenticated. Otherwise, the authorized access point reports the neighboring access point as a rogue, records its BSSID in a rogue table, and sends the table to the controller.

Secure RF Groups

Secure RF groups enable to encrypt and secure RF grouping and RRM message exchanges over DTLS tunnel. During the DTLS handshake controllers authenticate each other with wireless management trust-point certificate.



Note If a controller has to be part of secure RF-group, that controller must be part of the same mobility group.

Transmit Power Control

The device dynamically controls access point transmit power based on the real-time wireless LAN conditions.

The Transmit Power Control (TPC) algorithm increases and decreases an access point's power in response to changes in the RF environment. In most instances, TPC seeks to lower an access point's power to reduce interference, but in the case of a sudden change in the RF coverage, for example, if an access point fails or becomes disabled, TPC can also increase power on the surrounding access points. This feature is different from coverage hole detection, which is primarily concerned with clients. TPC provides enough RF power to achieve the required coverage levels while avoiding channel interference between access points. We recommend that you select TPCv1; TPCv2 option is deprecated. With TPCv1, you can select the channel aware mode; we recommend that you select this option for 5 GHz, and leave it unchecked for 2.4 GHz.

Overriding the TPC Algorithm with Minimum and Maximum Transmit Power Settings

The TPC algorithm balances RF power in many diverse RF environments. However, it is possible that automatic power control will not be able to resolve some scenarios in which an adequate RF design was not possible to implement due to architectural restrictions or site restrictions, for example, when all the access points must be mounted in a central hallway, placing the access points close together, but requiring coverage to the edge of the building.

In these scenarios, you can configure maximum and minimum transmit power limits to override TPC recommendations. The maximum and minimum TPC power settings apply to all the access points through RF profiles in a RF network.

To set the Maximum Power Level Assignment and Minimum Power Level Assignment, enter the maximum and minimum transmit power used by RRM in the fields in the **Tx Power Control** window. The range for these parameters is -10 to 30 dBm. The minimum value cannot be greater than the maximum value; the maximum value cannot be less than the minimum value.

If you configure a maximum transmit power, RRM does not allow any access point attached to the controller, to exceed this transmit power level (whether the power is set by RRM TPC or by coverage hole detection). For example, if you configure a maximum transmit power of 11 dBm, no access point will transmit above 11 dBm, unless the access point is configured manually.

Cisco APs support power level changes in 3 dB granularity. TPC Min and Max power settings allow for values in 1 dB increments. The resulting power level will be rounded to the nearest value supported in the allowed powers entry for the AP model and the current serving channel.

Each AP model has its own set of power levels localized for its regulatory country and region. Moreover, the power levels for the same AP model will vary based on the band and channel it is set to. For more information on Allowed Power Level vs. Actual power(in dBm), use the **show ap name <name> config slot <0|1|2|3>** command to view the specific number of power levels, the range of power levels allowed, and the current power level setting on the AP.

Dynamic Channel Assignment

Two adjacent access points on the same channel can cause either signal contention or signal collision. In a collision, data is not received by the access point. This functionality can become a problem, for example, when someone reading an e-mail in a café affects the performance of the access point in a neighboring business. Even though these are separate networks, someone sending traffic to the café on channel 1 can disrupt communication in an enterprise using the same channel. Devices can dynamically allocate access point channel assignments to avoid conflict and increase capacity and performance. Channels are *reused* to avoid wasting scarce RF resources. In other words, channel 1 is allocated to a different access point far from the café, which is more effective than not using channel 1 altogether.

The device's Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) capabilities are also useful in minimizing adjacent channel interference between access points. For example, two overlapping channels in the 802.11b/g band, such as 1 and 2, cannot simultaneously use 11 or 54 Mbps. By effectively reassigning channels, the device keeps adjacent channels that are separated.



Note We recommend that you use only nonoverlapping channels (1, 6, 11, and so on).



Note Channel change does not require you to shut down the radio.

The device examines a variety of real-time RF characteristics to efficiently handle channel assignments as follows:

- **Access point received energy:** The received signal strength measured between each access point and its nearby neighboring access points. Channels are optimized for the highest network capacity.
- **Noise:** Noise can limit signal quality at the client and access point. An increase in noise reduces the effective cell size and degrades user experience. By optimizing channels to avoid noise sources, the device can optimize coverage while maintaining system capacity. If a channel is unusable due to excessive noise, that channel can be avoided.
- **802.11 interference:** Interference is any 802.11 traffic that is not a part of your wireless LAN, including rogue access points and neighboring wireless networks. Lightweight access points constantly scan all the channels looking for sources of interference. If the amount of 802.11 interference exceeds a predefined configurable threshold (the default is 10 percent), the access point sends an alert to the device. Using the RRM algorithms, the device may then dynamically rearrange channel assignments to increase system performance in the presence of the interference. Such an adjustment could result in adjacent lightweight access points being on the same channel, but this setup is preferable to having the access points remain on a channel that is unusable due to an interfering foreign access point.

In addition, if other wireless networks are present, the device shifts the usage of channels to complement the other networks. For example, if one network is on channel 6, an adjacent wireless LAN is assigned to channel 1 or 11. This arrangement increases the capacity of the network by limiting the sharing of frequencies. If a channel has virtually no capacity remaining, the device may choose to avoid this channel. In huge deployments in which all nonoverlapping channels are occupied, the device does its best, but you must consider RF density when setting expectations.

- **Load and utilization:** When utilization monitoring is enabled, capacity calculations can consider that some access points are deployed in ways that carry more traffic than other access points, for example, a lobby versus an engineering area. The device can then assign channels to improve the access point that has performed the worst. The load is taken into account when changing the channel structure to minimize the impact on the clients that are currently in the wireless LAN. This metric keeps track of every access point's transmitted and received packet counts to determine how busy the access points are. New clients avoid an overloaded access point and associate to a new access point. This *Load and utilization* parameter is disabled by default.

The device combines this RF characteristic information with RRM algorithms to make system-wide decisions. Conflicting demands are resolved using soft-decision metrics that guarantee the best choice for minimizing network interference. The end result is optimal channel configuration in a three-dimensional space, where access points on the floor above and below play a major factor in an overall wireless LAN configuration.



Note DCA supports only 20-MHz channels in 2.4-GHz band.



Note In a Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) enabled AP environment, ensure that you enable the UNII2 channels option under the DCA channel to allow 100-MHz separation for the dual 5-GHz radios.

The RRM startup mode is invoked in the following conditions:

- In a single-device environment, the RRM startup mode is invoked after the device is upgraded and rebooted.
- In a multiple-device environment, the RRM startup mode is invoked after an RF Group leader is elected.
- You can trigger the RRM startup mode from the CLI.

The RRM startup mode runs for 100 minutes (10 iterations at 10-minute intervals). The duration of the RRM startup mode is independent of the DCA interval, sensitivity, and network size. The startup mode consists of 10 DCA runs with high sensitivity (making channel changes easy and sensitive to the environment) to converge to a steady-state channel plan. After the startup mode is finished, DCA continues to run at the specified interval and sensitivity.



Note DCA algorithm interval is set to 1 hour, but DCA algorithm always runs in default interval of 10 min, channel allocation occurs at 10-min intervals for the first 10 cycles, and channel changes occur as per the DCA algorithm every 10 min. After that the DCA algorithm goes back to the configured time interval. This is common for both DCA interval and anchor time because it follows the steady state.

Invoking channel update will not result in any immediate changes until the next DCA interval is triggered.



Note If Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA)/Transmit Power Control (TPC) is turned off on the RF group member, and auto is set on RF group leader, the channel or TX power on a member gets changed as per the algorithm that is run on the RF group leader.

Dynamic Bandwidth Selection

While upgrading from 11n to 11ac, the Dynamic Bandwidth Selection (DBS) algorithm provides a smooth transition for various configurations.

The following pointers describe the functionalities of DBS:

- It applies an additional layer of bias on top of those applied to the core DCA, for channel assignment in order to maximize the network throughput by dynamically varying the channel width.
- It fine tunes the channel allocations by constantly monitoring the channel and Base Station Subsystem (BSS) statistics.
- It evaluates the transient parameters, such as 11n or 11ac client mix, load, and traffic flow types.

- It reacts to the fast-changing statistics by varying the BSS channel width or adapting to the unique and new channel orientations through 11ac for selection between 40 MHz and 80 MHz bandwidths.

Coverage Hole Detection and Correction

The RRM coverage hole detection algorithm can detect areas of radio coverage in a wireless LAN that are below the level needed for robust radio performance. This feature can alert you to the need for an additional (or relocated) lightweight access point.

If clients on a lightweight access point are detected at threshold levels (RSSI, failed client count, percentage of failed packets, and number of failed packets) lower than those specified in the RRM configuration, the access point sends a “coverage hole” alert to the device. The alert indicates the existence of an area where clients are continually experiencing poor signal coverage, without having a viable access point to which to roam. The device discriminates between coverage holes that can and cannot be corrected. For coverage holes that can be corrected, the device mitigates the coverage hole by increasing the transmit power level for that specific access point. The device does not mitigate coverage holes caused by clients that are unable to increase their transmit power or are statically set to a power level because increasing their downstream transmit power might increase interference in the network.

Cisco AI Enhanced RRM

The AI Enhanced RRM is the next evolution of Cisco's award winning Radio Resource Management (RRM).

The RRM runs as a service in a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. The Cisco RRM manages the RF Group (the components making up the RF Network) based on dynamic measurements between every AP and its neighbors stored in a local database for the entire RF Group. At runtime, the RRM draws the last 10 minutes of the collected data, and gently optimizes based on the current network conditions.

The AI Enhanced RRM integrates the power of Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning to the reliable and trusted Cisco RRM product family algorithms in the Cloud.



Note The AI enhanced RRM is coordinated through the Cisco Catalyst Center (on-prem appliance) as a service. The current RRM sites are seamlessly transitioned to an intelligent centralized service. AI enhanced RRM along with other Cisco Catalyst Center services brings a host of new features with it.

Cisco AI Enhanced RRM operates as a distributed RRM service. RF telemetry is collected from the Cisco Access Points by the controller, and passed through the Catalyst Center to the Cisco AI Analytics Cloud where the data is stored. The RRM Algorithms run against this telemetry data stored in the cloud. AI analyzes the solutions, and passes any configuration change information back to the Catalyst Center. The Catalyst Center maintains the control connection with the enrolled controller and passes any individual AP configuration changes back to the APs.

The following RRM algorithms run in the cloud while the remaining work in the controller:

- DCA
- TPC
- DBS
- FRA



Note The RRM algorithms run in the cloud against the telemetry data available in the cloud.

If the location of controller, and APs are provisioned previously, assigning a location enrolls the AI Enhanced RRM Services and the profile to be pushed to the controller. Thus, AI Enhanced RRM becomes the RF Group Leader for the subscribed controller.

For more information on the Cisco Catalyst Center, see [Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide](#).



Note The following table covers the controller and Cisco Catalyst Center release versions that support Cisco AI Enhanced RRM support:

Table 32: Controller and Cisco Catalyst Center Releases Supporting Cisco AI Enhanced RRM Support

Controller Release	Cisco Catalyst Center Release	Cisco AI Enhanced RRM Support
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.x	• Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.2 or Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.3 • Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.4	• 2.4GHz and 5GHz • 2.4GHz, 5GHz, and 6GHz
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.x	• Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.2 Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.3 • Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.4	2.4GHz and 5GHz
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.x	Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.2 or Cisco Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.3	2.4GHz and 5GHz

Restrictions for Radio Resource Management

- The number of APs in a RF-group is limited to 3000.
- If an AP tries to join the RF-group that already holds the maximum number of APs it can support, the device rejects the application and throws an error.
- Disabling all data rates for default rf-profile or custom rf-profile, impacts ISSU upgrade and client join process after the software upgrade (ISSU or non-ISSU). To prevent this, you must enable at least one data rate (for example, **ap dot11 24 rate RATE_5_5M enable**) on the default rf-profile or custom rf-profile. We recommend that you enable the lowest data rate if efficiency is of prime concern.
- Keywords such as secure cannot be used a RF group name.

How to Configure RRM

Configuring Neighbor Discovery Type (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
- Step 2** On the **Radio Resource Management** page, click either the **5 GHz Band**, **2.4 GHz Band** or the **6 GHz Band** tab.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, under each section enter the corresponding field details:
- Under the **Profile Threshold For Traps** section, enter the:
 - Interference Percentage:** The foreign interference threshold is between 0 and 100 %. The default is 10 %.
 - Clients:** The client threshold between 1 and 75 clients. The default is 12.
 - Noise:** The foreign noise threshold between –127 dBm and 0dBm. The default is –70 dBm.
 - Utilization Percentage:** The RF utilization threshold between 0 and 100 %. The default is 80 %.
 - Throughput:** The average rate of successful messages delivery over a communication channel. Value ranges from 1000 to 10000000 bps. The default value is 1000000.
 - Under the **Noise/Interference/Rogue/CleanAir/SI Monitoring Channels** section, choose the:
 - Channel List** from the drop-down list:
 - All Channels
 - Country Channels
 - DCA Channels
 - RRM Neighbor Discover Type** from the drop-down list:
 - **Transparent:** Packets are sent as is.
 - **Protected:** Packets are protected.
 - RRM Neighbor Discovery Mode:**
 - **AUTO:** If the NDP mode configured is AUTO, the controller selects On-Channel as the NDP mode. The default is set as AUTO.
 - **OFF-CHANNEL:** If the NDP mode configured is Off-Channel, the controller selects Off-Channel as the NDP mode.
 - Under the **Monitor** section, set:

- **Neighbor Packet Frequency (seconds):** Frequency (in seconds) in which the Neighbor Discovery Packets are sent. The default is 180 seconds.
- **Reporting Interval (seconds):** The default is 180 seconds. Each channel dwell has to be completed within 180 seconds.
- **Neighbor Timeout factor:** Value in seconds used to determine when to prune access points from the neighbor list that have timed out. The default is 20 seconds.

Step 4 Click Apply to save your configuration.

Configuring Neighbor Discovery Type (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm ndp-type {protected transparent} Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rrm ndp-type protected</code> Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rrm ndp-type transparent</code>	Configures the neighbor discovery type. By default, the mode is set to “transparent”. • protected: Sets the neighbor discover type to protected. Packets are encrypted. • transparent: Sets the neighbor discover type to transparent. Packets are sent as is.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RF Groups

This section describes how to configure RF groups through either the GUI or the CLI.



Note When the multiple-country feature is being used, all controllers intended to join the same RF group must be configured with the same set of countries, configured in the same order.

Configuring RF Group Selection Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.
- Step 2** On the **RRM** page, click the relevant band's tab: either **6 GHz Band**, **5 GHz Band**, or **2.4 GHz Band**.
- Step 3** Click the **RF Grouping** tab.
- Step 4** Choose the appropriate **Group Mode** from these options:

- **Automatic**: Sets the 802.11 RF group selection to automatic update mode
- **Leader**: Sets the 802.11 RF group selection to leader mode
- **Off**: Disables the 802.11 RF group selection

Note

When AI Enhanced RRM is enabled on a controller and Cisco Catalyst Center is connected to a wireless network, Cisco Catalyst Center is assigned the group role as a leader. Controllers, managed by Cisco Catalyst Center and enabled with AI Enhanced RRM, are assigned the group role as remote members irrespective of the group mode they were previously assigned. The **Group Role** field will display as **Remote Member** and the **Group leader** field will display the IP address of the Cisco Catalyst Center.

- Step 5** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring RF Group Selection Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm group-mode {auto leader off} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm group-mode leader	Configures RF group selection mode for 802.11 bands. • auto: Sets the 802.11 RF group selection to automatic update mode. • leader: Sets the 802.11 RF group selection to leader mode. • off: Disables the 802.11 RF group selection.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring an RF Group Name (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless rf-network <i>name</i> Example: Device (config)# <code>wireless rf-network test1</code>	Creates an RF group. The group name should be ASCII String up to 19 characters and is case sensitive. Note Repeat this procedure for each controller that you want to include in the RF group.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a Secure RF Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless rf-network secure Example: Device(config)# <code>wireless rf-network secure</code>	Creates a secure RF group.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} group Example: Device# <code>show ap dot11 24ghz group</code>	Displays configuration and statistics of 6-GHz band grouping.

Configuring Members in an 802.11 Static RF Group (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.
- Step 2** On the **RRM** page, click either the **6 GHz Band**, **5 GHz Band** or **2.4 GHz Band** tab.
- Step 3** Click the **RF Grouping** tab.
- Step 4** Choose the appropriate **Group Mode** from the following options:
- **Automatic(default)**: Members of an RF group elect an RF group leader to maintain a primary power and channel scheme for the group. The RF grouping algorithm dynamically chooses the RF group leader and ensures that an RF group leader is always present. Group leader assignments can and do change (for instance, if the current RF group leader becomes inoperable or if RF group members experience major changes).
 - **Leader**: A device as an RF group leader, manually. In this mode, the leader and the members are manually configured and are therefore fixed. If the members are unable to join the RF group, the reason is indicated. The members' management IP addresses and system name are used to request the member to join the leader. The leader tries to establish a connection with a member every 1 minute if the member has not joined in the previous attempt.
 - **Off**: No RF group is configured.
- Step 5** Under **Group Members** section, click **Add**.
- Step 6** In the **Add Static Member** window that is displayed, enter the controller name and the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the controller.
- Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Members in an 802.11 Static RF Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm group-member group_name ip_addr Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm group-member Grpmem01 10.1.1.1	Configures members in a 802.11 static RF group. The group mode should be set as leader for the group member to be active.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Transmit Power Control

Configuring Transmit Power (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
- Step 2** On the **6 GHz Band**, **5 GHz Band**, or **2.4 GHz Band** tab, click the **TPC** tab.
- Step 3** Choose of the following dynamic transmit power assignment modes:
- *Automatic*(default): The transmit power is periodically updated for all APs that permit this operation.
 - *On Demand*: The transmit power is updated on demand. If you choose this option, you get to view the **Invoke Power Update Once**. Click **Invoke Power Update Once** to apply the RRM data successfully.
 - *Fixed*: No dynamic transmit power assignments occur and values are set to their global default.
- Step 4** Enter the maximum and minimum power level assignment on this radio. If you configure maximum transmit power, RRM does not allow any access point attached to the device to exceed this transmit power level (whether the power is set by RRM TPC or by coverage hole detection). For example, if you configure a maximum transmit power of 11 dBm, then no access point would transmit above 11 dBm, unless the access point is configured manually. The range is –10 dBm to 30 dBm.
- Step 5** In the **Power Threshold** field, enter the cutoff signal level used by RRM when determining whether to reduce an access point's power.
- The default value for this parameter varies depending on the TPC version you choose. For TPCv1, the default value is –70 dBm, and for TPCv2, the default value is –67 dBm. The default value can be changed when access points are transmitting at higher (or lower) than desired power levels. The range for this parameter is –80 to –50 dBm.
- Increasing this value (between –65 and –50 dBm) causes the access points to operate at higher transmit power rates. Decreasing the value has the opposite effect. In applications with a dense population of access points, it may be useful to decrease the threshold to –80 or –75 dBm in order to reduce the number of BSSIDs (access points) and beacons seen by the wireless clients. Some wireless clients might have difficulty processing a large number of BSSIDs or a high beacon rate and might exhibit problematic behavior with the default threshold.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring the Tx-Power Control Threshold (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm tpc-threshold threshold_value Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rrm tpc-threshold -60</code>	Configures the Tx-power control threshold used by RRM for auto power assignment. The range is from -80 to -50.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring the Tx-Power Level (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm txpower {trans_power_level auto max min once} Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rrm txpower auto</code>	Configures the 802.11 tx-power level • trans_power_level—Sets the transmit power level. • auto—Enables auto-RF. • max—Configures the maximum auto-RF tx-power. • min—Configures the minimum auto-RF tx-power. • once—Enables one-time auto-RF.
Step 3	ap dot11 6ghz rrm txpower trans_power_level auto Example:	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz tx-power level. • <i>trans_power_level</i>: Sets the transmit power level. Valid values range from 1 to 5.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm txpower auto	• auto: Enables auto-RF. Note The 6-GHz band uses constant-PSD instead of constant-EIRP, which allows the transmission at higher power as channel width increases. The power levels are derived based on the configured channel width. At the higher power levels between 1-3, these power values exceed the limit for legacy rate frames, like beacons. As a result, there is no change in the beacon power for higher levels, unlike the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring 802.11 RRM Parameters

Configuring Advanced 802.11 Channel Assignment Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
- Step 2** In the **DCA** tab, choose a **Channel Assignment Mode** to specify the DCA mode:
- *Automatic*(default)—Causes the device to periodically evaluate and, if necessary, update the channel assignment for all joined APs.
 - *Freeze*—Causes the device to evaluate and update the channel assignment for all joined APs. If you choose this option, you get to view the Invoke Channel Update Once. Click **Invoke Channel Update Once** to apply the RRM data successfully.
 - *Off*—Turns off DCA and sets all AP radios to the first channel of the band, which is the default value. If you choose this option, you must manually assign channels on all radios.
- Step 3** From the **Interval** drop-down list, choose the interval that tells how often the DCA algorithm is allowed to run. The default interval is 10 minutes.
- Step 4** From the **AnchorTime** drop-down list, choose a number to specify the time of day when the DCA algorithm must start. The options are numbers between 0 and 23 (inclusive) representing the hour of the day from 12:00 a.m. to 11:00 p.m.
- Step 5** Check the **Avoid Foreign AP Interference** check box to cause the device's RRM algorithms to consider 802.11 traffic from foreign APs (those not included in your wireless network) when assigning channels to

- lightweight APs, or uncheck it to disable this feature. For example, RRM may adjust the channel assignment to have access points avoid channels close to foreign APs. By default, this feature is in enabled state.
- Step 6** Check the **Avoid Cisco AP Load** check box to cause the device's RRM algorithms to consider 802.11 traffic from Cisco lightweight APs in your wireless network when assigning channels. For example, RRM can assign better reuse patterns to access points that carry a heavier traffic load. By default, this feature is in disabled state.
- Step 7** Check the **Avoid Non-802.11a Noise** check box to cause the device's RRM algorithms to consider noise (non-802.11 traffic) in the channel when assigning channels to lightweight APs. For example, RRM may have APs avoid channels with significant interference from non-AP sources, such as microwave ovens. By default, this feature is in enabled state.
- Step 8** Check the **Avoid Persistent Non-Wi-Fi Interference** check box to enable the device to take into account persistent non-Wi-Fi interference in DCA calculations. A persistent interfering device is any device from the following categories, which has been seen in the past 7 days - Microwave Oven, Video Camera, Canopy, WiMax Mobile, WiMax Fixed, Exalt Bridge. With **Avoid Persistent Non-Wi-Fi Interference** enabled, if a Microwave Oven is detected, that interference from the Microwave Oven is taken into account in the DCA calculations for the next 7 days. After 7 days, if the interfering device is not detected anymore, it is no longer considered in the DCA calculations.
- Step 9** From the **DCA Channel Sensitivity** drop-down list, choose one of the following options to specify how sensitive the DCA algorithm is to environmental changes such as signal, load, noise, and interference when determining whether to change channels:
- *Low*—The DCA algorithm is not particularly sensitive to environmental changes. The DCA threshold is 30 dB.
 - *Medium* (default)—The DCA algorithm is moderately sensitive to environmental changes. The DCA threshold is 15 dB.
 - *High* —The DCA algorithm is highly sensitive to environmental changes. The DCA threshold is 5 dB.
- Step 10** Set the **Channel Width** as required. You can choose the RF channel width as 20 MHz, 40 MHz, 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or Best. This is applicable only for 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) radio.
- Step 11** The **Auto-RF Channel List** section shows the channels that are currently selected. To choose a channel, check the corresponding check box.
- Note**
If you disable the serving radio channel of the root AP from the **Auto-RF Channel List**, you will not be able to view the neighboring APs in the root APs.
- Step 12** In the **Event Driven RRM** section, check the **EDRRM** check box to run RRM when CleanAir-enabled AP detects a significant level of interference. If enabled, set the sensitivity threshold level at which the RRM is invoked, enter the custom threshold, and check the **Rogue Contribution** check box to enter the rogue duty-cycle.
- Step 13** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring Advanced 802.11 Channel Assignment Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity {high low medium} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity high	Configures CleanAir event-driven RRM parameters. • High—Specifies the most sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the air quality (AQ) value. • Low—Specifies the least sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value. • Medium—Specifies medium sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.
Step 3	ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca {anchor-time 0-23 global auto interval 0-24 sensitivity {high low medium}} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca interval 2	Configures 802.11 6GHz dynamic channel assignment algorithm parameters. • anchor-time—Configures the anchor time for the DCA. The range is between 0 and 23 hours. • global—Configures the DCA mode for all 802.11 Cisco APs. • auto—Enables auto-RF. • interval—Configures the DCA interval value. The values are 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 12 and 24 hours and the default value 0 denotes 10 minutes. • sensitivity—Configures the DCA sensitivity level to changes in the environment. • high—Specifies the most sensitivity. • low—Specifies the least sensitivity. • medium—Specifies medium sensitivity.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width {20 40 80 best} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width best</pre>	Configures the DCA channel bandwidth for all 802.11 radios in the 5-GHz band. Sets the channel bandwidth to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz; 20 MHz is the default value for channel bandwidth. 80 MHz is the default value for best. Set the channel bandwidth to best before configuring the constraints.
Step 5	ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width width-max {WIDTH_20MHz WIDTH_40MHz WIDTH_80MHz WIDTH_MAX} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel dca chan-width width-max WIDTH_80MHz</pre>	Configures the maximum channel bandwidth that can be assigned to a channel. In this example, <i>WIDTH_80MHz</i> assigns the channel bandwidth to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz but not greater than that.
Step 6	ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca chan-width width-max {WIDTH_20MHz WIDTH_40MHz WIDTH_80MHz WIDTH_MAX} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca chan-width width-max WIDTH_80MHz</pre>	Configures the maximum channel bandwidth that can be assigned to a channel. In this example, <i>WIDTH_80MHz</i> assigns the channel bandwidth to 20 MHz, 40 MHz, or 80 MHz but not greater than that.
Step 7	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel device Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel device</pre>	Configures the persistent non-Wi-Fi device avoidance in the 802.11 channel assignment.
Step 8	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel foreign Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel foreign</pre>	Configures the foreign AP 802.11 interference avoidance in the channel assignment.
Step 9	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel load Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel load</pre>	Configures the Cisco AP 802.11 load avoidance in the channel assignment.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel noise Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel noise</pre>	Configures the 802.11 noise avoidance in the channel assignment.
Step 11	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM** to configure Radio Resource Management parameters for 802.11ax (6-GHz), 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4-GHz) radios.
- Step 2** On the **Radio Resource Management** page, click **Coverage** tab.
- Step 3** To enable coverage hole detection, check the **Enable Coverage Hole Detection** check box.
- Step 4** In the **Data Packet Count** field, enter the number of data packets.
- Step 5** In the **Data Packet Percentage** field, enter the percentage of data packets.
- Step 6** In the **Data RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. Value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is -80 dBm.
- Step 7** In the **Voice Packet Count** field, enter the number of voice data packets.
- Step 8** In the **Voice Packet Percentage** field, enter the percentage of voice data packets.
- Step 9** In the **Voice RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. Value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is -80 dBm.
- Step 10** In the **Minimum Failed Client per AP** field, enter the minimum number of clients on an AP with a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) below the coverage threshold. Value ranges from 1 to 75 and the default value is 3.
- Step 11** In the **Percent Coverage Exception Level per AP** field, enter the maximum desired percentage of clients on an access point's radio operating below the desired coverage threshold and click **Apply**. Value ranges from 0 to 100% and the default value is 25%.
-

Configuring 802.11 Coverage Hole Detection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm coverage data {fail-percentage packet-count rssi-threshold} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage data fail-percentage 60</pre>	Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for data packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink data packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink data packets that ranges from 1 to 255. • rssi-threshold: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for data packets that range from -90 to -60 dBm.
Step 3	ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage data {fail-percentage <i>fail-percentage-value</i> packet-count <i>packet-count-value</i>} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage data fail-percentage 60</pre>	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage hole detection for data packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink data packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink data packets that ranges from 1 to 255.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage exception global <i>exception level</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage exception global 50</pre>	Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP coverage exception level as a percentage that ranges from 0 to 100%.
Step 5	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage level global <i>cli_min exception level</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage level global 10</pre>	Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP client minimum exception level that ranges from 1 to 75 clients.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm coverage voice {fail-percentage packet-count rssi-threshold}	Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for voice packets.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage voice packet-count 10</pre>	• fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink voice packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink voice packets that ranges from 1 to 255. • rssi-threshold: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for voice packets that range from -90 to -60 dBm.
Step 7	<pre>ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage voice {fail-percentage fail-percentage-value packet-count packet-count-value}</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage voice packet-count 10</pre>	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage hole detection for voice packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink voice packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink voice packets that ranges from 1 to 255.
Step 8	<pre>end</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring 802.11 Event Logging (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<pre>configure terminal</pre> Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<pre>ap dot11 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz rrm logging {channel coverage foreign load noise performance txpower}</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging channel</pre>	Configures event-logging for various parameters. • channel—Configures the 802.11 channel change logging mode. • coverage—Configures the 802.11 coverage profile logging mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging coverage</pre> <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging foreign</pre> <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging load</pre> <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging noise</pre> <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging performance</pre> <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm logging txpower</pre>	• foreign—Configures the 802.11 foreign interference profile logging mode. • load—Configures the 802.11 load profile logging mode. • noise—Configures the 802.11 noise profile logging mode. • performance—Configures the 802.11 performance profile logging mode. • txpower—Configures the 802.11 transmit power change logging mode.
Step 3	<pre>end</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM** to configure Radio Resource Management parameters for 802.11ax (6-GHz), 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) radios.
- Step 2** In the **Monitor Intervals(60 to 3600secs)** section, proceed as follows:
- To configure the 802.11 noise measurement interval (channel scan interval), set the **AP Noise Interval**. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds.
 - To configure the 802.11 signal measurement interval (neighbor packet frequency), set the **AP Signal Strength Interval**. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds.
 - To configure the 802.11 coverage measurement interval, set the **AP Coverage Interval**. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds.
 - To configure the 802.11 load measurement, set the **AP Load Interval**. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds.
- Step 3** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring 802.11 Statistics Monitoring (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor channel-list {all country dca} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor channel-list all	Sets the 802.11 monitoring channel-list for parameters such as noise/interference/rogue. • all: Monitors all channels. • country: Monitor channels used in configured country code. • dca: Monitor channels used by dynamic channel assignment.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor coverage <i>interval</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor coverage 600	Configures the 802.11 coverage measurement interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor load <i>interval</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor load 180	Configures the 802.11 load measurement interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600.
Step 5	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor measurement <i>interval</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor measurement 360	Configures the 802.11 measurement interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor neighbor-timeout-factor <i>interval</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor neighbor-timeout-factor 50	Configures the 802.11 neighbor timeout-factor in seconds that ranges from 5 to 60.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor reporting interval Example: Device(config) # ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor reporting 480	Configures the 802.11 reporting interval in seconds that ranges from 60 to 3600.
Step 8	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor rssi-normalization Example: Device(config) # ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor rssi-normalization	Configures the 802.11 RRM Neighbor Discovery RSSI normalization.

Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** On the **AP Join** page, click the name of the profile or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 3** In the **Add/Edit RF Profile** window, click the **RRM** tab.
- Step 4** In the **General** tab that is displayed, enter the following parameters:
- In the **Interference (%)** field, enter the threshold value for 802.11 foreign interference that ranges between 0 and 100 percent.
 - In the **Clients** field, enter the threshold value for 802.11 Cisco AP clients that range between 1 and 75 clients.
 - In the **Noise (dBm)** field, enter the threshold value for 802.11 foreign noise ranges between -127 and 0 dBm.
 - In the **Utilization(%)** field, enter the threshold value for 802.11 RF utilization that ranges between 0 to 100 percent.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring the 802.11 Performance Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm profile clients <i>cli_threshold_value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile clients 20	Sets the threshold value for 802.11 Cisco AP clients that range between 1 and 75 clients.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm profile foreign <i>int_threshold_value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile foreign 50	Sets the threshold value for 802.11 foreign interference that ranges between 0 and 100%.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm profile noise <i>for_noise_threshold_value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile noise -65	Sets the threshold value for 802.11 foreign noise ranges between -127 and 0 dBm.
Step 5	ap dot11 6ghz rrm profile customize Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm profile customize	Enables performance profiles.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm profile throughput <i>throughput_threshold_value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile throughput 10000	Sets the threshold value for 802.11 Cisco AP throughput that ranges between 1000 and 10000000 bytes per second.
Step 7	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm profile utilization <i>rf_util_threshold_value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm profile utilization 75	Sets the threshold value for 802.11 RF utilization that ranges between 0 to 100%.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Advanced 802.11 RRM

Enabling Channel Assignment (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM**.
- Step 2** In the **RRM** page, click the relevant band's tab: either **6 GHz Band**, **5 GHz Band** or **2.4 GHz Band**.
- Step 3** Click the **DCA** tab
- Step 4** In the **Dynamic Channel Assignment Algorithm** section, choose the appropriate **Channel Assignment Mode** from these options:
- **Automatic**: Sets the channel assignment to automatic.
 - **Freeze**: Locks the channel assignment. Click **Invoke Channel Update Once** to refresh the assigned channels.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling Channel Assignment (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel-update Example: Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel-update	Enables the 802.11 channel selection update for each of the Cisco access points. Note After you enable ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel-update , a token is assigned for channel assignment in the DCA algorithm.

Restarting DCA Operation

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm dca restart Example: Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm dca restart	Restarts the DCA cycle for 802.11 radio.

Updating Power Assignment Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** On the **Access Points** page, click the AP name from the 5GHz or 2.4 GHz list.
- Step 3** In the **Edit Radios > Configure > Tx Power Level Assignment** section, choose **Custom** from the **Assignment Method** group-down list.
- Step 4** Choose the value for **Transmit Power** from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Updating Power Assignment Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm txpower update Example: Device# ap dot11 24ghz rrm txpower update	Initiates the update of the 802.11 6-Ghz transmit power for every Cisco AP.

Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups

Configuring Rogue Access Point Detection in RF Groups (CLI)

Before you begin

Ensure that each controller in the RF group has been configured with the same RF group name.



Note The name is used to verify the authentication IE in all beacon frames. If the controller have different names, false alarms will occur.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>Cisco_AP</i> mode { monitor clear sensor sniffer } Example: Device# ap name ap1 mode clear	Perform this step for every access point connected to the controller . Configures the following AP modes of operation: • monitor: Sets the AP mode to monitor mode. • clear: Resets AP mode to local or remote based on the site. • sensor: Sets the AP mode to sensor mode. • sniffer: Sets the AP mode to wireless sniffer mode.
Step 2	end Example: Device (config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 3	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 4	wireless wps ap-authentication Example: Device (config) # wireless wps ap-authentication	Enables rogue access point detection.
Step 5	wireless wps ap-authentication threshold <i>value</i> Example:	Specifies when a rogue access point alarm is generated. An alarm occurs when the threshold value (which specifies the number of access

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device (config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 50</pre>	point frames with an invalid authentication IE) is met or exceeded within the detection period. The valid threshold range is from 1 to 255, and the default threshold value is 1. To avoid false alarms, you may want to set the threshold to a higher value. Note Enable rogue access point detection and threshold value on every controller in the RF group. Note If rogue access point detection is not enabled on every controller in the RF group, the access points on the controller with this feature disabled are reported as rogues.

Monitoring RRM Parameters and RF Group Status

Monitoring RRM Parameters

Table 33: Commands for monitoring Radio Resource Management

Commands	Description
show ap dot11 24ghz channel	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b channel assignment.
show ap dot11 24ghz coverage	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b coverage.
show ap dot11 24ghz group	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b grouping.
show ap dot11 24ghz logging	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b event logging.
show ap dot11 24ghz monitor	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b monitoring.
show ap dot11 24ghz profile	Displays 802.11b profiling information for all Cisco APs.
show ap dot11 24ghz summary	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b Cisco APs.
show ap dot11 24ghz txpower	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11b transmit power control.
show ap dot11 5ghz channel	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a channel assignment.
show ap dot11 5ghz coverage	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a coverage.
show ap dot11 5ghz group	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a grouping.

Commands	Description
show ap dot11 5ghz logging	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a event logging.
show ap dot11 5ghz monitor	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a monitoring.
show ap dot11 5ghz profile	Displays 802.11a profiling information for all Cisco APs.
show ap dot11 5ghz summary	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a Cisco APs.
show ap dot11 5ghz txpower	Displays the configuration and statistics of the 802.11a transmit power control.

Verifying RF Group Status (CLI)

This section describes the new commands for RF group status.

The following commands can be used to verify RF group status on the .

Table 34: Verifying Aggressive Load Balancing Command

Command	Purpose
show ap dot11 5ghz group	Displays the controller name which is the RF group leader for the 802.11a RF network.
show ap dot11 24ghz group	Displays the controller name which is the RF group leader for the 802.11b/g RF network.
show ap dot11 6ghz group	Displays the controller name which is the RF group leader for the 802.11 6-GHz RF network.

To display the controller as a remote member and part of the AI Enhanced RRM, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz group
```

```
Radio RF Grouping
```

```
RF Group Name : Open-RRM
RF Protocol Version(MIN) : 100(30)
RF Packet Header Version : 2
802.11b Group Mode : AUTO
802.11b Group Role : Remote-Member
802.11b Group Update Interval : 600 seconds
802.11b Group Leader : 172.19.30.39 (172.19.30.39)
Secure-RRM : Disabled
```

```
RF Group Members
```

```
Controller name Controller IP Controller IPv6 DTLS status
```

```
-----
evwlc-188          192.1.0.188      N/A
```


Examples: RF Group Configuration

This example shows how to configure RF group name:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless rf-network test1
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# end
Device # show network profile 5
```

This example shows how to configure rogue access point detection in RF groups:

```
Device# ap name ap1 mode clear
Device# end
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication
Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 50
Device(config)# end
```

Information About ED-RRM

Spontaneous interference is interference that appears suddenly on a network, perhaps jamming a channel or a range of channels completely. The Cisco CleanAir spectrum event-driven RRM feature allows you to set a threshold for air quality (AQ) that, if exceeded, triggers an immediate channel change for the affected access point. Once a channel change occurs due to event-driven RRM, the channel is blocked list for three hours to avoid selection. Most RF management systems can avoid interference, but this information takes time to propagate through the system. Cisco CleanAir relies on AQ measurements to continuously evaluate the spectrum and can trigger a move within 30 seconds. For example, if an access point detects interference from a video camera, it can recover by changing channels within 30 seconds of the camera becoming active.

Configuring ED-RRM on the Cisco Wireless Controller (CLI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Trigger spectrum event-driven radio resource management (RRM) to run when a Cisco CleanAir-enabled access point detects a significant level of interference by entering these commands:
- ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event** —Configures CleanAir driven RRM parameters for the 802.11 Cisco lightweight access points.
- ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity {low | medium | high | custom}**—Configures CleanAir driven RRM sensitivity for the 802.11 Cisco lightweight access points. Default selection is Medium.
- ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event custom-threshold *custom-threshold-value***—Triggers the ED-RRM event at the set threshold value. The custom threshold values range from 1 to 99.
- ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event rogue-contribution**—Enables rogue contribution.

ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event rogue-contribution duty-cycle thresholdvalue—Configures threshold value for rogue contribution. The valid range is from 1 to 99, with 80 as the default.

Step 2 Save your changes by entering this command:

write memory

Step 3 See the CleanAir configuration for the 802.11a/n/ac or 802.11b/g/n network by entering this command:

show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz} cleanair config

Information similar to the following appears:

```
CleanAir Solution..... : Enabled
Air Quality Settings:
Air Quality Reporting..... : Enabled
Air Quality Reporting Period (min)..... : 15
Air Quality Alarms..... : Disabled
Air Quality Alarm Threshold..... : 10
Unclassified Interference..... : Disabled
Unclassified Severity Threshold..... : 35
Interference Device Settings:
Interference Device Reporting..... : Enabled
BLE Beacon..... : Enabled
Bluetooth Link..... : Enabled
Microwave Oven..... : Enabled
802.11 FH..... : Enabled
Bluetooth Discovery..... : Enabled
TDD Transmitter..... : Enabled
Jammer..... : Enabled
Continuous Transmitter..... : Enabled
DECT-like Phone..... : Enabled
Video Camera..... : Enabled
802.15.4..... : Enabled
WiFi Inverted..... : Enabled
WiFi Invalid Channel..... : Enabled
SuperAG..... : Enabled
Canopy..... : Enabled
Microsoft Device..... : Enabled
WiMax Mobile..... : Enabled
WiMax Fixed..... : Enabled
Interference Device Types Triggering Alarms:
BLE Beacon..... : Disabled
Bluetooth Link..... : Disabled
Microwave Oven..... : Disabled
802.11 FH..... : Disabled
Bluetooth Discovery..... : Disabled
TDD Transmitter..... : Disabled
Jammer..... : Disabled
Continuous Transmitter..... : Disabled
DECT-like Phone..... : Disabled
Video Camera..... : Disabled
802.15.4..... : Disabled
WiFi Inverted..... : Enabled
WiFi Invalid Channel..... : Enabled
SuperAG..... : Disabled
Canopy..... : Disabled
Microsoft Device..... : Disabled
WiMax Mobile..... : Disabled
WiMax Fixed..... : Disabled
Interference Device Alarms..... : Disabled
AdditionalClean Air Settings:
```

```

CleanAir Event-driven RRM State..... : Disabled
CleanAir Driven RRM Sensitivity..... : LOW
CleanAir Driven RRM Sensitivity Level..... : 35
CleanAir Event-driven RRM Rogue Option..... : Disabled
CleanAir Event-driven RRM Rogue Duty Cycle... : 80
CleanAir Persistent Devices state..... : Disabled
CleanAir Persistent Device Propagation..... : Disabled

```

Information About Rogue PMF Containment

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, the controller will contain a rogue AP with 802.11w Protected Management Frame (PMF) on centrally switched WLANs if the client-serving radio channel of a rogue-detecting AP matches the channel of the corresponding rogue AP.

PMF Containment is performed in the following scenarios:

- PMF containment is supported only in the local mode.
- PMF containment is done only for rogue clients that have not joined a rogue AP.
- PMF containment is done only if a rogue-detecting AP shares the same primary channel with a rogue client.
- PMF containment is not done on DFS channels even if a DFS channel is being used as a client-serving channel.
- PMF containment is effective only if there is at least one functioning WLAN on the serving radio where the containment is being performed.

For information about APs that support the Rogue PMF Containment feature, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html

Enabling Rogue PMF Containment

Follow this procedure to configure PMF containment on a per site basis.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	rogue detection containment pmf-denial Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# rogue detection containment pmf-denial	Enables PMF-denial rogue AP containment.
Step 4	pmf-deauth Example: Device(config-pmf-denial)# pmf-deauth	Enables PMF-denial type deauthentication rogue AP containment.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying PMF Containment

To verify PMF containment and the relevant statistics, use the following commands.

To view the containment details summary for all the AP radios, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue containment summary
```

Rogue Containment activities for each managed AP

```
AP: 687d.b45f.2ae0 Slot: 1
  Active Containments   : 3
  Containment Mode      : DEAUTH_PMF
  Rogue AP MAC          : 687d.b45f.2a2d
  Containment Channels  : 40
```

To verify the rogue statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue stats
.
.
.
States
Alert                : 256
Internal              : 0
External              : 0
Contained             : 1
Containment-pending  : 0
Threat                : 0
Pending               : 0
Rogue Clients
Total/Max Scale       : 20/16000
Contained              : 0
Containment-pending   : 0
.
.
.
```

Information About Rogue Channel Width

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, you can specify the channel width and the band for rogue detection. The newly introduced **condition chan-width** command allows you to set the minimum or maximum channel width for rogue detection. Only the rogue APs matching the channel width criteria and band are selected for rogue detection.

Configuring Rogue Channel Width (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps rogue rule <i>rule-name</i> priority <i>priority</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule 1 priority 1	Creates or enables a rule.
Step 3	condition chan-width {160MHz 20MHz 40MHz 80MHz} band {2.4GHz 5GHz 6GHz} Example: Device(config-rule)# condition chan-width 20MHz band 5GHz	Configures channel width and band for rogue detection. If the classification is Friendly , this is the minimum channel width. If the classification is Custom , Malicious , or Delete , this is the maximum channel width.
Step 4	Use either Step 4 > 5 > 6 > 7	Note Use only one of the Steps: 4, 5, 6 or 7 as required to classify rogue devices. Do not use all of them.
Step 5	classify friendly state {alert external internal } Example: Device(config-rule)# classify friendly state internal	(Optional) Classifies devices matching this rule as friendly. • alert: Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode. • external: Acknowledges the presence of a rogue access point. • internal: Trusts a foreign access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	classify malicious state {alert contained } Example: <pre>Device(config-rule)# classify malicious state alert</pre>	(Optional) Classifies devices matching this rule as malicious. • alert: Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode. • contained: Contains the rogue access point.
Step 7	classify custom severity-score severity-score [name name] state {alert contained } Example: <pre>Device(config-rule)# classify custom severity-score 12 name rule1 state alert</pre>	(Optional) Classifies devices matching this rule as custom. • severity-score : Custom classification severity score. Valid values range from 1 to 100. • name: Defines the name for custom classification. • name : Custom classification name. • state: Defines the final state if rule is matched. • alert: Sets the rogue access point to alert mode. • contained: Contains the rogue access point.
Step 8	classify delete Example: <pre>Device(config-rule)# classify delete</pre>	Ignores the devices matching this rule.
Step 9	end Example: <pre>Device(config-rule)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Rogue AP Rules** to open the **Rogue Rules** window.
- Rules that have already been created are listed in priority order. The name, type, status, state, match, and hit count of each rule is provided.

Note

To delete a rule, select the rule and click **Delete**.

Step 2

Create a new rule as follows:

- a) Click **Add**.
- b) In the **Add Rogue AP Rule** window that is displayed, enter a name for the new rule, in the **Rule Name** field. Ensure that the name does not contain any spaces.
- c) From the **Rule Type** drop-down list, choose one of the following options to classify rogue access points matching this rule:
 - **Friendly**
 - **Malicious**
 - **Unclassified**
 - **Custom**
- d) Configure the state of the rogue AP from the **State** drop-down list. This is the state when the rule matches the conditions for the rogue APs.
 - **Alert**: A trap is generated when an ad hoc rogue is detected.
 - **Internal**: A foreign ad hoc rogue is trusted.
 - **External**: The presence of an ad hoc rogue is acknowledged.
 - **Contain**: The ad hoc rogue is contained.
 - **Delete**: The ad hoc rogue is removed.

Note

The **State** field is not displayed if you select **Unclassified** as the **Rule Type**.

- e) If you chose the **Rule Type** as **Custom**, enter the **Severity Score** and the **Custom Name**.
- f) Click **Apply to Device** to add this rule to the list of existing rules, or click **Cancel** to discard this new rule.

Step 3

(Optional) Edit a rule as follows:

- a) Click the name of the rule that you want to edit.
- b) In the **Edit Rogue AP Rule** page that is displayed, from the **Type** drop-down list, choose one of the following options to classify rogue access points matching this rule:
 - **Friendly**
 - **Malicious**
 - **Custom**
- c) Configure the notification from the **Notify** drop-down list to **All**, **Global**, **Local**, or **None** after the rule is matched.
- d) Configure the state of the rogue AP from the **State** drop-down list after the rule is matched.
- e) From the **Match Operation** field, choose one of the following:

- **Match All:** The detected rogue access point must meet all of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue access point to adopt the classification type of the rule.
 - **Match Any:** The detected rogue access point must meet any of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue access point to adopt the classification type of the rule. This is the default value.
- f) To enable this rule, check the **Enable Rule** check box. The default is unchecked.
- g) If you chose the **Rule Type** as **Custom**, enter the **Severity Score** and the **Classification Name**.
- h) From the **Add Condition** drop-down list, choose one or more of the following conditions that the rogue access point must meet :
- **None:** No condition is set for rogue access point detection.
 - **client-count:** Condition requires that a minimum number of clients be associated to the rogue access point. For example, if the number of clients associated to the rogue access point is greater than or equal to the configured value, then the access point can be classified as malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum number of clients to be associated with the rogue access point in the **Minimum Number of Rogue Clients** field. The valid range is 1 to 10 (inclusive), and the default value is 0.
 - **duration:** Condition requires that the rogue access point be detected for a minimum period of time. If you choose this option, enter a value for the minimum detection period in the **Time Duration** field. The valid range is 0 to 86400 seconds (inclusive), and the default value is 0 seconds.
 - **encryption:** Condition requires that the advertised WLAN have specified encryption. Requires that the rogue access point's advertised WLAN does not have encryption enabled. If a rogue access point has encryption disabled, it is likely that more clients will try to associate with it. No further configuration is required for this option.
 - **infrastructure:** Condition requires that the rogue access point's SSID (the SSID configured for the WLAN) be known to the controller. Select the **Manage SSID** check box to enable this configuration.
 - **rssi:** Condition requires that the rogue access point have a minimum received signal strength indication (RSSI) value. For example, if the rogue access point has an RSSI that is greater than the configured value, then the access point could be classified as malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum RSSI value in the **Maximum RSSI** field. The valid range is 0 to -128 dBm (inclusive).
 - **channel-width:** Condition requires that the rogue access point use the specified radio spectrum channel width for the specified radio band, as defined below. The valid channel widths are 20, 40, 80, and 160MHz.
 - For APs to be classified as **Malicious**, **Custom** or **Delete**, it must match the value (equal or more) set in the **Minimum Channel Width** drop-down list.
 - For APs to be classified as **Friendly**, it must match the value (equal or less) set using an option from the **Maximum Channel Width** drop-down list.
 - **ssid:** Condition requires that the rogue access point have a specific user-configured SSID. If you choose this option, enter the SSID in the **User Configured SSID** text field, and click + to add the SSID.
 - **substring-ssid:** Condition requires that the rogue access point have a substring of the specific user-configured SSID. The controller searches the substring in the same occurrence pattern and returns a match if the substring is found in the SSID string.

Step 4 Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

Step 5 Click **OK**.

Verifying Rogue Channel Width

To view channel width and band information of a classification rule, use the following commands.



Note When the same BSSID is beaconing on multiple bands (2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, 6 GHz), the **show wireless wps rogue ap summary** command output displays information for the band with the highest RSSI.

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue rule detailed 1
```

```
Priority                : 1
Rule Name              : 1
Status                 : Enabled
Type                   : Friendly
State                  : Alert
Match Operation        : Any
Notification           : Enabled
Hit Count              : 117
Condition :
  type                 : chan-width
  Max value (MHz)      : 40
  Band (GHz)           : 5GHz
```

```
Device# wireless wps rogue ap summary
```

```
.
.
.
```

MAC Address	Classification	State	#APs	#Clients	Last Heard
Highest-RSSI-Det-AP	RSSI	Channel	Ch.Width	GHz	
002c.c849.9f00	Unclassified	Alert	2	0	10/18/2022 16:50:18 0cd0.f895.efc0
-31	11	20	2.4		
0062.ecf3.e73f	Unclassified	Alert	1	0	10/18/2022 16:50:16 0cd0.f895.efc0
-46	36	80	5		
4ca6.4d22.cbaf	Unclassified	Alert	3	0	10/18/2022 16:50:46 0cd0.f895.efc0
-62	36	160	5		



CHAPTER 29

Coverage Hole Detection

- [Coverage Hole Detection and Correction, on page 425](#)

Coverage Hole Detection and Correction

The RRM coverage hole detection algorithm can detect areas of radio coverage in a wireless LAN that are below the level needed for robust radio performance. This feature can alert you to the need for an additional (or relocated) lightweight access point.

If clients on a lightweight access point are detected at threshold levels (RSSI, failed client count, percentage of failed packets, and number of failed packets) lower than those specified in the RRM configuration, the access point sends a “coverage hole” alert to the device. The alert indicates the existence of an area where clients are continually experiencing poor signal coverage, without having a viable access point to which to roam. The device discriminates between coverage holes that can and cannot be corrected. For coverage holes that can be corrected, the device mitigates the coverage hole by increasing the transmit power level for that specific access point. The device does not mitigate coverage holes caused by clients that are unable to increase their transmit power or are statically set to a power level because increasing their downstream transmit power might increase interference in the network.

Configuring Coverage Hole Detection (GUI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure client accounting.

Procedure

Step 1 Click **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.

On this page, you can configure Radio Resource Management parameters for 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) radios, and flexible radio assignment parameters.

Step 2 Check the **Enable Coverage Hole Detection** check box.

Enables coverage hole detection.

Configuring Coverage Hole Detection (CLI)

Coverage Hole Detection (CHD) is based on upstream RSSI metrics observed by the AP.



Note To revert back radios from 5-GHz to 24-GHz for CHD, ensure that the 5-GHz radio is UP and Client Network Preference value is other than the default.

Follow the procedure given below to configure CHD:

Before you begin

Disable the 802.11 network before applying the configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage	Configures the 802.11 coverage level for data packets. Use the no form of the command to disable CHD.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage data {fail-percentage packet-count rssi-threshold} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage data fail-percentage 60	Configures the 802.11 coverage level for data packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink data packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink data packets that ranges from 1 to 255. • rssi-threshold: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for data packets that range from -90 to -60 dBm.
Step 3	ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage data {fail-percentage fail-percentage-value packet-count packet-count-value} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage data fail-percentage 60	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage hole detection for data packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink data packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage minimum failure count

	Command or Action	Purpose
		threshold for uplink data packets that ranges from 1 to 255.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage exception global <i>exception level</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage exception global 50</pre>	Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP coverage exception level as a percentage that ranges from 0 to 100%.
Step 5	ap dot11{24ghz 5ghz}rrm coverage level global <i>cli_min exception level</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage level global 10</pre>	Configures the 802.11 Cisco AP client minimum exception level that ranges from 1 to 75 clients.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm coverage voice {fail-percentage packet-count rssi-threshold} Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm coverage voice packet-count 10</pre>	Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for voice packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink voice packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink voice packets that ranges from 1 to 255. • rssi-threshold: Configures the 802.11 minimum receive coverage level for voice packets that range from –90 to –60 dBm.
Step 7	ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage voice {fail-percentage <i>fail-percentage-value</i> packet-count <i>packet-count-value</i>} Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm coverage voice packet-count 10</pre>	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage hole detection for voice packets. • fail-percentage: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage failure-rate threshold for uplink voice packets as a percentage that ranges from 1 to 100%. • packet-count: Configures the 802.11 6-GHz coverage minimum failure count threshold for uplink voice packets that ranges from 1 to 255.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	end Example: Device (config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 9	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} coverage Example: Device# show ap dot11 5ghz coverage	Displays the CHD details.



Note If both the number and percentage of failed packets exceed the values entered in the **packet-count** and **fail-rate** commands for a 5-second period, the client is considered to be in a pre-alarm condition. The controller uses this information to distinguish between real and false coverage holes. False positives are generally due to the poor roaming logic implemented on most clients. A coverage hole is detected if both the number and percentage of failed clients meet or exceed the values entered in the **coverage level global** and **coverage exception global** commands over a 90-second period. The controller determines if the coverage hole can be corrected and, if appropriate, mitigates the coverage hole by increasing the transmit power level for that specific access point.

Configuring CHD for RF Tag Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
- Step 2** On the **Coverage** tab, select the **Enable Coverage Hole Detection** check box.
- Step 3** In the **Data Packet Count** field, enter the number of data packets.
- Step 4** In the **Data Packet Percentage** field, enter the percentage of data packets.
- Step 5** In the **Data RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. Value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is -80 dBm.
- Step 6** In the **Voice Packet Count** field, enter the number of voice data packets.
- Step 7** In the **Voice Packet Percentage** field, enter the percentage of voice data packets.
- Step 8** In the **Voice RSSI Threshold** field, enter the actual value in dBm. Value ranges from -60 dBm to -90 dBm; the default value is -80 dBm.
- Step 9** In the **Minimum Failed Client per AP** field, enter the minimum number of clients on an AP with a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) below the coverage threshold. Value ranges from 1 to 75 and the default value is 3.
- Step 10** In the **Percent Coverage Exception Level per AP** field, enter the maximum desired percentage of clients on an access point's radio operating below the desired coverage threshold and click **Apply**. Value ranges from 0 to 100% and the default value is 25%.
- Step 11** Click **Apply**.

Configuring CHD for RF Profile (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure Coverage Hole Detection (CHD) for RF profile.

Before you begin

Ensure that the RF profile is already created.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rf-profile <i>rf-profile-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile alpha-rfprofile-24ghz</code>	Configures the 802.11 coverage hole detection for data packets.
Step 3	coverage data rssi threshold <i>threshold-value</i> Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# <code>coverage data rssi threshold -80</code>	Configures the minimum RSSI value for data packets received by the access point. Valid values range from -90 to -60 in dBm.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile summary Example: Device# <code>show ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile summary</code>	Displays summary of the available RF profiles.



CHAPTER 30

Optimized Roaming

- [Optimized Roaming, on page 431](#)
- [Restrictions for Optimized Roaming, on page 432](#)
- [Configuring Optimized Roaming \(GUI\), on page 432](#)
- [Configuring Optimized Roaming \(CLI\), on page 432](#)

Optimized Roaming

Optimized roaming resolves the problem of sticky clients that remain associated to access points that are far away and outbound clients that attempt to connect to a Wi-Fi network without having a stable connection. This feature disassociates clients based on the RSSI of the client data packets and data rate. The client is disassociated if the RSSI alarm condition is met and the current data rate of the client is lower than the optimized roaming data rate threshold. You can disable the data rate option so that only RSSI is used for disassociating clients.

Optimized roaming also prevents client association when the client's RSSI is low. This feature checks the RSSI of the incoming client against the RSSI threshold, which is configured in the same place as the Coverage Hole Detection. This check prevents the clients from connecting to a Wi-Fi network unless the client has a viable connection. In many scenarios, even though clients can hear beacons and connect to a Wi-Fi network, the signal might not be strong enough to support a stable connection.

You can also configure the client coverage reporting interval for a radio by using optimized roaming. The client coverage statistics include data packet RSSIs, Coverage Hole Detection and Mitigation (CHDM) pre-alarm failures, retransmission requests, and current data rates.

Optimized roaming is useful in the following scenarios:

- Addresses the sticky client challenge by proactively disconnecting clients.
- Actively monitors data RSSI packets.
- Disassociates client when the RSSI is lower than the set threshold.

This section contains the following subsections:

Restrictions for Optimized Roaming

- When basic service set (BSS) transition is sent to 802.11v-capable clients, and if the clients are not transitioned to other BSS before the disconnect timer expires, the corresponding client is disconnected forcefully. BSS transition is enabled by default for 802.11v-capable clients.
- The Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller increments the 802.11v smart roam failed counter while disconnecting the client due to optimized roaming.
- We recommend that you do not use the optimized roaming feature with RSSI low check.

Configuring Optimized Roaming (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Advanced**.
- Step 2** On the **Advanced** page, click the relevant band's tab: either **5 GHz Band** or **2.4 GHz Band**.
- Step 3** Check the **Optimized Roaming Mode** check box to enable the feature.
- Step 4** Choose the required **Optimized Roaming Data Rate Threshold**. The threshold value options are different for 802.11a and 802.11b networks.
- Optimized roaming disassociates clients based on the RSSI of the client data packet and data rate. The client is disassociated if the current data rate of the client is lower than the Optimized Roaming Data Rate Threshold.
- Step 5** Click **Apply** to save the configuration.
-

Configuring Optimized Roaming (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm optimized-roam Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm optimized-roam	Configures 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11 6-GHz optimized roaming. By default, optimized roaming is disabled.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor optimized-roam data-rate-threshold {1M 2M 5_5M 6M 9M 11M 12M 18M 24M 36M 48M 54M disable} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm monitor optimized-roam 18M</pre>	Configure the data rate threshold for 802.11b for optimized roaming.
Step 4	ap dot11 {5ghz 6ghz} rrm monitor optimized-roam data-rate-threshold {6M 9M 12M 18M 24M 36M 48M 54M disable} Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 6ghz rrm monitor optimized-roam 18M</pre>	Configure the data rate threshold for 802.11a or 802.11 6-GHz optimized roaming.
Step 5	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} optimized-roaming statistics Example: <pre>Device#show ap dot11 24ghz optimized-roaming statistics</pre>	Displays the 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11 6-GHz optimized roaming configurations.



CHAPTER 31

Cisco Flexible Radio Assignment

- [Information About Flexible Radio Assignment, on page 435](#)
- [Configuring an FRA Radio \(GUI\), on page 436](#)
- [Enabling FRA \(CLI\), on page 438](#)
- [Configuring Client FRA in RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 440](#)
- [Verifying FRA XOR 5-GHz and 6-GHz Details, on page 440](#)
- [Flexible Radio Assignment \(FRA\) Action, on page 441](#)

Information About Flexible Radio Assignment

Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) takes advantage of Cisco FRA-capable APs whose radio hardware can operate in multiple roles. The following are the AP models and types of hardware managed by FRA:

Table 35: AP Models and Types of Hardware Managed by FRA

AP Model	FRA Radios	Functions
Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Points	2.4/5 XOR	2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations
Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points	2.4/5 XOR	2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations
Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points	2.4/5 XOR	2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations
Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series Access Points	2.4/5 XOR	2.4-GHz and 5-GHz or dual 5-GHz operations
Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points	5-GHz Tri-Radio	2.4-GHz 4x4 and single 5-GHz 8x8, or 2.4-GHz 4x4 and dual 5-GHz 4x4
Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166 Access Points	5/6-GHz XOR	2.4-GHz 4x4 and dual 5-GHz 4x4, or 5-GHz 4x4 and 6-GHz 4x4

FRA performs a number of functions. On the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz XOR models, FRA establishes the required 2.4-GHz coverage, identifies redundant radios, and converts them to either 5-GHz or a monitor role. For

tri-radio and 5/6-GHz XOR models, FRA determines the 2.4-GHz coverage, and the redundant radios are converted to a monitor role. Additionally, FRA determines the best operating role for the 5-GHz tri-radio (as either a single 8x8 or a dual 4x4), based on connected client capabilities. For the 5/6-GHz XOR radio, the band that the radios should operate on is based on the availability 6-GHz client presence in the regulatory domain.

FRA also manages the resulting configurations of the radios to optimize client experience across flexible roles. Client Steering is responsible for load balancing client connections. For instance, from Cisco Aironet 2800 APs through Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series APs, all the internal antenna AP models perform dual 5-GHz roles as a Macro-Micro cell (a cell within a cell). The antennas on these models are built to support the directionality needed for the micro cell. FRA client steering helps to steer clients to the appropriate radio based on their position within the cell (closer clients are put on the micro cell).

The FRA APs that support external antennas operate as Macro-Macro, which allows full control over power and channels. The CW9166I AP also supports a Macro-Macro model when using the internal antennas.

In Cisco Catalyst 9130 APs, FRA also manages the operating mode of the band-locked 8x8 5-GHz tri-radio by monitoring client capabilities of connected clients. For instance, if the attached clients are largely Wi-Fi 5-capable clients, then, beam forming should be multi-user MIMO (MU-MIMO), ensuring better capacity with dual 4x4 5-GHz cells. However, if the same cell has a higher number of Wi-Fi 6-capable clients, then 8x8 spatial streams support more MU-MIMO capacity and increase the overall performance of the cell and client experience.

The CW9166 AP is the first AP with a dual-band XOR radio covering the 5-GHz and 6-GHz bands. Criteria for role selection is regulatory domain (that is, if the country's regulatory rules support 6-GHz operations). If yes, 6-GHz is chosen. If not, 5-GHz operations are chosen.

Configuration choices for all FRA radio models include:

- Automatic (Allows FRA to manage role selection automatically)
- Client Serving (Manual role selection of 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, or 6-GHz, or FRAs are not engaged)
- Monitor (Manual: no FRA)
- Sniffer (Manual: no FRA)

Configuring an FRA Radio (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **RRM** > **FRA**.
- Step 2** In the **Flexible Radio Assignment** window, in the **5/6 GHz Flexible Radio Assignment** section, perform the following steps:
- a) Click the **FRA Status** toggle button to change the FRA status to **Enabled**. By default, the FRA status is **Disabled**.
 - b) Click the **FRA Freeze** toggle button to enable FRA freeze. Enable **FRA Freeze** to lock the radio's current assigned role. When enabled, the radios continue to operate in their role (monitor, sniffer or client serving) until you manually change it or disable FRA Freeze.

- c) From the **FRA Interval** drop-down list, choose the FRA run interval. The interval value range is from 1 hour to 24 hours. You can choose the FRA run interval value only after you enable the FRA status.

Step 3

In the **2.4/5 GHz Flexible Radio Assignment** section, perform the following steps:

- a) Click the **FRA Status** toggle button to change the FRA status to **Enabled**. By default, the FRA status is **Disabled**.
- b) Click the **FRA Freeze** toggle button to enable FRA freeze. Enable **FRA Freeze** to lock the radio's current assigned role. When enabled, the radios continue to operate in their role (monitor, sniffer or client serving) until you manually change it or disable FRA Freeze.
- c) From the **FRA Interval** drop-down list, choose the FRA run interval. The interval value range is from 1 hour to 24 hours. You can choose the FRA run interval value only after you enable the FRA status.
- d) From the **FRA Sensitivity** drop-down list, choose the percentage of Coverage Overlap Factor (COF) required to consider a radio as redundant. You can select the supported value only after you enable the FRA status.

The supported values are as follows:

- **Low**: 100 percent
- **Medium** (default): 95 percent
- **High**: 90 percent
- **Higher**: 85 percent
- **Even Higher**: 80 percent
- **Super High**: 50 percent

- e) From the **FRA Action** drop-down list, select the **2.4GHz Monitor** option to globally configure the redundant dual-band (XOR 2.4/5-GHz) radios to operate in monitor role.

By default, dual-band radios operate in the 2.4-GHz/5-GHz/Monitor role. This configuration is helpful especially when there is enough coverage on the 5-GHz band and you want to restrict radios from moving to the 5-GHz band to prevent further interference. Instead, the radios directly move to the monitor mode in the 2.4-GHz band.

- f) Check the **Client Aware** check box to take decisions on redundancy.

When enabled, the **Client Aware** feature monitors the dedicated 5-GHz radio. When the client load passes a preset threshold, the Flexible Radio assignment is automatically changed from a monitor role to a 5-GHz role, effectively doubling the capacity of the cell on demand. After the capacity crisis is over and Wi-Fi load returns to normal, the radios resume their previous roles.

- g) In the **Client Select** field, enter a value for client selection. The valid value range is between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 50 percent.

This means that if the dedicated 5-GHz interface reaches 50 percent channel utilization, it triggers the monitor role dual-band interface to transition to a 5-GHz client-serving role.

- h) In the **Client Reset** field, enter a reset value for the client. The valid value range is between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 5 percent.

When the AP is operating as a dual 5-GHz AP, this setting indicates the reduction in the combined radios' overall channel utilization required to reset the dual-band radio to monitor role.

Step 4 Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

Enabling FRA (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap fra Example: Device(config)# [no] ap fra	Enables or disables FRA on the AP.
Step 3	[no] ap fra 5-6ghz Example: Device(config)# ap fra 5-6ghz	Enables FRA 5-GHz or 6-GHz on APs that support XOR (5-GHz or 6-GHz). Use the no form of this command to disable this feature.
Step 4	[no] ap fra freeze Example: Device(config)# ap fra freeze	Enables FRA freeze. Use the no form of this command to disable this feature.
Step 5	[no] ap fra 5-6ghz freeze Example: Device(config)# ap fra 5-6ghz freeze	Enables FRA 5-GHz or 6-GHz freeze. Use the no form of this command to disable this feature.
Step 6	ap fra interval Example: Device(config)# ap fra interval 3	Configures the FRA interval, in hours. The range is from 1 to 24 hours. Note The FRA interval must be more than the configured RRM interval.
Step 7	ap fra 5-6ghz interval <i>number-of-hours</i> Example: Device(config)# ap fra 5-6ghz interval 4	Configures the FRA 5-GHz or 6-GHz interval, in hours. The valid range is from 1 to 24 hours.
Step 8	ap fra sensitivity {high medium low} Example: Device(config)# ap fra sensitivity high	Configures FRA sensitivity. • high: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to high. • medium: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to medium.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• low: Sets the FRA Coverage Overlap Sensitivity to low.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 10	ap fra revert {all auto-only} {auto static} Example: Device# ap fra revert all auto	Rolls back the XOR radio state. • all: Reverts all XOR Radios • auto-only: Reverts only XOR radios that are currently in automatic band selection. • auto: Places the XOR radios in automatic band selection. • static: Places the XOR radios in static 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, and 6-GHz bands.
Step 11	(Optional) show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz dual-band} summary Example: Device# show ap dot11 6ghz summary	Shows the configuration and statistics of 802.11 Cisco APs.
Step 12	(Optional) show ap fra Example: Device# show ap fra FRA State : Disabled FRA Sensitivity : medium (95%) FRA Interval : 1 Hour(s) AP Name MAC Address Slot ID Current-Band COF % Suggested Mode AP00A6.CA36.295A 006b.f09c.8290 0 2.4GHz None 2.4GHz COF : Coverage Overlap Factor test_machine#	Shows the current FRA configuration.
Step 13	(Optional) show ap fra 5-6ghz	Shows the FRA 5-GHz - 6-GHz configurations.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 14	(Optional) show ap name <i>ap-name</i> config dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz dual} Example: Device# show ap name config dot11 6ghz	Shows the current 802.11 parameters in a given AP.

Configuring Client FRA in RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i>	Configures the RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	client-aware-fra client-count-reset <i>client-count</i> Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# client-aware-fra client-count-reset 1	Configures the client count threshold for the radio to switch from 6-GHz to 5-GHz band. The valid range is from 1 to 10 clients.
Step 4	client-aware-fra client-reset-util <i>util-percentage</i> Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# client-aware-fra client-reset-util 5	Configures the utilization threshold for the radio to switch from 6-GHz to 5-GHz band. The valid range is from 0 to 100 percent.

Verifying FRA XOR 5-GHz and 6-GHz Details

To view the FRA 5-GHz and 6-GHz configuration details, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap fra 5-6ghz
```

To view the client utilization threshold and client reset count, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name default-rf-profile-6ghz detail
Description                : default rfprofile for 6GHz radio
RF Profile Name            : default-rf-profile-6ghz
Band                      : 6 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power         : -10 dBm
```

```

Max Transmit Power           : 30 dBm
Operational Rates
  802.11 6GHZ 6M Rate        : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 9M Rate        : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 12M Rate       : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 18M Rate       : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 24M Rate       : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 36M Rate       : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 48M Rate       : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 54M Rate       : Supported
Max Clients                   : 200
.
.
.
PSC Channel List              : 5,21,37,53,69,85,101,117,133,149,165,181,197,213,229
DCA Bandwidth                 : best
DCA Foreign AP Contribution   : Enabled
State                         : Up
  Client utilization threshold : 5%
  Client Reset count          : 1
Client Network Preference     : default
802.11ax
  OBSS PD                     : Disabled
  Non-SRG OBSS PD Maximum     : -62 dBm
  SRG OBSS PD                 : Disabled
  SRG OBSS PD Minimum         : -82 dBm
  SRG OBSS PD Maximum         : -62 dBm
  Broadcast Probe Response    : Disabled
  FILS Discovery               : Disabled
  Multi-BSSID Profile Name    : default-multi-bssid-profile
NDP mode                      : Auto
Guard Interval                : none
PSC Enforcement               : Disabled

```



Note The **client utilization threshold** is the utilization threshold for radios to switch from 6-GHz to 5-GHz band. The **client reset count** is the client count threshold for radios to switch from 6-GHz to 5-GHz band.

Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action

Feature History for Flexible Radio Assignment Action

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 36: Feature History for FRA Action

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action	In Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 and earlier releases, the FRA moves the redundant dual-band radios to either 5-GHz client-serving role or monitor role.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) Action	From Cisco IOS-XE 17.11.1 onwards, you can select the redundant dual-band radios in a network to operate in monitor only mode.

Information About Flexible Radio Assignment Action

Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) evaluates only 2.4-GHz radio coverage and determines whether there is overlapping coverage that is causing radio interference. If there is an overlapping coverage, the dual-band radio moves to either 5-GHz client serving or monitor role.

In Cisco IOS-XE 17.10.1 and earlier releases, the FRA moves the redundant dual-band radios to either 5-GHz client-serving role or monitor role.

From Cisco IOS-XE 17.11.1 onwards, you can select the redundant dual-band radios in a network to operate in monitor only mode.



Note The FRA action feature is disabled by default.

Configuring FRA Action in Default RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz fra action monitor Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz fra action monitor	Configures the FRA action as monitor, and moves all redundant dual-band radios to monitor role only.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring FRA Action in 2.4-GHz RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile alpha-rfprofile-24ghz	Configures the RF profile name and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	fra action monitor Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# fra action monitor	Configures the FRA action as monitor, and moves all redundant dual-band radios to monitor role only.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying FRA Action Configuration

To view the selected FRA action, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap fra
FRA State           : Enabled
FRA Freeze          : Disabled
FRA Operation State : Up
FRA Sensitivity     : higher (85%)
FRA Interval        : 1 Hour(s)
Service Priority     : Coverage
Client Aware FRA    : Enabled
  Client Select     : 25%
  Client Reset      : 5%
FRA Action          : 2.4GHz/Monitor
  Last Run         : 3069 seconds ago
```

To view the FRA action details in an AP RF profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name madhu-rf-profile-24 detail | sec FRA
Client Aware FRA      : Disabled
FRA Action            : 2.4GHz/Monitor
```

To view the radio mode and role in an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP7872.5DED.CB74 config slot 0 | sec Attribute
Attributes for Slot 0
Radio Type           : 802.11n - 2.4/5 GHz
Radio Mode           : Monitor
Radio Role            : Monitor
```

```
Assignment Method           : Auto
Monitor Mode Reason         : Automatically Switched by FRA
```



CHAPTER 32

XOR Radio Support

- [Information About Dual-Band Radio Support](#) , on page 445
- [Configuring Default XOR Radio Support](#), on page 446
- [Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number \(GUI\)](#), on page 448
- [Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number](#), on page 449

Information About Dual-Band Radio Support

The Dual-Band (XOR) radio in Cisco 2800, 3800, 4800, and the 9120 series AP models offer the ability to serve 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz bands or passively monitor both the bands on the same AP. These APs can be configured to serve clients in 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands, or serially scan both 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands on the flexible radio while the main 5-GHz radio serves clients.

Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166 AP (CW9166) now has XOR function for a dual 5-GHz 4x4 or 5-GHz 4x4 and 6-GHz 4x4 radios. These radios can also be configured as client serving, monitor or as a sniffer interface like the earlier XOR radios.



Note For all countries that do not support 6-GHz spectrum for use of Wi-Fi, when the Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166I AP operates as dual 5-GHz, the 5-GHz channels will be locked on both the radios even if slot 2 is disabled or set up for monitoring.

Cisco APs models up and through the Cisco 9120 APs are designed to support dual 5-GHz band operations with the *i* model supporting a dedicated Macro/Micro architecture and the *e* and *p* models supporting Macro/Macro. The Cisco 9130AXI APs support dual 5-GHz operations as Macro/Micro cell. The CW9166I supports Macro/Macro cell.

When a radio moves between bands (from 2.4-GHz to 5-GHz and vice versa), clients need to be steered to get an optimal distribution across radios. When an AP has two radios in the 5-GHz band, client steering algorithms contained in the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA) algorithm are used to steer a client between the same band co-resident radios.

The XOR radio support can be steered manually or automatically:

- Manual steering of a band on a radio—The band on the XOR radio can only be changed manually.
- Automatic client and band steering on the radios is managed by the FRA feature that monitors and changes the band configurations as per site requirements.



Note RF measurement will not run when a static channel is configured on slot 1. Due to this, the dual band radio slot 0 will move only with 5-GHz radio and not to the monitor mode.

When slot 1 radio is disabled, RF measurement will not run, and the dual band radio slot 0 will be only on 2.4-GHz radio.



Note Only one of the 5-GHz radios can operate in the UNII band (100 - 144), due to an AP limitation to keep the power budget within the regulatory limit.

Configuring Default XOR Radio Support

Before you begin



Note The default radio points to the XOR radio hosted on slot 0.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain <i>antenna_gain_value</i> Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band antenna ext-ant-gain 2	Configures the 802.11 dual-band antenna on a specific Cisco access point. <i>antenna_gain_value</i> : The valid range is from 0 to 40.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> [no] dot11 dual-band shutdown Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band shutdown	Shuts down the default dual-band radio on a specific Cisco access point. Use the no form of the command to enable the radio.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band role manual client-serving	Switches to client-serving mode on the Cisco access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band band 24ghz Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band band 24ghz</pre>	Switches to 2.4-GHz radio band.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band txpower {<i>transmit_power_level</i> auto} Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band txpower 2</pre>	Configures the transmit power for the radio on a specific Cisco access point. Note When an FRA-capable radio (slot 0 on 9120 AP[for instance]) is set to Auto, you cannot configure static channel and Txpower on this radio. If you want to configure static channel and Txpower on this radio, you will need to change the radio role to Manual Client-Serving mode. This note is not applicable for Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166 AP (CW9166).
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel <i>channel-number</i> Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band channel 2</pre>	Enters the channel for the dual band. <i>channel-number</i> —The valid range is from 1 to 173.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel auto Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band channel auto</pre>	Enables the auto channel assignment for the dual-band.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band channel width {20 MHz 40 MHz 80 MHz 160 MHz} Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band channel width 20 MHz</pre>	Chooses the channel width for the dual band.
Step 10	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap-name dot11 dual-band cleanair</pre>	Enables the Cisco CleanAir feature on the dual-band radio.
Step 11	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair band {24 GHz 5 GMHz}	Selects a band for the Cisco CleanAir feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> [no] dot11 dual-band cleanair band 5 GHz</pre>	Use the no form of this command to disable the Cisco CleanAir feature.
Step 12	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: <pre>Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band dot11n antenna A</pre>	Configures the 802.11n dual-band parameters for a specific access point.
Step 13	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> auto-rf dot11 dual-band Example: <pre>Device# show ap name <i>ap-name</i> auto-rf dot11 dual-band</pre>	Displays the auto-RF information for the Cisco access point.
Step 14	show ap name <i>ap-name</i> wlan dot11 dual-band Example: <pre>Device# show ap name <i>ap-name</i> wlan dot11 dual-band</pre>	Displays the list of BSSIDs for the Cisco access point.

Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Dual-Band Radios** section, select the AP for which you want to configure dual-band radios.
- The AP name, MAC address, CleanAir capability and slot information for the AP are displayed. If the Hyperlocation method is HALO, the antenna PID and antenna design information are also displayed.
- Step 3** Click **Configure**.
- Step 4** In the **General** tab, set the **Admin Status** as required.
- Step 5** Set the **CleanAir Admin Status** field to Enable or Disable.
- Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring XOR Radio Support for the Specified Slot Number

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain <i>external_antenna_gain_value</i> Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 antenna ext-ant-gain 2	Configures dual-band antenna for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. <i>external_antenna_gain_value</i> - Is the external antenna gain value in multiples of .5 dBi unit. The valid range is from 0 to 40. Note - For APs supporting self-identifying antennas (SIA), the gain depends on the antenna, and not on the AP model. The gain is learned by the AP and there is no need for controller configuration. - For APs that do not support SIA, the APs send the antenna gain in the configuration payload, where the default antenna gain depends on the AP model.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 band {24ghz 5ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 band 24ghz	Configures current band for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel {<i>channel_number</i> auto width [160 20 40 80]} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 channel 3	Configures dual-band channel for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. <i>channel_number</i> - The valid range is from 1 to 165.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band {24Ghz 5Ghz} Example: Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 cleanair band 24Ghz	Enables CleanAir features for dual-band radios hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna {A B C D} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 dot11n antenna A</pre>	Configures 802.11n dual-band parameters hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. Here, A- Enables antenna port A. B- Enables antenna port B. C- Enables antenna port C. D- Enables antenna port D.
Step 7	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 role {auto manual [client-serving monitor]} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 role auto</pre>	Configures dual-band role for the XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. The following are the dual-band roles: • auto- Refers to the automatic radio role selection. • manual- Refers to the manual radio role selection.
Step 8	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown</pre> <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 [no] dot11 dual-band slot 0 shutdown</pre>	Disables dual-band radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. Use the no form of this command to enable the dual-band radio.
Step 9	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower {tx_power_level auto} Example: <pre>Device# ap name AP-SIDD-A06 dot11 dual-band slot 0 txpower 2</pre>	Configures dual-band transmit power for XOR radio hosted on slot 0 for a specific access point. • tx_power_level- Is the transmit power level in dBm. The valid range is from 1 to 8. • auto- Enables auto-RF.



CHAPTER 33

Cisco Receiver Start of Packet

- [Information About Receiver Start of Packet Detection Threshold](#), on page 451
- [Restrictions for Rx SOP](#), on page 451
- [Configuring Rx SOP \(CLI\)](#), on page 452
- [Customizing RF Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 452

Information About Receiver Start of Packet Detection Threshold

The Receiver Start of Packet (Rx SOP) Detection Threshold feature determines the Wi-Fi signal level in dBm at which an access point's radio demodulates and decodes a packet. As the Wi-Fi level increases, the radio sensitivity decreases and the receiver cell size becomes smaller. Reduction of the cell size affects the distribution of clients in the network.

Rx SOP is used to address clients with weak RF links, sticky clients, and client load balancing across access points. Rx SOP helps to optimize the network performance in high-density deployments, such as stadiums and auditoriums where access points need to optimize the nearest and strongest clients.

Restrictions for Rx SOP

- Rx SOP configuration is not applicable to the third radio module pluggable on Cisco Aironet 3600 Series APs.
- Rx SOP configurations are supported only in Local, FlexConnect, Bridge, and Flex+Bridge modes.
- Rx SOP configurations are not supported in the FlexConnect+PPPoE, FlexConnect+PPPoE-wIPS, and FlexConnect+OEAP submodes.

The following table shows the permitted range for the Rx SOP threshold.

Table 37: Rx SOP Threshold

Radio Band	Threshold High	Threshold Medium	Threshold Low
2.4 GHz	-79 dBm	-82 dBm	-85 dBm
5 GHz	-76 dBm	-78 dBm	-80 dBm

Configuring Rx SOP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rx-sop threshold {auto custom high low medium} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rx-sop threshold high	Configures the 802.11bg/802.11a radio Rx SOP threshold.
Step 3	end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} high-density Example: Device# show ap dot11 5ghz high-density	Displays the 802.11bg/802.11a high-density parameters.
Step 5	show ap summary Example: Device# show ap summary	Displays a summary of all the connected Cisco APs.

Customizing RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	high-density rx-sop threshold {auto custom high low medium} Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# high-density rx-sop threshold high	Configures the 802.11bg, 802.11a or 802.11 6-GHz high-density parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	show ap summary Example: Device# show ap summary	Displays a summary of all the connected Cisco APs.
Step 4	end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Note • Irrespective of radio mode, the controller configures the radio with configured RX-SOP value. The AP determines whether to use the configured RX-SOP value. • For the XOR radio (Slot 0), when the AP is in monitor mode the RX-SOP value that gets pushed to AP depends on the band it was operating before moving to monitor mode (basically if radio operating band is 24g then RX-SOP params picked from 24GHz RF profile (or default rf-profile). If it was in 5g then RX-SOP params picked from 5GHz RF profile (or default rf-profile) configured for the AP).



CHAPTER 34

Client Limit

- [Information About Client Limit](#), on page 455
- [Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN \(GUI\)](#), on page 455
- [Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN \(CLI\)](#), on page 456
- [Configuring Client Limit Per AP \(GUI\)](#), on page 457
- [Configuring Client Limit Per AP \(CLI\)](#), on page 457
- [Configuring Client Limit Per Radio \(GUI\)](#), on page 458
- [Configuring Client Limit Per Radio \(CLI\)](#), on page 458
- [Verifying Client Limit](#), on page 459

Information About Client Limit

This feature enforces a limit on the number of clients that can be associated with an AP. Further, you can configure the number of clients that can be associated with each AP radio.

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.x onwards, client limiting is supported per AP, per radio, and per radio per WLAN.

Limitations for Client Limit

- APs other than the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs, support only 200 clients per radio. If you configure more than 200 clients for these APs, the number of clients that can be associated with the AP radios will still be limited to only 200 clients, as per the AP capability value.
- Client limiting is supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series APs in Flex mode.

Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click a WLAN from the list of WLANs.

- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Under the **Max Client Connections** settings, enter the client limit for **Per WLAN**, **Per AP Per WLAN**, and **Per AP Radio Per WLAN**.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Client Limit Per WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan wlan-name Example: Device(config)# wlan ramban	Specifies the WLAN name.
Step 4	client association limit <i>maximum-clients-per-WLAN</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client association limit 110	Configures the maximum number of clients that can be associated to the given WLAN.
Step 5	client association limit ap <i>max-clients-per-AP-per-WLAN</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client association limit ap 120	Configures the maximum number of clients that can be associated to an AP in the WLAN. The valid range is between 0 and 1200 clients. The default value is 0. Note A Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series AP can support a maximum of 1200 clients.
Step 6	client association limit radio <i>maximum-clients-per-AP-radio-per-WLAN(0—400)</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client association limit radio 100	Configures the maximum limit of clients that can be associated to an AP radio in the WLAN. The valid range is between 0 to 400 clients. The default value is 200. Note A Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series AP radio can support a maximum of 400 clients.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 8	show wlan id <i>wlan-id</i> Example: Device# show wlan id 2	Displays the current configuration of the WLAN and the corresponding client association limits.

Configuring Client Limit Per AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the name and description of the corresponding AP join profile.
- Step 4** Click the **Client** tab.
- Step 5** In the **Maximum Client Limit** field, enter the maximum client associations per AP. The valid values are between 0 and 1200. The default value is 0.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Client Limit Per AP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	association-limit <i>max-client-connections</i> Example:	Configures the maximum client connections per AP. The default value is 0. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config-ap-profile) # association-limit 200	A Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series AP can support a maximum of 1200 clients.
Step 4	end Example: Device (config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Client Limit Per Radio (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click the required RF profile name from the displayed list of RF profiles.
The **Edit RF Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Under the **High Density Parameters** section, in the **Max Clients** field, enter the maximum number of client connections per AP radio. The valid range is between 0 and 400. The default value is 200 client connections.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Client Limit Per Radio (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device (config) # ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i>	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	high-density clients count <i>maximum-client-connections <0-400></i>	Configures the maximum number of client connections per AP radio. The valid range is

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# high-density clients count 200	between 0 and 400. The default value is 200 client connections. Note A Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series AP radio can support a maximum of 400 clients.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Client Limit

To verify client limit in local mode, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client delete reasons | sec Max
Maximum client limit reached on AP           : 0
Maximum client limit reached on AP per wlan  : 0
Maximum client limit reached on AP radio per wlan : 0
Maximum client limit reached on AP radio     : 0
```

To verify client limit in the FlexConnect central authentication mode, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client delete reasons | sec max
AP limiting maximum client per AP           : 0
AP limiting maximum client per AP radio per wlan : 0
AP limiting maximum client per AP radio     : 0
```




CHAPTER 35

IP Theft

- [Introduction to IP Theft, on page 461](#)
- [Configuring IP Theft \(GUI\), on page 462](#)
- [Configuring IP Theft, on page 462](#)
- [Configuring the IP Theft Exclusion Timer, on page 462](#)
- [Adding Static Entries for Wired Hosts, on page 463](#)
- [Verifying IP Theft Configuration, on page 464](#)

Introduction to IP Theft

The IP Theft feature prevents the usage of an IP address that is already assigned to another device. If the controller finds that two wireless clients are using the same IP address, it declares the client with lesser precedence binding as the IP thief and allows the other client to continue. If blocked list is enabled, the client is put on the exclusion list and thrown out.

The IP Theft feature is enabled by default on the controller. The preference level of the clients (new and existing clients in the database) are also used to report IP theft. The preference level is a learning type or source of learning, such as Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), data glean (looking at the IP data packet that shows what IP address the client is using), and so on. The wired clients always get a higher preference level. If a wireless client tries to steal the wired IP, that client is declared as a thief.



Note Some devices might use different MAC addresses but the same IPv6 link-local addresses, for different WLANs. If the devices switch WLANs when they are not in range of the APs, an IP theft event is triggered. To avoid this, we recommend that you lower the idle timeout for the devices. When the devices are out of the APs' range, the idle timeout takes effect and the old entries in the initial WLAN are deleted.

The order of preference for IPv4 clients are:

1. DHCPv4
2. ARP
3. Data packets

The order of preference for IPv6 clients are:

1. DHCPv6
2. NDP
3. Data packets



Note The static wired clients have a higher preference over DHCP.

Configuring IP Theft (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies > Client Exclusion Policies**.
- Step 2** Check the **IP Theft or IP Reuse** check box.
- Step 3** Click **Apply**.

Configuring IP Theft

Follow the procedure given below to configure the IP Theft feature:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps client-exclusion ip-theft Example: Device(config)# wireless wps client-exclusion ip-theft	Configures the client exclusion policy.

Configuring the IP Theft Exclusion Timer

Follow the procedure given below to configure the IP theft exclusion timer:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	exclusionlist timeout <i>time-in-seconds</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exclusionlist timeout 5	Specifies the timeout, in seconds. The valid range is from 0-2147483647. Enter zero (0) for no timeout.

Adding Static Entries for Wired Hosts

Follow the procedure given below to create static wired bindings:



Note The statically configured wired bindings and locally configured SVI IP addresses have a higher precedence than DHCP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	Use the first option to configure an IPv4 static entry or the second option to create an IPv6 static entry. • device-tracking binding <i>vlan vlan-id</i> <i>ipv4-address</i> interface <i>gigabitEthernetge-intf-num</i> <i>hardware-or-mac-address</i> • device-tracking binding <i>vlan vlan-id</i> <i>ipv6-address</i> interface <i>gigabitEthernetge-intf-num</i> <i>hardware-or-mac-address</i>	Configures IPv4 or IPv6 static entry.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# device-tracking binding vlan 20 20.20.20.5 interface gigabitEthernet 1 0000.1111.2222</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# device-tracking binding vlan 20 2200:20:20::6 interface gigabitEthernet 1 0000.444.3333</pre>	

Verifying IP Theft Configuration

Use the following command to check if the IP Theft feature is enabled or not:

```
Device# show wireless wps summary
```

```
Client Exclusion Policy
  Excessive 802.11-association failures      : Enabled
  Excessive 802.11-authentication failures: Enabled
  Excessive 802.1x-authentication           : Enabled
  IP-theft                                : Enabled
  Excessive Web authentication failure       : Enabled
  Cids Shun failure                         : Enabled
  Misconfiguration failure                  : Enabled
  Failed Qos Policy                        : Enabled
  Failed Epm                               : Enabled
```

Use the following commands to view additional details about the IP Theft feature:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
```

Number of Local Clients: 1

MAC Address	AP Name	WLAN State	Protocol	Method	Role
000b.bbb1.0001	SimAP-1	2 Run	11a	None	Local

Number of Excluded Clients: 1

MAC Address	AP Name	WLAN State	Protocol	Method
10da.4320.cce9	charlie2	2 Excluded	11ac	None

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database ip
```

IP	VLAN	STATE	DISCOVERY	MAC
20.20.20.2	20	Reachable	Local	001e.14cc.cbff
20.20.20.6	20	Reachable	IPv4 DHCP	000b.bbb1.0001

```
Device# show wireless exclusionlist
```

```
Excluded Clients
```

MAC Address	Description	Exclusion Reason	Time Remaining
10da.4320.cce9		IP address theft	59



Note Client exclusion timer deletes the entry from exclusion list with a granularity of 10 seconds. The entry is checked to retain or delete after every 10 seconds. There are chances that the running timer value for excluded clients might display negative values upto 10 seconds.



Note When client exclusion is enabled, it adds the client to the exclusion list. It does not block the client from getting deleted.

```
Device# show wireless exclusionlist client mac 12da.4820.cce9 detail
```

```
Client State : Excluded
Client MAC Address : 12da.4820.cce9
Client IPv4 Address: 20.20.20.6
Client IPv6 Address: N/A
Client Username: N/A
Exclusion Reason : IP address theft
Authentication Method : None
Protocol: 802.11ac
AP MAC Address : 58ac.780e.08f0
AP Name: charlie2
AP slot : 1
Wireless LAN Id : 2
Wireless LAN Name: mhe-ewlc
VLAN Id : 20
```




CHAPTER 36

Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery

- [Information About Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery, on page 467](#)
- [Viewing Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery \(CLI\), on page 467](#)

Information About Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery

Unscheduled automatic power save delivery (U-APSD) is a QoS facility that is defined in IEEE 802.11e that extends the battery life of mobile clients. In addition to extending the battery life, this feature reduces the latency of traffic flow that is delivered over the wireless media. Because U-APSD does not require the client to poll each individual packet that is buffered at the access point, it allows delivery of multiple downlink packets by sending a single uplink trigger packet.

U-APSD is enabled automatically when WMM is enabled.

Viewing Unscheduled Automatic Power Save Delivery (CLI)

Procedure

```
show wireless client mac-address client_mac detail
```

Example:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 2B:5B:B3:18:56:E9 detail
Output Policy State : Unknown
Output Policy Source : Unknown
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 15
  APSD ACs      : BK(T/D), BE, VI(T/D), VO(T/D)
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate :

-----
BK : Background
BE : Best Effort
VI : Video
VO : Voice.
```

```
T: UAPSD Trigger Enabled  
D: UAPSD Delivery Enabled  
T/D : UAPSD Trigger and Delivery Enabled
```

Show detailed information of a client by MAC address.



CHAPTER 37

Target Wake Time

- [Target Wake Time, on page 469](#)
- [Configuring Target Wake Time at the Radio Level \(CLI\), on page 470](#)
- [Configuring Target Wake Time on WLAN, on page 471](#)
- [Configuring Target Wake Time \(GUI\), on page 473](#)
- [Verifying Target Wakeup Time, on page 473](#)

Target Wake Time

The existing Wi-Fi client power-saving mechanisms have been in use since 802.11b, where the client devices sleep between AP beacons or multiple beacons, waking up only when they have data to transmit (they can transmit at any time, as AP does not sleep), and beacons containing the Delivery Traffic Indication Map (DTIM), a bit-map, indicates that the AP has downlink traffic buffered for transmission to particular clients.

If a client has a DTIM bit set, it can retrieve data from the AP by sending a Power-Save Poll (PS-Poll) frame to the AP. This power-save scheme is effective but only allows clients to doze for a small beacon interval. Clients still need to wake up several times per second to read DTIM from the beacon frame of the AP.

With 802.11e, the new power-saving mechanism was introduced that helps voice-capable Wi-Fi devices, as voice packets are transmitted at short time intervals, typically 20 ms/sec. Unscheduled automatic power-save delivery (U-APSD) allows a power-save client to sleep at intervals within a beacon period. AP buffers the downlink traffic until the client wakes up and requests its delivery.



Note By default Target Wake Time (TWT) is disabled on the controller. To enable TWT, run the **ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} dot11ax twt-broadcast** command.

Extended Power-Savings Using Target Wake Time

Target wake time (TWT) allows an AP to manage activity in the Wi-Fi network, in order to minimize medium contention between Stations (STAs), and to reduce the required amount of time that an STA in the power-save mode needs to be awake. This is achieved by allocating STAs to operate at non-overlapping times, and/or frequencies, and concentrate the frame exchanges in predefined service periods.

TWT capable STA can either negotiate an individual TWT agreement with TWT-scheduling AP, or it can elect to be part or member of Broadcast TWT agreement existing on the AP. An STA does not need to be

aware that a TWT service period (SP) can be used to exchange frames with other STAs. Frames transmitted during a TWT SP can be carried in any PPDU format supported by the pair of STAs that have established the TWT agreement corresponding to that TWT SP, including High Efficiency Multi-User Physical Protocol Data Unit (HE MU PPDU), High Efficiency Trigger-Based Physical Protocol Data Unit (HE TB PPDU), and so on.

Following are the TWT Agreement Types:

Individual TWT

Single TWT session is negotiated between AP and an STA. This ensures a specific service period of DL and UL between AP and STA with expected traffic to be limited within the negotiated SP of 99% accuracy. The service period starts at specific offset from the target beacon transmission time (TBTT) and runs for the SP duration and repeats every SP interval.

TWT Requesting STA communicates the Wake Scheduling information to its TWT responding AP, which then devises a schedule and delivers the TWT values to the TWT requesting STA when a TWT agreement has been established between them.

Solicited TWT

STA initiates the TWT session with the AP.

Unsolicited TWT

AP initiates TWT setup with STA. AP sends TWT response with service period which is accepted by STA.

Broadcast TWT

High-Efficiency AP requests the STA to participate in the broadcast TWT operation, either on-going broadcast SP or new SP.

Configuring Target Wake Time at the Radio Level (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11 6-GHz network.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} dot11ax Example: Device(conf)#ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax	Configures the 802.11ax parameters. 802.11ax cannot be disabled on the 6-GHz band.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	[no] ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} dot11ax target-wakeup-time Example: Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax target-wakeup-time	Configures 802.11 6-GHz dot11ax target wake-up time.
Step 5	[no] ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} dot11ax twt-broadcast Example: Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax twt-broadcast	Configures 802.11 6-GHz dot11ax target wake-up time broadcast. Note By default TWT is disabled on the controller. You can enable TWT by running this command.
Step 6	no ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)#no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown	Enables the 802.11a or 802.11b network. Enables the 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11 6-GHz network.
Step 7	show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} network Example: Device(config)#show ap dot11 24ghz network	Displays the 802.11ax network configuration details, which includes information about Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Broadcast.

Configuring Target Wake Time on WLAN

Enabling Target Wake Time on WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-profile Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>wlan-profile</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	shutdown Example:	Disables the WLAN network

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (conf-wlan) #shutdown	
Step 4	dot11ax target-waketime Example: Device (conf-wlan) #dot11ax target-waketime	Configures target wake time mode on WLAN.
Step 5	dot11ax twt-broadcast-support Example: Device (conf-wlan) #dot11ax twt-broadcast-support	Configures the TWT broadcast support on WLAN.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device (conf-wlan) #no shutdown	Enables WLAN.
Step 7	show wlan {all id name summary} Example: Device# show wlan all Device# show wlan id Device# show wlan name	Displays the details of the configured WLAN, including Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Time Broadcast.

Disabling Target Wakeup Time on WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name Example: Device (config) # wlan wlan-profile	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. The <i>wlan-profile</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device (conf-wlan) #shutdown	Disables the WLAN network
Step 4	no dot11ax target-waketime Example: Device (conf-wlan) #no dot11ax target-waketime	Disables the target wake time mode on WLAN.
Step 5	no dot11ax twt-broadcast-support	Disables the TWT broadcast support on WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(conf-wlan)#no dot11ax twt-broadcast-support	
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(conf-wlan)#no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Configuring Target Wake Time (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters**.
- The parameters page is displayed where you can configure global parameters for 5 GHz Band and 2.4 GHz Band radios.
- Step 2** In the **11ax Parameters** section, check the **Target Wakeup Time** check box and the **Target Wakeup Time Broadcast** check box to configure target wakeup time and broadcast target wakeup time.
-

Verifying Target Wakeup Time

To verify Target Wakeup Time and Target Wakeup Time Broadcast, use the following command:

show ap dot11 24ghz network

The following is a sample output:

```
Device#show ap dot11 24ghz network
.
.
.
802.11ax                               : Enabled
Target Wakeup Time                     : Enabled
Target Wakeup Time Broadcast           : Enabled
.
.
.
```




CHAPTER 38

Enabling USB Port on Access Points

- [USB Port as Power Source for Access Points](#), on page 475
- [Configuring an AP Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 476
- [Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point \(CLI\)](#), on page 477
- [Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point \(GUI\)](#), on page 477
- [Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points \(CLI\)](#), on page 478

USB Port as Power Source for Access Points

Some Cisco APs have a USB port that can act as a source of power for some USB devices. The power can be up to 2.5W; if a USB device draws more than 2.5W of power, the USB port shuts down automatically. The port is enabled when the power draw is 2.5W and lower. Refer to the datasheet of your AP to check if the AP has a USB port that can act as a source of power.



Note Both IW6300 and ESW6300 APs have a USB port that can act as a source of power up to 4.5W for some USB devices.



Note The controller records the last five power-overdrawn incidents in its logs.



Caution When unsupported USB device is connected to the Cisco AP, the following message is displayed:

The inserted USB module is not a supported device. The behavior of this USB device and the impact to the Access Point is not guaranteed. If Cisco determines that a fault or defect can be isolated due to the use of third-party USB modules installed by a customer or reseller, Cisco may withhold support under warranty or support program under contract. In the course of providing support for Cisco networking products, the end user may be required to install Cisco-supported USB modules in the event Cisco determines that removing third-party parts will assist Cisco in diagnosing root cause for troubleshooting purposes. Cisco also reserves the right to charge the customer per then-current time and material rates for services provided to the customer when Cisco determines, after having provided such services, that an unsupported device caused the root cause of the defective product

Configuring an AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap profile xyz-ap-profile</code>	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode. Note When you delete a named profile, the APs associated with that profile will not revert to the default profile.
Step 3	usb-enable Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>usb-enable</code>	Enables USB for each AP profile. Note By default, the USB port on the AP is disabled. Use the no usb-enable command to disable USB for each AP profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> usb-module Example: Device# ap name AP44d3.xy45.69a1 usb-module	Enables the USB port on the AP. Use the ap name <i>ap-name</i> no usb-module command to disable the USB port on the AP. Note If you are using Cisco Catalyst 9105AXW AP and if you enable the USB port (.3at PoE-in), it is not possible to enable the USB PoE-out at the same time.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> usb-module override Example: Device# ap name AP44d3.xy45.69a1 usb-module override	Overrides USB status of the AP profile and considers the local AP configuration. Use the ap name <i>ap-name</i> no usb-module override command to override USB status of the AP and consider the AP profile configuration. Note You can configure the USB status for an AP only if you enable USB override for it.

Configuring USB Settings for an Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Access Points** window, click the name of the AP.
- Step 3** In the **Edit AP** window, click the **Interfaces** tab.
- Step 4** In the **USB Settings** section, configure the **USB Module State** as either of the following:
 - **ENABLED:** Enables the USB port on the AP
 - **DISABLED:** Disables the USB port on the AP

Note

If you are using Cisco Catalyst 9105AXW AP and if you enable the USB port (.3at PoE-in), it is not possible to enable the USB PoE-out at the same time.

Step 5 Configure **USB Override** as either of the following:

- **ENABLED:** Overrides USB status of the AP profile and considers the local AP configuration
- **DISABLED:** Overrides USB status of the AP and considers the AP profile configuration

Note

You can configure the USB status for an AP only if you enable USB override for it.

Step 6 Click **Apply & Update to Device**.

Monitoring USB Configurations for Access Points (CLI)

- To view the inventory details of APs, use the following command:

show ap name *ap-name* inventory

The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap name AP500F.8059.1620 inventory
NAME: AP2800 , DESCR: Cisco Aironet 2800 Series (IEEE 802.11ac) Access Point
PID: AIR-AP2802I-D-K9 , VID: 01, SN: XXX1111Y2ZZZZ2800
NAME: SanDisk , DESCR: Cruzer Blade
PID: SanDisk , SN: XXXX1110010, MaxPower: 224
```

- To view the summary of an AP module, use the following command:

show ap module summary

The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap module summary
AP Name           External Module      External Module PID   External Module
Description
-----
AP500F.1111.2222   Enable               SanDisk               Cruzer Blade
```

- To view the USB configuration details for each AP, use the following command:

show ap name *ap-name* config general

The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap name AP500F.111.2222 config general
.
.
.
USB Module Type..... USB Module
USB Module Status..... Disabled
USB Module Operational State..... Enabled
USB Override ..... Enabled
```

- To view status of the USB module, use the following command:

show ap profile name *xyz* detailed

The following is a sample output:

```
Device# show ap profile name xyz detailed
USB Module           : ENABLED
```




CHAPTER 39

Dynamic Frequency Selection

- [Feature History for Channel Availability Check \(CAC\), on page 481](#)
- [Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 481](#)
- [Information About Channel Availability Check \(CAC\), on page 482](#)
- [Verifying DFS, on page 482](#)
- [Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 483](#)
- [Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally \(CLI\), on page 483](#)
- [Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally \(GUI\), on page 483](#)
- [Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 484](#)
- [Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 484](#)
- [Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration, on page 485](#)

Feature History for Channel Availability Check (CAC)

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 38: Feature History for Channel Availability Check (CAC)

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	Channel Availability Check (CAC)	When a DFS channel is selected for an AP radio, the AP radio scans the channel to check for any radar signals before transmitting any frames in the DFS frequency. This process is called Channel Availability Check (CAC).

Information About Dynamic Frequency Selection

Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) is the process of detecting radar signals and automatically setting the frequency on a DFS-enabled 5.0-GHz (802.11a/h) radio to avoid interference with the radar signals. Radios configured for use in a regulatory domain must not interfere with radar systems.

In normal DFS, when a radar signal is detected on any of the channels in the 40-MHz or 80-MHz bandwidth, the whole channel is blocked. With Flex DFS, if the radar signals are not detected on the secondary channel, the AP is moved to a secondary channel with a reduction in the bandwidth, usually, by half.

Information About Channel Availability Check (CAC)

When a DFS channel is selected for an AP radio, the AP radio scans the channel to check for any radar signals before transmitting any frames in the DFS frequency. This process is called Channel Availability Check (CAC).



Note CAC is executed before you set a DFS channel for the radio.

If the AP detects that a radar is using a specific DFS channel, the AP marks the channel as non-available and excludes it from the list of available channels. This state lasts for 30 minutes after which the AP checks again to see, if the channel can be used for Wi-Fi transmissions.



- Note**
- The CAC performed during a boot process takes anywhere between 1 and 10 minutes depending on the country. This is the reason as to why the DFS channels are not available immediately when an AP reboots.
 - APs in the ETSI domain scan channels which are not supported by the controller, as the hardware has the ability to scan.

Verifying DFS

Use the following commands to verify the DFS configuration:

To display the 802.11h configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless dot11h
```

To display the auto-rf information for 802.11h configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap auto-rf dot11 5ghz
```

To display the auto-rf information for a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 auto-rf dot11 5gh
```

To display the channel details for a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz summary
AP Name Mac Address Slot Admin State Oper State Width Txpwr Channel
-----
pnp-ap 04eb.409e.b560 1 Enabled Up 40 *8/8 (3 dBm) (52,56)
BLDG1-9130-RACK-1568 04eb.409f.11a0 1 Disabled Down 40 4/8 (15 dBm) (100,104)#
```



Note In the show command, # is added right next to the channel whenever CAC is running on an AP radio.

Information About Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection

Access points (APs) monitor and perform Channel Availability Check (CAC) on a potential channel for 60 seconds when AP moves to Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) channels. Further, the AP ensures that there is no radar operating in the same frequency range before advertising beacons and serving clients. When the AP moves to a DFS, there is a service outage for a minute. This outage can be higher and extend up to 10 minutes. The Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature helps to avoid the service outage in regulatory domains. As of now, U.S. and Europe are the only supported domains.

Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel zero-wait-dfs Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel zero-wait-dfs	Enables the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature. By default, the feature is disabled. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature. Note The Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature is only available on a 5-GHz radio.

Configuring Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Globally (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.

- Step 2** In the **RRM** page, click the **5 GHz Band** tab.
- Step 3** Click the **DCA** tab.
- Step 4** Select the **Zero Wait DFS** check box to allow the AP to change to DFS without a service outage.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.

Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile test-dfs	Configures a radio frequency (RF) profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	channel zero-wait-dfs Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# channel zero-wait-dfs	Enables the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature for the RF profile. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Enabling Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection on a RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click **Add**.

The **Add RF Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Enter the name for the RF profile.
- Step 4** From the **Radio Band** drop-down, choose the **5 GHz** band.
- Step 5** Click the **RRM** tab.

- Step 6** Click the **DCA** tab.
- Step 7** Select the **Zero Wait DFS** check box to allow the AP to change to DFS without a service outage.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Verifying Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the DFS configuration.

To display the Zero Wait DFS configuration on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 config slot 1 | inc Zero
```

```
Zero Wait DFS Parameters
Zero Wait DFS Capable      : Yes
CAC Domain                 : None
```

To display the global configuration related to the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz channel | inc Zero
```

```
Zero Wait DFS Parameters
Zero Wait DFS Capable      : Yes
CAC Domain                 : None
```

To display the RF profile configuration related to the Zero Wait Dynamic Frequency Selection feature, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name test detail | sec Zero
```

```
Description                :
RF Profile Name             : test
Band                       : 5 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power         : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power         : 30 dBm
.
.
Guard Interval             : default
Zero Wait DFS              : Enabled
```




CHAPTER 40

Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio

- [Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio, on page 487](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for Tri-Radio Access Points, on page 489](#)
- [Configuring Tri-Radio, on page 489](#)

Cisco Access Points with Tri-Radio

This topic describes the Tri-Radio feature for Cisco Access Points (APs).

Access Points with three radios are designed for high density environments. The APs by default run one dedicated 2.4-GHz 4x4 mode radio and one 5-GHz 8x8 mode radio. In the default mode, the radios are managed by the Flexible Radio Assignment (FRA), and the Dual Radio Mode is in the disabled state indicating that the radios have either been assigned as client serving 8x8 radio or have not yet been evaluated by FRA.

When you enable the dual radio mode setting, the 8x8 radio is split to two independent 5-GHz 4x4 radios. In this mode, slot 1 and slot 2 are active independent 4x4 radio interfaces. They can serve different user groups with different assigned channels.



Note To disable the dual radio mode, you must first disable the admin status of the subordinate radio. Otherwise, a warning message is displayed.

A tri-radio AP has upto two configurable 5-GHz radios. The following table describes the radio role and its deployment benefits:

In Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.13.1, the **ap tri-radio** command cannot be configured, since the Tri-radio settings are enabled by default, and cannot be disabled.

Table 39: 5-GHz Radio Operational Modes and Criteria

Radio Role		Driving Factors
Radio 1	Radio 2	
8x8 Client-Serving	None	• Preferred operation: 160 MHz or 80 + 80 MHz • Higher MU-MIMO stations • Required higher number of Spatial Streams (SS)
4x4 Client-Serving	4x4 Client-Serving	• Preferred operation: 80 MHz or below • High Capacity in low or medium density • Directional antenna units (Coverage Slicing)
4x4 Client-Serving	4x4 Monitor	• Preferred operation: 80 MHz or below • Lower MU-MIMO stations • Better channel reuse in high density • Monitoring application requires 4x4 Rx

The following table lists the different radio modes and roles supported by the AP:

Table 40: Tri-Radio AP Radio Configuration

Setup	Radio Mode	Maximum Radio Capability	Dual Role Mode
1	2.4-GHz + 5-GHz	2.4-GHz, 4 antennas, 4SS, and 20 MHz 5-GHz, 8 antennas, 4SS, and 160 MHz	Disabled
2	2.4-GHz + 5-GHz	2.4-GHz, 4 antennas, 4SS, and 20 MHz 5-GHz, 8 antennas, 8SS, and 80 MHz	Disabled

Setup	Radio Mode	Maximum Radio Capability	Dual Role Mode
3	2.4-GHz + 5-GHz + 5-GHz	2.4-GHz, 4 antennas, 4SS, and 20 MHz 5-GHz, 4 antennas, 4SS, and 80 MHz 5-GHz, 4 antennas, 4SS, and 80 MHz	Enabled

In the Cisco IOS XE 17.2.1 Release, FRA manages the role assignment for each radio independently. You can set the radio mode as automatic or manual, and select either Client-Serving role or Monitor role as the radio role. Based on the dual radio mode configuration, the role selection is available for one or for both interfaces.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Tri-Radio Access Points

- Dual radio mode is set to **Auto** by default. FRA manages the dual radio mode in **Auto** mode.
- The tri-radio support for AP with external antenna is as follows:
 - RP-TNC antenna is supported in Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series APs.
 - The C-ANT9101, C-ANT9102, and C-ANT9103 antennas on Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series APs support 2 radios (2.4-GHz (4x4) and 5-GHz (8x8)). This antennas does not support two 5-GHz (4x4) radios due to hardware limitation.
- From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.x, the Tri-Radio feature is supported in Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs.

Configuring Tri-Radio

Configuring Tri-Radio for AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Network**.
The **Network > 5 GHz Radios** page is displayed.
- Step 2** In the **General** tab, the **Tri-Radio Mode** check box is enabled by default. Check the check box to enable this feature.
- Note**
Enabling the check box will allow Tri-Radio Mode for all APs capable of this feature. If you disable this later, the affected APs will revert to their default radio configuration.

Step 3 Click **Apply**

Configuring the Tri-Radio (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap tri-radio Example: Device(config)# ap tri-radio	Configures all supporting tri-radio AP's dual radio role in auto mode. Use the [no] form of the command to disable the feature.

Configuring 5-GHz Dual Radio Mode for AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** On the **Access Points** page, click the **5 GHz Radios** section and select a Cisco 9130 Series AP from the list. The **Edit Radios 5 GHz Band** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Edit Radios 5-GHz Band > Configure > General** tab, under **Dual Radio Mode**, select one from the following radio button options
- Auto: Permits FRA to decide the mode for this AP.
 - Enabled: Enables Dual Radio mode for this AP.
 - Disabled: Disables Dual Radio mode for this AP.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring the Dual Radio Mode and Enabling Slots (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot { 1 2 } shutdown Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 shutdown	(Optional) Disables the 802.11a radio on Cisco AP.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 dual-radio mode { disable enable auto } Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 1 dual-radio mode enable	Configures the 802.11a dual and tri-radio on the AP. Enable auto to allow RRM to switch the AP between dual radio or tri radio mode based on the channel width configuration. In auto mode, the slot 2 state is managed by the RRM. Use the disable keyword to disable the dual-radio. Note When the AP is set to auto mode, the dual radio mode is disabled by default.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> no dot11 5ghz slot { 1 2 } shutdown Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> no dot11 5ghz slot 1 shutdown	Enables the 802.11a radio on Cisco AP.

Setting Radio Roles for Slots (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } slot <slot ID> radio role { auto manual { monitor client-serving } } Example: Device# ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot 2 radio role manual monitor	Sets the radio role manual to either client serving or monitor.

Configuring the Tri-Radio Dual Radio Role (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz slot { 1 2 } radio role {auto manual {client-serving monitor}} Example: Device# ap name 9130axtrial dot11 5ghz slot 1 radio role manual monitor	Configures the 802.11a radio role independently for each supporting AP's radio. The channel and the Tx power values can be configured when the radio role is set to manual mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 radio role {auto manual {client-serving monitor}} Example: Device# ap name 9130axtrial dot11 24ghz slot 0 radio role manual client-serving	Configures the 802.11b radio role independently for the supporting AP's radio.

Verifying Tri-Radio Configuration on the Controller

To verify that the dual radio mode is enabled, use the following **show** command:

- Device# show ap name APXXXX.4XXX.04XX config slot 1 | inc Dual

Dual Radio Capable	: True
Dual Radio Mode	: Enabled
Dual Radio Operation mode	: Auto

To verify the tri-radio status, use the following **show** command:

- Device# show ap triradio status

Tri-Radio Status	: Enabled

To verify that the radio role is set, use the following **show** command:

- show ap name *ap-name* config slot <slot_number> | i Radio

Radio Type	: 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Radio Subband	: All
Radio Role	: Auto
Radio Mode	: Local
Radio SubType	: Main



CHAPTER 41

Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard

- [Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard, on page 493](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard Parameters \(CLI\), on page 494](#)
- [Verifying AP DFS Counters \(CLI\), on page 495](#)
- [Verifying Wi-Fi 6 Access Point Parameters, on page 496](#)

Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard



Note We recommend you manage this feature using the Cisco Catalyst Center UI. The procedures are to be executed with for debugging purposes only.

The Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard provides a visual representation of your wireless network. The dashboard contains various dashlets which show you the Wi-Fi 6 Readiness, and the efficiency of the Wi-Fi 6 networks compared to non-Wi-Fi 6 networks. For more information, see the **Monitor Wi-Fi 6 Readiness** section in the [Cisco DNA Assurance User Guide](#).

- **Client Distribution by Capability:** This dashlet shows all the clients associated and their capability in the wireless network. The inner circle shows the wireless protocol capabilities of all the different clients in the network. Capability here is the ability of wireless clients to associate with Wi-Fi 6 APs or non-Wi-Fi 6 APs. The outer arc segment shows how many 802.11ax capable clients are joined to a Wi-Fi 6 network as well as how many of them are not.
- **Wi-Fi 6 Network Readiness:** This dashlet shows all the APs in the network. The inner circle shows the APs which are Wi-Fi 6 APs and non Wi-Fi 6 APs. The outer arc segment shows the number of Wi-Fi 6 enabled AP in the network.
- **AP Distribution by Protocol:** This dashlet shows the protocols enabled on your APs in real time.
- **Wireless Airtime Efficiency:** This dashlet compares and displays the Airtime Efficiency between your Wi-Fi 6 network and Non-Wi-Fi 6 network for each of the access categories (voice, video, best effort, background).

The spectrum is efficiently utilized if the AP's radios can send more traffic (successful bytes transmitted to the client) in less airtime (microseconds) than other networks under similar RF conditions.

- **Wireless Latency by Client Count:** This Dashlet compares the Wireless Latency between your Wi-Fi 6 and Non-Wi-Fi 6 Network for each of the access categories (voice, video, best effort, background).

Wireless latency is measured by the time (microseconds) it takes for a packet to be successfully transmitted from an AP to the client. Hence, AP radios with a higher client count generally have higher latency than compared to those with a lower client count under similar RF conditions.



Note **Client count** in this dashlet refers to the clients that are actively sending traffic for a given Access Category and are not just associated clients.

Configuring Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance Wi-Fi 6 Dashboard Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device (config) # ap profile pp-1	Enables configuration for all the APs that are associated with the specified AP profile name.
Step 3	statistics traffic-distribution Example: Device (config-ap-profile) # statistics traffic-distribution	Enables traffic distribution feature with the specified AP profile.
Step 4	statistics traffic-distribution interval <i>interval-secs</i> Example: Device (config-ap-profile) # statistics traffic-distribution interval 300	Configures the interval at which the AP sends the traffic distribution statistics. Default value is 300 seconds. Valid range is between 30 and 3600 seconds. Note Execute this command only with the assistance from Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC) support engineer.
Step 5	end Example: Device (config-ap-profile) # exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	show wireless stats ap name <i>ap-name</i> traffic-distribution slot <i>slot-id</i> packet-count signal { <i>average</i> <i>good</i> <i>poor</i> } [<i>last-received</i>] Example: <pre>Device#show wireless stats ap name ff123a traffic-distribution slot 1 packet-count signal good</pre>	Displays traffic distribution data by signal strength, if received from the AP in the latest statistics update interval. Use last-received keyword to view the statistics received in any statistics update interval from the AP.
Step 7	show wireless stats ap name <i>ap-name</i> traffic-distribution slot <i>slot-id</i> airtime access-category { <i>background</i> <i>best-effort</i> <i>video</i> <i>voice</i> } [<i>last-received</i>] Example: <pre>Device#show wireless stats ap name ff123a traffic-distribution slot 1 airtime access-category best-effort</pre>	Displays the Airtime efficiency data based on access category, if received from the AP in the latest statistics update interval. Use last-received keyword to view the statistics received in any statistics update interval from the AP.
Step 8	show wireless stats ap name <i>ap-name</i> traffic-distribution slot <i>slot-id</i> airtime traffic-type { <i>legacy</i> <i>mu</i> <i>ofdma</i> <i>su</i> } [<i>last-received</i>] Example: <pre>Device#show wireless stats ap name ff123a traffic-distribution slot 1 traffic-type ofdma</pre>	Displays the Airtime efficiency data based on traffic type, if received from the AP in the latest statistics update interval. Use last-received keyword to view the statistics received in any statistics update interval from the AP.
Step 9	show wireless stats ap name <i>ap-name</i> traffic-distribution slot <i>slot-id</i> latency access-category { <i>background</i> <i>best-effort</i> <i>video</i> <i>voice</i> } [<i>last-received</i>] Example: <pre>Device#show wireless stats ap name ff123a traffic-distribution slot 1 latency access-category best-effort</pre>	Displays wireless latency data based on access category, if received from the AP in the latest statistics update interval. Use last-received keyword to view the statistics received in any statistics update interval from the AP.

Verifying AP DFS Counters (CLI)

Procedure

- To verify the DFS counter for the selected radio band, use the following command:

```
show ap auto-rf dot11 { 24ghz | 5ghz | dual-band } [ ]
```

Example:

```
Device#show ap auto-rf dot11 dual-band
```

- To verify the DFS counter for the selected radio band of a specific AP, use the following command:

```
show ap name ap-name auto-rf dot11 { 24ghz | dual-band }
```

Example:

```
Device#show ap name ff32a auto-rf dot11 dual-band
```

- To verify the DFS counter for the selected 5-GHz slot of a specific AP, use the following command:

```
show ap name ap-name auto-rf dot11 5ghz slot slot-id
```

Example:

```
Device#show ap name ff32a auto-rf dot11 5ghz slot 1
```

Verifying Wi-Fi 6 Access Point Parameters

Enter these commands in the AP console.

- To verify the traffic distribution statistics configuration, use the following command: **show ap traffic distribution configuration**
- To verify the exported data from the AP to the controller, use the following command: **show interfaces dot11Radio *slot-id* traffic distribution {cumulative | instantaneous | periodic} database**
- To verify Access Point DFS counters, use the following command: **show interfaces dot11radio *slot-id*dfs**
- To debug the traffic distribution statistics, use the following command: **{no} debug traffic wireless distribution dump {periodic | aggregated}**
- To clear the traffic distribution dump, use the following command: **clear traffic distribution dump**



CHAPTER 42

Antenna Disconnection Detection

- [Feature History for Antenna Disconnection Detection](#), on page 497
- [Information About Antenna Disconnection Detection](#), on page 497
- [Recommendations and Limitations](#), on page 498
- [Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection \(CLI\)](#), on page 498
- [Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection \(GUI\)](#), on page 499
- [Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap \(CLI\)](#), on page 500
- [Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap \(GUI\)](#), on page 500
- [Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection](#), on page 501
- [Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection \(GUI\)](#), on page 502

Feature History for Antenna Disconnection Detection

This table provides release and related information for the features explained in this module.

These features are available in all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.1	Antenna Disconnection Detection	This feature detects the signal strength delta across the antennas on the receiver. If the delta is more than the defined limit for a specific duration, the corresponding antenna is considered to have issues.

Information About Antenna Disconnection Detection

Having multiple antennas on the transmitter and receiver of an access point (AP) results in better performance and reliability. Multiple antennas improve reception through the selection of the stronger signal or a combination of individual signals at the receiver. Therefore, detection of an impaired antenna or physical breakage of an antenna is critical to the reliability of APs.

The Antenna Disconnection Detection feature is based on the signal strength delta across the antennas on the receiver. If the delta is more than the defined limit for a specific duration, the antenna is considered to have issues.

For every detection time period that you configure, the AP sends an Inter-Access Point Protocol (IAPP) message that carries the antenna condition. This message is sent only once when the issue is detected and is displayed in the controller trap messages, SNMP traps, and controller debug logs.

Configuration Workflow

1. Configure APs.
2. Configure an AP profile.
3. Enable the feature in AP profile.
4. Configure feature parameters.
5. Verify the configuration.

Recommendations and Limitations

- The feature is supported only on the following APs:
 - Cisco Catalyst 9120AX Series Access Points
 - Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 2800e Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 3800e Access Points
- The SNMP trap is not supported on the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller.
- The IAPP message is sent only when there is a change in the error condition.

Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection (CLI)

Antenna disconnection detection works by comparing the received signal strength intensity (RSSI) of each antenna with the antenna receiving the higher RSSI. If the delta is higher than the RSSI failure threshold, the corresponding antenna is declared as broken.

The *weak-rssi* is an absolute RSSI threshold value, expressed in dBm. If the antennas detect a lower RSSI value than the one configured in *weak-rssi*, all the antennas are reported as malfunctioning. The RSSI failure threshold is evaluated only if an antenna detects a signal over the *weak-rssi* value.

Follow the procedure given below to configure antenna disconnection detection:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	antenna monitoring Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# antenna monitoring	Enables antenna disconnection detection. To disable antenna disconnection detection, use the no antenna monitoring command.
Step 4	antenna monitoring rssi-failure-threshold <i>threshold-value</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# antenna monitoring rssi-failure-threshold 20	Configures RSSI failure threshold value, in dB. Valid values range from 10 to 90, with a default of 40.
Step 5	antenna monitoring weak-rssi <i>weak-rssi-value</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# antenna monitoring weak-rssi -90	Configures weak RSSI value, in dBm. Valid values range from -90 to -10, with a default of 60.
Step 6	antenna monitoring detection-time <i>detect-time-in-mins</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# antenna monitoring detection-time 20	Configures the antenna disconnection detection time, in minutes. Valid values range from 9 to 180, with a default of 120.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Saves the configuration and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Antenna Disconnection Detection (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** In the **AP Join Profile** window, click the **General** tab.
 - Step 3** In the **Antenna Monitoring** check box to enable antenna monitoring.
 - Step 4** In the **RSSI Fail Threshold(dB)** field, enter a value, in dB. Valid values range from 10 to 90, with a default of 40.
 - Step 5** In the **Weak RSSI(dBm)** field, enter a value, in dBm. Valid values range from -90 to -10, with a default of 60.

- Step 6** In the **Detection Time(min)** field, enter the antenna disconnection detection time, in minutes. Valid values range from 9 to 180, with a default of 120.
- Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps Example: Device(config)# snmp-server enable traps	Enables all the SNMP notification types that are available on the system.
Step 3	trapflags ap broken-antenna Example: Device(config)# trapflags ap broken-antenna	Enables an SNMP trap, which will be sent when an antenna fails in any Cisco AP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Detecting Broken Antenna Using SNMP Trap (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > SNMP**.
- Step 2** Click the **Wireless Traps** tab.
- Step 3** Set the **Access Point** status as **Enabled**, if not done already.
- Step 4** Check the **Broken Antenna** check box to enable the trap.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.

Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection

To verify the Antenna Disconnection Detection feature configuration on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name 3800-AP config general
```

```
Cisco AP Name: 3800-AP
```

```
=====

Cisco AP Identifier           : f4db.e632.df40
Country Code                 : Multiple Countries : US,IN,CN,CU
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-ACE 802.11a:-ABCDHN
AP Country Code              : CN - China
AP Regulatory Domain
  Slot 0                     : -E
  Slot 1                     : -C
MAC Address                  : f4db.e62f.165a
IP Address Configuration     : DHCP
IP Address                   : 9.9.33.3
IP Netmask                   : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address           : 9.9.33.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain                       :
Name Server                  :
CAPWAP Path MTU              : 1485
Capwap Active Window Size    : 1
```

```
.
.
.
```

```
AP broken antenna detection : Enabled
RSSI threshold               : 40
Weak RSSI                    : -80
Detection Time                : 120
```

```
.
.
.
```

To verify the Antenna Disconnection Detection feature configuration on an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile name rf-profile-24g detailed
```

```
AP Profile Name: rf-profile-24g
```

```
.
.
.
```

```
AP broken antenna detection:
  Status                     : ENABLED
  RSSI threshold              : 40
  Weak RSSI                   : -80
  Detection Time              : 120
```

Verifying Antenna Disconnection Detection (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > AP Statistics**.

Step 2 Click an AP name or anywhere on the row corresponding to an AP in order to activate **General** window.

Step 3 Click the **360 View** tab.

The 360 View tab is the default selection. The **Antenna Monitoring** field indicates whether the AP supports monitoring or not.



CHAPTER 43

Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode on Access Points

- [Information About Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode, on page 503](#)
- [Configuring RRM Neighbor Discovery Mode \(GUI\), on page 504](#)
- [Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode \(CLI\), on page 504](#)
- [Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Type \(CLI\), on page 504](#)
- [Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 505](#)
- [Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 505](#)
- [Monitoring Radio Statistics-NDP Capability and NDP Mode \(GUI\) , on page 506](#)
- [Verifying Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode, on page 507](#)

Information About Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode

In Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor Access Points, the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) packets are transmitted either ON-channel on the serving radio, or OFF-channel on the RF ASIC conventional radio. The controller has a knob to select the NDP mode for Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor APs based on the deployment requirements. In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1, Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor APs support both ON-Channel and OFF-Channel NDP mode.

The Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor AP advertises the following NDP mode capabilities while joining the controller:

- ON-Channel (Serving channel)
- OFF-Channel (RF ASIC radio)
- Both (Serving channel and RF ASIC radio)

The supported values for NDP mode are AUTO and OFF-Channel. By default, the NDP mode is set to AUTO.

If the configured NDP mode is AUTO, the AP determines which NDP mode is to be used. The Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor AP uses ON-Channel when the controller is configured for AUTO NDP mode. If the NDP mode that is configured is OFF-Channel, the AP uses OFF-Channel for NDP mode.

Use Cases

You must configure the controller NDP mode to OFF-channel in order to support brownfield deployment. A brownfield deployment refers to the mixed deployment of Cisco Catalyst 9124AX with other APs that do not

support RF ASIC conventional radio. APs that support RF ASIC conventional radio are Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series Access Points, Cisco Catalyst 9130 Series Access Points, and Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Access Points.

Configuring RRM Neighbor Discovery Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
- Step 2** In the **Radio Resource Management** window, click either the **5 GHz Band** or the **2.4 GHz Band** tab.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, under the **Noise/Interference/Rogue/CleanAir/SI Monitoring Channels** section, click the **RRM Neighbor Discovery Mode** toggle button to configure either of the following modes:
- **AUTO**: If the NDP mode that is configured is **AUTO**, the controller selects ON-Channel as the NDP mode. (The default is set as AUTO).
 - **OFF-CHANNEL**: If the NDP mode configured is **OFF-CHANNEL**, the controller selects **OFF-CHANNEL** as the NDP mode.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode (CLI)

To configure the NDP mode for an AP, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm ndp-mode {auto off-channel} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rrm ndp-mode off-channel	Configures the operating mode for 802.11a neighbor discovery. The Off-channel command enables NDP packets on the RF ASIC radio and the auto command enables the auto mode.

Configuring the Neighbor Discovery Protocol Type (CLI)

To configure the NDP type for an AP , follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm ndp-type {protected transparent} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rrm ndp-type	Configures the NDP type for 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11 6-GHz neighbor discovery. The two types are protected and transparent.

Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add RF Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **General** tab.
- Step 4** Click the **NDP Mode** toggle button to select the NDP mode as **AUTO** or as **OFF-CHANNEL**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode in the RF Profile (CLI)

To configure the NDP mode for an AP under the RF profile, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i>	Enters the RF profile configuration.
Step 3	ndp-mode {auto off-channel} Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# ndp-mode off-channel	Configures the operating mode for neighbor discovery. Off-channel enables NDP packets on the RF ASIC radio and auto enables the auto mode.

Monitoring Radio Statistics-NDP Capability and NDP Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > Radio Statistics**.
- Step 2** Click either **5 GHz Radios**, **2.4 GHz Radios**, or **Dual-Band Radios** tab. The corresponding radio band window displays the list of configured APs.
- Step 3** To view the general attributes of an AP, click the corresponding AP to display the **General** tab. The following information is displayed:
- **AP Name:** Displays the assigned identifier for the AP, which is unique within the network. The AP name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - **IP Address:** Displays the IP address assigned to the AP in dotted-decimal format.
 - **AP Mode:** Displays the configured AP mode. The supported modes are:
 - **Local:** It is the default mode, and it offers a basic service set (BSS) on a specific channel. When the AP does not transmit wireless client frame, it scans other channels to measure noise interference, discover rogue devices, and check for matches against Intrusion Detection System (IDS) events.
 - **Monitor:** An AP in monitor mode does not transmit. It is a dedicated sensor that checks IDS events, detects rogue APs, and determines the position of wireless stations.
 - **Sniffer:** The controller enables you to configure an AP as a network *sniffer*, which captures and forwards all the packets on a particular channel to a remote machine that runs packet analyzer software. These packets contain information on time stamps, signal strength, packet sizes, and so on. Sniffers allow you to monitor and record network activity and detect problems.
 - **Bridge:** The AP becomes a dedicated point-to-point or point-to-multipoint bridge. Two APs in bridge mode can connect two remote sites. Multiple APs can also form an indoor or outdoor mesh. Note that you cannot connect to the bridge with clients.
 - **Clear:** Returns the AP back to client-serving mode depending on the remote site tag configuration.

- **MAC Address:** Displays the registered MAC address on the controller.
 - **Number of Slots :** Displays the number of slots supported by the AP.
 - **Radio Type:** Displays the radio band configured on the controller. By default, both, 802.11b/g/n (2.4-GHz) and 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) bands are enabled.
 - **Slot ID:** Displays the slot on which radio is installed.
 - **Sub band Type:** Displays the configured radio sub-band.
 - **NDP Capability:** Displays the supported Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) capability. The AP advertises the following NDP mode capabilities while joining the controller:
 - ON-Channel (Serving channel)
 - OFF-Channel (RHL radio)
 - Both (Serving channel and RHL radio)
- Note**
Only Cisco Catalyst 9124AX outdoor Access Points support both ON-channel and OFF-channel NDP capability from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1.
- **NDP Mode:** Displays the configured NDP mode. If the NDP mode that is configured is AUTO, the controller selects ON-Channel as the NDP mode. If the NDP-mode that is configured is OFF-Channel, the controller selects OFF-Channel as the NDP mode.

Verifying Neighbor Discovery Protocol Mode

To verify the NDP mode, run the following commands:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name test-24g
Description                : test
RF Profile Name            : test-24g
Band                      : 2.4 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power        : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power        : 30 dBm
.
.
.
NDP mode                   : Auto
.
.
.

Device# show ap rf-profile name test-5g detail
Description                : Test
RF Profile Name            : test-5g
Band                      : 5 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power        : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power        : 30 dBm
.
.
.
```

```

.
NDP mode                               : Off-channel
.
.
.

Device# show ap name ap-name config dot11 24ghz
Cisco AP Identifier                     : 3cxx.0exx.36xx
Cisco AP Name                           : Cisco-9105AXW-AP
Country Code                           : Multiple Countries: US,MK,J4,IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country   : 802.11bg:-AEJPQU 802.11a:-ABDEIJNPQU
AP Country Code                         : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain                    : -A
MAC Address                             : 5cxx.0dxx.e0xx
IP Address Configuration                 : DHCP
.
.
.
NDP mode                               : Off-channel
.
.
.

Device# show ap name ap-name config dot11 5ghz
Cisco AP Identifier                     : 3cxx.0exx.36xx
Cisco AP Name                           : Cisco-9105AXW-AP
Country Code                           : Multiple Countries: US,MK,J4,IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country   : 802.11bg:-AEJPQU 802.11a:-ABDEIJNPQU
AP Country Code                         : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain                    : -B
MAC Address                             : 5cxx.0dxx.e0xx
IP Address Configuration                 : DHCP
IP Address                             : Disabled
.
.
.
NDP mode                               : On-channel
.
.
.

Device# show ap dot11 24ghz monitor
Default 802.11b AP monitoring
  802.11b Monitor Mode                  : Enabled
  802.11b Monitor Channels               : Country channels
  802.11b RRM Neighbor Discover Type     : Transparent
  802.11b AP Coverage Interval           : 180 seconds
  802.11b AP Load Interval              : 60 seconds
  802.11b AP Measurement Interval        : 180 seconds
  802.11b AP Reporting Interval          : 180 seconds
  802.11b NDP RSSI Normalization         : Enabled
  802.11b Neighbor Timeout factor        : 20
  802.11b NDP mode                       : Auto

Device# show ap dot11 5ghz monitor
Default 802.11a AP monitoring
  802.11a Monitor Mode                  : Enabled
  802.11a Monitor Channels               : Country channels
  802.11a RRM Neighbor Discover Type     : Transparent
  802.11a AP Coverage Interval           : 180 seconds
  802.11a AP Load Interval              : 60 seconds
  802.11a AP Measurement Interval        : 180 seconds
  802.11a AP Reporting Interval          : 180 seconds
  802.11a NDP RSSI Normalization         : Enabled
  802.11a Neighbor Timeout factor        : 20
  802.11a NDP mode                       : Auto

```



CHAPTER 44

6-GHz Band Operations

The following topics describe the features that are specific to 6-GHz band radio:

- [Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 509](#)
- [Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 510](#)
- [Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 510](#)
- [Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 511](#)
- [Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 511](#)
- [Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 512](#)
- [Configuring Multi BSSID Profile \(GUI\), on page 512](#)
- [Configuring Multi BSSID Profile, on page 513](#)
- [Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 513](#)
- [Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 514](#)
- [Configuring Dynamic Channel Assignment Freeze \(CLI\), on page 514](#)
- [Information About 6-GHz Client Steering, on page 515](#)

Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio .
Step 2	In the RF tab, click Add . The Add RF Profile page is displayed.
Step 3	Choose the RRM tab.
Step 4	Choose the DCA tab.
Step 5	In the Dynamic Channel Assignment section, select the required channels in DCA Channels section.
Step 6	In the PSC Bias field, click the toggle button to enable the preferred scanning channel bias for DCA.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Preferred Scanning Channels in the RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i>	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	channel psc Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# channel psc	Configures the RF Profile DCA settings and enables the preferred scanning channel bias for DCA.

Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click **Add**.
The **Add RF Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Choose the **802.11ax** tab.
- Step 4** In the **6 GHz Discovery Frames** section, click the **Broadcast Probe Response** option.
- Step 5** In the **Broadcast Probe Response Interval** field, enter the broadcast probe response time interval in milli-seconds (ms). The value range is between 5 ms and 25 ms. The default value is 20 ms.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Broadcast Probe Response in RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i>	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11ax bcast-probe-response Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# dot11ax bcast-probe-response	Configures broadcast probe response.
Step 4	dot11ax bcast-probe-response time-interval <i>time-interval</i> Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# dot11ax bcast-probe-response time-interval 20	Configures broadcast probe response interval.

Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click **Add**.
The **Add RF Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Choose the **802.11ax** tab.
- Step 4** In the **6 GHz Discovery Frames** section, click the **FILS Discovery** option.

Note

To prevent the transmission of discovery FILS frames when the discovery frames are set to **None** in the RF profile, ensure that you disable FILS discovery frames by either switching to the 5-GHz or the 2.4-GHz bands on the AP or by selecting the Broadcast Probe Response option.

Step 5 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring FILS Discovery Frames in the RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile rf-profile-name Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile rf-profile-name	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11ax fils-discovery Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# dot11ax fils-discovery	Configures the 802.11ax FILS discovery. Note To prevent the transmission of discovery FILS frames when the discovery frames are set to None in the RF profile, ensure that you disable FILS discovery frames by either switching to the 5-GHz or the 2.4-GHz bands on the AP or by changing to Broadcast Probe Response.

Configuring Multi BSSID Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Multi BSSID**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Multi BSSID Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Enter the name and the description of the BSSID profile.
- Step 4** Enter the following 802.11ax parameters:
- Downlink OFDMA**
 - Uplink OFDMA**
 - Downlink MU-MIMO**
 - Uplink MU-MIMO**
 - Target Waketime**

f) TWT Broadcast Support

Step 5 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Multi BSSID Profile

To configure the multi BSSID profile for 6-GHz band radio, follow the steps given below:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile multi-bssid <i>multi-bssid-profile-name</i> Example: Device (config)# wireless profile multi-bssid <i>multi-bssid-profile-name</i>	Configures the multi BSSID profile. Enters the multi BSSID profile configuration.
Step 3	dot11ax {downlink-mumimo downlink-ofdma target-waketime twt-broadcast uplink-mumimo uplink-ofdma} Example: Device (config-wireless-multi-bssid-profile)# dot11ax downlink-mumimo	Configures the 802.11ax parameters.

Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.
- Step 2** In the **RF** tab, click **Add**.
The **Add RF Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Choose the **802.11ax** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Multi BSSID Profile** field, choose the profile from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Multi-BSSID in the RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile rf-profile-name Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile rf-profile-name	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11ax multi-bssid-profile multi-bssid-profile-name Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# dot11ax multi-bssid-profile multi-bssid-profile-name	Configures 802.11ax multi BSSID profile name, in the RF profile configuration mode.

Configuring Dynamic Channel Assignment Freeze (CLI)

When the 6-GHz radios receive the right channels, disable DCA for 6-GHz by issuing the following command:

Before you begin

Ensure that Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) for 6-GHz is enabled. Wait for the 6-GHz radios to get stabilized with the right set of channel assignments.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	no ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca global auto Example: Device# no ap dot11 6ghz rrm channel dca global auto	Disables DCA for 6-GHz bands.

Information About 6-GHz Client Steering

The 6-GHz band provides more channels, more bandwidth, and has less network congestion when compared to the existing 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands. As a result, wireless clients that are 6-GHz capable connect to the 6-GHz radio to take advantage of these benefits.

This topic provides details about 6-GHz client steering for APs supporting 6-GHz band.

The 6-GHz client steering takes place when the controller receives a periodic client statistics report from the 2.4-GHz band or the 5-GHz band. The client steering configuration is enabled under WLAN, and is configured only for clients that are 6-GHz capable. If a client in the report is 6-GHz capable, then client steering is triggered, and the client is steered to the 6-GHz band.



Note Client steering to 6-GHz will not work if the SSID is used as OWE transition mode.

Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering in the Global Configuration Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Advanced .
Step 2	Click the 6 GHz Client Steering tab. Client steering is configurable per WLAN.
Step 3	In the 6 GHz Transition Minimum Client Count field, enter a value to set the minimum number of clients for client steering. The default value is three clients. The value range is between 0 and 200 clients.
Step 4	In the 6 GHz Transition Minimum Window Size field, enter a value to set the minimum window size of client steering. The default value is three clients. The value range is between 0 and 200 clients.
Step 5	In the 6 GHz Transition Maximum Utilization Difference field, enter a value to set the maximum utilization difference for steering. The value range is between 0 percent to 100 percent. The default value is 20.
Step 6	In the 6 GHz Transition Minimum 2.4 GHz RSSI Threshold field, enter a value to set the minimum value for client steering 2.4-GHz RSSI threshold.
Step 7	In the 6 GHz Transition Minimum 5 GHz RSSI Threshold field, enter a value to set the minimum value for client steering 5-GHz RSSI threshold.
Step 8	Click Apply .
-

Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering in the Global Configuration Mode

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless client client-steering client-count min-num-clients Example: Device(config)# client-steering client-count 3	Sets the minimum number of clients for client steering. The value range is between 0 and 200.
Step 3	wireless client client-steering window-size window-size Example: Device(config)# client-steering window-size 5	Sets the minimum window size of client steering. The value range is between 0 and 200.
Step 4	wireless client client-steering util-threshold threshold Example: Device(config)# wireless client client-steering util-threshold 25	Sets the maximum channel utilization difference (2.4-GHz or 5-GHz to 6-GHz) for steering. The value range is between 0 to 100 percent.
Step 5	wireless client client-steering min-rssi-24ghz -70 Example: Device(config)# wireless client client-steering min-rssi-24ghz -70	Sets the minimum value for client steering the 2.4-GHz RSSI threshold.
Step 6	wireless client client-steering min-rssi-5ghz -75 Example: Device(config)# wireless client client-steering min-rssi-5ghz -75	Sets the minimum value for client steering the 5-GHz RSSI threshold.

Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering on the WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.

- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add WLAN** page is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Check the **6 GHz Client Steering** check box to enable client steering on the WLAN.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring 6-GHz Client Steering on the WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-name 18 ssid-name	Enters WLAN configuration submode.
Step 3	client-steering Example: Device(config-wlan)# client-steering	Configures 6-GHz client steering on the WLAN.

Verifying 6-GHz Client Steering

To verify client steering, run the following commands:

```
Device# show wlan wlan-id
WLAN Profile Name      : wlan1
=====
Identifier              : 1
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : ssid-demo
Status                 : Disabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
.
.
.
6Ghz Client Steering   : Enabled
.
.
.

Device# show wireless client steering
Client Steering Configuration Information
Macro to micro transition threshold      : -55 dBm
Micro to Macro transition threshold     : -65 dBm
Micro-Macro transition minimum client count : 3
```

```

Micro-Macro transition client balancing window      : 3
Probe suppression mode                             : Disabled
Probe suppression transition aggressiveness         : 3
Probe suppression hysteresis                       : -6 dB
6Ghz transition minimum client count               : 3
6Ghz transition minimum window size                : 3
6Ghz transition maximum channel util difference    : 20%
6Ghz transition minimum 2.4Ghz RSSI threshold      : -60 dBm
6Ghz transition minimum 5Ghz RSSI threshold       : -65 dBm

```

WLAN Configuration Information

WLAN Profile Name	11k Neighbor Report	11v BSS Transition
12 test1	Enabled	Enabled
8 test	Enabled	Enabled



PART **V**

Network Management

- [AP Packet Capture, on page 521](#)
- [DHCP Option82, on page 525](#)
- [RADIUS Realm, on page 537](#)
- [RADIUS Accounting, on page 545](#)
- [RADIUS Call Station Identifier, on page 551](#)
- [RADIUS VSA, on page 553](#)
- [Cisco StadiumVision, on page 559](#)
- [Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 563](#)
- [Network Monitoring, on page 565](#)
- [Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account, on page 569](#)
- [Lobby Ambassador Account, on page 573](#)
- [Guest User Accounts, on page 581](#)
- [Link Local Bridging, on page 585](#)
- [Web Admin Settings, on page 589](#)
- [Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS Server, on page 595](#)
- [Embedded Packet Capture, on page 599](#)
- [Layer 3 Access, on page 605](#)



CHAPTER 45

AP Packet Capture

- [Introduction to AP Client Packet Capture, on page 521](#)
- [Enabling Packet Capture \(GUI\), on page 521](#)
- [Enabling Packet Capture \(CLI\), on page 522](#)
- [Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile \(GUI\), on page 522](#)
- [Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile, on page 523](#)
- [Start or Stop Packet Capture, on page 523](#)

Introduction to AP Client Packet Capture

The AP Client Packet Capture feature allows the packets on an AP to be captured for wireless client troubleshooting. The packet capture operation is performed on the AP by the radio drivers on the current channel on which it is operational, based on the specified packet capture filter. All the packets that are captured for a specific client are uploaded to a file in the FTP server. This file can be opened in Wireshark for packet inspection.

Limitations for AP Client Packet Capture

- The packet capture task can be performed for only one client at a time per site.
- Packet capture can be started on a specific AP or a set of APs using static mode. It can be started or stopped for the same client on different APs, when the capture is in progress.

When packet capture is started in auto mode, system automatically selects the set of nearby APs to start packet capture for a specific client. In this mode, you cannot start or stop packet capture on individual APs. Use the **stop all** command to stop the packet capture when it is started in auto-mode.

- After the SSO is complete, the packet capture action will not continue after a switchover.

Enabling Packet Capture (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Troubleshooting > AP Packet Capture**.

- Step 2** On the **Troubleshooting** page, in the **Start Packet Capture** section, in the **Client MAC Address** field, enter the client's MAC address. Enter the MAC address either in `xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx`, `xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx`, or `xxxx.xxxx.xxxx` format.
- Step 3** From the **Capture Mode** options, choose **Auto**.
- Step 4** Click **Start**.

Enabling Packet Capture (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to enable packet capture:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap packet-capture start <i>client-mac-address</i> auto Example: Device# ap packet-capture start 0011.0011.0011 auto	Enables packet capture for the specified client on a set of nearby access points.

Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join Profile**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to create a new AP Join Profile and enter the requisite details.
- Step 3** In the **Add AP Join Profile** area, click **AP > Packet Capture**.
- Step 4** Click the **Plus** icon to create a new Packet Capture profile or select one from the drop-down menu.
- Step 5** Click **Save**.

Create AP Packet Capture Profile and Map to an AP Join Profile

While packet capture profile configurations are used for an AP, the packet capture profile is mapped to an AP profile. The AP profile is in turn mapped to site tag.

While starting packet capture, APs use the packet capture profile configurations based on the site and AP join profile they belong to.

Follow the procedure given below to create an AP packet capture profile and map it to an AP join profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode..
Step 2	wireless profile ap packet-capture <i>packet-capture-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile ap packet-capture test1	Configures an AP profile.
Step 3	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures an AP packet capture profile.
Step 4	packet-capture <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# packet-capture capture-test	Enables packet capture on the AP profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 6	show wireless profile ap packet-capture detailed <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device# show wireless profile ap packet-capture detailed test1	Displays detailed information of the selected AP packet capture profile.

Start or Stop Packet Capture

Perform either of these tasks to start or stop a packet capture procedure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap packet-capture start <i>client-mac-address</i> { auto static <i>ap-name</i> } Example: Device# ap packet-capture start 0011.0011.0011 auto	Enables packet capture for a client.
Step 2	ap packet-capture stop <i>client-mac-address</i> { all static <i>ap-name</i> } Example: Device# ap packet-capture stop 0011.0011.0011 all	Disables packet capture for a client.



CHAPTER 46

DHCP Option82

- [Information About DHCP Option 82, on page 525](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface, on page 527](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format, on page 529](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface, on page 530](#)
- [Information About AP DHCP Option 82 Support on FlexConnect Local Switching Mode, on page 535](#)
- [Configuring AP DHCP Option82 Support, on page 535](#)
- [Verifying AP DHCP Option82 Support, on page 536](#)

Information About DHCP Option 82

DHCP Option 82 is organized as a single DHCP option that contains information known by the relay agent. This feature provides additional security when DHCP is used to allocate network addresses, and enables the Cisco controller to act as a DHCP relay agent to prevent DHCP client requests from untrusted sources.

The controller can be configured to add Option 82 information to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding the requests to a DHCP server. The DHCP server can then be configured to allocate IP addresses to the wireless client based on the information present in DHCP Option 82.

DHCP provides a framework for passing configuration information to hosts on a TCP/IP network. Configuration parameters and other control information are carried in tagged data items that are stored in the Options field of the DHCP message. The data items themselves are also called options. Option 82 contains information known by the relay agent.

The Relay Agent Information option is organized as a single DHCP option that contains one or more suboptions that convey information known by the relay agent. Option 82 was designed to allow a DHCP Relay Agent to insert circuit-specific information into a request that is being forwarded to a DHCP server. This option works by setting two suboptions:

- Circuit ID
- Remote ID

The Circuit ID suboption includes information that is specific to the circuit the request came in on. This suboption is an identifier that is specific to the relay agent. Thus, the circuit that is described will vary depending on the relay agent.

The Remote ID suboption includes information on the remote host–end of the circuit. This suboption usually contains information that identifies the relay agent. In a wireless network, this would likely be a unique identifier of the wireless access point.



Note All valid Remote ID combinations are separated with a colon (:) as the delimiter.



Note IP MAC binding is required for DHCP Option 82 to work in some situations.

You can configure the following DHCP Option 82 options in a controller :

- DHCP Enable
- DHCP Opt82 Enable
- DHCP Opt82 Ascii
- DHCP Opt82 RID
- DHCP Opt Format
- DHCP AP MAC
- DHCP SSID
- DHCP AP ETH MAC
- DHCP AP NAME
- DHCP Site Tag
- DHCP AP Location
- DHCP VLAN ID



Note The controller includes the SSID in ASCII and the VLAN-ID in hexadecimal format within the remote-ID sub-option of option 82 in the outgoing DHCP packets to the server for the following configurations:

```
ipv4 dhcp opt82 format ssid
ipv4 dhcp opt82 format vlan-id
```

However, if *ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii* configuration is also present, the controller adds VLAN-ID and SSID in ASCII format.

For Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Best Practices, see the following link: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/guide-c07-743627.html>

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Global Interface

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Server Override (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp-relay information option server-override Example: Device(config)# <code>ip dhcp-relay information option server-override</code>	Inserts global server override and link selection suboptions.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Server Override (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override [cisco standard] Example: Device(config)# <code>ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override cisco</code>	Configures the server override suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value.
Step 3	ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection [cisco standard] Example: Device(config)# <code>ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection cisco</code>	Configures the link-selection suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > VLAN**.
- Step 2** Choose a VLAN from the drop-down list.
The **Edit SVI** window appears.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Choose an option from the **IPv4 Inbound ACL** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Choose an option from the **IPv4 Outbound ACL** drop-down list.
- Step 6** Choose an option from the **IPv6 Inbound ACL** drop-down list.
- Step 7** Choose an option from the **IPv6 Outbound ACL** drop-down list.
- Step 8** Enter an IP address in the **IPv4 Helper Address** field.
- Step 9** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Relay Information Option** setting.
- Step 10** Enter the **Subscriber ID**.
- Step 11** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Server ID Override** setting.
- Step 12** Set the status to **Enabled** if you want to enable the **Option Insert** setting.
- Step 13** Choose an option from the **Source-Interface Vlan** drop-down list.
- Step 14** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Globally Through Different SVIs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp-relay source-interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp-relay source-interface vlan 74	Sets global source interface for relayed messages.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Format

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy <i>pp3</i>	Enables configuration for the specified profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Shuts down the profile policy.
Step 4	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 72	Assigns the profile policy to a VLAN.
Step 5	session-timeout <i>value-btwn-20-86400</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# session-timeout 300	(Optional) Sets the session timeout value in seconds. The range is between 20-86400.
Step 6	idle-timeout <i>value-btwn-15-100000</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# idle-timeout 15	(Optional) Sets the idle timeout value in seconds. The range is between 15-100000.
Step 7	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Enables central switching.
Step 8	ipv4 dhcp opt82 Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82	Enables DHCP Option 82 for the wireless clients.
Step 9	ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii Example:	(Optional) Enables ASCII on the DHCP Option 82 feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii	
Step 10	ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid	(Optional) Supports the addition of Cisco 2 byte Remote ID (RID) for the DHCP Option 82 feature.
Step 11	ipv4 dhcp opt82 format {ap_mac ap_hostname apmac apname policy sg sid vlan-id} Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 format apmac	Enables DHCP Option 82 on the corresponding AP. For information on the various options available with the command, see Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference .
Step 12	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the profile policy.

Configuring DHCP Option82 Through a VLAN Interface

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Option-Insert Command (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 72	Configures a VLAN ID.
Step 3	ip dhcp relay information option-insert Example: Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option-insert	Inserts relay information in BOOTREQUEST.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if) # ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 5	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if) # ip helper-address 9.3.72.1	Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 6	[no] mop enabled Example: Device(config-if) # no mop enabled	Disables the MOP for an interface.
Step 7	[no] mop sysid Example: Device(config-apgroup) # [no] mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through the server-ID-override Command (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override cisco Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp compatibility suboption server-override cisco	Configures the server-id override suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value.
Step 3	ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection cisco Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp compatibility suboption link-selection cisco	Configures the link-selection suboption to an RFC or Cisco specific value.
Step 4	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config) # interface vlan 72	Configures a VLAN ID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override Example: Device(config-if) # ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override	Inserts the server id override and link selection suboptions.
Step 6	ip address ip-address Example: Device(config-if) # ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 7	ip helper-address ip-address Example: Device(config-if) # ip helper-address 9.3.72.1	Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 8	[no] mop enabled Example: Device(config-if) # no mop enabled	Disables MOP for an interface.
Step 9	[no] mop sysid Example: Device(config-if) # [no] mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through a Subscriber-ID (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan vlan-id Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 72	Configures a VLAN ID.
Step 3	ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id subscriber-id Example: Device(config-if) # ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id test10	Inserts the subscriber identifier suboption.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if) # ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 5	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if) # ip helper-address 9.3.72.1	Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 6	[no] mop enabled Example: Device(config-if) # no mop enabled	Disables MOP for an interface.
Step 7	[no] mop sysid Example: Device(config-apgroup) # [no] mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through server-ID-override and subscriber-ID Commands (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config) # interface vlan 72	Configures a VLAN ID.
Step 3	ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override Example: Device(config-if) # ip dhcp relay information option server-id-override	Inserts server ID override and link selection suboptions.
Step 4	ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id <i>subscriber-id</i> Example:	Inserts the subscriber identifier suboption.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information option subscriber-id test10	
Step 5	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 6	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1	Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 7	[no] mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the MOP for an interface.
Step 8	[no] mop sysid Example: Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.

Configuring DHCP Option 82 Through Different SVIs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 72	Configures a VLAN ID.
Step 3	ip dhcp relay source-interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip dhcp relay source-interface vlan 74	Configures a source interface for relayed messages on a VLAN ID.
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 9.3.72.38 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.3.72.1	Configure the destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 6	[no] mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the MOP for an interface.
Step 7	[no] mop sysid Example: Device(config-apgroup)# [no] mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.

Information About AP DHCP Option 82 Support on FlexConnect Local Switching Mode

The DHCP Option 82 provides additional information on the physical attachment of the client. It enhances security while using DHCP for network address allocation.

The AP DHCP Option82 Support on FlexConnect Local Switching Mode feature enables the AP to act as a DHCP relay agent to prevent DHCP client requests from unreliable sources. As a DHCP relay agent, the AP can add DHCP Option 82 information such as AP MAC, AP Name, and SSID to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding the requests to the DHCP server. Afterward, the DHCP servers can allocate IP addresses to wireless clients based on the data contained within DHCP Option 82.

This feature is supported only in FlexConnect Local Switching mode.

Configuring AP DHCP Option82 Support

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-ap	Enables configuration for the specified profile policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Shuts down the profile policy.
Step 4	ipv4 dhcp opt82 format { apmac apname } Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 format apmac	Configures the AP MAC address or the AP name format to be added to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding them to the DHCP server. You can use either apmac or apname , but not both.
Step 5	ipv4 dhcp opt82 format ssid Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 format ssid	Configures the unique SSID format to be added to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding them to the DHCP server.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the profile policy.

Verifying AP DHCP Option82 Support

To verify the configured parameters for DHCP Option82, use the following command on the AP console:



Note You can fetch information about the WLAN and WLAN ID using the **show flexconnect wlan** command.

```
Device# show flexconnect dhcp option-82 wlan 1
```

```
DHCP OPTION 82 CONFIG FOR WLAN:
```

```
VAP ID      :0
Format      :Binary
Delimiter    :":"
Circuit-ID   :
Remote-ID    :
  AP Name
  SSID-Name
```

To verify whether DHCP Option82 is enabled on the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed
```

```
Opt82
  SSID                : ENABLED
  AP_ETHMAC           : DISABLED
  APNAME              : ENABLED
```



CHAPTER 47

RADIUS Realm

- [Information About RADIUS Realm, on page 537](#)
- [Enabling RADIUS Realm, on page 538](#)
- [Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting, on page 538](#)
- [Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN, on page 539](#)
- [Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration, on page 541](#)

Information About RADIUS Realm

The RADIUS Realm feature is associated with the domain of the user. Using this feature, a client can choose the RADIUS server through which authentication and accounting is to be processed.

When mobile clients are associated with a WLAN, RADIUS realm is received as a part of Extensible Authentication Protocol Method for UMTS Authentication and Key Agreement (EAP-AKA) identity response request in the authentication request packet. The Network Access Identifier (NAI) format (EAP-AKA) for WLAN can be specified as *username@domain.com*. The realm in the NAI format is represented after the @ symbol, which is specified as domain.com. If vendor-specific attributes are added as *test*, the NAI format is represented as *test@domain.com*.

The RADIUS Realm feature can be enabled and disabled on a WLAN. If Realm is enabled on a WLAN, the corresponding user should send the username in the NAI format. The controller sends the authentication request to the AAA server only when the realm, which is in the NAI format and is received from the client, is compiled as per the given standards. Apart from authentication, accounting requests are also required to be sent to the AAA server based on realm filtering.

Realm Support on a WLAN

Each WLAN is configured to support NAI realms. After the realm is enabled on a particular SSID, the lookup is done to match the realms received in the EAP identity response against the configured realms on the RADIUS server. If the client does not send a username with the realm, the default RADIUS server that is configured on the WLAN is used for authentication. If the realm that is received from the client does not match the configured realms on the WLAN, the client is deauthenticated and dropped.

If the RADIUS Realm feature is not enabled on a WLAN, the username that is received as part of the EAP identity request is directly used as the username and the configured RADIUS server is used for authentication and accounting. By default, the RADIUS Realm feature is disabled on WLANs.

- **Realm Match for Authentication:** In dot1x with EAP methods (similar to EAP AKA), the username is received as part of an EAP identity response. A realm is derived from the username and are matched

with the realms that are already configured in the corresponding RADIUS authentication server. If there is a match, the authentication requests are forwarded to the RADIUS server. If there is a mismatch, the client is deauthenticated.

- **Realm Match for Accounting:** A client's username is received through an access-accept message. When accounting messages are triggered, the realm is derived from the corresponding client's username and compared with the accounting realms configured on the RADIUS accounting server. If there is a match, accounting requests are forwarded to the RADIUS server. If there is a mismatch, accounting requests are dropped.

Enabling RADIUS Realm

Follow the procedure given below to enable RADIUS realm:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless aaa policy <i>aaa-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless aaa policy policy-1	Creates a new AAA policy.
Step 3	aaa-realm enable Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# aaa-realm enable	Enables AAA RADIUS realm selection. Note Use the no aaa-realm enable or the default aaa-realm enable command to disable the RADIUS realm.

Configuring Realm to Match the RADIUS Server for Authentication and Accounting

Follow the procedure given below to configure the realm to match the RADIUS server for authentication and accounting:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Creates a AAA authentication model.
Step 3	aaa authorization network default group <i>radius-server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group aaa_group_name	Sets the authorization method.
Step 4	aaa authentication dot1x realm group <i>radius-server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x cisco.com group cisco1	Indicates that dot1x must use the realm group RADIUS server.
Step 5	aaa authentication login realm group <i>radius-server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication login cisco.com group cisco1	Defines the authentication method at login.
Step 6	aaa accounting identity realm start-stop group <i>radius-server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa accounting identity cisco.com start-stop group cisco1	Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized, and a stop-record at the end.

Configuring the AAA Policy for a WLAN

Follow the procedure given below to configure the AAA policy for a WLAN:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wireless aaa policy <i>aaa-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless aaa policy aaa-policy-1	Creates a new AAA policy for wireless.
Step 3	aaa-realm enable Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# aaa-realm enable	Enables AAA RADIUS server selection by realm.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy wlan-policy-a	Configures a WLAN policy profile.
Step 6	aaa-policy <i>aaa-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-policy aaa-policy-1	Maps the AAA policy.
Step 7	accounting-list <i>acct-config-realm</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list cisco.com	Sets the accounting list.
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 9	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan2 14 wlan-aaa	Configures a WLAN.
Step 10	security dot1x authentication-list <i>auth-list-realm</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list cisco.com	Enables the security authentication list for IEEE 802.1x.
Step 11	exit Example:	Returns to global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	
Step 12	wireless tag policy <i>policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy tag-policy-1	Configures a policy tag.
Step 13	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy <i>policy-profile</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan Abc-wlan policy wlan-policy-a	Maps a policy profile to the WLAN.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying the RADIUS-Realm Configuration

Use the following command to verify the RADIUS-realm configuration:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 14bd.61f3.6a24 detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : 14bd.61f3.6a24
Client IPv4 Address : 9.4.113.103
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::286e:9fe0:7fa6:8f4
Client Username : sacthoma@cisco.com
AP MAC Address : 4c77.6d79.5a00
AP Name: AP4c77.6d53.20ec
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : name-policy-profile
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id : 3
Wireless LAN Name: ha_realm_WLAN_WPA2_AES_DOT1X
BSSID : 4c77.6d79.5a0f
Connected For : 26 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ac
Channel : 44
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Client CCX version : No CCX support
Re-Authentication Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1775 sec)
Input Policy Name : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 0
  APSD ACs      : BK, BE, VI, VO
```

```

Fastlane Support : Disabled
Power Save : OFF
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
  Move Count : 0
  Mobility Role : Local
  Mobility Roam Type : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 06/12/2018 19:52:35 IST
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 25 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : PEAP
VLAN : 113
Multicast VLAN : 0
Access VLAN : 113
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Managed WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Interface : capwap_9040000f
  IIF ID : 0x9040000F
  Authorized : TRUE
  Session timeout : 1800
  Common Session ID: 0977040900000000DF4607B3B
  Acct Session ID : 0x00000fa2
  Aaa Server Details
    Server IP : 9.4.23.50
  Auth Method Status List
    Method : Dot1x
      SM State : AUTHENTICATED
      SM Bend State : IDLE
  Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_name-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
    VLAN : 113
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
    VLAN : 113
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
FlexConnect Data Switching : Central
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : Central
FlexConnect Authentication : Central
FlexConnect Central Association : No

```



```
.  
.   
.   
Fabric status : Disabled  
Client Scan Reports  
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
```




CHAPTER 48

RADIUS Accounting

- [Information About RADIUS Accounting of AP Events, on page 545](#)
- [Configuring Accounting Method-List for an AP Profile, on page 545](#)
- [Verifying the AP Accounting Information, on page 546](#)
- [AAA Accounting, on page 546](#)
- [Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data, on page 548](#)
- [Information About Device Ecosystem Data, on page 548](#)
- [Enable Device Ecosystem Data, on page 548](#)
- [Verify Device Ecosystem Data, on page 549](#)

Information About RADIUS Accounting of AP Events

This topic describes the configuration of a RADIUS server to monitor a network with regards to Access Points (APs). Prior to Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 release, during times of network issues, the controller would not send accounting messages when APs join and disjoin from the controller. From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1 release onwards, the RADIUS server keeps a record of all the APs that were down and have come up.

Configuring Accounting Method-List for an AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device#configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i>	Configures the AP profile. The default AP join profile name is <i>default-ap-profile</i> .

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	[no] accounting method-list <i>method-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] accounting method-list <i>method-list-name</i></pre>	Configures the accounting method list for the AP profile. Use the no form of this command to disable the command.

Verifying the AP Accounting Information

To verify the AP accounting information, use the following command:

```
Device#show wireless stats ap accounting
Base MAC          Total packet Send    Total packet Received Methodlist
-----
00b0.e192.0f20    4          3          abc
38ed.18cc.5788    8          8          ML_M
70ea.1ae0.af08    0          0          ML_A
```

To view the details of a method list that is configured for an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device#show ap profile name Method-list detailed
AP Profile Name      : test-profile
Description          :
.
.
.
Method-list name      : Method-list
Packet Sequence Jump DELBA : ENABLED
Lag status            : DISABLED
.
Client RSSI Statistics
  Reporting            : ENABLED
  Reporting Interval   : 30 seconds
```

AAA Accounting

Configuring AAA Accounting Using Default Method List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa accounting commands <i>privilege_level</i> default start-stop group <i>group-name</i> Example:	Creates an accounting method list and enables accounting. • <i>privilege_level</i>: AAA accounting level. The valid range is from 0 to 15.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# aaa accounting commands 15 default start-stop group group-name	• <i>group-name</i>: AAA accounting group that supports only TACACS+ group.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring HTTP Command Accounting Using Named Method List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip http accounting commands <i>level</i> <i>named-accounting-method-list</i> Example: Device(config)# ip http accounting commands 1 oneacct	Configures HTTP command accounting using the named method list. • <i>level</i>: Privilege value from 0 to 15. By default, the following command privilege levels are available on the controller: • <i>0</i>: Includes the disable, enable, exit, help, and logout commands. • <i>1</i>: Includes all the user-level commands at the controller prompt (>). • <i>15</i>: Includes all the enable-level commands at the controller prompt (>). • <i>named-accounting-method-list</i>: Name of the predefined command accounting method list.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 41: Feature History for Device Ecosystem Data

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Device Ecosystem Data	This feature sends device analytics data in the RADIUS accounting request to Cisco ISE to profile the endpoints.

Information About Device Ecosystem Data

Edge analytics is the process of collecting, processing, and analyzing data from devices in a network. The controller learns about endpoint attributes, such as model number, operating system version, and other information from a set of endpoints using device analytics. The device analytics data is further shared with Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) to profile the endpoints. This information sharing is in addition to the DHCP and HTTP attributes already being shared with Cisco ISE using RADIUS accounting messages.

Enable Device Ecosystem Data



Note Before proceeding with the configuration, ensure that device classifier and accounting features are enabled.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures a wireless policy profile.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	radius-profiling Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # radius-profiling	Configures client radius profiling.
Step 5	dot11-tlv-accounting Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # dot11-tlv-accounting	Configures the controller to send device analytics data that is found in the RADIUS accounting request to Cisco ISE in order to profile the endpoints. The no form of this command disables the feature.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verify Device Ecosystem Data

Use the following command to verify device ecosystem data in RADIUS accounting configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed <name>
```

```
.
.
.
WLAN Local Profiling
  Subscriber Policy Name      : Not Configured
  RADIUS Profiling            : ENABLED
  HTTP TLV caching            : DISABLED
  DHCP TLV caching            : DISABLED
  DOT11 TLV accounting        : ENABLED
.
.
.
```




CHAPTER 49

RADIUS Call Station Identifier

- [RADIUS Call Station Identifier, on page 551](#)
- [Configuring a RADIUS Call Station Identifier, on page 552](#)

RADIUS Call Station Identifier

The RADIUS called station identifier attribute allows a Network Access Server (NAS) to capture the Access-Request packet used by a phone number by means of Dialed Number Identification (DNIS) or similar technology. The IEEE 802.1X authenticators can use this attribute to store the bridge or Access Point MAC address in ASCII format.

The called station identifier allows a RADIUS server to specify the MAC addresses or networks that a client can connect. One such attribute can be added in the Access-Request packet. The called station identifier is useful in scenarios where preauthentication is supported. In such instances, the called station identifier enables the RADIUS server to restrict the networks and attachment points the client can connect.



Note The called station identifier attribute is applicable only for Access-Request and not for Access-Accept or CoA-Request.

In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.1, the RADIUS called station identifier configuration is enhanced to include more attributes. The newly added options for authentication and accounting are listed below:

- policy-tag-name
- flex-profile-name
- ap-macaddress-ssid-flexprofilename
- ap-macaddress-ssid-policytagname
- ap-macaddress-ssid-sitetagname
- ap-ethmac-ssid-flexprofilename
- ap-ethmac-ssid-policytagname
- ap-ethmac-ssid-sitetagname

For more information on the attributes listed above, see the following commands:

- radius-server attribute wireless accounting call-station-id
- radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id

Configuring a RADIUS Call Station Identifier

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id policy-tag-name Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id policy-tag-name	Configures a call station identifier sent in the RADIUS authentication messages.
Step 3	radius-server attribute wireless accounting call-station-id policy-tag-name Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless accounting call-station-id policy-tag-name	Configures a call station identifier sent in the RADIUS accounting messages.



CHAPTER 50

RADIUS VSA

- [Information About RADIUS VSA, on page 553](#)
- [Create an Attribute List, on page 554](#)
- [Create a AAA Policy and Map it to Attribute List, on page 555](#)
- [Map a AAA Policy to the WLAN Policy Profile, on page 556](#)
- [Map the WLAN Policy Profile to a WLAN, on page 557](#)

Information About RADIUS VSA

The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) draft standard specifies a method for communicating vendor-specific information between the network access server and the RADIUS server by using vendor specific attributes (VSA). VSA allow vendors to support their own extended attributes otherwise not suitable for general use. The controller uses these attributes value in authentication or accounting packets, or both based on specified usage format.

VSA contains these three elements:

- Type
- Length
- String (also known as data)
 - Vendor-ID
 - Vendor-Type
 - Vendor-Length
 - Vendor-Data

This feature is supported only in FlexConnect central authentication mode with local switching. FlexConnect local authentication mode is not supported.

This feature is supported only for wireless sessions.

This feature supports the following set of VSAs per WLAN for authentication and accounting requests, in addition to the existing AAA attributes.

Table 42: Newly Supported Attributes

Attribute Name	Well-known Attribute	VSA Sub-attribute	Vendor ID
SVR-Zip-Code	26	14	14369
SVR-Device-Type	26	17	14369
SVR-Device-Model-Number	26	18	14369
SVR-Lat-Long	26	19	14369
SVR-Venue-Category	26	20	14369
SVR-Network-Type	26	21	14369
Aggregation-AAA	26	22	14369
BW-Venue-Id	26	7	22472
BW-Venue-TZ	26	8	22472
BW-Class	26	10	22472
BW-Venue-Description	26	11	22472
BW-ISO-Country-Code	26	14	22472
BW-E164-Country-Code	26	15	22472
BW-State-Name	26	16	22472
BW-City-Name	26	17	22472
BW-Area-Code	26	18	22472
BW-User-Group	26	27	22472
BW-Venue-Name	26	29	22472
BW-Operator-Name	26	37	22472

Create an Attribute List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	aaa attribute list <i>list</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa attribute list TEST	Creates a AAA attribute list.
Step 3	attribute type <i>attribute-type</i> Example: Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type BW-City-Name "MUMBAI"	Specifies a AAA attribute type.
Step 4	attribute type <i>attribute-type</i> Example: Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type BW-State-Name "MAHARASHTRA"	(Optional) Specifies a AAA attribute type.
Step 5	attribute type <i>attribute-type</i> Example: Device(config-attr-list)#attribute type BW-Venue-Name "WANKHEDE"	(Optional) Specifies a AAA attribute type.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-attr-list)# end	Returns to Privileged EXEC mode.

What to do next

Create a AAA policy and map the attribute list.

Create a AAA Policy and Map it to Attribute List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless aaa policy <i>aaa-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless aaa policy policy-1	Creates a new AAA policy.
Step 3	attrlist authentication <i>authentication-attr-list</i> Example:	Configures VSA authentication attribute list.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-aaa-policy)# attrlist authentication auth-attr-list	
Step 4	attrlist accounting <i>accounting-attr-list</i> Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# attrlist accounting acct-attr-list	Configures VSA accounting attribute list.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# end	Returns to Privileged EXEC mode.

What to do next

Map the AAA policy to the WLAN policy profile.

Map a AAA Policy to the WLAN Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy EAP-AKA	Creates a new wireless policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-policy <i>aaa-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-policy Verizon-aaa-policy	Creates a new AAA policy.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to Privileged EXEC mode.

What to do next

Map the WLAN policy profile to a WLAN.

Map the WLAN Policy Profile to a WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy EAP-AKA	Creates a new policy tag.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-profile-name</i> policy <i>aaa-policy</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan EAP-AKA policy EAP-AKA	Maps the policy profile to a WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Returns to Privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 51

Cisco StadiumVision

- [Cisco StadiumVision Overview](#), on page 559
- [Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision \(GUI\)](#), on page 560
- [Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision \(CLI\)](#), on page 560
- [Verify StadiumVision Configurations](#), on page 561

Cisco StadiumVision Overview

Cisco StadiumVision is a proven, end-to-end, high-definition IPTV solution. It provides advanced digital content management and delivery. This system transforms the appearance and atmosphere of venues. It is built on the Cisco Connected Stadium solution and is centrally managed through StadiumVision Director. The system is centrally managed through StadiumVision Director.

This technology enables replay of critical moments of a game on Wi-Fi-capable devices.

To enable Cisco StadiumVision on the controller, you need to configure these parameters:

1. On the Wireless Controller :
 - Multicast Data Rate
 - RX Sensitivity SOP
 - Multicast Buffer
2. CAPWAP
3. AP Radio Driver and Firmware:
 - Multicast Data Rate
 - RX Sensitivity SOP
 - Multicast Buffer

Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Advanced**.
- Step 2** Click the **High Density** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Multicast Data Rate** section, set the data rate for 5 GHz radio or 2.4 GHz radio using the drop-down lists.
- Step 4** Click **Apply** .
-

Configure Parameters for Cisco StadiumVision (CLI)



Note Multicast buffer and data rate configurations are supported for all AP models.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1 10	Configures a WLAN.
Step 2	multicast buffer <i>multicast-buffer-number</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# multicast buffer 45	Configures enhanced multicast buffer size between 30 (default) and 60 on a WLAN. Note You can enable only two out of the possible 512 WLANs configured on Controller embedded wireless controller for enhanced multicast buffers.
Step 3	ap dot11 [5ghz 24ghz] multicast data-rate <i>rate</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 [5ghz 24ghz] rx-sop threshold custom -70	Configures the radio receive sensitivity SOP threshold between -60 to -85 dB, which can also be configured as predefined auto, low, high, medium values specific to 5ghz or 24ghz bands. By default, the configuration is disabled and it's value is set to <i>auto</i> . If the RxSOP value of <i>auto</i> (0) is pushed, then the AP considers the value burnt-in during manufacturing.

Verify StadiumVision Configurations

- show ap rf-profile name *rf-name* detail
- show ap dot11 5ghz high-density

Rx SOP

```
Device#show ap rf-profile name Typical_Client_Density_rf_5gh detail | i SOP
Rx SOP Threshold           : auto
```

Multicast Buffer

```
Device#show wlan id 1 | sec Buffer
Multicast Buffer           : Enabled
Multicast Buffer Size      : 45
```

Device#

```
Device#sh wlan name vwlc-OpenAuth | inc Buffer
Multicast Buffer           : Enabled
Multicast Buffer Size      : 45
Device#
```

Multicast Data Rate

```
Device#sh ap dot11 24ghz high-density
AP Name           Mac Address           Slot           Rxsop
Threshold Type Value (dbm)           Multicast Data Rate(Mbps)
-----
test-1800-AP      aaaa.bbbb.cccc           0           auto
0                54
AP4001.7AB2.BEB6   aaab.bbbb.cccc           2           auto
0                54
AP70DF.2FA2.72EE   aaac.bbbb.cccc           0           auto
0                0
```

```
Device#show ap dot11 5ghz high-density
AP Name           Mac Address           Slot           Rxsop
Threshold Type Value (dbm)           Multicast Data Rate(Mbps)
-----
Saji-1800-AP      aaab.bbbb.cccc           1           auto
0                12
Saji-2802I-AP     aaab.bbbb.cccc           0           custom
-82              12
Saji-2802I-AP     aaac.bbbb.cccc           1           custom
-82              12
AP4001.7AB2.BEB6   aaad.bbbb.cccc           0           custom
-82              12
AP4001.7AB2.BEB6   aaae.bbbb.cccc           1           custom
-82              0
AP500F.8086.8B56   aaaf.bbbb.cccc           0           custom
-82              12
AP500F.8086.8B56   aaag.bbb.cccc            1           custom
```

```
          -82              12
AP70DF.2FA2.72EE      aaah.bbbb.cccc      1      auto
          0              0
```

```
Device#
Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz rf-profile test_5ghz_rf
Device(config-rf-profile)#high-density multicast data-rate RATE_18M
```

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name test_5ghz_rf detail | inc Multicast
Multicast Data Rate      : 18 Mbps
Device#
```



CHAPTER 52

Persistent SSID Broadcast

- [Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 563](#)
- [Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 563](#)
- [Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast, on page 564](#)

Persistent SSID Broadcast

Access Points within a mesh network work as Root Access Points (RAP) or Mesh Access Points (MAP). RAPs have wired connection to the controller and MAPs have wireless connection to the controller . This feature is applicable only to the Cisco Aironet 1542 Access Points in the Flex+Bridge mode.

This feature is about the Root Access Points (RAPs) and Mesh Access Points (MAPs) broadcasting the SSID even when the WAN connectivity is down. This is required in order to isolate the responsibility; whether the fault is with backhaul or with the access wireless network, since there can be different operators owning each part of the network.

RAPs and MAPs broadcast SSID while in standalone mode, as long as the default gateway is reachable.

Also refer [Mesh Deployment Guide for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers](#).

Configuring Persistent SSID Broadcast

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name	Configures the AP profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	[no]ssid broadcast persistent Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ssid broadcast persistent</pre>	The ssid broadcast command configures the SSID broadcast mode. The persistent keyword enables a persistent SSID broadcast, where the associated APs will re-join. Use the [no] form of the command to disable the feature. Note Enabling or disabling this feature causes the AP to re-join.

Verifying Persistent SSID Broadcast

To view the configuration of all Cisco APs, use the following **show** command:

```
Device#show ap config general
Cisco AP Name      : AP4C77.6DF2.D598
=====
Office Extend Mode           : Disabled
Persistent SSID Broadcast    : Enabled
Remote AP Debug              : Disabled
```



CHAPTER 53

Network Monitoring

- [Network Monitoring](#) , on page 565
- [Status Information Received Synchronously - Configuration Examples](#), on page 565
- [Alarm and Event Information Received Asynchronously - Configuration Examples](#), on page 567

Network Monitoring

The mechanism that is used to transfer data to the third-party system is NETCONF/YANG. YANG can be used with the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) to provide the desired solution of automated and programmable network operations.

You can contact the API or Developer Support for NETCONF/YANG features using the following link:

<https://developer.cisco.com/site/support/#>

The two types of information provided are:

- Status information received synchronously - NETCONF is the management interface used for status information, which allows to publish the operational state of the device, including the controller .
- Alarm and event information sent asynchronously - NETCONF/YANG push is the solution used for alarm and event information, which provides the mechanism to send NETCONF notifications subscribed for.



Note When using NETCONF, you may see a user named "yang_mgmt_infra" showing up on accounting records (TACACS/RADIUS). This user is internal; when you pull data from Cisco IOS, it is expected to see this user.

Status Information Received Synchronously - Configuration Examples

NETCONF/YANG interface is used to accomplish customer requests.

The prerequisite configuration for Status Information and Alarm and Event Information is to enable NETCONF server on the controller by using the following command:

netconf-yang

Note The Cisco Catalyst 9800 wireless controller currently only supports RSA keys for the trustpoint used by the ncssh process. Using EC keys instead of the RSA keys will cause the ncssh process to crash and it will prevent using NETCONF.

The above command not only enables notifications, but also allows for configuration and operation access (OAM) via Netconf/Yang. For more information on Netconf/Yang, see the *NETCONF Protocol* chapter of the Programmability Configuration Guide at: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/ios-nx-os-software/ios-xe-17/products-installation-and-configuration-guides-list.html>

In the Status Information Received Synchronously type, the following information is exported through NETCONF:

- Name of the village
- APs in each village
- Status of each AP
- Number of clients currently connected and logged on in each village and each AP

All the data for the items listed above is already available as the controller operational data exported through NETCONF. The examples below explain where the data items listed are available.

The following command is used in the controller :

```
wireless tag site village_name_1
```

The site tags can be retrieved by NETCONF using the **get-config** operation.

Example output for **Name of the Village**:

```
<site-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-site-cfg">
[...]
```

```
<site-tag-configs>
  <site-tag-config>
    <site-tag-name>village_name_1</site-tag-name>
    <description>custom user site tag for a village</description>
  </site-tag-config>
[...]
```

```
</site-tag-configs>
```

The controller's operational data contains all the connected (joined) APs and lists their site tags. The example output displays the detailed information about the APs and the site tags. The following example displays the relevant fields and the corresponding controller show commands:

Example output of **Access Point per Village**:

```
<data>
  <access-point-oper-data
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-access-point-oper">
  [...]
```

```
    <radio-oper-data>
      <wtp-mac>00:1b:0c:00:02:00</wtp-mac>      #show ap dot11 {24ghz|5ghz} summary "MAC
Address"
      <radio-slot-id>0</radio-slot-id>          #show ap dot11 {24ghz|5ghz} summary "Slot"
      <ap-mac>00:1b:0c:00:02:00</ap-mac>
      <slot-id>0</slot-id>
```



```

        <radio-type>1</radio-type>           # 1 - 2.4GHz, 2 - 5GHz
        <admin-state>enabled</admin-state>    #show ap dot11 {24ghz|5ghz} summary "Admin
State"
        <oper-state>radio-up</oper-state>     #show ap dot11 {24ghz|5ghz} summary "Oper
State"
        [...]
        [...]
        <capwap-data>
        <wtp-mac>00:1b:0c:00:02:00</wtp-mac>   #show ap summary "Radio MAC"
        <ap-operation-state>registered</ap-operation-state> #show ap summary "State"
        <ip-addr>10.102.140.10</ip-addr>       #show ap summary "IP Address"
        [...]
        <admin-state>1</admin-state>           #show ap status "Status", 1 - Enabled,
2 - Disabled
        <location>default-location </location> #show ap summary "Location"
        <country-code>CH </country-code>
        <name>AP_A-1</name>                   #show ap summary "AP Name"
        [...]
        <tag-info>
        [...]
        <site-tag>
        <site-tag-name>village_name_1</site-tag-name> #show ap name AP_A-1 config general
"Site Tag Name"
        [...]
        </site-tag>
        [...]

```

The operational data of the controller contains all the connected wireless clients information, which includes detailed client device information, such as the MAC address, IP address, State and the AP name.

Example output of the **Number of clients currently online and logged in each village and each AP:**

```

<data>
  <client-oper-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-client-oper">
    <common-oper-data>
      <client-mac>00:00:1a:04:00:02</client-mac>   #show wireless client summary "MAC
Address"
      <ap-name>AP_A-1</ap-name>                   #show wireless client summary "AP
Name"
      [...]
      <co-state>client-status-run</co-state>       #show wireless client summary "State"
    
```

Alarm and Event Information Received Asynchronously - Configuration Examples

The push functionality for the alarm and event information is fulfilled with on-change notifications through NETCONF dynamic subscriptions, with XML encoding.

Example output of **AP Up/Down Events - Subscription**

Request:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="urn:uuid:b0c581c9-ff5a-4352-9e64-7f2ce1ec603a"
xmlns="urn:iETF:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <establish-subscription xmlns="urn:iETF:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications"

```

```

    xmlns:yp="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-yang-push">
<stream>yp:yang-push</stream>
<yp:xpath-filter>/access-point-oper-data/capwap-data/ap-operation-state</yp:xpath-filter>

    <yp:dampening-period>0</yp:dampening-period>
</establish-subscription>
</rpc>

```

Reply:

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:673b42b2-e988-4e20-a6c3-0679c08e6114"><subscription-result
xmlns='urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications'
xmlns:notif-bis="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications">notif-bis:ok</subscription-result>
<subscription-id
xmlns='urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-event-notifications'>2147483652</subscription-id>
</rpc-reply>
-->
(Default Callback)
Event time      : 2018-03-09 15:08:21.880000+00:00
Subscription Id : 2147483651
Type           : 2
Data           :
<datastore-changes-xml xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-yang-push">
  <yang-patch xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:yang:ietf-yang-patch">
    <patch-id>null</patch-id>
    <edit>
      <edit-id>edit1</edit-id>
      <operation>merge</operation>
      <target>/access-point-oper-data/capwap-data</target>
      <value>
        <capwap-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-access-point-oper">

          <ap-operation-state>registered</ap-operation-state>
          <wtp-mac>00ab11006600</wtp-mac>
        </capwap-data>
      </value>
    </edit>
  </yang-patch>
</datastore-changes-xml>
<<--

```



CHAPTER 54

Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account

- [Information About Lobby Ambassador Account, on page 569](#)
- [Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account \(GUI\), on page 569](#)
- [Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account \(CLI\), on page 571](#)

Information About Lobby Ambassador Account

A global administrator can create a lobby ambassador (lobby admin) user for creating guest users.

While creating a guest user, a lobby ambassador can create and delete a guest user, besides setting the following parameters for a guest user:

- Password
- Lifetime of the guest user
- Guest role profiles (Quality-of-Service profiles that should be applied on a guest using the AAA attribute list.

You must ensure that the RADIUS server must be configured with Cisco-AV-pair privilege level with a value greater than zero.



Note You can create a lobby admin from a RADIUS or TACACS server, instead of creating one locally.

Only the admin can create WLAN and web authentication policies. The admin can also create an AAA attribute list, which the lobby admin can use to map to the corresponding guest user.

After an upgrade to Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controller Software release 17.2.x , you must clear the browser cache data to view the lobby admin GUI correctly.

Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account (GUI)

You can configure administrator or lobby ambassador usernames and passwords to prevent unauthorized users from reconfiguring the controller and viewing configuration information.

Creating a User Account

Procedure

-
- Step 1** From the home page, choose **Administration > User Administration**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **User Name** field, enter a user name for the new account.
- Step 4** From the **Policy** drop-down list, choose the policy that you want to associate with the user.
- Step 5** From the **Privilege** drop-down list, choose the privilege level that you want to associate with the user by clicking the user privilege icon. The following are the options:

- **Go to Basic Mode**
- **Go to Advanced Mode**

Go to Basic Mode: This privilege level defines the commands that users can enter using the CLI after they have logged into the device. Privilege 1 allows access in user EXEC mode and privilege 15 allows access in Privileged EXEC mode.

Go to Advanced Mode:

Admin: Users with Privilege 15 can execute all the **show**, **config**, and **exec** commands on the device. These users will have access to all the sections of the GUI.

Read Only: Users with Privileges 1 to 14 are considered read-only users. The default privilege is 1 if a user is created using the GUI. These users will have access only to the Dashboard and the Monitoring sections.

No Access: Users with Privilege 0 can log in to the device through Telnet or SSH and access the CLI. However, they cannot access the GUI.

Lobby Admin: Users who can create only guest user accounts. While creating a guest user, a lobby ambassador can create and delete a guest user, besides setting the following parameters for a guest user:

- Password
- Lifetime of the guest user
- Guest role profiles (quality-of-service) profiles that should be applied on a guest using the AAA attribute list.

- Step 6** In the **Password** field, enter a password for the new account.
- Step 7** In the **Confirm Password** field, enter the same password again to reconfirm.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Logging In Using the Lobby Account



Note Execute the following commands before logging in using the lobby credentials:

```
aaa new-model
```

```
aaa authorization exec default local
```

```
ip http authentication aaa
```

Logout from the Administrator account and login using the lobby credentials.

You get to view the **Guest User** page.

Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	user-name <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# user-name example-user	Creates a user account.
Step 3	type lobby-admin Example: Device(config-user-name)# type lobby-admin	Specifies the account type as lobby admin.
Step 4	password 0 <i>password</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# password 0 example-password	Creates a password for the lobby administrator account.
Step 5	aaa attribute list <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# aaa attribute list example-user	Creates attribute list for lobby admin access.
Step 6	attribute type <i>wlan-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# attribute type wlan_wl_mab	Creates attribute type for lobby admin access.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	exit Example: <code>Device(config-user-name)# exit</code>	Returns to global configuration mode.



CHAPTER 55

Lobby Ambassador Account

- [Information About Lobby Ambassador Account, on page 573](#)
- [Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account \(GUI\), on page 574](#)
- [Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account \(CLI\), on page 575](#)
- [Configuring WLAN \(GUI\), on page 576](#)
- [Client Allowed List, on page 577](#)
- [Restrictions for Client Allowed List, on page 577](#)
- [Creating a Client Allowed List \(GUI\), on page 577](#)
- [Managing Guest Users, on page 578](#)
- [Viewing a Client Allowed List, on page 579](#)

Information About Lobby Ambassador Account

A global administrator can create a lobby ambassador (lobby admin) user for creating guest users.

While creating a guest user, a lobby ambassador can create and delete a guest user, besides setting the following parameters for a guest user:

- Password
- Lifetime of the guest user
- Guest role profiles (Quality-of-Service profiles that should be applied on a guest using the AAA attribute list).

You must ensure that the RADIUS server must be configured with Cisco-AV-pair privilege level with a value greater than zero.



Note You can create a lobby admin from a RADIUS or TACACS server, instead of creating one locally.

Only the admin can create WLAN and web authentication policies. The admin can also create an AAA attribute list, which the lobby admin can use to map to the corresponding guest user.

After an upgrade to Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controller Software release 17.2.x, you must clear the browser cache data to view the lobby admin GUI correctly.

Creating a Lobby Ambassador User Account (GUI)

You can configure administrator or lobby ambassador usernames and passwords to prevent unauthorized users from reconfiguring the controller and viewing configuration information.

Creating a User Account

Procedure

-
- Step 1** From the home page, choose **Administration > User Administration**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **User Name** field, enter a user name for the new account.
- Step 4** From the **Policy** drop-down list, choose the policy that you want to associate with the user.
- Step 5** From the **Privilege** drop-down list, choose the privilege level that you want to associate with the user by clicking the user privilege icon. The following are the options:

- **Go to Basic Mode**
- **Go to Advanced Mode**

Go to Basic Mode: This privilege level defines the commands that users can enter using the CLI after they have logged into the device. Privilege 1 allows access in user EXEC mode and privilege 15 allows access in Privileged EXEC mode.

Go to Advanced Mode:

Admin: Users with Privilege 15 can execute all the **show**, **config**, and **exec** commands on the device. These users will have access to all the sections of the GUI.

Read Only: Users with Privileges 1 to 14 are considered read-only users. The default privilege is 1 if a user is created using the GUI. These users will have access only to the Dashboard and the Monitoring sections.

No Access: Users with Privilege 0 can log in to the device through Telnet or SSH and access the CLI. However, they cannot access the GUI.

Lobby Admin: Users who can create only guest user accounts. While creating a guest user, a lobby ambassador can create and delete a guest user, besides setting the following parameters for a guest user:

- Password
- Lifetime of the guest user
- Guest role profiles (quality-of-service) profiles that should be applied on a guest using the AAA attribute list.

- Step 6** In the **Password** field, enter a password for the new account.
- Step 7** In the **Confirm Password** field, enter the same password again to reconfirm.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Logging In Using the Lobby Account



Note Execute the following commands before logging in using the lobby credentials:

```
aaa new-model
```

```
aaa authorization exec default local
```

```
ip http authentication aaa
```

Logout from the Administrator account and login using the lobby credentials.

You get to view the **Guest User** page.

Creating a Lobby Ambassador Account (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	user-name <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# user-name example-user	Creates a user account.
Step 3	type lobby-admin Example: Device(config-user-name)# type lobby-admin	Specifies the account type as lobby admin.
Step 4	password 0 <i>password</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# password 0 example-password	Creates a password for the lobby administrator account.
Step 5	aaa attribute list <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# aaa attribute list example-user	Creates attribute list for lobby admin access.
Step 6	attribute type <i>wlan-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# attribute type wlan_wl_mab	Creates attribute type for lobby admin access.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-user-name)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring WLAN (GUI)

Before you begin

You need to enable MAC filtering for Layer 2 authentication to download the redirect URL and ACL.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** In the **WLANs** window, click the name of the **WLAN** or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 3** In the **Add/Edit WLAN** window that is displayed, click the **General** tab to configure the following parameters.
- In the **Profile Name** field, enter or edit the name of the profile.
 - In the **SSID** field, enter or edit the SSID name.
The SSID name can be alphanumeric, and up to 32 characters in length.
 - In the **WLAN ID** field, enter or edit the ID number. The valid range is between 1 and 512.
 - From the **Radio Policy** drop-down list, choose the **802.11** radio band.
 - Using the **Broadcast SSID** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
 - Using the **Status** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- Step 4** Click the **Security** tab, and then **Layer 2** tab to configure the following parameters:
- From the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list, choose **None**. This setting disables Layer 2 security.
 - Enter the **Reassociation Timeout** value, in seconds. This is the time after which a fast transition reassociation times out.
 - Check the **Over the DS** check box to enable Fast Transition over a distributed system.
 - Choose OWE, Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) provides data confidentiality with encryption over the air between an AP radio and a wireless client. OWE Transition Mode is meant to provide a sort of backwards compatibility.
 - Choose Fast Transition, 802.11r which is the IEEE standard for fast roaming, introduces a new concept of roaming where the initial handshake with a new AP is done even before the corresponding client roams to the target access point. This concept is called Fast Transition.
 - Check the check box to enable MAC filtering in the WLAN.
 - Check the **Lobby Admin Access** check box to enable Lobby Admin access.

Step 5 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Client Allowed List

Clients in universities and hotels need access to networks for a limited period of time. These locations also receive many guests with multiple devices. Therefore it becomes important to protect the networks from misuse or unauthorized access, and allow legitimate clients to connect to the corresponding network.

The client listing feature addresses the need of creating an allowed list for clients on a particular WLAN or SSID-based MAC address.

When you create a new client MAC address as an allowed list user with an invalid WLAN profile name, you must be careful while you map the client MAC to the WLAN profile.

Client allowed list is supported only with MAC addresses that are without a delimiter format.

Two types of administrator roles defined are:

- **Global Administrator:** Creates a lobby admin user on the controller and enables the lobby administrators access each to the WLAN.
- **Lobby Administrator:** Adds or deletes a client from the allowed list to manage the association to a WLAN or SSID through the GUI only. Existing lobby administrators can also be used to configure the allowed list.

Restrictions for Client Allowed List

A lobby admin can add clients to allowed list only through the graphical user interface (GUI) and not through the command-line interface (CLI).

Creating a Client Allowed List (GUI)

This section provides multiple methods that you can use as a lobby administrator to create an allowed list for valid users for a WLAN.

Adding Single MAC Address to Allowed List

Procedure

- Step 1** Log into Lobby Admin portal.
- Step 2** Click **Whitelist Users**.
- Step 3** From the drop-down list, choose **WLAN**.
- Step 4** Click **Add New Whitelist User**.
- Step 5** Select **By MAC Address** radio button.

- Step 6** Enter the **MAC address** and **Description**.
- Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Adding Bulk MAC Address to Allowed List

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Log into Lobby Admin portal.
- Step 2** Click **Whitelist Users**.
- Step 3** From the drop-down list, choose the WLAN.
- Step 4** Click **Add New Whitelist User**.
- Step 5** Select **Bulk Import** radio button.
- Step 6** Select the CSV file that lists the clients in MAC Address, Description format.
- Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Managing Guest Users

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Log in to Lobby Admin portal using the lobby admin credentials.
- Step 2** Click **Whitelist Users**.
- Step 3** From the **WLAN** drop-down list, choose the corresponding **WLAN**.
- Step 4** From the **WLAN Mode**, select **Onboarding** to enable clients to access the network.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- Step 6** From the **Connected/Not Whitelisted** in the Whitelist window, select a MAC address . Once the clients join the controller, the MAC addresses are listed in the **Connected/Not Whitelisted**. In the Onboarding mode, MAC filtering in the selected WLAN is disabled. In such a scenario you can change the mode using **Secure** mode.
- Step 7** Select **Secure** to automatically add the clients that are connected to the allowed list. In the secure mode, MAC filtering in the selected WLAN is enabled.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
- The clients are listed in the **Connected/Whitelisted**.
-

Viewing a Client Allowed List

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Log in to the Lobby Admin portal.
- Step 2** Click **Whitelist Users**.
- Step 3** From the **WLAN** drop-down list, choose the corresponding **WLAN**.

The window lists the following information:

- **Connected/Whitelisted:** Lists the clients that are connected and added to the allowed list by the Lobby admin.
 - **Connected/Not Whitelisted:** Lists the clients that are connected, but not added to the allowed list by the Lobby admin.
 - **Not Connected/Whitelisted:** Lists the clients that are not connected but added to the allowed list.
-



CHAPTER 56

Guest User Accounts

- [Information About Creating Guest User Accounts, on page 581](#)
- [Creating a Guest User Account \(GUI\), on page 582](#)
- [Creating a Guest User Account \(CLI\), on page 582](#)
- [Verifying Guest User Account, on page 583](#)
- [Assigning Username to Guest Users in a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 584](#)

Information About Creating Guest User Accounts

The controller can provide guest user access on WLANs for which you must create guest user accounts. Guest user accounts can be created by network administrators, or, if you would like a non-administrator to be able to create guest user accounts on demand, you can do so through a lobby administrator account. The lobby ambassador has limited configuration privileges and access only to the web pages used to manage the guest user accounts.

The lobby ambassador can specify the amount of time that the guest user accounts remain active. After the specified time elapses, the guest user accounts expire automatically.

You can associate user name with WLAN profile name to restrict guest users in a specific WLAN.

Prerequisites for Guest Users

- Guest users are created by administrator or lobby ambassador.
- Guest user should be role-based.
- Guest user should be able to connect to the network and access internet.
- Guest users configured locally or remotely (through RADIUS or TACACS), do not have access to the device either through Telnet/SSH or WebUI.

Creating a Guest User Account (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Guest User**.
- Step 2** On the **Guest User** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** Enter a user name, password, and description for the new account. Check the **Generate password** check box to automatically generate a password.
- Step 4** Enter the number of simultaneous user logins. Valid values range between 0 to 64.
Enter 0 for unlimited users.
- Step 5** In the **Lifetime** section, choose the number of years, months, days, hours, and minutes.
- Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Guest User Account (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	user-name <i>guest-user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# user-name guest	Creates a guest user account.
Step 3	type network-user description <i>description</i> guest-user max-login-limit <i>number of simultaneous logins</i> lifetime year <i>yy</i> month <i>mm</i> day <i>day</i> hour <i>hour</i> minute <i>minute</i> second <i>second</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# type network-user description sample-description guest-user max-login-limit 3 lifetime 1 years 0 months 0 days 0 hours 0 mins 0 secs	Specifies the account type as guest user account.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	password 0 <i>password</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# password 0 guest	Creates a password for the guest user account.
Step 5	aaa attribute list <i>aaa-attribute-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-user-name)# aaa attribute list aaa-attribute-list-name	Creates a AAA attribute list to apply QoS profiles on the guest user account.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-user-name)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode. Note If the lobby admin is local, enter the following command: aaa authentication login default local If the lobby admin is a remote user, enter the following commands: aaa authentication login default group radius/tacacs aaa remote username <remote-lobby-admin-name> In case of local or remote lobby, enter the following command to map the authorization policies: aaa authorization exec default local

Verifying Guest User Account

Verify Guest User Account.

```
Device# show aaa local guest_user all
User-Name          : new4
  Type              : GUEST USER
  Password           : *
  Is_passwd_encrypted : No
  Attribute-List     : Not-Configured
  Viewname           : Not-Configured
  Lobby Admin Name    : NEW_LOBBY_ADMIN
  Max Login Limit     : 0
  Description         : guest
  Start-Time          : 07:56:39 IST Jan 25 2019
  Lifetime            : 1 years 0 months 0 days 0 hours 0 mins 0 secs
  Expiry-Time         : 07:56:39 IST Jan 20 2020 Remaining Lifetime : 0 years 11 months
29 days 22 hours 52 mins 49 secs
```

To verify a specific guest user account, use the following command:

```

Device# show aaa local guest_user new_guest3
User-Name           : new_guest3
Type                : GUEST USER
Password            : *
Is_passwd_encrypted : No
Attribute-List      : Not-Configured
Viewname            : Not-Configured
Lobby Admin Name    : INVALID_ADMIN
Max Login Limit     : 9
Description         : new
Start-Time          : 04:39:01 IST Feb 4 2019
Lifetime            : 1 years 0 months 0 days 0 hours 0 mins 0 secs
Expiry-Time         : 04:39:01 IST Jan 30 2020
Remaining Lifetime  : 0 years 11 months 11 days 21 hours 16 mins 34 secs

```

Assigning Username to Guest Users in a WLAN (CLI)

Before you begin

- If wlan-profile-name is configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed only from that WLAN.
- If wlan-profile-name is not configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed on any WLAN.
- To work in a connected mode, you need to configure AAA policy override under both SSID policies before assigning a username to a guest user on a WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	username user_name mac wlan-profile-name profile_name Example: Device(config)# username user_name mac wlan-profile-name profile_name	Assigns a username to the WLAN profile. Note The wlan-profile-name per user is applicable for MAC type users.
Step 3	show aaa local guest_user new_guest3 Example: Device# show aaa local guest_user new_guest3	(Optional) Displays the values of the WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 57

Link Local Bridging

- [Feature History for Link Local Bridging, on page 585](#)
- [Information About Link Local Bridging , on page 585](#)
- [Use Case for Link Local Bridging, on page 586](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for Link Local Bridging, on page 586](#)
- [Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 586](#)
- [Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile \(CLI\), on page 587](#)
- [Verifying Link Local Bridging, on page 587](#)

Feature History for Link Local Bridging

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 43: Feature History for Link Local Bridging

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	Link Local Bridging	The Link Local Bridging feature allows you to manage link-local traffic in intercontroller and intracontroller roaming scenarios.

Information About Link Local Bridging

In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 and earlier releases, client packets were forwarded through the access VLAN of a client. The client also received all the IPv4 or IPv6 packets from its assigned access VLAN.

When an L3 client roamed from one controller to another controller, the point-of-presence (PoP) remained with the first controller, also known as the anchor controller or the home controller, and the point-of-attachment (PoA) moved to the second controller, also known as the foreign controller or the visited controller. In this anchor-foreign scenario, the client packets were tunneled back to the anchor controller to be forwarded on the access VLAN of the client.

Similarly, in case of L3 intracontroller roaming, when the feature Roaming Across Policy Profile is enabled, the client access VLAN is maintained, regardless of the policy profile VLAN. In such a scenario, the PoA becomes the destination policy profile VLAN.

A roaming wireless client is served better by the local services present near its PoA rather than discovering services present at its PoP. Therefore, from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1 onwards, the intracontroller and intercontroller roaming scenarios described above, can now be managed with the help of the Link Local Bridging feature. Link Local Bridging is disabled by default.

Use Case for Link Local Bridging

If you have a local mode deployment, and L3 roaming is used to manage roaming clients across physical locations, the Link Local Bridging feature helps you to discover services, for example, using mDNS, which are physically close to the wireless client.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Link Local Bridging

- The Link Local Bridging feature is supported in local-mode or FlexConnect central switching.
- Only mDNS bridge mode is supported with Link Local Bridging.
- Guest profiles are not supported.
- Wired Guest LAN, Remote LAN (RLAN), and Inter-Release Controller Mobility (IRCM) are not supported.
- Mesh and IP Source Guard (IPSG) is not supported when the Link Local Bridging feature is enabled.
- Enabling Link Local Bridging on the anchor controller and disabling it on the foreign controller is not supported, even if roaming is successful.
- Access VLAN and bridge VLAN should be operational, for the Link Local Bridging feature to work.
- Link Local Bridging must be enabled across policy profiles for the same SSID.
- Wireless multicast-over-multicast (**wireless multicast** *multicast IP address*) must be configured, before enabling the Link Local Bridging feature. Therefore, the **wireless multicast link-local** command is enabled by default when wireless multicast is enabled.

Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	Click Add . The Add Policy Profile window is displayed.
Step 3	In the Add Policy Profile page, in the General tab, enter the name of the policy profile.

- Step 4** In the **Advanced** tab, check the **Link-Local Bridging** check box to enable link-local bridging on the policy profile.

Note

When link-local bridging is enabled, Export Anchor will be disabled and Central Switching will be enabled automatically.

- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Enabling Link Local Bridging Per Policy Profile (CLI)

To enable link local bridging per policy profile, follow these steps.

Before you begin

Ensure that wireless multicast-over-multicast and wireless multicast link-local are enabled.

**Note**

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, the wireless multicast link-local setting is enabled by default as soon as multicast is enabled. This means that all the downstream multicast link-local frames will be forwarded to wireless clients. In the Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.x and the earlier releases, only mDNS multicast link-local frames were forwarded.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy wireless-profile1	Creates policy profile for the WLAN.
Step 3	link-local-bridging Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# link-local-bridging	Enables link local bridging per policy profile.

Verifying Link Local Bridging

To verify the configuration status of Link Local Bridging, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless profile policy detailed policy1
Policy Profile Name           : policy1
Description                   :
Status                        : ENABLED
VLAN                          : 81
Multicast VLAN                : 0
OSEN client VLAN              :
Multicast Filter              : DISABLED
QBSS Load                     : ENABLED
Passive Client                 : DISABLED
ET-Analytics                  : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility              : DISABLED
WLAN Switching Policy
  Flex Central Switching      : ENABLED
  Flex Central Authentication  : ENABLED
  Flex Central DHCP            : ENABLED
  Flex NAT PAT                 : DISABLED
.
.
.
-----
mDNS Gateway
  mDNS Service Policy name    : default-mdns-service-policy
  User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
  User Defined (Private) Network Unicast Drop : Disabled
Policy Proxy Settings
  ARP Proxy State             : DISABLED
  IPv6 Proxy State             : None
Airtime-fairness Profile
  2.4Ghz ATF Policy           : default-atf-policy
  5Ghz ATF Policy             : default-atf-policy
Link-local bridging           : ENABLED

```

To verify if Link Local Bridging VLAN is included, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless client mac 7xxx.3xxx.3xxx detail
Client MAC Address : 7xxx.3xxx.3xxx
.
.
.
Link-local bridging VLAN: 3
.
.
.
WiFi Direct Capabilities:
  WiFi Direct Capable        : No

```

To verify if link local multicast traffic is enabled, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless multicast
Multicast                     : Disabled
AP Capwap Multicast           : Unicast
Wireless Broadcast            : Disabled
Wireless Multicast non-ip-mcast : Disabled
Wireless Multicast link-local  : Enabled

```



CHAPTER 58

Web Admin Settings

- [Information About Web Admin Settings, on page 589](#)
- [Configuring HTTP/HTTPS Access , on page 589](#)
- [Configuring HTTP Trust Point, on page 590](#)
- [Configuring Netconf Yang, on page 591](#)
- [Configuring Timeout Policy , on page 591](#)
- [Configuring VTY, on page 592](#)

Information About Web Admin Settings

This chapter outlines the various settings to access the controller's web interface. These include setting up the controller for communication with others in the network, configuring the management interface to connect over IP, setting up the number of users and protocols to access the controller remotely and configure the source interface for file transfers depending upon the preferred file transfer protocols.

Use the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf/VTY** page to configure system-wide settings.

Configuring HTTP/HTTPS Access

HTTP/HTTPS access allows users to access the controller's WebUI using its IP address. You can either allow users to connect securely over HTTPS or over HTTP, which is not a secure connection.

Use the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf/VTY** page to configure secure access to the controller.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Enable HTTP Access and enter the port that will listen for HTTP requests. The default port is 80. Valid values are 80, and ports between 1025 and 65535.
Step 2	Enable HTTPS Access on the device and enter the designated port to listen for HTTPS requests. The default port is 1025. Valid values are 443, and ports between 1025 and 65535.
- Enabling HTTPS access allows users to access the controller's GUI using 'https://ip-address' . On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet. HTTP

with SSL encryption provides a secure connection to allow such functions as configuring a switch from a Web browser.

Step 3 Enable Personal Identity Verification (PIV) for two factor authentication.

This method of authentication allows users to access the WebUI using Personal Identity Verification (PIV) compatible smart cards, enabling login without password. For this to work, ensure that you have configured the trustpoint, CA server certificate on the device and the client certificate signed by the CA server on the browser. Failure to provide the client certificate would deny access to the UI.

Step 4 Set the **Personal Identity Verification Authorization only** option to *Enabled* for authorizing a user's permissions and restrictions based on a remote TACACS+/RADIUS security server.

Step 5 Click **Apply** to save the configuration.

Note

In order to use Personal Identity Verification (PIV) for two factor authentication on Safari, perform the following steps.

a. Open Safari browser and go to **Settings > Advanced**

1. Check the **Show Develop in menu bar** check box. This enables the Develop option in the top menu bar.
2. Click **Develop**, and from the dropdown, select **Empty Caches**.

b. Open the web url to login.

Configuring HTTP Trust Point

Certificate authorities (CAs) manage certificate requests and issue certificates to participating network devices. These services provide centralized security key and certificate management for the participating devices. Specific CA servers are referred to as trustpoints. When a connection attempt is made, the HTTPS server provides a secure connection by issuing a certified X.509v3 certificate, obtained from a specified CA trustpoint, to the client. The client (usually a Web browser), in turn, has a public key that allows it to authenticate the certificate. For secure HTTP connections, we highly recommend that you configure a CA trustpoint. If a CA trustpoint is not configured for the device running the HTTPS server, the server certifies itself and generates the needed RSA key pair. Because a self-certified (self-signed) certificate does not provide adequate security, the connecting client generates a notification that the certificate is self-certified, and the user has the opportunity to accept or reject the connection. This option is useful for internal network topologies (such as testing). If you do not configure a CA trustpoint, when you enable a secure HTTP connection, either a temporary or a persistent self-signed certificate for the secure HTTP server (or client) is automatically generated. If the device is not configured with a hostname and a domain name, a temporary self-signed certificate is generated. If the switch reboots, any temporary self-signed certificate is lost, and a new temporary new self-signed certificate is assigned. If the device has been configured with a host and domain name, a persistent self-signed certificate is generated. This certificate remains active if you reboot the device or if you disable the secure HTTP server so that it will be there the next time you re-enable a secure HTTP connection.

Use the **Trust Point Configuration** section of the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf/VTY** page to make these changes.

Before you begin

You must have configured a trustpoint for web administration purposes.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Tap to enable the Trust Point.
Step 2	Select the appropriate Trust Point from the drop-down list to to be used for web admin purpose. If you have not configured a trust point earlier, you can navigate to the appropriate page and first configure it.
Step 3	Click Apply to save the configuration.
-

Configuring Netconf Yang

NETCONF provides a mechanism to install, manipulate, and delete the configuration of network devices.

If the NETCONF connection is configured to use AAA for authentication purposes, it uses only the default Method List and cannot be pointed to use any other named Method List.

Use the **Netconf Yang Configuration** section of the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTps/Netconf/VTY** page to make these changes.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Enable NETCONF.
Step 2	Enter the SSH port number that will be used to facilitate communication between a client and a server. The default port is 830.
Step 3	Click Apply to save the configuration.
-

Configuring Timeout Policy

The Timeout Policy Configuration allows you to configure the details of the interval that the management sessions can remain idle before they timeout. Once the time value is reached, you must log in again to be able to reestablish the connection.

Use the **Timeout Policy Configuration** section of the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTps/Netconf/VTY** page to make these changes.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Enter the maximum number of seconds a connection to the HTTP server should remain open before they timeout in the **HTTP Timeout-policy** field. Once the time value is reached, you must log in again to be able to reestablish connection.
- Step 2** Enter the maximum number of seconds the connection will be kept open if no data is received or if response data cannot be sent out on the connection in the **Session Idle Timeout** field.
- Note that a new value may not take effect on any already existing connections. If the server is too busy or the limit on the life time or the number of requests is reached, the connection may be closed sooner. The default value is 180 seconds (3 minutes).
- Step 3** Enter the maximum number of seconds the connection will be kept open, from the time the connection is established in the **Server Life Time** field.
- Note that the new value may not take effect on any already existing connections. If the server is too busy or the limit on the idle time or the number of requests is reached, it may close the connection sooner. Also, since the server will not close the connection while actively processing a request, the connection may remain open longer than the specified life time if processing is occurring when the life maximum is reached. In this case, the connection will be closed when processing finishes. The default value is 180 seconds (3 minutes). The maximum value is 86400 seconds (24 hours).
- Step 4** Enter a value for the maximum limit on the number of requests processed on a persistent connection before it is closed in the **Max Number of Requests** field.
- Note that the new value may not take effect on already existing connections. If the server is too busy or the limit on the idle time or the life time is reached, the connection may be closed before the maximum number of requests are processed. The default value is 1. The maximum value is 86400.
- Step 5** Click **Apply** to save the configuration.
-

Configuring VTY

VTY is a virtual port used for Telnet or SSH access to the device. VTY is solely used for inbound connections to the device. You can configure the number of simultaneous connections to your device and add security to validate these connections.

Use the **VTY** section of the **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPs/Netconf/VTY** page to make these changes.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Set the number of vty lines to allow the number of simultaneous access to the device remotely.
- Virtual Terminal Lines or Virtual TeleType (VTY) is a virtual way of accessing the controller's CLI remotely, unlike physically connecting a laptop to the controller through a console. The number of VTY lines is the maximum number of simultaneous connections possible. 0-50 allows up to fifty simultaneous telnet or ssh

sessions to the controller. Although the default is set at 15, we recommend that you to increase the number of VTY lines to 50 to avoid a disruption in connectivity when there are multiple connections to the device.

- Step 2** Select the protocol for the remote connection from the **VTY Transport Mode** drop-down list. You can split the connections based on protocol. For e.g. 0-5 might allow for SSH and 10-20 might allow Telnet.
- Step 3** (Optional) You can add security in the WebUI to validate login requests. To configure AAA authentication and authorization for inbound sessions to vty lines on your system you must first configure a Radius or a TACACS+ authentication server and select the authentication and authorization list from the corresponding drop-downs.
- Step 4** Click **Apply** to save the configuration.
-



CHAPTER 59

Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS Server

- [Feature History for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server, on page 595](#)
- [Information About Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server, on page 595](#)
- [Guidelines for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server, on page 596](#)
- [Configuring AAA Accounting Using Default Method List \(CLI\), on page 596](#)
- [Configuring HTTP Command Accounting Using Named Method List \(CLI\), on page 597](#)

Feature History for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 44: Feature History for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Logging Web UI-Based Configuration Changes in TACACS+ Server	This feature logs all configuration changes made in controller web UI. Support for logging configurations done in IOS console in TACACS+ server is already available.

Information About Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller configuration is stored in databases. Prior to Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 release, audit log or traceability were not available for the configuration changes stored in databases that were made from the controller GUI. With the Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 release, along with the existing configuration logging of commands executed from Cisco IOS console to TACACS+ server,

support is also added to log the configuration changes done from the controller GUI to TACACS+ server. The logging information includes the command, user, and other session related parameters.

Guidelines for Web UI Configuration Command Accounting in TACACS+ Server

- By default, the configuration commands are not logged to TACACS+ server without configuring command accounting.
- All commands are accounted when AAA default command accounting is configured only for privilege 15.
- When AAA default command accounting is not configured and commands need to be logged in the TACACS+ server, do the following:
 1. The HTTP named method list command accounting.
 2. The AAA named method list (same as the one configured in **Step 1**) command accounting.

Configuring AAA Accounting Using Default Method List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa accounting commands <i>privilege_level</i> default start-stop group <i>group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa accounting commands 15 default start-stop group group-name	Creates an accounting method list and enables accounting. • <i>privilege_level</i>: AAA accounting level. The valid range is from 0 to 15. • <i>group-name</i>: AAA accounting group that supports only TACACS+ group.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring HTTP Command Accounting Using Named Method List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip http accounting commands <i>level</i> <i>named-accounting-method-list</i> Example: Device(config)# ip http accounting commands 1 oneacct	Configures HTTP command accounting using the named method list. • <i>level</i>: Privilege value from 0 to 15. By default, the following command privilege levels are available on the controller: • 0: Includes the disable, enable, exit, help, and logout commands. • 1: Includes all the user-level commands at the controller prompt (>). • 15: Includes all the enable-level commands at the controller prompt (>). • <i>named-accounting-method-list</i>: Name of the predefined command accounting method list.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 60

Embedded Packet Capture

- [Feature History for Embedded Packet Capture, on page 599](#)
- [Information About Embedded Packet Capture, on page 599](#)
- [Configuring Embedded Packet Capture \(CLI\), on page 600](#)
- [Verifying Embedded Packet Capture, on page 602](#)

Feature History for Embedded Packet Capture

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 45: Feature History for Embedded Packet Capture

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1	Embedded Packet Capture	The Embedded Packet Capture feature is enhanced to support increased buffer size, continuous capture, and filtering of multiple MAC addresses in one Embedded Packet Capture (EPC) session.

Information About Embedded Packet Capture

The Embedded Packet Capture feature helps in tracing and troubleshooting packets. The Embedded Packet Capture on the controller is used for troubleshooting multiple issues, such as, authentication issues with RADIUS, AP join or disconnection, client forwarding, disconnection, and roaming, and other specific features such as multicast, mDNS, umbrella, mobility, and so on. This feature allows network administrators to capture data packets flowing through, to, and from a Cisco device. When troubleshooting an AP join or a client onboarding issue, if you are unable to stop capture as soon as an issue occurs, important information might be lost. In most cases, a buffer of 100 MB is not sufficient for data capture. Moreover, the existing Embedded Packet Capture feature supports only the filtering of one inner MAC address, which captures the traffic of a specific client. At times, it is difficult to pin-point which wireless client is facing an issue.

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, the Embedded Packet Capture feature supports increased buffer size, continuous capture, and filtering of multiple MAC addresses in one Embedded Packet Capture session. There are no GUI steps to configure the Embedded Packet Capture enhancement.

Configuring Embedded Packet Capture (CLI)

With the Embedded Packet Capture feature enhancement, the buffer size is increased from 100 MB to 500 MB.



Note Buffer is of memory type. You can either maintain a memory buffer or copy the memory buffer that is present in a file to store more information.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> interface GigabitEthernet <i>interface-number</i> {both in out} Example: Device# monitor capture <i>epc_session1</i> interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/1 both	Configures the Gigabit Ethernet interface for inbound, outbound, or both inbound and outbound packets. Gigabit is for Cisco 9800-CL controllers, for example, Gi1, Gi2, or Gi3. For physical controllers, you must specify the port channel, if configured. Examples for physical interfaces are Te or Tw. Note You can also run the control-plane command to capture the packet punt to the CPU.
Step 3	(Optional) monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> limit duration <i>limit-duration</i> Example: Device# monitor capture <i>epc_session1</i> limit duration 3600	Configures monitor capture limit, in seconds.
Step 4	(Optional) monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> buffer circular file <i>no-of-files</i> <i>file-size</i> <i>per-file-size</i> Example: Device# monitor capture <i>epc_session1</i> buffer circular file 4 file-size 20	Configures the file in circular buffer. (Buffer can be circular or linear). When circular is configured, the files work as a ring buffer. The value range of the number of files to be configured is from 2 to 5. The value range of the file size is from 1 MB to 500 MB.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		There are various keywords available for the buffer command, such as, circular, file, and size. Here, the circular command is optional. Note Circular buffer is needed for continuous capture. This step generates swap files in the controller. Swap files are not packet capture (PCAP) files, and therefore, cannot be analyzed. When the export command is run, the swap files are combined and exported as one PCAP file.
Step 5	monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> match {any ipv4 ipv6 mac pklen-range} Example: <pre>Device# monitor capture epc_session1 match any</pre>	Configures inline filters. Note You can configure filters and ACLs.
Step 6	(Optional) monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> access-list <i>access-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# monitor capture epc_session1 access-list access-list1</pre>	Configures a monitor capture specifying an access list as the filter for the packet capture.
Step 7	(Optional) monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> continuous-capture http:<i>location/filename</i> Example: <pre>Device# monitor capture epc_session1 continuous-capture https://www.cisco.com/epcl.pcap</pre>	Configures continuous packet capture. Enables the automatic export of files to a specific location before the buffer is overwritten. Note • Circular buffer is needed for continuous capture. • Configure the filename with a .pcap extension. • An example of the filename and nomenclature used to generate the filename is as follows: CONTINUOUS_CAP_20230601130203.pcap CONTINUOUS_CAP_20230601130240.pcap • After the packets are exported automatically, the buffer is not cleared until it is overwritten by the new incoming capture packets, or cleared, or deleted by commands.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	(Optional) [no] monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> inner mac <i>MAC1</i> [<i>MAC2...MAC10</i>] Example: <pre>Device# monitor capture epc_session1 inner mac 1.1.1 2.2.2 3.3.3 4.4.4</pre>	Configures up to 10 MAC addresses as inner MAC filter. Note • You can not modify the inner MACs while the capture is in progress. • You can enter the MAC addresses in a single command or by using multiple command lines. Because of the character string limitation, you can enter only five MAC addresses in a single command line. You can enter the rest of the MAC addresses in the next command line. • If the number of configured inner MAC addresses is 10, a new MAC address cannot be configured until you delete an old configured inner MAC address.
Step 9	monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> start Example: <pre>Device# no monitor capture epc_session1 start</pre>	Starts capture of packet data.
Step 10	monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> stop Example: <pre>Device# no monitor capture epc_session1 stop</pre>	Stops capture of packet data.
Step 11	monitor capture <i>epc_session-name</i> export <i>filelocation/filename</i> Example: <pre>Device# monitor capture epc_session1 export https://www.cisco.com/ecap-file.pcap</pre>	Exports captured data for analysis when continuous capture is not configured.

Verifying Embedded Packet Capture

To view the configured file number and per file size, run the following command:



Note The following command is displayed irrespective of whether continuous capture is enabled or not. The configured inner MAC addresses are also displayed using this command.

```
Device# show monitor capture epc_session1
Status Information for Capture epc_session1
```

```

Target Type:
Interface: TwoGigabitEthernet0/0/0, Direction: BOTH
Status : Inactive
Filter Details:
  Capture all packets
Inner Filter Details:
Continuous capture: enabled
Continuous capture path: ftp://mgcusr:mgcusr@10.124.19.169//home/mgcusr/xij/repo.pcap
Buffer Details:
  Buffer Type: CIRCULAR
  No of files: 5
  File Size (in MB): 21
Limit Details:
  Number of Packets to capture: 0 (no limit)
  Packet Capture duration: 3600
  Packet Size to capture: 0 (no limit)
  Maximum number of packets to capture per second: 1000
  Packet sampling rate: 0 (no sampling)

```

To view the configured Embedded Packet Capture buffer files, run the following commands:

```
Device# show monitor capture epc_session1 buffer brief
```

#	size	timestamp	source	destination	dscp	protocol
0	1386	0.000000	192.168.10.117 ->	192.168.10.100	0 BE	UDP
1	1378	0.000000	192.168.10.100 ->	192.168.10.117	0 BE	UDP
2	1386	0.001007	192.168.10.117 ->	192.168.10.100	0 BE	UDP



Note This command works for normal Embedded Packet Capture (EPC) but is not supported in continuous captures.

```
Device# show monitor capture epc_session1 buffer dump
```

```

0
0000: 6C8BD3FE AEC0F4BD 9E566E4B 8100000A 1.....VnK....
0010: 08004500 05500000 0000FF11 2073C0A8 ..E..P..... s..
0020: 0A64C0A8 0A75147F 1480053C 00000010 .d...u.....<....
0030: 03000000 00000288 0000C48E 8FC860CF .....`..
0040: DC8C3759 4B203468 95299EA5 00000000 ..7YK 4h.).....
0050: AAAA0300 00000800 4500050A 92154000 .....E.....@.
0060: 40060BBC C0A80B67 C0A80B65 A7E0139D @.....g....e....
0070: 32595FD8 0F2D6065 801001F6 EA440000 2Y_..-`e.....D..
0080: 0101080A BFCB4934 A959414F 36373839 .....I4.YAO6789
0090: 30313233 34353637 38393031 32333435 0123456789012345
00A0: 36373839 30313233 34353637 38393031 6789012345678901
00B0: 32333435 36373839 30313233 34353637 2345678901234567
00C0: 38393031 32333435 36373839 30313233 8901234567890123
00D0: 34353637 38393031 32333435 36373839 4567890123456789
00E0: 30313233 34353637 38393031 32333435 0123456789012345
00F0: 36373839 30313233 34353637 38393031 6789012345678901
0100: 32333435 36373839 30313233 34353637 2345678901234567
.
.
.

```




CHAPTER 61

Layer 3 Access

- [Information About Layer 3 Access, on page 605](#)
- [Information About OSPF, on page 606](#)
- [Information About PIM Sparse Mode, on page 606](#)
- [Information About Network Address Translation, on page 607](#)
- [Restrictions for Layer 3 Access, on page 608](#)
- [Use Cases for Layer 3 Access, on page 608](#)
- [Configuring a Client Gateway \(GUI\), on page 609](#)
- [Configuring a Client Gateway \(CLI\), on page 609](#)
- [Configuring OSPF Interfaces \(GUI\), on page 610](#)
- [Configuring OSPF Protocol \(GUI\), on page 610](#)
- [Configuring OSPF \(CLI\), on page 611](#)
- [Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 613](#)
- [Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile \(CLI\), on page 614](#)
- [Configuring Multicast Traffic, on page 614](#)
- [Selective NAT Support, on page 618](#)
- [Selective Internal DHCP with VRF Support, on page 625](#)
- [Verifying Routing Protocol Details, on page 626](#)
- [Verifying Multicast Traffic Details, on page 634](#)
- [Verifying Static NAT Details, on page 637](#)
- [Verifying Dynamic NAT Details, on page 638](#)
- [Verifying NAT Details, on page 639](#)
- [Verifying NAT Timeout Details, on page 640](#)
- [Verifying Internal DHCP with VRF Details, on page 641](#)
- [Verifying Layer 3 Access Details, on page 642](#)

Information About Layer 3 Access

Starting from Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1, the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller platforms can be deployed as Layer 3 (L3) network to perform routing functions.

In Cisco IOS XE 17.12.x and earlier releases, the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller platforms are deployed as Layer 2 network element. In such deployments, the wireless client subnets are terminated at an upstream network element. Upstream refers to the direction in which the data can be transferred from clients to a server. The controller forwards the traffic based on the MAC address of the clients.

The L3 access feature terminates the wireless client subnets in the controller and supports L3 forwarding for wireless client traffic. When L3 is enabled on a given SSID, the client VLAN of that SSID is terminated at the controller. In this scenario, wireless controller forwards traffic based on the network layer (IP) address.

The L3 access feature brings in support for unicast (OSPFv2) and multicast routing (PIM-SM) on the controller.

This enables the following:

- Segmentation and client overlapping IP address support using VRF.
- Flexible network design and faster convergence.
- Consistency in network design.
- Addresses scale limitations of the upstream switches or routers.

The core focus is the seamless integration of OSPF and multicast routing. This transition empowers your wireless networks to dynamically respond to shifting business requirements, ensuring optimal performance and agility in dynamic networking environment.

Information About OSPF

The OSPF is a link-state routing protocol for Internet Protocol (IP) networks. It uses the shortest path first technique to calculate the best path through a network. OSPF is a widely used Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP).

One of the key features of OSPF is that it supports authentication. This means each device can verify the identity of the other devices it communicates with.

The following types of authentication can be used with OSPF:

- Simple password authentication: The most basic method of authentication in which each device has a clear-text password configured that it uses to authenticate with other devices. The issue with this authentication method is that the password is displayed in the configuration and OSPF messages. This is not a secure way to configure devices.
- MD5 authentication: The most secure form of authentication in which a hash value from the contents of an OSPF packet and a password using the MD5 algorithm (key) are computed.



Note From Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1 release onwards, the OSPFv2 is supported along with ECMP.

Information About PIM Sparse Mode

The Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) is a collection of multicast routing protocols optimized for different environments.

For information about PIM-SM, see

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipmulti_pim/configuration/15-sy/imc-pim-15-sy-book/ip6-mcast-pim-sm.html

PIM-SM

The PIM-SM is a multicast routing protocol designed on the assumption that recipients for any particular multicast group sparsely distributed throughout the network. In other words, most of the subnets in the network do not want any given multicast packet. To receive multicast data, routers must explicitly convey the upstream neighbors about their interest in particular groups and sources.

By default, the PIM-SM uses multicast distribution trees rooted at some selected node (This router is called the Rendezvous Point or RP) and used by all sources sending multicast group.

One of the important requirements of the PIM-SM mode is the ability to discover the address of an RP for a multicast group using a shared tree.

Information About Network Address Translation

The Network Address Translation (NAT) is a mechanism to map multiple local IP addresses within a private network to a public IP address to access external network (Internet or Cloud). The Port Address Translation (PAT) enables a single IP address to be shared by multiple hosts using IP and port translations.

The L3 access on the controller supports only the following NAT use cases:

- Translating client traffic in the guest network to reach corporate services (such as, Cisco ISE).
- Hiding the private IP addresses of clients from outside networks.

The following types of NAT are supported:

- Static address translation (static NAT): It allows a one-to-one mapping between local and global addresses. The static translation is useful when a host from the inside is accessible from a fixed address from the outside.
- Dynamic address translation (dynamic NAT/PAT): It maps between client subnet and public global IP address or source port pool.

This can be achieved using the following:

- Dynamic NAT without VRF
- Dynamic NAT with VRF



Note The following NAT CLIs are not supported in Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1:

- `show ip nat aggregation`
- `show ip nat bpa`
- `show ip nat ha`
- `show ip nat limits`
- `show ip nat map`
- `show ip nat platform`
- `show ip nat pool`
- `show ip nat portblock`
- `show ip nat redundancy`
- `show ip nat route-dia`
- `show ip nat translations`
- `clear ip nat translations`

Restrictions for Layer 3 Access

- By default, the L3 access is disabled on a WLAN.
- Only N+1 redundancy is supported with L3 access.
- Configuring multiple IP addresses in an SVI is not supported.
- High Availability SSO is not supported in L3 WLANs.
- In mixed mode (L2 and L3 WLANs), HA SSO with Loopback as WMI is not supported.
- The `ip radius source-interface vrf` global command is not supported.
- Few NAT CLIs are not supported in Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1. For more information, see [Information About Network Address Translation](#).
- Multicast stream is not supported with VRF.
- Client IPv6 is not supported.
- Controller/AP cannot have IPv6 addresses.

Use Cases for Layer 3 Access

Layer 3 Access Support

- Segmentation and client overlapping IP address support.
- Flexible and optimized network design using L3 access.

Network Address Translation (NAT) Support

- Translating client traffic in the guest network to reach the corporate services (For instance, Cisco ISE).
- Hiding the private IP addresses of clients from outside networks.



Note Only NAT with IPv4 to IPv4 translation is supported in Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1.

Configuring a Client Gateway (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN** and select the **SVI** tab.
- Step 2** Click an SVI interface. On the **General** tab of the **Edit SVI** window, select a VRF from the drop-down list to associate it with the SVI interface.
- Step 3** Enable the **Autostate Disable** to keep the SVI UP even if any port on that VLAN is not UP.
- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Client Gateway (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface <i>type number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface Vlan 55	Specifies an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding corporate	Activates multiprotocol VRF in an interface.
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example:	Defines the IP address for the VRF.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.55 255.255.255.0	
Step 5	no autostate Example: Device(config-if)# no autostate	Configures SVI to ensure that SVI is up even if the VLAN is not switched out.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits the interface configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.

Configuring OSPF Interfaces (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Interface > Ethernet** and select an interface to configure it with OSPF settings.
 - Step 2** In the **Configure Interface** window, ensure that you have configured an IP address, subnet mask and optionally a secondary IP address.
 - Step 3** In the **OSPF** section, enter the **Process ID** to enable OSPF on the interface.
 - Step 4** Enable the **BFD** to create a Bidirectional Forwarding Detection session between two systems. BFD provides a short-duration method of detecting failures in the forwarding path between two adjacent peers.
 - Step 5** Select the **Dead Interval Minimal** and enter the number of seconds in the **Hello Multiplier** field to set the interval at which at least one hello packet must be received, or else the neighbor is considered down.
 - Step 6** Select **Message Digest Authentication** to configure the authentication supported by OSPF.
 - Step 7** Under the **Message Digest Authentication- Key Map** association box enter the Key, Type and Password.
 - Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Note

To configure OSPF in SVI interfaces, you must enable Multicast over Multicast (MOM). This allows OSPF to establish neighbor adjacencies between SVIs.

Configuring OSPF Protocol (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Routing Protocol > OSPF** and click **Add**.
 - Step 2** In the **Add Route** page, select the router from the drop-down list.

- Step 3** Enter the **Process ID**. It identifies the router's OSPF routing process to other routers.
- Step 4** Enter a **Router ID**.
- Step 5** Enable the **BFD** to create a Bidirectional Forwarding Detection session between two systems. BFD provides a short-duration method of detecting failures in the forwarding path between two adjacent switches, including the interfaces, data links, and forwarding planes. OSPF is a registered protocol with BFD and will receive forwarding path detection failure messages from BFD. You can either configure BFD support for OSPF globally on all interfaces or configure it selectively on one or more interfaces. BFD timers are negotiated, and the BFD peers will begin to send BFD control packets to each other at the negotiated interval.
- Step 6** Enable the **NSR** to allow a router with redundant Route Processors (RPs) to maintain its Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) state and adjacencies across planned and unplanned RP switchovers. It does this by checkpointing state information from OSPF on the active RP to the standby RP. Later, following a switchover to the standby RP, OSPF can use this checkpointed information to continue operation without interruption.
- Optionally, you can check the corresponding check box to enable VRF and select the VRF Name. In case you have not configured the VRF, you can follow the link to configure it on the **Interface > VRF** page.
- Step 7** For advanced options, check the **Advanced** radio button and populate the following fields:
- IP Address**—Enter the address of the destination network for this route.
- Wildcard**—Enter the subnet mask used on that network.
- Area**—The OSPF area number for that network. Each router in a particular OSPF area maintains a topological database for that area.
- Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring OSPF (CLI)

To enable OSPF in each physical interface, perform the following:

1. Configure a clear-text password (or) message digest key in an OSPF-enabled interface.
2. Create an OSPF routing process.
3. Specify the range of IP addresses to associate with the routing process.
4. Assign area IDs to be associated with that range.



Note To enable OSPF in SVI interfaces, you must enable Multicast over Multicast (MOM) using the **wireless multicast ip-address** command. This allows OSPF to establish neighbor adjacencies between SVIs.

The following topics describe procedures to configure routing protocol:

Configuring Basic OSPF Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	router ospf <i>process-id</i> Example: Device(config)# router ospf 1	Enables OSPF routing. The <i>process-id</i> is an internally used identification parameter that is locally assigned and can be any positive integer. Each OSPF routing process has a unique value. Note The OSPF for Routed Access supports a maximum of 1000 dynamically learned routes.
Step 3	network <i>address wildcard-mask area area-id</i> Example: Device(config-router)# network 10.10.10.0 255.255.255.0 area 1	Defines a network on which the OSPF runs an area ID for that interface. You can use the <i>wildcard-mask</i> to define one or more interfaces to be associated with a specific OSPF area. The <i>area-id</i> can be a decimal value or an IP address.
Step 4	bfd all-interfaces Example: Device(config-router)# bfd all-interfaces	Enables Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) in all interfaces.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-router)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring OSPF Interfaces (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface gigabitethernet <i>interface-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 2	Specifies interface to configure OSPF interfaces.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.0	Configures IP address for the OSPF interface.
Step 4	ip ospf authentication message-digest Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf authentication message-digest	Enables message digest for a specific interface.
Step 5	ip ospf authentication message-digest-key <i>key-number md5 password</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf authentication message-digest-key 1 md5 cisco123	Enables message digest key for the OSPF.
Step 6	ip ospf <i>value area area-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf 1 area 1	Assigns interface and its network to OSPF process and area.
Step 7	ip ospf bfd Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf bfd	Enables BFD in an interface.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Select a policy profile and in the **Edit Policy Profile** window, go to the advanced policy profile properties.
 - Step 3** Under the **Advanced** tab, enable **L3 Access** on the policy profile so that client traffic on a WLAN that has this policy can benefit from Layer 3 forwarding.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling Layer 3 Access on Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures a wireless policy profile.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile.
Step 4	l3-access Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# l3-access	Enables L3 access in the wireless policy profile.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.

Configuring Multicast Traffic

Enabling Multicast Traffic without VRF (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Multicast**.
- Step 2** In the **PIM and Multicast Routing** section, configure multicast routing globally by enabling **Distributed Multicast-Routing**.
- Step 3** Configure PIM RP-Address in the **PIM Configuration** sub-section. This configuration is required so that receivers can find the multicast source in the network. Choose the configuration options from below:
- Enter the address to statically configure the RP Address.

- Enable Auto RP Listener to dynamically discover RP in a PIM-SM network.

- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
- Step 5** Designate the interface on which multicast traffic should be sent. To do so, go to **Configuration > Layer 2 > VLAN** and select the **SVI** interface.
- Step 6** Enable the **PIM Sparse Mode** protocol to allow the SVI interface to participate in sparse mode multicast traffic transmission and multicast shared tree. This ensures that, clients in that VLAN are able to receive multicast traffic from different multicast groups (sources).
- Step 7** Select the IGMP version from the drop- down list to direct multicast packets better. When this feature is enabled, the controller gathers IGMP reports from the clients, processes them, creates unique multicast group IDs (MGIDs) from the IGMP reports after selecting the Layer 3 multicast address and the VLAN number, and sends the IGMP reports to the infrastructure switch.
- Step 8** Select **IPv4** checkbox and enter the details.
- Step 9** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Enabling Multicast Traffic without VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ip multicast-routing distributed Example: Device(config)# ip multicast-routing distributed	Enables IP multicast routing. The distributed keyword enables multicast globally.
Step 3	wireless multicast ip-address Example: Device(config)# wireless multicast 224.0.0.0	Enables multicast traffic.
Step 4	ip pim rp-address ip-address Example: Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 169.254.0.0	Configures address of a PIM Rendezvous Point (RP).
Step 5	interface interface-type-number Example: Device(config)# interface Vlan11	Selects an interface connected to hosts on which PIM can be enabled.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-if)# description "Client SVI"	Adds a description for the VLAN.
Step 7	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.225 255.255.255.0	Enables IP address on an interface.
Step 8	no ip proxy-arp Example: Device(config-if)# no ip proxy-arp	Disables proxy ARP.
Step 9	ip pim sparse-mode Example: Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode	Enables PIM-SM mode.
Step 10	ip ospf authentication message-digest Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf authentication message-digest	Enables OSPF authentication for a specific interface.
Step 11	ip ospf authentication message-digest-key <i>key-number md5 password</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip ospf message-digest-key 1 md5 cisco123	Enables message digest key for the OSPF.
Step 12	no mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the maintenance operation protocol (MOP) for an interface.
Step 13	no mop sysid Example: Device(config-if)# no mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.
Step 14	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling Multicast Traffic with PIM-SSM (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ip multicast-routing distributed Example: Device(config)# ip multicast-routing distributed	Enables IP multicast routing. The distributed keyword enables MDS globally.
Step 3	wireless multicast ip-address Example: Device(config)# wireless multicast 224.0.0.0	Enables multicast traffic. For information about the multicast traffic, see Wireless Multicast .
Step 4	ip pim ssm default Example: Device(config)# ip pim ssm default	Configures PIM-SSM on all network devices. Note The default SSM range is 232.0.0.0/8 . So, if you do not configure different range, the default SSM range is used.
Step 5	ip pim ssm range access-list Example: Device(config)# ip pim ssm range access-list	Defines SSM range of IP multicast addresses.
Step 6	interface interface-type-number Example: Device(config)# interface Vlan11	Selects an interface connected to hosts on which PIM can be enabled.
Step 7	description description Example: Device(config-if)# description "Client SVI"	Adds a description for the VLAN.
Step 8	ip address ip-address mask-address Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.225 255.255.255.0	Enables IP address on an interface.
Step 9	no ip proxy-arp Example:	Disables proxy ARP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# no ip proxy-arp	
Step 10	ip pim sparse-mode Example: Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode	Enables PIM-SM on an interface.
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Selective NAT Support

Selective implies that only certain subset of options are supported in Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1 release.

Enabling Static NAT without VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface <i>interface-type number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet2	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224	Sets the IP address for an interface.
Step 4	ip nat outside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat outside	Connects the interface to the outside network.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits the interface configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
Step 6	interface <i>interface-type number</i> Example:	Specifies a different interface and enters the interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet3	
Step 7	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.0	Sets the IP address for an interface.
Step 8	ip nat inside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat inside	Marks the interface as connected to the inside.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits the interface configuration mode and enters global configuration mode.
Step 10	ip nat inside source static <i>local-ip global-ip</i> Example: Device(config)# ip nat inside source static 10.10.10.100 209.165.200.226	Translates between an inside local address and inside global address.

Enabling Static NAT with VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface <i>interface-type-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet2	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding guest	Activates multiprotocol VRF on an interface.
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224	Enables IP address on an interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ip nat outside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat outside	Marks the interface as connected to the outside.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	interface interface-type-number Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet3	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 8	vrf forwarding vrf-name Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding guest	Activates multiprotocol VRF on an interface.
Step 9	ip address ip-address mask-address Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.0	Enables IP address on an interface.
Step 10	ip nat inside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat inside	Marks the interface as connected to the inside.
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 12	ip nat inside source static local-ip global-ip vrf vrf_name [match-in-vrf] Example: Device(config)# ip nat inside source static 10.10.10.101 209.165.200.227 vrf guest match-in-vrf	Translates between an inside local address and inside global address. Note The match-in-vrf keyword is optional and required when the same VRF is configured in the inside and outside NAT interface. For more information about match-in-vrf, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipaddr_nat/configuration/xr-16/nat-xr-16-book/iadnat-match-vrf.html

Enabling Dynamic NAT without VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface interface-type number Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet2	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address ip-address mask-address Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224	Sets the IP address for an interface.
Step 4	ip nat outside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat outside	Marks the interface as connected to the outside.
Step 5	interface interface-type number Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet3	Specifies a different interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 6	ip address ip-address mask-address Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.0	Sets the IP address for an interface.
Step 7	ip nat inside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat inside	Marks the interface as connected to the inside.
Step 8	ip nat pool name start-ip end-ip {netmask netmask prefix-length prefix-length} Example: Device(config)# ip nat pool test_nat_pool 209.165.200.228 209.165.200.230 netmask 255.255.255.252	Defines a pool of network addresses for NAT.
Step 9	access-list access-list-number permit ip source-address [source-wildcard-bits] host destination-address	Defines a standard access list for the addresses to be translated. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit ip 10.10.10.102 0.0.0.255 host 209.165.200.235</pre>	The host keyword is optional for access-list configuration. It depends on the type of ACL you want to configure.
Step 10	ip nat inside source list <i>access-list-number</i> pool <i>name</i> overload Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip nat inside source list 101 pool test_nat_pool overload</pre>	Establishes dynamic source translation with overloading using the defined access list.
Step 11	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# exit</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling Dynamic NAT with VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	interface <i>interface-type-number</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet2</pre>	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding guest</pre>	Activates multiprotocol VRF on an interface.
Step 4	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.224</pre>	Enables IP address on an interface.
Step 5	ip nat outside Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# ip nat outside</pre>	Marks the interface as connected to the outside.
Step 6	end Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# end	
Step 7	interface <i>interface-type-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface GigabitEthernet3	Specifies an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 8	vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding guest	Activates multiprotocol VRF on an interface.
Step 9	ip address <i>ip-address mask-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.10 255.255.255.0	Enables IP address on an interface.
Step 10	ip nat inside Example: Device(config-if)# ip nat inside	Marks the interface as connected to the inside.
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 12	ip access-list standard <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip access-list standard 50	Defines a standard IPv4 access list using a name. The <i>name</i> can be a number from 1 to 99.
Step 13	<i>sequence-number</i> permit <i>host-network wildcard-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# 10 permit 10.10.10.103 0.0.0.255	Specifies the forwarded packet. Note <i>sequence-number</i> refers to the number where the rule should be in the list. Hence, lower the sequence number higher the priority for the rule.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.
Step 15	ip nat pool <i>name start-ip end-ip {netmask netmask prefix-length prefix-length}</i> Example: Device(config)# ip nat pool 13_access_pool 209.165.200.236 209.165.200.238 netmask 255.255.255.252	Defines a pool of network addresses for NAT.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 16	ip nat inside source list <i>access-list-number</i> pool <i>name</i> vrf <i>vrf-name</i> match-in-vrf overload Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip nat inside source list 50 pool 13_access_pool vrf vrf-2 match-in-vrf overload</pre>	Establishes dynamic source translation with overloading using the defined access list. Note The match-in-vrf keyword is optional and required when the same VRF is configured in the inside and outside NAT interface. For more information about match-in-vrf, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipaddr_nat/configuration/xr-16/nat-xr-16-book/iadnat-match-vrf.html
Step 17	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling Timeout for NAT (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ip nat translation [icmp-timeout tcp-timeout timeout udp-timeout] <i>number-of-seconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip nat translation timeout 30</pre>	Specifies timeouts for NAT translations. The following timeout options are supported: • icmp-timeout: ICMP packets timeout. • tcp-timeout: TCP packets timeout. • timeout: Global timeout for all protocol types. • udp-timeout: UDP packets timeout.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Selective Internal DHCP with VRF Support

Enabling Internal DHCP with VRF (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy l3-sample	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>profile-policy-description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "Sample guest policy"	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 4	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA policy override.
Step 5	ipv4 dhcp opt82 Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82	Enables DHCP Option 82 for the wireless clients.
Step 6	ipv4 dhcp opt82 vrf Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 vrf	Enables VRF on DHCP Option 82.
Step 7	ipv4 dhcp server <i>ip-address</i> vrf <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp server 10.1.1.1 vrf sample_guest	Configures the WLAN's IPv4 DHCP server IP address and VRF name.
Step 8	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	l3-access Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# l3-access	Enables L3 access in the wireless policy profile.
Step 10	nac Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac	Configures Network Access Control in the policy profile.
Step 11	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 55	Maps the VLAN to a policy profile. If <i>vlan-id</i> is not specified, the default native vlan 1 is applied. The valid range for <i>vlan-id</i> is 1 to 4096.
Step 12	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.

Verifying Routing Protocol Details

To verify the OSPF details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1
Routing Process "ospf 1" with ID 31.31.31.1
Start time: 00:01:46.103, Time elapsed: 03:12:34.745
Supports only single TOS(TOS0) routes
Supports opaque LSA
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Supports area transit capability
Supports NSSA (compatible with RFC 3101)
Supports Database Exchange Summary List Optimization (RFC 5243)
Event-log enabled, Maximum number of events: 1000, Mode: cyclic
Router is not originating router-LSAs with maximum metric
Initial SPF schedule delay 50 msec
Minimum hold time between two consecutive SPF 200 msec
Maximum wait time between two consecutive SPF 5000 msec
Incremental-SPF disabled
Initial LSA throttle delay 50 msec
Minimum hold time for LSA throttle 200 msec
Maximum wait time for LSA throttle 5000 msec
Minimum LSA arrival 100 msec
LSA group pacing timer 240 secs
Interface flood pacing timer 33 msec
Retransmission pacing timer 66 msec
EXCHANGE/LOADING adjacency limit: initial 300, process maximum 300
Number of external LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of opaque AS LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge external and opaque AS LSA 0
Number of areas in this router is 1. 1 normal 0 stub 0 nssa
Number of areas transit capable is 0
External flood list length 0

```

```

IETF NSF helper support enabled
Cisco NSF helper support enabled
Reference bandwidth unit is 100 mbps
Area 1
    Number of interfaces in this area is 3
Area has no authentication
SPF algorithm last executed 03:11:47.277 ago
SPF algorithm executed 9 times
Area ranges are
Number of LSA 5. Checksum Sum 0x0212EE
Number of opaque link LSA 0. Checksum Sum 0x000000
Number of DCbitless LSA 0
Number of indication LSA 0
Number of DoNotAge LSA 0
Flood list length 0

```

To verify the OSPF database details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 database
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

Router Link States (Area 1)

Link ID          ADV Router      Age           Seq#           Checksum Link count
31.31.31.1       31.31.31.1     1470          0x8000000C    0x00289A 3
50.50.50.1       50.50.50.1     1745          0x8000000A    0x001018 3
51.51.51.1       51.51.51.1     1500          0x8000000A    0x008EFB 2

Net Link States (Area 1)

Link ID          ADV Router      Age           Seq#           Checksum
30.30.30.2       50.50.50.1     1745          0x80000006    0x00B793
31.31.31.2       51.51.51.1     1500          0x80000006    0x0093AE

```

To verify the IP route details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip route
Codes: L - local, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
       D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
       N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
       E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2, m - OMP
       n - NAT, Ni - NAT inside, No - NAT outside, Nd - NAT DIA
       i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
       ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
       H - NHRP, G - NHRP registered, g - NHRP registration summary
       o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route, l - LISP
       a - application route
       + - replicated route, % - next hop override, p - overrides from PfR
       & - replicated local route overrides by connected

Gateway of last resort is not set

    5.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C       5.5.5.0/24 is directly connected, Vlan5
L       5.5.5.2/32 is directly connected, Vlan5
    6.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C       6.6.6.0/24 is directly connected, Vlan6
L       6.6.6.2/32 is directly connected, Vlan6
    30.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C       30.30.30.0/24 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet3
L       30.30.30.1/32 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet3
    31.0.0.0/8 is variably subnetted, 2 subnets, 2 masks
C       31.31.31.0/24 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet4
L       31.31.31.1/32 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet4
    32.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets

```

```

O      32.32.32.0 [110/2] via 30.30.30.2, 03:11:58, GigabitEthernet3
      50.0.0.0/32 is subnetted, 1 subnets
O      50.50.50.1 [110/2] via 30.30.30.2, 03:11:58, GigabitEthernet3
      51.0.0.0/32 is subnetted, 1 subnets
O      51.51.51.1 [110/2] via 31.31.31.2, 03:12:00, GigabitEthernet4

```

To verify the IP OSPF route list details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 route-list
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

```

```

Base Topology (MTID 0)

```

```

Area 1

```

```

Intra-area Route List

```

```

* 31.31.31.0/24, Intra, cost 1, area 1, Connected
  via 31.31.31.1, GigabitEthernet4
* 30.30.30.0/24, Intra, cost 1, area 1, Connected
  via 30.30.30.1, GigabitEthernet3
* 6.6.6.0/24, Intra, cost 1, area 1, Connected
  via 6.6.6.2, Vlan6
*> 32.32.32.0/24, Intra, cost 2, area 1
  via 30.30.30.2, GigabitEthernet3
*> 50.50.50.1/32, Intra, cost 2, area 1
  via 30.30.30.2, GigabitEthernet3
*> 51.51.51.1/32, Intra, cost 2, area 1
  via 31.31.31.2, GigabitEthernet4

```

```

First Hop Forwarding Gateway Tree

```

```

31.31.31.1 on GigabitEthernet4, count 1
31.31.31.2 on GigabitEthernet4, count 1
30.30.30.1 on GigabitEthernet3, count 1
30.30.30.2 on GigabitEthernet3, count 2
6.6.6.2 on Vlan6, count 1

```

To verify the OSPF traffic details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 traffic
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

```

```

OSPF queue statistics for process ID 1:

```

	InputQ	UpdateQ	OutputQ
Limit	0	200	0
Drops	0	0	0
Max delay [msec]	1	1	1
Max size	2	2	2
Invalid	0	0	0
Hello	0	0	0
DB des	0	0	1
LS req	1	1	1
LS upd	1	1	0
LS ack	0	0	0
Current size	0	0	0
Invalid	0	0	0
Hello	0	0	0
DB des	0	0	0
LS req	0	0	0
LS upd	0	0	0
LS ack	0	0	0

Interface statistics:

.

Interface GigabitEthernet4

Summary traffic statistics for process ID 1:

OSPF packets received/sent

Type	Packets	Bytes
RX Invalid	0	0
RX Hello	2435	116880
RX DB des	17	584
RX LS req	2	96
RX LS upd	24	2360
RX LS ack	24	1436
RX Total	2502	121356
TX Failed	0	0
TX Hello	3653	506540
TX DB des	6	704
TX LS req	2	144
TX LS upd	31	4204
TX LS ack	14	1560
TX Total	3706	513152

OSPF header errors

Length 0, Instance ID 0, Checksum 0, Auth Type 0,
Version 0, Bad Source 0, No Virtual Link 0,
Area Mismatch 0, No Sham Link 0, Self Originated 0,
Duplicate ID 0, Hello 0, MTU Mismatch 0,
Nbr Ignored 0, LLS 0, Unknown Neighbor 0,
Authentication 0, TTL Check Fail 0, Adjacency Throttle 0,
BFD 0, Test discard 0

OSPF LSA errors

Type 0, Length 0, Data 0, Checksum 0

To verify the OSPF neighbor details, use the following command:

Device# show ip ospf 1 neighbor

Neighbor ID	Pri	State	Dead Time	Address	Interface
51.51.51.1	1	FULL/DR	00:00:37	31.31.31.2	GigabitEthernet4
50.50.50.1	1	FULL/DR	00:00:39	30.30.30.2	GigabitEthernet3

To verify the OSPF neighbor summary, use the following command:

Device#show ip ospf 1 neighbor summary

OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

DOWN	0
ATTEMPT	0
INIT	0
2WAY	0
EXSTART	0
EXCHANGE	0
LOADING	0
FULL	2
Total count	2 (Undergoing NSF 0)

To verify the OSPF event details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip ospf 1 events
```

```

OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

1   Sep 21 21:49:12.406: Generate Changed Type-1 LSA, LSID 31.31.31.1, Seq# 8000000C, Age
   0, Area 1
2   Sep 21 21:48:44.064: Rcv Unchanged Type-2 LSA, LSID 31.31.31.2, Adv-Rtr 51.51.51.1,
   Seq# 80000006, Age 1, Area 1
3   Sep 21 21:48:44.064: Rcv Unchanged Type-1 LSA, LSID 51.51.51.1, Adv-Rtr 51.51.51.1,
   Seq# 8000000A, Age 1, Area 1
4   Sep 21 21:44:38.726: Rcv Unchanged Type-2 LSA, LSID 30.30.30.2, Adv-Rtr 50.50.50.1,
   Seq# 80000006, Age 1, Area 1
5   Sep 21 21:44:38.726: Rcv Unchanged Type-1 LSA, LSID 50.50.50.1, Adv-Rtr 50.50.50.1,
   Seq# 8000000A, Age 1, Area 1
.
.
.
30  Sep 21 19:01:45.594: End of SPF, Topo Base, SPF time 1ms, next wait-interval 800ms
.
.
.
74  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_external_route_sync  0x1
75  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_external_route_sync  0x1
76  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_external_route_sync  0x0
77  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_external_route_sync  0x0
78  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Starting External processing, Topo Base in area 1
79  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Starting External processing, Topo Base
80  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_inter_route_sync  0x1
81  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_inter_route_sync  0x1
82  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Starting summary processing, Topo Base, Area 1
83  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  post_spf_intra  0x0
84  Sep 21 19:01:44.676: Generic:  ospf_intra_route_sync  0x1
.
.
.

```

To verify the OSPF details in the database summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip ospf 1 database database-summary
```

```
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)
```

```

Area 1 database summary
  LSA Type      Count    Delete    Maxage
  Router        3          0         0
  Network       2          0         0
  Summary Net   0          0         0
  Summary ASBR  0          0         0
  Type-7 Ext    0          0         0
    Prefixes redistributed in Type-7  0
  Opaque Link   0          0         0
  Opaque Area   0          0         0
  Subtotal      5          0         0
Process 1 database summary
  LSA Type      Count    Delete    Maxage
  Router        3          0         0
  Network       2          0         0
  Summary Net   0          0         0
  Summary ASBR  0          0         0
  Type-7 Ext    0          0         0
  Opaque Link   0          0         0
  Opaque Area   0          0         0
  Type-5 Ext    0          0         0
    Prefixes redistributed in Type-5  0

```



```

Opaque AS      0      0      0
Total          5      0      0
Non-self       4

```

To verify the OSPF details in the internal database, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 database internal
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

  Stub Link States (Area 1)

Link ID      ADV Router    Age      Seq#       Checksum Mask
6.6.6.255    31.31.31.1    11545    0x0        0x006611 /24
30.30.30.255 31.31.31.1    11546    0x0        0x00032C /24
31.31.31.255 31.31.31.1    11548    0x0        0x00DE4D /24
32.32.32.255 50.50.50.1    11545    0x0        0x00F0FE /24
50.50.50.1   50.50.50.1    11545    0x0        0x005C5C /32
51.51.51.1   51.51.51.1    11547    0x0        0x002092 /32

  Router Link States (Area 1)

Link ID      ADV Router    Age      Seq#       Checksum Link count
31.31.31.1   31.31.31.1    1498     0x8000000C 0x00289A 3
50.50.50.1   50.50.50.1    1772     0x8000000A 0x001018 3
51.51.51.1   51.51.51.1    1527     0x8000000A 0x008EFB 2

  Net Link States (Area 1)

Link ID      ADV Router    Age      Seq#       Checksum
30.30.30.2   50.50.50.1    1772     0x80000006 0x00B793
31.31.31.2   51.51.51.1    1527     0x80000006 0x0093AE

```

To verify the OSPF details in the database network, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 database network
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

  Net Link States (Area 1)

LS age: 1772
Options: (No TOS-capability, DC)
LS Type: Network Links
Link State ID: 30.30.30.2 (address of Designated Router)
Advertising Router: 50.50.50.1
LS Seq Number: 80000006
Checksum: 0xB793
Length: 32
Network Mask: /24
Attached Router: 50.50.50.1
Attached Router: 31.31.31.1

LS age: 1527
Options: (No TOS-capability, DC)
LS Type: Network Links
Link State ID: 31.31.31.2 (address of Designated Router)
Advertising Router: 51.51.51.1
LS Seq Number: 80000006
Checksum: 0x93AE
Length: 32
Network Mask: /24
Attached Router: 51.51.51.1
Attached Router: 31.31.31.1

```

To verify the OSPF details in the database router, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 database router
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

  Router Link States (Area 1)

    LS age: 1498
    Options: (No TOS-capability, DC)
    LS Type: Router Links
    Link State ID: 31.31.31.1
    Advertising Router: 31.31.31.1
    LS Seq Number: 8000000C
    Checksum: 0x289A
    Length: 60
    Number of Links: 3

      Link connected to: a Transit Network
        (Link ID) Designated Router address: 31.31.31.2
        (Link Data) Router Interface address: 31.31.31.1
        Number of MTID metrics: 0
        TOS 0 Metrics: 1

      Link connected to: a Transit Network
        (Link ID) Designated Router address: 30.30.30.2
        (Link Data) Router Interface address: 30.30.30.1
        Number of MTID metrics: 0
        TOS 0 Metrics: 1

      Link connected to: a Stub Network
        (Link ID) Network/subnet number: 6.6.6.0
        (Link Data) Network Mask: 255.255.255.0
        Number of MTID metrics: 0
        TOS 0 Metrics: 1
    .
    .
    .

```

To verify the OSPF details in the database topology, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip ospf 1 database topology
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

  Base Topology (MTID 0)

    Router Link States (Area 1)

      Link ID          ADV Router      Age          Seq#          Checksum Link count
      31.31.31.1       31.31.31.1    1498         0x8000000C   0x00289A  3
      50.50.50.1       50.50.50.1    1772         0x8000000A   0x001018  3
      51.51.51.1       51.51.51.1    1527         0x8000000A   0x008EFB  2

    Net Link States (Area 1)

      Link ID          ADV Router      Age          Seq#          Checksum
      30.30.30.2       50.50.50.1    1772         0x80000006   0x00B793
      31.31.31.2       51.51.51.1    1527         0x80000006   0x0093AE
    vWLC_TB1#
    vWLC_TB1#show ip ospf 1 request-list

      OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)

      Neighbor 51.51.51.1, interface GigabitEthernet4 address 31.31.31.2
      Request list size 0, maximum list size 1

```

```
Neighbor 50.50.50.1, interface GigabitEthernet3 address 30.30.30.2
Request list size 0, maximum list size 1
vWLC_TB1#
vWLC_TB1#show ip ospf flood-list
```

```
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)
```

```
Interface GigabitEthernet4, Queue length 0
```

```
Interface GigabitEthernet3, Queue length 0
```

```
Interface Vlan6, Queue length 0
```

To verify the OSPF request details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip ospf request-list Gi3 50.50.50.1
OSPF Router with ID (31.31.31.1) (Process ID 1)
```

```
Neighbor 50.50.50.1, interface GigabitEthernet3 address 30.30.30.2
Request list size 0, maximum list size 1
```

To verify the OSPF interface details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip ospf interface
GigabitEthernet4 is up, line protocol is up
Internet Address 31.31.31.1/24, Interface ID 10, Area 1
Attached via Network Statement
Process ID 1, Router ID 31.31.31.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 1
Topology-MTID      Cost      Disabled      Shutdown      Topology Name
      0              1          no             no             Base
Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State BDR, Priority 1
Designated Router (ID) 51.51.51.1, Interface address 31.31.31.2
Backup Designated router (ID) 31.31.31.1, Interface address 31.31.31.1
Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
  oob-resync timeout 40
  Hello due in 00:00:03
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Cisco NSF helper support enabled
IETF NSF helper support enabled
Can be protected by per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute
Can be used for per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute repair paths
Not Protected by per-prefix TI-LFA
Index 1/3/3, flood queue length 0
Next 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0)
Last flood scan length is 1, maximum is 2
Last flood scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
  Adjacent with neighbor 51.51.51.1 (Designated Router)
Suppress hello for 0 neighbor(s)
Cryptographic authentication enabled
  Youngest key id is 1
GigabitEthernet3 is up, line protocol is up
Internet Address 30.30.30.1/24, Interface ID 9, Area 1
Attached via Network Statement
Process ID 1, Router ID 31.31.31.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 1
Topology-MTID      Cost      Disabled      Shutdown      Topology Name
      0              1          no             no             Base
Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State BDR, Priority 1
Designated Router (ID) 50.50.50.1, Interface address 30.30.30.2
Backup Designated router (ID) 31.31.31.1, Interface address 30.30.30.1
Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
  oob-resync timeout 40
  Hello due in 00:00:06
Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
Cisco NSF helper support enabled
```

```

IETF NSF helper support enabled
Can be protected by per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute
Can be used for per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute repair paths
Not Protected by per-prefix TI-LFA
Index 1/2/2, flood queue length 0
Next 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0)
Last flood scan length is 1, maximum is 2
Last flood scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
    Adjacent with neighbor 50.50.50.1 (Designated Router)
Suppress hello for 0 neighbor(s)
Cryptographic authentication enabled
    Youngest key id is 1
Vlan6 is up, line protocol is up
    Internet Address 6.6.6.2/24, Interface ID 16, Area 1
    Attached via Interface Enable
    Process ID 1, Router ID 31.31.31.1, Network Type BROADCAST, Cost: 1
    Topology-MTID      Cost      Disabled      Shutdown      Topology Name
        0              1          no            no            Base
    Enabled by interface config, including secondary ip addresses
    Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State DR, Priority 1
    Designated Router (ID) 31.31.31.1, Interface address 6.6.6.2
    No backup designated router on this network
    Timer intervals configured, Hello 10, Dead 40, Wait 40, Retransmit 5
        oob-resync timeout 40
        Hello due in 00:00:01
    Supports Link-local Signaling (LLS)
    Cisco NSF helper support enabled
    IETF NSF helper support enabled
    Can be protected by per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute
    Can be used for per-prefix Loop-Free FastReroute repair paths
    Not Protected by per-prefix TI-LFA
    Index 1/1/1, flood queue length 0
    Next 0x0(0)/0x0(0)/0x0(0)
    Last flood scan length is 0, maximum is 0
    Last flood scan time is 0 msec, maximum is 0 msec
    Neighbor Count is 0, Adjacent neighbor count is 0
    Suppress hello for 0 neighbor(s)
    Cryptographic authentication enabled
        Youngest key id is 1

```

Verifying Multicast Traffic Details

To verify if a multicast group supports SSM or not, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip mroute
IP Multicast Routing Table
Flags: D - Dense, S - Sparse, B - Bidir Group, s - SSM Group, C - Connected,
        L - Local, P - Pruned, R - RP-bit set, F - Register flag,
        T - SPT-bit set, J - Join SPT, M - MSDP created entry, E - Extranet,
        X - Proxy Join Timer Running, A - Candidate for MSDP Advertisement,
        U - URD, I - Received Source Specific Host Report,
        Z - Multicast Tunnel, z - MDT-data group sender,
        Y - Joined MDT-data group, y - Sending to MDT-data group,
        G - Received BGP C-Mroute, g - Sent BGP C-Mroute,
        N - Received BGP Shared-Tree Prune, n - BGP C-Mroute suppressed,
        Q - Received BGP S-A Route, q - Sent BGP S-A Route,
        V - RD & Vector, v - Vector, p - PIM Joins on route,
        x - VxLAN group, c - PFP-SA cache created entry,
        * - determined by Assert, # - iif-starg configured on rpf intf,
        e - encap-helper tunnel flag, l - LISP decap ref count contributor

```

```

Outgoing interface flags: H - Hardware switched, A - Assert winner, p - PIM Join
                        t - LIISF transit group
Timers: Uptime/Expires
Interface state: Interface, Next-Hop or VCD, State/Mode

(*, 239.0.0.158), 00:00:07/stopped, RP 15.1.1.2, flags: SJC
  Incoming interface: GigabitEthernet3, RPF nbr 13.1.1.2
  Outgoing interface list:
    Vlan12, Forward/Sparse, 00:00:07/00:02:52, flags:

(17.1.1.1, 239.0.0.158), 00:00:06/00:02:53, flags: JT
  Incoming interface: GigabitEthernet3, RPF nbr 13.1.1.2
  Outgoing interface list:
    Vlan12, Forward/Sparse, 00:00:06/00:02:53, flags:

(*, 231.1.1.1), 02:32:08/stopped, RP 15.1.1.2, flags: SJCF
  Incoming interface: GigabitEthernet3, RPF nbr 13.1.1.2
  Outgoing interface list:
    Vlan12, Forward/Sparse, 00:01:31/00:01:28, flags:

(12.1.0.198, 231.1.1.1), 02:32:08/00:02:53, flags: PFT
  Incoming interface: Vlan12, RPF nbr 0.0.0.0
  Outgoing interface list: Null

(*, 224.0.1.40), 02:32:14/00:02:47, RP 15.1.1.2, flags: SJPL
  Incoming interface: GigabitEthernet3, RPF nbr 13.1.1.2
  Outgoing interface list: Null

```

To verify the IGMP membership details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip igmp membership
Flags: A - aggregate, T - tracked
      L - Local, S - static, V - virtual, R - Reported through v3
      I - v3lite, U - Urd, M - SSM (S,G) channel
      1,2,3 - The version of IGMP, the group is in
Channel/Group-Flags:
      / - Filtering entry (Exclude mode (S,G), Include mode (G))
Reporter:
      <mac-or-ip-address> - last reporter if group is not explicitly tracked
      <n>/<m> - <n> reporter in include mode, <m> reporter in exclude

Channel/Group          Reporter      Uptime  Exp.  Flags  Interface
*,239.255.255.250      11.1.1.4     00:01:38 02:57 2A     Vl12
*,239.0.0.158          11.1.1.3     00:00:05 02:54 2A     Vl12
*,231.1.1.1            12.1.0.8     00:00:07 02:52 2A     Vl12
*,224.0.1.40           13.1.1.1     02:34:15 02:45 2LA    Gi3

```

To verify the IGMP snooping details, use the following command:

```

Device# show ip igmp snooping igmpv2-tracking
Client to SGV mappings
-----
Client: 11.1.1.3 Port: Ca2
      Group: 239.0.0.158 Vlan: 12 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no

Client: 11.1.1.4 Port: Ca2
      Group: 239.255.255.250 Vlan: 12 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no

SGV to Client mappings
-----
Group: 239.0.0.158 Source: 0.0.0.0 Vlan: 12
      Client: 11.1.1.3 Port: Ca2 Blacklisted: no

```

```
Group: 239.255.255.250 Source: 0.0.0.0 Vlan: 12
Client: 11.1.1.4 Port: Ca2 Blacklisted: no
```

To verify the multicast group summary details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless multicast group summary
IPv4 groups
```

```
-----
MGID          Group          Vlan
-----
4160          239.255.255.250          12
4161          239.255.255.250          12
```

```
IPv6 groups
```

```
-----
MGID          Group          Vlan
-----
```

To verify the IGMP snooping groups, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip igmp snooping groups
```

Vlan	Group	Type	Version	Port List
12	239.0.0.158	igmp	v2	Ca2
12	239.255.255.250	igmp	v2	Ca2

To verify the IGMP snooping, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip igmp snooping
Global IGMP Snooping configuration:
-----
IGMP snooping           : Enabled
Global PIM Snooping     : Disabled
IGMPv3 snooping (minimal) : Enabled
Report suppression      : Enabled
TCN solicit query       : Disabled
TCN flood query count   : 2
Robustness variable     : 2
Last member query count : 2
Last member query interval : 1000
.
.
.
Vlan 11:
-----
IGMP snooping           : Enabled
Pim Snooping            : Disabled
IGMPv2 immediate leave  : Disabled
Multicast router learning mode : pim-dvmrp
CGMP interoperability mode : IGMP_ONLY
Robustness variable     : 2
Last member query count : 2
Last member query interval : 1000

Vlan 12:
-----
IGMP snooping           : Enabled
Pim Snooping            : Disabled
IGMPv2 immediate leave  : Disabled
Multicast router learning mode : pim-dvmrp
CGMP interoperability mode : IGMP_ONLY
Robustness variable     : 2
```

```
Last member query count      : 2
Last member query interval   : 1000
```

To verify the active streams from any sources, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip mroute active
Active IP Multicast Sources - sending >= 4 kbps

Group: 239.255.0.1, (?)
  Source: 192.168.33.32 (?)
    Rate: 10 pps/115 kbps(1sec), 235 kbps(last 23 secs), 87 kbps(life avg)
```

To verify the TTL related issues in the path for the given stream, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip traffic | include bad hop count
0 format errors, 0 checksum errors, 1529 bad hop count
```

To verify the RPF failures, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip mroute count | inc RPF failed|Other
Other counts: Total/RPF failed/Other drops(OIF-null, rate-limit etc)
  RP-tree: Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 2/2/0
  RP-tree: Forwarding: 3/0/74/0, Other: 3/0/0
  Source: 32.32.32.32/32, Forwarding: 218747/2/74/1, Other: 218747/0/0
  RP-tree: Forwarding: 0/0/0/0, Other: 0/0/0
  Source: 9.4.168.10/32, Forwarding: 31/0/146/0, Other: 3841861/0/3841830
```

Verifying Static NAT Details

Verifying Static NAT Details without VRF

To verify the static IP NAT statistics without VRF, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip nat statistics
Total active translations: 1 (1 static, 0 dynamic; 0 extended)
Outside interfaces:
Vlan62
Inside interfaces:
Vlan55
Hits: 1474 Misses: 0
Reserved port setting disabled provisioned no
Expired translations: 1
Dynamic mappings:
nat-limit statistics:
max entry: max allowed 0, used 0, missed 0
In-to-out drops: 0 Out-to-in drops: 0
Pool stats drop: 0 Mapping stats drop: 0
Port block alloc fail: 0
IP alias add fail: 0
Limit entry add fail: 0
```

To verify the static NAT without VRF on active chassis, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software nat chassis active F0 translation
Pro Inside global Inside local Outside local Outside global
--- 62.1.1.15 155.1.100.1 --- ---
--- 62.1.1.16 155.1.0.4 --- ---
udp 62.1.1.16:33334 155.1.0.4:33334 62.1.1.11:33333 62.1.1.11:33333
udp 62.1.1.16:30000 155.1.0.4:30000 62.1.1.11:30000 62.1.1.11:30000
Total number of translations: 4
```

Verifying Static NAT Details with VRF

To verify the static IP NAT statistics with VRF, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip nat statistics
Total active translations: 1 (1 static, 0 dynamic; 0 extended)
Outside interfaces:
Vlan62
Inside interfaces:
Vlan55
Hits: 1474 Misses: 0
Reserved port setting disabled provisioned no
Expired translations: 1
Dynamic mappings:
nat-limit statistics:
max entry: max allowed 0, used 0, missed 0
In-to-out drops: 0 Out-to-in drops: 0
Pool stats drop: 0 Mapping stats drop: 0
Port block alloc fail: 0
IP alias add fail: 0
Limit entry add fail: 0
```

To verify the static NAT with VRF on active chassis, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software nat chassis active F0 translation
Pro Inside global Inside local Outside local Outside global
--- 62.1.1.15 155.1.100.1 --- ---
--- 62.1.1.16 155.1.0.4 --- ---
udp 62.1.1.16:33334 155.1.0.4:33334 62.1.1.11:33333 62.1.1.11:33333
udp 62.1.1.16:30000 155.1.0.4:30000 62.1.1.11:30000 62.1.1.11:30000
Total number of translations: 4
```

Verifying Dynamic NAT Details

Verifying Dynamic NAT Details without VRF

To verify the dynamic IP NAT statistics without VRF, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip nat statistics
Total active translations: 1 (0 static, 1 dynamic; 1 extended)
Outside interfaces:
Vlan62
Inside interfaces:
Vlan155
Hits: 3 Misses: 1
Reserved port setting disabled provisioned no
Expired translations: 0
Dynamic mappings:
-- Inside Source
[Id: 2] access-list dest_nat_acl pool test_nat_pool refcount 1
pool test_nat_pool: id 1, netmask 255.255.255.252
start 62.1.1.101 end 62.1.1.101
type generic, total addresses 1, allocated 1 (100%), misses 0
longest chain in pool: test_nat_pool's addr-hash: 0, average len 0, chains 0/256
nat-limit statistics:
max entry: max allowed 0, used 0, missed 0
In-to-out drops: 0 Out-to-in drops: 0
Pool stats drop: 0 Mapping stats drop: 0
Port block alloc fail: 0
IP alias add fail: 0
Limit entry add fail: 0
```


To verify the dynamic NAT without VRF on active chassis, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software nat chassis active F0 translation
Pro  Inside global      Inside local      Outside local      Outside global
udp  62.1.1.101:30000     155.1.100.1:30000  62.1.1.11:30000   62.1.1.11:30000
Total number of translations: 1
```

Verifying Dynamic NAT Details with VRF

To verify the dynamic IP NAT statistics with VRF, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip nat statistics
Total active translations: 1 (0 static, 1 dynamic; 1 extended)
Outside interfaces:
  Vlan62
Inside interfaces:
  Vlan155
Hits: 3 Misses: 1
  Reserved port setting disabled provisioned no
Expired translations: 0
Dynamic mappings:
-- Inside Source
[Id: 2] access-list dest_nat_acl pool test_nat_pool refcount 1
  pool test_nat_pool: id 1, netmask 255.255.255.252
    start 62.1.1.101 end 62.1.1.101
    type generic, total addresses 1, allocated 1 (100%), misses 0
longest chain in pool: test_nat_pool's addr-hash: 0, average len 0, chains 0/256
nat-limit statistics:
  max entry: max allowed 0, used 0, missed 0
In-to-out drops: 0 Out-to-in drops: 0
Pool stats drop: 0 Mapping stats drop: 0
Port block alloc fail: 0
IP alias add fail: 0
Limit entry add fail: 0
```

To verify the dynamic NAT with VRF on active chassis, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software nat chassis active F0 translation
Pro  Inside global      Inside local      Outside local      Outside global
udp  62.1.1.101:30000     155.1.100.1:30000  62.1.1.11:30000   62.1.1.11:30000
Total number of translations: 1
```

Verifying NAT Details

To verify the NAT datapath pool details, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature nat datapath pool
pool_id 1 type 1 addroute 0 mask 0xffffffff allocated 0 misses 0 rotary idx 0x0 ahash sz 4
  size 1 max_pat_hash_size 1 next 0x0 hash_index 0x32, hilo ports 0x0 pool mem 0xde480010
flags 0x1 pool_name: test_nat_pool pat_wl 0 no_ports_wl 0 num_maps 1 num_overload_maps 1
vrf 0x0 port_used tcp 0 udp 0
Conf block info
start 62.1.1.102 end 62.1.1.102 flags 0x0 next 0x0 prev 0x0
TCP PAT block info
UDP PAT block info
ICMP PAT block info
GRE PAT block info
Alloced addr info
```

To verify the NAT datapath statistics, use the following command:

```

Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature nat datapath stats
Counter Value
-----
number_of_session 0
udp 0
tcp 0
icmp 0
non_extended 0
statics 0
static_net 0
entry_timeouts 0
hits 0
misses 0
cgn_dest_log_timeouts 0
ipv4_nat_alg_bind_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_alg_sd_not_found 0
ipv4_nat_alg_sd_tail_not_found 0
ipv4_nat_rx_pkt 2043
ipv4_nat_tx_pkt 122169
ipv4_nat_flowdb_hits 0
ipv4_nat_stick_rx_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_i2o_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_o2i_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_forus_hits_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_hit_sb 0
ipv4_nat_stick_ha_divert_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_ha_ar_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_stick_ha_tcp_fin 0
ipv4_nat_stick_ha_failed_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_non_natted_in2out_pkts 122165
ipv4_nat_non_nated_out2in_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_bypass_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_unmarked_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_res_port_in2out_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_res_port_out2in_pkts 0
ipv4_nat_ipc_retry_fail 0
ipv4_nat_cfg_rcvd 2
ipv4_nat_cfg_rsp 2

```

To clear the NAT details, use the following commands:

```

clear platform software nat chassis active F0 translation forced
clear ip nat statistics

```

Verifying NAT Timeout Details

To verify the NAT timeout details, use the following command:

```

Device# show platform software nat chassis active r0 timeout
Dump NAT timeout config

Type: generic, Timeout (sec): 86400, Enabled: Yes
Type: tcp, Timeout (sec): 86400, Enabled: Yes
Type: tcp-pptp, Timeout (sec): 86400, Enabled: Yes
Type: udp, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: tcp-fin-reset, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: tcp-syn, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: dns, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: icmp, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: skinny, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes

```

```
Type: icmp-error, Timeout (sec): 60, Enabled: Yes
Type: esp, Timeout (sec): 300, Enabled: Yes
Type: rtmap, Timeout (sec): 3600, Enabled: Yes
```

Verifying Internal DHCP with VRF Details

To verify the internal DHCP details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run int Vlan55
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 290 bytes
!
interface Vlan55
vrf forwarding sample_guest
ip address 55.55.55.2 255.255.255.0
no ip proxy-arp
ip nat inside
ip cef accounting non-recursive external
ip ospf authentication message-digest
ip ospf message-digest-key 1 md5 cisco123
no autostate
no mop enabled
no mop sysid
end
```

To verify the NAT datapath statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show run int Loopback1
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 90 bytes
!
interface Loopback1
vrf forwarding sample_guest
ip address 7.7.7.1 255.255.255.0
end

ip dhcp pool 13_sample_guest
vrf sample_guest
network 55.55.55.0 255.255.255.0
default-router 55.55.55.2
```

To verify the IP entries from database, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database ip
```

IP	MAC	VRF-NAME	ZONE/VRF-TABLE-ID	STATE	DISCOVERY
55.55.55.2	001e.bd11.a0ff		0x00000003	Reachable	Local
55.55.55.6	58a0.239b.d25f	sample_guest	0x00000003	Reachable	IPv4 DHCP

Verifying Layer 3 Access Details

To verify whether Layer 3 access is enabled for a specific policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile
Policy Profile Name      : default-policy-profile
Description              : default policy profile
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 20
.
.
.
L3 Forwarding                               : ENABLED
```

To view whether the Layer 3 access is enabled under policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy all
Policy Profile Name      : default-policy-profile
Description              : default policy profile
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 20
.
.
.
L3 Forwarding                               : ENABLED
```

To verify the client information, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <mac-address> detail
Client MAC Address : a886.ddb2.05e9
.
.
.
L3 Forwarding: Enabled
```

To verify the client gateway details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 0024.d742.46e4 detail | inc Gateway
.
.
.
Client Gateway IPv4 Address : 117.117.117.1
```



Note The client gateway is displayed only if the client performs DHCP.
If the client learns IP using static or ARP, the client gateway will not be displayed.



PART VI

System Management

- [Network Mobility Services Protocol, on page 645](#)
- [Application Visibility and Control, on page 659](#)
- [Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control, on page 681](#)
- [Cisco Hyperlocation, on page 685](#)
- [FastLocate for Cisco Catalyst Series Access Points, on page 697](#)
- [IoT Services Management, on page 701](#)
- [IoT Module Management in the Controller, on page 707](#)
- [Cisco Spaces, on page 711](#)
- [EDCA Parameters, on page 715](#)
- [Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA, on page 719](#)
- [802.11 parameters and Band Selection, on page 723](#)
- [NBAR Protocol Discovery, on page 747](#)
- [Conditional Debug, Radioactive Tracing, and Packet Tracing, on page 751](#)
- [Aggressive Client Load Balancing, on page 767](#)
- [RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing, on page 771](#)
- [Accounting Identity List, on page 777](#)
- [Support for Accounting Session ID, on page 781](#)
- [Interim Accounting, on page 785](#)
- [Wireless Multicast, on page 787](#)
- [Map-Server Per-Site Support, on page 807](#)
- [Volume Metering, on page 815](#)
- [Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server, on page 817](#)
- [Login Banner, on page 831](#)
- [Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband , on page 833](#)

- [SNMP Traps](#), on page 839
- [Disabling Clients with Random MAC Address](#), on page 845
- [Dataplane Packet Logging](#), on page 849
- [Streaming Telemetry](#), on page 855
- [Application Performance Monitoring](#), on page 875
- [Wireless Clients Threshold Warning](#), on page 881
- [Intelligent Capture Hardening](#), on page 883
- [Amazon S3 Support](#), on page 889
- [Amazon Web Services CloudWatch](#), on page 893
- [Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade](#), on page 897



CHAPTER 62

Network Mobility Services Protocol

- [Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol, on page 645](#)
- [Radioactive Tracing for NMSP, on page 646](#)
- [Enabling NMSP on Premises Services, on page 646](#)
- [Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues , on page 647](#)
- [Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues, on page 647](#)
- [Configuring NMSP Strong Cipher, on page 648](#)
- [Verifying NMSP Settings, on page 648](#)
- [Examples: NMSP Settings Configuration, on page 651](#)
- [NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX, on page 651](#)
- [Verifying NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX, on page 651](#)
- [Probe RSSI Location, on page 653](#)
- [Configuring Probe RSSI , on page 653](#)
- [RFID Tag Support, on page 655](#)
- [Configuring RFID Tag Support, on page 655](#)
- [Verifying RFID Tag Support, on page 656](#)

Information About Network Mobility Services Protocol

Cisco Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) is a secure two-way protocol that can be run over a connection-oriented (TLS) or HTTPS transport. The wireless infrastructure runs the NMSP server and Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences (Cisco CMX) acts as an NMSP client. The controller supports multiple services and multiple Cisco CMXs can connect to the NMSP server to get the data for the services (location of wireless devices, probe RSSI, hyperlocation, wIPS, and so on.) over the NMSP or HTTPS session.

NMSP defines the intercommunication between Cisco CMX and the controller. Cisco CMX communicates to the controller over a routed IP network. Both publish-subscribe and request-reply communication models are supported. Typically, Cisco CMX establishes a subscription to receive services data from the controller in the form of periodic updates. The controller acts as a data publisher, broadcasting services data to multiple CMXs. Besides subscription, Cisco CMX can also send requests to the controller, causing the controller to send a response back.

The following is a list of the Network Mobility Services Protocol features:

- NMSP is disabled by default.
- NMSP communicates with Cisco CMX using TCP, and uses TLS for encryption.

- Wireless intrusion prevention system (wIPS) is supported only over TCP and TLS.
- Bidirectional communication is supported and Cisco CMX can send a message asynchronously over the established channel.



Note HTTPS is not supported for data transport between controller and Cisco CMX.

Radioactive Tracing for NMSP

This feature collects and provides all CMX-related events.

When a controller is added to CMX with an existing logging or serviceability tools, the following occurs:

- CMX reaches out to the controller through SNMP and CLI.
- Configures the CMX hash key on the controller.
- CMX requests the controller to open an NMSP connection.

RA tracing simplifies troubleshooting by allowing:

- RA trace the CMX IP on the controller.
- Collect all logs about it.

Enabling NMSP on Premises Services

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	nmosp enable Example: Device(config)# nmosp enable	Enables NMSP on premises services. Note By default, the NMSP is enabled on the controller.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Modifying the NMSP Notification Interval for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues

NMSP manages communication between the Cisco Connected Mobile Experience (Cisco CMX) and the controller for incoming and outgoing traffic. If your application requires more frequent location updates, you can modify the NMSP notification interval (to a value between 1 and 180 seconds) for clients, active RFID tags, and rogue access points and clients.



Note The TCP port (16113) that the controller and Cisco CMX communicate over must be open (not blocked) on any firewall that exists between the controller and the Cisco CMX for NMSP to function.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	nmosp notification interval {rssi {clients rfid rogues {ap client } spectrum interferers } interval} Example: Device(config)# nmosp notification interval rssi rfid 50	Sets the NMSP notification interval value for clients, RFID tags, rogue clients, and access points. <i>interval</i> -NMSP notification interval value, in seconds for RSSI measurement. Valid range is from 1 to 180.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Modifying the NMSP Notification Threshold for Clients, RFID Tags, and Rogues

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	location notify-threshold {clients rogues ap tags } <i>threshold</i> Example: Device(config)# location notify-threshold clients 5	Configures the NMSP notification threshold for clients, RFID tags, rogue clients, and access points. <i>threshold</i> - RSSI threshold value in db. Valid range is from 0 to 10, with a default value of 0..
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring NMSP Strong Cipher

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	nmosp strong-cipher Example: Device(config)# nmosp strong-cipher	Enable strong ciphers for NMSP server, which contains "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256;, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256;, AES256-SHA256:AES256-SHA; and AES128-SHA256:AES128-SHA". Normal cipher suite contains, "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256;, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256;, and AES128-SHA".
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying NMSP Settings

To view the NMSP capabilities of the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp capability
Service          Subservice
-----
RSSI              Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
```

```

Spectrum          Aggregate Interferer, Air Quality, Interferer,
Info              Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics         Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Monitor        Subscription
On Demand Services Device Info
AP Info           Subscription

```

To view the NMSP notification intervals, use the following command:

```

Device# show nmsp notification interval
NMSP Notification Intervals
-----

```

```

RSSI Interval:
Client          : 2 sec
RFID            : 50 sec
Rogue AP        : 2 sec
Rogue Client    : 2 sec
Spectrum        : 2 sec

```

To view the connection-specific statistics counters for all CMX connections, use the following command:

```

Device# show nmsp statistics connection
NMSP Connection Counters
-----

```

```

CMX IP Address: 10.22.244.31, Status: Active
State:

```

```

Connections : 1
Disconnections : 0
Rx Data Frames : 13
Tx Data Frames : 99244
Unsupported messages : 0

```

```

Rx Message Counters:
ID  Name                                     Count
-----
 1  Echo Request                           6076
 7  Capability Notification                  2
13  Measurement Request                     5
16  Information Request                     3
20  Statistics Request                      2
30  Service Subscribe Request              1

```

```

Tx Message Counters:
ID  Name                                     Count
-----
 2  Echo Response                           6076
 7  Capability Notification                  1
14  Measurement Response                    13
15  Measurement Notification                91120
17  Information Response                     6
18  Information Notification                7492
21  Statistics Response                     2
22  Statistics Notification                 305
31  Service Subscribe Response              1
67  AP Info Notification                   304

```

To view the common statistic counter of the controller's NMSP service, use the following command:

```

Device# show nmsp statistics summary

```

```

NMSP Global Counters
-----

```

```

Number of restarts :

```

```

SSL Statistics
-----

```

```

Total amount of verifications : 6

```

```

Verification failures           : 6
Verification success           : 0
Amount of connections created   : 8
Amount of connections closed    : 7
Total amount of accept attempts : 8
Failures in accept             : 0
Amount of successful accepts    : 8
Amount of failed registrations  : 0

```

AAA Statistics

```

-----
Total amount of AAA requests   : 7
Failed to send requests        : 0
Requests sent to AAA           : 7
Responses from AAA             : 7
Responses from AAA to validate : 7
Responses validate error       : 6
Responses validate success     : 1

```

To view the overall NMSP connections, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp status
```

```
NMSP Status
```

```
-----
```

CMX	IP Address	Active	Tx Echo Resp	Rx Echo Req	Tx Data	Rx Data	Transport
127.0.0.1	Active	6	6	1	2	TLS	

To view all mobility services subscribed by all CMXs, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp subscription detail
```

```
CMX IP address 127.0.0.1:
```

```
Service Subservice
```

```
-----
```

```

RSSI          Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info          Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics    Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info       Subscription

```

To view all mobility services subscribed by a specific CMX, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp subscription detail <ip_addr>
```

```
CMX IP address 127.0.0.1:
```

```
Service Subservice
```

```
-----
```

```

RSSI          Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info          Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics    Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info       Subscription

```

To view the overall mobility services subscribed by all CMXs, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp subscription summary
```

```
Service Subservice
```

```
-----
```

```

RSSI          Rogue, Tags, Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info          Rogue, Mobile Station,
Statistics    Tags, Mobile Station,
AP Info       Subscription

```

Examples: NMSP Settings Configuration

This example shows how to configure the NMSP notification interval for RFID tags:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# nmsp notification interval rssi rfid 50
Device(config)# end
Device# show nmsp notification interval
```

This example shows how to configure the NMSP notification interval for clients:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# nmsp notification interval rssi clients 180
Device(config)# end
Device# show nmsp notification interval
```

NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX

The Cisco CMX group support allows you to send only the required Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) data to Cisco CMX (applicable to both on-premises and cloud-based CMX). The Cisco CMX can subscribe to NMSP data of specific APs or AP groups based on the active services in the wireless controller.

This feature helps in load balancing and optimizing the data flow load, when the APs are distributed across different CMX servers. The Cisco CMX server creates a CMX AP group giving it a unique name and groups the APs under it.



Note The Cisco CMX AP Group is the list of Cisco APs managed by the Cisco CMX for location services. This AP group is not the same as the wireless controller AP group.

This feature supports the following services:

- Client
- Probe client filtering
- Hyperlocation
- BLE Services



Note NMSP subscription is available only for those services that are in enabled state in the wireless controller.

Verifying NMSP by AP Groups with Subscription List from CMX

To verify mobility services group subscription summary of all CMX connections, use the following command:

Device# **show nmosp subscription group summary**

```
CMX IP address: 127.0.0.1
Groups subscribed by this CMX server:
Group name: Group1
```

To view the services that are subscribed for an AP group by a CMX connection, use the following command:

Device# **show nmosp subscription group details services** *group-name cmx-IP-address*

```
CMX IP address: 127.0.0.1
CMX Group name: Group1
CMX Group filtered services:
Service          Subservice
-----
RSSI              Mobile Station,
Spectrum
Info
Statistics
```

To view the AP MAC list that is subscribed for an AP group by a CMX connection, use the following command:

Device **show nmosp subscription group detail ap-list** *group-name cmx-IP-address*

```
CMX IP address: 127.0.0.1
CMX Group name: Group1
CMX Group AP MACs:
: 0000.0000.7002 0000.0000.6602 0099.0000.0002 0000.00bb.0002
  0000.0000.5502 0000.0000.5002 0033.0000.0002 00d0.0000.0002
  0010.0010.0002 0000.0006.0002 0000.0002.0002 0000.0000.4002
  0000.0099.0002 0000.0000.a002 0000.7700.0002 0022.0000.0002
  0000.0000.0092 0000.0000.0082 0000.0000.0302 aa00.0000.0002
  0000.0050.0042 0000.0d00.0002 0000.0000.0032 0000.00cc.0002
  0000.0088.0002 2000.0000.0002 1000.0000.0002 0100.0000.0002
  0000.0000.0002 0000.0000.0001 0000.0000.0000
```

To view CMX-AP grouping details for all CMXs, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp subscription group detail all
CMX IP address: 127.0.0.1
Groups subscribed by this CMX server:
Group name: Group1
  CMX Group filtered services:
  Service          Subservice
  -----
  RSSI              Mobile Station,
  Spectrum
  Info
  Statistics

  CMX Group AP MACs:
  : 0000.0000.0003 0000.0000.0002 0000.0000.0001

Group name: Group2
  CMX Group filtered services:
  Service          Subservice
  -----
  RSSI              Tags,
  Spectrum
  Info
  Statistics
```

```

CMX Group AP MACs:
: 0000.0000.0300 0000.0000.0200 0000.0000.0100

Group name: Group3
CMX Group filtered services:
Service          Subservice
-----
RSSI              Rogue,
Spectrum
Info
Statistics

CMX Group AP MACs:
: 0000.0003.0000 0000.0002.0000 0000.0001.0000
    
```

To view all the AP lists subscribed by all CMXs, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription group detail ap-list <group> <cmx-ip>
```

To view all the services subscribed by all CMXs, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription group detail services <group> <cmx-ip>
```

Probe RSSI Location

The Probe RSSI Location feature allows the wireless controller and Cisco CMX to support the following:

- Load balancing
- Coverage Hole detection
- Location updates to CMX

When a wireless client is enabled, it sends probe requests to identify the wireless networks in the vicinity and also to find the received signal strength indication (RSSI) associated with the identified Service Set Identifiers (SSIDs).

The wireless client periodically performs active scanning in background even after being connected to an access point. This helps them to have an updated list of access points with best signal strength to connect. When the wireless client can no longer connect to an access point, it uses the access point list stored to connect to another access point that gives it the best signal strength. The access points in the WLAN gather these probe requests, RSSI and MAC address of the wireless clients and forwards them to the wireless controller s. The Cisco CMX gathers this data from the wireless controller and uses it to compute the updated location of the wireless client when it roams across the network.

Configuring Probe RSSI

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless probe filter Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless probe filter</pre>	Enables filtering of unacknowledged probe requests from AP to improve the location accuracy. Filtering is enabled by default. Use the no form of the command to disable the feature. This will forward both acknowledged and unacknowledged probe requests to the controller.
Step 3	wireless probe limit <i>limit-value interval</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless probe limit 10 100</pre>	Configures the number of probe request reported to the wireless controller from the AP for the same client on a given interval. Use the no form of the command to revert to the default limit, which is 2 probes at an interval of 500 ms.
Step 4	wireless probe locally-administered-mac Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless probe locally-administered-mac</pre>	Enables the reporting of probes from clients having locally administered MAC address.
Step 5	location algorithm rssi-average Example: <pre>Device(config)# location algorithm rssi-average</pre>	Sets the probe RSSI measurement updates to a more accurate algorithm but with more CPU overhead.
Step 6	location algorithm simple Example: <pre>Device(config)# location algorithm simple</pre>	(Optional) Sets the probe RSSI measurement updates to a faster algorithm with smaller CPU overhead, but less accuracy. Use the no form of the command to revert the algorithm type to the default one, which is <i>rssi-average</i>.
Step 7	location expiry client <i>interval</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# location expiry client 300</pre>	Configures the timeout for RSSI values. The no form of the command sets it to a default value of 15.
Step 8	location notify-threshold client <i>threshold-db</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# location notify-threshold client 5</pre>	Configures the notification threshold for clients. The no form of the command sets it to a default value of 0.
Step 9	location rssi-half-life client <i>time-in-seconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# location rssi-half-life client 20</pre>	Configures half life when averaging two RSSI readings. To disable this option, set the value to 0.

What to do next

Use the **show wireless client probing** command to view each probing client (associated and probing only) by batch of 10 MAC addresses.

RFID Tag Support

The controller enables you to configure radio frequency identification (RFID) tag tracking. RFID tags are small wireless battery-powered tags that continuously broadcast their own signal and are affixed to assets for real-time location tracking. They operate by advertising their location using special 802.11 packets, which are processed by access points, the controller, and the Cisco CMX. Only active RFIDs are supported. A combination of active RFID tags and wireless controller allows you to track the current location of equipment. *Active* tags are typically used in real-time tracking of high-value assets in *closed-loop* systems (that is,) systems in which the tags are not intended to physically leave the control premises of the tag owner or originator.

General Guidelines

- You can verify the RFID tags on the controller.
- High Availability for RFID tags are supported.

Configuring RFID Tag Support

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless rfid Example: Device(config)# wireless rfid	Enables RFID tag tracking. The default value is enabled. Use the no form of this command to disable RFID tag tracking.
Step 3	wireless rfid timeout timeout-value Example: Device(config)# wireless rfid timeout 90	Configures the RFID tag data timeout value to cleanup the table. The timeout value is the amount of time that the controller maintains tags before expiring them. For example, if a tag is configured to beacon every 30 seconds, we recommend that you set the timeout value to 90 seconds (approximately three times the beacon value). The default value is 1200 seconds.

Verifying RFID Tag Support

To view the summary of RFID tags that are clients, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid client
```

To view the detailed information for an RFID tag, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid detail <rfid-mac-address>
```

```
RFID address 000c.cc96.0001
Vendor Cisco
Last Heard 6 seconds ago
Packets Received 187
Bytes Received 226

Content Header
=====
    CCX Tag Version 0
    Tx power: 12
    Channel: 11
    Reg Class: 4
CCX Payload
=====
    Last Sequence Control 2735
    Payload length 221
    Payload Data Hex Dump:
00000000 00 02 00 00 01 09 00 00 00 00 0c b8 ff ff ff 02 |.....|
00000010 07 42 03 20 00 00 0b b8 03 4b 00 00 00 00 00 00 |.B. ....K.....|
00000020 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |.....|
00000030 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |.....|
00000040 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 |.....|
```

To view the summary information for all known RFID tags, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid summary
```

```
Total RFID entries: : 16
Total Unique RFID entries : 16
RFID ID VENDOR Closet AP RSSI Time Since Last Heard
0012.b80a.c791 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -31 3 minutes 30 seconds ago
0012.b80a.c953 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -33 4 minutes 5 seconds ago
0012.b80b.806c Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -46 15 seconds ago
0012.b80d.e9f9 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -38 4 minutes 28 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ea03 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 4 minutes 29 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ea6b Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -39 4 minutes 26 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ebe8 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 3 minutes 21 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ebeb Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -43 4 minutes 28 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ec48 Cisco 7069.5a63.0460 -42 4 minutes 7 seconds ago
0012.b80d.ec55 Cisco 7069.5a63.0520 -41 1 minute 52 seconds ago
```

To view the location-based system RFID statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless rfid stats
```

```
RFID stats :
=====
RFID error db full : 0
RFID error invalid payload : 0
RFID error invalid tag : 0
RFID error dot11 hdr : 0
```

```
RFID error pkt len : 0
RFID error state drop : 0
RFID total pkt received : 369
RFID populated error value : 0
RFID error insert records : 0
RFID error update records : 0
RFID total insert record : 16
RFID ccx payload error : 0
RFID total delete record : 0
RFID error exceeded ap count : 0
RFID error record remove : 0
RFID old rssi expired count: 0
RFID smallest rssi expired count : 0
RFID total query insert : 0
RFID error invalid rssi count : 0
```

To view the NMSP notification interval, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmosp notification interval
```

```
NMSP Notification Intervals
```

```
-----
```

```
RSSI Interval:
```

```
Client           : 2 sec
RFID              : 50 sec
Rogue AP          : 2 sec
Rogue Client      : 2 sec
Spectrum          : 2 sec
```




CHAPTER 63

Application Visibility and Control

- [Information About Application Visibility and Control, on page 659](#)
- [Create a Flow Monitor, on page 662](#)
- [Configuring a Flow Monitor \(GUI\), on page 663](#)
- [Create a Flow Record, on page 664](#)
- [Create a Flow Exporter , on page 665](#)
- [Configuring a Policy Tag, on page 667](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface \(GUI\), on page 667](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface \(CLI\), on page 668](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP, on page 669](#)
- [Verify the AVC Configuration, on page 669](#)
- [Default DSCP on AVC, on page 670](#)
- [AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring, on page 673](#)
- [Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring, on page 673](#)
- [Configuring the Flow Exporter, on page 673](#)
- [Configuring the Flow Monitor, on page 674](#)
- [Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile, on page 675](#)
- [Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy , on page 675](#)
- [Verifying AVC Reanchoring, on page 677](#)

Information About Application Visibility and Control

Application Visibility and Control (AVC) is a subset of the entire Flexible NetFlow (FNF) package that can provide traffic information. The AVC feature employs a distributed approach that benefits from NBAR running on the access point (AP) or controller whose goal is to run deep packet inspection (DPI) and reports the results using FNF messages.

AVC enables you to perform real-time analysis and create policies to reduce network congestion, costly network link usage, and infrastructure upgrades. Traffic flows are analyzed and recognized using the NBAR2 engine. The specific flow is marked with the recognized protocol or application. This per-flow information can be used for application visibility using FNF. After the application visibility is established, a user can define control rules with policing mechanisms for a client.

Using AVC rules, you can limit the bandwidth of a particular application for all the clients joined on the WLAN. These bandwidth contracts coexist with per-client downstream rate limiting that takes precedence over the per-application rate limits.

FNF feature is supported in wireless, and relies on the NetFlow enablement on the controller for all modes: flex, local and Fabric.

In local mode, the NBAR runs on the controller hardware and the process client traffic flows through the data plane of the controller using the AP CAPWAP tunnels.

In FlexConnect or Fabric mode, NBAR runs on the AP, and only statistics are sent to the controller. When operating in these two modes, APs regularly send FNFv9 reports back to the controller. The controller's FNF feature consumes those FNFv9 reports to provide the application statistics shown by AVC.

The Fabric mode of operation does not populate the FNF cache. It relays the FNFv9 reports at the time they arrive. As a result, some configuration of flow monitors, for example, cache timeout, is not taken into account.

The behavior of the AVC solution changes based on the wireless deployments. The following sections describe the commonalities and differences in all scenarios:

Local Mode

- NBAR is enabled on the controller.
- AVC does not push the FNF configuration to the APs.
- Roaming events are ignored.

However, AVC supports L3 roams in local mode as traffic flows through the anchor controller (where NBAR was initially processing the roaming client's traffic when the client joined).

- IOSd needs to trigger NBAR attach.
- Supports flow monitor cache.
- Supports NetFlow exporter.

Flex Mode

- NBAR is enabled on an AP
- AVC pushes the FNF configuration to the APs.
- Supports context transfer for roaming in AVC-FNF.
- Supports flow monitor cache.
- Supports NetFlow exporter.

Fabric Mode

- NBAR is enabled on an AP.
- AVC pushes the FNF configuration to the APs.
- Supports context transfer for roaming in AVC-FNF.
- Flow monitor cache is not supported.
- Supports NetFlow exporter (for the C9800 embedded on Catalyst switches for SDA, there is no FNF cache on the box).

Prerequisites for Application Visibility and Control

- The access points should be AVC capable.
However, this requirement is not applicable in Local mode.
- For the control part of AVC (QoS) to work, the application visibility feature with FNF has to be configured.

Restrictions for Application Visibility and Control

- IPv6 (including ICMPv6 traffic) packet classification is not supported in FlexConnect mode and Fabric mode. However, it is supported in Local mode.
- Layer 2 roaming is not supported across controller controllers.
- Multicast traffic is not supported.
- AVC is supported only on the following access points:
 - Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 1800 Series Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 2700 Series Access Point
 - Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Point
 - Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points
 - Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points
 - Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 Access Point
- AVC is not supported on Cisco Aironet 702W, 702I (128 M memory), and 1530 Series access points.
- Only the applications that are recognized with App visibility can be used for applying QoS control.
- Data link is not supported for NetFlow fields in AVC.
- You cannot map the same WLAN profile to both the AVC-not-enabled policy profile and the AVC-enabled policy profile.
- AVC is not supported on the management port (Gig 0/0).
- NBAR-based QoS policy configuration is allowed only on wired physical ports. Policy configuration is not supported on virtual interfaces, for example, VLAN, port channel and other logical interfaces.
- NBAR is not able to classify traffic accurately when SaaS applications use end-to-end encryption, QUIC, or DoH due to the encryption's impact on classification. In such a case, the encrypted traffic, including DoH and QUIC without SNI, limits the NBAR's ability to send the correct Protocol ID, causing issues with traffic classification.

When AVC is enabled, the AVC profile supports only up to 23 rules, which includes the default DSCP rule. The AVC policy will not be pushed down to the AP, if rules are more than 23.

AVC Configuration Overview

To configure AVC, follow these steps:

1. Create a flow monitor using the **record wireless avc basic** command.
2. Create a wireless policy profile.
3. Apply the flow monitor to the wireless policy profile.
4. Create a wireless policy tag.
5. Map the WLAN to the policy profile
6. Attach the policy tag to the APs.

Create a Flow Monitor

The NetFlow configuration requires a flow record, a flow monitor, and a flow exporter. This configuration should be the first step in the overall AVC configuration.



Note In Flex mode and Local mode, the default values for **cache timeout active** and **cache timeout inactive** commands are not optimal for AVC. We recommend that you set both the values to 60 in the flow monitor.

For Fabric mode, the cache timeout configuration does not apply.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow monitor fm_avc	Creates a flow monitor.
Step 3	record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} basic Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc ipv6 basic	Specifies the basic IPv4 or IPv6 wireless AVC flow template. Note If you want to have both Application Performance Monitoring (APM) and AVC-FNF in the device simultaneously, use the record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} assurance command, which is a superset of the fields contained in record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} basic command. If the containing flow monitor is configured with the local

	Command or Action	Purpose
		exporter using destination wlc local command, AVC-FNF will populate the statistics exactly as that of the record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} basic configuration. As a result, both APM and AVC-FNF can be configured simultaneously with two flow monitors per direction, per IP version, in local (central switching) mode. Note The record wireless avc basic command is same as record wireless avc ipv4 basic command. However, record wireless avc ipv4 basic command is not supported in Flex or Fabric modes. In such scenarios, use the record wireless avc basic command.
Step 4	cache timeout active <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout active 60</pre>	Sets the active flow timeout in seconds.
Step 5	cache timeout inactive <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout inactive 60</pre>	Sets the inactive flow timeout in seconds.

Configuring a Flow Monitor (GUI)

Before you begin

You must have created a flow exporter to export data from the flow monitor.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Application Visibility** and go to the **Flow Monitor** tab .
- Step 2** In the **Monitor** area, click **Add** to add a flow monitor.
- Step 3** In the **Flow Monitor** window, add a flow monitor and a description.
- Step 4** Select the Flow exporter from the drop-down list to export the data from the flow monitor to a collector.

Note

To export wireless netflow data, use the templates below:

- ETA (Encrypted Traffic Analysis)

- wireless avc basic
- wireless avc basic IPv6

Step 5 Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.

Create a Flow Record

The default flow record cannot be edited or deleted. If you require a new flow record, you need to create one and map it to the flow monitor from CLI.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	flow record <i>flow_record_name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow record record1	Creates a flow record. Note When a custom flow record is configured in Flex and Fabric modes, the optional fields (fields that are not present in record wireless avc basic) are ignored.
Step 2	description <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-flow-record)# description IPv4flow	(Optional) Describes the flow record as a maximum 63-character string.
Step 3	match ipv4 protocol Example: Device(config-flow-record)# match ipv4 protocol	Specifies a match to the IPv4 protocol.
Step 4	match ipv4 source address Example: Device(config-flow-record)# match ipv4 source address	Specifies a match to the IPv4 source address-based field.
Step 5	match ipv4 destination address Example: Device(config-flow-record)# match ipv4 destination address	Specifies a match to the IPv4 destination address-based field.
Step 6	match transport source-port Example: Device(config-flow-record)# match transport source-port	Specifies a match to the transport layer's source port field.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	match transport destination-port Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# match transport destination-port</pre>	Specifies a match to the transport layer's destination port field.
Step 8	match flow direction Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# match flow direction</pre>	Specifies a match to the direction the flow was monitored in.
Step 9	match application name Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# match application name</pre>	Specifies a match to the application name. Note This action is mandatory for AVC support because this allows the flow to be matched against the application.
Step 10	match wireless ssid Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# match wireless ssid</pre>	Specifies a match to the SSID name identifying the wireless network.
Step 11	collect counter bytes long Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# collect counter bytes long</pre>	Collects the counter field's total bytes.
Step 12	collect counter packets long Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# collect counter bytes long</pre>	Collects the counter field's total packets.
Step 13	collect wireless ap mac address Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# collect wireless ap mac address</pre>	Collects the BSSID with the MAC addresses of the access points that the wireless client is associated with.
Step 14	collect wireless client mac address Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-record)# collect wireless client mac address</pre>	Collects the MAC address of the client on the wireless network.

Create a Flow Exporter

You can create a flow exporter to define the export parameters for a flow. This is an optional procedure for configuring flow exporter parameters.



Note For the AVC statistics to be visible at the controller, you should configure a local flow exporter using the following commands:

- **flow exporter** *my_local*
- **destination local wlc**

Also, your flow monitor must use this local exporter for the statistics to be visible at the controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	flow exporter <i>flow-export-name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow exporter export-test	Creates a flow monitor.
Step 2	description <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-flow-exporter)# description IPv4flow	Describes the flow record as a maximum 63-character string.
Step 3	destination { <i>hostname/ipv4address</i> <i>hostname/ipv6address</i> <i>local {wlc}</i> } Example: Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination local wlc	Specifies the hostname or IP address of the system or the local WLC to which the exporter sends data.
Step 4	transport udp <i>port-value</i> Example: Device(config-flow-exporter)# transport udp 1024	(Optional) Configures the destination UDP port to reach the external collector. The default value is 9995. Note This step is required only for external collectors; not required for local wlc collector.
Step 5	option application-table timeout <i>seconds</i> Example: Device(config-flow-exporter)# option application-table timeout 500	(Optional) Specifies the application table timeout option, in seconds. The valid range is from 1 to 86400.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-flow-exporter)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show flow exporter Example:	(Optional) Verifies your configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show flow exporter	

Configuring a Policy Tag

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy rr-xyz-policy-tag	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags .
Step 2	On the Manage Tags page, click Policy tab.
Step 3	Click Add to view the Add Policy Tag window.
Step 4	Enter a name and description for the policy tag.
Step 5	Click Add to map WLAN and policy.
Step 6	Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.
Step 7	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (CLI)

Before you begin

- Do not attach different AVC policy profiles on the same WLAN across different policy tags.

The following is an example of incorrect configuration:

```
wireless profile policy avc_pol1
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc1 input
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc1 output
  no shutdown
wireless profile policy avc_pol2
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 input
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 output
  no shutdown
wireless tag policy avc-tag1
  wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol1
wireless tag policy avc-tag2
  wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol2
```

This example violates the restriction stated earlier, that is, the WLAN *wlan1* is mapped to 2 policy profiles, *avc_pol1* and *avc_pol2*. This configuration is, therefore, incorrect because the WLAN *wlan1* should be mapped to either *avc_pol1* or *avc_pol2* everywhere.

- Conflicting policy profiles on the same WLAN are not supported. For example, policy profile (with and without AVC) applied to the same WLAN in different policy tags.

The following is an example of an incorrect configuration:

```
wireless profile policy avc_pol1
  no shutdown
wireless profile policy avc_pol2
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 input
  ipv4 flow monitor fm-avc2 output
  no shutdown
wireless tag policy avc-tag1
  wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol1
wireless tag policy avc-tag2
  wlan wlan1 policy avc_pol2
```

In this example, a policy profile with and without AVC is applied to the same WLAN in different tags.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless tag policy <i>avc-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy avc-tag	Creates a policy tag.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-avc</i> policy <i>avc-policy</i> Example:	Attaches a policy profile to a WLAN profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan_avc policy avc_pol</code>	

What to do next

- Run the **no shutdown** command on the WLAN after completing the configuration.
- If the WLAN is already in **no shutdown** mode, run the **shutdown** command, followed by **no shutdown** command.

Attaching a Policy Profile to an AP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap <i>ap-ether-mac</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# ap 34a8.2ec7.4cf0</code>	Enters AP configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-tag <i>policy-tag</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# policy-tag avc-tag</code>	Specifies the policy tag that is to be attached to the access point.

Verify the AVC Configuration

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	show avc wlan <i>wlan-name</i> top <i>num-of-applications</i> applications { aggregate downstream upstream } Example: <code>Device# show avc wlan wlan_avc top 2 applications aggregate</code>	Displays information about top applications and users using these applications. Note Ensure that wireless clients are associated to the WLAN and generating traffic, and then wait for 90 seconds (to ensure the availability of statistics) before running the command.
Step 2	show avc client <i>mac</i> top <i>num-of-applications</i> applications { aggregate downstream upstream } Example:	Displays information about the top number of applications. Note Ensure that wireless clients are associated to the WLAN and generating traffic, and then

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show avc client 9.3.4 top 3 applications aggregate	wait for 90 seconds (to ensure the availability of statistics) before running the command.
Step 3	show avc wlan wlan-name application app-name top num-of-clients aggregate Example: Device# show avc wlan wlan avc application app top 4 aggregate	Displays information about top applications and users using these applications.
Step 4	show ap summary Example: Device# show ap summary	Displays a summary of all the access points attached to the controller .
Step 5	show ap tag summary Example: Device# show ap tag summary	Displays a summary of all the access points with policy tags.

Default DSCP on AVC

Configuring Default DSCP for AVC Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Services > QoS .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter the Policy Name .
Step 4	Click Add Class-Maps .
Step 5	Choose AVC in the AVC/User Defined drop-down list.
Step 6	Click either Any or All match type radio button.
Step 7	Choose DSCP in the Mark Type drop-down list.
Step 8	a) Check the Drop check box to drop traffic from specific sources. b) If you do not want to drop the traffic, enter the Police(kbps) and choose the match type from the Match Type drop-down list. Choose the items from the available list and click move them to the selected list.
Step 9	Click Save .
Step 10	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Default DSCP for AVC Profile

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, only up to 32 filters can be specified in the policy. As there was no way of classifying the packets that are not specified in the filters, now, you can mark down these packets in the policy.

The marking action can be applied to the traffic when creating a class map and creating a policy map.

Creating Class Map

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Configure Terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	class class-map-name] Example: Device(config-pmap) # class-map avc-class	Creates a class map.
Step 3	match protocol { application-name attribute category category-name attribute sub-category sub-category-name attribute application-group application group-name Example: Device(config)# class-map avc-class Device(config-cmap) # match protocol avc-media Device(config)# class-map class-avc-category Device(config-cmap) # match protocol attribute category avc-media Device# class-map class-avc-sub-category Device(config-cmap) # match protocol attribute sub-category avc-media Device# class-map avcS-webex-application-group Device(config-cmap) # match protocol attribute application-group webex-media	Specifies match to the application name, category name, subcategory name, or application group.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Creating Policy Map

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Configure Terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)#policy-map avc-policy</pre>	Creates a policy map by entering the policy map name, and enters policy-map configuration mode. By default, no policy maps are defined. The default behavior of a policy map is to set the DSCP to 0 if the packet is an IP packet and to set the CoS to 0 if the packet is tagged. No policing is performed. Note To delete an existing policy map, use the no policy-map policy-map-name global configuration command.
Step 3	class [<i>class-map-name</i> class-default] Example: <pre>Device(config-pmap)# class-map avc-class</pre>	Defines a traffic classification, and enters policy-map class configuration mode. By default, no policy map and class maps are defined. If a traffic class has already been defined by using the class-map global configuration command, specify its name for class-map-name in this command. A class-default traffic class is predefined and can be added to any policy. It is always placed at the end of a policy map. With an implied match any is included in the class-default class, all packets that have not already matched the other traffic classes will match class-default . Note To delete an existing class map, use the no class class-map-name policy-map configuration command.
Step 4	set dscp <i>new-dscp</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-pmap-c)# set dscp 45</pre>	Classifies IP traffic by setting a new value in the packet. For dscp new-dscp , enter a new DSCP value to be assigned to the classified traffic. The range is 0 to 63.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	class <i>class-default</i>	Specifies the default class so that you can configure or modify its policy.
Step 6	set dscp default	Configures the default DSCP.
Step 7	end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring

The AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring feature is designed to reanchor clients when they roam from one controller to another. Reanchoring of clients prevents the depletion of IP addresses available for new clients in Cisco WLC. The AVC profile-based statistics are used to decide whether a client must be reanchored or deferred. This is useful when a client is actively running a voice or video application defined in the AVC rules.

The reanchoring process also involves deauthentication of anchored clients. The clients get deauthenticated when they do not transmit traffic for the applications listed in the AVC rules while roaming between WLCs.

Restrictions for AVC-Based Selective Reanchoring

- This feature is supported only in local mode. FlexConnect and fabric modes are not supported.
- This feature is not supported in guest tunneling and export anchor scenarios.
- The old IP address is not released after reanchoring, until IP address' lease period ends.

Configuring the Flow Exporter

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	flow exporter <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow exporter avc-reanchor	Creates a flow exporter and enters flow exporter configuration mode. Note You can use this command to modify an existing flow exporter too.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	destination local wlc Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-exporter)# destination local wlc</pre>	Sets the exporter as local.

Configuring the Flow Monitor

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# flow monitor fm_avc</pre>	Creates a flow monitor and enters Flexible NetFlow flow monitor configuration mode. Note You can use this command to modify an existing flow monitor too.
Step 3	exporter <i>exporter-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# exporter avc-reanchor</pre>	Specifies the name of an exporter.
Step 4	record wireless avc basic Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc basic</pre>	Specifies the flow record to use to define the cache.
Step 5	cache timeout active <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout active 60</pre>	Sets the active flow timeout, in seconds.
Step 6	cache timeout inactive <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-flow-monitor)# cache timeout inactive 60</pre>	Sets the inactive flow timeout, in seconds.

Configuring the AVC Reanchoring Profile

Before you begin

- Ensure that you use the AVC-Reanchor-Class class map. All other class-map names are ignored by Selective Reanchoring.
- During boot up, the system checks for the existence of the AVC-Reanchor-Class class map. If it is not found, default protocols, for example, jabber-video, WiFi-calling, and so on, are created. If AVC-Reanchor-Class class map is found, configuration changes are not made and updates to the protocols that are saved to the startup configuration persist across reboots.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	class-map cmap-name Example: Device(config)# class-map AVC-Reanchor-Class	Configures the class map.
Step 3	match any Example: Device(config-cmap)# match any	Instructs the device to match with any of the protocols that pass through it.
Step 4	match protocol jabber-audio Example: Device(config-cmap)# match protocol jabber-audio	Specifies a match to the application name. You can edit the class-map configuration later, in order to add or remove protocols, for example, jabber-video, wifi-calling, and so on, if required.

Configuring the Wireless WLAN Profile Policy

Follow the procedure given below to configure the WLAN profile policy:



Note

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1, IPv6 flow monitor is supported on Wave 2 APs. You can attach two flow monitors in a policy profile per direction (input and output) and per IP version (IPv4 and IPv6) in local (central switching) mode, when NBAR runs in the controller. However, only one flow monitor is supported per direction (input and output) and per IP version (IPv4 and IPv6) in FlexConnect and fabric modes on Wave 2 APs, when NBAR runs on the corresponding AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the policy profile.
Step 4	no central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	Disables central switching.
Step 5	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> input Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor fm_avc input	Specifies the name of the IPv4 ingress flow monitor.
Step 6	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> output Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor fm_avc output	Specifies the name of the IPv4 egress flow monitor.
Step 7	ipv6 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> input Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 flow monitor fm_v6_avc input	Specifies the name of the IPv6 ingress flow monitor.
Step 8	ipv6 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> output Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 flow monitor fm_v6_avc output	Specifies the name of the IPv6 egress flow monitor.
Step 9	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.

Verifying AVC Reanchoring

Use the following commands to verify the AVC reanchoring configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed avc_reanchor_policy
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : avc_reanchor_policy
Description              :
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 1
Wireless management interface VLAN      : 34
!
.
.
.
AVC VISIBILITY          : Enabled
Flow Monitor IPv4
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name : fm_avc
  Flow Monitor Egress Name  : fm_avc
Flow Monitor IPv6
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name : Not Configured
  Flow Monitor Egress Name  : Not Configured
NBAR Protocol Discovery  : Disabled
Reanchoring              : Enabled
Classmap name for Reanchoring
  Reanchoring Classmap Name : AVC-Reanchor-Class
!
.
.
.
-----
```

```
Device# show platform software trace counter tag wstatsd chassis active R0 avc-stats debug
```

```
Counter Name Thread ID Counter Value
-----
```

```
Reanch_deassociated_clients 28340 1
Reanch_tracked_clients      28340 4
Reanch_deleted_clients      28340 3
```

```
Device# show platform software trace counter tag wncd chassis active R0 avc-afc debug
```

```
Counter Name Thread ID Counter Value
-----
```

```
Reanch_co_ignored_clients 30063 1
Reanch_co_anchored_clients 30063 5
Reanch_co_deauthed_clients 30063 4
```

```
Device# show platform software wlavc status wncd
```

```
Event history of WNCD DB:
```

```
AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,N/A,Reanc,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Reanchoring
Flow-mon-name : N/A
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
```

```
Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
```

```
-----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.630342 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822780 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822672 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.172073 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738367 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738261 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.162689 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757643 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757542 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.468749 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18857 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18717 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164304 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163877 2 :READY 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:18.593257 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:18.593152 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0
```

```
AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-In,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Ingress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
```

```
Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
```

```
-----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.664772 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822499 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822222 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.207605 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738105 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.737997 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.164225 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757266 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757181 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.472778 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.15413 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.15263 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164254 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163209 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163189 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0
```

```
AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-Ou,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Egress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
```

```
Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
```

```
-----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.630764 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822621 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.822574 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:15.172357 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738212 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:12.738167 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:01.164048 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
```



```

06/12/2018 16:44:55.757403 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:55.757361 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:04.472561 3 :ZOMBIE 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18660 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:44:02.18588 2 :READY 2 :FSM_AFM_UNBIND 0 0
06/12/2018 16:38:20.164293 2 :READY 3 :FSM_AFM_SWEEP 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163799 1 :INIT 1 :FSM_AFM_BIND 0 2
06/12/2018 16:35:20.163773 1 :INIT 24:CREATE_FSM 0 0

```

Device# **show platform software wlavc status wncmgrd**

Event history of WNCMgr DB:

```

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,N/A,Reanc,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Reanchoring
Flow-mon-name : N/A
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

```

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx

```

-----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629278 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629223 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629179 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510867 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510411 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510371 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.886377 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
!

```

```

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-In,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Ingress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc
Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

```

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx

```

-----
06/12/2018 16:45:30.664032 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.663958 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.663921 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.511151 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510624 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510608 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.810867 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807239 4 :READY 25:UNBIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807205 4 :READY 23:UNBIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.806734 4 :READY 3 :FSM_WLAN_DOWN 0 0
!

```

```

AVC key: [1,wlan_avc,fm_avc,v4-Ou,default-policy-tag]
Current state : READY
Wlan-id : 1
Wlan-name : wlan_avc
Feature type : Flow monitor IPv4 Egress
Flow-mon-name : fm_avc

```

```

Policy-tag : default-policy-tag
Switching Mode : CENTRAL
Policy-profile : AVC_POL_PYATS

```

```

Timestamp FSM State Event RC Ctx
-----

```

```

06/12/2018 16:45:30.629414 3 :WLAN_READY 24:BIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629392 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.629380 3 :WLAN_READY 4 :FSM_BIND_ACK 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510954 2 :PLUMB_READY 22:BIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510572 2 :PLUMB_READY 2 :FSM_WLAN_UP 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:30.510532 2 :PLUMB_READY 1 :FSM_WLAN_FM_PLUMB 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.886293 2 :PLUMB_READY 20:UNBIND_ACK_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807844 4 :READY 25:UNBIND_WNCD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.807795 4 :READY 23:UNBIND_IOSD 0 0
06/12/2018 16:45:28.806990 4 :READY 3 :FSM_WLAN_DOWN 0 0
!

```



CHAPTER 64

Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control

- [Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control, on page 681](#)
- [Enabling Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control on a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 682](#)
- [Configuring Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control Global Parameters \(CLI\), on page 682](#)

Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control

Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control (SD-AVC) is a network-level AVC controller that aggregates application data from multiple devices and sources and provides composite application information.

SD-AVC collects application data from across the network and deploys protocol pack updates in a centralized manner. SD-AVC recognizes most enterprise network traffic and provides analytics, visibility, and telemetry into the network application recognition. SD-AVC profiles all the endpoints (including wireless bridged virtual machines) connected to the access nodes to perform anomaly detection operations, such as Network Address Translation (NAT). SD-AVC can discover and alert when the same MAC address is used simultaneously on different networks.

You can enable the Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control feature on a per-WLAN basis. Also, you can turn on and turn off the Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control functionalities independently.



Note If the SD-AVC process (stilepd) crashes, Capwapd process restart or AP reload is required to resume the SD-AVC operation.

Enabling Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control on a WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-policy-profile	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	no central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	Disables central switching and enables local switching.
Step 4	ip nbar protocol-discovery Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ip nbar protocol-discovery	Enables application recognition on the wireless policy profile by activating the NBAR2 engine.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Exits wireless policy configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Software-Defined Application Visibility and Control Global Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	avc sd-service Example: Device(config-sd-service) # avc sd-service	Enables SD-AVC and enters software-definition service configuration mode.
Step 3	segment <i>segment-name</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service) # segment AppRecognition	Configures a segment name identifying a group of devices sharing the same application services.
Step 4	controller Example: Device(config-sd-service) # controller	Enters SD service controller configuration mode to configure connectivity parameters.
Step 5	address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # address 209.165.201.0	Configures controller IP address. Supports only IPv4 address.
Step 6	destination-ports sensor-exporter <i>value</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # destination-ports sensor-exporter 21730	Configures the destination port for communicating with the controller.
Step 7	dscp <i>dscp-value</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # dscp 16	Enables DSCP marking.
Step 8	source-interface <i>interface interface-number</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # source-interface GigabitEthernet21	Configures source interface for communicating with the controller.
Step 9	transport application-updates https url-prefix <i>url-prefix-name</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # transport application-updates https url-prefix cisco	Configures transport protocols for communicating with the controller.
Step 10	vrf <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller) # vrf doc-test	Associates the VRF with the source interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-sd-service-controller)# end	Exits the SD service controller configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 65

Cisco Hyperlocation

- [Information About Cisco Hyperlocation, on page 685](#)
- [Restrictions on Cisco Hyperlocation, on page 687](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation \(GUI\), on page 688](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation \(CLI\), on page 688](#)
- [Information About AP Group NTP Server, on page 689](#)
- [Configuring an AP Group NTP Server, on page 689](#)
- [Configuring AP Timezone, on page 690](#)
- [Information About BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons, on page 691](#)
- [Verifying BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons, on page 691](#)
- [Verifying Cisco Hyperlocation, on page 692](#)

Information About Cisco Hyperlocation

Cisco Hyperlocation is an ultraprecise location solution that allows you to track the location of wireless clients. This is possible with the Cisco Hyperlocation radio module in the Cisco Aironet 3600, 3700, and 4800 Series Access Points. The Cisco Hyperlocation module combines Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) technologies to allow beacons, inventory, and personal mobile devices to be pinpointed.

Hyperlocation is also supported in Fabric mode. In particular, when the wireless controller is running on the switch, the controller takes the necessary steps to provision the APs, so that they can generate Hyperlocation VxLAN packets that can traverse the fabric network taking advantage of the fabric infrastructure and be correctly delivered to the destination CMX.

The Hyperlocation VxLAN packets are special packets marked with SGT 0 and using the L3VNID of the APs. For more information, refer to the SDA documentation.

The Cisco Hyperlocation radio module provides the following:

- WSM or WSM2 radio module functions that are extended to:
 - 802.11ac
 - Wi-Fi Transmit
 - 20-MHz, 40-MHz, and 80-MHz channel bandwidth.
- Expanded location functionality:
 - Low-latency location optimized channel scanning

- 32-antenna angle of arrival (AoA); available only with the WSM2 module.



Note When using the WSM2 module (includes the WSM module and the antenna add-on), the accuracy of tracking the location of wireless clients can be as close as one meter.

Cisco Hyperlocation works in conjunction with Cisco Connected Mobile Experiences (CMX). Combining the Cisco Hyperlocation feature on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller with a CMX device allows you to achieve better location accuracy, which can result in delivering more targeted content to users. When you use CMX with Cisco CleanAir frequency scanning, it is simple to locate failed, lost, and even rogue beacons.

The Cisco Hyperlocation radio module with an integrated BLE radio allows transmission of Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE) broadcast messages by using up to 5 BLE transmitters. Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller is used to configure transmission parameters such as interval for the beacons, universally unique identifier (UUID), and transmission power, per beacon globally for all the access points. Also, the controller can configure major, minor, and transmission power value of each AP to provide more beacon granularity.



Note The Cisco Hyperlocation feature must be enabled on the controller and CMX and CMX must be connected for BLE to work.

In the absence of a Cisco Hyperlocation radio module, Hyperlocation will still work in a modality named *Hyperlocation Local Mode*, which guarantees a slightly lower location accuracy in the range between five meters and seven meters. This is accomplished through CPU cycle stealing.

Using the controller, you can configure Cisco Hyperlocation for APs based on their profile.

Network Time Protocol Server

Cisco Hyperlocation requires the AP to be synchronized with regard to time. To achieve this, the controller sends network time protocol (NTP) information to the AP. The AP then uses the NTP server to synchronize its clock. Therefore, the AP needs connectivity to the NTP server.

APs can be geographically dispersed. Therefore, it is necessary to provide different NTP servers to different APs. This is achieved by allowing the configuration of NTP server information on a per AP profile basis. If NTP information is not configured on the AP profile, the controller uses one of the global NTP peers defined on its configuration or the management IP address is sent as the NTP server to be used if the controller is acting as an NTP server. If the NTP server is not available, Cisco Hyperlocation will be disabled.



Note In scale setup, the NTP server should be configured on the respective AP profiles, so that the APs and CA servers used for LSC provisioning are time synchronized. If the NTP server is not configured, a few APs would fail in LSC provisioning.

Bluetooth Low Energy Configuration

The BLE configuration is split into two parts: per-AP profile and per AP. The BLE feature can be configured partially from the AP profile (by default, the AP profile BLE configuration is applied) and partially per-AP (some or all the attributes are applied).

Table 46: BLE Configuration Details

Attribute	BLE Configuration Per AP Profile	BLE Configuration Per AP
Attributes with per-AP granularity (global for all the beacons)	- Interval - Advertised transmission power	- Interval - Advertised transmission power
Attributes with per-AP per0-beacon granularity	- Transmission power - UUID - Status	- Transmission power - UUID - Status - Major - Minor



Note The *default-ap-profile* BLE configuration can be considered the default BLE configuration because all the APs will join the *default-ap-profile* AP profile in case the other profiles are removed.

For more information about Cisco Hyperlocation, see the following documents:

- [Cisco Hyperlocation Solution](#)
- [Cisco CMX Configuration Guide to enable Cisco Hyperlocation](#)
- [Cisco CMX Release Notes](#)

Restrictions on Cisco Hyperlocation

- It is not possible to modify detection, trigger, and reset thresholds while Hyperlocation is in enabled state.
- Changes to the reset threshold are allowed for values in the range of zero to one less than the current threshold value. For example, if the current threshold reset value is 10, changes to the reset threshold are allowed for values in the range of 0 to 9.
- When Cisco Hyperlocation is in use on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller in a non-Fabric deployment, CMX must be reachable through an SVI interface (VLAN). Deployments where CMX is reachable through an L3 port results in an error.
- In Fabric deployments, the wireless management interface (typically loopback interface) must not be in Fabric.

- It is not possible to set the wireless management interface to a loopback interface in non-Fabric deployments.

Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation (GUI)

Cisco Hyperlocation is a location solution that allows to track the location of wireless clients with the accuracy of one meter. Selecting this option disables all other fields in the screen, except NTP Server.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join** page, click **Add**.
The **Add AP Join Profile** dialog box appears.
- Step 2** Under the **AP > Hyperlocation** tab, select the **Enable Hyperlocation** check box.
- Step 3** In the **Detection Threshold (dBm)** field, enter a value to filter out packets with low RSSI. You must enter a value between –100 dBm and –50 dBm.
- Step 4** In the **Trigger Threshold (cycles)** field, enter a value to set the number of scan cycles before sending a BAR to clients. You must enter a value between 0 and 99.
- Step 5** In the **Reset Threshold is required** field, enter a value to reset value in scan cycles after trigger. You must enter a value between 0 and 99.
- Step 6** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Cisco Hyperlocation (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap profile profile-name</code>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] hyperlocation Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>[no] hyperlocation</code>	Enables Cisco Hyperlocation feature on all the supported APs that are associated with this AP profile. Use the no form of the command to disable the Cisco Hyperlocation feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	[no] hyperlocation threshold detection <i>value-in-dBm</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] hyperlocation threshold detection -100	Sets threshold to filter out packets with low RSSI. The no form of this command resets the threshold to its default value. Valid range is between -100 and -50.
Step 5	[no] hyperlocation threshold reset <i>value-btwn-0-99</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] hyperlocation threshold reset 8	Resets the value of scan cycles after a trigger. The no form of this command resets the threshold to its default value.
Step 6	[no] hyperlocation threshold trigger <i>value-btwn-1-100</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] hyperlocation threshold trigger 10	Sets the number of scan cycles before sending a block acknowledgment request (BAR) to clients. The no form of this command resets the threshold to its default value.
Step 7	[no] ntp ip ip-address Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ntp ip 9.0.0.4	Sets the IP address of the NTP server. The no form of this command removes the NTP server.

Information About AP Group NTP Server

Features such as Cisco Hyperlocation, BLE Angle of Arrival (AoA), and Intelligent Capture (iCAP) require precise time across APs within an AP group to achieve location accuracy. Because the controller and controller global NTP server are configured on the WAN, they might have large synchronization delays from the APs, and this might compromise location accuracy.

If all the APs in an AP group synchronize with the same NTP server, accurate data can be obtained to calculate the location. Configuring the NTP server locally for all the APs in an AP group helps achieve better synchronization among APs.

Configuring an AP Group NTP Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>profile-name</i>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] ntp ip <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ntp ip <i>9.0.0.4</i>	Sets the IP address of the NTP server. The no form of this command removes the NTP server.
Step 4	[no] ntp auth-key <i>key-index type type format format key encryption-type server-key</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# ntp auth-key <i>index 1 type md5 format ascii key 0 3434324</i>	Configures NTP server per AP profile to support authentication. The no ntp auth-key command removes the NTP server from each AP profile. Note For ASCII key, ensure that the length is less than 21 bytes. For HEX key, the length should be less than 41, using only numbers between 0-9 and characters from a-f.

Configuring AP Timezone

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>test</i>	Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	timezone { use-controller delta hour offset-hour minute offset-minute } Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# timezone delta <i>hour -12 minute 2</i>	Configures the timezone offset for AP. You can configure the AP timezone only for each AP profile. You cannot configure timezone for each AP. To configure the timezone, either apply the current controller timezone or the time difference. By default, timezone is disabled.

Information About BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1, Cisco Catalyst Wi-Fi6 APs in basic mode or Cisco IOx mode support concurrent scanning and beacons. The BLE radio on an AP can stop a scan for beacon transmission and return to the scan after completing the beacon transmission.

This feature is supported only on Cisco Catalyst 9105ax, 9120ax, 9124, 9130, 9136, and Cisco Catalyst 916x APs.

BLE concurrent scanning and beacons can be enabled from Cisco Spaces using the **Dual** mode under **Device Management > AP Beacon > Settings**.



Note BLE concurrent scanning and beacons is not supported when v-iBeacon is used. Supported advertisement profiles are iBeacon, Eddystone-URL, and Eddystone-UUID.

Verifying BLE Concurrent Scanning and Beacons

Use the following commands to verify the status of concurrent scanning and beacons.

To display the advertisement profile, scan counters, and advertisement counters along with other information, use the following command from the AP console:

```
Device# show controllers IOTRadio ble 0 interface

Active BLE host interface      : /dev/ttyiot0
BLE Radio Status              : Powered on
Device Status                 : Open
Device Mode                   : Native
Device resets                  : 4
Last Reset Reason              : Watchdog Timer Reset
Heart beat status             : On
Scan Status                  : Enabled
Active Transmit Profile      : Eddystone URL
BLE MAC                       : 80:6F:B0:31:EF:74
Transmitted advertisement count
  since BLE enabled           : 0
Total scan records received    : 3617
```

To see whether the transmit profile configuration has been successfully pushed from Cisco Spaces to the AP, use the following command from the AP console:

```
Device# show controllers iOTRadio ble 0 broadcast

BLE Profile Config
-----
Active profile                : Eddystone UUID
Profile 0 (iBeacon)
UUID                           : 00000001023012120312032130012111
Interval (ms)                  : 100
Power (dBm)                    : 0
Advertised Power (dBm)         : -45
Minor                          : 29219
Major                          : 35826
TxPower byte                   :
```

To view the list of joined APs that support the BLE Management feature along with the BLE details for each AP, use the following command from the controller:

AP Name	AP Model	AP Ethernet MAC	BLE	BLE	BLE mode	BLE MAC	BLE Profile
BLE Scan			Interface State	Admin State			
AP794	C9130AXI-B	04eb.409e.xxxx	Open	Up	Base (Native)	806f.b031.xxxx	Eddystone
AP50	C9130AXI-B	04eb.409e.xxxx	Close	Down	Base (Native)	Unknown	Not
Configured	Disabled						
AP28	C9136I	687d.b45c.xxxx	Close	Down	Base (Native)	Unknown	Not
Configured	Disabled						

```
Hyperlocation operational status: Down
Reason: Hyperlocation is administratively disabled
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
```

```
Hyperlocation admin status: Disabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -100
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 10
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8
```

```
Profile Name: default-ap-profile
```

```
Hyperlocation operational status: Up
Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 22
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8
```

To display both the overall and the per-AP configuration values and operational status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap hyperlocation detail
```

```
Profile Name: house24
```

```
Hyperlocation operational status: Up
Reason: NTP server is not properly configured
Hyperlocation NTP server: 198.51.100.1
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 8
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 7
```

AP Name	Radio MAC	Method	CMX IP	AP Profile
APe865.49d9.bfe0	e865.49ea.a4b0	WSM2+Ant	198.51.100.2	house24
APa89d.21b9.69d0	a89d.21b9.69d0	Local	198.51.100.3	house24
APe4aa.5d3f.d750	e4aa.5d5f.3630	WSM	198.51.100.4	house24

To display the overall (profile specific) configuration values and operational status for a given profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name hyperlocation summary
```

```
Profile Name: profile-name
Hyperlocation operational status: Up
Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -100
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 10
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 8
```

To display both the overall (profile specific) and per-AP configuration values and operational status for a given profile, use the following command. The APs listed are only those APs that belong to the specified join profile.

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name hyperlocation detail
```

```
Profile Name: profile-name
```

```

Hyperlocation operational status: Up
Reason: N/A
Hyperlocation NTP server: 209.165.200.224
Hyperlocation admin status: Enabled
Hyperlocation detection threshold (dBm): -90
Hyperlocation trigger threshold: 8
Hyperlocation reset threshold: 7

```

AP Name	Radio MAC	Method	CMX IP
APf07f.0635.2d40	f07f.0635.2d40	WSM2+Ant	198.51.100.2
APf07f.0635.2d41	f07f.0635.2d41	Local	198.51.100.3
APf07f.0635.2d42	f07f.0635.2d42	WSM	198.51.100.4

To display configuration values for an AP profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name detailed
```

```

Hyperlocation :
  Admin State           : ENABLED
  PAK RSSI Threshold Detection: -100
  PAK RSSI Threshold Trigger : 10
  PAK RSSI Threshold Reset  : 8
.
.
.

```

To display the Cisco CMXs that are correctly joined and used by hyperlocation, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap hyperlocation cmx summary
```

Hyperlocation-enabled CMXs

IP	Port	Dest MAC	Egress src MAC	Egress VLAN	Ingress src MAC	Join time
198.51.100.4	2003	aaaa.bbbb.cccc	aabb.ccdd.eeff	2	0000.0001.0001	12/14/18 09:27:14

To display the hyperlocation client statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp
feature wireless wlclient cpp-client summary
```

```

Client Type Abbreviations:
  RG - REGULAR BL - BLE
  HL - HALO LI - LWFL INT
Auth State Abbreviations:
  UK - UNKNOWN IP - LEARN IP IV - INVALID
  L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN
Mobility State Abbreviations:
  UK - UNKNOWN IN - INIT
  LC - LOCAL AN - ANCHOR
  FR - FOREIGN MT - MTE
  IV - INVALID
EoGRE Abbreviations:
  N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE
CPP IF_H DPIDX MAC Address VLAN CT MCVL AS MS E WLAN POA
-----
0X32 0XF0000001 0000.0001.0001 9 HL 0 RN LC N NULL

```


To display the interface handle value statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics start
```

To display the recorded flow, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics
```

	Pkts	Bytes
Rx	26	3628

To stop statistics capture, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active
qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics stop
```

To view the APs requested by Cisco CMX with AP groups' support, use the following commands:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription group summary
```

```
CMX IP address: 198.51.100.4
Groups subscribed by this CMX server:
Group name: CMX_1198.51.100.4
```

```
Device# show nmsp subscription group detail ap-list CMX_198.51.100.1 198.51.100.1
```

```
CMX IP address: 198.51.100.1
CMX Group name: CMX_198.51.100.1
CMX Group AP MACs:
: aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:01 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:02 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:03 aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:03
```

To display the NTP IP address and authentication parameters, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile profile-name detailed
```

```
.
.
.
NTP Authentication : ENABLED
Key id : 2
Key type : SHA1
Key format : HEX
Key : 3a2275c74c250c362ca63e4af06fa3f3cd8d4aec
Encryption type : Clear
```

```
.
.
.
```

To display the NTP status for each AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP-G1-230 ntp status
```

ap-name	enabled	v4/v6	IPAddress	Status	Stratum	LastSync	SyncOffset
AP-G1-230	Y	v4	198.51.100.5	AuthFail	4	1000	100

To display NTP status for all the APs, use the following command:

Device# **show ap ntp status**

ap-name	enabled	v4/v6	IPAddress	Status	Stratum	LastSync	SyncOffset
AP-G1-230	Y	v4	5.5.5.5	AuthFail	2	Never	
AP-G1-231	Y	v4	5.5.5.10	Synced	3	1000	100
AP-G1-232	Y	v4	5.5.5.15	Synced	16	2000	50

To display the instant status of NTP synchronization in an AP, use the following command. The following output is from an AP and not from the controller.

Device# **show ntp**

!This error message is displayed when NTP is not configured.
 %Error: ntpd is not running

!The following output is displayed when NTP is configured.

Stratum	Version	Last Received	Delay	Offset	Jitter	NTP server
13	4	7sec ago	1.124ms	0.536ms	0.001ms	198.51.100.5

To display AP timezone information, use the following command:

Device# **show ap timezone**

AP Name	Status	Offsets(h/m)
AP1	Disabled	0:0
AP2	Enabled	1:0



CHAPTER 66

FastLocate for Cisco Catalyst Series Access Points

- [Information About FastLocate, on page 697](#)
- [Restrictions on FastLocate, on page 697](#)
- [Supported Access Points, on page 698](#)
- [FastLocate Network Components, on page 698](#)
- [Configuring FastLocate \(GUI\), on page 699](#)
- [Verifying FastLocate on Cisco Catalyst APs, on page 699](#)

Information About FastLocate

Current Wi-Fi location technology relies on mobile devices sending received signal strength indication (RSSI) or location information, based on probe request messaging, to access points. This information is sent on most channels by the mobile device and received by neighbor APs on different channels. This helps in location estimation.

Wi-Fi clients are moving towards lesser probing to discover an AP. This helps to conserve battery power. Depending on the client, operating system, driver, battery, current, and client activity, device probing frequency varies anywhere from 10 seconds to 5 minutes. This variation results in inadequate data points to represent real-world movement.

Since data packets are more frequent than probe request packets, they can be aggregated better. FastLocate enables higher location refresh rates by collecting RSSI or location information through data packets received by the APs. Using these data packets, location-based services (LBS) updates are initiated by the network and are available more frequently.

Restrictions on FastLocate

In Fabric deployments, the Wireless Management Interface (WMI) cannot be an L3 interface (Loopback Interface).



Note It is recommended to use a VLAN interface as the WMI, if you want to use FastLocate in Fabric deployment.

Supported Access Points

Beginning with IOS XE 17.1.1, FastLocate feature is supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series Access Points.

For information about APs that support the FastLocate feature, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

In addition, Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points also supports the Angle of Arrival based location calculation (Hyperlocation).

When FastLocate is enabled, the Cisco RF ASIC radios of these APs act as a WSSI module and transform into a monitoring role and off-channel scanning mode. The Cisco RF ASIC radios scan through all the 2.4-GHz channels and 5-GHz channels in a linear fashion, with each channel scanned for 150 milliseconds. This period is called the dwell time.

The Cisco RF ASIC radios of the APs are synchronized with the NTP server. Using FastPath, all data packet RSSI records that are collected during one off-channel dwell is sent in a specific packet format to the Cisco controller, at the end of the dwell time.

FastLocate Network Components

For successful packet RSSI location computation, the following components with necessary functionalities are needed:

- Wireless client
 - Send data, management, and control packets
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller
 - Configure NTP server information and location parameters on AP
 - Forward clients' RSSI related information to CMX/MSE via FastPath/datapath
- Cisco Catalyst 9120 Series AP
 - Location radio in monitor or equivalent role
 - Time synchronized with NTP server
 - Collect RSSI related data sent by clients (both associated and unassociated)
 - Send clients' RSSI data to the Cisco controller through CAPWAP
- Cisco CMX
 - Parse fastpath location data received by WLC
 - Calculate exact physical location of the client and render on GUI using algorithms

Configuring FastLocate (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** On the **AP Join** page, click the **default-ap-profile** AP join profile.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **AP** tab.
 - Step 4** Under **Hyperlocation**, select the **Enable Hyperlocation** check box.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Verifying FastLocate on Cisco Catalyst APs

To verify FastLocate, use the below commands on the AP:

Device# **show ntp**

Stratum	Version	Last Received	Delay	Offset	Jitter	NTP server
1	4	123sec ago	1.169ms	-3.262ms	10.050ms	7.7.7.2

Device# **show ap fast-path statistics**

```
total packets sent      : 90001
invalid app ID drops    : 0
application              : 0 (HALO)
packets sent (CAPWAP)    : 90001
packets sent (APP HOST INTF) : 0
admin state drops       : 0
no dest IP drops        : 0
```

To view FastLocate admin status details on the AP, use the following command:

Device# **show capwap client rcb**

```
Hyperlocation Admin State : Enabled
MSE Gateway MAC           : 00:50:56:86:0F:9D
WLC Hyperlocation Source Port: 9999
MSE IP Address            : 10.0.0.1
```

To view FastPath-related parameters on the AP like source and destination IP addresses, port numbers, and the gateway MAC address, use the following command:

Device# **show ap fast-path configuration hyperlocation**

```
source IP address      : 10.0.0.2
destination IP address: 10.0.0.1
source port (WLC)      : 9999
destination port (MSE): 2003
gateway MAC            : 00:50:56:86:0F:9D
ewlc hyperlocation MAC: 00:00:00:01:00:01
```

To verify FastLocate on the Cisco Catalyst controller, use the appropriate command given below.

To view the summary of applications that send fastpath or datapath data, use the below command. The hexcode for the HyperLocation and BLE port numbers are displayed.

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient
cpp-client summary
```

```
Client Type Abbreviations:
RG - REGULAR      BL - BLE
HL - HALO         LI - LWFL INT
Auth State Abbreviations:
UK - UNKNOWN      IP - LEARN IP      IV - INVALID
L3 - L3 AUTH      RN - RUN
Mobility State Abbreviations:
UK - UNKNOWN      IN - INIT
LC - LOCAL        AN - ANCHOR
FR - FOREIGN      MT - MTE
IV - INVALID
EoGRE Abbreviations:
N - NON EOGRE     Y - EOGRE
CPP IF_H          DPIDX          MAC Address VLAN CT MCVL AS MS E WLAN POA
-----
0X31   0XF0000002 0000.0003.0001 122 BL 0 RN LC N NULL 0X32 0XF0000001 0000.0001.0001 122
HL 0 RN LC N NULL
```

To capture statistics of a selected application, use the below command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient
datapath
cpp-if-handle register-code statistics start
```

The hex-value of the register-code is obtained from the **show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client summary** command mentioned earlier.

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient
datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics start
```

To display the statistics of the selected application, use the below command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient
datapath
cpp-if-handle register-code statistics
```

The hex-value of the register-code is obtained from the **show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client summary** command mentioned earlier.

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient
datapath cpp-if-handle 0x32 statistics
      Pkts   Bytes
Rx    232   38850
```



CHAPTER 67

IoT Services Management

- [Information About IoT Services Management, on page 701](#)
- [Enabling the Dot15 Radio, on page 702](#)
- [Configuring the gRPC Token, on page 702](#)
- [Enabling gRPC in an AP Profile, on page 703](#)
- [Verifying BLE State and Mode, on page 703](#)
- [Verifying BLE Details, on page 704](#)
- [Verifying gRPC Summary, Status, and Statistics, on page 705](#)

Information About IoT Services Management

Cisco Catalyst 9800 devices running the Cisco IOS-XE image Version 17.3.2 support Cisco Spaces: IoT Services along with the Network Assurance on Cisco Catalyst Center. However, IoT Services and the Intelligent Capture (iCAP) port configuration are mutually exclusive. That is, if the iCAP feature needs to be enabled on a device, then IoT Services cannot be deployed. Similarly, if IoT Services needs to be enabled on a device, then iCAP feature cannot be deployed.

The following are the gRPC connections from AP:

- One gRPC connection from AP to Cisco Catalyst Center for iCAP.
- Other gRPC connection from AP to Cisco Catalyst Center Connector for IoT Services.

Following is a table that shows the pairs of configurations that can or cannot coexist on IOS-XE image version 17.3.2.

Cisco DNA-C Configuration	Cisco Spaces Configuration	Coexistence on IOS-XE Image Version 17.3.2
network-assurance enable	ap cisco-dna token <i>token</i>	yes
network-assurance icap server port <i>port</i>	ap cisco-dna token <i>token</i>	no

Cisco Spaces: IoT Services is an end-to-end solution. Hence, you do not need to manually enable IoT services or Dot15 radio on the controller. Dot15 radio is enabled or disabled automatically through Cisco Spaces. However, you can verify if Dot15 radio is enabled from the controller.

Similarly, Cisco Spaces enables gRPC in the **default ap profile configuration** of the controller. You do not need to manually enable it. However, you can verify the same on the controller.

Cisco Spaces enables the **apphost** configuration, which is required for the **default ap profile** configuration. If **apphost** is not enabled by Cisco Spaces, then you must manually enable it. This is required in order to host IOx applications on an AP.

Enabling the Dot15 Radio

When you enable the BLE radio configuration globally, the APs that are joined to the controller enable their BLE radio, if they have the BLE radio chip in their hardware. This configuration will be applied to all the APs that will join the controller after the configuration is enabled.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no ap dot15 shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot15 shutdown	Enables the dot15 radios for APs, globally.
Step 3	ap dot15 shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot15 shutdown	Disables the dot15 radio for all APs, globally.

Configuring the gRPC Token



Note

- The configuration is pushed automatically from Cisco Spaces. There is no need to manually enable gRPC on the **default ap profile** configuration. You can verify the same on the controller
- The NETCONF (NETCONF/YANG configuration) must be enabled on the device for the Cisco Spaces to push the required configuration to the controller. Secure Copy (**ip scp server enable**) must be enabled on the controller so that Cisco Spaces can push the gRPC certificate to the controller.
- The iCAP server port configuration should not be present in the configuration. If it exists, then run the iCAP server port 0 command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap cisco-dna token {0 8} cisco-token-number Example: Device(config)# ap cisco-dna token 0 cisco-token-number	Configures the Cisco Spaces gRPC token. 0: Specifies the string as an UNENCRYPTED password. 8: Indicates the placeholder for backward compatibility.

Enabling gRPC in an AP Profile

The Manage Streams feature of Cisco Spaces pushes the gRPC configuration only to the default AP profile, currently. If you are using a different AP profile, you must manually configure gRPC.

The following procedure explains how to manually enable gRPC on an AP profile that is not the default-ap-profile. Cisco Spaces may not push gRPC on all the AP profiles. Therefore, the following commands can be used to enable gRPC for individual AP profiles.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile ap-profile-name Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name	Configures the AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	cisco-dna grpc Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# cisco-dna grpc	Enables the gRPC channel on the APs, in the AP profile.

Verifying BLE State and Mode

To verify the BLE state and mode, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap ble summary
AP Name          BLE AP State      BLE mode
-----
Axel-1           Up                Advanced (IOx)
Axel-2           Up                Advanced (IOx)
9117-1           Up                Advanced (IOx)
3800-1           Up                Base (Native)
1815             Up                Base (Native)
9120-3           Up                Advanced (IOx)
9120-1           Up                Base (Native)
9115-ax          Up                Base (Native)
9120-2           Up                Base (Native)

```

Verifying BLE Details

To verify BLE details, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap name APXXXX.BDXX.29XX ble detail
Mode report time      : 07/28/2020 09:40:57
Mode                  : Base (Native)
Radio mode            : BLE
Admin state report time : 07/28/2020 09:40:57
Admin state           : Up
Interface report time  : 07/28/2020 09:40:57
Interface              : MSM1
Interface state        : Open
Type                   : Integrated
Capability report time  : 07/14/2020 17:10:49
Capability              : BLE, Zigbee, USB,
Host data report time  : 07/28/2020 09:52:04
Host data
  Device name          : APXXXXBDX
  Dot15 Radio MAC      : 18:04:ed:c5:0e:c8
  API version          : 1
  FW version           : 2.7.16
  Broadcast count       : 4389
  Uptime                : 596050 deciseconds
  Active profile        : viBeacon
Scan Statistics report time : 07/28/2020 09:40:57
Scan statistics
  Total scan records    : 0
Scan role report time : 07/28/2020 09:43:19
Scan role
  Scan state            : Disable
  Scan interval         : 0 seconds
  Scan window           : 800 milliseconds
  Scan max value        : 8
  Scan filter           : Enable
Broadcaster role
  Current profile type: iBeacon
  Last report time    : N/A
  UUID                : Unknown
  Major               : Unknown
  Minor               : Unknown
  Transmit power      : Unknown
  Frequency           : Unknown
  Advertised transmit power : Unknown
  Current profile type: Eddystone URL
  Last report time    : 07/28/2020 09:47:17
  URL                 : https://www.cisco.com
  Current profile type: Eddystone UID
  Last report time    : 07/28/2020 09:43:25

```

```

Namespace                : 04d77XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Instance id              : 5df5XXXXXXXXXXXXX
Current profile type: viBeacon
Last report time         : 07/28/2020 09:52:04
Interval                  : 450 milliseconds
Beacon ID                : 0
  UUID                   : 30XXXXXX-3XXX-4XXX-9XXX-d3XXXXXXXXXXXXX
  Major                  : 36341
  Minor                  : 33196
  Transmit power         : 3 dBm
  Advertised transmit power : 60 dBm
  Enable                 : Enable
Beacon ID                : 1
  UUID                   : 57XXXXXX-cXXX-4XXX-aXXX-85XXXXXXXXXXXXX
  Major                  : 3875
  Minor                  : 567
  Transmit power         : 2 dBm
  Advertised transmit power : 69 dBm
  Enable                 : Enable
.
.
.

```

Verifying gRPC Summary, Status, and Statistics

To verify the gRPC summary, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap grpc summary
AP Name      AP Mac      gRPC Status
-----
APXXXX.BDXX.F2XX  0cXX.bdXX.66XX  Up

```

To verify the packet statistics on the gRPC channel that also shows the transmit and receive failures, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap name APXXXX.BDXX.F2XX grpc detail
gRPC channel status : Up
Packets transmit attempts : 62
Packets transmit failures : 0
Packets receive count : 62
Packets receive failures : 0

```




CHAPTER 68

IoT Module Management in the Controller

- [Information About IoT Module Management in the Controller, on page 707](#)
- [Enabling a USB on the Controller, on page 707](#)
- [Verifying the USB Modules, on page 708](#)

Information About IoT Module Management in the Controller

The IoT Module Management feature uses the USB interface on the Cisco Catalyst 9105AXI, 9105AXW, 9115AX, 9117AX, 9120AX, and 9130AX Series access points (APs), to connect to the Cisco Internet of Things (IoT) connector. These APs host the third-party application software components, that act as containers. Cisco Catalyst Center helps in the provisioning, deployment, and life cycle management of the container applications on the APs. The controller and the APs are managed by Cisco Catalyst Center.

You can connect the USB modules to the APs, and then log in to the controller and run commands to enable the USB modules and the Cisco IOx application in the APs associated with an AP profile group.

Enabling a USB on the Controller

To enable a USB for all the APs connected in an AP profile and to enable Cisco IOx on all the APs, follow this procedure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap profile name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-test	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode. Note You can use the default AP profile (default-ap-profile) or create a named AP

	Command or Action	Purpose
		profile, as shown in the example in the adjacent column.
Step 3	apphost Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# apphost	Enables the apphost framework on Cisco APs.
Step 4	usb-enable Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# usb-enable	Enables a USB for Cisco APs.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# exit	Exits AP profile configuration mode.
Step 6	copy running-config startup-config Example: Device(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Writes running configuration to the memory.

Verifying the USB Modules

To verify the state of USB modules, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
USB Module Type      : USB Module
USB Module State     : Enabled
USB Operational State : Enabled
USB Override         : Disabled
```

To verify the apphost status, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap apphost summary
AP Name      AP Mac      Apphost Status      CAF Port
Apphost HW capable
-----
SS-2027      00xx.abXX.bXXX      Up                    8443      Yes
Axel-2036    04xx.40XX.aXXX      Up                    8443      Yes
Haida-PrePilot 0cxx.f8XX.0XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
Somer-infra-2022 3cxx.0eXX.0XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
AP5C71.0DEC.DB5C 3cxx.0eXX.0XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
AP5C71.0DEC.E3D8 3cxx.0eXX.4XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
Somer-WP-2021 3cxx.0eXX.5XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
AP5C71.0DEC.EC60 3cxx.0eXX.9XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
SS-2005      6cXX.05XX.dXXX      Up                    8443      Yes
Vanc-2042    d4XX.bdXX.2XXX      Up                    8443      Yes
```

To verify the apphost status, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap module summary
AP Name      External Module      External Module PID      External Module Description
-----
Axel-2036    Enable 10xx/eaXX/100 CP2XXXXX      USB to UART Bridge C
```

Haxx-PrePilot	Enable	10xx/eaXX/100	CP2XXXX	USB to UART Bridge C
APXXX.0XXX.EXX	Enable	10xx/eaXX/100	CP2XXXX	USB to UART Bridge C
SS-2005	Enable	10xx/eaXX/100	CP2XXXX	USB to UART Bridge C
Vaxx-2006	Enable	10xx/eaXX/100	CP2XXXX	USB to UART Bridge C



CHAPTER 69

Cisco Spaces

- [Cisco Spaces, on page 711](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Spaces, on page 711](#)
- [Verifying Cisco Spaces Configuration, on page 712](#)

Cisco Spaces

Cisco Spaces is the next generation indoor location services platform. The Network Mobility Services Protocol (NMSP) cloud-service of the wireless controller communicates with Cisco Spaces using HTTPS as a transport protocol.

Configuring Cisco Spaces

Follow the procedure given below to configure Cisco Spaces:

Before you begin

- **Configure DNS**—To resolve fully qualified domain names used by NMSP cloud-services, configure a DNS using the **ip name-server *server_address*** configuration command as shown in Step 2.
- **Import 3rd party root CAs**—The controller verifies the peer and the host based on the certificate that is sent by the CMX when a connection is established. However, root CAs are not preinstalled on the controller. You have to import a set of root CAs trusted by Cisco to the trustpool of the crypto PKI by using the **crypto pki trustpool import url <url>** configuration command as shown in Step 3.
- A successful registration to Cisco Spaces is required to enable **server url** and **server token** parameters configuration which is needed to complete this setup.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ip name-server <i>namesvr-ip-addr</i> Example: Device(config)#ip name-server 10.10.10.205	Configures the DNS on the controller to resolve the FQDN names used by the NMSP cloud-services.
Step 3	crypto pki trustpool import url <i>url</i> Example: Device(config)#crypto pki trustpool import url http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/trs/ios.p7b	Imports the 3rd party root CA. The controller verifies the peer using the imported certificate.
Step 4	[no] nmsp cloud-services server url <i>url</i> Example: Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services server url https://cisco.com	Configures the URL used for cloud services. Use the no form of the command to delete the server url from the configuration.
Step 5	[no] nmsp cloud-services server token <i>token</i> Example: Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services server token test	Configures the authentication token for the NMSP cloud service. Use the no form of the command to delete the server token from the configuration.
Step 6	[no] nmsp cloud-services http-proxy <i>proxy-server port</i> Example: Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services http-proxy 10.0.0.1 10	(Optional) Configures HTTP proxy details for the NMSP cloud service. Use the no form of the command to disable the use of a HTTP proxy.
Step 7	[no] nmsp cloud-services enable Example: Device(config)# nmsp cloud-services enable	Enables NMSP cloud services. Use the no form of the command to disable the feature.

Verifying Cisco Spaces Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the Cisco Spaces configuration.

To view the status of active NMSP connections, use the following command:

Device# **show nmsp status**

MSE IP Address	Tx Echo Resp	Rx Echo Req	Tx Data	Rx Data	Transport
9.9.71.78	0	0	1	1	TLS
64.103.36.133	0	0	1230	2391	HTTPs

To view the NMSP cloud service status, use the following command:

Device# **show nmsp cloud-services summary**

CMX Cloud-Services Status

```

-----
Server:                        https://yenth8.cmxcisco.com
IP Address:                    64.103.36.133
Cmx Service:                   Enabled
Connectivity:                  https: UP
Service Status:                Active
Last Request Status:           HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Heartbeat Status:              OK

```

To view the NMSP cloud service statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp cloud-services statistics
```

```
CMX Cloud-Services Statistics
-----
```

```

Tx DataFrames:                3213
Rx DataFrames:                1606
Tx HeartBeat Req:             31785
Heartbeat Timeout:            0
Rx Subscr Req:                2868
Tx DataBytes:                 10069
Rx DataBytes:                 37752
Tx HeartBeat Fail:            2
Tx Data Fail:                 0
Tx Conn Fail:                 0

```

To view the mobility services summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show nmsp subscription summary
```

```
Mobility Services Subscribed:
```

```
Index Server IP Services
```

```

-----
1 209.165.200.225 RSSI, Info, Statistics, AP Monitor, AP Info
2 209.165.200.225 RSSI, Statistics, AP Info

```




CHAPTER 70

EDCA Parameters

- [Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters, on page 715](#)
- [Configuring EDCA Parameters \(GUI\), on page 715](#)
- [Configuring EDCA Parameters \(CLI\), on page 716](#)

Enhanced Distributed Channel Access Parameters

Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters are designed to provide preferential wireless channel access for voice, video, and other quality of service (QoS) traffic.

This section contains the following subsections:

Configuring EDCA Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters . Using this page, you can configure global parameters for 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) radios.
Note You cannot configure or modify parameters, if the radio network is enabled. Disable the network status on the Configuration > Radio Configurations > Network page before you proceed. For the EDCA to take effect on the WLANs, you must disable and then re-enable the WLANs.	
Step 2	In the EDCA Parameters section, choose an EDCA profile from the EDCA Profile drop-down list. Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters are designed to provide preferential wireless channel access for voice, video, and other quality-of-service (QoS) traffic.
Step 3	For 802.11a/n/ac (5 GHz) radios, in the (DFS 802.11h) section, enter the local power constraint. You cannot configure power constraint if the DTPC Support check box on the Configure > Radio Configurations > Network page is checked. The valid range is between 0 dBm and 30 dBm.
Step 4	Check the Channel Switch Announcement Mode check box, if you want the AP to announce when it is switching to a new channel and the new channel number. The default value is disabled.

- Step 5** Check the **Smart DFS** check box to enable Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) and avoid interference with the radar signals.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.

Configuring EDCA Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 5ghz shutdown</code>	Disables the radio network.
Step 3	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} edca-parameters {client-load-based custom-voice fastlane optimized-video-voice optimized-voice svp-voice wmm-default} Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 5ghz edca-parameters optimized-voice</code>	Enables specific EDCA parameters for the 802.11a, 802.11b/g, or 802.11 6-GHz network. Note The custom-voice option is not supported for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. • client-load-based: Enables client load based EDCA configuration. • custom-voice: Enables custom voice parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. • fastlane: Enables the fastlane parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. • optimized-video-voice: Enables EDCA voice-optimized and video-optimized parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option when both voice and video services are deployed on your network. • optimized-voice: Enables non-SpectraLink voice-optimized profile parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option when voice services other than SpectraLink are deployed on your network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• svp-voice: Enables SpectraLink voice-priority parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. Choose this option if SpectraLink phones are deployed on your network to improve the quality of calls. • wmm-default: Enables the Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) default parameters for the 802.11a or 802.11b/g network. This is the default option. Choose this option when voice or video services are not deployed on your network.
Step 4	no ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Enables the radio network.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} network Example: Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network	Displays the current status of MAC optimization for voice.



CHAPTER 71

Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA

- [Feature History for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA, on page 719](#)
- [Information About Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA, on page 719](#)
- [Restrictions for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA, on page 720](#)
- [Configuration Workflow, on page 720](#)
- [Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA \(GUI\), on page 720](#)
- [Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA \(CLI\), on page 721](#)
- [Verifying Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA Configuration, on page 721](#)

Feature History for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA

This table provides release and related information for the features explained in this module.

These features are available in all the releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 47: Feature History for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA	This Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA feature dynamically changes Enhanced Distributed Channel Access (EDCA) parameters of clients based on the active client and load that significantly reduce collisions.

Information About Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA

The static EDCA configuration is good for small number of clients. In an enterprise multient deployment scenario, access points (APs) experience excessive collisions as the number of clients increases resulting in significant performance degradation. To overcome such a scenario, the Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA feature has been introduced.

This feature dynamically changes EDCA parameters of clients based on the active client and load that significantly reduce collisions.

Feature Scenario

Run-time EDCA configuration based on active clients and load.

Use Case

In a dense multiclient deployment scenario, when a customer was testing 40 iPads in a class room or auditorium setup, he observed that the channel utilization was 60 to 70 percent. The overall AP throughput was less because of air collusion and RTS retries.

After the adaptive client load-based EDCA feature was enabled, the overall throughput increased by 15 to 20 percent and collision decreased by 30 to 40 percent.

Restrictions for Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA

- You must disable the 802.11b network if you want to access the 802.11a network.

Configuration Workflow

- [Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA \(GUI\)](#)
- [Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA \(CLI\)](#)

Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters to configure global parameters for 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) and 802.11b/g/n (2.4-GHz) radios.
Step 2	In the EDCA Parameters section, from the EDCA Profile drop-down list, choose an EDCA profile.
Step 3	Click the Client Load Based Configuration toggle button to enable or disable. It is enabled by default.
Step 4	For 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) radios, in the DFS (802.11h) section, enter the local power constraint. You cannot configure power constraint if the DPTC Support check box in Configuration > Radio Configurations > Network is checked. The valid range for power constraint is between 0 dBm and 30 dBm.
Step 5	From the Channel Switch Announcement Mode drop-down list, choose either the Loud or Quiet mode.
Step 6	Click the Smart DFS toggle button to enable or disable. It is enabled by default.
Step 7	In the 11ax Parameters section, enable or disable the following, using the corresponding toggle button: • Target Wakeup Time • Target Wakeup Time Broadcast • Multiple Bssid
Step 8	Enable BSS color globally for the 5-GHz and 2.4-GHz radios by checking the BSS Color check box.

Step 9 Click **Apply**.

Configuring Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} edca-parameters client-load-based Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz edca-parameters client-load-based	Enables client load-based EDCA configuration for 802.11 radios. Use the no form of this command to disable the configuration. Note To enable the configuration on an 802.11a radio, you must disable the 802.11b network.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA Configuration

To verify whether the Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA feature is enabled on an 802.11a or an 802.11b radio, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz network
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network
EDCA profile type check                : default-wmm
Client Load Based EDCA Config          : Enabled
```

To verify whether the Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA feature is enabled on an 802.11 6-GHz radio, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 6ghz network
.
.
.
EDCA profile type check                : default-wmm
Client Load Based EDCA Config          : Enabled
```

To verify whether the Adaptive Client Load-Based EDCA feature is enabled on APs, use the following command:

```
Device# show capwap client config
```

```
Client Load Based EDCA      : Enabled
```

To view the Adaptive EDCA parameters running on the driver, use the following command:

```
Device# show controllers dot11Radio 0/1
```

```
EDCA Config:
```

```
=====
```

```
L:Local C:Cell A:Adaptive EDCA params
```

```
AC Type CwMin CwMax Aifs Txop ACM
```

```
AC_BE L 4 6 3 0 0
```

```
AC_BK L 4 10 7 0 0
```

```
AC_VI L 3 4 1 94 0
```

```
AC_VO L 2 3 1 47 0
```

```
AC_BE C 4 10 3 0 0
```

```
AC_BK C 4 10 7 0 0
```

```
AC_VI C 3 4 2 94 0
```

```
AC_VO C 2 3 2 47 0
```

```
AC_BE A 4 10 7 0 0
```

```
AC_BK A 4 10 3 0 0
```

```
AC_VI A 3 4 2 94 0
```

```
AC_VO A 2 3 2 47 0
```



CHAPTER 72

802.11 parameters and Band Selection

- [Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 723](#)
- [Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 725](#)
- [How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters, on page 725](#)
- [Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 736](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters, on page 743](#)

Information About Configuring Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

Band Select

Band select enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4 and 5-GHz) operations to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested. Clients on this band typically experience interference from Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, and cordless phones as well as co-channel interference from other access points because of the 802.11b/g limit of 3 nonoverlapping channels. To prevent these sources of interference and improve overall network performance, configure band selection on the device.

Band select works by regulating probe responses to clients and it can be enabled on a per-WLAN basis. It makes 5-GHz channels more attractive to clients by delaying probe responses to clients on 2.4-GHz channels. In an access point, the band select table can be viewed by running the **show dot11 band-select** command. It can also be viewed by running the **show cont d0/d1 | begin Lru** command.



Note You can enable both band selection and aggressive load balancing on the controller. They run independently and do not impact one another.

Band Select Algorithm

The band select algorithm affects clients that use 2.4-GHz band. Initially, when a client sends a probe request to an access point, the corresponding client probe's Active and Count values (as seen from the band select table) become 1. The algorithm functions based on the following scenarios:

- Scenario1: Client RSSI (as seen from the **show cont d0/d1 | begin RSSI** command output) is greater than both Mid RSSI and Acceptable Client RSSI.

- Dual-band clients: No 2.4-GHz probe responses are seen at any time; 5-GHz probe responses are seen for all 5-GHz probe requests.
- Single-band (2.4-GHz) clients: 2.4-GHz probe responses are seen only after the probe suppression cycle.
- After the client's probe count reaches the configured probe cycle count, the algorithm waits for the Age Out Suppression time and then marks the client probe's Active value as 0. Then, the algorithm is restarted.
- Scenario2: Client RSSI (as seen from **show cont d0/d1 | begin RSSI**) lies between Mid-RSSI and Acceptable Client RSSI.
 - All 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz probe requests are responded to without any restrictions.
 - This scenario is similar to the band select disabled.



Note The client RSSI value (as seen in the **sh cont d0 | begin RSSI** command output) is the average of the client packets received, and the Mid RSSI feature is the instantaneous RSSI value of the probe packets. As a result, the client RSSI is seen as weaker than the configured Mid RSSI value (7-dB delta). The 802.11b probes from the client are suppressed to push the client to associate with the 802.11a band.

802.11 Bands

You can configure the 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz) and 802.11a/n (5 GHz) bands for the controller to comply with the regulatory requirements in your country. By default, both 802.11b/g/n and 802.11a/n are enabled.

This section contains the following subsections:

802.11n Parameters

This section provides instructions for managing 802.11n access points on your network. The 802.11n devices support the 2.4 and 5-GHz bands and offer high throughput data rates.

The 802.11n high throughput rates are available on all the 802.11n access points for the WLANs using WMM with no Layer 2 encryption or with WPA2/AES encryption enabled.



Note To disable MCS rates for 802.11n, 802.11ac and 802.11ax, ensure that at least one MCS rate is enabled. To disable 802.11n on the controller to force APs to use only legacy 802.11a/b/g rates, first disable 802.11ax and 802.11ac on the controller for a particular band. Irrespective of the APs mapped to a Custom-RF-Profile, disabling 802.11n globally on the controller applies to all the APs.

802.11h Parameters

802.11h informs client devices about channel changes and can limit the transmit power of those client devices.

Restrictions for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

- Band selection-enabled WLANs do not support time-sensitive applications such as voice and video because of roaming delays.
- Band selection is supported only on Cisco Wave 2 and 802.11ax APs.
For more information about support on specific APs, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.
- Band selection operates only on APs that are connected to a controller. A FlexConnect AP without a controller connection does not perform band selection after a reboot.
- The band-selection algorithm directs dual-band clients only from the 2.4-GHz radio to the 5-GHz radio of the same AP, and it only runs on an AP when both the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz radios are up and running.
- It is not possible to enable or disable band selection and client load balancing globally through the controller GUI or CLI. You can, however, enable or disable band selection and client load balancing for a particular WLAN. Band selection and client load balancing are enabled globally by default.

How to Configure 802.11 Bands and Parameters

Configuring Band Selection (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless Advanced > Band Select .
Step 2	In the Cycle Count field, enter a value between 1 and 10. The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.
Step 3	In the Cycle Threshold (milliseconds) field, enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the scan cycle period threshold. This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.
Step 4	In the Age Out Suppression (seconds) field, enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds. Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g/n clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
Step 5	In the Age Out Dual Band (seconds) field, enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds. The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 50 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
Step 6	In the Client RSSI (dbm) field, enter a value between -90 to -20. This is the average of the client packets received.

- Step 7** In the Client Mid RSSI (dbm) field, enter a value between -90 to -20. This the instantaneous RSSI value of the probe packets.
- Step 8** On the **AP Join Profile** page, click the AP Join Profile name.
- Step 9** Click **Apply**.

Configuring Band Selection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless client band-select cycle-count <i>cycle_count</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-count 3	Sets the probe cycle count for band select. Valid range is between 1 and 10.
Step 3	wireless client band-select cycle-threshold <i>milliseconds</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-threshold 5000	Sets the time threshold for a new scanning cycle period. Valid range is between 1 and 1000.
Step 4	wireless client band-select expire suppression <i>seconds</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire suppression 100	Sets the suppression expire to the band select. Valid range is between 10 and 200.
Step 5	wireless client band-select expire dual-band <i>seconds</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire dual-band 100	Sets the dual band expire. Valid range is between 10 and 300.
Step 6	wireless client band-select client-rssi <i>client_rssi</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless client band-select client-rssi 40	Sets the client RSSI threshold. Valid range is between 20 and 90.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	wlan <i>wlan_profile_name</i> <i>wlan_ID</i> <i>SSID_network_name</i> band-select Example: Device(config) # wlan wlan1 25 ssid12 Device(config-wlan) # band-select	Configures band selection on specific WLANs. Valid range is between 1 and 512. You can enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters for <i>SSID_network_name</i> parameter.

Configuring the 802.11 Bands (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Network**.
- Step 2** Click either **5 GHz Band** or **2.4 GHz Band**.
- Step 3** Uncheck the **Network Status** check box to disable the network in order to be able to configure the network parameters.
- Step 4** In the **Beacon Interval** field, enter the rate at which the SSID is broadcast by the APs, from 100 to 600 milliseconds. The default is 100 milliseconds.
- Step 5** For 802.11b/g/n (2.4-GHz) radios, to enable short preamble on the radio, check the **Short Preamble** check box. A short preamble improves throughput performance.
- Step 6** In the **Fragmentation Threshold (in bytes)** field, enter a value between 256 to 2346 bytes. Packets larger than the size you specify here will be fragmented.
- Step 7** Check the **DTPC Support** check box to advertise the transmit power level of the radio in the beacons and the probe responses. Client devices using dynamic transmit power control (DTPC) receive the channel and power level information from the access points and adjust their settings automatically. For example, a client device used primarily in Japan could rely on DTPC to adjust its channel and power settings automatically when it travels to Italy and joins a network there. You cannot configure a power constraint value on your 802.11a/n/ac (5-GHz) radio network if the **DTPC Support** check box is checked.
- Step 8** Click **Apply**.
- Step 9** In the **CCX Location Measurement** section, check the **Mode** check box to globally enable CCX radio management for the network. This parameter causes the APs connected to this device to issue broadcast radio measurement requests to clients running CCX v2 or later releases.
- Step 10** In the **Interval** field, enter a value to specify how often the APs must issue broadcast radio measurement requests.
- Step 11** Click **Apply**.
- Step 12** In the **Data Rates** section, choose a value to specify the rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client:
 - **Mandatory:** Clients must support this data rate in order to associate to an access point on the controller embedded wireless controller.
 - **Supported:** Any associated clients that support this data rate may communicate with the access point using that rate.
 - **Disabled:** The clients specify the data rates used for communication.
- Step 13** Click **Apply**.

Step 14 Save the configuration.

Configuring the 802.11 Bands (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure 802.11 bands and parameters:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 5ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11a band. Note You must disable the 802.11a band before configuring the 802.11a network parameters.
Step 3	ap dot11 24ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11b band. Note You must disable the 802.11b band before configuring the 802.11b network parameters.
Step 4	ap dot11 6ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11 6-GHz band. Note You must disable the 802.11 6-GHz band before configuring the 802.11 6-GHz network parameters.
Step 5	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} beaconperiod <i>time_unit</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz beaconperiod 500	Specifies the rate at which the SSID is broadcast by the corresponding access point. The beacon interval is measured in time units (TUs). One TU is 1024 microseconds. You can configure the access point to send a beacon every 20 to 1000 milliseconds.
Step 6	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} fragmentation <i>threshold</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz fragmentation 300	Specifies the size at which packets are fragmented. The threshold is a value between 256 and 2346 bytes (inclusive). Specify a low number for areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of radio interference.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	[no] ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz} dtpc Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dtpc Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz dtpc</pre>	Enables access points to advertise their channels and transmit the power levels in beacons and probe responses. The default value is enabled. Client devices using dynamic transmit power control (DTPC) receive the channel-level and power-level information from the access points and adjust their settings automatically. For example, a client device used primarily in Japan can rely on DTPC to adjust its channel and power settings automatically when it travels to Italy and joins a network there. The no form of the command disables the DTPC setting.
Step 8	wireless client association limit <i>number</i> interval <i>milliseconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless client association limit 50 interval 1000</pre>	Specifies the maximum allowed clients that can be configured. You can configure the maximum number of association requests on a single access point slot at a given interval. The range of association limit that you can configure is from 1 to 100. The association request limit interval is measured between 100 to 10000 milliseconds.
Step 9	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} rate <i>rate</i> {disable mandatory supported} Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rate 36 mandatory</pre>	Specifies the rate at which data can be transmitted between the controller embedded wireless controller and the client. • disable: Defines that the clients specify the data rates used for communication. • mandatory: Defines that the clients support this data rate in order to associate to an access point on the controller embedded wireless controller. • supported: Any associated clients that support this data rate can communicate with the access point using that rate. However, the clients are not required to use this rate in order to associate. • rate: Specifies the rate at which data is transmitted. For the 802.11a and 802.11b bands, the data is transmitted at the rate of 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48, or 54 Mbps.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Enables the 802.11a band. Note The default value is enabled.
Step 11	no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown	Enables the 802.11b band. Note The default value is enabled.
Step 12	no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown	Enables the 802.11 6-GHz band. Note The default value is enabled.
Step 13	ap dot11 24ghz dot11g Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz dot11g	Enables or disables 802.11g network support. The default value is enabled. You can use this command only if the 802.11b band is enabled. If you disable this feature, the 802.11b band is enabled without 802.11g support.
Step 14	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Advanced**.
- Step 2** In the **Band Select** tab, enter a value between 1 and 10 in the **Cycle Count** field. The cycle count sets the number of suppression cycles for a new client. The default cycle count is 2.
- Step 3** In the **Cycle Threshold** field, enter a value between 1 and 1000 milliseconds for the scan cycle period threshold. This setting determines the time threshold during which new probe requests from a client come from a new scanning cycle. The default cycle threshold is 200 milliseconds.
- Step 4** In the **Age Out Suppression** field, enter a value between 10 and 200 seconds. Age-out suppression sets the expiration time for pruning previously known 802.11b/g/n clients. The default value is 20 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
- Step 5** In the **Age Out Dual Band** field, enter a value between 10 and 300 seconds. The age-out period sets the expiration time for pruning previously known dual-band clients. The default value is 50 seconds. After this time elapses, clients become new and are subject to probe response suppression.
- Step 6** In the **Client RSSI** field, enter a value between -90 dBm and -20 dBm. This is the minimum RSSI for a client to respond to a probe.

- Step 7** In the **Client Mid RSSI** field, enter a value between –20 dBm and –90 dBm. This parameter sets the mid-RSSI, whose value can be used for toggling 2.4 GHz probe suppression based on the RSSI value.
- Step 8** Click **Apply**.

Configuring a Band-Select RF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rf-profile Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile test1	Configures the RF profile name and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	band-select client {mid-rssi rssi} dbm Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# band-select client rssi -90	Sets the band-select client threshold.
Step 4	band-select cycle {count threshold} count Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# band-select cycle count 10	Sets the band-select cycle parameters.
Step 5	band-select expire {dual-band suppression} time Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# band-select expire dual-band 100	Configures the RF profile's band-select expiry time.
Step 6	band-select probe-response Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# band-select probe-response	Enables the RF profile's band-select probe response.

Configuring 802.11n Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add RF Profile** window.
- Step 3** In the **802.11** tab, proceed as follows:
- Choose the required operational rates.
 - Select the required **802.11n MCS Rates** by checking the corresponding check boxes.
- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring 802.11n Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} dot11n Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n	Enables 802.11n support on the network. The no form of this command disables the 802.11n support on the network.
Step 3	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} dot11n mcs tx <i>rtu</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20	Specifies the modulation and coding scheme (MCS) rates at which data can be transmitted between the access point and the client. <i>rtu</i> -The valid range is between 0 and 23. The no form of this command disables the MCS rates that are configured.
Step 4	wlan <i>wlan_profile_name</i> <i>wlan_ID</i> <i>SSID_network_name</i> wmm require Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12 Device(config-wlan)# wmm require	Enables WMM on the WLAN and uses the 802.11n data rates that you configured. The require keyword requires client devices to use WMM. Devices that do not support WMM cannot join the WLAN.
Step 5	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Disables the network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	{ap no ap} dot11 {5ghz 24 ghz} dot11n a-mpdu tx priority {all 0-7} Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n a-mpdu tx priority all</pre>	Specifies the aggregation method used for 802.11n packets. Aggregation is the process of grouping packet data frames together, rather than transmitting them separately. Two aggregation methods are available: Aggregated MAC Protocol Data Unit (A-MPDU) and Aggregated MAC Service Data Unit (A-MSDU). Both A-MPDU and A-MSDU are performed in the software. You can specify the aggregation method for various types of traffic from the access point to the clients. The list defines the priority levels (0-7) assigned per traffic type. • 0—Best effort • 1—Background • 2—Spare • 3—Excellent effort • 4—Controlled load • 5—Video, less than 100-ms latency and jitter • 6—Voice, less than 100-ms latency and jitter • 7—Network control You can configure each priority level independently, or you can use the all the parameters to configure all the priority levels at once. You can configure priority levels so that the traffic uses either A-MPDU transmission or A-MSDU transmission. • When you use the ap command along with the other options, the traffic associated with that priority level uses A-MPDU transmission. • When you use the no ap command along with the other options, the traffic associated with that priority level uses A-MSDU transmission. Configure the priority levels to match the aggregation method used by the clients.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		By default, A-MPDU is enabled for priority level 0, 4, and 5, and the rest are disabled. By default, A-MPDU is enabled for all priorities except 6 and 7. Note The change in tracking the TX retries value from the whole PPDU to the internal MSDUs in Cisco IOS XE 17.12 onwards reflects a more accurate representation of an AP's retry count. This adjustment has led to a notable increase in retry count values because multiple MSDUs are contained within a single PPDU. This change is intentional and will be implemented in all future versions of Cisco IOS XE.
Step 7	no ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Re-enables the network.
Step 8	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} dot11n guard-interval {any long} Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n guard-interval long	Configures the guard interval for the network.
Step 9	ap dot11 {5ghz 24ghz} dot11n rifs rx Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n rifs rx	Configures the Reduced Interframe Space (RIFS) for the network.
Step 10	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring 802.11h Parameters (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap dot11 5ghz shutdown Example:	Disables the 802.11 network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11 6-GHz network.
Step 3	{ap no ap} dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode switch_mode Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode 0	Enables or disables the access point to announce when it is switching to a new channel. <i>switch_mode</i> --Enter 0 or 1 to specify whether transmissions are restricted until the actual channel switch (0) or are not restricted (1). The default value is disabled.
Step 4	[no] ap dot11 6ghz channelswitch quiet Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch quiet	Enables or disables the access point to announce when it is switching to a new channel in quiet mode.
Step 5	ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint value Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 200	Configures the 802.11h power constraint value in dB. The valid range is from 0 to 255. The default value is 3.
Step 6	ap dot11 6ghz power-constraint value Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 200	Configures the 802.11 6-GHz power constraint value in dB. The valid range is from 0 to 30. The default value is 3.
Step 7	no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown	Re-enables the 802.11a network.
Step 8	no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown Example: Device(config)# no ap dot11 6ghz shutdown	Re-enables the 802.11 6-GHz network.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Monitoring Configuration Settings for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

Verifying Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Bands Commands

The following commands can be used to verify band selection, 802.11 bands, and parameters on the .

Table 48: Monitoring Configuration Settings Using Band Selection and 802.11 Band Commands

Command	Purpose
show ap dot11 5ghz network	Displays 802.11a band network parameters, 802.11a operational rates, 802.11n MCS settings, and 802.11n status information.
show ap dot11 24ghz network	Displays 802.11b band network parameters, 802.11b/g operational rates, 802.11n MCS settings, and 802.11n status information.
show ap dot11 6ghz network	Displays 802.116-GHz band network parameters, 802.11b/g operational rates, 802.11n MCS settings, and 802.11n status information.
show wireless dot11h	Displays 802.11h configuration parameters.
show wireless band-select	Displays band-select configuration settings.

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 6-GHz Band

```

Device# show ap dot11 6ghz network
802.11 6Ghz Network                : Enabled
802.11 6Ghz Status:
  A-MPDU Tx:
    Priority 0                      : Enabled
    Priority 1                      : Enabled
    Priority 2                      : Enabled
    Priority 3                      : Enabled
    Priority 4                      : Enabled
    Priority 5                      : Enabled
    Priority 6                      : Disabled
    Priority 7                      : Disabled
  A-MSDU Tx:
    Priority 0                      : Enable
    Priority 1                      : Enable
    Priority 2                      : Enable
    Priority 3                      : Enable
    Priority 4                      : Enable
    Priority 5                      : Enable
    Priority 6                      : Disable
    Priority 7                      : Disable
802.11ax                          : Enabled
  DynamicFrag                     : Enabled

```

```

MultiBssid                               : Disabled
Target Wakeup Time                       : Enabled
Target Wakeup Time Broadcast             : Enabled
BSS Color                                : Disabled
OBSS PD                                  : Disabled
Non-SRG OBSS PD Maximum Threshold        : -62 dBm
SRG OBSS PD                              : Disabled
SRG OBSS PD Minimum Threshold            : -82 dBm
SRG OBSS PD Maximum Threshold            : -62 dBm
802.11ax MCS Settings:
MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 1               : Supported
MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 1               : Disabled
MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 1              : Supported
MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 2               : Supported
MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 2               : Disabled
MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 2              : Supported
MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 3               : Supported
MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 3               : Disabled
MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 3              : Supported
MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 4               : Supported
MCS 9, Spatial Streams = 4               : Disabled
MCS 11, Spatial Streams = 4              : Supported
Beacon Interval                          : 95
CF Pollable mandatory                    : Disabled
CF Poll Request Mandatory                 : Disabled
CFP Period                               : 4
CFP Maximum Duration                     : 60
Default Channel                           : 1
Default Tx Power Level                   : 1
DTPC Status                              : Enabled
Fragmentation Threshold                   : 2335
RSSI Low Check                           : Disabled
RSSI Threshold                           : -127 dbm
TI Threshold                             :
Legacy Tx Beamforming setting             : Disabled
Traffic Stream Metrics Status             : Disabled
Expedited BW Request Status               : Disabled
EDCA profile type check                   : default-wmm
Client Load Based EDCA Config             : Enabled
Call Admission Control (CAC) configuration
Voice AC
Voice AC - Admission control (ACM)        : Disabled
Voice Stream-Size                         : 84000
Voice Max-Streams                         : 2
Voice Max RF Bandwidth                    : 75
Voice Reserved Roaming Bandwidth          : 6
Voice Load-Based CAC mode                 : Enabled
Voice tspec inactivity timeout            : Enabled
CAC SIP-Voice configuration
SIP based CAC                             : Disabled
SIP call bandwidth                       : 64
SIP call bandwidth sample-size            : 20
Maximum Number of Clients per AP Radio    : 200
WiFi to Cellular RSSI Threshold           : -85 dbm
Client Network Preference                 : default

```

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 5-GHz Band

```

Device# show ap dot11 5ghz network
802.11a Network : Enabled
11nSupport : Enabled

```

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 5-GHz Band

```
802.11a Low Band : Enabled
802.11a Mid Band : Enabled
802.11a High Band : Enabled

802.11a Operational Rates
802.11a 6M : Mandatory
802.11a 9M : Supported
802.11a 12M : Mandatory
802.11a 18M : Supported
802.11a 24M : Mandatory
802.11a 36M : Supported
802.11a 48M : Supported
802.11a 54M : Supported
802.11n MCS Settings:
MCS 0 : Supported
MCS 1 : Supported
MCS 2 : Supported
MCS 3 : Supported
MCS 4 : Supported
MCS 5 : Supported
MCS 6 : Supported
MCS 7 : Supported
MCS 8 : Supported
MCS 9 : Supported
MCS 10 : Supported
MCS 11 : Supported
MCS 12 : Supported
MCS 13 : Supported
MCS 14 : Supported
MCS 15 : Supported
MCS 16 : Supported
MCS 17 : Supported
MCS 18 : Supported
MCS 19 : Supported
MCS 20 : Supported
MCS 21 : Supported
MCS 22 : Supported
MCS 23 : Supported
802.11n Status:
A-MPDU Tx:
  Priority 0 : Enabled
  Priority 1 : Disabled
  Priority 2 : Disabled
  Priority 3 : Disabled
  Priority 4 : Enabled
  Priority 5 : Enabled
  Priority 6 : Disabled
  Priority 7 : Disabled
A-MSDU Tx:
  Priority 0 : Enabled
  Priority 1 : Enabled
  Priority 2 : Enabled
  Priority 3 : Enabled
  Priority 4 : Enabled
  Priority 5 : Enabled
  Priority 6 : Disabled
  Priority 7 : Disabled
Guard Interval : Any
Rifs Rx : Enabled
Beacon Interval : 100
CF Pollable mandatory : Disabled
CF Poll Request Mandatory : Disabled
CFP Period : 4
CFP Maximum Duration : 60
```

```
Default Channel : 36
Default Tx Power Level : 1
DTPC Status : Enabled
Fragmentation Threshold : 2346
Pico-Cell Status : Disabled
Pico-Cell-V2 Status : Disabled
TI Threshold : 0
Legacy Tx Beamforming setting : Disabled
Traffic Stream Metrics Status : Disabled
Expedited BW Request Status : Disabled
EDCA profile type check : default-wmm
Call Admission Control (CAC) configuration
Voice AC
  Voice AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Voice Stream-Size : 84000
  Voice Max-Streams : 2
  Voice Max RF Bandwidth : 75
  Voice Reserved Roaming Bandwidth : 6
  Voice Load-Based CAC mode : Enabled
  Voice tspec inactivity timeout : Enabled
CAC SIP-Voice configuration
  SIP based CAC : Disabled
  SIP Codec Type : CODEC_TYPE_G711
  SIP call bandwidth : 64
  SIP call bandwidth sample-size : 20
Video AC
  Video AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Video max RF bandwidth : Infinite
  Video reserved roaming bandwidth : 0
```

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 2.4-GHz Band

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz network
802.11b Network : Enabled
11gSupport : Enabled
11nSupport : Enabled

802.11b/g Operational Rates
802.11b 1M : Mandatory
802.11b 2M : Mandatory
802.11b 5.5M : Mandatory
802.11g 6M : Supported
802.11g 9M : Supported
802.11b 11M : Mandatory
802.11g 12M : Supported
802.11g 18M : Supported
802.11g 24M : Supported
802.11g 36M : Supported
802.11g 48M : Supported
802.11g 54M : Supported
802.11n MCS Settings:
MCS 0 : Supported
MCS 1 : Supported
MCS 2 : Supported
MCS 3 : Supported
MCS 4 : Supported
MCS 5 : Supported
MCS 6 : Supported
MCS 7 : Supported
MCS 8 : Supported
MCS 9 : Supported
MCS 10 : Supported
```

Example: Viewing the Configuration Settings for the 2.4-GHz Band

```

MCS 11 : Supported
MCS 12 : Supported
MCS 13 : Supported
MCS 14 : Supported
MCS 15 : Supported
MCS 16 : Supported
MCS 17 : Supported
MCS 18 : Supported
MCS 19 : Supported
MCS 20 : Supported
MCS 21 : Supported
MCS 22 : Supported
MCS 23 : Supported
802.11n Status:
A-MPDU Tx:
  Priority 0 : Enabled
  Priority 1 : Disabled
  Priority 2 : Disabled
  Priority 3 : Disabled
  Priority 4 : Enabled
  Priority 5 : Enabled
  Priority 6 : Disabled
  Priority 7 : Disabled
A-MSDU Tx:
  Priority 0 : Enabled
  Priority 1 : Enabled
  Priority 2 : Enabled
  Priority 3 : Enabled
  Priority 4 : Enabled
  Priority 5 : Enabled
  Priority 6 : Disabled
  Priority 7 : Disabled
Guard Interval : Any
Rifs Rx : Enabled
Beacon Interval : 100
CF Pollable Mandatory : Disabled
CF Poll Request Mandatory : Disabled
CFP Period : 4
CFP Maximum Duration : 60
Default Channel : 11
Default Tx Power Level : 1
DTPC Status : true
Call Admission Limit : 105
G711 CU Quantum : 15
ED Threshold : -50
Fragmentation Threshold : 2346
PBCC Mandatory : Disabled
Pico-Cell Status : Disabled
Pico-Cell-V2 Status : Disabled
RTS Threshold : 2347
Short Preamble Mandatory : Enabled
Short Retry Limit : 7
Legacy Tx Beamforming setting : Disabled
Traffic Stream Metrics Status : Disabled
Expedited BW Request Status : Disabled
EDCA profile type : default-wmm
Call Admission Control (CAC) configuration
Voice AC
  Voice AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
  Voice Stream-Size : 84000
  Voice Max-Streams : 2
  Voice Max RF Bandwidth : 75
  Voice Reserved Roaming Bandwidth : 6
  Voice Load-Based CAC mode : Enabled

```

```

Voice tspec inactivity timeout : Enabled
CAC SIP-Voice configuration
SIP based CAC : Disabled
SIP Codec Type : CODEC_TYPE_G711
SIP call bandwidth : 64
SIP call bandwidth sample-size : 20
Video AC
Video AC - Admission control (ACM) : Disabled
Video max RF bandwidth : Infinite
Video reserved roaming bandwidth : 0

```

Example: Viewing the status of 802.11h Parameters

```

Device# show wireless dot11
Power Constraint: 0
Channel Switch : Enabled
Channel Switch Mode : Quiet
Smart DFS : Enabled

```

Example: Verifying the Band-Selection Settings

The following example displays a band-select configuration:

```

Device# show wireless band-select

Band Select Probe Response : per WLAN enabling
Cycle Count                : 2
Cycle Threshold (millisec) : 200
Age Out Suppression (sec)  : 20
Age Out Dual Band (sec)    : 60
Client RSSI (dBm)          : -80
Client Mid RSSI (dBm)      : -80

```

The following example displays an AP RF profile details:

```

Device# show ap rf-profile name vid detail

Description                :
RF Profile Name            : vid
Band                      : 2.4 GHz
802.11n client only       : Disabled
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power        : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power        : 30 dBm
Operational Rates
  802.11b 1M Rate         : Mandatory
  802.11b 2M Rate         : Mandatory
  802.11b 5.5M Rate       : Mandatory
  802.11b 11M Rate        : Mandatory
  802.11b 6M Rate         : Supported
  802.11b 9M Rate         : Supported
  802.11b 12M Rate        : Supported
  802.11b 18M Rate        : Supported
  802.11b 24M Rate        : Supported
  802.11b 36M Rate        : Supported
  802.11b 48M Rate        : Supported
  802.11b 54M Rate        : Supported
Max Clients                : 200
Trap Threshold
  Clients                  : 12 clients
  Interference              : 10%

```

Example: Verifying the Band-Selection Settings

```

Noise                                     : -80 dBm
Utilization                             : 10%
Multicast Data Rate                     : auto
Rx SOP Threshold                         : auto
Band Select
  Probe Response                         : Disabled
  Cycle Count                           : 2 cycles
  Cycle Threshold                       : 200 milliseconds
  Expire Suppression                     : 20 seconds
  Expire Dual Band                      : 60 seconds
  Client RSSI                           : -80 dBm
  Client Mid RSSI                       : -80 dBm
High Speed Roam
  hsr mode                              : Disabled
  hsr neighbor timeout                   : 5
Load Balancing
  Window                                : 5 clients
  Denial                                : 3 count
Coverage Data
  Data                                  : -62 dBm
  Voice                                 : -80 dBm
  Minimum Client Level                  : 12 clients
  Exception Level                       : 48%
DCA Channel List                        : 1,6,11
Unused Channel List                     : 2,3,4,5,7,8,9,10
DCA Foreign AP Contribution              : Enabled
802.11n MCS Rates
  MCS 0                                : Enabled
  MCS 1                                : Enabled
  MCS 2                                : Enabled
  MCS 3                                : Enabled
  MCS 4                                : Enabled
  MCS 5                                : Enabled
  MCS 6                                : Enabled
  MCS 7                                : Enabled
  MCS 8                                : Enabled
  MCS 9                                : Enabled
  MCS 10                               : Enabled
  MCS 11                               : Enabled
  MCS 12                               : Enabled
  MCS 13                               : Enabled
  MCS 14                               : Enabled
  MCS 15                               : Enabled
  MCS 16                               : Enabled
  MCS 17                               : Enabled
  MCS 18                               : Enabled
  MCS 19                               : Enabled
  MCS 20                               : Enabled
  MCS 21                               : Enabled
  MCS 22                               : Enabled
  MCS 23                               : Enabled
  MCS 24                               : Enabled
  MCS 25                               : Enabled
  MCS 26                               : Enabled
  MCS 27                               : Enabled
  MCS 28                               : Enabled
  MCS 29                               : Enabled
  MCS 30                               : Enabled
  MCS 31                               : Enabled
State                                    : Up
Client Network Preference                : connectivity

```


Configuration Examples for Band Selection, 802.11 Bands, and Parameters

Examples: Band Selection Configuration

This example shows how to set the probe cycle count and time threshold for a new scanning cycle period for band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-count 3
Device(config)# wireless client band-select cycle-threshold 5000
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the suppression expiry time to the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire suppression 100
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the dual-band expiry time for the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select expire dual-band 100
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to set the client RSSI threshold for the band select:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless client band-select client-rssi 40
Device(config)# end
```

This example shows how to configure band selection on specific WLANs:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# band-select
Device(config)# end
```

Examples: 802.11 Bands Configuration

This example shows how to configure 802.11 bands using beacon interval, fragmentation, and dynamic transmit power control:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz beaconperiod 500
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz fragmentation 300
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dtpc
Device(config)# wireless client association limit 50 interval 1000
```

```

Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz rate 36 mandatory
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz dot11g
Device(config)#end

```

Examples: 802.11n Configuration

This example shows how to configure 802.11n parameters for 5-GHz band using aggregation method:

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n a-mpdu tx priority all
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#exit

```

This example shows how to configure the guard interval for 5-GHz band:

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n guard-interval long
Device(config)#end

```

This example shows how to configure the RIFS for 5-GHz band:

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs tx 20
Device(config)# wlan wlan1 25 ssid12
Device(config-wlan)# wmm require\
Device(config-wlan)# exit
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz dot11n rifs rx
Device(config)#end

```

Examples: 802.11h Configuration

This example shows how to configure the access point to announce when it is switching to a new channel using restriction transmission:

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz channelswitch mode 0
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#end

```

This example shows how to configure the 802.11h power constraint for 5-GHz band:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz power-constraint 200
Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz shutdown
Device(config)#end
```




CHAPTER 73

NBAR Protocol Discovery

- [Introduction to NBAR Protocol Discovery, on page 747](#)
- [Configuring NBAR Protocol Discovery, on page 747](#)
- [Verifying Protocol Discovery Statistics, on page 748](#)

Introduction to NBAR Protocol Discovery

The NBAR Protocol Discovery feature provides an easy way of discovering the application protocols passing through an interface. Network Based Application Recognition (NBAR) determines which protocols and applications are currently running on the network. With Protocol Discovery, you can discover any protocol traffic that is supported by NBAR and obtain statistics that are associated with that protocol.

NBAR provides several classification features that identify applications and protocols from Layer 4 through Layer 7. NBAR is also used in Cisco Application Visibility and Control (AVC). With AVC, NBAR provides better application performance through better QoS and policing, and provides finer visibility about the network that is being used.



Note NBAR is not able to classify traffic accurately when SaaS applications use end-to-end encryption, QUIC, or DoH due to the encryption's impact on classification. In such a case, the encrypted traffic, including DoH and QUIC without SNI, limits the NBAR's ability to send the correct Protocol ID, causing issues with traffic classification.

Configuring NBAR Protocol Discovery

Follow the procedure given below to enable protocol discovery:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy nbar-proto-policy	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Configures the wireless policy profile for central switching. Note NBAR Protocol Discovery is supported in local mode (central switching) and in FlexConnect (central switching) mode.
Step 4	ip nbar protocol-discovery Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ip nbar protocol-discovery	Enables application recognition on the wireless policy profile by activating the NBAR2 engine.

Verifying Protocol Discovery Statistics

To view protocol discovery statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip nbar protocol-discovery wlan wlan-profile-name
```

```
wlan_profile_name (iif_id 0xF0400002)
```

```
Last clearing of "show ip nbar protocol-discovery" counters 00:07:12
```

Protocol	Input ----- Packet Count Byte Count 5min Bit Rate (bps) 5min Max Bit Rate (bps)	Output ----- Packet Count Byte Count 5min Bit Rate (bps) 5min Max Bit Rate (bps)
unknown	22 4173 0 2000	0 0 0 0
dhcp	3 1166 0 0	2 724 0 0
ping	2 204 0 0	2 236 0 0
Total	27 5543 0 2000	4 960 0 0

To clear protocol discovery statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# clear ip nbar protocol-discovery wlan wlan-profile-name
```




CHAPTER 74

Conditional Debug, Radioactive Tracing, and Packet Tracing

- [Introduction to Conditional Debugging, on page 751](#)
- [Introduction to Radioactive Tracing, on page 752](#)
- [Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing, on page 752](#)
- [Location of Tracefiles, on page 753](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging \(GUI\), on page 753](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging, on page 754](#)
- [Radioactive Tracing for L2 Multicast, on page 755](#)
- [Recommended Workflow for Trace files, on page 755](#)
- [Copying Tracefiles Off the Box, on page 756](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging, on page 757](#)
- [Verifying Conditional Debugging, on page 757](#)
- [Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SIFS, on page 757](#)
- [Information About Packet Tracing, on page 758](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing, on page 759](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per AP, on page 760](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client \(GUI\), on page 761](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client, on page 761](#)
- [Verifying Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing Configuration, on page 762](#)
- [Feature History for Wireless Client Debug Bundle, on page 762](#)
- [Information About Wireless Client Debug Bundle, on page 762](#)
- [Collecting Wireless Client Debug Bundle \(CLI\), on page 764](#)

Introduction to Conditional Debugging

The Conditional Debugging feature allows you to selectively enable debugging and logging for specific features based on the set of conditions you define. This feature is useful in systems where a large number of features are supported.

The Conditional debug allows granular debugging in a network that is operating at a large scale with a large number of features. It allows you to observe detailed debugs for granular instances within the system. This is very useful when we need to debug only a particular session among thousands of sessions. It is also possible to specify multiple conditions.

A condition refers to a feature or identity, where identity could be an interface, IP Address, or a MAC address and so on.

This is in contrast to the general debug command, that produces its output without discriminating on the feature objects that are being processed. General debug command consumes a lot of system resources and impacts the system performance.

Introduction to Radioactive Tracing

Radioactive tracing (RA) provides the ability to stitch together a chain of execution for operations of interest across the system, at an increased verbosity level. This provides a way to conditionally print debug information (up to DEBUG Level or a specified level) across threads, processes and function calls.



Note

- The radioactive tracing supports First-Hop Security (FHS).

For more information on First Hop Security features, see *System Management > Wireless Multicast > Information About Wireless Multicast > Information About IPv6 Snooping*.

- The radioactive tracing filter does not work, if the certificate is not valid.
- For effective debugging of issues on mesh features, ensure that you add both Ethernet and Radio MAC address as conditional MAC for RA tracing, while collecting logs.
- To enable debug for wireless IPs, use the **debug platform condition feature wireless ip ip-address** command.

Table 49: Components Supporting Radio Active Tracing

Components	Details
SISF or FHS	The first-hop security features, includes IPv6 Address Glean and IPv6 Device Tracking. For more information, see <i>Information About IPv6 Snooping</i> .
LISP	Locator or ID Separation Protocol.

Conditional Debugging and Radioactive Tracing

Radioactive Tracing when coupled with Conditional Debugging, enable us to have a single debug CLI to debug all execution contexts related to the condition. This can be done without being aware of the various control flow processes of the feature within the box and without having to issue debugs at these processes individually.



Note

Use the **clear platform condition all** command to remove the debug conditions applied to the platform.

Location of Tracefiles

By default the tracefile logs will be generated for each process and saved into either the **/tmp/rp/trace** or **/tmp/fp/trace** directory. In this temp directory, the trace logs are written to files, which are of 1 MB size each. You can verify these logs (per-process) using the **show platform software trace message process_name chassis active R0** command. The directory can hold up to a maximum of 25 such files for a given process. When a tracefile in the **/tmp** directory reaches its 1MB limit or whatever size was configured for it during the boot time, it is rotated out to an archive location in the **/crashinfo** partition under **tracelogs** directory.

The **/tmp** directory holds only a single tracefile for a given process. Once the file reaches its file size limit it is rotated out to **/crashinfo/tracelogs**. In the archive directory, up to 25 files are accumulated, after which the oldest one is replaced by the newly rotated file from **/tmp**. File size is process dependent and some processes use larger file sizes (upto 10MB). Similarly, the number of files in the **tracelogs** directory is also decided by the process. For example, WNCN process uses a limit of 400 files per instance, depending on the platform.

The tracefiles in the crashinfo directory are located in the following formats:

1. Process-name_Process-ID_running-counter.timestamp.gz
Example: IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz
2. Process-name_pmanlog_Process-ID_running-counter.timestamp.bin.gz
Example: wncmgrd_R0-0.27958_1.20180902081532.bin.gz

Configuring Conditional Debugging (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Troubleshooting > Radioactive Trace .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter the MAC/IP Address . The MAC address can be either in <code>xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx</code> , <code>xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx</code> , or <code>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</code> format.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
Step 5	Click Start to start or Stop to stop the conditional debug.
Step 6	Click Generate to create a radioactive trace log.
Step 7	Click the radio button to set the time interval.
Step 8	Click the Download Logs icon that is displayed next to the trace file name, to download the logs to your local folder.
Step 9	Click the View Logs icon that is displayed next to the trace file name, to view the log files on the GUI page. Click Load More to view more lines of the log file.
Step 10	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Conditional Debugging

Follow the procedure given below to configure conditional debugging:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	debug platform condition feature wireless mac {mac-address} Example: Device# debug platform condition feature wireless mac b838.61a1.5433	Configures conditional debugging for a feature using the specified MAC address. Note This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP.
Step 2	debug platform condition start Example: Device# debug platform condition start	Starts conditional debugging (this will start radioactive tracing if there is a match on one of the conditions above). Note This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP.
Step 3	show platform condition OR show debug Example: Device# show platform condition Device# show debug	Displays the current conditions set.
Step 4	debug platform condition stop Example: Device# debug platform condition stop	Stops conditional debugging (this will stop radioactive tracing). Note This is supported with AP or client MAC/IP and also on CMX IP address and mobility peer IP.
Step 5	show logging profile wireless [counter [last]{x days/hours} filter mac {<mac address>} [to-file]{<destination>} Example: Device# show logging profile wireless start last 20 minutes to-file bootflash:logs.txt	Displays the logs from the latest wireless profile. Note You can use either the <i>show logging profile wireless</i> command or <i>show logging process</i> command to collect the logs.
Step 6	show logging process <process name> Example:	Displays the logs collection specific to the process.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show logging process wncd to-file flash:wncd.txt	
Step 7	clear platform condition all Example: Device# clear platform condition all	Clears all conditions.

What to do next



Note The command **request platform software trace filter-binary wireless {mac-address}** generates 3 flash files:

- *collated_log_<..date..>*
- *mac_log <..date..>*
- *mac_database ..file*

Of these, *mac_log <..date..>* is the most important file, as it gives the messages for the MAC address we are debugging. The command **show platform software trace filter-binary** also generates the same flash files, and also prints the *mac_log* on the screen.

Radioactive Tracing for L2 Multicast

To identify a specific multicast receiver, specify the MAC address of the joiner or the receiver client, Group Multicast IP address and Snooping VLAN. Additionally, enable the trace level for the debug. The debug level will provide detailed traces and better visibility into the system.

```
debug platform condition feature multicast controlplane mac client-mac-addr ip
group-ip-addr vlan id level debug level
```

Recommended Workflow for Trace files

The Recommended Workflow for Trace files is listed below:

1. To request the tracelogs for a specific time period.
EXAMPLE 1 day.
Use the command:
Device#**show logging process wncd to-file flash:wncd.txt**
2. The system generates a text file of the tracelogs in the location /flash:
3. Copy the file off the switchdevice. By copying the file, the tracelogs can be used to work offline. For more details on copying files, see section below.

4. Delete the tracelog file (.txt) file from /flash: location. This will ensure enough space on the switchdevice for other operations.

Copying Tracefiles Off the Box

An example of the tracefile is shown below:

```
Device# dir crashinfo:/tracelogs
Directory of crashinfo:/tracelogs/

50664 -rwx 760 Sep 22 2015 11:12:21 +00:00 plogd_F0-0.bin_0.gz
50603 -rwx 991 Sep 22 2015 11:12:08 +00:00 fed_pmanlog_F0-0.bin_0.9558.20150922111208.gz
50610 -rw- 11 Nov 2 2015 00:15:59 +00:00 timestamp
50611 -rwx 1443 Sep 22 2015 11:11:31 +00:00
auto_upgrade_client_sh_pmanlog_R0-.bin_0.3817.20150922111130.gz
50669 -rwx 589 Sep 30 2015 03:59:04 +00:00 cfgwr-8021_R0-0.bin_0.gz
50612 -rwx 1136 Sep 22 2015 11:11:46 +00:00 reflector_803_R0-0.bin_0.1312.20150922111116.gz
50794 -rwx 4239 Nov 2 2015 00:04:32 +00:00 IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz
50615 -rwx 131072 Nov 2 2015 00:19:59 +00:00 linux_iosd_image_pmanlog_R0-0.bin_0
```

The trace files can be copied using one of the various options shown below:

```
Device# copy crashinfo:/tracelogs ?
crashinfo: Copy to crashinfo: file system
flash: Copy to flash: file system
ftp: Copy to ftp: file system
http: Copy to http: file system
https: Copy to https: file system
null: Copy to null: file system
nvram: Copy to nvram: file system
rcp: Copy to rcp: file system
running-config Update (merge with) current system configuration
scp: Copy to scp: file system
startup-config Copy to startup configuration
syslog: Copy to syslog: file system
system: Copy to system: file system
tftp: Copy to tftp: file system
tmpsys: Copy to tmpsys: file system
```

The general syntax for copying onto a TFTP server is as follows:

```
Device# copy source: tftp:
Device# copy crashinfo:/tracelogs/IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz tftp:
Address or name of remote host []? 2.2.2.2
Destination filename [IOSRP_R0-0.bin_0.14239.20151101234827.gz]?
```



Note It is important to clear the generated report or archive files off the switch in order to have flash space available for tracelog and other purposes.

Configuration Examples for Conditional Debugging

The following is an output example of the *show platform condition* command.

```
Device# show platform condition
Conditional Debug Global State: Stop
Conditions Direction
```

```
-----|-----
MAC Address 0024.D7C7.0054 N/A
Feature Condition Type Value
-----|-----
```

```
Device#
```

The following is an output example of the *show debug* command.

```
Device# show debug
IOSXE Conditional Debug Configs:
Conditional Debug Global State: Start
Conditions Direction
```

```
-----|-----
MAC Address 0024.D7C7.0054 N/A
Feature Condition Type Value
-----|-----
```

```
Packet Infra debugs:
Ip Address Port
-----|-----
```

```
Device#
```

Verifying Conditional Debugging

The table shown below lists the various commands that can be used to verify conditional debugging:

Command	Purpose
show platform condition	Displays the current conditions set.
show debug	Displays the current debug conditions set.
show platform software trace filter-binary	Displays logs merged from the latest tracefile.
request platform software trace filter-binary	Displays historical logs of merged tracefiles on the system.

Example: Verifying Radioactive Tracing Log for SISF

The following is an output example of the *show platform software trace message ios chassis active R0 | inc sisf* command.

```
Device# show platform software trace message ios chassis active R0 | inc sisf
```

```
2017/10/26 13:46:22.104 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [parser]: [5437]: UUID: 0, ra: 0 (note): CMD:
'show platform software trace message ios switch active R0 | inc sisf' 13:46:22 UTC Thu Oct
26 2017
```

```
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 4800000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
FF8E802918 semaphore system unlocked
```

```

2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Unlocking, count is now 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
FF8E802918 semaphore system unlocked
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Unlocking, count is now 1
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Setting State to 2
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Start timer 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Timer value/granularity for 0 :299998/1000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Updated Mac Timer : 299998
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Before Timer : 350000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Timer 0, default value is 350000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Allocating timer wheel for 0
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc No timer running
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Granularity for timer MAC_T1 is 1000
2017/10/26 13:46:10.667 {IOSRP_R0-0}{1}: [sisf]: [5437]: UUID: 48000000000060, ra: 7 (debug):
Gil/0/5 vlan 10 aaaa.bbbb.cccc Current State :MAC-STALE, Req Timer : MAC_T1 Current Timer
MAC_T1

```

Information About Packet Tracing

The Packet tracing feature cover details on how to perform data plane packet tracing for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for Cloud software.

This feature identifies the following issues:

- Misconfiguration
- Capacity overload
- Software bugs while troubleshooting

This feature identifies what happens to a packet in your system. The conditional debugging packet tracing feature is used for accounting and capturing per-packet processing details for user-defined conditions.

You can trace packets on the controller using the following steps:

1. Enable conditional debugging on selected packets or traffic you want to trace on the controller.
2. Enable packet tracing (per-AP or per-Client).



Note You need to use per AP conditional debugging with MAC address as a filter when AP and controllers are in the same VLAN. If they are not in the same VLAN, the per AP packet tracing with MAC address does not capture packets as MAC address varies.

Limitation of Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing

MAC or IP filter only applies to the outer Ethernet or IP header, so if a packet is CAPWAP encapsulated, the MAC or IP does not apply to the inner 802.11 MAC or IP.

Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	debug platform packet-trace packet <i>packet-count circular fia-trace data-size data-size</i> Example: <pre>Device# debug platform packet-trace packet 8192 circular fia-trace data-size 2048</pre>	Configures packet tracing to capture the last set of packets. Here, <i>packet-count</i> —Valid range is from 16 to 8192. <i>data-size</i> —Valid range is from 2048 to 16384 bytes.
Step 3	debug platform packet-trace copy packet both size <i>packet-size</i> Example: <pre>Device# debug platform packet-trace copy packet both size 2048</pre>	Configures packet tracing for a copy of packet data. Here, <i>packet-size</i> —Valid range is from 16 to 2048 bytes.
Step 4	debug platform condition interface <i>{intf-name cpp} {mac ipv4 match} {both ingress egress}</i> Example: Enables conditional debugging for TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 and match packets whose source and destination MAC is 0001.0001.0001: <pre>Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 mac 0001.0001.0001 both</pre>	Enables conditional debugging for an interface, MAC, or IP filter. An interface refers to any physical port, port channel, internal vlan, SVI, or wireless client.
Step 5	debug platform condition start Example: <pre>Device# debug platform condition start</pre>	Starts conditional debugging packet tracing.
Step 6	debug platform condition stop Example:	Stops conditional debugging packet tracing.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# debug platform condition stop	
Step 7	show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature packet-trace packet all redirect bootflash:packet_trace.txt Example: Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature packet-trace packet all redirect bootflash:packet_trace.txt	Redirects all traced packets to bootflash. Converts the packet_trace.txt to pcap and downloads the pcap files. You can do so using the following link: http://www.win-dharon-dev.cisco.com/pactrac2pcap.html

Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per AP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	debug platform condition interface <i>{intf-name cpp}</i> {mac [mac-address access-list acl-name] ipv4 match} {both ingress egress} Example: Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 mac 0001.0001.0001 both Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 mac access-list mac-acl-name both	Enables conditional debugging with MAC filter. Herein, the CLI matches the packets whose source or destination MAC address is 0001.0001.0001.
Step 3	debug platform condition interface <i>TenGigabitEthernet intf-number</i> match mac {H.H.H any host} {both ingress egress} Example: Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 match mac 0001.0001.0001 both	Enables conditional debugging with inline MAC ACL.
Step 4	debug platform condition interface <i>TenGigabitEthernet intf-number</i> ipv4 {A.B.C.D/nn access-list acl-name both egress ingress} {both egress ingress} Example:	Enables conditional debugging with IP filter. Here, <i>intf-number</i> —Is the GigabitEthernet interface number. Valid range is from 1 to 32.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 ipv4 192.168.1.2/32 both Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 ipv4 access-list ip-acl-name both Device# debug platform condition interface TenGigabitEthernet 0/0/0 match ipv4 192.168.1.2/32 both</pre>	

Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Troubleshooting > Radioactive Trace**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the Add MAC/IP Address window, enter the **MAC/IP Address**.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing per Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	debug platform condition interface {<i>intf-name</i> <i>cpp cpp-handle-index</i>} {<i>mac</i> <i>ipv4</i> <i>match</i> [<i>ipv4</i> <i>ipv6</i> <i>mac</i>]} {<i>both</i> <i>ingress</i> <i>egress</i>} Example: <pre>Device# debug platform condition interface cpp 0xa0000001 match ipv4 protocol icmp host 192.168.1.100 host 192.168.1.1 both</pre>	Enables conditional debugging for a wireless client interface. Here, <i>cpp-handle-index</i>—Valid range is from 1 to 4294967295.

Verifying Conditional Debugging Packet Tracing Configuration

To view the summary of the traced packet, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform packet-trace summary
```

To view a specific traced packet, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform packet-trace packet packet-number
```

To view the wireless client interface handle, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
mac-address client-mac details
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
mac-address 8825.93b0.b51f details
Client Details for client cpp_if_handle: 0x34
Name : WLCLIENT-IF-0x00a0000001
Mac Addr : 8825.93b0.b51f
pal_if_handle : 0xa0000001
Mobility State : LOCAL
Multicast Action : FORWARD
Auth State : RUN
```

Feature History for Wireless Client Debug Bundle

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 50: Feature History for Client Debug Bundle

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Wireless Client Debug Bundle	Client debug bundle includes AP logs along with the existing controller bundle, collected in a tar file through a single debug command.

Information About Wireless Client Debug Bundle

The log collection of client radioactive trace, packet capture, and the output of various **show** commands are useful in troubleshooting wireless client issues. In the earlier releases, logs were collected through various individual steps and commands. Now, client debug bundle collates radioactive trace debug logs, packet captures in a control plane, and the output of **show** commands related to clients, collected in a tar file through a single **debug** command. From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.11.1, client debug bundle collates AP logs along with the existing controller bundle.



Note Client debug bundle is not supported on High Availability (HA) with Stateful Switch Over (SSO).



Note When you enable the **all** command option on the AP console, the command activates the debug logging for all clients, which can result in an excessive amount of logs being printed in the console.

Types of Logs Collected

The client debug bundle logs are collected in a tar file format on bootflash, through a single **debug** command.

The following example displays the file formats of logs collected from a client device with MAC address 8cXX.90XX.fdXX:

Example:

The final tar file that is generated is wireless_bundle_123456.UTC_Oct_20_2022.tar.

The following files are extracted from the wireless_bundle_123456.UTC_Oct_20_2022.tar file:

- wireless_bundle_8cXX.90XX.fdXX.tar (client radioactive trace debug log)
- epc_135790.UTC_Oct_20_2022.pcap (packet capture in a control plane)
- ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.tgz (AP logs)

The following files are extracted from wireless_bundle_8cXX.90XX.fdXX.tar client radioactive trace debug log file:

- show_tech_support_wireless_client_before_RA_start_8cXX.90XX.fdXX_134941.UTC_Oct_20_2022.txt
- ra_trace_8cXX.90XX.fdXX_135055.UTC_Oct_20_2022.log
- ra_trace_internal_8cXX.90XX.fdXX_135057.UTC_Oct_20_2022.log
- show_tech_support_wireless_client_after_RA_stop_8cXX.90XX.fdXX_135055.UTC_Oct_20_2022.txt

The following files are extracted from ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.tgz AP log file:

- ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.messages
- ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.syslogs
- ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.tech_cdb_0
- ap_3802_cisco_client_bundle.17.11.0.61.20221020.135154.tech_cdb_1

Collecting Wireless Client Debug Bundle (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	debug wireless bundle client mac <i>H.H.H</i> Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client mac aaaa.bbbb.cccc</pre>	Adds client MAC addresses for which debug logs are required. You can add up to 32 client MAC addresses to the command. To delete the MAC addresses, run the no form of this command.
Step 2	debug wireless bundle client start Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client start</pre>	Starts the collection of the client debug bundle for wireless clients.
Step 3	(Optional) debug wireless bundle client start ap-archive site-tag <i>default-site-tag</i> level {critical debug error verbose} Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client start ap-archive site-tag default-site-tag level debug</pre>	Enables the AP archive collection on a site tag. Specifies the AP archive levels as well.
Step 4	(Optional) debug wireless bundle client start epc Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client start epc</pre>	Enables embedded packet capture (EPC) in a control plane. Note If EPC is already enabled and is active from a different source, debug bundle with EPC cannot be started. To use EPC with debug bundle, stop EPC (enabled from a different source) and restart it with debug bundle.
Step 5	(Optional) debug wireless bundle client start monitor-time <i>monitor-time</i> Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client start monitor-time 30</pre>	Configures the maximum time, in minutes, to trace the condition. The default time is 30 minutes.
Step 6	(Optional) debug wireless bundle client stop-all collect {all mac <i>H.H.H</i>} Example: <pre>Device# debug wireless bundle client stop-all collect all</pre>	Stops the collection of the debug bundle for wireless clients.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	(Optional) debug wireless bundle client abort Example: Device# debug wireless bundle client abort	Cancels the collection of the debug bundle for wireless clients.



CHAPTER 75

Aggressive Client Load Balancing

- [Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing, on page 767](#)
- [Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing \(GUI\), on page 768](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing \(GUI\), on page 768](#)
- [Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing \(CLI\), on page 769](#)

Information About Aggressive Client Load Balancing

The Aggressive Client Load Balancing feature allows lightweight access points to load balance wireless clients across access points.

When a wireless client attempts to associate to a lightweight access point, the associated response packets are sent to a client with an 802.11 response packet including status code 17. This code 17 indicates that the corresponding AP is busy. The AP does not respond with the response 'success' if the AP threshold is not met, and with code 17 (AP busy) if the AP utilization threshold is exceeded, and another less busy AP hears the client request.

For example, if the number of clients on AP1 is more than the number of clients on AP2 and the load-balancing window, then AP1 is considered to be busier than AP2. When a client attempts to associate to AP1, the client receives an 802.11 response packet with status code 17, indicating that the access point is busy, and the client attempts to associate to a different access point.

You can configure the controller to deny client associations up to 10 times (if a client attempts to associate 11 times, it will be allowed to associate on the 11th try). You can also enable or disable load balancing on a particular WLAN, which is useful if you want to disable load balancing for a select group of clients, such as time-sensitive voice clients.



Note For a FlexConnect AP, the association is locally handled. The load-balancing decisions are taken at the controller. A FlexConnect AP sends an initial response to the client before knowing the result of the calculations in the controller. Load-balancing does not take effect when the FlexConnect AP is in standalone mode.

A FlexConnect AP does not send (re)association response with status 17 for load balancing the way local-mode APs do; instead, it first sends (re)association with status 0 (success) and then death with reason 5.



- Note** This feature is not supported on the APs joined on default-site-tag.
- This feature is not supported on the APs across different named site-tags.
- This feature is supported only on the APs within a named-site-tag.

Enabling Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > WLANs > Wireless Networks**.
 - Step 2** Select a **WLAN** to view the **Edit WLAN** window.
 - Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** Select the **Load Balance** check box to enable the feature.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Advanced**.
The **Load Balancing** window is displayed.
 - Step 2** In the **Aggressive Load Balancing Window (clients)** field, enter the number of clients for the aggressive load balancing client window.
 - Step 3** In the **Aggressive Load Balancing Denial Count** field, enter the load balancing denial count.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring Aggressive Client Load Balancing (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan test-wlan	Specifies the WLAN name.
Step 4	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN.
Step 5	load-balance Example: Device(config-wlan)# load-balance	Configures a guest controller as mobility controller, in order to enable client load balance to a particular WLAN. Configure the WLAN security settings as the WLAN requirements.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables WLAN.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 8	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 9	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} load-balancing denial <i>denial-count</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz load-balancing denial 10	Configures the load balancing denial count.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz } load-balancing window <i>number-of-clients</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz load-balancing window 10	Configures the number of clients for the aggressive load balancing client window.
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 12	show running-config section <i>wlan-name</i> Example: Device# show running-config section test-wlan	Displays a filtered section of the current configuration.



CHAPTER 76

RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

- [Information about RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing, on page 771](#)
- [Configuring RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing, on page 772](#)
- [Disabling RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing, on page 774](#)
- [Verifying Automatic WNCd Load Balancing, on page 775](#)

Information about RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

The RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature improves upon the existing Site Tag-Based Load Balancing feature, where the APs are load balanced by assigning them to wireless network control daemons (WNCd) based on site tags. If the APs in a named site tag are beyond the capacity of a WNCd, it may lead to uneven distribution of APs across the WNCd instances, resulting in high memory and CPU issues. Though the number of APs in a site tag can be limited to 1000 by using the **load** command, it may still lead to uneven distribution of APs if the AP load limit is not correctly configured. In some instances, all the APs belonging to a site tag may not be colocated as well.

The RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature uses Radio Resource Management (RRM) neighbor report-based AP grouping and load-balancing across WNCd instances.

When this feature is enabled, it forms AP clusters based on the RSSI received from AP neighbor reports. These clusters or neighborhoods are further split into sub-neighborhoods and smaller areas. The resulting groups of APs are then distributed evenly across the WNCd processes. The AP load balancing takes effect only after a controller reboot or through an AP CAPWAP reset triggered by the **ap neighborhood load-balance apply** command. When the RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature is active, it overrides other site tag-based load balancing.

Supported Platforms

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud
- Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless Controller for a Cisco switch

Prerequisites for RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

Ensure that you run the feature on a stable network, where the APs are fully deployed and are given enough time to discover all the RF neighbors.

Restrictions for RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

- You cannot use the same calendar profile for AP neighborhood policy or AP profile.
- This feature is supported only on APs in local and flex mode.
- You cannot run the feature when the overall load on the system is high.
- You cannot use the output of the **show wireless loadbalance tag affinity** command when the RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature is enabled.

Use Cases for RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

1. This feature allows using a single site tag for all the deployed APs.
2. This feature provides better load balancing of the APs across WNCd instances when more number of APs are attached to a named-site tag than the available capacity of the WNCds in the controller.
3. This feature is suitable for large number of client intra-WNCd roaming scenarios. For example, if a controller is configured in a campus to manage APs of two separate buildings, then all the APs of that building are assigned to a single WNCd rather than allocating them to separate WNCds.

Guidelines for RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

- For a new deployment, use the site tags and follow the current site tag recommendations to evenly distribute the APs, or use the **site tag load** command to automatically distribute the APs. Using site tags, you can ensure that all the APs of the same site tag goes to the same WNCd, which helps in troubleshooting and intra-WNCd roaming.
- If you are unable to use a site tag because you cannot group APs, or do not want to spend time designing site tags, use the default site tag or any named site tag and turn on the RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature.
- In an existing deployment, if you have high CPU issues because of an unbalanced system, use the auto RRM load balance system instead of redesigning the site tags.
- In an existing deployment, if you do not have any CPU load issues despite having an unbalanced system, do not change anything.

Configuring RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

Before you begin

There are two phases of the RF based load-balancing algorithm enablement:

1. Running the algorithm: The RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature run can be scheduled based on calendar profile start time expiry using **ap neighborhood calendar-profile** command, or on-demand

start of the algorithm using the **ap neighborhood load-balance start** command. Calendar profile start timer can be scheduled daily, weekly, or monthly.



Note For more information on configuring Calendar profile, check [Configuring a Calendar Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 306 and [Configuring a Calendar Profile \(CLI\)](#), on page 307.

2. Applying the algorithm: The RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature can be applied by controller reload or by using the **ap neighborhood load-balance apply** command when the **wireless load-balance ap method rf** configuration is enabled.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap neighborhood calendar-profile <i>calendar-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap neighborhood calendar-profile ap-calendar-profile	Configures an AP neighborhood calendar profile. Note After the calendar profile is set, it is optional to run Step 4 . However, if you want to immediately perform a load balance, run Step 4 .
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	ap neighborhood load-balance start Example: Device# ap neighborhood load-balance start	(Optional) Starts AP neighborhood load-balance algorithm calculation and WNCd allocation.
Step 5	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 6	wireless load-balance ap method rf Example: Device(config)# wireless load-balance ap method rf	Configures RF-based AP load balancing.
Step 7	exit Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# exit	
Step 8	ap neighborhood load-balance apply Example: Device# ap neighborhood load-balance apply	Runs on-demand RRM-based AP load balancing. This command rebalances the APs using CAPWAP reset. If an AP is already in the correct WNCd instance, then it will not be CAPWAP reset. This command cannot be executed if the RRM-based AP load balancing algorithm is running, or algorithm results are not available.

Disabling RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing

Before you begin

RF based Automatic AP Load Balancing feature is disabled by default. The APs may remain load balanced based on algorithm data even after disabling all the feature configurations and clearing all the algorithm outputs. To rebalance all the APs based on the default method of site tags, reload the controller or perform a CAPWAP reset on all the APs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no wireless load-balance ap method rf Example: Device(config)# no wireless load-balance ap method rf	Disables RF-based AP load balancing.
Step 3	no ap neighborhood calendar-profile calendar-profile Example: Device(config)# ap neighborhood calendar-profile ap-calendar-profile	Disables the AP neighborhood calendar profile.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ap neighborhood load-balance clear Example: Device# ap neighborhood load-balance clear	Clears the AP neighborhood load-balance algorithm calculation and resource allocation.

Verifying Automatic WNCd Load Balancing

To verify the results of the RF-based algorithm and the result of the related load balancing, use the following **show** commands.

To view the AP neighborhood summary, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap neighborhood summary
```

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood

Total number of neighborhood: 5
Total number of algorithm iterations: 1
Ideal AP capacity per WNCd instance: 210
```

```
Total number of neighborhood area: 14
```

NH-ID	AREA-ID	Process Name	Number of APs
0	0x00000000	WNCd_1	1
1	0x00000000	WNCd_0	2
2	0x00000000	WNCd_0	100
2	0x00000001	WNCd_0	100
2	0x00000002	WNCd_3	100
2	0x00000003	WNCd_4	50
3	0x00000000	WNCd_1	100
3	0x00000001	WNCd_1	100
3	0x00000002	WNCd_4	100
3	0x00000003	WNCd_4	50
4	0x00000000	WNCd_2	100
4	0x00000001	WNCd_2	100
4	0x00000002	WNCd_3	100
4	0x00000003	WNCd_3	50

To view the AP neighborhood details, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap neighborhood details
```

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood
```

```
Number of APs: 4
```

NH-ID	AREA-ID	WNCd instance	AP Name	Ethernet MAC
0	0x00000000	1	EDU_BR_01_00_28_3702	bc16.6509.bfcc
1	0x00000000	0	ci-glad-mdns-ap	0cd0.f894.567c
1	0x00000000	0	EDU_VW_9120_1_2	c4f7.d54c.f978
2	0x00000000	0	ewlc-hc-tsim-30-1	00b9.3000.02f0

To view the AP neighborhood information, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap neighborhood 0 details
```

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
```

```
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood
```

```
Number of APs: 1
```

NH-ID	AREA-ID	WNCd instance	AP Name	Ethernet MAC
0	0x00000000	0	APA023.9FD8.EA22	a023.9fd8.ea22

To view the AP neighborhood details using its MAC address, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap neighborhood mac 0aa8.89f0.0001 details
```

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
```

```
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood
```

AP Name	Ethernet MAC	Radio MAC	NH-ID	AREA-ID	WNCd instance
AP6B8B4567-0001	0aa8.89f0.0001	0aa8.8900.0100	0	0x00000000	0

To view the WNCd information, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap neighborhood wncd 0 details
```

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
```

```
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood
```

```
Number of APs: 9
```

WNCd instance	NH-ID	AREA-ID	AP Name	Ethernet MAC
0	2	0x00000000	9130I-1	0c75.bdb5.ffc0
0	2	0x00000000	9130E-2	3c41.0efe.46f0
0	2	0x00000000	9120E-2	5ce1.7628.8bbc
0	2	0x00000000	9130I-2	e44e.2d2e.59d4
0	2	0x00000000	9120E-1	5ce1.7628.aa0c
0	2	0x00000000	9120E-3	5ce1.7628.af04
0	2	0x00000000	3700I-2	b838.6159.dfa4
1	0	0x00000000	3800I-2	6cb2.ae2e.dfdc
2	1	0x00000000	4800-1	f4db.e643.fa72

```
NH-ID = Neighborhood ID
```

```
AREA-ID = Area ID of neighborhood
```

```
Number of APs: 5
```

WNCd instance	NH-ID	AREA-ID	AP Name	Ethernet MAC
0	12	0x00000000	AP6B8B4567-0001	0aa8.89f0.0001
0	12	0x00000000	AP6B8B4567-0004	0aa8.89f0.0004
0	12	0x00000000	AP6B8B4567-0007	0aa8.89f0.0007
0	12	0x00000000	AP6B8B4567-0010	0aa8.89f0.000a
0	12	0x00000000	AP6B8B4567-0013	0aa8.89f0.000d



CHAPTER 77

Accounting Identity List

- [Configuring Accounting Identity List \(GUI\), on page 777](#)
- [Configuring Accounting Identity List \(CLI\), on page 777](#)
- [Configuring Client Accounting \(GUI\), on page 778](#)
- [Configuring Client Accounting \(CLI\), on page 778](#)

Configuring Accounting Identity List (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA .
Step 2	In the AAA Method List tab, go to the Accounting section, and click Add .
Step 3	In the Quick Setup: AAA Accounting window that is displayed, enter a name for your method list.
Step 4	Choose the type of authentication as identity, in the Type drop-down list.
Step 5	Choose the server groups you want to use to authenticate access to your network, from the Available Server Groups list and click > icon to move them to the Assigned Server Groups list.
Step 6	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Accounting Identity List (CLI)

Accounting is the process of logging the user actions and keeping track of their network usage. Whenever a user successfully executes an action, the RADIUS accounting server logs the changed attributes, the user ID of the person who made the change, the remote host where the user is logged in, the date and time when the command was executed, the authorization level of the user, and a description of the action performed and the values provided.

Follow the procedure given below to configure accounting identity list.

Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa accounting identity <i>named-list</i> start-stop group <i>server-group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa accounting identity user1 start-stop group aaa-test</pre>	Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized and a stop-record at the end. Note You can also use the default list, instead of a named list.

Whenever there is a change in the client attribute, for example, change in IP address, client roaming, and so on, an accounting interim update is sent to the RADIUS server.

Configuring Client Accounting (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click the **Policy Profile Name** and in the **Edit Policy Profile** window, go to the **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 3** From the **Accounting List** drop-down, select the appropriate accounting list for this policy profile. This will ensure that the policy profile undergoes that type of accounting you want to perform, before allowing it access to the network.
 - Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Client Accounting (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure client accounting.

Before you begin

Ensure that RADIUS accounting is configured.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the policy profile.
Step 3	accounting-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list user1	Sets the accounting list.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.



CHAPTER 78

Support for Accounting Session ID

- [Information About Accounting Session ID, on page 781](#)
- [Configuring an Accounting Session ID \(CLI\), on page 781](#)
- [Verifying an Account Session ID, on page 782](#)

Information About Accounting Session ID

Accounting ID is a unique identifier for a wireless client session. This ID helps to identify the accounting data of a client in the AAA server. Accounting session ID is generated by the AAA module.

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru, Release 17.4.1 onwards, Accounting Session ID is supported in the AAA access request, while authenticating wireless client using IEEE 802.1x method. In the Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, Release 17.3.x and earlier releases, the Accounting Session ID was sent only as part of the accounting request. From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru, Release 17.4.1 onwards, the Accounting Session ID is sent as part of the access request too.

Configuring an Accounting Session ID (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless 44 include-in-access-req Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless 44 include-in-access-req	Sends the RADIUS authentication attribute 44, in the access request packet.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	aaa accounting identity <i>accounting-list-name</i> start-stop group <i>server-group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa accounting identity accounting-list-name start-stop group AAA_GROUP_1</pre>	Configures the accounting session identity of the AAA server.
Step 4	wireless profile policy Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile accounting-list-name start-stop group AAA_GROUP_1</pre>	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 5	accounting-list <i>accounting-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list accounting-list-name</pre>	Note The Accounting Session ID is added as part of the account request, only if radius-server attribute wireless 44 include-in-access-req is enabled along with the accounting configuration under the wireless policy.
Step 6	description <i>description-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# description accounting-description</pre>	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 7	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 40</pre>	Configures the VLAN name or ID.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown</pre>	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying an Account Session ID

To verify if an Account Session ID is populated, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless pmk-cache
Number of PMK caches in total : 1
Type      Station      Entry Lifetime  VLAN Override  IP Override
Accounting-Session-Id  Audit-Session-Id  Username
```



```
RSN          6c19.c0e6.a444      1768      NA
0x000000006      052DA8C1000000104E634C77      cwa-user
```

To display the current Accounting Session ID, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client mac-address**<H.H.H>**detail**

Central NAT : DISABLED

Session Manager:

Point of Attachment : capwap_90000005

IIF ID : 0x90000005

Authorized : TRUE

Session timeout : 1800

Common Session ID: 0000000000000000B14E9130A

Acct Session ID : 0x0000000c

Last Tried Aaa Server Details:

Server IP : 9.10.8.247

Auth Method Status List

Method : Dot1x

SM State : AUTHENTICATED

SM Bend State : IDLE

Local Policies:

Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile (priority 254)

VLAN : 1

Server Policies:

Absolute-Timer : 1800

Resultant Policies:

VLAN Name : default

VLAN : 1

Absolute-Timer : 1800



CHAPTER 79

Interim Accounting

- [Information About Interim Accounting, on page 785](#)
- [Disabling Interim Accounting \(CLI\), on page 786](#)
- [Verifying Interim Accounting, on page 786](#)

Information About Interim Accounting

RADIUS accounting sends accounting-request packets, with the relevant accounting information, from the network access server (NAS) to a RADIUS server.



Note The RADIUS accounting requests send data, such as VLAN ID, authentication methods, and so on, to a session.

RADIUS accounting covers the following updates:

- **Interim Updates:** When RADIUS accounting covers DHCP_TLVs, HTTP_TLVs, IP, or ROAM (state machine) changes, the updates are referred to as interim updates or interim accounting.
- **Periodic Updates:** When RADIUS accounting is specified by a timer value, the updates are referred to as periodic updates.



Note Disable the interim updates for the following reasons:

- They cause unnecessary traffic to be sent.
- They drive up error rates.
- They impact alarm thresholds and other metrics that are used for venue-authentication performance.

By default, the Interim Accounting feature is enabled with the **aaa accounting Identity default start-stop group radius** command.

Disabling Interim Accounting (CLI)

Before you begin

You must disable the Policy Profile before performing this procedure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	no accounting-interim Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no accounting-interim	Disables interim accounting.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Interim Accounting

To verify the interim accounting updates, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile | s Interim
Interim Accounting Updates: DISABLED
```



CHAPTER 80

Wireless Multicast

- [Information About Wireless Multicast, on page 787](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring Wireless Multicast, on page 790](#)
- [Restrictions on Configuring Wireless Multicast, on page 791](#)
- [Configuring Wireless Multicast, on page 791](#)
- [IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast, on page 794](#)
- [Directed Multicast Service, on page 796](#)
- [Wireless Broadcast, Non-IP Multicast and Multicast VLAN, on page 798](#)
- [Multicast Filtering, on page 804](#)

Information About Wireless Multicast

If the network supports packet multicasting, the multicast method that the controller uses can be configured. The controller performs multicast routing in two modes:

- **Unicast mode:** The controller unicasts every multicast packet to every access point associated to the controller. This mode is inefficient and generates a lot of extra traffic in the device and the network, but is required on networks that do not support multicast routing (needed if the APs are on different subnets than the device's wireless management interface).
- **Multicast mode:** The controller sends multicast packets to a CAPWAP multicast group. This method reduces the overhead on the controller processor and shifts the work of packet replication to the network, which is much more efficient than the unicast method.

The FlexConnect mode has two submodes: local switching and central switching. In local switching mode, the data traffic is switched at the AP level and the controller does not see any multicast traffic. In central switching mode, the multicast traffic reaches the controller. However, IGMP snooping takes place at the AP.

When the multicast mode is enabled and the controller receives a multicast packet from the wired LAN, the controller encapsulates the packet using CAPWAP and forwards the packet to the CAPWAP multicast group address. The controller always uses the management VLAN for sending multicast packets. Access points in the multicast group receive the packet and forward it to all the BSSIDs mapped to the VLAN on which clients receive multicast traffic.

The controller supports all the capabilities of IGMP v1, including Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) v1 snooping, but the IGMP v2 and IGMP v3 capabilities are limited. This feature keeps track of and delivers IPv6 multicast flows to the clients that request them. To support IPv6 multicast, global multicast mode should be enabled.

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping is introduced to better direct multicast packets. When this feature is enabled, the controller snooping gathers IGMP reports from the clients, processes them, creates unique multicast group IDs (MGIDs) based on the Layer 3 multicast address and the VLAN number, and sends the IGMP reports to the IGMP querier. The controller then updates the access-point MGID table on the corresponding access point with the client MAC address. When the controller receives multicast traffic for a particular multicast group, it forwards it to all the access points, but only those access points that have active clients listening or subscribed to that multicast group send multicast traffic on that particular WLAN. IP packets are forwarded with an MGID that is unique for an ingress VLAN and the destination multicast group. Layer 2 multicast packets are forwarded with an MGID that is unique for the ingress VLAN.

MGID is a 14-bit value filled in the 16-bit reserved field of wireless information in the CAPWAP header. The remaining two bits should be set to zero.

Multicast Optimization

Multicast optimization enables you to create a multicast VLAN that can be used for multicast traffic. One of the VLANs in the device can be configured as a multicast VLAN where multicast groups are registered. The clients are allowed to listen to a multicast stream on the multicast VLAN. The MGID is generated using the multicast VLAN and multicast IP addresses. If multiple clients on different VLANs of the same WLAN are listening to a single multicast IP address, a single MGID is generated. The device makes sure that all the multicast streams from the clients on this VLAN group always go out on the multicast VLAN to ensure that the upstream router has one entry for all the VLANs of the VLAN group. Only one multicast stream hits the VLAN group even if the clients are on different VLANs. Therefore, the multicast packets that are sent out over the network is just one stream.



Note When VLAN groups are defined and uses multicast communication, then you need to enable the multicast VLAN.

IPv6 Global Policies

IPv6 global policies provide storage and access policy database services. IPv6 ND inspection and IPv6 RA guard are IPv6 global policies features. Every time an ND inspection is configured globally, the policy attributes are stored in the software policy database. The policy is then applied to an interface, and the software policy database entry is updated to include this interface to which the policy is applied.

IPv6 RA guard is enabled by default on the controller. RA from the wired side should be forwarded to the wireless clients if the Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC) is deployed in the network.

Information About IPv6 Snooping

The following sections provide information about IPv6 snooping.

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection

The IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Inspection, or IPv6 snooping feature bundles several Layer 2 IPv6 first-hop security features, including IPv6 Address Glean and IPv6 Device Tracking. IPv6 neighbor discovery (ND) inspection operates at Layer 2, or between Layer 2 and Layer 3, and provides IPv6 features with security and scalability. This feature mitigates some of the inherent vulnerabilities for the neighbor discovery mechanism,

such as attacks on duplicate address detection (DAD), address resolution, device discovery, and the neighbor cache.

IPv6 ND inspection learns and secures bindings for stateless autoconfiguration addresses in Layer 2 neighbor tables and analyzes ND messages in order to build a trusted binding table. IPv6 ND messages that do not have valid bindings are dropped. An ND message is considered trustworthy if its IPv6-to-MAC mapping is verifiable. This feature mitigates some of the inherent vulnerabilities for the neighbor discovery mechanism, such as attacks on duplicate address detection (DAD), address resolution, device discovery, and the neighbor cache.

When IPv6 ND inspection is configured on a target (which varies depending on platform target support and may include device ports, switch ports, Layer 2 interfaces, Layer 3 interfaces, and VLANs), capture instructions are downloaded to the hardware to redirect the ND protocol and Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) for IPv6 traffic up to the switch integrated security features (SISF) infrastructure in the routing device. For ND traffic, messages such as NS, NA, RS, RA, and REDIRECT are directed to SISF. For DHCP, UDP messages sourced from port 546 or 547 are redirected.

IPv6 ND inspection registers its "capture rules" to the classifier, which aggregates all rules from all features on a given target and installs the corresponding ACL down into the platform-dependent modules. Upon receiving redirected traffic, the classifier calls all entry points from any registered feature (for the target on which the traffic is being received), including the IPv6 ND inspection entry point. This entry point is the last to be called, so any decision (such as drop) made by another feature supersedes the IPv6 ND inspection decision.

IPv6 Device Tracking

IPv6 device tracking provides IPv6 host liveness tracking so that a neighbor table can be immediately updated when an IPv6 host disappears.

IPv6 First-Hop Security Binding Table

The IPv6 First-Hop Security Binding Table recovery mechanism feature enables the binding table to recover in the event of a device reboot. A database table of IPv6 neighbors connected to the device is created from information sources such as ND snooping. This database, or binding, table is used by various IPv6 guard features to validate the link-layer address (LLA), the IPv4 or IPv6 address, and prefix binding of the neighbors to prevent spoofing and redirect attacks.

This mechanism enables the binding table to recover in the event of a device reboot. The recovery mechanism will block any data traffic sourced from an unknown source; that is, a source not already specified in the binding table and previously learned through ND or DHCP gleaning. This feature recovers the missing binding table entries when the resolution for a destination address fails in the destination guard. When a failure occurs, a binding table entry is recovered by querying the DHCP server or the destination host, depending on the configuration.

Recovery Protocols and Prefix Lists

The IPv6 First-Hop Security Binding Table Recovery Mechanism feature introduces the capability to provide a prefix list that is matched before the recovery is attempted for both DHCP and NDP.

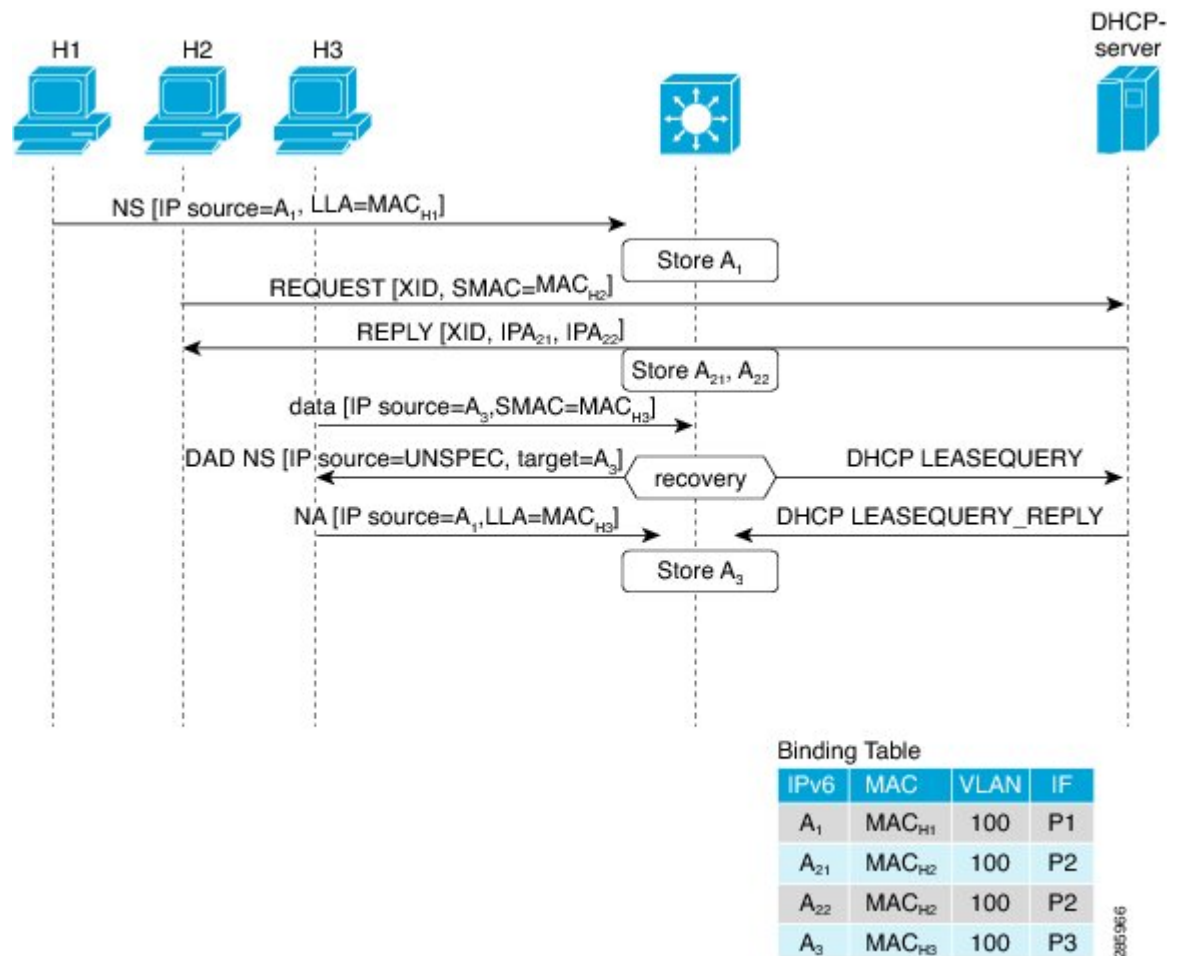
If an address does not match the prefix list associated with the protocol, then the recovery of the binding table entry will not be attempted with that protocol. The prefix list should correspond to the prefixes that are valid for address assignment in the Layer 2 domain using the protocol. The default is that there is no prefix list, in which case the recovery is attempted for all addresses. The command to associate a prefix list to a protocol is **protocol {dhcp | ndp} [prefix-list prefix-list-name]**.

IPv6 Address Glean

IPv6 address glean is the foundation for many other IPv6 features that depend on an accurate binding table. It inspects ND and DHCP messages on a link to glean addresses, and then populates the binding table with these addresses. This feature also enforces address ownership and limits the number of addresses any given node is allowed to claim.

The following figure shows how IPv6 address glean works.

Figure 9: IPv6 Address Glean



Prerequisites for Configuring Wireless Multicast

- To participate in IP multicasting, the multicast hosts, routers, and multilayer switches must have IGMP operating.
- When enabling multicast mode on the controller, a CAPWAP multicast group address should also be configured. Access points listen to the CAPWAP multicast group using IGMP.

- You must be cautious when using IGMPv3 with switches that are enabled for IGMP snooping. The IGMPv3 messages are different from the messages used in IGMP Version 1 (IGMPv1) and Version 2 (IGMPv2). If your switch does not recognize IGMPv3 messages, the hosts do not receive traffic when IGMPv3 is used.

IGMPv3 devices do not receive multicast traffic in either cases:

- When IGMP snooping is disabled.
- When IGMPv2 is configured on the interface.

It is recommended to enable IGMPv3 on all intermediate or other Layer 3 network devices. Primarily, on each subnet used by multicast devices including controller and AP subnets.

Restrictions on Configuring Wireless Multicast

The following are the restrictions for configuring IP multicast forwarding:

- Access points in monitor mode, sniffer mode, or rogue-detector mode do not join the CAPWAP multicast group address.
- The CAPWAP multicast group configured on the controllers should be different for different controllers.
- Multicast routing should not be enabled for the management interface.
- Multicast with VLAN group is only supported in local mode AP.
- Multicast traffic from wireless clients in non-multicast VLAN should be routed by the uplink switch.
- Multicast traffic on an AAA overridden VLAN is supported on Cisco IOS XE 17.9.5 and Cisco IOS XE 17.12.2, Cisco IOS XE 17.14 and above.

Restrictions for IPv6 Snooping

The IPv6 snooping feature is not supported on EtherChannel ports.

Configuring Wireless Multicast

The following sections provide information about the various wireless multicast configuration tasks:

Configuring Wireless Multicast-MCMC Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless multicast <i>tip-addr</i> Example:	Enables multicast-over-multicast. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless multicast 231.1.1.1	
Step 2	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring Wireless Multicast-MCUC Mode



Note The wireless multicast to unicast (MCUC) mode is only supported in 9800-CL small template.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless multicast Example: Device(config)# wireless multicast	Enables the multicast traffic for wireless clients.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring Multicast Listener Discovery Snooping (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Multicast**.
- Step 2** Click **MLD Snooping**.
- Step 3** In the **MLD Snooping** section, click the toggle button to enable or disable MLD snooping.
- Step 4** Enter the **MLD Query Interval**, in milliseconds. The value range is between 100 ms and 32767 ms. The default value is 1000 ms.
- Step 5** Move the required VLAN IDs listed in the **Disabled** section to the **Enabled** section. (By default, this feature is disabled on the VLAN.)

You can also search for a VLAN ID using the search field. You can click **Disable All** to move all the VLAN IDs from the **Enabled** list to the **Disabled** list, or click **Enable All** to move all the VLAN IDs from the **Disabled** list to the **Enabled** list.

Step 6 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring IPv6 MLD Snooping

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# ipv6 mld snooping	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ipv6 mld snooping Example: Device(config)# ipv6 mld snooping	Enables MLD snooping.

Verifying the Multicast VLAN Configuration

To view the multicast VLAN associated with a policy profile along with the VLAN assigned to that profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detail default-policy-profile
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : default-policy-profile
Description              : default policy profile
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : vlan-pool1
Multicast VLAN         : 84
Client count            : 0
Passive Client          : DISABLED
```

To view the multicast VLAN associated with a client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac ac2b.6e4b.551e detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : ac2b.6e4b.551e
Client IPv4 Address : 84.84.0.20
.....
VLAN : 82
Access VLAN : 82
Multicast VLAN: 84
```

IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast

IPv6 multicast allows a host to send a single data stream to a subset of all the hosts (group transmission) simultaneously. When IPv6 Multicast over Multicast is configured, all the APs join the IPv6 multicast address, and the multicast traffic from the wireless controller to the AP flows over the IPv6 multicast tunnel.

In mixed deployments (IPv4 and IPv6), the APs might join the wireless controller over IPv4 or IPv6. To enable Multicast over Multicast in mixed deployments, configure both IPv4 and IPv6 multicast tunnels. The IPv4 APs have a unicast IPv4 CAPWAP tunnel and join the IPv4 multicast group. The IPv6 APs will have a unicast IPv6 CAPWAP tunnel and joins the IPv6 multicast group.



Note Mixed mode of Multicast over Unicast and Multicast over Multicast over IPv4 and IPv6 is not supported in Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1.

Table 51: Multicast Support Per Platform

Platform	Multicast Support - Multicast over Unicast	Multicast Support - Multicast over Multicast
Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller	No	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller	No	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud - Small Template	Yes	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud - Medium Template	No	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud - Large Template	No	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller	Yes	Yes

Configuring IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Multicast**.
- Step 2** From the **AP Capwap Multicast** drop-down list, select **Multicast**.
- Step 3** Enter the **AP Capwap IPv6 Multicast group Address**.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.

Configuring IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless multicast {ipv4-address ipv6 ipv6-address} Example: Device(config)# wireless multicast ipv6 ff45:1234::86	Configures IPv6 multicast-over-multicast address.

Verifying IPv6 Multicast-over-Multicast

To verify the IPv6 multicast-over-multicast configuration, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless multicast
```

```
Multicast : Enabled
AP Capwap Multicast : Multicast
AP Capwap IPv4 Multicast group Address : 231.1.1.1
AP Capwap IPv6 Multicast group Address : ff45:1234::86
Wireless Broadcast : Disabled
Wireless Multicast non-ip-mcast : Disabled
```

```
Device# show running-configuration | inc multicast
```

```
show run | inc multicast:--
```

```
wireless multicast
wireless multicast ipv6 ff45:1234::86
wireless multicast 231.1.1.1
```

Verifying the Multicast Connection Between the Controller and the AP

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller initiates a ping request that passes through the CAPWAP multicast tunnel onto the CAPWAP multicast receiver, which is the AP. In response, the AP pings the packets for CAPWAP multicast group IP address, and sends back the response to the controller. You can view the statistics on the AP for transmitted and received traffic to analyze the data that are sent and received through the multicast tunnel. Alternatively, you can also verify by enhancing the existing statistics on the AP for transmitted and received traffic to explicitly list the joins, leaves, data packets transmitted and received through the multicast tunnel.

To confirm if the APs receive multicast to multicast (mom) traffic sent by the controller, use the following command

```
Device# show ap multicast mom
```

```
AP Name                                MOM-IP      TYPE MOM- STATUS
```

```

-----
SS-E-1                IPv4                Up
SS-E-2                IPv4                Up
9130E-r3-sw2-g1012    IPv4                Up
9115i-r3-sw2-te1-0-38 IPv4                Up
AP9120-r3-sw3-Gi1-0-46 IPv4                Up
ap3800i-r2-sw1-te2-0-2 IPv4                Up

```

Directed Multicast Service

The Directed Multicast Service (DMS) feature allows a client to request access points (AP) to transmit multicast packets as unicast frames. After receiving this request, an AP buffers the multicast traffic for a client and transmits it as a unicast frame when the client wakes up. This allows the client to receive the multicast packets that were ignored while in sleep mode (to save battery power) and also ensures Layer 2 reliability. The unicast frames are transmitted to the client at a potentially higher wireless link rate, which enables the client to receive the packet quickly by enabling the radio for a shorter duration, thus saving more battery power. Without DMS, the client has to wake up at each Delivery Traffic Indication Map (DTIM) interval to receive multicast traffic.

Configuring Directed Multicast Service(GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > WLANs > Wireless Networks**.
 - Step 2** Select a **WLAN** to view the **Edit WLAN** window.
 - Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** Check the **Directed Multicast Service** check box to enable the feature.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Directed Multicast Service

Before you begin

- This feature is enabled on receiving a request from a client. Ensure that this feature is configured under WLAN.
- This feature is supported only on 802.11v-capable clients, such as Apple iPad and Apple iPhone.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan profile-name Example: Device(config)# wlan test5	Configures the WLAN profile and enters WLAN profile configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN profile.
Step 4	dms Example: Device(config-wlan)# dms	Configures DMS processing per WLAN.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN profile.

Verifying the Directed Multicast Service Configuration

To verify the status of the DMS configuration on the controller, use **show** commands below. The DMS status is displayed under *IEEE 802.11v Parameters*.

```
Device# show wlan id 5
```

```
WLAN Profile Name      : test
=====
Identifier              : 5
Network Name (SSID)    : test
Status                  : Disabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
Universal AP Admin     : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
!
.
.
.
Assisted-Roaming
  Neighbor List         : Disabled
  Prediction List       : Disabled
  Dual Band Support     : Disabled
```

! DMS status is displayed below.

```
IEEE 802.11v parameters
  Directed Multicast Service : Enabled
  BSS Max Idle               : Disabled
  Protected Mode             : Disabled
  Traffic Filtering Service   : Disabled
  BSS Transition             : Enabled
  Disassociation Imminent    : Disabled
  Optimized Roaming Timer    : 40
  Timer                      : 200
  WNM Sleep Mode             : Disabled
```

```

802.11ac MU-MIMO                : Disabled
802.11ax parameters
  OFDMA Downlink                : unknown
  OFDMA Uplink                  : unknown
  MU-MIMO Downlink              : unknown
  MU-MIMO Uplink                : unknown
  BSS Color                     : unknown
  Partial BSS Color             : unknown
  BSS Color Code

```

To verify the status of the DMS configuration on the controller for clients, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 6c96.cff2.83a0 detail | inc 11v
```

```

11v BSS Transition : implemented
11v DMS Capable   : Yes

```

To verify the DMS request and response statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail | inc DMS
```

```

Total DMS requests received in action frame : 0
Total DMS responses sent in action frame    : 0
Total DMS requests received in Re-assoc Request : 0
Total DMS responses sent in Re-assoc Response : 0

```

To verify the DMS configuration Cisco Aironet 2700 and 3700 Series APs, use the following command:

```
AP# show controllers dot11Radio 0/1 | begin Global DMS
```

```

Global DMS - requests:0 uc:0 drop:408
DMS enabled on WLAN(s): dms-open
test-open

```

To verify the DMS configuration on the Cisco Aironet 2800, 3800, and 4800 Series APs, use the following command:

```
AP# show multicast dms all
```

```

vapid    client                dmsid      TClas
0         1C:9E:46:7C:AF:C0     1         mask:0x55, version:4, proto:0x11, dscp:0x0, sport:0,
dport:9, sip:0.0.0.0, dip:224.0.0.251

```

Wireless Broadcast, Non-IP Multicast and Multicast VLAN

Restrictions

- Wireless broadcast does not support VLAN groups.
- When a VLAN pool is mapped to the WLAN profile, support for forwarding non-IPv4 multicast and broadcast is unavailable.
- Non-IPv4 multicasts and broadcasts are restricted to clients on the VLAN mapped to the WLAN and are not forwarded on VLANs returned by AAA override.

Configuring Non-IP Wireless Multicast (CLI)

Before you begin

- The non-IP Multicast feature is disabled globally, by default.
- For non-IP multicast, global wireless multicast must be enabled for traffic to pass.
- This feature is not supported in Fabric or Flex deployments.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless multicast non-ip Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless multicast non-ip</code>	Enables non-IP multicast in all the VLANs. By default, the non-IP multicast in all the VLANs is in Disabled state. Wireless multicast must be enabled for the traffic to pass. Use the no form of this command to disable non-IP multicast in all the VLANs.
Step 2	wireless multicast non-ip vlan <i>vlanid</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless multicast non-ip vlan 5</code>	Enables non-IP multicast per VLAN. By default, non-IP multicast per VLAN is in Disabled state. Both wireless multicast and wireless multicast non-IP must be enabled for traffic to pass. Use the no form of this command to disable non-IP multicast per VLAN.
Step 3	end Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring Wireless Broadcast (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Multicast**.
- Step 2** In the Multicast page, change the status of the **Wireless Broadcast** to enabled to broadcast packets for wireless clients.

The default value is disabled.
- Step 3** From the Disabled VLAN table, click the arrow adjacent to the VLAN ID in the **Disabled** state to the **Enabled** state to enable broadcast packets for a VLAN.

The default value is disabled.

Step 4 Save the configuration.

Configuring Wireless Broadcast (CLI)

Before you begin

- This feature is applicable only to non-ARP and DHCP broadcast packets.
- This feature is disable globally, by default.
- This feature is not supported in Fabric or Flex deployments.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless broadcast Example: Device(config)# wireless broadcast	Enables broadcast packets for wireless clients. By default, the broadcast packets for wireless clients is in Disabled state. Enabling wireless broadcast enables broadcast traffic for each VLAN. Use the no form of this command to disable broadcasting packets.
Step 2	wireless broadcast vlan <i>vlanid</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless broadcast vlan 3	Enables broadcast packets for single VLAN. By default, the Broadcast Packets for a Single VLAN feature is in Disabled state. Wireless broadcast must be enabled for broadcasting. Use the no form of this command to disable broadcast traffic for each VLAN.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring Multicast-over-Multicast for AP Multicast Groups (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap capwap multicast <i>IP address</i> Example: Device(config)# ap capwap multicast 239.4.4.4	Configures an all-AP multicast group to send a single packet to all the APs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless multicast <i>IP address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless multicast 239.4.4.4</pre>	Enables Multicast-over-Multicast for multicasting client multicast group traffic to all the APs through the underlying all-AP multicast group. <i>IP address</i> —Multicast-over-multicast IP address.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode.

Verifying Wireless Multicast

Table 52: Commands for Verifying Wireless Multicast

Command	Description
show wireless multicast	Displays the multicast status and IP multicast mode, and each VLAN's broadcast and non-IP multicast status. Also displays the Multicast Domain Name System (mDNS) bridging state.
show wireless multicast group summary	Displays all (Group and VLAN) lists and the corresponding MGID values.
show wireless multicast [source <i>source</i>] group <i>group</i> vlan <i>vlanid</i>	Displays details of the specified (S,G,V) and shows all the clients associated with and their MC2UC status.
show ip igmp snooping wireless mcast-ipc-count	Displays the number of multicast IPCs per MGID sent to the wireless controller module.
show ip igmp snooping wireless mgid	Displays the MGID mappings.
show ip igmp snooping igmpv2-tracking	Displays the client-to-SGV mappings and the SGV-to-client mappings.
show ip igmp snooping querier vlan <i>vlanid</i>	Displays the IGMP querier information for the specified VLAN.
show ip igmp snooping querier detail	Displays the detailed IGMP querier information of all the VLANs.
show ipv6 mld snooping querier vlan <i>vlanid</i>	Displays the MLD querier information for the specified VLAN.
show ipv6 mld snooping wireless mgid	Displays MGIDs for the IPv6 multicast group.

Multicast Optimization

Multicast used to be based on the group of the multicast addresses and the VLAN as one entity, MGID. With the VLAN group, duplicate packets might increase. Using the VLAN group feature, every client listens to the multicast stream on a different VLAN. As a result, the device creates different MGIDs for each multicast address and the VLAN. Therefore, the upstream router sends a copy for each VLAN, which results in as many copies as the number of VLANs in the group. Because the WLAN remains the same for all the clients, multiple copies of the multicast packet are sent over the wireless network. To suppress the duplication of a multicast stream on the wireless medium between the device and the access points, the multicast optimization feature can be used.

Multicast optimization enables you to create a multicast VLAN that can be used for multicast traffic. One of the VLANs in the device can be configured as a multicast VLAN where multicast groups are registered. The clients are allowed to listen to a multicast stream on the multicast VLAN. The MGID is generated using the multicast VLAN and multicast IP addresses. If multiple clients on different VLANs of the same WLAN are listening to a single multicast IP address, a single MGID is generated. The device makes sure that all the multicast streams from the clients on this VLAN group always go out on the multicast VLAN to ensure that the upstream router has one entry for all the VLANs of the VLAN group. Only one multicast stream hits the VLAN group even if the clients are on different VLANs. Therefore, the multicast packets that are sent out over the network is just one stream.

Configuring IP Multicast VLAN for WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Name and Description .
Step 4	Enable the Central Switching and Central Association toggle buttons.
Step 5	In the Access Policies tab, under the VLAN settings, choose the vlans from the VLAN/VLAN Group drop-down list and enter the Multicast VLAN .
Step 6	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring IP Multicast VLAN for WLAN

Before you begin

- This feature is not supported in Fabric or Flex deployments.
- Multicast VLAN is used for both IPv4 and IPv6 multicast forwarding to APs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	central association Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central association	Configures central association for locally switched clients.
Step 4	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Configures WLAN for central switching.
Step 5	description <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "test"	(Optional) Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 6	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 32	Assigns the profile policy to the VLAN.
Step 7	multicast vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# multicast vlan 84	Configures multicast for the VLAN.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the profile policy.

Verifying the Multicast VLAN Configuration

To view the multicast VLAN associated with a policy profile along with the VLAN assigned to that profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detail default-policy-profile
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : default-policy-profile
Description              : default policy profile
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : vlan-pool1
Multicast VLAN         : 84
Client count             : 0
Passive Client           : DISABLED
```

To view the multicast VLAN associated with a client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac ac2b.6e4b.551e detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : ac2b.6e4b.551e
Client IPv4 Address : 84.84.0.20
.....
VLAN : 82
Access VLAN : 82
Multicast VLAN: 84
```

Multicast Filtering

Information About Multicast Filtering

In Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, Release 17.2.1, the Multicast Filtering feature is supported on Layer 3 for IPv4.

You can enable or disable the multicast filtering feature per WLAN from the controller. When you enable this feature, the APs drop the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) join request from a client that is part of the WLAN, for any Layer 3 multicast group address. When you disable this feature, the APs honor the IGMP join request from the client that is part of the WLAN.

In the Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, Release 17.3.1, the Multicast Filtering feature is supported on Layer 3 for IPv6.

You can enable or disable the Multicast Filtering feature per WLAN, from the controller. The following table shows the AP behavior with IPv4 and IPv6:

The Multicast Filtering feature is disabled by default.

Table 53: Multicast Filtering per WLAN

Multicast Filtering Feature Status	IPv4	IPv6
Enabled	AP drops the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) membership report from a client that is a part of a WLAN.	AP drops the Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) report with multicast group address scope value greater than three, from a client that is a part of a WLAN.
Disabled	AP honors the IGMP membership report from the client that is a part of a WLAN.	AP honors the MLD report from the client that is a part of a WLAN.

Supported L3 Multicast Report for Filtering

APs will not honor and drop IGMP and MLD join requests from a client part of WLAN for any L3 multicast group address as per the below filtering options:

- IPv4: IGMP versions to be filtered:
 - V1 membership report (0x12)
 - V2 membership report (0x16)
 - V3 membership report (0x22)
- IPv6: ICMPv6 types to be filtered, except link-local multicast packets:
 - Multicast Listener report: MLD Version 1 (131)
 - Multicast Listener report: MLD Version 2 (143)



Note Filtering of supported types will prevent the creation or addition of a client entry to the AP multicast group table.

Configuring Multicast Filtering

Perform the procedure given here to create a policy profile and then enable Multicast Filtering on a WLAN:

Before you begin

Create a WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	multicast filter Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#multicast filter	Configures a multicast filter. (Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.)

What to do next

1. Create a policy tag. For more information about creating policy tags, see *Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)*.
2. Map the policy tag to an AP. For more information about mapping a policy tag to an AP, see *Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)*.

Verifying Multicast Filtering

To verify if multicast filtering is enabled, use the **show wireless profile policy detailed** *named-policy-profile* command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed named-policy-profile
Policy Profile Name      : named-policy-profile
Description              :
Status                   : DISABLED
VLAN                     : 91
Multicast VLAN           : 0
OSEN client VLAN        :
Multicast Filter         : ENABLED
```




CHAPTER 81

Map-Server Per-Site Support

- [Information About Map Server Per Site Support, on page 807](#)
- [Configuring the Default Map Server \(GUI\), on page 808](#)
- [Configuring the Default Map Server \(CLI\), on page 808](#)
- [Configuring a Map Server Per Site \(GUI\), on page 809](#)
- [Configuring a Map Server Per Site \(CLI\), on page 809](#)
- [Creating a Map Server for Each VNID \(GUI\), on page 810](#)
- [Creating a Map Server for Each VNID, on page 810](#)
- [Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID \(GUI\), on page 811](#)
- [Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID \(CLI\), on page 811](#)
- [Verifying the Map Server Configuration, on page 812](#)

Information About Map Server Per Site Support

The Map Server Per Site feature supports per-site map server and the selection of map server based on the client's subnet. This enables the controller to support multiple sites and to segregate each site's traffic.

This feature is applicable to both Enterprise and Guest map servers. For the Layer 2 virtual extensible LAN network identifier-based (L2VNID-based) map server, the appropriate map server should be selected based on the L2 VNID.

The following list shows the map server selection order for AP query and client registration:

- Per-L3 VNID map server
- Per site (ap-group) map server
- Default or global map server

Benefits

Some of the benefits of using Map Server Per Site feature are listed below:

- You can use a single large site with horizontal scaling of the map server and border nodes.
- You can share the controller across multiple sites, with each site can having its own map server and virtual network or VNID and still segment traffic from each site.
- You can share Guest map-server across multiple sites while keeping the Enterprise map-server separate.

- You can use the same SSID across different sites. Within a site, they can belong to a different virtual network domain.

Configuring the Default Map Server (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Fabric**.
 - Step 2** On the **Fabric** page, click the **Control Plane** tab.
 - Step 3** In the **Control Plane Name** list, click **default-control-plane**.
 - Step 4** In the **Edit Control Plane** window that is displayed, click **Add**.
 - Step 5** Enter the IP address of the map server.
 - Step 6** Set the **Password Type** as either **Unencrypted** or **AES**.
 - Step 7** Enter the **Pre Shared Key**.
 - Step 8** Click **Save**.
 - Step 9** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring the Default Map Server (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the default map server.

Before you begin

- The global map server is the default map server that is used for both AP query (when an AP joins) as well as for client registration (when a client joins).
- We recommend that you configure map servers in pairs to ensure redundancy because the LISP control-plane does not support redundancy inherently.
- To share a map server set, create a map server group, which can be shared across site profiles, fabric profiles, Layer 2 and Layer3 VNID, as well with the default map server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless fabric control-plane <i>control-plane-name</i>	Configures the control plane name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric control-plane test-map</pre>	If you do not provide a control plane name, the default-control-plane that is auto generated is used.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address</i> key <i>pre-shared-key</i> Example: <pre>Device((config-wireless-cp)#ip address 10.12.13.14 key secret</pre>	Configures IP address and the key for the control plane.

Configuring a Map Server Per Site (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	On the AP Join Profile page, click the AP Join Profile name.
Step 3	In the Edit AP Join Profile window, click the CAPWAP tab.
Step 4	In the High Availability tab under Backup Controller Configuration , check the Enable Fallback check box.
Step 5	Enter the primary and secondary controller names and IP addresses.
Step 6	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring a Map Server Per Site (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure per-site MAP server under site-tag.

Before you begin

You can configure map server for each site or each AP group. . If a map server is not configured for each VNID or subnet, per-site map server is used for AP queries and client registration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site test-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	fabric control-plane <i>map-server-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-site)# fabric control-plane test-map	Associates a fabric control plane name with a site tag.

Creating a Map Server for Each VNID (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Wireless Plus > Fabric > Fabric Configuration**.
 - Step 2** In the **Profiles** tab, click **Add** to add a new Fabric Profile.
 - Step 3** In the **Add New Profile** window that is displayed, enter a name and description for the profile.
 - Step 4** Specify the L2 VNID and SGT Tag details.
 - Step 5** In the **Map Servers** section, specify the IP address and preshared key details for Server 1.
 - Step 6** Optionally, you can specify the IP address and preshared key details for Server 2.
 - Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Map Server for Each VNID

Follow the procedure given below to configure map server for each VNID in Layer 2 and Layer 3 or a map server for a client VNID.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	Choose one of the following: • wireless fabric name <i>vnid-map l2-vnid l2-vnid l3-vnid l3vnid ip network-ip</i>	Configures a map server for each VNID in Layer 2 and Layer 3 or a map server for a client VNID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>subnet-mask control-plane control-plane-name</code> • wireless fabric name vnid-map l2-vnid l2-vnid control-plane control-plane-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric name test1 l2-vnid 12 l3-vnid 10 ip 10.8.6.2 255.255.255.236 control-plane cp1</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric name test1 l2-vnid 22 control-plane cp1</pre>	

Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Wireless > Fabric**.
- Step 2** In the **Profiles** tab on **Fabric Configuration** page, click **Add** to add a new profile.
- Step 3** In the **Add New Profile** window that is displayed, enter a name and description for the profile.
- Step 4** Specify the L2 VNID and SGT Tag details.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Fabric Profile and Associating a Tag and VNID (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create a fabric profile and associate the VNID to which the client belongs and the SGT tag to this profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile fabric fabric-profile-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile fabric test-fabric</pre>	Configures a fabric profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	sgt-tag <i>value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# sgt-tag 5	Configures an SGT tag.
Step 4	client-l2-vnid <i>vnid</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# client-l2-vnid 10	Configures a client Layer 2 VNID.

Verifying the Map Server Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the map server configuration:

Device# **show wireless fabric summary**

Fabric Status : Enabled

Control-plane:

Name	IP-address	Key	Status
test-map	10.12.13.14	test1	Down

Fabric VNID Mapping:

Name	L2-VNID	L3-VNID	IP Address	Subnet
test1	12	10	10.6.8.9	255.255.255.236
test2				

Device# **show wireless fabric vnid mapping**

Fabric VNID Mapping:

Name	L2-VNID	L3-VNID	IP Address	Subnet	Control Plane Name
fabric1	1	0	9.6.51.0	255.255.255.0	map-server-name

Device# **show wireless profile fabric detailed** *profile-name*

Profile-name : fabric-ap
VNID : 1
SGT : 500
Type : Guest

Control Plane Name	Control-Plane IP	Control-Plane Key

```
Ent-map-server          5.4.3.2          guest_1
```

```
Device# show ap name ap-name config general
```

```
Fabric status           : Enabled
RLOC                    : 2.2.2.2
Control Plane Name      : ent-map-server
```

```
Device# show wireless client mac mac-address detail
```

```
Fabric status : Enabled
RLOC           : 2.2.2.2
Control Plane Name : ent-map-server
```

```
Device# show wireless tag site detailed site-tag
```

```
Site Tag Name      : default-site-tag
Description        : default site tag
-----
AP Profile         : default-ap-profile
Local-site        : Yes
Fabric-control-plane: Ent-map-server
```




CHAPTER 82

Volume Metering

- [Volume Metering, on page 815](#)
- [Configuring Volume Metering, on page 815](#)

Volume Metering

The Volume Metering feature allows you to configure the interval at which an access point (AP) updates client accounting statistics to the controller and in turn to the RADIUS server. Currently, the report is sent from an AP to the controller every 90 seconds. With this feature, you can configure the time from 5 to 90 seconds. This helps reduce the delay in accounting data usage by a device.

Configuring Volume Metering

Follow the procedure given below to configure volume metering:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile yy-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters ap profile configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11 24ghz reporting-interval <i>reporting-interval</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot11 24ghz reporting-interval 60	Configures the dot11 parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	dot11 5ghz reporting-interval <i>reporting-interval</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# dot11 5ghz reporting-interval 60	Configures the dot11 parameters.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 6	aaa accounting update periodic <i>interval-in-minutes</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa accounting update periodic 75	Sets the time interval (in minutes) at which the controller sends interim accounting updates of the client to the RADIUS server.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 83

Enabling Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server

- [Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server, on page 817](#)
- [Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller, on page 818](#)
- [Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points, on page 822](#)

Information About Syslog Messages in Access Points and Controller for Syslog Server

Access points and controllers generate log messages and send them to various destinations, such as the in-memory logging buffer, terminal sessions, files stored in the device's flash memory, or an external syslog server. These messages help administrators monitor and troubleshoot the network. The syslog configurations for APs and controllers remain independent, which allow administrators to configure logging separately for each device to meet specific network needs.

Log messages are transmitted with one of eight severity levels.

Message Logging Level Keywords			
Level Keyword	Level	Description	Syslog Definition
Emergencies	0	System unstable	LOG_EMERG
Alerts	1	Immediate action needed	LOG_ALERT
Critical	2	Critical conditions	LOG_CRIT
Errors	3	Error conditions	LOG_ERR
Warnings	4	Warning conditions	LOG_WARNING
Notifications	5	Normal but significant condition	LOG_NOTICE
Informational	6	Informational messages only	LOG_INFO
Debugging	7	Debugging messages	LOG_DEBUG

Each log message is associated with one of 24 facility codes, which indicate the application or subsystem that issued the message.

Facility Code	Keyword	IOS Keyword	Description
0	kern	kern	Kernel messages
1	user	user	User-level messages
2	mail	mail	Mail system
3	daemon	daemon	System daemons
4	auth	auth	Security/authentication messages
5	syslog	syslog	Messages generated internally by syslogd
6	lpr	lpr	Line printer subsystem
7	news	news	Network news subsystem
8	uucp	uucp	UUCP subsystem
9	cron	sys9	Clock daemon
10	authpriv	sys10	Security/authentication messages
11	ftp	sys11	FTP daemon
12	ntp	sys12	NTP subsystem
13	security	sys13	Log audit
14	console	sys14	Log alert
15	solaris-cron	cron	Scheduling daemon
16-23	local0 – local7	local0 - local7	Locally-used facilities

Configuring Message Logging in the IOS XE Controller

System Message Logging in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers is a platform-independent IOS and IOS XE feature. For more information on message logging, see:

- [System Message Logging](#)
- [Configuration Logger Persistency](#) chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- [Logging to Local Nonvolatile Storage](#) chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- [Embedded Syslog Manager \(ESM\)](#) chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*
- [Configuration Change Notification and Logging](#) chapter in *System Management Configuration Guide*

Information About Syslog Support for Client State Change

When a client joins, dissociates, or rejoins a wireless network, the Syslog Support for Client State Change feature enables you to track client details such as IP addresses, AP names, and so on.

A syslog is generated in the following scenarios:

- When a client moves to RUN state.
- When a client gets a new IP (IPv4 or IPv6) address in the RUN state.
- When a client in RUN state is deleted.



Note When Syslog Support for Client State Change feature is enabled, and the AP moves from standalone to connected, you may observe that usernames are null in **syslog messages** and in **client detail** for the 802.1X clients associated with that AP. You can ignore this behavior, as it does not have any operational impact. The usernames will get updated after 30 seconds.

For more information on IOS XE Controller, see [System Message Logging](#).

Configuring Syslog Support for Client State Change (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless client syslog-detailed Example: Device(config)# wireless client syslog-detailed	Enables detailed syslogs for client events.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Sample Syslogs

802.11x Authentication

The following example shows a client IP update:

```
Oct  1 14:41:27.785 IST: %CLIENT_ORCH_LOG-7-CLIENT_IP_UPDATED:
Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Username (dev2), MAC: 0062.xxxx.0077,
IP fe80::262:aff:xxxx:77 101.6.2.119 2001:300:8:0:362:aff:xxxx:77 2001:300:8:0:762:aff:xxxx:77

2001:300:8:0:562:aff:xxxx:77 2001:300:8:0:962:aff:xxxx:77 2001:300:8:0:462:aff:xxxx:77
IP address updated, associated to AP (Asim_06-11) with SSID (dev_abcd_wlan_1)
```

The following example shows a client RUN state:

```
Oct 1 14:41:27.779 IST: %CLIENT_ORCH_LOG-7-CLIENT_MOVED_TO_RUN_STATE:
Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Username (dev2), MAC: 0062.xxxx.006a, IP 101.xxxx.2.106 associated
to AP
(Asim_06-10) with SSID (dev_abcd_wlan_1)
```

Open Authentication

The following example shows a client IP update:

```
Sep 18 03:22:35.902: %CLIENT_ORCH_LOG-7-CLIENT_IP_UPDATED:
Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Username (null), MAC: 6014.xxxx.c5fb, IP 9.9.xxxx.252
fe80::643c:87c1:xxxx:c1c4 IP address updated,
associated to AP (AP2C5A.xxxx.159A) with SSID (test1)
```

The following example shows a client RUN state:

```
Sep 18 03:22:35.257: %CLIENT_ORCH_LOG-7-CLIENT_MOVED_TO_RUN_STATE:
Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Username (null), MAC: 6014.xxxx.c5fb, IP 9.9.xxxx.252 associated to
AP (AP2C5A.xxxx.159A) with SSID (test1)
```

The following example shows a client delete state:

```
Sep 18 03:24:45.083: %CLIENT_ORCH_LOG-7-CLIENT_MOVED_TO_DELETE_STATE:
Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Username (null), MAC: 6014.xxxx.c5fb, IP fe80::643c:xxxx:e316:c1c4
2001:300:42:0:643c:87c1:xxxx:c1c4
2001:300:42:0:xxxx:82ce:lae4:5a32 9.9.xxxx.252 disconnected from AP (AP2C5A.xxxx.159A) with
SSID (test1)
```

Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Troubleshooting > Logs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Manage Syslog Servers** button.
 - Step 3** In **Log Level Settings**, from the **Syslog** drop-down list, choose a security level.
 - Step 4** From the **Message Console** drop-down list, choose a logging level.
 - Step 5** In **Message Buffer Configuration**, from the **Level** drop-down list, choose a server logging level.
 - Step 6** In **Size (bytes)**, enter the buffer size. The value can range between 4096 to 2147483647.
 - Step 7** In **IP Configuration** settings, click **Add**.
 - Step 8** Choose the **Server Type**, from the **IPv4 / IPv6** or **FQDN** option.
 - Step 9** For Server Type **IPv4 / IPv6**, enter the **IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address**. For Server Type **FQDN**, enter the **Host Name**, choose the IP type and the appropriate **VRF Name** from the drop-down lists.

To delete a syslog server, click 'x' next to the appropriate server entry, under the **Remove** column.
 - Note**
When creating a host name, spaces are not allowed.
 - Step 10** Click **Apply to Device**.

Note

When you click on **Apply to Device**, the changes are configured. If you click on **Cancel**, the configurations are discarded.

Configuring Syslog Server for the Controller (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	logging host {hostname ipv6} Example: Device(config)# <code>logging host 124.3.52.62</code>	Enables Syslog server IP address and parameters.
Step 3	logging facility {auth cron daemon kern local0 local1 local2 local3 local4 local5 local6 local7 lpr mail news sys10 sys11 sys12 sys13 sys14 sys9 syslog user uucp} Example: Device(config)# <code>logging facility syslog</code>	Enables facility parameter for the Syslog messages. You can enable the following facility parameter for the Syslog messages: • auth—Authorization system. • cron—Cron facility. • daemon—System daemons. • kern—Kernel. • local0 to local7—Local use. • lpr—Line printer system. • mail—Mail system. • news—USENET news. • sys10 to sys14 and sys9—System use. • syslog—Syslog itself. • user—User process. • uucp—Unix-to-Unix copy system.
Step 4	logging trap {severity-level alerts critical debugging emergencies }	Enables Syslog server logging level. <i>severity-level</i> - Refers to the logging severity level. The valid range is from 0 to 7.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	errors informational notifications warnings} Example: Device(config)# logging trap 2	The following are the Syslog server logging levels: • emergencies—Signifies severity 0. Implies that the system is not usable. • alerts—Signifies severity 1. Implies that an immediate action is required. • critical—Signifies severity 2. Implies critical conditions. • errors—Signifies severity 3. Implies error conditions. • warnings—Signifies severity 4. Implies warning conditions. • notifications—Signifies severity 5. Implies normal but significant conditions. • informational—Signifies severity 6. Implies informational messages. • debugging—Signifies severity 7. Implies debugging messages. Note To know the number of Syslog levels supported, you need to select a Syslog level. Once a Syslog level is selected, all the levels below it are also enabled. If you enable <i>critical</i> Syslog level then all levels below it are also enabled. So, all three of them, namely, <i>critical</i>, <i>alerts</i>, and <i>emergencies</i> are enabled.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Message Logging in the Access Points

.

AP Logging to the In-Memory Buffer and Flash

Access points always log messages to an in-memory buffer. Once the buffer reaches 40 KB, its contents are automatically written to flash memory, and a new buffer is created. This process ensures that logs are periodically stored for persistent access.

Administrators can manage and view these logs using AP commands.

- **show logging** command to display the contents of the in-memory logging buffer
- **show flash syslogs** command to list all log files stored in flash, along with other diagnostic files
- **<filename>** command to display the contents of an individual log file stored in flash
- **copy syslogs <filename>** command to transfer a specific syslog file to an external server. To see available options for this command, use **copy syslogs <filename>**

AP Logging to Terminal

Access points support real-time logging of messages to an active SSH terminal session. Administrators can enable this feature using the **terminal monitor** command. To disable real-time logging to the session, use the **terminal monitor disable** command.

In addition to SSH terminal sessions, APs send a subset of log messages to the serial console, which provide another method for real-time monitoring.

Configuring AP Logging to a Syslog Server

The **syslog** command under the AP join profile is used to configure the destination IP address for syslog messages and manage which messages are sent based on severity and facility levels.

Configuring the Syslog Host

- Use the **syslog host <IP address>** command to specify the destination IP address for syslog messages.
- By default, the syslog host is set to **255.255.255.255**, which is the IPv4 limited broadcast address. To forward these broadcasts to one or more syslog servers, configure IP helper addresses on the AP subnet's router.
- To reset the syslog host to **255.255.255.255**, use either the **default syslog host** or **no syslog host** command.
- To prevent the AP from sending syslog messages entirely, use **syslog host 0.0.0.0**.
- If a subnet contains more than 20 access points, avoid logging to the broadcast address to prevent flooding the broadcast domain with log messages. Configure a specific syslog destination IP address. If the AP syslog feature is not in used, set the syslog host to **0.0.0.0** using the **syslog host 0.0.0.0** command

Filtering Messages by Severity

- Use the **syslog level <levelname>** command to filter messages based on severity level.
- By default, the severity level is set to **informational (severity=6)**, meaning all messages except debugging logs are sent to the server.

Filtering Messages by Facility

- Use the **syslog facility <facilityname>** command to filter messages based on facility code. Only messages with a facility code value less than or equal to the configured facility name are sent to the server.
- By default, the facility is set to **kern (code=0)**, so only kernel-related messages are sent.
- To send messages from all facilities, configure the facility as **local7**.
- Additionally, the configured facility name is included in the facility field of transmitted syslog messages.



Note Most AP log messages use the **kern** facility, while terminal access logs (e.g., SSH and console) use the **auth** facility.

Secured Syslog Transmission

- The **syslog secured** command enables the use of Transport Layer Security (TLS) as defined in RFC 5425 to transmit syslog messages securely, instead of using UDP.
- TLS-based syslog transmission is supported starting with software versions 17.9.6 and 17.12.1.

Viewing Syslog Settings

- To display the AP's current syslog settings, use the **show capwap client configuration** command.

Configuring Syslog Server for an AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap profile xyz-ap-profile</code>	Configures an AP profile and enters the AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	syslog facility Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# <code>syslog facility</code>	Configures the facility parameter for Syslog messages.
Step 4	syslog host <i>ip-address</i> Example:	Configures the Syslog server IP address and parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ap-profile)# syslog host 9.3.72.1	
Step 5	syslog level {alerts critical debugging emergencies errors informational notifications warnings} Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# syslog level	Configures the Syslog server logging level. The following are the Syslog server logging levels: • emergencies—Signifies severity 0. Implies that the system is not usable. • alerts—Signifies severity 1. Implies that an immediate action is required. • critical—Signifies severity 2. Implies critical conditions. • errors—Signifies severity 3. Implies error conditions. • warnings—Signifies severity 4. Implies warning conditions. • notifications—Signifies severity 5. Implies normal but significant conditions. • informational—Signifies severity 6. Implies informational messages. • debugging—Signifies severity 7. Implies debugging messages. Note To know the number of Syslog levels supported, you need to select a Syslog level. Once a Syslog level is selected, all the levels below it are also enabled. If you enable <i>critical</i> Syslog level then all levels below it are also enabled. So, all three of them, namely, <i>critical</i>, <i>alerts</i>, and <i>emergencies</i> are enabled.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring AP Syslog Settings (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
- Step 2** Select the APs from the AP list.
The **Edit AP Join Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Management** tab.
- Step 4** Select the **Device** tab.
- Step 5** In the **System Log** section:
- a) From the **Facility Value** drop-down list, select a value.
 - b) Enter the IP address in the **Host IPv4/IPv6 Address** field.
 - c) From the **Log Trap Value** drop-down list, select a value.
 - d) Check or uncheck the box to enable or disable **Secured**.
- Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**
-

Verifying Syslog Server Configurations

Verifying Global Syslog Server Settings for all Access Points

To view the global Syslog server settings for all access points that joins the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
Cisco AP Name : APA0F8.4984.5E48
=====

Cisco AP Identifier : a0f8.4985.d360
Country Code : IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-DN
AP Country Code : IN - India
AP Regulatory Domain
Slot 0 : -A
Slot 1 : -D
MAC Address : a0f8.4984.5e48
IP Address Configuration : DHCP
IP Address : 9.4.172.111
IP Netmask : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address : 9.4.172.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain :
Name Server :
CAPWAP Path MTU : 1485
Telnet State : Disabled
SSH State : Disabled
Jumbo MTU Status : Disabled
Cisco AP Location : default location
Site Tag Name : ST1
RF Tag Name : default-rf-tag
```

Policy Tag Name : PT3
AP join Profile : default-ap-profile
Primary Cisco Controller Name : WLC2
Primary Cisco Controller IP Address : 9.4.172.31
Secondary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Secondary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Tertiary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Tertiary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Administrative State : Enabled
Operation State : Registered
AP Certificate type : Manufacturer Installed Certificate
AP Mode : Local
AP VLAN tagging state : Disabled
AP VLAN tag : 0
CAPWAP Preferred mode : Not Configured
AP Submode : Not Configured
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : notification
Software Version : 16.10.1.24
Boot Version : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
LED State : Enabled
PoE Pre-Standard Switch : Disabled
PoE Power Injector MAC Address : Disabled
Power Type/Mode : PoE/Full Power (normal mode)
Number of Slots : 3
AP Model : AIR-AP1852I-D-K9
IOS Version : 16.10.1.24
Reset Button : Disabled
AP Serial Number : KWC212904UB
Management Frame Protection Validation : Disabled
AP User Mode : Automatic
AP User Name : Not Configured
AP 802.1X User Mode : Global
AP 802.1X User Name : Not Configured
Cisco AP System Logging Host : 9.4.172.116
AP Up Time : 11 days 1 hour 15 minutes 52 seconds
AP CAPWAP Up Time : 6 days 3 hours 11 minutes 6 seconds
Join Date and Time : 09/05/2018 04:18:52
Join Taken Time : 3 minutes 1 second
Join Priority : 1
Ethernet Port Duplex : Auto
Ethernet Port Speed : Auto
AP Link Latency : Disable
AP Lag Configuration Status : Disabled
AP Lag Operational Status : Disabled
Lag Support for AP : Yes
Rogue Detection : Enabled
Rogue Containment auto-rate : Disabled
Rogue Containment of standalone FlexConnect APs : Disabled
Rogue Detection Report Interval : 10
Rogue AP minimum RSSI : -90
Rogue AP minimum transient time : 0
AP TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP TCP MSS Size : 1250
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Size : 1250
Hyperlocation Admin Status : Disabled
Retransmit count : 5
Retransmit interval : 3
Fabric status : Disabled
FIPS status : Disabled

```

WLANCC status : Disabled
USB Module Type : USB Module
USB Module State : Enabled
USB Operational State : Disabled
USB Override : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Admin status : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Oper status : Disabled

```

Verifying Syslog Server Settings for a Specific Access Point

To view the Syslog server settings for a specific access point, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap name <ap-name> config general
show ap name APA0F8.4984.5E48 config general
Cisco AP Name : APA0F8.4984.5E48
=====

Cisco AP Identifier : a0f8.4985.d360
Country Code : IN
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-A 802.11a:-DN
AP Country Code : IN - India
AP Regulatory Domain
Slot 0 : -A
Slot 1 : -D
MAC Address : a0f8.4984.5e48
IP Address Configuration : DHCP
IP Address : 9.4.172.111
IP Netmask : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address : 9.4.172.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain :
Name Server :
CAPWAP Path MTU : 1485
Telnet State : Disabled
SSH State : Disabled
Jumbo MTU Status : Disabled
Cisco AP Location : default location
Site Tag Name : ST1
RF Tag Name : default-rf-tag
Policy Tag Name : PT3
AP join Profile : default-ap-profile
Primary Cisco Controller Name : WLC2
Primary Cisco Controller IP Address : 9.4.172.31
Secondary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Secondary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Tertiary Cisco Controller Name : Not Configured
Tertiary Cisco Controller IP Address : 0.0.0.0
Administrative State : Enabled
Operation State : Registered
AP Certificate type : Manufacturer Installed Certificate
AP Mode : Local
AP VLAN tagging state : Disabled
AP VLAN tag : 0
CAPWAP Preferred mode : Not Configured
AP Submode : Not Configured
Office Extend Mode : Disabled
Remote AP Debug : Disabled
Logging Trap Severity Level : notification
Software Version : 16.10.1.24
Boot Version : 1.1.2.4
Mini IOS Version : 0.0.0.0
Stats Reporting Period : 180
LED State : Enabled
PoE Pre-Standard Switch : Disabled

```

PoE Power Injector MAC Address : Disabled
Power Type/Mode : PoE/Full Power (normal mode)
Number of Slots : 3
AP Model : AIR-AP1852I-D-K9
IOS Version : 16.10.1.24
Reset Button : Disabled
AP Serial Number : KWC212904UB
Management Frame Protection Validation : Disabled
AP User Mode : Automatic
AP User Name : Not Configured
AP 802.1X User Mode : Global
AP 802.1X User Name : Not Configured
Cisco AP System Logging Host : 9.4.172.116
AP Up Time : 11 days 1 hour 15 minutes 52 seconds
AP CAPWAP Up Time : 6 days 3 hours 11 minutes 6 seconds
Join Date and Time : 09/05/2018 04:18:52
Join Taken Time : 3 minutes 1 second
Join Priority : 1
Ethernet Port Duplex : Auto
Ethernet Port Speed : Auto
AP Link Latency : Disable
AP Lag Configuration Status : Disabled
AP Lag Operational Status : Disabled
Lag Support for AP : Yes
Rogue Detection : Enabled
Rogue Containment auto-rate : Disabled
Rogue Containment of standalone FlexConnect APs : Disabled
Rogue Detection Report Interval : 10
Rogue AP minimum RSSI : -90
Rogue AP minimum transient time : 0
AP TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP TCP MSS Size : 1250
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Adjust : Enabled
AP IPv6 TCP MSS Size : 1250
Hyperlocation Admin Status : Disabled
Retransmit count : 5
Retransmit interval : 3
Fabric status : Disabled
FIPS status : Disabled
WLANCC status : Disabled
USB Module Type : USB Module
USB Module State : Enabled
USB Operational State : Disabled
USB Override : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Admin status : Disabled
Lawful-Interception Oper status : Disabled



CHAPTER 84

Login Banner

- [Information About Login Banner, on page 831](#)
- [Configuring a Login Banner \(GUI\), on page 831](#)
- [Configuring a Login Banner, on page 832](#)

Information About Login Banner

Login banner is used to display a warning or message when you try to login to the controller.

To create a login banner, you must configure a delimiting character that notifies the system that the following text string must be displayed as the banner, and then the text string itself. The delimiting character is repeated at the end of the text string to signify the end of the banner. The delimiting character can be any single character in the extended ASCII character set, but once defined as the delimiter, that character cannot be used in the text string for the banner.



Note When HTTP authentication is configured using TACACS+/RADIUS, the banner message does not display on the Web UI.

Configuring a Login Banner (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Administration > Device .
Step 2	In the General tab, in the Banner field, enter a name for the device and a message.
Step 3	Click Apply .
-

Configuring a Login Banner

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	banner login <i>c message c</i> Example: Device(config)# banner login \$ Access for authorized users only. Please enter your username and password. \$	Specifies the login message. • <i>c</i>— Enters the delimiting character of your choice, for example, a pound sign (#), and press the Return key. The delimiting character signifies the beginning and end of the banner text. Characters after the ending delimiter are discarded. • <i>message</i>— Enters a login message up to 255 characters. You cannot use the delimiting character in the message.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 5	show running-config Example: Device# show running-config	Verifies your entries.
Step 6	copy running-config startup-config Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.



CHAPTER 85

Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband

- [Introduction to Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband, on page 833](#)
- [Limitations of MBO, on page 835](#)
- [Configuring MBO on a WLAN, on page 835](#)
- [Verifying MBO Configuration, on page 836](#)

Introduction to Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband

The Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband (MBO) feature enables better use of Wi-Fi network resources. This feature is built on the fundamental premise that both Wi-Fi networks and client devices have information that can enable better roaming decisions and improve the overall performance of Wi-Fi networks and user experience.



Note This feature applies to MBO certified clients only.

This feature certifies the interoperability of a bundle of features that are defined by the IEEE standard amendments 802.11k, 802.11v, and 802.11u, as well as the Wi-Fi-Alliance defined specifications. These technologies are used to exchange access points (AP), band, and channel preferences, link quality, and status information between AP and client device.

MBO focuses on the following:

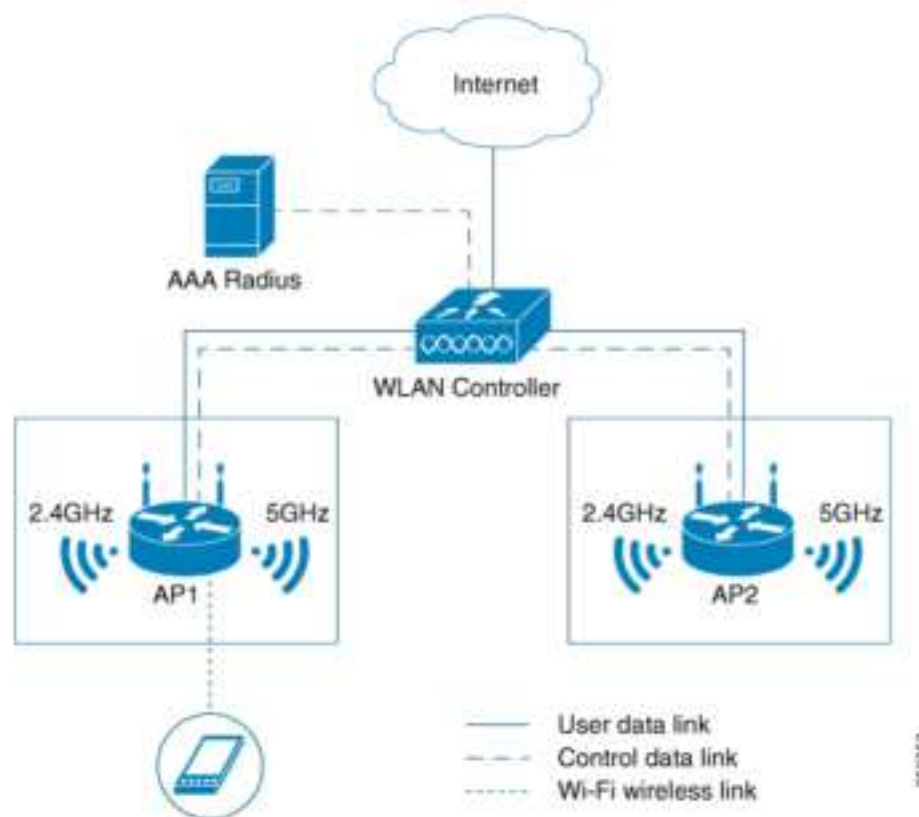
- Interactions between the wireless clients and APs
- Exchange of AP and client knowledge about the wireless medium (such as RF neighbors)
- Allow clients to work with APs and take intelligent decisions on the connection and improve the quality of service.

Wi-Fi Alliance Agile Multiband Topology

Multiple components form a Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network, which may vary based on the wireless network deployment.

The following figure depicts the system topology for connecting Wi-Fi Agile Multiband devices.

Figure 10: Wi-Fi Agile Multiband Wireless Infrastructure Network



The following components form a Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network:

- **Access Point (AP):** A Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network contains one or more Wi-Fi Agile Multiband APs.
- **WLAN Controller:** A Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network contains zero or more WLAN controllers that provide centralized management and other features to the interconnected APs.
- **Client Station (STA):** A Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network contains zero or more STAs. These client STAs are single WLAN capable only.
- **RADIUS Server:** A Wi-Fi Agile Multiband wireless infrastructure network contains zero or more RADIUS Servers that provide Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) services.

Supported MBO Components

MBO AP Capability

A new information element is added to the Beacon, Probe Response, Association Response and Re Association Response Frames for 802.11ax APs to inform clients about MBO support.



Note The new information element indicates that Cisco APs are not cellular data aware.

When an SSID is configured on an AP, the MBO AP capability is enabled.

802.11k/v/r Support

One of the prerequisites for MBO is that APs need to support 802.11k/v/r standard-based technologies. Each of the technologies has their own requirements, such as:

- 802.11k – For 802.11k, send the preferred list of AP neighbors to the client upon request and send a beacon request to a client when AP requires a beacon report from the client.
- 802.11v – For 802.11v, steer the client to a less congested AP (not in a MBO client's non-prefer/non-operable channel list that is sent during the association request and/or WNM notification request) using BSS transition.
- 802.11r – The 802.11r MBO-related capabilities are not supported.

802.11u ANQP or GAS Support

For MBO, the 802.11ax APs must have 802.11u ANQP or GAS support.

The following are the prerequisites:

- ANQP responds to the ANQP request for a neighbor report ANQP-element.
- Before authentication, Layer 2 transport needs to be available in the network between a mobile device and server for an advertisement protocol frame.

MBO Beacon Request

Whenever an AP sends a beacon request to the client, the MBO-compliant client responds with a beacon report.

MBO Associate Disallowed IE

Cisco APs include an **Associate Disallowed IE** in their Beacon/Probe response/(Re) association response when they cannot accommodate any new client.

Limitations of MBO

All non-802.11ax access points are not supported.

Configuring MBO on a WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo	Configures a WLAN and enters the WLAN configuration mode. Note If you use WPA2 WLAN while configuring MBO for WLAN, you need to enable PMF in your configuration.
Step 3	mbo Example: Device(config-wlan)# mbo	Configures MBO support on WLAN. Note Use the no mbo command to disable MBO configuration.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying MBO Configuration

To view the MBO configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 1
WLAN Profile Name      : wlan-demo
=====
Identifier              : 1
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : ssid-demo
Status                 : Disabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
802.11ax parameters
  OFDMA Downlink       : Enabled
  OFDMA Uplink         : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Downlink     : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Uplink       : Enabled
  BSS Color            : Enabled
  Partial BSS Color    : Enabled
  BSS Color Code       : 0
  BSS Target Wake Up Time : Enabled
  BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support : Enabled
mDNS Gateway Status    : Bridge
WIFI Alliance Agile Multiband : Enabled
```

To view the non-operational or non-preferred channels, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 3413.e8b5.f252 detail
Client MAC Address : 3413.e8b5.f252
Client IPv4 Address : 192.165.1.53
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::98bb:ea89:f016:3332
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 00ee.ab18.d920
AP Name: ssap-pp
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
```

```
Policy Profile : prof
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 1
WLAN Profile Name: mbo_1
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): mbo_1
BSSID : 00ee.ab18.d92f
Connected For : 25 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Channel : 36
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Session Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1779 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 0
  APSD ACs : BK, BE, VI, VO
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : 1.5
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
  Move Count : 0
  Mobility Role : Local
  Mobility Roam Type : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 05/15/2019 16:03:34 IST
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client : 05/15/2019 16:03:34 IST
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 26 seconds
Policy Type : N/A
Encryption Cipher : None
User Personal Network : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN : default
Multicast VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Managed WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment : capwap_90400001
  IIF ID : 0x90400001
  Authorized : TRUE
  Session timeout : 1800
  Common Session ID: 0000000000000000BB92939C5
  Acct Session ID : 0x00000000
  Last Tried Aaa Server Details:
  Server IP :
  Auth Method Status List
  Method : None
  Local Policies:
  Service Template : wlan_svc_prof_local (priority 254)
```

```
VLAN                : 165
Absolute-Timer      : 1800
Server Policies:
Resultant Policies:
VLAN Name           : VLAN0165
VLAN                 : 165
Absolute-Timer      : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable       : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request   : Not implemented
  Short Preamble    : Not implemented
  PBCC              : Not implemented
  Channel Agility   : Not implemented
  Listen Interval   : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Implemented
11v DMS Capable    : No
QoS Map Capable    : Yes
Non-Preferred Channels : 40
Non-Operable Channels : 56
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : N/A
FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
FlexConnect Central Association : N/A
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received : 0
  Number of Bytes Sent : 0
  Number of Packets Received : 0
  Number of Packets Sent : 0
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -34 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 56 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
EoGRE : No/Simple client
```




CHAPTER 86

SNMP Traps

- [Information About Configuring SNMP Traps, on page 839](#)
- [Configuring SNMP Traps \(GUI\), on page 840](#)
- [Enabling Access Points Traps \(CLI\), on page 840](#)
- [Enabling Wireless Client Traps \(CLI\), on page 841](#)
- [Enabling Mesh Traps \(CLI\), on page 841](#)
- [Enabling RF Traps \(CLI\), on page 842](#)
- [Enabling Rogue, Mobility, RRM, and General Traps \(CLI\), on page 842](#)
- [Verifying SNMP Wireless Traps, on page 843](#)

Information About Configuring SNMP Traps

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Traps are alert messages sent from a remote SNMP-enabled device such as the controller, to an SNMP manager. Traps are unreliable because the receiver does not send acknowledgments when the device receives traps. Hence, the sender cannot determine if the traps were received.

In order to configure the controller to send SNMP notifications, you must enter at least one **snmp-server host** command. If you do not enter an **snmp-server host** command, no notifications are sent.

In order to enable multiple hosts, you must specify separate **snmp-server host** command for each host. You can specify multiple notification types in the command for each host. When multiple **snmp-server host** commands are given for the same host and notification of either trap or inform, each command overwrites the previous command. Only the last **snmp-server host** command is taken into account. For example, if you enter an **snmp-server host** inform command for a host and then enter another **snmp-server host** inform command for the same host, the second command replaces the first.

Specify the **snmp-server enable traps wireless <TrapName>** command in order to specify which SNMP notifications are sent globally. In order for a host to receive wireless notifications, at least one **snmp-server enable traps wireless <TrapName>** command and the **snmp-server host** command for that host must be enabled. However, some notification types cannot be controlled with the **snmp-server enable** command. And some notification types are enabled by default. For example, few AP related traps **crash**, **register**, and **noradiocards** are enabled by default.

Configuring SNMP Traps (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > SNMP**.
The SNMP page is displayed. By default, the SNMP mode is disabled. To enable or disable SMNP, click the **SNMP Mode** toggle button.
- Step 2** Choose the **Wireless Traps** tab.
By default, all SNMP wireless traps are disabled except the **Access Point** trap. To enable all the wireless traps, click **Enable All**.
- Step 3** Select the wireless SNMP trap that you wish to enable. Click the **Select All** check box to enable all the trapflags present in the trap. For example, to enable all the trapflags in the **Mesh** trap section, check the **Select All** check box present at the right-hand corner of the section. Uncheck the **Select All** check box to remove selection.
- Note**
In the **Access Point** trap, **Crash**, **No Radio Cards**, and **Register** trapflags are enabled by default. Select **Broken Antenna** trapflag to detect broken antenna. Select **AP Stats** trapflag to enable a trap for AP statistics.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling Access Points Traps (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps wireless AP Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless AP	Enables wireless SNMP traps for access points.
Step 3	trapflags ap { authorization broken-antenna crash interfaceup ipaddrfallback mfp mode noradiocards register } Example: Device# trapflags ap authorization	Enables or disables sending AP related trapflags. The crash , noradiocards , and register trapflags are enabled by default.

Enabling Wireless Client Traps (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnMobileStation Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnMobileStation	Enables wireless client traps.
Step 3	trapflags client dot11 { assocfail associate authenticate authfail deauthenticate disassociate } Example: Device# trapflags client dot11 assocfail	Enables or disables dot11 related trapflags for clients.
Step 4	trapflags client excluded Example: Device# trapflags client excluded	Enables the excluded trapflags for clients.

Enabling Mesh Traps (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps wireless MESH Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless MESH	Enables wireless mesh traps.
Step 3	trapflags mesh { abate-snr authentication-failure child-moved 	Enables or disables mesh trapflags.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	excessive-children excessive-hopcount onset-snr parent-change } Example: Device# trapflags mesh abate-snr	

Enabling RF Traps (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnAutoRF Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnAutoRF	Enables wireless RF related traps.
Step 3	trapflags rrm-params{channels tx-power } Example: Device# trapflags rrm-params channels	Enables or disables sending RRM parameter update related traps.
Step 4	trapflags rrm-profile{coverage interference load noise } Example: Device# trapflags rrm-profile coverage	Enables or disables RRM profile related traps.

Enabling Rogue, Mobility, RRM, and General Traps (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps wireless rogue Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless rogue	Enables traps for wireless rogue.
Step 3	trapflags rogue-ap Example: Device# trapflags rogue-ap	Enables rogue AP detection trapflag.
Step 4	trapflags rogue-client Example: Device# trapflags rogue-client	Enables rogue client detection trapflag.
Step 5	snmp-server enable traps wireless wireless_mobility Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless wireless_mobility	Enables traps for wireless mobility.
Step 6	trapflags anchor Example: Device# trapflags anchor	Enables anchor trapflags.
Step 7	snmp-server enable traps wireless RRM Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless RRM	Enables traps for wireless RRM.
Step 8	trapflags rrm-params group Example: Device# trapflags rrm-params group	Enables or disables the RRM parameter related traps, when the RF manager group changes.
Step 9	snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnGeneral Example: Device# snmp-server enable traps wireless bsnGeneral	Enables general controller traps.

Verifying SNMP Wireless Traps

To verify the various SNMP traps enabled, use the following command:

```
Device# show run | sec trapflag
trapflags ap crash
trapflags ap noradiocards
```

```
trapflags ap register
trapflags rogue-client
```



CHAPTER 87

Disabling Clients with Random MAC Address

- [Information About Disabling Clients with Random MAC Addresses, on page 845](#)
- [Configuring Random MAC Address Deny \(CLI\), on page 845](#)
- [Verifying Denial of Clients with a Random MAC Address, on page 846](#)

Information About Disabling Clients with Random MAC Addresses

Wireless clients used to associate with a wireless network using the MAC address that is assigned, for the Wi-Fi network interface card (NIC), during manufacture. This globally unique MAC address assigned by the manufacturer is also known as burn-in address (BIA). BIA tracks end users with the help of the MAC address of the Wi-Fi. To improve the privacy of end user products, a locally enabled random MAC address is enabled for Wi-Fi operations.

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 Release, clients joining a wireless network using a random MAC address could not be tracked with ease. From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 Release onwards, the controller is equipped with a knob that denies the entry of clients with a random MAC address into the network. When the *local-admin-mac deny* knob is enabled on the controller, the association of a client joining the network with a random MAC address is rejected. By default, this feature is disabled on the controller.

This feature is not supported in Cisco Wave 1 access points.

Configuring Random MAC Address Deny (CLI)

To stop the entry of clients with a random MAC addresses from joining a wireless network, enable the random MAC address deny knob, by following the steps given below.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-profile-name</i> <1-4096> <i>SSID-network-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name 8 ssid-network-name	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Shuts down the WLAN.
Step 4	[no] local-admin-mac deny Example: Device(config-wlan)# local-admin-mac deny	Enables the random MAC address deny knob. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Saves the configuration, exits the configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Denial of Clients with a Random MAC Address

To verify the denial of a client with a random MAC address, run the **show wlan name** *wlan-profile-name* | **begin locally** command:

```
Device# show wlan name laa | begin locally
Locally Administered Address Configuration
Deny LAA clients                : Enabled
```

To verify if a client address is a random MAC address, run the **show wireless client mac-address** *MAC-address* **detail** command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 72xx.38xx.2axx detail
Client MAC Address : 72xx.38xx.2axx
Client MAC Type    : Locally Administered Address
Client IPv4 Address : 9.1.1.1
Client IPv6 Addresses : fexx::71xx:27xx:a7xx:efxx
Client Username     : 72xx.38xx.2axx
```

To verify how many random MAC clients are present in the system, run the **show wireless stats client detail** command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
Client Summary
-----
Current Clients : 1
Excluded Clients: 0
Disabled Clients: 0
Foreign Clients : 0
```



```
Anchor Clients   : 0
Local Clients    : 1
Idle Clients     : 0
Locally Administered MAC Clients: 1
```

To display the statistics of a specific client, run the **show wlan id <1-4096> client stats** command:

```
Device# show wlan id 8 client stats
Wlan Profile Name: wlan-profile, Wlan Id: 8
Current client state statistics:
```

```
-----
Authenticating      : 0
Mobility            : 0
IP Learn            : 0
WebAuth Pending     : 0
Run                 : 1
Locally Administered MAC Clients      : 1
```



Note Run the **show configuration wlan wlan-name** command on an AP, to view the status of the locally administered address (LAA) on the WLAN.



CHAPTER 88

Dataplane Packet Logging

- [Information About Dataplane Packet Logging, on page 849](#)
- [Enabling or Disabling Debug Level \(CLI\), on page 850](#)
- [Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Ingress Path \(CLI\), on page 850](#)
- [Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Punt-Inject Path \(CLI\), on page 851](#)
- [Verifying Dataplane Packet Logging, on page 852](#)
- [Clearing Logs and Conditions in Global and Filtered Trace Buffers, on page 853](#)

Information About Dataplane Packet Logging

While onboarding wireless clients, you might encounter problems arising from client IP address allocation, Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) resolution, and so on, which require debugging. For rapid debugging of such issues on the controller, the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), Neighbor Discovery, and ARP packets that go to and from the wireless clients are unconditionally logged.

Packet-logging serviceability captures connectivity information related to wireless clients. Serviceability is divided into the following categories:

- **Global Trace Log:** Global trace logging is a mechanism to capture client connectivity information, and is enabled by default.
- **Filtered Trace Log:** To start packet logging on a filtered trace buffer, you must enable filters using **debug** commands. Filters capture only the specific packet type or the packets based on the MAC address of the clients.

The following are the features of packet logging:

- In addition to DHCP, Neighbor Discovery, and ARP packets, you can also add or remove other packet capture filters.
- Display filters are set to pick a subset of logged packets.
- Packet-logging data provides information such as the client MAC address, client IP address, VLAN, interface, packet type and time delta, that is required for debugging.

Enabling or Disabling Debug Level (CLI)

To enable or disable debug information for global and filtered logic, follow these steps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer debug-level {all error info trace warning} Example: Device# debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer debug-level all	Enables the debug level information for global and filtered logic. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Ingress Path (CLI)

To enable packet logging in global and filtered buffer in the ingress path, follow these steps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer ingress global-trace Example: Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer ingress global-trace	Enables the Quantum Flow Processor on global trace buffer in the ingress path. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.
Step 3	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer	Enables the condition for CAPWAP to log packet information to the filtered trace buffer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	ingress filtered-trace capwap {ipv4 A.B.C.D ipv6 X:X:X:X::X keepalive} Example: <pre>Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer ingress filtered-trace capwap ipv4 209.165.200.224/27</pre>	Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.
Step 4	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer ingress filtered-trace wclient {ipv6-nd ipv6-ra mac-address H.H.H} Example: <pre>Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer ingress filtered-trace wclient ipv6-nd</pre>	Enables the condition to log packet information of the wireless client to the filtered trace buffer. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Enabling Packet Logging in Global and Filtered Buffer in Punt-Inject Path (CLI)

To enable packet logging in global and filtered trace buffer in the punt-inject path, follow these steps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject global-trace Example: <pre>Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject global-trace</pre>	Enables the Quantum Flow Processor in global trace buffer in the punt-inject path. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.
Step 3	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject filtered-trace capwap {ipv4 A.B.C.D ipv6 X:X:X:X::X keepalive} Example:	Enables the condition for CAPWAP to log packet information to the filtered trace buffer in the punt-inject path. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject filtered-trace capwap ipv4 209.165.200.224/27	
Step 4	[no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject filtered-trace wlclient {ipv6-nd ipv6-ra mac-address H.H.H} Example: Device# [no] debug platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless datapath trace-buffer punt-inject filtered-trace wlclient ipv6-nd	Enables the condition to log packet information of the wireless client to the filtered trace buffer, in the punt-inject path. Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Verifying Dataplane Packet Logging

To show trace buffer-configured conditions, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
conditions
LogTrace Event: Enabled
Trace wlclient-MACs:
    8c85.90ee.ca92
allow_all_AP_kalives: enabled
AP_kalive cnt=1, AP_kalive6 cnt=0
IP0: 49.1.0.73
```

To view all the log entries in the filtered trace buffer, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
filtered-trace all
Trace wlclient-MACs: 8c85.90ee.ca92
Trace-Buffer for Ingress: Enabled
Total allocated global-log buffer: 16384
Total allocated filtered-log v=buffers: 4096

<0 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213207
c=0
<1 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213236
c=0
<2 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213264
c=0
<3 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213293
c=0
<4 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213321
c=0
<5 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213350
c=0
```

To view the number of entries based on a count, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
filtered-trace 3
Trace wlclient-MACs: 8c85.90ee.ca92
Trace-Buffer for Ingress: Enabled
Total allocated global-log buffer: 16384
```

```
Total allocated filtered-log v=buffers: 4096

<18 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213720
c=0
<19 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213748
c=0
<20 KEEP_ALIVE: CAPWAP peer=49.1.0.73 udp=5256 local=49.1.1.2 udp=5247 vlan=49, dt=213777
c=0

>> 3 entries displayed
    21 entries found in filtered-log buffer
    21 entries ever collected for filtered-log buffer
```

Clearing Logs and Conditions in Global and Filtered Trace Buffers

To clear conditions and logs in the global and filtered trace buffers, use the following commands:

```
Device# clear platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
all
Trace, clear all trace configuration & buffer.
```

```
Device# clear platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
conditions
Trace, clear trace configuration
```

```
Device# clear platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
filtered-trace
Trace, clear trace Q
```

```
Device# clear platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless trace-buffer ingress
global-trace
Trace, clear trace global Q
```




CHAPTER 89

Streaming Telemetry

- [Information About Streaming Telemetry](#) , on page 855
- [Gather Points](#), on page 855
- [Subscription](#), on page 856
- [Transport](#) , on page 857
- [Scale Considerations](#) , on page 857
- [Session](#), on page 857
- [Configuring Telemetry on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller](#), on page 858
- [On-Change Telemetry Support](#) , on page 865
- [Supported XPathS for On-Change Subscription](#), on page 865
- [Troubleshooting Telemetry Support](#), on page 869
- [Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter](#), on page 871

Information About Streaming Telemetry

Streaming telemetry is a new paradigm in monitoring the health of a network. It provides a mechanism to efficiently stream configuration and operational data of interest from the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. This streamed data is transmitted in a structured format to remote management stations for monitoring and troubleshooting purposes.

This topic explains how to enable the telemetry support the Wi-Fi and system health-related data. Not that telemetry support can be enhanced up to a scale of 1000 access points (APs) and 15000 clients. A single collector setup can be used to subscribe to the requested XPathS. A telemetry feed can be used to subscribe to data elements to monitor APs and clients effectively. Data is provided through the native Cisco wireless models.

Gather Points

Gather points are the top-level XPathS and act as the smallest unit of data exported by a target. Any subscription to an XPath raises to the level of the Gather point, and the target sends updates comprising of all the leaves defined under this Gather point. For example, when you subscribe to an XPath `/access-point-operdata/radio-oper-data/vap-oper-config/ssid`, which is part of the Gather point `/access-point-operdata/radio-oper-data/vap-oper-config`, the reply will comprise of all the attributes that are a part of the Gather point, in this case, AP-VAP-ID, SSID, and WLAN ID.

The following lists the supported Gather points for an XPathS.

Table 54: Supported Gather Points and Subscription Intervals

Supported Gather Point	Subscription Interval
<i>wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/ethernet-mac-wtp-mac-map</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/capwap-data</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/cdp-cache-data/</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/radio-oper-stats</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/radio-oper-data</i>	≥ 180 secs
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/oper-data</i>	≥ 180 secs
<i>/wireless-rrm-oper:rrm-oper-data/rrm-measurement</i>	≥ 180 secs
<i>/wireless-client-oper:client-oper-data/dot11-oper-data</i>	≥ 180 secs
<i>/wireless-client-oper:client-oper-data/common-oper-data</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-client-oper:client-oper-data/policy-data</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/wireless-client-oper:client-oper-data/sisf-db-mac/ipv4-binding/ip-key/ip-addr</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-client-oper:client-oper-data/traffic-stats</i>	≥ 180 secs
<i>/lldp-ios-xe-oper:lldp-entries/lldp-state-details</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/device-hardware-xe-oper:device-hardware-data/device-hardware</i>	≥ 15 mins
<i>/wireless-mobility-oper:mobility-oper-data/mobility-node-data/ulink-status</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/process-cpu-ios-xe-oper:cpu-usage/cpu-utilization/one-minute</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/platform-sw-ios-xe-oper:cisco-platform-software/control-processes</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/environment-ios-xe-oper:environment-sensors/environment-sensor</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/lldp-ios-xe-oper:lldp-entries/lldp-intf-details</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/interfaces-ios-xe-oper:interfaces/interface</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/platform-ios-xe-oper:components/component</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/mdt-oper-v2:mdt-oper-v2-data</i>	≥ 60 secs
<i>/wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/radio-oper-data/radio-band-info</i>	≥ 180 secs

Subscription

A subscription binds one or more Gather points and destinations. A Multicast Default (MDT) streams data for each Gather point at the configured frequency (cadence-based streaming).

Transport

The protocol that is used for the connection between a publisher and a receiver is known as the transport protocol, and this decides how data are transmitted. This protocol is independent of the management protocol for configured subscriptions. The supported transport protocols are gNMI and gRPC. The gNMI transport protocol supports JSON encoding of data, while gRPC supports Key-value Google Protocol Buffers (kvGPB) encoding.

Scale Considerations

The following table provides the scale numbers that are applicable to the native model for an XPath set.

Table 55: Scaling Considerations to the Native Model

Attribute	Scale
AP	4000
Client	15000
SSID Per AP	6
BSSID per AP	12
Neighbors per AP	60 (30x2)
Number of Physical Neighbor APs	49
Number of Neighbor Records	60000 records

Session

You can choose to initiate the subscription by establishing a telemetry session between the controller and the receiver. A telemetry session can be initiated using:

- gNMI Dial-In Mode
- gRPC Dial-Out Mode

gNMI Dial-In-Mode

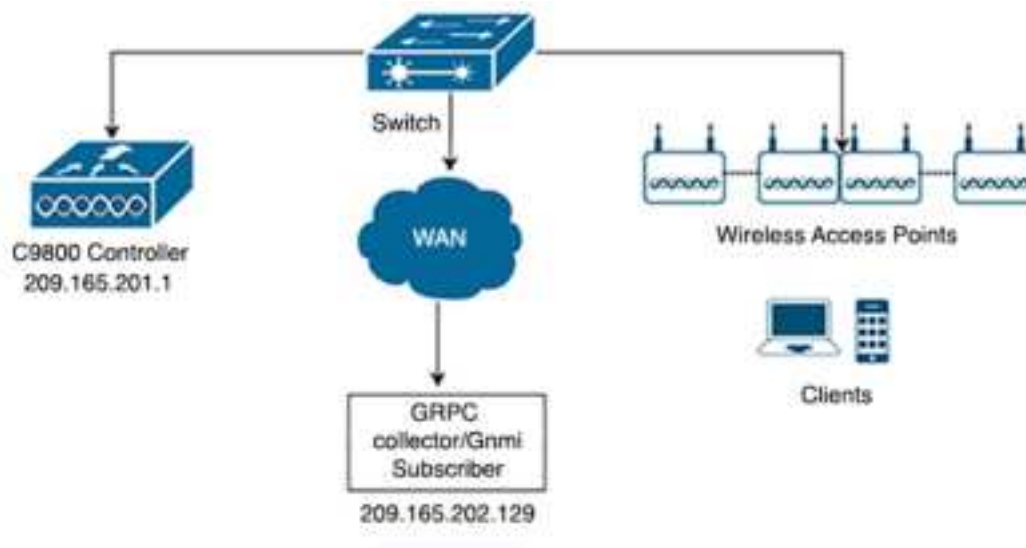
In a dial-in mode, a Model-Driven Telemetry (MDT) receiver dials in to the controller, and subscribes dynamically to one or more Gather points or subscriptions. The controller acts as the server, and the receiver as the client. The controller streams telemetry data through the same session. The dial-in mode of subscriptions is dynamic, which gets terminated when the receiver cancels the subscription or when the session is terminated.

gRPC- Dial-Out-Mode

In a dial-out mode, the controller dials out to the receiver. Here the controller acts as a client and receiver acts as a server. In this mode, Gather points and destinations are configured and bound together into one or more subscriptions. The controller continually attempts to establish a session with each destination in the subscription, and streams data to the receiver. The dial-out mode of subscriptions is persistent.

Figure 11: Telemetry Session

The following figure explains the telemetry session:



Note When the VRF definition is removed and linked to a telemetry source interface, configure the following command along with the name-server settings to ensure DNS resolution functions correctly.

```
ip domain lookup vrf <vrf name> source-interface <>
ip name-server vrf <vrf name> <domain server ip>
```

Configuring Telemetry on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller

To configure telemetry on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, perform the following:

1. Enable gNXI in an Insecure Mode
2. Enable gNXI in a Secure Mode
3. Verify the Status of the Subscription
4. Manage Configured Subscriptions

Enabling gNXI in Insecure Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	gnxi Example: Device(config)# gnxi	Starts the gNXI process.
Step 4	gnxi server Example: Device(config)# gnxi server	Enables the gNXI server in insecure mode.
Step 5	gnxi port <i>port-number</i> Example: Device(config)# gnxi 50000	Sets the gNXI port. The default insecure gNXI port is 9339.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show gnxi state Example: Device# show gnxi state	Displays the status of gNXI server.

Example

The following is a sample output of the **show gnxi state** command:

```
Device# show gnxi state
State Status
-----
Enabled Up
```

Enabling gNXI in Secure Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# <code>enable</code>	Enables privileged EXEC mode Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	gnxi Example: Device(config)# <code>gnxi</code>	Starts the gNXI process.
Step 4	gnxi secure-server Example: Device(config)# <code>gnxi secure-server</code>	Enables the gNXI server in secure mode.
Step 5	gnxi secure-trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>gnxi secure-trustpoint</code>	Specifies the trustpoint and certificate set that gNXI uses for authentication.
Step 6	gnxi secure-client-auth Example: Device(config)# <code>gnxi secure-client-auth</code>	(Optional) The gNXI process authenticates the client certificate against the root certificate.
Step 7	gnxi secure-port Example: Device(config)# <code>gnxi secure-port</code>	(Optional) Sets the gNXI port. The default insecure gNXI port is 9339.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 9	show gnxi state Example: Device# <code>show gnxi state</code>	Displays the gNXI servers status.

Example

The following is sample output from the **show gnxi state** command:

```
Device# show gnxi state
State Status
-----
Enabled Up
```

Verifying the Status of a Telemetry Subscription on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller

To verify the status of a subscription, use the following command:

```
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription all
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription 101
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription 101 detail
Device# show telemetry ietf subscription 101 receiver
Device# show telemetry internal connection
Device# show telemetry internal subscription all stats
Device# show telemetry receiver all
Device# show telemetry receiver name <receivers-name>
Device# show telemetry connection all
```

Managing Configured Subscriptions on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller

Use the **show platform software ndbman switch {switch-number | active | standby} models** command to display the list of YANG models that support on-change subscription.



Note Currently, you can only use the gRPC protocol for managing configured subscriptions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	telemetry ietf subscription id Example: Device(Config)# telemetry ietf subscription 112	Creates a telemetry subscription and enters telemetry-subscription mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	encoding encode-kvgpb Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# encoding encode-kvgpb</pre>	Specifies the Key-value Google Protocol Buffers (kvGPB) encoding.
Step 5	filter xpath path Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# filter xpath /wireless-access-point-oper:access-point-oper-data/capwap-data</pre>	Specifies the XPath filter for the subscription.
Step 6	source-address { A.B.C.D X:X:X:X::X } Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# source-address ip-address 209.165.200.225 2001:DB8::1</pre>	Configures the source IP address on the telemetry subscription interface.
Step 7	stream yang-push path Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# stream yang-push</pre>	Configures a stream for the subscription.
Step 8	update-policy {on-change periodic} period Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# update-policy periodic 3000</pre>	Configures a periodic update policy for the subscription.
Step 9	receiver ip address ip-address receiver-port protocol protocol profile name Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# receiver ip address 209.165.201.1 protocol grpc-tcp</pre>	Configures a periodic update policy for the subscription.
Step 10	end Example: <pre>Device(config-mdt-subs)# end</pre>	Exits telemetry-subscription configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Zero Trust Telemetry

To configure zero trust telemetry on a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, perform the following:

1. Define a protocol
2. Define a named receiver
3. Configure telemetry subscription

Define a Protocol

Before you begin

Define crypto trustpoints (CAforMDTserver and IDforWLCclient) and certificates before the telemetry configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	telemetry protocol grpc profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# telemetry protocol grpc profile mtlsyang	Configures the protocol gRPC profile and enters gRPC profile name.
Step 3	ca-trustpoint <i>ca-for-mdt-server</i> Example: Device(config-mdt-protocol-grpc-profile)# ca-trustpoint CAforMDTserver	Adds the server CA trustpoint.
Step 4	id-trustpoint <i>wlc-id-trustpoint</i> Example: Device(config-mdt-protocol-grpc-profile)# id-trustpoint IDforWLCclient	Adds the client ID trustpoint.

Define a Named Receiver

This procedure defines:

- FQDN DNS name
- Crypto protocol definition

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	telemetry receiver protocol <i>receiver-name</i> Example:	Configures the receiver name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# telemetry receiver protocol collector	
Step 3	host name <i>FQDN-receiver</i> Example: Device(config-mdt-protocol-receiver)# host name collector-telemetry.cisco.com 57500	Adds FQDN DNS name of receiver.
Step 4	protocol grpc-tls profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-mdt-protocol-receiver)# protocol grpc-tls profile mtlsyang	Defines the gRPC TLS profile named mtlsyang.

Configure Telemetry Subscription

This procedure configures:

- Xpath
- Named receiver
- Protocol

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	telemetry ietf subscription <i>id</i> Example: Device(config)# telemetry ietf subscription 113	Creates a telemetry subscription and enters telemetry-subscription mode.
Step 4	encoding encode-kvgpb Example: Device(config-mdt-subs)# encoding encode-kvgpb	Specifies the Key-value Google Protocol Buffers (kvGPB) encoding.
Step 5	filter xpath <i>path</i> Example:	Specifies the XPath filter for the subscription.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# filter xpath /wireless-ble-ltx-qp-ble-ltx-qp-data/ble-ltx-qp-streaming</code>	
Step 6	source-address { <i>A.B.C.D</i> <i>X:X:X:X::X</i> } Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# source-address ip-address 209.165.200.225 2001:DB8::1</code>	Configures the source IP address on the telemetry subscription interface.
Step 7	stream yang-push Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# stream yang-push</code>	Configures a stream for the subscription.
Step 8	update-policy { <i>on-change</i> <i>periodic</i> } <i>period</i> Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# update-policy periodic 6000</code>	Configures a periodic update policy for the subscription.
Step 9	receiver-type protocol Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# receiver-type protocol</code>	Configures type protocol for receiver.
Step 10	receiver name <i>receiver-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# receiver name collector</code>	Specifies the receiver name.
Step 11	end Example: <code>Device(config-mdt-subs)# end</code>	Exits telemetry-subscription configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

On-Change Telemetry Support

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 onwards, on-change telemetry support is provided to a subset of XPath.

Supported XPath for On-Change Subscription

The following table lists the supported XPath for on-change subscription.

Table 56: Supported Gather Points and XPathS

Gather Points	XPaths
/access-point-oper-data/radio-operdata/	/access-point-oper-data/radio-operdata/ phy-ht-cfg/cfg-data/curr-freq
	/access-point-oper-data/radio-operdata/ phy-ht-cfg/cfg-data/chan-width
	/access-point-oper-data/radio-oper-data/current-band-id
/access-point-oper-data/capwap-data	/access-point-oper-data/capwap-data/name
	/access-point-oper-data/capwapdata/ device-detail/wtp-version/sw-ver/version
	/access-point-oper-data/capwap- data/device-detail/wtp-version/sw-ver/release
	/access-point-oper-data/capwapdata/ device-detail/wtp-version/sw-ver/maint
	/access-point-oper-data/capwapdata/ device-detail/wtp-version/sw-ver/build
	/access-point-oper-data/capwap-data/ap-state/ap- operation-state
	/access-point-oper-data/capwapdata/ device-detail/static-info/board-data/wtp-serial-num
/access-point-oper-data/oper-data	/access-point-oper-data/oper-data/ap-ip-data/ap-ip-addr
	/access-point-oper-dat/oper-data/ap-pow/power-type

The following table lists the XPathS that are introduced in Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-ap-global-oper-transform.yang model that is displayed through telemetry feed.

Table 57: Supported Gather Points and XPathS (Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-ap-global-oper-transform.yang)

Gather Points	XPaths
/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/wtp-mac	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-join-info/ap-ethernet-mac
	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-join-info/ap-name
	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-join-info/ap-ip-addr
	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-join-info/is-joined

Gather Points	XPaths
	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-join-info/last-error-type
	/ap-global-oper-data/ap-join-stats/ap-disconnect-reason

The following table lists the XPathS that are introduced in Cisco-IOS-XE-aaa-oper.yang model to support aaa/radius/radsec and displayed through telemetry feed.

Table 58: Supported Gather Points and XPathS (Cisco-IOS-XE-aaa-oper.yang)

Gather Points	Xpaths
/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-pkt-cnt-idletime
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-send-hs-start-cnt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-hs-success-cnt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-total-tx-pkt-cnt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-total-rx-pkt-cnt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-total-conn-rst-cnt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-conn-rst-cnt-idle
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-conn-rst-cnt-noresp
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-conn-rst-cnt-malpkt
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-conn-rst-cnt-err
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/radsec-conn-rst-cnt-peer
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/num-aaa-lib-inst
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-stats/server-detail
/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/access-rejects
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/access-accepts
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-responses-seen
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-with-response
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-without-response
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-avg-response-delay
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-max-response-delay
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-timeouts
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-duplicate-id

Gather Points	Xpaths
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/authen-bad-authenticators
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-responses-seen
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-with-response
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-without-response
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-avg-response-delay
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-max-response-delay
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-timeouts
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-duplicate-id
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/acct-bad-authenticators
	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/stats-time

The following table lists the XPathS that are introduced in Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-mesh-rpc.yang model to support the mesh-related EXEC commands:

Table 59: Supported EXEC CLIs and XPathS (Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-mesh-rpc.yang)

EXEC CLI	XPath
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh ethernet [0 1 2 3] mode trunk vlan allowed <vlan-id>	/set-rad-mesh-ethernet-trunk-allowed-vlan
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh ethernet [0 1 2 3] mode trunk vlan native	/set-rad-mesh-ethernet-trunk-native-vlan
ap name <ap-name> mesh linktest <dst AP MAC> <data rate> <packets/sec> <packet size> <duration>	/exec-linktest-ap
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh ethernet [0 1 2 3] mode access <vlan-id>	/set-rad-mesh-ethernet-access-vlan
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh block-child	/set-rad-mesh-block-child
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh vlan-trunking	/set-rad-mesh-trunking
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh daisy-chaining strict-rap	/set-rad-mesh-daisy-chain-strict-rap
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh daisy-chaining	/set-rad-mesh-daisy-chain-mode
ap name <ap-name> [no] mesh parent preferred	/set-rad-mesh-preferred-parent-ap
ap name <ap-name> mesh backhaul rate dot11 ac mcs <mcs-index> ss <1-4>	/set-rad-mesh-bhaul-tx-rate

EXEC CLI	XPath
ap name <ap-name> mesh backhaul radio dot11 5ghz [slot <slot-id>]	/set-rad-mesh-bhaul-radio
ap name <ap-name> mesh security psk provisioning delete	/set-rad-mesh-security-psk-provisioning-delete
ap name <ap-name> mesh vlan-trunking native <vlan-id>	/set-rad-mesh-trunking-vlan

The following table lists the XPaths that are introduced in Cisco-IOS-XE-aaa-oper.yang model to support radius EXEC commands:

Table 60: Supported EXEC CLIs and XPaths (Cisco-IOS-XE-aaa-oper.yang)

EXEC CLIs	XPaths
show radius statistic	/aaa-data/aaa-radius-global-stats/

Troubleshooting Telemetry Support

This document outlines a set of commands for gathering data from Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, specifically focused on addressing gRPC telemetry-related issues in support of TAC cases.

Here are a few factors to consider when conducting troubleshooting steps:

- Provide a clear problem description.
- What has changed in the network?
- What was the previous working day/time?
- What is the impact of this problem?



Note Run all the **show** commands with **show clock** or **terminal exec prompt timestamp** once to log timestamps automatically.

General Guidelines

For every issue, run the following commands:

1. Device# terminal length 0
2. Device# show clock
3. Device# show tech-support wireless
4. Device# request platform software trace archive last 1

Perform Basic Checks

1. Verify that the requisite processes (particularly pubd) are running using the following commands:

```
show platform software yang-management process
```

2. Capture and validate the telemetry-specific configuration using the following command:

```
show running-config | section telemetry
```

3. Check the validity of any subscriptions using the following command:

```
show telemetry ietf subscription all
```

4. Check the validity of any named receivers using the following command:

```
show telemetry receiver all
```

5. Verify the telemetry subscription states using the following command:

```
show telemetry internal subscription all stats
```

Check Connectivity Issues

1. Check the state of the subscription receiver using the following commands:

```
show telemetry ietf subscription <id> receiver
```

2. Check the state of telemetry connections using the following command:

```
show telemetry connection all
```

3. Check which subscriptions use a particular connection using the following command:

```
show telemetry connection <index> subscription
```

Capture Debug Logs

1. Enable the following debug options:

```
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 mdt-ctrl debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 pubd debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 green-be debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 green-fe debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 dbal debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 tdllib debug
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 green-be debug
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 dbal debug
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 tdllib debug
```

2. Recreate the problem.

3. Collect debug logs:

```
request platform software trace archive last <days>
```

4. Disable debugging using the following commands:

```
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 mdt-ctrl notice
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 pubd notice
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 green-be notice
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 green-fe notice
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 dbal notice
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 tdllib notice
```



```
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 green-be notice
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 dbal notice
set platform software trace ios chassis active r0 tdllib notice
```

General Telemetry Diagnostics

To capture general telemetry diagnostics, use the following command:

```
show telemetry internal diagnostics
```

Generate a Core

Generate a core using the following commands:

1. `show clock`
2. `configure terminal`
3. `service internal`
4. `end`
5. `request platform software process core mdt-pubd chassis active r0`

Disable Logging

Disable the logging using the following commands:

1. `configure terminal`
2. `no service internal`
3. `end`

Capture CPU Memory

To capture CPU memory details use the following commands:

- `show processes cpu platform sorted | i pubd`
- `show processes memory platform sorted | s pubd`

Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

Feature History for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 61: Feature History for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

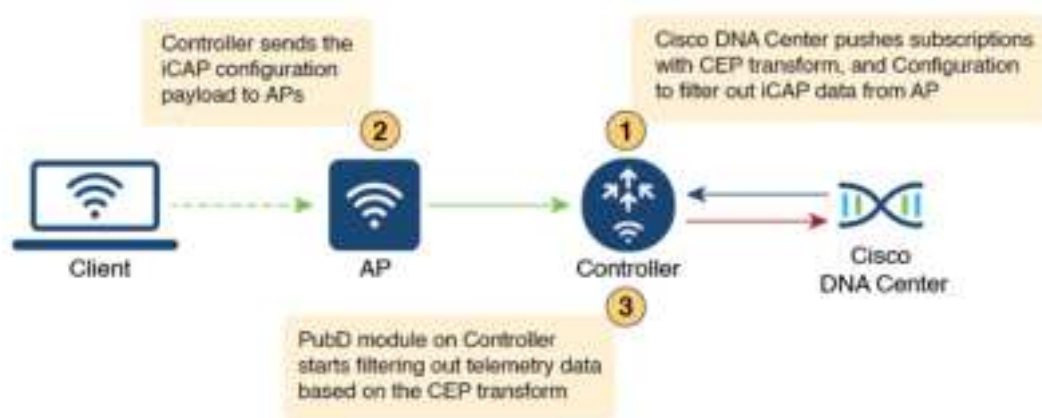
Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter	This feature filters out telemetry data for a configured SSID on the controller and AP.

Information About Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

Locations such as airports, shopping malls, and so on have wireless guest networks with thousands of transient guest clients. The transient guest clients mix the telemetry data and its subsequent health scores with clients that require assurance (for instance, in a corporate WLAN). This poses a scaling challenge as Cisco Catalyst Center tries to keep up with the receiving high-frequency telemetry data and maintaining history of the transient clients.

This feature addresses the requirement by filtering out the telemetry data for a configured SSID on the controller and AP.

Figure 12: High-Level End-to-End System Flow for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter



Cisco Catalyst Center configures the Complex Event Processing (CEP) transform with the SSID for which the telemetry data needs to be filtered out along with the subscriptions. The Publishing Daemon (PubD) module in the controller filters out the data based on the configured transform.



Note The Cisco Catalyst Center automation takes care of pushing the transforms. You must enable or disable filtering for a specific SSID in the controller GUI.

To debug the filtering done at PubD, run the following commands in the controller:

```
Device# set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 pubd debug
set platform software trace mdt-pubd chassis active r0 mdt-xfrm debug
```

Cisco Catalyst Center configures WLAN for which iCAP data needs to be filtered in an AP profile. The controller then pushes the configuration to the corresponding APs. The AP then programs the **aptrace** module to drop the packets and events for the filtered SSID. The filtered data covers the following:

- Client events

- Client statistics
- AP or RF statistics
- Partial PCAP
- Anomaly detection

Restrictions for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

- CLI configuration is applicable for WLAN and not SSID. The Cisco Catalyst Center automation covers one-to-one mapping of WLAN to SSID.
- Controller does not send any notification to Cisco Catalyst Center at the beginning or at the end of filtering.
- Controller GUI configuration is not supported.

Supported Workflow for Cisco Catalyst Center Client Event and SSID Telemetry Filter

- Creating WLANs.
- Mapping WLAN to a Policy Profile.
- Creating a filter for WLAN in AP Join Profile.

Enabling iCAP Filtering in APs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# description "xyz ap profile"	Adds a description for the AP profile.
Step 4	icap subscription client exclude telemetry-data wlan <i>wlan-profile-name</i>	Enables iCAP filtering in APs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client exclude telemetry-data wlan wlan-name</pre>	

Disabling Client Telemetry Data for a WLAN (YANG)

To disable the client telemetry data for a WLAN, use the following RPC model:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:0a77124f-c563-469d-bd21-cc625a9691cc">
<nc:edit-config>
<nc:target>
<nc:running/>
</nc:target>
<nc:config>
<site-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-site-cfg">
<ap-cfg-profiles>
<ap-cfg-profile>
<profile-name nc:operation="merge">default-ap-profile</profile-name>
<icap-client-exclude-cfgs>
<icap-client-exclude-cfg nc:operation="merge">
<wlan-profile nc:operation="merge">tel</wlan-profile>
</icap-client-exclude-cfg>
</cap-client-exclude-cfgs>
</ap-cfg-profile>
</ap-cfg-profiles>
</site-cfg-data>
</nc:config>
</nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>
```

For more information on YANG models, see the *Cisco IOS XE Programmability Configuration Guide* and YANG Data Models on Github at <https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xe>.

You can contact the Developer Support Community for NETCONF/YANG features using the following link:

<https://developer.cisco.com/>

Verifying Client Telemetry Data for a WLAN

To verify the client telemetry data for a WLAN, use the following command:

```
Device# show running-config | section profile
ap profile default-ap-profile
capwap retransmit count 8
capwap timers primary-discovery-timeout 3000
country IN
description "default ap profile"
icap subscription client exclude telemetry-data wlan guest
```



CHAPTER 90

Application Performance Monitoring

- [Feature History for Application Performance Monitoring, on page 875](#)
- [Information About Application Performance Monitoring, on page 875](#)
- [Restrictions for Application Performance Monitoring, on page 876](#)
- [Workflow, on page 876](#)
- [Verify Application Performance Monitoring, on page 880](#)

Feature History for Application Performance Monitoring

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 62: Feature History for Application Performance Monitoring

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Application Performance Monitoring	This feature collects and exports assurance-related metrics (per application) of the flows forwarded through AP to the Cisco DNA Centre Assurance application.

Information About Application Performance Monitoring

Application Performance Monitoring feature collects and exports assurance-related metrics (per application) of the flows that are forwarded through specific interfaces of the access point to the Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance application. This feature supports two monitors—a general assurance monitor that computes quantitative metrics for TCP and UDP flows and qualitative metrics for TCP flows and a media monitor that computes qualitative and quantitative metrics for real-time protocol (RTP) flows. Voice applications such as Microsoft Teams and Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) use RTP monitors, while other applications use TCP and UDP monitor.

A flow monitor can be attached to:

- A interface that monitors all the flows from the attachment point.

- A wireless profile policy (the wireless profile policy that is associated with a WLAN or SSID) that monitors all the traffic passing through it.

Assurance performance monitoring is supported on the following platforms:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers (9800-80, 9800-40, 9800-L, and 9800-CL)
- Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series APs (FlexConnect and fabric mode)
- Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series and 9400 Series switches (fabric mode)

Restrictions for Application Performance Monitoring

- Local flow exporter is not supported.
- The following commands are not supported:
 - **show avc wlan application top**
 - **show avc client top application**
- You cannot configure Application Performance Monitoring and Application Visibility and Control basic on a single policy profile. You can configure them only on two separate policy profiles.
- During CAPWAP restart, AP moves to standby mode, and the nitro engine is disabled. When CAPWAP is up and the nitro engine is enabled, an attempt is made to classify the flows. Since there is not enough information to classify the applications, they are marked as unknown. When the AP rejoins CAPWAP, client traffic gets marked or classified correctly.
- When a client roams while an application has an active-session, the specific session traffic is marked as unknown. The client has to start a new session to mark or classify the traffic correctly.

Workflow

Create a Flow Monitor

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow monitor avc_assurance	Creates a flow monitor.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# description assurance monitor ID is 90	Adds a description to the flow monitor.
Step 4	record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} assurance Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc ipv4 assurance	Specifies the IPv4 assurance metrics for wireless.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 6	flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> Example: Device(config)# flow monitor avc_assurance_rtp	Creates a flow monitor.
Step 7	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# description assurance-rtp monitor ID is 94	Adds a description to the flow monitor.
Step 8	record wireless avc {ipv4 ipv6} assurance-rtp Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# record wireless avc ipv4 assurance-rtp	Specifies the IPv4 assurance RTP metrics for wireless.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-flow-monitor)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Create a Wireless WLAN Profile Policy

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy AVC_POL	Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the policy profile.
Step 4	no central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	Disables central switching.
Step 5	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> input Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor avc_assurance input	Specifies the name of the IPv4 ingress flow monitor.
Step 6	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> input Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor avc_assurance_rtp input	Specifies the name of the IPv4 ingress flow monitor.
Step 7	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> output Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor avc_assurance output	Specifies the name of the IPv4 egress flow monitor.
Step 8	ipv4 flow monitor <i>monitor-name</i> output Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 flow monitor avc_assurance_rtp output	Specifies the name of the IPv4 egress flow monitor.
Step 9	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.
Step 10	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Create a Policy Tag

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy mywlan_ssid	Configures a policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-avc</i> policy <i>policy</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan mywlan_ssid policy AVC_POL	Attaches the policy tag to a WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Attach the Policy Profile to an AP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap <i>ap-ether-mac</i> Example: Device(config)# ap 9412.1212.1201	Enters AP configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-tag <i>policy-tag</i> Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag mywlan_ssid	Specifies the policy tag that is to be attached to the AP.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verify Application Performance Monitoring

Use the following commands to verify application performance monitoring configuration.

To check application performance monitoring statistics, use the following commands:

```
Device# show flow exporter statistics

Flow Exporter apm exp:
  Packet send statistics (last cleared 4w1d ago):
    Successfully sent:          2082          (216624 bytes)
!Packet sent count sent from controller to Cisco Cisco Catalyst Center
  Reason not given:           1099          (114296 bytes)

  Client send statistics:
    Client: Flow Monitor avc
      Records added:            0
      Bytes added:              0

Device# show flow monitor assurance cache

Cache type:                      Normal (Platform cache)
Cache size:                      200000
Current entries:                 0
High Watermark:                 1
!Controller flow monitor cache statistics

Flows added:                     6
Flows aged:                     6
- Active timeout      (    10 secs)  6
```

To check status of application performance monitoring, use the following command

```
Device# show avc status

VAP FNF-STATUS AVC-QOS-STATUS SD AVC-STATUS APM-STATUS
!APM-STATUS contains IPv4, IPv6 assurance and assurance-rtp monitors.

0   Disabled   Disabled   Enabled      IPV4, IPV4-RTP, IPV6, IPV6-RTP
1   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
2   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
3   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
4   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
5   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
6   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
7   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
8   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
9   Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
10  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
11  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
12  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
13  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
14  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
15  Disabled   Disabled   Disabled     Disabled
```



CHAPTER 91

Wireless Clients Threshold Warning

- [Information About Wireless Clients Threshold Warning, on page 881](#)
- [Configuring a Warning Period, on page 881](#)
- [Configuring Client Threshold, on page 882](#)

Information About Wireless Clients Threshold Warning

Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x introduces the Wireless Clients Threshold Warning feature, which allows you to configure a warning message when the number of simultaneous wireless clients on the controller breaches a set threshold. By default, the threshold is set to 75 percent of the total capacity. For example, Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller supports up to 64,000 clients, and the threshold is set at 48,000 client. When the threshold is breached, the controller sends notifications to the corresponding user using syslog messages, SNMP traps, and NETCONF/Yang notifications.

The Wireless Clients Threshold Warning feature allows you to take note of the impending wireless client limit and act on it before reaching the maximum limit, or modify the number of wireless clients allowed on a controller, as required.

The Wireless Clients Threshold Warning feature is enabled by default. To disable the feature, use the **no wireless max-warning** command.

Configuring a Warning Period

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless max-warning period <i>interval-in-mins</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless max-warning period 20	Configures the periodicity of the wireless client check. Valid values range from 1 to 60 minutes.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Client Threshold

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless max-warning threshold clients <i>threshold_percentage</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless max-warning threshold clients 90	Configures the warning threshold percentage for the maximum number of wireless clients. Valid values range from 50 to 100 percent.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 92

Intelligent Capture Hardening

- [Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening, on page 883](#)
- [Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening, on page 883](#)
- [Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile \(CLI\), on page 884](#)
- [Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point \(CLI\), on page 885](#)
- [Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics, on page 886](#)

Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 63: Feature History for Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1	Cisco Intelligent Capture (iCAP) Hardening	The following enhancements are made to the iCAP feature: • Anomaly Detection • RF Statistics

Information About Cisco Intelligent Capture Hardening

The Cisco Intelligent Capture (iCAP) feature aims at making troubleshooting for wireless clients and APs easier. When there are onboarding issues for wireless clients or AP transmission issues, network operators can find out the cause by using the Cisco Catalyst CenterGUI. The Cisco Catalyst Center gathers data from the wireless controller and APs, and displays an aggregated view.

The following enhancements are made to the iCAP feature:

- Anomaly Detection
- RF Statistics

Anomaly Detection

Anomaly Detection is the capability of Cisco APs to detect possible anomalies in the lifecycle of wireless clients and APs.

This functionality is crucial as it allows you to determine if there is an issue in the network, to identify what happened, and avoid the same problem in the future.

APs send individual anomalies to Cisco Catalyst Center every time an anomaly is detected. To prevent Cisco Catalyst Center from getting bombarded with anomaly events of the same type and from the same client, enhancements are made to collapse repeated events, and multiple events are aggregated for the same client if the events occur within a certain time frame.

Anomaly-detection configurations are enhanced on the controller to provision and display the iCAP status.

RF Statistics

The Cisco Catalyst Center receives RF statistics of connected APs. Until Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1, the data received was basic statistical information. However, from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1 onwards, per AP statistical information is directly sent from the wireless controller through iCAP subscription to specific APs.

Configuring Anomaly Detection in AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# onfigure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile</i>	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable	Enables individual reports for client anomaly-detection subscription.
Step 4	icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate	Enables individual reports aggregation for client anomaly-detection subscription. This command is disabled by default.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle <i>number-of-event-reports</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle 20</pre>	Configures event reports per client, every five minutes. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 50 reports. The default value is five reports.
Step 6	icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle <i>number-of-event-reports</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ap-profile)# icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle 50</pre>	Configures event reports per type, every five minutes. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 100 reports. The default value is five reports.

Configuring Anomaly Detection in an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable</pre>	Enables individual reports for client anomaly-detection subscription for a single AP.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable aggregate Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap1 icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual enable</pre>	Enables individual reports aggregation for client anomaly-detection subscription, for a single AP.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle <i>number-of-event-reports</i> Example:	Configures event reports per client, every five minutes, for a single AP. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 50 reports.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# ap name apl icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-client throttle 20	
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle <i>number-of-event-reports</i> Example: Device# ap name apl icap subscription client anomaly-detection report-individual per-type throttle 50	Configures event reports per type, every five minutes, for a single AP. The value of an event report ranges from 0 to 100 reports.

Verifying Anomaly Detection and RF Statistics

To verify the current status of the anomaly-detection subscription of an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name cisco-AP icap subscription client anomaly-detection chassis active R0
Per-AP ICap configuration
```

```
Anomaly detection subscription
  State                : enabled
  Client filter         : 006b.f107.a520
  Client filter         : 006b.f107.a521
  DHCP timeout (seconds) : 5
  Trigger AP packet trace : enabled
  Report Individual      : enabled
  Report Individual aggregate : enabled
  Report Individual throttled events (per 5 minute) : 5
  Report Individual per type throttled events (per 5 minute) : 14
  Report Individual per client throttled events (per 5 minute) : 15
  Report Summary         : disabled
  Report Summary frequency (minutes) : 5
```

To verify RF statistics, use the following command:



Note The controller **show** command is enhanced to display data from the **txTotalDrops** counter.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00XX.ecXX.7aXX detail
.
.
.
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received from Client : 62861
  Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 6754
  Number of Packets Received from Client : 455
  Number of Packets Sent to Client : 65
  Number of Data Retries : 0
  Number of RTS Retries : 0
  Number of Tx Total Dropped Packets: x
  Number of Duplicate Received Packets : 0
  Number of Decrypt Failed Packets : 0
  Number of Mic Failed Packets : 0
  Number of Mic Missing Packets : 0
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
```



```
Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -21 dBm  
Signal to Noise Ratio : 73 dB
```

```
.  
.   
.
```




CHAPTER 93

Amazon S3 Support

- [Information About Amazon S3 Support, on page 889](#)
- [Configuring Amazon S3 Support, on page 889](#)
- [Verifying Amazon S3 Support, on page 891](#)

Information About Amazon S3 Support

In Cisco Catalyst devices, the need for storage capacity is growing due to factors such as larger software images and increased logging rates demanded by customers. Additionally, there is a growing need to distribute software images, provide service maintenance updates (SMUs), and run diverse scripts across numerous devices. The built-in persistent storage available in the devices falls short of meeting these demands. In such situations, a reliable cloud storage solution becomes crucial for enhancing the existing onboard storage by seamlessly incorporating cloud-based storage solutions.

From IOS-XE 17.13.1 release, Amazon S3 or Amazon Simple Storage Service is supported for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers. The Amazon S3 is a service offered by Amazon Web Services (AWS) that provides scalable storage infrastructure through a web service interface. Using Amazon S3, you can seamlessly supplement built-in persistent storage with cloud-based storage.

Restrictions and Guidelines

- The cloud storage is accessible only to the active device.
- Cloud reachability can be established through any service port, including device management ports, or forwarding interfaces on the device.
- Multiple cloud storage configuration profiles can be created for the same S3 bucket with different configuration parameters.
- Virtual device instances (like C9800-CL) hosted on AWS can use the Identity and Access Management (IAM) role infrastructure to access S3 storage.

Configuring Amazon S3 Support

Before you begin

- Ensure that connectivity to the cloud is established.

- Ensure that you have the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key ID and the secret key ID.
- Ensure that DNS is configured. Otherwise, the S3 bucket resolution will fail.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	cloud-services aws s3 profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# cloud-services aws s3 profile 9800_XT_HD	Configures an Amazon S3 cloud services profile. Use only alphanumeric characters for the profile name. Underscore (_) is the only special character that is supported.
Step 3	bucket <i>bucket-name</i> mount-point <i>mount-point</i> Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# bucket 9800-B1 mount-point s3-mount	Configures the Amazon S3 storage bucket and its mountpoint. A bucket is a container for objects stored in Amazon S3. The mountpoint refers to the directory on your local file system where you mount your Amazon S3 bucket. Note Ensure that DNS is configured.
Step 4	description <i>profile-description</i> Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# description 9800-External-Storage	(Optional) Adds a description to the Amazon S3 cloud services profile, which can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters.
Step 5	vrf mgmt-intf Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# vrf mgmt-Intf	(Optional) Configures the management interface as the VRF interface. The default interface is the forwarding interface.
Step 6	access-key key-id <i>iam-id</i> secret-key {0 8}<i>secret-key</i> Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# access-key key-id iam-key-id secret-key 0 *****	Configures the AWS S3 access credentials. Use the same access key ID and the secret key created for the IAM role on the AWS console.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	permissions read-write Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# permissions read-write	(Optional) Sets the Amazon S3 bucket permission as read and write. By default, read-only permission is enabled.
Step 8	region region Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# region us-west-1	Specifies the Amazon S3 region where the cloud-based storage is used.
Step 9	proxy {http-server https-server} url-ip port port-num Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# proxy https-server 192.0.2.1 port 12	(Optional) Configures HTTP or HTTPS server URL or IPv4 address, along with the port details.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration and enables it for Amazon S3 services.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-s3fs-profile)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying Amazon S3 Support

To view a summary of all the Amazon S3 profiles, use the following command.

```
Device# show cloud-services aws s3 summary
```

Profile Name	Profile Status	Service Status
test	Started	Active
test2	Started	Active

To view the operational information of a Amazon S3 profile, use the following command.

```
Device# show cloud-services aws s3 profile s1
```

Profile Details

```

Profile Name      : s1
Bucket Name      : pb-s3-test1
Mount Point      : test
Bucket Permission : Read-Only
Region           : us-west-1
VRF               : Global

```

S3 Service Details

Service Status : Active
Service PID : 31934
Mount Time : 09/28/23 17:06:25
Service Log Level : Notice



CHAPTER 94

Amazon Web Services CloudWatch

- [Information About Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Support, on page 893](#)
- [Configuring Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Profile, on page 894](#)
- [Verifying AWS CloudWatch Configuration, on page 895](#)

Information About Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Support

The Amazon Web Services (AWS) cloud platform offers a service named CloudWatch, which facilitates the monitoring and observability of server system logs, metrics, and events. By integrating CloudWatch on AWS Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) instances and on on-premise servers, you can efficiently transmit their logs, events, and metrics to the AWS CloudWatch server. The AWS CloudWatch service allows you to gain insights into applications, resources, and services running on the AWS infrastructure. It helps to ensure performance, troubleshoot issues, and effectively maintain the overall health of the controllers.

When the AWS CloudWatch agent is active on the controller, it gathers the system logs from the controller and transmits them to the AWS CloudWatch server. The AWS CloudWatch service is disabled by default.

The AWS CloudWatch agent helps you to do the following:

- Collect internal system-level metrics from AWS EC2 instances across operating systems.
- Collect system-level metrics from on-premise devices.

Benefits of Using Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Service

- **A unified monitoring and observability platform:** All device logs are consolidated in a single location, facilitating easy event monitoring and seamless action using the cloud services tools.
- **Enhanced operational efficiency and resource optimization:** Automate the processes and establish alarms for specific events or logs, thereby improving operational performance and resource management.
- **Gain valuable insights from logs:** Analyze and visualize the logs, allowing you to take appropriate actions based on the events and logs.

The AWS CloudWatch feature is supported on the following controllers: Cisco Catalyst 9800-40, 9800-80, 9800-L, and 9800-CL (private [VMware ESXI, KVM, Hyper-V] and public cloud [AWS C9800-CL instances only] platforms).

Configuring Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Profile

The AWS CloudWatch agent transmits buffered syslog messages to the AWS CloudWatch service. The agent scans and retrieves logs recorded in files within a designated directory, which can be a single file or a wildcard pattern to encompass multiple files. You can specify the storage location of the files in the AWS CloudWatch agent profile. As and when files are updated, the AWS CloudWatch agent dynamically reads their content.

Before you begin

- Create CloudWatch group and streams in AWS.
- Create access credentials in AWS.
- [Set a Private Configuration Key for Password Encryption](#)
- Ensure that you have the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key ID and the secret key.
- You can run the optional **logging buffered** and **logging persistent** commands to log syslogs to AWS CloudWatch.
- Ensure that DNS is configured.

For information about how to create CloudWatch group and streams, see the AWS documentation at: <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/introduction.html>

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	cloud-services aws cloudwatch profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# cloud-services aws cloudwatch profile test-profile</code>	Configures an AWS CloudWatch profile.
Step 3	description <i>profile-description</i> Example: <code>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# description test-controller</code>	(Optional) Adds a description to the AWS CloudWatch profile.
Step 4	proxy https-server <i>url-ip</i> port <i>port-num</i> Example: <code>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# proxy https-server 192.0.2.1 port 12</code>	(Optional) Configures HTTP or HTTPS server URL or IP address, along with the port details.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	vrf mgmt-intf Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# vrf mgmt-Intf</pre>	(Optional) Configures the management interface as the VRF interface. Use this option if the agent traffic has to be sent through management interface. By default, data port interface is used. Do not use this command where the management interface is not available, for example, in C9800-CL public cloud instances.
Step 6	access-key key-id iam-id secret-key {0 8}secret-key Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# access-key key-id iam-key-id secret-key 0 *****</pre>	Configures the AWS CloudWatch access credentials. Use the same access key ID and the secret key created for the IAM user on the AWS console.
Step 7	region region Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# region us-west-1</pre>	Specifies the AWS region where CloudWatch server is running on the cloud provider.
Step 8	log group-name group-name stream-name stream-name [file-path file-path] Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# log group-name techgroup stream-name techstream file-path /home/test/statusReport</pre>	Specifies the AWS CloudWatch log group name, log stream name, and an optional log file path. If log file path is not provided, the default syslog path (/bootflash/syslog/*) is used. The log group and log stream used here must be the same as those created on the AWS CloudWatch server. The log file path, if specified, need not be the same as the buffered logging persistent storage path directory or file name.
Step 9	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# no shutdown</pre>	Saves the configuration and enables it for AWS CloudWatch services.
Step 10	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-cloudwatch-profile)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying AWS CloudWatch Configuration

To view summary of AWS CloudWatch profiles, run the following command:

```
Device# show cloud-services aws cloudwatch summary
```

Profile Name	Profile Status	Service Status
demo3	Started	Active
demo4	Started	Active

To view details of a specific AWS CloudWatch profile, run the following command:

```
Device# show cloud-services aws cloudwatch profile demo3
```

Profile Details

```
Profile Name      : demo3
VRF               : Global
Region           : ap-northeast-1
```

CloudWatch Service Details

```
Service Status    : Active
Service PID       : 31785
Service Log Level  : Notice
```

Log Details

Log Group Name	Log Stream Name	Log
test	katar2	



CHAPTER 95

Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade

- [Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade, on page 897](#)
- [Configuring Minidump from Access Point \(CLI\), on page 898](#)
- [Configuring Minidump from Controller \(CLI\), on page 898](#)
- [Verifying Minidump Configuration, on page 899](#)

Information About Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade

When a kernel crash occurs on 802.11AX APs, only AP console logs are accessible for identifying the cause of the crash. However, these logs often do not provide sufficient information to pinpoint the exact reason for the crash. From Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 release, the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature offers a more effective method for diagnosing kernel crashes.

The Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature helps to collect specific sections and data structures containing essential information for debugging kernel crashes within the driver. When you enable this feature, it stores references to crucial kernel or driver data structures and data in a TLV structure within kernel memory. Subsequently, after the AP crash and reboot process, the TLV-referenced data structures are saved to the flash memory and can be exported for further analysis. The TLV data is stored in the `/storage/cores` directory

Trust Zone Upgrade

In APs with Qualcomm Software Development Kit (QSDK) version 11.3, the trust zone collects CPU registers following a crash and saves them in memory for later retrieval during kernel crash dump process. To facilitate the kernel crash dump, the trust zone is updated automatically to the latest version for those APs that have the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature enabled.



Note The trust zone upgrade is a one-time activity. Disabling the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature or downgrading the controller software to a previous release from Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 does not roll back the trust zone upgrade.

In Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1, the Kernel Minidump and Trustzone Upgrade feature is supported only on the following APs:

- Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9136 Series Access Points

Configuring Minidump from Access Point (CLI)

Before you begin

- Ensure that clients are not connected to the AP.
- Keep the AP in standalone mode to prevent the AP from receiving conflicting payloads from the controller.
- Configuration pushed from the controller always overrides the value configured on the AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure boot minidump enable Example: Device# configure boot minidump enable	Enables kernel coredump collection on the AP.

Configuring Minidump from Controller (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	core-dump kernel limit <i>limit</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# core-dump kernel limit 4	Configures the maximum number of kernel core dumps to be collected on an AP. Valid range is from 0 to 5.
Step 4	core-dump kernel type mini-dump Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# core-dump kernel type mini-dump	Configures the type of kernel core dump to be collected on the AP. Use the core-dump kernel type disable command to disable kernel core dump. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Changing the core dump type from disabled to full-dump or mini-dump or vice versa will cause the APs to reboot. When you enable the full-dump option, the Kernel Minidump feature gets deactivated.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying Minidump Configuration

To view the mini-dump configuration on the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP3C57.31C5.99D0 config general | sec Kernel core dump
```

```
Kernel core dump :
  Configured limit           : 3
  Kernel core dumps collected on AP : 1
  Kernel core dump type      : Mini dump
```

To view the mini-dump configuration on the AP, use the following command:

```
AP# show boot
```

```
--- Boot Variable Table ---
BOOT path-list:      part1
Console Baudrate:    115200
Enable Break:        yes
Manual Boot:         yes
Memory Debug:        no
Crashkernel:         no
Minidump:            yes # Indicates Minidump is enabled.
SCRUB_LIMIT:         40 (default)
Kdump Limit:         5 # Configured limit. (this came from WLC via payload)
Kdump Collected:    0 # Number of times the feature ran after it was enabled.
Debug init:          0
```




PART VII

Security

- [MAC Filtering, on page 903](#)
- [Web-Based Authentication , on page 909](#)
- [Central Web Authentication, on page 963](#)
- [Private Shared Key, on page 983](#)
- [Multi-Preshared Key, on page 991](#)
- [Multiple Authentications for a Client, on page 999](#)
- [Wi-Fi Protected Access 3, on page 1025](#)
- [IP Source Guard, on page 1059](#)
- [802.11w, on page 1061](#)
- [Management Frame Protection, on page 1069](#)
- [IPv4 ACLs , on page 1073](#)
- [Downloadable ACL, on page 1101](#)
- [DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 1107](#)
- [Allowed List of Specific URLs, on page 1127](#)
- [Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 1131](#)
- [RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 1143](#)
- [AAA Dead-Server Detection, on page 1147](#)
- [ISE Simplification and Enhancements, on page 1151](#)
- [RADIUS DTLS, on page 1165](#)
- [Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring, on page 1177](#)
- [Local Extensible Authentication Protocol, on page 1181](#)
- [Local EAP Ciphersuite, on page 1189](#)
- [Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers, on page 1193](#)
- [CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting, on page 1205](#)

- [Secure LDAP, on page 1207](#)
- [Network Access Server Identifier, on page 1215](#)
- [Locally Significant Certificates, on page 1221](#)
- [Certificate Management, on page 1251](#)
- [Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join, on page 1257](#)
- [Managing Rogue Devices, on page 1267](#)
- [Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 1287](#)
- [Advanced WIPS, on page 1297](#)
- [Cisco TrustSec, on page 1307](#)
- [SGT Inline Tagging and SXPv4, on page 1321](#)
- [Multiple Cipher Support, on page 1327](#)
- [Configuring Secure Shell , on page 1331](#)
- [Encrypted Traffic Analytics, on page 1339](#)
- [FIPS, on page 1355](#)
- [Internet Protocol Security, on page 1361](#)
- [Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support, on page 1375](#)
- [Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes, on page 1381](#)
- [IP MAC Binding, on page 1393](#)
- [Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode, on page 1397](#)
- [Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices, on page 1399](#)
- [Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode, on page 1403](#)



CHAPTER 96

MAC Filtering

- [MAC Filtering, on page 903](#)
- [Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication \(CLI\), on page 905](#)
- [Configuring MAC Filtering \(GUI\), on page 906](#)
- [Configuring MAB for External Authentication \(CLI\), on page 906](#)

MAC Filtering

You can configure the controller to authorize clients based on the client MAC address by using the MAC filtering feature.

When MAC filtering is enabled, the controller uses the MAC address as the client identity. The authentication server has a database of client MAC addresses that are allowed network access. The controller sends the authentication server a RADIUS-access/request frame with a username and password based on the client MAC address as soon as it gets the association request from the client. If authorization succeeds, the controller sends a successful association response to the client. If authorization fails, the controller rejects the client association.

Clients that were authorized with MAC filtering can be re-authenticated through the WLAN session timeout feature.

MAC Filtering Configuration Guidelines

- MAC filtering authentication occurs at the 802.11 association phase and delays the association response until authentication is done. If you use a RADIUS server for MAC filtering, it is advised to keep a low latency between the controller and the RADIUS server. When latency is too high, the client might timeout while waiting for the association response.
- MAC filtering can be combined with other authentication methods such as 802.1X, Pre-Shared Key or it can be used alone.
- MAC addresses can be spoofed and MAC filtering does not consist in a security measure.
- Many clients can use a private MAC address to connect and change it at every session, therefore making it harder to identify devices through their MAC address.



Note If wlan-profile-name is configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed only from that WLAN. If wlan-profile-name is not configured for a user, guest user authentication is allowed on any WLAN.

The AP fails to join the controller due to an authentication rejection on the RADIUS server. The failure occurs on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller, only when the RADIUS server is configured to authenticate the APs with method MAB as endpoints. The reason is that the RADIUS calling-station-id attribute is required for MAB authentication and is not present within the access request packet during the AP join. The workaround is to use a different AP authentication method than MAB as endpoints such as PAP-ASCII using a username and a password.

If you want the client to connect to SSID1, but not to SSID2 using mac-filtering, ensure that you configure **aaa-override** in the policy profile.

In the following example, when a client with MAC address 112233440001 tries to connect to a WLAN, the request is sent to the local RADIUS server, which checks the presence of the client MAC address in its attribute list (FILTER_1 and FILTER_2). If the client MAC address is listed in an attribute list (FILTER_1), the client is allowed to join the WLAN (WLAN_1) that is returned as *ssid attribute* from the RADIUS server. The client is rejected, if the client MAC address is not listed in the attribute list.

Local RADIUS Server Configuration

```
!Configures an attribute list as FILTER_2
aaa attribute list FILTER_2
!Defines an attribute type that is to be added to an attribute list.
attribute type ssid "WLAN_2"

!Username with the MAC address is added to the filter
username 112233440001 mac aaa attribute list FILTER_2

!
aaa attribute list FILTER_1
attribute type ssid "WLAN_1"
username 112233440001 aaa attribute list FILTER_1
```

Controller Configuration

```
! Sets authorization to the local radius server
aaa authorization network MLIST_MACFILTER local

!A WLAN with the SSID WLAN_2 is created and MAC filtering is set along with security
parameters.
wlan WLAN_2 2 WLAN_2
mac-filtering MLIST_MACFILTER
no security wpa
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers

!WLAN with the SSID WLAN_1 is created and MAC filtering is set along with security parameters.
wlan WLAN_1 1 WLAN_1
mac-filtering MLIST_MACFILTER
no security wpa
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
no security wpa akm dot1x
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list WEBAUTH

! Policy profile to be associated with the above WLANs
wireless profile policy MAC_FILTER_POLICY
aaa-override
```

```
vlan 504
no shutdown
```

Configuring MAC Filtering for Local Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure MAB for local authentication.

Before you begin

Configure AAA local authentication.

Configure the username for WLAN configuration (local authentication) using **username mac-address mac** command.



Note The mac-address must be in the following format: *abcdabcdabcd*

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan profile-name wlan-id Example: wlan CR1_SSID_mab-local-default 1 CR1_SSID_mab-local-default	Specifies the WLAN name and ID.
Step 2	mac-filtering default Example: Device(config-wlan) # mac-filtering default	Sets MAC filtering support for the WLAN.
Step 3	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example:	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring MAC Filtering (GUI)

Before you begin

Configure AAA external authentication.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click the name of the WLAN.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Layer2** tab, check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature.
 - Step 5** With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the **Authorization List** from the drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring MAB for External Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure MAB for external authentication.

Before you begin

Configure AAA external authentication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid-name Example: wlan CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius 3 CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius	Specifies the WLAN name and ID.
Step 2	mac-filtering list-name Example:	Sets the MAC filtering parameters. Here, <i>ewlc-radius</i> is an example for the <i>list-name</i>

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering ewlc-radius	
Step 3	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 6	mab request format attribute {1 groupsize size separator separator [lowercase uppercase] 2 {0 7 LINE} LINE password 32 vlan access-vlan} Example: Device(config)# mab request format attribute 1 groupsize 4 separator	Optional. Configures the delimiter while using MAC filtering in a WLAN. Here, 1- Specifies the username format used for MAB requests. groupsize size- Specifies the number of hex digits per group. The valid values range from 1 to 12. separator separator- Specifies how to separate groups. The separators are comma, semicolon, and full stop. lowercase- Specifies the username in lowercase format. uppercase- Specifies the username in uppercase format. 2- Specifies the global password used for all the MAB requests. 0- Specifies the unencrypted password. 7- Specifies the hidden password. LINE- Specifies the encrypted or unencrypted password. password- LINE password. 32- Specifies the NAS-Identifier attribute. vlan- Specifies a VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		access-vlan - Specifies the configured access VLAN.
Step 7	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.



CHAPTER 97

Web-Based Authentication

This chapter describes how to configure web-based authentication on the device. It contains these sections:

- [Local Web Authentication Overview, on page 909](#)
- [How to Configure Local Web Authentication, on page 917](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication, on page 941](#)
- [External Web Authentication \(EWA\), on page 946](#)
- [Authentication for Sleeping Clients, on page 951](#)
- [Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications, on page 954](#)
- [Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication, on page 960](#)

Local Web Authentication Overview

Web authentication is a Layer 3 security solution designed for providing easy and secure guest access to hosts on WLAN with open authentication or appropriate layer 2 security methods. Web authentication allows users to get authenticated through a web browser on a wireless client, with minimal configuration on the client side. It allows users to associate with an open SSID without having to set up a user profile. The host receives an IP address and DNS information from the DHCP server, however cannot access any of the network resources until they authenticate successfully. When the host connects to the guest network, the WLC redirects the host to an authentication web page where the user needs to enter valid credentials. The credentials are authenticated by the WLC or an external authentication server and if authenticated successfully is given full access to the network. Hosts can also be given limited access to particular network resources before authentication for which the pre-authentication ACL functionality needs to be configured.

The following are the different types of web authentication methods:

- **Local Web Authentication (LWA):** Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the web authentication page and the pre-authentication ACL are locally configured on the controller. The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server.
- **External Web Authentication (EWA):** Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server. The pre-authentication ACL is configured statically on the controller.

- **Central Web Authentication (CWA):** Configured mostly as Layer 2 security on the controller, the redirection URL and the pre-authentication ACL reside on ISE and are pushed during layer 2 authentication to the controller. The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page. ISE validates the credentials entered by the client through HTTPS and authenticates the user.

Use the local web authentication feature, known as web authentication proxy, to authenticate end users on host systems that do not run the IEEE 802.1x supplicant.

When a client initiates an HTTP session, local web authentication intercepts ingress HTTP packets from the host and sends an HTML login page to the users. The users enter their credentials, which the local web authentication feature sends to the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) server for authentication.

If authentication succeeds, local web authentication sends a Login-Successful HTML page to the host and applies the access policies returned by the AAA server.

If authentication fails, local web authentication forwards a Login-Fail HTML page to the user, prompting the user to retry the login. If the user exceeds the maximum number of attempts, local web authentication forwards a Login-Expired HTML page to the host, and the user is excluded with the exclusion reason as Web authentication failure.

When a client reaches maximum HTTP connections (maximum of 200 connections when configured), it will cause Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) resets and client exclusion.



Note You should use either global or named parameter-map under WLAN (for method-type, custom, and redirect) for using the same web authentication methods, such as consent, web consent, and webauth. Global parameter-map is applied by default, if none of the parameter-map is configured under WLAN.



Note The traceback that you receive when webauth client tries to do authentication does not have any performance or behavioral impact. It happens rarely when the context for which FFM replied back to EPM for ACL application is already dequeued (possibly due to timer expiry) and the session becomes 'unauthorized'.



Note When command authorization is enabled as a part of AAA Authorization configuration through TACACS and the corresponding method list is not configured as a part of the HTTP configuration, WebUI pages will not load any data. However, some wireless feature pages may work as they are privilege based and not command based.

Based on where the web pages are hosted, the local web authentication can be categorized as follows:

- *Internal*—The internal default HTML pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) in the controller are used during the local web authentication.
- *Customized*—The customized web pages (Login, Success, Fail, and Expire) are downloaded onto the controller and used during the local web authentication.
- *External*—The customized web pages are hosted on the external web server instead of using the in-built or custom web pages.

Based on the various web authentication pages, the types of web authentication are as follows:

- *Webauth*—This is a basic web authentication. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the user name and password. You need to enter the correct credentials to access the network.
- *Consent or web-passthrough*—Herein, the controller presents a policy page with the Accept or Deny buttons. You need to click the Accept button to access the network.
- *Webconsent*—This is a combination of webauth and consent web authentication types. Herein, the controller presents a policy page with Accept or Deny buttons along with user name or password. You need to enter the correct credentials and click the Accept button to access the network.

**Note**

- You can view the webauth parameter-map information using the **show running-config** command output.
- The wireless Web-Authentication feature does not support the bypass type.
- Change in web authentication parameter map redirect login URL does not occur until a AP rejoin happens. You must enable and disable the WLAN to apply the new URL redirection.

**Note**

We recommend that you follow the Cisco guidelines to create a customized web authentication login page. If you have upgraded to the latest versions of Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox browsers, ensure that your webauth bundle has the following line in the *login.html* file:

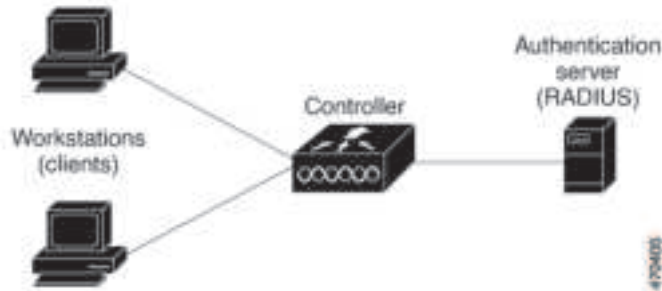
```
<body onload="loadAction();">
```

Device Roles

With local web authentication, the devices in the network have these specific roles:

- *Client*—The device (workstation) that requests access to the network and the controller and responds to requests from the controller. The workstation must be running an HTML browser with Java Script enabled.
- *Authentication server*—Authenticates the client. The authentication server validates the identity of the client and notifies the controller that the client is authorized to access the network and the controller services or that the client is denied.
- *Controller*—Controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the client. The controller acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the client and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the client, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the client.

Figure 13: Local Web Authentication Device Roles



Authentication Process

When the page is hosted on the controller, the controller uses its virtual IP (a non-routable IP like 192.0.2.1 typically) to serve the request. If the page is hosted externally, the web redirection sends the client first to the virtual IP, which then sends the user again to the external login page while it adds arguments to the URL, such as the location of the virtual IP. Even when the page is hosted externally, the user submits its credentials to the virtual IP.

When you enable local web authentication, these events occur:

- The user initiates an HTTP session.
- The HTTP traffic is intercepted, and authorization is initiated. The controller sends the login page to the user. The user enters a username and password, and the controller sends the entries to the authentication server.
- If the authentication succeeds, the controller downloads and activates the user's access policy from the authentication server. The login success page is sent to the user.
- If the authentication fails, the controller sends the login fail page. The user retries the login. If the maximum number of attempts fails, the controller sends the login expired page, and the host is placed in a watch list. After the watch list times out, the user can retry the authentication process.
- If authentication server is not available, after the web authentication retries, the client moves to the excluded state and the client receives an Authentication Server is Unavailable page.
- The controller reauthenticates a client when the host does not respond to an ARP probe on a Layer 2 interface, or when the host does not send any traffic within the idle timeout on a Layer 3 interface.
- Web authentication sessions can not apply new VLAN as part of the authorization policy, as the client already has been assigned an IP address and you will not be able to change the IP address in the client, in case the VLAN changes.
- If the terminate action is default, the session is dismantled, and the applied policy is removed.



Note Do not use semicolons (;) while configuring username for GUI access.

Local Web Authentication Banner

With Web Authentication, you can create a default and customized web-browser banners that appears when you log in to the controller.

The banner appears on both the login page and the authentication-result pop-up pages. The default banner messages are as follows:

- *Authentication Successful*
- *Authentication Failed*
- *Authentication Expired*

The Local Web Authentication Banner can be configured as follows:

- Use the following global configuration command:

```
Device(config)# parameter map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# banner ?
file <file-name>
text <Banner text>
title <Banner title>
```

The default banner *Cisco Systems* and *Switch host-name Authentication* appear on the Login Page. *Cisco Systems* appears on the authentication result pop-up page.

Figure 14: Authentication Successful Banner



The banner can be customized as follows:

- Add a message, such as switch, router, or company name to the banner:

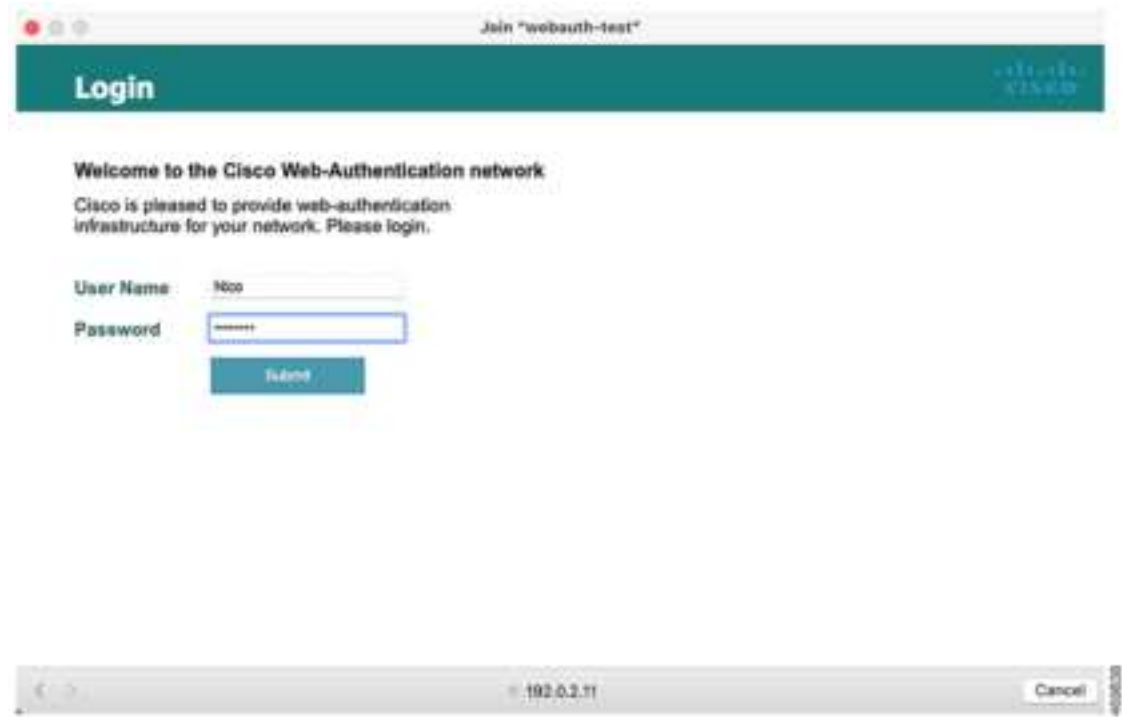
- New-style mode—Use the following global configuration command:
parameter-map type webauth global
banner text <text>
- Add a logo or text file to the banner:
 - New-style mode—Use the following global configuration command:
parameter-map type webauth global
banner file <filepath>

Figure 15: Customized Web Banner



If you do not enable a banner, only the username and password dialog boxes appear in the web authentication login screen, and no banner appears when you log into the switch.

Figure 16: Login Screen With No Banner



Customized Local Web Authentication

During the local web authentication process, the switch's internal HTTP server hosts four HTML pages to deliver to an authenticating client. The server uses these pages to notify you of these four authentication process states:

- Login: Your credentials are requested
- Success: The login was successful
- Fail: The login failed
- Expire: The login session has expired because of excessive login failures



Note Virtual IP address is mandatory to configure custom web authentication.

From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1, special characters such as *ö* or *à* are supported in the login portal for banner title and banner text. The number of characters supported on the banner text has been doubled to 400. To support special characters, ensure that you configure the **exec-character-bits** command under the line console (for serial port) or line vty (for SSH).

**Note**

- If the banner text string exceeds the maximum limit of 400 characters, an error message is displayed and the configuration is rejected. Also, the parser has a limitation of 254 characters per line (including the CLI keywords). If you want to use more than 254 characters, ensure that you split it into two or multiple lines.
- The webauth login page displays only the default banner strings if banner command is not configured.

Guidelines

- You can substitute your own HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages.
- You can use a logo or specify text in the *login*, *success*, *failure*, and *expire* web pages.
- On the banner page, you can specify text in the login page.
- The pages are in HTML.
- You must include an HTML redirect command in the success page to access a specific URL.
- The URL string must be a valid URL (for example, <http://www.cisco.com>). An incomplete URL might cause *page not found* or similar errors on a web browser.
- If you configure web pages for HTTP authentication, they must include the appropriate HTML commands (for example, to set the page time out, to set a hidden password, or to confirm that the same page is not submitted twice). The custom page samples in the webauth bundle are provided with the image and the details of what you can and cannot change.
- The CLI command to redirect users to a specific URL is not available when the configured login form is enabled. The administrator should ensure that the redirection is configured in the web page.
- If the CLI command redirecting users to specific URL after authentication occurs is entered and then the command configuring web pages is entered, the CLI command redirecting users to a specific URL does not take effect.
- Configured web pages can be copied to the switch boot flash or flash.
- The login page can be on one flash, and the success and failure pages can be another flash (for example, the flash on the active switch or a member switch).
- You must configure all four pages.
- All of the logo files (image, flash, audio, video, and so on) that are stored in the system directory (for example, flash, disk0, or disk) and that are displayed on the login page must use *web_auth_<filename>* as the file name.
- The configured authentication proxy feature supports both HTTP and SSL.

You can substitute your HTML pages for the default internal HTML pages. You can also specify a URL to which users are redirected after authentication occurs, which replaces the internal Success page.

Figure 17: Customizable Authentication Page



Redirection URL for Successful Login Guidelines

When configuring a redirection URL for successful login, consider these guidelines:

- If the custom authentication proxy web pages feature is enabled, the redirection URL feature is disabled and is not available in the CLI. You can perform redirection in the custom-login success page.
- If the redirection URL feature is enabled, a configured auth-proxy-banner is not used.
- To remove the specification of a redirection URL, use the **no** form of the command.
- If the redirection URL is required after the web-based authentication client is successfully authenticated, then the URL string must start with a valid URL (for example, `http://`) followed by the URL information. If only the URL is given without `http://`, then the redirection URL on successful authentication might cause page not found or similar errors on a web browser.

How to Configure Local Web Authentication

Configuring Default Local Web Authentication

The following table shows the default configurations required for local web authentication.

Table 64: Default Local Web Authentication Configuration

Feature	Default Setting
AAA	Disabled

Feature	Default Setting
RADIUS server • IP address • UDP authentication port • Key	• None specified
Default value of inactivity timeout	3600 seconds
Inactivity timeout	Disabled

Information About the AAA Wizard

The AAA wizard helps you to add the authentication, authorization, and accounting details without having to access multiple windows.



Note When command authorization is enabled as a part of AAA Authorization configuration through TACACS and the corresponding method list is not configured as a part of the HTTP configuration, WebUI pages will not load any data. However, some wireless feature pages may work as they are privilege-based and not command based.



Note Note the following limitations for a TACACS+ user on the 9800 WebUI:

- Users with privilege level 1-10 can only view the **Monitor** tab.
- Users with privilege level 15 have full access.
- Users with privilege level 15 and a command set allowing specific commands only, is not supported.



Note When you configure the AAA authentication and authorization attributes, the following format must be followed:

- protocol:attr=bla
- protocol:attr#0=bla
- protocol:attr#*=bla
- attr=bla
- attr#0=bla
- attr#*=bla

attr is mapped to the supported AAA attributes. If *attr* is an unknown or undefined attribute, a warning message *parse unknown cisco vsa* is displayed when you configure the **radius-server disallow unknown vendor-code** command. Otherwise, the transaction will be treated as a failure.

We recommend that you configure the command as per the format discussed above. Otherwise, the transaction fails. Whenever the passed attribute does not match any of the patterns mentioned, then AAA fails to decode that specific attribute and marks the request as a failure.

To edit the details entered using the wizard, use the respective screens.

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA**.

Step 2 Click **+ AAA Wizard**.

The **Add Wizard** page is displayed.

Step 3 Click **RADIUS** tab.

The RADIUS server option is enabled by default. You can switch between the **Basic** and **Advanced** options using the radio buttons.

- a) In the **Name** field, enter the name of the RADIUS server.
- b) In the **IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address** field, enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname.
- c) Check the **PAC Key** check box to enable the Protected Access Credential (PAC) authentication key option.
- d) From the **Key Type** drop-down list, choose the authentication key type.
- e) In the **Key** field, enter the authentication key.
- f) In the **Confirm Key** field, re-enter the authentication key.
- g) Click the **Advanced** radio button.

This enables the **Advanced** options.

- h) In the **Auth Port** field, enter the authorization port number.
- i) In the **Acct Port** field, enter the accounting port number.
- j) In the **Server Timeout** field, enter the timeout duration, in seconds.

- k) In the **Retry Count** field, enter the number of retries.
- l) Use the **Support for CoA** toggle button to enable or disable change of authorization (CoA).

Step 4

Check the **TACACS+** check box.

This enables the TACACS+ options. You can switch between the **Basic** and **Advanced** options using the radio buttons.

- a) In the **Name** field, enter the TACACS+ server name.
- b) In the **IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address** field, enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname.
- c) In the **Key** field, enter the authentication key.
- d) In the **Confirm Key** field, re-enter the authentication key.
- e) Click the **Advanced** radio button.

This enables the **Advanced** options.

- f) In the **Port** field, enter the port number to use.
- g) In the **Server Timeout** field, enter the timeout duration, in seconds.

Step 5

Check the **LDAP** check box.

This enables the LDAP options. You can switch between the **Basic** and **Advanced** options using the radio buttons.

- a) In the **Server Name** field, enter the **LDAP** server name.
- b) In the **IPv4 / IPv6 Server Address** field, enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname.
- c) In the **Port Number** field, enter the port number to use.
- d) From the **Simple Bind** drop-down list, choose the authentication key type.
- e) In the **User Base DN** field, enter the details.
- f) Click the **Advanced** radio button.

This enables the **Advanced** options.

- g) From the **User Attribute** drop-down list, choose the user attribute.
- h) In the **User Object Type** field, enter the object type details and click the + icon.

The objects that have been added are listed in the area below. Use the x mark adjacent to each object to remove it.

- i) In the **Server Timeout** field, enter the timeout duration, in seconds.
- j) Check the **Secure Mode** check box to enable secure mode.

Checking this enables the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list.

- k) From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint.
- l) Click **Next**.

This enables the **Server Group Association** page and the **RADIUS** tab is selected by default.

Step 6

Perform the following actions under **RADIUS** tab.

- a) In the **Name** field, enter the name of the RADIUS server group.
- b) From the **MAC-Delimiter** drop-down list, choose the delimiter to be used in the MAC addresses that are sent to the RADIUS servers.
- c) From the **MAC Filtering** drop-down list, choose a value based on which to filter MAC addresses.

- d) To configure the dead time for the server group and direct AAA traffic to alternative groups of servers that have different operational characteristics, in the **Dead-Time** field, enter the amount of time, in minutes, after which a server is assumed to be dead.
- e) Choose the servers that you want to include in the server group from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.
- f) Click **Next**.

The **TACACS+** window is displayed, if you have selected **TACACS+** in server configuration.

Step 7

Use the **TACACS+** window to enter the following details:

- a) In the **Name** field, enter the name of the TACACS+ server group.
- b) From the **Available Servers** list, choose the servers that you want to include in the server group from the list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.
- c) Click **Next**.

The **LDAP** window is displayed, if you have selected **LDAP** under server configuration.

Step 8

Use the **LDAP** window to enter the following details:

- a) In the **Name** field, enter the name of the LDAP server group.
- b) From the **Available Servers** list, choose the servers that you want to include in the server group from the list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.

Step 9

Click **Next**.

The **MAP AAA** window is displayed.

Use the check boxes to enable the **Authentication**, **Authorization**, and **Accounting** tabs. You cannot unselect all the three options. At least one option has to be selected.

Step 10

Use the **Authentication** tab to enter the authentication details:

- a) In the **Method List Name** field, enter the name of the method list.
- b) From the **Type** drop-down list, choose the type of accounting that you want to perform before allowing access to the network.
- c) From the **Group Type** drop-down list, choose a value depending on whether you want to assign a group of servers as your access server, or want to use a local server to authenticate access.

If you choose the local option, the **Fallback** to local option is removed.

- d) Check the **Fallback to local** check box to configure a local server to act as a fallback method when servers in the group are unavailable.
- e) From the **Available Server Groups** list, choose the server groups that you want to use to authenticate access to your network and click the > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.

Step 11

Check the **Authorization** check box to configure the authorization details:

- a) In the **Method List Name** field, enter the name of the method list.
- b) From the **Type** drop-down list, choose the type of authorization you want to perform before allowing access to the network.
- c) From the **Group Type** drop-down list, choose a value depending on whether you want to assign a group of servers as your access server, or want to use a local server to authorize access.

If you choose the local option, the **Fallback** to local option is removed.

- d) Check the **Fallback to local** check box to configure a local server to act as a fallback method when the servers in the group are unavailable.

- e) From the **Available Server Groups** list, choose the server groups you want to use to authorize access to your network and click > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.

Step 12 Check the **Accounting** check box to configure the accounting details:

- In the **Method List Name** field, enter the name of the method list.
- From the **Type** drop-down list, choose the type of accounting that you want to perform.
- From the **Available Server Groups** list, choose the server groups that you want to use to authorize access to your network and click the > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.

Step 13 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI)



Note The WebUI does not support the ipv6 radius source-interface under AAA radius server group configuration.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA**.
- Step 2** In the **Authentication** section, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: AAA Authentication** window that is displayed, enter a name for your method list.
- Step 4** Choose the type of authentication you want to perform before allowing access to the network, in the **Type** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Choose if you want to assign a group of servers as your access server, or if you want to use a local server to authenticate access, from the **Group Type** drop-down list.
- Step 6** To configure a local server to act as a fallback method when servers in the group are unavailable, check the **Fallback to local** check box.
- Step 7** Choose the server groups you want to use to authenticate access to your network, from the **Available Server Groups** list and click > icon to move them to the **Assigned Server Groups** list.
- Step 8** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring AAA Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa new-model Example:	Enables AAA functionality.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# aaa new-model	
Step 2	aaa authentication login {default named_authentication_list} group AAA_group_name Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication login default group group1	Defines the list of authentication methods at login. named_authentication_list refers to any name that is not greater than 31 characters. AAA_group_name refers to the server group name. You need to define the server-group server_name at the beginning itself.
Step 3	aaa authorization network {default named} group AAA_group_name Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group group1	Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization.
Step 4	tacacs server server-name Example: Device(config)# tacacs server yourserver	Specifies an AAA server.
Step 5	address {ipv4 ipv6} ip_address Example: Device(config-server-tacacs)# address ipv4 10.0.1.12	Configures the IP address for the TACACS server.
Step 6	single-connection Example: Device(config-server-tacacs)# single-connection	Multiplexes all packets over a single TCP connection to TACACS server.
Step 7	tacacs-server host {hostname ip_address} Example: Device(config)# tacacs-server host 10.1.1.1	Specifies a AAA server.

Configuring the HTTP/HTTPS Server (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf**.
- Step 2** In the **HTTP/HTTPS Access Configuration** section, enable HTTP Access and enter the port that will listen for HTTP requests. The default port is 80. Valid values are 80, and ports between 1025 and 65535.
- Step 3** Enable **HTTPS Access** on the device and enter the designated port to listen for HTTPS requests. The default port is 1025. Valid values are 443, and ports between 1025 and 65535. On a secure HTTP connection, data to and from an HTTP server is encrypted before being sent over the Internet. HTTP with SSL encryption provides a secure connection to allow such functions as configuring a switch from a Web browser.
- Step 4** Choose the **Personal Identity Verification** as enabled or disabled.
- Step 5** In the **HTTP Trust Point Configuration** section, enable **Enable Trust Point** to use Certificate Authority servers as trustpoints.
- Step 6** From the **Trust Points** drop-down list, choose a trust point.
- Step 7** In the **Timeout Policy Configuration** section, enter the HTTP timeout policy in seconds. Valid values can range from 1 to 600 seconds.
- Step 8** Enter the number of minutes of inactivity allowed before the session times out. Valid values can range from 180 to 1200 seconds.
- Step 9** Enter the server life time in seconds. Valid values can range from 1 to 86400 seconds.
- Step 10** Enter the maximum number of requests the device can accept. Valid values range from 1 to 86400 requests.
- Step 11** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring the HTTP Server (CLI)

To use local web authentication, you must enable the HTTP server within the device. You can enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS.



Note The Apple psuedo-browser will not open if you configure only the **ip http secure-server** command. You should also configure the **ip http server** command.

Follow the procedure given below to enable the server for either HTTP or HTTPS:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ip http server Example: Device(config) # ip http server	Enables the HTTP server. The local web authentication feature uses the HTTP server to communicate with the hosts for user authentication.
Step 3	ip http secure-server Example: Device(config) # ip http secure-server	Enables HTTPS. You can configure custom authentication proxy web pages or specify a redirection URL for successful login. Note To ensure secure authentication when you enter the ip http secure-server command, the login page is always in HTTPS (secure HTTP) even if the user sends an HTTP request.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config) # end	Exits configuration mode.

Allowing Special Characters for Serial Port

Before you begin

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	line console <i>line-num</i> Example: Device(config) # line console 0	Configures the primary terminal line number.
Step 3	exec-timeout <i>mins sec</i> Example: Device(config-line) # exec-timeout 12 0	Configures the time to disconnect idle EXEC sessions.
Step 4	login authentication <i>word default</i> Example: Device(config-line) # login authentication NO_LOGIN	Configures login authentication checking. It can be authentication list with a name or the default authentication list.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	exec-character-bit {7 8} Example: Device(config-line)# exec-character-bit 8	Configures the character widths of EXEC command characters.
Step 6	stopbits {1 1.5 2} Example: Device(config-line)# stopbits 1	Configures the stop bits for the console port.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-line)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Allowing Special Characters for VTY Port

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth global Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 3	banner text <i>text</i> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# banner text #Hëlló#	You can create a custom banner (of up to 400 characters) by entering <i>c <banner-text> c</i>, where <i>c</i> is a delimiting character. If the string exceeds the maximum limit of 400 characters, an error message is displayed and the configuration is rejected. Also, the parser has a limitation of 254 characters per line (including the CLI keywords). If you want to use more than 254 characters, ensure that you split it into two or multiple lines. The webauth login page displays only the default banner strings, if banner command is not configured.
Step 4	end Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config-params-parameter-map) # end	

Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication

Information About Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication

Using the Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication feature, you can have HTTPS access to device management and HTTP access to web authentication. To control the HTTP and HTTPS requests being sent to the web authentication module, run the **secure-webauth-disable** and **webauth-http-enable** commands in the global parameter map mode.



Note The **secure-webauth-disable** and **webauth-http-enable** commands are not enabled by default; you must configure them explicitly.

The following table describes the various CLI combinations:

Table 65: CLI Combinations

Admin (Device Management)		WebAuthentication		Required Configurations	
HTTP Access	HTTPS Access	HTTP Access	HTTPS Access	Admin	Web Authentication
No	Yes	Yes	Yes	no ip http server ip http secure-server	no ip http server ip http secure-server parameter-map type webauth global webauth-http-enable
No	Yes	No	Yes	no ip http server ip http secure-server	no ip http server ip http secure-server
No	Yes	Yes	No	no ip http server ip http secure-server	no ip http server ip http secure-server parameter-map type webauth global webauth-http-enable secure-webauth-disable

Admin (Device Management)		WebAuthentication		Required Configurations	
HTTP Access	HTTPS Access	HTTP Access	HTTPS Access	Admin	Web Authentication
No	Yes	No	No	no ip http server ip http secure-server	no ip http server ip http secure-server parameter-map type webauth global secure-webauth-disable
No	No	No	Yes	no ip http server no ip http secure-server	Not Supported
No	No	Yes	No	no ip http server no ip http secure-server	no ip http server no ip http secure-server parameter-map type webauth global webauth-http-enable
Yes	No	Yes	No	ip http server no ip http secure-server	ip http server no ip http secure-server
Yes	Yes	Yes	No	ip http server ip http secure-server	ip http server ip http secure-server parameter-map type webauth global secure-webauth-disable

**Note**

- The **ip http server** and **ip http secure-server** commands allow access for HTTP and HTTPS, respectively. For example, in the first row of the table, for HTTP access to web authentication, you do not require the **ip http server** command. You can use the new **webauth-http-enable** command under the global parameter map, to allow HTTP access.
- For HTTPS access to webauth, the **ip http secure-server** command is required. Therefore, HTTPS access for both admin and web authentication are enabled in the first row. To disable HTTPS access for web authentication, configure the **secure-webauth-disable** command. For example, in the fourth row of the table, HTTPS access is disabled for web authentication because the **secure-webauth-disable** command is configured.

Guidelines and Limitations

The following are the guidelines and limitations for configuring HTTP and HTTPS requests for web authentication:

- You cannot enable HTTPS web authentication without enabling HTTPS for device management.
- If the **secure-webauth-disable** command is configured, central web authentication cannot be performed, if the initial request from the client is https://<>.

Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Requests for Web Authentication (CLI)

To configure the HTTP and HTTPS requests being sent to the webauth module, complete the steps given below:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	no ip http server Example: Device(config)# no ip http server	Sets the HTTP server to its default.
Step 4	ip http {server secure-server} Example: Device(config)# ip http server	Enables the HTTP server or the HTTP secure server.
Step 5	parameter-map type webauth global Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Enables the global parameter map mode.
Step 6	secure-webauth-disable Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # secure-webauth-disable	Disables HTTP secure server for web authentication.
Step 7	webauth-http-enable Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # webauth-http-enable	Enables HTTP server for web authentication.

Creating a Parameter Map (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Click Policy Map .
Step 4	Enter Parameter Name , Maximum HTTP connections , Init-State Timeout(secs) and choose webauth in the Type drop-down list.
Step 5	Click Apply to Device .
-

Creating Parameter Maps

Configuring Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth .
Step 2	On the Web Auth page, click Add .
Step 3	In the Create Web Auth Parameter window that is displayed, enter a name for the parameter map.
Step 4	In the Maximum HTTP Connections field, enter the maximum number of HTTP connections that you want to allow.
Step 5	In the Init-State Timeout field, enter the time after which the init state timer should expire due to user's failure to enter valid credentials in the login page.
Step 6	Choose the type of Web Auth parameter.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
Step 8	On the Web Auth page, click the name of the parameter map.
Step 9	In the Edit WebAuth Parameter window that is displayed, choose the required Banner Type . • If you choose Banner Text, enter the required banner text to be displayed. • If you choose File Name, specify the path of the file from which the banner text has to be picked up.
Step 10	Enter the virtual IP addresses as required.
Step 11	Set appropriate status of WebAuth Intercept HTTPS , Captive Bypass Portal .
Step 12	Set appropriate status for Disable Success Window , Disable Logout Window , and Login Auth Bypass for FQDN .
Step 13	Check the Sleeping Client Status check box to enable authentication of sleeping clients and then specify the Sleeping Client Timeout in minutes. Valid range is between 10 minutes and 43200 minutes.
Step 14	Click the Advanced tab.
Step 15	To configure external web authentication, perform these tasks:

- a) In the **Redirect for log-in** field, enter the name of the external server to send login request.
- b) In the **Redirect On-Success** field, enter the name of the external server to redirect after a successful login.
- c) In the **Redirect On-Failure** field, enter the name of the external server to redirect after a login failure.
- d) (Optional) Under **Redirect to External Server** in the **Redirect Append for AP MAC Address** field, enter the AP MAC address.
- e) (Optional) In the **Redirect Append for Client MAC Address** field, enter the client MAC address.
- f) (Optional) In the **Redirect Append for WLAN SSID** field, enter the WLAN SSID.
- g) In the **Portal IPV4 Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the portal to send redirects.
- h) In the **Portal IPV6 Address** field, enter the IPv6 address of the portal to send redirects, if IPv6 address is used.

Step 16 To configure customized local web authentication, perform these tasks:

- a) Under **Customized Page**, specify the following pages:

- **Login Failed Page**
- **Login Page**
- **Logout Page**
- **Login Successful Page**

Step 17 Click **Update & Apply**.

Configuring the Internal Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the internal local web authentication:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth {parameter-map-name global} Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth sample	Creates the parameter map. The parameter-map-name must not exceed 99 characters.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the Customized Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the customized local web authentication:



Note Virtual IP address is mandatory for custom web authentication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth sample	Configures the webauth type parameter. Note You need to configure a virtual IP in the global parameter map to use the customized web authentication bundle.
Step 3	type {authbypass consent webauth webconsent} Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth	Configures webauth sub-types, such as passthru, consent, webauth, or webconsent.
Step 4	custom-page login device <i>html-filename</i> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login device bootflash:login.html	Configures the customized login page.
Step 5	custom-page login expired device <i>html-filename</i> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login expired device bootflash:loginexpired.html	Configures the customized login expiry page.
Step 6	custom-page success device <i>html-filename</i> Example:	Configures the customized login success page.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map) # custom-page success device bootflash:loginsuccess.html</pre>	
Step 7	custom-page failure device <i>html-filename</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map) # custom-page failure device bootflash:loginfail.html</pre>	Configures the customized login failure page.
Step 8	end Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map) # end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the External Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the external local web authentication:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config) # parameter-map type webauth sample</pre>	Configures the webauth type parameter.
Step 3	type {authbypass consent webauth webconsent} Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map) # type webauth</pre>	Configures the webauth sub-types, such as authbypass, consent, passthru, webauth, or webconsent.
Step 4	redirect [for-login on-failure on-success] <i>URL</i>	Configures the redirect URL for the login, failure, and success pages.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login http://www.cisco.com/login.html</pre>	Note In the redirect url, you need to press <i>Ctrl+v</i> and type <i>?</i> to configure the <i>?</i> character. The <i>?</i> character is commonly used in URL when ISE is configured as an external portal.
Step 5	redirect portal {ipv4 ipv6} ip-address Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv4 23.0.0.1</pre>	Configures the external portal IPv4 address. Note The IP address should be one of the associated IP addresses of the domain and not a random IP address when using FQDN. It is recommended to use the FQDN URL here, if a given domain resolves to more than a single IP address.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the Web Authentication WLANs

Follow the procedure given below to configure WLAN using web auth security and map the authentication list and parameter map:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid</pre>	Specifies the WLAN name and ID. <i>profile-name</i> is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 512. <i>ssid-name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	no security wpa Example:	Disables the WPA security.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa	
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth	Enables web authentication for WLAN.
Step 5	security web-auth {authentication-list authentication-list-name parameter-map parameter-map-name} Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth authentication-list webauthlistlocal Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map sample	Enables web authentication for WLAN. Here, • authentication-list authentication-list-name: Sets the authentication list for IEEE 802.1x. • parameter-map parameter-map-name: Configures the parameter map. Note When security web-auth is enabled, you get to map the default authentication-list and global parameter-map . This is applicable for authentication-list and parameter-map that are not explicitly mentioned.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wlan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Pre-Auth Web Authentication ACL (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an access control list (ACL) and a WLAN.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click the name of the WLAN.
Step 3	In the Edit WLAN window, click the Security tab and then click the Layer3 tab.
Step 4	Click Show Advanced Settings .
Step 5	In the Preauthentication ACL section, choose the appropriate ACL to be mapped to the WLAN.

Step 6 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Pre-Auth Web Authentication ACL (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure pre-auth web authentication ACL:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} <i>hostname source-wildcard-bits</i> Example: Device(config)# access-list 2 deny your_host 10.1.1.1 log	Creates an ACL list. The <i>access-list-number</i> is a decimal number from 1 to 99, 100 to 199, 300 to 399, 600 to 699, 1300 to 1999, 2000 to 2699, or 2700 to 2799. Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit if the conditions are matched. The <i>source</i> is the source address of the network or host from which the packet is being sent specified as: • The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format. • The keyword any as an abbreviation for <i>source</i> and <i>source-wildcard</i> of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard. • The keyword host as an abbreviation for <i>source</i> and <i>source-wildcard</i> of source 0.0.0.0. (Optional) The <i>source-wildcard</i> applies wildcard bits to the source. Note AP forwards traffic, if it matches with any of the ACLs applied in the pre-authentication ACLs. It is recommended to use bi-directional rule for client in webauth pending and downstream traffic.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	wlan <i>profile-name</i> <i>wlan-id</i> <i>ssid-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid</pre>	Creates the WLAN. <i>profile-name</i> is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 512. <i>ssid-name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 4	ip access-group web <i>access-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web name</pre>	Maps the ACL to the web auth WLAN. <i>access-list-name</i> is the IPv4 ACL name or ID.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the Maximum Web Authentication Request Retries

Follow these steps to configure the maximum web authentication request retries:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wireless security web-auth retries <i>number</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless security web-auth retries 2</pre>	<i>number</i> is the maximum number of web auth request retries. The valid range is 0 to 20.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	end Example: Device (config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Web Auth**.
- Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab and choose the required Banner Type:
- If you choose **Banner Text**, enter the required banner text to be displayed.
 - If you choose **File Name**, specify the path of the file from which the banner text has to be picked up.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply**.
-

Configuring a Local Banner in Web Authentication Page (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a local banner in web authentication pages.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>param-map</i> Example: Device (config)# <code>parameter-map type webauth <i>param-map</i></code>	Configures the web authentication parameters. Enters the parameter map configuration mode.
Step 3	banner [<i>file</i> <i>banner-text</i> <i>title</i>] Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map)# <code>banner http C My Switch C</code>	Enables the local banner. Create a custom banner by entering <i>C banner-text C</i> (where <i>C</i> is a delimiting character), or <i>file</i> that indicates a file (for

	Command or Action	Purpose
		example, a logo or text file) that appears in the banner, or <i>title</i> that indicates the title of the banner.
Step 4	end Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Type WebAuth, Consent, or Both

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device # configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map name</i> Example: Device (config) # parameter-map type webauth webparalocal	Configures the webauth type parameter.
Step 3	type consent Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map) # type consent	Configures webauth type as consent. You can configure the type as webauth, consent, or both (webconsent).
Step 4	end Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show running-config section parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map</i> Example: Device (config) # show running-config section parameter-map type webauth test	Displays the configuration details.

Configuring Preauthentication ACL

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> Example: Device (config)# wlan ramban	For <i>wlan-name</i> , enter the profile name.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device (config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN.
Step 4	ip access-group web <i>preauthrule</i> Example: Device (config-wlan)# ip access-group web preauthrule	Configures ACL that has to be applied before authentication.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device (config)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: Device (config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	show wlan name <i>wlan-name</i> Example: Device# show wlan name ramban	Displays the configuration details.

Configuring TrustPoint for Local Web Authentication

Before you begin

Ensure that a certificate is installed on your controller . Using trustpoint controller presents the domain specific certificate that client browser trusts when it gets redirected to *.com portal.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth global Example: Device (config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Creates the parameter map.
Step 3	trustpoint trustpoint-name Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map)# trustpoint trustpoint-name	Configures trustpoint for local web authentication.
Step 4	end Example: Device (config-params-parameter-map)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuration Examples for Local Web Authentication

Example: Obtaining Web Authentication Certificate

This example shows how to obtain web authentication certificate.

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# crypto pki import cert pkcs12 tftp://9.1.0.100/ldapsrvr-cert.p12 cisco
Device(config)# end
Device# show crypto pki trustpoints cert
Trustpoint cert:
  Subject Name:
    e=rkannajr@cisco.com
    cn=sthaliya-lnx
    ou=WNBU
    o=Cisco
    l=SanJose
    st=California
    c=US
  Serial Number (hex): 00
  Certificate configured.
Device# show crypto pki certificates cert
Certificate
  Status: Available
  Certificate Serial Number (hex): 04
  Certificate Usage: General Purpose
  Issuer:

```

```

e=rkannajr@cisco.com
cn=sthaliya-lnx
ou=WNBU
o=Cisco
l=SanJose
st=California
c=US
Subject:
  Name: ldapserver
  e=rkannajr@cisco.com
  cn=ldapserver
  ou=WNBU
  o=Cisco
  st=California
  c=US
Validity Date:
  start date: 07:35:23 UTC Jan 31 2012
  end   date: 07:35:23 UTC Jan 28 2022
Associated Trustpoints: cert ldap12
Storage: nvram:rkannajrcisc#4.cer

CA Certificate
Status: Available
Certificate Serial Number (hex): 00
Certificate Usage: General Purpose
Issuer:
  e=rkannajr@cisco.com
  cn=sthaliya-lnx
  ou=WNBU
  o=Cisco
  l=SanJose
  st=California
  c=US
Subject:
  e=rkannajr@cisco.com
  cn=sthaliya-lnx
  ou=WNBU
  o=Cisco
  l=SanJose
  st=California
  c=US
Validity Date:
  start date: 07:27:56 UTC Jan 31 2012
  end   date: 07:27:56 UTC Jan 28 2022
Associated Trustpoints: cert ldap12 ldap
Storage: nvram:rkannajrcisc#0CA.cer

```

Example: Displaying a Web Authentication Certificate

This example shows how to display a web authentication certificate.

```

Device# show crypto ca certificate verb
Certificate
Status: Available
Version: 3
Certificate Serial Number (hex): 2A9636AC00000000858B
Certificate Usage: General Purpose
Issuer:
cn=Cisco Manufacturing CA
o=Cisco Systems
Subject:

```



```

Name: WS-C3780-6DS-S-2037064C0E80
Serial Number: PID:WS-C3780-6DS-S SN:FOC1534X12Q
cn=WS-C3780-6DS-S-2037064C0E80
serialNumber=PID:WS-C3780-6DS-S SN:FOC1534X12Q
CRL Distribution Points:
http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/crl/cmca.crl
Validity Date:
start date: 15:43:22 UTC Aug 21 2011
end date: 15:53:22 UTC Aug 21 2021
Subject Key Info:
Public Key Algorithm: rsaEncryption
RSA Public Key: (1024 bit)
Signature Algorithm: SHA1 with RSA Encryption
Fingerprint MD5: A310B856 A41565F1 1D9410B5 7284CB21
Fingerprint SHA1: 04F180F6 CA1A67AF 9D7F561A 2BB397A1 0F5EB3C9
X509v3 extensions:
X509v3 Key Usage: F0000000
    Digital Signature
    Non Repudiation
    Key Encipherment
    Data Encipherment
X509v3 Subject Key ID: B9EEB123 5A3764B4 5E9C54A7 46E6EECA 02D283F7
X509v3 Authority Key ID: D0C52226 AB4F4660 ECAE0591 C7DC5AD1 B047F76C
Authority Info Access:
Associated Trustpoints: CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI
Key Label: CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI

```

Example: Choosing the Default Web Authentication Login Page

This example shows how to choose a default web authentication login page.

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth test
This operation will permanently convert all relevant authentication commands to their CPL
control-policy equivalents. As this conversion is irreversible and will
disable the conversion CLI 'authentication display [legacy|new-style]', you are strongly
advised to back up your current configuration before proceeding.
Do you wish to continue? [yes]: yes
Device(config)# wlan wlan50
Device(config-wlan)# shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list test
Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map test
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end
Device# show running-config | section wlan50
wlan wlan50 50 wlan50
security wpa akm wpa2
security wpa wpa1
security wpa wpa1 ciphers aes
security wpa wpa1 ciphers tkip
security web-auth authentication-list test
security web-auth parameter-map test
session-timeout 1800
no shutdown

Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth

```

Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv4 External Web Server

This example shows how to choose a customized web authentication login page from an IPv4 external web server.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1.
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map
parameter-map type webauth global
virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1.
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
security web-auth parameter-map rasagna-auth-map
security web-auth parameter-map test
```

Example: Choosing a Customized Web Authentication Login Page from an IPv6 External Web Server

This example shows how to choose a customized web authentication login page from an IPv6 external web server.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# virtual-ip ipv6 2001:DB8::/48
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login http://9:1:1::100/login.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv6 9:1:1::100
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map
parameter-map type webauth global
virtual-ip ipv6 2001:DB8::/48
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9:1:1::100/login.html
redirect portal ipv6 9:1:1::100
security web-auth parameter-map rasagna-auth-map
security web-auth parameter-map test
```

Example: Assigning Login, Login Failure, and Logout Pages per WLAN

This example shows how to assign login, login failure and logout pages per WLAN.

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth test
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login device flash:loginsantosh.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page login expired device flash:loginexpire.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page failure device flash:loginfail.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# custom-page success device flash:loginsucess.html
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100
custom-page login device flash:loginsantosh.html
custom-page success device flash:loginsucess.html
custom-page failure device flash:loginfail.html
custom-page login expired device flash:loginexpire.html

```

Example: Configuring Preauthentication ACL

This example shows how to configure preauthentication ACL.

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan fff
Device(config-wlan)# shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web preauthrule
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end
Device# show wlan name fff

```

Example: Configuring Webpassthrough

This example shows how to configure webpassthrough.

```

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth webparalocal
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type consent
Device(config-params-parameter-map)# end
Device# show running-config | section parameter-map type webauth test
parameter-map type webauth test
type webauth
redirect for-login http://9.1.0.100/login.html
redirect portal ipv4 9.1.0.100

```

Verifying Web Authentication Type

To verify the web authentication type, run the following command:

```

Device# show parameter-map type webauth all
Type Name
-----
Global global
Named webauth
Named ext
Named redirect
Named abc

```

```

Named glbal
Named ewa-2

Device# show parameter-map type webauth global
Parameter Map Name : global
Banner:
Text : CisCo
Type : webauth
Auth-proxy Init State time : 120 sec
Webauth max-http connection : 100
Webauth logout-window : Enabled
Webauth success-window : Enabled
Consent Email : Disabled
Sleeping-Client : Enabled
Sleeping-Client timeout : 60 min
Virtual-ipv4 : 192.0.2.1.
Virtual-ipv4 hostname :
Webauth intercept https : Disabled
Webauth Captive Bypass : Disabled
Webauth bypass intercept ACL :
Trustpoint name :
HTTP Port : 80
Watch-list:
Enabled : no
Webauth login-auth-bypass:

Device# show parameter-map type webauth name global
Parameter Map Name : global
Type : webauth
Auth-proxy Init State time : 120 sec
Webauth max-http connection : 100
Webauth logout-window : Enabled
Webauth success-window : Enabled
Consent Email : Disabled
Sleeping-Client : Disabled
Webauth login-auth-bypass:

```

External Web Authentication (EWA)

Configuring EWA with Single WebAuth Server Address and Default Ports (80/443) (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa authentication login Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication login WEBAUTH local	Defines the authentication method at login.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth ISE-Ext-Webauth_IP</pre>	Creates the parameter map. The <i>parameter-map-name</i> must not exceed 99 characters.
Step 4	type webauth Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth</pre>	Configures the webauth type parameter.
Step 5	redirect for-login URL-String Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login https://192.168.0.98/portal/parameter-map-name</pre>	Configures the URL string for redirect during login.
Step 6	redirect portal ipv4 ip-address Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect portal ipv4 192.168.0.98</pre>	Configures the external portal IPv4 address.
Step 7	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 8	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan EWLC3-GUEST 3 EWLC3-GUEST</pre>	Configures a WLAN.
Step 9	no security ft adaptive Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive</pre>	Disables adaptive 11r.
Step 10	no security wpa Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa</pre>	Disables WPA security.
Step 11	no security wpa wpa2 Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2</pre>	Disables WPA2 security.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 12	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 13	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 14	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables web authentication for WLAN.
Step 15	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list WEBAUTH	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 16	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map ISE-Ext-Webauth_IP	Configures the parameter map. Note If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 17	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ip access-list extended <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip access-list extended preauth_ISE_Ext_WA</pre>	Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enters access-list configuration mode.
Step 3	<i>access-list-number</i> permit tcp any host <i>external_web_server_ip_address1</i> eq <i>port-number</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# 10 permit tcp any host 192.168.0.98 eq 8443</pre>	Permits access from any host to the external web server port number 8443.
Step 4	<i>access-list-number</i> permit tcp any host <i>external_web_server_ip_address2</i> eq <i>port-number</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# 10 permit tcp any host 192.168.0.99 eq 8443</pre>	Permits access from any host to the external web server port number 8443.
Step 5	<i>access-list-number</i> permit udp any any eq <i>domain</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# 20 permit udp any any eq domain</pre>	Permits DNS UDP traffic.
Step 6	<i>access-list-number</i> permit udp any any eq <i>bootpc</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# 30 permit udp any any eq bootpc</pre>	Permits DHCP traffic.
Step 7	<i>access-list-number</i> permit udp any any eq <i>bootps</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# 40 permit udp any any eq bootps</pre>	Permits DHCP traffic.
Step 8	<i>access-list-number</i> permit tcp host <i>external_web_server_ip_address1</i> eq <i>port_number</i> any Example: <pre>Device(config)# 50 permit tcp host 192.168.0.98 eq 8443 any</pre>	Permits the access from the external web server port 8443 to any host.
Step 9	<i>access-list-number</i> permit tcp host <i>external_web_server_ip_address2</i> eq <i>port_number</i> any	Permits the access from the external web server port 8443 to any host.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config)# 50 permit tcp host 192.168.0.99 eq 8443 any	
Step 10	<i>access-list-number</i> permit tcp any any eq domain Example: Device(config)# 60 permit tcp any any eq domain	Permits the DNS TCP traffic.
Step 11	<i>access-list-number</i> deny ip any any Example: Device(config)# 70 deny ip any any	Denies all the other traffic.
Step 12	<i>wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan EWLC3-GUEST 3 EWLC3-GUEST	Creates the WLAN.
Step 13	<i>ip access-group web name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web preauth_ISE_Ext_WA	Configures the IPv4 WLAN web ACL. The variable <i>name</i> specifies the user-defined IPv4 ACL name.
Step 14	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Wired Guest EWA with Multiple Web Servers and/or Ports Different than Default (80/443)

Before you begin

You cannot assign a manual ACL to a wired guest LAN configuration. The workaround is to use the bypass ACL in the global parameter map.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<i>ip access-list extended name</i> Example:	Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enters access-list configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ip access-list extended BYPASS_ACL	
Step 3	<i>access-list-number deny ip any host hostname</i> Example: Device(config)# 10 deny ip any host 192.168.0.45	Allows the traffic to switch centrally.
Step 4	<i>access-list-number deny ip any host hostname</i> Example: Device(config)# 20 deny ip any host 4.0.0.1	Allows the traffic to switch centrally.
Step 5	parameter-map type webauth global Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 6	webauth-bypass-intercept name Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # webauth-bypass-intercept BYPASS_ACL	Creates a WebAuth bypass intercept using the ACL name. Note You cannot apply a manual ACL to the wired guest profile and configure an external web authentication with multiple IP addresses or different ports. The workaround is to use the bypass ACL for wired guest profile.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Authentication for Sleeping Clients

Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients

Clients with guest access that have had successful web authentication are allowed to sleep and wake up without having to go through another authentication process through the login page. You can configure the duration for which sleeping clients should be remembered for before reauthentication becomes necessary. The valid range is 10 minutes to 43200 minutes, with the default being 720 minutes. You can also configure this duration on WebAuth parameter map that is mapped to a WLAN. Note that the sleeping client timer comes into effect due to instances such as idle timeout, session timeout, disabling of the WLAN, and the AP being nonoperational.

This feature is supported in the following FlexConnect scenario: local switching and central authentication.



Caution If the MAC address of a client that goes to sleep mode is spoofed, the fake device such as a laptop can be authenticated.

Mobility Scenarios

Following are some guidelines in a mobility scenario:

- L2 roaming in the same subnet is supported.
- Anchor sleeping timer is applicable.
- The sleeping client information is shared between multiple autoanchors when a sleeping client moves from one anchor to another.

A sleeping client does not require reauthentication in the following scenarios:

- Suppose there are two controller s in a mobility group. A client that is associated with one controller goes to sleep and then wakes up and gets associated with the other controller .
- Suppose there are three controller s in a mobility group. A client that is associated with the second controller that is anchored to the first controller goes to sleep, wakes up, and gets associated with the third controller .
- A client sleeps, wakes up and gets associated with the same or different export foreign controller that is anchored to the export anchor.

Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients

- The sleep client feature works only for WLAN configured with WebAuth security.
- You can configure the sleeping clients only on a per WebAuth parameter-map basis.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is supported only on WLANs that have Layer 3 security enabled.
- With Layer 3 security, the Authentication, Passthrough, and On MAC Filter failure web policies are supported. The Splash Page Web Redirect web policy is not supported.
- The central web authentication of sleeping clients is not supported.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is not supported on guest LANs and remote LANs.
- A guest access sleeping client that has a local user policy is not supported. In this case, the WLAN-specific timer is applied.

Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Web Auth**.
- Step 2** In the **Webauth Parameter Map** tab, click the parameter map name. The **Edit WebAuth Parameter** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Select **Sleeping Client Status** check box.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	[no] parameter-map type webauth <i>{parameter-map-name global}</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 2	sleeping-client [timeout time] Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # sleeping-client timeout 100	Configures the sleeping client timeout to 100 minutes. Valid range is between 10 minutes and 43200 minutes. Note If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes.
Step 3	end	Exits parameter-map webauth configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	(Optional) show wireless client sleeping-client Example: Device# show wireless client sleeping-client	Shows the MAC address of the clients and the time remaining in their respective sessions.
Step 5	(Optional) clear wireless client sleeping-client [mac-address mac-addr] Example: Device# clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address 00e1.e1e1.0001	clear wireless client sleeping-client—Deletes all sleeping client entries from the sleeping client cache. clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address mac-addr—Deletes the

	Command or Action	Purpose
		specific MAC entry from the sleeping client cache.

Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications

Mobility Support for Sleeping Clients

From Release 17.1.1 onwards, mobility support for guest and nonguest sleeping clients.

Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications

Multiple authentication feature supports sleeping clients configured in the WLAN profile.

The following table outlines the supported combination of multiple authentications:

Table 66: Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications

Layer 2	Layer 3	Supported
MAB	LWA	Yes
MAB Failure	LWA	Yes
Dot1x	LWA	Yes
PSK	LWA	Yes

Configuring Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications

Configuring WLAN for Dot1x and Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example:	Enters WLAN configuration submode. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	• <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs.
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Configures web authentication.
Step 5	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map parameter-map-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a WLAN for MAC Authentication Bypass and Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name	Enters WLAN configuration submenu.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	• <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	mac-filtering list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering cat-radius	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes —Exryption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map parameter-map-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a WLAN for Local Web Authentication and MAC Filtering

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name	Enters WLAN configuration submenu.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	• <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	mac-filtering <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering cat-radius	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security Authenticated Key Management (AKM) for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes: Exryption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure wlan-id	Configures the fallback policy with MAC filtering and web authentication.
Step 7	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a PSK + LWA in a WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submode. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables web authentication for a WLAN.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes: Excrption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security wpa psk set-key ascii ascii/hex key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 1234567	Configures the preshared key on a WLAN.
Step 7	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures PSK support.
Step 8	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example:	Enables the authentication list for dot1x security.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth authentication-list default	
Step 9	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.

Configuring a Sleeping Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>{parameter-map-name global}</i> Example: Device(config) # parameter-map type webauth MAP-2	Creates a parameter map and enters <i>parameter-map-name</i> configuration mode. The specific configuration commands supported for a global parameter map defined with the global keyword differ from the commands supported for a named parameter map defined with the <i>parameter-map-name</i> argument.
Step 3	sleeping client [timeout time] Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map) # sleeping-client timeout 60	Configures the sleeping client timeout, in minutes. The available range for the <i>time</i> argument is from 10 to 43200. Note: If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes.

Verifying a Sleeping Client Configuration

To verify a sleeping client configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client sleeping-client
Total number of sleeping-client entries: 1
```

```
MAC Address                               Remaining time (mm:ss)
-----
2477.031b.aa18                           59:56
```

Multi Authentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 67: Feature History for Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication	This feature supports the merging of applied policies during multiauthentication of 802.1X or MAC authentication bypass (MAB) and local web authentication (LWA).

Information About Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

In a wireless setup, for example, in a university, clients authenticate through 802.1X authentication. Because the 802.1X (dot1X) authentication process is secure and does not require user intervention, the end-users are unaware of the network that their devices are connected to. This could lead to serious concerns if they connect to the university's wireless network and post inappropriate content or access restricted content.

To avoid this situation, web authentication (webauth) and 802.1X authentication are configured in the network. End-user consent is used as a part of webauth to inform users that they are connected to the university's Wi-Fi network.

When the end-users accept the credentials for consent, AAA policies are not applied. The AAA policies that were applied earlier are deleted, resulting in a VLAN change and client disconnection.

A new command is introduced in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1 to fix this issue. When you run the **consent activation-mode merge** command, the policy that is applied through consent is merged with the policy applied for 802.1X or MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) authentication, thereby allowing clients to access the network. This command is available in parameter-map mode, which is configured with **type consent** command.

Limitations for Multi Authentication Combination of 802.1X and Local Web Authentication

The following are the limitations for multiauthentication combination of 802.1X authentication and LWA:

- It is not possible to configure this feature on the controller GUI.

- SNMP is not supported.
- When the **consent activation-mode merge** command is not configured on the webauth parameter map, the default activation mode is Replace. This means that the user profile for consent replaces all the user profile policies that were previously applied.

Enabling the Multiauthentication Combination of 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have working knowledge of multiauthentication concepts, LWA (consent), and AAA override.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enter global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map1</i>	Configures the webauth type parameter. Enters the parameter map configuration mode.
Step 3	type consent Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type consent	Configures the type as consent .
Step 4	[no] consent {activation-mode merge email} Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# consent activation-mode merge	Enables policy activation mode and merges the previous policy. Run the no form of this command to disable the feature.

Verifying Multiauthentication Combination with 802.1X Authentication and Local Web Authentication

To verify the multiauthentication combination with 802.1X authentication and LWA, run the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type webauth lwa-consent
Parameter Map Name      : lwa_consent
Banner Title           : Consent Title
Banner Text            : Please accept the consent
Type                   : consent
```

```
Auth-proxy Init State time      : 300 sec
Webauth max-http connection    : 200
Webauth logout-window          : Enabled
Webauth success-window         : Enabled
Consent Email                   : Disabled
Activation Mode                 : Merge
Sleeping-Client                 : Disabled
Webauth login-auth-bypass:
```



CHAPTER 98

Central Web Authentication

- [Information About Central Web Authentication, on page 963](#)
- [How to Configure ISE, on page 964](#)
- [How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller, on page 966](#)
- [Authentication for Sleeping Clients, on page 974](#)
- [Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications, on page 976](#)

Information About Central Web Authentication

Central web authentication offers the possibility to have a central device that acts as a web portal (in this example, the ISE). The major difference compared to the usual local web authentication is that it is shifted to Layer 2 along with MAC filtering or dot1x authentication. The concept also differs in that the radius server (ISE in this example) returns special attributes that indicate to the switch that a web redirection must occur. This solution eliminates any delay to start the web authentication.

The following are the different types of web authentication methods:

- **Local Web Authentication (LWA):** Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the web authentication page and the pre-authentication ACL are locally configured on the controller. The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server.
- **External Web Authentication (EWA):** Configured as Layer 3 security on the controller, the controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server. The credentials entered by the client on the login page is authenticated by the controller locally or through a RADIUS or LDAP server. The pre-authentication ACL is configured statically on the controller.
- **Central Web Authentication (CWA):** Configured mostly as Layer 2 security on the controller, the redirection URL and the pre-authentication ACL reside on ISE and are pushed during layer 2 authentication to the controller. The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page. ISE validates the credentials entered by the client through HTTPS and authenticates the user.

Globally, if the MAC address of the client station is not known by the radius server (but other criteria can also be used), the server returns the redirection attributes, and the controller authorizes the station (using the MAC filtering) but places an access list to redirect the web traffic to the portal.

Once the user logs into the guest portal, it is possible to re-authenticate the client so that a new Layer 2 MAC filtering occurs using the Change of Authorization (CoA). This way, the ISE remembers that it was a webauth user and pushes the necessary authorization attributes to the controller for accessing the network.

**Note**

- In Central Web Authentication (CWA) with dual VLAN posture scenario, Cisco AireOS and IOS-XE controller performs 2 and 3 EAPOL handshakes respectively. If a client is stuck in a quarantine VLAN because of any break in EAPOL handshake due to client or network issue, you need to analyze the client or network issue.
- However, you can manually disconnect or reconnect the client to come out of the quarantine loop (or) click the Scan Again on AnyConnect (Or) enable posture lease (Or) use the ISE posture sync feature.
- If the controller has no switch virtual interface (SVI) in the client subnet or VLAN, the controller has to use any of the other SVIs and send traffic as defined in the routing table. This means that the traffic is sent to another gateway in the core of the network; this traffic then reaches the client subnet. Firewalls typically block traffic from and to the same switch, as seen in this scenario, so redirection might not work properly. Workarounds are to allow this behavior on the firewall.

Prerequisites for Central Web Authentication

- Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE)

How to Configure ISE

To configure ISE, proceed as follows:

1. Create an authorization profile.
2. Create an authentication rule.
3. Create an authorization rule.

Creating an Authorization Profile

Procedure

-
Step 1	Click Policy , and click Policy Elements .
Step 2	Click Results .
Step 3	Expand Authorization , and click Authorization Profiles .
Step 4	Click Add to create a new authorization profile for central webauth.
Step 5	In the Name field, enter a name for the profile. For example, CentralWebauth.
Step 6	Choose ACCESS_ACCEPT from the Access Type drop-down list.

- Step 7** Check the **Web Redirection (CWA, MDM, NSP, CPP)** check box, and choose **Centralized Web Auth** from the drop-down list.
- Step 8** In the **ACL** field, enter the name of the ACL that defines the traffic to be redirected. For example, redirect.
- Step 9** In the **Value** field, choose the default or customized values.
- The Value attribute defines whether the ISE sees the default or a custom web portal that the ISE admin created.
- Step 10** Click **Save**.
-

Creating an Authentication Rule

Follow the procedure given below to use the authentication profile and create the authentication rule:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Policy > Authentication** page, click **Authentication**.
- Step 2** Enter a name for your authentication rule. For example, MAB.
- Step 3** In the If condition field, select the plus (+) icon.
- Step 4** Choose **Compound condition**, and choose **Wireless_MAB**.
- Step 5** Click the arrow located next to **and ...** in order to expand the rule further.
- Step 6** Click the + icon in the Identity Source field, and choose **Internal endpoints**.
- Step 7** Choose **Continue** from the 'If user not found' drop-down list.
- This option allows a device to be authenticated even if its MAC address is not known.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.
-

Creating an Authorization Rule

You can configure many rules in the authorization policy. The *MAC not known* rule is configured in this section:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Policy > Authorization**.
- Step 2** In the Rule Name field, enter a name. For example: *Mac not known*.
- Step 3** In the Conditions field, click the plus (+) icon.
- Step 4** Choose **Compound Conditions**, and choose **Wireless_MAB**.
- Step 5** From the settings icon, select **Add Attribute/Value** from the options.
- Step 6** In the Description field, choose **Network Access > AuthenticationStatus** as the attribute from the drop-down list.

- Step 7** Choose the **Equals** operator.
- Step 8** From the right-hand field, choose **UnknownUser**.
- Step 9** In the Permissions field, choose the authorization profile name that you had created earlier.
- The ISE continues even though the user (or MAC) is not known.
- Unknown users are now presented with the Login page. However, once they enter their credentials, they are presented again with an authentication request on the ISE; therefore, another rule must be configured with a condition that is met if the user is a guest user. For example, if `UseridentityGroup Equals Guest` is used then it is assumed that all guests belong to this group.
- Step 10** In the Conditions field, click the plus (+) icon.
- Step 11** Choose **Compound Conditions**, and choose to create a new condition.
- The new rule must come before the *MAC not known* rule.
- Step 12** From the settings icon, select **Add Attribute/Value** from the options.
- Step 13** In the Description field, choose **Network Access > UseCase** as the attribute from the drop-down list.
- Step 14** Choose the **Equals** operator.
- Step 15** From the right-hand field, choose **GuestFlow**.
- Step 16** In the Permissions field, click the plus (+) icon to select a result for your rule.
- You can choose **Standard > PermitAccess** option or create a custom profile to return the attributes that you like.
- When the user is authorized on the login page, the ISE triggers a COA that results in the restart of Layer 2 authentication. When the user is identified as a guest user, the user is authorized.

How to Configure Central Web Authentication on the Controller

To configure central web authentication on the controller, proceed as follows:

1. Configure WLAN.
2. Configure policy profile.
3. Configure redirect ACL.
4. Configure AAA for central web authentication.
5. Configure redirect ACL in Flex profile.

Configuring WLAN (GUI)

Before you begin

You need to enable MAC filtering for Layer 2 authentication to download the redirect URL and ACL.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** In the **WLANs** window, click the name of the **WLAN** or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 3** In the **Add/Edit WLAN** window that is displayed, click the **General** tab to configure the following parameters.
- In the **Profile Name** field, enter or edit the name of the profile.
 - In the **SSID** field, enter or edit the SSID name.
The SSID name can be alphanumeric, and up to 32 characters in length.
 - In the **WLAN ID** field, enter or edit the ID number. The valid range is between 1 and 512.
 - From the **Radio Policy** drop-down list, choose the **802.11** radio band.
 - Using the **Broadcast SSID** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
 - Using the **Status** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- Step 4** Click the **Security** tab, and then **Layer 2** tab to configure the following parameters:
- From the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list, choose **None**. This setting disables Layer 2 security.
 - Enter the **Reassociation Timeout** value, in seconds. This is the time after which a fast transition reassociation times out.
 - Check the **Over the DS** check box to enable Fast Transition over a distributed system.
 - Choose OWE, Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) provides data confidentiality with encryption over the air between an AP radio and a wireless client. OWE Transition Mode is meant to provide a sort of backwards compatibility.
 - Choose Fast Transition, 802.11r which is the IEEE standard for fast roaming, introduces a new concept of roaming where the initial handshake with a new AP is done even before the corresponding client roams to the target access point. This concept is called Fast Transition.
 - Check the check box to enable MAC filtering in the WLAN.
 - Check the **Lobby Admin Access** check box to enable Lobby Admin access.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WLAN (CLI)

Configure WLAN using commands.



Note You need to enable MAC filtering for Layer 2 authentication to download the redirect URL and ACL.

After completing the WLAN configuration, if the changes are not pushed to all the APs, the following syslog message appears:

2021/01/06 16:20:00.597927186 {wncd_x_R0-4}{1}: [wlanmgr-db] [20583]: UUID: 0, ra: 0, TID: 0 (note): Unable to push WLAN config changes to all APs, cleanup required for WlanId: 2, profile: wlan1 state: Delete pending

If the above mentioned syslog message appears for more than six minutes, reload the controller.

If the controller does not reload and still the syslog message appears, then collect the archive logs, wncd core file, and raise a case by clicking the following link: [Support Case Manager](#).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan wlanProfileName 1 ngwcSSID</pre>	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. wlan-name is the name of the configured WLAN. wlan-id is the wireless LAN identifier. The range is 1 to 512. SSID-name is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan wlan-name command.
Step 2	mac-filtering [name] Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering name</pre>	Enables MAC filtering on a WLAN. Note While configuring mac-filtering the default authentication list is considered, if the authentication list is not configured earlier.
Step 3	no security wpa Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa</pre>	Disable WPA security.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Example

```

Device# config terminal
Device(config)# wlan wlanProfileName 1 ngwcSSID
Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering default
Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown
Device(config-wlan)# end

```

Configuring Policy Profile (CLI)

Configure Policy Profile using commands.



Note You need a AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers. When a redirect URL and redirect ACL is received from the ISE server, NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA). Both NAC and AAA override must be available in the policy profile to which the client is being associated. The default policy profile is associated to an AP, if the AP is not associated to any other policy profiles. CWA clients may experience issues with VLAN assignment during the final RADIUS access-accept following successful authentication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless profile policy default-policy-profile Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Sets the policy profile.
Step 2	vlan vlan-id Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 41	Maps the VLAN to a policy profile. If vlan-id is not specified, the default native vlan 1 is applied. The valid range for vlan-id is 1 to 4096. Management VLAN is applied if no VLAN is configured on the policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers.
Step 4	nac Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac	Configures Network Access Control in the policy profile. NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Example

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 41
Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override
Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac
Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown
Device(config-wireless-policy)# end
```

Configuring a Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add Policy Profile** window, in General Tab, enter a name and description for the policy profile.
- Step 4** To enable the policy profile, set **Status** as Enabled.
- Step 5** Use the slider to enable or disable **Passive Client** and **Encrypted Traffic Analytics**.
- Step 6** (Optional) In the **CTS Policy** section, choose the appropriate status for the following:
- Inline Tagging—a transport mechanism using which a controller embedded wireless controller or access point understands the source SGT.
 - SGACL Enforcement
- Step 7** Specify a default **SGT**. The valid range is from 2 to 65519.
- Step 8** In the WLAN Switching Policy section, choose the following, as required:
- Central Switching
 - Central Authentication
 - Central DHCP
 - Central Association Enable

- Flex NAT/PAT

Step 9 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Creating Redirect ACL

The redirect ACL is a punt ACL that needs to be predefined on the controller (or the AP in case of FlexConnect local switching): the AAA server returns the name of the ACL and not its definition. The redirect ACL defines traffic (matching “deny” statements, as it denies redirection for it) that will be allowed through on the data plane and traffic (matching “permit” statements) that will be sent to the control plane towards the CPU for further processing (that is, the web interception and redirection in this case). The ACL has implicit (that is, the invisible) statements allowing DHCP and DNS traffic towards all IPs, just like it is the case with LWA. It also ends with a statement that a security ACL implicit deny.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ip access-list extended redirect Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip access-list extended redirect</pre>	The HTTP and HTTPS browsing does not work without authentication (per the other ACL) as ISE is configured to use a redirect ACL (named redirect).
Step 2	deny ip any host ISE-IP-add Example: <pre>Device(config)# deny ip any host 123.123.134.112</pre>	Allows traffic to ISE and all other traffic is blocked.
Step 3	deny ip host ISE-IP-add any Example: <pre>Device(config)# deny ip host 123.123.134.112 any</pre>	Allows traffic to ISE and all other traffic is blocked. Note This ACL is applicable for both local and flex mode.
Step 4	permit TCP any any eq web address/port-number Example: In case of HTTP: <pre>Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq www</pre> <pre>Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq 80</pre> Example: In case of HTTPS: <pre>Device(config)# permit TCP any any eq 443</pre>	Redirects all HTTP or HTTPS access to the ISE login page. port-number 80 is used for HTTP and port-number 443 is used for HTTPS. For the ACE to allow traffic to ISE, ISE should be configured above the HTTP/HTTPS ACE.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Configures the Change of Authorization (CoA) on the controller.
Step 2	client ISE-IP-add server-key radius-shared-secret Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 123.123.134.112 server-key 0 SECRET	Specifies a RADIUS client and the RADIUS key to be shared between a device and a RADIUS client. ISE-IP-add is the IP address of the RADIUS client. server-key is the radius client server-key. radius-shared-secret covers the following: • 0—Specifies unencrypted key. • 6—Specifies encrypted key. • 7—Specifies HIDDEN key. • Word—Unencrypted (cleartext) server key. The RADIUS shared secret should not exceed 240 characters while configuring WSMA data in GUI. Note All these steps work only if the AAA configuration is in place. See the <i>Configuring AAA Authentication</i> for details.

Example

```
Device# config terminal
Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author
Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 123.123.134.112 server-key 0 SECRET
Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end
```

Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (GUI)

The redirect ACL definition must be sent to the access point in the FlexConnect profile. For this, the redirect ACL associated with an AP must be configured in the FlexConnect profile where the client is hosted. If an access point is not configured with any of the FlexConnect profiles, the default FlexConnect profile is associated with it.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
 - Step 2** On the **Flex Profile** page, click the name of the FlexConnect profile or click **Add** to create a new FlexConnect profile.
 - Step 3** In the **Add/Edit Flex Profile** window that is displayed, click the **Policy ACL** tab.
 - Step 4** Click **Add** to map an ACL to the FlexConnect profile.
 - Step 5** Choose the ACL name, enable central web authentication, and specify the preauthentication URL filter.
 - Step 6** Click **Save**.
 - Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Redirect ACL in Flex Profile (CLI)

The redirect ACL definition must be sent to the access point in the Flex profile. For this, the redirect ACL associated to an AP must be configured in the Flex profile where the client is being hosted. If an access point is not configured with any of the Flex profiles, the default Flex profile is associated with it.



Note When the ACL is pushed down to the APs, the permission must change from **deny** to **permit** or vice-versa. This change does not occur if the ACL contains an object group, causing the ACL not to be fully translated, which may cause the redirection to fail.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless profile flex default-flex-profile Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile</pre>	Creates a new flex policy. The default flex profile name is default-flex-profile .
Step 2	acl-policy <i>acl policy name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy acl1</pre>	Configures ACL policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	central-webauth Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl) # central-webauth	Configures central web authentication.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Troubleshooting Central Web Authentication

Init-State timer running out

Problem Issue: The client devices are deauthenticated by the controller if users fail to enter their credentials in a limited time interval. The clients are deauthenticated after three times the time configured for the init-state timeout in the controller.

Problem Explanation: This is the expected functionality as the init-state timeout is not directly applicable for central web authentication; instead, it is the reap timer's value which is three times the init-state time plus five seconds ($3 * \text{init-state timeout} + 5$) that determines the time interval in seconds for client deauthentication. For example, if you have configured the init-state timeout as 10 seconds, then the client devices are deauthenticated if users fail to enter their credentials after 35 seconds; that is $(3 * 10 + 5) = 35$ seconds.

Authentication for Sleeping Clients

Information About Authenticating Sleeping Clients

Clients with guest access that have had successful web authentication are allowed to sleep and wake up without having to go through another authentication process through the login page. You can configure the duration for which sleeping clients should be remembered for before reauthentication becomes necessary. The valid range is 10 minutes to 43200 minutes, with the default being 720 minutes. You can also configure this duration on WebAuth parameter map that is mapped to a WLAN. Note that the sleeping client timer comes into effect due to instances such as idle timeout, session timeout, disabling of the WLAN, and the AP being nonoperational.

This feature is supported in the following FlexConnect scenario: local switching and central authentication.



Caution If the MAC address of a client that goes to sleep mode is spoofed, the fake device such as a laptop can be authenticated.

Mobility Scenarios

Following are some guidelines in a mobility scenario:

- L2 roaming in the same subnet is supported.

- Anchor sleeping timer is applicable.
- The sleeping client information is shared between multiple autoanchors when a sleeping client moves from one anchor to another.

A sleeping client does not require reauthentication in the following scenarios:

- Suppose there are two controller s in a mobility group. A client that is associated with one controller goes to sleep and then wakes up and gets associated with the other controller .
- Suppose there are three controller s in a mobility group. A client that is associated with the second controller that is anchored to the first controller goes to sleep, wakes up, and gets associated with the third controller .
- A client sleeps, wakes up and gets associated with the same or different export foreign controller that is anchored to the export anchor.

Restrictions on Authenticating Sleeping Clients

- The sleep client feature works only for WLAN configured with WebAuth security.
- You can configure the sleeping clients only on a per WebAuth parameter-map basis.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is supported only on WLANs that have Layer 3 security enabled.
- With Layer 3 security, the Authentication, Passthrough, and On MAC Filter failure web policies are supported. The Splash Page Web Redirect web policy is not supported.
- The central web authentication of sleeping clients is not supported.
- The authentication of sleeping clients feature is not supported on guest LANs and remote LANs.
- A guest access sleeping client that has a local user policy is not supported. In this case, the WLAN-specific timer is applied.

Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth .
Step 2	In the Webauth Parameter Map tab, click the parameter map name. The Edit WebAuth Parameter window is displayed.
Step 3	Select Sleeping Client Status check box.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Authentication for Sleeping Clients (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	[no] parameter-map type webauth <code>{parameter-map-name global}</code> Example: <pre>Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global</pre>	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 2	sleeping-client [timeout time] Example: <pre>Device(config-params-parameter-map)# sleeping-client timeout 100</pre>	Configures the sleeping client timeout to 100 minutes. Valid range is between 10 minutes and 43200 minutes. Note If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes.
Step 3	end	Exits parameter-map webauth configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	(Optional) show wireless client sleeping-client Example: <pre>Device# show wireless client sleeping-client</pre>	Shows the MAC address of the clients and the time remaining in their respective sessions.
Step 5	(Optional) clear wireless client sleeping-client <code>[mac-address mac-addr]</code> Example: <pre>Device# clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address 00e1.e1e1.0001</pre>	• clear wireless client sleeping-client—Deletes all sleeping client entries from the sleeping client cache. • clear wireless client sleeping-client mac-address mac-addr—Deletes the specific MAC entry from the sleeping client cache.

Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications

Mobility Support for Sleeping Clients

From Release 17.1.1 onwards, mobility support for guest and nonguest sleeping clients.

Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications

Multiple authentication feature supports sleeping clients configured in the WLAN profile.

The following table outlines the supported combination of multiple authentications:

Table 68: Supported Combinations of Multiple Authentications

Layer 2	Layer 3	Supported
MAB	LWA	Yes
MAB Failure	LWA	Yes
Dot1x	LWA	Yes
PSK	LWA	Yes

Configuring Sleeping Clients with Multiple Authentications

Configuring WLAN for Dot1x and Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs.
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Configures web authentication.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default</pre>	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global</pre>	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a WLAN for MAC Authentication Bypass and Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test</pre>	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	mac-filtering list-name Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering cat-radius</pre>	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example:	Disables security AKM for dot1x.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa akm dot1x	
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes —Encryption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map parameter-map-name Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a WLAN for Local Web Authentication and MAC Filtering

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example: Device(config) # wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submode. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	mac-filtering list-name Example: Device(config-wlan) # mac-filtering cat-radius	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x</pre>	Disables security Authenticated Key Management (AKM) for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes</pre>	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes: Excrption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure wlan-id</pre>	Configures the fallback policy with MAC filtering and web authentication.
Step 7	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global</pre>	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables WLAN.

Configuring a PSK + LWA in a WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test</pre>	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i> - Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - SSID, which can contain up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth	Enables web authentication for a WLAN.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan) # no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables the WPA2 cipher. aes: Excrption type that specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 6	security wpa psk set-key ascii <i>ascii/hex key</i> Example: Device(config-wlan) # security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 1234567	Configures the preshared key on a WLAN.
Step 7	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan) # security wpa akm psk	Configures PSK support.
Step 8	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables the authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map global	Maps the parameter map. Note: If the parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.

Configuring a Sleeping Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth { <i>parameter-map-name</i> global } Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth MAP-2	Creates a parameter map and enters <i>parameter-map-name</i> configuration mode. The specific configuration commands supported for a global parameter map defined with the global keyword differ from the commands supported for a named parameter map defined with the <i>parameter-map-name</i> argument.
Step 3	sleeping client [timeout time] Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# sleeping-client timeout 60	Configures the sleeping client timeout, in minutes. The available range for the <i>time</i> argument is from 10 to 43200. Note: If you do not use the timeout keyword, the sleeping client is configured with the default timeout value of 720 minutes.

Verifying a Sleeping Client Configuration

To verify a sleeping client configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client sleeping-client
Total number of sleeping-client entries: 1
```

```
MAC Address                               Remaining time (mm:ss)
-----
2477.031b.aa18                           59:56
```




CHAPTER 99

Private Shared Key

- [Information About Private Preshared Key, on page 983](#)
- [Configuring a PSK in a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 984](#)
- [Configuring a PSK in a WLAN \(GUI\), on page 985](#)
- [Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN \(GUI\), on page 986](#)
- [Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 986](#)
- [Verifying a Private PSK, on page 987](#)

Information About Private Preshared Key

With the advent of Internet of Things (IoT), the number of devices that connect to the internet has increased multifold. Not all of these devices support the 802.1x supplicant and need an alternate mechanism to connect to the internet. One of the security mechanisms, WPA-PSK, could be considered as an alternative. With the current configuration, the PSK is the same for all the clients that connect to the same WLAN. In certain deployments, such as educational institutions, this results in the key being shared to unauthorized users leading to security breach. This necessitates the need to provision unique PSKs for different clients on a large scale.

Identity PSKs are unique PSKs created for individuals or groups of users on the same SSID. No complex configuration is required for the clients. It provides the same simplicity of PSK, making it ideal for IoT, Bring your own device (BYOD), and guest deployments.

Identity PSKs are supported on most devices, in which 802.1X is not, enabling stronger security for IoT. It is possible to easily revoke access, for a single device or individual without affecting everyone else. Thousands of keys can easily be managed and distributed through the AAA server.



Note Special characters, such as '<' and '>' are supported in SSID Preshared key.



Note PSK supports whitespace in passwords (before or after or in-between) within double quotes only; single quotes for whitespaces are not supported.

IPSK Solution

During client authentication, the AAA server authorizes the client MAC address and sends the passphrase (if configured) as part of the Cisco-AV pair list. The Cisco Wireless Controller (WLC) receives this as part of the RADIUS response and processes this further for the computation of PSKs.

When a client sends an association request to the SSID broadcast by the corresponding access point, the controller forms the RADIUS request packet with the particular mac address of the client and relays to the RADIUS server.

The RADIUS server performs the authentication and checks whether the client is allowed or not and sends either ACCESS-ACCEPT or ACCESS-REJECT as response to the WLC.

To support Identity PSKs, in addition to sending the authentication response, the authentication server also provides the AV pair passphrase for this specific client. This is used for the computation of the PMK.

The RADIUS server might also provide additional parameters, such as username, VLAN, Quality of Service (QoS), and so on, in the response, that is specific to this client. For multiple devices owned by a single user, the passphrase can remain the same.



Note When the PSK length is less than 15 characters in Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS), the controller allows the WLAN configuration but displays the following error message on the console:

"AP is allowed to join but corresponding WLAN will not be pushed to the access point"

Configuring a PSK in a WLAN (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a PSK in a WLAN:

Before you begin

- Security should be configured for a pre-shared key (PSK) in a WLAN.
- If there is no override from the AAA server, the value on the corresponding WLAN is considered for authentication.
- In Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) and common criteria mode, ensure that the PSK WLAN has a minimum of 15 ASCII characters, else APs won't join the controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan test-profile 4 abc	Configures the WLAN and SSID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures the security type PSK.
Step 5	security wpa akm psk set-key ascii/hex key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key ascii 0	Configures the PSK authenticated key management (AKM) shared key. Note You must set the psk set-key before configuring AKM PSK.
Step 6	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures PSK support.
Step 7	security wpa wpa2 mpsk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 mpsk	Configures multi-preshared key (MPSK) support. Note AKM PSK should be enabled for MPSK to work.
Step 8	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test1	Specifies MAC filtering in a WLAN.

Configuring a PSK in a WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click **Security** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Layer 2** window that is displayed, go to the **WPA Parameters** section.
- Step 4** From the **Auth Key Mgmt** drop-down, select the PSK format and type.
- Step 5** Enter the Pre-Shared Key in hexadecimal characters.
 - If you selected the PSK format as HEX, the key length must be exactly 64 characters.

- If you selected the PSK format as ASCII, the key length must be in the range of 8-63 characters.

Note that once you have configured the key, these details are not visible even if you click on the eye icon next to the preshared key box, due to security reasons.

Step 6 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags**.
- Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page, click **Policy** tab.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.
- Step 4** Enter a name and description for the policy tag.
- Step 5** Click **Add** to map WLAN and policy.
- Step 6** Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.
- Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Applying a Policy Profile to a WLAN (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to apply policy profile to a WLAN:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-iot	Configures the default policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA server or ISE the Cisco Identify Services Engine (ISE) server.

Verifying a Private PSK

Use the following **show** commands to verify the configuration of a WLAN and a client:

Device# **show wlan id 2**

```

WLAN Profile Name      : test_ppsk
=====
Identifier              : 2
Network Name (SSID)    : test_ppsk
Status                  : Enabled
Broadcast SSID          : Enabled
Universal AP Admin      : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 0
Number of Active Clients : 0
Exclusionlist Timeout   : 60
CHD per WLAN           : Enabled
Interface               : default
Multicast Interface     : Unconfigured
WMM                     : Allowed
WifiDirect              : Invalid
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)    : 4
  Priority (default)    : 5
  Priority (default)    : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs) : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support : Enabled
CCX - Diagnostics Channel Capability : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action : Disabled
Radio Policy            : All
DTIM period for 802.11a radio : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio : 1
Local EAP Authentication : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name : test1
Accounting list name     : Disabled
802.1x authentication list name : Disabled
Security
  802.11 Authentication : Open System
  Static WEP Keys       : Disabled
  802.1X                 : Disabled
  Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2) : Enabled
    WPA (SSN IE)        : Disabled
    WPA2 (RSN IE)       : Enabled
    TKIP Cipher         : Disabled
    AES Cipher          : Enabled
    Auth Key Management :
      802.1x            : Disabled
      PSK              : Enabled
      CCKM              : Disabled
      FT dot1x          : Disabled
      FT PSK            : Disabled
      PMF dot1x         : Disabled
      PMF PSK           : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance  : 1000
    FT Support          : Disabled
      FT Reassociation Timeout : 20
      FT Over-The-DS mode : Enabled
    PMF Support         : Disabled

```

```

        PMF Association Comeback Timeout      : 1
        PMF SA Query Time                    : 200
        Web Based Authentication              : Disabled
        Conditional Web Redirect              : Disabled
        Splash-Page Web Redirect              : Disabled
        Webauth On-mac-filter Failure         : Disabled
        Webauth Authentication List Name      : Disabled
        Webauth Parameter Map                : Disabled
        Tkip MIC Countermeasure Hold-down Timer : 60
    Call Snooping                           : Disabled
    Passive Client                           : Disabled
    Non Cisco WGB                            : Disabled
    Band Select                              : Disabled
    Load Balancing                          : Disabled
    Multicast Buffer                          : Disabled
    Multicast Buffer Size                     : 0
    IP Source Guard                          : Disabled
    Assisted-Roaming
        Neighbor List                        : Disabled
        Prediction List                      : Disabled
        Dual Band Support                    : Disabled
    IEEE 802.11v parameters
        Directed Multicast Service           : Disabled
        BSS Max Idle                         : Disabled
        Protected Mode                       : Disabled
        Traffic Filtering Service             : Disabled
        BSS Transition                       : Enabled
        Disassociation Imminent              : Disabled
        Optimised Roaming Timer              : 40
        Timer                                : 200
        WNM Sleep Mode                       : Disabled
    802.11ac MU-MIMO                         : Disabled

```

Device# **show wireless client mac-address a886.adb2.05f9 detail**

```

Client MAC Address : a886.adb2.05f9
Client IPv4 Address : 9.9.58.246
Client Username : A8-86-AD-B2-05-F9
AP MAC Address : c025.5c55.e400
AP Name: saurabh-3600
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : default-flex-profile
Wireless LAN Id : 6
Wireless LAN Name: SSS_PPSK
BSSID : c025.5c55.e40f
Connected For : 280 seconds
Protocol : 802.11n - 5 GHz
Channel : 60
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Client CCX version : No CCX support
Session Timeout : 320 sec (Remaining time: 40 sec)
Input Policy Name :
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name :
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled

```

```

U-APSD value : 0
APSD ACs      : BK, BE, VI, VO
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m22
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
  Move Count          : 0
  Mobility Role        : Local
  Mobility Roam Type    : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 09/27/2017 16:32:25 IST
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 280 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : PSK
AAA override passphrase: Yes
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN : 58
Access VLAN : 58
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Manged WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Interface          : capwap_90000005
  IIF ID             : 0x90000005
  Device Type        : Apple-Device
  Protocol Map        : 0x000001
  Authorized          : TRUE
  Session timeout     : 320
  Common Session ID: 1F3809090000005DC30088EA
  Acct Session ID    : 0x00000000
  Auth Method Status List
    Method : MAB
      SM State        : TERMINATE
      Authen Status    : Success
  Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile (priority 254)
    Absolute-Timer    : 320
    VLAN              : 58
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
    VLAN              : 58
    Absolute-Timer    : 320
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
FlexConnect Data Switching : Local
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : Local
FlexConnect Authentication : Central
FlexConnect Central Association : No

```

```
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received : 59795
  Number of Bytes Sent : 21404
  Number of Packets Received : 518
  Number of Packets Sent : 274
  Number of EAP Id Request Msg Timeouts :
  Number of EAP Request Msg Timeouts :
  Number of EAP Key Msg Timeouts :
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -32 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 58 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
```




CHAPTER 100

Multi-Preshared Key

- [Information About Multi-Preshared Key, on page 991](#)
- [Restrictions on Multi-PSK, on page 992](#)
- [Configuring Multi-Preshared Key \(GUI\), on page 992](#)
- [Configuring Multi-Preshared Key \(CLI\), on page 995](#)
- [Verifying Multi-PSK Configurations, on page 996](#)

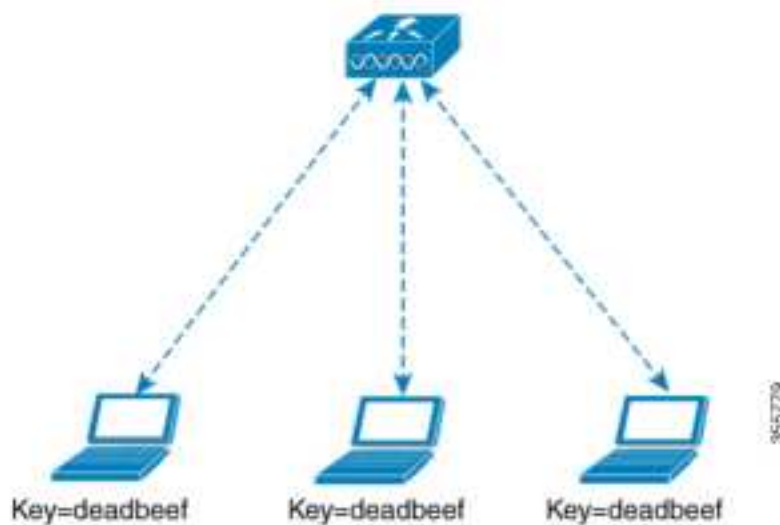
Information About Multi-Preshared Key

Multi-PSK feature supports multiple PSKs simultaneously on a single SSID. You can use any of the configured PSKs to join the network. This is different from the Identity PSK (iPSK), wherein unique PSKs are created for individuals or groups of users on the same SSID.

From 16.10 onwards, each SSID supports five PSKs, which can be extended

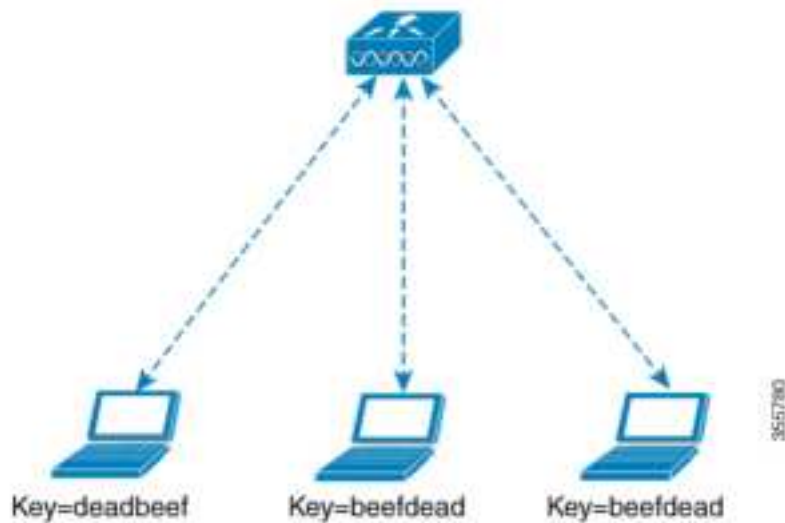
In a traditional PSK, all the clients joining the network use the same password as shown in the below figure.

Figure 18: Traditional PSK



But with multi-PSK, client can use any of the configured pre-shared keys to connect to the network as shown in the below figure.

Figure 19: Multi-PSK



In Multi-PSK, two passwords are configured (deadbeef and beefdead) for the same SSID. In this scenario, clients can connect to the network using either of the passwords.

Restrictions on Multi-PSK

- Central authentication is supported in local, flex, and fabric modes only.
- In central authentication flex mode, the standalone AP allows client join with the highest priority PSK (*priority 0* key). New clients that do not use the highest priority PSK are rejected during the standalone mode.
- Multi-PSK does not support local authentication.
- Multi-PSK is different from iPSK. In iPSK, the PSK password comes from ISE authorization policy, so MAB is required. MPSK uses a pool of passwords locally configured in WLAN, so ISE is not used.

Configuring Multi-Preshared Key (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.
- Step 2** On the **Wireless Networks** page, click the name of the WLAN.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Layer2** tab, choose the **Layer2 Security Mode** from the following options:
- None: No Layer 2 security
 - 802.1X: WEP 802.1X data encryption type

- WPA + WPA2: Wi-Fi Protected Access
- Static WEP: Static WEP encryption parameters
- Static WEP+802.1X: Both Static WEP and 802.1X parameters

Parameters	Description
802.1X	
WEP Key Size	Choose the key size. The available values are <i>None</i> , <i>40 bits</i> , and <i>104 bits</i> .
WPA + WPA2	
Protected Management Frame	Choose from the following options: • Disabled • Optional • Required
WPA Policy	Check the check box to enable WPA policy.
WPA Encryption	Choose the WPA encryption standard. A WPA encryption standard must be specified if you have enabled WPA policy.
WPA2 Policy	Check the check box to enable WPA2 policy.
WPA2 Encryption	Choose the WPA2 encryption standard. A WPA encryption standard must be specified if you have enabled WPA policy.
Auth Key Mgmt	Choose the rekeying mechanism from the following options: • 802.1X • FT + 802.1X • PSK: You must specify the PSK format and a preshared key • Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value • 802.1X + Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value • FT + 802.1X + Cisco Centralized Key Management: You must specify a Cisco Centralized Key Management Timestamp Tolerance value

Parameters	Description
Static WEP	
Key Size	Choose the key size from the following options: • 40 bits • 104 bits
Key Index	Choose a key index from 1 to 4. One unique WEP key index can be applied to each WLAN. As there are only four WEP key indexes, only four WLANs can be configured for static WEP Layer2 encryption.
Key Format	Choose the encryption key format as either ASCII or HEX.
Encryption Key	Enter an encryption key that is 13 characters long.
Static WEP + 802.1X	
Key Size	Choose the key size from the following options: • 40 bits • 104 bits
Key Index	Choose a key index from 1 to 4. One unique WEP key index can be applied to each WLAN. As there are only four WEP key indexes, only four WLANs can be configured for static WEP Layer2 encryption.
Key Format	Choose the encryption key format as either ASCII or HEX.
Encryption Key	Enter an encryption key that is 13 characters long.
WEP Key Size	Choose from the following options: • None • 40 bits • 104 bits

Step 5 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Multi-Preshared Key (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# <code>wlan mywlan 1 SSID_name</code>	Configures WLAN and SSID.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# <code>no security wpa akm dot1x</code>	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# <code>security wpa akm psk</code>	Configures PSK.
Step 5	security wpa wpa2 mpsk Example: Device(config-wlan)# <code>security wpa wpa2 mpsk</code>	Configures multi-PSK.
Step 6	priority priority_value set-key {ascii [0 8] pre-shared-key hex [0 8] pre-shared-key} Example: Device(config-mpsk)# <code>priority 0 set-key ascii 0 deadbeef</code>	Configures PSK priority and all its related passwords. The <i>priority_value</i> ranges from 0 to 4. Note You need to configure priority 0 key for multi-PSK.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-mpsk)# <code>no shutdown</code>	Enables WLAN.
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# <code>exit</code>	Exits WLAN configuration mode and returns to configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Multi-PSK Configurations

To verify the configuration of a WLAN and a client, use the following command:

```

Device# show wlan id 8
WLAN Profile Name      : wlan_8
=====
Identifier              : 8
Network Name (SSID)    : ssid_8
Status                  : Enabled
Broadcast SSID          : Enabled
Universal AP Admin      : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
Number of Active Clients : 0
CHD per WLAN            : Enabled
Multicast Interface     : Unconfigured
WMM                     : Allowed
WifiDirect              : Invalid
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)    : 5
  Priority (default)    : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs) : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support : Enabled
CCX - Diagnostics Channel Capability : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action : Disabled
Radio Policy            : All
DTIM period for 802.11a radio : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio : 1
Local EAP Authentication : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name : Disabled
Accounting list name    :
802.1x authentication list name : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name : Disabled
Security
  802.11 Authentication : Open System
  Static WEP Keys        : Disabled
  802.1X                 : Disabled
  Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3) : Enabled
    WPA (SSN IE)         : Disabled
    WPA2 (RSN IE)        : Enabled
    MP SK                 : Enabled
    AES Cipher           : Enabled
    CCMP256 Cipher       : Disabled
    GCMP128 Cipher       : Disabled
    GCMP256 Cipher       : Disabled
    WPA3 (WPA3 IE)       : Disabled
    Auth Key Management
      802.1x              : Disabled
      PSK                 : Enabled

```

```

CCKM : Disabled
FT dot1x : Disabled
FT PSK : Disabled
FT SAE : Disabled
PMF dot1x : Disabled
PMF PSK : Disabled
SAE : Disabled
OWE : Disabled
SUITEB-1X : Disabled
SUITEB192-1X : Disabled
CCKM TSF Tolerance : 1000
FT Support : Adaptive
  FT Reassociation Timeout : 20
  FT Over-The-DS mode : Enabled
PMF Support : Disabled
  PMF Association Comeback Timeout : 1
  PMF SA Query Time : 200
Web Based Authentication : Disabled
Conditional Web Redirect : Disabled
Splash-Page Web Redirect : Disabled
Webauth On-mac-filter Failure : Disabled
Webauth Authentication List Name : Disabled
Webauth Authorization List Name : Disabled
Webauth Parameter Map : Disabled
Tkip MIC Countermeasure Hold-down Timer : 60
Non Cisco WGB : Disabled
Band Select : Enabled
Load Balancing : Disabled
Multicast Buffer : Disabled
Multicast Buffer Size : 0
IP Source Guard : Disabled
Assisted-Roaming
  Neighbor List : Disabled
  Prediction List : Disabled
  Dual Band Support : Disabled
IEEE 802.11v parameters
  Directed Multicast Service : Disabled
  BSS Max Idle : Disabled
    Protected Mode : Disabled
  Traffic Filtering Service : Disabled
  BSS Transition : Enabled
    Disassociation Imminent : Disabled
      Optimised Roaming Timer : 40
      Timer : 200
  WNM Sleep Mode : Disabled
802.11ac MU-MIMO : Disabled
802.11ax paramters
  OFDMA Downlink : unknown
  OFDMA Uplink : unknown
  MU-MIMO Downlink : unknown
  MU-MIMO Uplink : unknown
  BSS Color : unknown
  Partial BSS Color : unknown
  BSS Color Code :

```

To view the WLAN details, use the following command:

```

Device# show run wlan
wlan wlan_8 8 ssid_8
  security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 deadbeef
  no security wpa akm dot1x
  security wpa akm psk
  security wpa wpa2 mpsk
  priority 0 set-key ascii 0 deadbeef
  priority 1 set-key ascii 0 deaddead

```

```
priority 2 set-key ascii 0 d123d123
priority 3 set-key hex 0 02345678901234567890123456789012345678901234
priority 4 set-key hex 0 12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234
no shutdown
```




CHAPTER 101

Multiple Authentications for a Client

- [Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client](#), on page 999
- [Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client](#), on page 1001
- [Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Pre-Shared Key \(CLI\)](#), on page 1008
- [Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with OWE \(CLI\)](#), on page 1009
- [Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Simultaneous Authentication of Equals \(CLI\)](#), on page 1011
- [Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller \(CLIs\)](#), on page 1013
- [Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x \(GUI\)](#), on page 1019
- [Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations](#), on page 1021

Information About Multiple Authentications for a Client

Multiple Authentication feature is an extension of Layer 2 and Layer 3 security types supported for client join.



Note You can enable both L2 and L3 authentication for a given SSID.



Note The Multiple Authentication feature is applicable for regular clients only.

Information About Supported Combination of Authentications for a Client

The Multiple Authentications for a Client feature supports multiple combination of authentications for a given client configured in the WLAN profile.

The following table outlines the supported combination of authentications:

Layer 2	Layer 3	Supported
MAB	CWA	Yes

MAB	LWA	Yes
MAB + PSK	-	Yes
MAB + 802.1X	-	Yes
MAB Failure	LWA	Yes
802.1X	CWA	Yes
802.1X	LWA	Yes
PSK	-	Yes
PSK	LWA	Yes
PSK	CWA	Yes
iPSK	-	Yes
iPSK	CWA	Yes
iPSK + MAB	CWA	Yes
iPSK	LWA	No
MAB Failure + PSK	LWA	Yes
MAB Failure + PSK	CWA	No
MAB Failure + OWE	LWA	Yes
MAB Failure + SAE	LWA	Yes

From 16.10.1 onwards, 802.1X configurations on WLAN support web authentication configurations with WPA or WPA2 configuration.

The feature also supports the following AP modes:

- Local
- FlexConnect
- Fabric


Note

For MAB authentication in APs in local mode, maintain a latency below 100 ms between the controller, acting as the Network Access Server (NAS), and the AAA server. This helps avoid timeouts when waiting for the AP's association response as the AP responds only after receiving feedback from the AAA server, emphasizing the importance of latency.

This recommendation does not apply to FlexConnect, where the AP responds immediately to client association requests. Deploy APs in FlexConnect mode if lower latency to AAA servers cannot be guaranteed.

Jumbo Frame Support for RADIUS Packets

RADIUS packets will be fragmented according to the MTU of the egress interface if the following conditions are met:

- The command **ip radius source-interface** is configured under the relevant AAA group server radius group to point to the egress interface.
- The **ip mtu NNN** command is configured on the egress interface.

**Note**

If the MTU of the source interface is set to a value lower than 1500, additional fragmentation might occur. This fragmentation can lead to packet drops by upstream network devices, such as firewalls and load balancers, potentially causing authentication failures. It is recommended to verify these configurations during upgrades to prevent such issues.

Combination of Authentications on MAC Failure Not Supported on a Client

The following table outlines the combination of authentications on MAC failure that are not supported on a given client:

Authentication Types	Foreign	Anchor	Supported
WPA3-OWE+LWA	Cisco AireOS	Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controller	No
WPA3-SAE+LWA	Cisco AireOS	Cisco Catalyst 9800 Controller	No

Configuring Multiple Authentications for a Client

Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Select the required WLAN from the list of WLANs displayed.
- Step 3** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab.
- Step 4** Select the security method from the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.
- Step 5** In the **Auth Key Mgmt**, check the **802.1x** check box.
- Step 6** Check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable the feature.
- Step 7** After MAC Filtering is enabled, from the **Authorization List** drop-down list, choose an option.
- Step 8** Choose **Security > Layer3** tab.

- Step 9** Check the **Web Policy** check box to enable web authentication policy.
- Step 10** From the **Web Auth Parameter Map** and the **Authentication List** drop-down lists, choose an option.
- Step 11** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring WLAN for 802.1X and Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs.
Step 4	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables web authentication.
Step 5	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map parameter-map-name	Maps the parameter map. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
 security dot1x authentication-list default
 security web-auth
 security web-auth authentication-list default
 security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP
 no shutdown
```

Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Select the required WLAN.
Step 3	Choose Security > Layer2 tab.
Step 4	Select the security method from the Layer 2 Security Mode drop-down list.
Step 5	In the Auth Key Mgmt, uncheck the 802.1x check box.
Step 6	Check the PSK check box.
Step 7	Enter the Pre-Shared Key and choose the PSK Format from the PSK Format drop-down list and the PSK Type from the PSK Type drop-down list.
Step 8	Choose Security > Layer3 tab.
Step 9	Check the Web Policy checkbox to enable web authentication policy.
Step 10	Choose the Web Auth Parameter Map from the Web Auth Parameter Map drop-down list and the authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 11	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring WLAN for Preshared Key (PSK) and Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>profile-name</i>- Is the profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - Is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	security wpa psk set-key ascii/hex key password Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD	Configures the PSK shared key.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures the PSK support.
Step 6	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables web authentication for WLAN.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example:	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth authentication-list webauth	
Step 8	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: (config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.

Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
 security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD
 no security wpa akm dot1x
 security wpa akm psk
 security web-auth
 security web-auth authentication-list webauth
 security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP
```

Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Select the required WLAN.
Step 3	Choose Security > Layer2 tab.
Step 4	Select the security method from the Layer 2 Security Mode drop-down list.
Step 5	In the Auth Key Mgmt , uncheck the 802.1x check box.
Step 6	Check the PSK check box.
Step 7	Enter the Pre-Shared Key and choose the PSK Format from the PSK Format drop-down list and the PSK Type from the PSK Type drop-down list.
Step 8	Check the MAC Filtering check box to enable the feature.
Step 9	With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the Authorization List from the Authorization List drop-down list.
Step 10	Choose Security > Layer3 tab.
Step 11	Check the Web Policy checkbox to enable web authentication policy.
Step 12	Choose the Web Auth Parameter Map from the Web Auth Parameter Map drop-down list and the authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 13	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring WLAN for PSK or Identity Preshared Key (iPSK) and Central Web Authentication

Configuring WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>profile-name</i> - Is the profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> - Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> - Is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	security wpa psk set-key ascii/hex key password Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD	Configures the PSK AKM shared key.
Step 5	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.

Example

```
wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test
no security wpa akm dot1x
```



```
security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD
mac-filtering test-auth-list
```

Applying Policy Profile to a WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-iot	Configures the default policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or ISE servers.
Step 4	nac Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac	Configures NAC in the policy profile.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Shutdown the WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Example

```
wireless profile policy policy-iot
aaa-override
nac
no shutdown
```

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Pre-Shared Key (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	security wpa psk set-key ascii/hex key password Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD	Configures the PSK AKM shared key.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures PSK support.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list <i>authorize-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with OWE (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering <i>auth-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 6	security wpa akm owe Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm owe	Enables WPA3 OWE support.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list <i>authorize-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i>	Configures the parameter map.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-wlan) # security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config) # wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submode. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan) # mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example:	Disables security AKM for dot1x.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	
Step 5	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 6	security wpa akm sae Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae	Enables AKM SAE support.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list <i>authorize-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring 802.1x and Central Web Authentication on Controller (CLIs)

Creating AAA Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Creates a AAA authentication model.

Configuring AAA Server for External Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id ap-name-ssid Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless authentication call-station-id ap-name-ssid	Configures a call station identifier sent in the RADIUS authentication messages.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server ISE2	Sets the RADIUS server.
Step 4	address ipv4 <i>radius-server-ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 111.111.111.111	Specifies the RADIUS server address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	timeout <i>seconds</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# timeout 10	Specify the time-out value in seconds. The range is between 10 and 1000 seconds.
Step 6	retransmit <i>number-of-retries</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# retransmit 10	Specify the number of retries to the server. The range is between 0 and 100.
Step 7	key <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco	Specifies the authentication and encryption key used between the device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. <i>key</i> covers the following: • 0—Specifies unencrypted key. • 6—Specifies encrypted key. • 7—Specifies HIDDEN key. • Word—Unencrypted (cleartext) server key.
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-radius-server)# exit	Returns to the configuration mode.
Step 9	aaa group server radius <i>server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius ISE2	Creates a RADIUS server-group identification.
Step 10	server name <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# server name ISE2	Configures the server name.
Step 11	radius-server deadtime <i>time-in-minutes</i> Example: Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 5	Defines the time in minutes when a server marked as DEAD is held in that state. Once the deadtime expires, the controller marks the server as UP (ALIVE) and notifies the registered clients about the state change. If the server is still unreachable after the state is marked as UP and if the DEAD criteria is met, then server is marked as DEAD again for the deadtime interval.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>time-in-mins</i>—Valid values range from 1 to 1440 minutes. Default value is zero. To return to the default value, use the no radius-server deadtime command. The radius-server deadtime command can be configured globally or per aaa group server level. You can use the show aaa dead-criteria or show aaa servers command to check for dead-server detection. If the default value is zero, deadtime is not configured.

Configuring AAA for Authentication

Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa authentication login Example: Device# aaa authentication login ISE_GROUP group ISE2 local	Defines the authentication method at login.
Step 2	aaa authentication dot1x Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication network ISE_GROUP group ISE2 local	Defines the authentication method at dot1x.

Configuring Accounting Identity List

Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa accounting identity <i>named-list</i> start-stop group <i>server-group-name</i> Example:	Enables accounting to send a start-record accounting notice when a client is authorized and a stop-record at the end.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# aaa accounting identity ISE start-stop group ISE2	Note You can also use the default list instead of the named list.

Configuring AAA for Central Web Authentication

Before you begin

Configure the RADIUS server and AAA group server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Configures the Change of Authorization (CoA) on the controller.
Step 2	client <i>client-ip-addr</i> server-key <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 111.111.111.111 server-key ciscokey	Configures a server key for a RADIUS client.

Defining an Access Control List for Radius Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip access-list extended <i>redirect</i> Example: Device(config)# ip access-list extended <i>redirect</i>	The HTTP and HTTPS browsing does not work without authentication (per the other ACL) as ISE is configured to use a redirect ACL (named redirect).
Step 3	<i>sequence-number</i> deny icmp any Example: Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 deny icmp any	Specifies packets to reject according to the sequence number. Note You must have the DHCP, DNS, and ISE servers in the reject sequences. Refer to Configuration Example to Define an Access

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Control List for Radius Server , wherein the <i>111.111.111.111</i> refers to the IP address of the ISE server.
Step 4	permit TCP any any eq <i>web-address</i> Example: Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit TCP any any eq www	Redirects all HTTP or HTTPS access to the Cisco ISE login page.

Configuration Example to Define an Access Control List for Radius Server

This example shows how to define an access control list for RADIUS server:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 10 deny icmp any
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 20 deny udp any any eq bootps
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 30 deny udp any any eq bootpc
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 40 deny udp any any eq domain
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 50 deny tcp any host 111.111.111.111 eq 8443
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 55 deny tcp host 111.111.111.111 eq 8443 any
Device(config-ext-nacl) # 40 deny udp any any eq domain
Device(config-ext-nacl) # end
```

Configuring WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan30	Enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list ISE_GROUP Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list ISE_GROUP	Configures 802.1X for a WLAN.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy wireless-profile1	Configures policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA or Cisco Identify Services Engine (ISE) server.
Step 4	accounting-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# accounting-list ISE	Sets the accounting list for IEEE 802.1x.
Step 5	ipv4 dhcp required Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp required	Configures DHCP parameters for WLAN.
Step 6	nac Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# nac	Configures Network Access Control (NAC) in the policy profile. NAC is used to trigger the Central Web Authentication (CWA).
Step 7	vlan 25 Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 25	Configures guest VLAN profile.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables policy profile.

Mapping WLAN and Policy Profile to Policy Tag

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wireless tag policy xx-xre-policy-tag	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan wlan30 policy wireless-profile1	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication with Dot1x (GUI)

Defining Guest Portal

Before you begin

Define the guest portal or use the default guest portal.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
 - Step 2** Choose **Work Centers > Guest Access > Portals & Components**.
 - Step 3** Click **Guest Portal**.
-

Defining Authorization Profile for a Client

Before you begin

You can define the authorization profile to use guest portal and other additional parameters as per the requirement. Authorization profile redirects the client to the authentication portal. In the latest Cisco ISE version, Cisco_Webauth authorization results exist already, and you can edit the same to modify the redirection ACL name to match the configuration in the controller.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
Step 2	Choose Policy > Policy Elements > Authorization > Authorization Profiles .
Step 3	Click Add to create your own custom or edit the Cisco_Webauth default result.
-

Defining Authentication Rule

Procedure

-
Step 1	Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
Step 2	Choose Policy > Policy Sets and click on the appropriate policy set.
Step 3	Expand Authentication policy.
Step 4	Expand Options and choose an appropriate User ID .
-

Defining Authorization Rule

Procedure

-
Step 1	Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
Step 2	Choose Policy > Policy Sets > Authorization Policy .
Step 3	Create a rule that matches the condition for 802.1x with a specific SSID (using Radius-Called-Station-ID).
	Note You get to view the CWA redirect attribute.
Step 4	Choose the already created authorization profile.
Step 5	From the Result/Profile column, choose the already created authorization profile.
Step 6	Click Save .

Note

The following image depicts the working configuration sample for your reference.

Figure 20: Working Configuration Sample



Creating Rules to Match Guest Flow Condition

Before you begin

You must create a second rule that matches the guest flow condition and returns to network access details once the user completes authentication in the portal.

Procedure

- Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
- Step 2** Choose **Policy > Policy Sets > Authorization Policy**.
- Step 3** Create a rule that matches the condition for 802.1x with, Network Access-UseCase EQUALS Guest, and a specific SSID (using Radius-Called-Station-ID).

Note

You get to view the Permit Access.

- Step 4** From the **Result/Profile** column, choose the already created authorization profile.
- Step 5** Choose the default or customized Permit Access.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.

Verifying Multiple Authentication Configurations

Layer 2 Authentication

After L2 authentication (Dot1x) is complete, the client is moved to *Webauth Pending* state.

To verify the client state after L2 authentication, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
Number of Local Clients: 1
MAC Address  AP Name  WLAN  State  Protocol  Method  Role
-----
```

```
58ef.68b6.aa60 ewlcl_ap_1 3 Webauth Pending 11n(5) Dot1x Local
Number of Excluded Clients: 0
```

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <mac_address> detail
```

```
Auth Method Status List
```

```
Method: Dot1x
Webauth State: Init
Webauth Method: Webauth
Local Policies:
Service Template: IP-Adm-V6-Int-ACL-global (priority 100)
URL Redirect ACL: IP-Adm-V6-Int-ACL-global
Service Template: IP-Adm-V4-Int-ACL-global (priority 100)
URL Redirect ACL: IP-Adm-V4-Int-ACL-global
Service Template: wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
Absolute-Timer: 1800
VLAN: 50
```

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active R0
```

ID	MAC Address	WLAN	Client	State
0xa0000003	58ef.68b6.aa60	3		L3 Authentication

```
Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active F0
```

ID	MAC Address	WLAN	Client	State	AOM ID	Status
0xa0000003	58ef.68b6.aa60	3		L3		Authentication. 730.

Done

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
summary
```

```
Client Type Abbreviations:
```

```
RG - REGULAR BLE - BLE
HL - HALO LI - LWFL INT
```

```
Auth State Abbreviations:
```

```
UK - UNKNOWN IP - LEARN IP IV - INVALID
L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN
```

```
Mobility State Abbreviations:
```

```
UK - UNKNOWN IN - INIT
LC - LOCAL AN - ANCHOR
FR - FOREIGN MT - MTE
IV - INVALID
```

```
EoGRE Abbreviations:
```

```
N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE
```

CPP IF_H	DP IDX	MAC Address	VLAN	CT	MCVL	AS	MS	E	WLAN	POA
0X49	0XA0000003	58ef.68b6.aa60	50	RG	0	L3	LC	N	wlan-test	0x90000003

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath summary
```

Vlan	DP IDX	MAC Address	VLAN	CT	MCVL	AS	MS	E	WLAN	POA
0X49	0xa0000003	58ef.68b6.aa60	50	RG	0	L3	LC	N	wlan-test	0x90000003

Layer 3 Authentication

Once L3 authentication is successful, the client is moved to *Run* state.

To verify the client state after L3 authentication, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless client summary

Number of Local Clients: 1
MAC Address  AP Name  WLAN  State  Protocol  Method  Role
-----
58ef.68b6.aa60  ewlcl_ap_1  3      Run    11n(5)    Web Auth    Local
Number of Excluded Clients: 0

Device# show wireless client mac-address 58ef.68b6.aa60 detail

Auth Method Status List

Method: Web Auth
Webauth State: Authz
Webauth Method: Webauth
Local Policies:
Service Template: wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
Absolute-Timer: 1800
VLAN: 50

Server Policies:

Resultant Policies:
VLAN: 50
Absolute-Timer: 1800

Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active R0

ID          MAC Address      WLAN  Client State
-----
0xa0000001 58ef.68b6.aa60    3      Run

Device# show platform software wireless-client chassis active f0

ID          MAC Address      WLAN  Client State  AOM ID.  Status
-----
0xa0000001 58ef.68b6.aa60.  3      Run           11633    Done

Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient cpp-client
summary

Client Type Abbreviations:
RG - REGULAR  BLE - BLE
HL - HALO     LI - LWFL INT

Auth State Abbreviations:
UK - UNKNOWN  IP - LEARN  IP IV - INVALID
L3 - L3 AUTH RN - RUN

Mobility State Abbreviations:
UK - UNKNOWN  IN - INIT
LC - LOCAL    AN - ANCHOR
FR - FOREIGN  MT - MTE
IV - INVALID

EoGRE Abbreviations:
N - NON EOGRE Y - EOGRE

CPP IF_H  DP IDX      MAC Address  VLAN  CT  MCVL AS MS E  WLAN  POA
-----
0X49      0XA0000003    58ef.68b6.aa60  50   RG   0   RN LC N wlan-test 0x90000003

Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath summary

Vlan  pal_if_hdl      mac          Input Uidb      Output Uidb
```

```
-----  
50      0xa0000003      58ef.68b6.aa60      95929      95927
```

Verifying PSK+Webauth Configuration

```
Device# show wlan summary
```

```
Load for five secs: 0%/0%; one minute: 0%; five minutes: 0%  
Time source is NTP, 12:08:32.941 CEST Tue Oct 6 2020
```

```
Number of WLANs: 1
```

```
ID Profile Name SSID Status Security
```

```
23 Gladius1-PSKWEBAUTH Gladius1-PSKWEBAUTH UP [WPA2][PSK][AES],[Web Auth]
```



CHAPTER 102

Wi-Fi Protected Access 3

- [Simultaneous Authentication of Equals, on page 1025](#)
- [Opportunistic Wireless Encryption, on page 1026](#)
- [Hash-to-Element \(H2E\), on page 1026](#)
- [YANG \(RPC model\), on page 1027](#)
- [Transition Disable, on page 1029](#)
- [WPA3 SAE iPSK, on page 1029](#)
- [Configuring SAE \(WPA3+WPA2 Mixed Mode\), on page 1029](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 Enterprise \(GUI\), on page 1031](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 Enterprise, on page 1031](#)
- [Configuring the WPA3 OWE, on page 1033](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode \(GUI\), on page 1034](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode, on page 1034](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 SAE \(GUI\), on page 1036](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 SAE, on page 1036](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 SAE iPSK \(CLI\), on page 1038](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E \(GUI\), on page 1041](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E, on page 1041](#)
- [Configuring WPA3 WLAN for Transition Disable, on page 1043](#)
- [Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission \(GUI\), on page 1044](#)
- [Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission, on page 1044](#)
- [Verifying WPA3 SAE and OWE, on page 1045](#)
- [Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN, on page 1049](#)
- [Verifying WPA3 Transition Disable in WLAN, on page 1054](#)

Simultaneous Authentication of Equals

WPA3 is the latest version of Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), which is a suite of protocols and technologies that provide authentication and encryption for Wi-Fi networks.

WPA3 leverages Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE) to provide stronger protections for users against password guessing attempts by third parties. SAE employs a discrete logarithm cryptography to perform an efficient exchange in a way that performs mutual authentication using a password that is probably resistant to an offline dictionary attack. An offline dictionary attack is where an adversary attempts to determine a network password by trying possible passwords without further network interaction.

WPA3-Personal brings better protection to individual users by providing more robust password-based authentication making the brute-force dictionary attack much more difficult and time-consuming, while WPA3-Enterprise provides higher grade security protocols for sensitive data networks.

When the client connects to the access point, they perform an SAE exchange. If successful, they will each create a cryptographically strong key, from which the session key will be derived. Basically a client and access point goes into phases of commit and then confirm. Once there is a commitment, the client and access point can then go into the confirm states each time there is a session key to be generated. The method uses forward secrecy, where an intruder could crack a single key, but not all of the other keys.



Note Home SSIDs configured using OEAP GUI does not support WPA3 security in Cisco IOS-XE 17.6 and 17.7 releases.



Note Cisco Wave 2 APs do not support SAE. As a result, the AP clients are not able to connect to SAE SSID with these APs, as the clients fail to join back after receiving M3 from the APs.

The following are the Cisco Wave 2 APs that do not support SAE:

- Cisco Aironet 1815 Series APs (AP1815W, AP1815T, AP1815I, AP1815M)
 - Cisco Aironet 1815T OfficeExtend APs
 - Cisco Aironet 1800 Series APs (AP1800I, AP1800S)
 - Cisco Aironet 1542 Series Outdoor APs (AP1542D, AP1542I)
 - Cisco Aironet 1840 Series APs (AP1840I)
-

Opportunistic Wireless Encryption

Opportunistic Wireless Encryption (OWE) is an extension to IEEE 802.11 that provides encryption of the wireless medium. The purpose of OWE based authentication is avoid open unsecured wireless connectivity between the AP's and clients. The OWE uses the Diffie-Hellman algorithms based Cryptography to setup the wireless encryption. With OWE, the client and AP perform a Diffie-Hellman key exchange during the access procedure and use the resulting pairwise secret with the 4-way handshake. The use of OWE enhances wireless network security for deployments where Open or shared PSK based networks are deployed.

Hash-to-Element (H2E)

Hash-to-Element (H2E) is a new SAE Password Element (PWE) method. In this method, the secret PWE used in the SAE protocol is generated from a password.

When a STA that supports H2E initiates SAE with an AP, it checks whether AP supports H2E. If yes, the AP uses the H2E to derive the PWE by using a newly defined Status Code value in the SAE Commit message.

If STA uses Hunting-and-Pecking, the entire SAE exchange remains unchanged.

While using the H2E, the PWE derivation is divided into the following components:

- Derivation of a secret intermediary element PT from the password. This can be performed offline when the password is initially configured on the device for each supported group.
- Derivation of the PWE from the stored PT. This depends on the negotiated group and MAC addresses of peers. This is performed in real-time during the SAE exchange.

**Note**

- 6-GHz supports only Hash-to-Element SAE PWE method.
- The H2E method also incorporates protection against the Group Downgrade man-in-the-middle attacks. During the SAE exchange, the peers exchange lists of rejected groups binded into the PMK derivation. Each peer compares the received list with the list of groups supported, any discrepancy detects a downgrade attack and terminates the authentication.

YANG (RPC model)

To create an RPC for SAE Password Element (PWE) mode, use the following RPC model:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:0a77124f-c563-469d-bd21-cc625a9691cc">
  <nc:edit-config>
    <nc:target>
      <nc:running/>
    </nc:target>
    <nc:config>
      <wlan-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-wlan-cfg">
        <wlan-cfg-entries>
          <wlan-cfg-entry>
            <profile-name>test</profile-name>
            <wlan-id>2</wlan-id>
            <sae-pwe-mode>both-h2e-hnp</sae-pwe-mode>
          </wlan-cfg-entry>
        </wlan-cfg-entries>
      </wlan-cfg-data>
    </nc:config>
  </nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>
```

To delete a 6-GHz radio policy and modify the SAE Password Element (PWE) mode, use the following RPC model:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:2b8c4be6-492e-4488-b2cf-1f2a1e39fa8c"><nc:edit-config>
  <nc:target>
    <nc:running/>
  </nc:target>
  <nc:config>
    <wlan-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-wlan-cfg">
      <wlan-cfg-entries>
        <wlan-cfg-entry>
          <profile-name>test</profile-name>
          <wlan-id>2</wlan-id>
          <wlan-radio-policies>
            <wlan-radio-policy nc:operation="delete">
              <band>dot11-6-ghz-band</band>
```

```

</wlan-radio-policy>
</wlan-radio-policies>
</wlan-cfg-entry>
</wlan-cfg-entries>
</wlan-cfg-data>
</nc:config>
</nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>

##
Received message from host
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:2b8c4be6-492e-4488-b2cf-1f2a1e39fa8c"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<ok/>
</rpc-reply>
NETCONF rpc COMPLETE
NETCONF SEND rpc
Requesting 'Dispatch'
Sending:

#1268
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:e19a3309-2509-446f-9dbe-c46a6de433db"><nc:edit-config>
<nc:target>
<nc:running/>
</nc:target>
<nc:config>
<wlan-cfg-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-wireless-wlan-cfg">
<wlan-cfg-entries>
<wlan-cfg-entry>
<profile-name>test</profile-name>
<wlan-id>2</wlan-id>
<wlan-radio-policies>
<wlan-radio-policy nc:operation="merge">
<band>dot11-5-ghz-band</band>
</wlan-radio-policy>
</wlan-radio-policies>
<sae-pwe-mode>hunting-and-pecking-only</sae-pwe-mode>
</wlan-cfg-entry>
</wlan-cfg-entries>
</wlan-cfg-data>
</nc:config>
</nc:edit-config>
</nc:rpc>

##
Received message from host
<?xml version="1.0" ?>
<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:e19a3309-2509-446f-9dbe-c46a6de433db"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<ok/>
</rpc-reply>
NETCONF rpc COMPLETE

```



Note The **delete** operation performs one action at a time due to the current infra limitation. That is, in YANG module, the **delete** operation on multiple nodes are not supported.

Transition Disable

Transition Disable is an indication from an AP to an STA. This feature disables few transition modes for subsequent connections to the APs network.

An STA implementation might enable certain transition modes in a network profile. For example, a WPA3-Personal STA might enable the WPA3-Personal transition mode in a network profile by default. This enables a PSK algorithm. However, you can use the Transition Disable indication to disable transition modes for that network on a STA.



Note The Transition Disable indication provides protection against downgrade attacks.

An AP that uses Transition Disable indication does not necessarily disable the corresponding transition modes on its own BSS. For example, the APs in WPA3-Personal network might use the Transition Disable indication to ensure that all STAs supporting WPA3-Personal are protected against the downgrade attack. However, the WPA3-Personal transition mode is enabled on the BSS for the legacy STAs to connect.

WPA3 SAE iPSK

A RADIUS server and Identity PSK (iPSK) create unique preshared keys for individuals or a group of users present in the same SSID. This kind of setup is useful in networks where end-client devices do not support 802.1X authentication. However, you will need a more secure and granular authentication. From a client perspective, the WLAN looks identical to the traditional PSK network. If one of the PSKs is compromised, only the affected individual or group needs to update their PSK. The rest of the devices connected to the WLAN remain unaffected.

The Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE) H2E authentication mode uses a password token derived from the SAE authentication passphrase. You can configure the passphrase in the WLAN profile for client authentication during commit and confirm message exchanges.

From Cisco IOS-XE 17.9.2, the iPSK passphrase is supported for SAE H2E authentication in Local mode. The iPSK passphrase is configured in the client authorization policy in the RADIUS server. The passphrase pushes the policy to the controller during client MAB authentication.



Note The iPSK passphrase replaces the one in the WLAN profile to generate password token. If the iPSK passphrase is not configured in the authorization policy, the SAE H2E falls back to the passphrase in the WLAN profile.

Configuring SAE (WPA3+WPA2 Mixed Mode)

Follow the procedure given below to configure WPA3+WPA2 mixed mode for SAE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN.
Step 6	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Configures WPA2 cipher. Note You can check whether cipher is configured using no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes command. If cipher is not reset, configure the cipher.
Step 7	security wpa psk set-key ascii value preshared-key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 Cisco123	Specifies a preshared key.
Step 8	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support. Note If both WPA2 and WPA3 are supported (SAE and PSK together), it is optional to configure PMF. However, you cannot disable PMF. For WPA3, PMF is mandatory.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	security wpa akm sae Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae</pre>	Enables AKM SAE support.
Step 10	security wpa akm psk Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk</pre>	Enables AKM PSK support.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 12	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring WPA3 Enterprise (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. Choose **WPA2+WPA3** in **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Uncheck the **WPA2 Policy** and **802.1x** check boxes. Check the **WPA3 Policy** and **802.1x-SHA256** check boxes.
 - Step 6** Choose **Security > AAA** tab, choose the Authentication List from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WPA3 Enterprise

Follow the procedure given below to configure WPA3 enterprise.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wl-dot1x 4 wl-dot1x	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 5	security wpa akm dot1x-sha256 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm dot1x-sha256	Configures 802.1x support.
Step 6	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 7	security dot1x authentication-list list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list ipv6_ircm_aaa_list	Configures security authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode. Note A WLAN configured with WPA3 enterprise (SUITEB192-1X) is not supported on C9115/C9120 APs.

Configuring the WPA3 OWE

Follow the procedure given below to configure WPA3 OWE.

Before you begin

Configure PMF internally. The associated ciphers configuration can use the WPA2 ciphers.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 4	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security. PMF is disabled now.
Step 7	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Enables WPA2 ciphers for AES. Note The ciphers for WPA2 and WPA3 are common.
Step 8	security wpa wpa3 Example:	Enables WPA3 support.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	
Step 9	security wpa akm owe Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm owe	Enables WPA3 OWE support.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 11	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. Choose **WPA2+WPA3** in **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Uncheck the **WPA2 Policy**, **802.1x**, **Over the DS**, **FT + 802.1x** and **FT + PSK** check boxes. Check the **WPA3 Policy**, **AES** and **OWE** check boxes.
 - Step 6** Enter the **Transition Mode WLAN ID**.
 - Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WPA3 OWE Transition Mode

Follow the procedure given below to configure the WPA3 OWE transition mode.



Note Policy validation is not done between open WLAN and OWE WLAN. The operator is expected to configure them appropriately.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security. PMF is disabled now.
Step 7	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Enables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 8	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 9	security wpa akm owe Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm owe	Enables WPA3 OWE support.
Step 10	security wpa transition-mode-wlan-id wlan-id	Configures the open or OWE transition mode WLAN ID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa transition-mode-wlan-id 1</pre>	Note Validation is not performed on the transition mode WLAN. The operator is expected to configure it correctly with OWE WLAN having open WLAN identifier and the opposite way. You should configure OWE WLAN ID as transition mode WLAN in open WLAN. Similarly, open WLAN should be configured as transition mode WLAN in OWE WLAN configuration.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 12	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring WPA3 SAE (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. Choose **WPA2+WPA3** in **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Uncheck the **WPAPolicy**, **802.1x**, **Over the DS**, **FT + 802.1x** and **FT + PSK** check boxes. Check the **WPA3 Policy**, **AES** and **PSK** check boxes. Enter the **Pre-Shared Key** and choose the PSK Format from the **PSK Format** drop-down list and the PSK Type from the **PSK Type** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WPA3 SAE

Follow the procedure given below to configure WPA3 SAE.

Before you begin

Configure PMF internally. The associated ciphers configuration can use the WPA2 ciphers. Fast Transition Adaptive is not supported for WPA3 SAE.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security. PMF is disabled now.
Step 7	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Configures WPA2 cipher. Note You can check whether cipher is configured using no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes command. If cipher is not reset, configure the cipher.
Step 8	security wpa psk set-key ascii value preshared-key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 Cisco123	Specifies a preshared key.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support. Note If both WPA2 and WPA3 are supported (SAE and PSK together), it is optional to configure PMF. However, you cannot disable PMF. For WPA3, PMF is mandatory.
Step 10	security wpa akm sae Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae	Enables AKM SAE support.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 12	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring WPA3 SAE iPSK (CLI)

Configuring a WPA3 SAE iPSK WLAN Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wl-sae-ipsk 8 wl-sae-ipsk	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	mac-filtering mac-filter-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering aaa_list	Sets MAC filtering support in WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	no security ft adaptive Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive	Disables adaptive 802.11r.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 6	security wpa psk set-key [ascii/hex] 0 [key] Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789	Configures the preshared key in WLAN. Note WPA preshared keys must contain 8 to 63 ASCII text characters or 64 hexadecimal characters.
Step 7	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for 802.1X.
Step 8	security wpa akm sae Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae	Enables AKM SAE support.
Step 9	security wpa akm sae pwe h2e Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae pwe h2e	Enables AKM SAE PWE support (hash-to-element). Note This step is applicable to Hunting and Pecking (HnP) password element method as well.
Step 10	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 11	security pmf mandatory Example: Device(config-wlan)# security pmf mandatory	Makes clients negotiate Protected Management Frames (PMF) protection in WLAN.
Step 12	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring a Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy po-sae-ipsk	Configures policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply to the policies coming from the AAA or Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) server.
Step 4	vlan 166 Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 166	Configures VLAN.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables policy profile.

Configuring a Passphrase in a Client Authorization Policy in the RADIUS Server(GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Log in to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
 - Step 2** Click **Policy** and then click **Policy Elements**.
 - Step 3** Click **Results**.
 - Step 4** Expand **Authorization** and click **Authorization Profiles**.
 - Step 5** Click **Add** to create a new authorization profile for the URL filter.
 - Step 6** In the **Name** field, enter a name for the profile, for example, *po-sae-ipsk*.
 - Step 7** From the **Access Type** drop-down list, choose **ACCESS_ACCEPT**.
 - Step 8** From the **Termination-Action** drop-down list, choose **RADIUS-Request**.

Step 9 In the **Advanced Attributes Setting** section, from the drop-down list, choose **Cisco:cisco-av-pair**.

Step 10 Enter the following one by one and click (+) icon after each of them:

- cisco-av-pair = psk-mode=ascii
- cisco-av-pair = psk=123123123

Step 11 Verify the contents in the **Attributes Details** section and click **Save**.

Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
- Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. From the **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down list, choose **WPA2+WPA3** or **WPA3**.
- Step 5** Uncheck the **WPA Policy**, **802.1x**, **Over the DS**, **FT + 802.1x** and **FT + PSK** check boxes. Check the **WPA3 Policy**, **AES** and **PSK** check boxes. Enter the **Pre-Shared Key** and from the **PSK Format** drop-down list, choose the PSK Format and from the **PSK Type** drop-down list, choose the PSK Type.
- Step 6** Check the **SAE** check box.
- Note**
SAE is enabled only if the Fast Transition is disabled.
- Step 7** From the **SAE Password Element** drop-down list, choose **Hash to Element Only** to configure the WPA3 SAE H2E.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WPA3 SAE H2E

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 4	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r fast transition on the WLAN.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security. PMF is disabled now.
Step 7	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Configures WPA2 cipher. Note You can check whether cipher is configured using no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes command. If cipher is not reset, configure the cipher.
Step 8	security wpa psk set-key ascii value <i>preshared-key</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 Cisco123	Specifies a preshared key.
Step 9	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 10	security wpa akm sae Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae	Enables AKM SAE support.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	security wpa akm sae pwe {h2e hnp both-h2e-hnp} Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae pwe</pre>	Enables AKM SAE PWE support. PWE supports the following options: • h2e—Hash-to-Element only; disables HnP. • hnp—Hunting and Pecking only; disables H2E. • Both-h2e-hnp—Both Hash-to-Element and Hunting and Pecking support (Is the default option).
Step 12	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 13	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# end</pre>	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring WPA3 WLAN for Transition Disable

Before you begin

You can enable Transition Disable only when the **security wpa wpa3** is enabled.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3</pre>	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.
Step 3	transition-disable Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# transition-disable</pre>	Enables Transition Disable support.
Step 4	end Example:	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# end	

Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** Enable or disable **Status** and **Broadcast SSID** toggle buttons.
 - Step 5** From the **Radio Policy** drop-down list, choose a policy.
 - Step 6** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. Check the **SAE** check box.
 - Step 7** Enter the **Anti Clogging Threshold**, **Max Retries** and **Retransmit Timeout**.
 - Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Anti-Clogging and SAE Retransmission

Follow the procedure given below to configure anti-clogging and SAE retransmission.



Note If the simultaneous SAE ongoing sessions are more than the configured anti-clogging threshold, then anti-clogging mechanism is triggered.

Before you begin

Ensure that SAE WLAN configuration is in place, as the steps given below are incremental in nature, in addition to the SAE WLAN configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example:	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# wlan WPA3 1 WPA3</code>	
Step 3	shutdown Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</code>	Disables the WLAN.
Step 4	security wpa akm sae Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae</code>	Enables simultaneous authentication of equals as a security protocol.
Step 5	security wpa akm sae anti-clogging-threshold threshold Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae anti-clogging-threshold 2000</code>	Configures threshold on the number of open sessions to trigger the anti-clogging procedure for new sessions.
Step 6	security wpa akm sae max-retries retry-limit Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae max-retries 10</code>	Configures the maximum number of retransmissions.
Step 7	security wpa akm sae retransmit-timeout retransmit-timeout-limit Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm sae retransmit-timeout 500</code>	Configures SAE message retransmission timeout value.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</code>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 9	end Example: <code>Device(config-wlan)# end</code>	Returns to the privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying WPA3 SAE and OWE

To view the system level statistics for the client that has undergone successful SAE authentication, SAE authentication failures, SAE ongoing sessions, SAE commit and confirm message exchanges, use the following show command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
```

```
Total Number of Clients : 0
```

```
client global statistics:
```

```

-----
Total association requests received      : 0
Total association attempts               : 0
Total FT/LocalAuth requests             : 0
Total association failures               : 0
Total association response accepts       : 0
Total association response rejects       : 0
Total association response errors        : 0
Total association failures due to blacklist : 0
Total association drops due to multicast mac : 0
Total association drops due to throttling : 0
Total association drops due to unknown bssid : 0
Total association drops due to parse failure : 0
Total association drops due to other reasons : 0
Total association requests wired clients : 0
Total association drops wired clients    : 0
Total association success wired clients  : 0
Total peer association requests wired clients : 0
Total peer association drops wired clients : 0
Total peer association success wired clients : 0
Total 11r ft authentication requests received : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response success : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response failure : 0
Total 11r ft action requests received : 0
Total 11r ft action response success : 0
Total 11r ft action response failure : 0
Total AID allocation failures           : 0
Total AID free failures                 : 0
Total roam attempts                    : 0
    Total CCKM roam attempts            : 0
    Total 11r roam attempts              : 0
    Total 11i fast roam attempts         : 0
    Total 11i slow roam attempts         : 0
    Total other roam type attempts       : 0
Total roam failures in dot11            : 0

Total WPA3 SAE attempts                 : 0
Total WPA3 SAE successful authentications : 0
Total WPA3 SAE authentication failures : 0
    Total incomplete protocol failures   : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages rejected : 0
    Total unsupported group rejections   : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages sent     : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages rejected : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE confirm messgae field mismatch : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE confirm message invalid length : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages sent    : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Open Sessions            : 0
Total SAE Message drops due to throttling : 0

Total Flexconnect local-auth roam attempts : 0
    Total AP 11i fast roam attempts      : 0
    Total 11i slow roam attempts         : 0

Total client state starts                : 0
Total client state associated             : 0
Total client state l2auth success        : 0
Total client state l2auth failures       : 0
Total blacklisted clients on dot1xauth failure : 0
Total client state mab attempts          : 0
Total client state mab failed            : 0
Total client state ip learn attempts     : 0

```



```

Total client state ip learn failed      : 0
Total client state l3 auth attempts    : 0
Total client state l3 auth failed      : 0
Total client state session push attempts : 0
Total client state session push failed  : 0
Total client state run                  : 0
Total client deleted                    : 0

```

To view the WLAN summary details, use the following command.

```
Device# show wlan summary
```

```
Number of WLANs: 3
```

ID	Profile Name	SSID	Status	Security
1	wlan-demo	ssid-demo	DOWN	[WPA3] [SAE] [AES]
3	CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius [WPA2] [802.1x] [AES]	CR1_SSID_mab-ext-radius	DOWN	
109	guest-wlan1 [WPA2] [802.1x] [AES], [Web Auth]	docssid	DOWN	

To view the WLAN properties (WPA2 and WPA3 mode) based on the WLAN ID, use the following command.

```
Device# show wlan id 1
```

```

WLAN Profile Name      : wlan-demo
=====
Identifier              : 1

!
!
!
Security
  802.11 Authentication      : Open System
  Static WEP Keys            : Disabled
  Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3) : Enabled
    WPA (SSN IE)             : Disabled
    WPA2 (RSN IE)            : Disabled
    WPA3 (WPA3 IE)           : Enabled
    AES Cipher                : Enabled
    CCMP256 Cipher           : Disabled
    GCMP128 Cipher           : Disabled
    GCMP256 Cipher           : Disabled
  Auth Key Management
    802.1x                    : Disabled
    PSK                       : Disabled
    CCKM                      : Disabled
    FT dot1x                  : Disabled
    FT PSK                    : Disabled
    Dot1x-SHA256              : Disabled
    PSK-SHA256                : Disabled
    SAE                       : Enabled
    OWE                       : Disabled
    SUITEB-1X                 : Disabled
    SUITEB192-1X             : Disabled
  CCKM TSF Tolerance         : 1000
  OSEN                      : Disabled

```

```

FT Support                               : Adaptive
  FT Reassociation Timeout                : 20
  FT Over-The-DS mode                    : Enabled
PMF Support                               : Required
  PMF Association Comeback Timeout        : 1
  PMF SA Query Time                      : 200
Web Based Authentication                  : Disabled
Conditional Web Redirect                  : Disabled
Splash-Page Web Redirect                  : Disabled
Webauth On-mac-filter Failure             : Disabled
Webauth Authentication List Name          : Disabled
Webauth Authorization List Name           : Disabled
Webauth Parameter Map                    : Disabled
!
!
!

```

To view the correct AKM for the client that has undergone SAE authentication, use the following command.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <e0ca.94c9.6be0> detail
```

```

Client MAC Address : e0ca.94c9.6be0
!
!
!
Wireless LAN Name: WPA3

!
!
!
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : SAE
!
!
!

```

To view the correct AKM for the client that has undergone OWE authentication, use the following command.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <e0ca.94c9.6be0> detail
```

```

Client MAC Address : e0ca.94c9.6be0
!
!
!
Wireless LAN Name: WPA3

!
!
!
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : OWE
!
!
!

```

To view the list of PMK cache stored locally, use the following command.

```
Device# show wireless pmk-cache
```

```
Number of PMK caches in total : 0
```

Type	Station	Entry Lifetime	VLAN Override	IP Override
Audit-Session-Id		Username		

Verifying WPA3 SAE H2E Support in WLAN

To view the WLAN properties (PWE method) based on the WLAN ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 1
WLAN Profile Name      : wpa3
=====
Identifier              : 1
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : wpa3
Status                 : Enabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
Advertise-Apname       : Disabled
Universal AP Admin     : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
OKC                    : Enabled
Number of Active Clients : 0
CHD per WLAN          : Enabled
WMM                    : Allowed
WiFi Direct Policy     : Disabled
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
    Priority (default) : 5
    Priority (default) : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs) : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action : Disabled
DTIM period for 802.11a radio : 1
DTIM period for 802.11b radio : 1
Local EAP Authentication : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name : Disabled
Accounting list name    :
802.1x authentication list name : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name : Disabled
Security
    802.11 Authentication : Open System
    Static WEP Keys       : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3) : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)      : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)     : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)    : Enabled
            AES Cipher     : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher : Disabled
    Auth Key Management
        802.1x            : Disabled
        PSK               : Disabled
        CCKM              : Disabled
        FT dot1x         : Disabled
        FT PSK            : Disabled
        Dot1x-SHA256      : Disabled
        PSK-SHA256        : Disabled
        SAE               : Enabled
        OWE               : Disabled
```

```

        SUITEB-1X : Disabled
        SUITEB192-1X : Disabled
    SAE PWE Method : Hash to Element (H2E)
    Transition Disable : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance (msecs) : 1000
    OWE Transition Mode : Disabled
    OSEN : Disabled
    FT Support : Disabled
        FT Reassociation Timeout (secs) : 20
        FT Over-The-DS mode : Disabled
    PMF Support : Required
        PMF Association Comeback Timeout (secs) : 1
        PMF SA Query Time (msecs) : 200
    Web Based Authentication : Disabled
    Conditional Web Redirect : Disabled
    Splash-Page Web Redirect : Disabled
    Webauth On-mac-filter Failure : Disabled
    Webauth Authentication List Name : Disabled
    Webauth Authorization List Name : Disabled
    Webauth Parameter Map : Disabled
    Band Select : Disabled
    Load Balancing : Disabled
    Multicast Buffer : Disabled
    Multicast Buffers (frames) : 0
    IP Source Guard : Disabled
    Assisted-Roaming
        Neighbor List : Enabled
        Prediction List : Disabled
        Dual Band Support : Disabled
    IEEE 802.11v parameters
        Directed Multicast Service : Enabled
        BSS Max Idle : Enabled
        Protected Mode : Disabled
        Traffic Filtering Service : Disabled
        BSS Transition : Enabled
            Disassociation Imminent : Disabled
            Optimised Roaming Timer (TBTTs) : 40
            Timer (TBTTs) : 200
        Dual Neighbor List : Disabled
    WNM Sleep Mode : Disabled
    802.11ac MU-MIMO : Enabled
    802.11ax parameters
        802.11ax Operation Status : Enabled
        OFDMA Downlink : Enabled
        OFDMA Uplink : Enabled
        MU-MIMO Downlink : Enabled
        MU-MIMO Uplink : Enabled
        BSS Target Wake Up Time : Enabled
        BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support : Enabled
    802.11 protocols in 2.4ghz band
        Protocol : dot11bg
    Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling : Enabled
    mDNS Gateway Status : Bridge
    WIFI Alliance Agile Multiband : Disabled
    Device Analytics
        Advertise Support : Enabled
        Advertise Support for PC analytics : Enabled
        Share Data with Client : Disabled
    Client Scan Report (11k Beacon Radio Measurement)
        Request on Association : Disabled
        Request on Roam : Disabled
    WiFi to Cellular Steering : Disabled
    Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling : Enabled

```

Locally Administered Address Configuration
 Deny LAA clients : Disabled

To verify the client association who have used the PWE method as H2E or HnP, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address e884.a52c.47a5 detail
Client MAC Address : e884.a52c.47a5
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address : 11.11.0.65
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::c80f:bb8c:86f6:f71f
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : d4ad.bda2.e9e0
AP Name: APA453.0E7B.E73C
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 1
WLAN Profile Name: wpa3
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): wpa3
BSSID : d4ad.bda2.e9ef
Connected For : 72 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Channel : 36
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 2
Authentication Algorithm : Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)
Idle state timeout : N/A
Session Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1728 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Disabled
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m6 ss2
Supported Rates : 6.0,9.0,12.0,18.0,24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
  QoS Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
Mobility:
  Move Count : 0
  Mobility Role : Local
  Mobility Roam Type : None
  Mobility Complete Timestamp : 08/24/2021 04:39:47 Pacific
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client : 08/24/2021 04:39:47 Pacific
Client State Servers : None
Client ACLs : None
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 72 seconds
```

```

Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : SAE
AAA override passphrase : No
SAE PWE Method : Hash to Element(H2E)
Transition Disable Bitmap : None
User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : Yes
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN Override after Webauth : No
VLAN : VLAN0011
Multicast VLAN : 0
WiFi Direct Capabilities:
    WiFi Direct Capable : No
Central NAT : DISABLED
Session Manager:
    Point of Attachment : capwap_90000006
    IIF ID : 0x90000006
    Authorized : TRUE
    Session timeout : 1800
    Common Session ID: 0000000000000000C76750C17
    Acct Session ID : 0x00000000
    Auth Method Status List
        Method : SAE
Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
    VLAN : VLAN0011
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
Server Policies:
Resultant Policies:
    VLAN Name : VLAN0011
    VLAN : 11
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
    CF Pollable : Not implemented
    CF Poll Request : Not implemented
    Short Preamble : Not implemented
    PBCC : Not implemented
    Channel Agility : Not implemented
    Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
    Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Implemented
11v DMS Capable : No
QoS Map Capable : Yes
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : N/A
FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
Client Statistics:
    Number of Bytes Received from Client : 21757
    Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 4963
    Number of Packets Received from Client : 196
    Number of Packets Sent to Client : 37
    Number of Policy Errors : 0
    Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -72 dBm
    Signal to Noise Ratio : 20 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
Radio Measurement Enabled Capabilities
    Capabilities: Neighbor Report, Passive Beacon Measurement, Active Beacon Measurement,
    Table Beacon Measurement

```

```
Client Scan Report Time : Timer not running
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
```

To view the number of SAE authentications using the H2E and HnP, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
Total Number of Clients : 0
```

Protocol Statistics

```
-----
Protocol          Client Count
802.11b           : 0
802.11g           : 0
802.11a           : 0
802.11n-2.4GHz    : 0
802.11n-5 GHz     : 0
802.11ac          : 0
802.11ax-5 GHz    : 0
802.11ax-2.4 GHz  : 0
802.11ax-6 GHz    : 0
```

Current client state statistics:

```
-----
Authenticating      : 0
Mobility            : 0
IP Learn            : 0
Webauth Pending     : 0
Run                 : 0
Delete-in-Progress  : 0
```

Client Summary

```
-----
Current Clients : 0
Excluded Clients: 0
Disabled Clients: 0
Foreign Clients : 0
Anchor Clients  : 0
Local Clients   : 0
Idle Clients    : 0
Locally Administered MAC Clients: 0
```

client global statistics:

```
-----
Total association requests received      : 0
Total association attempts               : 0
Total FT/LocalAuth requests              : 0
Total association failures                : 0
Total association response accepts        : 0
Total association response rejects        : 0
Total association response errors         : 0
Total association failures due to exclusion list : 0
Total association drops due to multicast mac : 0
Total association drops due to random mac  : 0
Total association drops due to throttling  : 0
Total association drops due to unknown bssid : 0
Total association drops due to parse failure : 0
Total association drops due to other reasons : 0
Total association requests wired clients  : 0
Total association drops wired clients     : 0
```

```

Total association success wired clients      : 0
Total peer association requests wired clients : 0
Total peer association drops wired clients   : 0
Total peer association success wired clients : 0
Total association success wifi direct clients : 0
Total association rejects wifi direct clients : 0
Total association response errors            : 0
Total 11r ft authentication requests received : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response success  : 0
Total 11r ft authentication response failure  : 0
Total 11r ft action requests received        : 0
Total 11r ft action response success         : 0
Total 11r ft action response failure         : 0
Total 11r PMKRO-Name mismatch                : 0
Total 11r PMKR1-Name mismatch                : 0
Total 11r MDID mismatch                      : 0
Total AID allocation failures                 : 0
Total AID free failures                      : 0
Total Roam Across Policy Profiles             : 0
Total roam attempts                          : 0
    Total CCKM roam attempts                  : 0
    Total 11r roam attempts                   : 0
    Total 11r slow roam attempts              : 0
    Total 11i fast roam attempts              : 0
    Total 11i slow roam attempts              : 0
    Total other roam type attempts            : 0
Total roam failures in dot11                  : 0

Total WPA3 SAE attempts                      : 0
Total WPA3 SAE successful authentications     : 0
Total WPA3 SAE authentication failures        : 0
    Total incomplete protocol failures        : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages received      : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages rejected      : 0
    Total unsupported group rejections        : 0
    Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hash to Element commit received : 0
    Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hunting And Pecking commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages sent          : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages received      : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages rejected      : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE message confirm field mismatch : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE confirm message invalid length : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages sent          : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Open Sessions                  : 0
Total SAE Message drops due to throttling     : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hash to Element commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hunting and Pecking commit received : 0

Total Flexconnect local-auth roam attempts    : 0
    Total AP 11i fast roam attempts           : 0
    Total AP 11i slow roam attempts           : 0
    Total 11r flex roam attempts              : 0

```

Verifying WPA3 Transition Disable in WLAN

To view the WLAN properties (transition disable) based on the WLAN ID, use the following command:

```

Device# show wlan id 7

WLAN Profile Name      : wl-sae
=====
Identifier              : 7

```



```

Description                                     :
Network Name (SSID)                           : wl-sae
Status                                         : Enabled
Broadcast SSID                                : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                              : Disabled
Universal AP Admin                            : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN                 : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN          : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN    : 200
OKC                                             : Enabled
Number of Active Clients                       : 0
CHD per WLAN                                  : Enabled
WMM                                             : Allowed
WiFi Direct Policy                            : Disabled
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
    Priority (default)                         : 5
    Priority (default)                         : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs)                       : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct                  : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support                       : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action                   : Disabled
Configured Radio Bands                        : All
Operational State of Radio Bands
    2.4ghz                                    : UP
    5ghz                                       : UP
DTIM period for 802.11a radio                  :
DTIM period for 802.11b radio                  :
Local EAP Authentication                       : Disabled
Mac Filter Authorization list name              : Disabled
Mac Filter Override Authorization list name     : Disabled
Accounting list name                           :
802.1x authentication list name                 : Disabled
802.1x authorization list name                  : Disabled
Security
    802.11 Authentication                     : Open System
    Static WEP Keys                           : Disabled
    Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA/WPA2/WPA3)     : Enabled
        WPA (SSN IE)                         : Disabled
        WPA2 (RSN IE)                        : Enabled
            MP SK                             : Disabled
            EasyPSK                           : Disabled
            AES Cipher                         : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                     : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                     : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher                     : Disabled
            Randomized GTK                     : Disabled
        WPA3 (WPA3 IE)                       : Enabled
            AES Cipher                         : Enabled
            CCMP256 Cipher                     : Disabled
            GCMP128 Cipher                     : Disabled
            GCMP256 Cipher                     : Disabled
    Auth Key Management
        802.1x                               : Disabled
        PSK                                   : Enabled
        CCKM                                 : Disabled
        FT dot1x                             : Disabled
        FT PSK                               : Disabled
        Dot1x-SHA256                         : Disabled
        PSK-SHA256                           : Disabled
        SAE                                   : Enabled
        OWE                                   : Disabled
        SUITEB-1X                             : Disabled
        SUITEB192-1X                         : Disabled
    Transition Disable                         : Enabled

```

CCKM TSF Tolerance (msecs) : 1000

To verify the client association who have used the transition disable, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 2c33.7a5b.8fc5 detail
Client MAC Address : 2c33.7a5b.8fc5
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address : 166.166.1.101
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 7c21.0d48.ed00
AP Name: APF4BD.9EBD.A66C
AP slot : 0
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : po-sae
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 7
WLAN Profile Name: wl-sae
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): wl-sae
BSSID : 7c21.0d48.ed02
Connected For : 15 seconds
Protocol : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
Channel : 11
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000002
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE)
Idle state timeout : N/A
Session Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1787 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Disabled
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : In-Active
Power Save : OFF
Supported Rates : 1.0,2.0,5.5,6.0,9.0,11.0,12.0,18.0,24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
QoS Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
Mobility:
Move Count : 0
Mobility Role : Local
Mobility Roam Type : None
Mobility Complete Timestamp : 05/16/2021 11:18:14 UTC
Client Join Time:
Join Time Of Client : 05/16/2021 11:18:14 UTC
Client State Servers : None
Client ACLs : None
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 15 seconds
Policy Type : WPA3
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
```

```
Authentication Key Management : SAE
AAA override passphrase : No
Transition Disable Bitmap : 0x01
User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : Yes
```




CHAPTER 103

IP Source Guard

- [Information About IP Source Guard, on page 1059](#)
- [Configuring IP Source Guard \(GUI\), on page 1059](#)
- [Configuring IP Source Guard, on page 1060](#)

Information About IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard (IPSG) is a Layer 2 security feature in the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller . It supports both IPv4 and IPv6 wireless clients.

The IPSG feature prevents the wireless controller from forwarding the packets, with the source IP addresses that are not known to it. This security feature is not enabled by default and has to be explicitly configured. It is enabled on a per WLAN basis, and all the wireless clients joining that WLAN inherits this feature.

The wireless controller maintains an IP/MAC pair binding table for the IPSG feature. Using this table, the wireless controller keeps track of IP and MAC address combination (binding) information for all the wireless clients. This binding information is captured as part of the IP learning process. When the feature is enabled on a WLAN, the wireless controller forwards the incoming packets (from the wireless clients) only if it finds a matching binding table entry corresponding to the source IP and MAC address combination of those packets. Otherwise, the packets are dropped.

Configuring IP Source Guard (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click the WLAN.
Step 3	In the Advanced tab, check the IP Source Guard checkbox.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring IP Source Guard

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPSG:

Before you begin

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports only one IPv4 address for a client and up to 8 IPv6 addresses (including link local addresses) per client.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan <i>profile-name</i> <i>wlan-id</i> <i>ssid</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid</pre>	Specifies the WLAN name and ID to use. Note If a WLAN is not already configured, this step creates the WLAN.
Step 2	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# shutdown</pre>	Disables the WLAN.
Step 3	ip verify source mac-check Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# ip verify source mac-check</pre>	Enables the IP Source Guard feature.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.



CHAPTER 104

802.11w

- [Information About 802.11w, on page 1061](#)
- [Prerequisites for 802.11w, on page 1064](#)
- [Restrictions for 802.11w, on page 1064](#)
- [How to Configure 802.11w, on page 1065](#)
- [Disabling 802.11w, on page 1066](#)
- [Monitoring 802.11w, on page 1067](#)

Information About 802.11w

Wi-Fi is a broadcast medium that enables any device to eavesdrop and participate either as a legitimate or rogue device. Management frames such as authentication, de-authentication, association, dissociation, beacons, and probes are used by wireless clients to initiate and tear down sessions for network services. Unlike data traffic, which can be encrypted to provide a level of confidentiality, these frames must be heard and understood by all clients and therefore must be transmitted as open or unencrypted. While these frames cannot be encrypted, they must be protected from forgery to protect the wireless medium from attacks. For example, an attacker could spoof management frames from an AP to attack a client associated with the AP.

The 802.11w protocol applies only to a set of robust management frames that are protected by the Protected Management Frames (PMF) service. These include Disassociation, De-authentication, and Robust Action frames.

Management frames that are considered as robust action and therefore protected are the following:

- Spectrum Management
- QoS
- DLS
- Block Ack
- Radio Measurement
- Fast BSS Transition
- SA Query
- Protected Dual of Public Action
- Vendor-specific Protected

When 802.11w is implemented in the wireless medium, the following occur:

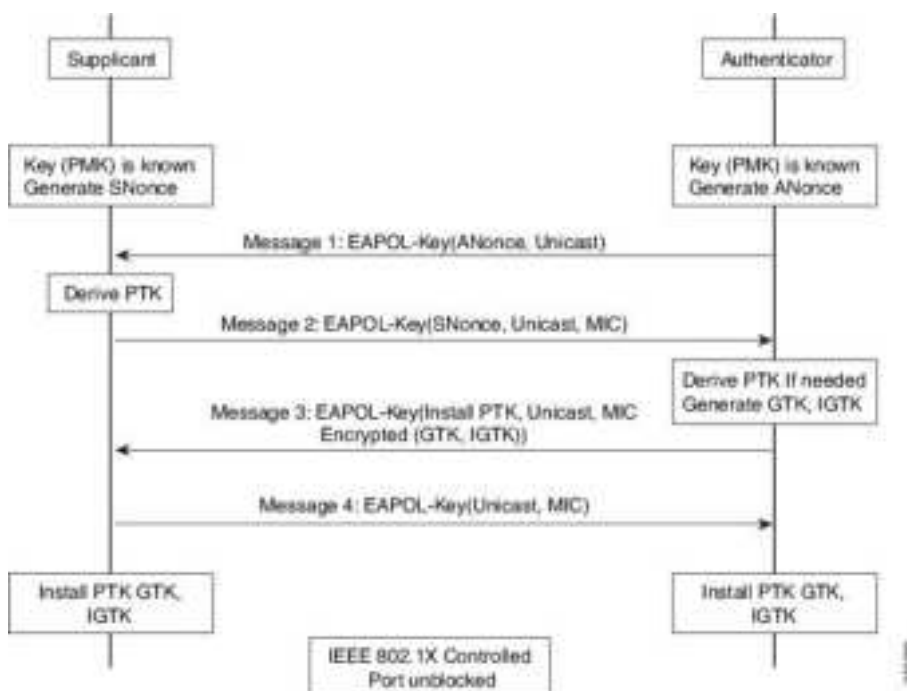
- Client protection is added by the AP adding cryptographic protection to de-authentication and dissociation frames preventing them from being spoofed in a DOS attack.
- Infrastructure protection is added by adding a Security Association (SA) tear down protection mechanism consisting of an Association Comeback Time and an SA-Query procedure preventing spoofed association request from disconnecting an already connected client.

802.11w has introduced a new IGTK Key, which is used to protect broadcast/multicast robust management frames:

- IGTK is a random value assigned by the authenticator STA (WLC) and used to protect MAC management protocol data units (MMPDUs) from that source STA.

When Management Frame Protection is negotiated, the AP encrypts the GTK and IGTK values in the EAPOL-Key frame, which is delivered in Message 3 of 4-way handshake.

Figure 21: IGTK Exchange in 4-way Handshake

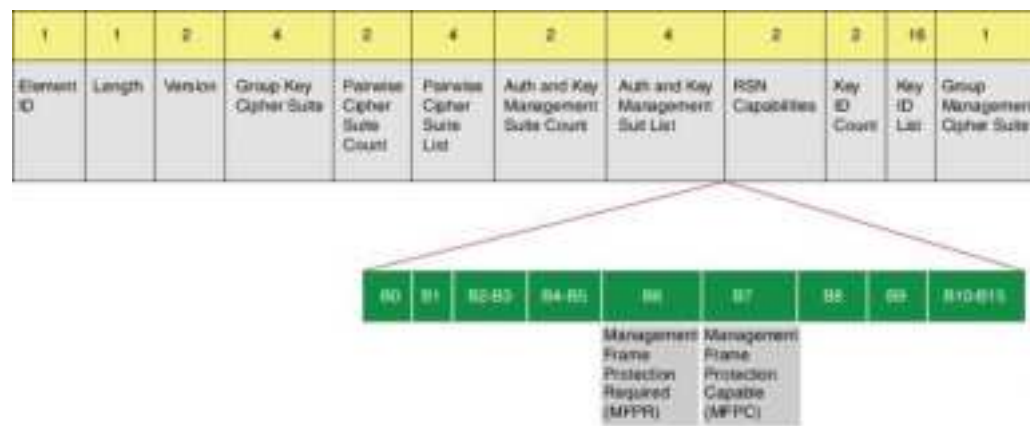


- If the AP later changes the GTK, it sends the new GTK and IGTK to the client using the Group Key Handshake .

802.11w defines a new Broadcast/Multicast Integrity Protocol (BIP) that provides data integrity and replay protection for broadcast/multicast robust management frames after successful establishment of an IGTKSA - It adds a MIC that is calculated using the shared IGTK key.

802.11w Information Elements (IEs)

Figure 22: 802.11w Information Elements

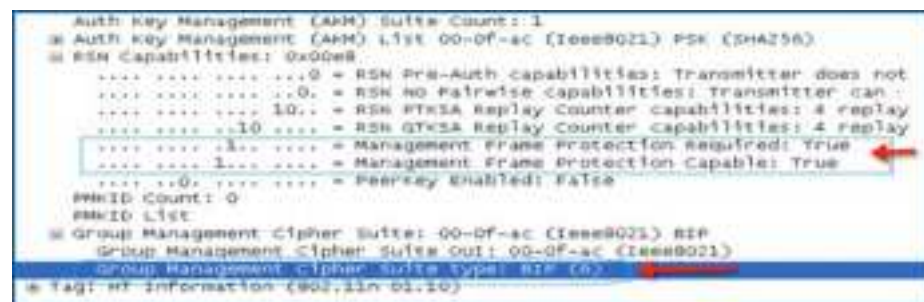


1. Modifications made in the RSN capabilities field of RSNIE.
 - a. Bit 6: Management Frame Protection Required (MFPR)
 - b. Bit 7: Management Frame Protection Capable (MFPC)
2. Two new AKM Suites, 5 and 6 are added for AKM Suite Selectors.
3. New Cipher Suite with type 6 is added to accommodate BIP.

The WLC adds this modified RSNIE in association and re-association responses and the APs add this modified RSNIE in beacons and probe responses.

The following Wireshark captures shows the RSNIE capabilities and the Group Management Cipher Suite elements.

Figure 23: 802.11w Information Elements



Security Association (SA) Teardown Protection

SA teardown protection is a mechanism to prevent replay attacks from tearing down the session of an existing client. It consists of an Association Comeback Time and an SA-Query procedure preventing spoofed association requests from disconnecting an already connected client.

If a client has a valid security association, and has negotiated 802.11w, the AP shall reject another Association Request with status code 30. This status code stands for "Association request rejected temporarily; Try again later". The AP should not tear down or otherwise modify the state of the existing association until the SA-Query

procedure determines that the original SA is invalid and shall include in the Association Response an Association Comeback Time information element, specifying a comeback time when the AP would be ready to accept an association with this client.

The following capture shows the Association Reject message with status code 0x1e (30) and the Association comeback time set to 10 seconds.

Figure 24: Association Reject with Comeback Time



Following this, if the AP is not already engaged in an SA Query with the client, the AP shall issue an SA Query until a matching SA Query response is received or the Association Comeback time expires. An AP may interpret reception of a valid protected frame as an indication of a successfully completed SA Query.

If a SA QUERY response with a matching transaction identifier within the time period, the AP shall allow the association process to be started without starting additional SA Query procedures.

Prerequisites for 802.11w

- To configure 802.11w feature for optional and mandatory, you must have WPA and AKM configured.



Note The RNS (Robust Secure Network) IE must be enabled with an AES Cipher.

Restrictions for 802.11w

- 802.11w cannot be applied on an open WLAN, WEP-encrypted WLAN, or a TKIP-encrypted WLAN.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports 802.11w + PMF combination for non-Apple clients. But Apple iOS version 11 and earlier require fix from the Apple iOS side to resolve the association issues.
- The controller will ignore disassociation or deauthentication frames sent by the clients if they are not using 802.11w PMF. The client entry will only get deleted immediately upon reception of such a frame if the client uses PMF. This is to avoid denial of service by malicious device since there is no security on those frames without PMF.

How to Configure 802.11w

Configuring 802.11w (GUI)

Before you begin

WPA and AKM must be configured.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to create WLANs.
- The **Add WLAN** page is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Security > Layer2** tab, navigate to the **Protected Management Frame** section.
- Step 4** Choose **PMF** as *Disabled*, *Optional*, or *Required*. By default, the PMF is *disabled*.
- If you choose **PMF** as *Optional* or *Required*, you get to view the following fields:
- **Association Comeback Timer**—Enter a value between 1 and 10 seconds to configure 802.11w association comeback time.
 - **SA Query Time**—Enter a value between 100 to 500 (milliseconds). This is required for clients to negotiate 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring 802.11w (CLI)

Before you begin

WPA and AKM must be configured.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid Example:	Configures a WLAN and enters configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 12 alpha	
Step 3	security wpa akm dot1x-sha256 Example: Device(config-wlan)#security wpa akm dot1x-sha256	Configures 802.1x support.
Step 4	security pmf association-comeback comeback-interval Example: Device(config-wlan)# security pmf association-comeback 10	Configures the 802.11w association comeback time.
Step 5	security pmf mandatory Example: Device(config-wlan)# security pmf mandatory	Requires clients to negotiate 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN.
Step 6	security pmf saquery-retry-time timeout Example: Device(config-wlan)# security pmf saquery-retry-time 100	Time interval identified in milliseconds before which the SA query response is expected. If the device does not get a response, another SQ query is tried.

Disabling 802.11w

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 12 alpha	Configures a WLAN and enters configuration mode.
Step 3	no security wpa akm dot1x-sha256 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x-sha256	Disables 802.1x support.
Step 4	no security pmf association-comeback comeback-interval Example:	Disables the 802.11w association comeback time.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf association-comeback 10	
Step 5	no security pmf mandatory Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf mandatory	Disables client negotiation of 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN.
Step 6	no security pmf saquery-retry-time timeout Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security pmf saquery-retry-time 100	Disables SQ query retry.

Monitoring 802.11w

Use the following commands to monitor 802.11w.

Procedure

Step 1 **show wlan name** *wlan-name*

Displays the WLAN parameters on the WLAN. The PMF parameters are displayed.

```

. . . . .
. . . . .
Auth Key Management
    802.1x                : Disabled
    PSK                   : Disabled
    CCKM                   : Disabled
    FT dot1x              : Disabled
    FT PSK                 : Disabled
    FT SAE                 : Disabled
    Dot1x-SHA256           : Enabled
    PSK-SHA256             : Disabled
    SAE                    : Disabled
    OWE                    : Disabled
    SUITEB-1X              : Disabled
    SUITEB192-1X          : Disabled
    CCKM TSF Tolerance     : 1000
    FT Support             : Adaptive
    FT Reassociation Timeout : 20
    FT Over-The-DS mode    : Enabled
    PMF Support            : Required
    PMF Association Comeback Timeout : 1
    PMF SA Query Time      : 500
. . . . .
. . . . .

```

Step 2 **show wireless client mac-address** *mac-address detail*

Displays the summary of the 802.11w authentication key management configuration on a client.

```
. . . . .
. . . . .
Policy Manager State: Run
NPU Fast Fast Notified : No
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 497 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x-SHA256
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Management Frame Protection : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : Yes
EAP Type : LEAP
VLAN : 39
Multicast VLAN : 0
Access VLAN : 39
Anchor VLAN : 0
WFD capable : No
Manged WFD capable : No
. . . . .
. . . . .
```



CHAPTER 105

Management Frame Protection

- [Information About Management Frame Protection, on page 1069](#)
- [Restrictions for Management Frame Protection, on page 1070](#)
- [Configuring Management Frame Protection \(CLI\), on page 1071](#)
- [Verifying Management Frame Protection Settings, on page 1071](#)

Information About Management Frame Protection

By default, 802.11 management frames are unauthenticated and hence not protected against spoofing. Infrastructure management frame protection (MFP) and 802.11w protected management frames (PMF) provide protection against such attacks.

Infrastructure MFP

Infrastructure MFP protects management frames by detecting adversaries that are invoking denial-of-service attacks, flooding the network with associations and probes, interjecting as rogue APs, and affecting network performance by attacking the QoS and radio measurement frames. Infrastructure MFP is a global setting that provides a quick and effective means to detect and report phishing incidents.

Specifically, infrastructure MFP protects 802.11 session management functions by adding message integrity check information elements (MIC IEs) to the management frames emitted by APs (and not those emitted by clients), which are then validated by other APs in the network. Infrastructure MFP is passive, can detect and report intrusions but has no means to stop them.

Infrastructure MFP consists of three main components:

- **Management frame protection:** The AP protects the management frames it transmits by adding a MIC IE to each frame. Any attempt to copy, alter, or replay the frame invalidates the MIC, causing any receiving AP configured to detect MFP frames to report the discrepancy. MFP is supported for use with Cisco Aironet lightweight APs.
- **Management frame validation:** In infrastructure MFP, the AP validates every management frame that it receives from other APs in the network. It ensures that the MIC IE is present (when the originator is configured to transmit MFP frames) and matches the content of the management frame. If it receives any frame that does not contain a valid MIC IE from a BSSID belonging to an AP that is configured to transmit MFP frames, it reports the discrepancy to the network management system. In order for the timestamps to operate properly, all controllers must be Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronized.

- **Event reporting:** The AP notifies the controller when it detects an anomaly, and the controller aggregates the received anomaly events and can report the results through SNMP traps to the network management system.

Infrastructure MFP is disabled by default, and you can enable it globally. When you upgrade from a previous software release, infrastructure MFP is disabled globally if you have enabled AP authentication because the two features are mutually exclusive. When you enable infrastructure MFP globally, signature generation (adding MICs to outbound frames) can be disabled for selected WLANs, and validation can be disabled for selected APs.



Note CCXv5 client MFP is no longer supported. Client MFP is enabled as optional by default on WLANs that are configured for WPA2. However, client MFP is not supported on Wave 2 APs or 802.11ax Wi-Fi6 APs, and there exist no clients that support CCXv5.

Supported Access Point Models

Cisco MFP is supported on the following AP models:

- Cisco Aironet 2802, 3802, and 4802 series access points
- Cisco Aironet 2800, 3800, 4800, and 1560 series access points

Unsupported Access Point Models

Cisco MFP is not supported on the following AP models:

- Cisco Aironet 1800 series access points
- Cisco 802.11ax access points
- All Cisco IOS access points

Restrictions for Management Frame Protection

- Lightweight access points support infrastructure MFP in local and monitor modes and in FlexConnect mode when the access point is connected to a controller.
- Client MFP is supported for use only with CCXv5 clients using WPA2 with TKIP or AES-CCMP.
- Client MFP is not supported on Cisco Wave 1 APs and Cisco Wave 2 APs.
- 802.11ax access points do not support MFP.
- Non-CCXv5 clients may associate to a WLAN, if client MFP is disabled or optional.
- Error reports generated on a FlexConnect access point in standalone mode cannot be forwarded to the controller and are dropped.
- Keys are generated using random number generator but you can improve the keys by changing to SHA.
- MFP key for each BSSID is not supported.

Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps mfp Example: Device(config)# wireless wps mfp	Configures a management frame protection.
Step 3	wireless wps mfp {ap-impersonation key-refresh-interval} Example: Device(config)# wireless wps mfp ap-impersonation Device(config)# wireless wps mfp key-refresh-interval	Configures ap impersonation detection (or) MFP key refresh interval in hours. key-refresh-interval—Refers to the MFP key refresh interval in hours. The valid range is from 1 to 24. Default value is 24.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Management Frame Protection Settings

To verify if the Management Frame Protection (MFP) feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps summary
Client Exclusion Policy
  Excessive 802.11-association failures    : unknown
  Excessive 802.11-authentication failures: unknown
  Excessive 802.1x-authentication         : unknown
  IP-theft                               : unknown
  Excessive Web authentication failure     : unknown
  Failed Qos Policy                       : unknown

Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state          : Enabled
  AP Impersonation detection              : Disabled
  Key refresh interval                    : 15
```

To view the MFP details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps mfp summary
Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state          : Enabled
```

```

AP Impersonation detection      : Disabled
Key refresh interval           : 15

```

To view the MFP statistics details, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless wps mfp statistics
BSSID      Radio DetectorAP      LastSourceAddr Error      Count
FrameTypes

aabb.ccdd.eeff a      AP3800      aabb.ccdd.eeff Invalid MIC      10
Beacon, Probe Response

Beacon, Probe Response      Invalid MIC      20

```

To verify if access points support MFP validation and protection, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless wps mfp ap summary
AP Name      Radio MAC      Validation      Protection
-----
AP002A.1087.CBF4      00a2.eefd.bdc0      Enabled      Enabled
AP58AC.78DE.9946      00a2.eeb8.4ae0      Enabled      Enabled
APb4de.3196.caac      4c77.6d83.6b90      Enabled      Enabled

```



CHAPTER 106

IPv4 ACLs

- [Information about Network Security with ACLs, on page 1073](#)
- [Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists, on page 1081](#)
- [How to Configure ACLs, on page 1082](#)
- [Configuration Examples for ACLs, on page 1095](#)
- [Monitoring IPv4 ACLs, on page 1099](#)

Information about Network Security with ACLs

This chapter describes how to configure network security on the switch by using access control lists (ACLs), which in commands and tables are also referred to as access lists.

ACL Overview

Packet filtering can help limit network traffic and restrict network use by certain users or devices. ACLs filter traffic as it passes through a controller and permit or deny packets crossing specified interfaces. An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets. When a packet is received on an interface, the switch compares the fields in the packet against any applied ACLs to verify that the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded, based on the criteria specified in the access lists. One by one, it tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match decides whether the controller accepts or rejects the packets. Because the controller stops testing after the first match, the order of conditions in the list is critical. If no conditions match, the controller rejects the packet. If there are no restrictions, the controller forwards the packet; otherwise, the controller drops the packet. The controller can use ACLs on all packets it forwards. There is implicit any host deny deny rule.

You configure access lists on a controller to provide basic security for your network. If you do not configure ACLs, all packets passing through the switch could be allowed onto all parts of the network. You can use ACLs to control which hosts can access different parts of a network or to decide which types of traffic are forwarded or blocked at router interfaces. For example, you can allow e-mail traffic to be forwarded but not Telnet traffic.

Access Control Entries

An ACL contains an ordered list of access control entries (ACEs). Each ACE specifies *permit* or *deny* and a set of conditions the packet must satisfy in order to match the ACE. The meaning of *permit* or *deny* depends on the context in which the ACL is used.



Note The maximum number of ACEs that can be applied under an access policy (ACL) for central switching is 256 ACEs. The maximum number of ACEs applicable for Flex Mode Local Switching is 64 ACEs.

ACL Supported Types

The switch supports IP ACLs and Ethernet (MAC) ACLs:

- IP ACLs filter IPv4 traffic, including TCP, User Datagram Protocol (UDP), Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP), and Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP).
- Ethernet ACLs filter non-IP traffic.

This switch also supports quality of service (QoS) classification ACLs.

Supported ACLs

The controller supports three types of ACLs to filter traffic:

- Port ACLs access-control traffic entering a Layer 2 interface. You can apply port ACLs to a Layer 2 interface in each direction to each access list type — IPv4 and MAC.
- Router ACLs access-control routed traffic between VLANs and are applied to Layer 3 interfaces in a specific direction (inbound or outbound).
- FQDN ACL: FQDN ACL is encoded along with IPv6 ACL and sent to AP. FQDN ACL is always a custom ACL. AP does DNS snooping and sends the IPv4 and IPv6 addresses to the controller.

ACL Precedence

When Port ACLs, and router ACLs are configured on the same switch, the filtering precedence, from greatest to least for ingress traffic is port ACL, and then router ACL. For egress traffic, the filtering precedence is router ACL, and then port ACL.

The following examples describe simple use cases:

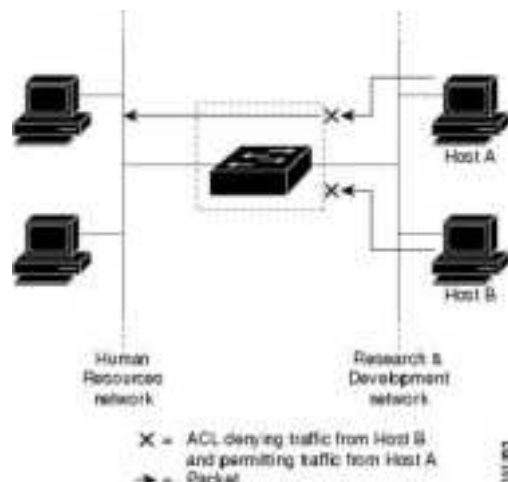
- When an input router ACL and input port ACL exist in a switch virtual interface (SVI), incoming packets received on ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Incoming routed IP packets received on ports are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.
- When an output router ACL and input port ACL exist in an SVI, incoming packets received on the ports to which a port ACL is applied are filtered by the port ACL. Outgoing routed IP packets are filtered by the router ACL. Other packets are not filtered.

Port ACLs

- Standard IP access lists using source addresses
- Extended IP access lists using source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information
- MAC extended access lists using source and destination MAC addresses and optional protocol type information

The switch examines ACLs on an interface and permits or denies packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL. In this way, ACLs control access to a network or to part of a network.

Figure 25: Using ACLs to Control Traffic in a Network



This is an example of using port ACLs to control access to a network when all workstations are in the same VLAN. ACLs applied at the Layer 2 input would allow Host A to access the Human Resources network, but prevent Host B from accessing the same network. Port ACLs can only be applied to Layer 2 interfaces in the inbound direction.

When you apply a port ACL to a trunk port, the ACL filters traffic on all VLANs present on the trunk port. When you apply a port ACL to a port with voice VLAN, the ACL filters traffic on both data and voice VLANs.

With port ACLs, you can filter IP traffic by using IP access lists and non-IP traffic by using MAC addresses. You can filter both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface by applying both an IP access list and a MAC access list to the interface.



Note You can't apply more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface. If an IP access list or MAC access list is already configured on a Layer 2 interface and you apply a new IP access list or MAC access list to the interface, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.

Router ACLs

You can apply router ACLs on switch virtual interfaces (SVIs), which are Layer 3 interfaces to VLANs; on physical Layer 3 interfaces; and on Layer 3 EtherChannel interfaces. You apply router ACLs on interfaces for specific directions (inbound or outbound). You can apply one router ACL in each direction on an interface.

The switch supports these access lists for IPv4 traffic:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses and optional protocol type information for matching operations.

As with port ACLs, the switch examines ACLs associated with features configured on a given interface. As packets enter the switch on an interface, ACLs associated with all inbound features configured on that interface are examined. After packets are routed and before they are forwarded to the next hop, all ACLs associated with outbound features configured on the egress interface are examined.

ACLs permit or deny packet forwarding based on how the packet matches the entries in the ACL, and can be used to control access to a network or to part of a network.

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic

IP packets can be fragmented as they cross the network. When this happens, only the fragment containing the beginning of the packet contains the Layer 4 information, such as TCP or UDP port numbers, ICMP type and code, and so on. All other fragments are missing this information.

Some access control entries (ACEs) do not check Layer 4 information and therefore can be applied to all packet fragments. ACEs that do test Layer 4 information cannot be applied in the standard manner to most of the fragments in a fragmented IP packet. When the fragment contains no Layer 4 information and the ACE tests some Layer 4 information, the matching rules are modified:

- Permit ACEs that check the Layer 3 information in the fragment (including protocol type, such as TCP, UDP, and so on) are considered to match the fragment regardless of what the missing Layer 4 information might have been.



Note For TCP ACEs with L4 Ops, the fragmented packets will be dropped per RFC 1858.

- Deny ACEs that check Layer 4 information never match a fragment unless the fragment contains Layer 4 information.

ACEs and Fragmented and Unfragmented Traffic Examples

Consider access list 102, configured with these commands, applied to three fragmented packets:

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.1 eq smtp
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any host 10.1.1.2 eq telnet
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 10.1.1.2
Device(config)# access-list 102 deny tcp any any
```



Note In the first and second ACEs in the examples, the *eq* keyword after the destination address means to test for the TCP-destination-port well-known numbers equaling Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Telnet, respectively.

- Packet A is a TCP packet from host 10.2.2.2., port 65000, going to host 10.1.1.1 on the SMTP port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the first ACE (a permit) as if it were a complete packet because all Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments also match the first ACE, even though they do not contain the SMTP port information, because the first ACE only checks Layer 3 information when applied to fragments. The information in this example is that the packet is TCP and that the destination is 10.1.1.1.

- Packet B is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.2 on the Telnet port. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the second ACE (a deny) because all Layer 3 and Layer 4 information is present. The remaining fragments in the packet do not match the second ACE because they are missing Layer 4 information. Instead, they match the third ACE (a permit).

Because the first fragment was denied, host 10.1.1.2 cannot reassemble a complete packet, so packet B is effectively denied. However, the later fragments that are permitted will consume bandwidth on the network and resources of host 10.1.1.2 as it tries to reassemble the packet.

- Fragmented packet C is from host 10.2.2.2, port 65001, going to host 10.1.1.3, port ftp. If this packet is fragmented, the first fragment matches the fourth ACE (a deny). All other fragments also match the fourth ACE because that ACE does not check any Layer 4 information and because Layer 3 information in all fragments shows that they are being sent to host 10.1.1.3, and the earlier permit ACEs were checking different hosts.

Standard and Extended IPv4 ACLs

This section describes IP ACLs.

An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions. One by one, the switch tests packets against the conditions in an access list. The first match determines whether the switch accepts or rejects the packet. Because the switch stops testing after the first match, the order of the conditions is critical. If no conditions match, the switch denies the packet.

The software supports these types of ACLs or access lists for IPv4:

- Standard IP access lists use source addresses for matching operations.
- Extended IP access lists use source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol-type information for finer granularity of control.



Note Only extended ACLs are supported while the standard ACLs are not supported.

IPv4 ACL Switch Unsupported Features

Configuring IPv4 ACLs on the switch is the same as configuring IPv4 ACLs on other Cisco switches and routers.

The following ACL-related features are not supported:

- Non-IP protocol ACLs
- IP accounting
- Reflexive ACLs, URL Redirect ACLs and Dynamic ACLs are not supported.

Access List Numbers

The number you use to denote your ACL shows the type of access list that you are creating.

This lists the access-list number and corresponding access list type and shows whether or not they are supported in the switch. The switch supports IPv4 standard and extended access lists, numbers 1 to 199 and 1300 to 2699.

Table 69: Access List Numbers

Access List Number	Type	Supported
1–99	IP standard access list	Yes
100–199	IP extended access list	Yes
200–299	Protocol type-code access list	No
300–399	DECnet access list	No
400–499	XNS standard access list	No
500–599	XNS extended access list	No
600–699	AppleTalk access list	No
700–799	48-bit MAC address access list	No
800–899	IPX standard access list	No
900–999	IPX extended access list	No
1000–1099	IPX SAP access list	No
1100–1199	Extended 48-bit MAC address access list	No
1200–1299	IPX summary address access list	No
1300–1999	IP standard access list (expanded range)	Yes
2000–2699	IP extended access list (expanded range)	Yes

In addition to numbered standard and extended ACLs, you can also create standard and extended named IP ACLs by using the supported numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99; the name of an extended IP ACL can be 100 to 199. The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.

Numbered Standard IPv4 ACLs

When creating an ACL, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for all packets that it did not find a match for before reaching the end. With standard access lists, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address ACL specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

The switch always rewrites the order of standard access lists so that entries with **host** matches and entries with matches having a *don't care* mask of 0.0.0.0 are moved to the top of the list, above any entries with non-zero *don't care* masks. Therefore, in **show** command output and in the configuration file, the ACEs do not necessarily appear in the order in which they were entered.

After creating a numbered standard IPv4 ACL, you can apply it to terminal lines (virtual teletype (VTY) lines), or to interfaces.

Numbered Extended IPv4 ACLs

Although standard ACLs use only source addresses for matching, you can use extended ACL source and destination addresses for matching operations and optional protocol type information for finer granularity of control. When you are creating ACEs in numbered extended access lists, remember that after you create the ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot reorder the list or selectively add or remove ACEs from a numbered list.

The switch does not support dynamic or reflexive access lists. It also does not support filtering based on the type of service (ToS) minimize-monetary-cost bit.

Some protocols also have specific parameters and keywords that apply to that protocol.

You can define an extended TCP, UDP, ICMP, IGMP, or other IP ACL. The switch also supports these IP protocols:

These IP protocols are supported:

- Authentication Header Protocol (**ahp**)
- Encapsulation Security Payload (**esp**)
- Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (**eigrp**)
- generic routing encapsulation (**gre**)
- Internet Control Message Protocol (**icmp**)
- Internet Group Management Protocol (**igmp**)
- any Interior Protocol (**ip**)
- IP in IP tunneling (**ipinip**)
- KA9Q NOS-compatible IP over IP tunneling (**nos**)
- Open Shortest Path First routing (**ospf**)
- Payload Compression Protocol (**pcp**)
- Protocol-Independent Multicast (**pim**)
- Transmission Control Protocol (**tcp**)
- User Datagram Protocol (**udp**)

Named IPv4 ACLs

You can identify IPv4 ACLs with an alphanumeric string (a name) rather than a number. You can use named ACLs to configure more IPv4 access lists in a router than if you were to use numbered access lists. If you identify your access list with a name rather than a number, the mode and command syntax are slightly different. However, at times, not all commands that use IP access lists accept a named access list.



Note

The name you give to a standard or extended ACL can also be a number in the supported range of access list numbers. That is, the name of a standard IP ACL can be 1 to 99 and . The advantage of using named ACLs instead of numbered lists is that you can delete individual entries from a named list.

Consider these guidelines before configuring named ACLs:

- Numbered ACLs are also available.
- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.

ACL Logging

The controller software can provide logging messages about packets permitted or denied by a standard IP access list. That is, any packet that matches the ACL causes an informational logging message about the packet to be sent to the console. The level of messages logged to the console is controlled by the **logging console** commands controlling the syslog messages.



Note Because routing is done in hardware and logging is done in software, if a large number of packets match a *permit* or *deny* ACE containing a **log** keyword, the software might not be able to match the hardware processing rate, and not all packets will be logged.

The first packet that triggers the ACL causes a logging message right away, and subsequent packets are collected over 5-minute intervals before they appear or logged. The logging message includes the access list number, whether the packet was permitted or denied, the source IP address of the packet, and the number of packets from that source permitted or denied in the prior 5-minute interval.



Note The logging facility might drop some logging message packets if there are too many to be handled or if there is more than one logging message to be handled in 1 second. This behavior prevents the router from crashing due to too many logging packets. Therefore, the logging facility should not be used as a billing tool or an accurate source of the number of matches to an access list.

Hardware and Software Treatment of IP ACLs

ACL processing is performed in hardware. If the hardware reaches its capacity to store ACL configurations, all packets on that interface are dropped.

The ACL scale for controllers is as follows:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller (small and medium) support 128 ACLs with 128 Access List Entries (ACEs).
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller and Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller (large) support 256 ACLs and 256 ACEs.
- FlexConnect and Fabric mode APs support 96 ACLs.



Note If an ACL configuration cannot be implemented in the hardware due to an out-of-resource condition on the controller, then only the traffic in that VLAN arriving on that controller is affected.

When you enter the **show ip access-lists** privileged EXEC command, the match count displayed does not account for packets that are access controlled in hardware. Use the **show ip access-lists hardware** privileged EXEC command to obtain some basic hardware ACL statistics for switched and routed packets.

IPv4 ACL Interface Considerations

For inbound ACLs, after receiving a packet, the controller checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the controller continues to process the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the controller discards the packet.

For outbound ACLs, after receiving and routing a packet to a controlled interface, the controller checks the packet against the ACL. If the ACL permits the packet, the controller sends the packet. If the ACL rejects the packet, the controller discards the packet.

If an undefined ACL has nothing listed in it, it is an empty access list.

Restrictions for Configuring IPv4 Access Control Lists

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:

General Network Security

The following are restrictions for configuring network security with ACLs:

- A standard ACL and an extended ACL cannot have the same name.
- Though visible in the command-line help strings, **AppleTalk** is not supported as a matching condition for the **deny** and **permit** MAC access-list configuration mode commands.
- DNS traffic is permitted by default with or without ACL entries for clients that are awaiting web authentication.

IPv4 ACL Network Interfaces

The following restrictions apply to IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces:

- When controlling access to an interface, you can use a named or numbered ACL.
- You do not have to enable routing to apply ACLs to Layer 2 interfaces.

MAC ACLs on a Layer 2 Interface

After you create a MAC ACL, you can apply it to a Layer 2 interface to filter non-IP traffic coming in that interface. When you apply the MAC ACL, consider these guidelines:

- You can apply no more than one IP access list and one MAC access list to the same Layer 2 interface. The IP access list filters only IP packets, and the MAC access list filters non-IP packets.
- A Layer 2 interface can have only one MAC access list. If you apply a MAC access list to a Layer 2 interface that has a MAC ACL configured, the new ACL replaces the previously configured one.



Note The **mac access-group** interface configuration command is only valid when applied to a physical Layer 2 interface. You cannot use the command on EtherChannel port channels.

IP Access List Entry Sequence Numbering

- This feature does not support dynamic, reflexive, or firewall access lists.

How to Configure ACLs

Configuring IPv4 ACLs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > ACL**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** dialog box, enter the following parameters.
- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
 - **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard.
 - **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
 - **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
 - **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
 - **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- Step 5** Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring IPv4 ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to use IP ACLs on the switch:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Create an ACL by specifying an access list number or name and the access conditions.

Step 2 Apply the ACL to interfaces or terminal lines..

Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > ACL**.
- Step 2** On the **ACL** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.
- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
 - **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard.
 - **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
 - **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** access from the drop-down list.
 - **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network**
 - **Log:** Enable or disable logging, this is limited to ACLs associated to Layer 3 interface only.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Numbered Standard ACL (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create a numbered standard ACL:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} <i>source source-wildcard</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 2 deny your_host</pre>	Defines a standard IPv4 access list by using a source address and wildcard. The <i>access-list-number</i> is a decimal number from 1 to 99 or 1300 to 1999. Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit access if conditions are matched. The <i>source</i> is the source address of the network or host from which the packet is being sent specified as: • The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format. • The keyword any as an abbreviation for <i>source</i> and <i>source-wildcard</i> of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255. You do not need to enter a source-wildcard. • The keyword host as an abbreviation for <i>source</i> and <i>source-wildcard</i> of <i>source</i> 0.0.0.0. (Optional) The <i>source-wildcard</i> applies wildcard bits to the source. Note Logging is supported only on ACLs attached to Layer 3 interfaces.
Step 4	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show running-config Example: <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
Step 6	copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **ACL**.
- Step 2** On the **ACL** page, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.
- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
 - **ACL Type:** IPv4 Extended.
 - **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
 - **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
 - **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
 - **Destination Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** to which the packet is sent.
 - **Protocol:** Choose a protocol from the drop-down list.
 - **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
 - **DSCP:** Enter to match packets with the DSCP value
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Numbered Extended ACL (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create a numbered extended ACL:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> { deny permit } <i>protocol source source-wildcard destination</i> <i>destination-wildcard</i> [precedence <i>precedence</i>] [tos <i>tos</i>] [fragments] [time-range <i>time-range-name</i>] [dscp <i>dscp</i>]	Defines an extended IPv4 access list and the access conditions. The <i>access-list-number</i> is a decimal number from 100 to 199 or 2000 to 2699.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit ip host 10.1.1.2 any precedence 0 tos 0 log</pre>	Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched. For <i>protocol</i>, enter the name or number of an IP protocol: ahp, eigrp, esp, gre, icmp, igmp, igrp, ip, ipinip, nos, ospf, pcp, pim, tcp, or udp, or an integer in the range 0 to 255 representing an IP protocol number. To match any Internet protocol (including ICMP, TCP, and UDP), use the keyword ip. Note This step includes options for most IP protocols. For additional specific parameters for TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IGMP, see the following steps. The <i>source</i> is the number of the network or host from which the packet is sent. The <i>source-wildcard</i> applies wildcard bits to the source. The <i>destination</i> is the network or host number to which the packet is sent. The <i>destination-wildcard</i> applies wildcard bits to the destination. Source, source-wildcard, destination, and destination-wildcard can be specified as: • The 32-bit quantity in dotted-decimal format. • The keyword any for 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255 (any host). • The keyword host for a single host 0.0.0.0. The other keywords are optional and have these meanings: • precedence—Enter to match packets with a precedence level specified as a number from 0 to 7 or by name: routine (0), priority (1), immediate (2), flash (3), flash-override (4), critical (5), internet (6), network (7). • fragments—Enter to check non-initial fragments. • tos—Enter to match by type of service level, specified by a number from 0 to 15

	Command or Action	Purpose
		or a name: normal (0), max-reliability (2), max-throughput (4), min-delay (8). • time-range—Specify the time-range name. • dscp—Enter to match packets with the DSCP value specified by a number from 0 to 63, or use the question mark (?) to see a list of available values. Note Your controller must support the ability to: • Mark DCSP • Mark UP • Map DSCP and UP For more information on DSCP-to-UP Mapping, see: https://tools.ietf.org/html/draft-ietf-tsvwg-ieee-802-11-01 Note If you enter a dscp value, you cannot enter tos or precedence. You can enter both a tos and a precedence value with no dscp.
Step 3	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} tcp <i>source source-wildcard</i> [<i>operator port</i>] <i>destination destination-wildcard</i> [<i>operator port</i>] [precedence <i>precedence</i>] [tos <i>tos</i>] [fragments] [time-range <i>time-range-name</i>] [dscp <i>dscp</i>] [<i>flag</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit tcp any any eq 500</pre>	Defines an extended TCP access list and the access conditions. The parameters are the same as those described for an extended IPv4 ACL, with these exceptions: (Optional) Enter an <i>operator</i> and <i>port</i> to compare source (if positioned after <i>source source-wildcard</i>) or destination (if positioned after <i>destination destination-wildcard</i>) port. Possible operators include eq (equal), gt (greater than), lt (less than), neq (not equal), and range (inclusive range). Operators require a port number (range requires two port numbers separated by a space). Enter the <i>port</i> number as a decimal number (from 0 to 65535) or the name of a TCP port. Use only TCP port numbers or names when filtering TCP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The other optional keywords have these meanings: • <i>flag</i>—Enter one of these flags to match by the specified TCP header bits: ack (acknowledge), fin (finish), psh (push), rst (reset), syn (synchronize), or urg (urgent).
Step 4	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} udp <i>source source-wildcard</i> [<i>operator port</i>] <i>destination destination-wildcard</i> [<i>operator port</i>] [precedence <i>precedence</i>] [tos <i>tos</i>] [fragments] [time-range <i>time-range-name</i>] [dscp <i>dscp</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit udp any any eq 100</pre>	(Optional) Defines an extended UDP access list and the access conditions. The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP except that the [<i>operator port</i>] port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the flag not valid for UDP.
Step 5	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} icmp <i>source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard</i> [<i>icmp-type</i> [<i>icmp-type icmp-code</i>] [<i>icmp-message</i>]] [precedence <i>precedence</i>] [tos <i>tos</i>] [fragments] [time-range <i>time-range-name</i>] [dscp <i>dscp</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit icmp any any 200</pre>	Defines an extended ICMP access list and the access conditions. The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings: • <i>icmp-type</i>—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255. • <i>icmp-code</i>—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255. • <i>icmp-message</i>—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name.
Step 6	access-list <i>access-list-number</i> {deny permit} igmp <i>source source-wildcard destination destination-wildcard</i> [<i>igmp-type</i>] [precedence <i>precedence</i>] [tos <i>tos</i>] [fragments] [time-range <i>time-range-name</i>] [dscp <i>dscp</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# access-list 101 permit igmp any any 14</pre>	(Optional) Defines an extended IGMP access list and the access conditions. The IGMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in an extended IPv4 ACL, with this optional parameter. <i>igmp-type</i>—To match IGMP message type, enter a number from 0 to 15, or enter the message name: dvmrp, host-query, host-report, pim, or trace.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end Example: Device(config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Creating Named Standard ACLs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Security > ACL**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to create a new ACL setup.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.
- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL
 - **ACL Type:** IPv4 Standard
 - **Sequence:** The valid range is between 1 and 99 or 1300 and 1999
 - **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** access from the drop-down list.
 - **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network**
 - **Log:** Enable or disable logging, this is limited to ACLs associated to Layer 3 interface only.
- Step 4** Click **Add** to add the rule.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Named Standard ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to create a standard ACL using names:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ip access-list standard <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip access-list standard 20</pre>	Defines a standard IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode. The name can be a number from 1 to 99.
Step 4	Use one of the following: • deny {<i>source</i> [<i>source-wildcard</i>] host <i>source</i> any} [log] • permit {<i>source</i> [<i>source-wildcard</i>] host <i>source</i> any} [log] Example: <pre>Device(config-std-nacl)# deny 192.168.0.0 0.0.255.255 255.255.0.0 0.0.255.255</pre> or <pre>Device(config-std-nacl)# permit 10.108.0.0 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 0.0.0.0</pre>	In access-list configuration mode, specify one or more conditions denied or permitted to decide if the packet is forwarded or dropped. • host <i>source</i>—A source and source wildcard of <i>source</i> 0.0.0.0. • any—A source and source wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-std-nacl)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show running-config Example: <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
Step 7	copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

Creating Extended Named ACLs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > ACL**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ACL Setup** window, enter the following parameters.
- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL.
 - **ACL Type:** IPv4 Extended.
 - **Sequence:** Enter the sequence number.
 - **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
 - **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
 - **Destination Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** to which the packet is sent.
 - **Protocol:** Choose a protocol from the drop-down list.
 - **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
 - **DSCP:** Enter to match packets with the DSCP value
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
- Step 5** Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Extended Named ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to create an extended ACL using names:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ip access-list extended <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ip access-list extended 150</pre>	Defines an extended IPv4 access list using a name, and enter access-list configuration mode. The name can be a number from 100 to 199.
Step 4	{deny permit} protocol {source [source-wildcard] host source any} {destination [destination-wildcard] host destination any} [precedence precedence] [tos tos] [log] [time-range time-range-name] Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 0 any any</pre>	In access-list configuration mode, specify the conditions allowed or denied. Use the log keyword to get access list logging messages, including violations. • host source—A source and source wildcard of <i>source</i> 0.0.0.0. • host destination—A destination and destination wildcard of <i>destination</i> 0.0.0.0. • any—A source and source wildcard or destination and destination wildcard of 0.0.0.0 255.255.255.255.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show running-config Example: <pre>Device# show running-config</pre>	Verifies your entries.
Step 7	copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>Device# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

When you are creating extended ACLs, remember that, by default, the end of the ACL contains an implicit deny statement for everything if it did not find a match before reaching the end. For standard ACLs, if you omit the mask from an associated IP host address access list specification, 0.0.0.0 is assumed to be the mask.

After you create an ACL, any additions are placed at the end of the list. You cannot selectively add ACL entries to a specific ACL. However, you can use **no permit** and **no deny** access-list configuration mode commands to remove entries from a named ACL.

Being able to selectively remove lines from a named ACL is one reason you might use named ACLs instead of numbered ACLs.

What to do next

After creating a named ACL, you can apply it to interfaces or to VLANs.

Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > ACL .
Step 2	Click Associating Interfaces .
Step 3	Choose the interface from the Available Interfaces list to view its ACL details on the right-hand side. You can change the ACL details, if required.
Step 4	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Applying an IPv4 ACL to an Interface (CLI)

This section describes how to apply IPv4 ACLs to network interfaces.

Beginning in privileged EXEC mode, follow the procedure given below to control access to an interface:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device(config)#	Identifies a specific interface for configuration, and enter interface configuration mode. The interface can be a Layer 2 interface (port ACL), or a Layer 3 interface (router ACL).
Step 3	ip access-group { <i>access-list-number</i> <i>name</i> } { in out } Example: Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in	Controls access to the specified interface.
Step 4	end Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# end	
Step 5	show running-config Example: Device# show running-config	Displays the access list configuration.
Step 6	copy running-config startup-config Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config	(Optional) Saves your entries in the configuration file.

Applying ACL to Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **Add Policy Profile** window, click **Access Policies** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **WLAN ACL** area, choose the IPv4 ACL from the **IPv4 ACL** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Applying ACL to Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i>	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv4 acl <i>acl-name</i>	Configures an IPv4 ACL.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 acl test-acl	
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuration Examples for ACLs

Examples: Including Comments in ACLs

You can use the **remark** keyword to include comments (remarks) about entries in any IP standard or extended ACL. The remarks make the ACL easier for you to understand and scan. Each remark line is limited to 100 characters.

The remark can go before or after a permit or deny statement. You should be consistent about where you put the remark so that it is clear which remark describes which permit or deny statement. For example, it would be confusing to have some remarks before the associated permit or deny statements and some remarks after the associated statements.

To include a comment for IP numbered standard or extended ACLs, use the **access-list access-list number remark remark** global configuration command. To remove the remark, use the **no** form of this command.

In this example, the workstation that belongs to Jones is allowed access, and the workstation that belongs to Smith is not allowed access:

```
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Permit only Jones workstation through
Device(config)# access-list 1 permit 171.69.2.88
Device(config)# access-list 1 remark Do not allow Smith through
Device(config)# access-list 1 deny 171.69.3.13
```

For an entry in a named IP ACL, use the **remark access-list** configuration command. To remove the remark, use the **no** form of this command.

In this example, the Jones subnet is not allowed to use outbound Telnet:

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended telnetting
Device(config-ext-nacl)# remark Do not allow Jones subnet to telnet out
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp host 171.69.2.88 any eq telnet
```

Examples: Applying an IPv4 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless Environment

This example shows how to apply an IPv4 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless environment.



Note All IPv4 ACLs must be associated to a policy profile.

This example uses extended ACLs to permit TCP traffic.

1. Creating an IPv4 ACL.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended <acl-name>
Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 permit ip any 10.193.48.224 0.0.0.31
Device (config-ext-nacl)# 20 permit ip any any
```

2. Applying the IPv4 ACL to a policy profile.

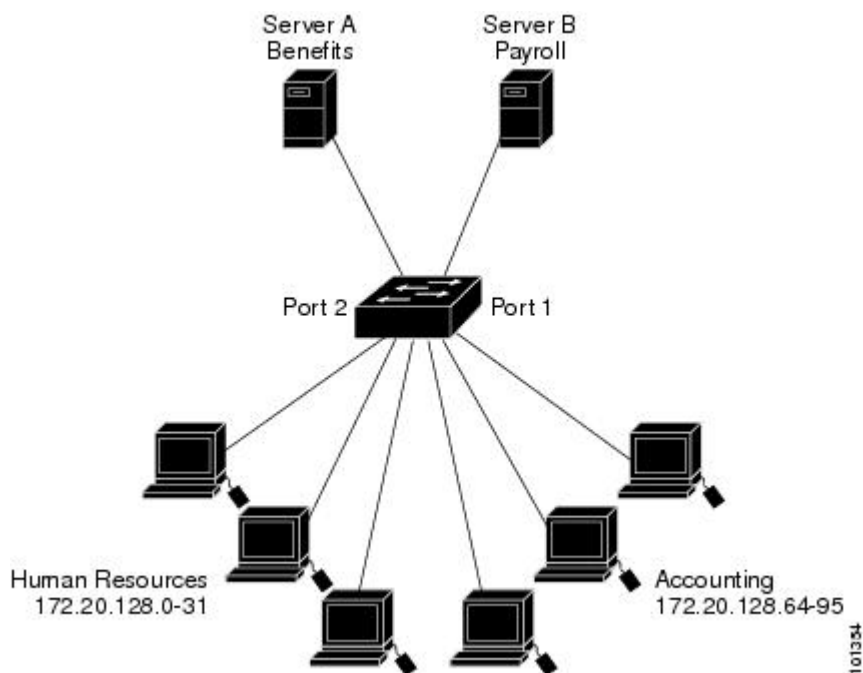
```
Device(config)# wireless profile policy <policy-profile-name>
Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown
Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 acl <acl-name>
Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown
```

IPv4 ACL Configuration Examples

This section provides examples of configuring and applying IPv4 ACLs. For detailed information about compiling ACLs, see the *Cisco IOS Security Configuration Guide, Release 12.4* and to the Configuring IP Services” section in the “IP Addressing and Services” chapter of the *Cisco IOS IP Configuration Guide, Release 12.4*.

ACLs in a Small Networked Office

Figure 26: Using Router ACLs to Control Traffic



This shows a small networked office environment with routed Port 2 connected to Server A, containing benefits and other information that all employees can access, and routed Port 1 connected to Server B, containing confidential payroll data. All users can access Server A, but Server B has restricted access.

Use router ACLs to do this in one of two ways:

- Create a standard ACL, and filter traffic coming to the server from Port 1.
- Create an extended ACL, and filter traffic coming from the server into Port 1.

Examples: ACLs in a Small Networked Office

This example uses a standard ACL to filter traffic coming into Server B from a port, permitting traffic only from Accounting's source addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic coming out of routed Port 1 from the specified source address.

```
Device(config)# access-list 6 permit 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# end
Device# show access-lists
Standard IP access list 6
    10 permit 172.20.128.64, wildcard bits 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 6 out
```

This example uses an extended ACL to filter traffic coming from Server B into a port, permitting traffic from any source address (in this case Server B) to only the Accounting destination addresses 172.20.128.64 to 172.20.128.95. The ACL is applied to traffic going into routed Port 1, permitting it to go only to the specified destination addresses. Note that with extended ACLs, you must enter the protocol (IP) before the source and destination information.

```
Device(config)# access-list 106 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# end
Device# show access-lists
Extended IP access list 106
    10 permit ip any 172.20.128.64 0.0.0.31
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet1/0/1
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 106 in
```

Example: Numbered ACLs

In this example, network 10.0.0.0 is a Class A network whose second octet specifies a subnet; that is, its subnet mask is 255.255.0.0. The third and fourth octets of a network 10.0.0.0 address specify a particular host. Using access list 2, the switch accepts one address on subnet 48 and reject all others on that subnet. The last line of the list shows that the switch accepts addresses on all other network 10.0.0.0 subnets. The ACL is applied to packets entering a port.

```
Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 10.48.0.3
Device(config)# access-list 2 deny 10.48.0.0 0.0.255.255
Device(config)# access-list 2 permit 10.0.0.0 0.255.255.255
Device(config)#
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 2 in
```

Examples: Extended ACLs

In this example, the first line permits any incoming TCP connections with destination ports greater than 1023. The second line permits incoming TCP connections to the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) port of host 128.88.1.2. The third line permits incoming ICMP messages for error feedback.

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 gt 1023
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any host 128.88.1.2 eq 25
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit icmp any any
Device(config)#
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in
```

In this example, suppose that you have a network connected to the Internet, and you want any host on the network to be able to form TCP connections to any host on the Internet. However, you do not want IP hosts to be able to form TCP connections to hosts on your network, except to the mail (SMTP) port of a dedicated mail host.

SMTP uses TCP port 25 on one end of the connection and a random port number on the other end. The same port numbers are used throughout the life of the connection. Mail packets coming in from the Internet have a destination port of 25. Because the secure system of the network always accepts mail connections on port 25, the incoming are separately controlled.

```
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 23
Device(config)# access-list 102 permit tcp any 128.88.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq 25
Device(config)#
Device(config-if)# ip access-group 102 in
```

Examples: Named ACLs

Creating named standard and extended ACLs

This example creates a standard ACL named *internet_filter* and an extended ACL named *marketing_group*. The *internet_filter* ACL allows all traffic from the source address 1.2.3.4.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list standard Internet_filter
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit 1.2.3.4
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

The *marketing_group* ACL allows any TCP Telnet traffic to the destination address and wildcard 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 and denies any other TCP traffic. It permits ICMP traffic, denies UDP traffic from any source to the destination address range 171.69.0.0 through 179.69.255.255 with a destination port less than 1024, denies any other IP traffic, and provides a log of the result.

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended marketing_group
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit tcp any 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 eq telnet
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny tcp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny udp any 171.69.0.0 0.0.255.255 lt 1024
Device(config-ext-nacl)# deny ip any any log
Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit
```

The *Internet_filter* ACL is applied to outgoing traffic and the *marketing_group* ACL is applied to incoming traffic on a Layer 3 port.

```
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet3/0/1

Device(config-if)# ip address 2.0.5.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# ip access-group Internet_filter out
Device(config-if)# ip access-group marketing_group in
```

Deleting individual ACEs from named ACLs

This example shows how you can delete individual ACEs from the named access list *border-list*:

```
Device(config)# ip access-list extended border-list
Device(config-ext-nacl)# no permit ip host 10.1.1.3 any
```

Monitoring IPv4 ACLs

You can monitor IPv4 ACLs by displaying the ACLs that are configured on the switch, and displaying the ACLs that have been applied to interfaces and VLANs.

When you use the **ip access-group** interface configuration command to apply ACLs to a Layer 2 or 3 interface, you can display the access groups on the interface. You can also display the MAC ACLs applied to a Layer 2 interface. You can use the privileged EXEC commands as described in this table to display this information.

Table 70: Commands for Displaying Access Lists and Access Groups

Command	Purpose
show access-lists [<i>number</i> <i>name</i>]	Displays the contents of one or all current IP and MAC address access lists or a specific access list (numbered or named).
show ip access-lists [<i>number</i> <i>name</i>]	Displays the contents of all current IP access lists or a specific IP access list (numbered or named).
show ip interface <i>interface-id</i>	Displays detailed configuration and status of an interface. If IP access lists and ACLs have been applied by using the ip access-group configuration command, the access groups are included in the display.
show running-config [interface <i>interface-id</i>]	Displays the contents of the configuration file for the switch or interface, including all configured MAC and IP access lists and access groups applied to an interface.



CHAPTER 107

Downloadable ACL

- [Feature History for Downloadable ACL, on page 1101](#)
- [Information About Downloadable ACL, on page 1102](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL, on page 1102](#)
- [Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE, on page 1103](#)
- [Configuring dACL in a Controller \(CLI\), on page 1103](#)
- [Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List \(CLI\), on page 1104](#)
- [Verifying dACL Configuration, on page 1105](#)

Feature History for Downloadable ACL

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 71: Feature History for Downloadable ACL

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Downloadable ACL	The Downloadable ACL (dACL) feature defines and updates access control lists (ACLs) in one place (Cisco ISE) and allows ACL download to all the applicable controllers. In Cisco IOS-XE 17.8 and earlier releases, you had to configure the name in Cisco ISE and define the ACL individually in each of the controllers. The dACL feature is supported only in a centralized controller with Local mode Access Points. Note The dACL feature is not supported in RLAN environments.

Information About Downloadable ACL

ACLs are used to restrict network access to some users or devices based on predefined criteria. These criteria are specified as a list of Access Control Entries (ACEs).

Each ACE has a matching condition based on packet header fields as follows:

- IP addresses
- ports
- protocols
- combination of IP addresses, ports, and protocols
- Result (permit or deny)

ACLs are applied to a controller on a per wireless client basis. Typically, you can configure ACLs in a controller itself. However, you can also configure ACLs to a connected Cisco ISE server and download them to the controller when a wireless client joins. Such ACLs are referred to as downloadable ACLs, per-user Dynamic ACLs, or dACLs.

Downloadable ACLs are easy to maintain because they define or update ACLs in Cisco ISE and can be downloaded to all the applicable controllers. (In Cisco IOS-XE 17.8 and earlier releases, you had to configure the name in Cisco ISE and define the ACL individually in each of the controllers.)

Scale Considerations for Downloadable ACL

The following table provides the ACL scale numbers for controllers.

Table 72: ACL Scale for Controllers

Controllers	ACL Scale
Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller (small or medium)	Supports 128 ACLs with 128 ACEs.
Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller (large)	Supports 256 ACLs and 256 ACEs.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Downloadable ACL

- dACL does not support FlexConnect local switching.
- IPv6 dACLs are supported only in Cisco ISE 3.0 or a later release.
- The dACL feature is supported only in a centralized controller with Local mode Access Points.



Note The dACL feature is not supported in RLAN environments.

Configuring dACL Name and Definition in Cisco ISE

Before you configure a dACL in a controller, you must configure the dACL name and definition in Cisco ISE. For more information, see [Configure Per-User Dynamic Access Control Lists in ISE](#).

Configuring dACL in a Controller (CLI)

Before you begin

- You should have configured the RADIUS server.
- You should have configured the **aaa-override** command in the policy profile. For more information, see [Configuring AAA for Local Authentication \(CLD\)](#).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy named-policy-profile_4	Configures the wireless profile policy.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the Cisco ISE servers.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the profile policy.

Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER2	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 3	address ipv4 <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.3.52.62	Specifies the RADIUS server parameters.
Step 4	pac key <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# pack key cisco	Specify the authorization and encryption key used between the Device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-radius-server)# exit	Returns to the configuration mode.
Step 6	aaa group server radius <i>server-group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group	Creates a radius server-group identification. Note <i>server-group</i> refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 7	aaa authorization network <i>authorization-list</i> group <i>server-group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization network authZlist group authz-server-group	Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization. Note You must use the already created authorization method list.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying dACL Configuration

To verify the dACL, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <client_mac> detail
Local Policies:
  Service Template : wlan_svc_named-policy-profile_1_local (priority 254)
  VLAN             : 16
  Absolute-Timer   : 1800
Server Policies:
  ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
  ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
Resultant Policies:
  ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
  ACS ACL          : xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
  VLAN Name       : VLAN0016
  VLAN            : 16
  Absolute-Timer   : 1800
```

To verify dACLs, use the following commands:

```
Device# show ip access-lists xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
Extended IP access list xACSACLx-IP-tftpv4_2-62de6299
  1 deny ip any host 9.8.29.13
  2 permit ip any any (58 matches)

Device# show ipv6 access-list xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
IPv6 access list xACSACLx-IPV6-tftpv6_2-62de8087
  deny ipv6 any host 2001:9:8:29:3AAD:A27A:973A:97CC sequence 1
  permit ipv6 any any (2 matches) sequence 2
```

To view all the downloaded dACLs, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip access-lists
```




CHAPTER 108

DNS-Based Access Control Lists

- [Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 1107](#)
- [Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 1110](#)
- [Flex Mode, on page 1111](#)
- [Local Mode, on page 1113](#)
- [Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 1117](#)
- [Configuration Examples for DNS-Based Access Control Lists, on page 1117](#)
- [Verifying DNS Snoop Agent \(DSA\), on page 1118](#)
- [Information About Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL, on page 1120](#)
- [Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA \(GUI\), on page 1121](#)
- [Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA, on page 1121](#)
- [Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA \(GUI\), on page 1123](#)
- [Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA, on page 1123](#)
- [Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA \(GUI\), on page 1124](#)
- [Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA, on page 1124](#)
- [Verifying Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL, on page 1124](#)

Information About DNS-Based Access Control Lists

The DNS-based ACLs are used for wireless client devices. When using these devices, you can set pre-authentication ACLs on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller to determine the data requests that are allowed or blocked.

To enable DNS-based ACLs on the controller, you need to configure the allowed URLs or denied URLs for the ACLs. The URLs need to be pre-configured on the ACL.

With DNS-based ACLs, the client when in registration phase is allowed to connect to the configured URLs. The controller is configured with the ACL name that is returned by the AAA server. If the ACL name is returned by the AAA server, then the ACL is applied to the client for web-redirection.

At the client authentication phase, the AAA server returns the pre-authentication ACL (url-redirect-acl, which is the attribute name given to the AAA server). The DNS snooping is performed on the AP for each client until the registration is complete and the client is in SUPPLICANT PROVISIONING state. When the ACL configured with the URLs is received on the controller, the CAPWAP payload is sent to the AP enabling DNS snooping for the URLs to be snooped.

With URL snooping in place, the AP learns the IP address of the resolved domain name in the DNS response. If the domain name matches the configured URL, then the DNS response is parsed for the IP address, and the IP address is sent to the controller as a CAPWAP payload. The controller adds the IP address to the allowed list of IP addresses and thus the client can access the URLs configured.

URL filtering allows access to the IP address for DNS ports 80 or 443.

During pre-authentication or post-authentication, DNS ACL is applied to the client in the access point. If the client roams from one AP to another AP, the DNS learned IP addresses on the old AP is valid on the new AP as well.



Note Standard URL filtering is used for local mode, whereas enhanced URL filtering is used for flex mode local switching.



Note URL filter needs to be attached to a policy profile in case of the local mode. In the flex mode, the URL filter is attached to the flex profile and it is not need to be attached to a policy profile.



Note DNS based URLs work with active DNS query from the client. Hence, for URL filtering, the DNS should be setup correctly.



Note URL filter takes precedence over punt or redirect ACL, and over custom or static pre-auth ACL.s

Defining ACLs

Extended ACLs are like standard ACLs but identifies the traffic more precisely.

The following CLI allows you to define ACLs by name or by an identification number.

```
Device(config)#ip access-list extended ?
<100-199> Extended IP access-list number
<2000-2699> Extended IP access-list number (expanded range)
WORD Access-list name
```

The following is the structure of a CLI ACL statement:

```
<sequence number> [permit/deny] <protocol> <address or any> eq <port number> <subnet>
<wildcard>
```

For example:

```
1 permit tcp any eq www 192.168.1.0 0.0.0.255
```

The sequence number specifies where to insert the Access Control list Entry (ACE) in the ACL order of ACEs. You can define your statements with sequences of 10, 20, 30, 40, and so on.

The controller GUI allows you to write a complete ACL going to the **Configuration > Security > ACL** page. You can view a list of protocols to pick from, and make changes to an existing ACL.

Applying ACLs

The following are the ways to apply ACLs:

- **Security ACL:** A security ACL defines the type of traffic that should be allowed through the device and that which should be blocked or dropped.

A security ACL is applied:

- **On SVI interfaces:** The ACL will only be evaluated against the traffic that is routed through the interface.

```
Device(config)# interface Vlan<number>
Device(config-if)# ip access-group myACL in/out
```

- **On a physical interface of the controller:** The ACL will be evaluated against all traffic that passes through the interface. Along with applying ACLs on SVI, this is another option for restricting traffic on the controller management plane.

```
Device(config)#interface GigabitEthernet1
Device(config-if)#ip access-group myACL in/out
```

- **In the wireless policy profile or WLAN:** This option includes several places where you can configure an ACL that will be applied to the wireless client traffic, in case of central switching or local switching of traffic. Such ACLs are only supported in the inbound direction.
- **On the AP:** In case of FlexConnect local switching, the ACL is configured and applied from the policy profile on the controller. This ACL has to be downloaded on to the AP through the Flex profile. ACLs must be downloaded to the AP before they can be applied. As an exception, fabric mode APs (in case of Software Defined Access) also use Flex ACLs even though the AP is not operating in Flex mode.
- **Punt ACL or Redirect ACL:** Punt ACL or redirect ACL refers to an ACL that specifies as to which traffic will be sent to the CPU (instead of its normal expected handling by the dataplane) for further processing. For example, the Central Web Authentication (CWA) redirect ACL defines as to which traffic is intercepted and redirected to the web login portal. The ACL does not define any traffic to be dropped or allowed, but follows the regular processing or forwarding rules, and what will be sent to the CPU for interception.

A redirect ACL has an invisible last statement which is an implicit deny. This implicit deny is applied as a security access list entry (and therefore drops traffic that is not explicitly allowed through or sent to the CPU).

Types of URL Filters

The following are the two types of URL filters:

- **Standard:** Standard URL filters can be applied before client authentication (pre-auth) or after a successful client authentication (post-auth). Pre-auth filters are extremely useful in the case of external web authentication to allow access to the external login page, as well as, some internal websites before authentication takes place. Post-auth, they can work to block specific websites or allow only specific websites while all the rest is blocked by default. This type of URL filtering post-auth is better handled by using Cisco DNS Layer Security (formerly known as Umbrella) for more flexibility. The standard URL filters apply the same action (permit or deny) for the whole list of URLs. It is either all permit or all deny. Standard URL filter work on local mode APs only.

- **Enhanced:** Enhanced URL filters allow specification of a different action (deny or permit) for each URL inside the list and have per-URL hit counters. Enhanced URL filter work on FlexConnect mode APs only.

In both types of URL filters, you can use a wildcard sub-domain such as `*.cisco.com`. URL filters are standalone but always applied along with an IP-based ACL. A maximum of 20 URLs are supported in a given URL filter. Considering one URL can resolve multiple IP addresses, only up to 40 resolved IP addresses can be tracked for each client. Only DNS records are tracked by URL filters. The controller or APs do not track the resolved IP address of a URL if the DNS answer uses a CNAME alias record.

**Note**

In a scenario where you have a URL filter of type POST and an ACL applied to a policy profile, traffic to the URL is blocked by the ACL if there are no permit statements regarding the URLs. This can occur if the URL filter is POST with permit statement and within the ACL there is no permit statement for the URLs. Therefore, we recommend that you create permit statements within the ACL, regarding the IP address of the URLs, instead of using the POST URL filter.

Restrictions on DNS-Based Access Control Lists

The restriction for DNS-based ACLs is as follows:

- Pre-authentication and Post-authentication filters are supported in local modes. Only Pre-authentication filter is supported in Flex (Fabric) mode.
- ACL override pushed from ISE is not supported.
- FlexConnect Local Switching with External Web authentication using URL filtering is not supported until Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x.
- Fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or DNS based ACLs are not supported on Cisco Wave 1 Access Points.
- The URL filter considers only the first 20 URLs, though you can add more.
- The URL filter employs regular regex patterns and permits wildcard characters only at the beginning or at the end of an URL.
- The URL ACLs are defined and added to the FlexConnect policy profile in which they associate with a WLAN. The URL ACL creation follows a similar mechanism as that of local mode URL ACLs.
- In FlexConnect mode, the URL domain ACL works only if they are connected to a FlexConnect policy profile.
- The ACL can be attached to a WLAN by associating a policy profile with a WLAN or local policies. However, you can override it using "url-redirect-acl".
- For the Cisco AV pair received from ISE, the policy that needs to be applied for a particular client is pushed as part of ADD MOBILE message.
- When an AP joins or when an existing URL ACL is modified and applied on FlexConnect profile, the ACL definition along with mapped URL filter list is pushed to the AP.

- The AP stores the URL ACL definition with mapped ACL name and snoops the DNS packets for learning the first IP address for each URL in the ACL. When the AP learns the IP addresses, it updates the controller of the URL and IP bindings. The controller records this information in the client database for future use.
- When a client roams to another AP during the pre-authentication state, the learned IP addresses are pushed to a new AP. Otherwise, these learned IP addresses are purged when a client moves to a post-authentication state or when the TTL for the learned IP address expires.

Restrictions on Wildcard Support in URLs

- The generic wildcard URL, such as `*.*` is not allowed.
- Wildcard between the domain names, such as `*a.cisco.com`, `a.cisco*.com`, `a.b.c.test*.apply.play` are not allowed.
- Multiple wildcard, such as `test.*.cisco*.com` is not allowed in a URL.
- The wildcard such as `*.cisco.com` is allowed in the URL.
- The wildcard with a suffix such as `wpr.cisco.*` is a valid configuration.
- A maximum of 16 wildcard-based URLs must be configured for a given ACL.

Flex Mode

Defining URL Filter List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	urlfilter enhanced-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>urlfilter enhanced-list urllist_flex_preauth</code>	Configures the URL filter enhanced list. Here, <i>list-name</i> refers to the URL filter list name. The list name must not exceed 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	url <i>url-name</i> preference 0-65535 action {deny permit} Example: Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# <code>url url-name</code> <code>preference 1 action permit</code>	Configures the action: permit (allowed list) or deny (blocked list).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Applying URL Filter List to Flex Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>default-flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile	Creates a new flex policy. The default flex profile name is <i>default-flex-profile</i> .
Step 3	acl-policy <i>acl policy name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy acl_name	Configures ACL policy.
Step 4	urlfilter list <i>name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list urllist_flex_preauth	Applies the URL list to the Flex profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication (GUI)

Perform the following steps to configure ISE for Central Web Authentication.

Procedure

Step 1 Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).

- Step 2** Click **Policy** and then click **Policy Elements**.
- Step 3** Click **Results**.
- Step 4** Expand **Authorization** and click **Authorization Profiles**.
- Step 5** Click **Add** to create a new authorization profile for URL filter.
- Step 6** Enter a name for the profile in the **Name** field. For example, CentralWebauth.
- Step 7** Choose **ACCESS_ACCEPT** option from the **Access Type** drop-down list.
- Step 8** Alternatively, in the **Common Tasks** section, check **Web Redirection**.
- Step 9** Choose the **Centralized Web Auth** option from the drop-down list.
- Step 10** Specify the ACL and choose the ACL value from the drop-down list.
- Step 11** In the **Advanced Attributes Setting** section, choose **Cisco:cisco-av-pair** from the drop-down list.

Note

Multiple ACL can be applied on the controller based on priority. In L2 Auth + webauth multi-auth scenario, if the ISE returns ACL during L2 Auth then ISE ACL takes precedence over the default webauth redirect ACL. This leads to traffic running in webauth pending state, if ISE ACL has permit rule. To avoid this scenario, you need to set the precedence for L2 Auth ISE returned ACL. The default webauth redirect ACL priority is 100. To avoid traffic issue, you need to configure the redirect ACL priority above 100 for ACL returned by ISE.

- Step 12** Enter the following one by one and click (+) icon after each of them:

- url-redirect-acl=<sample_name>
- url-redirect=<sample_redirect_URL>

For example,

```
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = priv-lvl=15
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-redirect-acl=ACL-REDIRECT2
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-redirect=
https://9.10.8.247:port/portal/gateway?
sessionId=SessionIdValue&portal=0ce17ad0-6d90-11e5-978e-005056bf2f0a&daysToExpiry=value&action=cwa
```

- Step 13** Verify contents in the **Attributes Details** section and click **Save**.

Local Mode

Defining URL Filter List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	urlfilter list <i>list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# urlfilter list urllist_local_preauth</pre>	Configures the URL filter list. Here, <i>list-name</i> refers to the URL filter list name. The list name must not exceed 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	action permit Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit</pre>	Configures the action: permit (allowed list) or deny (blocked list).
Step 4	filter-type post-authentication Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# filter-type post-authentication</pre>	Note This step is applicable while configuring post-authentication URL filter only. Configures the URL list as post-authentication filter.
Step 5	redirect-server-ip4 <i>IPv4-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv4 9.1.0.101</pre>	Configures the IPv4 redirect server for the URL list. Here, <i>IPv4-address</i> refers to the IPv4 address.
Step 6	redirect-server-ip6 <i>IPv6-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv6 2001:300:8::82</pre>	Configures the IPv6 redirect server for the URL list. Here, <i>IPv6-address</i> refers to the IPv6 address.
Step 7	url <i>url</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url url1.dns.com</pre>	Configures an URL. Here, <i>url</i> refers to the name of the URL.
Step 8	end Example: <pre>Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Applying URL Filter List to Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click on the **Policy Name**.
- Step 3** Go to **Access Policies** tab.

- Step 4** In the **URL Filters** section, choose the filters from the **Pre Auth** and **Post Auth** drop-down lists.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Applying URL Filter List to Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures wireless policy profile. Here, <i>profile-policy</i> refers to the name of the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	urlfilter list {pre-auth-filter <i>name</i> post-auth-filter <i>name</i>} Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# urlfilter list pre-auth-filter urllist_local_preauth Device(config-wireless-policy)# urlfilter list post-auth-filter urllist_local_postauth	Applies the URL list to the policy profile. Here, <i>name</i> refers to the name of the pre-authentication or post-authentication URL filter list configured earlier. Note During the client join, the URL filter configured on the policy will be applied.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring ISE for Central Web Authentication

Creating Authorization Profiles

Procedure

- Step 1** Login to the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE).
- Step 2** Click **Policy**, and click **Policy Elements**.
- Step 3** Click **Results**.
- Step 4** Expand **Authorization**, and click **Authorization Profiles**.

- Step 5** Click **Add** to create a new authorization profile for URL filter.
- Step 6** In the Name field, enter a name for the profile. For example, *CentralWebauth*.
- Step 7** Choose **ACCESS_ACCEPT** from the Access Type drop-down list.
- Step 8** In the Advanced Attributes Setting section, choose **Cisco:cisco-av-pair** from the drop-down list.
- Step 9** Enter the following one by one and click (+) icon after each of them:

- url-filter-preauth=<preauth_filter_name>
- url-filter-postauth=<postauth_filter_name>

For example,

```
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-filter-preauth=urllist_pre_cwa
Cisco:cisco-av-pair = url-filter-postauth=urllist_post_cwa
```

- Step 10** Verify contents in the Attributes Details section and click **Save**.

Mapping Authorization Profiles to Authentication Rule

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Policy > Authentication** page, click **Authentication**.
- Step 2** Enter a name for your authentication rule.
For example, *MAB*.
- Step 3** In the If condition field, select the plus (+) icon.
- Step 4** Choose **Compound condition**, and choose **WLC_Web_Authentication**.
- Step 5** Click the arrow located next to **and ...** in order to expand the rule further.
- Step 6** Click the + icon in the Identity Source field, and choose **Internal endpoints**.
- Step 7** Choose **Continue** from the 'If user not found' drop-down list.
This option allows a device to be authenticated even if its MAC address is not known.
- Step 8** Click **Save**.

Mapping Authorization Profiles to Authorization Rule

Procedure

- Step 1** Click **Policy > Authorization**.
- Step 2** In the Rule Name field, enter a name.
For example, *CWA Post Auth*.

- Step 3** In the Conditions field, select the plus (+) icon.
 - Step 4** Click the drop-down list to view the Identity Groups area.
 - Step 5** Choose **User Identity Groups** > **user_group**.
 - Step 6** Click the plus (+) sign located next to **and ...** in order to expand the rule further.
 - Step 7** In the Conditions field, select the plus (+) icon.
 - Step 8** Choose **Compound Conditions**, and choose to create a new condition.
 - Step 9** From the settings icon, select **Add Attribute/Value** from the options.
 - Step 10** In the Description field, choose **Network Access** > **UseCase** as the attribute from the drop-down list.
 - Step 11** Choose the **Equals** operator.
 - Step 12** From the right-hand field, choose **GuestFlow**.
 - Step 13** In the Permissions field, select the plus (+) icon to select a result for your rule.
- You can choose **Standard** > **PermitAccess** option or create a custom profile to return the attributes that you like.

Viewing DNS-Based Access Control Lists

To view details of a specified wireless URL filter, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless urlfilter details <urllist_flex_preauth>
```

To view the summary of all wireless URL filters, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless urlfilter summary
```

To view the URL filter applied to the client in the resultant policy section, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address <MAC_addr> detail
```

Configuration Examples for DNS-Based Access Control Lists

Flex Mode

Example: Defining URL Filter List

This example shows how to define URL list in Flex mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# urlfilter enhanced-list urllist_flex_pre
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url www.dns.com preference 1 action permit
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end
```

Example: Applying URL Filter List to Flex Profile

This example shows how to apply an URL list to the Flex profile in Flex mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy acl_name
```

```
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list urllist_flex_preauth
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# end
```

Local Mode

Example: Defining Preauth URL Filter List

This example shows how to define URL filter list (pre-authentication):

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# urlfilter list urllist_local_preauth
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv4 9.1.0.101
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv6 2001:300:8::82
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url url1.dns.com
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end
```

Example: Defining Postauth URL Filter List

This example shows how to define URL filter list (post-authentication):

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# urlfilter list urllist_local_postauth
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# filter-type post-authentication
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv4 9.1.0.101
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv6 2001:300:8::82
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url url1.dns.com
Device(config-urlfilter-params)# end
```

Example: Applying URL Filter List to Policy Profile

This example shows how to apply an URL list to the policy profile in local mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
Device(config-wireless-policy)# urlfilter list pre-auth-filter urllist_local_preauth
Device(config-wireless-policy)# urlfilter list post-auth-filter urllist_local_postauth
Device(config-wireless-policy)# end
```

Verifying DNS Snoop Agent (DSA)

To view details of the DNS snooping agent client, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client
```

To view details of the DSA enabled interface, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client enabled-intf
```

To view the pattern list in uCode memory, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client
hw-pattern-list
```

To view the OpenDNS string for the pattern list, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client
hw-pattern-list odns_string
```

To view the FQDN filter for the pattern list, use the following command:


```
Device#  
show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client hw-pattern-list  
fqdn-filter <fqdn_filter_ID>
```



Note The valid range of *fqdn_filter_ID* is from 1 to 16.

To view details of the DSA client, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client info
```

To view the pattern list in CPP client, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client pattern-list
```

To view the OpenDNS string for the pattern list, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client pattern-list  
odns_string
```

To view the FQDN filter for the pattern list, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent client pattern-list  
fqdn-filter <fqdn_filter_ID>
```



Note The valid range of *fqdn_filter_ID* is from 1 to 16.

To view details of the DSA datapath, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath
```

To view details of the DSA IP cache table, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath ip-cache
```

To view details of the DSA address entry, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath ip-cache  
address {ipv4 <IPv4_addr> | ipv6 <IPv6_addr>}
```

To view details of all the DSA IP cache address, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath ip-cache  
all
```

To view details of the DSA IP cache pattern, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath ip-cache  
pattern <pattern>
```

To view details of the DSA datapath memory, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath memory
```

To view the DSA regular expression table, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath  
regexp-table
```

To view the DSA statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature dns-snoop-agent datapath stats
```

Information About Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL

IOS IPv6 ACLs is used to send webauth ACL to an AP. A change in the ACL policies of the Flex profile (new ACL, deleted ACL or modified ACL).

ACL definitions are pushed to AP in the following events:

- AP join.
- New ACL mapping in a new Flex profile.
- Configuring IPv6 ACL definition in Flex profile.

Default Local Web Authentication ACLs

The pre-defined default LWA IPv6 ACL is pushed to AP and plumbed to data plane.

Default External Web Authentication ACL

The default EWA ACLs are derived from the redirect portal address configured in the parameter map.

The following list covers the types of default EWA ACLs:

- Security ACL—Pushed and plumbed to AP.
- Intercept ACL—Pushed and plumbed to data plane.

FQDN ACL

- FQDN ACL is encoded along with IPv6 ACL and sent to AP.
- FQDN ACL is always a custom ACL.

The following applies to Flex and Local mode:

- If you are migrating from AireOS, you would explicitly need to execute the following commands:

```
redirect append ap-mac tag ap_mac
redirect append wlan-ssid tag wlan
redirect append client-mac tag client_mac
```
- If the login page has any resource that needs to be fetched from the server, you will need to include those resource URLs in URL filtering.
- If you are trying to access IPv6 URL and you have an IPv4 web server, the controller redirects the client to an internal page as domain redirection is not supported. It is recommended to have a dual-stack web server and configure virtual IPv6 address in the global parameter map.

Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name , the SSID and the WLAN ID .
Step 4	Choose Security > Layer2 tab. Uncheck the WPAPolicy , AES and 802.1x check boxes.
Step 5	Choose Security > Layer3 tab. Choose the Web Auth Parameter Map from the Web Auth Parameter Map drop-down list and authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list. Click Show Advanced Settings and under the Preauthenticated ACL settings, choose the IPv6 ACL from the IPv6 drop-down list.
Step 6	Choose Security > AAA tab. Choose the authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Enabling Pre-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>wlan-name</i>—Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>—Enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID-name</i>—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note If you have already configured WLAN, enter wlan wlan-name command.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ipv6 traffic-filter web <i>acl_name-preauth</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# ipv6 traffic-filter web preauth_v6_acl</pre>	Creates a pre-authentication ACL for web authentication.
Step 4	no security wpa Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa</pre>	Disables the WPA security.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes</pre>	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 6	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa akm dot1x</pre>	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 7	security web-auth Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth</pre>	Configures web authentication.
Step 8	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list wcm_dot1x</pre>	Enables authentication list for WLAN.
Step 9	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map param-custom-webconsent</pre>	Maps the parameter map.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Shutdown the WLAN.

Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name . The Profile Name is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 4	Enter the SSID and the WLAN ID .
Step 5	Click Apply to Device .
-

Enabling Post-Authentication ACL for LWA and EWA

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test1	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	ipv6 acl <i>acl_name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 acl testacl	Creates a named WLAN ACL.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**. The **Profile Name** is the profile name of the policy profile.
 - Step 4** Enter the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling DNS ACL for LWA and EWA



Note Post-authentication DNS ACL is not supported.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test1	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Flex Client IPv6 Support with WebAuth Pre and Post ACL

To verify the client state after L2 authentication, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
Number of Local Clients: 1
```

MAC Address Role	AP Name	WLAN	State	Protocol	Method
1491.82b8.f8c1 Local	AP4001.7A03.544C	4	Webauth Pending	11n(5)	None

```
Number of Excluded Clients: 0
```

To verify the IP state, discovery, and MAC, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless dev da ip
```

IP	STATE	DISCOVERY	MAC
15.30.0.4	Reachable	ARP	1491.82b8.f8c1
2001:15:30:0:d1d7:ecf3:7940:af60	Reachable	IPv6 Packet	1491.82b8.f8c1
fe80::595e:7c29:d7c:3c84	Reachable	IPv6 Packet	1491.82b8.f8c1



CHAPTER 109

Allowed List of Specific URLs

- [Allowed List of Specific URLs, on page 1127](#)
- [Adding URL to Allowed List, on page 1127](#)
- [Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses, on page 1128](#)
- [Verifying URLs on the Allowed List, on page 1129](#)

Allowed List of Specific URLs

This feature helps you to add specific URLs to allowed list on the controller or the AP so that those specific URLs are available for use, even when there is no connectivity to the internet. You can add URLs to allowed list for web authentication of captive portal and walled garden. Authentication is not required to access the allowed list of URLs. When you try to access sites that are not in allowed list, you are redirected to the Login page.

Adding URL to Allowed List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	urlfilter list <urlfilter-name> Example: Device(config)# urlfilter list url-allowedlist-nbn	Configures the URL filter profile.
Step 3	action [deny permit] Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# action permit	Configures the list as allowed list. The permit command configures the list as allowed list and the deny command configures the list as blocked list.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	{ redirect-server-ipv4 redirect-server-ipv6 } Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# redirect-server-ipv4 X.X.X.X	Configures the IP address of the redirect servers to which the user requests will be redirected in case of denied requests.
Step 5	url url-to-be-allowed Example: Device(config-urlfilter-params)# url www.cisco.com	Configures the URL to be allowed.



Note **redirect-server-ipv4** and **redirect-server-ipv6** is applicable only in the local mode, specifically in post-authentication. For any further tracking or displaying any warning messages, the denied user request is redirected to the configured server.

But the **redirect-server-ipv4** and **redirect-server-ipv6** configurations do not apply to pre-authentication scenario as you will be redirected to the controller for the redirect login URL for any denied access.

You can associate the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile.

Example

Associating the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile:

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy user_v4_acl
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list url_allowedlist_nbn
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# exit
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "default flex profile"

Device(config)# urlfilter enhanced-list urllist_pre_cwa
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url1.dns.com preference 1 action permit
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url2.dns.com preference 2 action deny
Device(config-urlfilter-enhanced-params)# url url3.dns.com preference 3 action permit

Device(config)# wlan wlan5 5 wlan5
Device(config-wlan)#ip access-group web user_v4_acl
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
Device(config-wlan)#no security wpa akm dot1x
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth authentication-list default
Device(config-wlan)#security web-auth parameter-map global
Device(config-wlan)#no shutdown
```

Portal Resolving to Multiple IP Addresses

The controller uses two IP addresses, and the Web Auth Parameter Map only provides pre-authentication access to a single IP address. When an externally hosted portal resolves to multiple IP addresses (such as

Cisco Spaces resolving to two IP addresses), or, if additional HTTP resources require pre-authentication access, the URL filter must be used. The URL filter permits traffic to the configured URLs by dynamically adding the resolved IP address into intercept (redirect) and security (pre-auth) ACLs. This is achieved by snooping the DNS requests, thus permitting client access.

In a FlexConnect local switching deployment, an additional step is required to ensure that the URL Filter is applied to the client at the AP.

Configuring the Web Auth Parameter Map automatically creates two ACLs:

- a redirect or intercept ACL (WA-v4-int), and
- a security ACL (WA-sec-).

The security ACL permits pre-auth access to HTTP/HTTPS, DNS, DHCP, and so on. It is this ACL that should be applied along with the URL filter on the flex profile for DNS snooping to function properly. Without this step, the AP may fail to dynamically snoop DNS requests and add the appropriate IP addresses to the ACLs, resulting in the client being unable to redirect to the portal page when trying to send a request to the secondary IP address.

Associating the allowed URL with the ACL policy in flex profile:

```
Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy WA-v4-<ip> (security ACL)
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# urlfilter list url_allowedlist_nbn
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-acl)# exit
Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "default flex profile"
```

Verifying URLs on the Allowed List

Verify URLs on the Allowed List.

```
Device# show wireless urlfilter summary
Black-list      - DENY
White-list      - PERMIT
Filter-Type     - Specific to Local Mode
```

URL-List	ID	Filter-Type	Action	Redirect-ipv4	Redirect-ipv6
url-whitelist	1	PRE-AUTH	PERMIT	1.1.1.1	

Device#

```
Device# show wireless urlfilter details url-whitelist
List Name..... : url-whitelist
Filter ID.....  : 1
Filter Type..... : PRE-AUTH
Action.....      : PERMIT
Redirect server ipv4..... : 1.1.1.1
Redirect server ipv6..... :
Configured List of URLs
URL.....         : www.cisco.com
```




CHAPTER 110

Cisco Umbrella WLAN

- [Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 1131](#)
- [Registering Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account, on page 1132](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN, on page 1133](#)
- [Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile, on page 1139](#)
- [Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile \(GUI\), on page 1139](#)
- [Configuring Umbrella Flex Parameters, on page 1140](#)
- [Configuring the Umbrella Flex Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 1140](#)
- [Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration, on page 1141](#)

Information About Cisco Umbrella WLAN

The Cisco Umbrella WLAN provides a cloud-delivered network security service at the Domain Name System (DNS) level, with automatic detection of both known and emergent threats.

This feature allows you to block sites that host malware, bot networks, and phishing before they actually become malicious.

Cisco Umbrella WLAN provides the following:

- Policy configuration per user group at a single point.
- Policy configuration per network, group, user, device, or IP address.

The following is the policy priority order:

1. Local policy
2. AP group
3. WLAN

- Visual security activity dashboard in real time with aggregated reports.
- Schedule and send reports through email.
- Support up to 60 content categories, with a provision to add custom allowed list and blocked list entries.
- Supports custom parameter-type Umbrella profiles. One Global profile and 15 custom profiles are supported.

- Although IPv6 is supported, device registration will always be over IPv4. There is no support of device registration over IPv6.
- The communication from device to the Umbrella Cloud can be done over IPv6 also.
- In the Flexconnect mode, DNS handling takes place in the AP instead of the controller. Multiple profiles are supported in the Flex mode.

This feature does not work in the following scenarios:

- If an application or host use an IP address directly, instead of using DNS to query domain names.
- If a client is connected to a web proxy and does not send a DNS query to resolve the server address.

Registering Controller to Cisco Umbrella Account

Before you Begin

- You should have an account with Cisco Umbrella.
- You should have an API token from Cisco Umbrella.

This section describes the process followed to register the controller to the Cisco Umbrella account.

The controller is registered to Cisco Umbrella server using the Umbrella parameter map. Each of the Umbrella parameter map must have an API token. The Cisco Umbrella responds with the device ID for the controller. The device ID has a 1:1 mapping with the Umbrella parameter map name.

Fetching API token for Controller from Cisco Umbrella Dashboard

From Cisco Umbrella dashboard, verify that your controller shows up under Device Name, along with their identities.

Applying the API Token on Controller

Registers the Cisco Umbrella API token on the network.

DNS Query and Response

Once the device is registered and Umbrella parameter map is configured on WLAN, the DNS queries from clients joining the WLAN are redirected to the Umbrella DNS resolver.



Note This is applicable for all domains not configured in the local domain RegEx parameter map.

The queries and responses are encrypted based on the DNSCrypt option in the Umbrella parameter map.

For more information on the Cisco Umbrella configurations, see the [Integration for ISR 4K and ISR 1100 – Security Configuration Guide](#).

Limitations and Considerations

The limitations and considerations for this feature are as follows:

- You will be able to apply the wireless Cisco Umbrella profiles to wireless entities, such as, WLAN or AP groups, if the device registration is successful.
- In case of L3 mobility, the Cisco Umbrella must be applied on the anchor controller always.
- When two DNS servers are configured under DHCP, two Cisco Umbrella server IPs are sent to the client from DHCP option 6. If only one DNS server is present under DHCP, only one Cisco Umbrella server IP is sent as part of DHCP option 6.

Configuring Cisco Umbrella WLAN

To configure Cisco Umbrella on the controller , perform the following:

- You must have the API token from the Cisco Umbrella dashboard.
- You must have the root certificate to establish HTTPS connection with the Cisco Umbrella registration server: api.opendns.com. You must import the root certificate from **digicert.com** to the controller using the **crypto pki trustpool import terminal** command.

Importing CA Certificate to the Trust Pool

Before you begin

The following section covers details about how to fetch the root certificate and establish HTTPS connection with the Cisco Umbrella registration server:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	Perform either of the following tasks: • crypto pki trustpool import url url Device(config)# crypto pki trustpool import url http://www.cisco.com/security/pki/trs/ios.p7b Imports the root certificate directly from the Cisco website. Note	

Step 3

Creating a Local Domain RegEx Parameter Map

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type regex <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>parameter-map type regex</code> <code>dns_wl</code>	Creates a regex parameter map.
Step 3	pattern <i>regex-pattern</i> Example: Device(config-profile)# <code>pattern</code> <code>www.google.com</code>	Configures the regex pattern to match. Note The following patterns are supported: • Begins with <code>.*</code>. For example: <code>.*facebook.com</code> • Begins with <code>.*</code> and ends with <code>*</code>. For example: <code>.*google*</code> • Ends with <code>*</code>. For example: <code>www.facebook*</code> • No special character. For example: <code>www.facebook.com</code>
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-profile)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click on the Policy Profile Name. The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** Choose the **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Umbrella** settings, from the **Umbrella Parameter Map** drop-down list, choose the parameter map.
 - Step 5** Enable or disable **Flex DHCP Option for DNS** and **DNS Traffic Redirect** toggle buttons.

Step 6 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring the Umbrella Parameter Map

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type umbrella global <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type umbrella custom_pmap	Creates an umbrella global or customized parameter map.
Step 3	token token-value Example: Device(config-profile)# token 5XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXFXFXFXCXXXXXXXX	Configures an umbrella token.
Step 4	local-domain regex-parameter-map-name Example: Device(config-profile)# local-domain dns_w1	Configures local domain RegEx parameter map.
Step 5	resolver {IPv4 X.X.X.X IPv6 X:X:X:X::X} Example: Device(config-profile)# resolver IPv6 10:1:1:1::10	Configures the Anycast address. The default address is applied when there is no specific address configured.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling or Disabling DNSCrypt (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Security > Threat Defence > Umbrella**.

- Step 2** Enter the **Registration Token** received from Umbrella. Alternatively, you can click on **Click here to get your Token** to get the token from Umbrella.
- Step 3** Enter the **Whitelist Domains** that you want to exclude from filtering.
- Step 4** Check or uncheck the **Enable DNS Packets Encryption** check box to encrypt or decrypt the DNS packets.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.

Enabling or Disabling DNSCrypt

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type umbrella global Example: Device(config)# <code>parameter-map type umbrella global</code>	Creates an umbrella global parameter map.
Step 3	[no] dnsencrypt Example: Device(config-profile)# <code>no dnsencrypt</code>	Enables or disables DNSCrypt. By default, the DNSCrypt option is enabled. Note Cisco Umbrella DNSCrypt is not supported when DNS-encrypted responses are sent in the data-DTLS encrypted tunnel (either mobility tunnel or AP CAPWAP tunnel).
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-profile)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Timeout for UDP Sessions

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	parameter-map type umbrella global Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type umbrella global	Creates an umbrella global parameter map.
Step 3	udp-timeout <i>timeout_value</i> Example: Device(config-profile)# udp-timeout 2	Configures timeout value for UDP sessions. The <i>timeout_value</i> ranges from 1 to 30 seconds. Note The public-key and resolver parameter-map options are automatically populated with the default values. So, you need not change them.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click on the Policy Profile Name. The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** Choose the **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Umbrella** settings, from the **Umbrella Parameter Map** drop-down list, choose the parameter map.
 - Step 5** Enable or disable **Flex DHCP Option for DNS** and **DNS Traffic Redirect** toggle buttons.
 - Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Parameter Map Name in WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example:	Creates policy profile for the WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</code>	The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	umbrella-param-map <i>umbrella-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# umbrella-param-map global</code>	Configures the Umbrella OpenDNS feature for the WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless profile flex default-flex-profile</code>	Creates a new flex policy. Enters the flex profile configuration mode. The <i>flex-profile-name</i> is the flex profile name.
Step 3	umbrella-profile <i>umbrella-profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# umbrella-profile global</code>	Configures the Umbrella flex feature. Use the no form of this command to negate the command or to set the command to its default.
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring the Umbrella Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.

- Step 2** Click a **Flex Profile Name**. The **Edit Flex Profile** dialog box appears.
- Step 3** Under the **Umbrella** tab, click the **Add** button.
- Step 4** Select a name for the parameter map from the **Parameter Map Name** drop-down list and click **Save**.
- Step 5** Click the **Update & Apply to Device** button. The configuration changes are successfully applied.

Configuring Umbrella Flex Parameters

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</code>	Configures the WLAN policy profile. Enters the wireless policy profile configuration mode. The <i>policy-profile-name</i> is the WLAN policy profile name.
Step 3	flex umbrella dhcp-dns-option Example: Device(config-wireless-policy-profile)# <code>[no] flex umbrella dhcp-dns-option</code>	Configures the Umbrella DHCP option for DNS. By default the option is enabled.
Step 4	flex umbrella mode {force ignore} Example: Device(config-wireless-policy-profile)# <code>[no] flex umbrella mode force</code>	Configures the DNS traffic to be redirected to Umbrella. You can either forcefully redirect the traffic or choose to ignore the redirected traffic to Umbrella. The default mode is ignore .
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring the Umbrella Flex Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click the **Add** button. The **Add Policy Profile** dialog box appears.

- Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, and under the **Umbrella** section, complete the following:
- Select the parameter map from the **Umbrella Parameter Map** drop-down list. Click the **Clear** hyperlink to clear the selection.
 - Click the field adjacent to **Flex DHCP Option for DNS** to **Disable** the option. By default it is **Enabled**.
 - Click the field adjacent to **DNS Traffic Redirect** to set the option to **Force**. By default it is set to **Ignore**.
- Step 4** Click the **Apply to Device** button.

Verifying the Cisco Umbrella Configuration

To view the Umbrella configuration details, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella config
Umbrella Configuration
=====
Token: 5XXXXXXABXXXXXFXXXXXXXXDXXXXXXXXABXX
API-KEY: NONE
OrganizationID: xxxxxxx
Local Domain Regex parameter-map name: dns_bypass
DNSEncrypt: Not enabled
Public-key: NONE
UDP Timeout: 5 seconds
Resolver address:
1. 10.1.1.1
2. 5.5.5.5
3. XXXX:120:50::50
4. XXXX:120:30::30
```

To view the device registration details, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella deviceid
Device registration details
```

Param-Map Name	Status	Device-id
global	200 SUCCESS	010aa4eXXXXXX8d
vj-1	200 SUCCESS	01XXXXXXf4541e1
GUEST	200 SUCCESS	010a4f6XXXXXX42
EMP	200 SUCCESS	0XXXXXXd106ecd

To view the detailed description for the Umbrella device ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella deviceid detailed
Device registration details

1.global
  Tag           : global
  Device-id     : 010aa4eXXXXXX8d
  Description   : Device Id recieved successfully
  WAN interface : None

2.vj-1
  Tag           : vj-1
  Device-id     : 01XXXXXXf4541e1
  Description   : Device Id recieved successfully
  WAN interface : None
```

To view the Umbrella DNSEncrypt details, use the following command:

```
Device# show umbrella dnscrypt
DNSEncrypt: Enabled
Public-key: B111:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:3E2B:XXXX:XXXX:XXE:XXX3:3XXX:DXXX:XXXX:BXXX:XXB:XXXX:FXXX
```

Certificate Update Status: In Progress

To view the Umbrella global parameter map details, use the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type umbrella global
```

To view the regex parameter map details, use the following command:

```
Device# show parameter-map type regex <parameter-map-name>
```

To view the Umbrella statistical information, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature umbrella datapath stats
```

To view the wireless policy profile Umbrella configuration, use the following command:

```
Device#show wireless profile policy detailed vj-pol-profile | s Umbrella
Umbrella information
Cisco Umbrella Parameter Map : vj-2
DHCP DNS Option : ENABLED
Mode : force
```

To view the wireless flex profile Umbrella configuration, use the following command:

```
Device#show wireless profile flex detailed vj-flex-profile | s Umbrella
Umbrella Profiles :
vj-1
vj-2
global
```

To view the Umbrella details on the AP, use the following command:

```
AP#show client.opendns.summary
Server-IP role
208.67.220.220 Primary
208.67.222.222 Secondary

Server-IP role
2620:119:53::53 Primary
2620:119:35::35 Secondary

Wlan Id DHCP OpenDNS Override Force Mode
0 true false
1 false false
...

15 false false
Profile-name Profile-id
vj-1 010a29b176b34108
global 010a57bf502c85d4
vj-2 010ae385ce6c1256
AP0010.10A7.1000#

Client to profile command

AP#show client.opendns.address 50:3e:aa:ce:50:17
Client-mac Profile-name
50:3E:AA:CE:50:17 vj-1
AP0010.10A7.1000#
```




CHAPTER 111

RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- [Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 1143](#)
- [Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 1145](#)
- [Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing, on page 1145](#)
- [Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group \(CLI\), on page 1146](#)

Information About RADIUS Server Load Balancing

RADIUS Server Load Balancing Overview

By default, if two RADIUS servers are configured in a server group, only one is used. The other server acts as standby, if the primary server is declared as dead, the secondary server receives all the load.

If you need both servers to perform transactions actively, you need to enable Load Balancing.



Note By default, load balancing is not enabled on the RADIUS server group.

If you enable load balancing in a RADIUS server group with two or more RADIUS servers, the Server A and Server B receives a AAA transaction. The transaction queues are checked in Server A and Server B. The server with less number of outstanding transactions are assigned the next batch of AAA transaction.

Load balancing distributes batches of transactions to RADIUS servers in a server group. Load balancing assigns each batch of transactions to the server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions in its queue. The process of assigning a batch of transactions is as follows:

1. The first transaction is received for a new batch.
2. All server transaction queues are checked.
3. The server with the lowest number of outstanding transactions is identified.
4. The identified server is assigned the next batch of transactions.

The batch size is a user-configured parameter. Changes in the batch size may impact CPU load and network throughput. As batch size increases, CPU load decreases, and network throughput increases. However, if a large batch size is used, all available server resources may not be fully utilized. As batch size decreases, CPU load increases and network throughput decreases.



Note There is no set number for large or small batch sizes. A batch with more than 50 transactions is considered large and a batch with fewer than 25 transactions is considered small.



Note If a server group contains ten or more servers, we recommend that you set a high batch size to reduce CPU load.

Transaction Load Balancing Across RADIUS Server Groups

You can configure load balancing either per-named RADIUS server group or for the global RADIUS server group. The load balancing server group must be referred to as “radius” in the authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) method lists. All public servers that are part of the RADIUS server group are then load balanced.

You can configure authentication and accounting to use the same RADIUS server or different servers. In some cases, the same server can be used for preauthentication, authentication, or accounting transactions for a session. The preferred server, which is an internal setting and is set as the default, informs AAA to use the same server for the start and stop record for a session regardless of the server cost. When using the preferred server setting, ensure that the server that is used for the initial transaction (for example, authentication), the preferred server, is part of any other server group that is used for a subsequent transaction (for example, accounting).

The preferred server is not used if one of the following criteria is true:

- The **load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server** command is used.
- The preferred server is dead.
- The preferred server is in quarantine.
- The want server flag has been set, overriding the preferred server setting.

The want server flag, an internal setting, is used when the same server must be used for all stages of a multistage transaction regardless of the server cost. If the want server is not available, the transaction fails.

You can use the **load-balance method least-outstanding ignore-preferred-server** command if you have either of the following configurations:

- Dedicated authentication server and a separate dedicated accounting server
- Network where you can track all call record statistics and call record details, including start and stop records and records that are stored on separate servers
- The **least outstanding** load-balancing method in RADIUS is only recommended while doing 802.1X without accounting.

If you have a configuration where authentication servers are a superset of accounting servers, the preferred server is not used.

**Note**

If a third-party RADIUS load balancer is used and RADIUS packets are routed based on the NAS source port, it is recommended to move to any other rule based on the following Attribute-Value Pairs (AVPs):

- If the load balancer uses NAS source port in the Access-Request to load balance, rules may not work as expected as the source port in NAS might change during transaction.
- If the load balancer compares AVPs between Access-Challenge and Access-Request to route packets, you will need to use the AVP value of t-State.
- If the load balancer compares AVPs in Access-Request from NAS, you will need to use one or a combination of the following AVPs:
 - t-State value
 - Calling-Station-ID and NAS IP or Identifier

Prerequisites for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) must be configured on the RADIUS server.
- AAA RADIUS server groups must be configured.
- RADIUS must be configured for functions such as authentication, accounting, or static route download.

Restrictions for RADIUS Server Load Balancing

- Incoming RADIUS requests, such as Packet of Disconnect (POD) requests are not supported.
- Load balancing is not supported on proxy RADIUS servers and private server groups.
- Load balancing is not supported on Central Web Authentication (CWA). CWA and CoA are linked to accounting. With load balancing enabled, accounting data may be sent to a different server than the one processing the CoA request.
- RADIUS Load Balancing does not support client stickiness to the same server during the same session. We recommend not using it for authentication mechanisms like CWA or CoA, as it may impact server clusters due to client session ownership changes across servers.
- **Least-outstanding** load-balancing method in RADIUS for CWA or NAC scenarios requiring CoA and multiple RADIUS transactions is not recommended. Additionally, when implementing 802.1X with accounting, this method may lead to inconsistencies, as not all accounting packets are sent to the same server, potentially impacting the ISE.

Enabling Load Balancing for a Named RADIUS Server Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa group server radius <i>group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius rad-sg	Enters server group configuration mode.
Step 3	server ip-address [auth-port port-number] [acct-port port-number] Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# server 192.0.2.238 auth-port 2095 acct-port 2096	Configures the IP address of the RADIUS server for the group server.
Step 4	load-balance method least-outstanding [batch-size <i>number</i>] [ignore-preferred-server] Example: Device(config-sg-radius)# load-balance method least-outstanding batch-size 30	Enables the least-outstanding load balancing for a named server group.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-sg)# end	Exits server group configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.



CHAPTER 112

AAA Dead-Server Detection

- [Information About AAA Dead-Server Detection, on page 1147](#)
- [Prerequisites for AAA Dead-Server Detection, on page 1148](#)
- [Restrictions for AAA Dead-Server Detection, on page 1148](#)
- [Configuring AAA Dead-Server Detection \(CLI\), on page 1148](#)
- [Verifying AAA Dead-Server Detection, on page 1149](#)

Information About AAA Dead-Server Detection

The AAA Dead-Server Detection feature allows you to configure the criteria to be used to mark a RADIUS server as dead.

If you have more than one RADIUS server, the following concepts come into picture:

- **Deadtime**—Defines the time in minutes a server marked as DEAD is held in that state. Once the deadtime expires, the controller marks the server as UP (ALIVE) and notifies the registered clients about the state change. If the server is still unreachable after the state is marked as UP and if the DEAD criteria is met, then server is marked as DEAD again for the deadtime interval.



Note You can configure deadtime for each server group or on a global level.

- **Dead-criteria**—To declare a server as DEAD, you need to configure **dead-criteria** and configure the conditions that determine when a RADIUS server is considered unavailable or dead.

Using this feature will result in less deadtime and quicker packet processing.

Criteria for Marking a RADIUS Server As Dead

The AAA Dead-Server Detection feature allows you to determine the criteria that are used to mark a RADIUS server as dead. That is, you can configure the minimum amount of time, in seconds, that must elapse from the time that the controller last received a valid packet from the RADIUS server to the time the server is marked as dead. If a packet has not been received since the controller booted, and there is a timeout, the time criterion will be treated as though it has been met.

In addition, you can configure the number of consecutive timeouts that must occur on the controller before the RADIUS server is marked as dead. If the server performs both authentication and accounting, both types

of packets are included in the number. Improperly constructed packets are counted as though they are timeouts. Both initial packet transmission and retransmissions are counted. (Each timeout causes one retransmission to be sent.)



Note Both the time criterion and tries criterion must be met for the server to be marked as dead.

The RADIUS dead-server detection configuration will result in the prompt detection of RADIUS servers that have stopped responding. This configuration will also result in the avoidance of servers being improperly marked as dead when they are “swamped” (responding slowly) and the avoidance of the state of servers being rapidly changed from dead to live to dead again. This prompt detection of non-responding RADIUS servers and the avoidance of swamped and dead-to-live-to-dead-again servers will result in less deadtime and quicker packet processing.

Prerequisites for AAA Dead-Server Detection

- You must have access to a RADIUS server.
- You should be familiar with configuring a RADIUS server.
- You should be familiar with configuring Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA).
- Before a server can be marked as dead, you must configure **radius-server dead-criteria time** *time-in-seconds* **tries** *number-of-tries* to mark the server as DOWN.

Also, you must configure the **radius-server deadtime** *time-in-mins* to retain the server in DEAD status.

Restrictions for AAA Dead-Server Detection

- Original transmissions are not counted in the number of consecutive timeouts that must occur on the controller before the server is marked as dead--only the number of retransmissions are counted.

Configuring AAA Dead-Server Detection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Enables the AAA access control model.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	radius-server deadtime <i>time-in-mins</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius-server deadtime 5</pre>	Defines the time in minutes when a server marked as DEAD is held in that state. Once the deadtime expires, the controller marks the server as UP (ALIVE) and notifies the registered clients about the state change. If the server is still unreachable after the state is marked as UP and if the DEAD criteria is met, then server is marked as DEAD again for the deadtime interval. <i>time-in-mins</i>—Valid values range from 1 to 1440 minutes. Default value is zero. To return to the default value, use the no radius-server deadtime command. The radius-server deadtime command can be configured globally or per aaa group server level. You can use the show aaa dead-criteria or show aaa servers command to check for dead-server detection. If the default value is zero, deadtime is not configured.
Step 4	radius-server dead-criteria [<i>time time-in-seconds</i>][<i>tries number-of-tries</i>] Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius-server dead-criteria time 5 tries 4</pre>	Declares a server as DEAD and configures the conditions that determine when a RADIUS server is considered unavailable or dead. <i>time-in-seconds</i>—Time in seconds during which no response is received from the RADIUS server to consider it as dead. Valid values range from 1 to 120 seconds. <i>number-of-tries</i>—Number of transmits to RADIUS server without responses before marking the server as dead. Valid values range from 1 to 100.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying AAA Dead-Server Detection

To verify dead-criteria, use the following command:

```
Device# show run | s dead-criteria
radius-server dead-criteria time 20 tries 20
```

To verify the dead-criteria details, use the following command:

```
Device# sh aaa dead-criteria radius <server>

sh aaa dead-criteria radius 8.109.0.55
RADIUS Server Dead Criteria:
Server Details:
Address : 8.109.0.55
Auth Port : 1645
Acct Port : 1646
Server Group : radius
Dead Criteria Details:
Configured Retransmits : 3
Configured Timeout : 5
Estimated Outstanding Access Transactions: 2
Estimated Outstanding Accounting Transactions: 0
Dead Detect Time : 30s
Computed Retransmit Tries: 6
Statistics Gathered Since Last Successful Transaction
Max Computed Outstanding Transactions: 3
Max Computed Dead Detect Time: 90s
Max Computed Retransmits : 18
```

To verify the state of servers, number of requests being processed, and so on, use the following command:

```
Device# show aaa servers | s WNCN

Platform State from WNCN (1) : current UP
Platform State from WNCN (2) : current UP
Platform State from WNCN (3) : current UP
Platform State from WNCN (4) : current UP
Platform State from WNCN (5) : current UP, duration 773s, previous duration 0s
Platform Dead: total time 0s, count 0
Quarantined: No
```




CHAPTER 113

ISE Simplification and Enhancements

- [Utilities for Configuring Security, on page 1151](#)
- [Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication, on page 1153](#)
- [Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE, on page 1156](#)
- [Captive Portal, on page 1159](#)

Utilities for Configuring Security

This chapter describes how to configure all the RADIUS server side configuration using the following command:

wireless-default radius server *ip key secret*

This simplified configuration option provides the following:

- Configures AAA authorization for network services, authentication for web auth and Dot1x.
- Enables local authentication with default authorization.
- Configures the default redirect ACL for CWA.
- Creates global parameter map with virtual IP and enables captive bypass portal.
- Configures all the AAA configuration for a default case while configuring the RADIUS server.
- The method-list configuration is assumed by default on the WLAN.
- Enables the radius accounting by default.
- Disables the radius aggressive failovers by default.
- Sets the radius request timeouts to 5 seconds by default.
- Enables captive bypass portal.

This command configures the following in the background:

```
aaa new-model
aaa authentication webauth default group radius
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa accounting identity default start-stop group radius
!
aaa server radius dynamic-author
```

```

client <IP> server-key cisco123
!
radius server RAD_SRV_DEF_<IP>
description Configured by wireless-default
address ipv4 <IP> auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
key <key>
!
aaa local authentication default authorization default
aaa session-id common
!
ip access-list extended CISCO-CWA-URL-REDIRECT-ACL-DEFAULT
remark " CWA ACL to be referenced from ISE "
deny udp any any eq domain
deny tcp any any eq domain
deny udp any any eq bootps any
deny udp any any eq bootpc
deny udp any eq bootpc any
deny ip any host <IP>
permit tcp any any eq www
!
parameter-map type webauth global
captive-bypass-portal
virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1
virtual-ip ipv6 1001::1
!
wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
aaa-override
local-http-profiling
local-dhcp-profiling
accounting

```

Thus, you need not go through the entire Configuration Guide to configure wireless controller for a simple configuration requirement.

Configuring Multiple Radius Servers

Use the following procedure to configure a RADIUS server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless-default radius server ip key secret Example: Device(config)# wireless-default radius server 9.2.58.90 key cisco123	Configures a radius server. Note You can configure up to ten RADIUS servers.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying AAA and Radius Server Configurations

To view details of AAA server, use the following command:

```
Device# show run aaa
!
aaa new-model
aaa authentication webauth default group radius
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
aaa authorization network default group radius
aaa accounting Identity default start-stop group radius
!
aaa server radius dynamic-author
  client 9.2.58.90 server-key cisco123
!
radius server RAD_SRV_DEF_9.2.58.90
  description Configured by wireless-default
  address ipv4 9.2.58.90 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  key cisco123
!
aaa local authentication default authorization default
aaa session-id common
!
!
ip access-list extended CISCO-CWA-URL-REDIRECT-ACL-DEFAULT
remark " CWA ACL to be referenced from ISE "
deny udp any any eq domain
deny tcp any any eq domain
deny udp any eq bootps any
deny udp any any eq bootpc
deny udp any eq bootpc any
deny ip any host 9.2.58.90
permit tcp any any eq www
!
parameter-map type webauth global
  captive-bypass-portal
  virtual-ip ipv4 192.0.2.1
  virtual-ip ipv6 1001::1
!
wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
  aaa-override
  local-http-profiling
  local-dhcp-profiling
  accounting
```



Note The **show run aaa** output may change when new commands are added to this utility.

Configuring Captive Portal Bypassing for Local and Central Web Authentication

Information About Captive Bypassing

WISPr is a draft protocol that enables users to roam between different wireless service providers. Some devices (For example, Apple iOS devices) have a mechanism using which they can determine if the device is connected

to Internet, based on an HTTP WISPr request made to a designated URL. This mechanism is used for the device to automatically open a web browser when a direct connection to the internet is not possible. This enables the user to provide his credentials to access the internet. The actual authentication is done in the background every time the device connects to a new SSID.

The client device (Apple iOS device) sends a WISPr request to the controller, which checks for the user agent details and then triggers an HTTP request with a web authentication interception in the controller. After verification of the iOS version and the browser details provided by the user agent, the controller allows the client to bypass the captive portal settings and provides access to the Internet.

This HTTP request triggers a web authentication interception in the controller as any other page requests are performed by a wireless client. This interception leads to a web authentication process, which will be completed normally. If the web authentication is being used with any of the controller splash page features (URL provided by a configured RADIUS server), the splash page may never be displayed because the WISPr requests are made at very short intervals, and as soon as one of the queries is able to reach the designated server, any web redirection or splash page display process that is performed in the background is cancelled, and the device processes the page request, thus breaking the splash page functionality.

For example, Apple introduced an iOS feature to facilitate network access when captive portals are present. This feature detects the presence of a captive portal by sending a web request on connecting to a wireless network. This request is directed to <http://www.apple.com/library/test/success.html> for Apple iOS version 6 and older, and to several possible target URLs for Apple iOS version 7 and later. If a response is received, then the Internet access is assumed to be available and no further interaction is required. If no response is received, then the Internet access is assumed to be blocked by the captive portal and Apple's Captive Network Assistant (CNA) auto-launches the pseudo-browser to request portal login in a controlled window. The CNA may break when redirecting to an ISE captive portal. The controller prevents this pseudo-browser from popping up.

You can now configure the controller to bypass WISPr detection process, so the web authentication interception is only done when a user requests a web page leading to splash page load in user context, without the WISPr detection being performed in the background.

Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth .
Step 2	In the Webauth Parameter Map tab, click the parameter map name. The Edit WebAuth Parameter window is displayed.
Step 3	Select Captive Bypass Portal check box.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Captive Bypassing for WLAN in LWA and CWA (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth WLAN1_MAP	Creates the parameter map. The <i>parameter-map-name</i> must not exceed 99 characters.
Step 3	captive-bypass-portal Example: Device(config)# captive-bypass-portal	Configures captive bypassing.
Step 4	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WLAN1_NAME 4 WLAN1_NAME	Specifies the WLAN name and ID. • <i>profile-name</i> is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 512. • <i>ssid-name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 5	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables the web authentication for the WLAN.
Step 6	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Maps the parameter map. Note If parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Sending DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE

Information about DHCP Option 55 and 77

The DHCP sensors use the following DHCP options on the ISE for native and remote profiling:

- **Option 12:** Hostname
- **Option 6:** Class Identifier

Along with this, the following options needs to be sent to the ISE for profiling:

- **Option 55:** Parameter Request List
- **Option 77:** User Class

Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Profile** window.
- Step 3** Click **Access Policies** tab, choose the **RADIUS Profiling** and **DHCP TLV Caching** check boxes to configure radius profiling and DHCP TLV Caching on a WLAN.
- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuration to Send DHCP Options 55 and 77 to ISE (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	dhcpl-tlv-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # dhcpl-tlv-caching	Configures DHCP TLV caching on a WLAN.
Step 4	radius-profiling Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # radius-profiling	Configures client radius profiling on a WLAN.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring EAP Request Timeout (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the EAP Request Timeout through the GUI:

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Advanced EAP**.
- Step 2** In the **EAP-Identity-Request Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP identity request to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 3** In the **EAP-Identity-Request Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to retransmit the EAP identity request to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 4** Set **EAP Max-Login Ignore Identity Response** to **Enabled** state to limit the number of clients that can be connected to the device with the same username. You can log in up to eight times from different clients (PDA, laptop, IP phone, and so on) on the same device. The default state is **Disabled**.
- Step 5** In the **EAP-Request Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP request to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 6** In the **EAP-Request Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to retransmit the EAP request to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 7** In the **EAPOL-Key Timeout** field, specify the amount of time (in seconds) in which the device attempts to send an EAP key over the LAN to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 8** In the **EAPOL-Key Max Retries** field, specify the maximum number of times that the device attempts to send an EAP key over the LAN to wireless clients using local EAP.
- Step 9** In the **EAP-Broadcast Key Interval** field, specify the time interval between rotations of the broadcast encryption key used for clients and click **Apply**.

Note

After configuring the EAP-Broadcast key interval to a new time period, you must shut down or restart the WLAN for the changes to take effect. Once the WLAN is shut down or restarted, the M5 and M6 packets are exchanged when the configured timer value expires.

Configuring EAP Request Timeout

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps client-exclusion dot1x-timeout Example: Device(config)# wireless wps client-exclusion dot1x-timeout	Enables exclusion on timeout and no response. By default, this feature is enabled. To disable, append a no at the beginning of the command.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring EAP Request Timeout in Wireless Security (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless security dot1x request {retries 0 - 20 timeout 1 - 120} Example: Device(config)# wireless security dot1x request timeout 60	Configures the EAP request retransmission timeout value in seconds.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Captive Portal

Captive Portal Configuration

This feature enables you to configure multiple web authentication URLs (including external captive URLs) for the same SSID based on an AP. The default setting is to use the Global URL for authentication. The override option is available at WLAN and AP level.

The order of precedence is:

- AP
- WLAN
- Global configuration

Restrictions for Captive Portal Configuration

- This configuration is supported in a standalone controller only.
- Export-Anchor configuration is not supported.

Configuring Captive Portal (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name , the SSID , and the WLAN ID .
Step 4	In the Security > Layer2 tab, uncheck the WPA Policy , AES and 802.1x check boxes.
Step 5	In the Security > Layer3 tab, choose the parameter map from the Web Auth Parameter Map drop-down list and authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 6	In the Security > AAA tab, choose the Authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
Step 8	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth .
Step 9	Choose a Web Auth Parameter Map .
Step 10	In the General tab, enter the Maximum HTTP connections , Init-State Timeout(secs) and choose webauth from the Type drop-down list.
Step 11	In the Advanced tab, under the Redirect to external server settings, enter the Redirect for log-in server.
Step 12	Click Update & Apply .
-

Configuring Captive Portal

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan {profile-name shutdown} network-name Example: Device(config)# wlan edc6 6 edc	Configures the WLAN profile. Enables or Disables all WLANs and creates the WLAN identifier. The profile-name and the SSID network name should be up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 3	ip {access-group verify} web IPv4-ACL-Name Example: Device(config-wlan)# ip access-group web CPWebauth	Configures the WLAN web ACL. Note WLAN needs to be disabled before performing this operation.
Step 4	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 7	security web-auth {authentication-list authentication-list-name authorization-list authorization-list-name on-macfilter-failure parameter-map parameter-map-name} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map parMap6	Enables web authentication for WLAN. Here, • authentication-list <i>authentication-list-name</i>: Sets the authentication list for IEEE 802.1x. • authorization-list <i>authorization-list-name</i>: Sets the override-authorization list for IEEE 802.1x. • on-macfilter-failure: Enables Web authentication on MAC filter failure.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i>: Configures the parameter map. Note When security web-auth is enabled, you get to map the default authentication-list and global parameter-map. This is applicable for authentication-list and parameter-map that are not explicitly mentioned.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# exit	Exits from the WLAN configuration.
Step 10	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth parMap6	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 11	parameter-map type webauth <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth parMap6	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 12	type webauth Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# type webauth	Configures the webauth type parameter.
Step 13	timeout init-state sec <timeout-seconds> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# timeout inti-state sec 3600	Configures the WEBAUTH timeout in seconds. Valid range for the time in sec parameter is 60 seconds to 3932100 seconds.
Step 14	redirect for-login <URL-String> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# redirect for-login https://172.16.100.157/portal/login.html	Configures the URL string for redirect during login.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 15	exit Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# exit	Exits the parameters configuration.
Step 16	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc6	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 17	wlan <i>wlan-profile-name</i> policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan edc6 policy policy_profile_flex	Attaches a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 18	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Captive Portal Configuration - Example

The following example shows how you can have APs at different locations, broadcasting the same SSID but redirecting clients to different redirect portals:

Configuring multiple parameter maps pointing to different redirect portal:

```
parameter-map type webauth parMap1
type webauth
timeout init-state sec 21600
redirect for-login
https://172.16.12.3:8080/portal/PortalSetup.action?portal=cfdbce00-2ce2-11e8-b83c-005056a06b27
redirect portal ipv4 172.16.12.3
!
!
parameter-map type webauth parMap11
type webauth
timeout init-state sec 21600
redirect for-login
https://172.16.12.4:8443/portal/PortalSetup.action?portal=094e7270-3808-11e8-9797-02421e4cae0c
redirect portal ipv4 172.16.12.4
!
```

Associating these parameter maps to different WLANs:

```
wlan edc1 1 edc
ip access-group web CPWebauth
no security wpa
no security wpa akm dot1x
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth
security web-auth parameter-map parMap11
```

```
no shutdown
wlan edc2 2 edc
ip access-group web CPWebauth
no security wpa
no security wpa akm dot1x
no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
security web-auth
security web-auth authentication-list cp-webauth
security web-auth parameter-map parMap1
no shutdown
```



Note All WLANs have identical SSIDs.

Associating WLANs to different policy tags:

```
wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc1
wlan edc1 policy policy_profile_flex
wireless tag policy policy_tag_edc2
wlan edc2 policy policy_profile_flex
```

Assigning these policy tags to the desired APs:

```
ap E4AA.5D13.14DC
policy-tag policy_tag_edc1
site-tag site_tag_flex
ap E4AA.5D2C.3CAC
policy-tag policy_tag_edc2
site-tag site_tag_flex
```




CHAPTER 114

RADIUS DTLS

- [Information About RADIUS DTLS, on page 1165](#)
- [Prerequisites, on page 1167](#)
- [Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server, on page 1167](#)
- [Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author, on page 1172](#)
- [Enabling DTLS for Client, on page 1173](#)
- [Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration, on page 1176](#)
- [Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics, on page 1176](#)

Information About RADIUS DTLS

The Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a client or server protocol that provides centralized security for users attempting to gain management access to a network. The RADIUS protocol is a widely deployed authentication and authorization protocol that delivers a complete Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) solution.

RADIUS DTLS Port

The RADIUS port (DTLS server) is used for authentication and accounting. The default DTLS server port is 2083.

You can change the RADIUS DTLS port number using **dtls port *port_number***. For more information, see the [Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number](#) section.

Shared Secret

You can use **radius/dtls** as the shared secret, if you have enabled DTLS for a specific server.

Handling PAC for CTS Communication

You can download PAC from ISE for CTS communication. Once the PAC is downloaded, you need to encrypt all the CTS attributes with the PAC key instead of the shared secret.

The ISE then decrypts these attributes using PAC.

Session Management

The RADIUS client purely depends on the response from the DTLS server. If the session is ideal for ideal timeout, then the session must be closed.

In case of invalid responses, the sessions must be deleted.

If you need to send the radius packets over DTLS, the DTLS session needs to be re-established with the specific server.

Load Balancing

Multiple DTLS servers and load balancing methods are configured.

You need to select the AAA server to which the request needs to be sent. Then use the DTLS context of the specific server to encrypt the RADIUS packet and send it back.

Connection Timeout

After the encrypted RADIUS packet is sent, you need to start the retransmission timer. If you do not get a response before the retransmission timer expires, the packet is re-encrypted and re-transmitted.

You can continue for number of times as per the **dtls retries** configuration or till the default value. Once the number of tries exceeds the limit, the server becomes unavailable and responses are sent back to the AAA clients.



Note The default connection timeout is 5 seconds.

Connection Retries

As the RADIUS DTLS is UDP based, you need to retry the connection after a specific timeout interval for a specific number of retries.

RADSEC consists of two types: RADIUS-over-TLS (using TCP) and RADIUS-over-DTLS (using UDP). Cisco IOS-XE support RADIUS-over-DTLS (UDP) but does not support RADIUS-over-TLS (TCP), as outlined in [RFC 7360](#).

After all retries are exhausted, the DTLS connection performs the following:

- Is marked as unsuccessful.
- Looks up for the next available server for processing the RADIUS requests.



Note The default connection retries is 5.

Idle Timeout

When the idle timer expires and no transactions exists since the last idle timeout, the DTLS session remains closed.

After you establish the DTLS session, you can start the idle timer. If you start the idle timer for 30 seconds and one of the RADIUS DTLS packet is sent, then after 30 seconds, the idle timer expires and checks for number of RADIUS DTLS transactions.

If the idle timer value exceeds zero, the idle timer resets the transaction counter and restarts the timer.



Note The default idle timeout is 60 seconds.

Handling Server and Server Group Failover

You can configure RADIUS servers with and without DTLS. It is recommended to create AAA server groups with DTLS enabled servers and non-DTLS servers. However, you will not find any such restriction while configuring AAA server groups.

Suppose you choose a DTLS server, the DTLS server establishes connection and RADIUS request packet is sent to the DTLS server. If the DTLS server does not respond after all RADIUS retries, it would fall over to the next configured server in the same server group. If the next server is a DTLS server, the processing of the RADIUS request packet continues with the next server. If the next server is a non-DTLS server, the processing of RADIUS request packet does not happen in that server group. Then the server group failover occurs and the same sequence continues with the next server group, if the next server group is available.



Note You need to use either only DTLS or non-DTLS servers in a server group.

Prerequisites

Support for IOS and BINOS AAA

The AAA server runs in IOS and BINOS platforms. Once you complete the RADIUS DTLS support in IOS, the same needs to be ported to BINOS.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	dtls Example: Device(config-radius-server)# dtls	Configures DTLS parameters.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Timeout

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	dtls connectiontimeout <i>timeout</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# dtls connectiontimeout 1	Configures RADIUS DTLS connection timeout. Here, <i>timeout</i> refers to the DTLS connection timeout value. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Idle Timeout

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	dtls idletimeout <i>idle_timeout</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# dtls idletimeout 2	Configures RADIUS DTLS idle timeout. Here, <i>idle_timeout</i> refers to the DTLS idle timeout value. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Source Interface for RADIUS DTLS Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	dtls ip {radius source-interface Ethernet-Internal <i>interface_number</i>} Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# dtls ip radius source-interface Ethernet-Internal 0</pre>	Configures source interface for RADIUS DTLS server. Here, • <i>interface_number</i> refers to the Ethernet-Internal interface number. The default value is 0.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Port Number

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device# enable</pre>	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# radius server R1</pre>	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	dtls port <i>port_number</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# dtls port 2</pre>	Configures RADIUS DTLS port number. Here, • <i>port_number</i> refers to the DTLS port number.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Connection Retries

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	dtls retries <i>retry_number</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# dtls retries 3	Configures RADIUS connection retries. Here, <i>retry_number</i> refers to the DTLS connection retries. The valid range is from 1 to 65535.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Trustpoint

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server R1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	dtls trustpoint {client <i>LINE</i> dtls server <i>LINE</i> dtls} Example: Device(config-radius-server)# dtls trustpoint client client1 dtls Device(config-radius-server)# dtls trustpoint server server1 dtls	Configures trustpoint for client and server.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-radius-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring RADIUS DTLS Match-Server-Identity

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: dtls match-server-identity hostname <name>	Configure the RADSEC certification validation parameters.
Step 2	enable Example: dtls match-server-identity ip-address <IPv4 or IPv6>	Configure the RADSEC certification validation parameters.

Configuring DTLS Dynamic Author

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support.
Step 4	dtls Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# dtls	Configures DTLS source parameters.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling DTLS for Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support.
Step 4	client IP_addr dtls Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls	Enables DTLS for the client.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Client Trustpoint for DTLS

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support.
Step 4	client IP_addr dtls {client-tp client-tp-name server-tp server-tp-name} Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls client-tp client_tp_name	Configures client trustpoint for DTLS.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring DTLS Idle Timeout

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author</pre>	Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support.
Step 4	client <i>IP_addr</i> dtls idletimeout <i>timeout-interval</i> {<i>client-tp client_tp_name</i> <i>server-tp server_tp_name</i>} Example: <pre>Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls idletimeout 62 client-tp dtls_ise</pre>	Configures DTLS idle time. Here, <i>timeout-interval</i> refers to the idle timeout interval. The valid range is from 60 to 600.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Server Trustpoint for DTLS

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device# enable</pre>	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author</pre>	Configures local server profile for RFC 3576 support.
Step 4	client <i>IP_addr</i> dtls server-tp <i>server_tp_name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 10.104.49.14 dtls server-tp dtls_client</pre>	Configures server trust point.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying the RADIUS DTLS Server Configuration

To view information about the DTLS enabled servers, use the following command:

```
Device# show aaa servers
DTLS: Packet count since last idletimeout 1,
Send handshake count 3,
Handshake Success 1,
Total Packets Transmitted 1,
Total Packets Received 1,
Total Connection Resets 2,
Connection Reset due to idle timeout 0,
Connection Reset due to No Response 2,
Connection Reset due to Malformed packet 0,
```

Clearing RADIUS DTLS Specific Statistics

To clear the radius DTLS specific statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# clear aaa counters servers radius {<server-id> | all}
```



Note Here, *server-id* refers to the server ID displayed by **show aaa servers**. The valid range is from 0 to 2147483647.



CHAPTER 115

Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring

- [Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring, on page 1177](#)
- [Configuring Policy Enforcement and Enabling Change-of-Authorization \(CLI\), on page 1177](#)
- [Example: Configuring Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring, on page 1178](#)
- [Verifying Policy Usage and Enforcement, on page 1179](#)

Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring

You can enforce dynamic QoS policies and upstream and downstream TCP or UDP data rates on 802.11 clients seamlessly without disrupting the client's ongoing sessions. The feature ensures that clients do not have to get dissociated from the network. All the authentication methods: 802.1X, PSK, web authentication, and so on, are supported.

The APs periodically send client statistics including bandwidth usage to the Controller. The AAA server receives Accounting-Interim messages which include the clients data utilization at the configured intervals. The AAA server accumulates information about data consumption for each client and when the client exhausts the data limit, the AAA server sends a change-of-authorization (CoA) message to the Controllers. Upon successful CoA handshakes, the Controllers apply and send new policies to the APs.

Restrictions on Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring

- Only FlexConnect local switching mode is supported.

Configuring Policy Enforcement and Enabling Change-of-Authorization (CLI)

For more information, follow the utility specified in Utilities for configuring Security section of this guide.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	aaa server radius dynamic-author Example: Device(config)# aaa server radius dynamic-author	Creates a local server RADIUS profile in the controller.
Step 3	client <i>client-ip-addr</i> server-key <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-locsvr-da-radius)# client 3.2.4.3 server-key testpwd	Configures a server key for a RADIUS client.
Step 4	[Optional] show aaa command handler Example: Device#show aaa command handler	Displays the AAA CoA packet statistics.

Example: Configuring Policy Enforcement and Usage Monitoring

Policy enforcement and usage monitoring is applied on a group where a class-map is created for QOS policies. This is done via CoA.

Given below is a sample configuration for policy enforcement and usage monitoring:

```

aaa new-model
 radius server radius_free
 address ipv4 10.0.0.1 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
 key cisco123
 exit

aaa new-model
 aaa server radius dynamic-author
 client 10.0.0.1 server-key cisco123
aaa new-model
 aaa group server radius rad_eap
 server name radius_free
 exit
aaa new-model
 dot1x system-auth-control
 aaa authentication dot1x eap_methods group rad_eap
 dot1x system-auth-control
class-map client_dscp_clsmapout
match dscp af13
exit
class-map client_dscp_clsmapin
match dscp af13
exit
policy-map qos_new
 class client_dscp_clsmapout
 police 512000 conform-action transmit exceed-action drop
 policy-map qos_nbn
 class client_dscp_clsmapin
 police 16000000 conform-action transmit exceed-action drop
wlan test1 3 test2

```

```
broadcast-ssid
security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
security dot1x authentication-list eap_methods
no shutdown
exit
wireless profile policy named-policy-profile
shutdown
vlan 10
aaa-override
no central association
no central dhcp
no central switching
no shutdown
wireless tag policy named-policy-tag
wlan test1 policy named-policy-profile
wireless profile flex FP_name_001
native-vlan-id 10
wireless tag site ST_name_001
no local-site
flex-profile FP_name_001
exit
ap test-ap
policy-tag named-policy-tag
site-tag ST_name_001
exit
aaa authorization network default group radius
exit
```

Verifying Policy Usage and Enforcement

To view the detailed information about the policies applied to a specific client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address mac-address detail
```

To view client-level mobility statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address mac-address mobility statistics
```

To view client-level roaming history for an active client in a sub-domain, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address mac-address mobility history
```

To view detailed parameters of a given profile policy, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed policy-name
```




CHAPTER 116

Local Extensible Authentication Protocol

- [Information About Local EAP, on page 1181](#)
- [Restrictions for Local EAP, on page 1182](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP Profile \(CLI\), on page 1182](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP profile \(GUI\), on page 1183](#)
- [Configuring AAA Authentication \(GUI\), on page 1183](#)
- [Configuring AAA Authorization Method \(GUI\), on page 1183](#)
- [Configuring AAA Authorization Method \(CLI\), on page 1184](#)
- [Configuring Local Advanced Methods \(GUI\), on page 1185](#)
- [Configuring WLAN \(GUI\), on page 1185](#)
- [Configuring WLAN \(CLI\), on page 1186](#)
- [Creating a User Account \(CLI\), on page 1186](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface \(GUI\), on page 1187](#)
- [Deploy Policy Tag to Access Points \(GUI\), on page 1188](#)

Information About Local EAP

Local Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) feature refers to the controller that acts as authenticator and authentication server. Local EAP allows 802.1x authentication on WPA Enterprise wireless clients without the use of any RADIUS server. The Local EAP refers to the EAP authentication server activity and not necessarily tied to the user credentials validation (for example) that can be delegated to an external LDAP database.

Feature Scenarios

Local EAP is designed to allow administrators to use Enterprise-grade 802.1x authentication for a limited number of users in situations and branches where an external dedicated RADIUS server may not be available. It can also work as an emergency backup in case the RADIUS server is not available.

Use Cases

You can implement Local EAP either with users local to the controller or use an external LDAP database to store the user credentials.

Restrictions for Local EAP

- It is not possible to configure AAA attributes, such as per-user ACL or per-user session timeout using local EAP.
- Local EAP only allows user database either locally on the controller or on an external LDAP database.
- Local EAP supports TLS 1.2 as of 17.1 and later software release.
- Local EAP uses the trustpoint of your choice on the controller. You will either need to install a publicly trusted certificate on the controller or import it on the clients for the EAP session to be trusted by the client.
- Local EAP supports *EAP-FAST*, *EAP-TLS*, and *PEAP* as EAP authentication methods.



Note *PEAP-mschapv2* does not work when using certain external LDAP databases that only support clear text passwords.

Configuring Local EAP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	eap profile name Example: Device(config)# eap profile mylocapeap	Creates an EAP profile.
Step 3	method peap Example: Device(config-eap-profile)# method peap	Configures the PEAP method on the profile.
Step 4	pki-trustpoint name Example: Device(config-eap-profile)# pki-trustpoint admincert	Configures the PKI trustpoint on the profile.

Configuring Local EAP profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Local EAP**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Create Local EAP Profiles** page, enter a profile name.

Note

It is not advised to use LEAP EAP method due to its weak security. You can use any of the following EAP methods to configure a trustpoint:

- EAP-FAST
- EAP-TLS
- PEAP

Clients do not trust the default controller certificate, so you need to deactivate the server certificate validation on the client side or install a certificate trustpoint on the controller.

- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring AAA Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA**, and navigate to the **AAA Method List > Authentication** tabs.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** Choose **dot1x** as the **Type** and **local** as the **Group Type**.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring AAA Authorization Method (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Navigate to **Authorization** sub-tab.

Step 2 Create a new method for **credential-download** type and point it to local.

Note

Perform the same for **network** authorization type.

Configuring AAA Authorization Method (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Creates a AAA authentication model.
Step 3	aaa authentication dot1x default local Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default local	Configures the default local RADIUS server.
Step 4	aaa authorization credential-download default local Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization credential-download default local	Configures default database to download credentials from local server.
Step 5	aaa local authentication default authorization default Example: Device(config)# aaa local authentication default authorization default	Configures the local authentication method list.
Step 6	aaa authorization network default local Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization network default local	Configures authorization for network services.

Configuring Local Advanced Methods (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Configuration > Security > AAA** window, perform the following:
- Navigate to **AAA Advanced** tab.
 - From the **Local Authentication** drop-down list, choose a default local authentication.
 - From the **Local Authorization** drop-down list, choose a default local authorization.
- Step 2** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** In the **WLANs** window, click the name of the **WLAN** or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 3** In the **Add/Edit WLAN** window that is displayed, click the **General** tab to configure the following parameters.
- In the **Profile Name** field, enter or edit the name of the profile.
 - In the **SSID** field, enter or edit the SSID name.
The SSID name can be alphanumeric, and up to 32 characters in length.
 - In the **WLAN ID** field, enter or edit the ID number. The valid range is between 1 and 512.
 - From the **Radio Policy** drop-down list, choose the **802.11** radio band.
 - Using the **Broadcast SSID** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
 - Using the **Status** toggle button, change the status to either **Enabled** or **Disabled**.
- Step 4** In the **AAA** tab, you can configure the following:
- Choose an authentication list from the drop-down.
 - Check the **Local EAP Authentication** check box to enable local EAP authentication on the WLAN. Also, choose the required **EAP Profile Name** from the drop-down list.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan localpeapssid 1 localpeapssid	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. <i>wlan-name</i> —Is the name of the configured WLAN. <i>wlan-id</i> —Is the wireless LAN identifier. The range is 1 to 512. <i>SSID-name</i> —Is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan wlan-name command.
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs.
Step 4	local-auth profile name Example: Device(config-wlan)# local-auth mylocaleap	Sets EAP Profile on an WLAN. <i>profile name</i> —Is the EAP profile on an WLAN.

Creating a User Account (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	user-name <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# user-name lxuser	Creates a user account.
Step 3	creation-time <i>time</i> Example: Device(config)# creation-time 1572730075	Creation time of the user account.
Step 4	description <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# description lxuser	Adds a user-defined description to the new user account.
Step 5	password 0 <i>password</i> Example: Device(config)# password 0 Cisco123	Creates a password for the user account.
Step 6	type network-user description <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config)# type network-user description lxuser	Specifies the type of user account.

Attaching a Policy Profile to a WLAN Interface (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags .
Step 2	On the Manage Tags page, click Policy tab.
Step 3	Click Add to view the Add Policy Tag window.
Step 4	Enter a name and description for the policy tag.
Step 5	Click Add to map the WLAN and policy.
Step 6	Choose the WLAN profile to map with the appropriate policy profile, and click the tick icon.
Step 7	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Deploy Policy Tag to Access Points (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** On the **All Access Points** page, click the access point you want to configure.
Make sure that the tags assigned are the ones you configured.
- Step 3** Click **Apply**.
-



Local EAP Ciphersuite

- [Information About Local EAP Ciphersuite, on page 1189](#)
- [Restrictions for Local EAP Ciphersuite, on page 1190](#)
- [Configuring Local EAP Ciphersuite \(CLI\), on page 1191](#)

Information About Local EAP Ciphersuite

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 Release, the controller acts as an SSL server supporting a hardcoded list of ciphersuites for each EAP application. From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 Release onwards, the controller is equipped with a knob that controls the list of ciphersuites when using local authentication.

The following table lists the hardcoded list of ciphersuites:

Table 73: Hardcoded List of Ciphersuites

Ciphersuites	Description
aes128-sha	Encryption Type <code>tls_rsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha</code> .
aes256-sha	Encryption Type <code>tls_rsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha</code> .
dhe-rsa-aes-gcm-sha2	Encryption Type <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_128_gcm_sha256</code> and <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_256_gcm_sha384</code> (TLS1.2 and above).
dhe-rsa-aes-sha2	Encryption Type <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha256</code> and <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha256</code> (TLS 1.2 and above).
dhe-rsa-aes128-sha	Encryption Type <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha</code> .
dhe-rsa-aes256-sha	Encryption Type <code>tls_dhe_rsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha</code> .
ecdhe-ecdsa-aes-gcm-sha2	Encryption Type <code>tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_128_gcm_sha256</code> and <code>tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_256_gcm_sha384</code> (TLS1.2 and above).

Ciphersuites	Description
ecdhe-ecdsa-aes-sha	Encryption Type tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha and tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha.
ecdhe-ecdsa-aes-sha2	Encryption Type tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha256 and tls_ecdhe_ecdsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha384(TLS1.2 and above).
ecdhe-rsa-aes-gcm-sha2	Encryption Type tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_128_gcm_sha256 and tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_256_gcm_sha384(TLS1.2 and above).
ecdhe-rsa-aes-sha	Encryption Type tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha and tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha.
ecdhe-rsa-aes-sha2	Encryption Type tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_128_cbc_sha256 and tls_ecdhe_rsa_with_aes_256_cbc_sha384(TLS1.2 and above).

When the Client and Server Hello messages are exchanged, the client sends a prioritized list of ciphersuites it supports in Client Hello. The server then responds with the ciphersuite selected from the list in Server Hello. The server needs to select a ciphersuite that is acceptable to both the client and server. Using this approach, only one ciphersuite is selected and sent to the client.

The Local EAP ciphersuite feature controls the list of ciphersuites the controller as SSL server supports.



Note By default, all the ciphersuites are supported. Using the Local EAP ciphersuite feature, you can enable or disable the ciphersuites based on your requirement.

Restrictions for Local EAP Ciphersuite

- SNMP is not supported.
- Ciphersuites are specific to Dot1x.

Configuring Local EAP Ciphersuite (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	eap profile <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# eap profile local_EAP_TLSv1	Creates an EAP profile.
Step 4	ciphersuite <i>cipher-suite</i> Example: Device(config-eap-profile)# ciphersuite <cipher-suite>	Select a ciphersuite. Note Using this command, you will be able to configure only one ciphersuite. To configure more than one ciphersuite, you need to issue this command with various ciphersuites. To remove the ciphersuites, you need to remove the ciphersuites one by one or all at once. By default all ciphersuites are supported, if you issue the no ciphersuite command.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-eap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.



CHAPTER 118

Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers

- [Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers](#), on page 1193
- [Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers](#), on page 1194
- [Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers](#), on page 1201
- [Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration](#), on page 1202
- [Configuration Examples](#), on page 1203

Information About Authentication and Authorization Between Multiple RADIUS Servers

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller uses the approach of request and response transaction with a single RADIUS server that combines both authentication and authorization. You can split the authentication and authorization on the controller between multiple RADIUS servers.

A RADIUS sever can assume the role of either an authentication server, authorization server, or both. In cases where there are disparate RADIUS servers for authentication and authorization, the Session Aware Networking (SANet) component on the controller now allows authentication on one server and authorization on another when a client joins the controller .

Authentication can be done using the Cisco ISE, Cisco Catalyst Center, Free RADIUS, or any third-party RADIUS Server. After successful authentication from an authentication server, the controller relays attributes received from the authentication server to another RADIUS sever designated as authorization server.

The authorization server then performs the following:

- Processes received attributes with the other policies or rules defined on the server.
- Derives attributes as part of the authorization response and returns it to the controller .



Note

In a split authentication and authorization configuration, both servers must be available and must successfully authenticate and authorize with an ACCESS-ACCEPT for a session to be accepted by the controller .



Note A maximum of 100 entries is supported in the Authentication/Authorization list created through Cisco Catalyst Center provisioning. The entries beyond 100 do not work even though they can be created.

Configuring 802.1X Security for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers

Configuring Explicit Authentication and Authorization Server List (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA**.
- Step 2** On the **Authentication Authorization and Accounting** page, click the **Servers/Groups** tab.
- Step 3** Click the type of AAA server you want to configure from the following options:
- RADIUS
 - TACACS+
 - LDAP
- In this procedure, the RADIUS server configuration is described.
- Step 4** With the **RADIUS** option selected, click **Add**.
- Step 5** Enter a name for the RADIUS server and the IPv4 or IPV6 address of the server.
- Step 6** Enter the authentication and encryption key to be used between the device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server. You can choose to use either a PAC key or a non-PAC key.
- Step 7** Enter the server timeout value; valid range is 1 to 1000 seconds.
- Step 8** Enter a retry count; valid range is 0 to 100.
- Step 9** Leave the **Support for CoA** field in **Enabled** state.
- Step 10** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
- Step 11** On the **Authentication Authorization and Accounting** page, with **RADIUS** option selected, click the **Server Groups** tab.
- Step 12** Click **Add**.
- Step 13** In the **Create AAA RADIUS Server Group** window that is displayed, enter a name for the RADIUS server group.
- Step 14** From the **MAC-Delimiter** drop-down list, choose the delimiter to be used in the MAC addresses that are sent to the RADIUS servers.
- Step 15** From the **MAC Filtering** drop-down list, choose a value based on which to filter MAC addresses.
- Step 16** To configure dead time for the server group and direct AAA traffic to alternative groups of servers that have different operational characteristics, in the **Dead-Time** field, enter the amount of time, in minutes, after which a server is assumed to be dead.

- Step 17** Choose the servers that you want to include in the server group from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.
- Step 18** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA > Servers/Groups**.
- Step 2** Choose **RADIUS > Servers** tab.
- Step 3** Click **Add** to add a new server or click an existing server.
- Step 4** Enter the **Name**, the **Server Address**, **Key**, **Confirm Key**, **Auth Port** and **Acct Port**. Check the **PAC Key** checkbox and enter the **PAC key** and **Confirm PAC Key**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 6** Choose **RADIUS > Server Groups** and click **Add** to add a new server group or click an existing server group.
- Step 7** Enter the **Name** of the server group and choose the servers that you want to include in the server group, from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Explicit Authentication Server List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server free-radius-authc-server	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 4	address ipv4 <i>address</i> auth-port <i>auth_port_number</i> acct-port <i>acct_port_number</i>	Specifies the RADIUS server parameters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813</pre>	
Step 5	[pac] key <i>key</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco</pre>	Specify the authentication and encryption key used between the Device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.
Step 6	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-radius-server)# exit</pre>	Returns to the configuration mode.
Step 7	aaa group server radius <i>server-group</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa group server radius authc-server-group</pre>	Creates a radius server-group identification. <i>server-group</i> refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. If the IP address of the RADIUS server is not added to the routes defined for the controller, the default route is used. We recommend that you define a specific route to source the traffic from the defined SVI in the AAA server group.
Step 8	server name <i>server-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# server name free-radius-authc-server</pre>	Configures the server name.
Step 9	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode. For more information, see Configuring AAA for External Authentication.

Configuring Explicit Authorization Server List (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA > Servers/Groups**.
 - Step 2** Choose **RADIUS > Servers** tab.
 - Step 3** Click **Add** to add a new server or click an existing server.
 - Step 4** Enter the **Name**, the **Server Address**, **Key**, **Confirm Key**, **Auth Port** and **Acct Port**. Check the **PAC Key** checkbox and enter the **PAC key** and **Confirm PAC Key**

- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 6** Choose **RADIUS > Server Groups** and click **Add** to add a new server group or click an existing server group.
- Step 7** Enter the **Name** of the server group and choose the servers that you want to include in the server group, from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configure Explicit Authorization Server List (CLI)

You must direct AAA validation access requests to a specific server. Otherwise, the wireless controller selects any available AAA server from the configured pool to validate access requests. Because the controller cannot target a specific server for validation, you may face inefficiencies and potential security vulnerabilities.

To address this, an authorization method list is created to allow administrators to explicitly direct the controller to use a specific AAA server or the local database for validation. This configuration ensures a streamlined and secure validation process by eliminating randomness in server selection.

Benefits of this approach are:

- **Improved Control:** You can explicitly define which AAA server handles validation requests and ensure precise control over server selection.
- **Flexibility:** You can configure either an external AAA server or a local database based on the network's requirements.
- **Enhanced Security:** By specifying the AAA server, you can ensure that only trusted servers are used for validation, reducing the risk of unauthorized access.

Follow these steps to configure an explicit authorization server list using the command line interface:

Procedure

- Step 1** **enable**
- Example:**
- ```
Device> enable
```
- Enables privileged EXEC mode.
- Enter your password if prompted.
- Step 2** **configure terminal**
- Example:**
- ```
Device# configure terminal
```
- Enters global configuration mode.
- Step 3** **aaa new-model**
- Sets up the security framework by enabling AAA features for authentication, authorization, and accounting.

- Step 4** Configures a RADIUS server to enable centralized authentication, authorization, and accounting for secure and scalable network access control.
- radius server** *server-name*
Specifies the RADIUS server name.
 - address ipv4** *address* **auth-port** *auth_port_number* **acct-port** *acct_port_number*
Specifies the RADIUS server parameters.
 - pac key** *key*
Specify the authorization and encryption key used between the device and the RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server by key string encryption.

d) **exit**

Example:

```
Device(config)# radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 10.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Device(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
```

- Step 5** Configure the RADIUS group.

- aaa group server radius** *server-group*
Creates a radius server-group identification.

Note

server-group refers to the server group name. The valid range is from one to 32 alphanumeric characters.

- server name** *server-name*
- end**

Example:

```
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group
Device(config-sg-radius)# server name cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config-sg-radius)# exit
```

- Step 6** **aaa authorization network roged group** *group-name*

Using the previously specified server group, defines a network-level authorization policy for access control.

Example:

```
Device(config)# aaa authorization network roged group authz-server-group
```

- Step 7** Creates an attribute list to apply custom authentication or authorization attributes.

- aaa attribute list** *aaa-attribute-list-name*
Creates an attribute list to specify policies for rogue AP detection and control and enters the attribute list configuration mode.
- aaa attribute type rogue-ap-state** {**alert** | **contain** | **threat** }
Identifies the device with a specific rogue state for network policies.
- aaa attribute type rogue-ap-class** {**unclassified** | **malicious** | **friendly** }
Identifies the device with a specific rogue class for network policies.

Example:

```
Device(config)# aaa attribute list rogue-attributes
Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type rogue-ap-state "alert"
Device(config-attr-list)# attribute type rogue-ap-class "malicious"
Device(config-attr-list)# exit
```

Step 8 **username** *user-name* **mac** *aaa attribute list aaa-attribute-list-name*

Defines a client with a specific MAC address as a *username* and associates it with the previously defined AAA attribute list. This allows for controlled access or applies policy decisions for that specific client.

Important

For rogue validation, the *username* must be a MAC address in the semicolon format.

Example:

In the example, you define a client with a specific MAC address (00:00:00:00:00:00) as a *username* and associate it with an AAA attribute list named **rogue-attributes**. This allows for the use of specific AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) attributes to be applied to this MAC address, typically to control access or apply policy decisions for that client.

```
Device(config)# username 00:00:00:00:00:00 mac aaa attribute list rogue-attributes
```

Step 9 **show running-config | include aaa**

Displays the AAA running configuration for review.

Setting up these configurations ensure that only authorized clients can access the network, and any suspicious activity is flagged and handled appropriately.

Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID**, and the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** In the **Security > AAA** tab, choose the Authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for 802.1X Security

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device> enable	Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-foo 222 foo-ssid	Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>wlan-name</i>: Is the name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Is the wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID-name</i>: Is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan wlan-name command.
Step 4	security dot1x authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list authc-server-group	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 5	security dot1x authorization-list authorize-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authorization-list authz-server-group	Specifies authorization list for dot1x security. For more information on the Cisco Catalyst Center , see the Cisco Catalyst Center documentation .
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Web Authentication for WLAN with Split Authentication and Authorization Servers

Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name , the SSID , and the WLAN ID .
Step 4	In the Security > Layer2 tab, uncheck the WPA Policy , AES and 802.1x check boxes.
Step 5	Check the MAC Filtering check box to enable the feature. With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the Authorization list from the Authorization List drop-down list.
Step 6	In the Security > AAA tab, choose the Authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Authentication and Authorization List for Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-bar 1 bar-ssid	Enters WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>wlan-name</i>: Is the name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Is the wireless LAN identifier. • <i>SSID-name</i>: Is the SSID name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan wlan-name command.
Step 4	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 7	security web-auth {authentication-list authenticate-list-name authorization-list authorize-list-name} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list authc-server-group	Enables authentication or authorization list for dot1x security. Note You get to view the following error, if you do not disable WPA security, AKM for dot1x, and WPA2 security: <i>% switch-1:dbm:wireless:web-auth cannot be enabled. Invalid WPA/WPA2 settings.</i>
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Split Authentication and Authorization Configuration

To view the WLAN details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run wlan
wlan wlan-foo 2 foo-ssid
security dot1x authentication-list authc-server-group
security dot1x authorization-list authz-server-group

wlan wlan-bar 3 bar-ssid
security web-auth authentication-list authc-server-group
security web-auth authorization-list authz-server-group
```

To view the AAA authentication and server details, use the following command:

```
Device# show run aaa
!
aaa authentication dot1x default group radius
```

```

username cisco privilege 15 password 0 cisco
!
!
radius server free-radius-authc-server
  address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  key cisco
!
radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
  address ipv4 9.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
  pac key cisco
!
!
aaa new-model
aaa session-id common
!

```

To view the authentication and authorization list for 802.1X security, use the following command:

```

Device# show wlan name wlan-foo | sec 802.1x
802.1x authentication list name      : authc-server-group
802.1x authorization list name     : authz-server-group
           802.1x                  : Enabled

```

To view the authentication and authorization list for web authentication, use the following command:

```

Device# show wlan name wlan-bar | sec Webauth
Webauth On-mac-filter Failure      : Disabled
Webauth Authentication List Name   : authc-server-group
Webauth Authorization List Name    : authz-server-group
Webauth Parameter Map              : Disabled

```

Configuration Examples

Configuring Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for Authentication with a Third-Party RADIUS Server: Example

This example shows how to configure Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for authentication with a third-party RADIUS server:

```

Device(config)# radius server free-radius-authc-server
Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.2.62.56 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
Device(config-radius-server)# key cisco
Device(config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authc-server-group
Device(config)# server name free-radius-authc-server
Device(config)# end

```

Configuring Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for Authorization with Cisco ISE or Cisco Catalyst Center: Example

This example shows how to configure Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for authorization with Cisco ISE or Cisco Catalyst Center:

```

Device(config)# radius server cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device (config-radius-server)# address ipv4 9.4.62.32 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813

```

```
Device (config-radius-server)# pac key cisco
Device (config-radius-server)# exit
Device(config)# aaa group server radius authz-server-group
Device(config)# server name cisco-catalyst-center-authz-server
Device(config)# end
```



CHAPTER 119

CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting

- [CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting Request, on page 1205](#)
- [Adding CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request, on page 1206](#)
- [Verifying CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request, on page 1206](#)

CUI Information in RADIUS Accounting Request

Chargeable User Identity (CUI) is a unique identifier for a client visiting a network regardless of the outer identity or the device used for login. In other words, CUI is an obscured version of a username. A client must be authenticated and authorized before being allowed to the network. The CUI attribute can be used as an alternative for a client's username as part of the authentication process.

To handle RADIUS attribute 89 processing, a null value of CUI is attached an access-request sent to a AAA server. This is done using the **access-session wireless cui-enable** command. As part of an access-accept message, a CUI-capable AAA server sends the CUI string to the controller. The controller then sends this received CUI attribute in accounting packets and other access-request packets, if any.

Prerequisites

Ensure that AAA override is enabled.

Restrictions

- Only 802.1x network authentication protocol is supported.
- Inter-Release Controller Mobility (IRCM) is not supported.
- FlexConnect local authentication is not supported. Only local mode and FlexConnect central authentication mode is supported.

Adding CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	access-session wireless cui-enable Example: Device(config)# access-session wireless cui-enable	Adds CUI attribute in authentication and accounting messages sent to the AAA server.

Verifying CUI Information in a RADIUS Accounting Request

To view the CUI attribute in an accounting request on a AAA server, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd detail
.
.
.
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment : capwap_90000005
  IIF ID               : 0x90000005
  Authorized           : TRUE
  Session timeout      : 1800
  Common Session ID: 8A45400A0000000CE0527C5F
  Acct Session ID   : 0x00000003
  Last Tried Aaa Server Details:
    Server IP : 10.64.69.141
  Auth Method Status List
    Method : Dot1x
             SM State       : AUTHENTICATED
             SM Bend State  : IDLE
  Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_default-policy-profile_local (priority 254)
    VLAN              : 59
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
  Server Policies:
    CUI               : 13e158006855c2ff718cc84487653f5a6ea55def
  Resultant Policies:
    CUI               : 13e158006855c2ff718cc84487653f5a6ea55def
    VLAN Name        : VLAN0059
    VLAN             : 59
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
```




CHAPTER 120

Secure LDAP

- [Information About SLDAP, on page 1207](#)
- [Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP, on page 1209](#)
- [Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP, on page 1209](#)
- [Configuring SLDAP, on page 1209](#)
- [Configuring an AAA Server Group \(GUI\), on page 1210](#)
- [Configuring a AAA Server Group, on page 1211](#)
- [Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request, on page 1212](#)
- [Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server, on page 1213](#)
- [Verifying the SLDAP Configuration, on page 1213](#)

Information About SLDAP

Transport Layer Security (TLS)

The Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data through privacy, authentication, and data integrity. TLS relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys to prove the identity of clients.

The certificates are issued by the Certificate Authorities (CAs).

Each certificate includes the following:

- The name of the authority that issued it.
- The name of the entity to which the certificate was issued.
- The public key of the entity.
- The timestamps of the entity that indicate the expiration date of the certificate.

You can find the TLS support for LDAP in the RFC2830 which is an extension to the LDAP protocol.

LDAP Operations

Bind

The bind operation is used to authenticate a user to the server. It is used to start a connection with the LDAP server. LDAP is a connection-oriented protocol. The client specifies the protocol version and authentication information.

LDAP supports the following binds:

- **Authenticated bind**—An authenticated bind is performed when a root Distinguished Name (DN) and password are available.
- **Anonymous bind**—In the absence of a root DN and password, an anonymous bind is performed.

In LDAP deployments, the search operation is performed first and the bind operation later. This is because, if a password attribute is returned as part of the search operation, the password verification can be done locally on an LDAP client. Thus, there is no need to perform an extra bind operation. If a password attribute is not returned, the bind operation can be performed later. Another advantage of performing a search operation first and a bind operation later is that the DN received in the search result can be used as the user DN instead of forming a DN by prefixing the username (cn attribute) with the base DN. All entries stored in an LDAP server have a unique DN.

The DN consists of two parts:

- **Relative Distinguished Name (RDN)**
- **Location in the LDAP server where the record resides.**

Most of the entries that you store in an LDAP server will have a name, and the name is frequently stored in the Common Name (cn) attribute. Because every object has a name, most objects you store in an LDAP will use their cn value as the basis for their RDN.

Search

A search operation is used to search the LDAP server. The client specifies the starting point (base DN) of the search, the search scope (either the object, its children, or the subtree rooted at the object), and a search filter.

For authorization requests, the search operation is directly performed without a bind operation. The LDAP server can be configured with certain privileges for the search operation to succeed. This privilege level is established with the bind operation.

An LDAP search operation can return multiple user entries for a specific user. In such cases, the LDAP client returns an appropriate error code to AAA. To avoid these errors, you must configure appropriate search filters to match a single entry.

Compare

The compare operation is used to replace a bind request with a compare request for an authentication. The compare operation helps to maintain the initial bind parameters for the connection.

LDAP Dynamic Attribute Mapping

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a powerful and flexible protocol for communication with AAA servers. LDAP attribute maps provide a method to cross-reference the attributes retrieved from a server to Cisco attributes supported by the security appliances.

When a user authenticates a security appliance, the security appliance, in turn, authenticates the server and uses the LDAP protocol to retrieve the record for that user. The record consists of LDAP attributes associated with fields displayed on the user interface of the server. Each attribute retrieved includes a value that was entered by the administrator who updates the user records.

Prerequisite for Configuring SLDAP

If you are using a secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) secure connection, you must configure the X.509 certificates.

Restrictions for Configuring SLDAP

- LDAP referrals are not supported.
- Unsolicited messages or notifications from the LDAP server are not handled.
- LDAP authentication is not supported for interactive (terminal) sessions.

Configuring SLDAP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ldap server <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# ldap server server1	Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enters LDAP server configuration mode.
Step 4	ipv4 <i>ipv4-address</i> Example: Device(config-ldap-server)# ipv4 9.4.109.20	Specifies the LDAP server IP address using IPv4.
Step 5	timeout retransmit <i>seconds</i> Example: Device(config-ldap-server)# timeout retransmit 20	Specifies the number of seconds the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller embedded wireless controller waits for a reply to an LDAP request before retransmitting the request.
Step 6	bind authenticate root-dn password [0 <i>string</i> 7 <i>string</i>] <i>string</i>	Specifies a shared secret text string used between the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-ldap-server) # bind authenticate root-dn CN=ldapipv6user,CN=Users,DC=ca,DC=ssh2,DC=com password Cisco12345</pre>	Wireless Controller embedded wireless controller and an LDAP server. Use the 0 line option to configure an unencrypted shared secret. Use the 7 line option to configure an encrypted shared secret.
Step 7	base-dn <i>string</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ldap-server) # base-dn CN=Users,DC=ca,DC=ssh2,DC=com</pre>	Specifies the base Distinguished Name (DN) of the search.
Step 8	mode secure [no- negotiation] Example: <pre>Device(config-ldap-server) # mode secure no- negotiation</pre>	Configures LDAP to initiate the TLS connection and specifies the secure mode.
Step 9	end Example: <pre>Device(config-ldap-server) # end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring an AAA Server Group (GUI)

Configuring a device to use AAA server groups helps you to group existing server hosts, select a subset of the configured server hosts and use them for a particular service. A server group is used with a global server-host list. The server group lists the IP addresses of the selected server hosts.

You can create the following server groups:

Procedure

Step 1

RADIUS

- Choose **Services > Security > AAA > Server Groups > RADIUS**.
- Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Radius Server Group** dialog box appears.
- Enter a name for the RADIUS server group in the **Name** field.
- Choose a desired delimiter from the **MAC-Delimiter** drop-down list. The available options are colon, hyphen, and single-hyphen.
- Choose a desired filter from the **MAC-Filtering** drop-down list. The available options are mac and Key.
- Enter a value in the **Dead-Time (mins)** field to make a server non-operational. You must specify a value between 1 and 1440.
- Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
- Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

Step 2 TACACS+

- a) Choose **Services > Security > AAA > Server Groups > TACACS+**.
- b) Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Tacacs Server Group** dialog box appears.
- c) Enter a name for the TACACS server group in the **Name** field.
- d) Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
- e) Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

Step 3 LDAP

- a) Choose **Services > Security > AAA > Server Groups > LDAP**.
- b) Click the **Add** button. The **Create AAA Ldap Server Group** dialog box appears.
- c) Enter a name for the LDAP server group in the **Name** field.
- d) Choose any of the available servers from the **Available Servers** list and move them to the **Assigned Servers** list by clicking the **>** button.
- e) Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

Configuring a AAA Server Group

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa new-model Example: Device(config)# aaa new-model	Enables AAA.
Step 4	aaa group server ldap group-name Example: Device(config)# aaa group server ldap name1	Defines the AAA server group with a group name and enters LDAP server group configuration mode. All members of a group must be of the same type, that is, RADIUS, LDAP, or TACACS+.
Step 5	server name Example: Device(config-ldap-sg)# server server1	Associates a particular LDAP server with the defined server group. Each security server is identified by its IP address and UDP port number.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-ldap-sg) # exit	Exits LDAP server group configuration mode.

Configuring Search and Bind Operations for an Authentication Request

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa new-model Example: Device(config) # aaa new-model	Enables AAA.
Step 4	ldap server <i>name</i> Example: Device(config) # ldap server server1	Defines a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server and enters LDAP server configuration mode.
Step 5	authentication bind-first Example: Device(config-ldap-server) # authentication bind-first	Configures the sequence of search and bind operations for an authentication request.
Step 6	authentication compare Example: Device(config-ldap-server) # authentication compare	Replaces the bind request with the compare request for authentication.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-ldap-server) # exit	Exits LDAP server group configuration mode.

Configuring a Dynamic Attribute Map on an SLDAP Server

You must create LDAP attribute maps that map your existing user-defined attribute names and values to Cisco attribute names and values that are compatible with the security appliance. You can then bind these attribute maps to LDAP servers or remove them as required.



Note To use the attribute mapping features correctly, you need to understand the Cisco LDAP and user-defined attribute names and values.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ldap attribute-map <i>map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ldap attribute-map map1	Configures a dynamic LDAP attribute map and enters attribute-map configuration mode.
Step 4	map type <i>ldap-attr-type</i> <i>aaa-attr-type</i> Example: Device(config-attr-map)# map type department supplicant-group	Defines an attribute map.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-attr-map)# exit	Exits attribute-map configuration mode.

Verifying the SLDAP Configuration

To view details about the default LDAP attribute mapping, use the following command:

```
Device# show ldap attributes
```

To view the LDAP server state information and various other counters for the server, use the following command:

```
Device# show ldap server
```




CHAPTER 121

Network Access Server Identifier

- [Information About Network Access Server Identifier, on page 1215](#)
- [Creating a NAS ID Policy\(GUI\), on page 1216](#)
- [Creating a NAS ID Policy, on page 1216](#)
- [Attaching a Policy to a Tag \(GUI\), on page 1217](#)
- [Attaching a Policy to a Tag \(CLI\), on page 1218](#)
- [Verifying the NAS ID Configuration, on page 1218](#)

Information About Network Access Server Identifier

Network access server identifier (NAS-ID) is used to notify the source of a RADIUS access request, which enables the RADIUS server to choose a policy for that request. You can configure one on each WLAN profile, VLAN interface, or access point group. The NAS-ID is sent to the RADIUS server by the controller through an authentication request to classify users to different groups. This enables the RADIUS server to send a customized authentication response.



Note The acct-session-id is sent with the RADIUS access request only when accounting is enabled on the policy profile.

If you configure a NAS-ID for an AP group, it overrides the NAS-ID that is configured for a WLAN profile or the VLAN interface. Similarly, if you configure a NAS-ID for a WLAN profile, it overrides the NAS-ID that is configured for the VLAN interface.

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1, a new string named custom-string (custom string) is added.

The following options can be configured for a NAS ID:

- sys-name (System Name)
- sys-ip (System IP Address)
- sys-mac (System MAC Address)
- ap-ip (AP's IP address)
- ap-name (AP's Name)
- ap-mac (AP's MAC Address)

- ap-eth-mac (AP's Ethernet MAC Address)
- ap-policy-tag (AP's policy tag name)
- ap-site-tag (AP's site tag name)
- ssid (SSID Name)
- ap-location (AP's Location)
- custom-string (custom string)

Creating a NAS ID Policy(GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless AAA Policy**.
 - Step 2** On the **Wireless AAA Policy** page, click the name of the **Policy** or click **Add** to create a new one.
 - Step 3** In the **Add/Edit Wireless AAA Policy** window that is displayed, enter the name of the policy in the **Policy Name** field.
 - Step 4** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 1** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 2** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Choose from one of the NAS ID options from the **Option 3** drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Save the configuration.
-

Creating a NAS ID Policy

Follow the procedure given below to create NAS ID policy:

Before you begin

- NAS ID can be a combination of multiple NAS ID options; the maximum options are limited to 3.
- The maximum length of the NAS ID attribute is 253. Before adding a new attribute, the attribute buffer is checked, and if there is no sufficient space, the new attribute is ignored.
- By default, a wireless aaa policy (default-aaa-policy) is created with the default configuration (sys-name). You can update this policy with various NAS ID options. However, the default-aaa-policy cannot be deleted.
- If a NAS ID is not configured, the default sys-name is considered as the NAS ID for all wireless-specific RADIUS packets (authentication and accounting) from the controller .
- Starting with Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1, you can configure a custom string with various combinations of option1, option2 and option3 (**nas-id option3 custom-string custom-string**) as NAS ID in RADIUS packets.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless aaa policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless aaa policy test	Configures a new AAA policy.
Step 3	nas-id option1 sys-name Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option1 sys-name	Configures NAS ID for option1.
Step 4	nas-id option2 sys-ip Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option2 sys-ip	Configures NAS ID for option2.
Step 5	nas-id option3 sys-mac Example: Device(config-aaa-policy)# nas-id option3 sys-mac	Configures NAS ID for option3.

Attaching a Policy to a Tag (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** and enter a name for the new policy, for example, test1, in the **General** tab.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab, and under **AAA Policy**, from the **Policy Name** drop-down list, select the policy name that you had created in the **General** tab.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 5** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags** page, click **Policy** tab.
- Step 6** Click **Add** to view the **Add Policy Tag** window.
- Step 7** Enter a name and description for the policy tag.
- Step 8** Click **Add** to map WLAN profile and Policy profile.
- Step 9** Choose the **WLAN Profile** to map with the appropriate **Policy Profile**, and click the tick icon.

Step 10 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Attaching a Policy to a Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to attach a NAS ID policy to a tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test1	Configures a WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	aaa-policy <i>aaa-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-policy test	Configures a AAA policy profile.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy policy-tag1	Configures a wireless policy tag.
Step 6	wlan wlan1 policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1 policy test1	Maps a WLAN profile to a policy profile. Note You can also use the ap-tag option to configure a NAS ID for an AP group, which will override the NAS ID that is configured for a WLAN profile or the VLAN interface.

Verifying the NAS ID Configuration

Use the following **show** command to verify the NAS ID configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed test1
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : test1
Description              :
Status                   : ENABLED
VLAN                     : 1
Client count             : 0
```

```
:
```

```
AAA Policy Params
  AAA Override           : DISABLED
  NAC                     : DISABLED
  AAA Policy name        : test
```




Locally Significant Certificates

- [Information About Locally Significant Certificates, on page 1221](#)
- [Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates, on page 1223](#)
- [Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates, on page 1224](#)
- [Verifying LSC Configuration, on page 1235](#)
- [Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC \(GUI\), on page 1236](#)
- [Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC \(CLI\), on page 1236](#)
- [Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller, on page 1237](#)
- [LSC Fallback Access Points, on page 1241](#)
- [Configuring Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join, on page 1243](#)

Information About Locally Significant Certificates

This module explains how to configure the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and Lightweight Access Points (LAPs) to use the Locally Significant Certificate (LSC). If you choose the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) with LSC, you can generate the LSC on the APs and controllers. You can then use the certificates to mutually authenticate the controllers and the APs.

In Cisco controllers, you can configure the controller to use an LSC. Use an LSC if you want your own PKI to provide better security, have control of your Certificate Authority (CA), and define policies, restrictions, and usages on the generated certificates.

You need to provision the new LSC certificate on the controller and then the Lightweight Access Point (LAP) from the CA Server.

The LAP communicates with the controller using the CAPWAP protocol. Any request to sign the certificate and issue the CA certificates for LAP and controller itself must be initiated from the controller. The LAP does not communicate directly with the CA server. The CA server details must be configured on the controller and must be accessible.

The controller makes use of the Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) to forward certReqs generated on the devices to the CA and makes use of SCEP again to get the signed certificates from the CA.

The SCEP is a certificate management protocol that the PKI clients and CA servers use to support certificate enrollment and revocation. It is widely used in Cisco and supported by many CA servers. In SCEP, HTTP is used as the transport protocol for the PKI messages. The primary goal of SCEP is the secure issuance of certificates to network devices. SCEP is capable of many operations, but for our release, SCEP is utilized for the following operations:

- CA and Router Advertisement (RA) Public Key Distribution
- Certificate Enrollment

Certificate Provisioning in Controllers

The new LSC certificates, both CA and device certificates, must be installed on the controller.

With the help of SCEP, CA certificates are received from the CA server. During this point, there are no certificates in the controller. After the **get** operation of obtaining the CA certificates, are installed on the controller. The same CA certificates are also pushed to the APs when the APs are provisioned with LSCs.



Note We recommend that you use a new RSA keypair name for the newly configured PKI certificate. If you want to reuse an existing RSA keypair name (that is associated with an old certificate) for a new PKI certificate, do either of the following:

- Do not regenerate a new RSA keypair with an existing RSA keypair name, reuse the existing RSA keypair name. Regenerating a new RSA keypair with an existing RSA keypair name will make all the certificates associated with the existing RSA keypair invalid.
- Manually remove the old PKI certificate configurations first, before reusing the existing RSA keypair name for the new PKI certificate.

Device Certificate Enrollment Operation

For both the LAP and the controller that request a CA-signed certificate, the certRequest is sent as a PKCS#10 message. The certRequest contains the Subject Name, Public Key, and other attributes to be included in the X.509 certificate, and must be digitally signed by the Private Key of the requester. These are then sent to the CA, which transforms the certRequest into an X.509 certificate.

The CA that receives a PKCS#10 certRequest requires additional information to authenticate the requester's identity and verify if the request is unaltered. (Sometimes, PKCS#10 is combined with other approaches, such as PKCS#7 to send and receive the certificate request or response.)

The PKCS#10 is wrapped in a PKCS#7 Signed Data message type. This is supported as part of the SCEP client functionality, while the PKCSReq message is sent to the controller. Upon successful enrollment operation, both the CA and device certificates are available on the controller.

Certificate Provisioning on Lightweight Access Point

In order to provision a new certificate on LAP, while in CAPWAP mode, the LAP must be able to get the new signed X.509 certificate. In order to do this, it sends a certRequest to the controller, which acts as a CA proxy and helps obtain the certRequest signed by the CA for the LAP.

The certReq and the certResponses are sent to the LAP with the LWAPP payloads.

Both the LSC CA and the LAP device certificates are installed in the LAP, and the system reboots automatically. The next time when the system comes up, because it is configured to use LSCs, the AP sends the LSC device certificate to the controller as part of the JOIN Request. As part of the JOIN Response, the controller sends the new device certificate and also validates the inbound LAP certificate with the new CA root certificate.

What to Do Next

To configure, authorize, and manage certificate enrollment with the existing PKI infrastructure for controller and AP, you need to use the LSC provisioning functionality.

Restrictions for Locally Significant Certificates

- LSC workflow is different in FIPS+WLANCC mode. CA server must support Enrollment over Secure Transport (EST) protocol and should be capable of issuing EC certificates in FIPS+WLANCC mode.
- Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA) cipher works only if both AP and controller are having EC certificates, provisioned with LSC.
- EC certificates (LSC-EC) can be provisioned only if CA server supports EST (and not SCEP).
- FIPS + CC security modes is required to be configured in order to provision EC certificate.
- All AP misconfigurations should be corrected before enabling LSC. The count for misconfigured APs can be observed in the output of the following **show** command:

```
Device# show wireless summary
Priming controller      : DISABLED
Max APs supported       : 3000
Max clients supported   : 32000
Access Point Summary

-----
Total      Up      Down
-----
802.11 2.4GHz      2      2      0
802.11 5GHz        5      2      3
802.11 6GHz        1      1      0
802.11 dual-band   2      0      2
802.11 dual-band(5/6GHz) 0      0      0
802.11 rx-dual-band 0      0      0
Client Serving(2.4GHz) 3      1      2
Client Serving(5GHz)  4      1      3
Client Serving(6GHz)  1      1      0
Monitor(Dual band)   0      0      0
Monitor(2.4GHz)      1      1      0
Monitor(5GHz)        1      1      0
Monitor(6GHz)        0      0      0
Sniffer(Dual band)   0      0      0
Sniffer(2.4GHz)      0      0      0
Sniffer(5GHz)        0      0      0
Sniffer(6GHz)        0      0      0
Misconfigured APs      1 (For more info use 'show ap tag summary')
Client Summary
  Total Clients : 0
  Excluded      : 0
  Disabled      : 0
  Foreign       : 0
  Anchor        : 0
  Local         : 0
```

For more information about misconfigured APs, run the **wireless config validate** command. To view reported errors, run the **show wireless config validation status** command.

Provisioning Locally Significant Certificates

Configuring RSA Key for PKI Trustpoint

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto key generate rsa [exportable] general-keys modulus <i>key_size</i> label <i>RSA_key</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus 2048 label lsc-tp</code>	Configures RSA key for PKI trustpoint. exportable is an optional keyword. You may or may not want to configure an exportable-key. If selected, you can export the key out of the box, if required • <i>key_size</i>: Size of the key modulus. The valid range is from 2048 to 4096. • <i>RSA_key</i>: RSA key pair label.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring PKI Trustpoint Parameters

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki trustpoint microsoft-ca</code>	Creates a new trustpoint for an external CA server. Here, <i>trustpoint_name</i> refers to the trustpoint name.
Step 3	enrollment url <i>HTTP_URL</i> Example:	Specifies the URL of the CA on which your router should send certificate requests.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://CA_server/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll</pre>	url url: URL of the file system where your router should send certificate requests. An IPv6 address can be added in the URL enclosed in brackets. For example: http://[2001:DB8:1:1::1]:80. For more enrollment method options, see the enrollment url (ca-trustpoint) command page.
Step 4	subject-name <i>subject_name</i> Example: <pre>Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name C=IN, ST=KA, L=Bengaluru, O=Cisco, CN=eagle-eye/emailAddress=support@abc.com</pre>	Creates subject name parameters for the trustpoint.
Step 5	rsakeypair <i>RSA_key key_size</i> Example: <pre>Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair ewlc-tp1</pre>	Maps RSA key with that of the trustpoint. • <i>RSA_key</i>: RSA key pair label. • <i>key_size</i>: Signature key length. Range is from 360 to 4096.
Step 6	revocation {crl none ocsf} Example: <pre>Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation none</pre>	Checks revocation.
Step 7	end Example: <pre>Device(ca-trustpoint)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.
- Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpoints** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Add Trustpoint** dialog box, provide the following information:
- In the **Label** field, enter the RSA key label.
 - In the **Enrollment URL** field, enter the enrollment URL.
 - Check the **Authenticate** check box to authenticate the Public Certificate from the enrollment URL.
 - In the **Subject Name** section, enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.
 - Check the **Key Generated** check box to view the available RSA keypairs. Choose an option from the **Available RSA Keypairs** drop-down list.
 - Check the **Enroll Trustpoint** check box.

- g) In the **Password** field, enter the password.
- h) In the **Re-Enter Password** field, confirm the password.
- i) Click **Apply to Device**.

The new trustpoint is added to the trustpoint name list.

Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI Trustpoint with CA Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki authenticate <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki authenticate microsoft-ca</code>	Fetches the CA certificate.
Step 3	yes Example: Device(config)# % Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.	
Step 4	crypto pki enroll <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki enroll microsoft-ca</code> % % Start certificate enrollment .. % Create a challenge password. You will need to verbally provide this password to the CA Administrator in order to revoke your certificate. For security reasons your password will not be saved in the configuration. Please make a note of it.	Enrolls the client certificate.
Step 5	password Example: Device(config)# <code>abcd123</code>	Enters a challenge password to the CA server.
Step 6	password Example: Device(config)# <code>abcd123</code>	Re-enters a challenge password to the CA server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	yes Example: <pre>Device(config)# % Include the router serial number in the subject name? [yes/no]: yes</pre>	
Step 8	no Example: <pre>Device(config)# % Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: no</pre>	
Step 9	yes Example: <pre>Device(config)# Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes % Certificate request sent to Certificate Authority % The 'show crypto pki certificate verbose client' command will show the fingerprint.</pre>	
Step 10	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click the LSC Provision name.
 - Step 3** From the **Status** drop-down list, choose a status to enable LSC.
 - Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint.
 - Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that will be permitted.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision join-attempt <i>number_of_attempts</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap lsc-provision join-attempt 10</code>	Specifies the maximum number of AP join failure attempts with the newly provisioned LSC certificate. When the number of AP joins exceed the specified limit, AP joins back with the Manufacturer Installed Certificate (MIC).
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Subject-Name Parameters in LSC Certificate

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision subject-name-parameter country <i>country-str</i> state <i>state-str</i> city <i>city-str</i> domain <i>domain-str</i> org <i>org-str</i> email-address <i>email-addr-str</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap lsc-provision subject-name-parameter country India state Karnataka city Bangalore domain domain1 org Right email-address adc@gfe.com</code>	Specifies the attributes to be included in the subject-name parameter of the certificate request generated by an AP.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Key Size for LSC Certificate

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision key-size { 2048 3072 4096 } Example: Device(config)# <code>ap lsc-provision key-size 2048</code>	Specifies the size of keys to be generated for the LSC on AP.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Trustpoint for LSC Provisioning on an Access Point

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision trustpoint <i>tp-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>ap lsc-provision trustpoint microsoft-ca</code>	Specifies the trustpoint with which the LCS is provisioned to an AP. <i>tp-name</i> : The trustpoint name.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click the corresponding LSC Provision name.
- Step 3** From the **Status** drop-down list, choose a status to enable LSC.
- Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose a trustpoint.
- Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that are allowed.
- Step 6** From the **Key Size** drop-down list, choose a key.
- Step 7** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **CAPWAP** tab.
- Step 8** In the **Add APs to LSC Provision List** section, click **Select File** to upload the CSV file that contains AP details.
- Step 9** Click **Upload File**.
- Step 10** In the **AP MAC Address** field, enter the AP MAC address. and add them. (The APs added to the provision list are displayed in the **APs in provision List**.)
- Step 11** In the **Subject Name Parameters** section, enter the following details:
- **Country**
 - **State**
 - **City**
 - **Organization**
 - **Department**
 - **Email Address**
- Step 12** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring an AP LSC Provision List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision mac-address <i>mac-addr</i> Example:	Adds the AP to the LSC provision list. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)# ap lsc-provision mac-address 001b.3400.02f0</pre>	You can provision a list of APs using the ap lsc-provision provision-list command. (Or) You can provision all the APs using the ap lsc-provision command.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring LSC Provisioning for all the APs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** In the **Access Points** window, expand the **LSC Provision** section.
- Step 3** Set **Status** to **Enabled** state.
- Note**
If you set **Status** to **Provision List**, LSC provisioning will be configured only for APs that are a part of the provision list.
- Step 4** From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the appropriate trustpoint for all APs.
- Step 5** In the **Number of Join Attempts** field, enter the number of retry attempts that the APs can make to join the controller.
- Step 6** From the **Key Size** drop-down list, choose the appropriate key size of the certificate:
- 2048
 - 3072
 - 4096
- Step 7** In the **Add APs to LSC Provision List** section, click **Select File** to upload the CSV file that contains the AP details.
- Step 8** Click **Upload File**.
- Step 9** In the **AP MAC Address** field, enter the AP MAC address. (The APs that are added to the provision list are displayed in the **APs in Provision List** section.)
- Step 10** In the **Subject Name Parameters** section, enter the following details:
- a. **Country**
 - b. **State**
 - c. **City**
 - d. **Organization**

- e. Department
- f. Email Address

Step 11 Click Apply.

Configuring LSC Provisioning for All APs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision Example: Device(config)# ap lsc-provision	Enables LSC provisioning for all APs. By default, LSC provisioning is disabled for all APs.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring LSC Provisioning for the APs in the Provision List

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision provision-list Example: Device(config)# ap lsc-provision provision-list	Enables LSC provisioning for a set of APs configured in the provision list.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (GUI)

PKI Trustpool Management is used to store a list of trusted certificates (either downloaded or built in) used by the different services on the controller. This is also used to authenticate a multilevel CA certificate. The built in CA certificate bundle in the PKI trustpool receives automatic updates from Cisco if they are not current, are corrupt, or if certain certificates need to be updated.

Perform this task to manually update the CA certificates in the PKI trustpool.



Note If your LSC has been issued by an intermediate CA, you must import the complete chain of CA certificates into the trustpool. Otherwise, you will not be able to provision the APs without the complete chain being present on the controller. The import step is not required if the certificate has been issued by a root CA.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.
- Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpool** tab.
- Step 3** Click **Import**.
- Step 4** In the **CA Certificate** field, copy and paste the CA certificate. Link together the multiple CA certificates in **.pem** format.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Importing a CA Certificate to the Trustpool (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki trust pool import terminal Example: Device(config)# crypto pki trust pool import terminal % Enter PEM-formatted CA certificate. % End with a blank line or "quit" on a line by itself. -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- -----END CERTIFICATE----- -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- -----END CERTIFICATE----- -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- -----END CERTIFICATE-----	Imports the root certificate. For this, you need to paste the CA certificate from the digicert.com .

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Aug 23 02:47:33.450: %PKI-6-TRUSTPOOL_DOWNLOAD_SUCCESS: Trustpool Download is successful	
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Cleaning the CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.

Step 2 In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Trustpool** tab.

Step 3 Click **Clean**.

Note

This erases the downloaded CA certificate bundles. However, it does not erase the built-in CA certificate bundles.

Step 4 Click **Yes**.

Cleaning CA Certificates Imported in Trustpool (CLI)

You cannot delete a specific CA certificate from the trustpool. However, you can clear all the CA certificates that are imported to the Trustpool.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki trustpool clean Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki trustpool clean</code>	Erases the downloaded CA certificate bundles. However, it does not erase the built-in CA certificate bundles.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Creating a New Trustpoint Dedicated to a Single CA Certificate

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki trustpoint <i>tp-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki trustpoint tp_name</code>	Creates a trustpoint.
Step 3	enrollment terminal Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# <code>enrollment terminal</code>	Creates an enrollment terminal for the trustpoint.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# <code>exit</code>	Exits from the trustpoint configuration.
Step 5	crypto pki authenticate <i>tp-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto pki authenticate tp_name</code> <<< PASTE CA-CERT in PEM format followed by quit >>>	Authenticates the trustpoint.

Verifying LSC Configuration

To view the details of the wireless management trustpoint, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless management trustpoint
```

```
Trustpoint Name : microsoft-ca
Certificate Info : Available
Certificate Type : LSC
Certificate Hash : 9e5623adba5307facf778e6ea2f5082877ea4beb
Private key Info : Available
```

To view the LSC provision-related configuration details for an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap lsc-provision summary
```

```
AP LSC-provisioning : Disabled
Trustpoint used for LSC-provisioning : lsc-root-tp
Certificate chain status : Available
Number of certs on chain : 2
```

```
Certificate hash : 7f9d05183deecac4e5a79db65d538245685e8e30
LSC Revert Count in AP reboots : 1
```

```
AP LSC Parameters :
Country : IN
State : KA
City : BLR
Orgn : ABC
Dept : ABC
Email : support@abc.com
Key Size : 2048
EC Key Size : 384 bit
```

```
AP LSC-provision List :
```

```
Total number of APs in provision list: 2
```

```
Mac Addresses :
-----
1880.90f5.1540
2c5a.0f70.84dc
```

Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS**.
 - Step 2** In the **HTTP Trust Point Configuration** section, set **Enable Trust Point** to the **Enabled** state.
 - Step 3** From the **Trust Points** drop-down list, choose the appropriate trustpoint.
 - Step 4** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring Management Trustpoint to LSC (CLI)

After LSC provisioning, the APs will automatically reboot and join at the LSC mode after bootup. Similarly, if you remove the AP LSC provisioning, the APs reboot and join at non-LSC mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless management trustpoint <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example:	Configures the management trustpoint to LSC.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint microsoft-ca</code>	
Step 3	end Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Information About MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller

Overview of Support for MIC and LSC Access Points Joining the Controller

In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.1 and earlier releases, APs with a default certificate (Manufacturing Installed Certificates [MIC]) or Secure Unique Device Identifier [SUDI]) fail to join a Locally Significant Certificate-deployed (LSC-deployed) controller, where the management certificate of the controller is an LSC. To resolve this issue, you must provision LSC on these APs using the provisioning controller before moving them to the LSC-deployed controller.

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 onwards, the new authorization policy configuration allows MIC APs to join the LSC-deployed controller, so that the LSC and MIC APs can coexist in the controller at the same time.

Recommendations and Limitations

- When the CA server is configured with manual enrollment (manual intervention) to accept Certificate Signing Request (CSR), the controller waits for the CA server to send the pending response. If there is no response from the CA server for 10 minutes, the fallback mode comes into effect.
 - Cisco Wave 2 APs regenerate CSR, and a fresh CSR is sent to the CA server.
 - Cisco IOS APs restart, and then Cisco IOS APs send a fresh CSR, which is in turn sent to the CA server.
- Locally significant certificate (LSC) on the controller does not work on the password challenge. Therefore, for LSC to work, you must disable password challenge on the CA server.
- If you are using Microsoft CA, we recommend that you use Windows Server 2012 or later as the CA server.

Configuration Workflow

1. [Configuring LSC on the Controller \(CLI\), on page 1238](#)
2. [Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs \(CLI\), on page 1238](#)
3. [Configuring the AP Policy Certificate \(GUI\), on page 1240](#)

4. [Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller \(CLI\), on page 1240](#)

Configuring LSC on the Controller (CLI)

The server certificate used by the controller for CAPWAP-DTLS is based on the following configuration.

Before you begin

- Ensure that you enable LSC by setting the appropriate trustpoints for the following wireless management services:
 - AP join process: CAPWAP DTLS server certificate
 - Mobility connections: Mobility DTLS certificate
 - NMSP and CMX connections: NMSP TLS certificate

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] wireless management trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i>	Configures the LSC trustpoint in the LSC-deployed controller.

Enabling the AP Certificate Policy on the APs (CLI)

- If the management trustpoint is an LSC, by default, MIC APs fail to join the controller. This configuration acts as an enable or disable configuration knob that allows MIC APs to join the controller.
- This configuration is a controller authorization to allow APs to join MIC at the time of DTLS handshake.

To prevent manufacturing installed certificate (MIC) expiry failures, ensure that you configure a policy, as shown here:

- Create a certificate map and add the rules:


```
configure terminal
crypto pki certificate map map1 1
issuer-name co Cisco Manufacturing CA
```




Note You can add multiple rules and filters under the same map. The rule mentioned in the example above specifies that any certificate whose issuer-name contains *Cisco Manufacturing CA* (case insensitive) is selected under this map.

- Use the certificate map under the trustpool policy:

```
configure terminal
crypto pki trustpool policy
match certificate map1 allow expired-certificate
```

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint trustpoint-name Example: Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint trustpoint-name	Configures the trustpoint name for the controller certificate chain. Note The allow-mic-ap trustpoint command is required only for the virtual controller (Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud). In all the other appliance controller platforms, the default certificate is selected. This default certificate is manufacturer-installed SUDI.
Step 3	ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap Example: Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap	Enables the AP certificate policy during CAPWAP-DTLS handshake.
Step 4	ap auth-list ap-cert-policy {mac-address H.H.H serial-number serial-number-ap} policy-type mic Example: Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address 1111.1111.1111 policy-type mic	Enables the AP certificate policy as MIC.

Configuring the AP Policy Certificate (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**
- Step 2** In the **All Access Points** window, click **AP Certificate Policy**.
- Step 3** In the **AP Policy Certificate** window, complete the following actions:
- Click the **Authorize APs joining with MIC** toggle button to enable AP authorization.
 - From the **Trustpoint Name** drop-down list, choose the required trustpoint.
 - Click **Add MAC or Serial Number** to add a MAC address or a serial number manually or through a .csv file.
The **Add MAC or Serial Number** window is displayed.
 - Click the **AP Authlist Type** and enter the MAC address or the serial number. Upload the .csv file or enter the MAC address in the list box.
The newly added MAC address and serial numbers are displayed under **List of MAC Address and Serial Numbers**.
 - Click **Apply**.
- The AP certificate policy is added to the **AP Inventory** window.

Note

To add a new AP with MIC, perform Step 1 to Step 3 described in [Configuring the AP Policy Certificate \(GUI\)](#) section. To add a new AP with LSC, perform the procedure described in the [Configuring AP LSC Provision List \(GUI\)](#) and Step 1 to Step 3 in the [Configuring the AP Policy Certificate \(GUI\)](#) section.

Configuring the Allowed List of APs to Join the Controller (CLI)

The allowed list of APs can either be populated based on the Ethernet MAC address or based on the serial number of the APs.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap auth-list ap-cert-policy {mac-address AP-Ethernet-MAC-address serial-number AP-serial-number} policy-type mic Example: Device# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address 00b0.e192.0d98 policy-type mic	Configures the AP certificate policy based on the Ethernet MAC address or based on the assembly serial number of the AP.

Verifying the Configuration Status

To verify if the APs have been authorized by the AP certificate policy, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy
Authorize APs joining with MIC : ENABLED
MIC AP policy trustpoint
Name : CISCO_IDEVID_SUDI
Certificate status : Available
Certificate Type : MIC
Certificate Hash : xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx
```

To verify the AP certificate policy on the MAC address and the serial number of the AP, use the following commands:

```
Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy mac-address
MAC address      AP cert policy
-----
1111.2222.3333   MIC

Device# show ap auth-list ap-cert-policy serial-number
Serial number    AP cert policy
-----
F1234567890      MIC
```



Note If you set an invalid trustpoint (not SSC), the **allow-mic-ap policy** is not enabled. If you set an invalid trustpoint, the following error is displayed on the console:

```
Device(config)# ap auth-list ap-cert-policy allow-mic-ap trustpoint lsc-root-tp
Dec 18 07:38:29.944: %CERT_MGR_ERRMSG-3-CERT_MGR_GENERAL_ERR: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: General
error: MIC AP Policy trustpoint: 'lsc-root-tp' cert-chain type is LSC, It must be either
MIC or vWLC-SSC
```

LSC Fallback Access Points

Information About LSC Fallback APs

When an AP is configured with LSC for CAPWAP but fails to establish DTLS connection, the AP reboots and retries for certain number of times. For information on how an AP configures with LSC, see [Configuring AP Join Attempts with LSC Certificate \(CLI\)](#), on page 1228.

The AP falls back to its default certificate (MIC) for CAPWAP after maximum number of failures. This state is referred to as the LSC fallback.



Note MIC is also known as SUDI certificate.

Troubleshooting LSC Fallback State

When an AP in **LSC fallback** state joins the controller, the following syslog is generated:

Jun 15 23:24:14.836: %APMGR_TRACE_MESSAGE-3-WLC_GEN_ERR: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: Error in AP: 'AP2c5a.0f70.84dc' with address 70db.9888.cc20 is joined with MIC, while configuration requires LSC. No WLANs will be pushed.

The controller allows such an AP to be joined with MIC (when AP certificate policy allows it) and AP is held in misconfigured state.



Note The AP does not broadcast WLAN or SSID configurations in such state. This permits the admin to examine the reason for previous failures and recover APs.

You can identify the **LSC fallback** APs using **show wireless summary** as follows:

```
Device# show wireless summary
...
Access Point Summary
...
DTLS LSC fallback APs      20 (No WLANs will be pushed to these APs)
...
For more information on DTLS LSC fallback APs,
execute 'wireless config validate' and look for reported errors in
'show wireless config validation status' CLI output.
```

Use 'show ap config general | inc AP Name | LSC fallback' to list DTLS LSC fallback APs. Examine LSC fallback reasons / DTLS handshake failures with LSC then issue 'ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate / clear-flag' to recover APs

Recovery Steps

- Use the **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** to clear the LSC fallback flag on AP and instruct AP to reload.



Note The AP reuses the LSC for CAPWAP DTLS connection post the reload.

- Use the **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate** to clear LSC and instruct AP to reload.



Note The AP uses MIC for CAPWAP-DTLS post the reload. If LSC is used for Dot1x port authentication then further recovery is needed on switch port for AP authentication.



Note

- The **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** command is sufficient to retain LSC on AP. Both **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-flag** and **ap lsc dtls-fallback clear-certificate** commands are not required at the same time.
- APs must be in connected state when issuing the recovery command. You will need to reissue the command, if any **LSC fallback** AP joins afterwards.

Configuring Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join

Use Cases

Use Case-1

Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL platform does not contain manufacturer installed SUDI certificates. You will need to configure Self-Signed Certificates on your controller.

Use Case-2

APs running on earlier versions and having Manufacturer Installed Certificate (MIC) issued by a SHA1 Cisco Trusted CA cannot join the controller with SHA2 SUDI certificate. During CAPWAP join process, the AP displays a bad certificate error and tears down the DTLS handshake.

Workaround: To upgrade APs, configure controller Self-Signed certificates. Once done, you can delete the Self-Signed certificates and revert back to the SUDI certificate.



Note This workaround does not apply to the Embedded Wireless Controller running Catalyst 9k switches. But applies to other hardware appliance controllers, such as Cisco Catalyst 9800-40, Cisco Catalyst 9800-80, and Cisco Catalyst 9800-L.



Note Certificate used in DTLS connections (AP and mobility) must use RSA key of size equal or more than 2048 bits. Otherwise, the APs and mobility connections will fail after reload. Run the **show crypto pki certificate verbose _tp-name_** command to display the key size of the device certificate.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the VLAN interface is up and it's IP is reachable.
- Ensure that the **ip http server** is enabled. For more information, see [Enabling HTTP Server](#).
- Set the **clock calendar-valid** command appropriately. For more information, see [#unique_1620](#).
- Check if the PKI CA server is already configured or not. If configured, you will need to delete the existing CA server configuration.



Note The **show crypto pki server** command output should not display anything.

Configuring Clock Calendar (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	clock calendar-valid Example: Device(config)# <code>clock calendar-valid</code>	Enables clock calendar.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)# <code>exit</code>	Exits configuration mode.

Enabling HTTP Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip http server Example: Device(config)# <code>ip http server</code>	Enables the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system, including a Cisco web browser user interface. By default, the HTTP server uses the standard port 80.
Step 3	ip http secure-server Example: Device(config)# <code>ip http secure-server</code>	Enables the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system, including a Cisco web browser user interface. By default, the HTTP server uses the standard port 80.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config)# <code>exit</code>	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring CA Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus_size_of_key_module label keypair_name Example: Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus 2048 label WLC_CA	Configures a certificate for the controller. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use. Note The recommended key-pair name is <i>WLC_CA</i> and key modulus is <i>2048</i> bits.
Step 3	crypto pki server certificate_server_name Example: Device(config)# crypto pki server WLC_CA	Enables IOS certificate server. Note The <i>certificate_server_name</i> must be the same name as the <i>keypair_name</i> .
Step 4	issuer-name Example: Device(cs-server)# issuer-name O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=CA-vWLC	Configures X.509 distinguished name for the issuer CA certificate. Note You need to configure the same issuer-name as suggested for AP join.
Step 5	grant auto Example: Device(cs-server)# grant auto	Grants certificate requests automatically.
Step 6	hash sha256 Example: Device(cs-server)# hash sha256	(Optional) Specifies the hash function for the signature used in the granted certificates.
Step 7	lifetime ca-certificate time-interval Example: Device(cs-server)# lifetime ca-certificate 3650	(Optional) Specifies the lifetime in days of a CA certificate.
Step 8	lifetime certificate time-interval Example:	(Optional) Specifies the lifetime in days of a granted certificate.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (cs-server) # lifetime certificate 3650	
Step 9	database archive pkcs12 password <i>password</i> Example: Device (cs-server) # database archive pkcs12 password 0 cisco123	Sets the CA key and CA certificate archive format and password to encrypt the file.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device (cs-server) # no shutdown	Enables the certificate server. Note Issue this command only after you have completely configured your certificate server.
Step 11	end Example: Device (cs-server) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Trustpoint (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus <i>size-of-the-key-modulus label label</i> Example: Device (config) # crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus 2048 label ewlc-tp1	When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use.
Step 3	crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device (config) # crypto pki trustpoint ewlc-tp1	Creates a new trust point for an external CA server. Here, <i>trustpoint_name</i> refers to the trustpoint name. Note Ensure that same names are used for key-pair (<i>label</i>) and <i>trustpoint_name</i> .
Step 4	rsakeypair <i>RSA_key key_size</i> Example:	Maps RSA key with that of the trustpoint. • <i>RSA_key</i> —Refers to the RSA key pair label.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsa keypair ewlc-tp1	key_size—Refers to the signature key length. The value ranges from 360 to 4096.
Step 5	subject-name <i>subject_name</i> Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=DEVICE-vWLC	Creates subject name parameters for the trustpoint.
Step 6	revocation-check none Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none	Checks revocation.
Step 7	hash sha256 Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# hash sha256	Specifies the hash algorithm.
Step 8	serial-number Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# serial-number	Specifies the serial number.
Step 9	eku request server-auth client-auth Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# eku request server-auth client-auth	(Optional) Sets certificate key-usage purpose.
Step 10	password password Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# password 0 cisco123	Enables password.
Step 11	enrollment url url Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# enrollment url http://<management-IPv4>:80	Enrolls the URL. Note Replace the dummy IP with management VLAN interface IP of the controller where CA server is configured.
Step 12	exit Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# end	Exits the configuration.

Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI TrustPoint with CA Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki authenticate <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto pki authenticate ewlc-tp1 Certificate has the following attributes: Fingerprint MD5: 64C5FC9A C581D827 C25FC3CF 1A7F42AC Fingerprint SHA1: 6FAFF812 7C552783 6A8FB566 52D95849 CC2FC050 % Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.	Fetches the CA certificate.
Step 3	crypto pki enroll <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto pki enroll ewlc-tp1 Enter following answers for UI interaction: % Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: no Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes	Enrolls for client certificate.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Tagging Wireless Management TrustPoint Name (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless management trustpoint <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint ewlc-tp1	Tags the wireless management trustpoint name.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Disable PKI Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configureterminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki server <i>certificate_server_name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto pki server WLC_CA	Creates a new server for an external CA server. Note Here, server_name refers to the server name.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(cs-server)# shutdown	Update purpose string to "disable certificate server".
Step 4	end Example: Device(cs-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Controller Certificates for Wireless AP Join

To view the CA server details, use the following command:

```
Device# show crypto pki server
Certificate Server WLC_CA:
Status: enabled
State: enabled
Server's configuration is locked (enter "shut" to unlock it)
Issuer name: O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=CA-vWLC
CA cert fingerprint: 79A3DBD5 59A7E384 73ABD152 C133F4E2
Granting mode is: auto
Last certificate issued serial number (hex): 1
```

```
CA certificate expiration timer: 12:04:00 UTC Mar 8 2029
CRL NextUpdate timer: 18:04:00 UTC Mar 11 2019
Current primary storage dir: nvram:
Database Level: Minimum - no cert data written to storage
```

To view the trustpoint details, use the following command:

```
Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ewlc-tp1 status
Trustpoint ewlc-tp1:
...
State:
Keys generated ..... Yes (General Purpose, exportable)
Issuing CA authenticated ..... Yes
Certificate request(s) ..... Yes
```

To view the wireless management trustpoint details, use the following command:

```
Device# do show wireless management trustpoint
Trustpoint Name : ewlc-tp1
Certificate Info : Available
Certificate Type : SSC
Certificate Hash : 4a5d777c5b2071c17faef376febc08398702184e
Private key Info : Available
FIPS suitability : Not Applicable
```

To view the HTTP server status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip http server status | include server status
HTTP server status: Enabled
HTTP secure server status: Enabled
```



CHAPTER 123

Certificate Management

- [About Public Key Infrastructure Management \(GUI\), on page 1251](#)
- [Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint \(GUI\), on page 1251](#)
- [Adding the Certificate Authority Server \(GUI\), on page 1252](#)
- [Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint \(GUI\), on page 1253](#)
- [Adding and Managing Certificates , on page 1253](#)

About Public Key Infrastructure Management (GUI)

The Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) Management page displays the following tabs:

Trustpoints tab: Used to add, create or enroll a new trustpoint. This page also displays the current trustpoints configured on the controller and other details of the trustpoint. You can also view if the trustpoint is in use for any of the features. For example, Webadmin or AP join (Wireless Management Interface), and others.

CA Server tab: Used to enable or disable the Certificate Authority (CA) server functionality on the controller. The CA server functionality should be enabled for the controller to generate a Self Signed Certificate (SSC).

Key Pair Generation tab: Used to generate key pairs.

Certificate Management tab: Used to generate and manage certificates, and perform all certificate related operations, on the controller.

Authenticating and Enrolling a PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > PKI Management .
Step 2	In the PKI Management window, click the Trustpoints tab.
Step 3	In the Add Trustpoint dialog box, provide the following information: a) In the Label field, enter the RSA key label. b) In the Enrollment URL field, enter the enrollment URL. c) Check the Authenticate check box to authenticate the Public Certificate from the enrollment URL.

- d) In the **Subject Name** section, enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.
- e) Check the **Key Generated** check box to view the available RSA keypairs. Choose an option from the **Available RSA Keypairs** drop-down list.
- f) Check the **Enroll Trustpoint** check box.
- g) In the **Password** field, enter the password.
- h) In the **Re-Enter Password** field, confirm the password.
- i) Click **Apply to Device**.

The new trustpoint is added to the trustpoint name list.

Generating an AP Self-Signed Certificate (GUI)



Note This section is valid only for virtual controllers (Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud) and not applicable for appliance based controllers (Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller (Copper Uplink), and Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller (Fiber Uplink)).

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.
- Step 2** In the **AP SSC Trustpoint** area, click **Generate** to generate an AP SSC trustpoint.
- Step 3** From the **RSA Key-Size** drop-down list, choose a key size.
- Step 4** From the **Signature Algorithm** drop-down list, choose an option.
- Step 5** From the **Password Type** drop-down list, choose a password type.
- Step 6** In the **Password** field, enter a password. The valid range is between 8 and 32 characters.
- Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

Adding the Certificate Authority Server (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.
- Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **CA Server** tab.
- Step 3** In the **CA Server** section, click the **Shutdown Status** toggle button, to enable the status. If you choose the shutdown status as **Enabled**, you must enter the password and confirm the same.

- Step 4** If you choose the shutdown status as **Disabled**, you must enter the **Country Code**, **State**, **Location**, **Organization**, **Domain Name**, and **Email Address**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply** to add the CA server.
- Step 6** Click **Remove CA Server** to delete the CA server.
-

Adding an RSA or EC Key for PKI Trustpoint (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management**.
- Step 2** In the **PKI Management** window, click the **Key Pair Generation** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Key Pair Generation** section, click **Add**.
- Step 4** In the dialog box that is displayed, provide the following information:
- a) In the **Key Name** field, enter the key name.
 - b) In the **Key Type** options, select either **RSA Key** or **EC Key**.
 - c) In the **Modulus Size** field, enter the modulus value for the RSA key or the EC key. The default modulus size for the RSA key is 4096 and the default value for the EC key is 521.
 - d) Check the **Key Exportable** check box to export the key. By default, this is checked.
 - e) Click **Generate**.
-

Adding and Managing Certificates

To add and manage certificates, use one of the following methods:



Note While configuring a password for the .pfx file, do not use the following ASCII characters: "*", ^, (), [], \, ", and +"

Using these ASCII characters results in error with bad configuration and does not import the certificate to the controller.

Method 1

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > PKI Management > Add Certificate**.
- Step 2** Click **Generate Certificate Signing Request**.
- a) In the **Certificate Name** field, enter the certificate name.

- b) From the **Key Name** drop-down list, choose an RSA key pair. (Click the plus (+) icon under the **Key Pair Generation** tab to create new RSA key pairs.).
- c) Enter values the **Country Code**, **Location**, **Organization**, **State**, **Organizational Unit**, and the **Domain Name** fields.
- d) Click **Generate**.
The generated Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is displayed on the right. Click **Copy** to copy and save a local copy. Click **Save to Device** to save the generated CSR to the /bootflash/csr directory.

Note

If an IP address is used on the Domain Name field the controller creates the CSR without a Subject Alternative Name (SAN), since the IP address is not supported as an attribute in the SAN field of the CSR when the CSR is generated from the controller.

Step 3 Click **Authenticate Root CA**.

- a) From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint label generated in Step 2, or any other trustpoint label that you want to authenticate.
- b) In the **Root CA Certificate (.pem)** field, copy and paste the certificate that you have received from the CA.

Note

Ensure that you copy and paste the PEM Base64 certificate of the issuing CA of the device certificate.

- c) Click **Authenticate**.

Step 4 Click **Import Device Certificate**.

- a) From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, choose the trustpoint label that was generated in Step 2, or any other trustpoint label that you want to authenticate.
- b) In the **Signed Certificate (.pem)** field, copy and paste the signed certificate that you received, from your CA.
- c) Click **Import**.

This completes the device certificate import process and the certificate can now be assigned to features.

Method 2**Procedure**

Click **Import PKCS12 Certificate**.
Note

You can import an entire certificate chain in the PKCS12 format using different transport types.

- a) From the **Transport Type** drop-down list, choose either **FTP**, **SFTP**, **TFTP**, **SCP**, or **Desktop (HTTPS)**.
For **FTP**, **SFTP**, and **SCP**, enter values in the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **Username**, **Password**, **Certificate File Path**, **Certificate Destination File Name**, and **Certificate Password** fields.
For **TFTP**, enter values in the **Server IP Address (IPv4/IPv6)**, **Certificate File Path**, **Certificate Destination File Name**, and **Certificate Password** fields.
For **Desktop (HTTPS)**, enter values in the **Source File Path** and **Certificate Password** fields.

b) Click **Import**.



CHAPTER 124

Controller Self-Signed Certificate for Wireless AP Join

- [Use Cases, on page 1257](#)
- [Prerequisites, on page 1258](#)
- [Configuring Clock Calendar \(CLI\), on page 1258](#)
- [Enabling HTTP Server \(CLI\), on page 1259](#)
- [Configuring CA Server \(CLI\), on page 1259](#)
- [Configuring Trustpoint \(CLI\), on page 1261](#)
- [Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI TrustPoint with CA Server \(CLI\), on page 1262](#)
- [Tagging Wireless Management TrustPoint Name \(CLI\), on page 1263](#)
- [Disable PKI Server, on page 1264](#)
- [Verifying Controller Certificates for Wireless AP Join, on page 1264](#)

Use Cases

Use Case-1

Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL platform does not contain manufacturer installed SUDI certificates. You will need to configure Self-Signed Certificates on your controller.

Use Case-2

APs running on earlier versions and having Manufacturer Installed Certificate (MIC) issued by a SHA1 Cisco Trusted CA cannot join the controller with SHA2 SUDI certificate. During CAPWAP join process, the AP displays a bad certificate error and tears down the DTLS handshake.

Workaround: To upgrade APs, configure controller Self-Signed certificates. Once done, you can delete the Self-Signed certificates and revert back to the SUDI certificate.



Note This workaround does not apply to the Embedded Wireless Controller running Catalyst 9k switches. But applies to other hardware appliance controllers, such as Cisco Catalyst 9800-40, Cisco Catalyst 9800-80, and Cisco Catalyst 9800-L.



Note Certificate used in DTLS connections (AP and mobility) must use RSA key of size equal or more than 2048 bits. Otherwise, the APs and mobility connections will fail after reload. Run the **show crypto pki certificate verbose _tp-name_** command to display the key size of the device certificate.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the VLAN interface is up and it's IP is reachable.
- Ensure that the **ip http server** is enabled. For more information, see [Enabling HTTP Server](#).
- Set the **clock calendar-valid** command appropriately. For more information, see [#unique_1620](#).
- Check if the PKI CA server is already configured or not. If configured, you will need to delete the existing CA server configuration.



Note The **show crypto pki server** command output should not display anything.

Configuring Clock Calendar (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	clock calendar-valid Example: Device(config)# clock calendar-valid	Enables clock calendar.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits configuration mode.

Enabling HTTP Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip http server Example: Device(config)# ip http server	Enables the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system, including a Cisco web browser user interface. By default, the HTTP server uses the standard port 80.
Step 3	ip http secure-server Example: Device(config)# ip http secure-server	Enables the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system, including a Cisco web browser user interface. By default, the HTTP server uses the standard port 80.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring CA Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus <i>size_of_key_module</i> label <i>keypair_name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa general-keys modulus 2048 label WLC_CA	Configures a certificate for the controller. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use. Note The recommended key-pair name is <i>WLC_CA</i> and key modulus is <i>2048</i> bits.
Step 3	crypto pki server <i>certificate_server_name</i>	Enables IOS certificate server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# crypto pki server WLC_CA</pre>	Note The <i>certificate_server_name</i> must be the same name as the <i>keypair_name</i> .
Step 4	issuer-name Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# issuer-name O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=CA-vWLC</pre>	Configures X.509 distinguished name for the issuer CA certificate. Note You need to configure the same issuer-name as suggested for AP join.
Step 5	grant auto Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# grant auto</pre>	Grants certificate requests automatically.
Step 6	hash sha256 Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# hash sha256</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the hash function for the signature used in the granted certificates.
Step 7	lifetime ca-certificate <i>time-interval</i> Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# lifetime ca-certificate 3650</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the lifetime in days of a CA certificate.
Step 8	lifetime certificate <i>time-interval</i> Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# lifetime certificate 3650</pre>	(Optional) Specifies the lifetime in days of a granted certificate.
Step 9	database archive pkcs12 password <i>password</i> Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# database archive pkcs12 password 0 cisco123</pre>	Sets the CA key and CA certificate archive format and password to encrypt the file.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the certificate server. Note Issue this command only after you have completely configured your certificate server.
Step 11	end Example: <pre>Device(cs-server)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Trustpoint (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus size-of-the-key-modulus label label Example: Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa exportable general-keys modulus 2048 label ewlc-tp1	When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use.
Step 3	crypto pki trustpoint trustpoint_name Example: Device(config)# crypto pki trustpoint ewlc-tp1	Creates a new trust point for an external CA server. Here, <i>trustpoint_name</i> refers to the trustpoint name. Note Ensure that same names are used for key-pair (<i>label</i>) and <i>trustpoint_name</i> .
Step 4	rsakeypair RSA_key key_size Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# rsakeypair ewlc-tp1	Maps RSA key with that of the trustpoint. • <i>RSA_key</i>—Refers to the RSA key pair label. • <i>key_size</i>—Refers to the signature key length. The value ranges from 360 to 4096.
Step 5	subject-name subject_name Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# subject-name O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=DEVICE-vWLC	Creates subject name parameters for the trustpoint.
Step 6	revocation-check none Example: Device(ca-trustpoint)# revocation-check none	Checks revocation.
Step 7	hash sha256 Example:	Specifies the hash algorithm.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (ca-trustpoint) # hash sha256	
Step 8	serial-number Example: Device (ca-trustpoint) # serial-number	Specifies the serial number.
Step 9	eku request server-auth client-auth Example: Device (ca-trustpoint) # eku request server-auth client-auth	(Optional) Sets certificate key-usage purpose.
Step 10	password password Example: Device (ca-trustpoint) # password 0 cisco123	Enables password.
Step 11	enrollment url url Example: Device (ca-trustpoint) # enrollment url http://<management-IPv4>:80	Enrolls the URL. Note Replace the dummy IP with management VLAN interface IP of the controller where CA server is configured.
Step 12	exit Example: Device (ca-trustpoint) # end	Exits the configuration.

Authenticating and Enrolling the PKI TrustPoint with CA Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device # configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki authenticate trustpoint_name Example: Device (config) # crypto pki authenticate ewlc-tp1 Certificate has the following attributes: Fingerprint MD5: 64C5FC9A C581D827 C25FC3CF 1A7F42AC	Fetches the CA certificate.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Fingerprint SHA1: 6FAFF812 7C552783 6A8FB566 52D95849 CC2FC050 % Do you accept this certificate? [yes/no]: yes Trustpoint CA certificate accepted.</pre>	
Step 3	crypto pki enroll <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# crypto pki enroll ewlc-tp1 Enter following answers for UI interaction: % Include an IP address in the subject name? [no]: no Request certificate from CA? [yes/no]: yes</pre>	Enrolls for client certificate.
Step 4	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Tagging Wireless Management TrustPoint Name (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless management trustpoint <i>trustpoint_name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless management trustpoint ewlc-tp1</pre>	Tags the wireless management trustpoint name.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Disable PKI Server

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configureterminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto pki servercertificate_server_name Example: Device(config)# crypto pki server WLC_CA	Creates a new server for an external CA server. Note Here, server_name refers to the server name.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(cs-server)# shutdown	Update purpose string to "disable certificate server".
Step 4	end Example: Device(cs-server)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Controller Certificates for Wireless AP Join

To view the CA server details, use the following command:

```
Device# show crypto pki server
Certificate Server WLC_CA:
Status: enabled
State: enabled
Server's configuration is locked (enter "shut" to unlock it)
Issuer name: O=Cisco Virtual Wireless LAN Controller, CN=CA-vWLC
CA cert fingerprint: 79A3DBD5 59A7E384 73ABD152 C133F4E2
Granting mode is: auto
Last certificate issued serial number (hex): 1
CA certificate expiration timer: 12:04:00 UTC Mar 8 2029
CRL NextUpdate timer: 18:04:00 UTC Mar 11 2019
Current primary storage dir: nvram:
Database Level: Minimum - no cert data written to storage
```

To view the trustpoint details, use the following command:

```
Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ewlc-tp1 status
Trustpoint ewlc-tp1:
...
State:
Keys generated ..... Yes (General Purpose, exportable)
Issuing CA authenticated ..... Yes
Certificate request(s) ..... Yes
```

To view the wireless management trustpoint details, use the following command:

```
Device# do show wireless management trustpoint
Trustpoint Name : ewlc-tp1
Certificate Info : Available
Certificate Type : SSC
Certificate Hash : 4a5d777c5b2071c17faef376febc08398702184e
Private key Info : Available
FIPS suitability : Not Applicable
```

To view the HTTP server status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip http server status | include server status
HTTP server status: Enabled
HTTP secure server status: Enabled
```




Managing Rogue Devices

- [Rogue Detection, on page 1267](#)
- [Rogue Detection Security Level, on page 1279](#)
- [Setting Rogue Detection Security-level , on page 1280](#)
- [Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events, on page 1281](#)
- [Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities, on page 1282](#)

Rogue Detection

Rogue Devices

Rogue access points can disrupt wireless LAN operations by hijacking legitimate clients and using plain-text or other denial-of-service or man-in-the-middle attacks. That is, a hacker can use a rogue access point to capture sensitive information, such as usernames and passwords. The hacker can then transmit a series of Clear to Send (CTS) frames. This action mimics an access point, informing a particular client to transmit, and instructing all the other clients to wait, which results in legitimate clients being unable to access network resources. Wireless LAN service providers have a strong interest in banning rogue access points from the air space.

Because rogue access points are inexpensive and readily available, employees sometimes plug unauthorized rogue access points into existing LANs and build ad hoc wireless networks without their IT department's knowledge or consent. These rogue access points can be a serious breach of network security because they can be plugged into a network port behind the corporate firewall. Because employees generally do not enable any security settings on the rogue access point, it is easy for unauthorized users to use the access point to intercept network traffic and hijack client sessions. There is an increased chance of enterprise security breach when wireless users connect to access points in the enterprise network.

The following are some guidelines to manage rogue devices:

- The access points are designed to serve associated clients. These access points spend relatively less time performing off-channel scanning: about 50 milliseconds on each channel. If you want to detect a large number of rogue APs and clients with high sensitivity, a monitor mode access point must be used. Alternatively, you can reduce the scan intervals from 180 seconds to a lesser value, for example, 120 or 60 seconds, ensuring that the radio goes off-channel more frequently, which improves the chances of rogue detection. However, the access point continues to spend about 50 milliseconds on each channel.

- Rogue detection is disabled by default for OfficeExtend access points because these access points, which are deployed in a home environment, are likely to detect many rogue devices.
- Client card implementation might mitigate the effectiveness of containment. This normally happens when a client might quickly reconnect to the network after receiving a "de-association/de-authentication" frame, so it might still be able to pass some traffic. However, the browsing experience of the rogue client would be badly affected when it is contained.
- It is possible to classify and report rogue access points by using rogue states and user-defined classification rules that enable rogues to automatically move between states.
- Each controller limits the number of rogue containments to three and six per radio for access points in the monitor mode.
- When manual containment is performed using configuration, the rogue entry is retained even after the rogue entry expires.
- When a rogue entry expires, the managed access points are instructed to stop any active containment on it.
- When Validate Rogue AP Against AAA is enabled, the controller requests the AAA server for rogue AP classification with the configured interval.
- To validate a Rogue AP against AAA, add the rogue AP MAC to the AAA user-database with relevant delimiter, username, and password being the MAC address with relevant delimiter. The Access-Accept contains the Cisco-AV-pair with one of the following keywords:

- **rogue-ap-state**=*state*



Note Here, **state** can be either of the types, namely: alert, contain, internal, external, or threat.

- **rogue-ap-class**=*class*



Note Here, **class** can be either of the types, namely: unclassified, malicious, or friendly.

The following are the allowed combinations of class or state:

- **unclassified**: alert, contain, or threat.
- **malicious**: alert, contain, or threat.
- **friendly**: alert, internal, or external.

If Access-Accept has no AV-Pair **rogue-ap-class** or an invalid value of **rogue-ap-class**, such a rogue client state is set to either of the following:

- Contained, if the config is set to autocontain clients or untrusted AP.
- Threat

The Radius Access-Reject for rogue AP AAA validation is ignored.

- When Validate Rogue Clients Against AAA is enabled, the controller requests the AAA server for rogue client validation only once. As a result, if rogue client validation fails on the first attempt then the rogue client will not be detected as a threat any more. To avoid this, add the valid client entries in the authentication server before enabling Validate Rogue Clients Against AAA.

Restrictions on Rogue Detection

- Rogue containment is not supported on DFS channels.

A rogue access point is moved to a contained state either automatically or manually. The controller selects the best available access point for containment and pushes the information to the access point. The access point stores the list of containments per radio. For auto containment, you can configure the controller to use only the monitor mode access point. The containment operation occurs in the following two ways:

- The container access point goes through the list of containments periodically and sends unicast containment frames. For rogue access point containment, the frames are sent only if a rogue client is associated.
- Whenever a contained rogue activity is detected, containment frames are transmitted.

Individual rogue containment involves sending a sequence of unicast disassociation and deauthentication frames.

From 17.7.1 release onwards, Beacon DS Attack and Beacon Wrong Channel signatures were introduced.

Beacon DS Attack—When managed and rogue APs use the same BSSID, the rogue APs are termed as impersonators. An attacker can add the Direct-Sequence parameter set information element with any channel number. If the added channel number is different from the channel number used by the managed AP, the attack is termed as Beacon DS Attack.

Beacon Wrong Channel—When managed and rogue APs use the same BSSID, the rogue APs are termed as AP impersonators. If an AP impersonator uses a channel number that is different from the one used by the managed AP with the same BSSID, the attack is termed as Beacon Wrong Channel. In such a case, the Direct-Sequence Information Element might not even be present in the Beacon frame.

Rogue Client Status Change

The condition for the rogue client status change from Alert to Threat is as follows:

- The rogue client is marked as a Threat, if there is a wireless client in the RUN state with the same MAC address registered on the controller.

Cisco Prime Infrastructure Interaction and Rogue Detection

Cisco Prime Infrastructure supports rule-based classification and uses the classification rules configured on the controller. The controller sends traps to Cisco Prime Infrastructure after the following events:

- If an unknown access point moves to the Friendly state for the first time, the controller sends a trap to Cisco Prime Infrastructure only if the rogue state is Alert. It does not send a trap if the rogue state is Internal or External.
- If a rogue entry is removed after the timeout expires, the controller sends a trap to Cisco Prime Infrastructure for rogue access points that are categorized as Malicious (Alert, Threat) or Unclassified (Alert). The controller does not remove rogue entries with the following rogue states: Contained, Contained Pending, Internal, and External.

Information About Rogue Containment (Protected Management Frames (PMF) Enabled)

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam, 17.3.1 onwards, rogue devices that are enabled with 802.11w Protected Management Frames (PMF) are not contained. Instead, the rogue device is marked as *Contained Pending*, and a WSA alarm is raised to inform about the Contained Pending event. Because the device containment is not performed, access point (AP) resources are not consumed unnecessarily.



Note This feature is supported only on the Wave 2 APs.

Run the **show wireless wps rogue ap detailed** command to verify the device containment, when PMF is enabled on a rogue device.

AP Impersonation Detection

The various methods to detect AP impersonation are:

- AP impersonation can be detected if a managed AP reports itself as Rogue. This method is always enabled and no configuration is required.
- AP impersonation detection is based on MFP.
- AP impersonation detection based on AP authentication.

Infrastructure MFP protects 802.11 session management functions by adding message integrity check (MIC) information elements, to the management frames sent by APs (and not those sent by clients), which are then validated by other APs in the network. If infrastructure MFP is enabled, the managed APs check if the MIC information elements are present and if MIC information elements are as expected. If either of these conditions is not fulfilled, the managed AP sends rogue AP reports with updated AP authentication failure counter.

The AP Authentication functionality allows you to detect AP impersonation. When you enable this functionality, the controller creates an AP domain secret and shares it with other APs in the same network. This allows the APs to authenticate each other.

An AP Authentication information element is attached to beacon and probe response frames. If the AP Authentication information element has an incorrect Signature field, or the timestamp is off, or if the AP Authentication information element is missing, then the AP that has detected such a condition increments the **AP authentication failure count** field. An impersonation alarm is raised after the **AP authentication failure count** field breaches its threshold. The rogue AP is classified as **Malicious** with state **Threat**.

Run the **show wireless wps rogue ap detail** command to see when the impersonation is detected due to authentication errors.



Note Ensure that the **ccx aironet-iesupport** command is run in all the WLAN procedures, else the BSSID will be detected as a rogue.

For AP impersonation detection, Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be enabled instead of CAPWAP based time, under the AP profile.

Configuring Rogue Detection (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	Click the AP Join Profile Name to edit the AP join profile properties.
Step 3	In the Edit AP Join Profile window, click the Rogue AP tab.
Step 4	Check the Rogue Detection check box to enable rogue detection.
Step 5	In the Rogue Detection Minimum RSSI field, enter the RSSI value.
Step 6	In the Rogue Detection Transient Interval field, enter the interval in seconds.
Step 7	In the Rogue Detection Report Interval field, enter the report interval value in seconds.
Step 8	In the Rogue Detection Client Number Threshold field, enter the threshold for rogue client detection.
Step 9	Check the Auto Containment on FlexConnect Standalone check box to enable auto containment.
Step 10	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Rogue Detection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> rogue detection min-rssi <i>rssi in dBm</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile profile1 Device(config)# rogue detection min-rssi -100	Specify the minimum RSSI value that rogues should have for APs to detect and for rogue entry to be created in the device. Valid range for the rssi in dBm parameter is -128 dBm to -70 dBm, and the default value is -128 dBm. Note This feature is applicable to all the AP modes. There can be many rogues with very weak RSSI values that do not provide any valuable information in rogue analysis. Therefore, you can use this option to filter rogues by specifying the minimum RSSI value at which APs should detect rogues.
Step 3	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> rogue detection containment {auto-rate flex-rate}	Specifies the rogue containment options. The auto-rate option enables auto-rate for

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap profile profile1 Device(config)# rogue detection containment flex-rate</pre>	containment of rogues. The flex-rate option enables rogue containment of standalone FlexConnect APs.
Step 4	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> rogue detection enable Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap profile profile1 Device(config)# rogue detection enable</pre>	Enables rogue detection on all APs.
Step 5	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> rogue detection report-interval <i>time in seconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap profile profile1 Device(config)# rogue detection report-interval 120</pre>	Configures rogue report interval for monitor mode Cisco APs. The valid range for reporting the interval in seconds is 10 seconds to 300 seconds. In case the controller detects several thousands of rogue APs, it is possible to see the PUBD process causing sustained high CPU. This can be fixed by increasing the Rogue Detection Report Interval from the default 10 to something greater.

Configuring RSSI Deviation Notification Threshold for Rogue APs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps rogue ap notify-rssi-deviation Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap notify-rssi-deviation</pre>	Configures RSSI deviation notification threshold for Rogue APs.
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Management Frame Protection (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies .
Step 2	In the Rogue Policy tab, under the MFP Configuration section, check the Global MFP State check box and the AP Impersonation Detection check box to enable the global MFP state and the AP impersonation detection, respectively.
Step 3	In the MFP Key Refresh Interval field, specify the refresh interval in hours.
Step 4	Click Apply .
-

Configuring Management Frame Protection (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps mfp Example: Device(config)# wireless wps mfp	Configures a management frame protection.
Step 3	wireless wps mfp {ap-impersonation key-refresh-interval} Example: Device(config)# wireless wps mfp ap-impersonation Device(config)# wireless wps mfp key-refresh-interval	Configures ap impersonation detection (or) MFP key refresh interval in hours. key-refresh-interval—Refers to the MFP key refresh interval in hours. The valid range is from 1 to 24. Default value is 24.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling Access Point Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps ap-authentication Example: Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication	Configures the wireless WPS AP authentication.
Step 3	wireless wps ap-authentication threshold threshold Example: Device(config)# wireless wps ap-authentication threshold 100	Configures AP neighbor authentication and sets the threshold for AP authentication failures.
Step 4	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-demo 1 ssid-demo	Configures a WLAN.
Step 5	ccx aironet-iesupport Example: Device(config-wlan)# ccx aironet-iesupport	Enables support for Aironet Information Elements on this WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: Device# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Management Frame Protection

To verify if the Management Frame Protection (MFP) feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps summary
Client Exclusion Policy
  Excessive 802.11-association failures : unknown
  Excessive 802.11-authentication failures: unknown
  Excessive 802.1x-authentication      : unknown
  IP-theft                             : unknown
  Excessive Web authentication failure  : unknown
  Failed Qos Policy                     : unknown

Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state : Enabled
```

```

AP Impersonation detection      : Disabled
Key refresh interval           : 15

```

To view the MFP details, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless wps mfp summary
Management Frame Protection
  Global Infrastructure MFP state : Enabled
  AP Impersonation detection     : Disabled
  Key refresh interval           : 15

```

Verifying Rogue Events

To verify the rogue event history, run the **show wireless wps rogue ap detailed** command:

```

Device# show wireless wps rogue ap detailed
Rogue Event history

```

Timestamp RC	#Times	Class/State	Event	Ctx

05/10/2021 13:56:46.657434 2		Mal/Threat	FSM_GOTO	
Threat 0x0				
05/10/2021 13:56:46.654905 1		Unk/Init	EXPIRE_TIMER_START	
240s 0x0				
05/10/2021 13:56:46.654879 1		Unk/Init	AP_IMPERSONATION	DS:1,ch:1,band_id:0
0x0				
05/10/2021 13:56:46.654673 1		Unk/Init	RCV_REPORT	70db.98fc.2680/0
0x0				
05/10/2021 13:56:46.654663 1		Unk/Init	INIT_TIMER_START	
180s 0x0				
05/10/2021 13:56:46.654608 1		Unk/Init	CREATE	
0x0				
Rogue BSSID		:	002c.c8c1.096d	
Last heard Rogue SSID		:	MarvellAP0d	
802.11w PMF required		:	No	
Is Rogue an impersonator		:	Yes	
Beacon Wrong Channel		:	Yes	
Beacon DS Attack		:	Yes	
Is Rogue on Wired Network		:	No	
Classification		:	Malicious	
Manually Contained		:	No	
State		:	Threat	
First Time Rogue was Reported		:	05/10/2021 13:56:46	
Last Time Rogue was Reported		:	05/10/2021 13:56:46	
Number of clients		:	0	

Verifying Rogue Detection

This section describes the new command for rogue detection.

The following command can be used to verify rogue detection on the device.

Table 74: Verifying Adhoc Rogues Information

Command	Purpose

show wireless wps rogue adhoc detailed <i>mac_address</i>	Displays the detailed information for an Adhoc rogue.
show wireless wps rogue adhoc summary	Displays a list of all Adhoc rogues.

Table 75: Verifying Rogue AP Information

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue ap clients <i>mac_address</i>	Displays the list of all rogue clients associated with a rogue.
show wireless wps rogue ap custom summary	Displays the custom rogue AP information.
show wireless wps rogue ap detailed <i>mac_address</i>	Displays the detailed information for a rogue AP.
show wireless wps rogue ap friendly summary	Displays the friendly rogue AP information.
show wireless wps rogue ap list <i>mac_address</i>	Displays the list of rogue APs detected by a given AP.
show wireless wps rogue ap malicious summary	Displays the malicious rogue AP information.
show wireless wps rogue ap summary	Displays a list of all Rogue APs.
show wireless wps rogue ap unclassified summary	Displays the unclassified rogue AP information.

Table 76: Verifying Rogue Auto-Containment Information

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue auto-contain	Displays the rogue auto-containment information.

Table 77: Verifying Classification Rule Information

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue rule detailed <i>rule_name</i>	Displays the detailed information for a classification rule.
show wireless wps rogue rule summary	Displays the list of all rogue rules.

Table 78: Verifying Rogue Statistics

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue stats	Displays the rogue statistics.

Table 79: Verifying Rogue Client Information

Command	Purpose

show wireless wps rogue client detailed <i>mac_address</i>	Displays detailed information for a Rogue client.
show wireless wps rogue client summary	Displays a list of all the Rogue clients.

Table 80: Verifying Rogue Ignore List

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue ignore-list	Displays the rogue ignore list.

Examples: Rogue Detection Configuration

This example shows how to configure the minimum RSSI that a detected rogue AP needs to be at, to have an entry created in the device:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap profile profile1
Device(config)# rogue detection min-rssi -100
Device(config)# end
Device# show wireless wps rogue client summary/show wireless wps rogue ap summary
```

This example shows how to configure the classification interval:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ap profile profile1
Device(config)# rogue detection min-transient-time 500
Device(config)# end
Device# show wireless wps rogue client summary/show wireless wps rogue ap summary
```

Configuring Rogue Policies (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**.
- Step 2** In the **Rogue Policies** tab, use the **Rogue Detection Security Level** drop-down to select the security level.
- Step 3** In the **Expiration timeout for Rogue APs (seconds)** field, enter the timeout value.
- Step 4** Select the **Validate Rogue Clients against AAA** check box to validate rogue clients against AAA server.
- Step 5** Select the **Validate Rogue APs against AAA** check box to validate rogue access points against AAA server.
- Step 6** In the **Rogue Polling Interval (seconds)** field, enter the interval to poll the AAA server for rogue information.
- Step 7** Select the **Detect and Report Adhoc Networks** check box to enable detection of rogue adhoc networks.
- Step 8** In the **Rogue Detection Client Number Threshold** field, enter the threshold to generate SNMP trap.
- Step 9** In the **Auto Contain** section, enter the following details.
- Step 10** Use the **Auto Containment Level** drop-down to select the level.

- Step 11** Select the **Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs** check box to limit the auto-containment only to monitor mode APs.
- Step 12** Select the **Using our SSID** check box to limit the auto-containment only to rogue APs using one of the SSID configured on the controller.
- Step 13** Select the **Adhoc Rogue AP** check box to limit the auto-containment only to adhoc rogue APs.
- Step 14** Click **Apply**.

Configuring Rogue Policies (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level custom	Configures the rogue detection security level. You can select critical for highly sensitive deployments, custom for customizable security level, high for medium-scale deployments, and low for small-scale deployments.
Step 3	wireless wps rogue ap timeout <i>number of seconds</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap timeout 250	Configures the expiration time for rogue entries, in seconds. Valid range for the time in seconds 240 seconds to 3600 seconds.
Step 4	Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client aaa	Configures the use of AAA or local database to detect valid MAC addresses.
Step 5	Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client mse	Configures the use of MSE to detect valid MAC addresses.
Step 6	wireless wps rogue client notify-min-rssi <i>RSSI threshold</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client notify-min-rssi -128	Configures the minimum RSSI notification threshold for rogue clients. Valid range for the RSSI threshold in dB is -128 - dB to -70 dB.
Step 7	wireless wps rogue client notify-min-deviation <i>RSSI threshold</i> Example:	Configures the RSSI deviation notification threshold for rogue clients. Valid range for the RSSI threshold in dB is 0 dB to 10 dB.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client notify-min-deviation 4	
Step 8	wireless wps rogue ap aaa Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap aaa	Configures the use of AAA or local database to classify rogue AP based on rogue AP MAC addresses.
Step 9	wireless wps rogue ap aaa polling-interval <i>AP AAA Interval</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap aaa polling-interval 120	Configures rogue AP AAA validation interval. The valid range for the AP AAA interval in seconds is 60 seconds to 86400 seconds.
Step 10	wireless wps rogue adhoc Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue adhoc	Enables detecting and reporting adhoc rogue (IBSS).
Step 11	wireless wps rogue client client-threshold <i>threshold</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client client-threshold 100	Configures the rogue client per a rogue AP SNMP trap threshold. The valid range for the threshold is 0 to 256.
Step 12	wireless wps rogue ap init-timer Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap init-timer 180	Configures the init timer for rogue APs. The default timer value is set to 180 seconds. Note When a rogue AP is detected, an init timer is started and the rules are applied when this timer expires. This allows for rogue AP information to stabilize before applying any rules. However, you can change the value of this timer using this command. For instance, the init timer can be set to 0, if the rules need to be applied as soon as a new rogue AP is detected.

Rogue Detection Security Level

The rogue detection security level configuration allows you to set rogue detection parameters.

The available security levels are:

- Critical: Basic rogue detection for highly sensitive deployments.
- High: Basic rogue detection for medium-scale deployments.
- Low: Basic rogue detection for small-scale deployments.

- Custom: Default security-level, where all detection parameters are configurable.



Note When in Critical, High or Low, some rogue parameters are fixed and cannot be configured.

The following table shows parameter details for the three predefined levels:

Table 81: Rogue Detection: Predefined Levels

Parameter	Critical	High	Low
Cleanup Timer	3600	1200	240
AAA Validate Clients	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
AAA Validate AP	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Adhoc Reporting	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Monitor-Mode Report Interval	10 seconds	30 seconds	60 seconds
Minimum RSSI	-128 dBm	-80 dBm	-80 dBm
Transient Interval	600 seconds	300 seconds	120 seconds
Auto Contain Works only on Monitor Mode APs.	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Auto Contain Level	1	1	1
Auto Contain Same-SSID	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Auto Contain Valid Clients on Rogue AP	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Auto Contain Adhoc	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Containment Auto-Rate	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Validate Clients with CMX	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Containment FlexConnect	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled

Setting Rogue Detection Security-level

Follow the procedure given below to set the rogue detection security-level:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps rogue security-level custom Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level custom	Configures rogue detection security level as custom.
Step 3	wireless wps rogue security-level low Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level low	Configures rogue detection security level for basic rogue detection setup for small-scale deployments.
Step 4	wireless wps rogue security-level high Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level high	Configures rogue detection security level for rogue detection setup for medium-scale deployments.
Step 5	wireless wps rogue security-level critical Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue security-level critical	Configures rogue detection security level for rogue detection setup for highly sensitive deployments.

Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events

Wireless Service Assurance (WSA) rogue events, supported in Release 16.12.x and later releases, consist of telemetry notifications for a subset of SNMP traps. WSA rogue events replicate the same information that is part of the corresponding SNMP trap.

For all the exported events, the following details are provided to the wireless service assurance (WSA) infrastructure:

- MAC address of the rogue AP
- Details of the managed AP and the radio that detected the rogue AP with strongest RSSI
- Event-specific data such as SSID, channel for potential honeypot event, and MAC address of the impersonating AP for impersonation event

The WSA rogue events feature can scale up to four times the maximum number of supported APs and half of the maximum number of supported clients.

The WSA rogue events feature is supported on Cisco Catalyst Center and other third-party infrastructure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	network-assurance enable Example: Device# network-assurance enable	Enables wireless service assurance.
Step 3	wireless wps rogue network-assurance enable Example: Device# wireless wps rogue network-assurance enable	Enables wireless service assurance for rogue devices. This ensures that the WSA rogue events are sent to the event queue.

Monitoring Wireless Service Assurance Rogue Events

Procedure

- **show wireless wps rogue stats**

Example:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue stats
```

```
WSA Events
Total WSA Events Triggered      : 9
  ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_DETECTED : 2
  ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_CLEARED  : 3
  ROGUE_AP_IMPERSONATION_DETECTED   : 4
Total WSA Events Enqueued       : 6
  ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_DETECTED : 1
  ROGUE_POTENTIAL_HONEYPOT_CLEARED  : 2
  ROGUE_AP_IMPERSONATION_DETECTED   : 3
```

In this example, nine events have been triggered, but only six of them have been enqueued. This is because three events were triggered before the WSA rogue feature was enabled.

- **show wireless wps rogue stats internal**

show wireless wps rogue ap detailed *rogue-ap-mac-addr*

These commands show information related to WSA events into the event history.

Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities

Feature History for Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 82: Feature History for Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities	The Rogue Full Scale Quotas and Priorities feature helps you to improve the scalability, performance, manageability, and serviceability of rogue Access Points (APs).

Rogue AP Scale Modes Per Class

The following are the modes that determine if a rogue AP is added to the database when it reaches maximum scale:

- **Quota:** Quotas are applied to each classification as a percentage of the maximum scale. This means that if a classification has quota X, then X percent of the rogue database is reserved for that classification. If the entire memory of the given classification is used up, the newly reported rogue APs under that classification are dropped.
- **Priority:** Priorities are applied to different classifications. When quotas are not configured, priority mode becomes the default mode.

The priority for each classification is configured as follows:

The default priority for malicious is **highest**. The default priority for custom is **high**. The default priority for unclassified is **medium**, and the default priority for friendly is **low**.

Priorities are only applied when the maximum scale is reached. If a new rogue AP is classified and the maximum scale is reached, it is added to the database only if there are lower-priority rogue APs in the database. In such a case, the newest rogue AP entry of the lowest priority is deleted. Else, if there are no lower-priority rogue APs, the new rogue AP is dropped.

- **Hybrid:** Hybrid mode enables the use of quotas and priorities as a combination. Unused quota reserved for higher priority rogue APs are used by rogue APs of lower priority when space is available.

After reaching the maximum scale, if a new rogue AP is classified, the following logic is applied:

- If the number of stored rogue APs (in the class of the new rogue AP), is below the quota, store the new rogue AP. Delete the newest rogue AP of the classification with the lowest priority that is above the quota.
- Alternatively, check if there is a class with lower priority and is above the quota than the newly classified rogue AP. If such a class exists, delete the newest rogue AP of that lower-priority classification and store the new rogue AP.
- If none of the above conditions apply, drop the new rogue AP.

Table 83: Advantages and Disadvantages of Role-Scale Modes

Mode	Advantages	Disadvantages
Quota	Simple to use and understand.	- Memory is not used efficiently. - New rogue APs for a class that is already in its maximum quota are dropped. While the memory reserved for another class that does not have any rogue APs, stays empty. For example, this could lead to dropping malicious rogue APs, while there is still memory available.
Priority	- Simple to use and understand. - Utilizes the available memory. - Stores the important rogue APs.	Some of the lower-priority rogue AP classes might not be represented in the rogue database, if higher-priority rogue APs utilize all the available memory.
Hybrid	Utilizes the available memory, while providing quotas so that all the classes are represented in the database.	Difficult for users to understand the exact behavior.

Configuring Rogue AP Scale (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] wireless wps rogue scale quota malicious percentage-malicious-rogue-AP custom percentage-custom-rogue-AP unclassified percentage-unclassified-rogue-AP friendly percentage-friendly-rogue-AP Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue scale quota malicious 5 custom 10 unclassified 3 friendly 5	Configures rogue scale quota for malicious, custom, unclassified, and friendly rogue APs. The default value for quota is 0. The sum of all the quotas must be less than or equal to 100 percent. If the sum of all the configured quotas is equal to 0, then priority mode is used. If the sum of all the quotas is not equal to 0, then quota mode is used. If hybrid mode is configured, hybrid

	Command or Action	Purpose
		mode is used no matter what the quota configuration is. Hybrid mode with all the quotas equal to 0, is identical to the priority mode. Note Hybrid mode is enabled after the maximum scale is reached. All the rogue APs are stored before the maximum scale is reached.
Step 3	[no] wireless wps rogue scale priority malicious {high highest low medium} custom {high highest low medium} unclassified {high highest low medium} friendly {high highest low medium} Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue scale priority malicious highest custom high unclassified medium friendly low</pre>	Configures rogue scale priority for malicious, custom, unclassified, and friendly rogue APs. The default value for malicious is highest, the default value for custom is high, the default value for unclassified is medium, and the default value for friendly is low.
Step 4	[no] wireless wps rogue scale mode hybrid Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue scale mode hybrid</pre>	Configures rogue scale hybrid mode. Unused quota reserved for higher-priority rogue APs are used by rogue APs of lower priority when space is available.

Verifying Rogue Scale Details

To verify the rogue scale details, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue stats
.
.
.
Total Post Init/Max      : 0/4000
Total/Max                : 0/4200
Init                    : 0
.
.
.
Classification
Friendly                : 0/0/0 (Total/Init/Quota[%])
Malicious               : 0/0/0 (Total/Init/Quota[%])
Custom                  : 0/0/0 (Total/Init/Quota[%])
Unclassified            : 0/0/0 (Total/Init/Quota[%])
Unknown                 : 0/0 (Total/Init)
.
.
.
Configured Quotas by Classification
Custom                  : <% of max scale>
Friendly                : <% of max scale>
Malicious               : <% of max scale>
Unclassified            : <% of max scale>
```

```
Configured Priorities by Classification
Custom          : 2 (High)
Friendly        : 4 (Low)
Malicious       : 1 (Highest)
Unclassified    : 3 (Medium)
```

```
Configured Rogue Scale Mode: [Priority|Quota|Hybrid]
```

To view the rogue ad hoc summary, run the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wps rogue adhoc summary
Detect and report Ad-Hoc Networks : Enabled
Auto-Contain Ad-Hoc Networks      : Disabled
Total Number of Rogue Ad-Hoc      : 0
Friendly Ad-Hoc Rogues            : 0
Malicious Ad-Hoc Rogues           : 0
Custom Ad-Hoc Rogues              : 0
Unclassified Ad-Hoc Rogues        : 0
Unknown Ad-Hoc Rogues             : 0
Client MAC Address   Adhoc BSSID   Classification  State      # APs  Last Heard
-----
```




CHAPTER 126

Classifying Rogue Access Points

- [Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 1287](#)
- [Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs, on page 1289](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 1289](#)
- [How to Classify Rogue Access Points, on page 1290](#)
- [Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules, on page 1296](#)
- [Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points, on page 1296](#)

Information About Classifying Rogue Access Points

The controller software enables you to create rules that can organize and display rogue access points as Friendly, Malicious, Custom, or Unclassified.

By default, none of the classification rules are used. You need to enable them. Therefore, all unknown access points are categorized as Unclassified. When you create or change a rule, configure conditions, and enable it, all rogue access points are then reclassified. Whenever you change a rule, it is applied to all the access points (friendly, malicious, and unclassified).



Note

- Rule-based rogue classification does not apply to ad hoc rogues and rogue clients.
- You can configure up to 64 rogue classification rules per controller .

When the controller receives a rogue report from one of its managed access points, it responds as follows:

- If the unknown access point is in the friendly MAC address list, the controller classifies the access point as Friendly.
- If the unknown access point is not in the friendly MAC address list, the controller starts applying the rogue classification rules to the access point.
- If the rogue access point is manually classified, rogue rules are not applied to it.
- If the rogue access point matches the configured rules criteria, the controller classifies the rogue based on the classification type configured for that rule.
- If the rogue access point does not match any of the configured rules, the rogue remains unclassified.

The controller repeats the previous steps for all the rogue access points.

- If the rogue access point is detected on the same wired network, the controller marks the rogue state as Threat and classifies it as Malicious automatically, even if there are no configured rules. You can then manually contain the rogue to change the rogue state to Contained. If the rogue access point is not available on the network, the controller marks the rogue state as Alert. You can then manually contain the rogue.
- If desired, you can manually move the access point to a different classification type and rogue state.
- Before performing any classification, the rogue access points are temporarily marked as Pending.

Table 84: Classification Mapping

Rule-Based Classification Type	Rogue State
Custom	• Alert—No action is taken other than notifying the management station. The management station in the controller manages the controller and wired networks. • Contained—The unknown access point is contained. If none of the managed access points are available for containment, the rogue is in Contained Pending state.
Delete	Deletes the rogue access point.
Friendly	• Internal—If the unknown access point poses no threat to WLAN security, you can manually configure it as Friendly, Internal. An example of this would be the access points in your lab network. • External—If the unknown access point is outside the network and poses no threat to WLAN security, you can manually configure it as Friendly, External. An example of this would be the access point in your neighboring coffee shop. • Alert—No action is taken other than notifying the management station. The management station manages the controller and wired networks.
Malicious	• Alert—No action is taken other than notifying the management station. The management station manages the controller and wired networks. • Threat—The unknown access point is found to be on the network and poses a threat to WLAN security. • Contained—The unknown access point is contained. If none of the managed access points are available for containment, the rogue is in Contained Pending state.
Unclassified	• Alert—No action is taken other than notifying the management station. The management station manages the controller and wired networks. • Contained—The unknown access point is contained. If none of the managed access points are available for containment, the rogue is in contained pending state.

As mentioned earlier, the controller can automatically change the classification type and rogue state of an unknown access point based on user-defined rules. Alternatively, you can manually move the unknown access point to a different classification type and rogue state.

Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs

Local or FlexConnect mode APs still perform rogue containment even if the ‘Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs’ option is enabled.

There are three methods for rogue containment:

- Manual Rogue Containment - Priority 1 (Highest)
- Rule-Based Rogue Containment - Priority 2
- Auto-Containment - Priority 3

Auto-Containment works only if one of the following is enabled:

- Using our SSID
- A valid client on the Rogue AP
- Ad-hoc Rogue AP

If ‘Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs’ is enabled along with any one of the above options, Monitor mode APs perform the containment, not any other AP. In other words, ‘Auto Containment only for Monitor Mode APs’ is only applicable for Auto-containment configuration. It is not applicable for Manual or Rule-based containment.

Containment levels range from 1 to 4, indicating how many APs perform the containment. Manual rogue containment allows for levels 1 to 4, while rule-based containment is always set to 1.

Containment prioritizations: Manual containment has the highest priority, followed by rule-based, and then auto-containment. A rogue address that matches a manual or rule-based configuration is not subject to auto-containment.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Classifying Rogue Access Points

- Classifying Custom type rogues is tied to rogue rules. Therefore, it is not possible to manually classify a rogue as Custom. Custom class change can occur only when rogue rules are used.
- Some SNMP traps are sent for containment by rule and every 30 minutes for rogue classification change.
- Rogue rules are applied on every incoming new rogue report in the controller in the order of their priority.
- After a rogue satisfies a rule and is classified, it does not move down the priority list for the same report.
- The rogue classification rules are re-evaluated at every report received by the managed access points. Hence, a rogue access point can move from one state to another, if a different rule matches the last report.
- If a rogue AP is classified as friendly or ignored, all rogue clients associated with it are not tracked.
- Until the controller discovers all the APs through neighbor reports from APs, the rogue APs are kept in unconfigured state for three minutes after they are detected. After 3 minutes, the rogue policy is applied

on the rogue APs and the APs are moved to unclassified, friendly, malicious, or custom class. Rogue APs kept in unconfigured state means that no rogue policy has yet been applied on them.

- When a rogue BSSID is submitted for a containment on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, if the controller has enough resources, it will contain. The APs that detect the particular contained rogue AP starts broadcasting the DEAUTH packets.

Wireless client connected to the contained rogue BSSID will disconnect once DEAUTH packets are received. However, when the client assumes being in a connected state, repeatedly tries to reconnect and the wireless client's user browsing experience would be badly affected.

Also, in a high RF environment like that of a stadium, though DEAUTH packets are broadcasted, client does not receive all of them because of RF disturbance. In this scenario, the client may not be fully disconnected but will be affected badly.

- The rogue AP manual classification limit has been enhanced from 625 to 10,000 configurations at a time. The rogue client manual classification limit has been enhanced from 625 to 10,000 configurations at a time.

How to Classify Rogue Access Points

Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Monitoring > Wireless > Rogues .
Step 2	In the Unclassified tab, select an AP to view the detail in the lower pane.
Step 3	Use the Class Type drop-down to set the status.
Step 4	Click Apply .
-

Classifying Rogue Access Points and Clients Manually (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps rogue adhoc {alert mac-addr auto-contain contain mac-addr containment-level internal mac-addr external mac-addr}	Detects and reports the ad hoc rogue. Enter one of these options after you enter the adhoc keyword:

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue adhoc alert 74a0.2f45.c520</pre>	• alert—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point to alert mode. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter. • auto-contain—Sets the automatically containing ad hoc rogue to auto-contain mode. • contain—Sets the containing ad hoc rogue access point to contain mode. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter and containment level for the <i>containment-level</i> parameter. The valid range for <i>containment-level</i> is from 1 to 4. • external—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point as external. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter. • internal—Sets the ad hoc rogue access point as internal. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter.
Step 3	wireless wps rogue ap {friendly <i>mac-addr</i> state [external internal] malicious <i>mac-addr</i> state [alert contain <i>containment-level</i>]} Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap malicious 74a0.2f45.c520 state contain 3</pre>	Configures the rogue access points. Enter one of the following options after the ap keyword: • friendly—Configures the friendly rogue access points. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter. After that enter the state keyword followed by either of these options: internal or external. If you select an internal option, it indicates that you trust a foreign access point. If you select an external option, it indicates that you acknowledge the presence of a rogue access point. • malicious—Configures the malicious rogue access points. If you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter. After that enter the state keyword followed by either of these options: alert or contain. • alert—Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• contain—Sets the malicious rogue access point to contain mode. If you choose this option, enter the containment level for the <i>containment-level</i> parameter. The valid range is from 1 to 4.
Step 4	wireless wps rogue client { contain <i>mac-addr</i> <i>containment-level</i> } Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue client contain 74a0.2f45.c520 2</pre>	Configures the rogue clients. Enter the following option after you enter the client keyword: contain—Contains the rogue client. After you choose this option, enter the MAC address for the <i>mac-addr</i> parameter and the containment level for <i>containment-level</i> parameter. The valid range for <i>containment-level</i> is from 1 to 4.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Wireless Protection Policies**.
- Step 2** In the **Wireless Protection Policies** page, choose **Rogue AP Rules** tab.
- Step 3** On the **Rogue AP Rules** page, click the name of the **Rule** or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 4** In the **Add/Edit Rogue AP Rule** window that is displayed, enter the name of the rule in the **Rule Name** field.
- Step 5** Choose the rule type from the following **Rule Type** drop-down list options:
- Friendly
 - Malicious
 - Unclassified
 - Custom
-

Configuring Rogue Classification Rules (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless wps rogue rule <i>rule-name</i> priority <i>priority</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3	Creates or enables a rule. While creating a rule, you must enter the priority for the rule. Note After creating a rule, you can edit the rule and change the priority only for the rogue rules that are disabled. You cannot change the priority for the rogue rules that are enabled. While editing, changing the priority for a rogue rule is optional.
Step 3	classify {friendly state {alert external internal} malicious state {alert contained} } Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3 Device(config-rule)# classify friendly	Specifies the classification that needs to be applied to the rogue access points matching this rule. • friendly—Configures the friendly rogue access points. After that enter the state keyword followed by either of these options: alert, internal, or external. If you select an internal option, it indicates that you trust a foreign access point. If you select an external option, it indicates that you acknowledge the presence of a rogue access point. • malicious—Configures the malicious rogue access points. After that enter the state keyword followed by either of these options: alert or contained. • alert—Sets the malicious rogue access point to alert mode. • contained—Sets the malicious rogue access point to contained mode.
Step 4	condition {client-count <i>value</i> duration <i>duration_value</i> encryption infrastructure rssi ssid <i>ssid_name</i> wildcard-ssid} Example: Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3	Adds the following conditions to a rule, which the rogue access point must meet: • client-count—Requires that a minimum number of clients be associated to the rogue access point. For example, if the number of clients associated to the rogue

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-rule)# condition client-count 5</pre>	access point is greater than or equal to the configured value, the access point could be classified as Malicious. If you choose this option, enter the minimum number of clients to be associated to the rogue access point for the <i>value</i> parameter. The valid range is from 1 to 10 (inclusive), and the default value is 0. • duration—Requires that the rogue access point be detected for a minimum period of time. If you choose this option, enter a value for the minimum detection period for the <i>duration_value</i> parameter. The valid range is from 0 to 3600 seconds (inclusive), and the default value is 0 seconds. • encryption—Requires that the advertised WLAN does not have encryption enabled. You can choose any for any type of encryption, off for no encryption, wpa1 for WPA encryption, wpa2 for WPA2 encryption, wpa3-owe for WPA3 OWE encryption, or wpa3-sae for WPA3 SAE encryption. • infrastructure—Requires the SSID to be known to the controller. • rssi—Requires the rogue access point to be detected with a minimum RSSI value. If the classification is Friendly, the condition requires the rogue access point to be detected with a maximum RSSI value. The valid range is from -95 to -50 dBm (inclusive). • ssid—Requires the rogue access point to have a specific SSID. You could specify up to 25 different SSIDs. You should specify an SSID that is not managed by the controller. If you choose this option, enter the SSID for the <i>ssid_name</i> parameter. The SSID is added to the configured SSID list you just created. • wildcard-ssid—Allows you to specify an expression that could match an SSID string. You can specify up to 25 of these SSIDs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	match {all any} Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3 Device(config-rule)# match all</pre>	Specifies whether a detected rogue access point must meet all or any of the conditions specified by the rule for the rule to be matched and the rogue access point to adopt the classification type of the rule.
Step 6	default Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3 Device(config-rule)# default</pre>	Sets a command to its default.
Step 7	exit Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3 Device(config-rule)# exit Device(config)#</pre>	Exits the sub-mode.
Step 8	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule rule_3 priority 3 Device(config-rule)# shutdown</pre>	Disables a particular rogue rule. In this example, the rule rule_3 is disabled.
Step 9	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 10	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 11	wireless wps rogue rule shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule shutdown</pre>	Disables all the rogue rules.
Step 12	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules

You can monitor the rogue classification rules using the following commands:

Table 85: Commands for Monitoring Rogue Classification Rules

Command	Purpose
show wireless wps rogue rule detailed	Displays detailed information of a classification rule.
show wireless wps rogue rule summary	Displays a summary of the classification rules.

Examples: Classifying Rogue Access Points

This example shows how to classify a rogue AP with MAC address 00:11:22:33:44:55 as malicious and mark it for being contained by 2 managed APs:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue ap malicious 0011.2233.4455 state contain 2
```

This example shows how to create a rule that can categorize a rogue AP that is using SSID **my-friendly-ssid**, and it is seen for at least for 1000 seconds as friendly internal:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)# condition ssid my-friendly-ssid
Device(config-rule)# condition duration 1000
Device(config-rule)# match all
Device(config-rule)# classify friendly state internal
Device(config-rule)# no shutdown
```

This example shows how to apply a condition that a rogue access point must meet:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)# condition client-count 5
Device(config-rule)# condition duration 1000
Device(config-rule)# no shutdown
Device(config-rule)# end
```

This example shows a condition to classify rogue devices with the controller SSIDs as malicious:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless wps rogue rule ap1 priority 1
Device(config-rule)# classify malicious state alert
Device(config-rule)# condition duration 30
Device(config-rule)# condition infrastructure ssid
Device(config-rule)# match all
Device(config-rule)# no shutdown
Device(config-rule)# end
```



Advanced WIPS

- [Feature History for Advanced WIPS, on page 1297](#)
- [Information About Advanced WIPS, on page 1298](#)
- [Enabling Advanced WIPS, on page 1301](#)
- [Syslog Support for Advanced WIPS, on page 1301](#)
- [Advanced WIPS Solution Components, on page 1302](#)
- [Supported Modes and Platforms, on page 1302](#)
- [Enabling Advanced WIPS\(GUI\), on page 1303](#)
- [Enabling Advanced WIPS \(CLI\), on page 1303](#)
- [Configuring Syslog Threshold for Advanced WIPS \(CLI\), on page 1304](#)
- [Viewing Advanced WIPS Alarms \(GUI\), on page 1305](#)
- [Verifying Advanced WIPS, on page 1305](#)
- [Verifying Syslog Configuration for Advanced WIPS, on page 1306](#)

Feature History for Advanced WIPS

This table provides release and related information for the features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 86: Feature History for Advanced WIPS

Release	Feature Name	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	Advanced WIPS Signatures	Up to 15 additional signatures are supported.
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	Syslog Support for Advanced WIPs	From 17.6.1 release onwards: • Two additional signatures are supported. • Syslog support has been added to the controller for advanced WIPS.

Information About Advanced WIPS

The Cisco Advanced Wireless Intrusion Prevention System (aWIPS) is a wireless intrusion threat detection and mitigation mechanism. The aWIPS uses an advanced approach to wireless threat detection and performance management. The AP detects threats and generates alarms. It combines network traffic analysis, network device and topology information, signature-based techniques, and anomaly detection to deliver highly accurate and complete wireless threat prevention.

With a fully infrastructure-integrated solution, you can continually monitor wireless traffic on both wired and wireless networks and use that network intelligence to analyze attacks from multiple sources to accurately pinpoint and proactively prevent attacks, rather than wait until damage or exposure has occurred.

The following table shows the alarms introduced from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 onwards:

Table 87: Advanced WIPS Signatures and Definitions: From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 Onwards

Advanced WIPS Signature	Definition
RTS Virtual Carrier Sense Attack	This is an addition to the existing RTS Flood alarm introduced in Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.x. The alarm is triggered when an RTS with a large duration is detected. An attacker can use these frames to exhaust air time and disrupt wireless client service.
CTS Virtual Carrier Sense Attack	This is an addition to the existing CTS Flood alarm introduced in Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.x. The alarm is triggered when a CTS with large duration is detected. An attacker can use these frames to exhaust air time and disrupt wireless client service.
Deauthentication Flood by Pair	In the enhanced context of threat, both the source (attacker) and the destination (victim) of attacks (Track by Pair) have visibility.
Fuzzed Beacon	Fuzzed beacon is when invalid, unexpected, or random data is introduced into the beacon and replays those modified frames into the air. This causes unexpected behavior on the destination device, including driver crashes, operating system crashes, and stack-based overflows. This in turn allows the execution of the arbitrary code of the affected system.
Fuzzed Probe Request	Fuzzed probe request is when invalid, unexpected, or random data is introduced into a probe request and replays those modified frames into the air.
Fuzzed Probe Response	Fuzzed probe response is when invalid, unexpected, or random data is introduced into a probe response and replays those modified frames into the air.

Advanced WIPS Signature	Definition
PS Poll Flood by Signature	PS poll flood is when a potential hacker spoofs a MAC address of a wireless client and sends out a flood of PS poll frames. The AP sends out buffered data frames to the wireless client. This results in the client missing the data frames because it could be in the power safe mode.
Eapol Start V1 Flood by Signature	Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL) start flood is when an attacker attempts to bring down the AP by flooding the AP with EAPOL-start frames to exhaust the AP's internal resources.
Reassociation Request Flood by Destination	Reassociation request flood is when a specific device tries to flood the AP with a large number of emulated and spoofed client reassociations to exhaust the AP's resources, particularly the client association table. When the client association table overflows, legitimate clients are not able to associate, causing a DoS attack.
Beacon Flood by Signature	Beacon flood is when stations actively search for a network that is bombarded with beacons from the networks that are generated using different MAC addresses and SSIDs. This flood prevents a valid client from detecting the beacons sent by corporate APs, which in turn initiates a DoS attack.
Probe Response Flood by Destination	Probe response flood is when a device tries to flood clients with a large number of spoofed probe responses from the AP. This prevents clients from detecting the valid probe responses sent by the corporate APs.
Block Ack Flood by Signature	Block ack flood is when an attacker transmits an invalid Add Block Acknowledgement (ADDBA) frame to the AP while spoofing the MAC address of the valid client. This process causes the AP to ignore any valid traffic transmitted from the client until it reaches the invalid frame range.
Airdrop Session	Airdrop session refers to the Apple feature called AirDrop. AirDrop is used to set up a peer-to-peer link for file sharing. This might create a security risk because of unauthorized peer-to-peer networks created dynamically in your WLAN environment.
Malformed Association Request	Malformed association request is when an attacker sends a malformed association request to trigger bugs in the AP. This results in a DoS attack.

Advanced WIPS Signature	Definition
Authentication Failure Flood by Signature	Authentication failure flood is when a specific device tries to flood the AP with invalid authentication requests spoofed from a valid client. This results in disconnection.
Invalid MAC OUI by Signature	Invalid MAC OUI is when a spoofed MAC address that does not have a valid OUI is used.
Malformed Authentication	Malformed authentication is when an attacker sends malformed authentication frames that can expose vulnerabilities in some drivers.

The following table shows the alarms introduced prior to Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1:

Table 88: Advanced WIPS Signatures: Prior Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1

Advanced WIPS Signatures
Authentication Flood Alarm
Association Flood Alarm
Broadcast Probe Flood Alarm
Disassociation Flood Alarm
Broadcast Dis-Association Flood Alarm
De-Authentication Flood Alarm
Broadcast De-Authentication Flood Alarm
EAPOL-Logoff Flood Alarm
CTS Flood Alarm
RTS Flood Alarm

Guidelines and Restrictions

- In the aWIPS profile, Cisco Aironet 1850 Series Access Points, Cisco Catalyst 9117 Series Access Points, and Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Series Access Points can detect EAPOL logoff attack and raise alarms accordingly, only on off-channel. They can not detect EAPOL logoff attack and raise alarms on on-channel.
- aWIPS profile download is not supported when Cisco Catalyst Center is configured using the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

Enabling Advanced WIPS

From Cisco IOS XE Release 17.5.1 onwards, aWIPS security gets a higher priority over Hyperlocation/Fastlocate. The following are the possible scenarios.

All Catalyst APs supporting Fastlocate can be used together with aWIPS depending on the configuration and regardless of the AP mode.

In modes other than the Monitor mode for Cisco Aironet 4800 AP, if both aWIPS and Hyperlocation are enabled, only aWIPS is available.

Hyperlocation/Fastlocate	Advanced WIPS	Cisco Aironet 4800 AP Mode	Cisco Aironet 4800 AP Effective Feature
Enable	Enable	Any Non-Monitor	aWIPS ²
Enable	Disable	Any Non-Monitor	Hyperlocation/Fastlocate
Disable	Disable	Any Non-Monitor	Hyperlocation/Fastlocate and aWIPS are disabled.
Disable	Enable	Any Non-Monitor	aWIPS
Enable	Enable	Monitor	aWIPS and Hyperlocation ³
Disable	Enable	Monitor	aWIPS ⁴
Enable	Disable	Monitor	Hyperlocation/Fastlocate
Disable	Disable	Monitor	Hyperlocation/Fastlocate and aWIPS are disabled.

² In modes other than the Monitor mode, if both aWIPS and Hyperlocation/Fastlocate are enabled, only aWIPS is available.

³ In Monitor mode, if both aWIPS and Hyperlocation/Fastlocate are enabled, both aWIPS and Hyperlocation/Fastlocate are available.

⁴ To monitor the status of aWIPS and Hyperlocation/Fastlocate simultaneously on AP, use the **show capwap client rcb** command.

Syslog Support for Advanced WIPS

This feature adds syslog support to the controller for Advanced WIPS.

The controller raises syslog messages when it receives alarms from an AP. The syslog messages go through throttling. If the same signature is detected from the same AP in a configured throttling interval, you must generate the syslog message for that alarm. For instance, if there were 100 occurrences of the same signature from the same AP within the throttling interval, say, 1 minute, you get to view only one syslog message in the controller in that 1-minute period instead of 100 messages.

Sample Syslog Format

The following is a sample syslog format:

```
Nov 18 20:45:23.746: %APMGR_AWIPS_SYSLOG-6-APMGR_AWIPS_MESSAGE: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncd: AWIPS
alarm:(AP00B0.E19A.5720) 00b0.e19a.5720 Radio MAC 00b0.e19b.c300 detected Probe Response
Flood by Destination (10019)
```

The format covers the AP name, AP Ethernet MAC address, AP Radio MAC address, description (signature ID).



Note The syslog messages do not display any client information or context.

Advanced WIPS Solution Components

The aWIPS solution comprises the following components:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller
- Cisco Aironet Wave 2 APs
- Cisco Catalyst Center

Because the aWIPS functionality is integrated into Cisco Catalyst Center, the aWIPS can configure and monitor WIPS policies and alarms and report threats.

aWIPS supports the following capabilities:

- Static signatures
 - From Cisco IOS XE, 17.4.1 onwards Cisco Catalyst Center can change threshold values and push new signature files to the AP.
- Enable or disable signature forensic capture from Cisco Catalyst Center.
- Standalone signature detection only
- Alarms only
- GUI support
- CLIs to view alarms
- Static signature file packaged with controller and AP image
- Export alarms to Cisco Catalyst Center through WSA channel



Note aWIPS alarm details such as the AP MAC address, alarm ID, alarm string, and signature ID are displayed on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 series wireless controller GUI.

Supported Modes and Platforms

aWIPS is supported on the following controllers:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers
- Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Catalyst Access Points



Note aWIPS is not supported on Cisco IOS APs.

Enabling Advanced WIPS(GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join .
Step 2	Click Add . The Add AP Join Profile window is displayed.
Step 3	In the Add AP Join Profile window, click the Security tab.
Step 4	Under the aWIPS section, check the aWIPS Enable check box.
Step 5	Click Apply to Device . You will go back the to General tab.
Step 6	Click the Security tab.
Step 7	Under the aWIPS section, check the Forensic Enable check box.
Step 8	Click Apply to Device .
-

Enabling Advanced WIPS (CLI)

To enable aWIPS from the controller and ensure that aWIPS has higher priority than Hyperlocation/Fastlocate, perform the following:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name	Configures the default AP profile.
Step 3	awips Example:	Enables aWIPS. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-ap-profile)# awips</code>	aWIPS is disabled by default on the controller.
Step 4	awips forensic Example: <code>Device(conf-ap-profile)# awips forensic</code>	Enables forensics for aWIPS alarms.
Step 5	hyperlocation Example: <code>Device(config-ap-profile)# hyperlocation</code>	Enables Hyperlocation/Fastlocate on all the supported APs that are associated with this AP profile.
Step 6	end Example: <code>Device(config-ap-profile)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Syslog Threshold for Advanced WIPS (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	awips-syslog throttle period <i>syslog-throttle-interval</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# awips-syslog throttle period 38</code>	Configures the syslog threshold for aWIPS. <i>syslog-throttle-interval</i> : Enter the syslog throttle interval, in seconds. The range is from 30 to 600. Note The default throttling interval is 60 seconds.
Step 3	end Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Viewing Advanced WIPS Alarms (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Navigate to **Monitoring > Security > aWIPS**.
- Step 2** To view the details of the alarms in the last 5 minutes, click the **Current Alarms** tab.
- Step 3** To view the alarm count over an extended period of time, either hourly, for a day (24 hours) or more, click the **Historical Statistics** tab.
- Step 4** Sort or filter the alarms based on the following parameters:
- **AP Radio MAC address**
 - **Alarm ID**
 - **Time Stamp**
 - **Signature ID**
 - **Alarm Description**
 - **Alarm Message Index**
-

Verifying Advanced WIPS

To view the aWIPS status, use the **show awips status** *radio_mac* command:

```
Device# show awips status 0xx7.8xx8.2xx0
```

AP Radio MAC	AWIPS Status	Forensic Capture Status	Alarm Message Count
0xx7.8xx8.2xx0	ENABLED	CONFIG_NOT_ENABLED	14691

The various aWIPS status indicators are:

- **ENABLED:** aWIPS enabled.
- **NOT_SUPPORTED:** The AP does not support AWIPS.
- **CONFIG_NOT_ENABLED:** aWIPS is not enabled on the AP.

To view details of specific alarm signatures, use the **show awips alarm signature** *signature_id* command:

```
Device# show awips alarm signature 10001
```

AP Radio MAC	AlarmID	Timestamp	SignatureID	Alarm Description	Message Index
0xx7.8xx8.2f80	1714	11/02/2020 13:02:19	10001	Authentication Flood	3966

To view alarm message statistics, use the **show awips alarm statistics** command:

```
Device# show awips alarm statistics
```

To view a list of alarms since the last clear, use the **show awips alarm ap *ap_mac* detailed** command:

```
Device# show awips alarm ap 0xx7.8xx8.2f80 detailed
```

AP Radio MAC	AlarmID	Timestamp	SignatureID	Alarm Description

0xx7.8xx8.2f80	2491	08/02/2022 17:44:40	10009	RTS Flood

To view detailed alarm information, use the **show awips alarm detailed** command:

```
Device# show awips alarm detailed
```

AP Radio MAC	AlarmID	Timestamp	SignatureID	Alarm Description

7xx3.5xxd.d360	1	10/29/2020 23:21:27	10001	Authentication Flood by Source
dxxc.3xx5.9460	71	10/29/2020 23:21:27	10001	Authentication Flood by Source
7xx3.5xxd.d360	2	10/29/2020 23:21:28	10002	Association Request Flood by Destination
dxxc.3xx5.9460	72	10/29/2020 23:21:28	10002	Association Request Flood by Destination

To view the alarms on a specific AP, use the **show awips alarm ap *radio_mac* detailed** command:

Verifying Syslog Configuration for Advanced WIPS

To verify the syslog configuration for a WIPS, use the following command:

```
Device# show awips syslog throttle
```

```
Syslog Throttle Interval (seconds)
```

```
-----
```

```
38
```



CHAPTER 128

Cisco TrustSec

- Information about Cisco TrustSec, on page 1307
- Cisco TrustSec Features, on page 1308
- Security Group Access Control List, on page 1309
- Inline Tagging, on page 1311
- Policy Enforcement, on page 1311
- SGACL Support for Wireless Guest Access, on page 1312
- Enabling SGACL on the AP (GUI), on page 1313
- Enabling SGACL on the AP, on page 1313
- Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Globally (CLI), on page 1315
- Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Per Interface (CLI), on page 1315
- Manually Configure a Device SGT (CLI), on page 1316
- Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode (GUI), on page 1316
- Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode, on page 1317
- Configuring ISE for TrustSec, on page 1317
- Verifying Cisco TrustSec Configuration, on page 1319

Information about Cisco TrustSec

Cisco TrustSec provides security improvements to Cisco network devices based on the capability to strongly identify users, hosts, and network devices within a network. TrustSec provides topology-independent and scalable access controls by uniquely classifying data traffic for a particular role. TrustSec ensures data confidentiality and integrity by establishing trust among authenticated peers and encrypting links with those peers.

The key component of Cisco TrustSec is the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE). Cisco ISE can provision switches with TrustSec Identities and Security Group ACLs (SGACLs), though these may be configured manually on the switch.



Note You should manually clear the CTS environment data using the **clear cts environment-data** command before changing CTS server to a new one. This ensures that you get the updated data while running **show cts environment-data** command.

Cisco TrustSec Features

The table below lists the TrustSec features to be eventually implemented on TrustSec-enabled Cisco switches. Successive general availability releases of TrustSec will expand the number of switches supported and the number of TrustSec features supported per switch.

Cisco TrustSec Feature	Description
802.1AE Tagging (MACsec)	Protocol for IEEE 802.1AE-based wire-rate hop-to-hop Layer 2 encryption. Between MACsec-capable devices, packets are encrypted on egress from the transmitting device, decrypted on ingress to the receiving device, and in the clear within the devices. This feature is only available between TrustSec hardware-capable devices.
Endpoint Admission Control (EAC)	EAC is an authentication process for an endpoint user or a device connecting to the TrustSec domain. Usually EAC takes place at the access level switch. Successful authentication and authorization in the EAC process results in Security Group Tag assignment for the user or device. Currently EAC can be 802.1X, MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB), and Web Authentication Proxy (WebAuth).
Network Device Admission Control (NDAC)	NDAC is an authentication process where each network device in the TrustSec domain can verify the credentials and trustworthiness of its peer device. NDAC utilizes an authentication framework based on IEEE 802.1X port-based authentication and uses EAP-FAST as its EAP method. Successful authentication and authorization in NDAC process results in Security Association Protocol negotiation for IEEE 802.1AE encryption.
Security Group Access Control List (SGACL)	A Security Group Access Control List (SGACL) associates a Security Group Tag with a policy. The policy is enforced upon SGT-tagged traffic egressing the TrustSec domain.
Security Association Protocol (SAP)	After NDAC authentication, the Security Association Protocol (SAP) automatically negotiates keys and the cipher suite for subsequent MACSec link encryption between TrustSec peers. SAP is defined in IEEE 802.11i.
Security Group Tag (SGT)	An SGT is a 16-bit single label indicating the security classification of a source in the TrustSec domain. It is appended to an Ethernet frame or an IP packet.

Cisco TrustSec Feature	Description
SGT Exchange Protocol (SXP)	Security Group Tag Exchange Protocol (SXP). With SXP, devices that are not TrustSec-hardware-capable can receive SGT attributes for authenticated users and devices from the Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) or the Cisco Secure Access Control System (ACS). The devices can then forward a sourceIP-to-SGT binding to a TrustSec-hardware-capable device will tag the source traffic for SGACL enforcement.

When both ends of a link support 802.1AE MACsec, SAP negotiation occurs. An EAPOL-key exchange occurs between the supplicant and the authenticator to negotiate a cipher suite, exchange security parameters, and manage keys. Successful completion of these tasks results in the establishment of a security association (SA).

Depending on your software version and licensing and link hardware support, SAP negotiation can use one of these modes of operation:

- Galois Counter Mode (GCM)—authentication and encryption
- GCM authentication (GMAC)— GCM authentication, no encryption
- No Encapsulation—no encapsulation (clear text)
- Null—encapsulation, no authentication or encryption

Security Group Access Control List

A security group is a group of users, end-point devices, and resources that share access control policies. Security groups are defined by the administrator in Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE). As new users and devices are added to the Cisco TrustSec domain, the authentication server assigns these new entities to the appropriate security groups. Cisco TrustSec assigns each of the security group a unique 16-bit number whose scope is global in a Cisco TrustSec domain. The number of security groups in a wireless device is limited to the number of authenticated network entities. You do not have to manually configure the security group numbers.

After a device is authenticated, Cisco TrustSec tags any packet that originates from that device with an SGT that contains the security group number of the device. The packet carries this SGT everywhere in the network, in the Cisco TrustSec header.

As the SGT contains the security group of the source, the tag can be referred to as the source SGT (S-SGT). The destination device is also assigned to a security group (destination SG) that can be referred to as the destination SGT (D-SGT), even though the Cisco TrustSec packet does not contain the security group number of the destination device.

You can control the operations that users can perform based on the security group assignments of users and destination resources, using the Security Group Access Control Lists (SGACLs). Policy enforcement in a Cisco TrustSec domain is represented by a permission matrix, with the source security group numbers on one axis and the destination security group numbers on the other axis. Each cell in the matrix body contains an ordered list of SGACLs, which specify the permissions that must be applied to packets originating from the source security group and destined for the destination security group. When a wireless client is authenticated, the controller downloads all the SGACLs in the matrix cells.

When a wireless client connects to the network, the client pushes all the ACLs to the controller .

Cisco TrustSec achieves role-based topology-independent access control in a network by assigning users and devices in the network to security groups and applying access control between the security groups. The SGACLs define access control policies based on the device identities. As long as the roles and permissions remain the same, changes to the network topology do not change the security policy. When a user is added to the wireless group, you simply assign the user to an appropriate security group; the user immediately receives permissions to that group.

The size of ACLs are reduced and their maintenance is simplified with the use of role-based permissions. With Cisco TrustSec, the number of Access Control Entities (ACEs) that are configured is determined by the number of permissions specified, resulting in a much smaller number of ACEs.

To know the list of Cisco APs that support SGACL, see the release notes: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-release-notes-list.html>



Note Clients receive zero SGT value and DHCP clients receive an Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) address when TrustSec policy “unknown to unknown” is denied in TrustSec matrix.

Clients receive correct SGT values and DHCP clients receive an IP address when TrustSec policy “unknown to unknown” is permitted in TrustSec matrix.

The scenarios supported for SGACLs on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller are:

- Wireless-to-wireless (within Enterprise network):
 - Flex mode with local switching—SGACL enforcement is done on the egress AP when a packet leaves from a source wireless network to a destination wireless network.
 - Flex mode with central switching—SGACL enforcement is done on the egress AP. To achieve this, controller should export IP address to security group tag (IP-SGT) binding over SGT Exchange Protocol (SXP).
- Wired-to-wireless (DC-to-Enterprise network)—Enforcement takes place when a packet reaches the destination AP.
- Wireless-to-wired (Enterprise network-to-DC)—Enforcement takes place on the uplink switch when a packet reaches the ingress of the wired network.

Guidelines and Restrictions

- SGACL enforcement is carried out on the controller for local mode.
- SGACL enforcement is carried out on an AP for flex-mode APs performing local switching.
- SGACL enforcement for wireless clients is carried out either on the upstream switch or on the border gateway in a Branch-to-DC scenario.
- SGACL enforcement is not supported for non-IP or IP broadcast or multicast traffic.
- Per-WLAN SGT assignment is not supported.
- SGACL enforcement is not carried out for control-plane traffic between an AP and the wireless controller (for upstream or from upstream traffic).

- Non-static SGACL configurations are supported only for dynamic SGACL policies received from ISE.
- Static SGACL configuration on an AP is not supported.
- In case of Allow List model, you need to explicitly allow DHCP protocol for the client devices to get the DHCP IP address and then request the controller for SGACL policies.

Inline Tagging

Inline tagging is a transport mechanism using which a controller or AP understands the source SGT.

Transport mechanism is of two types:

- Central switching—For centrally switched packets, the controller performs inline tagging of all the packets sourced from wireless clients that are associated with the controller, by tagging it with the Cisco Meta Data (CMD) tag. For packets that are inbound from the distribution system, inline tagging also involves the controller stripping off the CMD header from the packet to learn the S-SGT tag. Thereafter, the controller forwards the packet including the S-SGT, for SGACL enforcement.
- Local switching—To transmit locally switched traffic, an AP performs inline tagging for packets that are associated with the AP and sourced from clients. To receive traffic, the AP handles both locally switched packets and centrally switched packets, uses the S-SGT tag for packets, and applies the SGACL policy.

With wireless Cisco TrustSec enabled on the controller, the choice of enabling and configuring SXP to exchange tags with the switches is optional. Both wireless Cisco TrustSec and SXP modes are supported; however, there is no use case to have both wireless Cisco TrustSec (on an AP) and SXP to be in the enabled state concurrently.

Consideration and Restriction for Inline Tagging over Port-Channel

- Configure the **cts manual** command on port-channel and its member interfaces to send or receive a tagged packet.
- If you downgrade to Cisco IOS XE releases that do not support inline tagging over port-channel, the port-channel may be suspended.



Note The inline tagging over port-channel is supported in Cisco IOS XE 17.3.517.6.317.8.1 release.

Policy Enforcement

Cisco TrustSec access control is implemented using ingress tagging and egress enforcement. At the ingress point to the Cisco TrustSec domain, the traffic from the source is tagged with an SGT containing the security group number of the source entity. The SGT is propagated across the domain with the traffic. At the egress point of the Cisco TrustSec domain, an egress device uses the source SGT (S-SGT) and the security group of the destination entity (D-SGT) to determine the access policy to apply from the SGACL policy matrix.

Policy Enforcement Cisco TrustSec access control is implemented using ingress tagging and egress enforcement. At the ingress point to the Cisco TrustSec domain, the traffic from the source is tagged with an SGT containing the security group number of the source entity. The SGT is propagated across the domain with the traffic. At the egress point of the Cisco TrustSec domain, an egress device uses the source SGT (S-SGT) and the security group of the destination entity (D-SGT) to determine the access policy to apply from the SGACL policy matrix. Policy enforcement can be applied to both central and local switched traffic on an AP. If wired clients communicate with wireless clients, the AP enforces the downstream traffic. If wireless clients communicate with wired clients, the AP enforces the upstream traffic. This way, the AP enforces traffic in both downstream and wireless-to-wireless traffic. You require S-SGT, D-SGT, and ACLs for the enforcement to work. APs get the SGT information for all the wireless clients from the information available on the Cisco ISE server.



Note A Cisco AP must be in either Listener or Both (Listener and Speaker) mode to enforce traffic because the Listener mode maintains the complete set of IP-SGT bindings. After you enable the enforcement on a an AP, the corresponding policies are downloaded and pushed to the AP.

SGACL Support for Wireless Guest Access

When a client joins the wireless network (WLAN), its session is managed by the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) that the AP is connected to is the foreign controller. Auto-Anchored Mobility allows a specific WLAN (for example, Guest WLAN) to be anchored to a particular controller, regardless of the client's entry point into the network. Auto-Anchored Mobility is the wireless Guest service where all guest traffic tunnels back to the DMZ controller irrespective of where they associate with the network.

In case of Auto-Anchored mobility, the following apply to Cisco TrustSec support:

- **Classification:** Occurs during authentication and hence on Foreign for Layer 2 security WLANs and on Anchor for Layer 3 security cases.
- **Propagation:** Always occurs at the Anchor where the client traffic enters the wired network.
- **Enforcement:** SGACL download and enforcement occurs on Anchor; the Anchor controller must have the connectivity to Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) and be registered as Network Access Server (NAS). Enforcement is not supported on foreign controller even when the enforcement CLI is configured on foreign controller.

This feature is supported in local mode and in Flex Central Switching of the controller. Flex mode with local switching and Fabric mode are not supported in guest scenarios as traffic does not go through the controller.

Roaming of a guest client occurs only at Guest Foreign controller and the Guest Anchor remains fixed. The different types of supported roam are Inter-Controller roaming and Intra-Controller roaming. Roaming under WebAuth pending is a special case which is also supported for Central Web Authentication (CWA) and Local Web Authentication (LWA).

Enabling SGACL on the AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, check Inline Tagging and SGACL Enforcement check boxes and choose the CTS Profile Name from the CTS Profile Name drop-down list.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Enabling SGACL on the AP



Note Use the **no** form of the commands given below to disable the configuration. For example, **cts role-based enforcement** disables role-based access control enforcement for APs.

Before you begin

- Security Group Access Control List (SGACL) on an AP can be enabled only when the wireless controller is in FlexConnect mode.
- Configure the **cts manual** command on the uplink port to send or receive a tagged packet.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex xyz-flex-profile	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	cts role-based enforcement Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# cts role-based enforcement	Enables role-based access control enforcement for the AP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	cts inline-tagging Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# cts inline-tagging	Enables inline tagging on the AP.
Step 5	cts profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# cts profile xyz-profile	Enables the CTS profile name.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 7	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site xyz-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 8	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile xyz-flex-profile	Configures a flex profile.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-site-tag)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 10	ap <i>mac-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures an AP and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 11	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag xyz-site	Maps a site tag to an AP.

What to do next

Use the **show cts ap sgt-info *ap-name*** command to verify the SGACL configuration on the AP.

Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Globally (CLI)

You must enable SGACL policy enforcement globally on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. The same configuration commands that are used for enforcement of IPv4 traffic apply for IPv6 traffic as well.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	cts role-based enforcement Example: Device(config)# <code>cts role-based enforcement</code>	Enables Cisco TrustSec SGACL policy enforcement on routed interfaces.

Enabling SGACL Policy Enforcement Per Interface (CLI)

After enabling the SGACL policy enforcement globally, you will have to enable Cisco TrustSec-on the uplink interfaces.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface gigabitethernet <i>interface number</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>interface gigabitethernet 1</code>	Specifies interface on which to enable or disable SGACL enforcement.
Step 3	cts role-based enforcement Example: Device(config-if)# <code>cts role-based enforcement</code>	Enables Cisco TrustSec SGACL policy enforcement on routed interfaces.
Step 4	do show cts interface Example: Device(config-if)# <code>do show cts interface</code>	Verifies that SGACL enforcement is enabled.

Manually Configure a Device SGT (CLI)

In normal Cisco TrustSec operation, the authentication server assigns an SGT to the device for packets originating from the device. You can manually configure an SGT to be used if the authentication server is not accessible, but an authentication server-assigned SGT will take precedence over a manually-assigned SGT.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1</code>	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	cts sgt <i>sgt-value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# <code>cts stg 200</code>	Specifies the Security Group Tag (SGT) number. Valid values are from 0 to 65,535.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# <code>exit</code>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click the Policy Profile Name. The **Edit Policy Profile** is displayed.
 - Step 3** Choose **General** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **CTS Policy** settings, check or uncheck the **Inline Tagging** and **SGACL Enforcement** check boxes, and enter the **Default SGT** value.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring SGACL, Inline Tagging, and SGT in Local Mode

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy xyz-policy-profile	Creates a policy profile for the WLAN.
Step 3	cts inline-tagging Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# cts inline-tagging	Enables CTS inline tagging. Note You will also need to configure the cts manual in the physical interface. If the cts manual is configured in the physical interface and cts inline-tagging is skipped, the packets will still remain tagged at egress in the controller.
Step 4	cts role-based enforcement Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# cts role-based enforcement	Enables CTS SGACL enforcement.
Step 5	cts sgt <i>sgt-value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# cts sgt 100	(Optional) Sets the default Security Group Tag (SGT). Note SGT is required for a user session only when the client uses open authentication, and not the ISE server.

Configuring ISE for TrustSec

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	radius server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius server Test-SERVER1	Specifies the RADIUS server name.
Step 3	address ipv4 <i>ip address</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# address ipv4 124.3.50.62	Specifies the primary RADIUS server parameters.
Step 4	pac key <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)# pac key cisco	Specify the authentication and encryption key used between the Device and the key string RADIUS daemon running on the RADIUS server.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-radius-server)# exit	Returns to the configuration mode.
Step 6	aaa group server radius <i>server-group</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa group server radius authc-server-group	Creates a radius server-group identification. Note <i>server-group</i> refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 7	cts authorization list <i>mlist-name</i> Example: Device(config)# cts authorization list authc-list	Creates a CTS authorization list.
Step 8	aaa authorization network <i>mlist-name</i> group <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization network default group group1	Creates an authorization method list for web-based authorization. Note Ensure that the ISE IP address configured on your controller is the same as the IP address configured on ISE (Work Center > TrustSec > Components > Trustsec AAA Servers) Note If the ISE version is 002.005(000.239), 002.004(000.357), 002.003(000.298), 002.002(000.470), 002.001(000.474), 002.000(001.130), or 002.000(000.306), use the access-session tls-version 1.0 command

	Command or Action	Purpose
		to download PAC from ISE. For other ISE versions, the above command is not required.

Verifying Cisco TrustSec Configuration

To display the wireless CTS SGACL configuration summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless cts summary
```

Local Mode CTS Configuration

Policy Profile Name	SGACL Enforcement	Inline-Tagging	Default-Sgt
xyz-policy	DISABLED	ENABLED	0
wireless-policy1	DISABLED	DISABLED	0
w-policy-profile1	DISABLED	DISABLED	0
default-policy-profile	DISABLED	DISABLED	0

Flex Mode CTS Configuration

Flex Profile Name	SGACL Enforcement	Inline-Tagging
xyz-flex	DISABLED	ENABLED
demo-flex	DISABLED	DISABLED
flex-demo	DISABLED	DISABLED
xyz-flex-profile	DISABLED	DISABLED
default-flex-profile	DISABLED	DISABLED

To display CTS-specific configuration status for various wireless profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show cts wireless profile policy xyz-policy
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : xyz-policy
CTS
  Role-based enforcement : ENABLED
  Inline-tagging         : ENABLED
  Default SGT           : 100

Policy Profile Name      : foo2
CTS
  Role-based enforcement : DISABLED
  Inline-tagging         : ENABLED
  Default SGT           : NOT-DEFINED

Policy Profile Name      : foo3
CTS
  Role-based enforcement : DISABLED
  Inline-tagging         : DISABLED
  Default SGT           : 65001
```

To display CTS configuration for a given wireless profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed xyz-policy
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : xyz-policy
Description              :
```

```
Status : DISABLED
VLAN : 1
Client count : 0
Passive Client : DISABLED
ET-Analytics : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility : DISABLED
!
.
.
.WGB Policy Params
  Broadcast Tagging : DISABLED
  Client VLAN : DISABLED
Mobility Anchor List
  IP Address Priority
CTS
  Role-based enforcement : ENABLED
  Inline-tagging : ENABLED
  Default SGT : NOT-DEFINED
```



CHAPTER 129

SGT Inline Tagging and SXPv4

- Introduction to SGT Inline Tagging on AP and SXPv4, on page 1321
- Creating an SXP Profile, on page 1321
- Configuring SGT Inline Tagging on Access Points, on page 1322
- Configuring an SXP Connection (GUI), on page 1323
- Configuring an SXP Connection, on page 1323
- Verifying SGT Push to Access Points, on page 1324

Introduction to SGT Inline Tagging on AP and SXPv4

The Cisco TrustSec (CTS) builds secure networks by establishing domains of trusted network devices. Each device in the domain is authenticated by its peers. Communication on the links between devices in the domain is secured with a combination of encryption, message integrity check, and data-path replay protection mechanisms.

The Scalable Group Tag (SGT) Exchange Protocol (SXP) is one of the several protocols that support CTS. CTS SXP version 4 (SXPv4) enhances the functionality of SXP by adding a loop detection mechanism to prevent stale binding in the network. In addition, Cisco TrustSec supports SGT inline tagging which allows propagation of SGT embedded in clear-text (unencrypted) ethernet packets.

When a wireless client is connected and is authenticated by ISE, the IP-SGT binding is generated on the controller. The same SGT is pushed to the AP along with the other client details.

For more details on SGT inline tagging on the AP and SXPv4, see the **Cisco TrustSec Configuration Guide** at: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/sec_usr_cts/configuration/xs-3s/sec-usr-cts-xe-3s-book/sec-cts-sxpv4.html

Creating an SXP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wireless cts-sxp profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless cts-sxp profile rr-profile	Configures a wireless CTS profile and enters cts-sxp profile configuration mode.
Step 3	cts sxp enable Example: Device(config-cts-sxp-profile)# cts sxp enable	Enables SXP for Cisco TrustSec.

Configuring SGT Inline Tagging on Access Points

Follow the procedure given below to configure SGT inline tagging on APs:

Before you begin

- The SGTs pushed to the AP for inline tagging will only be from dynamic SGT allocation through ISE authentication. It is not supported for static bindings configured on the controller .
- SGTs will be pushed to an AP only when it is operating in flex mode.

To know the list of Cisco APs that support SGT inline tagging, see the release notes: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-release-notes-list.html>

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex rr-xyz-flex-profile	Configures a wireless flex profile and enters the wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	cts inline-tagging Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# cts inline-tagging	Enables inline-tagging on the AP.

Configuring an SXP Connection (GUI)

Perform the following steps to set SXP global configuration.

Procedure

-
Step 1	In the Global section, select the SXP Enabled check box to enable SXP.
Step 2	Enter an IP address in the Default Source IP field.
Step 3	Enter a value in the Reconciliation Period (sec) field.
Step 4	Enter a value in the Retry Period (sec) field.
Step 5	Select the Set New Default Password check box. Selecting this check box displays the Password Type and Enter Password fields.
Step 6	Choose any one of the available types from the Password Type drop-down list.
Step 7	Enter a value in the Enter Password field.
Step 8	Click the Apply button.
Step 9	In the Peer section, click the Add button.
Step 10	Enter an IP address in the Peer IP field.
Step 11	Enter an IP address in the Source IP field.
Step 12	Choose any one of the available types from the Password drop-down list.
Step 13	Choose any one of the available types from the Mode of Local Device drop-down list.
Step 14	Click the Save & Apply to Device button.
Step 15	In the AP tab, click the Add button. The Add SXP AP dialog box appears.
Step 16	Enter a name for the profile in the Profile Name field.
Step 17	Set the Status field to Enabled to enable AP.
Step 18	Enter a value in the Default Password field.
Step 19	Enter a value (in seconds) for the CTS Speaker Seconds , CTS Recon Period , CTS Retry Period , CTS Listener Maximum , and CTS Listener Minimum .
Step 20	In the CTS SXP Profile Connections section, click Add .
Step 21	Enter an IP address in the Peer IP field.
Step 22	Choose any one of the modes from the Connection Mode drop-down list. The available modes are Both , Listener , and Speaker .
Step 23	From the Password Type drop-down list, choose either None or Default .
Step 24	Click the Add button.
Step 25	Click the Save & Apply to Device button.
-

Configuring an SXP Connection

Follow the procedure given below to configure an SXP connection:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	cts sxp enable Example: Device(config)# cts sxp enable	Enables CTS SXP support.
Step 3	cts sxp connection peer ipv4-address password none mode local speaker Example: Device(config)# cts sxp connection peer 1.1.1.1 password none mode local speaker	Configures the CTS-SXP peer address connection. Note The password need not be <i>none</i> always and the mode can either be Speaker or Listener, or Both.

What to do next

Use the following command to verify the configuration:

```
Device# show running-config | inc sxp
```

Verifying SGT Push to Access Points

When a wireless client is connected and authenticated by ISE, the IP-SGT binding is generated on the controller. This can be verified using the following commands:

```
Device# show cts role-based sgt-map all
```

```
Active IPv4-SGT Bindings Information
```

```
IP Address          SGT      Source
=====
1.1.1.1             100     CLI
```

```
IP-SGT Active Bindings Summary
```

```
=====
Total number of CLI      bindings = 1
Total number of active   bindings = 1
```

Use the following command to verify the SXP connections status:

```
Device# show cts sxp connections
```

```
SXP                : Enabled
Highest Version Supported: 4
Default Password : Not Set
Default Source IP: Not Set
Connection retry open period: 120 secs
```

```

Reconcile period: 120 secs
Retry open timer is running
Peer-Sequence traverse limit for export: Not Set
Peer-Sequence traverse limit for import: Not Set
-----
Peer IP           : 40.1.1.1
Source IP         : 40.1.1.2
Conn status       : On
Conn version      : 4
Conn capability   : IPv4-IPv6-Subnet
Conn hold time    : 120 seconds
Local mode        : SXP Listener
Connection inst#   : 1
TCP conn fd       : 1
TCP conn password: none
Hold timer is running
Duration since last state change: 0:00:00:06 (dd:hr:mm:sec)

```

Total num of SXP Connections = 1

Use the following command to see the bindings learnt over SXP connection:

Device# **show cts role-based sgt-map all**

Active IPv4-SGT Bindings Information

IP Address	SGT	Source
1.1.1.1	100	CLI

IP-SGT Active Bindings Summary

```

=====
Total number of CLI      bindings = 1
Total number of active   bindings = 1

```

Use the following commands on the AP to check the status of inline tagging on the AP and its IP-SGT bindings:

AP# **show capwap client rcb**

```

AdminState           : ADMIN_ENABLED
OperationState        : UP
Name                  : AP2C33.1185.C4D0
SwVer                 : 16.6.230.41
HwVer                 : 1.0.0.0
MwarApMgrIp           : 9.3.72.38
MwarName              : mohit-ewlc
MwarHwVer             : 0.0.0.0
Location              : default location
ApMode                : FlexConnect
ApSubMode             : Not Configured
CAPWAP Path MTU       : 1485
CAPWAP UDP-Lite       : Enabled
IP Prefer-mode        : IPv4
AP Link DTLS Encryption : OFF
AP TCP MSS Adjust     : Disabled
LinkAuditing          : disabled
Efficient Upgrade State : Disabled
Flex Group Name       : anrt-flex
AP Group Name         : default-group
Cisco Trustsec Config

```

AP Inline Tagging Mode : Enabled

! The status can be Enabled or Disabled and is based on the tag that is pushed to the AP.

```
AP Sgac1 Enforcement      : Disabled
AP Override Status        : Disabled
```

```
AP# show cts role-based sgt-map all
```

```
Active IPv4-SGT Bindings Information
      IP SGT SOURCE
9.3.74.101 17 LOCAL
```

```
IP-SGT Active Bindings Summary
=====
Total number of LOCAL    bindings = 1
Total number of active   bindings = 1
```

```
Active IPv6-SGT Bindings Information
      IP SGT SOURCE
fe80::c1d5:3da2:dc96:757d 17 LOCAL
```

```
IP-SGT Active Bindings Summary
=====
Total number of LOCAL    bindings = 1
Total number of active   bindings = 1
```




CHAPTER 130

Multiple Cipher Support

- [Default Ciphersuites Supported for CAPWAP-DTLS, on page 1327](#)
- [Configuring Multiple Ciphersuites, on page 1328](#)
- [Setting Server Preference, on page 1329](#)
- [Verifying Operational Ciphersuites and Priority, on page 1329](#)

Default Ciphersuites Supported for CAPWAP-DTLS

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1, Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman Ephemeral (ECDHE)/Galois Counter Mode (GCM) ciphersuite with perfect forward secrecy (PFS) capability is added in the default list along with the existing AES128-SHA ciphersuite. All Cisco access point (AP) models, except the Cisco IOS APs, will prioritize this PFS ciphersuite for CAPWAP-DTLS under default configuration.



Note If link encryption is enabled for secure data channel traffic, then COS AP (DTLS client) will prioritize DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA over ECDHE/GCM ciphersuite.

During DTLS handshake, the preference order of the ciphersuites are important. This feature allows you to set the order of priority while configuring cipher suites.

When explicit ciphersuites are not configured, default ciphersuites that are listed in the table below are applied.

Table 89: Default Ciphersuites

Security Mode	Ciphersuite
FIPS and non-FIPS	• TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA • TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA • TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA • TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256 • TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 • TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384 • TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256

Security Mode	Ciphersuite
WLANCC	• TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA • TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA • TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA256 • TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256 • TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384 • TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256

This feature is supported on all variants of the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers and APs, except Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 Access Point.

For a list of controllers and APs supported in a particular release, see the release notes available at: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-release-notes-list.html>

Configuring Multiple Ciphersuites



Note

- If a controller is loaded with a startup configuration having a version of ciphersuite selection configuration that is earlier than Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1, it is auto converted to the latest version of ciphersuite selection configuration.
- Any change in the ciphersuite configuration results in AP flap.
- If you downgrade to a version earlier than Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1, ciphersuite configurations are lost.
- While downgrading to a version below 17.12.1 in FIPS mode or WLANCC mode, ensure ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 cipher suite is selected for AP DTLS (by default it is selected), else a downgrade will be impacted on all the COS APs.
- This can be verified by using the **show wireless certification config** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dtls-ciphersuite priority <i>priority-num</i> <i>ciphersuite</i> Example:	Sets priority for a particular cipher suite. Use zero (0) to set the highest priority. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap dtls-ciphersuite priority 2 TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA	Configuration changes, if any, will automatically disconnect the existing APs.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Setting Server Preference

Ciphersuite configuration enforces the priority order in a DTLS handshake. To give equal priority for all the configured ciphersuites, then use **no ciphersuite server-preference** command in the corresponding AP join profile. By default, server preference is enabled.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xxy	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] ciphersuite server-preference Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] ciphersuite server-preference	Sets the cipher suite server preference. Use the no form of this command to disable server preference. By default, server preference is enabled.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying Operational Ciphersuites and Priority

To view the operational ciphersuites and their priority, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless certification config
```

```
WLANCC                               : Not Configured
AP DTLS Version                       : DTLS v1.0 - v1.2
```

```
AP DTLS Cipher Suite List:
```

Priority	Ciphersuite
0	AES128-SHA
1	DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA256



CHAPTER 131

Configuring Secure Shell

- [Information About Configuring Secure Shell](#) , on page 1331
- [Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell](#), on page 1333
- [Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell](#), on page 1334
- [How to Configure SSH](#), on page 1335
- [Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status](#), on page 1338

Information About Configuring Secure Shell

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

SSH and Device Access

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device. SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

SSH functions the same in IPv6 as in IPv4. For IPv6, SSH supports IPv6 addresses and enables secure, encrypted connections with remote IPv6 nodes over an IPv6 transport.

SSH Servers, Integrated Clients, and Supported Versions

The Secure Shell (SSH) Integrated Client feature is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption. The SSH client enables a Cisco device to make a secure, encrypted connection to another Cisco device or to any other device running the SSH server. This connection provides functionality similar to that of an outbound Telnet connection except that the connection is encrypted. With authentication and encryption, the SSH client allows for secure communication over an unsecured network.

The SSH server and SSH integrated client are applications that run on the switch. The SSH server works with the SSH client supported in this release and with non-Cisco SSH clients. The SSH client works with publicly and commercially available SSH servers. The SSH client supports the ciphers of Data Encryption Standard (DES), 3DES, and password authentication.

The switch supports an SSHv1 or an SSHv2 server.

The switch supports an SSHv1 client.



Note The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

User authentication is performed like that in the Telnet session to the device. SSH also supports the following user authentication methods:

- TACACS+
- RADIUS
- Local authentication and authorization

SSH Configuration Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when configuring the switch as an SSH server or SSH client:

- An RSA key pair generated by a SSHv1 server can be used by an SSHv2 server, and the reverse.
- If the SSH server is running on an active switch and the active switch fails, the new active switch uses the RSA key pair generated by the previous active switch.
- If you get CLI error messages after entering the **crypto key generate rsa** global configuration command, an RSA key pair has not been generated. Reconfigure the hostname and domain, and then enter the **crypto key generate rsa** command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message No host name specified might appear. If it does, you must configure a hostname by using the **hostname** global configuration command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message No domain specified might appear. If it does, you must configure an IP domain name by using the **ip domain-name** global configuration command.
- When configuring the local authentication and authorization authentication method, make sure that AAA is disabled on the console.

Secure Copy Protocol Overview

The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying switch configurations or switch image files. SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and a protocol that provides a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools.

For SSH to work, the switch needs an RSA public/private key pair. This is the same with SCP, which relies on SSH for its secure transport.

Because SSH also relies on AAA authentication, and SCP relies further on AAA authorization, correct configuration is necessary.

- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the switch.
- Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the router must have an Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair.



Note When using SCP, you cannot enter the password into the copy command. You must enter the password when prompted.

Secure Copy Protocol

The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying device configurations or switch image files. The behavior of SCP is similar to that of remote copy (rcp), which comes from the Berkeley r-tools suite, except that SCP relies on SSH for security. SCP also requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so the device can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level. To configure the Secure Copy feature, you should understand the SCP concepts.

SFTP Support

SFTP client support is introduced from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.10.1 release onwards. SFTP client is enabled by default and no separate configuration required.

The SFTP procedures can be invoked using the **copy** command, which is similar to that of **scp** and **tftp** commands. A typical file download procedure using **sftp** command can be carried out as shown below:

```
copy sftp://user :password @server-ip/file-name flash0:// file-name
```

For more details on the **copy** command, see the following URL:

https://www.cisco.com/c/m/en_us/techdoc/dc/reference/cli/nxos/commands/fund/copy.html

Prerequisites for Configuring Secure Shell

The following are the prerequisites for configuring the switch for secure shell (SSH):

- For SSH to work, the switch needs an Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA) public/private key pair. This is the same with Secure Copy Protocol (SCP), which relies on SSH for its secure transport.
- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the switch.
- Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the router must have an Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) key pair.
- SCP relies on SSH for security.
- SCP requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so the router can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level.
- A user must have appropriate authorization to use SCP.
- A user who has appropriate authorization can use SCP to copy any file in the Cisco IOS File System (IFS) to and from a switch by using the **copy** command. An authorized administrator can also do this from a workstation.
- The Secure Shell (SSH) server requires an IPsec (Data Encryption Standard [DES] or 3DES) encryption software image; the SSH client requires an IPsec (DES or 3DES) encryption software image.)

- Configure a hostname and host domain for your device by using the **hostname** and **ip domain-name** commands in global configuration mode.



Note While upgrading from 16.11 to a later version, if you encounter a host key change by SSH client, you need to know the following:

- Wave 2 AP now supports a third key type ED25519 along with the RSA and ECDSA keys.
- The RSA and ECDSA keys are used for normal operations.
- The ED25519 key is used for FIPS mode.

Restrictions for Configuring Secure Shell

The following are restrictions for configuring the device for secure shell.

- From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.x, Key Exchange and MAC algorithms like diffie-hellman-group14-sha1, hmac-sha1, hmac-sha2-256, and hmac-sha2-512 are not supported by default and it may impact some SSH clients that only support these algorithms. However, you can add them manually if required. For information on manually adding these algorithms, see the **SSH Algorithms for Common Criteria Certification** document available at: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/ios/config/17-x/sec-vpn/b-security-vpn/m_sec-secure-shell-algorithm-ccc.html
- The switch supports Rivest, Shamir, and Adelman (RSA) authentication.
- SSH supports only the execution-shell application.
- The SSH server and the SSH client are supported only on Data Encryption Standard (DES) (56-bit) and 3DES (168-bit) data encryption software. In DES software images, DES is the only encryption algorithm available. In 3DES software images, both DES and 3DES encryption algorithms are available.
- The device supports the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption algorithm with a 128-bit key, 192-bit key, or 256-bit key. However, symmetric cipher AES to encrypt the keys is not supported.
- When using SCP, you cannot enter the password into the **copy** command. You must enter the password when prompted.
- The login banner is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1. It is supported in Secure Shell Version 2.
- The **-l** keyword and **userid** : {number} {ip-address} delimiter and arguments are mandatory when configuring the alternative method of Reverse SSH for console access.
- To authenticate clients with FreeRADIUS over RADSEC, you should generate an RSA key longer than 1024 bit. Use the **crypto key generate rsa general-keys exportable label label-name** command to achieve this.

How to Configure SSH

Setting Up the Device to Run SSH

Follow the procedure given below to set up your device to run SSH:

Before you begin

Configure user authentication for local or remote access.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	hostname <i>hostname</i> Example: Device(config)# hostname your_hostname	Configures a hostname and IP domain name for your device. Note Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.
Step 3	ip domain name <i>domain_name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip domain name your_domain	Configures a host domain for your device.
Step 4	crypto key generate rsa Example: Device(config)# crypto key generate rsa	Enables the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device and generates an RSA key pair. Generating an RSA key pair for the device automatically enables SSH. We recommend that a minimum modulus size of 1024 bits. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use. Note Follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits configuration mode.

Configuring the SSH Server

Follow the procedure given below to configure the SSH server:



Note This procedure is only required if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip ssh version [2] Example: Device(config)# ip ssh version 2	(Optional) Configures the device to run SSH Version 2. If you do not enter this command or do not specify a keyword, the SSH server selects the latest SSH version supported by the SSH client.
Step 3	ip ssh window-size Example: Device(config)# ip ssh window-size	Specifies the SSH window size. The recommended window size is 32K or lesser than that. The default window size is 8912. Selecting window-size greater than 32K might have some impact on the CPU, until unless: • The network bandwidth is good. • Client can accommodate this size. • No latency in network. Note This CLI is recommended only for SCP operations and can be disabled once the copy is done.
Step 4	ip ssh {timeout <i>seconds</i> authentication-retries <i>number</i>} Example:	Configures the SSH control parameters: • Specify the time-out value in seconds; the default is 120 seconds. The range is 0 to

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config)# ip ssh timeout 90 authentication-retries 2</pre>	120 seconds. This parameter applies to the SSH negotiation phase. After the connection is established, the device uses the default time-out values of the CLI-based sessions. By default, up to five simultaneous, encrypted SSH connections for multiple CLI-based sessions over the network are available (session 0 to session 4). After the execution shell starts, the CLI-based session time-out value returns to the default of 10 minutes. Specify the number of times that a client can re-authenticate to the server. The default is 3; the range is 0 to 5. Repeat this step when configuring both parameters.
Step 5	Use one or both of the following: <code>line vty line_number [ending_line_number]</code> <code>transport input ssh</code> Example: <pre>Device(config)# line vty 1 10</pre> or <pre>Device(config-line)# transport input ssh</pre>	(Optional) Configures the virtual terminal line settings. - Enters line configuration mode to configure the virtual terminal line settings. For <i>line_number</i> and <i>ending_line_number</i>, specify a pair of lines. The range is 0 to 15. - Specifies that the device prevent non-SSH Telnet connections. This limits the router to only SSH connections.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-line)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Monitoring the SSH Configuration and Status

This table displays the SSH server configuration and status.

Table 90: Commands for Displaying the SSH Server Configuration and Status

Command	Purpose
show ip ssh	Shows the version and configuration information for the SSH server.
show ssh	Shows the status of the SSH server.



CHAPTER 132

Encrypted Traffic Analytics

- [Information About Encrypted Traffic Analytics, on page 1339](#)
- [Exporting Records to IPv4 Flow Export Destination, on page 1340](#)
- [Exporting Records to IPv6 Flow Export Destination, on page 1341](#)
- [Exporting Records to IPv4 and IPv6 Destination over IPFIX, on page 1342](#)
- [Allowed List of Traffic, on page 1342](#)
- [Configuring Source Interface for Record Export, on page 1344](#)
- [Configuring Source Interface for Record Export Without IPFIX, on page 1345](#)
- [Configuring ETA Flow Export Destination \(GUI\), on page 1345](#)
- [Enabling In-Active Timer, on page 1346](#)
- [Enabling ETA on WLAN Policy Profile, on page 1346](#)
- [Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN \(GUI\), on page 1347](#)
- [Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN, on page 1347](#)
- [Verifying ETA Configuration, on page 1348](#)

Information About Encrypted Traffic Analytics

The Encrypted Traffic Analytics (ETA) leverages Flexible NetFlow (FNF) technology to export useful information about the flow to the collectors and gain visibility into the network.

netflow records towards collector

Cisco Catalyst 8600 Series Wireless Controller

L2 port channel switch-port trunk

Router

L2

Switch

AP

Wireless Clients

CAPWAP tunnel

5G

The ETA offers the following advantages:

- Starting from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1s, ETA inspection for IPv6 traffic is supported. ETA inspection for IPv6 traffic is enabled by default and no special configuration is required. This release also supports allowed list of IPv6 traffic, exporting ETA records to IPv4 or IPv6 export destination, exporting records over IPFIX (NetFlow v10), and configuring source interface for ETA exports. The records can be exported to IPv4 or IPv6 NetFlow collector.

Follow the procedure given below to enable encrypted traffic analytics and configure a flow export destination:

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example:	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# et-analytics	
Step 3	ip flow-export destination <i>ip_address</i> <i>port_number</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ip flow-export destination 120.0.0.1 2055	Configures the NetFlow record export. Here, <i>port_number</i> ranges from 1 to 65535.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Exporting Records to IPv6 Flow Export Destination

Follow the procedure given below to enable encrypted traffic analytics and configure an IPv6 flow export destination.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	ipv6 flow-export destination <i>ipv6-address</i> <i>port-number</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ipv6 flow-export destination 2001:181:181::1 2055	Specifies netflow record export destination IPv6 address and port. Note The maximum configurable limit for flow-export destinations is four (both IPv4 and IPv6 combined).
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Exporting Records to IPv4 and IPv6 Destination over IPFIX

This procedure provides efficient bandwidth utilization by allowing variable len fields for smaller data packets and also reduces the overall bandwidth requirements for transmission.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	ip flow-export destination <i>ip-address</i> <i>port-number</i> ipfix Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ip flow-export destination 192.168.19.2 2055 ipfix	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IP address, port and format.
Step 4	ipv6 flow-export destination <i>ipv6-address</i> <i>port-number</i> ipfix Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ipv6 flow-export destination 2001:181:181::1 2055 ipfix	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IPv6 address, port and format. IPFIX allows you to collect flow information from network devices that support IPFIX protocol and analyze the traffic flow information by processing it through a netflow analyzer. Note Maximum configurable limit for flow-export destinations is four (both IPv4 and IPv6 combined).
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Allowed List of Traffic

You can add an allowed list of ACLs for both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. Traffic from allowed list is skipped from ETA inspection and records are not generated for the matching traffic.

Before you begin

Configure an IPv4 or IPv6 access list.

- IPv4 ACL: **ip access-list standard** *acl_name*

```
Device(config)# ip access-list standard eta-whitelist_ipv4
```

- IPv6 ACL: **ipv6 access-list** *acl_name*

```
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list eta-whitelist_ipv6
```

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	whitelist acl <i>acl-name</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# whitelist acl eta-whitelist	Configures an allowed list for IPv4 or IPv6. Note You cannot add both IPv4 and IPv6 client traffic simultaneously to an allowed list, as a single ACL cannot have both IPv4 and IPv6 terms.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	sequence <i>sequence-num</i> permit udp any any eq tftp Example: Device(config-ipv6-acl)# sequence 10 permit udp any any eq tftp	(Optional) Configures a sequence number and the access conditions to add any IPv6 TFTP traffic to allowed list.

Configuring Source Interface for Record Export

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	ip flow-export destination <i>ip-address</i> source-interface <i>interface-name</i> interface-number <i>ipfix</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ip flow-export destination 192.168.19.2 2055 source-interface loopback0 ipfix	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IP address, source interface and format. This allows the ETA export to use the IP address of the specified interface, as against using the IP address of the egress interface as the source address. The source interface is applicable for both IPv4 and IPv6 export destinations. Note Only one source interface can be specified and all exports use this source address.
Step 4	ipv6 flow-export destination <i>ipv6-address</i> source-interface <i>interface-name</i> interface-number <i>ipfix</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ipv6 flow-export destination 2001:181:181::1 2055 source-interface Vlan160 ipfix	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IPv6 address, source interface and format.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring Source Interface for Record Export Without IPFIX

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Enables encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	ip flow-export destination <i>ip-address</i> source-interface <i>interface-name</i> <i>interface-number</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ip flow-export destination 192.168.19.2 2055 source-interface loopback0 ipfix	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IP address, source interface and format.
Step 4	ipv6 flow-export destination <i>ipv6-address</i> source-interface <i>interface-name</i> <i>interface-number</i> ipfix Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# ipv6 flow-export destination 2001:181:181::1 2055 source-interface Vlan160	Specifies NetFlow record export destination IPv6 address, source interface and format.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring ETA Flow Export Destination (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > NetFlow**.
- Step 2** Click the **Add** button. The **Create NetFlow** dialog box appears.
- Step 3** Choose any one of the available templates from the **NetFlow Template** drop-down list.

Step 4 Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address in the **Collector Address** field.

Step 5 From the **Whitelist ACL** drop-down list, choose the desired option.

Note

To use this option, ensure that you select **Encrypted Traffic Analytics** from the **NetFlow Template** drop-down list.

Step 6 Enter a port number in the **Exporter Port** field. You must specify a value between 1 and 65535.

Step 7 Choose the desired option from the **Export Interface IP** drop-down list.

Step 8 Choose any one of the sampling methods from the **Sampling Method** drop-down list. The available options are **Deterministic**, **Random**, and **Full Netflow**.

Step 9 Enter a range for the sample. You must specify a value between 32 and 1032.

Step 10 Select the required interfaces/profile from the **Available** pane and move it to the **Selected** pane.

Step 11 Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.

Enabling In-Active Timer

Follow the procedure given below to enable in-active timer:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	et-analytics Example: Device(config)# et-analytics	Configures the encrypted traffic analytics.
Step 3	inactive-timeout <i>timeout-in-seconds</i> Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# inactive-timeout 15	Specifies the inactive flow timeout value. Here, <i>timeout-in-seconds</i> ranges from 1 to 604800.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-et-analytics)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling ETA on WLAN Policy Profile

Follow the procedure given below to enable ETA on WLAN policy profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	et-analytics enable Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# et-analytics enable	Enables encrypted traffic analytics on the policy.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN (GUI)

Perform the following steps to attach a policy profile to VLAN.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Check the **RADIUS Profiling** checkbox.
 - Step 2** From the **Local Subscriber Policy Name**, choose the required policy name.
 - Step 3** In the **WLAN Local Profiling** section, enable or disable the **Global State of Device Classification**, check the checkbox for **HTTP TLV Caching** and **DHCL TLV Caching**.
 - Step 4** In the **VLAN** section, choose the **VLAN/VLAN Group** from the drop-down list. Enter the Multicast VLAN.
 - Step 5** In the **WLAN ACL** section, choose the **IPv4 ACL** and **IPv6 ACL** from the drop-down list.
 - Step 6** In the **URL Filters** section, choose the **Pre Auth** and **Post Auth** from the drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Attaching Policy Profile to VLAN

Follow the procedure given below to attach a policy profile to VLAN:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan <i>vlan-name</i>	Assigns the policy profile to the VLANs.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.

Verifying ETA Configuration

Verifying ETA Globally

To view the ETA global and interface details, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software utd chassis active F0 et-analytics global
```

```
ET Analytics Global Configuration
ID: 1
All Interfaces: Off
IP address and port and vrf: 192.168.5.2:2055:0
```

To view the ETA global configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software et-analytics global
```

```
ET-Analytics Global state
=====
All Interfaces      : Off
IP Flow-record Destination: 192.168.5.2 : 2055
Inactive timer: 15
```



Note The **show platform software et-analytics global** command does not display the ETA enabled wireless client interfaces.

To view the ETA global state in datapath, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath runtime
```

ET-Analytics run-time information:

```
Feature state: initialized (0x00000004)
Inactive timeout      : 15 secs (default 15 secs)
WhiteList information :
  flag: False
  cgacl w0 : n/a
  cgacl w1 : n/a
Flow CFG information  :
  instance ID        : 0x0
  feature ID         : 0x1
  feature object ID  : 0x1
  chunk ID           : 0xC
```

To view the ETA memory details, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath memory
```

ET-Analytics memory information:

```
Size of FO           : 3200 bytes
No. of FO allocs     : 0
No. of FO frees      : 0
```

To view the ETA flow export in datapath, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath stats export
```

ET-Analytics 192.168.5.2:2055 vrf 0 Stats:

```
Export statistics:
  Total records exported      : 5179231
  Total packets exported     : 3124873
  Total bytes exported       : 3783900196
  Total dropped records      : 0
  Total dropped packets      : 0
  Total dropped bytes        : 0
  Total IDP records exported :
    initiator->responder : 1285146
    responder->initiator : 979284
  Total SPLT records exported:
    initiator->responder : 1285146
    responder->initiator : 979284
  Total SALT records exported:
    initiator->responder : 0
    responder->initiator : 0
  Total BD records exported :
    initiator->responder : 0
    responder->initiator : 0
  Total TLS records exported :
    initiator->responder : 309937
    responder->initiator : 329469
```

To view the ETA flow statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath stats flow
```

ET-Analytics Stats:

```
Flow statistics:
  feature object allocs : 0
  feature object frees  : 0
  flow create requests  : 0
  flow create matching  : 0
```

```

flow create successful: 0
flow create failed, CFT handle: 0
flow create failed, getting FO: 0
flow create failed, malloc FO : 0
flow create failed, attach FO : 0
flow create failed, match flow: 0
flow create, aging already set: 0
flow ageout requests      : 0
flow ageout failed, freeing FO: 0
flow ipv4 ageout requests  : 0
flow ipv6 ageout requests  : 0
flow whitelist traffic match : 0

```

Verifying ETA on Wireless Client Interface

To view if a policy is configured with ETA, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile
```

```

Policy Profile Name      : default-policy-profile
Description              : default policy profile
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 160
Multicast VLAN          : 0
Passive Client          : DISABLED
ET-Analytics            : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility       : DISABLED
WLAN Switching Policy
  Central Switching      : ENABLED
  Central Authentication : ENABLED
  Central DHCP           : ENABLED
  Flex NAT PAT           : DISABLED
  Central Assoc          : ENABLED

```

To view the ETA status in the wireless client detail, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless wlclient datapath
<client_mac>
```

```
Wlclient Details for Client mac: 0026.c635.ebf8
```

```

-----
Input VlanId   : 160
Point of Presence : 0
Wlclient Input flags : 9
Instance ID    : 3
ETA enabled    : True
client_mac_addr : 0026.c635.ebf8

bssid_mac_addr: 58ac.7843.037f
Point of Attachment : 65497
Output vlanId : 160
wlan_output_uidb : -1
Wlclient Output flags : 9
Radio ID : 1
cgac1 w0 : 0x0
cgac1 w1 : 0x0
IPv6 addr number : 0
IPv6 addr learning : 0

```

To view clients in the ETA pending wireless client tree, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless et-analytics
eta-pending-client-tree
```

```

CPP IF_H      DPIDX      MAC Address      VLAN  AS   MS WLAN      POA

```



```
-----
0X2A      0XA0000001  2c33.7a5b.827b  160  RN  LC xyz_ssid      0x90000003
0X2B      0XA0000002  2c33.7a5b.80fb  160  RN  LC xyz_ssid      0x90000003
```

To view the QFP interface handle, use the following command:

Device#

show platform hardware chassis active qfp interface if-handle <qfp_interface_handle>

show platform hardware chassis active qfp interface if-handle 0X29

```
FIA handle - CP:0x27f3ce8 DP:0xd7142000
  LAYER2_IPV4_INPUT_ARL_SANITY
  WLCLIENT_INGRESS_IPV4_FWD
  IPV4_TVI_INPUT_FIA          >>> ETA FIA Enabled
  SWPORT_VLAN_BRIDGING
  IPV4_INPUT_GOTO_OUTPUT_FEATURE (M)
Protocol 1 - ipv4_output
FIA handle - CP:0x27f3d30 DP:0xd7141780
  IPV4_VFR_REFRAG (M)
  IPV4_TVI_OUTPUT_FIA        >>> ETA FIA Enabled
  WLCLIENT_EGRESS_IPV4_FWD
  IPV4_OUTPUT_DROP_POLICY (M)
  DEF_IF_DROP_FIA (M)
```



Note The *qfp_interface_handle* ranges from 1 to 4294967295.

To view the ETA pending wireless client tree statistics, use the following command:

Device# **show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless et-analytics statistics**

Wireless ETA cpp-client plumbing statistics

Number of ETA pending clients : 2

Counter	Value
-----	-----
Enable ETA on wireless client called	0
Delete ETA on wireless client called	0
ETA global cfg init cb TVI FIA enable error	0
ETA global cfg init cb output SB read error	0
ETA global cfg init cb output SB write error	0
ETA global cfg init cb input SB read error	0
ETA global cfg init cb input SB write error	0
ETA global cfg init cb TVI FIA enable success	0
ETA global cfg uninit cb ingress feat disable	0
ETA global cfg uninit cb ingress cfg delete e	0
ETA global cfg uninit cb egress feat disable	0
ETA global cfg uninit cb egress cfg delete er	0
ETA pending list insert entry called	4
ETA pending list insert invalid arg error	0
ETA pending list insert entry exists error	0
ETA pending list insert no memory error	0
ETA pending list insert entry failed	0
ETA pending list insert entry success	4
ETA pending list delete entry called	2
ETA pending list delete invalid arg error	0
ETA pending list delete entry missing	0
ETA pending list delete entry remove error	0
ETA pending list delete entry success	2

To view the allowed list configuration, use the following commands:

Device# **show platform software et-analytics global**

```

ET-Analytics Global state
=====
All Interfaces      : Off
IP Flow-record Destination: 192.168.5.2 : 2055
Inactive timer: 15
whitelist acl eta-whitelist

Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath runtime
ET-Analytics run-time information:
Feature state: initialized (0x00000004)
Inactive timeout      : 15 secs (default 15 secs)
WhiteList information :
    flag: True
    cgacl w0 : 0xd9ae9c80
    cgacl w1 : 0x20000000
Flow CFG information :
    instance ID      : 0x0
    feature ID       : 0x0
    feature object ID : 0x0
    chunk ID        : 0x4

```

To view the ETA export statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath stats export
```

```

ET-Analytics Stats:
Export statistics:
    Total records exported      : 5179231
    Total packets exported     : 3124873
    Total bytes exported       : 3783900196
    Total dropped records      : 0
    Total dropped packets      : 0
    Total dropped bytes        : 0
Total IDP records exported :
    initiator->responder : 1285146
    responder->initiator : 979284
Total SPLT records exported:
    initiator->responder : 1285146
    responder->initiator : 979284
Total SALT records exported:
    initiator->responder : 0
    responder->initiator : 0
Total BD records exported :
    initiator->responder : 0
    responder->initiator : 0
Total TLS records exported :
    initiator->responder : 309937
    responder->initiator : 329469

```

To view the ETA flow statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath stats flow
```

```

ET-Analytics Stats:
Flow statistics:
    feature object allocs : 0
    feature object frees  : 0
    flow create requests  : 0
    flow create matching  : 0
    flow create successful: 0
    flow create failed, CFT handle: 0
    flow create failed, getting FO: 0

```

```
flow create failed, malloc FO : 0
flow create failed, attach FO : 0
flow create failed, match flow: 0
flow create, aging already set: 0
flow ageout requests      : 0
flow ageout failed, freeing FO: 0
flow ipv4 ageout requests  : 0
flow ipv6 ageout requests  : 0
flow whitelist traffic match : 0
```

To view the ETA datapath runtime detail, use the following command:

Device# **show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature et-analytics datapath runtime**

```
ET-Analytics run-time information:
  Feature state      : initialized (0x00000004)
  Inactive timeout    : 15 secs (default 15 secs)
  WhiteList information :
    flag              : True
    cgacl w0           : 0xd9ae1e10
    cgacl w1           : 0x20000000
  Flow CFG information :
    instance ID        : 0x0
    feature ID          : 0x0
    feature object ID   : 0x0
    chunk ID            : 0x4
```




CHAPTER 133

FIPS

- [FIPS, on page 1355](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS, on page 1356](#)
- [FIPS Self-Tests, on page 1356](#)
- [Configuring FIPS, on page 1357](#)
- [Configuring FIPS in HA Setup, on page 1358](#)
- [Verifying FIPS Configuration, on page 1359](#)

FIPS

Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2 is a security standard used to validate cryptographic modules. The cryptographic modules are produced by the private sector for use by the U.S. government and other regulated industries (such as financial and healthcare institutions) that collect, store, transfer, share and disseminate sensitive but unclassified (SBU) information.



Note Cisco TrustSec (CTS) is not supported when the controller is in FIPS mode.

For more information about FIPS, see

<https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/solutions/industries/government/global-government-certifications/fips-140.html>.

With FIPS in enabled state, some passwords and pre-shared keys must have the following minimum lengths:

- For Software-Defined Access Wireless, between the controller and map server, a pre-shared key (for example, the LISP authentication key) is used in authentication of all TCP messages between them. This pre-shared key must be at least 14 characters long.
- The ISAKMP key (for example, the Crypto ISAKMP key) must be at least 14 characters long.

Limitations for FIPS

- The console of APs get disabled when the controller is operating in FIPS mode.
- The weak or legacy cipher like SHA1 is not supported in FIPS mode.
- APs would not reload immediately, if you change the FIPS status.



Note We recommend a minimum RSA key size of 2048 bits under RADSEC when operating in FIPS mode. Otherwise, the RADSEC fails.

Guidelines and Restrictions for FIPS

- In the controller switches, a legacy key is used to support the legacy APs. However, in FIPS mode, the crypto engine detects the legacy key as a weak key and rejects it by showing the following error message: "**% Error in generating keys: could not generate test signature.**" We recommend that you ignore such error messages that are displayed during the bootup of the controller (when operating in FIPS mode).
- SSH clients using SHA1 will not be able to access the controller when you enable FIPS.



Note You need to use FIPS compliant SSH clients to access the controller.

- While configuring WLAN ensure that the PSK length must be minimum of 15 characters. If not, the APs will not be able to join the controller after changing tags..
- TrustSec is not supported.
- PAC key configuration is not supported.
- FIPS is not compatible with level-6 encrypted passwords. Additionally, 802.1X authentications will fail if the RADIUS shared secret uses a type-6 encryption key.

FIPS Self-Tests

A cryptographic module must perform power-up self-tests and conditional self-tests to ensure that it is functional.

Power-up self-tests run automatically after the device powers up. A device goes into FIPS mode only after all self-tests are successfully completed. If any self-test fails, the device logs a system message and moves into an error state. Also, if the power-up self test fails, the device fails to boot.

Using a known-answer test (KAT), a cryptographic algorithm is run on data for which the correct output is already known, and then the calculated output is compared to the previously generated output. If the calculated output does not equal the known answer, the known-answer test fails.

Power-up self-tests include the following:

- Software integrity
- Algorithm tests

Conditional self-tests must be run when an applicable security function or operation is invoked. Unlike the power-up self-tests, conditional self-tests are executed each time their associated function is accessed.

The device uses a cryptographic algorithm known-answer test (KAT) to test FIPS mode for each FIPS 140-2-approved cryptographic function (encryption, decryption, authentication, and random number generation) implemented on the device. The device applies the algorithm to data for which the correct output is already known. It then compares the calculated output to the previously generated output. If the calculated output does not equal the known answer, the KAT fails.

Conditional self-tests run automatically when an applicable security function or operation is invoked. Unlike the power-up self-tests, conditional self-tests are executed each time their associated function is accessed.

Conditional self-tests include the following:

- Pair-wise consistency test—This test is run when a public or private key-pair is generated.
- Continuous random number generator test—This test is run when a random number is generated.
- Bypass
- Software load

Configuring FIPS

Ensure that both the active and standby controllers have the same FIPS authorization key.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	fips authorization-key key Example: Device(config)# fips authorization-key 12345678901234567890123456789012	Enables the FIPS mode. The key length should be of 32 hexadecimal characters. Note When FIPS is enabled, you may need to trigger more than one factory reset using the reset button. To disable FIPS mode on the device, use the no form of this command.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

What to do next

You must reboot the controller whenever you enable or disable the FIPS mode.

Configuring FIPS in HA Setup

While bringing up HA pair in FIPS mode, you need to configure both active and standby controllers with the same FIPS authorization key independently before forming HA pair.

If you configure FIPS authorization key after forming HA pair, the FIPS authorization key configuration will not be synced with the standby. Rebooting HA pair at this state causes reload loop. To avoid this, you need to perform the following:

- Break the HA pair.
- Configure the same FIPS authorization key independently on both the members.
- Pair up members.

To configure FIPS in HA setup, perform the following:

1. Power off both the members of the stack.
2. Power on only member1, and wait for the controller to come up and prompt for login from the console.
3. Login successfully with your valid credentials, and execute the following commands:

```
Show fips status
Show fips authorization-key
Show romvar
Show chassis
```



Note Keep the configured FIPS authorization key handy.

4. Configure the FIPS key, if you have not configured one earlier.

```
conf t
fips authorization-key <32 hex char>
```

5. Save and power off the member1.
6. Power on only member2 and wait for the controller to come up and prompt for login from the console.
7. Login successfully with your valid credentials, and execute the following commands:

```
Show fips status
Show fips authorization-key
Show romvar
Show chassis
```



Note Keep the configured FIPS authorization key handy.

8. Configure the FIPS key, if you have not configured one earlier.



Note The key value must be the same in both the members of the stack.

```
conf t
fips authorization-key <32 hex char>
```

9. Save and power off the member2.
10. Power on both the members together, and wait for the stack to form.
11. Monitor any crash or unexpected reload.



Note It is expected that members must not reload due to FIPS issue.

Verifying FIPS Configuration

You can verify FIPS configuration using the following commands:

Use the following **show** command to display the installed authorization key:

```
Device# show fips authorization-key
FIPS: Stored key (16) : 12345678901234567890123456789012
```

Use the following **show** command to display the status of FIPS on the device:

```
Device# show fips status
Chassis is running in fips mode
```




CHAPTER 134

Internet Protocol Security

- [Information about Internet Protocol Security, on page 1361](#)
- [Internet Key Exchange Version 1 Transform Sets, on page 1362](#)
- [Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 1, on page 1363](#)
- [Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Transform Sets, on page 1365](#)
- [Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2, on page 1366](#)
- [IPsec Transforms and Lifetimes, on page 1368](#)
- [Use of X.509 With Internet Key Exchange Version, on page 1369](#)
- [IPsec Session Interruption and Recovery, on page 1370](#)
- [Example: Configure IPsec Using ISAKMP, on page 1370](#)
- [Verifying IPsec Traffic, on page 1370](#)
- [Example: Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2, on page 1372](#)
- [Verifying IPsec With Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Traffic , on page 1372](#)

Information about Internet Protocol Security

Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a framework of open standards for ensuring secure private communications over the Internet. Based on standards developed by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF), IPsec ensures confidentiality, integrity, and authenticity of data communications across a public network. IPsec provides a necessary component of a standards-based, flexible solution for deploying a network-wide security policy.

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports IPsec configuration. The support for IPsec secures syslog traffic.

This section provides information about how to configure IPsec between Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and syslog (peer IP).

IPsec provides the following network security services:

- **Data confidentiality:** The IPsec sender can encrypt packets before transmitting them across a network.
- **Data integrity:** The IPsec receiver can authenticate packets sent by the IPsec sender to ensure that the data has not been altered during transmission.
- **Data origin authentication:** The IPsec receiver can authenticate the source of the sent IPsec packets. This service is dependent upon the data integrity service.
- **Anti-replay:** The IPsec receiver can detect and reject replayed packets.

IPsec provides secure *tunnels* between two peers, such as two devices. The administrator defines which packets are considered sensitive and should be sent through these secure tunnels and specifies the parameters that should be used to protect these sensitive packets by specifying the characteristics of these tunnels. When the IPsec peer recognizes a sensitive packet, the peer sets up the appropriate secure tunnel and sends the packet through the tunnel to the remote peer.

More accurately, these *tunnels* are sets of security associations (SAs) that are established between two IPsec peers. The SAs define the protocols and algorithms to be applied to sensitive packets and specify the keying material to be used by the two peers. SAs are unidirectional and are established per security protocol.

With IPsec, administrators can define the traffic that needs to be protected between two IPsec peers by configuring access lists and applying these access lists to interfaces using crypto map sets. Therefore, traffic may be selected on the basis of the source and destination address, and optionally the Layer 4 protocol and port. (The access lists used for IPsec are only used to determine the traffic that needs to be protected by IPsec, not the traffic that should be blocked or permitted through the interface. Separate access lists define blocking and permitting at the interface.)

A crypto map set can contain multiple entries, each with a different access list. The crypto map entries are searched in a sequence--the device attempts to match the packet to the access list specified in that entry.

When a packet matches a permit entry in a particular access list, and the corresponding crypto map entry is tagged as cisco, connections are established, if necessary. If the crypto map entry is tagged as ipsec-isakmp, IPsec is triggered. If there is no SA that the IPsec can use to protect this traffic to the peer, IPsec uses IKE to negotiate with the remote peer to set up the necessary IPsec SAs on behalf of the data flow. The negotiation uses information specified in the crypto map entry as well as the data flow information from the specific access list entry.

Once established, the set of SAs (outbound to the peer) is then applied to the triggering packet and to subsequent applicable packets as those packets exit the device. *Applicable* packets are packets that match the same access list criteria that the original packet matched. For example, all applicable packets could be encrypted before being forwarded to the remote peer. The corresponding inbound SAs are used when processing the incoming traffic from that peer.

Access lists associated with IPsec crypto map entries also represent the traffic that the device needs protected by IPsec. Inbound traffic is processed against crypto map entries--if an unprotected packet matches a permit entry in a particular access list associated with an IPsec crypto map entry, that packet is dropped because it was not sent as an IPsec-protected packet.

Crypto map entries also include transform sets. A transform set is an acceptable combination of security protocols, algorithms, and other settings that can be applied to IPsec-protected traffic. During the IPsec SA negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set when protecting a particular data flow.

Internet Key Exchange Version 1 Transform Sets

An Internet Key Exchange version 1 (IKEv1) transform set represents a certain combination of security protocols and algorithms. During the IPsec SA negotiation, the peers agree to use a particular transform set for protecting a particular data flow.

Privileged administrators can specify multiple transform sets and then specify one or more of these transform sets in a crypto map entry. The transform set defined in the crypto map entry is used in the IPsec SA negotiation to protect the data flows specified by that crypto map entry's access list.

During IPsec security association negotiations with IKE, peers search for a transform set that is the same at both peers. When such a transform set is found, it is selected and applied to the protected traffic as part of both peers' IPsec SAs.



Note If a transform set definition is changed during operation that the change is not applied to existing security associations, but is used in subsequent negotiations to establish new SAs. If you want the new settings to take effect sooner, you can clear all or part of the SA database by using the **clear crypto sa** command.

The following snippet helps to configure IPsec IKEv1 to use AES-CBC-128 for payload encryption. AES-CBC-256 can be selected with *encryption aes 256*:

```
device # conf t
device (config)#crypto isakmp policy 1
device (config-isakmp)# hash sha
device (config-isakmp)# encryption aes
```

Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 1

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPsec IKEv1 to use AES-CBC-128 for payload encryption:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto isakmp policy <i>priority</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto isakmp policy 1	Defines an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) policy and assigns a priority to the policy. • <i>priority</i>: Uniquely identifies the IKE policy and assigns a priority to the policy. Valid values: 1 to 10,000; 1 is the highest priority.
Step 3	hash sha Example: Device(config-isakmp)# hash sha	Specifies the hash algorithm.
Step 4	encryption aes Example: Device(config-isakmp)# encryption aes	Configures IPsec IKEv1 to use AES-CBC-128 for payload encryption. AES-CBC-256 can be selected with 'encryption aes 256'. Note The authorized administrator must ensure that the keysize for this setting is greater than or equal to the keysize selected for ESP in

	Command or Action	Purpose
		section IPsec Transforms and Lifetimes. If AES 128 is selected here, then the highest keysize that can be selected on the device for ESP is AES 128 (either CBC or GCM). Both confidentiality and integrity are configured with the hash sha and encryption aes commands respectively. As a result, confidentiality-only mode is disabled.
Step 5	authentication pre-share Example: <pre>Device(config-isakmp)# authentication pre-share</pre>	Configures IPsec to use the specified preshared keys as the authentication method. Preshared keys require that you separately configure these preshared keys.
Step 6	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-isakmp)# exit</pre>	Exits config-isakmp configuration mode.
Step 7	crypto isakmp key <i>keystring</i> address <i>peer-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# crypto isakmp key cisco123!cisco123!CISC address 192.0.2.1</pre>	Configures a preshared authentication key. Note To ensure a secure configuration, we recommend that you enter the pre-shared keys with at least 22 characters in length and can be composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and special characters (that include: “!”, “@”, “#”, “\$”, “%”, “^”, “&”, “*”, “(”, and “”). The device supports pre-shared keys up to 127 characters in length. While longer keys increase the difficulty of brute-force attacks, longer keys increase processing time.
Step 8	group 14 Example: <pre>Device(config-isakmp)# group 14</pre>	Specifies the Diffie-Hellman (DH) group identifier as 2048-bit DH group 14 and selects DH Group 14 (2048-bit MODP) for IKE. However, 19 (256-bit Random ECP), 24 (2048-bit MODP with 256-bit POS), 20 (384-bit Random ECP), 15 (3072 bit MODP), and 16 (4096-bit MODP) are also allowed and supported.
Step 9	lifetime <i>seconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-isakmp)# lifetime 86400</pre>	Specifies the lifetime of the IKE SA. The default time value for Phase 1 SAs is 24 hours (86400 seconds), but this setting can be changed using the command above with different values.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>seconds</i>: Time, in seconds, before each SA expires. Valid values: 60 to 86,400; default value: 86,400. Note The shorter the lifetime (up to a point), the more secure your IKE negotiations will be. However, with longer lifetimes, future IPsec SAs can be set up more quickly.
Step 10	crypto isakmp aggressive-mode disable Example: Device(config-isakmp)# crypto isakmp aggressive-mode disable	Ensures all IKEv1 Phase 1 exchanges will be handled in the default main mode.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-isakmp)# exit	Exits config-isakmp configuration mode.

Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Transform Sets

An Internet Key Exchange Version 2 (IKEv2) proposal is a set of transforms used in the negotiation of IKEv2 SA as part of the IKE_SA_INIT exchange. An IKEv2 proposal is regarded as complete only when it has at least an encryption algorithm, an integrity algorithm, and a Diffie-Hellman (DH) group configured. If no proposal is configured and attached to an IKEv2 policy, then the default proposal is used in the negotiation. The following snippet helps in configuring the IPsec with IKEv2 functionality for the device:

```
device # conf t
device(config)#crypto ikev2 proposal sample
device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha1
device (config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-128
device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14
device(config-ikev2-proposal)# exit
device(config)# crypto ikev2 keyring keyring-1
device (config-ikev2-keyring)# peer peer1
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# address 192.0.2.4 255.255.255.0
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# pre-shared-key cisco123!cisco123!CISC
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# exit
device(config)#crypto ikev2 keyring keyring-1
device (config-ikev2-keyring)# peer peer1
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# address 192.0.2.4 255.255.255.0
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# pre-shared-key cisco123!cisco123!CISC
device (config-ikev2-keyring-peer)# exit
device(config)#crypto logging ikev2
```

Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2

Follow the procedure given below to configure the IPsec with IKEv2:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto ikev2 proposal <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto ikev2 proposal name	Defines an IKEv2 proposal name.
Step 3	integrity sha1 Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# integrity sha1	Defines an IKEv2 proposal name.
Step 4	encryption aes-cbc-128 Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# encryption aes-cbc-128	Configures IPsec IKEv2 to use AES-CBC-128 for payload encryption. AES-CBC-256 can be selected with encryption aes-cbc-256. AES-GCM-128 and AES-GCM-256 can also be selected similarly. Note The authorized administrator must ensure that the keysize for this setting is greater than or equal to the keysize selected for ESP in section IPsec Transforms and Lifetimes . If AES 128 is selected here, then the highest keysize that can be selected on the device for ESP is AES 128 (either CBC or GCM). Both confidentiality and integrity are configured with the hash sha and encryption aes commands respectively. As a result, confidentiality-only mode is disabled.
Step 5	group 14 Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# group 14	Selects DH Group 14 (2048-bit MODP) for IKE. However, 19 (256-bit Random ECP), 24 (2048-bit MODP with 256-bit POS), 20 (384-bit Random ECP), 15 (3072 bit MODP), and 16 (4096-bit MODP) are also allowed and supported.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-ikev2-proposal)# exit	Exits IKEv2 proposal configuration mode.
Step 7	crypto ikev2 keyring <i>keyring-name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto ikev2 keyring keyring-1	Defines an IKEv2 keyring.
Step 8	peer <i>peer-name</i> Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring)# peer peer1	Defines the peer or peer group.
Step 9	address {ipv4-address [mask] ipv6-address prefix} Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring)# address 192.0.2.4 255.255.255.0	Specifies an IPv4 or IPv6 address or range for the peer. Note This IP address is the IKE endpoint address and is independent of the identity address.
Step 10	pre-shared-key <i>local</i> Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring)# pre-shared-key cisco123!cisco123!CISC	Specifies the preshared key for the peer. You can enter the local or remote keyword to specify an asymmetric preshared key. By default, the preshared key is symmetric. Note To ensure a secure configuration, we recommend that you enter the pre-shared keys with at least 22 characters in length and can be composed of any combination of upper and lower case letters, numbers, and special characters (that include: “!”, “@”, “#”, “\$”, “%”, “^”, “&”, “*”, “(”, and “)”). The device supports pre-shared keys up to 127 characters in length. While longer keys increase the difficulty of brute-force attacks, longer keys increase processing time. HEX keys generated off system can also be input for IKEv2 using the following instead of the pre-shared-key command above: <i>pre-shared-key hex [hex key]</i> . For example: pre-shared-key hex 0x6A6B6C. This configures IPsec to use pre-shared keys.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-ikev2-keyring)# exit	Exits IKEv2 keyring peer configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 12	crypto logging ikev2 Example: Device(config)# <code>crypto logging ikev2</code>	Enables IKEv2 syslog messages. Note The configuration above is not a complete IKE v2 configuration, and that additional settings will be needed.

IPsec Transforms and Lifetimes

Regardless of the IKE version selected, the device must be configured with the proper transform for IPsec ESP encryption and integrity as well as IPsec lifetimes.

```
device (config)# crypto ipsec transform-set example esp-aes 128 esp-sha-hmac
```

Note that this configures IPsec ESP to use HMAC-SHA-1 and AES-CBC-128. To change this to the other allowed algorithms the following options can replace **esp-aes 128** in the command above:

Encryption Algorithm	Command
AES-CBC-256	esp-aes 256
AES-GCM-128	esp-gcm 128
AES-GCM-256	esp-gcm 256



Note The size of the key selected here must be less than or equal to the key size selected for the IKE encryption setting. If AES-CBC-128 was selected there for use with IKE encryption, then only AES-CBC-128 or AES-GCM-128 may be selected here.

```
device(config-crypto)# mode tunnel
```

This configures tunnel mode for IPsec. Tunnel is the default, but by explicitly specifying tunnel mode, the device will request tunnel mode and will accept only tunnel mode.

```
device(config-crypto)# mode transport
```

This configures transport mode for IPsec.

```
device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association lifetime seconds 28800
```

The default time value for Phase 2 SAs is 1 hour. There is no configuration required for this setting since the default is acceptable. However to change the setting to 8 hours as claimed in the Security Target the `crypto ipsec security-association lifetime` command can be used as specified above.

```
device(config)# crypto ipsec security-association lifetime kilobytes 100000
```

This configures a lifetime of 100 MB of traffic for Phase 2 SAs. The default amount for this setting is 2560KB, which is the minimum configurable value for this command. The maximum configurable value for this command is 4GB.

Use of X.509 With Internet Key Exchange Version

Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports RSA and ECDSA based certificates.

Once X.509v3 keys are installed on the device, they can be set for use with IKEv1 with the commands:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto isakmp <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)#crypto isakmp policy 1	Defines an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) policy and assigns a priority to the policy.
Step 3	authentication [remote local] rsa-sig Example: Device(config-isakmp)#authentication rsa-sig	Uses RSA based certificates for IKEv1 authentication.
Step 4	authentication [remote local] ecdsa-sig Example: Device(config-isakmp)#authentication ecdsa-sig	Uses ecdsa based certificates for IKEv1 authentication.

For IKEv2 Commands

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto ikev2 profile sample Example: Device(config)# crypto ikev2 profile sample	Defines an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) policy and assigns a profile.
Step 3	authentication [remote local] rsa-sig Example:	Uses RSA based certificates for IKEv1 authentication.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ikev2-profile)# authentication rsa-sig	
Step 4	authentication [remote local] ecdsa-sig Example: Device(config-ikev2-profile)# authentication ecdsa-sig	Uses ecdsa based certificates for IKEv1 authentication. Authentication fails if an invalid certificate is loaded.

IPsec Session Interruption and Recovery

If an IPsec session with a peer is unexpectedly interrupted, the connection will be broken. In this scenario, no administrative interaction is required. The IPsec session will be reestablished (a new SA set up) once the peer is back online.

Example: Configure IPsec Using ISAKMP

The following sample outputs display the IPsec **isakmp** configuration:

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
  encr aes 256
  hash sha256
  authentication pre-share
  group 14
  lifetime 28800

crypto isakmp key 0 Cisco!123 address 192.0.2.4
crypto isakmp peer address 192.0.2.4

crypto ipsec transform-set aes-gcm-256 esp-gcm 256
  mode tunnel

crypto map IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog 1 ipsec-isakmp
  set peer 192.0.2.4
  set transform-set aes-gcm-256
  match address acl_ewlc_to_syslog

interface Vlan15
  crypto map IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog
end
```

Verifying IPsec Traffic

The following example shows how to verify the IPsec traffic configuration in isakmp configuration:

```
Device# show crypto map
Crypto Map IPv4 "IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog" 1 ipsec-isakmp
  Peer = 192.0.2.4
  Extended IP access list acl_ewlc_to_syslog
    access-list acl_ewlc_to_syslog permit ip host 192.0.2.2 host 192.0.2.4
  Current peer: 192.0.2.4
  Security association lifetime: 4608000 kilobytes/3600 seconds
  Responder-Only (Y/N): N
```

```

PFS (Y/N): N
Mixed-mode : Disabled
Transform sets={
    aes-gcm-256: { esp-gcm 256 } ,
}
Interfaces using crypto map IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog:
    Vlan15

Device# show crypto isakmp sa
IPv4 Crypto ISAKMP SA
dst          src          state          conn-id status
192.0.2.5    192.0.2.4    QM_IDLE       1011 ACTIVE

IPv6 Crypto ISAKMP SA

Device# show crypto ipsec sa

interface: Vlan15
  Crypto map tag: IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog, local addr 192.0.2.5

protected vrf: (none)
local  ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (192.0.2.5/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (192.0.2.4/255.255.255.255/0/0)
current_peer 192.0.2.4 port 500
  PERMIT, flags={origin_is_acl,}
    #pkts encaps: 1626, #pkts encrypt: 1626, #pkts digest: 1626
    #pkts decaps: 1625, #pkts decrypt: 1625, #pkts verify: 1625
    #pkts compressed: 0, #pkts decompressed: 0
    #pkts not compressed: 0, #pkts compr. failed: 0
    #pkts not decompressed: 0, #pkts decompress failed: 0
    #send errors 0, #recv errors 0

    local crypto endpt.: 192.0.2.5, remote crypto endpt.: 192.0.2.4
    plaintext mtu 1446, path mtu 1500, ip mtu 1500, ip mtu idb Vlan15
    current outbound spi: 0x17FF2F4C(402599756)
    PFS (Y/N): N, DH group: none

inbound esp sas:
  spi: 0x4B77AD78(1266134392)
    transform: esp-gcm 256 ,
    in use settings ={Tunnel, }
    conn id: 2041, flow_id: HW:41, sibling_flags FFFFFFFF80004048, crypto map:
IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog
    sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607904/1933)
    IV size: 8 bytes
    replay detection support: Y
    Status: ACTIVE(ACTIVE)

inbound ah sas:

inbound pcp sas:

outbound esp sas:
  spi: 0x17FF2F4C(402599756)
    transform: esp-gcm 256 ,
    in use settings ={Tunnel, }
    conn id: 2042, flow_id: HW:42, sibling_flags FFFFFFFF80004048, crypto map:
IPSEC_ewlc_to_syslog
    sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4607904/1933)
    IV size: 8 bytes
    replay detection support: Y
    Status: ACTIVE(ACTIVE)

outbound ah sas:
outbound pcp sas:

```

```
Device# show ip access-lists acl_ewlc_to_syslog
Extended IP access list acl_ewlc_to_syslog
 10 permit ip host 192.0.2.5 host 192.0.2.4 (17 matches)
```

Example: Configure IPsec Using Internet Key Exchange Version 2

The following sample outputs display the IPsec **IKEv2** configuration:

```
topology : [192.0.2.6]DUT - (infra) - PEER[192.0.2.9]

ikev2 config in 192.0.2.6 (peer is 192.0.2.9)
hostname for 192.0.2.9: Edison-M1
hostname for 192.0.2.6: prsna-nyquist-192.0.2.6

ip access-list extended ikev2acl
 permit ip host 192.0.2.6 host 192.0.2.9

crypto ikev2 proposal PH1PROPOSAL
 encryption aes-cbc-256
 integrity sha256
 group 14
!
crypto ikev2 policy PH1POLICY
 proposal PH1PROPOSAL

crypto ikev2 keyring PH1KEY
 peer Edison-M1
 address 192.0.2.9
 pre-shared-key Cisco!123Cisco!123Cisco!123

crypto ikev2 profile PH1PROFILE
 match identity remote address 192.0.2.9 255.255.255.255
 authentication remote pre-share
 authentication local pre-share
 keyring local PH1KEY

crypto ipsec transform-set aes256-sha1 esp-aes 256 esp-sha-hmac
 mode tunnel

crypto map ikev2-cryptomap 1 ipsec-isakmp
 set peer 192.0.2.9
 set transform-set aes256-sha1
 set ikev2-profile PH1PROFILE
 match address ikev2acl

interface Vlan15
 ip address 192.0.2.6 255.255.255.0
 crypto map ikev2-cryptomap
```

Verifying IPsec With Internet Key Exchange Version 2 Traffic

The following example shows how to verify the IPsec traffic configuration in IKEv2 configuration:

```
Device# show ip access-lists
Extended IP access list ikev2acl
 10 permit ip host 192.0.2.6 host 192.0.2.9 (80 matches)
```

```

prсна-nyquist-192.0.2.6#show crypto map
Crypto Map IPv4 "ikev2-cryptomap" 1 ipsec-isakmp
  Peer = 192.0.2.9
  IKEv2 Profile: PH1PROFILE
  Extended IP access list ikev2acl
    access-list ikev2acl permit ip host 192.0.2.6 host 192.0.2.9
  Current peer: 192.0.2.9
  Security association lifetime: 4608000 kilobytes/3600 seconds
  Responder-Only (Y/N): N
  PFS (Y/N): N
  Mixed-mode : Disabled
  Transform sets={
    aes256-sha1: { esp-256-aes esp-sha-hmac } ,
  }
  Interfaces using crypto map ikev2-cryptomap:
    Vlan15
Device# show crypto ikev2 sa detailed
IPv4 Crypto IKEv2 SA

Tunnel-id Local Remote fvrf/ivrf Status
1 192.0.2.6/500 192.0.2.9/500 none/none READY
Encr: AES-CBC, keysize: 256, PRF: SHA256, Hash: SHA256, DH Grp:14, Auth sign: PSK,
Auth verify: PSK
Life/Active Time: 86400/1002 sec
CE id: 1089, Session-id: 2
Status Description: Negotiation done
Local spi: 271D20169FE91074 Remote spi: 13895472E3B910AF
Local id: 192.0.2.6
Remote id: 192.0.2.9
Local req msg id: 2 Remote req msg id: 0
Local next msg id: 2 Remote next msg id: 0
Local req queued: 2 Remote req queued: 0
Local window: 5 Remote window: 5
DPD configured for 0 seconds, retry 0
Fragmentation not configured.
Dynamic Route Update: disabled
Extended Authentication not configured.
NAT-T is not detected
Cisco Trust Security SGT is disabled
Initiator of SA : Yes
Device# show crypto ipsec sa detail

interface: Vlan15
Crypto map tag: ikev2-cryptomap, local addr 192.0.2.6

protected vrf: (none)
local ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (192.0.2.6/255.255.255.255/0/0)
remote ident (addr/mask/prot/port): (192.0.2.9/255.255.255.255/0/0)
current_peer 192.0.2.9 port 500
PERMIT, flags={origin_is_acl,}
#pkts encaps: 80, #pkts encrypt:80, #pkts digest: 80
#pkts decaps: 80, #pkts decrypt: 80, #pkts verify: 80
#pkts compressed: 0, #pkts decompressed: 0
#pkts not compressed: 0, #pkts compr. failed: 0
#pkts not decompressed: 0, #pkts decompress failed: 0
#pkts no sa (send) 0, #pkts invalid sa (rcv) 0
#pkts encaps failed (send) 0, #pkts decaps failed (rcv) 0
#pkts invalid prot (rcv) 0, #pkts verify failed: 0
#pkts invalid identity (rcv) 0, #pkts invalid len (rcv) 0
#pkts replay rollover (send): 0, #pkts replay rollover (rcv) 0
##pkts replay failed (rcv): 0
#pkts tagged (send): 0, #pkts untagged (rcv): 0
#pkts not tagged (send): 0, #pkts not untagged (rcv): 0

```

```
#pkts internal err (send): 0, #pkts internal err (recv) 0

local crypto endpt.: 192.0.2.6, remote crypto endpt.: 192.0.2.9
plaintext mtu 1438, path mtu 1500, ip mtu 1500, ip mtu idb Vlan15
current outbound spi: 0xB546157A(3041269114)
PFS (Y/N): N, DH group: none

inbound esp sas:
  spi: 0x350925BC(889791932)
    transform: esp-256-aes esp-sha-hmac ,
    in use settings ={Tunnel, }
    conn id: 838, flow_id: 838, sibling_flags FFFFFFFF80000040, crypto map:
ikev2-cryptomap
  sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4287660676/2560)
  IV size: 16 bytes
  replay detection support: Y
  Status: ACTIVE(ACTIVE)

inbound ah sas:

inbound pcg sas:

outbound esp sas:
  spi: 0xB546157A(3041269114)
    transform: esp-256-aes esp-sha-hmac ,
    in use settings ={Tunnel, }
    conn id: 837, flow_id: 837, sibling_flags FFFFFFFF80000040, crypto map:
ikev2-cryptomap
  sa timing: remaining key lifetime (k/sec): (4287660672/2560)
  IV size: 16 bytes
  replay detection support: Y
  Status: ACTIVE(ACTIVE)

outbound ah sas:

outbound pcg sas:
```




CHAPTER 135

Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support

- [Information About Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support, on page 1375](#)
- [Configuring a Transport Layer Security Tunnel, on page 1376](#)
- [Verifying a Transport Layer Security Tunnel, on page 1377](#)

Information About Transport Layer Security Tunnel Support

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller requires direct access to a public cloud to implement the teleworker solution using Cisco OfficeExtend Access Points (OEAPs). With the introduction of Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel support from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.2 onwards, the controller can now reach a public cloud automatically. This helps Cisco Catalyst Center on Cloud to establish TLS communication channels with the controller to perform monitor and manage of wireless solutions.

The TLS connection ensures that the configuration and telemetry are reliably and securely communicated between the controller and the Digital Network Architecture (DNA) on Cloud. The TLS tunnel encrypts all the data that is sent over the TCP connection. The TLS tunnel provides a more secure protocol across the internet. After the controller discovery, the Cisco Catalyst Center on Cloud uses Cisco DNA Assurance and Automation features to manage the controller centrally.

Cisco Plug and Play

The Cisco Plug and Play solution is a converged solution that provides a highly secure, scalable, seamless, and unified zero-touch deployment experience.

Plug-n-Play Agent

The Cisco Plug and Play (PnP) agent is an embedded software component that is present in all the Cisco network devices that support simplified deployment architecture. The PnP agent understands and interacts only with a PnP server. The PnP agent, using DHCP, DNS, or other such methods, tries to acquire the IP address of the PnP server with which it wants to communicate. After a server is found and a connection is established, the agent communicates with the PnP server to perform deployment-related activities.

For more information on Cisco Plug and Play, see the [Cisco Plug and Play Feature Guide](#).

The Transport Layer Security Tunnel (TLS) over PnP feature is supported on the following controllers:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller

Configuring a Transport Layer Security Tunnel

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	crypto tls-tunnel <i>TLS-tunnel-name</i> Example: Device(config)# crypto tls-tunnel cloud-primary	Configures a crypto TLS tunnel channel.
Step 3	server {ipv4 <A.B.C.D> ipv6 <X.X.X.X::X> url <url-name>} port 443 <1025-65535>} Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel)# server ipv4 172.31.255.255 port 4043	Specifies the server IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or URL name and the port number.
Step 4	overlay interface <i>interface-name</i> <i>interface-num</i> Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel)# overlay interface Loopback0	Specifies the overlay interface and interface number. An overlay interface is a logical, multiaccess, multicast-capable interface. An overlay interface encapsulates Layer 2 frames in IP unicast or multicast headers.
Step 5	local interface <i>interface-name</i> <i>interface-num</i> priority rank Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel)# local-interface vlan 1 priority 1	Specifies the LAN interface type, number, and the priority rank. Note Currently, the tunnel supports only one WAN interface with priority 1 and does not support the list of WAN interfaces with multiple priorities.
Step 6	psk id <i>identity</i> key options Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel)# psk id test key	Specifies a preshared key and password options.
Step 7	pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint</i> <i>trustpoint-label</i> [sign verify] Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel)# pki trustpoint tsp1 sign	Specifies the trustpoints for use with the RSA signature authentication method as follows: • sign: Use the certificate from the trustpoint which is sent to the peer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• verify: Use the certificate from the trustpoint to verify the certificate received from the peer. Note • If the sign or verify keyword is not specified, the trustpoint is used for signing and verification. • In TLS Tunnel block, authentication can be done using either pre-shared key (PSK) or PKI (certificate based).
Step 8	(Optional) cc-mode Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel) # cc-mode	Indicates a common criteria mode, which is a Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) mode.
Step 9	no shutdown Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel) # no shutdown	Enables the TLS tunnel.
Step 10	end Example: Device(config-crypto-tls-tunnel) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying a Transport Layer Security Tunnel

The TLS client support includes BinOS processes using Linux Tun/Tap Interface. To verify the TLS client summary details, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software tlsc client summary
TLS Client - Config Summary
```

Name	ID	Gateway	Port	Auth	Trustpoint	DPD Time	Rekey Time	Retry Time

fqdn	0		8443	PSK	N/A	60	300	20

To verify the TLS client session detail, session statistics, tunnel statistics, and DNS counters, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software client detail <tls-name>
```

```
Session Name      : fqdn
FQDN resolved IP  : 10.255.255.255
ID                : 0
Created           : 04/20/21 00:36:42
Updated           : 04/22/21 05:56:03
```

```

State           : Up (Rekey)
Up Time         : 04/21/21 20:30:21 (9 hours 25 minutes 45 seconds)
Down Time       : 04/21/21 20:30:01
Rekey Time      : 04/22/21 05:55:51 (15 seconds)

```

TLS Session Statistics

```

Up Notifications   : 3
Down Notifications  : 2
Rekey Notifications : 636
DP State Updates    : 0
DPD Cleanups        : 0

```

Packets From	Packets To	Packet Errors To	Bytes From	Bytes To
BinOS	80	0	0	0
IOSd	0	0	0	0
TLS Client	0	0	0	0

TLS Tunnel Statistics

Type	Tx Packets	Rx Packets
Total	0	80
CSTP Ctrl	3836	3836
CSTP Data	80	0

Type	Requests	Responses
CSTP Cfg	639	639
CSTP DPD	3197	3197

```

Invalid CSTP Rx      : 0
Injected Packet Success : 0
Injected Packet Failed : 0
Consumed Packets      : 0

```

TLS Tunnel DNS Counters

```

DNS Resolve Request Success Count : 641
DNS Resolve Request Failure Count : 0
DNS Resolve Success Count          : 639
DNS Resolve Failure Count          : 2

```

To verify the TLS client global statistics, use the following command.

```

Device# show platform software tlsc statistics
TLS Client: Global Statistics

```

Session Statistics

```

Up / Down      : 5 / 2
Rekeys         : 636
DP Updates     : 0
DPD Cleanups   : 0

```

	Packets From	Packets To	Packet Errors To	Bytes From	Bytes To
BinOS	85	0			0
IOSd	0	0	0	0	0
TLS Client	0	0	0	0	0

Tunnel Statistics

```

SSL Handshake Init / Done : 641 / 641

```

```
TCP Connection Req / Done : 641 / 641
Tunnel Packets
Rx / Tx      : 85 / 0
Injected / Failed : 0 / 0
Consumed      : 0
```

```
CSTP Packets
Control Rx / Tx : 3839 / 3839
Data Rx / Tx : 0 / 85
Config Req / Resp : 641 / 641
DPD Req / Resp : 3198 / 3198
Invalid Rx : 0
```

```
FQDN Counters
Req / Resp / Success : 0 / 0 / 0
```

```
NAT Counters
Transalte In / Out : 0 / 0
Ignore In / Out : 0 / 0
Failed : 0
Invalid : 0
No Entry : 0
Unsupported : 0
```

Internal Counters

Type	Allocated	Freed
EV	1299	1295
Tunnel	5	4
Conn	643	642
Sess	3	2

```
Config Message Related Counters
Type      Success      Failed
-----
Create    3             0
Delete    2             0
```

To view the TLS client-session summary, use the following command.

```
Device# show platform software tlsc session summary
```

TLS Client - Session Summary

Name	ID	Created	State	Since	Elapsed
fqdn	0	04/20/21 00:36:42	Up	04/21/21 20:30:21	9 hours 26 minutes 44 seconds



CHAPTER 136

Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes

- [Feature History for RFC 5580 Location Attributes, on page 1381](#)
- [Information About RFC 5580 Location Attributes , on page 1382](#)
- [Information About Location-Capable Attribute , on page 1384](#)
- [Restriction for Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes, on page 1384](#)
- [Configuring Location Delivery Based on Out-of-Band Agreement \(CLI\), on page 1384](#)
- [Configuring Location-Capable Attribute \(CLI\), on page 1385](#)
- [Creating Location Attributes, on page 1385](#)
- [Associating Location Attributes with User Location \(CLI\), on page 1389](#)
- [Associating Location Attributes with the NAS Location \(CLI\), on page 1390](#)
- [Verifying RFC 5580 Location Attribute Configuration, on page 1390](#)

Feature History for RFC 5580 Location Attributes

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 91: Feature History for RFC 5580 Location Attributes

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	Support for RFC 5580 Location Attributes in the Controller	This feature uses the RFC 5580 location attributes to convey location-related information for authentication and accounting exchanges. The controller supports the following RFC 5580-related attributes: • Location-Information • Location-Data CIVIC Profile: Country • Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 1 (State) • Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 3 (City) • Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 23 (Venue Name) • Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 24 (Zip Code) • Location-Data GEO Profile (Longitude, Latitude, and Altitude) • Operator Name

Information About RFC 5580 Location Attributes

The RFC 5580 location attributes convey location-related information for authentication and accounting exchanges.

The location information is useful in several scenarios. Wireless networks are deployed in public places, such as shopping malls, airports, hotels, and coffee shops by a diverse set of operators, such as wireless internet service providers (WISPs), cellular network operators, and fixed broadband networks. In all these scenarios, the network may need to know the user location to enable location-aware authorization, billing, or services.

To preserve user privacy, the location information must be protected against unauthorized access and distribution.

The RFC 5580 defines two types of location:

- **User location:** This location is more specific to users.



Note The user location is configured in AP.

- **NAS location:** This is the common location to host all the users. For instance, suppose you configure user location at AP1, other users connecting to AP1 will also have the same user location. Now other users coming from AP2 will have a different user location. Thus, if AP1 and AP2 are connected to the controller, and you configure a NAS location, then users from AP1 and AP2 are connected to the same NAS location.



Note The NAS location is configured in AAA.

You can define certain profiles in each location. Profile refers to the attributes used to define the location. Each location has two profiles, namely, Civic and Geo.

The following are the location profiles:

- **Civic Profile:** In this profile, the location is described in terms of attributes such as Country, State, City, Area, and Postal Code.
- **Geo Profile:** In this profile, the location is described in terms of attributes such as Latitude, Longitude, and Altitude.

For users with both user location and NAS location, you can set their location in both Civic and Geo profile formats. Such users have the following locations:

- Civic User location
- Civic NAS location
- Geo User location
- Geo NAS location

Each location information, for instance, the civic user location, is sent using the following attributes:

- Location-Information
- Location-Data

The controller supports the following RFC 5580-related attributes:

- Location-Information
- Location-Data CIVIC Profile: Country
- Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 1 (State)
- Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 3 (City)
- Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 23 (Venue Name)
- Location-Data CIVIC Profile: CAtype 24 (Zip Code)
- Location-Data GEO Profile (Longitude, Latitude, and Altitude)
- Operator Name

Thus, a user can have four locations and one operator name.

To transfer location information, the Out-of-Band Agreement (Flow 1) delivery method mentioned in RFC 5580 is supported.

This is applicable only if the feature is enabled and location information is configured.

Information About Location-Capable Attribute

Cisco IOS-XE Dublin 17.11.1 supports the Location-Capable feature attribute from RFC 5580. This attribute is sent only in the network access requests. To enable the Location-Capable attribute, configure the **radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band include-location-capable** command. This attribute informs the RADIUS server that this device can send location information.

The RFC5580 supports three flows or modes of location delivery. As per the RFC, the Location-Capable attribute should be sent in Flow-2, which is location delivery based on Initial-Request. The above-mentioned configuration enables sending this attribute in Flow-1, which is Location delivery based on Out-of-Band agreement as well.

When an authentication or authorization request is received, the Location-Capable feature attribute is added to the request along with other location attributes as per the configuration (explained in the other section). This is applicable only for wireless clients. The RADIUS server might use this information to provide network access.

Restriction for Configuring RFC 5580 Location Attributes

This feature is supported only for 802.1X users.

Configuring Location Delivery Based on Out-of-Band Agreement (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band	Configures RFC 5580 Out-of-Band location support.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Location-Capable Attribute (CLI)

Use the **radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band** command to enable the feature globally.

You can use the **radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band include-location-capable** command to include the location-capable attribute along with other location attributes.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band include-location-capable Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless location delivery out-of-band include-location-capable	Configures RFC 5580 out-of-band location attributes along with enabling the location-capable attribute to be part of the access request.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Creating Location Attributes

Configuring a Civic Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	location civic-location identifier <i>civic_identifier</i> Example: Device(config)# location civic-location identifier USER_C_1	Configures the civic profile for User location. Here, <i>civic_identifier</i> refers to the civic location identifier string. It can take up to 215 characters. You can enter a total of 250 bytes to configure civic address attributes. Cisco reserves 50 bytes

	Command or Action	Purpose
		for internal information. Therefore, the remaining 200 bytes can be used for user-configured civic location. Note You can configure the following types of civic attributes and add them to the RADIUS requests: • Country • City • State • Postal Code • Name
Step 3	country <i>country_ID</i> Example: Device(config-civic)# country IN	Sets the country ID. Note Only two-letter ISO 3166 country codes are accepted.
Step 4	city <i>city_name</i> Example: Device(config-civic)# city Bangalore	Sets the city name.
Step 5	state <i>state_name</i> Example: Device(config-civic)# state Karnataka	Sets the state name.
Step 6	postal-code <i>postal_code</i> Example: Device(config-civic)# postal-code 562016	Sets the postal code.
Step 7	name <i>residence_name</i> Example: Device(config-civic)# name Nivas	Sets the residence name.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-civic)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Geo Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	location geo-location identifier <i>geo_identifier</i> Example: Device(config)# location geo-location identifier USER_G_1	Configures a Geo profile for user location. Here, <i>geo_identifier</i> refers to the geographic location identifier string. It can take up to 215 characters.
Step 3	latitude <i>latitude_in_degrees</i> resolution [<i>resolution_value</i>] Example: Device(config-geo)# latitude "34 12 15"	Sets the latitude information. The optional parameters are documented within square brackets. While configuring the latitude, you can specify the resolution, in meters. If you do not specify any resolution, a default value of 10 meters is used.
Step 4	longitude <i>longitude_in_degrees</i> resolution <i>resolution_value</i> Example: Device(config-geo)# longitude "111 59 44"	Sets the longitude information. The optional parameters are documented within square brackets. While configuring the longitude, you can specify the resolution, in meters. If you do not specify any resolution, a default value of 10 meters is used.
Step 5	altitude <i>altitude_value</i> {feet resolution <i>resolution_value</i> floor meters resolution <i>resolution_value</i>} Example: Device(config-geo)# altitude 10 meters resolution 10	Configures the altitude for the geographic location. The optional parameters are documented within square brackets. <i>altitude_value</i>: Refers to the altitude, in feet, floors, or meters. <i>resolution_value</i>: Refers to the resolution, in feet or meters. Note Both the altitude and the altitude resolution must be in the same unit.
Step 6	resolution <i>resolution_value</i> Example: Device(config-geo)# resolution 30	Specifies a single common resolution for latitude and longitude.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-geo) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring an Operator Name (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	location operator identifier <i>identifier_name</i> Example: Device(config)# location operator identifier USER_O_1	Configures an operator name for the user location. Here, <i>identifier_name</i> supports strings up to 215 characters in length.
Step 3	name <i>operator-name</i> Example: Device(config-operator) # name ACT	Configures the location operator name. Here, <i>operator-name</i> supports strings up to 248 characters in length.
Step 4	namespace-id {E212 ICC REALM TADIG} Example: Device(config-operator) # namespace-id ICC	Configures the namespace for a location. The following are the namespace options: • E212: Refers to the Mobile Country Code (MCC) and Mobile Network Code (MNC). • ICC: Refers to the International Telecommunication Union Carrier Codes (ICC). • REALM: Refers to any registered domain name. • TADIG: Refers to the Transferred Account Data Interchange Group (TADIG) code. Note • If you have not configured any namespace, REALM is used as the default value. • The operator name can be associated with both NAS-Location and USER-Location.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		When an operator name is configured at both the locations, the operator name that is configured in USER-Location takes precedence.
Step 5	end Example: <code>Device(config-operator)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Associating Location Attributes with User Location (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap location name <i>location_name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# ap location name OFFICE</code>	Configures a location name for an AP.
Step 3	ap-eth-mac <i>AP_Ethernet_MAC</i> Example: <code>Device(config-ap-location)# ap-eth-mac 0a0b.0cf0.0001</code>	Adds the AP to the location. Here, <i>AP_Ethernet_MAC</i> refers to the AP Ethernet MAC address.
Step 4	location civic-location-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-ap-location)# location civic-location-id USER_C_1</code>	Associates the civic location attribute with the user location.
Step 5	location geo-location-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-ap-location)# location geo-location-id USER_G_1</code>	Associates the geographic location attribute with the user location.
Step 6	location operator-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: <code>Device(config-ap-location)# location operator-id USER_O_1</code>	Associates the operator location attribute with the user location.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-ap-location)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Associating Location Attributes with the NAS Location (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	radius-server attribute wireless location civic-location-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless location civic-location-id NAS_C_1	Associates the civic location attribute with the NAS location. Here, <i>identifier_name</i> supports strings up to 215 characters in length.
Step 3	radius-server attribute wireless location geo-location-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless location geo-location-id NAS_G_1	Associates the geographic location attribute with the NAS location. Here, <i>identifier_name</i> supports strings up to 215 characters in length. Enter a valid or existing identifier name.
Step 4	radius-server attribute wireless location operator-id <i>identifier_name</i> Example: Device(config)# radius-server attribute wireless location operator-id NAS_O_1	Associates the operator location attribute with the NAS location.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying RFC 5580 Location Attribute Configuration

To verify the location attributes associated with a given location, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap location details AAA_location
Location Name.....: AAA_location
```



```

Location description.....:
Policy tag.....: default-policy-tag
Site tag.....: default-site-tag
RF tag.....: default-rf-tag
AAA Location Status .....: Enabled
Civic Location Identifier : NAS_C_1
Geo Location Identifier   : NAS_G_1
Operator Name Identifier  : NAS_O_1

```

```

Configured list of APs
38ed.18ca.5a20

```

To verify the Cisco AP location, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap name AP38ED.18CA.5A20 config general
Cisco AP Name      : AP38ED.18CA.5A20
=====

Cisco AP Identifier           : 38ed.18cb.cf00
Country Code                 : Multiple Countries :
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg: 802.11a: 802.11 6GHz:
AP Country Code              : US -
AP Regulatory Domain
    802.11bg                  : -A
    802.11a                   : -A
MAC Address                  : 38ed.18ca.5a20
IP Address Configuration     : Static IP assigned
IP Address                   : 9.4.172.111
IP Netmask                   : 255.255.255.0
Gateway IP Address           : 9.4.172.1
Fallback IP Address Being Used :
Domain                       :
Name Server                  :
CAPWAP Path MTU              : 1485
Capwap Active Window Size    : 1
Telnet State                 : Disabled
CPU Type                     : ARMv7 Processor rev 0 (v7l)
Memory Type                  : DDR3
Memory Size                  : 995328 KB
SSH State                    : Disabled
Cisco AP Location            : AAA_location
-
-
-

```

To verify the location attributes associated with a given MAC address, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless client mac 0080.5222.545c detail

Client MAC Address : 0080.5222.545c
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address :
AP MAC Address : 38ed.18cb.cf00
AP Name: AP38ED.18CA.5A20
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : default-policy-profile
Flex Profile : N/A
...
Civic Location Identifier : NAS_C_1
Geo Location Identifier   : NAS_G_1
Operator Name Identifier  : NAS_O_1

```



Note You will be able to view this output only if the RFC 5580 feature is enabled.

To verify the Civic location details, use the following command:

```
Device# show location civic-location identifier TEST1
Civic location information
-----
Identifier           : TEST1
Name                 : home
City                 : Morges
State                : Vaud
Postal code          : 1110
Country              : CH
```

To verify the Geo location details, use the following command:

```
Device# show location geo-location identifier TEST4
Geo location information
-----
Identifier   : TEST4
Latitude    : 46.5112700
Longitude    : 6.4985400
Altitude     : 380 meters           Resolution : 10
Resolution  : 100
```

To verify the Operator location details, use the following command:

```
Device# show location operator-location identifier myoperator
Operator location information
-----
Operator Identifier   : myoperator
Operator Name         : myoperator
Operator Namespace    : REALM
-----
```



CHAPTER 137

IP MAC Binding

- [Information About IP MAC Binding, on page 1393](#)
- [Use Cases for No IP MAC Binding, on page 1394](#)
- [Disabling IP MAC Binding \(CLI\), on page 1394](#)
- [Verifying IP MAC Binding, on page 1395](#)

Information About IP MAC Binding

The wireless device tracking features, such as, theft detection, proxy, DHCP relay, glean, and suppression are enabled with IP MAC address binding configuration.



Note The IP MAC address binding is enabled by default in the policy profile.



Note IP MAC binding is required for DHCP Option 82 to work in some situations.

No IP MAC Binding

It disables all the wireless device tracking features for wireless clients' IPv4 address.



Note It is not normally necessary to disable IP MAC binding, except for the following scenarios:

- When you have a single wireless station with multiple IP addresses.
 - When you intentionally have duplicate IP addresses across clients.
 - When you are using ARP-spoofing Network Access Control (NAC) devices.
-

Use Cases for No IP MAC Binding

The following are the use cases for No IP MAC binding:

- Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode
- Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices
- Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode

Disabling IP MAC Binding (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-profile-policy	Configures the wireless profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile. Note Disabling policy profile results in associated AP and client to rejoin.
Step 4	no ip mac-binding Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no ip mac-binding	Disables IP MAC binding.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying IP MAC Binding

To verify if the IP MAC binding is disabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show run | b wireless profile policy test-profile-policy
wireless profile policy test-profile-policy
  no ip mac-binding
  vlan VLAN0169
```




CHAPTER 138

Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode

- [Information About Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode, on page 1397](#)
- [Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode, on page 1397](#)
- [Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode \(CLI\), on page 1398](#)
- [Verifying MAC Entries from Database, on page 1398](#)

Information About Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode

In FlexConnect local switching scenarios, where clients from the same sites may share the same address range, there is a possibility of multiple clients being allocated or registered with the same IP address. The controller receives IP address information from the AP, and if more than one client attempts to use the same IP address, the controller discards the last device trying to register an already-used address as an IP theft event, potentially resulting in client exclusion.

The Disabling IP learning in FlexConnect mode feature utilizes the **no ip mac-binding** command to ensure that no device tracking is done for clients, thus preventing the IP theft error.



Note

- This feature is applicable only for IPv4 addresses.
- Configuring **ip overlap** in FlexConnect Profile assists overlapping IP address support for clients across different sites in FlexConnect local switching.

Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode

- The **wireless client ip deauthenticate** command works by referring to the IP table binding entries directly. It does not work for client whose IPs are not learnt.
- Overlapping IP addresses within a single site tag and across different site tags require different settings. Furthermore, if a single site tag contains overlapping IP addresses, L3 web authentication is necessary. However, L3 web authentication relies on IP addresses, and ensuring the uniqueness of IP addresses cannot be guaranteed, making this combination incorrect.
- When IP Source Guard (IPSG) is enabled and multiple binding information is sent with the same IP and preference level (such as DHCP, ARP, and so on) to CPP, the CPP starts to ignore the later bindings

after the first binding creation. Hence, you should not configure IPSG and disable IP MAC binding together. If IPSG and **no ip mac-binding** are configured together then IPSG does not work.

Disabling IP Learning in FlexConnect Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-profile-policy	Configures the wireless profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile. Note Disabling policy profile results in associated AP and client to rejoin.
Step 4	no ip mac-binding Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no ip mac-binding	Disables IP learning in FlexConnect mode.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying MAC Entries from Database

To verify the MAC details from database, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database mac
MAC VLAN IF-HDL IP
-----
6c96.cff2.889a 64 0x90000008 9.9.64.175
```




CHAPTER 139

Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices

- [Feature History for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices, on page 1399](#)
- [Information About Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices, on page 1399](#)
- [Restrictions for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices, on page 1400](#)
- [Disabling Device Tracking for Wireless Clients \(CLI\), on page 1400](#)
- [Verifying ARP Broadcast, on page 1401](#)

Feature History for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

Table 92: Feature History for Disabling Device-Tracking to Support NAC Devices

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1	Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices	This feature helps to control the flow of traffic between wireless clients using network access control (NAC) device.

Information About Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices

The feature helps to control the flow of traffic between wireless clients using a network access control (NAC) device. The NAC device blocks the direct traffic between wireless clients using ARP spoofing.

Use the **no ip mac-binding** command for ARP spoofing from the NAC and disabling the wireless client device tracking.



Note This feature is applicable only for IPv4 addresses.

Restrictions for Disabling Device Tracking to Support NAC Devices

- The **wireless client ip deauthenticate** command works by referring to the IP table binding entries directly. It does not work for client whose IPs are not learnt.
- Layer 3 web authentication and other L3 policies are not supported.
- When IP Source Guard (IPSG) is enabled and multiple binding information is sent with the same address and preference level (such as DHCP, ARP, and so on) to Cisco Packet Processor (CPP), the CPP starts to ignore the later bindings after the first binding creation. Hence, you should not configure IPSG and **no ip mac-binding** together. If IPSG and **no ip mac-binding** are configured together then IPSG does not work.

Disabling Device Tracking for Wireless Clients (CLI)

Disable device tracking for wireless clients using commands.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-profile-policy	Configures the wireless profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile. Note Disabling policy profile results in associated AP and client to rejoin.
Step 4	no ip mac-binding Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no ip mac-binding	Disables the IP-MAC address binding.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	vlan configuration <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 20	Configures a VLAN and enters VLAN configuration mode.
Step 8	arp broadcast Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# arp broadcast	Enables ARP broadcast on VLAN.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying ARP Broadcast

To verify the ARP broadcast, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software arp broadcast
Arp broadcast is enabled on vlans:
20,50
```




CHAPTER 140

Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode

- [Information About Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode, on page 1403](#)
- [Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode, on page 1403](#)
- [Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode \(CLI\), on page 1404](#)
- [Verifying MAC Entries from Database , on page 1405](#)
- [Verifying ARP Broadcast, on page 1405](#)

Information About Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode

In Local mode central switching scenarios, multiple clients may have an allocated or registered IP address. If the controller detects more than one client attempting to use the same IP address, it will discard one of the clients as an IP Theft event, potentially resulting in client exclusion.

The Disabling IP learning in Local mode feature utilizes the **no ip mac-binding** command to ensure that device tracking is not done for clients, thus preventing the IP Theft error.

To allow downstream broadcast ARP traffic to reach the wireless client in the VLAN, you should enable ARP broadcast and disable IP MAC binding. The controller replicates this traffic packet to all the APs belonging to the controller when Multicast over Multicast (MOM) is disabled.

To avoid this replication, you will need to enable the MOM.



Note This feature is applicable only for IPv4 addresses.

Restrictions for Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode

- The **wireless client ip deauthenticate** command works by referring to the IP table binding entries directly. It does not work for client whose IPs are not learnt.
- The L3 web authentication and other L3 policies are not supported.
- When IP Source Guard (IPSG) is enabled and multiple binding information is sent with the same IP and preference level (such as DHCP, ARP, and so on) to CPP, the CPP starts to ignore the later bindings after the first binding creation. Hence, you should not configure IPSG and disable IP MAC binding together. If IPSG and **no ip mac-binding** are configured together then IPSG does not work.

Disabling IP Learning in Local Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-profile-policy	Configures the wireless profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the wireless policy profile. Note Disabling policy profile results in associated AP and client to rejoin.
Step 4	no ip mac-binding Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no ip mac-binding	Disables IP learning in Local mode.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 7	vlan configuration <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# vlan configuration 20	Configures a VLAN and enters VLAN configuration mode. Note To allow downstream broadcast ARP traffic to reach the wireless client in the VLAN, you should enable ARP broadcast and disable IP MAC binding.
Step 8	arp broadcast Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# arp broadcast	Enables ARP broadcast on VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying MAC Entries from Database

To verify the MAC details from database, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database mac
      MAC              VLAN  IF-HDL      IP
```

```
-----
6c96.cff2.889a  64      0x90000008  9.9.64.175
```

Verifying ARP Broadcast

To verify the ARP broadcast, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software arp broadcast
Arp broadcast is enabled on vlans:
20,50
```




PART **VIII**

Mobility

- [Mobility, on page 1409](#)
- [NAT Support on Mobility Groups, on page 1431](#)
- [Static IP Client Mobility, on page 1435](#)
- [Mobility Domain ID - Dot11i Roaming, on page 1439](#)
- [802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication, on page 1441](#)
- [Opportunistic Key Caching, on page 1443](#)



CHAPTER 141

Mobility

- [Introduction to Mobility, on page 1409](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions, on page 1416](#)
- [Configuring Mobility \(GUI\), on page 1418](#)
- [Configuring Mobility \(CLI\), on page 1419](#)
- [Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility \(GUI\), on page 1421](#)
- [Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility, on page 1421](#)
- [Verifying Mobility, on page 1425](#)

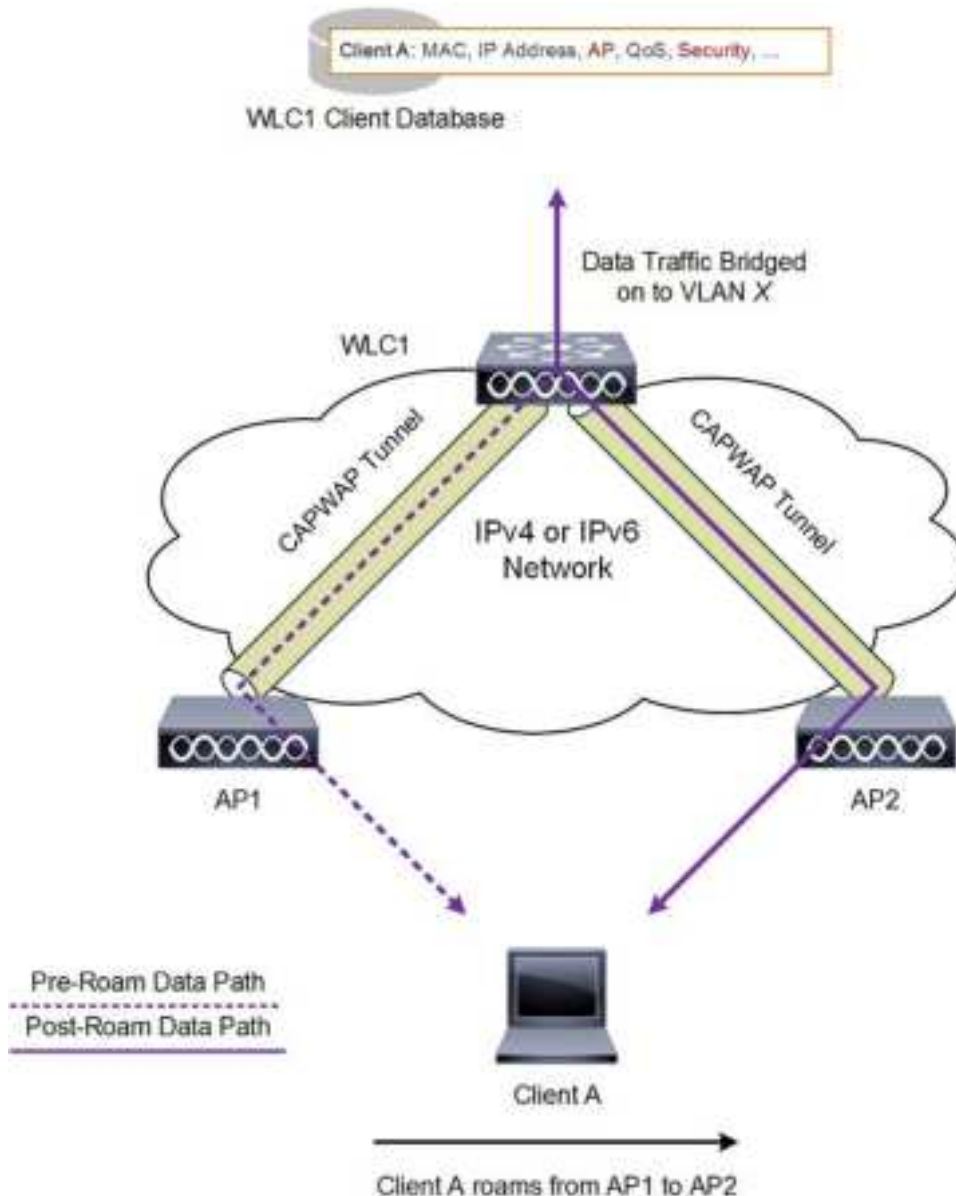
Introduction to Mobility

Mobility or roaming is a wireless LAN client's ability to maintain its association seamlessly from one access point to another access point securely and with as little latency as possible. This section explains how mobility works when controllers are included in a wireless network.

When a wireless client associates and authenticates to an access point, the access point's controller places an entry for that client in its client database. This entry includes the client's MAC and IP addresses, security context and associations, quality of service (QoS) contexts, the WLAN, and the associated access point. The controller uses this information to forward frames and manage traffic to and from a wireless client.

Figure 28: Intracontroller Roaming

This figure shows a wireless client that roams from one access point to another access point when both access points are joined to the same controller.

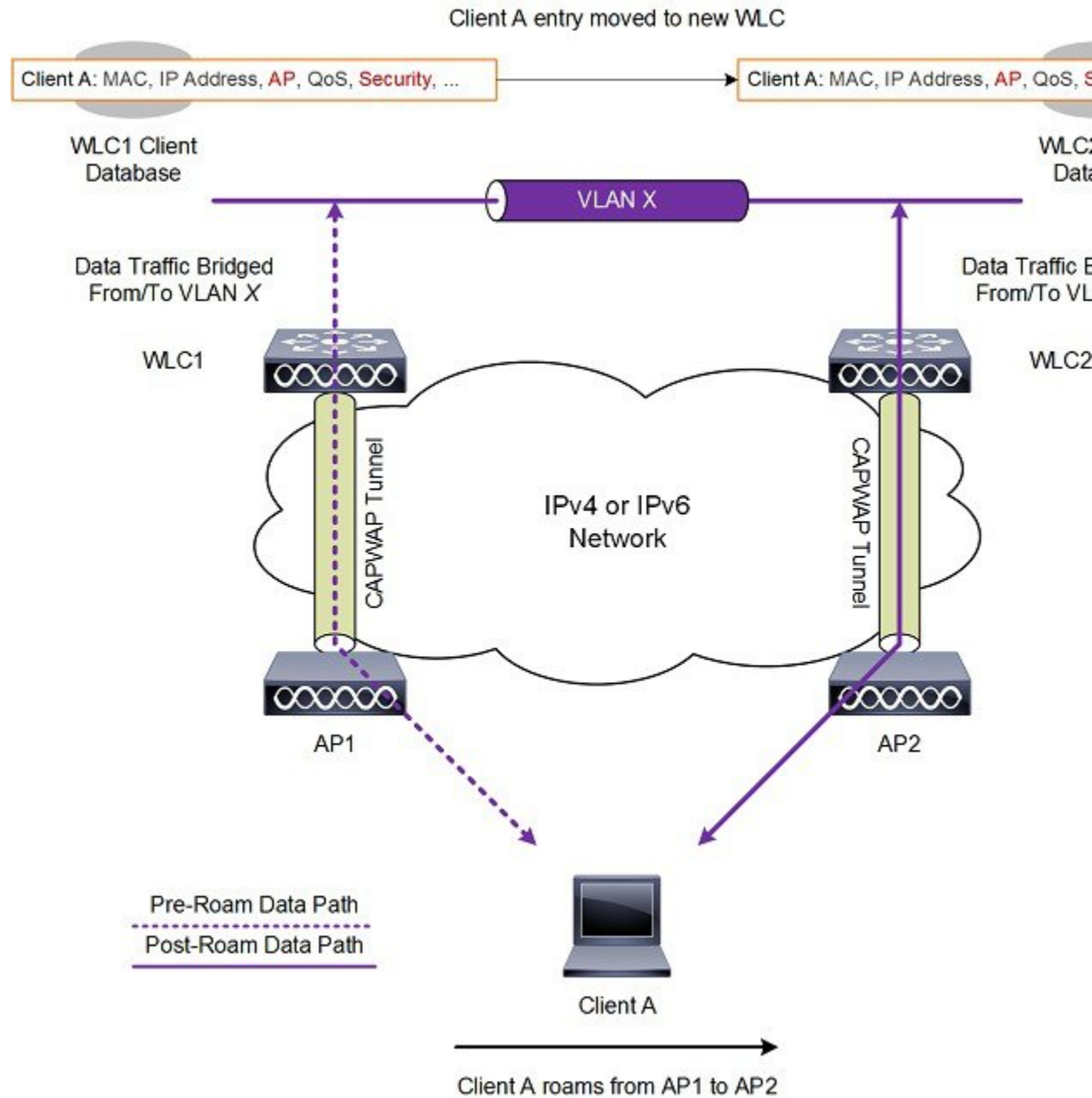


When a wireless client moves its association from one access point to another access point, the controller simply updates the client database with the newly associated access point. If necessary, new security context and associations are established as well.

The process becomes more complicated, however, when a client roams from an access point joined to one controller to an access point joined to a different controller. It also varies based on whether the controllers are operating on the same subnet.

Figure 29: Intercontroller Roaming

This figure shows intercontroller roaming, which occurs when the wireless LAN interfaces of controllers are on the same IP subnet.



When a client joins an access point associated with a new controller, the new controller exchanges mobility messages with the original controller, and the client database entry is moved to the new controller. New security context and associations are established if necessary, and the client database entry is updated for the new access point. This process remains transparent to the user.

**Note**

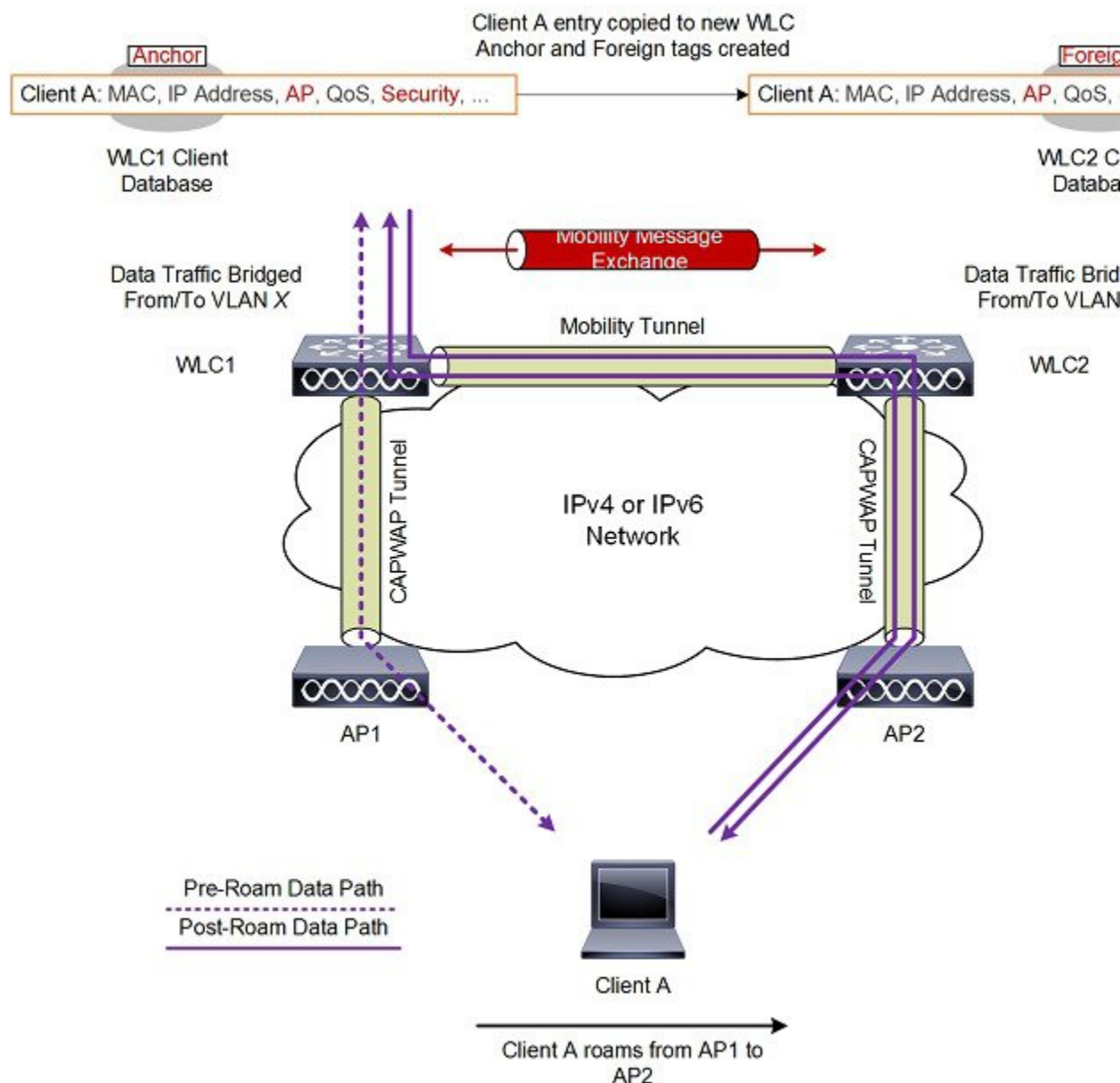
All clients configured with 802.1X/Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) security complete a full authentication in order to comply with the IEEE standard.

**Important**

Intersubnet Roaming is not supported for SDA.

Figure 30: Intersubnet Roaming

This figure shows intersubnet roaming, which occurs when the wireless LAN interfaces of controllers are on different IP subnets.



Intersubnet roaming is similar to intercontroller roaming in that, controllers exchange mobility messages on the client roam. However, instead of moving the client database entry to the new controller, the original controller marks the client with an *anchor* entry in its own client database. The database entry is copied to the new controller client database and marked with a *foreign* entry in the new controller. The roam remains transparent to the wireless client, and the client maintains its original IP address.

In intersubnet roaming, WLANs on both anchor and foreign controllers should have the same network access privileges, and no source-based routing or source-based firewalls in place. Otherwise, the clients may have network connectivity issues after the handoff.

In a static anchor setup using controllers and a RADIUS server, if AAA override is enabled to dynamically assign VLAN and QoS, the foreign controller updates the anchor controller with the right VLAN after a Layer 2 authentication (802.1x). For Layer 3 RADIUS authentication, the RADIUS requests for authentication are sent by the anchor controller.



Note The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller mobility tunnel is a CAPWAP tunnel with control path (UDP 16666) and data path (UDP 16667). The control path is DTLS encrypted by default. Data path DTLS can be enabled when you add the mobility peer.

The supported version of DTLS is v1.2

SDA Roaming

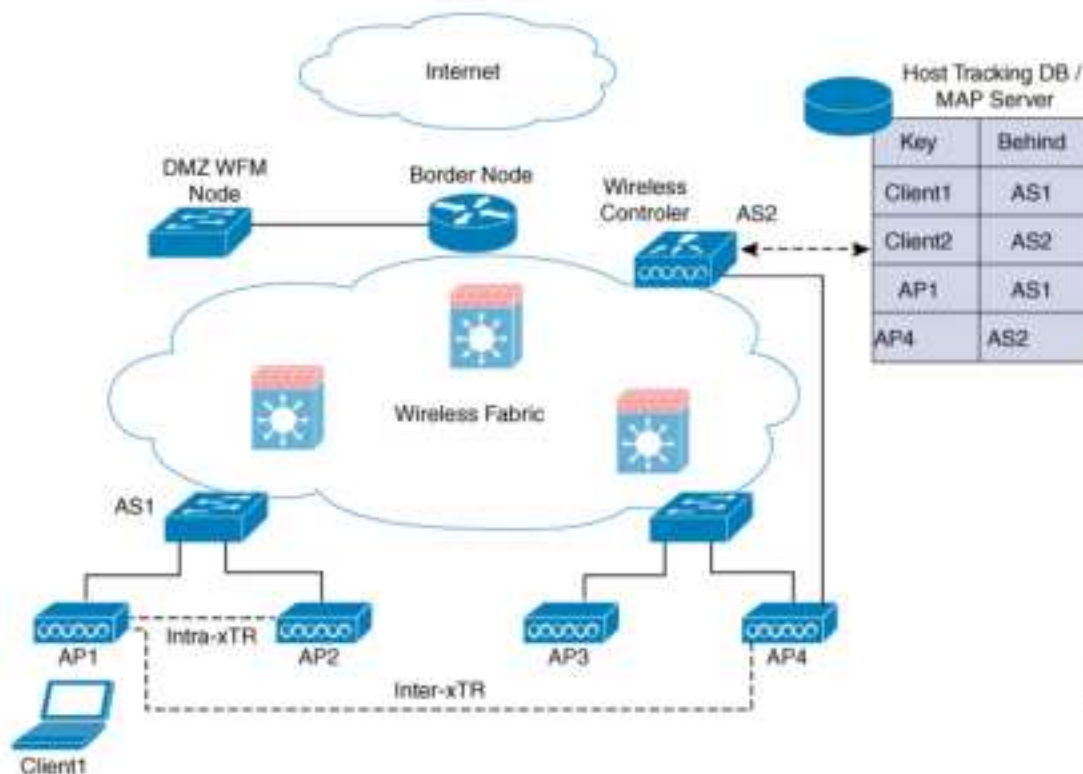
SDA supports two additional types of roaming, which are Intra-xTR and Inter-xTR. In SDA, xTR stands for an access-switch that is a fabric edge node. It serves both as an ingress tunnel router as well as an egress tunnel router.

When a client on a fabric enabled WLAN, roams from an access point to another access point on the same access-switch, it is called Intra-xTR. Here, the local client database and client history table are updated with the information of the newly associated access point.

When a client on a fabric enabled WLAN, roams from an access point to another access point on a different access-switch, it is called Inter-xTR. Here, the map server is also updated with the client location (RLOC) information. Also, the local client database is updated with the information of the newly associated access point.

Figure 31: SDA Roaming

This figure shows inter-xTR and intra-xTR roaming, which occurs when the client moves from one access point to another access point on the same switch or to a different switch in a Fabric topology.



Definitions of Mobility-related Terms

- **Point of Attachment**—A station's point of attachment is where its data path is initially processed upon entry into the network.
- **Point of Presence**—A station's point of presence is the place in the network where the station is being advertised.
- **Station**—A user's device that connects to and requests service from a network.

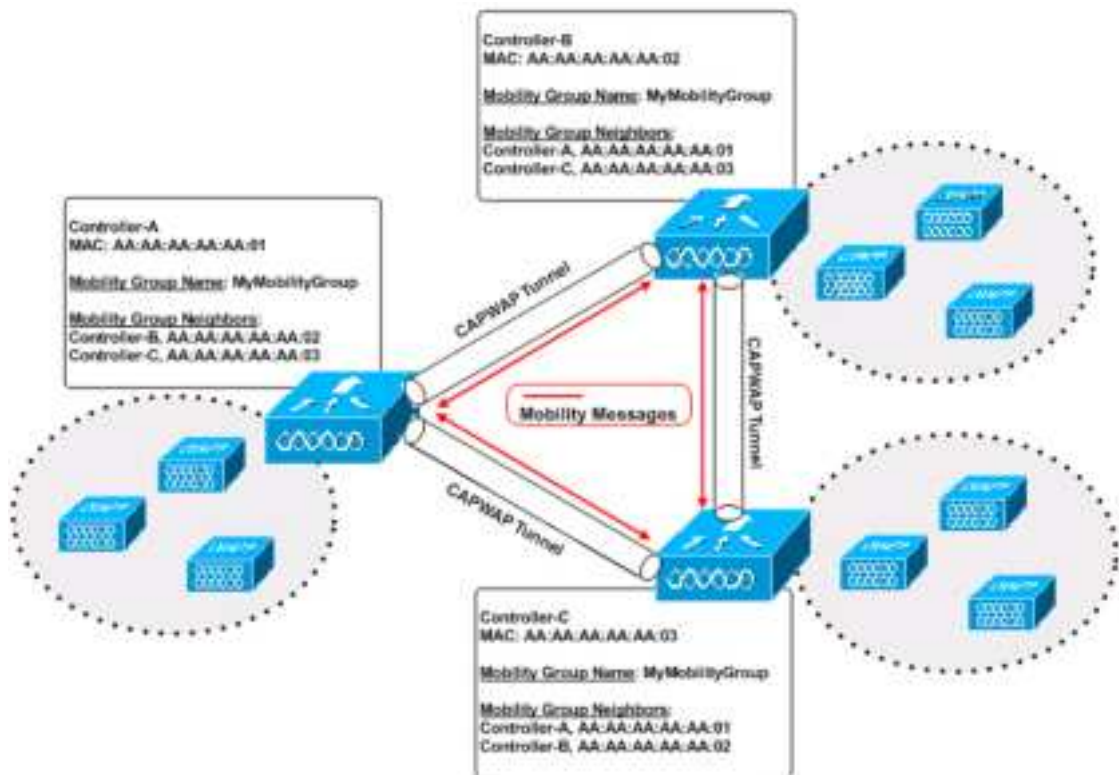
Mobility Groups

A mobility group is a set of controllers, identified by the same mobility group name, that defines the realm of seamless roaming for wireless clients. By creating a mobility group, you can enable multiple controllers in a network to dynamically share information and forward data traffic when intercontroller or intersubnet roaming occurs. Controllers in the same mobility group can share the context and state of client devices as well as their list of access points so that they do not consider each other's access points as rogue devices. With this information, the network can support intercontroller wireless LAN roaming and controller redundancy.



Note While moving an AP from one controller to another (when both controllers are mobility peers), a client associated to controller-1 before the move might stay there even after the move. This is due to a timeout period on controller-1, where the client entry is maintained (for the purposes of roaming/re-association scenarios). To avoid the client being anchored in controller-1, remove the mobility peer configuration of the controller.

Figure 32: Example of a Single Mobility Group



As shown in the figure above, each controller is configured with a list of the other members of the mobility group. Whenever a new client joins a controller, the controller sends out a unicast message (or multicast message if mobility multicast is configured) to all of the controllers in the mobility group. The controller to which the client was previously connected passes on the status of the client.

Guidelines and Restrictions

The following AireOS and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller platforms are supported for SDA Inter-Controller Mobility (AireOS controller-to-Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller):

- **AireOS**
 - Cisco 3504
 - Cisco 5520
 - Cisco 8540

- **Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller**

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller

The following controller platforms are supported for SDA Inter-Controller Mobility:

- **Catalyst Switches**

- Cisco 9300

- **Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller**

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller

- Ensure that the data DTLS configuration on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and AireOS are the same, as configuration mismatch is not supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and it causes the mobility data path to go down.
- In intercontroller roaming scenarios, policy profiles having different VLANs is supported as a Layer 3 roaming.
- In AireOS controller, L3 override is not supported in guest VLAN. Hence, the client does not trigger DHCP Discovery on the new VLAN automatically.
- Policy profile name and client VLAN under policy profile can be different across the controllers with the same WLAN profile mapped.
- In intracontroller roaming scenarios, client roaming is supported between same policy profiles, with WLAN mapped.

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x, The controller allows seamless roaming between same WLAN associated with different policy profile. For more information, see Client Roaming Policy Profile feature.

- If a client roams in web authentication state, the client is considered as a new client on another controller instead of being identified as a mobile client.
- Controllers that are mobility peers must use the same DHCP server to have an updated client mobility move count on intra-VLAN.
- Data DTLS and SSC hash key must be same for mobility tunnels between members.
- Mobility move count is updated under client detail only during inter-controller roaming. Intra-controller roaming can be verified under client stats and mobility history.
- Anchor VLAN in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller is represented as Access VLAN on the Cisco AireOS controller.
- When clients are roaming, their mobility role is shown as *Unknown*. This is because the roaming clients are in *IP learn* state, and in such a scenario, there are many client additions to the new instance and deletions in the old instance.

- In inter-controller roaming between 9800 and 9800/AireOS, client roaming is not supported, whenever there is a WLAN profile mismatch.
- Only IPv4 tunnel is supported between Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and Cisco AireOS controller.
- Ensure that you configure the mobility MAC address using the **wireless mobility mac-address** command for High-Availability to work.
- Mobility tunnel will not work if ECDSA based certificate or trustpoint is used for wireless management.
- If Anchor and Foreign controllers are put in the same Layer 2 network, it creates a loop topology (one path is Layer 3 mobility tunnel between Anchor and Foreign, another path is Layer 2 wired connection between Anchor and Foreign). In this topology, MAC_CONFLICT warning message can be seen on both the Anchor and Foreign controllers. This MAC_CONFLICT warning message is printed once every minute. However, it doesn't have any functionality and performance impact. As a best practice, do not use management VLAN as client VLAN.
- Mobility Tunnel will go down and come up if SSO is triggered due to gateway check failure.
- If the current AP has 5-GHz slot2 radio on L2 and L3 mobility 5-GHz slot2, the WLAN BSSID is only added to the 11k or 11v neighbor information. As a result, the AP does not have the information of radio properties of the APs belonging to the other controllers. Hence, it can be assumed that the radio properties of the APs belonging to the other controllers are similar to that of the current AP. If the current AP does not have slot2, the other APs cannot be added as a neighbor. In such a scenario, the validation fails and does not add this radio to the neighbor list.
- We recommend that you use the default keepalive count and interval values to reduce convergence time between the Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers while setting up a mobility tunnel.
- A new client may take up to 3 seconds to join the network when the mobility tunnel is UP and mobility peers are configured. This is because the system sends three mobile messages (one second apart) to find out whether the client is already part of the network.

Configuring Mobility (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Mobility . The Wireless Mobility page is displayed on which you can perform global configuration and peer configuration.
Step 2	In the Global Configuration section, perform the following tasks: a) Enter a name for the mobility group. b) Enter the multicast IP address for the mobility group. c) In the Keep Alive Interval field, specify the number of times a ping request is sent to a mobility list member before the member is considered to be unreachable. The valid range is 3 to 20, and the default value is 3. d) Specify the Mobility Keep Alive Count amount of time (in seconds) between each ping request sent to a mobility list member. The valid range is 1 to 30 seconds.

- e) Enter the DSCP value for the mobility group.
- f) Enter the mobility MAC address.
- g) Click **Apply**.

Step 3

In the **Peer Configuration** tab, perform the following tasks:

- a) In the **Mobility Peer Configuration** section, click **Add**.
- b) In the **Add Mobility Peer** window that is displayed, enter the MAC address and IP address for the mobility peer. The MAC address can be either in `xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx`, `xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx`, or `xxxx.xxxx.xxxx` format.
- c) Additionally, when NAT is used, enter the optional public IP address to enter the mobility peer's NATed address. When NAT is not used, the public IP address is not used and the device displays the mobility peer's direct IP address.
- d) Enter the mobility group to which you want to add the mobility peer.
- e) Select the required status for **Data Link Encryption**.
- f) Specify the **SSC Hash** as required.

SSC hash is required if the peer is a Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller, which uses self-signed certificate and hence SSC hash is used as an additional validation. SSC hash is not required if peer is an appliance, which will have manufacturing installed certificates (MIC) or device certificates burned in the hardware.

- g) Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
- h) In the **Non-Local Mobility Group Multicast Configuration** section, click **Add**.
- i) Enter the mobility group name.
- j) Enter the multicast IP address for the mobility group.
- k) Click **Save**.

Configuring Mobility (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless mobility group name <i>group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility group name Mygroup	Creates a mobility group named Mygroup .
Step 2	wireless mobility mac-address <i>mac-addr</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:25:82	Configures the MAC address to be used in mobility messages.
Step 3	wireless mobility dscp <i>value-0-to-63</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility dscp 10	(Optional) Configures mobility intercontroller DSCP value.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	wireless mobility group keepalive interval <i>time-in-seconds</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group keepalive interval 5</pre>	(Optional) Configures the interval between two keepalives sent to a mobility member. Valid range is between 1 and 30 seconds. Note For controllers connected through mobility tunnels, ensure that both controllers have the same keepalive interval value.
Step 5	wireless mobility group keepalive count <i>count</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group keepalive count 3</pre>	(Optional) Configures the keepalive retries before a member status is termed DOWN.
Step 6	Use the options given below to configure IPv4 or IPv6. • wireless mobility mac-address <i>mac-address</i> ip peer-ip-address group <i>group-name</i> data-link-encryption • wireless mobility mac-address <i>mac-address</i> ip peer-ip-address public-ip <i>public-ip-address</i> group <i>group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility mac-address 001E.BD0C.5AFF ip 9.12.32.10 group test-group data-link-encryption Device(config)# wireless mobility mac-address 001E.BD0C.5AFF ip fd09:9:2:49::55 public-ip fd09:9:2:49::55 group scalemobility</pre>	Adds a peer IPv4 or IPv6 address to a specific group. To remove the peer from the local group, use the no form of this command.
Step 7	wireless mobility multicast { ipv4 ipv6 } <i>ip-address</i> or wireless mobility group multicast-address <i>group-name</i> { ipv4 ipv6 } <i>ip-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility multicast ipv4 224.0.0.4</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group multicast-address Mygroup ipv4 224.0.0.5</pre>	(Optional) Configures a multicast IPv4 or IPv6 address for a local mobility group or a nonlocal mobility group. Note Mobility Multicast —The controller sends a multicast message instead of a unicast message to all the members in the mobility local group or a nonlocal group when a client joins or roams. Configures the multicast IPv4 address as 224.0.0.4 for a local mobility group. Configures the multicast IPv4 address as 224.0.0.5 for a nonlocal mobility group.

Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Mobility > Global Configuration .
Step 2	Enter the Mobility Group Name , Multicast IPv4 Address , Multicast IPv6 Address , Keep Alive Interval (sec) , Mobility Keep Alive Count , Mobility DSCP Value and Mobility MAC Address .
Step 3	Click Apply .
-

Configuring Inter-Release Controller Mobility

Inter-Release Controller Mobility (IRCM) is a set of features and functionality that enable interworking between controllers running different software releases. IRCM enables seamless mobility and wireless services across controllers running Cisco AireOS and Cisco IOS (for example, Cisco 8540 WLC to Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller) for features such as Layer 2 and Layer 3 roaming and guest access or termination.



Note To configure IRCM for different combination of AireOS and Catalyst 9800 controllers, see the [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller-Aireos IRCM Deployment Guide](#).

Follow the procedure described to configure mobility peers on the controller:

Before you begin

The Inter-Release Controller Mobility (IRCM) feature is supported by the following Cisco Wireless Controllers.

- For IRCM deployment, we recommended that you configure:
 - Both Cisco AireOS and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers as static RF leaders to avoid RF grouping between them.
 - Configure the same RF network name on both the controllers.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller platforms running Cisco IOS XE Software version 16.10.1 or later.
- Supports the following Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers running Cisco AireOS 8.5.14x.x IRCM image based on the 8.5 Maintenance Release software:
 - Cisco 3504 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco 5508 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco 5520 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco 8510 Wireless Controllers

- Cisco 8540 Wireless Controllers
- By design, Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controllers does not have the Primary Mode configuration exposed that is to be sent in the Discovery Response. The controller always sends the Discovery Response with the Primary Mode enabled.
- Supported Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers running AireOS 8.8.111.0 and later. The following controllers are supported:
 - Cisco 3504 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco 5520 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco 8540 Wireless Controllers



Note If the peer Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller is virtual, configure the hash using command:

```
config mobility group member hash 172.20.227.73
3f93a86cee2039e9c3aada1822ad74b89fea30c1
```

```
config mobility group member hash 172.20.227.73
3f93a86cee2039e9c3aada1822ad74b89fea30c1
```

Optionally enable data tunnel encryption using command:

```
config mobility group member data-dtls 00:0c:29:a8:d5:77
enable/disable
```

The hash configure above can be obtained by running the following command on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller:

```
show wireless management trustpoint
Trustpoint Name : ewlc-tp1
Certificate Info : Available
Certificate Type : SSC
Certificate Hash : 3f93a86cee2039e9c3aada1822ad74b89fea30c1
Private key Info : Available
```

- The IRCM feature is not supported on the following Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers:
 - Cisco 2504 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco Flex 7510 Wireless Controllers
 - Cisco WiSM 2
- IPv6 is not supported for SDA IRCM for fabric client roaming. IPv6 is supported for IRCM for non-fabric client roaming.
- Ensure that you use AireOS controller that supports Encrypted Mobility feature.

- AVC is not supported for IRCM.
- In mixed deployments (Catalyst 9800 and AireOS Controllers), the WLAN profile name and the policy profile name must be the same. This is due to AireOS not knowing about the policy profile and therefore only sends or receives the WLAN name as both the policy profile and WLAN profile.
- Mobility group multicast is not supported because AireOS does not support mobility multicast in encrypted mobility.
- There could be instances where the total number of clients count shown may be more than those supported on the roaming scale. This inconsistency is observed when the client roaming rate is very high, as the system requires time to update the records. Here, the clients presented on multiple WNCds for a very short time are counted more than once. We recommend that you provide sufficient time for the process to obtain a consistent data before using one of the following methods: show CLIs, WebUI, Cisco Catalyst Center, or SNMP.
- Link Local bridging is not supported. Ensure that you disable it also on the peer AireOS controller.
- IRCM is not supported in FlexConnect and FlexConnect+Bridge modes.

The following client features support IPv6 client mobility between AireOS controllers and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller: Accounting, L3 Security (Webauth), Policy (ACL and QoS), IP address assignment and learning through SLAAC and DHCPv6, IPv6 Source Guard, multiple IPv6 address learning, IPv6 multicast, and SISF IPv6 features (RA Guard, RA Throttling, DHCPv6 Guard, and ND Suppress).β

The following IPv6 features are not supported on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller:

- Configurable IPv6 timers
- RA Guard enabled on AP
- Global IPv6 disable



Note

- IPv6 CWA is not supported for both AireOS controllers and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller.
- Only eight IPv6 addresses are supported per client.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	Use the options given below to configure IPv4 or IPv6. • wireless mobility group member mac-address mac-address ip peer-ip group group-name data-link-encryption	Adds a peer IPv4 or IPv6 address to a specific group. To remove the peer from the local group, use the no form of this command.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	wireless mobility group member mac-address <i>mac-address</i> ip <i>peer-ip-address</i> public-ip <i>public-ip-address</i> group <i>group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group member mac-address 001E.BD0C.5AFF ip 9.12.32.10 group test-group data-link-encryption</pre> <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group member mac-address 001E.BD0C.5AFF ip fd09:9:2:49::55 public-ip fd09:9:2:49::55 group scalemobility</pre>	
Step 3	wireless mobility group name <i>group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group name test-group</pre>	Adds a name for the local group. The default local group name is "default".
Step 4	wireless mobility mac-address <i>mac-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility mac-address 000d.bd5e.9f00</pre>	(Optional) Configures the MAC address to be used in mobility messages.
Step 5	wireless mobility group member ip <i>peer-ip</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group member ip 9.12.32.15</pre>	Adds a peer in the local group. To remove the peer from the local group, use the no form of this command.
Step 6	wireless mobility dscp <i>dscp-value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility dscp 52</pre>	(Optional) Configures DSCP. The default value is 48.
Step 7	wireless mobility group keepalive count <i>count</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group keepalive count 10</pre>	Configures the mobility control and data path keepalive count. The default value is 3.
Step 8	wireless mobility group keepalive interval <i>interval</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless mobility group keepalive interval 30</pre>	Configures the mobility control and data path keepalive interval. The default value is 10. Note For controllers connected through mobility tunnels, ensure that both controllers have the same keepalive interval value.

Verifying Mobility

To display the summary of the mobility manager, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mobility summary
```

To display mobility peer information, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mobility peer ip 10.0.0.8
```

To display the list of access points known to the mobility group, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mobility ap-list
```

To display statistics for the mobility manager, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless statistics mobility
Mobility event statistics:
  Joined as
    Local                : 0
    Foreign              : 0
    Export foreign       : 2793
    Export anchor        : 0
  Delete
    Local                : 2802
    Remote               : 0
  Role changes
    Local to anchor     : 0
    Anchor to local     : 0
  Roam stats
    L2 roam count       : 0
    L3 roam count       : 0
    Flex client roam count : 0
    Inter-WNCd roam count : 0
    Intra-WNCd roam count : 0
    Remote inter-cntrl roam count : 0
    Remote WebAuth pending roams : 0
  Anchor Request
    Sent                : 0
    Grant received      : 0
    Deny received      : 0
    Received            : 0
    Grant sent          : 0
    Deny sent          : 0
  Handoff Status Received
    Success              : 0
    Group mismatch       : 0
    Client unknown       : 0
    Client blacklisted   : 14
    SSID mismatch        : 0
    Denied               : 0
  Handoff Status Sent
    Success              : 0
    Group mismatch       : 0
    Client unknown       : 0
    Client blacklisted   : 0
    SSID mismatch        : 0
    Denied               : 0
  Export Anchor
    Request Sent        : 2812
```

```

Response Received      :
  Ok                   : 2793
  Deny - generic       : 19
  Client blacklisted   : 0
  Client limit reached : 0
  Profile mismatch     : 0
  Deny - unknown reason : 0
Request Received      : 0
Response Sent         :
  Ok                   : 0
  Deny - generic       : 0
  Client blacklisted   : 0
  Client limit reached : 0
  Profile mismatch     : 0
MM mobility event statistics:
  Event data allocs    : 17083
  Event data frees     : 17083
  FSM set allocs       : 2826
  FSM set frees        : 2816
  Timer allocs         : 8421
  Timer frees          : 8421
  Timer starts         : 14045
  Timer stops          : 14045
  Invalid events       : 0
  Internal errors      : 0
  Delete internal errors : 0
  Roam internal errors : 0

```

```

MMIF mobility event statistics:
  Event data allocs    : 17088
  Event data frees     : 17088
  Invalid events       : 0
  Event schedule errors : 0
MMIF internal errors:
  IPC failure          : 0
  Database failure     : 0
  Invalid parameters   : 0
  Mobility message decode failure : 0
  FSM failure          : 0
  Client handoff success : 0
  Client handoff failure : 14
  Anchor Deny          : 0
  Remote delete        : 0
  Tunnel down delete   : 0
  MBSSID down          : 0
  Unknown failure      : 0

```

To display counters for all messages in mobility, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless stats mobility messages**

MM datagram message statistics:

Message Type	Built	Tx	Rx	Processed	Tx Error	Rx Error	Forwarded

Retry	Drops	Allocs	Frees

Mobile Announce	0	0	0	0	0	0	25350
5624 0 2826 2826							
Mobile Announce Nak	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0 0 0 0							
Static IP Mobile Annc	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0 0 0 0							
Static IP Mobile Annc Rsp	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0 0 0 0							

	Handoff			0	0	14	14	0	0	0
0	0	42	42							
	Handoff End			0	0	0	0	0	0	2783
0	0	2783	2783							
	Handoff End Ack			0	0	2783	2783	0	0	0
0	0	8349	8349							
	Anchor Req			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Anchor Grant			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Anchor Xfer			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Anchor Xfer Ack			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Export Anchor Req			0	0	0	0	0	0	2812
0	0	2812	2812							
	Export Anchor Rsp			0	0	2812	2812	0	0	0
0	0	8436	8436							
	AAA Handoff			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	AAA Handoff Ack			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	IPv4 Addr Update			0	0	2792	0	0	0	0
0	0	2792	2792							
	IPv4 Addr Update Ack			2792	2792	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	2792	2792							
	IPv6 ND Packet			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	IPv6 Addr Update			0	0	5587	0	0	0	0
0	0	5587	5587							
	IPv6 Addr Update Ack			5587	5587	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	5587	5587							
	Client Add			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Client Delete			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	AP List Update			25585	25585	8512	8512	2	1	0
0	0	34098	34098							
	Client Device Profile Info			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	PMK Update			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	PMK Delete			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	PMK l1r Nonce Update			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Device cache Update			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	HA SSO Announce			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	HA SSO Announce Resp			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Mesh Roam Request			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Mesh Roam Response			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Mesh AP PMK Time Upd			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Mesh AP PMK Time Upd Ack			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							
	Mesh AP Channel List			0	3	1	0	0	1	0
0	0	2	2							
	Mesh AP Channel List Resp			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0							

```

AP upgrade          0      0      0      0      0      0      0
0      0      0      0
Keepalive Ctrl Req   34080  34080  17031  17031      0      0      0
0      0      51111  51111
Keepalive Ctrl Resp  17031  17031  34067  34067      0      0      0
0      0      51098  51098
Keepalive Data Req/Resp 238527 238527 221451 221451 0      0      0
0      0      459978 459978

```

To display mobility information of the client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:35:80 detail
```

To display roaming history of the active client in the subdomain, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:35:80 mobility history
```

To display client-specific statistics for the mobility manager, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:35:80 stats mobility
```

To verify whether intercontroller roam is successful, use the following commands:

- **show wireless client mac *mac-address* detail**: (on the roamed-to Controller) Displays the roam type as L2 and the roam count is incremented by 1.
- **show wireless client summary** : (on the roamed-from controller) The client entry will not be there in the output.

Verifying SDA Mobility

To verify whether intracontroller, intra-xTR roam is successful, use the following commands:

- **show wireless client summary**: Displays the new AP if the client has roamed across the APs on the same xTR.
- **show wireless client mac *mac-address* detail**: Displays the same RLOC as before the roam.

To verify whether intracontroller, inter-xTR roam is successful, use the following commands:

- **show wireless fabric client summary**: Displays the new AP if the client has roamed across the APs on a different xTR.
- **show wireless client mac *mac-address* detail**: Displays the RLOC of the new xTR to which the client has roamed to.

To check client status before and after intracontroller roaming, perform the following steps:

1. Check if client is on the old AP, using **show wireless client summary** command on the controller.
2. Check whether the client MAC is listed against the old AP, using **show mac addr dyn** command on the xTR1.
3. Check whether the client IP is registered from current xTR1, and client MAC is registered from both current xTR1, and WLC1, using **show lisp site detail** command on the MAP server.
4. After the intra-WLC roam, check whether the client is on the new AP, using the **show wireless client summary** and **show mac addr dyn** commands on the WLC1 and xTR1.

5. After the Inter-xTR Roam (old and new APs on different xTRs), check whether the client is on the new AP (connected to the new xTR2), using the **show wireless client summary** and **show mac addr dyn** commands on the WLC1 and xTR2.
6. Check whether the client is registered from the new xTR2, using the **show lisp site detail** command on the MAP server.

Verifying Roaming on MAP Server for SDA

To verify roaming information for SDA, use the following commands:

Run the following command on the MAP server, before and after the roam, to check whether the client IP is registered from current xTR, and client MAC is registered from both current xTR, and WLC.

```
Device# show lisp site detail
```

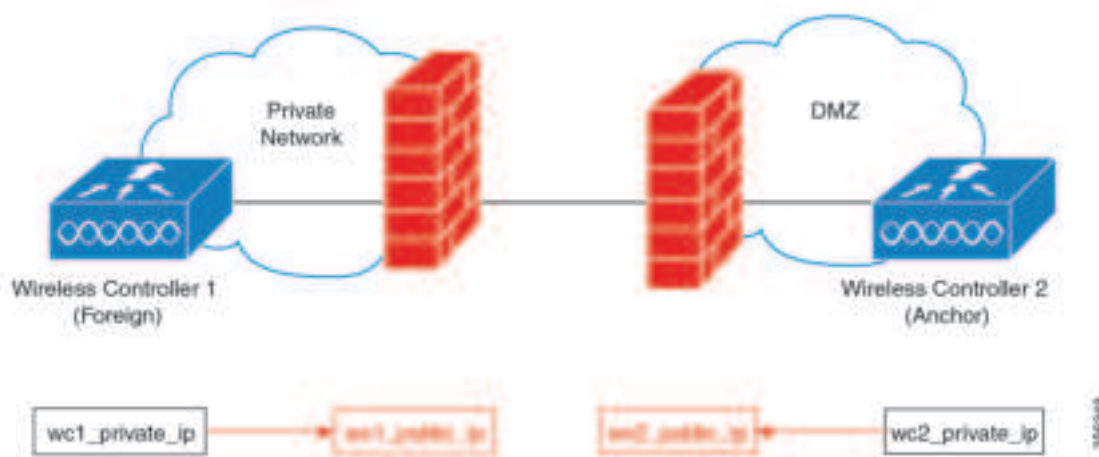

NAT Support on Mobility Groups

- [Information About NAT Support on Mobility Groups, on page 1431](#)
- [Restrictions for NAT Support on Mobility Groups, on page 1432](#)
- [Functionalities Supported on Mobility NAT, on page 1432](#)
- [Configuring a Mobility Peer, on page 1433](#)
- [Verifying NAT Support on Mobility Groups , on page 1433](#)

Information About NAT Support on Mobility Groups

The Network Address Translation (NAT) on Mobility Groups feature supports the establishment of mobility tunnels between peer controllers when one or both peers are behind a NAT. This is achieved by translating the public and private IP addresses of the peers (see figure below). Depending on the placement and number of NATs, translation might be required at one or both ends of the tunnel.

Figure 33: Mobility NAT



When configuring a NATed mobility peer, both the private IP address (address in the network before the NAT device) and the public IP address (address in the public network) have to be configured. Also, if you are using a firewall, ensure that the ports listed below can be accessed through the firewall:

- Port 16666 for mobility control messages

- Port 16667 for mobility data messages

Restrictions for NAT Support on Mobility Groups

- Only 1:1 (static) NAT entries can exist for the controller peers that form the mobility tunnels.
- Configuring multiple peers with the same public IP address is not supported.
- Private IP addresses of the configured peers must be unique.
- Port Address Translation (PAT) is not supported.
- If peer controllers of different types, for example, Cisco AireOS and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series) are placed behind NAT, Inter-Release Controller Mobility (IRCM) is not supported for client roaming.
- IPv6 address translation is not supported.

Functionalities Supported on Mobility NAT

The following table lists the functionalities supported on mobility NAT:

Table 93: Functionalities Supported on Mobility NAT

Two controllers, with the foreign controller behind a NAT device (1to1 NAT only)	Yes
Two controllers, with the anchor controller behind a NAT device (1to1 NAT only)	Yes
Two controllers, with the anchor and foreign controller behind a NAT device (1to1 NAT only)	Yes
Multiple foreign and anchor controllers behind NATs (1to1 NAT only)	Yes
Supported Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers	• Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller • Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller • Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud • Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller
Number of peers supported	72
Manageability using SNMP, Yang, and web UI	Yes
IRCM support for mobility	Yes

SSO	Yes
Client roaming (Layer 2 and Layer 3) between Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers	Yes
Client roaming (Layer 2 and Layer 3) between Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller and AireOS controller	No
Supported applications on the mobility tunnel	• Native profiling • AP list • PMK cache • Mesh AP

Configuring a Mobility Peer

Before you begin

Ensure that the private and public IP addresses of a mobility peer are of the same type, either IPv4 or IPv6.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mobility group member mac-address peer_mac ip peer_private_ip [public-ip peer_public_ip] group group_name Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility group member mac-address 001e.494b.04ff ip 11.0.0.2 public-ip 4.0.0.112 group dom1	Adds a mobility peer to the list with an optional public IP address. Note You cannot configure multiple peers with the same private or public IP address.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying NAT Support on Mobility Groups

To display the mobility information of a client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 000a.bd15.0010 detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : 000a.bd15.0010
Client IPv4 Address : 100.100.0.2
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 000a.ad00.0800
AP Name: SIM-AP-7
AP slot : 1
```

```
.
```

To display mobility peer information using a private peer IP address, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless mobility peer ip 21.0.0.2
```

```
Mobility Peer Info
=====
Ip Address : 21.0.0.2
Public Ip Address : 3.0.0.22
MAC Address : cc70.ed02.c3b0
Group Name : dom1
```

```
.
```



CHAPTER 143

Static IP Client Mobility

- [Information About Static IP Client Mobility, on page 1435](#)
- [Restrictions, on page 1435](#)
- [Configuring Static IP Client Mobility \(GUI\), on page 1436](#)
- [Configuring Static IP Client Mobility \(CLI\), on page 1436](#)
- [Verifying Static IP Client Mobility, on page 1437](#)

Information About Static IP Client Mobility

At times, you may want to configure static IP addresses for wireless clients. When these wireless clients move about in a network, they might try associating with other controllers.

If the clients try to associate with a controller that does not support the same subnet as the static IP address, the clients fail to connect to the network. The controller inspects the ARP requests sent by the clients to determine if the clients are using static IP addresses or IP addresses that were previously assigned by DHCP. If the ARP requests contain IP addresses that do not exist on any of the controller's Switched Virtual Interfaces (SVIs), the clients are disconnected due to a "VLAN_FAIL" error, resulting in client traffic backhauled without explicit disconnection.

The disconnection due to VLAN mismatch is a change in functionality introduced in the 17.9.1 release.

Static IP clients with static IP addresses can be associated with other controllers in which the client's subnet is supported by tunneling the traffic to another controller in the same mobility group. This feature enables you to configure your WLAN so that the network is serviced even though the clients use static IP addresses.

Restrictions

- This feature is not supported on the Fabric and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Switch platforms.
- IPv6 is not supported.
- FlexConnect mode is not supported.
- WebAuth (LWA and CWA) is not supported.
- Supported only Open, Dot1x, and PSK authentication mechanisms.

- Supports only on the WLANs that are exclusive of the mobility anchor configuration. If the mobility anchor is already configured on a WLAN, and if static IP mobility is enabled, the feature is not supported.
- Supported only when all the peers are configured for the static IP mobility that is enabled.
- IRCM is not supported.

Configuring Static IP Client Mobility (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Policy** page, click the policy profile name or click **Add** to create a new one.
- Step 3** Click the **Mobility** tab.
- Step 4** Set the **Static IP Mobility** field to **Enabled** state.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Static IP Client Mobility (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure static IP client mobility:

Before you begin

- Configure the SVI interface (L3 VLAN interface) to service the static IP client on at least one of the peer controllers in the network.
- For clients to join a controller, the VLAN (based on the VLAN number in the policy profile configuration) should be configured on the device.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy static-ip-policy	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	static-ip-mobility Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # static-ip-mobility	Enables static IP mobility.

Verifying Static IP Client Mobility

Use the following commands to verify the static IP client mobility configuration:

Device# **show wireless profile policy detailed static-ip-policy**

```

Policy Profile Name      : static-ip-policy
Description              :
Status                  : DISABLED
VLAN                    : 1
Wireless management interface VLAN      : 34
Passive Client           : DISABLED
ET-Analytics            : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility        : DISABLED
WLAN Switching Policy
  Central Switching      : ENABLED
  Central Authentication : ENABLED
  Central DHCP           : DISABLED
  Flex NAT PAT           : DISABLED
  Central Assoc          : DISABLED
WLAN Flex Policy
  VLAN based Central Switching : DISABLED
WLAN ACL
  IPv4 ACL               : Not Configured
  IPv6 ACL               : Not Configured
  Layer2 ACL             : Not Configured
  Preauth urlfilter list : Not Configured
  Postauth urlfilter list: Not Configured
WLAN Timeout
  Session Timeout        : 1800
  Idle Timeout           : 300
  Idle Threshold         : 0
WLAN Local Profiling
  Subscriber Policy Name : Not Configured
  RADIUS Profiling       : DISABLED
  HTTP TLV caching       : DISABLED
  DHCP TLV caching       : DISABLED
WLAN Mobility
  Anchor                 : DISABLED
AVC VISIBILITY          : Disabled
Flow Monitor IPv4
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name : Not Configured
  Flow Monitor Egress Name  : Not Configured
Flow Monitor IPv6
  Flow Monitor Ingress Name : Not Configured
  Flow Monitor Egress Name  : Not Configured
NBAR Protocol Discovery  : Disabled
Reanchoring             : Disabled
Classmap name for Reanchoring
  Reanchoring Classmap Name : Not Configured
QOS per SSID

```

```

    Ingress Service Name      : Not Configured
    Egress Service Name      : Not Configured
QoS per Client
    Ingress Service Name      : Not Configured
    Egress Service Name      : Not Configured
Umbrella information
    Cisco Umbrella Parameter Map : Not Configured
Autoqos Mode                : None
Call Snooping               : Disabled
Fabric Profile
    Profile Name              : Not Configured
Accounting list
    Accounting List           : Not Configured
DHCP
    required                  : DISABLED
    server address            : 0.0.0.0
Opt82
    DhcpOpt82Enable           : DISABLED
    DhcpOpt82Ascii            : DISABLED
    DhcpOpt82Rid              : DISABLED
    APMAC                     : DISABLED
    SSID                      : DISABLED
    AP_ETHMAC                 : DISABLED
    APNAME                    : DISABLED
    POLICY TAG                 : DISABLED
    AP_LOCATION               : DISABLED
    VLAN_ID                   : DISABLED
Exclusionlist Params
    Exclusionlist              : ENABLED
    Exclusion Timeout          : 60
AAA Policy Params
    AAA Override               : DISABLED
    NAC                        : DISABLED
    AAA Policy name            : default-aaa-policy
WGB Policy Params
    Broadcast Tagging          : DISABLED
    Client VLAN                : DISABLED
Mobility Anchor List
    IP Address                 Priority
    -----

```

Device# **show run | section profile policy**

```

wireless profile policy default-policy-profile
central switching
description "default policy profile"
static-ip-mobility
vlan 50
no shutdown

```




CHAPTER 144

Mobility Domain ID - Dot11i Roaming

- [Information about Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming, on page 1439](#)
- [Verifying Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming, on page 1440](#)

Information about Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming

A mobility domain is a cluster of APs forming a continuous radio frequency space, where the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) can be synchronized, and fast roaming can be enabled for 802.11r (Fast Transition) or 802.11i (WPA).

In the releases prior to Cisco IOS XE 17.2.1, the PMK cache was shared across the FlexConnect APs using the AP site tag. All the APs that are a part of a site tag share the PMK cache. This is applicable only for central authentication.

From Cisco IOS XE 17.2.1, you can create a Mobility Domain ID (MDID) for each of the APs. All the APs with the same MDID share the PMK cache keys even if they are in different site tags. When MDID is configured for APs, the PMK cache keys are not shared with the APs that are not a part of the same MDID, even if they are a part of the same site tag. MDID supports PMK cache distribution for both central authentication and local authentication.



Note

- The Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming feature does not work when the Flex APs are in standalone mode because the feature depends on the controller to share the keys.
- MDID is configured only through the open configuration model. There is no CLI or GUI support.
- In Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, 100 APs per site-tag or per MDID are supported, and 1000 PMK entries are supported per AP.

The mobility domain can either be defined as a static configuration of clustered APs, all under a commonly configured MDID, or dynamically computed. You can implement a spatial clustering algorithm based on neighbor associations of APs. Each AP can only be a part of one roaming domain.

An MDID is used by 802.11r to define a network in which an 802.11r fast roam is supported. PMKs should be shared within mobility domains, allowing clients to support fast roaming. If defined, MDID takes precedence over a site tag.

MDID configurations are exercised only from open configuration models. For more information about open configuration models, see the https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/prog/configuration/172/b_172_programmability_cg.html.

Verifying Mobility Domain ID - 802.11i Roaming

The following examples shows how to view and verify the 802.11i Roaming configuration:

```
Device# show running-config | section specific-config
ap specific-config 58ac.70dc.xxxx hostname AP58AC.70DC.XXXX
    roaming-domain roaming_domain_2
ap specific-config 78xc.f09d.xxxx hostname AP78XC.F09D.XXXX
    roaming-domain roaming_domain_3
```



CHAPTER 145

802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication

- [Information About 802.11r Support for FlexConnect Local Authentication](#), on page 1441
- [Verifying 802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication](#) , on page 1442

Information About 802.11r Support for FlexConnect Local Authentication

In releases prior to Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, the FlexConnect mode fast transition was supported only in centrally authenticated clients. This was achieved by sharing the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) to all the FlexConnect APs in the same site tag. From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, fast transition is supported even for locally authenticated clients.

The client PMK cache entries are shared and distributed to all the APs in the same site tag. From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, another grouping called Mobility Domain ID (MDID) is introduced, for sharing the PMK cache entries. MDID can be configured for APs using the open configuration model only. There is no CLI or GUI support.

The PMK cache distribution in a FlexConnect local site (using either the site tag or MDID) is restricted to 100 APs per group by default and 300 with high scale mode, with a maximum support for 1000 PMK entries per AP.

Support Guidelines

The following are the 802.11r support guidelines:

- Supports 802.11r on FlexConnect local authentication only with Over-the-Air method of roaming. Over-the-DS (Distribution System) is not supported.
- Supports adaptive 11r for Apple clients.
- Supports both Fast Transition + 802.1x and Fast Transition + PSK.



Note This is supported only when clients join the standalone mode AP.

Verifying 802.11r Support for Flex Local Authentication

To verify the number of PMK caches, use the **show wireless pmk-cache** command:

```
Device# show wireless pmk-cache
Number of PMK caches in total : 1
```

Type	Station	Entry Lifetime	VLAN Override	IP Override
Audit-Session-Id		Username		
DOT11R	74xx.bx5a.07xx	87	NA	
0000000000000000FF3562B5D		jey		

To verify the 802.11r flex roam attempts, use the **show wireless client mac-address 74xx.bx5a.07xx mobility history** command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 74xx.bx5a.07xx mobility history
Recent association history (most recent on top):
```

AP Name	Instance	Mobility Role	Run Latency (ms)	BSSID	AP Slot	Assoc Time
				Dot11 Roam Type		
APM-9120-1-GCP	1	Local	2	d4xx.80xx.8fxx	1	12/11/2019 18:44:37
				802.11R		
APM-4800-3	1	Local	17547	f4xx.e6xx.08xx	1	12/11/2019 18:43:02
				N/A		

```
show wireless stats client detail | sec roam
Total 11r flex roam attempts : 1
```



CHAPTER 146

Opportunistic Key Caching

- [Information about Opportunistic Key Caching, on page 1443](#)
- [Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching, on page 1444](#)
- [Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching \(GUI\), on page 1444](#)
- [Verifying Opportunistic Key Caching, on page 1444](#)

Information about Opportunistic Key Caching

Opportunistic Key Caching (OKC) is an enhancement of the WPA2 Pairwise Master Key ID (PMKID) caching method, which is why it is also named Proactive or Opportunistic PMKID Caching. Just like PMKID caching, OKC works with WPA2-EAP.

The OKC technique allows wireless clients and the WLAN infrastructure to cache only one PMK for client association with a WLAN, even when roaming between multiple APs because they all share the original PMK that is used for the WPA2 4-way handshake. This is required to generate new encryption keys every time a client reassociates with APs. For APs to share the original PMK from a client session, they must all be under a centralized device that caches and distributes the original PMK to all the APs.

Just as in PMKID caching, the initial association to an AP is a regular first-time authentication to the corresponding WLAN, where you must complete the entire 802.1X/EAP authentication for the authentication server, and the 4-way handshake for key generation, before sending data frames.

OKC is a fast roaming technique supported by Microsoft and some Android clients. Another fast roaming method is the use of 802.11r, which is supported by Apple and few Android clients. OKC is enabled by default on a WLAN. This configuration enables the control of OKC on a WLAN. Disabling OKC on a WLAN disables the OKC even for the OKC-supported clients.

A new configuration is introduced for each WLAN in the controller in Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, to disable or enable fast and secure roaming with OKC at the corresponding AP.

Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-identifier <1-4096> ssid-network-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile-name 18 san-ssid	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. <i>wlan-profile-name</i> : Profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	okc Example: Device(config-wlan)# okc	Enables Opportunistic Key Caching, if not enabled. By default, the OKC feature is enabled. (Use the no form of this command to disable the OKC feature.)

Enabling Opportunistic Key Caching (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add WLAN** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Add WLAN** dialog box, click the **Advanced** tab and complete the following procedure:
- In the **11ax** section, check the **OKC** check box to disable or enable the feature. By default this feature is enabled.
 - Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Verifying Opportunistic Key Caching

The following example shows how to verify whether OKC is disabled for a WLAN profile.

```
• Device# show wlan id 18
  WLAN Profile Name      : 18%wlanprofile
  =====
```

```

Identifier                               : 18
Description                             :
Network Name (SSID)                     : san-ssid
Status                                  : Disabled
Broadcast SSID                           : Enabled
Advertise-Apname                         : Disabled
Universal AP Admin                       : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN           : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN    : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
OKC                                      : Disabled
Number of Active Clients                  : 0
CHD per WLAN                             : Enabled
WMM                                       : Allowed
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)                      : 5
  Priority (default)                      : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs)                  : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct             : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support                  : Disabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action              : Disabled
Radio Policy                             : All

```

• Device# **show run wlan**

```

wlan name 2 ssid-name
wlan test 24 test
wlan test2 15 test2
wlan test4 12 testssid
  radio dot11a
wlan wlan1 234 wlan1
wlan wlan2 14 wlan-aaa
  security dot1x authentication-list realm
wlan wlan7 27 wlan7
wlan test23 17 test23
wlan wlan_1 4 ssid_name
  security dot1x authentication-list authenticate_list_name
wlan wlan_3 5 ssid_3
  security wpa wpa1
  security wpa wpa1 ciphers aes
wlan wlan_8 9 ssid_name
  no security wpa
  no security wpa wpa2
  no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes
  no security wpa akm dot1x
  security web-auth
wlan test-wlan 23 test-wlan
wlan wlan-test 1 wlan2
  mac-filtering default
wlan 18%wlanprofile 18 san-ssid
  no okc

```




PART **IX**

High Availability

- [High Availability](#), on page 1449



CHAPTER 147

High Availability

- Feature History for High Availability, on page 1450
- Information About High Availability, on page 1451
- Prerequisites for High Availability, on page 1452
- Restrictions on High Availability, on page 1453
- Guidelines for RP Port Configuration, on page 1454
- Configuring High Availability (CLI), on page 1455
- Disabling High Availability, on page 1456
- Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller, on page 1457
- System and Network Fault Handling After 17.5, on page 1458
- Handling Recovery Mechanism, on page 1483
- Verifying High Availability Configurations, on page 1484
- Verifying AP or Client SSO Statistics, on page 1484
- Verifying High Availability, on page 1487
- High Availability Deployment for Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI) Network, on page 1490
- Configuring a Switchover, on page 1493
- show platform software rif-mgr chassis active|standby r0 gateway-statistics, on page 1494
- show platform software rif-mgr chassis active | standby R0 resource-status, on page 1495
- Redundancy Management Interfaces, on page 1497
- Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (GUI), on page 1502
- Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (CLI), on page 1503
- Configuring Gateway Monitoring (CLI), on page 1505
- Configuring Gateway Monitoring Interval (CLI), on page 1506
- Gateway Reachability Detection, on page 1506
- Monitoring the Health of the Standby Controller, on page 1508
- Monitoring the Health of Standby Parameters Using SNMP, on page 1509
- Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using Programmatic Interfaces, on page 1512
- Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using CLI, on page 1512
- Verifying the Gateway-Monitoring Configuration, on page 1515
- Verifying the RMI IPv4 Configuration, on page 1516
- Verifying the RMI IPv6 Configuration, on page 1517
- Verifying Redundancy Port Interface Configuration, on page 1518
- Information About Auto-Upgrade, on page 1520
- Configuration Workflow, on page 1521

- [Configuring Auto-Upgrade \(CLI\), on page 1521](#)
- [Use Case for Link Layer Discovery Protocol \(LLDP\), on page 1521](#)
- [Enabling LLDP \(CLI\), on page 1522](#)
- [Enabling LLDP Timers \(CLI\), on page 1522](#)
- [Enabling LLDP TLV-Select \(CLI\), on page 1523](#)
- [Verifying LLDP, on page 1523](#)
- [Feature History for Reload Reason History, on page 1525](#)
- [Information About Reload Reason History, on page 1525](#)
- [Verifying Reload Reason History , on page 1526](#)
- [Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG, on page 1528](#)

Feature History for High Availability

This table provides release and related information for the features explained in this module.

These features are available in all the releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 94: Feature History for High Availability

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1s	Redundant Management Interface	The Redundancy Management Interface (RMI) is used as a secondary link between the active and standby controllers. This interface is the same as the Wireless Management Interface and the IP address on this interface is configured in the same subnet as the Wireless Management Interface.
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.4.1	Gateway Reachability Detection	Gateway reachability feature minimizes the downtime on APs and clients when the gateway reachability is lost on the active controller.
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	Standby Monitoring Enhancements	The Standby Monitoring Enhancements feature monitors the standby CPU or memory information from the active controller. Also, this feature independently monitors the standby controller using SNMP for the interface MIB. The cLHaPeerHotStandbyEvent and cLHaPeerHotStandbyEvent MIB objects in CISCO-HA-MIB are used to monitor the standby HA status.
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1	Auto-Upgrade	The auto-upgrade feature enables the standby controller to upgrade to active controller's software image, so that both controllers can form an high availability (HA) pair.
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	Standby Interface Status using Active SNMP	This feature allows the standby controller interface status to be queried at the active using SNMP.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	High Availability Deployment for Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI) Network	This feature avoids interleaving traffic between the old and new active controller using the following functionalities: • Bringing down Wireless Management Interface (WMI) faster. • Disabling fast switchover notification.
	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) Support in the Standby Controller	From this release, the Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) process will be up and running in both active and standby controllers.

Information About High Availability

High Availability (HA) allows you to reduce the downtime of wireless networks that occurs due to the failover of controllers. The HA Stateful Switch Over (SSO) capability on the controller allows AP to establish a CAPWAP tunnel with the active controller. The active controller shares a mirror copy of the AP and client database with the standby controller. The APs won't go into the discovery state and clients don't disconnect when the active controller fails. The standby controller takes over the network as the active controller. Only one CAPWAP tunnel is maintained between the APs and the controller that is in an active state.

HA supports full AP and client SSO. Client SSO is supported only for clients that have completed the authentication and DHCP phase, and have started passing traffic. With Client SSO, the client information is synced to the standby controller when the client associates to the controller or when the client parameters change. Fully authenticated clients, for example, the ones in RUN state, are synced to the standby. Thus, client reassociation is avoided on switchover making the failover seamless for the APs and clients, resulting in zero client service downtime and zero SSID outage. This feature reduces major downtime in wireless networks due to failure conditions such as box failover, network failover, or power outage on the primary site.



Note

- In HA mode, the RP port shut or no shut should not be performed during the controller bootup.
 - If the RP communication is lost between active and standby controller during HA sync, the standby controller crashes as the IPC communication fails. The crash is intentional.
- If RP link is restored, the standby controller gracefully reloads and forms an HA pair.



Note

When the controller works as a host for spanning tree, ensure that you configure portfast trunk, using **spanning-tree port type edge trunk** or **spanning-tree portfast trunk** commands, in the uplink switch to ensure faster convergence.



Note

You can configure FIPS in HA setup. For information, see the [Configuring FIPS in HA Setup](#).



Note The IPv4 secondary address is used internally for RMI purpose. So, it is not recommended to configure the secondary IPv4 address.

In case of IPv6, only one management IPv6 is allowed, secondary address is configured for RMI-IPv6 purpose. It is not recommended to have more than one IPv6 management on the Wireless Management Interface (WMI).

More than one management IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on WMI can result in unpredictable behavior.

Prerequisites for High Availability

External Interfaces and IPs

Because all the interfaces are configured only on the Active box, but are synchronized with the Standby box, the same set of interfaces are configured on both controllers. From external nodes, the interfaces connect to the same IP addresses, irrespective of the controllers they are connected to.

For this purpose, the APs, clients, DHCP, Cisco Prime Infrastructure, Cisco Catalyst Centre, and Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) servers, and other controller members in the mobility group always connect to the same IP address. The SSO switchover is transparent to them. But if there are TCP connections from external nodes to the controller, the TCP connections need to be reset and reestablished.

HA Interfaces

The HA interface serves the following purposes:

- Provides connectivity between the controller pair before an IOSd comes up.
- Provides IPC transport across the controller pair.
- Enables redundancy across control messages exchanged between the controller pair. The control messages can be HA role resolution, keepalives, notifications, HA statistics, and so on.

You can select either SFP or RJ-45 connection for HA port. Supported Cisco SFPs are:

- GLC-SX-MMD
- GLC-LH-SMD



Note It is recommended to connect either the SFP port or the RJ-45 port to the peer, but not both ports simultaneously.

When either SFP or RJ-45 connection is present, HA works between the two controllers. If SFP is connected when RJ-45 HA is up and running, the HA pair reloads. The reload occurs even if the link between the SFPs isn't connected.

**Note**

- It is recommended to have a dedicated physical NIC and Switch for RP when the HA pair is deployed across two host machines. This avoids any keep-alive losses and false HA switchovers or alarms.
- Disable security scans on VMware virtual instances.

**Note**

Connect RPs via switches to enable controller HA. Ensure that the round-trip time between the two controllers is less than 80 milliseconds.

Restrictions on High Availability

- For a fail-safe SSO, wait till you receive the switchover event after completing configuration synchronization on the standby controller. If the standby controller has just been booted up, we recommend that you wait x minutes before the controller can handle switchover events without any problem. The value of x can change based on the platform. For example, a Cisco 9800-80 Series Controller running to its maximum capacity can take up to 24 minutes to complete the configuration synchronization before being ready for SSO. You can use the **show wireless stats redundancy config database** command to view the database-related statistics.
- The flow states of the NBAR engine are lost during a switchover in an HA scenario in local mode. Because of this, the classification of flows will restart, leading to incorrect packet classification as the first packet of the flow is missed.
- The HA connection supports only IPv4.
- Switchover and an active reload and forces a high availability link down from the new primary.
- Hyper threading is not supported and if enabled HA keepalives will be lost in case of an HA system that results in stack merge.
- Standby RMI interface does not support Web UI access.
- Two HA interfaces (RMI and RP) must be configured on the same subnet, and the subnet cannot be shared with any other interfaces on the device.
- It is not possible to synchronize a TCP session state because a TCP session cannot survive after a switchover, and needs to be reestablished.
- The Client SSO does not address clients that have not reached the RUN state because they are removed after a switchover.
- Statistics tables are not synced from active to standby controller.
- Machine snapshot of a VM hosting controller HA interfaces is not supported. It may lead to a crash in the HA controller.
- Mobility-side restriction: Clients which are not in RUN state will be forcefully reauthenticated after switchover.
- The following application classification may not be retained after the SSO:

- AVC limitation—After a switchover, the context transfer or synchronization to the Standby box does not occur and the new active flow needs to be relearned. The AVC QoS does not take effect during classification failure.
 - A voice call cannot be recognized after a switchover because a voice policy is based on RTP or RTCP protocol.
 - Auto QoS is not effective because of AVC limitation.
-
- The active controller and the standby controller must be paired with the same interface for virtual platforms. For hardware appliance, there is a dedicated HA port.
 - Static IP addressing can synch to standby, but the IP address cannot be used from the standby controller.
 - You can map a dedicated HA port to a 1 GB interface only.
 - To use EtherChannels in HA mode in releases until, and including, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x, ensure that the channel mode is set to On.
 - EtherChannel Auto-mode is not supported in HA mode in releases until, and including, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x.
 - LACP and PAGP is not supported in HA mode in releases until, and including, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x.
 - When the controller works as a host for spanning tree, ensure that you configure portfast trunk in the uplink switch using **spanning-tree port type edge trunk** or **spanning-tree portfast trunk** command to ensure faster convergence.
 - The **clear chassis redundancy** and **write erase** commands will not reset the chassis priority to the default value.
 - While configuring devices in HA, the members must not have wireless trustpoint with the same name and different keys. In such a scenario, if you form an HA pair between the two standalone controllers, the wireless trustpoint does not come up after a subsequent SSO. The reason being the *rsa keypair* file exists but it is incorrect as the *nvrn:private-config* file is not synched with the actual *WLC_WLC_TP* key pair.
As a best practice, before forming an HA, it is recommended to delete the existing certificates and keys in each of the controllers which were previously deployed as standalone.
 - After a switchover, when the recovery is in progress, do not configure the WLAN or WLAN policy. In case you configure, the controller can crash.
 - After a switchover, clients that are not in RUN state and not connected to an AP are deleted after 300 seconds.

Guidelines for RP Port Configuration

The following are guidelines for RP port configuration:

- The IP addresses for Local and Remote IP must be in the same subnet.
- Use the 169.254.X.X/16 subnet; derive the last two octets from the management interface.

- Avoid using 10.10.10.x/24 subnet for the RP port.
- For more information about RMI+RP chosen as the redundancy method, see [Information About Redundancy Management Interface](#).

Configuring High Availability (CLI)

Before you begin

The active and standby controller should be in the same mode, either Install mode or Bundle mode, with same image version. We recommend that you use Install mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	chassis <i>chassis-num</i> priority <i>chassis-priority</i> Example: Device# chassis 1 priority 1	(Optional) Configures the priority of the specified device. Note From Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x onwards, device reload is not required for the chassis priority to become effective. • <i>chassis-num</i>—Enter the chassis number. The range is from 1 to 2. • <i>chassis-priority</i>—Enter the chassis priority. The range is from 1 to 2. The default value is 1. Note When both the devices boot up at the same time, the device with higher priority(2) becomes active, and the other one becomes standby. If both the devices are configured with the same priority value, the one with the smaller MAC address acts as active and its peer acts as standby.
Step 2	chassis redundancy ha-interface GigabitEthernet <i>num</i> local-ip <i>local-chassis-ip-addr</i> network-mask <i>remote-ip</i> remote-chassis-ip-addr Example: Device# chassis redundancy ha-interface GigabitEthernet 2 local-ip 4.4.4.1 /24 remote-ip 4.4.4.2	Configures the chassis high availability parameters. • <i>num</i>—GigabitEthernet interface number. The range is from 0 to 32. • <i>local-chassis-ip-addr</i>—Enter the IP address of the local chassis HA interface. • <i>network-mask</i>—Enter the network mask or prefix length in the <i>/nn</i> or <i>A.B.C.D</i> format.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>remote-chassis-ip-addr</i>—Enter the remote chassis IP address.
Step 3	chassis redundancy keep-alive timer <i>timer</i> Example: Device# chassis redundancy keep-alive timer 6	Configures the peer keepalive timeout value. Time interval is set in multiple of 100 ms (enter 1 for default).
Step 4	chassis redundancy keep-alive retries <i>retry-value</i> Example: Device# chassis redundancy keep-alive retries 8	Configures the peer keepalive retry value before claiming peer is down. Default value is 5.

Disabling High Availability

If the controller is configured using RP method of SSO configuration, use the following command to clear all the HA-related parameters, such as local IP, remote IP, HA interface, mask, timeout, and priority:

clear chassis redundancy

If the controller is configured using RMI method, use the following command:

no redun-management interface *vlan* chassis



Note Reload the devices for the changes to take effect.

After the HA unpairing, the standby controller startup configuration and the HA configuration will be cleared and standby will go to Day 0.

Before the command is executed, the user is prompted with the following warning on the active controller:

```
Device# clear chassis redundancy
```

```
WARNING: Clearing the chassis HA configuration will result in both the chassis move into
Stand Alone mode. This involves reloading the standby chassis after clearing its HA
configuration and startup configuration which results in standby chassis coming up as a
totally
clean after reboot. Do you wish to continue? [y/n]? [yes]:
```

```
*Apr 3 23:42:22.985: received clear chassis.. ha_supported:1yes
WLC#
*Apr 3 23:42:25.042: clearing peer startup config
*Apr 3 23:42:25.042: chkpt send: sent msg type 2 to peer..
*Apr 3 23:42:25.043: chkpt send: sent msg type 1 to peer..
*Apr 3 23:42:25.043: Clearing HA configurations
*Apr 3 23:42:26.183: Successfully sent Set chassis mode msg for chassis 1.chasfs file updated
*Apr 3 23:42:26.359: %IOSXE_REDUNDANCY-6-PEER_LOST: Active detected chassis 2 is no
longer standby
```

On the standby controller, the following messages indicate that the configuration is being cleared:

```
Device-stby#  
  
*Apr 3 23:40:40.537: mcprp_handle_spa_oir_tsm_event: subslot 0/0 event=2  
*Apr 3 23:40:40.537: spa_oir_tsm subslot 0/0 TSM: during state ready, got event 3(ready)  
*Apr 3 23:40:40.537: @@@ spa_oir_tsm subslot 0/0 TSM: ready -> ready  
*Apr 3 23:42:25.041: Removing the startup config file on standby  
  
!Standby controller is reloaded after clearing the chassis.
```

Copying a WebAuth Tar Bundle to the Standby Controller

Use the following procedure to copy a WebAuth tar bundle to the standby controller, in a high-availability configuration.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > Management > Backup & Restore**.
- Step 2** From the **Copy** drop-down list, choose **To Device**.
- Step 3** From the **File Type** drop-down list, choose **WebAuth Bundle**.
- Step 4** From the **Transfer Mode** drop-down list, choose **TFTP**, **SFTP**, **FTP**, or **HTTP**.

The **Server Details** options change based on the file transfer option selected.

- **TFTP**

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the TFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.

The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (*_*) and hyphen (*-*) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with *.tar*, for example, *webauthbundle.tar*.

- **SFTP**

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the SFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.

The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (*_*) and hyphen (*-*) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with *.tar*, for example, *webauthbundle.tar*.

- **Server Login UserName:** Enter the SFTP server login user name.
- **Server Login Password:** Enter the SFTP server login passphrase.

- **FTP**

- **IP Address (IPv4/IPv6):** Enter the server IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the TFTP server that you want to use.
- **File Path:** Enter the file path. The file path should start with slash a (*/path*).
- **File Name:** Enter a file name.
The file name should not contain spaces. Underscores (_) and hyphen (-) are the only special characters that are supported. Ensure that file name ends with .tar, for example, webauthbundle.tar.
- **Logon Type:** Choose the login type as either **Anonymous** or **Authenticated**. If you choose **Authenticated**, the following fields are activated:
 - **Server Login UserName:** Enter the FTP server login user name.
 - **Server Login Password:** Enter the FTP server login passphrase.
- **HTTP**
 - **Source File Path:** Click **Select File** to select the configuration file, and click **Open**.

Step 5 Click the **Yes** or **No** radio button to back up the existing startup configuration to Flash.

Save the configuration to Flash to propagate the WebAuth bundle to other members, including the standby controller. If you do not save the configuration to Flash, the WebAuth bundle will not be propagated to other members, including the standby controller.

Step 6 Click **Download File**.

System and Network Fault Handling After 17.5

If the standby controller crashes, it reboots and comes up as the standby controller. Bulk sync follows causing the standby to become hot. If the active controller crashes, the standby becomes active. The new active controller assumes the role of primary and tries to detect a dual active.

The following matrices provide a clear picture of the conditions the controller switchover would trigger:

Table 95: System and Network Fault Handling after 17.5

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
1	Up	P-Reachable	G-Reachable	G-Reachable	No SSO	No Action	

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
2	Up	P-Reachable	G-Reachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	No action is required. The standby unit is not ready for SSO in this state because it does not have gateway reachability. In this scenario, the standby unit appears in standby-recovery mode. Spring Back: If the gateway reachability is restored (G_Reachable), the controller returns to Standby state (no reboot is necessary). Note RP resources and gateway resources each trigger distinct actions.	Spring Back: If the gateway reachability is restored (G_Reachable), the controller transitions to Standby state. A reboot is not required.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
3	Up	P-Reachable	G-Unreachable	G-Reachable	SSO	The system exchanges gateway reachability messages over the RMI and RP links. When the active controller reboots, the standby controller takes over as the active controller. The RP goes down during the reboot process.	The Stack Manager sends a message to the standby controller to initiate a role change. The standby controller consults the active controller. • If the active controller responds, the standby controller determines that the active controller does not have all the required resources and allows the role change. • If the active controller does not respond, or if the RMI link is down, the standby controller proceeds with the role change because it has all the resources required to become active.

Id	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
4	Up	P-Reachable	G-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	The standby controller is not ready for SSO in this state because it does not have gateway reachability. The standby controller appears in Standby-Recovery mode.	SpringBack: If the gateway reachability is restored on the Standby-Recovery controller (G_Reachable), the controller transitions to the standby state.
5	Up	P-Unreachable	G-Reachable	G-Reachable	No SSO	No action taken when RMI goes DOWN. There will be no DAD when the RMI link is DOWN.	If gateway reachability (G_Reachable) is lost, the controller transitions to Standby. This situation is managed as case (3) The active controller maintains its state when gateway reachability is lost. No action is taken when the RMI link goes down. Dual-Active Detection (DAD) does not occur when the RMI link is down.
6	Up	P-Unreachable	G-Reachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	No Action. Standby is not ready for SSO in this state as it does not have gateway reachability. The standby shall be shown to be in standby-recovery mode.	Spring Back: If the gateway reachability is restored (G_Reachable), the controller shall go to Standby mode without a reload. There shall be no action if the RMI comes UP.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
7	Up	P-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	G-Reachable	SSO	A gateway reachability message is also exchanged over the RP link. The Active device reboots so that the Standby device becomes the new Active. The RP link goes down when the Active device reboots. The Stack Manager sends a message over the RP and RMI links to the Standby Controller to initiate the role change. The Standby controller consults the Active device. • If the Active responds, the Standby determines that the Active does not have all resources and allows the role change. • If the Active does not respond—possibly because the RP link is already down—the Standby allows the role change regardless of resource status.	When the active controller reboots, the RP goes down. The Stack Manager sends a message over the RP and RMI link to the standby controller to initiate a role change. The standby controller consults the active controller.

 Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
8	Up	P-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	The standby controller is not ready for SSO in this state because it does not have gateway reachability. The standby controller appears in standby-recovery mode. Spring Back: If gateway reachability is restored on the standby-recovery controller (G_Reachable), the controller transitions to standby. Refer to step 7 for more details. The active controller does not change its state when gateway reachability is lost. No action occurs if the RMI comes up.	When the Active device reboots, the RP goes down. The Stack Manager sends a message over the RP and RMI links to the Standby Controller to initiate a role change. The Standby Controller consults the Active Controller. • If the Active responds, the Standby deduces that the Active does not have all the required resources and proceeds with the role change. • If the Active does not respond (for example, if the RP is already down), the Standby allows the role change regardless of the resource status.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
9	Down	P-Reachable	G-Reachable	G-Reachable	No SSO	When the RP is not available, the standby transitions to Standby-Recovery mode. The stack manager requests a role change when the RP goes down. If the RMI is up, the RIF manager sends a message to the active unit to check its status. If a response is received, the standby does not allow the role change and transitions to Standby-Recovery. If there is no response, such as when the active unit is down due to a crash, the role change is allowed. This scenario works differently if the RP goes down before the standby reaches Standby-Hot state. If the RP link goes down before the standby becomes Standby-Hot, the RIF sends a positive response to the stack manager, resulting in a controller reload.	Spring Back: If gateway reachability is restored on the Standby-Recovery (G_Reachable), the controller transitions to Standby. In this case, refer to state (7). The Active controller does not change its state when gateway reachability is lost. No action is taken if the RMI comes up.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
10	Down	P-Reachable	G-Reachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO		When the RP goes down, the stack manager requests a role change. While the RMI is operational, the RIF manager sends a message to the active controller to verify its status. If a response is received, the standby controller prevents the role change and transitions to standby-recovery. If there is no response, such as when the active controller is down due to a crash, the role change is permitted. However, if the RP goes down before the standby controller reaches the standby-hot state, the RIF manager sends a positive response to the stack manager, which results in a controller reload.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						The standby is not ready for SSO in this state because it does not have gateway reachability. The standby will appear in standby-recovery mode. There are two possible scenarios: • The RP goes down first, followed by the standby gateway. • The standby gateway goes down first, followed by the RP. Consider the case where the RP goes down first. In this situation, the stack manager requests a role change. However, because the standby does not have gateway reachability, it cannot allow the role change. The system starts a 30-minute timer when the RMI goes down (meaning both the RP and RMI are down). If the RP goes down before the standby is in standby-hot state, the system reloads. There are several	

 Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						sub-cases: • If the active unit crashes and returns within 30 minutes, the timer stops. The standby remains in recovery and reboots when the RP is up. • If the RP stays down, no action is taken when the timer expires, provided the RMI is up. • If the active unit continuously crashes, the timer expires with the RMI down, and the standby-recovery unit reboots as the active unit. Spring Back:	

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						• If the gateway returns first, the standby-recovery unit remains in recovery. • If the RP returns first, the system reboots to standby-recovery or standby, depending on whether the gateway is reachable.	

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
11	~~Down~~	P-Reachable	G-Unreachable	G-Reachable	SSO		

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						The system exchanges gateway reachability messages over RP and RMI links. When the Old-Active controller transitions to Active-Recovery mode, configuration mode is disabled. All interfaces are set to ADMIN DOWN, except for the wireless management interface with the RMI IP address. When the RP link comes up, the controller in Active-Recovery reloads to become standby. If the gateway remains unreachable, it reloads to become standby-recovery. If the gateway (GW) is lost and the RP link goes down less than eight seconds after the gateway loss, the following actions occur. The stack manager requests a role change on the standby controller. If the standby controller has not reached Standby-Hot state, it allows a reload.	Assume that the active device has already lost the gateway (GW), and then the RP goes down. If the gateway is lost for less than eight seconds, the system triggers a stateful switchover (SSO) that is initiated by the gateway. This scenario describes when the gateway has been lost for less than eight seconds before the RP goes down. In this case, the Stack Manager requests a role change from the standby device. If the standby has not yet reached the Standby-Hot state, the system sends a positive response to the Stack Manager. Since the standby has all resources available except for the RP, it sends a query to the active device to request a role change. The active device responds affirmatively because it does not have all the necessary resources. The standby then becomes active. DAD must run to

 Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						Otherwise, it queries the active controller. If the active controller lacks resources and responds affirmatively, the standby controller becomes active, DAD runs, and the old active controller transitions to Active-Recovery.	ensure that the new active device maintains its status. The former active device enters the Active-Recovery state. Spring Back: The controller in Active-Recovery reboots after the RP link is restored. If the gateway is still down, the controller transitions to standby-recovery. If the gateway is restored, the controller transitions to standby.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
12	~~Down~~	P-Reachable	G-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO		

RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
					Standby transitions to Standby-Recovery. Assume both controllers lose gateway, then RP goes down. Stack manager requests a role change. Because Standby lacks resources, it starts a 30-minute timer when RMI goes down (that is, RP and RMI are both down). here are three possible outcomes: • If Active recovers within 30 minutes, the timer stops. Standby remains in recovery and may reboot when RP returns. • If RP stays down, no action occurs when the timer expires, provided RMI is up. • If Active never recovers, the timer expires with RMI down, and Standby-Recovery reboots as Active.	Let us assume that both the controllers lost their GW and then the RP went DOWN. The stack manager will request for a role change when the RP goes DOWN. The standby anyway does not have all resources (Gateway Reachability at present) and hence it shall not allow role change to happen. It will start the 30 min timer when RMI goes DOWN(timer starts when RP+RMI are DOWN). There are now two possibilities: • The active suffered a software glitch (For example: a crash) in which case, it would come up within 30 minutes and the timer would be stopped. The standby will continue to be in standby-recovery. If the RP comes UP when the timer is

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						- If Active never recovers, the timer expires with RMI down, and Standby-Recovery reboots as Active. Note If gateway reachability was not enabled, SSO is not allowed when Active is up. If Active is down and Standby is standby-hot, SSO is allowed. If RP returns before standby-hot, it reloads. Note: Recovery to Standby without reload is possible only if recovery was due solely to gateway. Spring Back: - If gateway returns first, the system remains in Standby-Recovery. - If RP returns first, the system reboots to Standby-Recovery and then to Standby if gateway is up.	running, the Standby-Recovery would reboot and might come up as Standby or Standby-Recovery. - Physical RP connection went down and it remains down. When the timer expires, if the RMI is UP, no action shall be taken. - The active continuously crashes, that is, it does not come up after 30 minutes. In this case, when the timer expires, the RMI will be DOWN. The standby-recovery shall reboot when the timer expires (and might come UP as Active.)

 RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						When RP DOWN event is received, if the Gateway Reachability is not enabled, Gateway will not be considered as a resource. In this case, SSO shall not be allowed if the Active is UP. SSO shall be allowed if Active is DOWN, provided Standby is in Standby-Hot state. If the RP link goes down before the standby becomes standby-hot, it shall reload. Note The Standby-Recovery that has lost RP is no more Standby Hot. This implies that the recovery from Standby-Recovery to Standby without a reboot (as was the case earlier in 17.2) is not possible for RP events. It is however possible for Gateway events. Spring Back:

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
							• When the Standby-Recovery finds Gateway is UP it continues to be in Standby-Recovery if RP is still DOWN. • When the Standby-Recovery finds that its RP is UP, it will reboot and come up as Standby-Recovery

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
13	Down	P-Unreachable	G-Reachable	G-Reachable	SSO		

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						A double fault may result in two active controllers. When this occurs, the Standby controller becomes active, but the original Active controller may still exist. Once connectivity is restored, role negotiation ensures that the most recent Active controller is retained. In the event that RMI goes down and then RP also goes down, the stack manager requests a role change. If RMI is unavailable, Standby grants the role change only if it is in standby-hot mode; otherwise, it denies the request. If RP returns before standby-hot mode is reached, it reloads. Spring Back: If RMI returns, the previous Active controller enters Active-Recovery mode. When RP returns, the controller reboots and transitions to Standby. If RP goes down, RMI goes down, and the timer expires, Standby reboots as Active. The timer	Let us assume that the RMI goes DOWN first and then the RP goes DOWN. When the RP goes DOWN, the stack manager requests a role change. Since the RMI is DOWN, the standby cannot consult with the Active. The standby allows a role change to become Active, regardless of its resource state, provided the standby is in Standby-Hot. If the standby is not in Standby-Hot, a role change is not allowed. If the RP link goes down before the standby becomes Standby-Hot, the standby reloads Spring Back: If the RMI comes UP at any time, Old Active transitions to Active-Recovery. Active-Recovery reboots when the RP comes up, after which it will become Standby. If the RP goes DOWN first, refer to case (9). If RP_DOWN and RMI_DOWN occur in that sequence

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
						may be skipped in cases of a pure double fault. Note You may skip the timer for pure double-fault cases.	and the 30-minute timer expires, the standby shall reboot. It will come up as Active if RP and RMI continue to be DOWN. Alternatively, the 30-minute timer may not be started in this case. What if the RP goes DOWN first - see case(9) above. If the RP goes DOWN first, refer to case (9). If RP_DOWN and RMI_DOWN occur in that sequence and the 30-minute timer expires, the standby shall reboot. It will come up as Active if RP and RMI continue to be DOWN. Alternatively, the 30-minute timer may not be started in this case. The timer can be used when the standby does not have all required resources, such as gateway reachability at present or port status and gateway reachability in the future, to take over as Active.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
							Note Another option is to not start the 30-minute timer in this situation. Use the timer only if the standby does not have all the required resources to take over as active. Currently, this refers to gateway reachability; in the future, it may also include port status and gateway reachability.

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
14	Down	P-Unreachable	G-Reachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	Double fault – two active controllers possible. Old Active stays Active; Standby may become Active if connectivity is not restored within a set time. If Standby is in standby-recovery due to GW loss, then RMI goes down, then RP goes down. Stack manager requests role change; no RMI means no consult, so Standby allows change. If Active crashed, it restarts as Standby; if both come up, split-brain conflict may occur.	Let us assume that the Standby is inStandby-Recovery mode as it loses GW. Let us assume that the RMI goes DOWN first and then the RP goes DOWN. The stack manager shall request role change when the RP goes DOWN. Since the RMI isDOWN, the standby cannot consult with the Active. The standby shall allow role change. Spring Back: If RMI returns, Old Active enters Active-Recovery and reboots on RP return to become Standby

Note	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
15	Down	P-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	G-Reachable	SSO	Double fault – two active controllers possible. Standby becomes active; old Active may still exist. Role negotiation occurs once connectivity is restored. Assume GW loss on Active, then RMI down then RP down. Stack manager requests role change; no RMI means standby allows change if in standby-hot, else reloads. If RP returns before standby-hot, it reloads. Spring Back: If RMI returns, old Active goes to Active-Recovery and reboots on RP return to become Standby.	Suppose the Standby is in Standby-Recovery mode after losing GW. Assume the RMI goes down first, then the RP goes down. The stack manager requests a role change when the RP goes down. Because the RMI is down, the Standby cannot consult with the Active, so it allows the role change. If the Active went down due to a software glitch, it will come up and become Standby. If no communication is established between the two controllers, both may become active, causing a network conflict Spring Back: If the RMI comes UP at some point of time, Old Active will go to Active-Recovery. Active-Recovery shall reboot when the RP comes up and will become Standby.

Id	RP Link	Reachability Through RMI	GW From Active	GW From Standby	SSO	Result	Additional Information
16	Down	P-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	G-Unreachable	No SSO	A double fault can result in two active controllers. The old Active remains Active, and the Standby may become Active if connectivity is not restored within a stipulated time. If both controllers lose GW and the Standby is in standby-recovery, then RMI goes down, followed by RP going down. The stack manager requests a role change. If there is no RMI, the Standby allows the change, which can cause a conflict. Spring Back: If RMI returns, the old Active enters Active-Recovery and, when RP returns, reboots to become Standby.	Assume that both Active and Standby lose GW, and Standby enters Standby-Recovery. If RMI goes DOWN first, followed by RP going DOWN, the stack manager requests a role change when RP goes DOWN. Since RMI is DOWN, Standby cannot consult with Active and allows the role change. This situation can cause a network conflict. Spring Back: If RMI comes UP at any point, the old Active transitions to Active-Recovery. Active-Recovery reboots when RP comes UP and then becomes Standby.

Handling Recovery Mechanism

Active to Active Recovery

- When RP is down and RMI is up at boot up, the Active Recovery occurs.
- When HA is stable (active - standby), if RMI is down first and then RP goes down next, and later if RMI comes up before RP comes up, the Active to Active Recovery occurs. Once the RP is up, the Active Recovery reloads and HA is formed.

Standby to Standby Recovery

- If Gateway goes down, standby goes to standby-recovery mode. Standby means, its state is up to date with the active. But since it does not have the other resource (Gateway) it goes to Standby-Recovery. If standby is in the hot state, then it is in a position to take over the active functionality. Standby-Recovery will go back to Standby without a reload, once it detects that the Gateway reachability is restored.
- When Standby goes to Standby Recovery for Gateway alone, once the Gateway is up, the HA comes up without any reboot.
- When Standby goes to Standby Recovery for RP down, once the RP is up, the standby recovery reboots automatically and HA is formed.

Verifying High Availability Configurations

To view the HA configuration details, use the following command:

```
Device# show romvar
ROMMON variables:
LICENSE_BOOT_LEVEL =
MCP_STARTUP_TRACEFLAGS = 00000000:00000000
BOOTLDR =
CRASHINFO = bootflash:crashinfo_RP_00_00_20180202-034353-UTC
STACK_1_1 = 0_0
CONFIG_FILE =
BOOT =
bootflash:boot_image_test,1;bootflash:boot_image_good,1;bootflash:rp_super_universalk9.vwlc.bin,1;

RET_2_RTS =
SWITCH_NUMBER = 1
CHASSIS_HA_REMOTE_IP = 10.0.1.9
CHASSIS_HA_LOCAL_IP = 10.0.1.10
CHASSIS_HA_LOCAL_MASK = 255.255.255.0
CHASSIS_HA_IFNAME = GigabitEthernet2
CHASSIS_HA_IFMAC = 00:0C:29:C9:12:0B
RET_2_RCALTS =
BSI = 0
RANDOM_NUM = 647419395
```

Verifying AP or Client SSO Statistics

To view the AP SSO statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stat redundancy statistics ap-recovery wnc all
AP SSO Statistics
```

Inst	Timestamp	Dura (ms)	#APs	#Succ	#Fail	Avg (ms)	Min (ms)	Max (ms)
0	00:06:29.042	98	34	34	0	2	1	35
1	00:06:29.057	56	33	30	3	1	1	15
2	00:06:29.070	82	33	33	0	2	1	13

Statistics:

```
WNCD Instance      : 0
No. of AP radio recovery failures      : 0
```

```

No. of AP BSSID recovery failures           : 0
No. of CAPWAP recovery failures             : 0
No. of DTLS recovery failures               : 0
No. of reconcile message send failed        : 0
No. of reconcile message successfully sent  : 34
No. of Mesh BSSID recovery failures: 0
No. of Partial delete cleanup done : 0
.
.
.

```

To view the Client SSO statistics, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless stat redundancy client-recovery wncd all
Client SSO statistics
-----

```

```

WNCD instance      : 1
Reconcile messages received from AP           : 1
Reconcile clients received from AP            : 1
Recreate attempted post switchover            : 1
Recreate attempted by SANET Lib               : 0
Recreate attempted by DOT1x Lib              : 0
Recreate attempted by SISF Lib               : 0
Recreate attempted by SVC CO Lib             : 1
Recreate attempted by Unknown Lib            : 0
Recreate succeeded post switchover             : 1
Recreate Failed post switchover               : 0
Stale client entries purged post switchover    : 0

Partial delete during heap recreate            : 0
Partial delete during force purge             : 0
Partial delete post restart                   : 0
Partial delete due to AP recovery failure      : 0
Partial delete during reconciliation           : 0

Client entries in shadow list during SSO       : 0
Client entries in shadow default state during SSO : 0
Client entries in poison list during SSO      : 0

Invalid bssid during heap recreate            : 0
Invalid bssid during force purge              : 0
BSSID mismatch with shadow rec during reconciliation : 0
BSSID mismatch with shadow rec reconciliation(WGB client): 0
BSSID mismatch with dot11 rec during heap recreate : 0

AID mismatch with dot11 rec during force purge : 0
AP slotid mismatch during reconciliation       : 0
Zero aid during heap recreate                 : 0
AID mismatch with shadow rec during reconciliation : 0
AP slotid mismatch shadow rec during reconciliation : 0
Client shadow record not present              : 0

```

To view the mobility details, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless stat redundancy client-recovery mobilityd
Mobility Client Deletion Reason Statistics
-----
Mobility Incomplete State           : 0
Inconsistency in WNCD & Mobility    : 0
Partial Delete                      : 0

General statistics
-----

```

Cleanup sent to WNCD, Missing Delete case : 0

To view the Client SSO statistics for SISF, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stat redundancy client-recovery sisf
Client SSO statistics for SISF
```

```
-----
Number of recreate attempted post switchover      : 1
Number of recreate succeeded post switchover      : 1
Number of recreate failed because of no mac       : 0
Number of recreate failed because of no ip        : 0
Number of ipv4 entry recreate success             : 1
Number of ipv4 entry recreate failed              : 0
Number of ipv6 entry recreate success             : 0
Number of ipv6 entry recreate failed              : 0
Number of partial delete received                 : 0
Number of client purge attempted                  : 0
Number of heap and db entry purge success          : 0
Number of purge success for db entry only          : 0
Number of client purge failed                      : 0
Number of garp sent                               : 1
Number of garp failed                             : 0
Number of IP entries validated in cleanup          : 0
Number of IP entry address errors in cleanup      : 0
Number of IP entry deleted in cleanup              : 0
Number of IP entry delete failed in cleanup        : 0
Number of IP table create callbacks on standby    : 0
Number of IP table modify callbacks on standby    : 0
Number of IP table delete callbacks on standby    : 0
Number of MAC table create callbacks on standby   : 1
Number of MAC table modify callbacks on standby   : 0
Number of MAC table delete callbacks on standby   : 0
```

To view the HA redundancy summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stat redundancy summary
HA redundancy summary
```

```
-----
AP recovery duration (ms)          : 264
SSO HA sync timer expired          : No
```


Verifying High Availability

Table 96: Commands for Monitoring Chassis and Redundancy

Command Name	Description
show chassis	Displays the chassis information. Note When the peer timeout and retries are configured, the show chassis ha-status command output may show incorrect values. To check the peer keep-alive timer and retries, use the following commands: • show platform software stack-mgr chassis active r0 peer-timeout • show platform software stack-mgr chassis standby r0 peer-timeout
show redundancy	Displays details about Active box and Standby box.
show redundancy switchover history	Displays the switchover counts, switchover reason, and the switchover time.

To start the packet capture in the redundancy HA port (RP), use the following commands:

- test wireless redundancy packet dump start
- test wireless redundancy packet dump stop
- test wireless redundancy packet dump start filter port 2300

```
Device# test wireless redundancy packetdump start
Redundancy Port PacketDump Start
Packet capture started on RP port.
```

```
Device# test wireless redundancy packetdump stop
Redundancy Port PacketDump Start
Packet capture started on RP port.
Redundancy Port PacketDump Stop
Packet capture stopped on RP port.
```

```
Device# dir bootflash:
```

```
Directory of bootflash:/
```

```
1062881 drwx          151552 Oct 20 2020 23:15:25 +00:00  tracelogs
47      -rw-          20480 Oct 20 2020 23:15:24 +00:00  haIntCaptureLo.pcap
1177345 drwx           4096 Oct 20 2020 19:56:14 +00:00  certs
294337  drwx           8192 Oct 20 2020 19:56:05 +00:00  license_evlog
15      -rw-           676 Oct 20 2020 19:56:01 +00:00  vlan.dat
14      -rw-           30 Oct 20 2020 19:55:16 +00:00  throughput_monitor_params
13      -rw-        134808 Oct 20 2020 19:54:57 +00:00  memleak.tcl
1586145 drwx           4096 Oct 20 2020 19:54:45 +00:00  .inv
1103761 drwx           4096 Oct 20 2020 19:54:39 +00:00  dc_profile_dir
17      -r--           114 Oct 20 2020 19:54:17 +00:00  debug.conf
1389921 drwx           4096 Oct 20 2020 19:54:17 +00:00  .installer
46      -rw-        1104760207 Oct 20 2020 19:26:41 +00:00  leela_katar_rping_test.SSA.bin
49057   drwx           4096 Oct 20 2020 16:11:21 +00:00  .prst_sync
45      -rw-        1104803200 Oct 20 2020 15:39:19 +00:00  C9800-L-universalk9_wlc.2020-10-20_14.57_yavadhan.SSA.bin
269809  drwx           4096 Oct 19 2020 23:41:49 +00:00  core
```

```

44      -rw-      1104751981  Oct 19 2020 17:42:12 +00:00
C9800-L-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20201018_053825_2.SSA.bin
43      -rw-      1104286975  Oct 16 2020 12:05:47 +00:00
C9800-L-universalk9_wlc.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20201010_001654_2.SSA.bin

```

```

Device# test wireless redundancy packetdump start filter port 2300
Redundancy Port PacketDump Start
Packet capture started on RP port with port filter 2300.

```

To check connection between the two HA Ports (RP) and check if there are any drops, delays, or jitter in the connection, use the following command:

```

Device# test wireless redundancy rping
Redundancy Port ping
PING 169.254.64.60 (169.254.64.60) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 169.254.64.60: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.083 ms
64 bytes from 169.254.64.60: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.091 ms
64 bytes from 169.254.64.60: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.074 ms

--- 169.254.64.60 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2041ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.074/0.082/0.091/0.007 ms
test wireless redundancy

```

To see the HA port interface setting status, use the **show platform hardware slot R0 ha_port interface stats** command.

```

Device# show platform hardware slot R0 ha_port interface stats
HA Port
ha_port  Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 70:18:a7:c8:80:70
         UP BROADCAST MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
         RX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
         TX packets:0 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
         collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
         RX bytes:0 (0.0 B)  TX bytes:0 (0.0 B)
         Memory:e0900000-e0920000

Settings for ha_port:
  Supported ports:          [ TP ]
  Supported link modes:     10baseT/Half 10baseT/Full
                           100baseT/Half 100baseT/Full
                           1000baseT/Full
  Supported pause frame use: Symmetric
  Supports auto-negotiation: Yes
  Supported FEC modes:      Not reported
  Advertised link modes:    10baseT/Half 10baseT/Full
                           100baseT/Half 100baseT/Full
                           1000baseT/Full
  Advertised pause frame use: Symmetric
  Advertised auto-negotiation: Yes
  Advertised FEC modes:      Not reported
  Speed:                     Unknown!
  Duplex:                     Unknown! (255)
  Port:                       Twisted Pair
  PHYAD:                      1
  Transceiver:                internal
  Auto-negotiation:           on
  MDI-X:                      off (auto)
  Supports Wake-on:          pumbg
  Wake-on:                    g
  Current message level:      0x00000007 (7)
                              drv probe link
  Link detected:             no

```

```

NIC statistics:
  rx_packets: 0
  tx_packets: 0
  rx_bytes: 0
  tx_bytes: 0
  rx_broadcast: 0
  tx_broadcast: 0
  rx_multicast: 0
  tx_multicast: 0
  multicast: 0
  collisions: 0
  rx_crc_errors: 0
  rx_no_buffer_count: 0
  rx_missed_errors: 0
  tx_aborted_errors: 0
  tx_carrier_errors: 0
  tx_window_errors: 0
  tx_abort_late_coll: 0
  tx_deferred_ok: 0
  tx_single_coll_ok: 0
  tx_multi_coll_ok: 0
  tx_timeout_count: 0
  rx_long_length_errors: 0
  rx_short_length_errors: 0
  rx_align_errors: 0
  tx_tcp_seg_good: 0
  tx_tcp_seg_failed: 0
  rx_flow_control_xon: 0
  rx_flow_control_xoff: 0
  tx_flow_control_xon: 0
  tx_flow_control_xoff: 0
  rx_long_byte_count: 0
  tx_dma_out_of_sync: 0
  tx_smbus: 0
  rx_smbus: 0
  dropped_smbus: 0
  os2bmc_rx_by_bmc: 0
  os2bmc_tx_by_bmc: 0
  os2bmc_tx_by_host: 0
  os2bmc_rx_by_host: 0
  tx_hwtstamp_timeouts: 0
  rx_hwtstamp_cleared: 0
  rx_errors: 0
  tx_errors: 0
  tx_dropped: 0
  rx_length_errors: 0
  rx_over_errors: 0
  rx_frame_errors: 0
  rx_fifo_errors: 0
  tx_fifo_errors: 0
  tx_heartbeat_errors: 0
  tx_queue_0_packets: 0
  tx_queue_0_bytes: 0
  tx_queue_0_restart: 0
  tx_queue_1_packets: 0
  tx_queue_1_bytes: 0
  tx_queue_1_restart: 0
  rx_queue_0_packets: 0
  rx_queue_0_bytes: 0
  rx_queue_0_drops: 0
  rx_queue_0_csum_err: 0
  rx_queue_0_alloc_failed: 0
  rx_queue_1_packets: 0
  rx_queue_1_bytes: 0

```

```

rx_queue_1_drops:      0
rx_queue_1_csum_err:   0
rx_queue_1_alloc_failed:0

```

High Availability Deployment for Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI) Network

Information About Deploying ACI Network in Controller

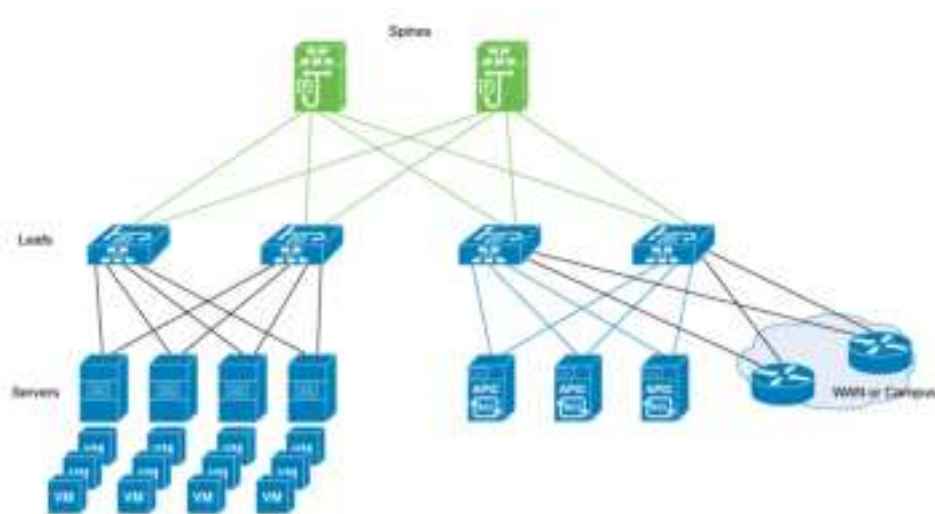
Cisco Application Centric Infrastructure (ACI) technology integrates virtual and physical workloads in a programmable and multihypervisor fabric to build a multiservice or a cloud data center.



Note The Cisco ACI technology is supported only in a Redundancy Management Interface (RMI) high-availability network.

The following figure depicts the discrete components connected in a spine and leaf switch topology provisioned and managed as a single entity.

Figure 34: Cisco ACI Network Deployment



The following mechanisms help avoid interleaving traffic.

Bringing Down Wireless Management Interface Faster

In case of a switchover in ACI deployments, APs and clients are dropped because of interleaving traffic between the old and the new active controller. To resolve this issue, bring down the traffic from the old active controller faster. You can do this by bringing down the wireless management interface as soon as a failure is detected. When the wireless management interface shuts down, the traffic that is sourced from the old active wireless management interface stops. This avoids conflicts in the management IP address. The standby controller transitions to the role of the active controller with a new IP-MAC binding.



Note The IP Data-Plane Learning feature in an ACI deployment tracks the following:

- A duplicate MAC address for the same IP.
 - Alarm that blocks the IP address for a configured duration.
-

During failure detection, the controller sets up the chassis property **non-participant**. In IP Data-Plane Learning feature, listen to the property for bringing down the wireless management interface and shutting down traffic in the old active controller faster, thereby avoiding any kind of interleaving traffic between the old and new active controllers.

Disabling Fast Switchover Notification

This mechanism provides more control to avoid interleaving traffic.

During failure handling, the active controller sends an explicit notification to the standby controller, stating that it is going down. This triggers the standby node to take over as the active node. In the event of failure, you can use the disable fast switchover notification option to control the explicit notification from active to standby. In the absence of explicit notification, the standby controller takes over as the active controller on the basis of keepalive timeout.



Note You can configure the keepalive timeout so that you have control over when the traffic from the new active controller begins if a failure occurs. In such a failure scenario, the switchover also gets delayed.

When you enable this option, the active controller cannot send an explicit failure notification message to the standby controller. The standby controller relies solely on the keepalive timeout failures to detect when the active controller went down.

This delays the keepalive timeout in the commencing traffic in the new active controller, thus avoiding the overlapping traffic from the old active controller. Therefore, disabling fast switchover notification increases the switchover duration by the additional keepalive timeout duration.

GARP Burst

During a controller switchover event, the GARP traffic is generated in burst that overwhelms the ARP learning of ACI. This feature devises a way to retransmit the GARP packet at a much lower rate after a switchover from a new active controller.

Prerequisite for Deploying the ACI Network in the Controller

Check the maximum supported clients in High Availability to ensure that Cisco ACI does not exceed the configured IPv4 and IPv6 end points.

Disabling the Fast Switchover Notification Mechanism (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no redun-management fast-switchover Example: Device(config)# no redun-management fast-switchover	Disables explicit fast switchover notification. Note Configure the fast switchover notification mechanism in the primary controller. This configuration is not required in the secondary controller.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Gratuitous ARP (GARP) Retransmit (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	redun-management garp-retransmit burst <i>packet-burst-size interval time-interval</i> Example: Device(config)# redun-management garp-retransmit burst 0 interval 0	Determines the rate at which the GARP resend is performed. Note <i>packet-burst-size</i>: The valid range is from 0 to 1000. The value 0 refers to the disabled retransmit. <i>time-interval</i>: Refers to the time interval, in seconds. The valid range is from 0 to 5 seconds. The value 0 refers to the disabled retransmit.
Step 3	end Example:	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config)# end</code>	

Disabling Initial GARP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no redun-management garp-retransmit initial Example: <code>Device(config)# no redun-management garp-retransmit initial</code>	Disables the initial GARP.
Step 3	end Example: <code>Device(config)# end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Switchover

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	To force a failover to the standby unit, use the following command: Example: <code>Device#redundancy force-switchover</code>	In this case, the standby controller will take the role of the active controller, and the active controller will reload and become the new standby controller. This command can be used to test the stability of the high availability cluster and see if switchovers are working as expected. Note Do not use any other command to test switchovers between the Cisco Catalyst 9800 series wireless controllers. Command such as "reload slot X" (where X is the active controller) might lead to unexpected behaviour and should not be used to perform a switchover.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Note In a scaled environment, it is recommended to not perform an immediate switchover after the WLAN or policy profile configurations are modified as it might lead to unexpected behaviour.

show platform software rif-mgr chassis active|standby r0 gateway-statistics

To view detailed statistics of the gateway that acts as the communication intermediary between the active and standby controller, use the **show platform software rif-mgr chassis gateway-role r0 gateway-statistics** command.

show platform software rif-mgr chassis gateway-role r0 gateway-statistics

Syntax Description	<i>gateway-role</i>	Specifies the active or standby instance.
	gateway-statistics	Displays the statistics related to the gateway.
Command Default	None	
Command Modes	Privileged EXEC (#) mode	
Command History	Release	Modification
	Cisco IOS XE 17.18.1	This command was introduced.

This example displays the statistics related to the **active** gateway.

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active r0 gateway-statistics
```

```

Number of L2 (ARP/ND) probes sent      : 164890
Number of ICMP probes sent             : 20
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses received : 164878
Number of ICMP responses received      : 0
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses failed : 12
Number of ICMP responses failed        : 20
Last fail count                        : 32 at (05/26/25 18:21:33)
Longest fail count                     : 32 at (05/26/25 18:21:33)

```

This example displays the statistics related to the **standby** gateway.

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby r0 gateway-statistics
```

```

Number of L2 (ARP/ND) probes sent      : 0
Number of ICMP probes sent             : 164760

```



```

Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses received : 0
Number of ICMP responses received       : 164759
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses failed  : 0
Number of ICMP responses failed         : 1
Last fail count                         : 1 at (05/26/25 18:24:42)
Longest fail count                      : 1 at (01/01/70 00:00:00)

```

Field	Description
Last Fail Count	is the sum of the most recent continuous ICMP and ARP/ND failures, whereas the "longest fail count" represents the longest sequence of continuous failures recorded since the system booted.
Longest fail count	represents the longest sequence of continuous failures recorded since the system booted.

show platform software rif-mgr chassis active | standby R0 resource-status

To verify the Redundancy Port Interface (RIF) resource status in an active or standby instance, use the **show platform software rif-mgr chassis gateway-role R0 resource-status** command.

show platform software rif-mgr chassis gateway-role R0 resource-status

Syntax Description	rif-mgr	Displays information about the RIF manager.
	chassis	Displays information about the chassis.
	<i>gateway-role</i>	Specifies the active or standby instance.
	R0	Specifies the Route-Processor slot 0.
	resource-status	Displays the resource status.
Command Default	None	
Command Modes	Privileged EXEC (#)	
Command History	Release	Modification
	Cisco IOS XE 17.18.1	This command was modified. The output of this command is updated for enhanced gateway visibility.
	Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	This command was introduced.
Usage Guidelines	The RIF resource status displays the RP status, RMI status, Current Chassis State, and Peer Chassis State.	
Example		
The following example shows how to verify the RIF resource status in active instance:		

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 resource-status
RIF Resource Status
```

```
RP Status : Up
RMI Status : Up
Current Chassis State : Active
Peer Chassis State : Standby
Gateway Monitoring Configured : True
Gateway Monitoring Interval : 10
Gateway Status : Up
Peer Gateway Status : Up
```

The following example shows how to verify the RIF resource status in **standby** instance:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 resource-status
RIF Resource Status
```

```
RP Status : Up
RMI Status : Up
Current Chassis State : Standby
Peer Chassis State : Active
Gateway Monitoring Configured : True
Gateway Monitoring Interval : 10
Gateway Status : Up
Peer Gateway Status : Up
```

Table 97: Output Descriptions

Field	Description or Possible Values
RP Status	Indicates the operational status of the Route Processor (RP), which is responsible for device control and management functions. Values are Up or Down .
Current Chassis State	Represents the current operational state of the local chassis within the device pair or redundant system. Values are Active or Standby .
Peer Chassis State	Displays the operational state of the peer chassis, indicating its current role in redundancy or failover scenarios. Values are Active or Standby .
Gateway Monitoring Configured	If this field is True , the device actively monitors the configured gateway(s) according to the monitoring policy. If False , no gateway monitoring is performed.
Gateway Monitoring Interval	The interval is between 8 and 12 seconds. A shorter interval means more frequent monitoring, while a longer interval reduces monitoring frequency.
Gateway Status	Shows the operational and connectivity status of the monitored gateway interface for this chassis. Values are Up or Down .
Peer Gateway Status	Presents the current status of the monitored gateway on the peer chassis, which helps assess redundancy and failover readiness. Values are Up or Down .

Redundancy Management Interfaces

The Redundancy Management Interface (RMI) is a network interface that

- serves as a secondary link between the active and standby Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.
- is configured in the same subnet as the Wireless Management IP, and
- enables health monitoring and state synchronization for high availability.

The RMI is used for the following purposes:

- Dual Active Detection
- Exchange resource health information between controllers, for instance, gateway reachability status from either controller.
- Gateway reachability is checked on the active and the standby controller through the RMI when the feature is enabled. It takes approximately the configured gateway monitoring interval to detect that a controller has lost gateway reachability. The default gateway monitoring interval value is 8 seconds.

**Note**

- The RMI might trigger a switchover based on the gateway status of the active controller.
- Cisco TrustSec is not supported on the RMI.

When the device SGT is used, the IP-SGT mapping for RMI address is also applied along with the WMI address. So, you need to ensure that the SGACL is defined appropriately to allow ICMP and ARP traffic between the active and standby RMI addresses.

- If the RP and RMI links are down, the HA setup breaks into two active controllers. This leads to IP conflict in the network. The HA setup forms again when the RP link comes up. Depending on the state of the external switch at this time, the ARP table may or may not be updated to point to the active controller. That is, the switch may fail to process the GARP packets from the controller. As a best practice, we recommend that you keep the ARP cache timeout value to a low value for faster recovery from multiple fault scenarios. You need to select a value that does not impact the network traffic, for instance, 30 minutes.

**Note**

The AAA packets originating from the controller may use either the wireless management IP or the RMI IP. Therefore, ensure that you add RMI IP as the source IP along with WMI IP in the AAA server.

**Note**

From the Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1 release onwards, RP-only SSO is not supported for CW9800H1, CW9800H2, or CW9800M Wireless Controllers. These controllers support RP+RMI SSO deployment only. In contrast, Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controllers support both RP-only SSO and RP+RMI SSO.

Active Controller

The primary address on the active controller is the management IP address. The secondary IPv4 address on the management VLAN is the RMI IP address for the active controller. Do not configure the secondary IPv4 addresses explicitly because a single secondary IPv4 address is configured automatically by RMI under the RMI.

Standby Controller

The standby controller does not have the wireless management IP configured; it has the RMI IP address configured as the primary IP address. When the standby controller becomes active, the management IP address becomes the primary IP address and the RMI IP address becomes the secondary IP address. If the interface on the active controller is administratively down, the same state is reflected on the standby controller.

Dual Stack Support on Management VLAN with RMI

Dual stack refers to the fact that the wireless management interface can be configured with IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. If an RMI IPv4 address is configured along with an IPv4 management IP address, you can additionally configure an IPv6 management address on the wireless management interface. This IPv6 management IP address will not be visible on the standby controller.

If an RMI IPv6 address is configured along with an IPv6 management IP address, you can additionally configure an IPv4 management address on the wireless management interface. This IPv4 management IP address will not be visible on the standby controller.

Therefore, you can monitor only the IPv6 gateway when the RMI IPv6 address is configured, or only the IPv4 gateway when the RMI IPv4 address is configured.



Note The RMI feature supports the RMI IPv4 or IPv6 addresses.

RMI-Based High-Availability Pairing

You should consider the following scenarios for HA pairing:

- Fresh Installation
- Already Paired Controllers
- Upgrade Scenario
- Downgrade Scenario

Dynamic HA pairing requires both the active controller and the standby controller to reload. However, dynamic HA pairing occurs on the Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, and the Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller when one of them reloads and becomes the standby controller.



Note Chassis numbers identify individual controllers. Unique chassis numbers must be configured before forming an HA pair.

HA Pairing Without Previous Configuration

When HA pairing is done for the first time, no ROMMON variables are found for the RP IP addresses. You can choose from the existing privileged EXEC mode RP-based commands or the RMI IP-based mechanisms. However, the privileged EXEC mode RP-based commands will be deprecated soon. If you use Cisco Catalyst Center, you can choose the privileged EXEC mode RP-based CLI mechanism till the Cisco Catalyst Center migrates to support the RMI.

The RP IPs are derived from the RMI IPs after an HA pair is formed. Also, the privileged EXEC mode RP-based CLI method of clearing and forming an HA pair is not allowed after the RMI IP-based HA mechanism is chosen.

**Note**

- Although you can choose RP or RMI for a fresh installation, we recommend that you use RMI install method.
- To view the ROMMON variables, use the **show romvars** command.

If you choose the privileged EXEC RP-based CLI mechanism, the RP IPs are configured the same way as in the 16.12 release.

The following occurs when the RMI-based HA pairing is done on a brand-new system:

- RP IPs are derived from RMI IPs and used in HA pairing.
- Privileged EXEC mode RP-based CLIs are blocked.

**Note**

The RMI migration is supported from Cisco Catalyst Center, 2.3.3.x release version.

The following are the limitations observed during RMI migration:

- The negative cases fail due to the following reasons:
 - When devices are not reachable.
 - When non-Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers are in use.
 - When an earlier controller version (Cisco IOS XE 17.3) is in use.
 - When High Availability is not configured.
 - When High Availability RMI is already configured.
- When High Availability is upgraded to RMI-based High Availability for Cisco IOS XE release version greater than or equal to 17.3.
- When upgrading to an already failed High Availability paired controller.
- The controller GUI prohibits applying RMI migration configuration to High Availability failed devices.

Paired Controllers

If the controllers are already in an HA pair, the existing EXEC mode RP-based commands will continue to be used. You can enable RMI to migrate to the RMI-based HA pairing.

If the controllers are already paired and RMI is configured, it will overwrite the RP IPs with the RMI-derived IPs. The HA pair will not be disturbed immediately, but the controllers will pick up the new IP when the next reload happens. The RMI feature mandates a reload for the feature to be effective. When both the controllers are reloaded, they come up as a pair with the new RMI-derived RP IPs.

The following occurs when the RMI configuration is done:

- The RP IPs derived from the RMI IPs are overwritten, and used for HA pairing.
- If the active and standby controller already exist prior to HA pairing through the EXEC mode RP-based command mechanism, the pair is not interrupted.
- When the pair reloads later, the new RP IPs are used.
- EXEC mode RP-based commands are blocked.

Upgrading from Cisco IOS XE 16.1.x to a Later Release

A system that is being upgraded can choose to:

- Migrate with the existing RP IP configuration intact—In this case, the existing RP IP configuration will continue to be used. The EXEC mode RP-based commands are used for future modifications.
- Migrate after clearing the HA configuration—In this case, you can choose between the old (EXEC mode RP-based commands) and new RMI-based RP configuration methods.



Note In case the older configuration is retained, the RMI configuration updates the RP IPs with the IPs derived from the RMI IPs.

Downgrade Scenario



Note The downgrade scenario given below is not applicable for Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.x.

The downgrade scenario will have only the EXEC mode RP-based commands. The following are the two possibilities:

- If the upgraded system used the RMI-based RP configuration.
- If the upgraded system continued to use the EXEC mode RP-based commands.



Note In the above cases, the downgraded system uses the EXEC mode RP-based commands to modify the configuration. However, the downgraded system will continue to use the new derived RP IPs.



Note When you downgrade the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller to any version below 17.1 and if the mDNS gateway is enabled on the WLAN/RLAN/GLAN interfaces, the mdns-sd-interface gateway goes down after the downgrade.

To enable the mDNS gateway on the WLAN/RLAN/GLAN interfaces in 16.12 and earlier versions, use the following commands:

wlan test 1 test

mdns-sd gateway

To enable the mDNS gateway on the WLAN/RLAN/GLAN interfaces from version 17.1 onwards, use the following command:

mdns-sd-interface gateway

Gateway Monitoring

Gateway Monitoring feature is a network management capability that

- selects the gateway IP based on the static routes that match the RMI subnet using the broadest mask and least gateway IP
- provides enhanced visibility and statistics related to gateway reachability and RMI state, and
- simplifies troubleshooting and control over high availability (HA) and RMI functionality by offering detailed diagnostics.

Key aspects:

• Gateway IP selection:

- From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1 onwards, the `ip default-gateway gateway-ip` command is deprecated for RMI gateway configuration.
- The system automatically chooses a gateway IP by evaluating static routes and selecting the gateway that:
 - matches the RMI subnet,
 - uses the broadest subnet mask,
 - and has the lowest IP address.
- If no matching static route exists, gateway failover does not operate—even if management gateway-failover is enabled.

• Enhanced statistics and transparency:

- From Cisco IOS XE 17.18.1 onwards, gateway monitoring provides improved visibility into gateway reachability, RMI state, and detailed diagnostics.

• Benefits include:

- Enhanced visibility into gateway health and RMI state.
- Simplified troubleshooting through detailed statistics and state information.

- Greater transparency and control over HA and RMI, improving reliability and diagnostics.

Useful commands for monitoring gateway status:

- To display detailed gateway statistics such as Layer 2 (ARP/ND) and ICMP probes sent/received/failed, last fail count, and longest fail count (with timestamps) use the **show platform software rif-mgr chassisgateway-roler0** command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active r0 gateway-statistics
```

```
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) probes sent      : 164890
Number of ICMP probes sent             : 20
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses received : 164878
Number of ICMP responses received      : 0
Number of L2 (ARP/ND) responses failed : 12
Number of ICMP responses failed        : 20
Last fail count                       : 32 at (05/26/25 18:21:33)
Longest fail count                    : 32 at (05/26/25 18:21:33)
```

- To display gateway status information, use the **show platform software rif-mgr chassis gateway-role R0 resource-status** command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 resource-status
RIF Resource Status
```

```
RP Status      : Up
RMI Status     : Up
Current Chassis State : Active
Peer Chassis State   : Standby
Gateway Monitoring Configured : True
Gateway Monitoring Interval   : 10
Gateway Status      : Up
Peer Gateway Status  : Up
```

Analogy:

Gateway monitoring works like an airport's air traffic control system. Instead of a pilot manually selecting a runway (like using the old `ip default-gateway` command), a central system automatically identifies the best runway based on current conditions (route matching, subnet mask, and lowest IP address). It then tracks the success or failure of each takeoff and landing (probe statistics and diagnostics), making sure the whole airport runs smoothly and efficiently while providing real-time updates and troubleshooting support when issues arise.

Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (GUI)

Before you begin

Before configuring RMI + RP using GUI, ensure that WMI is available.

Procedure

Step 1

In the **Administration > Device > Redundancy** window, perform the following:

- Set the **Redundancy Configuration** toggle button to **Enabled** to activate redundancy configuration.

- b. In the **Redundancy Pairing Type** field, select **RMI+RP** to perform RMI+RP redundancy pairing as follows:
- In the **RMI IP for Chassis 1** field, enter RMI IP address for chassis 1.
 - In the **RMI IP for Chassis 2** field, enter RMI IP address for chassis 2.
 - From the **HA Interface** drop-down list, choose one of the HA interface.
- Note**
You can select the HA interface only for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.
- Set the **Management Gateway Failover** toggle button to **Enabled** to activate management gateway failover.
 - In the **Gateway Failure Interval** field, enter an appropriate value. The valid range is between 6 and 12 (seconds). The default is 8 seconds.
- c. In the **Redundancy Pairing Type** field, select **RP** to perform RP redundancy pairing as follows:
- In the **Local IP** field, enter an IP address for Local IP.
 - In the **Netmask** field, enter the subnet mask assigned to all wireless clients.
 - From the **HA Interface** drop-down list, choose one of the HA interface.
- Note**
You can select the HA interface only for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.
- In the **Remote IP** field, enter an IP address for Remote IP.
- d. In the **Keep Alive Timer** field, enter an appropriate timer value. The valid range is between 1 and 10 (x100 milliseconds).
- e. In the **Keep Alive Retries** field, enter an appropriate retry value. The valid range is between 3 and 10 seconds.
- f. In the **Active Chassis Priority** field, enter a value.

Step 2 Click **Apply** and reload controllers.

Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	chassis <i>chassis-num</i> priority <i>chassis-priority</i>	(Optional) Configures the priority of the specified device.
	Example: Device# chassis 1 priority 1	Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		From Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.x onwards, device reload is not required for the chassis priority to become effective. • <i>chassis-num</i>—Enter the chassis number. The range is from 1 to 2. • <i>chassis-priority</i>—Enter the chassis priority. The range is from 1 to 2. The default value is 1. Note When both the devices boot up at the same time, the device with higher priority becomes active, and the other one becomes standby. If both the devices are configured with the same priority value, the one with the smaller MAC address acts as active and its peer acts as standby.
Step 2	chassis redundancy ha-interface GigabitEthernet <i>interface-number</i> Example: <pre>Device# chassis redundancy ha-interface GigabitEthernet 3</pre>	Creates an HA interface for your controller. • <i>interface-number</i>: GigabitEthernet interface number. The range is from 1 to 32. Note This step is applicable only for Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Series Wireless Controllers. The chosen interface is used as the dedicated interface for HA communication between the 2 controllers.
Step 3	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 4	redun-management interface vlan <i>vlan-interface-number</i> chassis <i>chassis-number</i> address <i>ip-address</i> chassis <i>chassis-number</i> address <i>ip-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# redun-management interface Vlan 200 chassis 1 address 9.10.90.147 chassis 2 address 9.10.90.149</pre>	Configures Redundancy Management Interface. • <i>vlan-interface-number</i> : VLAN interface number. The valid range is from 1 to 4094. Note Here, the <i>vlan-interface-number</i> is the same VLAN as the Management VLAN. That is, both must be on the same subnet. • <i>chassis-number</i>: Chassis number. The valid range is from 1 to 2.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>ip-address</i>: Redundancy Management Interface IP address. Note Each controller must have a unique chassis number for RMI to form the HA pair. The chassis number can be observed as SWITCH_NUMBER in the output of show romvar command. Modification of SWITCH_NUMBER is currently not available through the web UI. To disable the HA pair, use the no redun-management interface vlan chassis command.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	write memory Example: Device# write memory	Saves the configuration.
Step 7	reload Example: Device# reload	Reloads the controllers. Note When the RMI configuration is done, you must reload the controllers for the configuration to take effect. For Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller VM, both the active and standby controllers reload automatically. In the case of hardware platforms, you should reload the active controller manually, as only standby the controller reloads automatically.

Configuring Gateway Monitoring (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	[no] management gateway-failover enable Example: Device(config)# management gateway-failover enable	Enables gateway monitoring. (Use the no form of this command to disable gateway monitoring.)
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Note To save the configuration, use the write memory command.

Configuring Gateway Monitoring Interval (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	management gateway-failover interval interval-value Example: Device(config)# management gateway-failover interval 6	Configures the gateway monitoring interval. <i>interval-value</i> - Refers to the gateway monitoring interval. The valid range is from 6 to 12. Default value is 8.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Gateway Reachability Detection

Information About Gateway Reachability Detection

Gateway Reachability Detection feature minimizes the downtime on APs and clients when the gateway reachability is lost on the active controller.

Both active and standby controllers keep track of gateway reachability. The gateway reachability is detected by sending Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) and ARP requests periodically to the gateway.

Both active and standby controllers use the RMI IP as the source IP. The messages are sent at 1 second interval. If it takes 8 (or configured value) consecutive failures in reaching the gateway, the controller declares the gateway as non-reachable. It takes approximately 8 seconds to detect if a controller has lost gateway reachability.

Gateway monitoring with native IPv6 uses ICMP Neighbor Discovery protocols and ICMPv6 ECHO to check gateway reachability.

Therefore, you can monitor only the IPv6 gateway when RMI IPv6 is configured.

This means that only one IPv4 or IPv6 gateways can be monitored.



Note If the standby controller loses gateway, the standby moves to the standby recovery mode.
If the active controller loses gateway, the active reloads and standby becomes active.

Configuration Workflow

1. Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (GUI) (or) Configuring Redundancy Management Interface (CLI). For more information, see [Configuring Redundancy Management Interface \(GUI\), on page 1502](#).



Note For RMI configuration to take effect, ensure that you reload your controllers.

2. Configuring IPv6 Static Route. For information, see [Gateway Monitoring](#).
3. Configuring Gateway Monitoring Interval (CLI). For more information, see [Configuring Gateway Monitoring Interval \(CLI\), on page 1506](#).

Migrating to RMI IPv6

From RMI IPv4

1. Unconfigure the RMI IPv4 using the following CLIs:

```
Device# conf t
Device(config)# no redun-management interface <vlan_name> chassis 1 address <ip_address1>
chassis 2 address <ip_address2>
```



Note This CLI unconfigures RMI on both the controllers.



Note Take a backup of the running config on active before you reload the controller.

Reload the controller.

3. Copy the backed up config to the running config on the box which would have lost all the config.
4. Configure the RMI IPv6 on both the controllers. For information on the CLI, see [#unique_1842](#).
5. Reload the controller.

From HA Pairing (Without RMI)

For information on HA pairing, see [Configuring Redundancy Management Interface \(GUI\)](#).

Monitoring the Health of the Standby Controller

The Standby Monitoring feature allows you to monitor the health of a system on a standby controller using programmatic interfaces and commands. This feature allows you to monitor parameters such as CPU, memory, interface status, power supply, fan failure, and the system temperature. Standby Monitoring is enabled when Redundancy Management Interface (RMI) is configured, no other configuration is required. The RMI itself is used to connect to the standby and perform standby monitoring. Standby Monitoring feature cannot be dynamically enabled or disabled.



Note The active controller uses the management or RMI IP to initiate AAA requests. Whereas, the standby controller uses the RMI IP to initiate AAA requests. Thus, the RMI IPs must be added in AAA servers for a seamless client authentication and standby monitoring.

To enable standby console, ensure that the following configuration is in place:

```
redundancy
main-cpu
secondary console enable
```



Note The Standby Monitoring feature is not supported on a controller in the active-recovery and the standby-recovery modes.

The Standby Monitoring feature supports only the following traffic on the RMI interface of the standby controller:

- Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)
- TCP Traffic (to or from) ports: 22, 443, 830, and 3200
- UDP RADIUS ports: 1645 and 1646
- UDP Extended RADIUS ports: 21645 to 21844

Feature Scenarios

- To monitor the health of the standby directly from the standby controller using Standby RMI IP.
- To get syslogs from the standby controller using the Standby RMI IP.

Use Cases

- Enabling SNMP agent and programmatic interfaces on the standby controller: You can directly perform an SNMP query or programmatic interface query to the standby's RMI IP and active controller.
- Enabling syslogs on the standby controller: You can directly get the standby syslogs from the standby controller.

RADIUS Accounting Support

Whenever you log in to a standby device, the RADIUS start record must be sent to the external RADIUS server. Similarly, when you log out of a device, the RADIUS stop record must be sent to the external RADIUS server.

TACACS+ Authentication Support

Users are authenticated through the RMI using the external TACACS+ server. The username and password are evaluated in the TACACS+ server. Depending on the response received from the server, a user will be able to log in to the standby device.

TACACS+ Accounting Support

Whenever you log in to the standby device, the TACACS+ accounting start record must be sent to the external TACACS+ server. Similarly, when you log out of a device, the TACACS+ accounting stop record must be sent to the external TACACS+ server.



Note The following configuration must be in place to configure AAA to send the accounting packets:

```
aaa accounting exec {default | named-list} start-stop group {RAD | tac-group-name}
```



Note The TACACS+ login to the standby device is not supported when TACACS+ server is configured with hostname.

Monitoring the Health of Standby Parameters Using SNMP

Standby Monitoring Using Standby RMI IP

When an SNMP agent is enabled on the standby controller, you can directly perform an SNMP query to the standby's RMI IP. From Release 17.5 onwards, you can query the following MIB on the standby controller:

Table 98: MIB Name and Notes

MIB Name	Notes
IF-MIB	This MIB is used to monitor the interface statistics of the standby controller using the standby RMI IP address.



Note If an SNMP agent is enabled on the active controller, by default, the SNMP is enabled on the standby controller.

Standby Monitoring Using the Active Controller

CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB

The CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB monitors the health parameters of the standby controller, that is, memory, CPU, port status, power statistics, peer gateway latencies, and so on.

You can query the following MIB objects of CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB.

Table 99: MIB Objects and Notes

MIB Objects	Notes
cLHaPeerHotStandbyEvent	This object can be used to check if the standby controller has turned hot-standby or not.
cLHaBulkSyncCompleteEvent	This object represents the time at which the bulksync is completed.

CISCO-PROCESS-MIB

The CISCO-PROCESS-MIB monitors CPU and process statistics. Use it to monitor CPU-related or memory-related BINOS processes. The standby CISCO-PROCESS-MIB can be monitored using the active controller.

ENTITY-MIB

The ENTITY-MIB is used to monitor hardware details of the active and standby controllers using the active controller.



Note The standby Route Processor (RP) sensors are appended in the active RP sensors.

Standby IOS Linux Syslogs

The standby logs are relayed using the same method as on the active Cisco IOS for wireless controllers.

From Release 17.5 onwards, external logging of syslogs from the standby IOS is enabled. As BINOS processes on standby also forwards the syslogs to Cisco IOS, all the syslogs generated on the standby controller is forwarded to the configured external server.



Note RMI IP address is used for logging purpose.

The following is the expected behavior when an HA pair is configured with the RMI IPv6 address, the active controller has dual stack, and logging is configured on the IPv4 address:

The standby controller tries to send syslogs to the IPv4 server because logging is only configured on IPv4 even though IPv4 is not supported by standby.

Standby Interface Status Using Active SNMP

The standby interface information is sent to the active controller using IPC in the following scenarios:

- When there is a change in the interface status.
- When a new interface is added or deleted on the standby controller.

When the active controller receives the interface information from the standby controller, the active controller's database is populated with the standby interface information.

When an SNMP query is received for the standby interface information, the SNMP handlers corresponding to the CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB reads them from the standby interface database on the active and populates the MIB objects in CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB.

You can query the following MIB objects of CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB.

Table 100: MIB Objects of CISCO-LWAPP-HA-MIB

MIB Object	Notes
stbyIfIndex	This is a unique value (greater than zero) for each interface of the standby controller.
stbyIfName	This is the name of the standby interface.
stbyIfPhysAddress	This is the interface address of the standby controller in the protocol sublayer.
stbyifOperStatus	This is the current operational state of the interface in the standby controller.
stbyifAdminStatus	This is the desired state of the interface of the standby controller.

To verify the logging on the active when the standby fails to send interface statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# debug snmp ha-chkpt
Device# debug snmp ha-intf_db
```

Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using Programmatic Interfaces

You can monitor parameters such as CPU, memory, sensors, and interface status on a standby controller using programmatic interfaces such as NETCONF and RESTCONF. The RMI IP of the standby controller can be used for access to the following operational models:

The models can be accessed through .

- Cisco-IOS-XE-device-hardware-oper.yang
- Cisco-IOS-XE-process-cpu-oper.yang
- Cisco-IOS-XE-platform-software-oper.yang
- Cisco-IOS-XE-process-memory-oper.yang
- Cisco-IOS-XE-interfaces-oper.yang

For more information on the YANG models, see the *Programmability Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x*.

Monitoring the Health of Standby Controller Using CLI

This section describes the different commands that can be used to monitor the standby device.

You can connect to the standby controller through SSH using the RMI IP of the standby controller. The user credentials must have been configured already. Both local authentication and RADIUS authentication are supported.



Note The **redun-management** command needs to be configured on both the controllers, primary and standby, prior to high availability (HA) pairing.

Monitoring Port State

The following is a sample output of the **show interfaces interface-name** command:

```
Device-standby# show interfaces GigabitEthernet1

GigabitEthernet1 is down, line protocol is down
Shadow state is up, true line protocol is up
  Hardware is CSR vNIC, address is 000c.2909.33c2 (bia 000c.2909.33c2)
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit/sec, DLY 10 usec,
    reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
  Encapsulation ARPA, loopback not set
  Keepalive set (10 sec)
  Full Duplex, 1000Mbps, link type is force-up, media type is Virtual
  output flow-control is unsupported, input flow-control is unsupported
  ARP type: ARPA, ARP Timeout 04:00:00
  Last input 00:00:06, output 00:00:24, output hang never
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
```

```

Input queue: 30/375/0/0 (size/max/drops/flushes); Total output drops: 0
Queueing strategy: fifo
Output queue: 0/40 (size/max)
5 minute input rate 389000 bits/sec, 410 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
 3696382 packets input, 392617128 bytes, 0 no buffer
Received 0 broadcasts (0 multicasts)
 0 runs, 0 giants, 0 throttles
 0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored
 0 watchdog, 0 multicast, 0 pause input
18832 packets output, 1218862 bytes, 0 underruns
Output 0 broadcasts (0 multicasts)
 0 output errors, 0 collisions, 2 interface resets
 3 unknown protocol drops
 0 babbles, 0 late collision, 0 deferred
 0 lost carrier, 0 no carrier, 0 pause output
 0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out

```

The following is a sample output of the **show ip interface brief** command:

Device# **show ip interface brief**

Interface	IP-Address	OK?	Method	Status	Protocol
GigabitEthernet1	unassigned	YES	unset	down	down
GigabitEthernet0	unassigned	YES	NVRAM	administratively down	down
Capwap1	unassigned	YES	unset	up	up
Capwap2	unassigned	YES	unset	up	up
Capwap3	unassigned	YES	unset	up	up
Capwap10	unassigned	YES	unset	up	up
Vlan1	unassigned	YES	NVRAM	down	down
Vlan56	unassigned	YES	unset	down	down
Vlan111	111.1.1.85	YES	NVRAM	up	up

Monitoring CPU or Memory

The following is a sample output of the **show process cpu sorted 5sec** command:

Device-standby# **show process cpu sorted 5sec**

```

CPU utilization for five seconds: 0%/0%; one minute: 0%; five minutes: 0%
PID Runtime(ms)   Invoked    uSecs   5Sec   1Min   5Min  TTY Process
 10    1576556      281188      5606   0.15%  0.05%  0.05%  0 Check heaps
232     845057      54261160      15   0.07%  0.05%  0.06%  0 IPAM Manager
595      177         300      590   0.07%  0.02%  0.01%  2 Virtual Exec
138    1685973     108085955      15   0.07%  0.08%  0.08%  0 L2 LISP Punt Pro
193     19644      348767      56   0.07%  0.00%  0.00%  0 DTP Protocol
 5         0         1         0   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 CTS SGACL db cor
 4        24        15     1600   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 RF Slave Main Th
 6         0         1         0   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 Retransmission o
 7         0         1         0   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 IPC ISSU Dispatc
 2    117631      348801      337   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 Load Meter
 8         0         1         0   0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 EDDRI_MAIN

```

To check CPU and memory utilization of binOS processes, run the following command:

Device-standby# **show platform software process slot chassis standby R0 monitor**

```

top - 23:24:14 up 8 days, 3:38, 0 users, load average: 0.69, 0.79, 0.81
Tasks: 433 total, 1 running, 431 sleeping, 1 stopped, 0 zombie
%Cpu(s): 1.7 us, 2.8 sy, 0.0 ni, 95.6 id, 0.0 wa, 0.0 hi, 0.0 si, 0.0 st
MiB Mem : 32059.2 total, 21953.7 free, 4896.8 used, 5208.6 buff/cache

```

MiB Swap: 0.0 total, 0.0 free, 0.0 used. 26304.6 avail Mem

```
PID USER PR NI VIRT RES SHR S %CPU %MEM TIME+ COMMAND
23565 root 20 0 2347004 229116 130052 S 41.2 0.7 5681:44 ucode_pkt+
2306 root 20 0 666908 106760 46228 S 5.9 0.3 15:06.14 smand
22807 root 20 0 3473004 230020 152120 S 5.9 0.7 510:56.90 fman_fp_i+
1 root 20 0 14600 11324 7424 S 0.0 0.0 0:31.07 systemd
2 root 20 0 0 0 0 S 0.0 0.0 0:00.28 kthreadd
3 root 0 -20 0 0 0 I 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 rcu_gp
4 root 0 -20 0 0 0 I 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 rcu_par_gp
6 root 0 -20 0 0 0 I 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 kworker/0+
7 root 20 0 0 0 0 I 0.0 0.0 0:00.49 kworker/u+
8 root 0 -20 0 0 0 I 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 mm_percpu+
9 root 20 0 0 0 0 S 0.0 0.0 0:03.26 ksoftirqd+
.
.
.
32258 root 20 0 57116 3432 2848 S 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 rotee
32318 root 20 0 139560 9500 7748 S 0.0 0.0 0:55.67 pttcd
32348 root 20 0 31.6g 3.1g 607364 S 0.0 9.8 499:12.04 linux_ios+
32503 root 20 0 3996 3136 2852 S 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 stack_snt+
32507 root 20 0 3700 1936 1820 S 0.0 0.0 0:00.00 sntp
```

Monitoring Hardware

The following is a sample output of the **show environment summary** command:

Device# **show environment summary**

```
Number of Critical alarms: 0
Number of Major alarms: 0
Number of Minor alarms: 0
```

Slot	Sensor	Current State	Reading
Threshold(Minor,Major,Critical,Shutdown)			
P0	Vin	Normal	231 V AC na
P0	Iin	Normal	2 A na
P0	Vout	Normal	12 V DC na
P0	Iout	Normal	30 A na
P0	Temp1	Normal	25 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na) (Celsius)
P0	Temp2	Normal	31 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na) (Celsius)
P0	Temp3	Normal	37 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na) (Celsius)
R0	VDMB1: VX1	Normal	1226 mV na
R0	VDMB1: VX2	Normal	6944 mV na
R0	Temp: DMB IN	Normal	26 Celsius (45 ,55 ,65 ,70) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: DMB OUT	Normal	40 Celsius (70 ,75 ,80 ,85) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: Yoda 0	Normal	54 Celsius (95 ,105,110,115) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: Yoda 1	Normal	62 Celsius (95 ,105,110,115) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: CPU Die	Normal	43 Celsius (100,110,120,125) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: FC FANS	Fan Speed 70%	26 Celsius (29 ,39 ,0) (Celsius)
R0	VDDC1: VX1	Normal	1005 mV na
R0	VDDC1: VX2	Normal	7084 mV na
R0	VDDC2: VH	Normal	12003mV na
R0	Temp: DDC IN	Normal	25 Celsius (55 ,65 ,75 ,80) (Celsius)
R0	Temp: DDC OUT	Normal	35 Celsius (75 ,85 ,95 ,100) (Celsius)
P0	Stby Vin	Normal	230 V AC na
P0	Stby Iin	Normal	2 A na
P0	Stby Vout	Normal	12 V DC na
P0	Stby Iout	Normal	32 A na
P0	Stby Temp1	Normal	24 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na) (Celsius)
P0	Stby Temp2	Normal	29 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na) (Celsius)

```

P0          Stby Temp3          Normal          35 Celsius (na ,na ,na ,na )(Celsius)
R0          Stby VDMB1: VX1 Normal          1225 mV      na
R0          Stby VDMB1: VX2 Normal          6979 mV      na
R0          Stby VDMB2: VX2 Normal          5005 mV      na
R0          Stby VDMB2: VX3 Normal          854 mV      na
R0          Stby VDMB3: VX1 Normal          972 mV      na
R0          Stby Temp: DMB INormal          22 Celsius (45 ,55 ,65 ,70 )(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: DMB ONormal          32 Celsius (70 ,75 ,80 ,85 )(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: Yoda Normal          43 Celsius (95 ,105,110,115)(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: Yoda Normal          45 Celsius (95 ,105,110,115)(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: CPU DNormal          33 Celsius (100,110,120,125)(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: FC FAFan Speed 70%    22 Celsius (29 ,39 ,0 )(Celsius)
R0          Stby VDDC1: VX1 Normal          1005 mV      na
R0          Stby VDDC1: VX2 Normal          7070 mV      na
R0          Stby VDDC2: VX2 Normal          752 mV      na
R0          Stby VDDC2: VX3 Normal          750 mV      na
R0          Stby Temp: DDC INormal          22 Celsius (55 ,65 ,75 ,80 )(Celsius)
R0          Stby Temp: DDC ONormal          28 Celsius (75 ,85 ,95 ,100)(Celsius)

```



Note The command displays both active and standby hardware details.



Note The **show environment summary** command displays data only for physical appliances such as Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller, and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless Controller for Switch. The command does not display data for Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller for Cloud.

Verifying the Gateway-Monitoring Configuration

To verify the status of the gateway-monitoring configuration on an active controller, run the following command:

```

Device# show redundancy states

my state = 13 -ACTIVE
peer state = 8 -STANDBY HOT
Mode = Duplex
Unit = Primary
Unit ID = 1

Redundancy Mode (Operational) = sso
Redundancy Mode (Configured) = sso
Redundancy State = sso
Maintenance Mode = Disabled
Manual Swact = enabled
Communications = Up

client count = 129
client_notification_TMR = 30000 milliseconds
RF debug mask = 0x0
Gateway Monitoring = Disabled
Gateway monitoring interval = 8 secs

```

To verify the status of the gateway-monitoring configuration on a standby controller, run the following command:

```

Device-stby# show redundancy states

my state = 8 -STANDBY HOT
peer state = 13 -ACTIVE
Mode = Duplex
Unit = Primary
Unit ID = 2

Redundancy Mode (Operational) = sso
Redundancy Mode (Configured) = sso
Redundancy State = sso
Maintenance Mode = Disabled
Manual Swact = cannot be initiated from this the standby unit
Communications = Up

client count = 129
client_notification_TMR = 30000 milliseconds
RF debug mask = 0x0
Gateway Monitoring = Disabled
Gateway monitoring interval = 8 secs

```

Verifying the RMI IPv4 Configuration

Verify the RMI IPv4 configuration.

```

Device# show running-config interface vlan management-vlan

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 109 bytes
!
interface Vlan90
ip address 9.10.90.147 255.255.255.0 secondary
ip address 9.10.90.41 255.255.255.0
end

```

To verify the interface configuration for a standby controller, use the following command:

```

Device-stby# show running-config interface vlan 90

Building configuration...

Current configuration : 62 bytes
!
interface Vlan90
ip address 9.10.90.149 255.255.255.0
end

```

To verify the chassis redundancy management interface configuration for an active controller, use the following command:

```

Device# show chassis rmi

Chassis/Stack Mac Address : 000c.2964.1eb6 - Local Mac Address
Mac persistency wait time: Indefinite
H/W Current

```

Chassis#	Role	Mac Address	Priority	Version	State	IP	RMI-IP
*1	Active	000c.2964.1eb6	1	V02	Ready	169.254.90.147	9.10.90.147

```
2          Standby  000c.2975.3aa6  1          V02          Ready  169.254.90.149  9.10.90.149
```

To verify the chassis redundancy management interface configuration for a standby controller, use the following command:

```
Device-stby# show chassis rmi
```

```
Chassis/Stack Mac Address : 000c.2964.1eb6 - Local Mac Address
Mac persistency wait time: Indefinite
```

Chassis#	Role	Mac Address	Priority	H/W Version	Current State	IP	RMI-IP
1	Active	000c.2964.1eb6	1	V02	Ready	169.254.90.147	9.10.90.147
*2	Standby	000c.2975.3aa6	1	V02	Ready	169.254.90.149	9.10.90.149

To verify the ROMMON variables on an active controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show romvar | include RMI
```

```
RMI_INTERFACE_NAME = Vlan90
RMI_CHASSIS_LOCAL_IP = 9.10.90.147
RMI_CHASSIS_REMOTE_IP = 9.10.90.149
```

To verify the ROMMON variables on a standby controller, use the following command:

```
Device-stby# show romvar | include RMI
```

```
RMI_INTERFACE_NAME = Vlan90
RMI_CHASSIS_LOCAL_IP = 9.10.90.149
RMI_CHASSIS_REMOTE_IP = 9.10.90.147
```

To verify the switchover reason, use the following command:

```
Device# show redundancy switchover history
```

Index	Previous active	Current active	Switchover reason	Switchover time
1	2	1	Active lost GW	17:02:29 UTC Mon Feb 3 2020

Verifying the RMI IPv6 Configuration

To verify the chassis redundancy management interface configuration for both active and standby controllers, run the following command:

```
Device# show chassis rmi
```

```
Chassis/Stack Mac Address : 00a3.8e23.a540 - Local Mac Address
Mac persistency wait time: Indefinite
Local Redundancy Port Type: Twisted Pair
```

Chassis#	Role	Mac Address	Priority	H/W Version	Current State	IP	RMI-IP
1	Standby	706d.1536.23c0	1	V02	Ready	169.254.254.17	2020:0:0:1::211
*2	Active	00a3.8e23.a540	1	V02	Ready	169.254.254.18	2020:0:0:1::212

To verify the RMI related ROMMON variables for both active and standby controllers, run the following command

```
Device# show romvar | i RMI

RMI_INTERFACE_NAME = Vlan52
RMI_CHASSIS_LOCAL_IPV6 = 2020:0:0:1::212
RMI_CHASSIS_REMOTE_IPV6 = 2020:0:0:1::211
```

Verifying Redundancy Port Interface Configuration

To verify the RMI link re-establishment count and the time since the RMI link is Up in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 rmi-connection-details
RMI Connection Details
  RMI Link re-establish count : 2
  RMI Link Uptime             : 21 hours 8 minutes 43 seconds
  RMI Link Upsince            : 08/05/2021 13:46:01
```

To verify the RMI link re-establishment count and the time since the RMI link is Down in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 rmi-connection-details
RMI Connection Details
  RMI Link re-establish count : 1
  RMI Link Downtime           : 28 seconds
  RMI Link Downsince          : 07/16/2021 03:19:11
```

To verify the RMI link re-establishment count and the time since the RMI link is Up in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 rmi-connection-details
RMI Connection Details
  RMI Link re-establish count : 1
  RMI Link Uptime             : 1 hour 39 minute 9 seconds
  RMI Link Upsince            : 07/16/2021 01:31:41
```

To verify the RMI link re-establishment count and the time since the RMI link is Down in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 rmi-connection-details
RMI Connection Details
  RMI Link re-establish count : 1
  RMI Link Downtime           : 22 seconds
  RMI Link Downsince          : 07/16/2021 03:19:17
```

To verify the RP link re-establishment count and the time since the RP link is UP for days in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 rp-connection-details
RP Connection Details
  RP Connection Uptime : 12 days 17 hours 1 minute 39 seconds
  RP Connection Upsince : 07/03/2021 07:06:20
```

To verify the RP link re-establishment count and the time since the RP link is Down in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 rp-connection-details
RP Connection Details
  RP Connection Downtime : 4 seconds
  RP Connection Downsince : 07/16/2021 03:33:04
```


To verify the RP link re-establishment count and the time since the RP link is UP in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 rp-connection-details
RP Connection Details
  RP Connection Uptime   : 12 days 17 hours 2 minutes 1 second
  RP Connection Upsince  : 07/03/2021 07:05:58
```

To verify the RP link re-establishment count and the time since the RP link is Down in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 rp-connection-details
RP Connection Details
  RP Connection Downtime   : 22 seconds
  RP Connection Downsince  : 07/16/2021 03:19:17
```

To verify the RIF and stack manager internal statistics in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 rif-stk-internal-stats
RIF Stack Manager internal stats

Stack-mgr reported RP down           : False
DAD link status reported to Stack-Mgr : True
```

To verify the RIF and stack manager internal statistics in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 rif-stk-internal-stats
RIF Stack Manager internal stats

Stack-mgr reported RP down           : False
DAD link status reported to Stack-Mgr : True
```

To verify the number of packets sent or received for each type in the active instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis active R0 lmp-statistics
LMP Statistics

Info Type Sent           : 6
Solicit Info Type Sent   : 0
Unsolicit Info Type Sent : 6
Reload Type Sent         : 0
Recovery Type Sent       : 1
Gateway Info Type Sent   : 0
Enquiry Type Sent        : 0
Solicit Enquiry Type Sent : 0
Unsolicit Enquiry Type Sent : 0

Info Type Received       : 5
Solicit Info Type Received : 2
Unsolicit Info Type Received : 3
Reload Type Received     : 0
Recovery Type Received   : 0
Gateway Info Type Received : 4
Enquiry Type Received    : 0
Solicit Enquiry Type Received : 0
Unsolicit Enquiry Type Received : 0
```

To verify the number of packets sent or received for each type in the standby instance, run the following command:

```
Device# show platform software rif-mgr chassis standby R0 lmp-statistics
LMP Statistics

Info Type Sent           : 6
Solicit Info Type Sent   : 0
```

```

Unsolicit Info Type Sent      : 6
Reload Type Sent             : 0
Recovery Type Sent           : 0
Gateway Info Type Sent       : 4
Enquiry Type Sent            : 0
Solicit Enquiry Type Sent    : 0
Unsolicit Enquiry Type Sent   : 0

Info Type Received           : 5
Solicit Info Type Received    : 3
Unsolicit Info Type Received  : 2
Reload Type Received         : 0
Recovery Type Received       : 1
Gateway Info Type Received    : 0
Enquiry Type Received        : 0
Solicit Enquiry Type Received : 0
Unsolicit Enquiry Type Received : 0

```

Information About Auto-Upgrade

The Auto-Upgrade feature enables the standby controller to upgrade with the software image of the active controller so that both controllers form an HA pair.



Note

- This feature supports the active controller in INSTALL mode.
- This feature supports Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller software versions 17.5.1 and later.
- This feature is triggered in the standby controller only when the active image is in committed state.

Use Cases

The following are the use cases and functionalities supported by the Auto-Upgrade feature:

- Handling software version mismatch: During an upgrade, if one of the redundancy port is upgraded to a newer version, and the other one is not upgraded at the same time, the active port tries to copy its packages to the other port using the Auto-Upgrade feature. You can enable Auto-Upgrade in this situation using configuration or by manually running the **software auto-upgrade enable** privileged EXEC command.

The auto-upgrade configuration is enabled by default.



Note

Auto-upgrade upgrades the mismatched redundancy port only when both the active redundancy port and the mismatched redundancy port are in INSTALL mode.

- HA pair: If one of the controller is not upgraded successfully, use Auto-Upgrade to upgrade the controller on the newly deployed HA pair, which can each be a different version.

- SMUs (APSP, APDP, and so on): If the SMUs that are successfully installed on the active controller when the standby controller was offline. In this scenario, when the standby controller comes up online, the Auto-Upgrade copies this SMU to the standby controller and installs it.

Configuration Workflow

#unique_1858

Configuring Auto-Upgrade (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	software auto-upgrade enable Example: Device(config)# software auto-upgrade enable	Enables the Auto-Upgrade feature. (This feature is enabled by default.) If you disable this feature using the no form of this command, you need to manually auto upgrade using the install autoupgrade command in privileged EXEC mode.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Use Case for Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)

In a high-availability (HA) setup, when two wireless units act as active and standby, the LLDP still runs independently in both.

When you execute the LLDP neighbors command, the system name as the neighbor entry in the uplink switch is displayed as *hostname-stbdy*.

Enabling LLDP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	lldp run Example: Device(config)# lldp run	Enables Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP).
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling LLDP Timers (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	lldp holdtime <i>time_in_secs</i> Example: Device(config)# lldp holdtime 100	Enables LLDP timers. The timer decides how long the receiver must keep the packet. Valid range is from 0 to 65535 seconds.
Step 3	lldp reinit <i>delay_in_secs</i> Example: Device(config)# lldp reinit 3	Specifies the delay, in seconds for LLDP to initialize. Valid range is from 2 to 5 seconds.
Step 4	lldp timer <i>time_in_secs</i> Example: Device(config)# lldp timer 7	Specifies the rate at which the LLDP packets are sent, in seconds. Valid range is from 5 to 65534 seconds.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling LLDP TLV-Select (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	lldp tlv-select [mac-phy-cfg management-address port-description port-vlan system-capabilities system-description] Example: Device(config)# lldp tlv-select port-vlan	Enables type, length, and value (TLV) selection for LLDP. • mac-phy-cfg: IEEE 802.3 MAC, physical configuration, or status TLV. • management-address: Management address TLV. • port-description: Port description TLV. • port-vlan: Port VLAN ID TLV. • system-capabilities: System capabilities TLV. • system-description: System description TLV.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying LLDP

Use the following **show** commands to view the LLDP details independently in the active and standby controller.

To verify the timer and status in the active and standby controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp
Global LLDP Information:
  Status: ACTIVE
  LLDP advertisements are sent every 30 seconds
  LLDP hold time advertised is 120 seconds
  LLDP interface reinitialisation delay is 2 seconds
```

To verify the neighbor details in the active controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp neighbors
Capability codes:
  (R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
  (W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other
```

Device ID	Local Intf	Hold-time	Capability	Port ID
9500-SW	Tw0/0/0	120	B,R	Twel/0/14

To verify the neighbor details in the standby controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp neighbors
Capability codes:
(R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
(W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other
Device ID          Local Intf      Hold-time  Capability      Port ID
9500-SW            Tw0/0/0        120        B,R             Twel/0/13
Total entries displayed: 1
```

To verify the LLDP neighbor (TLV) detail, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp neighbors detail
-----
Local Intf: Te0/0/0
Chassis id: 2cd0.2d62.be80
Port id: Te1/1
Port Description: TenGigabitEthernet1/1
System Name: HSRP-ROUTER-1-15.cisco.com

System Description:
Cisco IOS Software, IOS-XE Software, Catalyst 4500 L3 Switch Software (cat4500e-UNIVERSAL-M),
  Version 03.09.00.E RELEASE SOFTWARE (fc1)
Technical Support: http://www.cisco.com/techsupport
Copyright (c) 1986-2016 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Tue 19-Jul

Time remaining: 99 seconds
System Capabilities: B,R
Enabled Capabilities: B,R
Management Addresses:
  IP: 8.109.0.1
  IPV6: 2001:12:1::2
Auto Negotiation - not supported
Physical media capabilities:
  Other/unknown
Media Attachment Unit type - not advertised
Vlan ID: 109
Peer Source MAC: 2cd0.2d62.be80
```

To verify the LLDP details in the uplink switch, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp neighbors detail
-----
Local Intf: Te1/1
Chassis id: d4e8.80b3.0420
Port id: Te0/0/0
Port Description: TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0
System Name: WLC-BGL15.cisco.com

System Description:
Cisco IOS Software [Bangalore], C9800 Software (C9800_IOSXE-K9), Experimental Version
17.9.20220630:200739
Copyright (c) 1986-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 30-Jun-22 13:19

Time remaining: 107 seconds
System Capabilities: B,R
Enabled Capabilities: R
Management Addresses:
  IP: 8.109.0.47
  IPV6: FD09:8:109::45
Auto Negotiation - not supported
```

```
Physical media capabilities - not advertised
Media Attachment Unit type - not advertised
Vlan ID: 109
```

To verify LLDP packet errors, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp errors
LLDP errors/overflows:
Total memory allocation failures: 0
Total encapsulation failures: 0
Total input queue overflows: 0
Total table overflows: 0
```

To verify LLDP traffic statistics, use the following command:

```
Device# show lldp traffic
LLDP traffic statistics:
Total frames out: 18470
Total entries aged: 0
Total frames in: 6156
Total frames received in error: 0
Total frames discarded: 0
Total TLVs discarded: 0
Total TLVs unrecognized: 0
```

Feature History for Reload Reason History

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 101: Feature History for Reload Reason History

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.1	Reload Reason History	The Reload Reason History feature tracks the reasons for controller reload. This is done for the last 10 reloads. In Cisco IOS-XE Dublin 17.10.x and earlier releases, it was possible to track only the reason for the last reload.

Information About Reload Reason History

The Reload Reason History feature tracks the reasons for controller reload. This is done for the last 10 reloads. You will be able to view the history using the show version and the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF). This history is useful for serviceability and troubleshooting.



Note When you reload the standby controller, the system report files are generated in the controller hard disk.

Verifying Reload Reason History

To view the reload history details, use the following command:

```
Device# show reload-history
```

Reload History:

```
Reload Index: 1
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:33:44 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 2
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:31:11 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 3
Reload Code: Image Install
Reload Description: Image Install
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:25:03 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 4
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:13:08 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 5
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:08:26 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 6
Reload Code: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:05:23 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 7
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 01:01:09 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 8
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 00:57:27 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022
```

```
Reload Index: 9
Reload Code: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
```


Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 00:22:34 UTC Wed Nov 30 2022

Reload Index: 10
Reload Code: Fast Switchover
Reload Description: redundancy force-switchover
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 23:40:01 UTC Tue Nov 29 2022

To view reason for the last reload, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software tdl-database content ios device data
Device Current time: 04:06:04
Device boot time: 01:33:37
Software version: Cisco IOS Software [Dublin], C9800-CL Software (C9800-CL-K9_IOSXE),
Experimental Version 17.11.20221012:120806
[BLD_POLARIS_DEV_S2C_20221010_023625-1-g5ebdd5c35512:/nobackup/saikarth/polaris_relhis 103]
Copyright (c) 1986-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Wed 12-Oct-22 05:08 by saikarth
Rommon version: IOS-XE ROMMON
Last Reboot reason: Reload Command
Reboot reason severity: Normal Reboot
Unsaved configuration: * Unknown boolean *
```

Reload History:

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:33:44 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:31:11 UTC

Reload Category: Image Install
Reload Description: Image Install
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:25:03 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:13:08 UTC

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:08:26 UTC

Reload Category: Critical Process Fault
Reload Description: Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report at
bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz
Reload Severity: Abnormal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:05:23 UTC

Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 01:01:09 UTC

Reload Category: Reload

```
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 00:57:27 UTC
```

```
Reload Category: Reload
Reload Description: Reload Command
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/30/2022 00:22:34 UTC
```

```
Reload Category: Fast Switchover
Reload Description: redundancy force-switchover
Reload Severity: Normal Reboot
Reload Time: 11/29/2022 23:40:01 UTC
```

Requesting Reload Reason History using YANG

Use YANG with NETCONF and RESTCONF to provide the desired solution for automated and programmable network operations.

Use the following RPC to create a NETCONF GET request for reload history data:

```
<nc:rpc xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
message-id="urn:uuid:da15955f-5bb7-437c-aeb5-0fc7901a1e9e">
  <nc:get>
    <nc:filter>
      <device-hardware-data
xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-device-hardware-oper">
        <device-hardware>
          <device-system-data>
            <reload-history/>
          </device-system-data>
        </device-hardware>
      </device-hardware-data>
    </nc:filter>
  </nc:get>
</nc:rpc>

<rpc-reply message-id="urn:uuid:da15955f-5bb7-437c-aeb5-0fc7901a1e9e"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:nc="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <data>
    <device-hardware-data xmlns="http://cisco.com/ns/yang/Cisco-IOS-XE-device-hardware-oper">

      <device-hardware>
        <device-system-data>
          <reload-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
              <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
              <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:33:44+00:00</reload-time>
              <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
            </rl-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
              <reload-desc>Critical process stack_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system
report at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-012929-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
              <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:31:11+00:00</reload-time>
              <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
            </rl-history>
            <rl-history>
              <reload-category>rc-img-install</reload-category>
```

```

        <reload-desc>Image Install </reload-desc>
        <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:25:03+00:00</reload-time>
        <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
    </rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Critical process rif_mgr fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report
at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-011127-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:13:08+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:08:26+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-crit-proc-fault</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Critical process wncmgrd fault on rp_0_0 (rc=137), system report
at bootflash:core/Yang_Test-system-report_20221130-010338-UTC.tar.gz</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:05:23+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>abnormal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T01:01:09+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T00:57:27+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-rld</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>Reload Command</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-30T00:22:34+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</rl-history>
    <reload-category>rc-force-switchover</reload-category>
    <reload-desc>redundancy force-switchover</reload-desc>
    <reload-time>2022-11-29T23:40:01+00:00</reload-time>
    <reload-severity>normal</reload-severity>
</rl-history>
</reload-history>
</device-system-data>
</device-hardware>
</device-hardware-data>
</data>
</rpc-reply>

```

For more information about the YANG models, see the following documents: The Cisco IOS XE Programmability Configuration Guide at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/wireless/catalyst-9800-series-wireless-controllers/products-installation-and-configuration-guides-list.html>

The YANG Data Models on Github at <https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/main/vendor/cisco/xe>.

Contact the Developer Support Community for NETCONF and YANG features at:

<https://developer.cisco.com/>



PART **X**

Quality of Service

- [Quality of Service, on page 1533](#)
- [Wireless Auto-QoS, on page 1565](#)
- [Native Profiling, on page 1571](#)
- [Air Time Fairness, on page 1583](#)
- [IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support, on page 1593](#)
- [QoS Basic Service Set Load, on page 1597](#)



CHAPTER 148

Quality of Service

- [Wireless QoS Overview, on page 1533](#)
- [Wireless QoS Targets, on page 1534](#)
- [Wireless QoS Mobility, on page 1535](#)
- [Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS, on page 1535](#)
- [Prerequisites for Wireless QoS, on page 1536](#)
- [Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets, on page 1536](#)
- [Metal Policy Format, on page 1537](#)
- [How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting, on page 1544](#)
- [How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting, on page 1551](#)
- [How to Configure Wireless QoS, on page 1556](#)
- [Configuring Custom QoS Mapping, on page 1560](#)
- [Configuring DSCP-to-User Priority Mapping Exception, on page 1562](#)
- [Configuring Trust Upstream DSCP Value, on page 1563](#)

Wireless QoS Overview

Quality of Service (QoS), provides the ability to prioritize the traffic by giving preferential treatment to specific traffic over the other traffic types. Without QoS, the device offers best-effort service for each packet, regardless of the packet contents or size. The device sends the packets without any assurance of reliability, delay bounds, or throughput.

A target is the entity where the policy is applied. Wireless QoS policies for SSID and client are applied in the upstream and (or) downstream direction. The flow of traffic from a wired source to a wireless target is known as downstream traffic. The flow of traffic from a wireless source to a wired target is known as upstream traffic.

The following are some of the specific features provided by wireless QoS:

- SSID and client policies on wireless QoS targets
- Marking and Policing (also known as Rate Limiting) of wireless traffic
- Mobility support for QoS

Wireless QoS Targets

This section describes the various wireless QoS targets available on a device.

SSID Policies

You can create QoS policies on SSID in both the ingress and egress directions. If not configured, there is no SSID policy applied.

The policy is applicable per AP per SSID.

You can configure policing and marking policies on SSID.

Client Policies

Client policies are applicable in the ingress and egress direction. You can configure policing and marking policies on clients. AAA override is also supported.

Supported QoS Features on Wireless Targets

This table describes the various features available on wireless targets.

Table 102: QoS Features Available on Wireless Targets

Target	Features	Direction Where Policies Are Applicable
SSID	• Set • Police • Drop	Upstream and downstream
Client	• Set • Police • Drop	Upstream and downstream

This table describes the various features available on wireless targets.

Table 103: QoS Policy Actions

Policy Action Types	Wireless Target Support	
	Local Mode	Flex Mode
Police	Supported	Supported
Set	Supported	Supported

This table describes the various features available on wireless targets.

Table 104: QoS Policy Set Actions

Set Action Types	Supported	
	Local Mode	Flex Mode
set dscp	Supported	Supported
set qos-group	Supported	Not Supported
set wlan user-priority (downstream only)	Supported (BSSID only)	Supported (BSSID only)

Wireless QoS Mobility

Wireless QoS mobility enables you to configure QoS policies so that the network provides the same service anywhere in the network. A wireless client can roam from one location to another and as a result the client can get associated to different access points associated with a different device. Wireless client roaming can be classified into two types:

- Intra-device roaming
- Inter-device roaming



Note In a foreign WLC, client statistics are not displayed.



Note The client policies must be available on all of the devices in the mobility group. The same SSID policy must be applied to all devices in the mobility group so that the clients get consistent treatment.

Precious Metal Policies for Wireless QoS

The precious metal policies are system-defined policies that are available on the controller. They cannot be removed or changed.

The following policies are available:

- Platinum—Used for VoIP clients.
- Gold—Used for video clients.
- Silver—Used for traffic that can be considered best-effort.
- Bronze—Used for NRT traffic.

These policies are pre-configured. They cannot be modified.

For client metal policies, they can be pushed using AAA.

Based on the policies applied, the 802.11e (WMM), and DSCP fields in the packets are affected.

For more information about metal policies see the [Metal Policy Map, on page 1537](#) section.

For more information about DSCP to UP mapping, see the [#unique_1875](#) table.

Prerequisites for Wireless QoS

Before configuring wireless QoS, you must have a thorough understanding of these items:

- Wireless concepts and network topologies.
- Understanding of QoS implementation.
- Modular QoS CLI (MQC). For more information on Modular QoS, see the [MQC](#) guide
- The types of applications used and the traffic patterns on your network.
- Bandwidth requirements and speed of the network.

Restrictions for QoS on Wireless Targets

General Restrictions

A target is an entity where a policy is applied. A policy can be applied to a wireless target, which can be an SSID or client target, in the downstream and/or upstream direction. Downstream indicates that traffic is flowing from the controller to the wireless client. Upstream indicates that traffic is flowing from wireless client to the controller.

- Hierarchical (Parent policy and child policy) QoS is not supported.
- SSID and client targets can be configured only with marking and policing policies.
- One policy per target per direction is supported.
- Class maps in a policy map can have different types of filters. However, only one marking action (set dscp) is supported.
- Only one set action per class is supported.
- Access group matching is not supported.
- Access group (ACL) matching is not supported by access points in flex mode for local switching traffic.
- SIP Call Admission Control (CAC) is not supported on the central switching mode.
- From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.1 onwards, SIP Call Admission Control (CAC) is not supported.
- Applying QoS on the WMI interface is not supported, as it may reboot the controller.
- AP QoS statistics for each radio stop after reaching 32,768 minutes. At that point, the offered rate shows zero, and the number of minutes stops incrementing.

The system calculates rates within a 32,768-minute window, as designed. After this duration, the data rate calculation becomes zero.

To reset the statistics, run the following command to clear the QoS statistics for the target policy map and SSID:

```
show policy-map interface wireless ssid profile-name <wlan_profile_name> radio type
<radio_type> ap name <AP_name> input clear
```

AP Side Restrictions

- In Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller, FlexConnect local switching, and SDA deployments, the QoS policies are enforced on the AP. Due to this AP-side restriction, police actions (e.g., rate limiting) are only enforced at a per flow (5-tuple) level and not per client.
- For FlexConnect local switching (local authentication) with AAA override enabled and external AAA server, only air space VLAN and ACL are supported as part of the AAA override and not the QoS override or other overrides.

Control Plane Rate Limiting and Policing

You need not explicitly configure control plane rate limiting or policing on the controller. The controller has embedded mechanisms (like policers) to protect the CPU by policing control plane traffic directed towards it. If you're migrating from AireOS to IOS-XE, this change is taken care of at the code level.

Metal Policy Format

Metal Policy Map

Table 105: Platinum (46)

policy-map platinum-up	policy-map platinum
<pre>class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-cs6 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-cs7 set dscp ef class class-default</pre>	<pre>class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-cs6 set dscp ef Class cm-dscp-cs7 set dscp ef class class-default</pre>

Table 106: Gold (34)

policy-map gold-up	policy-map gold
class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1	class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2	Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3	Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-cs5	Class cm-dscp-cs5
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-cs6	Class cm-dscp-cs6
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-cs7	Class cm-dscp-cs7
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-af4	Class cm-dscp-af4
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-voice-admit	Class cm-dscp-voice-admit
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
Class cm-dscp-ef	Class cm-dscp-ef
set dscp 34	set dscp 34
class class-default	class class-default

Table 107: Silver (22)

policy-map silver-up	policy-map silver
class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1	class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2	Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3	Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-4	Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-4
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-cs3	Class cm-dscp-cs3
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-cs4	Class cm-dscp-cs4
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-cs5	Class cm-dscp-cs5
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-cs6	Class cm-dscp-cs6
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-cs7	Class cm-dscp-cs7
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-af3	Class cm-dscp-af3
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-af4	Class cm-dscp-af4
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-voice-admit	Class cm-dscp-voice-admit
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
Class cm-dscp-ef	Class cm-dscp-ef
set dscp 22	set dscp 22
class class-default	class class-default

Table 108: Bronze (8)

policy-map bronze-up	policy-map bronze
class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-4 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-non-std-set-5 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-cs1-7 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-af1 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-af2 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-af3 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-af4 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-voice-admit set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-ef set dscp 8 Class class-default	class cm-dscp-non-std-set-1 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-2 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-3 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-non-std-set-4 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-non-std-set-5 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-cs1-7 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-af1 set dscp 8 class cm-dscp-af2 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-af3 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-af4 set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-voice-admit set dscp 8 Class cm-dscp-ef set dscp 8 Class class-default

Class Maps

```
class-map match-any cm-dscp-non-std-set-1
match dscp 47 49 50 51 52 53 54 55
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-non-std-set-2
match dscp 57 58 59 60 61 62 63
```

```
class-map match-any cm-dscp-non-std-set-3
match dscp 35 37 39 41 42 43 45
```

```
class-map match-any cm-dscp-non-std-set-4
match dscp 23 25 27 29 31 33
```

```
class-map match-any cm-dscp-non-std-set-5
match dscp 9 11 13 15 17 19 21
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs2
match dscp 16
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs3
match dscp 24
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs4
match dscp 32
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs5
match dscp 40
```

```
Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs6
```

```

match dscp 48

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs7
match dscp 56

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-af1
match dscp 10 12 14

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-af2
match dscp 18 20 22

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-af3
match dscp 26 28 30

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-af4
match dscp 34 36 38

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-voice-admit
match dscp 44

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-ef
match dscp 46

Class-map match-any cm-dscp-cs1-7
match dscp 8 16 24 32 40 48 56

```

DSCP to UP Mapping for Downstream Traffic

```

[0]->0 [1]->0 [2]->0 [3]->0 [4]->0 [5]->0 [6]->0 [7]->0
[8]->1 [9]->0 [10]->2 [11]->0 [12]->2 [13]->0 [14]->2 [15]->0
[16]->0 [17]->0 [18]->3 [19]->0 [20]->3 [21]->0 [22]->3 [23]->0
[24]->4 [25]->0 [26]->4 [27]->0 [28]->4 [29]->0 [30]->4 [31]->0
[32]->5 [33]->0 [34]->4 [35]->0 [36]->4 [37]->0 [38]->4 [39]->0
[40]->5 [41]->0 [42]->0 [43]->0 [44]->6 [45]->0 [46]->6 [47]->0
[48]->0 [49]->0 [50]->0 [51]->0 [52]->0 [53]->0 [54]->0 [55]->0
[56]->0 [57]->0 [58]->0 [59]->0 [60]->0 [61]->0 [62]->0 [63]->0

```

UP to DSCP Mapping for Upstream traffic

```

[0]->0 [1]->8 [2]->10 [3]->18 [4]->26 [5]->34 [6]->46 [7]->0

```

Auto QoS Policy Format

Policy Name	Policy-map Format	Class-map Format
enterprise-avc	<pre>policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Input-AVC-Policy class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Data-Class set dscp ef class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Signal-Class set dscp cs3 class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Multimedia-Conf-Class set dscp af41 class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Transaction-Class set dscp af21 class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Bulk-Data-Class set dscp af11 class AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Scavenger-Class set dscp cs1 class class-default set dscp default policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Output-Policy class AutoQos-4.0-RT1-Class set dscp ef class AutoQos-4.0-RT2-Class set dscp af31 class class-default</pre>	

Policy Name	Policy-map Format	Class-map Format
		<pre> class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Data-Class match dscp ef class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Voip-Signal-Class match protocol skinny match protocol cisco-jabber-control match protocol sip match protocol sip-tls class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Multimedia-Conf-Class match protocol cisco-phone-video match protocol cisco-jabber-video match protocol ms-lync-video match protocol webex-media class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Transaction-Class match protocol cisco-jabber-im match protocol ms-office-web-apps match protocol salesforce match protocol sap class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Bulk-Data-Class match protocol ftp match protocol ftp-data match protocol ftps-data match protocol cifs class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Saverager-Class match protocol netflix match protocol youtube match protocol skype match protocol bittorrent class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-RTT1-Class match dscp ef </pre>

Policy Name	Policy-map Format	Class-map Format
		<pre>match dscp cs6 class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-RT2-Class match dscp cs4 match dscp cs3 match dscp af41</pre>
voice	<pre>policy-map platinum-up class dscp-for-up-4 set dscp 34 class dscp-for-up-5 set dscp 34 class dscp-for-up-6 set dscp 46 class dscp-for-up-7 set dscp 46 policy-map platinum class cm-dscp-34 set dscp 34 class cm-dscp-46 set dscp 46</pre>	
guest	<pre>Policy Map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Output-Policy Class class-default set dscp default Policy Map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Input-Policy Class class-default set dscp default</pre>	
port (only applies to Local Mode)	<pre>policy-map AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Port-Output-Policy class AutoQos-4.0-Output-CAPWAP-C-Class priority level 1 class AutoQos-4.0-Output-Voice-Class priority level 2 class class-default ip access-list extended AutoQos-4.0-Output-Acl-CAPWAP-C permit udp any eq 5246 16666 any</pre>	<pre>class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-Output-CAPWAP-C-Class match access-group name AutoQos-4.0-Output-Acl-CAPWAP-C class-map match-any AutoQos-4.0-Output-Voice-Class match dscp ef</pre>

Architecture for Voice, Video and Integrated Data (AVVID)

IETF DiffServ Service Class	DSCP	IEEE 802.11e	
		User Priority	Access Category
Network Control	CS7	0	AC_BE (based on configuration)
Network Control	CS6	0	AC_BE (based on configuration)
Telephony	EF	6	AC_VO
VOICE-ADMIT	44	6	AC_VO

IETF DiffServ Service Class	DSCP	IEEE 802.11e	
		User Priority	Access Category
Signaling	CS5	5	AC_VI
Multimedia Conferencing	AF41 AF42 AF43	4	AC_VI
Real-Time Interactive	CS4	5	AC_VI
Multimedia Streaming	AF31 AF32 AF33	4	AC_VI
Broadcast Video	CS3	4	AC_VI
Low-Latency Data	AF21 AF22 AF23	3	AC_BE
OAM	CS2	0	AC_BE
High-Throughput Data	AF11 AF12 AF13	2	AC_BK
Standard	DF	0	AC_BE
Low-Priority Data	CS1	1	AC_BK
Remaining	Remaining	0	

How to apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

Information about Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (BDRL) feature defines rate limits on both upstream and downstream traffic. These rate limits are individually configured. The rate limits can be configured on WLAN directly instead of QoS profiles, which will override QoS profile values. The WLAN rate limiting will always supersede Global QoS setting for controller and clients.

BDRL feature defines throughput limits for clients on their wireless networks and allows setting a priority service to a particular set of clients.

The following four QoS profiles are available to configure the rate limits:

- Gold
- Platinum
- Silver
- Bronze

The QoS profile is applied to all clients on the associated SSID. Therefore all clients connected to the same SSID will have the same rate limits.

To configure BDRL, select the QoS profile and configure the various rate limiting parameters. When rate limiting parameters are set to 0, the rate limiting feature is not functional. Each WLAN has a QoS profile associated with it in addition to the configuration in the QoS profile.



Note BDRL in a mobility Anchor-Foreign setup must be configured both on Anchor and Foreign controller. As a best practice, it is recommended to perform identical configuration on both the controllers to avoid breakage of any feature.

BDRL is supported on Guest anchor scenarios. The feature is supported on IRCM guest scenarios with AireOS as Guest anchor or Guest Foreign. Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller uses **Policing** option to rate limit the traffic.

To apply metal policy with BDRL, perform the following tasks:

- [Configure Metal Policy on SSID](#)
- [Configure Metal Policy on Client](#)
- [#unique_1885](#)
- [#unique_1886](#)
- [#unique_1887](#)
- [#unique_1888](#)

Prerequisites for Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- Client metal policy is applied through AAA-override.
- You must specify the metal policy on ISE server.
- AAA-override must be enabled on policy profile.

Configure Metal Policy on SSID

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description policy-profile1	Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy.
Step 4	service-policy input <i>input-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up	Sets platinum policy for input.
Step 5	service-policy output <i>output-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum	Sets platinum policy for output.

Configure Metal Policy on Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# description profile with aaa override</pre>	Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy.
Step 4	aaa-override Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override</pre>	Enables AAA override on the WLAN. Note After AAA-override is enabled and ISE server starts sending policy, client policy defined in service-policy client will not take effect.

Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting for All Traffic

Use the police action in the policy-map to configure BDRL.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample 1</pre>	Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy-map names can contain alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters.
Step 3	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-pmap)# class class-default</pre>	Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters policy-map class configuration mode.
Step 4	police <i>rate</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000</pre>	Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000.

Configure Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Based on Traffic Classification

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample2	Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy-map names can contain alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters.
Step 3	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)# class class-sample-youtube	Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters policy-map class configuration mode.
Step 4	police <i>rate</i> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)# police 1000000	Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000.
Step 5	conform-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# conform-action drop	Specifies the drop action to take on packets that conform to the rate limit.
Step 6	exceed-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exceed-action drop	Specifies the drop action to take on packets that exceeds the rate limit.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exit	Exits the policy-map class configuration mode.
Step 8	set dscp default Example: Device(config-pmap-c)# set dscp default	Sets the DSCP value to default.
Step 9	police <i>rate</i> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000	Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	exit Example: Device(config-pmap-c) # exit	Exits the policy-map class configuration mode.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-pmap) # exit	Exits the policy-map configuration mode.
Step 12	class-map match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config) # class-map match-any class-sample-youtube	Selects a class map.
Step 13	match protocol <i>protocol</i> Example: Device(config-cmap) # match protocol youtube	Configures the match criteria for a class map on the basis of the specified protocol.

Apply Bi-Directional Rate Limiting Policy Map to Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config) # wireless profile policy policy-profile3	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # description policy-profile3	Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy.
Step 4	service-policy client input <i>input-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # service-policy client input platinum-up	Sets the input client service policy as platinum.
Step 5	service-policy client output <i>output-policy</i> Example:	Sets the output client service policy as platinum.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client output platinum	
Step 6	service-policy input <i>input-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up	Sets the input service policy as platinum.
Step 7	service-policy output <i>output-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum	Sets the output service policy as platinum.

Apply Metal Policy with Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile3	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description policy-profile3	Adds a user defined description to the new wireless policy.
Step 4	service-policy client input <i>input-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client input platinum-up	Sets the input client service policy as platinum.
Step 5	service-policy client output <i>output-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client output platinum	Sets the output client service policy as platinum.
Step 6	service-policy input <i>input-policy</i> Example:	Sets the input service policy as platinum.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input platinum-up	
Step 7	service-policy output <i>output-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy output platinum	Sets the output service policy as platinum.
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Exits the policy configuration mode.
Step 9	policy-map <i>policy-map</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map policy-sample 1	Creates a named object representing a set of policies that are to be applied to a set of traffic classes. Policy map names can contain alphabetic, hyphen, or underscore characters, are case sensitive, and can be up to 40 characters.
Step 10	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)# class class-default	Associates a class map with the policy map, and enters configuration mode for the specified system class.
Step 11	police <i>rate</i> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)# police 500000	Configures traffic policing (average rate, in bits per second). Valid values are 8000 to 200000000.

How to apply Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

Information About Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

The Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature adds bi-directional rate limiting for each wireless clients on 802.11ac Wave 2 APs in a Flex local switching configuration. Earlier, the Wave 2 APs supported only per-flow rate limiting for a wireless client. When wireless client starts multiple streams of traffic, the client-based rate limiting does not work as expected. This limitation is addressed by this feature.

For instance, if the controller is configured with QoS policy and you expect each client to have a rate limiting cap of 1000 kbps. Due to per-flow rate limiting on the AP, if the wireless client starts a Youtube stream and FTP stream, each of them will be rate limited at 1000 Kbps, therefore the client will be 2000 Kbps rates. This is not desirable.

Use Cases

The following are the use cases supported by the Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature:

Use Case -1

Configuring only default class map

If policy map is configured only with default class map and mapped only to QoS client policy, AP does a per client rate limit to the client connected to AP.

Use Case-2**Changing from per client rate limit to per flow rate limit**

If policy map is configured with another different class map along with a default class map and mapped to QoS client policy, AP performs per flow rate limit to client. As policy map has different class map along with the default class map. The per client rate limit values are cleared, if the AP has previously configured per client rate limit.

If the policy map has more than one class map, then additional class map is configured along with the default class map. So, the rate limit is applied from per client to per flow. The per client rate limit value is deleted from the rate info token bucket.

Use Case-3**Changing from per flow rate limit to per client limit**

If different class map is removed from policy map and policy map has only one default class map, AP performs a per client rate limit to client.

The following covers the high-level steps for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting feature:

1. Configure a policy map to WLAN through policy profile.
2. Map the QoS related policy map to WLAN.
3. Configure policy map with the default class map.
4. Configure different police rate value for class Default map.



Note If policy map has class Default with valid police rate value, AP applies that rate limit to the overall client data traffic flow.

5. Apply the policy map with class Default to QoS client policy in WLAN policy profile.

Prerequisites for Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- This feature is exclusive to QoS client policy, that is, the policy profile must have only QoS Policy or policy target as client.
- If policy map has class default with valid police rate value, AP applies that rate limit value to the overall client data traffic flow.

Restrictions on Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

- If policy map has class map other than the class Default map, the per client rate limit does not work in AP.

- From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.x onwards, AAA override can be leveraged to push the attributes to achieve per client rate limit.
- From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6 onwards, per client bi-directional rate limit is supported on 802.11ac Wave 2 APs and 11ax APs in the Flex local switching configuration. However, due to the [CSCwh74415](#) defect, in order to avoid the latest QoS policy return (which needs to be applied to all the clients connected to the same AP, thereby overriding all other QoS policies), you must add the AV-pairs in the authorization profile on Cisco ISE.

Configuring Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.

Step 2 Click the Policy Profile Name.

The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed.

Note

The **Edit Policy Profile** window is displayed and configured in default class map only.

Step 3 Choose the **QOS And AVC** tab.

Step 4 In the **QoS Client Policy** settings, choose the policies from the **Egress** and **Ingress** drop-down lists.

Note

You need to apply the default policy map to the QoS Client Policy.

Step 5 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Verifying Per Client Bi-Directional Rate Limiting

To verify whether per client is applied in AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show rate-limit client
Config:
      mac vap rt_rate_out rt_rate_in rt_burst_out rt_burst_in nrt_rate_out nrt_rate_in
      nrt_burst_out nrt_burst_in
A0:D3:7A:12:6C:5E  0          0          0          0          0          0
                   0          0
Statistics:
      name      up down
      Unshaped  0   0
      Client RT pass 697610 8200
      Client NRT pass  0   0
      Client RT drops  0   0
      Client NRT drops  0  16
                   9  180  0
Per client rate limit:
      mac vap rate_out rate_in      policy
A0:D3:7A:12:6C:5E  0      88      23 per_client_rate_2
```

Configuring BDRL Using AAA Override

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device (config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device (config-wireless-policy) # aaa	Configures AAA override to apply policies coming from the AAA server or ISE the Cisco Identify Services Engine (ISE) server. The following attributes are available in the RADIUS server: • Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Average-Contract: 8001 • Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Average-Contract: 8002 • Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract: 8003 • Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract: 8004 • Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Average-Contract-Upstream: 8005 • Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Average-Contract-Upstream: 8006 • Airespace-Data-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract-Upstream: 8007 • Airespace-Real-Time-Bandwidth-Burst-Contract-Upstream: 8008 Note 8001, 8002, 8003, 8004, 8005, 8006, 8007, and 8008 are the desired rate-limit values configured as an example.

Verifying Bi-Directional Rate-Limit

To verify the bi-directional rate limit, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address E8-8E-00-00-00-71 detail
Client MAC Address : e88e.0000.0071
Client MAC Type    : Universally Administered Address
Client IPv4 Address : 100.0.7.94
Client Username    : e88e00000071
AP MAC Address     : 0a0b.0c00.0200
AP Name            : AP6B8B4567-0002
AP slot            : 0
Client State       : Associated
Policy Profile     : dnas_qos_profile_policy
Flex Profile       : N/A
Wireless LAN Id    : 10
WLAN Profile Name  : QoS_wlan
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): QoS_wlan
BSSID : 0a0b.0c00.0200
Connected For      : 28 seconds
Protocol           : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
Channel            : 1
Client IIF-ID      : 0xa0000034
Association Id     : 10
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Idle state timeout : N/A
Session Timeout    : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1777 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name  : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support        : Enabled
U-APSD Support     : Disabled
Fastlane Support   : Disabled
Client Active State : In-Active
Power Save         : OFF
Supported Rates    : 1.0,2.0,5.5,6.0,9.0,11.0,12.0,18.0,24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
  QoS Average Data Rate Upstream      : 8005 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream : 8006 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream         : 8007 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream : 8008 (kbps)
  QoS Average Data Rate Downstream     : 8001 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream : 8002 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream        : 80300 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream : 8004 (kbps)
```

To verify the rate-limit details from the AP terminal, use the following command

```
Device# show rate-limit client
Config:
mac vap rt_rate_out rt_rate_in rt_burst_out rt_burst_in nrt_rate_out nrt_rate_in nrt_burst_out
nrt_burst_in
00:1C:F1:09:85:E7 0 8001 8002 8003 8004 8005 8006 8007 8008
Statistics:
name up down
Unshaped 0 0
Client RT pass 0 0
Client NRT pass 0 0
Client RT drops 0 0
Client NRT drops 0 0
```

```
Per client rate limit:  
mac vap rate_out rate_in policy
```

How to Configure Wireless QoS

Configuring a Policy Map with Class Map (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > QoS**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Add QoS** window.
- Step 3** In the text box next to the **Policy Name**, enter the name of the new policy map that is being added.
- Step 4** Click **Add Class-Maps**.
- Step 5** Configure **AVC** based policies or **User Defined** policies. To enable **AVC** based policies, and configure the following:
- a) Choose either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
 - b) Choose the required **Mark Type**. If you choose **DSCP** or **User Priority**, you must specify the appropriate **Mark Value**.
 - c) Check the **Drop** check box to drop traffic from specific sources.

Note

When **Drop** is enabled, the **Mark Type** and **Police(kbps)** options are disabled.

- d) Based on the chosen **Match Type**, select the required protocols from the **Available Protocol(s)** list and move them to the **Selected Protocol(s)** list. These selected protocols are the ones from which traffic is dropped.
- e) Click **Save**.

Note

To add more Class Maps, repeat steps 4 and 5.

- Step 6** To enable **User-Defined** QoS policy, and the configure the following:
- a) Choose either **Match Any** or **Match All**.
 - b) Choose either **ACL** or **DSCP** as the **Match Type** from the drop-down list, and then specify the appropriate **Match Value**.
 - c) Choose the required **Mark Type** to associate with the mark label. If you choose *DSCP*, you must specify an appropriate **Mark Value**.
 - d) Check the **Drop** check box to drop traffic from specific sources.

Note

When **Drop** is enabled, the **Mark Type** and **Police(kbps)** options are disabled.

- e) Click **Save**.

Note

To define actions for all the remaining traffic, in the Class Default, choose **Mark** and/or **Police(kbps)** accordingly.

Step 7 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Class Map (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure class maps for voice and video traffic:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	class-map <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map test	Creates a class map.
Step 3	match dscp <i>dscp-value</i> Example: Device(config-cmap)# match dscp 46	Matches the DSCP value in the IPv4 and IPv6 packets. Note By default for the class map the value is match-all.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-cmap)# end	Exits the class map configuration and returns to the privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show class-map <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device# show class-map class_map_name	Verifies the class map details.

Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click the name of the policy profile.

Step 3 In the **Edit Policy Profile** window, click the **QoS and AVC** tab.

Step 4 Under **QoS SSID Policy**, choose the appropriate **Ingress** and **Egress** policies for WLANs.

Note

The ingress policies can be differentiated from the egress policies by the suffix *-up*. For example, the Platinum ingress policy is named *platinum-up*.

Step 5 Under **QoS Client Policy**, choose the appropriate **Ingress** and **Egress** policies for clients.

Step 6 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Note

Only custom policies are displayed under **QoS Client Policy**. AutoQoS policies are auto generated and not displayed for user selection.

Configuring Policy Profile to Apply QoS Policy (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy qostest</pre>	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	service-policy client {input output} <i>policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy client input policy-map-client</pre>	Applies the policy. The following options are available. • input—Assigns the client policy for ingress direction on the policy profile. • output—Assigns the client policy for egress direction on the policy profile.
Step 4	service-policy {input output} <i>policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# service-policy input policy-map-ssid</pre>	Applies the policy to the BSSID. The following options are available. • input—Assigns the policy-map to all clients in WLAN. • output—Assigns the policy-map to all clients in WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.

Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags**.
- Step 2** On the **Manage Tags** page in the **Policy** tab, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add Policy Tag** window that is displayed, enter a name and description for the policy tag.
- Step 4** Map the required WLAN IDs and WLAN profiles with appropriate policy profiles.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Applying Policy Profile to Policy Tag (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # wireless tag policy qostag	Configures policy tag and enters the policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy profile-policy-name Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # wlan test policy qostest	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag) # end	Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	show wireless tag policy summary Example: Device# show wireless tag policy summary	Displays the configured policy tags. Note To view the detailed information of a policy tag, use the show wireless tag policy detailed policy-tag-name command.

Attaching Policy Tag to an AP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures Cisco APs and enters the ap profile configuration mode.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag qostag	Maps a Policy tag to the AP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Saves the configuration and exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show ap tag summary Example: Device# show ap tag summary	Displays the ap details and tags associated to it.

Configuring Custom QoS Mapping

For interworking with IP networks, a map is devised between the 802.11e user priorities and the IP differentiated services code point (DSCP). Enable Hotspot 2.0 on the WLAN to support mapping exception.



Note Custom QoS mapping only applies to Hotspot 2.0.

Mapping is specified as DSCP ranges to individual user priority values, and as a set of exceptions with one-to-one mapping between DSCP values and UP values. If a QoS map is enabled and user-configurable mappings are not added, the default values are used.



Note Egress = Downstream = Output and Ingress = Upstream = Input

The following table shows a QoS map, where an AP provides a wireless client with the required mapping from IP DSCP to 802.11e user priority.

Table 109: Default DSCP-Range-to-User Priority Mapping

IP DSCP Range	802.11e User Priority
0-7	0
8-15	1
16-23	2
24-31	3
32-39	4
40-47	5
48-55	6
56-63	7

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile hs2-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	qos-map dscp-to-up-range <i>user-priority up-to-dscp dscp-start dscp-end</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# qos-map dscp-to-up-range 6 52 23 62	Configures DSCP-to-user priority mapping. You can configure up to eight configuration entries; one for each <i>user-priority</i> value. If you do not configure a custom value, a non-configured value (0xFF) is sent to the AP. Use the no form of this command to disable the configuration. To delete all the custom

	Command or Action	Purpose
		mappings, use the no dscp-to-up-range command.

Configuring DSCP-to-User Priority Mapping Exception

When you configure a QoS mapping or exception, a custom QoS map is created and sent to the corresponding AP.

If there are no DSCP-to-user priority mapping or exception entries, an empty QoS map is used.

The following table shows the set of exceptions with one-to-one mapping between DSCP values and user priority values.

Table 110: Default DSCP-Range-to-User Priority Mapping Exceptions

IP DSCP	802.11e User Priority
0	0
2	1
4	1
6	1
10	2
12	2
14	2
18	3
20	3
22	3
26	4
34	5
46	6
48	7
56	7



Note Voice admission control should be disabled for user priorities 6 and 7, from the controller GUI. To disable Admission Control (ACM), choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Media Parameters**.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile hs2-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	qos-map dscp-to-up-exception <i>dscp-num</i> <i>user-priority</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# qos-map dscp-to-up-exception 42 6	Configures DSCP-to-user priority exception.

Configuring Trust Upstream DSCP Value

The controller marks the 802.11 user priority value in Traffic Identifier (TID) field based on the DSCP value in IP header.



Note The AP forwards the DSCP value to Air, if 802.11 user priority value is set.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile hs2-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	qos-map trust-dscp-upstream Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# qos-map trust-dscp-upstream	Configures the AP to trust upstream DSCP instead of user priority. Use the no form of the command to disable the configuration. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		From the Cisco IOS XE 17.4.x release onwards, the qos-map trust-dscp-upstream is the default setting so that client DSCP is, by default, maintained end to end. Note When the trust-dscp-upstream command is enabled, the value of DSCP is 18. Silver is the default if nothing is configured.



CHAPTER 149

Wireless Auto-QoS

-
- [Information About Auto QoS, on page 1565](#)
- [How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS, on page 1566](#)

Information About Auto QoS

Wireless Auto QoS automates deployment of wireless QoS features. It has a set of predefined profiles which can be further modified by the customer to prioritize different traffic flows. Auto-QoS matches traffic and assigns each matched packet to qos-groups. This allows the output policy map to put specific qos-groups into specific queues, including into the priority queue.

AutoQoS Policy Configuration

Table 111: AutoQoS Policy Configuration

Mode	Client Ingress	Client Egress	BSSID Ingress	BSSID Egress	Port Ingress	Port Egress	Radio
Voice	N/A	N/A	P3	P4	N/A	P7	ACM on
Guest	N/A	N/A	P5	P6	N/A	P7	
Fastlane	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	P7	edca-parameters fastlane
Enterprise-avc	N/A	N/A	P1	P2	N/A	P7	

P1	AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Input-AVC-Policy
P2	AutoQos-4.0-wlan-ET-SSID-Output-Policy
P3	platinum-up
P4	platinum
P5	AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Input-Policy

P6	AutoQos-4.0-wlan-GT-SSID-Output-Policy
P7	AutoQos-4.0-wlan-Port-Output-Policy

How to Configure Wireless AutoQoS

Configuring Wireless AutoQoS on Profile Policy

You can enable AutoQoS on a profile policy.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	wireless autoqos policy-profile <i>policy-name</i> mode { enterprise-avc fastlane guest voice } Example: Device# wireless autoqos policy-profile test-profile mode voice	Configures AutoQoS wireless policy. • enterprise-avc—Enables AutoQoS Wireless Enterprise AVC Policy. • fastlane—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Fastlane Policy. • guest—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Guest Policy. • voice—Enable AutoQoS Wireless Voice Policy. Note AutoQoS MIB attribute does not support full functionality with service policy. Service policy must be configured manually. Currently, there is only support for AutoQoS mode.

What to do next



Note After enabling AutoQoS, we recommend that you wait for a few seconds for the policy to install and then try and modify the AutoQoS policy maps if required; or retry if the modification is rejected.

Disabling Wireless AutoQoS

To globally disable Wireless AutoQoS:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	shutdown Example: Device# shutdown	Shuts down the policy profile.
Step 3	wireless autoqos disable Example: Device# wireless autoqos disable	Globally disables wireless AutoQoS.
Step 4	[no] shutdown Example: Device# no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile. Note Disabling Auto QoS does not reset global radio configurations like CAC and EDCA parameters.

Rollback AutoQoS Configuration (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Services > QoS .
Step 2	Click Disable AutoQoS .
Step 3	Click Yes to confirm.
-

Rollback AutoQoS Configuration

Before you begin



Note AutoQoS MIB attribute does not support the full functionality with service policy. Currently, there is only support for AutoQoS mode. Service policy must be configured manually.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	clear platform software autoqos config template { enterprise_avc guest} Example: Device# clear platform software autoqos config template guest	Resets AutoQoS configuration. - enterprise-avc—Resets AutoQoS Enterprise AVC Policy Template. - guest—Resets AutoQoS Guest Policy Template.

Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click on the **Policy Profile Name**.
- Step 3** Go to **QOS and AVC** tab.
- Step 4** From the **Auto Qos** drop-down list, choose **None**.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Clearing Wireless AutoQoS Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	shutdown Example: Device# shutdown	Shuts down the policy profile.
Step 3	wireless autoqos policy-profile <i>policy-name</i> mode clear	Clears the configured AutoQoS wireless policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device# wireless autoqos policy-profile test-profile mode clear	
Step 4	[no] shutdown Example: no shutdown	Enables the wireless policy profile.

Viewing AutoQoS on policy profile

Before you begin

AutoQoS is supported on the local mode and flex mode. AutoQoS configures a set of policies and radio configurations depending on the template. It is possible to override the service-policy that is configured by AutoQoS. The latest configuration takes effect, with AAA override policy being of highest priority.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	show wireless profile policy detailed <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device# show wireless profile policy detailed testqos	Shows policy-profile detailed parameters.



CHAPTER 150

Native Profiling

- [Information About Native Profiling, on page 1571](#)
- [Creating a Class Map \(GUI\), on page 1572](#)
- [Creating a Class Map \(CLI\), on page 1573](#)
- [Creating a Service Template \(GUI\), on page 1575](#)
- [Creating a Service Template \(CLI\), on page 1576](#)
- [Creating a Parameter Map, on page 1577](#)
- [Creating a Policy Map \(GUI\), on page 1578](#)
- [Creating a Policy Map \(CLI\), on page 1578](#)
- [Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode, on page 1580](#)
- [Verifying Native Profile Configuration, on page 1581](#)

Information About Native Profiling

You can profile devices based on HTTP and DHCP to identify the end devices on the network. You can configure device-based policies and enforce these policies per user or per device policy on the network.

Policies allow profiling of mobile devices and basic onboarding of the profiled devices to a specific VLAN. They also assign ACL and QoS or configure session timeouts.

The policies are defined based on the following attributes:

- User group or user role
- Device type such as Windows clients, smartphones, tablets, and so on
- Service Set Identifier (SSID)
- Location, based on the access point group that the end point is connected to
- Time of the day
- Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) type, to check what EAP method that the client is getting connected to

When a wireless client joins an access point, certain QoS policies get enforced on the access point. One such feature is the native profiling for both upstream and downstream traffic at AP. The native profiling feature when clubbed with AAA override supports specific set of policies based on the time of day and day of week. The AAA override then applies these policies coming from a RADIUS server to the access point.

Let's consider a use case of time of the day in conjunction with user role. Usually, the user role is used as an extra matching criteria along with the time of day. You can club the time of day usage with any matching criteria to get the desired result. The matching will be performed when the client joins the controller .

You can configure policies as two separate components:

- Defining policy attributes as service templates that are specific to clients joining the network and applying policy match criteria
- Applying match criteria to the policy.



Note Before proceeding with the native profile configuration, ensure that HTTP Profiling and DHCP Profiling are enabled.



Note Native profiling is not supported with FlexConnect Local Authentication and Local Switching. Hence, do not configure **no central switching**, **no central authentication**, and **subscriber-policy-name name** commands together. ISSU will fail for this type of configuration. Ensure that you remove the configuration before attempting ISSU.

To configure Native Profiling, use one of the following procedures:

- Create a service template
- Create a class map



Note You can apply a service template using either a class map or parameter map.

- Create a parameter-map and associate the service template to parameter-map
 - Create a policy map
 1. If class-map has to be used: Associate the class-map to the policy-map and associate the service-template to the class-map.
 2. If parameter-map has to be used: Associate the parameter-map to the policy-map
 - Associate the policy-map to the policy profile.

Creating a Class Map (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Click **Configuration > Services > QoS**.

- Step 2** In the **QoS – Policy** area, click **Add** to create a new QoS Policy or click the one you want to edit.
- Step 3** Add **Add Class Map** and enter the details.
- Step 4** Click **Save**.
- Step 5** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

Creating a Class Map (CLI)



Note Configuration of class maps via CLI offer more options and can be more granular than GUI.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	class-map type control subscriber match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_user	Specifies the class map type and name.
Step 3	match username <i>username</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match username ciscoise	Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria.
Step 4	class-map type control subscriber match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_userrole	Specifies the class map type and name.
Step 5	match user-role <i>user-role</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match user-role engineer	Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria.
Step 6	class-map type control subscriber match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example:	Specifies the class map type and name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_oui	
Step 7	match oui <i>oui-address</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match oui 48.f8.b3	Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria.
Step 8	class-map type control subscriber match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_mac	Specifies the class map type and name.
Step 9	match mac-address <i>mac-address</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match mac-address 0040.96b9.4a0d	Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria.
Step 10	class-map type control subscriber match-any <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-any cls_devtype	Specifies the class map type and name.
Step 11	match device-type <i>device-type</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match device-type windows	Specifies the class map attribute filter criteria.
Step 12	class-map type control subscriber match-all <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-all match_tod	Specifies the class map type and name.
Step 13	match join-time-of-day <i>start-time end-time</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match join-time-of-day 10:30 12:30	Specifies a match to the time of day. Here, join time is considered for matching. For example, if the match filter is set from 11:00 am to 2:00 pm, a device joining at 10:59 am is not considered, even if it acquires credentials after 11:00 am. Here, <i>start-time</i> and <i>end-time</i> specifies the 24-hour format.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Use the show class-map type control subscriber name <i>name</i> command to verify the configuration. Note You should also disable AAA override for this command to work.
Step 14	match day <i>day-of-week</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match day Monday	Matches day of the week. Use the show class-map type control subscriber name <i>name</i> command to verify the configuration.
Step 15	class-map type control subscriber match-all <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-all match_eap	Specifies the class map type and filter as EAP.
Step 16	match eap-type <i>eap-type</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match eap-type peap	Specifies the policy match with EAP type. Use the show class-map type control subscriber name <i>name</i> command to verify the configuration.
Step 17	class-map type control subscriber match-all <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# class-map type control subscriber match-all match_device	Specifies the class map type and filter as device.
Step 18	match device-type <i>device-name</i> Example: Device(config-filter-control-classmap)# match device-type android	Matches name using the device type. Type a question mark (?) after the device type and select the device from the list. Note You should enable the device classifier for the device list to be populated.

Creating a Service Template (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Local Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Local Policy** page, **Service Template** tab, click **ADD**.

- Step 3** In the **Create Service Template** window, enter the following parameters:
- **Service Template Name:** Enter a name for the template.
 - **VLAN ID:** Enter the VLAN ID for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 4094.
 - **Session Timeout (secs):** Sets the timeout duration for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 65535.
 - **Access Control List:** Choose the Access Control List from the drop-down list.
 - **Ingress QOS:** Choose the input QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list
 - **Egress QOS:** Choose the output QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list.

Step 4 Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Creating a Service Template (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	service-template <i>service-template-name</i> Example: Device(config)# service-template svcl	Enters service template configuration mode.
Step 3	vnid <i>vnid</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# vnid test	Specifies the VXLAN network identifier (VNID). Use the show service-template <i>service-template-name</i> command to verify the configuration.
Step 4	access-group <i>access-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# access-group acl-auto	Specifies the access list to be applied.
Step 5	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# vlan 10	Specifies VLAN ID. Valid range is from 1-4094.
Step 6	absolute-timer <i>timer</i> Example:	Specifies session timeout value for a service template. Valid range is from 1-65535.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-service-template)# absolute-timer 1000	
Step 7	service-policy qos input <i>qos-policy</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos input in_qos	Configures an input QoS policy for the client.
Step 8	service-policy qos output <i>qos-policy</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos output out_qos	Configures an output QoS policy for the client.

Creating a Parameter Map

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service param	Specifies the parameter map type and name.
Step 3	map-index map device-type eq <i>filter-name</i> Example: Device(config-parameter-map-filter)# 1 map device-type eq "windows" mac-address eq 3c77.e602.2f91 username eq "cisco"	Specifies the parameter map attribute filter criteria. Multiple filters are used in the example provided here.
Step 4	map-index service-template <i>service-template-name</i> precedence <i>precedence-num</i> Example: Device(config-parameter-map-filter-submode)# 1 service-template svcl precedence 150	Specifies the service template and its precedence.

Creating a Policy Map (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Security** > **Local Policy** > **Policy Map** tab..
- Step 2** Enter a name for the Policy Map in the **Policy Map Name** text field.
- Step 3** Click **Add**
- Step 4** Choose the service template from the **Service Template** drop-down list.
- Step 5** For the following parameters select the type of filter from the drop-down list and enter the required match criteria
- Device Type
 - User Role
 - User Name
 - OUI
 - MAC Address
- Step 6** Click **Add Criteria**
- Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating a Policy Map (CLI)

Before you begin

Before removing a policy map or parameter map, you should remove it from the target or shut down the WLAN profile or delete the session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map type control subscriber <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map type control subscriber polmap5	Specifies the policy map type.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	event identity-update match-all Example: <pre>Device(config-event-control-policymap)# event identity-update match-all</pre>	Specifies the match criteria to the policy map.
Step 4	You can apply a service template using either a class map or a parameter map, as shown here. • <i>class-num class class-map-name do-until-failure</i> • <i>action-index activate service-template service-template-name</i> • <i>action-index map attribute-to-service table parameter-map-name</i> Example: The following example shows how a class-map with a service-template has to be applied: <pre>Device(config-class-control-policymap)# 10 class cls_mac do-until-failure Device(config-action-control-policymap)# 10 activate service-template svc1</pre> Example: The following example shows how a parameter map has to be applied (service template is already associated with the parameter map 'param' while creating it): <pre>Device(config-action-control-policymap)#1 map attribute-to-service table param</pre>	Configures the local profiling policy class map number and specifies how to perform the action or activates the service template or maps an identity-update attribute to an auto-configured template.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-action-control-policymap)# end</pre>	Exits configuration mode.
Step 6	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 7	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy wlan-policy-profilename</pre>	Configures a wireless policy profile. Caution Do not configure aaa-override for native profiling under a named wireless profile policy. Native profiling is applied at a lower priority than AAA policy. If aaa-override is enabled, the AAA policies will override native profile policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	description <i>profile-policy-description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "default policy profile"	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 9	dhcp-tlv-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# dhcp-tlv-caching	Configures DHCP TLV caching on a WLAN.
Step 10	http-tlv-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# http-tlv-caching	Configures client HTTP TLV caching on a WLAN.
Step 11	subscriber-policy-name <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# subscriber-policy-name polmap5	Configures the subscriber policy name.
Step 12	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 1	Configures a VLAN name or VLAN ID.
Step 13	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration.

Configuring Native Profiling in Local Mode

To configure native profiling in the local mode, you must follow the steps described in [#unique_1932](#). In the policy profile, you must enable central switching as described in the step given below in order to configure native profiling.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Enables central switching.

Verifying Native Profile Configuration

Use the following **show** commands to verify the native profile configuration:

```
Device# show wireless client device summary
```

```
Active classified device summary
```

MAC Address	Device-type	User-role
Protocol-map		

1491.82b8.f94b	Microsoft-Workstation	sales
9		
1491.82bc.2fd5	Windows7-Workstation	sales
41		

```
Device# show wireless client device cache
```

```
Cached classified device info
```

MAC Address	Device-type	User-role
Protocol-map		

2477.031b.aal8	Microsoft-Workstation
9	
30a8.db3b.a753	Un-Classified Device
9	
4400.1011.e8b5	Un-Classified Device
9	
980c.a569.7dd0	Un-Classified Device

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 4c34.8845.e32c detail | s
```

```
Session Manager:
```

```
Interface :
```

```
IIF ID      : 0x90000002
```

```
Device Type : Microsoft-Workstation
```

```
Protocol Map : 0x000009
```

```
Authorized   : TRUE
```

```
Session timeout : 1800
```

```
Common Session ID: 78380209000000174BF2B5B9
```

```
Acct Session ID : 0
```

```
Auth Method Status List
```

```
Method : MAB
```

```
SM State      : TERMINATE
```

```
Authen Status : Success
```

```
Local Policies:
```

```
Service Template : wlan_svc_C414.3CCA.0A51 (priority 254)
```

```
Absolute-Timer : 1800
```

```
Server Policies:
```

```
Resultant Policies:
```

```
Filter-ID      : acl-auto
```

```
Input QOS      : in_qos
```

```
Output QOS     : out_qos
```

```
Idle timeout   : 60 sec
```

```
VLAN           : 10
```

```
Absolute-Timer : 1000
```

Use the following **show** command to verify the class map details for a class map name:

```
Device# show class-map type control subscriber name test
```

Class-map	Action	Exec	Hit	Miss	Comp
match-any test	match day Monday	0	0	0	0

```
match-any test      match join-time-of-day 8:00 18:00  0      0      0      0
Key:
  "Exec" - The number of times this line was executed
  "Hit"  - The number of times this line evaluated to TRUE
  "Miss" - The number of times this line evaluated to FALSE
  "Comp" - The number of times this line completed the execution of its
           condition without a need to continue on to the end
```




CHAPTER 151

Air Time Fairness

- [Information About Air Time Fairness, on page 1583](#)
- [Restrictions on Cisco Air Time Fairness, on page 1585](#)
- [Cisco Air Time Fairness \(ATF\) Use Cases, on page 1586](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Air Time Fairness \(ATF\), on page 1586](#)
- [Verifying Cisco ATF Configurations, on page 1590](#)
- [Verifying Cisco ATF Statistics, on page 1590](#)

Information About Air Time Fairness

Cisco Air Time Fairness (ATF) allows network administrators to group devices of a defined category and enables some groups to receive traffic from the WLAN more frequently than the other groups. Therefore, some groups are entitled to more air time than the other groups.

Cisco ATF has the following capabilities:

- Allocates Wi-Fi air time for user groups or device categories.
- Air time fairness is defined by the network administrator and not by the network.
- Provides a simplified mechanism for allocating air time.
- Dynamically adapts to changing conditions in a WLAN.
- Enables a more efficient fulfillment of service-level agreements.
- Augments standards-based Wi-Fi QoS mechanisms.

By enabling network administrators to define what fairness means in their environments with regards to the amount of air time per client group, the amount of traffic is also controlled.

To control air time on a percentage basis, the air time including both uplink and downlink transmissions of a client or SSID is continuously measured.

Only air time in the downlink direction, that is AP to client, can be controlled accurately by the AP. Although air time in the uplink direction, that is client to AP can be measured, it cannot be controlled. Although the AP can constrain air time for packets that it sends to clients, the AP can only measure air time for packets that it hears from clients because it cannot strictly limit their air time.

Cisco ATF establishes air time limits (defined as a percentage of total air time) and applies those limits on a per SSID basis, where the SSID is used as a parameter to define a client group. Other parameters can be used as well to define groups of clients. Furthermore, a single air time limit can be applied to individual clients.

If the air time limit for an SSID (or client) is exceeded, the packets in the downlink direction are dropped. Dropping downlink packets (AP to client) frees up air time whereas dropping uplink packets (client to AP) does not do anything to free up air time because the packet has already been transmitted over the air by the client.

Client Fair Sharing

Cisco Air Time Fairness can be enforced on clients that are associated with an SSID or WLAN. This ensures that all clients in an SSID or WLAN are treated equally based on their utilization of the radio bandwidth. This feature is useful in scenarios where one or a few clients could use the complete air time allocated for an SSID or WLAN, thereby depriving Wi-Fi experience for other clients associated with the same SSID or WLAN.

- The percentage of air time to be given to each client is recomputed every time a client connects or disconnects.
- Client fair sharing is applicable only to downstream traffic.
- Clients can be categorized into usage groups at the policy level.
- Client-based ATF metrics accumulation is performed in the transmit complete routine. This allows the air time that is unused by clients in low-usage or medium-usage groups to be accumulated to a common share pool bucket where the high-usage clients can be replenished.

Supported Access Point Platforms

Cisco ATF is supported on the following APs:

- Cisco Aironet 2700 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 1540 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 1560 Series Access Points



Note Cisco ATF is supported on MESH, if APs support ATF. ATF is supported on FlexConnect mode and the Local mode.



Note Cisco Catalyst APs offer capabilities that are equivalent to ATF by leveraging the enhancements in the Wi-Fi 6 and 6E protocols. 802.11ax features such as OFDMA, bidirectional MU-MIMO, and BSS coloring, combined with the advanced QoS features in the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers, help resolve scheduling and congestion problems, accommodate multiple users at the same time, and allocate bandwidth more efficiently.

Cisco ATF Modes

Cisco ATF operates in the following modes:

- Monitor mode in which users can do the following:
 - View the air time
 - Report air time usage for all AP transmissions
 - View reports
 - per SSID or WLAN
 - per site group/tag
 - Report air time usage at periodic intervals
 - No enforcement as part of Monitor mode
- Enforce Policy mode in which users can do the following:
 - Enforce air time based on configured policy
 - Enforce air time on the following:
 - A WLAN
 - All APs connected in a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller network
 - per site group/tag

Restrictions on Cisco Air Time Fairness

- Cisco ATF can be implemented only on data frames in the downstream direction.
- When ATF is configured in per-SSID mode, all the WLANs are disabled before you enter any ATF configuration commands. The WLANs are enabled after you enter all the ATF commands.

Cisco Air Time Fairness (ATF) Use Cases

Public Hotspots (Stadium/Airport/Convention Center/Other)

In this instance, a public network is sharing a WLAN between two (or more) service providers and the venue. Subscribers to each service provider can be grouped and allocated a certain percentage of air time.

Education

In this instance, a university is sharing a WLAN between students, faculty, and guests. The guest network can be further partitioned by the service provider, for distribution of bandwidth privileges to the guests. Each group can be assigned a certain percentage of air time.

Enterprise/Hospitality/Retail

In this instance, the venue is sharing a WLAN between employees and guests. The guest network can be further partitioned by service provider. The guests could be sub-grouped by tier of service type with each subgroup being assigned a certain percentage of air time, for example a paid group is entitled for more air time than the free group.

Time Shared Managed Hotspot

In this instance, the business entity managing the hotspot, such as a service provider or an enterprise, can allocate and subsequently lease air time to other business entities.

Configuring Cisco Air Time Fairness (ATF)

Configuring Cisco Air Time Fairness

The following are the high-level steps to configure Cisco ATF:

1. Enable Monitor mode to determine network usage (optional).
2. Create Cisco ATF policies.
3. Add WLAN ATF policies per network or per site group/tag.
4. Determine, if optimization must be enabled.
5. Periodically check the Cisco ATF statistics.

Creating a Cisco ATF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Air Time Fairness**.

- Step 2** Click the **Profiles** tab and click the **Add** button, to create a new ATF policy. The **Add ATF Policy** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Specify a name, ID, and weight to the ATF policy. Weighted ratio is used instead of percentages so that the total can exceed 100. The minimum weight that you can set is 5. For example, if you configure the weight as 50, this means that the air time for this ATF profile is 50% when applied to an policy profile.
- Step 4** Use the slider to enable or disable the **Client Sharing** feature. When you enable this option in the Web UI, the default ATF configuration is set to **Enforce** and not **Monitor**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Creating Cisco ATF Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile airtime-fairness <i>atf-policy-name atf-profile-id</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile airtime-fairness atf-policy-name 1	Creates a new Cisco ATF policy. • <i>atf-policy-name</i>—Enters the ATF profile name. • <i>atf-profile-id</i>—Enters the ATF profile ID. Range is from 0 to 511.
Step 3	weight policy-weight Example: Device(config-config-atf)# weight 5	Adds a weight to the Cisco ATF policy. • <i>policy-weight</i>—Enters the policy weight. Range is from 5 to 100.
Step 4	client-sharing Example: Device(config-config-atf)# client-sharing	Enables or disables the client sharing for Cisco ATF policy.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-config-atf)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Attaching Cisco ATF Profile to a Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**. **Policy**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Policy Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Under the **Air Time Fairness Policies** section, select the required policy for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz policies.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Attaching Cisco ATF Profile to a Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# <code>wireless profile policy profile-name</code>	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. • <i>profile-name</i> —Is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} airtime-fairness <i>atf-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# <code>dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness atf-policy-name</code>	Configures air time fairness policy for 2.4- or 5-GHz radio. • <i>atf-policy-name</i> —Is the name of the air time fairness policy. For more details on creating Cisco ATF policy, refer to the Creating Cisco ATF Policy . Note You can assign the same ATF policy to both 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz radios (or) have two different ATF policies as well.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling ATF in the RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add RF Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Under the **ATF Configuration** section, complete the following :
- Use the slider to enable or disable the **Status**. The **Mode** field is displayed.
 - Click the **Monitor** mode or **Enforced** mode radio option. If you enable the **Enforced** mode, use the slider to enable or disable **Optimization**.
 - Use the slider to enable to disable **Bridge Client Access**. This is applicable for mesh mode APs. Bridge Client Access determines the percentage of the ATF policy weight that is allocated to clients connected to the mesh APs.
- Step 5** Specify the **Airtime Allocation** value between 5 and 90.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling ATF in the RF Profile (CLI)

Cisco ATF must be enabled on 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz radios separately.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rf-profile rf-profile Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rfprof24_1	Configures an RF profile for 2.4- or 5-GHz radio.
Step 3	airtime-fairness mode {enforce-policy monitor} Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# airtime-fairness mode enforce-policy	Configures air time fairness in either of the modes: - Enforce-policy—This mode signifies that the ATF is operational. - Monitor—This mode gathers information about air time and reports air time usage.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	airtime-fairness optimization Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# airtime-fairness optimization	Enables the air time fairness optimization. Optimization is effective when the current WLAN reaches the air time limit and the other available WLANs does not use air time to its full extent.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Cisco ATF Configurations

You can verify Cisco ATF configurations using the following commands:

Table 112: Commands for Verifying Cisco ATF Configurations

Commands	Description
show wireless profile airtime-fairness summary	Displays the summary of air time fairness profiles.
show wireless profile airtime-fairness mapping	Displays the ATF policy mapping with the wireless profiles.
show ap airtime-fairness summary	Displays the ATF configuration summary of all radios.
show ap dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness	Displays the ATF configuration for 2.4-GHz radio.
show ap dot11 5ghz airtime-fairness	Displays the ATF configuration for 5-GHz radio.
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> airtime-fairness	Displays the ATF configuration or statistics for an AP.
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} airtime-fairness statistics summary	Displays the ATF statistics of 2.4- or 5GHz radio.

Verifying Cisco ATF Statistics

Table 113: ATF Statistics per WLAN

Commands	Description
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} airtime-fairness wlan <i>wlan_name</i> statistics	Displays the ATF statistics related to a WLAN.

Table 114: ATF Statistics per ATF Policy

Commands	Description
show ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} airtime-fairness policy <i>policy-name</i> statistics	Displays the ATF statistics related to an ATF policy.

Table 115: ATF Statistics per Client

Commands	Description
show ap airtime-fairness statistics client <i>mac_address</i>	Displays the ATF statistics related to a client.



CHAPTER 152

IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support

- [Information About IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support, on page 1593](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 Non-AVC QoS, on page 1593](#)
- [Verifying IPv6 Non-AVC QoS, on page 1596](#)

Information About IPv6 Non-AVC QoS Support

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, the IPv6 Non-AVC QoS feature is supported on Fabric and FlexConnect local switching, where QoS is performed at the AP, on par with the IPv4 functionality.



Note This feature is not supported on Cisco Aironet 1700 Series Access Points, Cisco Aironet 2700 Series Access Points, and Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points.

The following actions are supported for IPv6 Non-AVC QoS:

- Marking the DSCP value for IPv6 packets
- Dropping IPv6 packets based on the DSCP value
- Policing IPv6 traffic

Configuring IPv6 Non-AVC QoS

The following sections contain information about the various configurations that comprise the configuration of IPv6 Non-AVC QoS:

Marking DSCP Values for an IPv6 Packet

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map testpolicy	Creates a policy map.
Step 3	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)#class testmap	Creates a policy criteria.
Step 4	set dscp <0-63> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)#set dscp 34	Sets the DSCP value in an IPv6 packet between 0 and 63.

Dropping an IPv6 Packet with DSCP Values

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map drop_dscp	Creates a policy map.
Step 3	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)#class drop_dscp_class	Creates a policy criteria.
Step 4	police cir <8000 - 10000000000> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)#police cir 8000	Polices the committed information rate between 8000 and 10000000000. Target bit rate (Bits per second).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	conform-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)#conform action drop	Configures the conform-action drop command, the action when the rate is less than the conform burst.
Step 6	exceed-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)#exceed-action drop	Configures the exceed-action drop command, the action when the rate is within the conform and conform plus exceed burst.

Policing IPv6 Traffic

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map drop_dscp	Creates a policy map.
Step 3	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)#class drop_dscp_class	Creates a policy criteria.
Step 4	police cir <8000 - 10000000000> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)#police cir 8000	Polices the committed information rate between 8000 and 10000000000. Target bit rate (Bits per second).
Step 5	conform-action transmit Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)#conform-action transmit	Configures the conform-action transmit command, for transmitting packets.
Step 6	exceed-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)#exceed-action drop	Configures the exceed-action drop command, the action when the rate is within conform and conform plus exceed burst.

Verifying IPv6 Non-AVC QoS

- To verify the DSCP values for IPv6 packets, IPv6 packets that are dropped, and the policing of IPv6 traffic, use the **show policy-map** command:

The following is a sample output of the **show** command that verifies the DSCP value for an IPv6 packet:

```
Device# show policy-map
1 policymaps
Policy Map Set-dscp type:qos client:default
  Class Set-dscp1_ADV_UI_CLASS
    set dscp af41 (34)
  Class class-default
    no actions
```

- The following is a sample output of the **show** command that verifies the IPv6 packets that are dropped:

```
Device# show policy-map
1 policymaps
Policy Map Drop-dscp type:qos client:default
  Class Drop-dscp1_ADV_UI_CLASS
    drop

  Class class-default
    no actions
```

- The following is a sample output of the **show** command that verifies the policing of IPv6 traffic:

```
Device# show policy-map
1 policymaps
Policy Map Drop-traffic type:qos client:default
  Class Drop-traffic1_ADV_UI_CLASS
    police rate 2000000 bps (250000Bytes/s)
    conform-action
    exceed-action

  Class class-default
    no actions
```



CHAPTER 153

QoS Basic Service Set Load

- [Information About QoS Basic Set Service Load, on page 1597](#)
- [Configuring QBSS Load, on page 1598](#)
- [Verifying QoS Basic Set Service Load, on page 1600](#)

Information About QoS Basic Set Service Load

The QoS Basic Set Service (QBSS) information element (IE) knob is a per-WLAN configuration that is configured to include or exclude the QBSS IE, which is sent in beacon frames and probe responses. QBSS IE advertises the channel load information of an AP. The QBSS IE functionality is enabled by default.

Until Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1s, the enablement of Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) automatically enabled the QBSS load advertisement in the probes and beacons and there was no separate knob to turn on QBSS load IE. However, from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, this behavior has changed with the introduction of a separate configuration knob.

Until Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1s:

- When WMM was enabled on WLAN, QBSS load was advertised in the beacon and probe frames.
- When WMM was disabled on WLAN, QBSS IE was not advertised in the beacon and probe frames.

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1,

- When you enable WMM and QBSS ID on WLAN, QBSS IE is advertised in the beacon and probe frames.
- When you enable WMM on WLAN and disable QBSS load IE on WLAN, QBSS load is not advertised in the beacon and probe frames.
- When you disable WMM on WLAN and enable QBSS load IE on WLAN, QBSS IE is advertised in the beacon and probe frames.



Note By default, QBSS load IE is enabled. The behavior can be configured on policy profile.

Configuring QBSS Load

The following sections contain information about the various configurations that comprise the configuration of QoS basic service set load.

Configuring Wi-Fi Multimedia

Perform the procedure given below to create a WLAN and then enable WMM.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id [ssid] Example: Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid	Specifies the WLAN name and ID: • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the WLAN. You can use between 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>: WLAN ID. You can use between 1 to 512 alphanumeric characters. • <i>ssid</i>: Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note By default, the WLAN is disabled.
Step 3	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	wmm {allowed require} Example: Device(config-wlan)#wmm allowed	Configures WMM and allows WMM on the WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)#no shutdown	Enables WLAN.

Enabling QoS Basic Set Service Load

Perform the procedure given below to enable QBSS load.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 24	Configures VLAN name or VLAN ID.
Step 4	[no] qbss-load Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#[no] qbss-load	Enables QoS enhanced basic service set information element. (Use the no form of this command to disable the feature.)
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

What to do next

1. Create a policy tag. For more information about creating policy tags, refer to *Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)*.
2. Map the policy tag to the AP. For more information about mapping a policy tag to the AP, refer to *Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)*.

Verifying QoS Basic Set Service Load

To verify if QBSS load is enabled, use the **show wireless profile policy detailed** *named-policy-profile* command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed named-policy-profile
show wireless profile
policy detailed named-policy-profile
Policy Profile Name      : named-policy-profile
Description              :
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 91
Multicast VLAN          : 0
OSEN client VLAN        :
Multicast Filter        : DISABLED
QBSS Load               : ENABLED
Passive Client          : DISABLED
ET-Analytics            : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility       : DISABLED
WLAN Switching Policy
  Flex Central Switching : ENABLED
  Flex Central Authentication : ENABLED
  Flex Central DHCP       : ENABLED
  Flex NAT PAT            : DISABLED
  Flex Central Assoc      : ENABLED
```



PART **XI**

IPv6

- [IPv6 Client IP Address Learning, on page 1603](#)
- [IPv6 ACL, on page 1623](#)
- [IPv6 Client Mobility, on page 1635](#)
- [IPv6 Support on Flex and Mesh, on page 1639](#)
- [IPv6 CAPWAP UDP Lite Support, on page 1643](#)
- [Neighbor Discovery Proxy, on page 1645](#)
- [Address Resolution Protocol Proxy, on page 1649](#)
- [IPv6 Ready Certification, on page 1651](#)



CHAPTER 154

IPv6 Client IP Address Learning

- [Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning, on page 1603](#)
- [Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning, on page 1607](#)
- [IPv6 Address Tracking for Wireless Clients, on page 1607](#)
- [Configuring RA Throttle Policy \(CLI\), on page 1608](#)
- [Applying RA Throttle Policy on VLAN \(GUI\), on page 1609](#)
- [Applying RA Throttle Policy on a VLAN \(CLI\), on page 1610](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 Interface on a Switch \(GUI\), on page 1610](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 on Interface \(CLI\), on page 1611](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch \(GUI\), on page 1612](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch \(CLI\), on page 1612](#)
- [Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration Without DHCP on Switch \(CLI\), on page 1613](#)
- [Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration With DHCP on Switch , on page 1615](#)
- [Configuring Stateless Address Auto Configuration Without DHCP on Switch \(CLI\), on page 1616](#)
- [Native IPv6, on page 1617](#)

Information About IPv6 Client Address Learning

Client Address Learning is configured on device to learn the IPv4 and IPv6 address of wireless client, and the client's transition state maintained by the device on association and timeout.

There are three ways for an IPv6 client to acquire IPv6 addresses:

- Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC)
- Stateful DHCPv6
- Static Configuration

In all of these methods, the IPv6 client always sends a neighbor solicitation Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) request to ensure that there is no duplicate IP address on the network. The device snoops on the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) and DHCPv6 packets of the client to learn about its client IP addresses.

Address Assignment Using SLAAC

The most common method for IPv6 client address assignment is SLAAC, which provides simple plug-and-play connectivity, where clients self-assign an address based on the IPv6 prefix.

SLAAC is configured as follows:

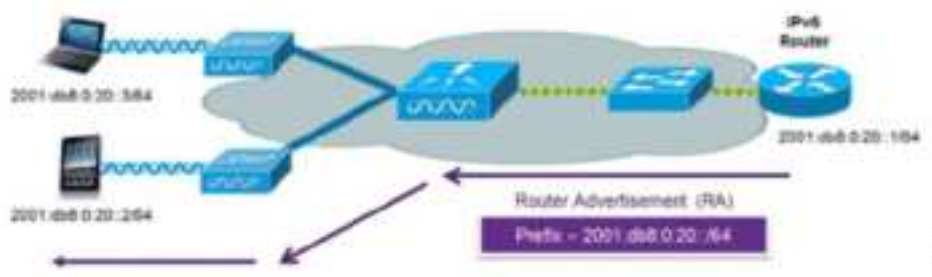
- A host sends a Router Solicitation message.
- The host waits for a Router Advertisement message.
- The host takes the first 64 bits of the IPv6 prefix from the Router Advertisement message and combines it with the 64-bit EUI-64 address (in the case of Ethernet, this is created from the MAC address) to create a global unicast address. The host also uses the source IP address, in the IP header, of the Router Advertisement message, as its default gateway.
- Duplicate Address Detection is performed by the IPv6 clients to ensure that random addresses that are picked do not collide with other clients.



Note The last 64 bits of the IPv6 address can be learned by using one of the following algorithms:

- EUI-64, which is based on the MAC address of the interface
- Private addresses that are randomly generated

Figure 35: Address Assignment Using SLAAC



The following Cisco IOS configuration commands from a Cisco-capable IPv6 router are used to enable SLAAC addressing and router advertisements:

```
ipv6 unicast-routing
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-SLAAC
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address FE80:DB8:0:20::1 linklocal
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
ipv6 enable
end
```

Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment

The use of DHCPv6 is not required for IPv6 client connectivity if SLAAC is already deployed. There are two modes of operation for DHCPv6, that is, Stateless and Stateful.

The DHCPv6 Stateless mode is used to provide clients with additional network information that is not available in the router advertisement, but not an IPv6 address, because this is already provided by SLAAC. This information includes the DNS domain name, DNS servers, and other DHCP vendor-specific options.

Figure 36: Stateful DHCPv6 Address Assignment

The following interface configuration is for a Cisco IOS IPv6 router implementing stateless DHCPv6 with SLAAC enabled:

```
ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 dhcp pool IPV6_DHCPPPOOL
address prefix 2001:db8:5:10::/64
domain-name cisco.com
dns-server 2001:db8:6:6::1
interface Vlan20
description IPv6-DHCP-Stateless
ip address 192.168.20.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 nd other-config-flag
ipv6 dhcp server IPV6_DHCPPPOOL
ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:20::1/64
end
```

Router Solicitation

A Router Solicitation message is issued by a host controller to facilitate local routers to transmit a Router Advertisement from which the controller can obtain information about local routing, or perform stateless auto configuration. Router Advertisements are transmitted periodically and the host prompts with an immediate Router Advertisement using a Router Solicitation such as - when it boots or following a restart operation.

Router Advertisement

A Router Advertisement message is issued periodically by a router or in response to a Router Solicitation message from a host. The information contained in these messages is used by a host to perform stateless auto configuration and to modify its routing table.

Neighbor Discovery

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery is a set of messages and processes that determine relationships between neighboring nodes. Neighbor Discovery replaces the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Router Discovery, and ICMP Redirect used in IPv4.

IPv6 Neighbor Discovery inspection analyzes neighbor discovery messages in order to build a trusted binding table database, and IPv6 Neighbor Discovery packets that do not comply, are dropped. The neighbor binding table in the tracks each IPv6 address and its associated MAC address. Clients are removed from the table according to neighbor-binding timers.

Neighbor Discovery Suppression

The IPv6 addresses of wireless clients are cached by a device once the wireless client is in RUN state. When the device receives an NS multicast, it looks into the IPv6 addresses cached. If the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its wireless clients, the device converts the NS from multicast to unicast and forward it to the wireless client. If the target address is not present in the cache, then device interprets that the Multicast NS is for a wired entity and forward it towards the wired side and not to the wireless client.

The same behavior is seen for ARP request in case of IPv4 address, where the device maintains IPv4 address of the wireless client in the cache.

When neither of the configuration is enabled, and when the device receives Non-DAD or DAD NS multicast looking for an IPv6 address, and if the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its clients, the device will convert the multicast NS to unicast NS, with the destination MAC address, replaced with client's MAC and forward the unicast packet towards client.

When full-proxy is enabled, and when the device receives Non-DAD or DAD NS multicast, looking for an IPv6 address, and if the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its clients, the device will reply with an NA message on behalf of the client.

You can use the **ipv6 nd proxy** command to enable or disable DAD or full proxy.

When the device receives an DAD-NS multicast looking for an IPv6 address, and if the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its clients, the device will reply with an NA message on behalf of the client.

When the device receives Non-DAD NS multicast looking for an IPv6 address, and if the target address is known to the device and belongs to one of its clients, the device will convert the multicast NS to unicast NS, with the destination MAC address, replaced with client's MAC and forward the unicast packet towards client.

If the device does not have the IPv6 address of a wireless client, the device does not respond with NA; instead, it forwards the NS packet to the wired side. Reason for forwarding to Wired Side is due to the assumption that all wireless client IPv6 address and the its mapped MAC address should be available in the controller and if an IPv6 address required in the NS is not available, then that address is not a wireless client address, so forwarded to wired side.

Router Advertisement Guard

The RA Guard feature increases the security of the IPv6 network by dropping router advertisements coming from wireless clients. Without this feature, misconfigured or malicious IPv6 clients could announce themselves as a router for the network, often with a high priority, which could take precedence over legitimate IPv6 routers. By default, RA guard is always enabled on the controller.

- Port on which the frame is received
- IPv6 source address
- Prefix list
- Trusted or Untrusted ports for receiving the router advertisement guard messages
- Trusted/Untrusted IPv6 source addresses of the router advertisement sender
- Trusted/Untrusted Prefix list and Prefix ranges
- Router preference

Router Advertisement Throttling

RA throttling allows the controller to enforce limits to the RA packets headed toward the wireless network. By enabling RA throttling, routers that send multiple RA packets can be trimmed to a minimum frequency that will still maintain an IPv6 client connectivity. If a client sends an RS packet, an RA is sent back to the client. This RA is allowed through the controller and unicast to the client. This process ensures that the new clients or roaming clients are not affected by the RA throttling.

Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Address Learning

Before configuring IPv6 client address learning, configure the clients to support IPv6.

To enable wireless IPv6 client connectivity, the underlying wired network must support IPv6 routing and an address assignment mechanism, such as SLAAC or DHCPv6. The wireless LAN controller must have L2 adjacency to the IPv6 router.



Note The AP learns IPv6 client address based on source IP address even though Neighbor Advertisements can hold rest of the IPv6 addresses. AP won't look into the Neighbor Advertisements to learn the IPv6 address learnt by the client. This behavior is seen only on Apple clients and not on Microsoft Windows clients.

IPv6 Address Tracking for Wireless Clients

Until Cisco IOS XE 17.9.1, the controller supported a maximum of eight IPv6 addresses per wireless client. After eight IPv6 addresses were learnt for a wireless client, the controller dropped that wireless client's data traffic coming with new IPv6 source addresses.

However, in Cisco IOS XE 17.9.2 release, the controller allows data traffic of the wireless clients coming with new IPv6 source addresses even after eight addresses have been learnt for respective wireless clients. The controller continues to learn new IPv6 addresses of the wireless clients from the wireless clients' control traffic (IPv6 NS/NA and DHCPv6), and keeps track of only a maximum of eight addresses per wireless client.

To allow forwarding of the multicast neighbor solicitation (NS) queries for unknown IPv6 target addresses of wireless clients (the client addresses that are not tracked by the controller) to wireless clients, the **wireless ipv6 nd ns-forward** configuration must be enabled.



Important We recommend that you configure IPv6 Multicast over Multicast (MoM) tunnel along with the **wireless ipv6 nd ns-forward** configuration.



Note In Cisco IOS XE 17.9.2, since the controller allows IPv6 traffic without address tracking beyond the eight IPv6 address limit, some of the features such as, User Defined Network, iPSK Peer-to-Peer Blocking, Management over Wireless, Neighbor Discovery Suppression, IP Theft Detection, and so on, may not work for the wireless clients using more than eight addresses. You can disable the new behavior by enabling the IP Source Guard feature
https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/9800/17-9/config-guide/b_wl_17_9_cg/m_ipsg_ewlc.html?bookSearch=true

Configuring Unknown Address Multicast Neighbor Solicitation Forwarding

To allow forwarding of the multicast neighbor solicitation (NS) queries for unknown IPv6 target addresses of wireless clients (the client addresses that are not tracked by the controller) to wireless clients, perform the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless ipv6 nd ns-forward Example: Device (config)# <code>wireless ipv6 nd ns-forward</code>	Enables forwarding of the multicast neighbor solicitation (NS) messages for unknown IPv6 target addresses of wireless clients (the client addresses that are not tracked by the controller) to wireless clients. Note We recommend that you configure IPv6 Multicast over Multicast (MoM) tunnel along with this configuration.

Configuring RA Throttle Policy (CLI)

Configure RA Throttle policy to allow the enforce the limits

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ipv6 nd ra-throttler policy ra-throttler1 Example: <pre>Device(config)# ipv6 nd ra-throttler policy ra-throttler1</pre>	Define the router advertisement (RA) throttler policy name and enter IPv6 RA throttle policy configuration mode.
Step 3	throttleperiod 500 Example: <pre>Device(config-nd-ra-throttle)# throttle-period 500</pre>	Configures the throttle period in an IPv6 RA throttler policy. Throttle period is in seconds and it is the time while the controller will not forward RA to the wireless clients.
Step 4	max-through 10 Example: <pre>Device(config-nd-ra-throttle)# max-through 15</pre>	Limits multicast RAs per VLAN per throttle period.
Step 5	allow-atleast 5 at-most 10 Example: <pre>Device(config-nd-ra-throttle)# allow at-least 5 at-most 10</pre>	Limits the number of multicast RAs per device per throttle period in an RA throttler policy.

Applying RA Throttle Policy on VLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Services > RA Throttle Policy .
Step 2	Click Add . The Add RA Throttle Policy dialog box appears.
Step 3	Enter a name for the policy in the Name field.
Step 4	Choose the desired option from the Medium Type drop-down list.
Step 5	Enter a value in the Throttle Period field. RA throttling takes place only after the Max Through limit is reached for the VLAN or the Allow At-Most value is reached for a particular router.
Step 6	Enter a value for the Max Through field, which is the maximum number of RA packets on a VLAN that can be sent before throttling takes place. The No Limit option allows an unlimited number of RA packets through with no throttling.
Step 7	Choose an Interval Option , which allows the device to act differently based on the RFC 3775 value set in IPv6 RA packets, from the following options: • Ignore—Causes the RA throttle to treat packets with the interval option as a regular RA and subject to throttling if in effect. • Passthrough—Allows any RA messages with the RFC 3775 interval option to go through without throttling.

- **Throttle**—Causes the RA packets with the interval option to always be subject to rate limiting.

- Step 8** Enter the minimum number of RA packets per router that can be sent as multicast before throttling takes place in the **At Least Multicast RAs** field.
- Step 9** Enter the maximum number of RA packets per router that can be sent as multicast before throttling takes place in the **At Most Multicast RAs** field. The **No Limit** option allows an unlimited number of RA packets through the router.
- Step 10** Click the **Add & Apply to Device** button.

Applying RA Throttle Policy on a VLAN (CLI)

Applying the RA Throttle policy on a VLAN. By enabling RA throttling, routers that send many RA packets can be trimmed to a minimum frequency that will still maintain an IPv6 client connectivity.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan configuration 1 Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 1	Configures a VLAN or a collection of VLANs and enters VLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv6 nd ra throttler attach-policy ra-throttler1 Example: Device(config-vlan)# ipv6 nd ra throttler attach-policy ra-throttler1	Attaches an IPv6 RA throttler policy to a VLAN or a collection of VLANs.

Configuring IPv6 Interface on a Switch (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN > SVI**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** Enter **VLAN Number**, **Description** and **MTU (Bytes)**.

- Step 4** Enable or disable the **Admin Status** toggle button.
- Step 5** In **IP Options**, check the **IPv6** check box.
- Step 6** Choose the type of **Static** address from the drop-down list and enter the Static Address.
- Step 7** Check or uncheck the **DHCP**, **Autoconfig** and **Act as an IPv6 DHCP client** check boxes.
- If you check the **DHCP** check box, the **Rapid Commit** check box is displayed. Check or uncheck the **Rapid Commit** check box.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring IPv6 on Interface (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPv6 on an interface:

Before you begin

Enable IPv6 on the client and IPv6 support on the wired infrastructure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# interface vlan 10</pre>	Creates an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	ip address <i>fe80::1 link-local</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1 link-local Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::5/64 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:0:E000::F/64</pre>	Configures IPv6 address on the GigabitEthernet interface using the link-local option.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	ipv6 enable Example: Device(config)# ipv6 enable	(Optional) Enables IPv6 on the GigabitEthernet interface.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config)# end	Exits interface mode.

Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > DHCP**.
 - Step 2** Click the **Add** button. The **Create DHCP Pool** dialog box appears.
 - Step 3** Enter a pool name in the **DHCP Pool Name** field. The name must not be greater than 236 characters in length.
 - Step 4** Choose either **IPv4** or **IPv6** from the **IP Type** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Enter an IP address in the **Network** field.
 - Step 6** Choose any one of the available subnet masks from the **Subnet Mask** drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Enter an IP address in the **Starting ip** field.
 - Step 8** Enter an IP address in the **Ending ip** field.
 - Step 9** Optional, set the status of the **Reserved Only** field to **Enabled** if you wish to reserve the DHCP pool.
 - Step 10** Choose the desired option from the **Lease** drop-down list.
 - Step 11** Selecting the **User Defined** option from the **Lease** drop-down list enables the **(0-365 days)**, **(0-23 hours)**, and **(0-59 minutes)** fields. Enter appropriate values.
 - Step 12** Click the **Save & Apply to Device** button.
 - Step 13** For IPv6, Enter the **DNS Server**, **DNS Domain Name**, and **Ipv6 Address Allocation**.
-

Configuring DHCP Pool on Switch (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure DHCP Pool on an interface:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example:	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv6 dhcp pool <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ipv6 dhcp pool 21	Enters the configuration mode and configures the IPv6 DHCP pool on the Vlan.
Step 4	address prefix 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::/64 lifetime 300 10 Example: Device(config-dhcpv6)# address prefix 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::/64 lifetime 300 10	Enters the configuration-dhcp mode and configures the address pool and its lifetime on a Vlan.
Step 5	dns-server 2001:100:0:1::1 Example: Device(config-dhcpv6)# dns-server 2001:20:21::1	Configures the DNS servers for the DHCP pool.
Step 6	domain-name <i>example.com</i> Example: Device(config-dhcpv6)# domain-name example.com	Configures the domain name to complete unqualified host names.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration Without DHCP on Switch (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure stateless auto address configuration without DHCP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device> enable	Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	interface vlan 1 Example: Device (config)# interface vlan 1	Creates an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	ip address fe80::1 link-local Example: Device (config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0 Device (config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1 link-local Device (config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::5/64 Device (config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:0:E000::F/64	Configures IPv6 address on the GigabitEthernet interface using the link-local option.
Step 5	ipv6 enable Example: Device (config)# ipv6 enable	(Optional) Enables IPv6 on the GigabitEthernet interface.
Step 6	no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag Example: Device (config)# interface vlan 1 Device (config-if)# no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain addresses.
Step 7	no ipv6 nd other-config-flag Example: Device (config-if)# no ipv6 nd other-config-flag	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain non-address options from DHCP (domain etc).
Step 8	end Example: Device (config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Stateless Auto Address Configuration With DHCP on Switch

Follow the procedure given below to configure stateless auto address configuration with DHCP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	interface vlan 1 Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 1	Creates an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	ip address fe80::1 link-local Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1 link-local Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::5/64 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:0:E000::F/64	Configures IPv6 address on the GigabitEthernet interface using the link-local option.
Step 5	ipv6 enable Example: Device(config)# ipv6 enable	(Optional) Enables IPv6 on the GigabitEthernet interface.
Step 6	ipv6 nd prefix ipaddress Example: ipv6 nd prefix 2001:9:3:54::/64 no-advertise	Specifies a subnet prefix.
Step 7	no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag Example:	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain addresses.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device (config)# interface vlan 1 Device (config-if)# no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag	
Step 8	ipv6 nd other-config-flag Example: Device (config-if)# no ipv6 nd other-config-flag	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain non-address options from DHCP (domain etc).
Step 9	ipv6 dhcp server servername Example: ipv6 dhcp server VLAN54	Displays the configuration parameters.
Step 10	end Example: Device (config)# end	Exits interface mode.

Configuring Stateless Address Auto Configuration Without DHCP on Switch (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure stateless auto address configuration without DHCP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	interface vlan 1 Example: Device (config)# interface vlan 1	Creates an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	ip address fe80::1 link-local Example:	Configures IPv6 address on the GigabitEthernet interface using the link-local option.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-if)# ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1 link-local Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:1:FFFF:1234::5/64 Device(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:DB8:0:0:E000::F/64</pre>	
Step 5	ipv6 enable Example: <pre>Device(config)# ipv6 enable</pre>	(Optional) Enables IPv6 on the GigabitEthernet interface.
Step 6	no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag Example: <pre>Device(config)# interface vlan 1 Device(config-if)# no ipv6 nd managed-config-flag</pre>	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain addresses.
Step 7	no ipv6 nd other-config-flag Example: <pre>Device(config-if)# no ipv6 nd other-config-flag</pre>	Ensures the attached hosts do not use stateful autoconfiguration to obtain non-address options from DHCP (domain etc).
Step 8	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Native IPv6

Information About IPv6

IPv6 is a packet-based protocol used to exchange data, voice, and video traffic over digital networks. IPv6 is based on IP, but with a much larger address space, and improvements such as a simplified main header and extension headers. The architecture of IPv6 has been designed to allow existing IPv4 users to transition easily to IPv6 while continuing to use services such as end-to-end security, quality of service (QoS), and globally unique addresses. The larger IPv6 address space allows networks to scale and provide global reachability.



Note The features and functions that work on IPv4 networks with IPv4 addresses also work on IPv6 networks with IPv6 addresses.

General Guidelines

- For IPv6 functionality to work, ensure that you disable IPv6 multicast routing.

- The Wireless Management interface should have only one static IPv6 address.
- Router advertisement should be suppressed on the wireless management interface and client VLANs (if IPv6 is configured on the client VLAN).
- Preferred mode is part of an AP join profile. When you configure the preferred mode as IPv6, an AP attempts to join over IPv6 first. If it fails, the AP falls back to IPv4.
- You should use MAC addresses for RA tracing of APs and clients.
- APs can join IPv6 controllers only with an IPv6 static address. If you have a controller with auto configurations and multiple IPv6 addresses, APs cannot join the IPv6 controllers.

Unsupported Features

- UDP Lite is not supported.
- AP sniffer over IPv6 is not supported.
- IPv6 is not supported for the HA port interface.
- Auto RF grouping over IPv6 is not supported. Only static RF grouping is supported.

Configuring IPv6 Addressing

Follow the procedure given below to configure IPv6 addressing:



Note All the features and functions that work on IPv4 networks with IPv4 addresses will work on IPv6 networks with IPv6 addresses too.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ipv6 unicast-routing Example: Device(config)# <code>ipv6 unicast-routing</code>	Configures IPv6 for unicasting.
Step 3	interface vlan 1 Example: Device(config)# <code>interface vlan 1</code>	Creates an interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 4	ipv6 address <i>ipv6-address</i> Example:	Specifies a global IPv6 address.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ipv6 address FD09:9:2:49::53/64	
Step 5	ipv6 enable Example: Device(config-if)# ipv6 enable	Enables IPv6 on the interface.
Step 6	ipv6 nd ra suppress all Example: Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra suppress all	Suppresses IPv6 router advertisement transmissions on the interface.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 8	wireless management interface gigabitEthernet <i>gigabitEthernet-interface-vlan 64</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless management interface gigabitEthernet vlan 64	Configures the ports that are connected to the supported APs with the wireless management interface.
Step 9	ipv6 route <i>ipv6-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ipv6 route ::/0 FD09:9:2:49::1	Specifies IPv6 static routes.

Creating an AP Join Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** window, click the **General** tab and click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **Name** field enter, a name for the AP join profile.
 - Step 4** (Optional) Enter a description for the AP join profile.
 - Step 5** Choose **CAPWAP > Advanced**.
 - Step 6** Under the **Advanced** tab, from the **Preferred Mode** drop-down list, choose **IPv6**. This sets the preferred mode of APs as IPv6.
 - Step 7** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Creating an AP Join Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile xyz-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	description <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# description "xyz ap profile"	Adds a description for the AP profile.
Step 4	preferred-mode ipv6 Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# preferred-mode ipv6	Sets the preferred mode of APs as IPv6.

Configuring the Primary and Backup Controller (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP join profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controller s.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** On the **AP Join Profile** window, click the AP join profile name.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit AP Join Profile** window, click the **CAPWAP** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **High Availability** tab, under **Backup Controller Configuration**, check the **Enable Fallback** check box.
 - Step 5** Enter the primary and secondary controller names and IP addresses.
 - Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Primary and Backup Controller (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the primary and secondary controllers for a selected AP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile yy-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	capwap backup primary <i>primary-controller-name primary-controller-ip</i> Example: Device(config)# capwap backup primary WLAN-Controller-A 2001:DB8:1::1	Configures AP CAPWAP parameters with the primary backup controller's name. Note You need to enable fast heartbeat for capwap backup primary and capwap backup secondary to work. AP disconnection may occur if the link between the controller and AP is not reliable and fast heartbeat is enabled.
Step 4	ap capwap backup secondary <i>secondary-controller-name</i> <i>secondary-controller-ip</i> Example: Device(config)# capwap backup secondary WLAN-Controller-B 2001:DB8:1::1	Configures AP CAPWAP parameters with the secondary backup controller's name.
Step 5	syslog host <i>ipaddress</i> Example: Device(config)# syslog host 2001:DB8:1::1	Configures the system logging settings for the APs.
Step 6	tftp-downgrade <i>tftp-server-ip imagename</i> Example: Device(config)# tftp-downgrade 2001:DB8:1::1 testimage	Initiates AP image downgrade from a TFTP server for all the APs.

Verifying IPv6 Configuration

Use the following **show** command to verify the IPv6 configuration:

```
Device# show wireless interface summary
```

```
Wireless Interface Summary
```

Interface Name	Interface Type	VLAN ID	IP Address	IP Netmask	MAC Address
Vlan49	Management	49	0.0.0.0 fd09:9:2:49::54/64	255.255.255.0	001e.f64c.1eff



CHAPTER 155

IPv6 ACL

- [Information About IPv6 ACL, on page 1623](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL, on page 1624](#)
- [Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL, on page 1624](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 ACLs , on page 1624](#)
- [How To Configure an IPv6 ACL, on page 1625](#)
- [Verifying IPv6 ACL, on page 1630](#)
- [Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL, on page 1631](#)

Information About IPv6 ACL

An access control list (ACL) is a set of rules used to limit access to a particular interface (for example, if you want to restrict a wireless client from pinging the management interface of the controller). ACLs are configured on the device and applied to the management interface, the AP-manager interface, any of the dynamic interfaces, or a WLAN to control data traffic to and from wireless clients or to the controller central processing unit (CPU) to control all traffic destined for the CPU.

You can also create a preauthentication ACL for web authentication. Such an ACL is used to allow certain types of traffic before authentication is complete.

IPv6 ACLs support the same options as IPv4 ACLs including source, destination, source and destination ports.



Note You can enable only IPv4 traffic in your network by blocking IPv6 traffic. That is, you can configure an IPv6 ACL to deny all IPv6 traffic and apply it on specific or all WLANs.

Understanding IPv6 ACLs

Types of ACL

Per User IPv6 ACL

For the per-user ACL, the full access control entries (ACE) as the text strings are configured on the RADIUS server.

The ACE is not configured on the Cisco 9800 controller. The ACE is sent to the device in the `ACCESS-Accept` attribute and applies it directly for the client. When a wireless client roams into an foreign device, the ACEs are sent to the foreign device as an AAA attribute in the mobility Handoff message. Output direction, using per-user ACL is not supported.

Filter ID IPv6 ACL

For the filter-Id ACL, the full ACEs and the `acl name(filter-id)` is configured on the Cisco 9800 controller and only the `filter-id` is configured on the RADIUS Server.

The `filter-id` is sent to the device in the `ACCESS-Accept` attribute, and the device looks up the `filter-id` for the ACEs, and then applies the ACEs to the client. When the client L2 roams to the foreign device, only the `filter-id` is sent to the foreign device in the mobility Handoff message. Output filtered ACL, using per-user ACL is not supported. The foreign device has to configure the `filter-id` and ACEs beforehand.

Prerequisites for Configuring IPv6 ACL

You can filter IP Version 6 (IPv6) traffic by creating IPv6 access control lists (ACLs) and applying them to interfaces similarly to the way that you create and apply IP Version 4 (IPv4) named ACLs. You can also create and apply input router ACLs to filter Layer 3 management traffic when the switch is running the Network Essentials license.

Restrictions for Configuring IPv6 ACL

With IPv4, you can configure standard and extended numbered IP ACLs, named IP ACLs, and MAC ACLs. IPv6 supports only named ACLs. The IPv6 ACL does not support Flex connect mode.

The device supports most of the Cisco IOS-supported IPv6 ACLs with some exceptions:

- The device does not support matching on these keywords: **flowlabel**, **routing header**, and **undetermined-transport**.
- The device does not support reflexive ACLs (the **reflect** keyword).
- The device does not apply MAC-based ACLs on IPv6 frames.
- When configuring an ACL, there is no restriction on keywords entered in the ACL, regardless of whether or not they are supported on the platform. When you apply the ACL to an interface that requires hardware forwarding (physical ports or SVIs), the device checks to determine whether or not the ACL can be supported on the interface. If not, attaching the ACL is rejected.
- If an ACL is applied to an interface and you attempt to add an access control entry (ACE) with an unsupported keyword, the device does not allow the ACE to be added to the ACL that is currently attached to the interface

Configuring IPv6 ACLs

Follow the procedure given below to filter IPv6 traffic:

1. Create an IPv6 ACL, and enter IPv6 access list configuration mode.

2. Configure the IPv6 ACL to block (deny) or pass (permit) traffic.
3. Apply the IPv6 ACL to the interface where the traffic needs to be filtered.
4. Apply the IPv6 ACL to an interface. For router ACLs, you must also configure an IPv6 address on the Layer 3 interface to which the ACL is applied.

Default IPv6 ACL Configuration

There are no IPv6 ACLs configured or applied.

Interaction with Other Features and Switches

- If a bridged frame is to be dropped due to a port ACL, the frame is not bridged.
- You can create both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs on a switch or switch stack, and you can apply both IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs to the same interface. Each ACL must have a unique name; an error message appears if you try to use a name that is already configured.

You use different commands to create IPv4 and IPv6 ACLs and to attach IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs to the same Layer 2 or Layer 3 interface. If you use the wrong command to attach an ACL (for example, an IPv4 command to attach an IPv6 ACL), you receive an error message.

- You cannot use MAC ACLs to filter IPv6 frames. MAC ACLs can only filter non-IP frames.
- If the hardware memory is full, for any additional configured ACLs, packets are processed to the CPU, and the ACLs are applied in software. When the hardware is full a message is printed to the console indicating the ACL has been unloaded and the packets will be processed in software.



Note Only packets of the same type as the ACL that could not be added (ipv4, ipv6, MAC) will be processed in software.

- If the TCAM is full, for any additional configured ACLs, packets are forwarded to the CPU, and the ACLs are applied in software.

How To Configure an IPv6 ACL

Creating an IPv6 ACL (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > ACL .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the Add ACL Setup dialog box, enter the following parameters.

- **ACL Name:** Enter the name for the ACL
- **ACL Type:** IPv6
- **Sequence:** The valid range is between 100 and 199 or 2000 and 26991
- **Action:** Choose **Permit** or **Deny** the packet flow from the drop-down list.
- **Source Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** from which the packet is sent.
- **Destination Type:** Choose **any**, **Host** or **Network** to which the packet is sent.
- **Protocol:** Choose a protocol from the drop-down list.
- **Log:** Enable or disable logging.
- **DSCP:** Enter to match packets with the DSCP value

Step 4 Click **Add**.

Step 5 Add the rest of the rules and click **Apply to Device**.

Creating an IPv6 ACL

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv6 access-list <i>acl_name</i> Example: Device# ipv6 access-list access-list-name	Use a name to define an IPv6 access list and enter IPv6 access-list configuration mode.
Step 4	{deny permit} protocol Example: <pre>{deny permit} protocol {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any host source-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length</pre>	Enter deny or permit to specify whether to deny or permit the packet if conditions are matched. These are the conditions: • For protocol, enter the name or number of an Internet protocol: ahp, esp, icmp, ipv6, pcp, stcp, tcp, or udp, or an integer

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre> any [host destination-ipv6-address] [operator [port-number]][dscp value] [fragments][log] [log-input] [routing][sequence value] [time-range name] </pre>	in the range 0 to 255 representing an IPv6 protocol number. • The source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length or destination-ipv6-prefix/ prefix-length is the source or destination IPv6 network or class of networks for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal and using 16-bit values between colons (see RFC 2373). • Enter any as an abbreviation for the IPv6 prefix ::/0. • For host source-ipv6-address or destination-ipv6-address, enter the source or destination IPv6 host address for which to set deny or permit conditions, specified in hexadecimal using 16-bit values between colons. • (Optional) For operator, specify an operand that compares the source or destination ports of the specified protocol. Operands are lt (less than), gt (greater than), eq (equal), neq (not equal), and range. If the operator follows the source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length argument, it must match the source port. If the operator follows the destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length argument, it must match the destination port. • (Optional) The port-number is a decimal number from 0 to 65535 or the name of a TCP or UDP port. You can use TCP port names only when filtering TCP. You can use UDP port names only when filtering UDP. • (Optional) Enter dscp value to match a differentiated services code point value against the traffic class value in the Traffic Class field of each IPv6 packet header. The acceptable range is from 0 to 63. • (Optional) For packet fragmentation, enter fragments to check noninitial

	Command or Action	Purpose
		fragments. This keyword is visible only if the protocol is ipv6. • (Optional) Enter log to cause an logging message to be sent to the console about the packet that matches the entry. Enter log-input to include the input interface in the log entry. Logging is supported only for router ACLs. • (Optional) Enter routing to specify that IPv6 packets be routed. • (Optional) Enter sequence value to specify the sequence number for the access list statement. The acceptable range is from 1 to 4294967295 • (Optional) Enter time-range name to specify the time range that applies to the deny or permit statement.
Step 5	{deny permit} tcp Example: <pre>{deny permit} tcp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]]{destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][ack] [dscp value][established] [fin] [log][log-input] [neq {port protocol}] [psh] [range{port protocol}] [rst][routing] [sequence value] [syn] [time-range name][urg]</pre>	(Optional) Define a TCP access list and the access conditions. Enter tcp for Transmission Control Protocol. The parameters are the same as those described in Step 3, with these additional optional parameters: • ack—Acknowledgment bit set. • established—An established connection. A match occurs if the TCP datagram has the ACK or RST bits set. • fin—Finished bit set; no more data from sender. • neq {port protocol}—Matches only packets that are not on a given port number. • psh—Push function bit set. • range {port protocol}—Matches only packets in the port number range. • rst—Reset bit set. • syn—Synchronize bit set. • urg—Urgent pointer bit set.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	{deny permit} udp Example: <pre>{deny permit} udp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]]{destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][dscp value] [log][log-input] [neq {port protocol}] [range {port protocol}] [routing][sequence value][time-range name]</pre>	(Optional) Define a UDP access list and the access conditions. Enter udp for the User Datagram Protocol. The UDP parameters are the same as those described for TCP, except that the operator [port]] port number or name must be a UDP port number or name, and the established parameter is not valid for UDP.
Step 7	{deny permit} icmp Example: <pre>{deny permit} icmp {source-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostsource-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]] {destination-ipv6-prefix/prefix-length any hostdestination-ipv6-address} [operator [port-number]][icmp-type [icmp-code] icmp-message] [dscpvalue] [log] [log-input] [routing] [sequence value][time-range name]</pre>	(Optional) Define an ICMP access list and the access conditions. Enter icmp for Internet Control Message Protocol. The ICMP parameters are the same as those described for most IP protocols in Step 3a, with the addition of the ICMP message type and code parameters. These optional keywords have these meanings: • icmp-type—Enter to filter by ICMP message type, a number from 0 to 255. • icmp-code—Enter to filter ICMP packets that are filtered by the ICMP message code type, a number from 0 to 255. • icmp-message—Enter to filter ICMP packets by the ICMP message type name or the ICMP message type and code name. To see a list of ICMP message type names and code names, use the ? key or see command reference for this release.
Step 8	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.
Step 9	show ipv6 access-list Example: <pre>show ipv6 access-list</pre>	Verify the access list configuration.
Step 10	copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>copy running-config startup-config</pre>	(Optional) Save your entries in the configuration file.

Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**.
- Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer3** tab, click **Show Advanced Settings** and under the **Preauthenticated ACL** settings, choose the ACL from the **IPv6** drop-down list.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating WLAN IPv6 ACL

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: DeviceController # configure terminal	Configures the terminal.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test1	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	ipv6 acl <i>acl_name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 acl testacl	Creates a named WLAN ACL.
Step 4	ipv6 traffic-filter web <i>acl_name-preauth</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# ipv6 traffic-filter web preauth1	Creates a pre-authentication ACL for web authentication.

Verifying IPv6 ACL

Displaying IPv6 ACLs

To display IPv6 ACLs, perform this procedure:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	show access-list Example: Device# show access-lists	Displays all access lists configured on the device
Step 4	show ipv6 access-list <i>acl_name</i> Example: Device# show ipv6 access-list [<i>access-list-name</i>]	Displays all configured IPv6 access list or the access list specified by name.

Configuration Examples for IPv6 ACL

Example: Creating an IPv6 ACL

This example configures the IPv6 access list named CISCO. The first deny entry in the list denies all packets that have a destination TCP port number greater than 5000. The second deny entry denies packets that have a source UDP port number less than 5000. The second deny also logs all matches to the console. The first permit entry in the list permits all ICMP packets. The second permit entry in the list permits all other traffic. The second permit entry is necessary because an implicit deny -all condition is at the end of each IPv6 access list.



Note Logging is supported only on Layer 3 interfaces.

```
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list CISCO
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# deny tcp any any gt 5000
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# deny ::/0 lt 5000 ::/0 log
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit icmp any any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit any any
```

Example: Applying an IPv6 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless Environment

This example shows how to apply an IPv6 ACL to a Policy Profile in a Wireless environment.



Note All IPv6 ACLs must be associated to a policy profile.

1. Creating an IPv6 ACL.

```
Device(config)# ipv6 access-list <acl-name>
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit tcp 2001:DB8::/32 any
Device(config-ipv6-acl)# permit udp 2001:DB8::/32 any
```

2. Applying the IPv6 ACL to a policy profile.

```
Device(config)# wireless profile policy <policy-profile-name>
Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown
Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 acl <acl-name>
Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown
```

Displaying IPv6 ACLs

To display IPv6 ACLs, perform this procedure:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	show access-list Example: Device# show access-lists	Displays all access lists configured on the device
Step 2	show ipv6 access-list <i>acl_name</i> Example: Device# show ipv6 access-list [<i>access-list-name</i>]	Displays all configured IPv6 access list or the access list specified by name.

Example: Displaying IPv6 ACLs

This is an example of the output from the **show access-lists** privileged EXEC command. The output shows all access lists that are configured on the switch or switch stack.

```
Device #show access-lists
Extended IP access list hello
10 permit ip any any
IPv6 access list ipv6
permit ipv6 any any sequence 10
```

This is an example of the output from the **show ipv6 access-lists** privileged EXEC command. The output shows only IPv6 access lists configured on the switch or switch stack.

```
Device# show ipv6 access-list
IPv6 access list inbound
```

```

permit tcp any any eq bgp (8 matches) sequence 10
permit tcp any any eq telnet (15 matches) sequence 20
permit udp any any sequence 30

```

```

IPv6 access list outbound
deny udp any any sequence 10
deny tcp any any eq telnet sequence 20

```

Example: Configuring RA Throttling

This task describes how to create an RA throttle policy in order to help the power-saving wireless clients from being disturbed by frequent unsolicited periodic RA's. The unsolicited multicast RA is throttled by the controller.

Before you begin

Enable IPv6 on the client machine.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ipv6 nd ra-throttler policy Mythrottle Example: Device (config)# ipv6 nd ra-throttler policy Mythrottle	Creates a RA throttler policy called Mythrottle.
Step 3	throttle-period 20 Example: Device (config-nd-ra-throttle)# throttle-period 20	Determines the time interval segment during which throttling applies.
Step 4	max-through 5 Example: Device (config-nd-ra-throttle)# max-through 5	Determines how many initial RA's are allowed.
Step 5	allow at-least 3 at-most 5 Example: Device (config-nd-ra-throttle)# allow at-least 3 at-most 5	Determines how many RA's are allowed after the initial RAs have been transmitted, until the end of the interval segment.
Step 6	switch (config)# vlan configuration 100 Example: Device (config)# vlan configuration 100	Creates a per vlan configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	ipv6 nd ra-th attach-policy attach-policy_name Example: Device (config)# ipv6 nd ra-throttle attach-policy attach-policy_name	Enables the router advertisement throttling.
Step 8	end Example: Device (config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.



CHAPTER 156

IPv6 Client Mobility

- [Information About IPv6 Client Mobility, on page 1635](#)
- [Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Mobility, on page 1637](#)
- [Monitoring IPv6 Client Mobility, on page 1638](#)

Information About IPv6 Client Mobility

Link layer mobility is not enough to make wireless client Layer 3 applications continue to work seamlessly while roaming. Cisco IOSd's wireless mobility module uses mobility tunneling to retain seamless connectivity for the client's Layer 3 PoP (point of presence) when the client roams across different subnets on different switches.

IPv6 is the next-generation network layer Internet protocol intended to replace IPv4 in the TCP/IP suite of protocols. This new version increases the internet global address space to accommodate users and applications that require unique global IP addresses. IPv6 incorporates 128-bit source and destination addresses, which provide significantly more addresses than the 32-bit IPv4 addresses.

To support IPv6 clients across controllers, ICMPv6 messages must be dealt with specially to ensure the IPv6 client remains on the same Layer 3 network. The device keeps track of IPv6 clients by intercepting the ICMPv6 messages to provide seamless mobility and protect the network from network attacks. The NDP (neighbor discovery packets) packets are converted from multicast to unicast and delivered individually per client. This unique solution ensures that Neighbor Discovery and Router Advertisement packets are not leaked across VLANs. Clients can receive specific Neighbor Discovery and Router Advertisement packets ensuring correct IPv6 addressing to avoid unnecessary multicast traffic.

The configuration for IPv6 mobility is the same as IPv4 mobility and requires no separate software on the client side to achieve seamless roaming. The device must be part of the same mobility group. Both IPv4 and IPv6 client mobility are enabled by default.

IPv6 client mobility is used for the following:

- Retaining the client IPv6 multiple addresses in Layer-2 and Layer-3 roaming.
- IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) packet management.
- Client IPv6 addresses learning.



Note The configuration for IPv6 mobility in SDA wireless and Local mode is the same as of IPv4 mobility and requires no different software configuration on the client side to achieve seamless roaming. Refer to IPv4 mobility section for configuration information.



Note If ipv6 address is configured on the SVI, you should configure **ipv6 nd ra suppress all** command on all client VLAN SVI interfaces on the controller. This prevents multiple devices from advertising themselves as the routers.

Using Router Advertisement

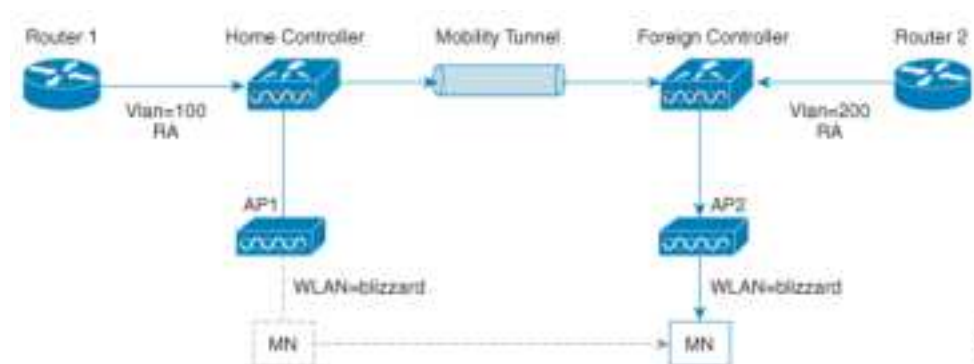
The Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) operates in the link-layer and is responsible for the discovery of other nodes on the link. It determines the link-layer addresses of other nodes, finds the available routers, and maintains reachability information about the paths to other active neighbor nodes.

Router Advertisement (RA) is one of the IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) packets that is used by the hosts to discover available routers, acquire the network prefix to generate the IPv6 addresses, link MTU, and so on. The routers send RA on a regular basis, or in response to hosts Router Solicitation messages.

IPv6 wireless client mobility manages the IPv6 RA packet. The device forwards the link-local all-nodes multicast RA packets to the local and roaming wireless nodes mapped on same VLAN the RA was received on.

Figure 1 illustrates how a roaming client “MN” receives RA from VLAN 200 in a foreign controller and how it acquires an new IP address and breaks into L3 mobility's point of presence.

Figure 37: Roaming Client Receives Valid RA from Router 1



Router Advertisement Throttling

RA throttling allows the controller to enforce limits to the RA packets headed toward the wireless network. By enabling RA throttling, routers that send multiple RA packets can be trimmed to a minimum frequency that will still maintain an IPv6 client connectivity. If a client sends an RS packet, an RA is sent back to the client. This RA is allowed through the controller and unicast to the client. This process ensures that the new clients or roaming clients are not affected by the RA throttling.

IPv6 Address Learning

There are three ways for IPv6 client to acquire IPv6 addresses:

- Stateless Address Auto-Configuration (SLAAC)
- Stateful DHCPv6
- Static configuration

For these methods, the IPv6 client always sends NS DAD (duplicate address detection) to ensure that there is no duplicated IP address on the network. The device snoops the clients NDP and DHCPv6 packets to learn about its client IP addresses and then updates the controllers database. The database then informs the controller for the clients new IP address.

Handling Multiple IP Addresses

In the case when the new IP address is received after RUN state, whether an addition or removal, the controller updates the new IP addresses on its local database for display purposes. Essentially, the IPv6 uses the existing or same PEM state machine code flow as in IPv4. When the IP addresses are requested by external entities, for example, from Prime Infrastructure, the controller will include all the available IP addresses, IPv4 and IPv6, in the API/SPI interface to the external entities.

An IPv6 client can acquire multiple IP addresses from stack for different purposes. For example, a link-local address for link local traffic, and a routable unique local or global address.

When the client is in the DHCP request state and the controller receives the first IP address notification from the database for either an IPv4 or IPv6 address, the PEM moves the client into the RUN state.

When a new IP address is received after the RUN state, either for addition or removal, the controller updates the new IP addresses on its local database for display purposes.

When the IP addresses are requested by external entities, for example, from Prime Infrastructure, the controller provides the available IP addresses, both IPv4 and IPv6, to the external entities.

IPv6 Configuration

The device supports IPv6 client as seamlessly as the IPv4 clients. The administrator must manually configure the VLANs to enable the IPv6, IPv6's snooping and throttling functionality. This will enable the NDP packets to throttle between the device and its various clients.

Prerequisites for IPv6 Client Mobility

- To enable wireless IPv6 client connectivity, the underlying wired network must support IPv6 routing and an address assignment mechanism such as SLAAC or DHCPv6. The device must have L2 adjacency to the IPv6 router, and the VLAN needs to be tagged when the packets enter the device. APs do not require connectivity on an IPv6 network, as all traffic is encapsulated inside the IPv4 CAPWAP tunnel between the AP and device.
- When using the IPv6 Client Mobility, clients must support IPv6 with either static stateless auto configuration or stateful DHCPv6 IP addressing .

- To allow smooth operation of stateful DHCPv6 IP addressing, you must have a switch or router that supports the DHCP for IPv6 feature that is configured to act like a DHCPv6 server, or you need a dedicated server such as a Windows 2008 server with a built-in DHCPv6 server.

Monitoring IPv6 Client Mobility

The commands in Table 1 are used to monitor IPv6 Client mobility on the device.

Table 116: Monitoring IPv6 Client Mobility Commands

Commands	Description
show wireless client summary	Displays the wireless specific configuration of active clients.
show wireless client mac-address (mac-addr-detail)	Displays the wireless specific configuration of active clients based on their MAC address.



CHAPTER 157

IPv6 Support on Flex and Mesh

- [IPv6 Support on Flex + Mesh Deployment, on page 1639](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 Support for Flex + Mesh, on page 1639](#)
- [Verifying IPv6 on Flex+Mesh , on page 1641](#)

IPv6 Support on Flex + Mesh Deployment

IPv6 is the backhaul transport of the Service Provider. The IPv6 support over flex + mesh feature is now supported on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller . WLAN accepts IPv6 clients and forward the traffic.

Configuring IPv6 Support for Flex + Mesh

Follow the procedure given below to enable the IPv6 routing on the controller :

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan <i>vlan-interface-number</i> Example: Device(config)#interface vlan 89	Creates an interface and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-if)#shutdown	Disables the interface configuration.
Step 4	ipv6 enable Example:	Optional. Enables IPv6 on the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)#ipv6 enable	
Step 5	ipv6 address X:X:X:X::X/<0-128> Example: Device(config-if)#ipv6 address 1:1:1:1::1/64	Configures IPv6 address on the interface using the IPv6 prefix option.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-if)#no shutdown	Enables the IPv6 address.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-if)#no shutdown	Enables the PIM dense-mode operation.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-if)#end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 9	show ipv6 interface brief Example: Device#show ipv6 interface brief	Verifies your entries.
Step 10	ping ipv6 destination-address or hostname Example: Device#ping ipv6 1:1:1:1::10	Checks the gateway connectivity.

Configuring Preferred IP Address as IPv6 (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > AP Join**.
 - Step 2** Click the AP Join Profile Name. The **Edit AP Join Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** Choose **CAPWAP > Advanced**.
 - Step 4** From the **Preferred Mode** drop-down list, select **IPv6**.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Preferred IP Address as IPv6

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Configure Terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>default-ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	preferred-mode ipv6 Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# preferred-mode ipv6	Uses IPv6 to join the controller .
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying IPv6 on Flex+Mesh

To verify the IPv6 configuration on the controller , use the following **show** command:

```

Device#show ip interface brief
Interface                IP-Address      OK? Method Status          Protocol
GigabitEthernet2         unassigned      YES unset    up              up
GigabitEthernet0         unassigned      YES NVRAM    administratively down down
Capwap1                  unassigned      YES unset    up              up
Capwap2                  unassigned      YES unset    up              up
Vlan1                    unassigned      YES NVRAM    administratively down down
Vlan89                   9.10.89.90      YES NVRAM    up              up
Ewlc-9.10.89.90#show running-config interface vlan 89
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 120 bytes
!
interface Vlan89
 ip address 9.10.89.90 255.255.255.0
 ip helper-address 9.1.0.100
 no mop enabled
 no mop sysid
end

```




CHAPTER 158

IPv6 CAPWAP UDP Lite Support

- [Information About UDP Lite, on page 1643](#)
- [Enabling UDP Lite Support, on page 1643](#)
- [Verifying UDP Lite Support Configuration, on page 1644](#)

Information About UDP Lite

The UDP Lite Support feature, which is an enhancement to the existing IPv6 functionality, supports the UDP Lite protocol.

This feature is only applicable to the IPv6 addresses of the controller and APs. IPv6 mandates complete payload checksum for UDP. The UDP Lite Support feature minimizes the performance impact on the controller and AP by restricting the checksum calculation coverage for the UDP Lite header to 8 bytes only.

The use of the UDP Lite Support feature impacts intermediate firewalls to allow UDP Lite protocol (protocol ID of 136) packets. Existing firewalls might not provide the option to open specific ports on UDP Lite protocol. In such cases, the administrator must open up all the ports on UDP Lite.

Restrictions for UDP Lite Support

- Mobility IPv6 tunnels do not support the UDP Lite Support feature.

Enabling UDP Lite Support

The following procedure describes the steps involved in enabling UDP Lite for an AP profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	capwap udplite Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# capwap udplite	Enables IPv6 CAPWAP UDP Lite on the AP. Note The following message is displayed after the configuration: This feature is supported only for IPv6 data packets, APs will be rebooted.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying UDP Lite Support Configuration

To verify the CAPWAP UDP Lite status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile name default-ap-profile detailed
CAPWAP UDP-Lite           : ENABLED
Lawful-Interception       : ENABLED
  LI timer                 : 60
AWIPS                     : DISABLED
AWIPS Forensic            : Unknown
Client RSSI Statistics
  Reporting                : ENABLED
  Reporting Interval       : 30 seconds
```



CHAPTER 159

Neighbor Discovery Proxy

- [Information About Neighbor Discovery](#), on page 1645
- [Configure Neighbor Discovery Proxy \(CLI\)](#), on page 1645
- [Configure Duplicate Address Detection Proxy \(CLI\)](#), on page 1646

Information About Neighbor Discovery

In IPv6 networks, Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) uses ICMPv6 messages and solicited-node multicast addresses to track and discover the other IPv6 hosts present on the other side of connected interfaces. As part of this process, a host queries for other node link-layer addresses to verify neighbor reachability using Neighbor Solicitation (NS) messages. In response to the NS messages, a Neighbor Advertisement (NA) is sent to provide information to neighbors.

Configure Neighbor Discovery Proxy (CLI)

Neighbor Discovery (ND) Proxy is the ability of the controller to respond to the Neighbor Solicitation packet destined for wireless clients. During Neighbor Discovery suppression, the controller checks if proxy is enabled for the destined wireless clients. If proxy is enabled, the controller drops the Neighbor Solicitation packet and generates a response to the Neighbor Solicitation source in such a way that the packet appears to be coming from a wireless client. This helps in limiting the traffic to the wireless clients.

If Neighbor Discovery Proxy is not enabled, the multicast Neighbor Solicitation is converted into unicast Neighbor Solicitation with the MAC address of the target client and is forwarded to that client.



Note

- Neighbor Discovery proxy is applicable only in central switching mode.
 - A controller does not proxy the Neighbor Solicitation packet if the destination address is not that of a wireless client.
-

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv6 nd proxy full-proxy Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 nd proxy full-proxy	Enables ND proxy.

Configure Duplicate Address Detection Proxy (CLI)

The IPv6 Duplicate Address Detection (DAD) feature ensures that all the IP addresses assigned on a particular segment are unique. A proxy is required to ensure that multicast and unicast packets are not sent towards the wireless device for which it is enabled.

DAD verifies whether the host address is unique. The IPv6 DAD Proxy feature responds on behalf of the address owner when an address is in use.

However, in a scenario where nodes are restricted from talking to each other at Layer 2, DAD cannot detect a duplicate address. If DAD proxy is disabled, the multicast packet is converted into unicast and is sent to the target client.



Note

- DAD proxy is applicable only in central switching mode.
- A controller does not proxy the DAD NS packet if the destination address is not that of a wireless client.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example:	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1	
Step 3	ipv6 nd proxy dad-proxy Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv6 nd proxy dad-proxy	Enables DAD proxy. Note Full proxy configuration is a superset of ND proxy and DAD proxy configuration. Hence, use the ipv6 nd proxy full-proxy command also to enable DAD proxy.



CHAPTER 160

Address Resolution Protocol Proxy

- [Information About Address Resolution Protocol](#), on page 1649
- [Configure Address Resolution Protocol Proxy \(CLI\)](#), on page 1649

Information About Address Resolution Protocol

The address resolution protocol (ARP) is a protocol used by the Internet Protocol (IP) [RFC826], specifically IPv4, to map IP network addresses to the hardware addresses used by a data link protocol. When a wireless client sends an ARP request for an IP address of interest, the controller performs a search for that address in its database. If an entry is found in the controller database, then the ARP is converted to unicast and forwarded to that particular client. If there is no entry in the controller's database, the ARP request is flooded out to the VLAN wired ports.

Configure Address Resolution Protocol Proxy (CLI)

ARP Proxy is the ability of the controller to respond to the ARP request packet destined for the wireless clients. During broadcast suppression, the controller checks if proxy is enabled for the destined wireless clients. If proxy is enabled, the controller drops the ARP request packet and generates a response to the source of the ARP request in a way that the packet appears to be coming from the wireless client. This helps in limiting the traffic to the wireless clients.

If ARP Proxy is not enabled, the broadcast ARP request is converted into an unicast ARP request with the MAC address of the target client, and is forwarded to only that client.



Note

- Proxy ARP is applicable only in central switching mode.
 - A device will not proxy the ARP request if the destination address is not that of a wireless client.
-

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-profile1	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv4 arp-proxy Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 arp-proxy	Enables ARP proxy.



CHAPTER 161

IPv6 Ready Certification

- [Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification, on page 1651](#)
- [IPv6 Ready Certification, on page 1651](#)
- [Configuring IPv6 Route Information, on page 1652](#)
- [Verifying IPv6 Route Information, on page 1652](#)

Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 117: Feature History for IPv6-Ready Certification

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	IPv6-Ready Certification	This feature is enhanced with the implementation of various IPv6 functionalities that are required to comply with the latest RFC specifications.

IPv6 Ready Certification

Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru, 17.6.1 has implemented various IPv6 functionalities that are required for compliance with the latest RFC specifications for IPv6 Ready Certification. The newly implemented IPv6 functionalities are:

- **Fragment Processing and Reassembly (RFC8200):** The first fragment must contain the mandatory extension header up to the first upper level protocol (ULP) header as specified in RFC 8200.
- **Handling Atomic Fragments in Neighbor Discovery (RFC6980):** Fragmented neighbor discovery packets must be dropped.
- **Packet too Big (RFC8201):** Atomic fragmentation is not supported. Packets failing to meet the IPv6 MTU requirement of 1280 are dropped.

- **Route Information Options (RIO) in IPv6 Router Advertisements (RFC4191):** A new RIO is added to the IPv6 Router Advertisement message for communicating specific routes from routers to hosts. Explicit route configuration ensures that only necessary routes are advertised to the hosts.
- **IPv6 Hop-by-Hop Processing (RFC 8200):** This enhancement allows explicit configuration of the nodes, along the delivery path of the packets that require hop-by-hop options header processing.

Configuring IPv6 Route Information

The Route Information Option (RIO) in the IPv6 router advertisement messages helps in communicating specific routes from routers to hosts. This improves a host's ability to pick up an appropriate default router, when the host is multihomed and the routers are on different links. The explicit route configuration ensures that only necessary routes are advertised to the hosts.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface interface Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitEthernet1.1	Specifies the interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv6 nd ra specific-route prefix/length lifetime lifetime/infinity [preference preference] Example: Device(config-if)# ipv6 nd ra specific-route 3::3/116 lifetime 11 preference medium	Configures RIO in IPv6 router advertisement messages. For more information, see the ipv6 nd ra specific route command.

Verifying IPv6 Route Information

To identify the specific routes that are sent in the router advertisements, use the following command:

```
Device# show ipv6 nd ra specific-route
```

```
IPv6 Prefix/Length Lifetime Preference Interface
```

```
-----
```

```
1234::12/127 1000 High GigabitEthernet2
```



PART **XII**

CleanAir

- [Cisco CleanAir, on page 1655](#)
- [Bluetooth Low Energy, on page 1675](#)
- [Persistent Device Avoidance, on page 1679](#)
- [Spectrum Intelligence, on page 1683](#)
- [Spectrum Analysis, on page 1687](#)



CHAPTER 162

Cisco CleanAir

- [Feature History for CleanAir, on page 1655](#)
- [Information About Cisco CleanAir, on page 1655](#)
- [Prerequisites for CleanAir, on page 1659](#)
- [Restrictions for CleanAir, on page 1659](#)
- [How to Configure CleanAir, on page 1660](#)
- [CleanAir Pro Scanning, on page 1667](#)
- [Verifying CleanAir Parameters, on page 1671](#)
- [Configuration Examples for CleanAir, on page 1672](#)
- [CleanAir FAQs, on page 1673](#)

Feature History for CleanAir

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 118: Feature History for CleanAir

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE 17.13.1	EDRRM Support for 6-GHz Band Radio	The Event-Driven Radio Resource Management (EDRRM) is enabled in 6-GHz band radio of AP.

Information About Cisco CleanAir

Cisco CleanAir is a solution designed to proactively manage the challenges of a shared wireless spectrum. It allows you to see all the users of a shared spectrum (both native devices and foreign interferers). It also enables the network to act upon this information. For example, you can manually remove the interfering device, or the system can automatically change the channel away from the interference. CleanAir provides spectrum management and Radio Frequency (RF) visibility.

A Cisco CleanAir system consists of CleanAir-enabled access points and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller . These access points collect information about all the devices that operate in the industrial, scientific,

and medical (ISM) bands, identify and evaluate the information as a potential interference source, and forward it to the controller . The controller controls the access points and displays the interference devices.

For every device operating in the unlicensed band, Cisco CleanAir provides information about what it is, how it is impacting your wireless network, and what actions you or your network should take. It simplifies RF so that you do not have to be an RF expert.

Wireless LAN systems operate in unlicensed 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz ISM bands. Many devices, such as microwave ovens, cordless phones, and Bluetooth devices also operate in these bands and can negatively affect the Wi-Fi operations.

Some of the most advanced WLAN services, such as voice-over-wireless and IEEE 802.11 radio communications, might be significantly impaired by the interference caused by other legal users of the ISM bands. The integration of Cisco CleanAir functionality addresses this problem of RF interference.

Cisco CleanAir-Related Terms

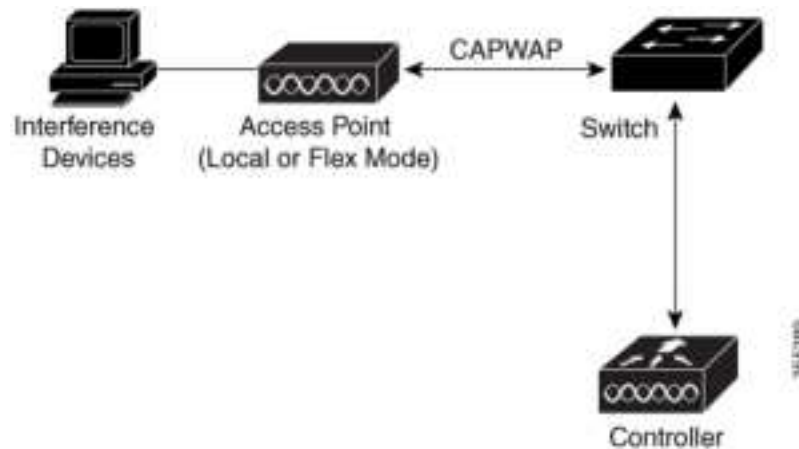
Table 119: CleanAir-Related Terms

Term	Description
AQI	Air Quality Index. The AQI is an indicator of air quality, based on the RF interferences. An AQI of 0 is bad and an AQI > 85 is good.
AQR	Air Quality Report. AQRs contain information about total interference from all the identified sources represented by AQI and the summary of the most severe interference categories. AQRs are sent every 15 minutes to the Mobility Controller and every 30 seconds in the Rapid mode.
DC	Duty Cycle. Percentage of time that the channel is utilized by a device.
EDRRM	Event-Driven RRM. EDRRM allows an access point in distress to bypass normal RRM intervals and immediately change channels.
IDR	Interference Device Reports that an access point sends to the controller .
ISI	Interference Severity Index. The ISI is an indicator of the severity of the interference.
RSSI	Received Signal Strength Indicator. RSSI is a measurement of the power present in a received radio signal. It is the power at which an access point sees the interferer device.

Cisco CleanAir Components

The basic Cisco CleanAir architecture consists of Cisco CleanAir-enabled APs and device.

Figure 38: Cisco CleanAir Solution



An access point equipped with Cisco CleanAir technology collects information about Wi-Fi interference sources and processes it. The access point collects and sends the Air Quality Report (AQR) and Interference Device Report (IDR) to the controller.

The controller controls and configures CleanAir-capable access points, and collects and processes spectrum data. The controller provides local user interfaces (GUI and CLI) to configure basic CleanAir features and services and display current spectrum information. The controller also detects, merges, and mitigates interference devices using RRM TPC and DCA. For details, see *Interference Device Merging*.

The device performs the following tasks in a Cisco CleanAir system:

- Configures Cisco CleanAir capabilities on the access point.
- Provides interfaces (GUI and CLI) for configuring Cisco CleanAir features and retrieving data.
- Displays spectrum data.
- Collects and processes AQRs from the access point and stores them in the air quality database. AQRs contain information about the total interference from all the identified sources represented by the Air Quality Index (AQI) and the summary for the most severe interference categories. The CleanAir system can also include unclassified interference information under per-interference type reports that enable you to take action in scenarios where interference because of unclassified interfering devices is more.
- Collects and processes IDRs from the access point and stores them in the interference device database.



Note When Cisco CleanAir is disabled and Spectrum Intelligence (SI) is enabled in the controller, both CleanAir and Air Quality reporting are disabled. In spite of this, Air Quality is still populated for SI APs and viewed as disabled when **show ap dot11 5ghz/24ghz cleanair config** command is executed. This is an expected behavior as SI APs report Air Quality.

Here, Spectrum intelligence is a subset of CleanAir features. For more information on Spectrum Intelligence, see the *Spectrum Intelligence Deployment Guide*.

Interference Types that Cisco CleanAir can Detect

Cisco CleanAir access points can detect and report severity of the interference. Spectrum event-driven RRM is one such mitigation strategy.

Wi-Fi chip-based RF management systems share these characteristics:

- Any RF energy that cannot be identified as a Wi-Fi signal is reported as noise.
- Noise measurements that are used to assign a channel plan tend to be averaged over a period of time to avoid instability or rapid changes that can be disruptive to certain client devices.
- Averaging measurements reduces the resolution of the measurement. As such, a signal that disrupts clients might not look like it needs to be mitigated after averaging.
- All RF management systems available today are reactive in nature.

Cisco CleanAir is different and can positively identify not only the source of the noise but also its potential impact to a WLAN. Having this information allows you to consider the noise within the context of the network and make intelligent and, where possible, proactive decisions. Spontaneous interference event is commonly used for CleanAir.



Note Spectrum event-driven RRM can be triggered only by Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points in local mode.

Spontaneous interference is interference that appears suddenly on a network, perhaps jamming a channel or a range of channels completely. The Cisco CleanAir spectrum event-driven RRM feature allows you to set a threshold for air quality (AQ) which, if exceeded, triggers an immediate channel change for the affected access point. Most RF management systems can avoid interference, but this information takes time to propagate through the system. Cisco CleanAir relies on AQ measurements to continuously evaluate the spectrum and can trigger a move within 30 seconds. For example, if an access point detects interference from a video camera, it can recover by changing channels within 30 seconds of the camera becoming active. Cisco CleanAir also identifies and locates the source of interference so that more permanent mitigation of the device can be performed at a later time.

Microwave Ovens, Outdoor Ethernet bridges are two classes of devices that qualify as persistent, since once detected, it is likely that these devices will continue to be a random problem and are not likely to move. For these types of devices we can tell RRM of the detection and Bias the affected channel so that RRM "remembers" that there is a high potential for client impacting interference for the Detecting AP on the detected channel. For more information, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/technotes/8-3/b_RRM_White_Paper/b_RRM_White_Paper_chapter_0100.html?bookSearch=true#id_15217.

CleanAir PDA devices include:

- Microwave Oven
- WiMax Fixed
- WiMax Mobile
- Motorola Canopy

In the case of Bluetooth devices, Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points can detect and report interference only if the devices are actively transmitting. Bluetooth devices have extensive power-save modes. For example, interference can be detected when data or voice is being streamed between the connected devices.

EDRRM and AQR Update Mode

EDRRM is a feature that allows an access point that is in distress to bypass normal RRM intervals and immediately change channels. A CleanAir access point always monitors AQ and reports the AQ every 15 minutes. AQ only reports classified interference devices. The key benefit of EDRRM is fast action time. If an interfering device is operating on an active channel and causes enough AQ degradation to trigger an EDRRM, then no clients will be able to use that channel or the access point. You must remove the access point from the channel. EDRRM is not enabled by default, you must first enable CleanAir and then enable EDRRM.

Prerequisites for CleanAir

You can configure Cisco CleanAir only on CleanAir-enabled access points.

Only Cisco CleanAir-enabled access points using the following access point modes can perform Cisco CleanAir spectrum monitoring:

- **Local**—In this mode, each Cisco CleanAir-enabled access point radio provides air quality and interference detection reports for the current operating channel only. An AP can only measure air quality and interference when the AP is not busy transmitting Wi-Fi frames. This implies that CleanAir detections will be drastically lower if the AP is having a high channel utilization.
- **FlexConnect**—When a FlexConnect access point is connected to the controller, its Cisco CleanAir functionality is identical to local mode.
- **Monitor**—When Cisco CleanAir is enabled in monitor mode, the access point provides air quality and interference detection reports for all monitored channels.

The following options are available:

- **All**—All channels
- **DCA**—Channel selection governed by the DCA list
- **Country**—All channels are legal within a regulatory domain

Restrictions for CleanAir

- Access points in monitor mode do not transmit Wi-Fi traffic or 802.11 packets. They are excluded from radio resource management (RRM) planning and are not included in the neighbor access point list. IDR clustering depends on the device's ability to detect neighboring in-network access points. Correlating interference device detections from multiple access points is limited between monitor-mode access points.
- For 4800 AP slot 1 5 GHz is dedicated and cannot be individually moved to monitor mode. However, slot 0 is XOR and can be moved to monitor as well as 2.4/5 GHz. Slot 2 is dedicated monitor and will operate in 5GHz and in AP monitor mode, slot 2 will be disabled because a monitor radio is already available in both 2.4/5GHz. 3700 AP has dedicated 2.4GHz (slot0) and 5GHz (slot1).
- Do not connect access points in SE connect mode directly to any physical port on the controller.
- CleanAir is not supported wherein the channel width is 160 MHz.

How to Configure CleanAir

Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > CleanAir**
 - Step 2** On the **CleanAir** page, click the **me2.4 GHz Band > General** tab.
 - Step 3** Check the **Enable CleanAir** checkbox.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling CleanAir for the 2.4-GHz Band (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz cleanair Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz cleanair	Enables the CleanAir feature on the 802.11b network. Run the no form of this command to disable CleanAir on the 802.11b network.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > CleanAir**.

Step 2 Click the **2.4 GHz Band** tab.

Step 3 Choose the interference types and add them to the **Interference Types to detect** section.

The following interference types are available:

- BLE Beacon—Bluetooth low energy beacon
- Bluetooth Discovery
- Bluetooth Link
- Canopy
- Continuous Transmitter
- DECT-like Phone—Digital Enhanced Cordless Technology phone
- 802.11 FH—802.11 frequency hopping device
- WiFi Inverted—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals
- Jammer
- Microwave Oven
- WiFi Invalid Channel—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels
- TDD Transmitter
- Video Camera
- SuperAG—802.11 SuperAG device
- WiMax Mobile
- WiMax Fixed
- 802.15.4
- Microsoft Device
- SI_FHSS

Step 4 Click **Apply**.

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 2.4-GHz Device (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device {ble-beacon bt-discovery bt-link canopy cont-tx dect-like fh inv jammer mw-oven nonstd report superag tdd-tx video wimax-fixed wimax-mobile xbox zigbee } Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device ble-beacon Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device bt-discovery Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device bt-link Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device canopy Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device cont-tx Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device dect-like Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device fh Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device inv Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device jammer Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device mw-oven Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device nonstd Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device report Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device superag Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device tdd-tx Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device video Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device wimax-fixed Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair</pre>	Configures the 2.4-GHz interference devices to report to the device. Run the no form of this command to disable the configuration. The following is a list of the keyword descriptions: • ble-beacon—Bluetooth low energy beacon • bt-discovery—Bluetooth discovery • bt-link—Bluetooth link • canopy—Canopy device • cont-tx—Continuous transmitter • dect-like—Digital Enhanced Cordless Communication-like phone • fh—802.11-frequency hopping device • inv—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals • jammer—Jammer • mw-oven—Microwave oven • nonstd—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels • report—Interference device reporting • superag—802.11 SuperAG device • tdd-tx—TDD transmitter • video—Video camera • wimax-fixed—WiMax Fixed • wimax-mobile—WiMax Mobile • microsoft xbox—Microsoft Xbox device • zigbee—802.15.4 device

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>device wimax-mobile Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device xbox Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device zigbee Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device alarm</pre>	
Step 3	<pre>end Example: Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > CleanAir**
 - Step 2** On the **CleanAir** page, click the **me5 GHz Band > General** tab.
 - Step 3** Check the **Enable CleanAir** checkbox.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling CleanAir for the 5-GHz Band (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<pre>configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<pre>ap dot11 5ghz cleanair Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz cleanair Device(config)# no ap dot11 5ghz cleanair</pre>	Enables the CleanAir feature on a 802.11a network. Run the no form of this command to disable CleanAir on the 802.11a network.
Step 3	<pre>end Example: Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Radio Configurations** > **CleanAir**.
- Step 2** Click the **5 GHz Band** tab.
- Step 3** Choose the interference types and add them to the **Interference Types to detect** section.

The following interference types are available:

- Canopy
- Continuous Transmitter
- DECT-like Phone—Digital Enhanced Cordless Technology phone
- 802.11 FH—802.11 frequency hopping device
- WiFi Inverted—Device using spectrally inverted Wi-Fi signals
- Jammer
- WiFi Invalid Channel—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels
- SuperAG—802.11 SuperAG device
- TDD Transmitter
- WiMax Mobile
- WiMax Fixed
- Video Camera

- Step 4** Click **Apply**.

Configuring Interference Reporting for a 5-GHz Device (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device{canopy cont-tx dect-like inv jammer nonstd report superag tdd-tx video wimax-fixed wimax-mobile}	Configures a 5-GHz interference device to report to the device. Run the no form of this command to disable interference device reporting.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device canopy Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device cont-tx Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device dect-like Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device inv Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device jammer Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device nonstd Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device report Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device superag Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device tdd-tx Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device video Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device wimax-fixed Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device wimax-mobile Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device si_fhss Device(config)#ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device alarm</pre>	The following is a list of the keyword descriptions: • canopy—Canopy device • cont-tx—Continuous transmitter • dect-like—Digital Enhanced Cordless Communication-like phone • fh—802.11-frequency hopping device • inv—Device using spectrally-inverted Wi-Fi signals • jammer—Jammer • nonstd—Device using nonstandard Wi-Fi channels • superag—802.11 SuperAG device • tdd-tx—TDD transmitter • video—Video camera • wimax-fixed—WiMax fixed • wimax-mobile—WiMax mobile
Step 3	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Event Driven RRM for a CleanAir Event (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > RRM**.
The **Radio Resource Management** page is displayed.
- Step 2** Click the **DCA** tab.
- Step 3** In the **Event Driven RRM** section, check the **EDRRM** check box to run RRM when CleanAir-enabled AP detects a significant level of interference.
- Step 4** Configure the **Sensitivity Threshold** level at which RRM has to be invoked from the following options:
- **Low**: Represents a decreased sensitivity to changes in the environment and its value is set at 35.
 - **Medium**: Represents medium sensitivity to changes in the environment at its value is set at 50.
 - **High**: Represents increased sensitivity to changes in the environment at its value is set at 60.
 - **Custom**: If you choose this option, you must specify a custom value in the **Custom Threshold** box.
- Step 5** To configure rogue duty cycle, check the **Rogue Contribution** check box and then specify the **Rogue Duty-Cycle** in terms of percentage. The default value of rogue duty cycle is 80 percent.
- Note**
Rogue Contribution is a new component included in ED-RRM functionality. Rogue Contribution allows ED-RRM to trigger based on identified Rogue Channel Utilization, which is completely separate from CleanAir metrics. Rogue Duty Cycle comes from normal off channel RRM metrics, and invokes a channel change based on neighboring rogue interference. Because this comes from RRM metrics and not CleanAir, the timing - assuming normal 180 second off channel intervals - would be within 3 minutes or 180 seconds worst case. It is configured separately from CleanAir ED-RRM and is disabled by default. This allows the AP to become reactive to Wi-Fi interference that is not coming from own network and is measured at each individual AP.
- Step 6** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring EDRRM for a CleanAir Event (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event Example: Device(config)# <code>ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel</code>	Enables EDRRM CleanAir event. Run the no form of this command to disable EDRRM.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>cleanair-event</pre> <pre>Device(config)#no ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event</pre>	
Step 3	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm channel cleanair-event [sensitivity {custom high low medium}]</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity high</pre>	Configures the EDRRM sensitivity of the CleanAir event. The following is a list of the keyword descriptions: • Custom—Specifies custom sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value. • High—Specifies the most sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value. • Low—Specifies the least sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value. • Medium—Specifies medium sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference as indicated by the AQ value.
Step 4	<pre>end</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

CleanAir Pro Scanning

Feature History for CleanAir Pro Scanning

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 120: Feature History for CleanAir Pro Scanning

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	CleanAir Pro Scanning	The CleanAir Pro Scanning feature monitors and reports the different categories of non-Wi-Fi interference in the 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands.

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	CleanAir Support for 6-GHz	The CleanAir is enabled in 6-GHz band radio of AP only if CleanAir is enabled globally in 6-GHz band in the controller and 6-GHz radio of individual AP.

Information About CleanAir Pro Scanning

CleanAir Pro Scanning monitors and provides reports on the different categories of non-Wi-Fi interference, for the 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, and 6-GHz band. The CleanAir Pro Scanning feature reports the type of interferer, the severity of the interference, and the impacted channels, to the controller, through the Interference Device Reports (IDRs). The air quality (AQ) metric report for each Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) channel, contains all the detected non-Wi-Fi interferers and the severity of each interferer.



Note The CleanAir Pro Scanning feature is applicable only for APs with CleanAir Pro-supported radios.

The controller maintains a database of the active interferers reported from each AP. The controller merges interferers across APs if the same interferer is observed across APs. The controller tracks the air quality for each channel and uses the air quality metric report in the channel selection for each AP.

CleanAir Pro Scanning scans channels in slots or bands that are currently enabled on an AP. Channel enablement under DCA is applicable only if you selected the **dca** keyword under the **ap dot11 rrm monitor channel-list** command. The **country** keyword monitors the regulatory channels, and the **all** keyword monitors all channels (everything that the radio can scan, regardless of regulatory constraints).

Interference Device Reports (IDR)

Each AP detects non-Wi-Fi interferers, the duty cycle, Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) in dBm, and a calculated metric known as Severity. These details are sent to the controller through the Interference Device Report (IDR) messages. The IDR event types, such as UP, UPDT, and DOWN, inform the controller about when each interferer was first detected (UP), when the interferer was updated (UPDT), and when it is no longer seen (DOWN). The controller keeps a list of these interferers along with key information, including the channels that are impacted by the interferer on a per-AP basis.

In an AP, interferers are merged with those that are detected on the same channel, same RSSI, and same device signature. This merge occurs on a controller across APs reporting the same type of interferer.

Air Quality Index Reports

The Air Quality (AQ) metric is calculated for each AP, and is the inverse of the cumulative severity metrics. AQ starts at 100 (good) and is decremented by each reported interference source severity metric. For example, if three Bluetooth devices are reported by an AP, each with a severity of two, this will result in the overall cell AQ of 94 ($2 \times 3 \text{ BT} = 6$, $100 - 6 = \text{AQ of } 94$).



Note Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 supports 6-GHz only for spectral analysis on Cisco Catalyst Center. IDR and AQ are not supported for the 6-GHz band in Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1.

Enabling CleanAir Pro Scanning (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair	Configures the CleanAir features for the 2.4-GHz , 5-GHz, or 6-GHz radios.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair alarm air-quality Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair alarm air-quality	Configures CleanAir alarm for air quality in the 2.4-GHz , 5-GHz, or 6-GHz radios.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair alarm air-quality threshold <i>threshold-value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair alarm air-quality threshold 25	Configures the air quality threshold value of CleanAir alarm in the 2.4-GHz , 5-GHz, or 6-GHz radios. The valid range is between 1 and 100.
Step 5	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair alarm device cont-tx Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair alarm device cont-tx	Configures the continuous transmitter as the interference device CleanAir alarm in the 2.4-GHz , 5-GHz, or 6-GHz radios.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair alarm unclassified Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair alarm unclassified	Configures the air quality alarm on exceeding unclassified category severity.
Step 7	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair alarm unclassified threshold <i>threshold-value</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair alarm unclassified threshold 15	Configures the air quality alarm on exceeding unclassified category severity threshold. The valid range is between 1 and 100.
Step 8	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cleanair device cont-tx Example:	Configure continuous transmitter as the CleanAir interference device type.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device cont-tx	

Monitoring CleanAir Pro Statistics (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > CleanAir Statistics**.
The **CleanAir Statistics** window is displayed.
- Step 2** Click the **2.4 GHz Band**, **5 GHz Band**, or **6 GHz Band** tab.
The **CleanAir Interference Devices** tab is selected by default. You can monitor and detect the cluster IDs, the interferer type, severity, the affected channels, and so on, for the listed APs.
- Step 3** Click the listed devices under the **CleanAir Interference Devices** tab to view the **CleanAir Interference Charts** that displays the **AQ Graph** and the **Interference Power**.
- Step 4** Click the **Air Quality** tab to monitor the channel, the average and minimum AQ, number of interferers, the time at which the interference was detected, and the spectrum AP type.
- Step 5** Click the **Worst Air Quality Report** tab to view the AQ report, with details of the AP that reported the worst AQ, the radio channel number with the worst-reported air quality, the minimum and the average AQ index, the interference device count, and the spectrum AP type.
-

Verifying CleanAir Pro Scanning Details

To view the CleanAir Air Quality (AQ) data, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair air-quality summary
```

To view the CleanAir Air Quality (AQ) worst data, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair air-quality worst
```

To view the CleanAir device cluster information, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair device cluster cluster-id
```

To view the CleanAir interferers of a device type, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair device type
```

To view the CleanAir configuration for a specific AP, run the following commands:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair air-quality
Device# show ap name ap-name dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} cleanair device
```

To view the continuous transmitter as the CleanAir interference device type, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 6ghz cleanair device type cont-tx
```


Verifying CleanAir Parameters

You can verify CleanAir parameters using the following commands:

Table 121: Commands for verifying CleanAir

Command Name	Description
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type all	Displays all the CleanAir interferers for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type ble-beacon	Displays all the Bluetooth BLE beacons for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type bt-discovery	Displays CleanAir interferers of type BT Discovery for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type bt-link	Displays CleanAir interferers of type BT Link for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type canopy	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Canopy for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type cont-tx	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Continuous transmitter for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type dect-like	Displays CleanAir interferers of type DECT Like for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type fh	Displays CleanAir interferers of type 802.11FH for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type inv	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Wi-Fi Inverted for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type jammer	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Jammer for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type mw-oven	Displays CleanAir interferers of type MW Oven for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type nonstd	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Wi-Fi inverted channel for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type superag	Displays CleanAir interferers of type SuperAG for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type tdd-tx	Displays CleanAir interferers of type TDD Transmit for the 2.4-GHz band.
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type video	Displays CleanAir interferers of type Video Camera for the 2.4-GHz band.

Command Name	Description
show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type wimax-fixed	Displays CleanAir interferers of type WiMax Fixed for the 2.4-GHz band.

Monitoring Interference Devices

When a CleanAir-enabled access point detects interference devices, detections of the same device from multiple sensors are merged together to create clusters. Each cluster is given a unique ID. Some devices conserve power by limiting the transmit time until actually needed, which results in the spectrum sensor to stop detecting the device temporarily. This device is then correctly marked as down. Such a device is correctly removed from the spectrum database. In cases when all the interferer detections for a specific device are reported, the cluster ID is kept alive for an extended period of time to prevent possible device-detection bouncing. If the same device is detected again, it is merged with the original cluster ID and the device-detection history is preserved.

For example, some Bluetooth headsets operate on battery power. These devices employ methods to reduce power consumption, such as turning off the transmitter when not actually needed. Such devices can appear to come and go from the classification. To manage these devices, CleanAir keeps the cluster IDs for longer and they are remerged into a single record upon detection. This process smoothens the user records and accurately represents the device history.



Note The following is a prerequisite for monitoring the interference devices:
You can configure Cisco CleanAir only on CleanAir-enabled access points.

Configuration Examples for CleanAir

This example shows how to enable CleanAir on the 2.4-GHz band and an access point operating in the channel:

```
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz cleanair
Device(config)#exit
Device#ap name TAP1 dot11 24ghz cleanair
Device#end
```

This example shows how to enable an EDRRM CleanAir event in the 2.4-GHz band and configure high sensitivity to non-Wi-Fi interference:

```
Device#configure terminal
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event
Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel cleanair-event sensitivity high
Device(config)#end
```

This example shows how to enable an access point in the monitor mode:

```
Device#ap name <ap-name> mode monitor
```

CleanAir FAQs

- Q.** Multiple access points detect the same interference device. However, the device shows them as separate clusters or different suspected devices clustered together. Why does this happen?
- A.** Access points must be RF neighbors for the device to consider merging the devices that are detected by these access points. An access point takes time to establish neighbor relationships. A few minutes after the device reboots or after there is a change in the RF group, and similar events, clustering will not be very accurate.
- Q.** How do I view neighbor access points?
- A.** To view neighbor access points, use the **show ap ap_name auto-rf dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz}** command.

This example shows how to display the neighbor access points:

```
Device#show ap name AS-5508-5-AP3 auto-rf dot11 24ghz
```

```
<snippet>
```

```
Nearby APs
```

AP 0C85.259E.C350 slot 0	:	-12 dBm on 1 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0C85.25AB.CCA0 slot 0	:	-24 dBm on 6 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0C85.25C7.B7A0 slot 0	:	-26 dBm on 11 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0C85.25DE.2C10 slot 0	:	-24 dBm on 6 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0C85.25DE.C8E0 slot 0	:	-14 dBm on 11 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0C85.25DF.3280 slot 0	:	-31 dBm on 6 (10.10.0.5)
AP 0CD9.96BA.5600 slot 0	:	-44 dBm on 6 (10.0.0.2)
AP 24B6.5734.C570 slot 0	:	-48 dBm on 11 (10.0.0.2)

```
<snippet>
```

- Q.** What are the AP debug commands available for CleanAir?
- A.** The AP debug commands for CleanAir are:
- **debug cleanair {bringup | event | logdebug | low | major | nsi | offchan}**
 - **debug rrm {neighbor | off-channel | reports}**



CHAPTER 163

Bluetooth Low Energy

- [Information About Bluetooth Low Energy, on page 1675](#)
- [Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon \(GUI\), on page 1676](#)
- [Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon, on page 1676](#)

Information About Bluetooth Low Energy



Note

This feature is not related to the Indoor IoT Services feature set that is part of Cisco Spaces.

This feature describes how Access Points and Catalyst 9800 can detect BLE devices as wireless interferers using Clean Air - not the BLE radio that is available on some Access Point models. This feature is not meant to be used for BLE-based asset tracking, environmental monitoring, or tag management use cases, which are powered using Cisco Spaces.

For full feature functionality of how BLE-related use cases are delivered in the Cisco solution, refer to Cisco Spaces configuration guides for [Indoor IoT services](#).

Bluetooth low energy (BLE) is a wireless personal area network technology aimed at enhancing location services for mobile devices. The small Bluetooth tag devices placed at strategic locations transmit universally unique identifiers (UUIDs) and, Major and Minor fields as their identity. These details are picked up by Bluetooth-enabled smartphones and devices. The location information of these devices are sent to the corresponding back-end server. Relevant advertisements and other important information are then pushed to the devices using this location-specific information.

By treating a tag device as an interferer and using the existing system capabilities, such as interference location, the tag device can be located on a map display in a wireless LAN deployment and its movement monitored. Besides this, information on missing tags can also be obtained. This feature can determine rogue and malicious tags using the unique identifier associated with each tag (or family of tags) against a predetermined allowed list from a customer. Using the management function, alerts can be displayed or emailed based on rogue tags, missing tags, or moved tags.

Limitations of BLE Feature

- The wireless infrastructure must support Cisco CleanAir.
- Supports a maximum of only 250 unique BLE beacons (cluster entries) and 1000 device entries.

- Cisco CleanAir feature is only supported on Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points with Hyperlocation module RM3010. The BLE feature on Wave 2 and Wi-Fi 6 APs works in a different manner (through cloud beacon center) and is not covered by this feature.

Areas of Use

Since the BLE feature provides granular location details of devices (smart phones or bluetooth-enabled devices) that helps push context-sensitive advertising and other information to users. Possible areas of application include retail stores, museums, zoo, healthcare, fitness, security, advertising, and so on.

Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Radio Configurations > CleanAir > 2.4 GHz Band > General .
Step 2	Check the Enable CleanAir check box.
Step 3	From the Available Interference Types list, select and move BLE Beacon to the Interference Types to Detect list.
Step 4	Click Apply .
-

Enabling Bluetooth Low Energy Beacon

Bluetooth low energy (BLE) detection is enabled by default. Use the procedure given below to enable BLE when it is disabled.

Before you begin

- The wireless infrastructure must support Cisco CleanAir.
- Cisco CleanAir configuration and show commands are available only in Mobility Controller (MC) mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Controller# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device [ble-beacon] Example:	Enables the BLE feature on the 802.11b network. Use the no form of the command to disable BLE feature on the 802.11b network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Controller(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device ble-beacon	
Step 3	exit Example: Controller(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 4	show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair config Example: Controller# show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair config Interference Device Settings: Interference Device Reporting..... : Enabled Bluetooth Link..... : Enabled Microwave Oven..... : Enabled BLE Beacon..... : Enabled	(Optional) Displays the BLE beacon configuration.
Step 5	show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type ble-beacon Example: Controller# show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type ble-beacon DC = Duty Cycle (%) ISI = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference) RSSI = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm) DevID = Device ID No ClusterID DevID Type AP Name ISI RSSI DC Channel 1 2c:92:80:00:00:22 0xa001 BLE Beacon 5508_3_AP3600_f839 -- -74 0 unknown	(Optional) Displays the BLE beacon device-type information.



CHAPTER 164

Persistent Device Avoidance

- [Information about Cisco Persistent Device Avoidance, on page 1679](#)
- [Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance \(GUI\), on page 1680](#)
- [Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance \(CLI\), on page 1680](#)
- [Verifying Persistent Device Avoidance, on page 1680](#)

Information about Cisco Persistent Device Avoidance

The Cisco CleanAir Persistent device avoidance (PDA) feature is a part of spectrum management. Some interference devices, such as, outdoor bridges and microwave ovens, transmit signals only when required. These devices can cause significant interference to the local WLAN, because short-duration and periodic operations remain largely undetected by normal RF management metrics. With Cisco CleanAir (CleanAir), the RRM dynamic channel allocation (DCA) algorithm can detect, measure, register, and remember the impact, and adjust the RRM DCA algorithm. The PDA process minimizes the use of channels affected by persistent devices in the channel plan, local to the interference source. CleanAir detects and stores persistent device information in the controller. This information is used to mitigate the interfering channels.

Persistent Devices Detection - CleanAir-capable monitor mode APs collect information about persistent devices on all the configured channels and store the information in the controller. Local or bridge mode APs detect interference devices only on the serving channels.

The PDA feature works seamlessly on all platforms. All the AP models that are capable of CleanAir and Spectrum Intelligence support the PDA feature.

The supported platforms are:

- Cisco Aironet 1852 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 1832 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 2700 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 2800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3700 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 4800 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9115 Series Access Points

- Cisco Catalyst 9117 Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9120AX Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Access Points

Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configurations > Radio Configurations > RRM**
- Step 2** Click the **5 GHz Band** tab or the **2.4 GHz Band**, and click the **DCA** tab.
- Step 3** In the **DCA** window, under the **Dynamic Channel Assignment Algorithm** section, check the **Avoid Persistent Non-WiFi Interference** check box to enable the device to ignore persistent non-WiFi interference.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring Persistent Device Avoidance (CLI)

You can enable and disable the PDA feature and PDA propagation configuration mode through the RRM Manager.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rrm channel device Example: Device# [no] ap dot11 24ghz rrm channel device	Configures persistent non-WiFi device avoidance in the 802.11a or 802.11b channel assignment. Use the no form of this command to negate the command or to set its defaults.

Verifying Persistent Device Avoidance

To verify the current state of **Device Aware** detail of the channel, use the following command:

```

Device#show ap dot11 24ghz channel
Leader Automatic Channel Assignment
  Channel Assignment Mode          : AUTO
  Channel Update Interval         : 600 seconds
  Anchor time (Hour of the day)   : 0
  Channel Update Contribution
    Noise                         : Enable
    Interference                  : Enable
    Load                         : Disable
  Device Aware                    : Enable
  CleanAir Event-driven RRM option : Disabled
  Channel Assignment Leader       : cisco-vwlc (9.9.39.73)
  Last Run                       : 166 seconds ago

DCA Sensitivity Level             : MEDIUM : 10 dB
DCA Minimum Energy Limit         : -95 dBm
Channel Energy Levels
  Minimum                        : -82 dBm
  Average                       : -82 dBm
  Maximum                       : -82 dBm
Channel Dwell Times
  Minimum                       : 8 days 0 hour 43 minutes 13 seconds
  Average                       : 8 days 0 hour 43 minutes 13 seconds
  Maximum                       : 8 days 0 hour 43 minutes 13 seconds
802.11b 2.4 GHz Auto-RF Channel List
  Allowed Channel List          : 1,6,11
  Unused Channel List           : 2,3,4,5,7,8,9,10

```

```

Device#show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type all
DC    = Duty Cycle (%)
ISI   = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
RSSI  = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID = Device ID
PD    = Persistent Device

```

ClusterID	Mac Address	DevID	Type	PD	AP Name
Version	ISI	RSSI	DC	Channel	Last Update Time
9800.0000.0004	3400.0200.0001	0x0001	Jammer	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	100 -67 100	1,2		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0005	3400.0200.0004	0x0004	Xbox	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	45 -73 45	1		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0006	3400.0200.0006	0x0006	TDD Transmit	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	10 -75 10	1,2		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0006	3400.0200.0007	0x0007	Continuous TX	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	30 -77 30	1,2		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0007	3400.0200.0009	0x0009	802.15.4	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	10 -95 10	1,2		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC

```

Device# show ap dot11 5ghz cleanair device type all
DC    = Duty Cycle (%)
ISI   = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
RSSI  = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID = Device ID
PD    = Persistent Device

```

ClusterID	Mac Address	DevID	Type	PD	AP Name
Version	ISI	RSSI	DC	Channel	Last Update Time
9800.0000.0000	3400.0201.0002	0x0002	WiFi Inverted	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	45 -63 45	40		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0001	3400.0201.0004	0x0004	TDD Transmit	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	10 -76 10	40		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC
9800.0000.0001	3400.0201.0005	0x0005	Continuous TX	No	RRM-TSIM-1
CA	30 -77 30	40		12/16/2020	18:32:42 UTC

```

9800.0000.0002      3400.0201.0007      0x0007 BT Link      No      RRM-TSIM-1
CA      10      -88      10      40      12/16/2020 18:32:42 UTC

```

To verify all the reported interferers along with the class type, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type wimax-mobile
DC      = Duty Cycle (%)
ISI      = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
RSSI      = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID      = Device ID

```

ClusterID	Mac Address	DevID	Type	AP Name	ISI
RSSI DC Channel					
1900.0000.0006	xxxx.xxxx.xxx1	0xc001	WiMax Mobile	Cisco-AP	4
-88 1					
1900.0000.0007	xxxx.xxxx.xxx2	0xc002	WiMax Mobile	Cisco-AP	4
-88 1					

To verify the persistent device information under Auto-RF, use the following command:

```

Device#show ap auto-rf dot11 24ghz
Number of Slots      : 2
AP Name              : VANC-AP
MAC Address          : d4c9.3ce5.c760
Slot ID              : 0
Radio Type           : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
.....
Noise Information
.....
Persistent Interference Devices
Class Type           Channel  DC (%)  RSSI (dBm)  Last Update Time
-----
MW Oven              11      NA      -71         08/22/2019 12:03:18 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -24         08/22/2019 12:03:19 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -17         08/22/2019 12:03:16 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -22         08/22/2019 12:03:19 UTC

```

To verify the persistent device information under Auto-RF for specific Cisco APs, use the following command:

```

Device#show ap name ap_name auto-rf dot11 24ghz

Number of Slots      : 2
AP Name              : VANC-AP
MAC Address          : d4c9.3ce5.c760
Slot ID              : 0
Radio Type           : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
.....
Noise Information
.....
Persistent Interference Devices
Class Type           Channel  DC (%)  RSSI (dBm)  Last Update Time
-----
MW Oven              11      NA      -71         08/22/2019 12:03:18 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -24         08/22/2019 12:03:19 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -17         08/22/2019 12:03:16 UTC
MW Oven              11      NA      -22         08/22/2019 12:03:19 UTC

```



CHAPTER 165

Spectrum Intelligence

- [Spectrum Intelligence](#), on page 1683
- [Configuring Spectrum Intelligence](#), on page 1684
- [Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information](#), on page 1684
- [Debugging Spectrum Intelligence on Supported APs \(CLI\)](#), on page 1685

Spectrum Intelligence

The Spectrum Intelligence feature scans for non-Wi-Fi radio interference on 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands. Spectrum intelligence provides basic functions to detect interferences of three types, namely microwave, continuous wave (like video bridge and baby monitor), wi-fi and frequency hopping (Bluetooth and frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) cordless phone).

For information about APs that support this feature see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.



Note You must enable Spectrum Intelligence feature on the Cisco Aironet 1832 and 1852 series APs to get radio details, such as noise, air-quality, interference, and radio utilization on the Cisco Catalyst Center Assurance AP health.

Restrictions

- SI APs only report a single interference type in Local mode.
- SI does not support high availability for air quality or interference reports. High Availability is not supported because interference report/device reported will not be copied to standby after switchover. We expect AP to send it again, if at all interferer is still there.
- Spectrum Intelligence detects only three types of devices:
 - Microwave
 - Continuous wave—(video recorder, baby monitor)
 - SI-FHSS—(Bluetooth, Frequency hopping Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) phones)

Configuring Spectrum Intelligence

Follow the procedure given below to configure spectrum intelligence:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} SI Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz SI	Configures the 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz Spectrum Intelligence feature on the 802.11a or 802.11b network. Add no form of the command to disable SI on the 802.11a or 802.11b network.

Verifying Spectrum Intelligence Information

Use the following commands to verify spectrum intelligence information:

To display the SI information for a 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz band, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz SI config
```

```
SI Solution..... : Enabled
Interference Device Settings:
  SI_FHSS..... : Enabled
  Interference Device Types Triggering Alarms:
    SI_FHSS..... : Disabled
```

```
Device# show ap dot11 5ghz SI device type
RSSI = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID = Device ID
PD = Persistent Device
```

Mac Address	DevID	Type	PD	AP Name	RSSI	Channel
Last Update Time						
3400.0401.0006	0x0006	BT Discovery	No	RRM-TSIM-3	-88	40
12/16/2020 18:11:28 UTC						

To display SI interferers of type Continuous transmitter for a 2.4-GHz band, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz SI device type cont_tx
RSSI = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
DevID = Device ID
```

Mac Address	DevID	Type	AP Name	RSSI	Channel
xxxx.xxxx.xxxx	0xf001	Continuous TX	Cisco-AP	-47	

To display 802.11a interference devices information for the given AP for 5-GHz, use the following command:

Device# **show ap dot11 5ghz SI device type ap**

DC = Duty Cycle (%)
 ISI = Interference Severity Index (1-Low Interference, 100-High Interference)
 RSSI = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
 DevID = Device ID
 AP type = CA, clean air, SI spectrum intelligence

No	ClusterID/BSSID	DevID	Type	AP Type	AP Name	ISI	RSSI	DC	Channel
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

To display SI interferers of type Continuous transmitter for a 5-GHz band, use the following command:

Device# **show ap dot11 5ghz SI device type cont_tx**

RSSI = Received Signal Strength Index (dBm)
 DevID = Device ID

Mac Address	DevID	Type	AP Name	RSSI	Channel
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
xxxx.xxxx.xxx1	0xf001	Continuous TX	Cisco-AP	-88	
xxxx.xxxx.xxx2	0xf002	Continuous TX	Cisco-AP	-88	

To display all Cisco CleanAir interferers for a 2.4-GHz band, use the following command:

Device# **show ap dot11 24ghz cleanair device type all**

Debugging Spectrum Intelligence on Supported APs (CLI)

You need to enter these commands in the AP console. For information about APs that support this feature see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

Procedure

- Generate major Spectrum Intelligence logs for an AP by entering this command:
debug cleanair major
- Verify the Spectrum Intelligence scan schedule of 5 seconds on an AP by entering this command:
debug cleanair event
- Generate logs at 10-minute interval, when interference is not detected or reported by the AP, by entering this command:
debug cleanair raw 10

This command creates three files under **/tmp** directory from dev shell.

- spectrum.fft
- spectrum.dbg
- spectrum.int

- View the Spectrum Intelligence detected interfering devices by entering this command:
show cleanair interferers
- View the Spectrum Intelligence configuration status by entering this command:
show cleanair status



CHAPTER 166

Spectrum Analysis

- [Information About Spectrum Analysis, on page 1687](#)
- [Live Spectrum Analysis, on page 1688](#)
- [Performing AP Spectrum Analysis \(GUI\), on page 1688](#)
- [Configuring Spectrum Analysis, on page 1689](#)
- [Verifying Spectrum Analysis, on page 1689](#)

Information About Spectrum Analysis

Cisco Catalyst Center receives a spectrogram stream from access points and visualizes spectrum analysis as a real-time spectrogram view. Network administrators receive RF violation issues from end users or radio frequency issue from the Catalyst Center. To analyze a violation, you should select the corresponding AP and analyze the spectrogram stream.

Based on whether a setting is global or is meant for a specific channel, every AP uses a specific channel to communicate with clients.

When a lot of clients join on the same AP, there is a high possibility of frames getting dropped off. When there is an issue of clients dropping quickly, or not getting onboarded, you should perform the spectrum analysis to check if the channels are clogged.

You can enable spectrum analysis on every AP listed in the web UI and view the graphs based on the corresponding AP. When enabled, the APs send spectrum data to Catalyst Center which then aggregates it into 3 distinct charts.

You can view the following charts while performing a spectrum analysis:

- **Persistence Charts:** Plot the amplitude-to-power ratio of each signal at each channel for a period of five minutes. The chart is color coded with blue color representing one signal and red representing many signals. This chart also plots the opacity that represents the age of the signal data within the five minute interval, with older data being more transparent.
- **Waterfall Charts:** Plot all the signals that are analyzed in the channel for a period of five minutes with intensity on X axis, and with time represented in the Y axis. The chart is color coded, with blue color representing a low value and red representing a high value.
- **Interference and Duty Charts:** Plot the severity of detected interference for each channel band, and list the interference type. Interference is plotted as a circle, where the center represents the severity, and the radius represents the section of the channel band that is affected. The impact of the interference is measured

as severity, with values ranging from 0 to 100. The interference type is determined from RF signature identified by Cisco CleanAir technology of the interference.

Live Spectrum Analysis

You can perform a live spectrum analysis of the AP radios, and monitor the spectrum of frequencies generated by the radios of the corresponding AP using the web UI. The live spectrum capture uses radio 2 if it is available. Otherwise, both radio 0 and radio 1 are used. When you enable live spectrum analysis on radio 2, Cisco Catalyst Center displays a consolidated view of the interference in both the 2.4 Ghz and 5 Ghz range. However, if the feature is enabled on radio 0 or radio 1, you can only view the part of the spectrum that the radios are associated with. You can select a radio in the web UI and view a live spectrum associated with this radio, for 10 minutes, and later extend the duration based on your requirement.

Performing AP Spectrum Analysis (GUI)

Before you begin

Use the Cisco Catalyst Center Discovery functionality to locate an AP to perform a spectrum analysis. .

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Provision > Inventory**.

The **Inventory** window is displayed.

Step 2 Click **AP Name** .

The **360 degree Device** window is displayed.

Step 3 Click **Intelligent Capture** .

Step 4 Click **Spectrum Analysis** to view the graphs.

Step 5 From the **Radio** drop-down list, choose a radio.

Step 6 Click **Start Spectrum Analysis** .

The graphs are displayed on the web UI for you to analyze.

To stop the analysis, click **Stop Spectrum Analysis**.

Configuring Spectrum Analysis

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	icap subscription ap rf spectrum enable Example: Device# icap subscription ap rf spectrum enable	Configures spectrum analysis on the AP.
Step 3	icap subscription ap rf spectrum slotnumber Example: Device# icap subscription ap rf spectrum slot 0	Selects a radio slot to enable spectrum analysis.

Verifying Spectrum Analysis

The following is a sample output of the **show ap icap subscription name** command that verifies spectrum analysis on a selected AP:

```
Device#show ap icap subscription name
Subscription list
-----
Full Pkt Capture : Disabled
Partial Pkt Capture : Enabled
Anomaly Event : Enabled
Debug : Disabled
Stats : Disabled
Ap Operational Data : Disabled
Sensor Message : Enabled
RRM Operational Data : Disabled
Client Events : Disabled
aWIPS Forensic Pkts: Disabled

MAC and Filters subscription list
-----
Full-packet-trace: None
Partial-packet-trace: None
Filters: None
Anomaly Detection: None

Client Stats
-----
None

RF Spectrum
```

```
-----  
Radio Slot(s) : 1
```



PART **XIII**

Mesh Access Points

- [Mesh Access Points, on page 1693](#)
- [Redundant Root Access Point \(RAP\) Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1771](#)



CHAPTER 167

Mesh Access Points

- [Introduction to the Mesh Network, on page 1695](#)
- [Mesh RRM feature support and evolution across AP generations, on page 1696](#)
- [Restrictions for Mesh Access Points, on page 1697](#)
- [MAC Authorization, on page 1697](#)
- [Preshared Key Provisioning, on page 1698](#)
- [EAP Authentication, on page 1698](#)
- [Bridge Group Names, on page 1699](#)
- [Background Scanning, on page 1700](#)
- [Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode \(Concept\), on page 1700](#)
- [Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz , on page 1701](#)
- [Information About Mesh Backhaul, on page 1701](#)
- [Information About Mesh Serial Backhaul, on page 1701](#)
- [Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM, on page 1702](#)
- [Dynamic Frequency Selection, on page 1703](#)
- [Country Codes, on page 1704](#)
- [Intrusion Detection System, on page 1704](#)
- [Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers, on page 1704](#)
- [Information About DHCP and NAT Functionality on Root AP \(RAP\), on page 1705](#)
- [Mesh Convergence, on page 1705](#)
- [Ethernet Bridging, on page 1706](#)
- [Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network, on page 1707](#)
- [Radio Resource Management on Mesh, on page 1707](#)
- [Air Time Fairness on Mesh, on page 1707](#)
- [Spectrum Intelligence for Mesh, on page 1708](#)
- [Indoor Mesh Interoperability with Outdoor Mesh, on page 1709](#)
- [Workgroup Bridge, on page 1709](#)
- [Link Test, on page 1709](#)
- [Mesh Daisy Chaining, on page 1710](#)
- [Mesh Leaf Node, on page 1710](#)
- [Flex+Bridge Mode, on page 1710](#)
- [Backhaul Client Access, on page 1711](#)
- [Mesh CAC, on page 1711](#)
- [Prerequisites for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1712](#)

- Restrictions for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1712
- Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure, on page 1712
- Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment, on page 1713
- Configuring MAC Authorization (GUI), on page 1713
- Configuring MAC Authorization (CLI), on page 1714
- Configuring MAP Authorization - EAP (GUI), on page 1715
- Configuring MAP Authorization (CLI), on page 1716
- Configuring PSK Provisioning (CLI), on page 1716
- Configuring a Bridge Group Name (GUI), on page 1718
- Configuring a Bridge Group Name (CLI), on page 1718
- Configuring Background Scanning (GUI), on page 1719
- Configuring Background Scanning, on page 1719
- Configure AP fast ancestor find mode (GUI), on page 1719
- Configuring Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find Mode (Task), on page 1720
- Configuring Backhaul Client Access (GUI), on page 1721
- Configuring Backhaul Client Access (CLI), on page 1721
- Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI), on page 1722
- Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI), on page 1722
- Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI), on page 1723
- Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI), on page 1724
- Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI), on page 1724
- Configuring Mesh Backhaul (CLI), on page 1725
- Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (CLI), on page 1725
- Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (CLI), on page 1726
- Configuring Ethernet Bridging (GUI), on page 1726
- Configuring Ethernet Bridging (CLI), on page 1727
- Configuring Multicast Modes over Mesh, on page 1728
- Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (CLI), on page 1729
- Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for Root Access Points Globally, on page 1730
- Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for an Access Point, on page 1731
- Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI), on page 1731
- Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI), on page 1731
- Changing the Role of an AP (GUI), on page 1732
- Changing the Role of an AP (CLI), on page 1733
- Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (CLI), on page 1733
- Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (GUI), on page 1734
- Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization , on page 1734
- Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs (GUI), on page 1735
- Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs, on page 1735
- Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI), on page 1736
- Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI), on page 1736
- Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI), on page 1737
- Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul, on page 1737
- Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI), on page 1738
- Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP, on page 1738

- [Configuring Mesh Convergence \(CLI\), on page 1739](#)
- [Configuring DHCP Server on Root Access Point \(RAP\), on page 1739](#)
- [Configuring Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining \(CLI\), on page 1740](#)
- [Enabling Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1740](#)
- [Configuring Mesh CAC \(CLI\), on page 1741](#)
- [Configuring ATF on Mesh \(GUI\), on page 1741](#)
- [Configuring ATF on Mesh, on page 1742](#)
- [Create an ATF Policy for a MAP, on page 1742](#)
- [Creating an ATF Policy \(GUI\), on page 1743](#)
- [Adding an ATF to a Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 1743](#)
- [Enabling ATF Mode in an RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 1744](#)
- [Enabling Wireless Mesh Profile, on page 1744](#)
- [Enabling Serial Backhaul in Radio Profile \(GUI\), on page 1745](#)
- [Enabling Mesh Configurations in Radio Profile \(CLI\), on page 1745](#)
- [Enabling Serial Backhaul \(CLI\), on page 1746](#)
- [Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile \(CLI\), on page 1747](#)
- [Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile \(GUI\) , on page 1748](#)
- [Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile \(CLI\), on page 1748](#)
- [Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points, on page 1750](#)
- [Verifying ATF Configuration on Mesh, on page 1756](#)
- [Verifying Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1757](#)
- [Verifying Mesh Convergence, on page 1757](#)
- [Verifying DHCP Server for Root AP Configuration, on page 1757](#)
- [Verifying Mesh Backhaul, on page 1758](#)
- [Verifying Mesh Configuration, on page 1758](#)
- [Verifying Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul, on page 1767](#)
- [Verifying Mesh Serial Backhaul, on page 1767](#)
- [Verifying the RRM DCA Status, on page 1768](#)
- [Verifying Fast Teardown with Default Mesh Profile, on page 1768](#)
- [Verify background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find, on page 1768](#)

Introduction to the Mesh Network

Mesh networking employs Cisco Aironet outdoor mesh access points and indoor mesh access points along with Cisco Wireless Controller and Cisco Prime Infrastructure to provide scalability, central management, and mobility between indoor and outdoor deployments. Control and Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) protocol manages the connection of mesh access points to the network.

End-to-end security within the mesh network is supported by employing Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption between wireless mesh access points and Wi-Fi Protected Access 2 (WPA2) clients. For connections to a mesh access point (MAP) wireless client, such as MAP-to-MAP and MAP-to-root access point, WPA2 is applicable.

The wireless mesh terminates on two points on the wired network. The first location is where the root access point (RAP) is attached to the wired network, and where all bridged traffic connects to the wired network. The second location is where the CAPWAP controller connect to the wired network; this location is where the WLAN client traffic from the mesh network is connected to the wired network. The WLAN client traffic from CAPWAP is tunneled to Layer 2. Matching WLANs should terminate on the same switch VLAN on

which the wireless controllers are co-located. The security and network configuration for each of the WLANs on the mesh depend on the security capabilities of the network to which the wireless controller is connected.

In the new configuration model, the controller has a default mesh profile. This profile is mapped to the default AP-join profile, which in turn is mapped to the default site tag. If you are creating a named mesh profile, ensure that these mappings are put in place, and the corresponding AP is added to the corresponding site-tag.



Important

The following are the mesh supported scenarios in IRCM from Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3 release up to Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9 release, for the Cisco Wave 1 APs that are not supported:

- Cisco Wave 1 APs are not supported in the releases post Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3. This includes mesh support as well. Therefore, it is not possible for a Cisco Wave 1 AP to join a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller (controller) with Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.4 and later versions. We recommend the following deployment mode for Cisco Wave 1 APs.
- In the case of Cisco mesh deployments, the following are the deployment limitations to be aware of, when the system is deployed:
 - MAP roaming is not allowed between Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers, if the controllers run different Cisco IOS XE versions (running on versions Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3 or Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9) for any of the Cisco Wave 1 APs and Cisco Wave 2 APs.
 - You cannot have Cisco Wave 1 APs and Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs in the same mesh tree, in the releases post Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.x. This can be achieved in 17.3.x, beginning from the 17.3.6 (upcoming) release.
 - The whole mesh tree containing Cisco Wave 1 APs must be joined to the 17.3 controller, by running the **strict-bgn** and **mac filtering** commands.



Note

The limitations mentioned above are not valid for the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 Series APs, which are supported until the Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9 release.

Cisco Catalyst 9130AXE Access Points support Serial Backhaul with omni antenna using dart connectors. Cisco Catalyst 9130AXI APs support Serial Backhaul, as the second 5-GHz radio is for macro and micro cell (the transmission power of the second 5-GHz radio cannot be changed).

Mesh RRM feature support and evolution across AP generations

Families of mesh APs

The two families of mesh APs available are the Cisco Wave 1 APs and the Cisco Wave 2 APs + the AX APs. These two families of mesh APs have different capabilities and features, and they are not fully compatible with each other. The Cisco Wave 1 APs do not support the same feature set as the Cisco Wave 2 + AX APs.

The incompatibility is that the background scanning is supported on both families of APs, but the implementation is not interoperable.

Evolution in the mesh RRM feature across AP generations

For Cisco Wave 1 APs, there was no significant evolution in the mesh RRM feature after the Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3 release. For Cisco Wave-2 APs + AX APs, the mesh RRM feature has evolved significantly over the last few releases.

- Mesh RRM DCA using radio information only from RAPs was implemented in Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1.
- Mesh background scanning and fastAncestor find mode were implemented in Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.11.
- Mesh RRM DCA using radio information from the whole mesh tree was implemented in Cisco IOS XE 17.14

Restrictions for Mesh Access Points

For information about APs that support Mesh feature, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

The following mesh features are not supported:

- Serial backhaul AP support with separate backhaul radios for uplink and downlink.
- Public Safety channels (4.9-GHz band) support.
- Passive Beaconing (Anti-Stranding)



Note

- Only Root APs support SSO. MAPs will disconnect and rejoin after SSO.

The AP Stateful Switch Over (SSO) feature allows the access point (AP) to establish a CAPWAP tunnel with the Active controller and share a mirror copy of the AP database with the Standby controller. The overall goal for the addition of AP SSO support to the controller is to reduce major downtime in wireless networks due to failure conditions that may occur due to box failover or network failover.

- In a mixed regulatory domain mesh AP deployment, ensure that the Dynamic Channel Assignment (DCA) allowed channel list is supported by MAPs.
 - When you disable the admin state on the 2.4-GHz radio of mesh APs, and the root AP (RAP) backhaul radio is switched to 2.4-GHz, RAP will still use 2.4-GHz radio to serve the mesh backhaul connections, inspite of 2.4-GHz radio being in the disabled state.
-

MAC Authorization

You must enter the MAC address of an AP in the controller to make a MAP join the controller. The controller responds only to those CAPWAP requests from MAPs that are available in its authorization list. Remember to use the MAC address provided at the back of the AP.

MAC authorization for MAPs connected to the controller over Ethernet occurs during the CAPWAP join process. For MAPs that join the controller over radio, MAC authorization takes place when the corresponding

AP tries to secure an adaptive wireless path protocol (AWPP) link with the parent MAP. The AWPP is the protocol used in Cisco mesh networks.

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller supports MAC authorization internally as well as using an external AAA server.

Preshared Key Provisioning

Customers with mesh deployments can see their MAPs moving out of their network and joining another mesh network when both these mesh deployments use AAA with wild card MAC filtering to allow the association of MAPs. Since MAPs might use EAP-FAST, this cannot be controlled because a security combination of MAC address and type of AP is used for EAP, and no controlled configuration is available. The preshared key (PSK) option with a default passphrase also presents a security risk.

This issue is prominently seen in overlapping deployments of two service providers when the MAPs are used in a moving vehicle (public transportation, ferry, ship, and so on.). This way, there is no restriction on MAPs to remain with the service providers' mesh network, and MAPs can get hijacked or getting used by another service provider's network and cannot serve the intended customers of the original service providers in the deployment.

The PSK key provisioning feature enables a PSK functionality from the controller which helps make a controlled mesh deployment and enhance MAPs security beyond the default one. With this feature the MAPs that are configured with a custom PSK, will use the PSK key to do their authentication with their RAPs and controller.

EAP Authentication

Local EAP is an authentication method that allows users and wireless clients to be authenticated locally on the controller. It is designed for use in remote offices that want to maintain connectivity with wireless clients when the backend system gets disrupted or the external authentication server goes down. When you enable local EAP, the controller serves as the authentication server and the local user database, which in turn, removes dependence on an external authentication server. Local EAP retrieves user credentials from the local user database or the LDAP backend database to authenticate users. Local EAP supports only the EAP-FAST authentication method for MAP authentication between the controller and wireless clients.

Local EAP uses an LDAP server as its backend database to retrieve user credentials for MAP authentication between the controller and wireless clients. An LDAP backend database allows the controller to query an LDAP server for the credentials (username and password) of a particular user. These credentials are then used to authenticate the user.



Note If RADIUS servers are configured on the controller, the controller tries to authenticate the wireless clients using the RADIUS servers first. Local EAP is attempted only if RADIUS servers are not found, timed out, or were not configured.

EAP Authentication with LSC

Locally significant certificate-based (LSC-based) EAP authentication is also supported for MAPs. To use this feature, you should have a public key infrastructure (PKI) to control certification authority, define policies,

validity periods, and restrictions and usages on the certificates that are generated, and get these certificates installed on the APs and controller.

After these customer-generated certificates or LSCs are available on the APs and controller, the devices can start using these LSCs, to join, authenticate, and derive a session key.

LSCs do not remove any preexisting certificates from an AP. An AP can have both LSC and manufacturing installed certificates (MIC). However, after an AP is provisioned with an LSC, the MIC certificate is not used during boot-up. A change from an LSC to MIC requires the corresponding AP to reboot.

The controller also supports mesh security with EAP authentication to a designated server in order to:

- Authenticate the mesh child AP
- Generate a master session key (MSK) for packet encryption.

Bridge Group Names

Bridge group names (BGNs) control the association of MAPs to the parent mesh AP. BGNs can logically group radios to avoid two networks on the same channel from communicating with each other. The setting is also useful if you have more than one RAP in your network in the same sector (area). BGN is a string comprising a maximum of 10 characters.

A BGN of *NULL VALUE* is assigned by default during manufacturing. Although not visible to you, it allows a MAP to join the network prior to your assignment of your network-specific BGN.

If you have two RAPs in your network in the same sector (for more capacity), we recommend that you configure the two RAPs with the same BGN, but on different channels.

When Strict Match BGN is enabled on a MAP, it will scan ten times to find a matching BGN parent. After ten scans, if the AP does not find the parent with matching BGN, it will connect to the nonmatched BGN and maintain the connection for 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, the AP will again scan ten times, and this cycle continues. The default BGN functionalities remain the same when Strict Match BGN is enabled.

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, the BGN is configured on the mesh profile. Whenever a MAP joins the controller, the controller pushes the BGN that is configured on the mesh profile to the AP.

Preferred Parent Selection

The preferred parent for a MAP enables you to enforce a linear topology in a mesh environment. With this feature, you can override the Adaptive Wireless Path Protocol-defined (AWPP-defined) parent selection mechanism and force a MAP to go to a preferred parent.

For Cisco Wave 1 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, ensure that you specify the MAC address of the actual mesh neighbor for the desired parent. This MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has the letter "f" as the final character. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:0f as the preferred parent.

```
Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:0f
```

For Cisco Wave 2 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, the MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has "0x11" added to the last two characters. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:11 as the preferred parent.

```
Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:11
```

Background Scanning

Mesh background scanning improves convergence time, and reliability and stability of parent selection. With the help of the Background Scanning feature, a MAP can find and connect with a better potential parent across channels, and maintain its uplink with the appropriate parent all the time.

When background scanning is disabled, a MAP has to scan all the channels of the regulatory domain after detecting a parent loss in order to find a new parent and go through the authentication process. This delays the time taken for the mesh AP to connect back to the controller.

When background scanning is enabled, a MAP can avoid scanning across the channels to find a parent after detecting a parent loss, and select a parent from the neighbor list and establish the AWPP link.

Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode (Concept)

Cisco mesh access points (MAPs) perform the following functions:

- Interconnects over wireless links in a tree topology,
- Uses Adaptive Wireless Path Protocol (AWPP) to create and maintain their topology, and
- Supports additional features: Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Finding.

When a MAP comes up, it tries to look for another MAP (parent) to join and reach the gateway through a RAP. The same happens when a MAP loses connectivity with its existing parent. This procedure is known as mesh tree convergence.

Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Finding feature

The Background Scanning feature:

- Updates MAPs about neighboring channels and helps find new parents swiftly by scanning all available channels.
- Minimizes the time spent during scan-and-look phases when a MAP loses its current parent.
- Does not speed up the authentication process to the new parent.

A child MAP maintains its uplink with its parent by using the AWPP adjacency request/response messages, which act as keepalive signals. If consecutive response messages are lost, the parent is considered lost, and the child MAP searches for a new parent. A MAP maintains a list of neighbors on the current ON channel. If the AP loses its current parent, it roams to the next best potential neighbor. If no other neighbors are found, the AP scans or seeks across all the channels or subset channels to find a parent. This process is time-consuming.

The MAP Fast Ancestor Finding feature enables a method to reduce the need for sending or receiving beacons during network formation, while starting or deploying a new mesh network.

Mesh Backhaul at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz

A backhaul is used to create only the wireless connection between MAPs. The backhaul interface is 802.11a/n/ac/g depending upon the AP. The default backhaul interface is 5-GHz. The rate selection is important for effective use of the available radio frequency spectrum. The rate can also affect the throughput of client devices. (Throughput is an important metric used by industry publications to evaluate vendor devices.)

Mesh backhaul is supported at 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz. However, in certain countries it is not allowed to use mesh network with a 5-GHz backhaul network. The 2.4-GHz radio frequencies allow you to achieve much larger mesh or bridge distances. When a RAP gets a slot-change configuration, it gets propagated from the RAP to all its child MAPs. All the MAPs get disconnected and join the new configured backhaul slot.

Information About Mesh Backhaul

This section provides information about mesh backhaul at 2.4-GHz. By default, the backhaul interface for mesh APs is 802.11a/ac/ax. Certain countries do not allow the use of mesh network with a 5-GHz backhaul network. Even in countries where 5-GHz is permitted, we recommend that you use 2.4-GHz radio frequencies to achieve much larger mesh or bridge distances.

For information about APs that support mesh backhaul at 2.4-GHz, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.



Note In Israel, you must ensure that you run the **ap country IO** command to enable the outdoor country code for the selected radio. After you configure using the **ap country IO** command, the 2.4-GHz radio is enabled and 5-GHz radio is disabled.

Information About Mesh Serial Backhaul

The Mesh Serial Backhaul feature in a mesh access point (MAP), allows different channels for uplink and downlink access, thus improving backhaul bandwidth and extending universal access. One radio is used as the uplink radio and a different one is used as the downlink radio. This allows the in-bound and out-bound traffic to flow through exclusive communication channels, thereby improving performance and avoiding problems associated with a shared access medium.

The Mesh Serial Backhaul feature is supported in the controller from Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 onwards, for Cisco Catalyst 9124AXE outdoor APs. A new knob is introduced under the radio profile, and that radio profile is associated with a radio frequency (RF) tag to enable the Mesh Serial Backhaul feature. When you enable this feature, the mesh configuration is shared by all the APs that share the same mesh profile. Radio configuration is shared by all the APs that are configured with the same radio profile.

Basic client access functionality is offered on the 2.4-GHz radio and the 5-GHz radio, which are not used in serial backhaul. Universal access is made available on the downlink radio.



Note Slot 1 and slot 0 are supported as mesh backhaul. Slot 2 is not supported as a mesh backhaul. You can utilize slot 2 for client serving or for serial backhaul downlink.

Channel Assignment

For the Mesh Serial Backhaul feature, channels are assigned according to the following rules:

- Uplink and downlink channels are different.
- All the 5-GHz radios maintain a frequency guard between their operating channels. For example, 100-MHz channel spacing between radios in Cisco Catalyst 9124AXE outdoor APs.
- Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) channels are supported.

In a root access point, because the uplink is wired, channels are assigned by the controller. On the other hand, a mesh access point uses the last channel configured by the controller for this radio, or uses the default channel. If the channel used by MAP is not compatible with the uplink, MAP picks a valid random channel and notifies the controller. In another scenario, MAP randomly picks a new downlink channel when it receives a channel change alert on the uplink radio. MAP checks the validity of the downlink radio and picks a random channel if the current channel is not compatible.



Note Ensure that the following prerequisites are met before channel assignment:

- Enable tri-radio globally by running the **Device# ap tri-radio** command.
- Enable the dual radio on the APs by running the **Device# ap name ap-name dot11 5ghz dual-radio mode enable** command.

Use Cases

The following are some of the use cases for the Mesh Serial Backhaul feature.

- **Maximize Throughput:** Serial backhaul allows the 5-GHz backhaul to operate on different channels, thereby maximizing throughput over multiple mesh hops.
- **Network Segregation:** APs that have serial backhaul enabled, segregate backhaul channel on mesh topographies. This is efficient because it avoids localized link interferences.

Information About Mesh Backhaul RRM

Root access points (RAPs) choose backhaul channels to operate in mesh networks. Until Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, this operation occurred by an explicit configuration, a least congested scan during RAP boot time, during the initial radio resource management (RRM) run without mesh access points (MAPs) connected, or a backhaul channel that was chosen at random. As a result, a poor backhaul channel selection resulted in poor performance.

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards, RRM DCA is run on mesh backhaul, in auto mode, in FlexConnect or centralized networks. For APs that do not have dedicated (RHL) radios, DCA is triggered by running commands in the privilege EXEC mode.

RRM continuously evaluates the channel conditions to ensure that the network utilizes the least congested channels. The network uses the transmission static power if it is configured, or falls back to the default level. This is supported on APs that have dedicated radios to scan channel conditions, without any user perceptible interruption to the mesh network traffic.

In the mesh backhaul RRM feature, the RRM DCA decides all the downlink channels in a steady network. However, if an AP detects a change in its uplink roam or radar detection response, the AP chooses the best downlink to converge faster.



Note APs choosing the best possible downlink is limited to serial backhaul enabled APs only.

To avoid a poor channel backhaul selection, from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.14.1 onwards, the RRM DCA optimizes the RAP backhaul radio channel of a mesh subtree by considering the noise, interference, load, and the RF parameter measurements only from the RAP. The RRM DCA on Mesh Backhaul feature enables DCA to make better channel assignment for a mesh subtree, by having continuous measurements and inputs from the whole mesh tree required to run DCA.

To enable RRM DCA on a full mesh tree run the **wireless mesh backhaul rrm auto-dca** command. To trigger DCA once, run the **ap dot11 [5ghz | 2.4 ghz] rrm channel-update mesh** command.

To understand what happened during a DCA run on the mesh backhaul, use the **show wireless mesh rrm dca status** and **show wireless mesh rrm dca changed** commands.



-
- Note**
- In a topology with mixed APs (RF ASIC capable and non-capable APs), only inputs from the RF ASIC capable APs apply for **auto-dca**.
 - All mesh APs in a subtree should be configured to belong to the same site-tag for DCA to work properly.
 - This feature is limited to RF ASIC capable APs, such as Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs and Cisco Catalyst 9130 Series APs.
-

Dynamic Frequency Selection

To protect the existing radar services, the regulatory bodies require that devices that have to share the newly opened frequency sub-band behave in accordance with the Dynamic Frequency Selection (DFS) protocol. DFS dictates that in order to be compliant, a radio device must be capable of detecting the presence of radar signals. When a radio detects a radar signal, the radio should stop transmitting for at least 30 minutes to protect that service. The radio should then select a different channel to transmit on, but only after monitoring it. If no radar is detected on the projected channel for at least one minute, the new radio service device can begin transmissions on that channel. The DFS feature allows mesh APs to immediately switch channels when a radar event is detected in any of the mesh APs in a sector.

Country Codes

Controllers and APs are designed for use in many countries having varying regulatory requirements. The radios within the APs are assigned to a specific regulatory domain at the factory (such as -E for Europe), but the country code enables you to specify a particular country of operation (such as FR for France or ES for Spain). Configuring a country code ensures that each radio's broadcast frequency bands, interfaces, channels, and transmit power levels are compliant with country-specific regulations.

In certain countries, there is a difference in the following for indoor and outdoor APs:

- Regulatory domain code
- Set of channels supported
- Transmit power level

Intrusion Detection System

The Cisco Intrusion Detection System/Intrusion Prevention System (CIDS/CIPS) instructs controllers to block certain clients from accessing a wireless network when attacks involving these clients are detected in Layer 3 through Layer 7. This system offers significant network protection by helping to detect, classify, and stop threats, including worms, spyware or adware, network viruses, and application abuse.

Mesh Interoperability Between Controllers

Interoperability can be maintained between AireOS and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller with the following support:

- MAPs can join an AireOS controller through a mesh network formed by APs connected to a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller.
- MAPs can join a Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller through a mesh network formed by APs connected to as AireOS controller.
- MAP roaming is supported between parent mesh APs connected to AireOS and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller by using PMK cache.

**Note**

For seamless interoperability, AireOS controller and the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller should be in the same mobility group and use the image versions that support IRCM.

Information About DHCP and NAT Functionality on Root AP (RAP)



Note This feature is applicable for Cisco Aironet 1542 series outdoor access points only.

The access points associated to a mesh network can play one of the two roles:

- Root Access Point (RAP) - An access point can be a root access point for multiple mesh networks.
- Mesh Access Point (MAP) - An access point can be a mesh access point for only one single mesh network at a time.

DHCP and NAT Functionality on Root AP - IPv4 Scenario

This feature enables the controller to send a TLV to RAP when a new RAP joins the controller.

The following covers the workflow:

- Controller pushes TLV to RAP for enabling DHCP and NAT functionality.
- Client associates to an SSID.
- RAP executes DHCP functionality to assign private IPv4 address to the client.
- RAP executes NAT functionality to get the private IPv4 address of the client and allow access to the network.

Mesh Convergence

Mesh convergence allows MAPs to reestablish connection with the controller, when it loses backhaul connection with the current parent. To improve the convergence time, each mesh AP maintains a subset of channels that is used for future scan-see and to identify a parent in the neighbor list subset.

The following convergence methods are supported.

Table 122: Mesh Convergence

Mesh Convergence	Parent Loss Detection / Keepalive Timers
Standard	21 / 3 seconds
Fast	7 / 3 seconds
Very Fast	4 / 2 seconds
Noise-tolerant-fast	21 / 3 seconds

Noise-Tolerant Fast

Noise-tolerant fast detection is based on the failure to get a response for an AWPP neighbor request, which evaluates the current parent every 21 seconds in the standard method. Each neighbor is sent a unicast request every 3 seconds along with a request to the parent. Failure to get a response from the parent initiates either a roam if neighbors are available on the same channel or a full scan for a new parent.

Ethernet Bridging

For security reasons, the Ethernet port on all the MAPs are disabled by default. They can be enabled only by configuring Ethernet bridging on the root and its respective MAP.

Both tagged and untagged packets are supported on secondary Ethernet interfaces.

In a point-to-point bridging scenario, a Cisco Aironet 1500 Series MAP can be used to extend a remote network by using the backhaul radio to bridge multiple segments of a switched network. This is fundamentally a wireless mesh network with one MAP and no WLAN clients. Just as in point-to-multipoint networks, client access can still be provided with Ethernet bridging enabled, although if bridging between buildings, MAP coverage from a high rooftop might not be suitable for client access. To use an Ethernet-bridged application, enable the bridging feature on the RAP and on all the MAPs in that sector.

Ethernet bridging should be enabled for the following scenarios:

- Use mesh nodes as bridges.
- Connect Ethernet devices, such as a video camera on a MAP using its Ethernet port.



Note Ensure that Ethernet bridging is enabled for every parent mesh AP taking the path from the mesh AP to the controller.

In a mesh environment with VLAN support for Ethernet bridging, the secondary Ethernet interfaces on MAPs are assigned a VLAN individually from the controller. All the backhaul bridge links, both wired and wireless, are trunk links with all the VLANs enabled. Non-Ethernet bridged traffic, as well as untagged Ethernet bridged traffic travels along the mesh using the native VLAN of the APs in the mesh. It is similar for all the traffic to and from the wireless clients that the APs are servicing. The VLAN-tagged packets are tunneled through AWPP over wireless backhaul links.

VLAN Tagging for MAP Ethernet Clients

The backhaul interfaces of mesh APs are referred to as primary interfaces, and other interfaces are referred to as secondary interfaces.

Ethernet VLAN tagging allows specific application traffic to be segmented within a wireless mesh network and then forwarded (bridged) to a wired LAN (access mode) or bridged to another wireless mesh network (trunk mode).

Multicast Over Mesh Ethernet Bridging Network

Mesh multicast modes determine how bridging-enabled APs such as MAP and RAP, send multicast packets among Ethernet LANs within a mesh network. Mesh multicast modes manage only non-CAPWAP multicast traffic. CAPWAP multicast traffic is governed by a different mechanism.

Three different mesh multicast modes are available to manage multicast and broadcast packets on all MAPs. When enabled, these modes reduce unnecessary multicast transmissions within the mesh network and conserve backhaul bandwidth.

The three mesh multicast modes are:

- Regular mode: Data is multicast across the entire mesh network and all its segments by bridging-enabled RAP and MAP.
- In-only mode: Multicast packets received from the Ethernet by a MAP are forwarded to the corresponding RAP's Ethernet network. No additional forwarding occurs, which ensures that non-CAPWAP multicasts received by the RAP are not sent back to the MAP Ethernet networks within the mesh network (their point of origin), and MAP to MAP multicasts do not occur because such multicasts are filtered out.
- In-out mode: The RAP and MAP both multicast but in a different manner.
 - If multicast packets are received at a MAP over Ethernet, they are sent to the RAP; however, they are not sent to other MAP over Ethernet, and the MAP-to-MAP packets are filtered out of the multicast.
 - If multicast packets are received at a RAP over Ethernet, they are sent to all the MAPs and their respective Ethernet networks. When the in-out mode is in operation, it is important to properly partition your network to ensure that a multicast sent by one RAP is not received by another RAP on the same Ethernet segment and then sent back into the network.

Radio Resource Management on Mesh

The Radio Resource Management (RRM) software embedded in the controller acts as a built-in RF engineer to consistently provide real-time RF management of your wireless network. RRM enables the controller to continually monitor the associated lightweight APs for information on traffic load, interference, noise, coverage, and other nearby APs:

The RRM measurement in the mesh AP backhaul is enabled based on the following conditions:

- Mesh AP has the Root AP role.
- Root AP has joined using Ethernet link.
- Root AP is not serving any child AP.

Air Time Fairness on Mesh

The Air Time Fairness (ATF) on Mesh feature is conceptually similar to the ATF feature for local access points (APs). ATF is a form of wireless quality of service (QoS) that regulates downlink airtime (as opposed

to egress bandwidth). Before a frame is transmitted, the ATF budget for that SSID is checked to ensure that there is sufficient airtime budget to transmit the frame. Each SSID can be thought of as having a token bucket (1 token = 1 microsecond of airtime). If the token bucket contains enough airtime to transmit the frame, it is transmitted over air. Otherwise, the frame can either be dropped or deferred. Deferring a frame means that the frame is not admitted into the Access Category Queue (ACQ). Instead, it remains in the Client Priority Queue (CPQ) and transmitted at a later time when the corresponding token bucket contains a sufficient number of tokens (unless the CPQ reaches full capacity, at which point, the frame is dropped). The majority of the work involved in the context of ATF takes place on the APs. The wireless controller is used to configure the ATF on Mesh and display the results.

In a mesh architecture, the mesh APs (parent and child MAPs) in a mesh tree access the same channel on the backhaul radio for mesh connectivity between parent and child MAPs. The root AP is connected by wire to the controller, and MAPs are connected wirelessly to the controller. Hence, all the CAPWAP and Wi-Fi traffic are bridged to the controller through the wireless backhaul radio and through RAP. In terms of physical locations, normally, RAPs are placed at the roof top and MAPs in multiple hops are placed some distance apart from each other based on the mesh network segmentation guidelines. Hence, each MAP in a mesh tree can provide 100 percent of its own radio airtime downstream to its users though each MAP accessing the same medium. Compare this to a non-mesh scenario, where neighboring local-mode unified APs in the arena next to each other in different rooms, serving their respective clients on the same channel, and each AP providing 100% radio airtime downstream. ATF has no control over clients from two different neighboring APs accessing the same medium. Similarly, it is applicable for MAPs in a mesh tree.

For outdoor or indoor mesh APs, ATF must be supported on client access radios that serve regular clients similarly to how it is supported on ATF on non-mesh unified local mode APs to serve the clients. Additionally, it must also be supported on backhaul radios which bridge the traffic to/from the clients on client access radios to RAPs (one hop) or through MAPs to RAPs (multiple hops). It is a bit tricky to support ATF on the backhaul radios using the same SSID/Policy/Weight/Client fair-sharing model. Backhaul radios do not have SSIDs and it always bridge traffic through their hidden backhaul nodes. Therefore, on the backhaul radios in a RAP or a MAP, the radio airtime downstream is shared equally, based on the number of backhaul nodes. This approach provides fairness to users across a wireless mesh network, where clients associated to second-hop MAP can stall the clients associated to first-hop MAP where second-hop MAP is connected wireless to first-hop MAP through backhaul radio even though the Wi-Fi users in the MAPs are separated by a physical location. In a scenario where a backhaul radio has an option to serve normal clients through universal client access feature, ATF places the regular clients into a single node and groups them. It also enforces the airtime by equally sharing the radio airtime downstream, based on the number of nodes (backhaul nodes plus a single node for regular clients).

Spectrum Intelligence for Mesh

The Spectrum Intelligence feature scans for non-Wi-Fi radio interference on 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands. The feature supports client serving mode and monitor mode. The Cisco CleanAir technology in mesh backhaul and access radios provides an Interference Device Report (IDR) and Air Quality Index (AQI). Two key mitigation features (Event-Driven Radio Resource Management [EDRRM] and Persistence Device Avoidance [PDA]) are present in CleanAir. Both rely directly on information that can only be gathered by CleanAir. In the client-access radio band, they work the same way in mesh networks as they do in non-mesh networks in the backhaul radio band, the CleanAir reports are only displayed on the controller. No action is taken through ED-RRM.

Note that no specific configuration options are available to enable or disable CleanAir for MAPs.

For more information about Spectrum Intelligence, see [#unique_2118](#) section.

Indoor Mesh Interoperability with Outdoor Mesh

Interoperability of indoor MAPs with outdoor APs are supported. This helps to bring coverage from outdoors to indoors. However, we recommend that you use indoor MAPs for indoor use only, and deploy them outdoors only under limited circumstances such as a simple short-haul extension from an indoor WLAN to a hop in a parking lot.

Mobility groups can be shared between outdoor mesh networks and indoor WLAN networks. It is also possible for a single controller to control indoor and outdoor MAPs simultaneously. Not that the same WLANs are broadcast out of both indoor and outdoor MAPs.

Workgroup Bridge

A workgroup bridge (WGB) is used to connect wired networks over a single wireless segment by informing the corresponding MAP of all the clients that the WGB has on its wired segment via IAPP messages. In addition to the IAPP control messages, the data packets for WGB clients contain an extra MAC address in the 802.11 header (four MAC headers, versus the normal three MAC data headers). The extra MAC in the header is the address of the workgroup bridge itself. This extra MAC address is used to route a packet to and from the corresponding clients.

APs can be configured as workgroup bridges. Only one radio interface is used for controller connectivity, Ethernet interface for wired client connectivity, and other radio interface for wireless client connectivity.

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, WGB acts as a client association, with the wired clients behind WGB supported for data traffic over the mesh network. Wired clients with different VLANs behind WGB are also supported.

Link Test

A link test is used to determine the quality of the radio link between two devices. Two types of link-test packets are transmitted during a link test: request and response. Any radio receiving a link-test request packet fills in the appropriate text boxes and echoes the packet back to the sender with the response type set.

The radio link quality in the client-to-access point direction can differ from that in the access point-to-client direction due to the asymmetrical distribution of the transmit power and receive sensitivity on both sides. Two types of link tests can be performed: a ping test and a CCX link test.

With the ping link test, the controller can test link quality only in the client-to-access point direction. The RF parameters of the ping reply packets received by the access point are polled by the controller to determine the client-to-access point link quality.

With the CCX link test, the controller can also test the link quality in the access point-to-client direction. The controller issues link-test requests to the client, and the client records the RF parameters (received signal strength indicator [RSSI], signal-to-noise ratio [SNR], and so on) of the received request packet in the response packet. Both the link-test requestor and responder roles are implemented on the access point and controller. Not only can the access point or controller initiate a link test to a CCX v4 or v5 client, but a CCX v4 or v5 client can initiate a link test to the access point or controller.

Mesh Daisy Chaining

Mesh APs have the capability to *daisy chain* APs when they function as MAPs. The *daisy chained* MAPs can either operate the APs as a serial backhaul, allowing different channels for uplink and downlink access, thus improving backhaul bandwidth, or extend universal access. Extending universal access allows you to connect a local mode or FlexConnect mode Mesh AP to the Ethernet port of a MAP, thus extending the network to provide better client access.

Daisy chained APs must be cabled differently depending on how the APs are powered. If an AP is powered using DC power, an Ethernet cable must be connected directly from the LAN port of the Primary AP to the PoE in a port of the Subordinate AP.

The following are the guidelines for the daisy chaining mode:

- Primary MAP should be configured as mesh AP.
- Subordinate MAP should be configured as root AP.
- Daisy chaining should be enabled on both primary and subordinate MAP.
- Ethernet bridging should be enabled on all the APs in the Bridge mode. Enable Ethernet bridging in the mesh profile and map all the bridge mode APs in the sector to the same mesh profile.
- VLAN support should be enabled on the wired root AP, subordinate MAP, and primary MAP along with proper native VLAN configuration.

Mesh Leaf Node

You can configure a MAP with lower performance to work only as a leaf node. When the mesh network is formed and converged, the leaf node can only work as a child MAP, and cannot be selected by other MAPs as a parent MAP, thus ensuring that the wireless backhaul performance is not downgraded.

Flex+Bridge Mode

Flex+Bridge mode is used to enable FlexConnect capabilities on mesh (bridge mode) APs. Mesh APs inherit VLANs from the root AP that is connected to it.

Any EWC capable AP in Flex mode connected to a MAP, should be in CAPWAP mode (AP-type CAPWAP).

You can enable or disable VLAN trunking and configure a native VLAN ID on each AP for any of the following modes:

- FlexConnect
- Flex+Bridge (FlexConnect+Mesh)

Backhaul Client Access

When Backhaul Client Access is enabled, it allows wireless client association over the backhaul radio. The backhaul radio can be a 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz radio. This means that a backhaul radio can carry both backhaul traffic and client traffic.

When Backhaul Client Access is disabled, only backhaul traffic is sent over the backhaul radio, and client association is performed only over the access radio.

**Note**

Backhaul Client Access is disabled by default. After the Backhaul Client Access is enabled, all the MAPs, except subordinate AP and its child APs in daisy-chained deployment, reboot.

Mesh CAC

The Call Admission Control (CAC) enables a mesh access point to maintain controlled quality of service (QoS) on the controller to manage voice quality on the mesh network. Bandwidth-based, or static CAC enables the client to specify how much bandwidth or shared medium time is required to accept a new call. Each access point determines whether it is capable of accommodating a particular call by looking at the bandwidth available and compares it against the bandwidth required for the call. If there is not enough bandwidth available to maintain the maximum allowed number of calls with acceptable quality, the mesh access point rejects the call.

- When client roams from one MAP to another in same site, bandwidth availability is checked again in the new tree for the active calls.
- When MAP roams to new parent, the active calls are not terminated and it continues to be active with other active calls in the sub tree.
- High Availability (HA) for MAPs is not supported; calls attached to MAP's access radio are terminated on HA switchover.
- HA for RAP is supported, hence calls attached to RAP's access radio continues to be active in new controller after switchover.
- Mesh CAC algorithm is applicable only for voice calls.
- For Mesh backhaul radio bandwidth calculation, static CAC is applied. Load-based CAC is not used as the APs do not support load-based CAC in Mesh backhaul.
- Calls are allowed based on available bandwidth on a radio. Airtime Fairness (ATF) is not accounted for call admission and the calls that fall under ATF policy are given bandwidth as per ATF weight.

Mesh CAC is not supported for the following scenarios.

- APs in a Mesh tree assigned with different site tags.
- APs in a Mesh tree assigned with the default site tag.

Prerequisites for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- Ensure that you have configured the AP role as root AP.
- Ensure that you have enabled Ethernet Bridging and Strict Wired Uplink on the corresponding AP.
- Ensure that you have disabled VLAN transparency.
- To enable VLAN support on each root AP for bridge mode APs, use the **ap name name-of-rap mesh vlan-trunking [native] vlan-id** command to configure a trunk VLAN on the corresponding RAP.
- To enable VLAN support on each root AP, for Flex+Bridge APs, you must configure the native VLAN ID under the corresponding flex profile.
- Ensure that you use a 4-pair cables that support 1000 Mbps. This feature does not work properly with 2-pair cables supporting 100 Mbps.

Restrictions for Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- This feature is applicable to the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 AP and Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series APs.
- This feature is applicable to APs operating in Bridge mode and Flex+Bridge mode only.
- In Flex+Bridge mode, if local switching WLAN is enabled, the work group bridge (WGB) multiple VLAN is not supported.
- To support the Ethernet daisy chain topology, you must not connect the Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 PoE out port to other Cisco Industrial Wireless 3702 PoE in the port, and the power injector must be used as power supply for the AP.
- The network convergence time increases when the number of APs increase in the chain.
- Any EWC capable AP which is part of daisy chaining and has been assigned the RAP role, must be in CAPWAP mode (ap-type capwap).

Speeding up Mesh Network Recovery Through Fast Detection of Uplink Gateway Reachability Failure

In all 802.11ac Wave 2 APs, the speed of mesh network recovery mechanism is increased through fast detection of uplink gateway reachability failure. The uplink gateway reachability of the mesh APs is checked using ICMP ping to the default gateway, either IPv4 or IPv6.

Mesh AP triggers the reachability check in the following two scenarios:

- After a new uplink is selected, until the mesh AP joins the controller

After a new uplink is selected, the mesh AP has a window of 45 seconds to reach gateway (via static IP or DHCP) through the selected uplink. If the mesh AP still fails to reach the gateway after 45 seconds, the current uplink is in blocked list and the uplink selection process is restarted. If the AP joins the

controller within this 45-second window, the reachability check is stopped. Subsequently, there is no gateway reachability check during normal operations.

- As soon as the mesh AP times out its connection with the controller

After the mesh AP times out its connection with the controller and the AP fails to reach the gateway in 5 seconds, the current uplink is immediately added to the blocked list and the uplink selection process is restarted.

Fast Teardown for a Mesh Deployment

In mesh deployments, sometimes a root access point connects to the controller through a nonreliable link such as a wireless microwave link. If a data uplink failure occurs, client loses connectivity to detect the cause of the failure. The feature allows you to detect the root access point uplink failure faster in a mesh deployment and address fast teardown of the mesh network when uplink failure occurs on the root access point.



Note Fast Teardown for Mesh APs is not supported on Cisco Industrial Wireless (IW) 3702 Access Points.

Configuring MAC Authorization (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA > AAA Advanced > Device Authentication .
Step 2	Click Add . The Quick Step: MAC Filtering window is displayed.
Step 3	In the Quick Step: MAC Filtering window, complete the following: a) Enter the MAC Address. The MAC address can be in either <code>xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx</code>, <code>xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx</code>, or <code>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</code> format. b) Choose the Attribute List Name from the drop-down list. c) Choose the WLAN Profile Name from the drop-down list. d) Click Apply to Device. Both WebUI and CLI support mac user configuration in one of these formats: <code>xxxxxxxxxxxx</code>, <code>xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx</code>, <code>xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx</code>, or <code>xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</code> where AP sends the default mac address without delimiter. If the mac address is configured with delimiter, then AP authorization will fail unless it is configured in the format: <code>xxxxxxxxxxxx</code>.
Step 4	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA > AAA Method List > Authorization .
Step 5	Click Add . The Quick Step: AAA Authorization window is displayed.
Step 6	In the Quick Step: AAA Authorization window, complete the following: a) Enter the Method List Name. b) Choose the Type from the drop-down list.

- c) Choose the **Group Type** from the drop-down list.
- d) Check the **Fallback to Local** check box.
- e) Check the **Authenticated** check box.
- f) Move the required servers from the **Available Server Groups** to the **Assigned Server Groups**.
- g) Click **Apply to Device**.

Step 7 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**.

Step 8 Click the mesh profile.
The **Edit Mesh Profile** window is displayed.

Step 9 Click the **Advanced** tab.

Step 10 In the **Security** settings, from the **Method** drop-down list, choose **EAP**.

Step 11 Choose the **Authentication Method** from the drop-down list.

Step 12 Choose the **Authorization Method** from the drop-down list.

Step 13 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring MAC Authorization (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to add the MAC address of a bridge mode AP to the controller.

Before you begin

- MAC filtering for bridge mode APs are enabled by default on the controller. Therefore, only the MAC address need to be configured. The MAC address that is to be used is the one that is provided at the back of the corresponding AP.
- MAC authorization is supported internally, as well as using an external AAA server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	username user-name Example: Device(config)# username username1	Configures user name authentication for MAC filtering where username is MAC address.
Step 3	aaa authorization credential-download method-name local Example: Device(config)# aaa authorization credential-download list1 local	Sets an authorization method list to use local credentials.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	aaa authorization credential-download <i>method-name radius group server-group-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# aaa authorization credential-download auth1 radius group radius-server-1</pre>	Sets an authorization method list to use a RADIUS server group.
Step 5	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1</pre>	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 6	method authorization <i>method-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# method authorization auth1</pre>	Configures the authorization method for mesh AP authorization.

Configuring MAP Authorization - EAP (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA > AAA Method List > Device Authentication .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter Method List Name .
Step 4	Choose Type as dot1x and Group Type from the drop-down lists. dot1x
Step 5	Check or uncheck the Fallback to Local check box.
Step 6	Move the required servers from the Available Server Groups to the Assigned Server Groups .
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
Step 8	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles .
Step 9	Click the mesh profile. The Edit Mesh Profile window is displayed.
Step 10	Choose the Advanced tab.
Step 11	In the Security settings, from the Method drop-down list, choose EAP .
Step 12	Choose the options from the Authentication Method and Authorization Method drop-down lists.
Step 13	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring MAP Authorization (CLI)

Select and configure authentication method of EAP/PSK for MAP authentication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa authentication <i>method-name</i> radius group <i>server-group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x auth1 radius group radius-server-1	For local authentication: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x auth1 local Sets an authentication method list to use a RADIUS server group. This is required for EAP authentication.
Step 3	wireless profile mesh <i>profile--name</i> local Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Sets an authorization method list to use local credentials.
Step 4	security eap <i>server-group-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# security eap / psk	Configures the mesh security EAP/PSK for mesh AP.
Step 5	method authentication <i>method-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# method authentication auth1	Configures the authentication method for mesh AP authentication.

Configuring PSK Provisioning (CLI)

When PSK provisioning is enabled, the APs join with default PSK initially. After that PSK provisioning key is set, the configured key is pushed to the newly joined AP.

Follow the procedure given below to configure a PSK:

Before you begin

The provisioned PSK should have been pushed to all the APs that are configured with PSK as mesh security.

**Note**

- PSKs are saved across reboots in the controller as well as on the corresponding mesh AP.
- A controller can have total of five PSKs and one default PSK.
- A mesh AP deletes its provisioned PSK only on factory reset.
- A mesh AP never uses the default PSK after receiving the first provisioned PSK.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mesh security psk provisioning Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning	Configures the security method for wireless as PSK. Note The provisioned PSK is pushed only to those APs that are configured with PSK as the mesh security method.
Step 3	wireless mesh security psk provisioning key index {0 8} pre-shared-key description Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning key 1 0 secret secret-key	Configures a new PSK for mesh APs.
Step 4	wireless mesh security psk provisioning default-psk Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning default-psk	Enables default PSK-based authentication.
Step 5	wireless mesh security psk provisioning inuse index Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh security psk provisioning inuse 1	Specifies the PSK to be actively used. Note You should explicitly set the in-use key index in the global configuration pointing to the PSK index.

Configuring a Bridge Group Name (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **Bridge Group** settings, enter the **Bridge Group Name**.
- Step 4** Under the **Bridge Group** settings, check the **Strict Match** check box to enable the feature. When Strict Match BGN is enabled on a MAP, it scans ten times to find a matching BGN parent.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Bridge Group Name (CLI)

- If a bridge group name (BGN) is configured on a mesh profile, whenever a MAP joins the controller, it pushes the BGN configured on the mesh profile to the AP.
- Whenever a mesh AP moves from AireOS controller to the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, the BGN configured on the mesh profile is pushed to that AP and stored there.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	bridge-group name <i>bridge-grp-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# bridge-group name bgn1	Configures a bridge group name.
Step 4	bridge-group strict-match Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# bridge-group strict-match	Configures bridge group strict matching.

Configuring Background Scanning (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles
Step 2	Choose a profile.
Step 3	In General tab, check the Background Scanning check box.
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Background Scanning

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	background-scanning Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# background-scanning	Configures background scanning in mesh deployments.

Configure AP fast ancestor find mode (GUI)

Enable a child MAP to synchronize with any neighbor parent MAP across all channels.

Use the GUI to configure the MAP Fast Ancestor Find feature within a mesh profile.

Follow these steps to configure AP fast ancestor find mode through the GUI:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Name** field, enter the mesh profile name.
 - Step 5** In the **Description** field, enter a description for the mesh profile.
 - Step 6** Check the **MAP Fast Ancestor Find** check box to enable a MAP (child) to synchronize with any neighbor MAP (parent) across all channels.
 - Step 7** Click **Apply to Device** to save the configuration.
-

The MAP Fast Ancestor Find feature is enabled for the specified mesh profile.

Configuring Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find Mode (Task)

Configure background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode using the CLI within a mesh profile for detailed configuration options.

Follow these steps to configure background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode through the CLI:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Enter global configuration mode.
Example:

```
Device# configure terminal
```
 - Step 2** Configure a mesh profile and enter mesh profile configuration mode.
Example:

```
Device# wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile
```
 - Step 3** Enable background scanning in mesh deployments.
Example:

```
Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# background-scanning
```


Note
In Cisco Catalyst 9124 Series Access Points, a dedicated RF ASIC radio is used for background scanning.
 - Step 4** Enable fast ancestor find mode.
Example:

```
Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# map-fast-ancestor-find
```

Background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find mode are enabled for the specified mesh profile.

Configuring Backhaul Client Access (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**
- Step 2** Choose a profile.
- Step 3** In **General** tab, check the **Backhaul Client Access** check box.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring Backhaul Client Access (CLI)



Note Backhaul client access is disabled by default. After it is enabled, all the MAPs, except subordinate AP and its child APs in daisy-chained deployment, reboot.

Follow the procedure given below to enable backhaul client access on a mesh profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	client-access Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# client-access	Configures backhaul with client access AP.

Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul Per Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
The **All Access Points** section, which lists all the configured APs in the network, is displayed with their corresponding details.
- Step 2** Click the configured mesh AP.
The **Edit AP** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Choose the **Mesh** tab.
- Step 4** In the **General** section, under the **Backhaul** section, the default **Backhaul Radio Type**, **Backhaul Slot ID**, and **Rate Types** field details are displayed. Note that the values for **Backhaul Radio Type** and **Backhaul Slot ID** can be changed only for a root AP.
- Step 5** From the **Rate Types** drop-down list, choose the backhaul rate type.

Based on the choice, enter the details for the corresponding fields that are displayed. The backhaul interface varies between auto and 802.11a/b/g/n/ac/ax rates depending upon the AP. Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Outdoor Access Point is the only AP that support 11ax backhaul rates on the mesh backhaul.
- Step 6** In the **Backhaul MCS Index** field, enter the Modulation Coding Scheme (MCS) rate, that can be transmitted between the APs. The valid range is from 0 to 11, on both the bands.
- Step 7** In the **Spatial Stream** field, enter the number of spatial streams that are supported. The maximum number of spatial streams supported on a single radio in a 5-GHz radio band is 8, while 2.4-GHz radio band supports 4 spatial streams.
- Step 8** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul in Mesh Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Mesh Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click the **General** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Name** field, enter the mesh profile name.
- Step 5** Click the **Advanced** tab.

- Step 6** In the **5 GHz Band Backhaul** section and the **2.4 GHz Band Backhaul** section, choose the **dot11ax** backhaul rate type from **Rate Types** the drop-down list.

Note

Cisco Catalyst 9124AXI/D Series outdoor Access Point is the only AP to support 11ax backhaul rates on the mesh backhaul.

- Step 7** In the **Dot11ax MCS index** field, specify the MCS rate at which data can be transmitted between the APs. The value range is between 0 to 11, on both the radio bands.
- Step 8** In the **Spatial Stream** field, enter a value. The maximum number of spatial streams supported on a single radio in a 5-GHz radio band is 8, while 2.4- GHz radio band supports 4 spatial streams.
- Step 9** Click **Update and Apply to Device**.

Configuring Wireless Backhaul Data Rate (CLI)

Backhaul is used to create a wireless connection between APs. A backhaul interface can be 802.11bg/a/n/ac depending on the AP. The rate selection provides for effective use of the available RF spectrum. Data rates can also affect the RF coverage and network performance. Lower data rates, for example, 6 Mbps, can extend farther from the AP than can have higher data rates, for example, 1300 Mbps. As a result, the data rate affects cell coverage, and consequently, the number of APs required.



- Note** You can configure backhaul data rate, preferably, through the mesh profile. In certain cases, where a specific data rate is needed, use the command to configure the data rate per AP.

Follow the procedure given below to configure wireless backhaul data rate in privileged EXEC mode or in mesh profile configuration mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh backhaul rate { auto dot11abg dot11ac dot11n } Example: Device# #ap name ap1 mesh backhaul rate auto	Configures backhaul transmission rate.
Step 3	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	backhaul rate dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} dot11n RATE_6M Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 5ghz dot11n mcs 31</pre>	Configures backhaul transmission rate. Note Note that the rate configured on the AP (step 2) should match with the rate configured on the mesh profile (step4).

Configuring Data Rate Per AP (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh backhaul rate dot11ax mcs <0-11> ss <1-8> Example: <pre>Device# ap name ap1 mesh backhaul rate dot11ax 5 ss 4</pre>	Configures mesh backhaul 11ax rates for 2.4-GHz and 5-GHz bands.

Configuring Data Rate Using Mesh Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1</pre>	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	backhaul rate dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} dot11ax mcs <0-11> spatial-stream <1-8> Example:	Configures backhaul transmission rate for 2.4-GHz band and 5-GHz band. The 802.11ax spatial stream value for 2.4-GHz band is from 1 to 4, and the spatial stream value for the 5-GHz band is from 1 to 8.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 5ghz dot11ax mcs 5 spatial-stream 6 Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# backhaul rate dot11 24ghz dot11ax mcs 5 spatial-stream 4</pre>	

Configuring Mesh Backhaul (CLI)

This section describes how to configure mesh backhaul at 2.4 GHz.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap_name</i> mesh backhaul radio dot11 24ghz Example: <pre>Device # ap name test-ap mesh backhaul radio dot11 24ghz</pre>	Changes the mesh backhaul to 2.4 GHz.

Configuring Dynamic Frequency Selection (CLI)

DFS specifies the types of radar waveforms that should be detected along with certain timers for an unlicensed operation in the DFS channel.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1</pre>	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	full-sector-dfs Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# full-sector-dfs</pre>	Enables DFS. Note DFS functionality allows a MAP that detects a radar signal to transmit that up to the RAP, which then acts as if it has experienced radar and moves the sector. This process is called

	Command or Action	Purpose
		the coordinated channel change. The coordinated channel change is always enabled for Cisco Wave 2 and the later versions. The coordinated channel change can be disabled only for Cisco Wave 1 APs.

Configuring the Intrusion Detection System (CLI)

When enabled, the intrusion detection system generates reports for all the traffic on the client access. However, this is not applicable for the backhaul traffic.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	ids Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# ids	Configures intrusion detection system reporting for mesh APs.

Configuring Ethernet Bridging (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the mesh profile.
 - Step 4** In the **Advanced** tab, check the **VLAN Transparent** check box to enable VLAN transparency.
 - Step 5** In **Advanced** tab, check the **Ethernet Bridging** check box.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Ethernet Bridging (CLI)

The Ethernet port on the MAPs are disabled by default. It can be enabled only by configuring Ethernet bridging on the Root AP and the other respective MAPs.

Ethernet bridging can be enabled for the following scenarios:

- To use the mesh nodes as bridges.
- To connect Ethernet devices, such as a video camera, on a MAP using the MAP's Ethernet port.

Before you begin

- Ensure that you configure the following commands under the mesh profile configuration for Ethernet bridging to be enabled:
 - **ethernet-bridging**: Enables the Ethernet Bridging feature on an AP.
 - **no ethernet-vlan-transparent**: Makes the wireless mesh bridge VLAN aware. Allows VLAN filtering with the following AP command: **[no] mesh ethernet {0 | 1 | 2 | 3} mode trunk vlan allowed**.



Note

If you wish to have all the VLANs bridged (where bridge acts like a piece of wire), then you must enable VLAN transparency, which allows all VLANs to pass. If you choose to use VLAN transparent mode, it is best to filter the VLANs on the wired side of the network to avoid unnecessary traffic from flooding the network.

- The switch port to which the Root AP is connected should be configured as the trunk port for Ethernet bridging to work.
- For Bridge mode APs, use the **ap name name-of-rap mesh vlan-trunking native vlan-id** command to configure a trunk VLAN on the corresponding RAP. The Ethernet Bridging feature will not be enabled on the AP without configuring this command.
- For FlexConnect+Bridge APs, configure the native VLAN ID under the corresponding flex profile.



Note To ensure that the MAPs apply the Ethernet VLAN configuration on the controller, configure the native VLAN on the RAP by running the following command:

```
Device# ap name ap-name no mesh vlan-trunking
Device# ap name ap-name mesh vlan-trunking native 247
```

Alternatively, you can configure native VLAN on the RAP and then the MAP in the following order:

```
Device# ap name ap-name no mesh vlan-trunking
Device# ap name ap-name mesh vlan-trunking native vlan_id
Device# ap name ap-name mesh ethernet 1 mode trunk vlan native native
Device# ap name ap-name mesh ethernet 0 mode trunk vlan allowed allowed
```

To verify the status of RAP and MAP, run the following command:

```
Device# show mesh forwarding all
```

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh ethernet {0 1 2 3} mode access <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode access 21	Configures the Ethernet port of the AP and sets the mode as trunk.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh ethernet {0 1 2 3} mode trunk vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode trunk vlan native 21	Sets the native VLAN for the trunk port.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh ethernet {0 1 2 3} mode trunk vlan allowed <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mesh ethernet 1 mode trunk vlan allowed 21	Configures the allowed VLANs for the trunk port. Permits VLAN filtering on an ethernet port of any Mesh or Root Access Point. Active only when VLAN transparency is disabled in the mesh profile.

Configuring Multicast Modes over Mesh

- If multicast packets are received at a MAP over Ethernet, they are sent to the RAP. However, they are not sent to other MAPs. MAP-to-MAP packets are filtered out of the multicast.

- If multicast packets are received at a RAP over Ethernet, they are sent to all the MAPs and their respective Ethernet networks.
- The *in-out* mode is the default mode. When this *in-out* mode is in operation, it is important to properly partition your network to ensure that a multicast sent by one RAP is not received by another RAP on the same Ethernet segment, and then sent back into the network.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	multicast {in-only in-out regular} Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# multicast regular	Configures mesh multicast mode.

Configuring RRM on Mesh Backhaul (CLI)

The RRM measurement in the mesh AP backhaul is enabled based on the following conditions:

- Mesh AP has the Root AP role.
- Root AP has joined using an Ethernet link.
- Root AP is not serving any child AP.

Follow the procedure given below to enable RRM in the mesh backhaul:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mesh backhaul rrm Example:	Configures RRM on the mesh backhaul.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm	

Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for Root Access Points Globally

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured RRM for mesh backhaul before RRM DCA is triggered.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mesh backhaul rrm Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm	Configures RRM for mesh backhaul.
Step 3	(Optional) wireless mesh backhaul rrm auto-dca Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh backhaul rrm auto-dca	Configures auto DCA for RF Application Specific Integrated Circuit (ASIC) integrated RAPs.

To configure the initial channel assignment of the RAP in privileged EXEC mode through RRM, and to initiate channel selection for each bridge group, complete the following steps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm channel-update mesh Example: Device# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel-update mesh	Initiates update of the 802.11, 802.11a, or 802.11b channel selection for every mesh Cisco AP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm channel-update mesh bridge-group <i>bridge-group-name</i> Example: Device# ap dot11 5ghz rrm channel-update mesh bridge-group <i>cisco-bridge-group</i>	Initiates update of the 802.11, 802.11a, or 802.11b channel selection for mesh AP in the bridge group.

Configuring RRM Channel Assignment for an Access Point

To trigger RRM DCA for an AP, complete the following procedure:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>Cisco-ap-name</i> dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} rrm channel update mesh Example: Device# ap name <i>Cisco-ap-name</i> dot11 5ghz rrm channel update mesh	Triggers RRM DCA for the specific AP.

Selecting a Preferred Parent (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click the Access Point.
 - Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, enter the **Preferred Parent MAC**.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Selecting a Preferred Parent (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a preferred parent for a MAP.

Using this mechanism, you can override the AWPP-defined parent selection mechanism and force a mesh AP to go to a preferred parent.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh parent preferred <i>mac-address</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:0d:ed:dd:25:8f	Configures mesh parameters for the AP and sets the mesh-preferred parent MAC address. Note Ensure that you use the radio MAC address of the preferred parent. For Cisco Wave 1 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, ensure that you specify the MAC address of the actual mesh neighbor for the desired parent. This MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has the letter "f" as the final character. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:0f as the preferred parent. Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:0f For Cisco Wave 2 APs, when you configure a preferred parent, the MAC address is the base radio MAC address that has "0x11" added to the last two characters. For example, if the base radio MAC address is 00:24:13:0f:92:00, then you must specify 00:24:13:0f:92:11 as the preferred parent. Device# ap name ap1 mesh parent preferred 00:24:13:0f:92:11

Changing the Role of an AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** Click the **Access Point**.

- Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, choose **Root** or **Mesh** from the **Role** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

After the role change is triggered, the AP reboots.

Changing the Role of an AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure to change the AP from MAP to RAP or vice-versa.

By default, APs join the controller in a mesh AP role.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> role { mesh-ap root-ap } Example: Device# #ap name ap1 root-ap	Changes the role for the Cisco bridge mode APs. After the role change is triggered, the AP reboots.

Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh block-child Example: Device# #ap name ap1 mesh block-child	Sets the AP to work only as a leaf node. This AP cannot be selected by other MAPs as a parent MAP. Note Use the no form of this command to change it to a regular AP.

Configuring the Mesh Leaf Node (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
 - Step 2** Click the Access Point.
 - Step 3** In the **Mesh** tab, check the **Block Child** check box.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Subset Channel Synchronization

All the channels used by all the RAPs in a controller are sent to all the MAPs for future seek and convergence. The controller keeps a list of the subset channels for each Bridge Group Name (BGN). The list of subset channels are also shared across all the controllers in a mobility group.

Subset channel list is list of channels where RAP of particular BGN are operating. This list is communicated to all the MAPs within and across the controllers. The idea of subset channel list is for faster convergence of the Mesh APs. Convergence method can be selected in mesh profile. If the convergence method is not standard then subset channel list is pushed to MAPs.

Follow the procedure given below to configure subset channel synchronization for mobility group.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mesh subset-channel-sync mac Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh subset-channel-sync	Configures subset channel synchronization for a mobility group.

Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Access Points > LSC Provision .
Step 2	In the Add APs to LSC Provision List settings, click the Select File option to upload a CSV file that contains AP details.
Step 3	Click Upload File .
Step 4	You can also use the AP MAC Address field to search for APs using the MAC address and add them. The APs added to the provision list are displayed in the APs in Provision List list.
Step 5	Click Apply .
Step 6	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles
Step 7	Click Add .
Step 8	In the General tab, enter the Name of the mesh profile and check the LSC check box.
Step 9	In the Advanced tab, under the Security settings, choose the authorization method from the Authorization Method drop-down list.
Step 10	Click Apply to Device .
-

Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs

- Configuring Locally Significant Certificate (LSC) will not remove pre-existing certificates from an AP.
- An AP can have both LSC and Message Integrity Check (MIC) certificates. However, when an AP is provisioned with LSC, the MIC certificate is not used on boot-up. A change from LSC to MIC requires the AP to reboot.

Follow the procedure given below to configure LSC for bridge-mode and mesh APs:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap lsc-provision Example: Device(config)# ap lsc-provision	Configures LSC provisioning on an AP. Note This step is applicable only for mesh APs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	ap lsc-provision provision-list Example: Device(config)# ap lsc-provision provision-list	(Optional) Configures LSC provision for all the APs in the provision list.
Step 4	aaa authentication dot1x auth-list radius group radius-server-grp Example: Device(config)# aaa authentication dot1x list1 radius group sgl	Configures named authorization list for downloading EAP credential from radius group server.
Step 5	wireless profile mesh profile-name Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 6	lsc-only-auth Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# lsc-only-auth	Configures mesh security to LSC-only MAP authentication. After this command is run, all the mesh APs reboot.
Step 7	method authorization local Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# method authorization list1	Configures an authorization method for mesh AP authorization.

Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In **General** tab, enter the **Name** of the mesh profile.
 - Step 4** In **Advanced** tab, choose the rate types from the **Rate Types** drop-down list for **5 GHz Band Backhaul** and **2.4 GHz Band Backhaul**.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Specifying the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to set the mesh backhaul rate.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>rap-name</i> mesh backhaul radio dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} [slot <i>slot-id</i>] Example: Device# ap name rap1 mesh backhaul radio dot11 24ghz slot 2	Sets the mesh backhaul radio slot.

Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > AP Statistics > General**.
 - Step 2** Click the Access Point.
 - Step 3** Choose **Mesh > Neighbor > Linktest**.
 - Step 4** Choose the desired values from the **Date Rates**, **Packets to be sent (per second)**, **Packet Size (bytes)** and **Test Duration (seconds)** drop-down lists..
 - Step 5** Click **Start**.
-

Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul

Follow the procedure given below to trigger linktest between neighbor mesh APs.



Note Use the **test mesh linktest mac-address** *neighbor-ap-mac* **rate** *data-rate* **fps** *frames-per-second* **frame-size** *frame-size* command to perform link test from an AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example:	Enters privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> enable	
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mesh linktest <i>dest-ap-mac</i> <i>data-rate packet-per-sec packet-size</i> <i>test-duration</i> Example: Device# #ap name ap1 mesh linktest F866.F267.7DFB 24 234 1200 200	Sets link test parameters.

Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**
 - Step 2** Choose a profile.
 - Step 3** In **General** tab, check the **Battery State for an AP** check box.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Battery State for Mesh AP

Some Cisco outdoor APs come with the option of battery backup. There is also a POE-out port that can power a video surveillance camera. The integrated battery can be used for temporary backup power during external power interruptions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	battery-state Example:	Configures the battery state for an AP.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# battery-state</code>	

Configuring Mesh Convergence (CLI)

This section provides information about how to configure mesh convergence.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1</code>	Creates a mesh profile.
Step 3	convergence {fast noise-tolerant-fast standard very-fast} Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# convergence fast</code>	Configures mesh convergence method in a mesh profile.

Configuring DHCP Server on Root Access Point (RAP)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# ap profile ap-profile-name</code>	Configures an AP Profile.
Step 3	dhcp-server Example:	Configures DHCP server on the root access point.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-ap-profile)# dhcp-server</code>	
Step 4	end Example: <code>Device(config-ap-profile)# end</code>	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining (CLI)

The following section provides information about how to configure the Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining feature on a mesh AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile default-ap-profile Example: <code>Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile</code>	Specifies an AP profile.
Step 3	ssid broadcast persistent Example: <code>Device(config-ap-profile)# ssid broadcast persistent</code>	Configures persistent SSID broadcast and ensures strict wired uplink. RAP will not switch to wireless backhaul when you configure this command.

Enabling Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

The following section provides information about how to enable the Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining feature on a Cisco IW 3702 AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile	Creates a mesh profile.
Step 3	ethernet-bridging Example: Device(config)# ethernet-bridging	Connects remote wired networks to each other.
Step 4	no ethernet-vlan-transparent Example: Device(config)# no ethernet-vlan-transparent	Disables VLAN transparency to ensure that the bridge is VLAN aware.

Configuring Mesh CAC (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless mesh cac Example: Device(config)# wireless mesh cac	Enables mesh CAC mode.

Configuring ATF on Mesh (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Airtime Fairness > Global Config
Step 2	For 5 GHz Band and 2.4 GHz Band , enable the Status and the Bridge Client Access toggle button.
Step 3	To choose the Mode , click the Monitor or Enforced radio button.
Step 4	Enable or disable the Optimization toggle button.
Step 5	Enter the Airtime Allocation .
Step 6	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring ATF on Mesh

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} rf-profile rf-profile Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rfprof24_1	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	airtime-fairness bridge-client-access airtime-allocation allocation-weight-percentage Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# airtime-fairness bridge-client-access airtime-allocation 10	Configures airtime allocation weight percentage on mesh APs.

Create an ATF Policy for a MAP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy profile-policy Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness atf-policy Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness atf-policy	Enables ATF in the existing RF profile.

Creating an ATF Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Air Time Fairness > Profiles**.
- Step 2** On the **Profiles** window, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add ATF Policy** window, specify a name, ID, and weight for the ATF policy.
- Note**
Weighted ratio is used instead of percentages so that the total can exceed 100. The minimum weight that you can set is 5.
- Step 4** Use the slider to enable or disable the Client Sharing feature.
- Step 5** Click **Save & Apply to Device** to save your ATF configuration.
- Step 6** (Optional) To delete a policy, check the check box next to the appropriate policy and click **Delete**.
- Step 7** (Optional) To edit an existing ATF policy, select the check box next to the policy you want to edit.
- In the **Edit ATF Policy** window that is displayed, you can modify the weight and client sharing details for the policy.
-

Adding an ATF to a Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the corresponding policy profile.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Air Time Fairness Policies** section, choose the appropriate status for the following: 2.4-GHz Policy and 5-GHz Policy.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling ATF Mode in an RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
- Step 2** Click the name of the corresponding RF profile.
- Step 3** In the **RF Profile** window, click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** In the **ATF Configuration** section, choose the appropriate status for the following:
- **Status**—If you choose **Enabled** as the status, select the **Mode** as either **Monitor** or **Enforced**. Also, you can enable or disable optimization for this mode.
 - **Bridge Client Access**
 - **Airtime Allocation**—Enter the allocation value. You can set the value only after you enable the **Bridge Client Access**.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling Wireless Mesh Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	fast-teardown Example: Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# fast-teardown	Enables the fast teardown of mesh network and configures the feature's parameter.

Enabling Serial Backhaul in Radio Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio > Radio**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to add a radio profile.
The **Add Radio Profile** page is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Add Radio Profile** page, enter the name and description.
- Step 4** In the **Mesh Backhaul** field, choose the **Enabled** radio button to enable the feature.
- Step 5** In the **Mesh Designated Downlink** field, choose the **Enabled** radio button to enable the feature.

Note

Mesh Designated Downlink is supported only on slot number 2 of Mesh APs. You need to be careful while associating radio profiles to the RF tag slots.

- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling Mesh Configurations in Radio Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile radio <i>radio-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile radio <i>radio-profile-name</i>	Configures wireless radio profile and goes into radio profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mesh backhaul Example: Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# mesh backhaul	Enables mesh backhaul. By default, this command is enabled. Mesh backhaul can be disabled on a specific slot, to stop the specific slot from being the backhaul candidate.
Step 4	mesh designated downlink Example: Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# mesh designated downlink	Enables the radio slot as a designated downlink. By default, this command is disabled. This command is enabled only for slot 2 of the mesh APs. If a slot other than slot 2 is configured as the designated downlink, the following warning

	Command or Action	Purpose
		message is displayed: Designated downlink is supported only on slot 2 of mesh APs. Associate in the RF tag accordingly. By default, all the radio slots are mesh-enabled and not designated as downlink.

Enabling Serial Backhaul (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile radio <i>radio-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile radio <i>radio-mesh-downlink</i>	Configures wireless radio profile and goes into radio profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mesh designated downlink Example: Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# mesh designated downlink	Enables the specified radio as a designated mesh downlink backhaul. Uplink radio will not be used as downlink in the presence of designated downlinks.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# exit	Exits the submode and returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	wireless tag rf <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag rf <i>rf-map-tag</i>	Configures wireless RF tag and goes into wireless RF tag profile configuration mode. The associate designated downlink is enabled in the radio profile only for slot 2.
Step 6	dot11 5ghz {slot1 slot2} radio-profile <i>radio-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# dot11 5ghz slot2 radio-profile <i>radio-mesh-downlink</i>	Configures serial backhaul with the designated downlink radio. Note In mesh APs, the uplink and downlink are in the same slot by default. When you configure a designated downlink, the mesh AP is forced to use a specific radio as downlink.

Fallback Mode



Note If at least one radio is configured to be a designated downlink, it means that it will not be used as a potential uplink. To prevent any configuration mistake, for example, configuring uplink radio as the designated downlink, a fallback timer is used in a mesh AP. If the mesh AP is not able to join the controller after the allocated 10 minutes, the designated configurations are cleared and all the radios become uplink-capable.

Configuration Example for Mesh Serial Backhaul

The following example shows how to configure mesh APs with only slot 0 and slot 1 allowed for the mesh AP:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless profile radio radio-mesh-downlink
Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# no mesh backhaul
Device(config-wireless-radio-profile)# exit

Device(config)# wireless tag rf rf-map-tag
Device(config-wireless-rf-tag)# dot11 5ghz slot2 radio-profile mesh-disabled
```

Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile default-ap-profile	Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mesh-profile <i>mesh-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# mesh-profile test1	Configures the mesh profile in AP profile configuration mode.

Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Mesh > Profiles**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add Mesh Profile** window, click **Advanced**.
- Step 4** Select a security mode, authentication method, and authorization method.
- Step 5** Enable **Ethernet bridging**, if required.
- Step 6** Enter the bridge group name and enable Strict Match BGN.
- Step 7** Select a band backhaul transmission rate for your radio.
- Step 8** Perform the following action in the **Fast Roaming** section:
- Check the **Fast Teardown** check box to detect the root access point uplink failure faster in a mesh deployment and to address fast teardown of the mesh network when an uplink failure occurs.
 - In the **Number of Retries** field, enter the number of retries allowed until gateway is considered unreachable. The valid range is between 1 to 10.
 - In the **Interval value** field, enter the retry value. The valid range is between 1 to 10 seconds.
 - In the **Latency Threshold** field, enter the threshold for a round-trip latency between the AP and the controller. The valid range is between 1 and 500 milliseconds.
 - In the **Latency Exceeded Threshold** field, enter the latency interval in which at least one ping must succeed in less than the specified time. The valid range is between 1 to 30 seconds.
 - In the **Uplink Recovery Interval** field, enter the time during which root access point uplink must be stable in order to accept the child connections. The valid range is between 1 and 3600 seconds.
- Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Fast Teardown for a Mesh AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh mesh1	Configures a mesh profile and enters the mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	fast-teardown Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# fast-teardown	Enables the fast teardown of mesh network and configures the feature's parameter.
Step 4	enabled Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# enabled	Enables the fast teardown feature.
Step 5	interval <i>duration</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# interval 5	(Optional) Configures the retry interval. The valid values range between 1 and 10 seconds.
Step 6	latency-exceeded-threshold <i>duration</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# latency-exceeded-threshold 20	(Optional) Specifies the latency interval at which at least one ping must succeed in less than threshold time. The valid values range between 1 and 30 seconds.
Step 7	latency-threshold <i>threshold range</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# latency-threshold 20	(Optional) Specifies the latency threshold. The valid values range between 1 and 500 milliseconds.
Step 8	retries <i>retry limit</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# retries 1	(Optional) Specifies the number of retries until the gateway is considered unreachable. The valid values range between 1 and 10.
Step 9	uplink-recovery-intervals <i>recovery interval</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile-fast-teardown)# uplink-recovery-intervals 1	(Optional) Specifies the time during which root access point uplink has to be stable to accept child connections. The valid values range between 1 and 3600 seconds.

Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points

Information About Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points

The Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points describe how to set up a controller with Flex+Bridge mode Access Points (APs) and Flex Resilient feature. The Flex Resilient feature works only in Flex+Bridge mode APs. The feature resides in Mesh link formed between RAP - MAP, once the link is UP and RAP loses connection to the CAPWAP controller, both RAP and MAP continue to bridge the traffic. A child Mesh AP (MAP) maintains its link to a parent AP and continues to bridge till the parent link is lost. A child MAP cannot establish a new parent or child link till it reconnects to the CAPWAP controller.



Note Existing wireless clients in locally switching WLAN can stay connected with their AP in this mode. No new or disconnected wireless client can associate to the Mesh AP in this mode. Client traffic in Flex+Bridge MAP is dropped at RAP switchport for the locally switched WLANs.

Configuring a Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
- Step 2** Click a **Flex Profile Name**. The **Edit Flex Profile** dialog box appears.
- Step 3** Under the **General** tab, choose the **Flex Resilient** check box to enable the Flex Resilient feature.
- Step 4** Under the **VLAN** tab, choose the required VLANs.
- Step 5** (Optionally) Under the **Local Authentication** tab, choose the desired server group from the **Local Accounting RADIUS Server Group** drop-down list. Also, choose the **RADIUS** check box.
- Step 6** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring a Flex Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex new-flex-profile	Configures a Flex profile and enters Flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	arp-caching Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# arp-caching	Enables ARP caching.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# description "new flex profile"	Enables default parameters for the Flex profile.
Step 5	native-vlan-id Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# native-vlan-id 2660	Configures native vlan-id information.
Step 6	resilient Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# resilient	Enables the resilient feature.
Step 7	vlan-name <i>vlan_name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-name VLAN2659	Configures VLAN name.
Step 8	vlan-id <i>vlan_id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-id 2659	Configures VLAN ID. The valid VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4096.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site new-flex-site	Configures a site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	flex-profile <i>flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# flex-profile new-flex-profile	Configures a flex profile.
Step 4	no local-site Example: Device(config-site-tag)# no local-site	Local site is not configured on the site tag.
Step 5	site-tag <i>site-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# site-tag new-flex-site	Maps a site tag to an AP.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Mesh Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example:	Configures a Mesh profile and enters the Mesh profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile mesh Mesh_Profile	
Step 3	no ethernet-vlan-transparent Example: Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# no ethernet-vlan-transparent	Disables VLAN transparency to ensure that the bridge is VLAN aware.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-profile-mesh)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Associating Wireless Mesh to an AP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile new-ap-join-profile	Configures the AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mesh-profile <i>mesh-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# mesh-profile Mesh_Profile	Configures the Mesh profile in AP profile configuration mode.
Step 4	ssh Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# ssh	Configures the Secure Shell (SSH).
Step 5	mgmtuser <i>username</i> <i>username</i> password {0 8} <i>password</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# mgmtuser username Cisco password 0 Cisco secret 0 Cisco	Specifies the AP management username and password for managing all of the access points configured to the controller. • 0: Specifies an UNENCRYPTED password. • 8: Specifies an AES encrypted password.

Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		While configuring an username, ensure that special characters are not used as it results in error with bad configuration.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Attaching Site Tag to an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap F866.F267.7DFB	Configures Cisco APs and enters ap-tag configuration mode.
Step 3	site-tag site-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag new-flex-site	Maps a site tag to the AP. Note Associating Site Tag causes the associated AP to reconnect.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Switch Interface for APs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface <int-id>	Enters the interface to be added to the VLAN.
Step 3	switchport trunk native vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 2660	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.
Step 4	switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 2659,2660	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.
Step 5	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode trunk	Sets the trunking mode to trunk unconditionally. Note When the controller works as a host for spanning tree, ensure that you configure portfast trunk, using spanning-tree portfast trunk command, in the uplink switch to ensure faster convergence.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Flex Resilient with Flex and Bridge Mode Access Points Configuration

To view the AP mode and model details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name <ap-name> config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                : AIR-CAP3702I-A-K9
```

To view the MAP mode details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name MAP config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                : AIR-CAP3702I-A-K9
```

To view the RAP mode details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name RAP config general | inc AP Mode
AP Mode                : Flex+Bridge
AP Model                : AIR-AP2702I-A-K9
```

To view if the Flex Profile - Resilient feature is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile flex detailed FLEX_TAG | inc resilient
Flex resilient          : ENABLED
```

Verifying ATF Configuration on Mesh

You can verify Cisco ATF configurations on mesh APs using the following commands.

Use the following **show** command to display the ATF configuration summary of all the radios:

```
Device# show ap airtime-fairness summary
```

AP Name Optimization	MAC Address	Slot	Admin	Oper	Mode
-----	-----	----	-----	-----	-----
ap1/2 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a0	0	ENABLED	DOWN	Enforce-Policy
ap1/2 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a0	1	ENABLED	UP	Enforce-Policy
ap1/3 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a1	0	ENABLED	DOWN	Enforce-Policy
ap1/3 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a1	1	ENABLED	UP	Enforce-Policy

Use the following **show** command to display the ATF configuration for a 2.4-GHz radio:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness
```

AP Name Optimization	MAC Address	Slot	Admin	Oper	Mode
-----	-----	----	-----	-----	-----
ap1/2 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a0	1	ENABLED	UP	Enforce-Policy

Use the following **show** command to display the ATF WLAN statistics:

```
Device# show ap name ap1 dot11 24ghz airtime-fairness wlan 12 statistics
```

AP Name Optimization	MAC Address	Slot	Admin	Oper	Mode
-----	-----	----	-----	-----	-----
ap1/2 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a0	0	ENABLED	DOWN	Enforce-Policy
ap1/2 Enabled	6c:99:89:0c:73:a0	1	ENABLED	UP	Enforce-Policy
Network level					

Use the following **show** command to display the wireless mesh summary:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh summary
```

Number of Profiles: 2

Profile-Name	BGN	Security	Bh-access	Description
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
mesh1		EAP	DISABLED	
default-mesh-profile		EAP	DISABLED	default mesh profile

```
Device# show mesh atf client-access
```

AP Name	Client Access Default %	Allocation Current %	Override	Current nodes
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

RAP	25	40	Enabled	4
RAP	33	40	Enabled	3

Verifying Mesh Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- The following is a sample output of the **show ap config general** command that displays whether a persistent SSID is configured for an AP.

```
Device# show ap 3702-RAP config general
```

```
Persistent SSID Broadcast           Enabled/Disabled
```

- The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh persistent-ssid-broadcast summary** command that displays the persistent SSID broadcast status of all the bridge RAPs.

```
Device# show wireless mesh persistent-ssid-broadcast summary
```

AP Name state	AP Model	BVI MAC	BGN	AP Role	Persistent SSID
3702-RAP	3702	5c71.0d07.db50	ap_name	Root AP	Enabled
1560-RAP	1562E	380e.4dbf.c6b0	ap_name	Root AP	Disabled

Verifying Mesh Convergence

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless profile mesh detailed** command that displays the mesh convergence method used:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
```

```
Mesh Profile Name           : default-mesh-profile
```

```
Description                 : default mesh profile
```

```
Convergence Method         : Fast
```

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels** command that displays the subset channels of the selected bridge group name:

```
Device# show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels
```

Bridge group name	Channel
Default	132

Verifying DHCP Server for Root AP Configuration

To verify the DHCP server for root AP configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
```

```
Cisco AP Name       : AP4C77.6DF2.D588
```

```
<SNIP>
```

```
Dhcp Server           : Enabled
```

Verifying Mesh Backhaul

The following is a sample output of the **show ap name mesh backhaul** command that shows details of the mesh backhaul at 2.4 GHz:

```
Device# show ap name test-ap mesh backhaul
```

```
MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
Current Backhaul Slot: 0
Radio Type: 0
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: DOWNLINK
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level:
Current Channel: (11)
Antenna Type: N/A
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 0
```

The following is a sample output of the **show wireless mesh ap backhaul** command that shows the mesh backhaul details:

```
Device# show wireless mesh ap backhaul
```

```
MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.0x11
Current Backhaul Slot: 1
Radio Type: Main
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: Downlink
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level: 6
Current Channel: (100)*
Antenna Type: N/A
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 10
```

The following is a sample output of the **show ap summary** command that shows the radio MAC address and the corresponding AP name:

```
Device# show ap summary
Number of APs: 1
AP Name      Slots  AP Model      Ethernet      MAC Radio MAC  Location      Country
IP Address   State
-----
AP-Cisco-1   2      AIR-APXXXXX-E-K9  xxxx.xxxx.xxd4  xxxx.xxxx.0x11 default location DE
10.11.70.170 Registered
```

Verifying Mesh Configuration

Use the following **show** commands to verify the various aspects of mesh configuration.

- **show wireless mesh stats** *ap-name*
- **show wireless mesh security-stats** *{all | ap-name}*
- **show wireless mesh queue-stats** *{all | ap-name}*
- **show wireless mesh per-stats summary** *{all | ap-name}*

- **show wireless mesh neighbor summary** *{all | ap-name}*
- **show wireless mesh neighbor detail** *ap-name*
- **show wireless mesh ap summary**
- **show wireless mesh ap tree**
- **show wireless mesh ap backhaul**
- **show wireless mesh config**
- **show wireless mesh convergence detail** *bridge-group-name*
- **show wireless mesh convergence subset-channels**
- **show wireless mesh neighbor**
- **show wireless profile mesh detailed** *mesh-profile-name*
- **show wireless stats mesh security**
- **show wireless stats mesh queue**
- **show wireless stats mesh packet error**
- **show wireless mesh ap summary**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh backhaul**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh neighbor detail**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh path**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats packet error**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats queue**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats security**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh stats**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh bhrate**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **config ethernet**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **cablemodem**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **environment**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **gps location**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **environment**
- **show ap name** *ap-name* **mesh linktest data** *dest-mac*
- **show ap environment**
- **show ap gps location**

For details about these commands, see the [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference](#) document.

MAC Authorization

Use the following **show** command to verify the MAC authorization configuration:

```
Device# show run aaa
aaa authentication dot1x CENTRAL_LOCAL local
aaa authorization credential-download CENTRAL_AUTHOR local
username 002cc8de4f31 mac
username 00425a0a53b1 mac

ewlc_eft#sh wireless profile mesh detailed madhu-mesh-profile

Mesh Profile Name           : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                  :
Bridge Group Name           : bgn-abbcc
Strict match BGN            : ENABLED
Amsdu                       : ENABLED
...
Battery State               : ENABLED
Authorization Method       : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method    : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)  : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)   : 802.11n mcs15
```

PSK Provisioning

Use the following **show** command to verify PSK provisioning configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                    : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels (for BH) : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed      : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync              : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                : 4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP : 20
  Low Link SNR                 : 12
  High Link SNR                : 60
  Max Association Number       : 10
  Parent Change Number         : 3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning           : ENABLED
  Default PSK               : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number      : 1
  Provisioned PSKs (Maximum 5)

  Index      Description
  -----
  1          key1
```

Bridge Group Name

Use the following **show** command to verify the bridge group name configuration:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                  :
```

```

Bridge Group Name           : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN           : ENABLED
Amsdu                      : ENABLED
Background Scan            : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification : DISABLED
Backhaul client access     : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging         : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent  : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS           : ENABLED
IDS                        : ENABLED
Multicast Mode             : In-Out
Range in feet              : 12000
Security Mode              : EAP
Convergence Method         : Fast
LSC only Authentication    : DISABLED
Battery State              : ENABLED
Authorization Method       : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method      : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg) : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)  : 802.11n mcs15

```

Backhaul Client Access

Use the following **show** command to verify the backhaul client access configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                  :
Bridge Group Name           : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN           : ENABLED
Amsdu                      : ENABLED
Background Scan            : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification : DISABLED
Backhaul client access     : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging         : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent  : DISABLED
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg) : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)  : 802.11n mcs15

```

Wireless Backhaul Data Rate

Use the following **show** command to verify the wireless backhaul data rate configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                  :
Bridge Group Name           : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN           : ENABLED
...
Authorization Method       : CENTRAL_AUTHOR
Authentication Method      : CENTRAL_LOCAL
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg) : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)  : 802.11n mcs15

```

Dynamic Frequency Selection

Use the following **show** command to verify the dynamic frequency selection configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           : abc-mesh-profile

```

```

-----
Description                               :
Bridge Group Name                         : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN                         : ENABLED
Amsdu                                    : ENABLED
Background Scan                          : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification               : DISABLED
Backhaul client access                   : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging                        : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent                 : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS                          : ENABLED
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)                : 802.11n mcs15

```

Intrusion Detection System

Use the following **show** command to verify the wireless backhaul data rate configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name                        : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                               :
Bridge Group Name                         : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN                         : ENABLED
Amsdu                                    : ENABLED
Background Scan                          : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification               : DISABLED
Backhaul client access                   : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging                        : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent                 : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS                          : ENABLED
IDS                                      : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                           : In-Out
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)                : 802.11n mcs15

```

Ethernet Bridging

Use the following **show** command to verify ethernet bridging configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name                        : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description                               :
Bridge Group Name                         : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN                         : ENABLED
Amsdu                                    : ENABLED
Background Scan                          : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification               : DISABLED
Backhaul client access                   : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging                        : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent                 : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS                          : ENABLED
IDS                                      : ENABLED
Multicast Mode                           : In-Out
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)                : 802.11n mcs15

```

Multicast over Mesh

Use the following **show** command to verify multicast over Mesh configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed abc-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name      : abc-mesh-profile
-----
Description            :
Bridge Group Name      : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN       : ENABLED
Amsdu                  : ENABLED
Background Scan        : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification : DISABLED
Backhaul client access : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging      : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent : DISABLED
Full Sector DFS        : ENABLED
IDS                    : ENABLED
Multicast Mode       : In-Out
...
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a) : 802.11n mcs15

```

RRM on Mesh Backhaul

Use the following **show** command to verify RRM on Mesh backhaul configuration:

```

Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC      : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH) : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count : 4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP : 20
  Low Link SNR : 12
  High Link SNR : 60
  Max Association Number : 10
  Parent Change Number : 3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning : ENABLED
  Default PSK : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

  Index   Description
  -----
  1       key1

```

Preferred Parent Selection

Use the following **show** command to verify preferred parent configuration:

```

Device# show wireless mesh ap tree
=====
AP Name [Hop Ctr,Link SNR,BG Name,Channel,Pref Parent,Chan Util,Clients]
=====

[Sector 1]
-----
1542-RAP [0, 0, bgn-madhu, (165), 0000.0000.0000, 1%, 0]
  |-MAP-2700 [1, 67, bgn-madhu, (165), 7070.8b7a.6fb8, 0%, 0]

```

```

Number of Bridge APs : 2
Number of RAPs : 1
Number of MAPs : 1

```

```

(*) Wait for 3 minutes to update or Ethernet Connected Mesh AP.
(**) Not in this Controller

```

AP Role Change

Use the following **show** command to verify AP role change configuration:

```

Device# show wireless mesh ap summary
AP Name                               AP Model BVI MAC           BGN           AP Role
-----                               -
1542-RAP                             1542D    002c.c8de.1338 bgn-abc      Root AP
MAP-2700                             2702I    500f.8095.01e4 bgn-abc      Mesh AP

Number of Bridge APs      : 2
Number of RAPs            : 1
Number of MAPs            : 1
Number of Flex+Bridge APs : 0
Number of Flex+Bridge RAPs : 0
Number of Flex+Bridge MAPs : 0

```

Mesh Leaf Node

Use the following **show** command to verify mesh leaf node configuration:

```

Device# show ap name MAP-2700 config general
Cisco AP Name   : MAP-2700
=====

Cisco AP Identifier      : 7070.8bbc.d3e0
Country Code            : Multiple Countries : IN,US,IO,J4
Regulatory Domain Allowed by Country : 802.11bg:-AEJJPQU 802.11a:-ABDJNPQU
AP Country Code         : IN - India
AP Regulatory Domain
  Slot 0                : -A
  Slot 1                : -D
MAC Address             : 500f.8095.01e4
...
AP Mode                 : Bridge
Mesh profile name       : abc-mesh-profile
AP Role                 : Mesh AP
Backhaul radio type     : 802.11a
Backhaul slot id        : 1
Backhaul tx rate        : auto
Ethernet Bridging       : Enabled
Daisy Chaining          : Disabled
Strict Daisy Rap        : Disabled
Bridge Group Name       : bgn-abc
Strict-Matching BGN    : Enabled
Preferred Parent Address : 7070.8b7a.6fb8
Block child state       : Disabled
PSK Key Timestamp       : Not Configured
...
FIPS status             : Disabled
WLANCC status           : Disabled
GAS rate limit Admin status : Disabled
WPA3 Capability         : Disabled
EWC-AP Capability       : Disabled
AWIPS Capability        : Disabled
Proxy Hostname          : Not Configured

```

```

Proxy Port                               : Not Configured
Proxy NO_PROXY list                      : Not Configured
GRPC server status                        : Disabled

```

Subset Channel Synchronization

Use the following **show** command to verify the subset channel synchronization configuration:

```

Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM                               : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC                                   : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH) : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed    : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync                           : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count                             : 4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP           : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP           : 20
  Low Link SNR                              : 12
  High Link SNR                             : 60
  Max Association Number                     : 10
  Parent Change Number                       : 3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning                           : ENABLED
  Default PSK                               : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number                      : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

Index      Description
-----
1          key1

```

Provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh APs

Use the following **show** command to verify the provisioning LSC for Bridge-Mode and Mesh AP configuration:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name      : default-mesh-profile
-----
Description            : default mesh profile
Bridge Group Name      : bgn-abc
Strict match BGN       : DISABLED
Amsdu                  : ENABLED
Background Scan        : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification : ENABLED
Backhaul client access : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging      : DISABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent : ENABLED
Full Sector DFS        : ENABLED
IDS                    : DISABLED
Multicast Mode         : In-Out
Range in feet          : 12000
Security Mode          : EAP
Convergence Method     : Fast
LSC only Authentication : DISABLED
Battery State          : ENABLED
Authorization Method    : default
Authentication Method   : default
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg) : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a) : auto

```

Specify the Backhaul Slot for the Root AP

Use the following **show** command to verify the backhaul slot for the Root AP configuration:

```
Device# show ap name 1542-RAP mesh backhaul
MAC Address : 380e.4d85.5e60
  Current Backhaul Slot: 1
    Radio Type: 0
    Radio Subband: All
    Mesh Radio Role: DOWNLINK
    Administrative State: Enabled
    Operation State: Up
    Current Tx Power Level:
    Current Channel: (165)
    Antenna Type: N/A
    Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 18
```

Using a Link Test on Mesh Backhaul

Use the following **show** command to verify the use of link test on mesh backhaul configuration:

```
Device# show ap name 1542-RAP mesh linktest data 7070.8bbc.d3ef
380e.4d85.5e60 ==> 7070.8bbc.d3ef
```

```
Started at : 05/11/2020 20:56:28
Status: In progress
```

```
Configuration:
=====
Data rate: Mbps
Packets per sec: : 234
Packet Size: : 1200
Duration: : 200
```

Mesh CAC

Use the following **show** command to verify mesh CAC configuration:

```
Device# show wireless mesh config
Mesh Config
  Backhaul RRM : ENABLED
  Mesh CAC : DISABLED
  Outdoor Ext. UNII B Domain channels(for BH) : ENABLED
  Mesh Ethernet Bridging STP BPDU Allowed : ENABLED
  Rap Channel Sync : ENABLED

Mesh Alarm Criteria
  Max Hop Count : 4
  Recommended Max Children for MAP : 10
  Recommended Max Children for RAP : 20
  Low Link SNR : 12
  High Link SNR : 60
  Max Association Number : 10
  Parent Change Number : 3

Mesh PSK Config
  PSK Provisioning : ENABLED
  Default PSK : ENABLED
  PSK In-use key number : 1
  Provisioned PSKs(Maximum 5)

Index   Description
-----
1       key1
```


Verifying Dot11ax Rates on Mesh Backhaul

To verify the 802.11ax rates on mesh backhaul in the mesh profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           : default-mesh-profile
-----
Description                  : default mesh profile
.
.
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg)   : 802.11ax mcs7 ss1
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a)    : 802.11ax mcs9 ss2
```

To verify the 802.11ax rates on mesh backhaul in the general configuration of an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general
Cisco AP Identifier          : 5c71.0d17.49e0
.
.
Backhaul slot id             : 1
Backhaul tx rate              : 802.11ax mcs7 ss1
```

Verifying Mesh Serial Backhaul

To verify mesh AP serial backhaul, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap name MAP-SB config slot 2 | inc Mesh
Mesh Radio Role : Downlink Access
Mesh Backhaul   : Enabled
Mesh Designated Downlink : Enabled
```

To verify serial backhaul enabled on a specific AP, run the following command:

```
Device# show ap name MAP-SB mesh backhaul
MAC Address : 4cxx.4dxx.f4xx
Current Backhaul Slot: 1
Radio Type: Main
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: Uplink Access <<<<<
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level: 6
Current Channel: (104) <<<<<
Antenna Type:
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 1
MAC Address : 4cxx.4dxx.f4xx
Current Backhaul Slot: 2
Radio Type: Slave
Radio Subband: All
Mesh Radio Role: Downlink Access <<<<<
Administrative State: Enabled
Operation State: Up
Current Tx Power Level: 8
Current Channel: (149) <<<<<
Antenna Type:
Internal Antenna Gain (in .5 dBm units): 1
```

To verify mesh serial backhaul, run the following command:

```

Device# show wireless profile radio detailed radio-mesh-downlink
Radio Profile name           : radio-mesh-downlink
Description                  :
Beam-Selection               : Not configured
Number of antenna to be enabled : 0
Mesh Backhaul                : Enabled
Mesh Designated Downlink    : Enabled

```

Verifying the RRM DCA Status

To view the status of the DCA that is run for mesh APs, run the following command:

```

Device# show ap name Cisco-AP config general | inc Mesh
Mesh profile name           : default-mesh-profile
Mesh DCA Run Status:       : Not Running
Last Mesh DCA Run          : 02/07/2022 01:21:56

```

To verify the status of the last DCA run per radio, run the following command:

```

Device# show wireless mesh rrm dca status

```



Note The output for the **show ap config general | i Mesh** and the **show ap name <AP name> config general | i Mesh** commands, displays only the status for manual RRM DCA triggers that are done via the **ap name <AP name> dot11 rrm channel update mesh** command.

The output for the **show ap config general | i Mesh** and the **show ap name <AP name> config general | i Mesh** commands, does not update if only the global mesh RRM DCA is enabled (auto-dca).

Verifying Fast Teardown with Default Mesh Profile

To verify the fast teardown with the default-mesh-profile, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile
Mesh Profile Name           default-mesh-profile
-----
Fast Teardown               : ENABLED
Number of Retries           : 4
Interval in sec             : 1
Latency Threshold in msec   : 10
Latency Exceeded Threshold in sec : 8
Uplink Recovery Interval in sec : 60

```

Verify background scanning and MAP fast ancestor find

To verify if the Background Scanning and MAP Fast Ancestor Find features are enabled, run the **show wireless profile mesh detailed** command:

Verify background scan

```

Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed Mesh_Profile | i Background Scan
Background Scan              : ENABLED

```

Verify MAP fast ancestor find

```
Device# show wireless profile mesh detailed Mesh_Profile | i MAP fast ancestor find
MAP fast ancestor find          : ENABLED
```




CHAPTER 168

Redundant Root Access Point (RAP) Ethernet Daisy Chaining

- [Overview of Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining, on page 1771](#)
- [Prerequisites for Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support, on page 1772](#)
- [Configuring Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support \(CLI\), on page 1772](#)
- [Verifying Daisy Chain Redundancy \(CLI\), on page 1772](#)

Overview of Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining

The Root Access Point (RAP) Ethernet Daisy Chaining is a feature where RAPs are chained using wired Ethernet to avoid latency in backhaul link failure recovery.

This feature proposes a redundancy in the daisy chain, wherein, two switches act as a redundant Designated Port (DP), each connected to either end of the daisy chain. In case of a link failure, the link direction is reversed using a new STP root.

A redundant RAP ethernet daisy chain has similar capabilities to the existing mesh daisy chain feature. In a redundant RAP ethernet daisy chain topology, the packet is encapsulated with CAPWAP header and forwarded to the controller from its wireless client for each AP. The packet is bridged to its primary ethernet interface from its secondary ethernet interface including the other AP's wireless client CAPWAP packets. Both 2.4G and 5G radio are used for client access.



Note The daisy chain strict RAP configuration is applicable to Cisco IOS access points only.

Redundant RAP ethernet daisy chain is supported on the IW6300 AP model.

In case of ethernet daisy chain topology, if a CAPWAP loss occurs on the first RAP connected to switch, the entire chain loses its uplink. This takes a long time to recover. Thereby, if the RAP ethernet daisy chain is enabled, the CAPWAP data keepalive is extended to three times.



Note Only wired uplink configuration is valid, if you configure an AP as Bridge or Flex Bridge mode Root AP.

Prerequisites for Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support

- Ethernet bridging on should be enabled.
- Strict-wired-uplink feature should be enabled.

Configuring Redundant RAP Ethernet Daisy Chaining Support (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to enable redundant RAP ethernet daisy chaining on a mesh profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile mesh <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile mesh default-mesh-profile	Configures a mesh profile and enters mesh profile configuration mode.
Step 3	daisychain-stp-redundancy Example: Device(config-wireless-mesh-profile)# daisychain-stp-redundancy	Configures daisy chain STP redundancy.

Verifying Daisy Chain Redundancy (CLI)

To verify the ethernet daisy chain summary, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless mesh ethernet daisy-chain summary**

AP Name	BVI MAC	BGN	Backhaul	Ethernet				STP Red
RAP4	683b.78bf.15f0	IOT	Ethernet0	Up	Up	Dn	Dn	Enabled
RAP3	683b.78bf.1634	IOT	Ethernet0	Up	Up	Dn	Dn	Enabled
RAP1	6c8b.d383.b4d4	IOT	Ethernet0	Up	Up	Dn	Dn	Enabled
RAP2	6c8b.d383.b4e8	IOT	Ethernet0	Up	Up	Up	Dn	Enabled

To verify the ethernet daisy chain Bridge Group Name (BGN) details, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless mesh ethernet daisy-chain bgn <IOT>**

AP Name	BVI	MAC	BGN	Backhaul	Ethernet	STP Red
RAP4	683b.78bf.15f0		IOT	Ethernet0	Up Up Dn Dn	Enabled
RAP3	683b.78bf.1634		IOT	Ethernet0	Up Up Dn Dn	Enabled
RAP1	6c8b.d383.b4d4		IOT	Ethernet0	Up Up Dn Dn	Enabled
RAP2	6c8b.d383.b4e8		IOT	Ethernet0	Up Up Up Dn	Enabled

To verify the mesh profile, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless profile mesh detailed default-mesh-profile**

Mesh Profile Name : default-mesh-profile

```

-----
Description : default mesh profile
Bridge Group Name : IOT
Strict match BGN : ENABLED
Amsdu : ENABLED
Background Scan : ENABLED
Channel Change Notification : ENABLED
Backhaul client access : ENABLED
Ethernet Bridging : ENABLED
Ethernet Vlan Transparent : DISABLED
Daisy Chain STP Redundancy : ENABLED
Full Sector DFS : ENABLED
IDS : ENABLED
Multicast Mode : In-Out
Range in feet : 12000
Security Mode : EAP
Convergence Method : Standard
LSC only Authentication : DISABLED
Battery State : ENABLED
Authorization Method : eap_methods
Authentication Method : eap_methods
Backhaul tx rate(802.11bg) : auto
Backhaul tx rate(802.11a) : auto
=====

```




PART **XIV**

VideoStream

- [VideoStream](#), on page 1777



CHAPTER 169

VideoStream

- [Information about Media Stream, on page 1777](#)
- [Prerequisites for Media Stream, on page 1778](#)
- [How to Configure Media Stream, on page 1778](#)
- [Monitoring Media Streams, on page 1783](#)
- [Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream \(GUI\), on page 1784](#)
- [Adding Media Stream \(CLI\), on page 1784](#)
- [Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN \(GUI\), on page 1785](#)
- [Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN \(CLI\), on page 1785](#)
- [Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream \(GUI\), on page 1786](#)
- [Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream \(CLI\), on page 1786](#)
- [Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control \(GUI\), on page 1787](#)
- [Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control \(CLI\), on page 1788](#)
- [Create and Attach Policy-based QoS Profile, on page 1789](#)
- [Viewing Media Stream Information, on page 1795](#)

Information about Media Stream

The IEEE 802.11 wireless multicast delivery mechanism does not provide a reliable way to acknowledge lost or corrupted packets. As a result, if any multicast packet is lost in the air, it is not sent again which may cause an IP multicast stream unviewable.

The Media Stream feature makes the delivery of the IP multicast stream reliable over air, by converting the multicast frame to a unicast frame over the air. Each Media Stream client acknowledges receiving a video IP multicast stream.



Note Support for IPv6 was added from Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.12.1. You can use IPv6 multicast addresses in place of IPv4 multicast addresses to enable media stream on the IPv6 networks.

Prerequisites for Media Stream

- Make sure that the Multicast feature is enabled. We recommend that you configure IP multicast on the controller in multicast-multicast mode.
- Check for the IP address on the client machine. The machine should have an IP address from the respective VLAN.
- Verify that the access points have joined the controllers .

How to Configure Media Stream

Configuring Multicast-Direct Globally for Media Stream (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless multicast Example: Device(config)# <code>wireless multicast</code>	Enables multicast for wireless forwarding.
Step 3	ip igmp snooping Example: Device(config)# <code>ip igmp snooping</code>	Enables IGMP snooping on a per-VLAN basis. If the global setting is disabled, then all the VLANs are treated as disabled, whether they are enabled or not.
Step 4	ip igmp snooping querier Example: Device(config)# <code>ip igmp snooping querier</code>	Enables a snooping querier on an interface when there is no multicast router in the VLAN to generate queries.
Step 5	wireless media-stream multicast-direct Example: (config)# <code>wireless media-stream multicast-direct</code>	Configures the global multicast-direct on the controller.
Step 6	wireless media-stream message Example: (config)# <code>wireless media-stream message ?</code> Email Configure Session Announcement	Configures various message-configuration parameters such as phone, URL, email, and notes. That is, when a media stream is refused (due to bandwidth constraints), a message can be sent to the corresponding user. These

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Email Notes Configure Session Announcement notes URL Configure Session Announcement URL phone Configure Session Announcement Phone number <cr>	parameters configure the messages that are to be sent to the IT support email address, notes (message be displayed explaining why the stream was refused), URL to which the user can be redirected, and the phone number that the user can call about the refused stream.
Step 7	wireless media-stream group name startIp endIp Example: <pre>(config)#wireless media-stream group grp1 231.1.1.1 239.1.1.3 avg-packet-size Configure average packet size default Set a command to its defaults exit Exit sub-mode max-bandwidth Configure maximum expected stream bandwidth in Kbps no Negate a command or set its defaults policy Configure media stream admission policy priority Configure media stream priority, <1:Lowest - 8:Highest> qos Configure over the air QoS class, <'video'> ONLY rrc-evaluation Configure RRC re-evaluation admission violation Configure stream violation policy on periodic re-evaluation</pre>	Configures each media stream and its parameters such as expected multicast destination addresses, stream bandwidth consumption, and stream-priority parameters.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Media Stream for 802.11 Bands (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct	Configures whether MediaStream (multicast to unicast) is allowed for the 802.11 band.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct</pre>	You must disable 802.11 network to enable the MediaStream.
Step 3	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream video-redirect</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz media-stream video-redirect</pre>	Optional. Configures the redirection of unicast video traffic to the best-effort queue.
Step 4	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct admission-besteffort</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct admission-besteffort</pre>	Configures the media stream to be sent through the best-effort queue if that media stream cannot be prioritized due to bandwidth-availability limitations. Run the no form of the command to drop the stream, if the media stream cannot be prioritized due to bandwidth-availability limitations.
Step 5	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct client-maximum <i>value</i></pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct client-max 15</pre>	Configures the maximum number of allowed media streams per individual client. The maximum is 15 and the default is 0. The value of 0 denotes unlimited streams.
Step 6	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct radio-maximum <i>value</i></pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct radio-maximum 20</pre>	Configures maximum number of radio streams. The valid range is from 1 to 20. Default is 0. The value of 0 denotes unlimited streams.
Step 7	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac multimedia max-bandwidth <i>bandwidth</i></pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz cac multimedia max-bandwidth 60</pre>	Configures maximum media (voice + video) bandwidth, in percent. The range is between 5-85%.
Step 8	<pre>ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream multicast-direct min-client-rate <i>dot11_rate</i></pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)#ap dot11 24ghz cac media-stream multicast-direct min_client_rate</pre>	Configures the minimum PHY rate needed for a client to send a media stream as unicast. Clients communicating below this rate will not receive the media stream as a unicast flow. Typically, this PHY rate is equal to or higher than the rate at which multicast frames are sent.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz cac media-stream	Configures Call Admission Control (CAC) parameters for media stream access category.
Step 10	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac multimedia Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz cac multimedia	Configures CAC parameters for media access category: used for voice and video.
Step 11	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac voice Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 5ghz cac voice	Configures CAC parameters for voice access category.
Step 12	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring a WLAN to Stream Video(GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > WLANs > Wireless Networks**.
 - Step 2** Select a **WLAN** to view the **Edit WLAN** window.
 - Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** Check the **Media Stream Multicast-Direct** check box to enable the feature.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a WLAN to Stream Video (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan_name</i> Example: <code>(config) #wlan wlan50</code>	Enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: <code>(config-wlan) #shutdown</code>	Disables the WLAN for configuring its parameters.
Step 4	media-stream multicast-direct Example: <code>(config) #media-stream multicast-direct</code>	Configures the multicast-direct on media stream for the WLAN.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: <code>(config-wlan) #no shutdown</code>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 6	end Example: <code>Device (config) # end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Deleting a Media Stream (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Media Stream**.
- Step 2** Click the **Streams** tab.
- Step 3** Check the checkbox adjacent to the Stream Name you want to delete.
To delete multiple streams, select multiple stream name checkboxes.
- Step 4** Click **Delete**.
- Step 5** Click **Yes** on the confirmation window to delete the VLAN.
-

Deleting a Media Stream (CLI)

Before you begin

The media stream should be enabled and configured for it to be deleted.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no wireless media-stream group <i>media_stream_name</i> Example: Device(config)# no wireless media-stream grp1	Deletes the media stream that bears the name mentioned in the command.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Monitoring Media Streams

Table 123: Commands for monitoring media streams

Commands	Description
show wireless media-stream client detail <i>group name</i>	Displays media stream client details of the particular group.
show wireless media-stream client summary	Displays the media stream information of all the clients.
show wireless media-stream group detail <i>group name</i>	Displays the media stream configuration details of the particular group.
show wireless media-stream group summary	Displays the media stream configuration details of all the groups.
show wireless media-stream message details	Displays the session announcement message details.
show wireless multicast	Displays the multicast-direct configuration state.
show ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz} media-stream rrc	Displays 802.11 media Resource-Reservation-Control configurations.

Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Media Stream**.
- Step 2** In the **General** tab, check the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box.
- Step 3** In the **Session Message Config** section, check the **Session Announcement State** check box to enable the session announcement mechanism. If the session announcement state is enabled, clients are informed each time a controller is not able to serve the multicast direct data to the client.
- Step 4** In the **Session Announcement URL** field, enter the URL where the client can find more information when an error occurs during the multicast media stream transmission.
- Step 5** In the **Session Announcement Email** field, enter the e-mail address of the person who can be contacted.
- Step 6** In the **Session Announcement Phone** field, enter the phone number of the person who can be contacted.
- Step 7** In the **Session Announcement Note** field, enter a reason as to why a particular client cannot be served with a multicast media.
- Step 8** Click **Apply**.
-

Adding Media Stream (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless media-stream group <i>groupName</i> <i>startIpAddr</i> <i>endIpAddr</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless media-stream group group1 224.0.0.0 224.0.0.223	Configures each media stream and its parameters, such as expected multicast destination addresses, stream bandwidth consumption, and stream priority parameters.
Step 2	avg-packet-size <i>packetsize</i> Example: Device(media-stream)# avg-packet-size 100	Configures the average packet size.
Step 3	max-bandwidth <i>bandwidth</i> Example: Device(media-stream)# max-bandwidth 80	Configures the maximum expected stream bandwidth, in Kbps.
Step 4	policy {admit deny } Example:	Configure the media stream admission policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(media-stream)# policy admit</code>	
Step 5	qos video Example: <code>Device(media-stream)# qos video</code>	Configures over-the-air QoS class, as 'video'.
Step 6	violation {drop fallback } Example: <code>Device(media-stream)# violation drop</code>	Configures the violation mode.
Step 7	rrc-evaluation {initial periodic } Example: <code>Device(media-stream)# rrc-evaluation initial</code>	Configure Resource Reservation Control (RRC) re-evaluation admission, which provides initial or periodic admission evaluation. The re-evaluation admission occurs at 2, 4, 8, and so on seconds.
Step 8	priority priority-value Example: <code>Device(media-stream)# priority 6</code>	Sets the priority value. The valid range is from 1-8, with 1 being the lowest.

Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the name of the **WLAN** or click **Add** to create a new one.
 - Step 3** In the **Add/Edit WLAN** window that is displayed, click the **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** Check the **Enabling a Media Stream for each WLAN** check box to enable Media Stream on the WLAN.
 - Step 5** Save the configuration.
-

Enabling a Media Stream per WLAN (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to enable a media stream for each WLAN:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan_name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan5	Enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN for configuring its parameters.
Step 4	media-stream multicast-direct Example: Device(config-wlan)# media-stream multicast-direct	Configures multicast-direct for the WLAN.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Media Stream**.
- Step 2** Check the **Multicast Direct Enable** check box to enable multicast direct globally on the local mode.
- Step 3** In the **Session Message Config** section, enter the values for the following parameters
- Session Announcement URL
 - Session Announcement Email
 - Session Announcement Phone
 - Session Announcement Note
- Step 4** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring the General Parameters for a Media Stream (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure the general parameters for a media stream:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless media-stream message { URL <i>url</i> email <i>email-address</i> phone <i>phone-no</i> notes <i>notes</i> } Example: Device(config)# wireless media-stream message url www.xyz.com	Configures various message configuration parameters, such as phone, URL, email, and notes.
Step 3	wireless media-stream multicast-direct Example: Device(config)# wireless media-stream multicast-direct	Enables multicast direct globally for local mode. Note This configuration will not impact flex and fabric media-stream configurations.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config)# exit	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Media Stream**.
 - Step 2** Check the **Media Stream Admission Control (ACM)** check box to enable multicast direct admission control.
 - Step 3** In the **Maximum Media Stream RF bandwidth (%)** field, enter the percentage of the maximum bandwidth to be allocated for media applications on this radio band. Valid range is from 5 to 85. When the client reaches a specified value, the AP rejects new calls on this radio band.
 - Step 4** In the **Maximum Media Bandwidth (%)** field, enter the bandwidth. Valid range is from 5 to 85%.
 - Step 5** From the **Client Minimum Phy Rate** drop-down list, select the minimum transmission data rate or the rate in kilobits per second at which the client can operate. If the transmission data rate is below the physical rate, either the video will not start or the client may be classified as a bad client. The bad client video can be demoted for better effort QoS or subject to denial.
 - Step 6** In the **Maximum Retry Percent (%)** field, enter the percentage of maximum retries that are allowed. The default value is 80. If it exceeds 80, either the video will not start or the client might be classified as a bad client. The bad client video can be demoted for better effort QoS or subject to denial.

Step 7 Click **Apply**.

Configuring Multicast Direct Admission Control (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure multicast direct admission control:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz shutdown	Disables the 802.11 network.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream video-redirect Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz media-stream video-redirect	Configures the redirection of the unicast video traffic to best-effort queue.
Step 4	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream acm Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cac media-stream acm	Enables admission control on the media-stream access category.
Step 5	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream max-bandwidth <i>bandwidth</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cac media-stream max-bandwidth 65	Configures the maximum media bandwidth, in percent. The range is between 5-85%.
Step 6	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac multimedia max-bandwidth <i>bandwidth</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cac multimedia max-bandwidth 65	Configures the maximum bandwidth allocated to Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) clients for media. The range is between 5-85%.
Step 7	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream multicast-direct min-client-rate <i>dot11Rate</i>	Configures the minimum PHY rate needed for a client to receive media stream as unicast. Clients communicating below this rate will not receive the media stream as a unicast flow.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cac media-stream multicast-direct min-client-rate 800</pre>	Typically, this PHY rate is equal to or higher than the rate at which multicast frames are sent.
Step 8	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} cac media-stream multicast-direct max-retry-percent <i>retryPercent</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz cac media-stream multicast-direct max-retry-percent 50</pre>	Configures CAC parameter maximum retry percent for multicast-direct streams.
Step 9	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct radio-maximum <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct radio-maximum 10</pre>	Configures the maximum number of radio streams. The range is from 1 to 20. Default is 0. Value 0 denotes unlimited streams.
Step 10	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct client-maximum <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct client-maximum 12</pre>	Configures the maximum number of allowed media streams per individual client. The maximum is 15 and the default is 0. Value 0 denotes unlimited streams.
Step 11	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} media-stream multicast-direct admission-besteffort Example: <pre>Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz media-stream multicast-direct admission-besteffort</pre>	Configures the media stream to still be sent through the best effort queue if a media stream cannot be prioritized due to bandwidth availability limitations. Add no in the command to drop the stream if the media stream cannot be prioritized due to bandwidth availability limitations.
Step 12	no ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz 6ghz} shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config)# no ap dot11 24ghz shutdown</pre>	Enables the 802.11 network.

Create and Attach Policy-based QoS Profile

The high-level steps to create and attach policy-based QoS profile are as follows:

1. Create a QoS Profile

2. Create a Service Template
3. Map the Service Template to the Policy Map
4. Map the Policy Map to the Policy Profile

Create a QoS Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Click Configuration > Services > QoS .
Step 2	Click Add to create a new QoS Policy.
Step 3	Enter a Policy Name .
Step 4	Enter a Description for the policy.
Step 5	In the Class Default section, choose a value in the Mark drop-down list.
Step 6	Enter the Police(kbps) value.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Create a QoS Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	policy-map <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# policy-map QoS_Drop_Youtube	Creates a policy map.
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)# description QoS_Drop_Youtube	Adds a description to the policy map.
Step 4	class <i>class-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-pmap)# class QoS_Drop_Youtube1_AVC_UI_CLASS	Creates a policy criteria.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	police cir <i>committ-information-rate</i> Example: Device(config-pmap-c)# police cir 8000	Polices the provided committed information rate.
Step 6	conform-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# conform-action drop	Configures the action when the rate is less than the conform burst.
Step 7	exceed-action drop Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# exceed-action drop	Configures the action when the rate is within the conform and conform plus exceed burst.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-pmap-c-police)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Create a Service Template (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > Local Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Local Policy** page, **Service Template** tab, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Create Service Template** window, enter the following parameters:
- **Service Template Name:** Enter a name for the template.
 - **VLAN ID:** Enter the VLAN ID for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 4094.
 - **Session Timeout (secs):** Sets the timeout duration for the template. Valid range is between 1 and 65535.
 - **Access Control List:** Choose the Access Control List from the drop-down list.
 - **Ingress QoS:** Choose the input QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list
 - **Egress QoS:** Choose the output QoS policy for the client from the drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Create a Service Template (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	service-template <i>template-name</i> Example: Device(config)# service-template qos-template	Configures the service-template or identity policy.
Step 3	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# vlan 87	Specifies VLAN ID.
Step 4	absolute-timer <i>timer</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# absolute-timer 3600	Specifies session timeout value for a service template.
Step 5	service-policy qos input <i>qos-policy</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos input QoS_Drop_Youtube	Configures an input QoS policy for the client.
Step 6	service-policy qos output <i>qos-policy</i> Example: Device(config-service-template)# service-policy qos output QoS_Drop_Youtube	Configures an output QoS policy for the client.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-service-template)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Map the Service Template to the Policy Map (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.

- Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, select the **Policy Profile** to be mapped.
- Step 3** In the **Edit Policy Profile** window, click **Access Policies** tab.
- Step 4** Use the **Local Subscriber Policy Name** drop-down list to select the policy name.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Map the Service Template to the Policy Map (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type subscriber attribute-to-service QoS-Policy_Map-param	Specifies the parameter map type and name.
Step 3	map-index map device-type eq <i>filter-name</i> user-role eq <i>user-name</i> Example: Device(config-parameter-map-filter)# 1 map device-type eq "Android" user-role eq "student"	Specifies the parameter map attribute filter criteria. Multiple filters are used in the example provided here.
Step 4	map-index service-template <i>service-template-name</i> precedence <i>precedence-num</i> Example: Device(config-parameter-map-filter-submode)# 1 service-template Qos_template	Specifies the service template.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-parameter-map-filter-submode)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	policy-map type control subscriber <i>policy-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# policy-map type control subscriber QoS-Policy_Map</pre>	Specifies the policy map type.
Step 8	event identity-update match-all Example: <pre>Device(config-event-control-policymap)# event identity-update match-all</pre>	Specifies the match criteria to the policy map.
Step 9	<i>class-num</i> class always do-until-failure Example: <pre>Device(config-event-control-policymap)# 1 class always do-until-failure</pre>	Applies a class-map with a service-template.
Step 10	<i>action-index</i> map attribute-to-service table <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-event-control-policymap)# 1 map attribute-to-service table QoS-Policy_Map-param</pre>	Applies a parameter map.

Map the Policy Map (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Local Policy > Policy Map tab.
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter a name in the Policy Map Name text field.
Step 4	Click Add to add the matching criteria information.
Step 5	Choose the service template from the Service Template drop-down list.
Step 6	Choose the filters from Device Type , User Role , User Name , OUI and MAC Address drop-down lists.
Step 7	Click Add Criteria
Step 8	Click Apply to Device .
-

Map the Policy Map (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-policy-profile	Configures a wireless policy profile.
Step 3	description <i>profile-policy-description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "test policy profile"	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 4	subscriber-policy-name <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# subscriber-policy-name QoS-Policy_Map	Configures the subscriber policy name.

Viewing Media Stream Information

Use the following **show** commands to view the media stream information.

To view media stream general information and status, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless media-stream multicast-direct state
```

```
Multicast-direct State..... : enabled
Allowed WLANs:
WLAN-Name                               WLAN-ID
-----
zsetup_mc                                1
vwlc-mc_mo                               3
mcuc_test1                               4
mcuc_test2                               5
```

```
Device# show wireless media-stream group summary
```

```
Number of Groups:: 4
```

```
Stream Name      Start IP      End IP      Status
-----
new2             231.2.2.3    231.2.4.4  Enabled
```

my234	234.0.0.0	234.10.10.10	Enabled
uttest2	235.1.1.20	235.1.1.25	Enabled
uttest3	235.1.1.40	235.1.1.200	Enabled

To view the details of a particular media stream, use the **show wireless media-stream client detail *media_stream_name*** command:

Device# **show wireless media-stream group detail uttest2**

```
Media Stream Name      : uttest2
Start IP Address       : 235.1.1.20
End IP Address         : 235.1.1.25
RRC Parameters:
  Avg Packet Size(Bytes) : 1200
  Expected Bandwidth(Kbps) : 1000
  Policy                  : Admitted
  RRC re-evaluation       : Initial
  QoS                     : video
  Status                  : Multicast-direct
  Usage Priority           : 4
  Violation                : Drop
```

To view RRC information for a dot11 band, use the **show ap dot11 {24ghz | 5ghz | 6ghz} mediastream rrc** command:

Device# **show ap dot11 5ghz media-stream rrc**

```
Multicast-direct      : Enabled
Best Effort            : Disabled
Video Re-Direct        : Disabled
Max Allowed Streams Per Radio : Auto
Max Allowed Streams Per Client : 5
Max Media-Stream Bandwidth : 5
Max Voice Bandwidth    : 50
Max Media Bandwidth    : 43
Min PHY Rate (Kbps)    : 6000
Max Retry Percentage    : 5
```

To view session announcement message details, use the **show wireless media-stream message details** command:

Device# **show wireless media-stream message details**

```
URL      :
Email    : abc@cisc
Phone    :
Note     :
State    : Disabled
```

To view the list of clients in the blocked list database, use the **show ip igmp snooping igmpv2-tracking** command:

Device# **show ip igmp snooping igmpv2-tracking**

```
Client to SGV mappings
-----
Client: 10.10.10.215 Port: Cal
Group: 239.255.255.250 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
Group: 234.5.6.7 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
```

```
Group: 234.5.6.8 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
Group: 234.5.6.9 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
```

```
Client: 10.10.101.177 Port: Ca2
Group: 235.1.1.14 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
Group: 235.1.1.16 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
Group: 235.1.1.18 Vlan: 10 Source: 0.0.0.0 blacklisted: no
```

SGV to Client mappings

```
-----
Group: 234.5.6.7 Source: 0.0.0.0 Vlan: 10
Client: 10.10.10.215 Port: Ca1 Blacklisted: no
```

To view wireless client summary, use the **show wireless media-stream client summary** command:

```
Device# show wireless media-stream client summary
```

To view details of a specific wireless media stream, use the **show wireless media-stream client detail** command:

```
Device# show wireless media-stream client detail uttest2
```

```
Media Stream Name      : uttest2
Start IP Address       : 235.1.1.20
End IP Address         : 235.1.1.25
RRC Parameters:
  Avg Packet Size(Bytes) : 1200
  Expected Bandwidth(Kbps) : 1000
  Policy                  : Admitted
  RRC re-evaluation       : Initial
  QoS                     : video
  Status                  : Multicast-direct
  Usage Priority           : 4
  Violation                : Drop
```




PART **XV**

Software-Defined Access Wireless

- [Software-Defined Access Wireless, on page 1801](#)
- [Passive Client, on page 1813](#)
- [Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge, on page 1821](#)



CHAPTER 170

Software-Defined Access Wireless

- [Information about Software-Defined Access Wireless, on page 1801](#)
- [Information About SD-Access Wireless Mesh Inter Fabric Edge Switch Roaming Protection, on page 1804](#)
- [Configuring SD-Access Wireless, on page 1806](#)
- [Verifying SD-Access Wireless, on page 1810](#)

Information about Software-Defined Access Wireless

The Enterprise Fabric provides end-to-end enterprise-wide segmentation, flexible subnet addressing, and controller-based networking with uniform enterprise-wide policy and mobility. It moves the enterprise network from current VLAN-centric architecture to a user group-based enterprise architecture, with flexible Layer 2 extensions within and across sites.

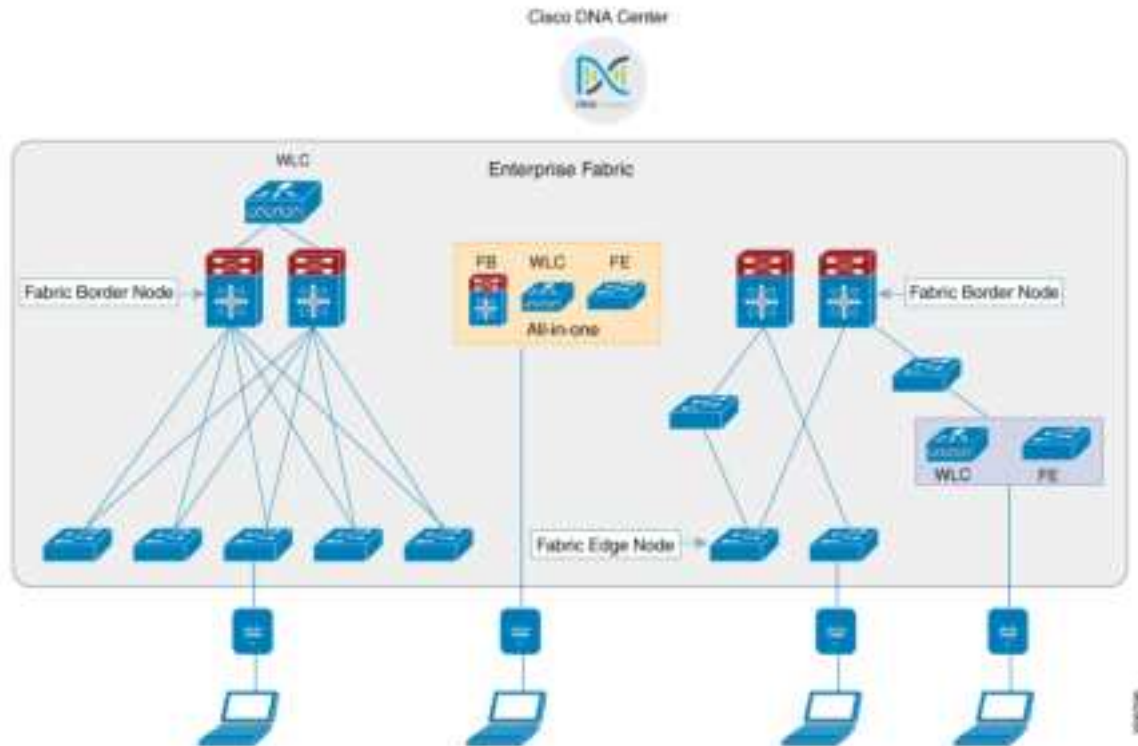
Enterprise fabric is a network topology where traffic is passed through inter-connected switches, while providing the abstraction of a single Layer 2 or Layer 3 device. This provides seamless connectivity, with policy application and enforcement at the edge of the fabric. Fabric uses IP overlay, which makes the network appear as a single virtual entity without using clustering technologies.

The following definitions are used for fabric nodes:

- **Enterprise Fabric:** A network topology where traffic is passed through inter-connected switches, while providing the abstraction of a single Layer 2 or Layer 3 device.
- **Fabric Domain:** An independent operation part of the network. It is administered independent of other fabric domains.
- **End Points:** Hosts or devices that connect to the fabric edge node are known as end points (EPs). They directly connect to the fabric edge node or through a Layer 2 network.

The following figure shows the components of a typical SD-Access Wireless. It consists of Fabric Border Nodes (BN), Fabric Edge Nodes (EN), Wireless Controller, Cisco Catalyst Center, and Host Tracking Database (HDB).

Figure 39: Software-Defined Access Wireless



The figure covers the following deployment topologies:

- **All-in-one Fabric**—When we have all Fabric Edge, Fabric Border, Control-Plane and controller functionality enabled on a Cat 9K switch.
This topology is depicted in the mid part of the figure.
- **Split topology**—When we have Fabric Border, or Control Plane, or controller on a Cat 9K switch with separate Fabric Edge. This topology is depicted in the left-most part of the figure.
- **Co-located Fabric Edge and Controller**—When we have Fabric Edge and controller on a Cat 9K switch. This topology is depicted in the right-most part of the figure.

Cisco Catalyst Center: Is an open, software-driven architecture built on a set of design principles with the objective of configuring and managing Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers.

Control Plane: This database allows the network to determine the location of a device or user. When the EP ID of a host is learnt, other end points can query the database about the location of the host. The flexibility of tracking subnets helps in summarization across domains and improves the scalability of the database.

Fabric Border Node (Proxy Egress Tunnel Router [PxTR or Pitr/PETR] in LISP): These nodes connect traditional Layer 3 networks or different fabric domains to the enterprise fabric domain. If there are multiple fabric domains, these nodes connect a fabric domain to one or more fabric domains, which could be of the same or different type. These nodes are responsible for translation of context from one fabric domain to another. When the encapsulation is the same across different fabric domains, the translation of fabric context is generally 1:1. The fabric control planes of two domains exchange reachability and policy information through this device.

Fabric Edge Nodes (Egress Tunnel Router [ETR] or Ingress Tunnel Router [ITR] in LISP): These nodes are responsible for admitting, encapsulating or decapsulating, and forwarding of traffic from the EPs. They lie at the perimeter of the fabric and are the first points of attachment of the policy. EPs could be directly or indirectly attached to a fabric edge node using an intermediate Layer 2 network that lies outside the fabric domain. Traditional Layer 2 networks, wireless access points, or end hosts are connected to fabric edge nodes.

Wireless Controller: The controller provides AP image and configuration management, client session management and mobility. Additionally, it registers the mac address of wireless clients in the host tracking database at the time of client join, as well as updates the location at the time of client roam.

Access Points: AP applies all the wireless media specific features. For example, radio and SSID policies, webauth punt, peer-to-peer blocking, and so on. It establishes CAPWAP control and data tunnel to controller. It converts 802.11 data traffic from wireless clients to 802.3 and sends it to the access switch with VXLAN encapsulation.

The SDA allows to simplify:

- Addressing in wireless networks
- Mobility in wireless networks
- Guest access and move towards multi-tenancy
- Leverage Sub-net extension (stretched subnet) in wireless network
- Provide consistent wireless policies



Note Role co-location between wireless controller and fabric edge is supported.

Platform Support

Table 124: Supported Platforms for Software-Defined Access Wireless

Platforms	Support
Catalyst 9300	Yes
Catalyst 9400	Yes
Catalyst 9500H	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller for Cloud	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Series Wireless Controller	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Series Wireless Controller	Yes

Table 125: Multi-Instance Support

Multi-instance	Support
Multiple LISP sessions	Yes

Multi-instance	Support
Emulated database support	Yes
Client roaming between WNCd instances	Yes

Table 126: Feature Support

Feature	Support
Inter-WLC roam for IRCM	Only L2 mobility is supported as VLAN is stretched across the fabric.
DNS-IPv4-ACL	• ACLs are enforced at AP. • Controller needs to push the DNS-ACL information to AP.
IPv6 ACL for clients	Yes. Open, 802.11x, WebAuth, PSK WLANs, IPv6 address visibility are also supported.
Location tracking/Hyperlocation	Yes
Multicast Video-Stream (IPv4)	Yes
Smart Licensing	Yes

Table 127: Outdoor Access Points Support

AP	Support
1542	Yes
1560	Yes

Information About SD-Access Wireless Mesh Inter Fabric Edge Switch Roaming Protection

When a Mesh AP (MAP) finds a Root AP (RAP) or other MAP with better adjacency, it roams to that RAP or MAP. However, a MAP cannot roam to another MAP or RAP connected to a different fabric edge switch due to wireless client connectivity loss. The reason being the VXLAN tunnels of the wireless client cannot be moved to another fabric edge switch.

However, if the current MAP link is much worse than the link to RAP or MAP connected to a different fabric edge switch, then the MAP roams and restart its CAPWAP tunnel.

Thus, all the MAPs connected to the MAP restarts the CAPWAP tunnels as well. This allows the wireless clients to connect again and creates wireless client VXLAN tunnels in the fabric edge.



Note The criteria for a MAP roaming to a RAP or MAP connected to a different fabric edge switch are the same as the mesh preferred parent. They are:

- If the current link SNR is worse than 12 dB and there is another better link. (Or)
- If the current link SNR is worse than 20 dB and there is another link with 20% or better SNR.

The mesh daisy chain roaming is not supported in RAP or MAP connected to different fabric edge switches.

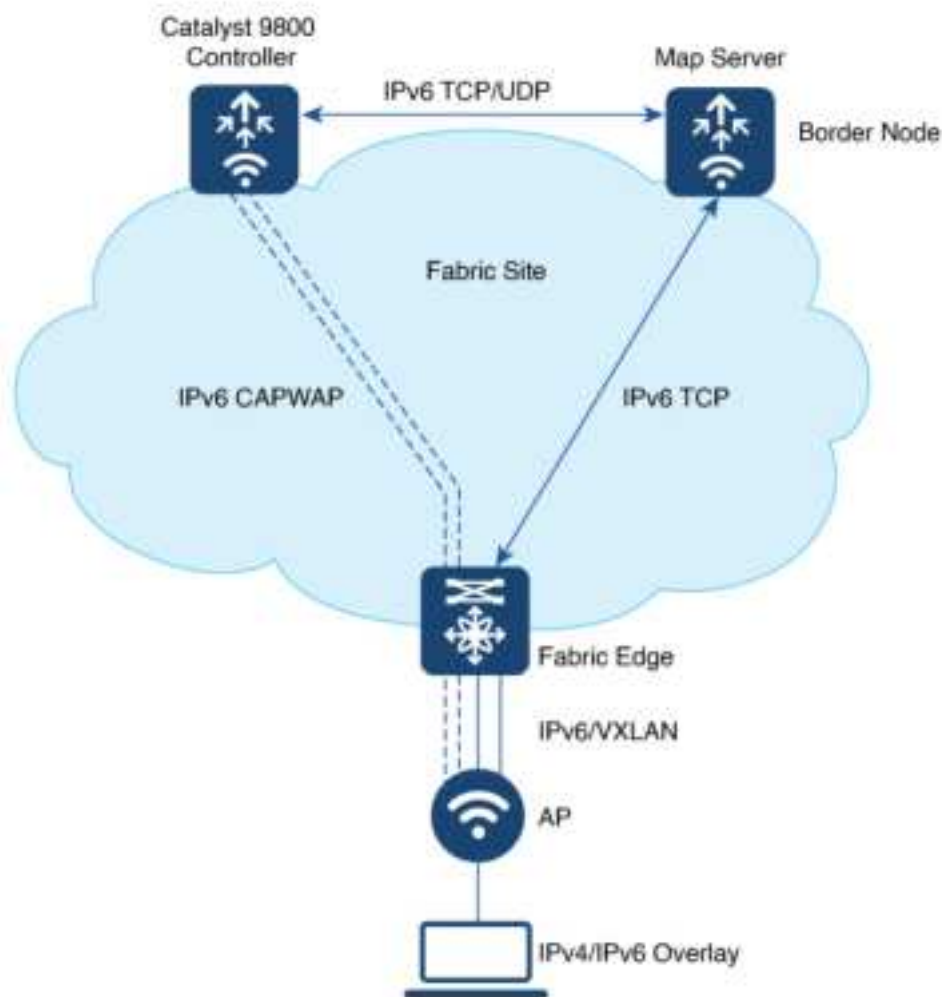
SDA IPv6 Underlay Support

This feature provides a wireless SDA IPv6 underlay support to enable IPv6-based communications in a fabric site. IPv6 is used to establish LISP connections between the controller and map server as well as between the map server and Fabric Edge. IPv6 underlay is also used to construct a VXLAN tunnel between the Fabric Edge and the AP.

The feature implementation is as follows:

- **Catalyst 9800 Controller:**
 - The controller manages IPv6-based LISP sessions to the map server
 - Encodes, decodes, and processes LISP messages through IPv6 TCP/UDP sockets.)
 - Communicates RLOC IPv6 address to the AP for VXLAN creation and client tunnel mapping
- **Fabric Edge:**
 - Processes map notification from map server
 - Creates IPv6 VXLAN tunnel
 - Maps client to IPv6 VXLAN tunnel
 - Encapsulates and decapsulates client traffic into and out of VXLAN tunnel
- **Access Points:**
 - Processes fabric TLV from the controller
 - Creates IPv6 VXLAN tunnel
 - Encapsulates and decapsulates client traffic into and out of VXLAN tunnel

The following figure shows the feature architecture:



Note For AP to join controller using IPv6 address, ensure that you configure the preferred mode in AP profile as IPv6.

Restrictions

Embedded wireless controller (EWC) on Catalyst 9k switches is not supported.

Configuring SD-Access Wireless

- To enable SD-Access wireless globally, you need to run the **wireless fabric** configuration command.
- During SD-Access Wireless provisioning, ensure that L2-VNID value is unique.

Configuring Default Map Server (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Wireless Plus > Fabric > Fabric Configuration**.
- Step 2** In the **Map Server** section, specify the IP address and preshared key details for Server 1.
- Step 3** Optionally, you can specify the IP address and preshared key details for Server 2.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring Default Map Server (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure default map server:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless fabric control-plane <i>map-server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless fabric control-plane map-server-name	Configures the default map server. Here, <i>map-server-name</i> defines a pair of map servers.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address</i> key <i>user_password</i> <i>reenter_password</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-cp)# ip address 200.0.0.0 key user-password user-password	Configures IP address for the default map server.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-cp)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring SD-Access Wireless Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Fabric**.

- Step 2** On the **Fabric** page, click the **Profiles** tab and click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add New Profile** window that is displayed, specify the following parameters:
- Profile name
 - Description
 - L2 VNID; valid range is between 0 and 16777215
 - SGT tag; valid range is between 2 and 65519
- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring SD-Access Wireless Profile (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure SD-Access wireless profile:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile fabric <i>fabric-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile fabric fabric-profile-name	Configures the SD-Access wireless profile parameters.
Step 3	sgt-tag <i>sgt</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# sgt-tag 2	Configures SGT tag. Here, <i>sgt</i> refers to the sgt tag value. The valid range is from 2-65519. The default value is 0.
Step 4	client-l2-vnid <i>client-l2-vnid</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# client-l2-vnid client-l2-vnid	Configures client L2-VNID. Here, <i>client-l2-vnid</i> refers to the client L2-VNID value. The valid range is from 0-16777215.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Map Server in Site Tag (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured a control plane at the time of configuring Wireless Fabric.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags .
Step 2	On the Manage Tags page, click the Site tab.
Step 3	Click the name of the site tag.
Step 4	In the Edit Site Tag window, choose the Fabric control plane name from the Control Plane Name drop-down list.
Step 5	Save the configuration.
-

Configuring Map Server in Site Tag (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure map server in site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site default-site-tag	Configures site tag. Here, <i>site-tag</i> refers to the site tag name.
Step 3	fabric control-plane <i>map-server-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# fabric control-plane map-server-name	Configures fabric control plane details. Here, <i>map-server-name</i> refers to the fabric control plane name associated with the site tag.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Map Server per L2-VNID (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Wireless** > **Fabric**.
- Step 2** On the **Fabric Configuration** page in the **Fabric VNID Mapping** section, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add Client and AP VNID** window, specify a name for the Fabric, L2 VNID value (valid range is from 0 to 4294967295), control plane name.
- Step 4** Save the configuration.
-

Configuring Map Server per L2-VNID (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure map server in site tag:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless fabric name <i>name</i> l2-vnid <i>l2-vnid-value</i> l3-vnid <i>l3-vnid-value</i> ip <i>network-ip</i> <i>subnet-mask</i> control-plane-name <i>control-plane-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless fabric name fabric_name l2-vnid 2 l3-vnid 2 ip 122.220.234.0 255.255.0.0 control-plane-name sample-control-plane	Configures the map server to the VNID map table. • <i>name</i> refers to the fabric name. • <i>l2-vnid-value</i> refers to the L2 VNID value. The valid range is from 0 to 16777215. • <i>L3-vnid-value</i> refers to the L3 VNID value. The valid range is from 0 to 16777215. • <i>control-plane-name</i> refers to the control plane name.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying SD-Access Wireless

You can verify the SD-Access wireless configurations using the following commands:

Table 128: Commands for Verifying SD-Access Wireless

Commands	Description
show wireless fabric summary	Displays the fabric status.
show wireless fabric vnid mapping	Displays all the VNID mapping details.
show wireless profile fabric detailed <i>fabric_profile_name</i>	Displays the details of a given fabric profile name.
show ap name <i>AP_name</i> config general	Displays the general details of the Cisco AP.
show wireless client mac <i>MAC_addr</i> detail	Displays the detailed information for a client by MAC address.
show wireless tag site detailed <i>site_tag</i>	Displays the detailed parameters for a site tag.



Passive Client

- [Information About Passive Clients, on page 1813](#)
- [Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 1814](#)
- [Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile \(CLI\), on page 1814](#)
- [Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN \(GUI\), on page 1815](#)
- [Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN \(CLI\), on page 1815](#)
- [Configuring Passive Client in Fabric Deployment, on page 1816](#)
- [Verifying Passive Client Configuration, on page 1819](#)

Information About Passive Clients

Passive Clients are wireless devices, such as printers and devices configured using a static IP address. Such clients do not transmit any IP information after associating to an AP. That is why, the controller does not learn their IP address unless they perform the DHCP process.

In the controller, the clients just show up in the **Learn IP** state and get timed out because of the DHCP policy-timeout.

The Passive Client feature can be enabled on a per WLAN basis. Enabling this feature will change a few default behaviors in order to better accommodate passive clients. These changes include :

- No client will ever timeout in the IP_LEARN phase. The controller will keep on waiting to learn their IP address. Note that the idle timeout remains active and will delete the client entry after the timeout period expiry, if the client remains silent all along.
- ARP coming from the wired side is broadcasted to all the APs, if the controller does not know the client IP address, to ensure that it reaches the passive client. After this, the controller learns the client IP from the ARP response.



Note In order to save air time, the controller transforms the ARP broadcast coming from the wired side or from other wireless clients and unicasts them to the wireless client it owns. This is only possible after the controller has learned the MAC-IP binding of its wireless client.

When the controller enables ARP broadcast, the controller does not transform the ARP broadcasts into unicasts but only forwards the broadcast, thereby wasting air time for other clients (with a frame that is not acknowledgeable and therefore less reliable). This pushes the passive client to respond to the ARP request and therefore every other client benefits from learning the MAC-IP binding of the wireless client.



Note Passive client feature is not supported on FlexConnect local switching mode.

Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy** page, click **Add** to open the **Add Policy Profile** page.
- Step 2** In the **General** tab, use the slider to enable **Passive Client**.
- Step 3** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Enabling Passive Client on WLAN Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] passive-client Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# [no] passive-client	Enables Passive Client.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN** page, click **VLAN** tab.
 - Step 2** Click **Add** to view the **Create VLAN** window.
 - Step 3** Use the slider to enable **ARP Broadcast**.
 - Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling ARP Broadcast on VLAN (CLI)



Note ARP Broadcast feature is not supported on VLAN groups.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan configuration <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 1	Configures a VLAN or a collection of VLANs and enters VLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] arp broadcast Example: Device(config-vlan)# [no] arp broadcast	Enables ARP broadcast on VLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-vlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Passive Client in Fabric Deployment

You need to enable the following for passive client feature to work:

- ARP broadcast on VLANs
- LISP multicast. For information on LISP multicast, see:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/iproute_lisp/configuration/xr-3s/irl-xe-3s-book/irl-lisp-multicast.html

For information on LISP (Locator ID Separation Protocol), see:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/iproute_lisp/configuration/xr-3s/irl-xe-3s-book/irl-cfg-lisp.html

Enabling Broadcast Underlay on VLAN



Note You can perform the following configuration tasks from Fabric Edge Node only and not from your controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: FabricEdge# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	router lisp Example: FabricEdge(config)# router lisp	Enters LISP configuration mode.
Step 3	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 3	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services. Configurations under this instance-id are applicable to all services underneath it.
Step 4	service ipv4 Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance)# service ipv4	Enables Layer 3 network services for the IPv4 address family and enters the service submode.
Step 5	database-mapping <i>eid locator-set RLOC name</i> Example:	Configures EID to RLOC mapping relationship.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-dynamic-eid)# database-mapping 66.66.66.64/32 locator-set rloc1</code>	
Step 6	map-cache destination-eid map-request Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# map-cache 0.0.0.0/0 map-request</code>	Generates a static map request for the destination EID.
Step 7	exit-service-ipv4 Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# exit-service-ipv4</code>	Exits service submode.
Step 8	exit-instance-id Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance)# exit-instance-id</code>	Exits instance submode.
Step 9	instance-id instance Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 101</code>	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.
Step 10	service ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance)# service ethernet</code>	Enables Layer 2 network services and enters service submode.
Step 11	eid-table vlan vlan-number Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# eid-table vlan 101</code>	Associates the LISP instance-id configured earlier with a VLAN through which the endpoint identifier address space is reachable.
Step 12	broadcast-underlay multicast-group Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# broadcast-underlay 239.0.0.1</code>	Specifies the multicast group used by the underlay to carry the overlay Layer 2 broadcast traffic.
Step 13	exit-service-ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# exit-service-ethernet</code>	Exits service sub mode.
Step 14	exit-instance-id Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance)# exit-instance-id</code>	Exits instance sub mode.

Enabling ARP Flooding



Note You can perform the following configuration tasks from Fabric Edge Node only and not from your controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: FabricEdge# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	router lisp Example: FabricEdge(config)# router lisp	Enters LISP configuration mode.
Step 3	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 3	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services. Configurations under this instance-id are applicable to all services underneath it.
Step 4	service ipv4 Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance)# service ipv4	Enables Layer 3 network services for the IPv4 address family and enters the service submode.
Step 5	database-mapping <i>eid locator-set RLOC name</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-dynamic-eid)# database-mapping 66.66.66.64/32 locator-set rloc1	Configures EID to RLOC mapping relationship.
Step 6	map-cache <i>destination-eid map-request</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# map-cache 0.0.0.0/0 map-request	Generates a static map request for the destination EID.
Step 7	exit-service-ipv4 Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service)# exit-service-ipv4	Exits service submode.
Step 8	exit-instance-id Example:	Exits instance submode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance) # exit-instance-id</code>	
Step 9	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp) # instance-id 101</code>	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.
Step 10	service ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance) # service ethernet</code>	Enables Layer 2 network services and enters service submode.
Step 11	eid-table vlan <i>vlan-number</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service) # eid-table vlan 101</code>	Associates the LISP instance-id configured earlier with a VLAN through which the endpoint identifier address space is reachable.
Step 12	flood arp-nd Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service) # flood arp-nd</code>	Enables ARP flooding.
Step 13	database-mapping mac locator-set <i>RLOC name</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service) # database-mapping mac locator-set rloc1</code>	Configures EID to RLOC mapping relationship.
Step 14	exit-service-ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance-service) # exit-service-ethernet</code>	Exits service sub mode.
Step 15	exit-instance-id Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-instance) # exit-instance-id</code>	Exits instance sub mode.

Verifying Passive Client Configuration

To verify the status of the Passive Client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed sample-profile-policy
```

```
Policy Profile Name      : sample-profile-policy
Description              : sample-policy
Status                  : ENABLED
```

```
VLAN : 20
Client count : 0
Passive Client : ENABLED <-----
WLAN Switching Policy
  Central Switching : ENABLED
  Central Authentication : ENABLED
  Central DHCP : DISABLED
  Override DNS : DISABLED
  Override NAT PAT : DISABLED
  Central Assoc : DISABLED
.
.
.
```

To verify VLANs that have ARP broadcast enabled, use the following command:

```
Device# show platform software arp broadcast
```

```
Arp broadcast is enabled on vlans:
20
```



CHAPTER 172

Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge

- [Introduction to Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge, on page 1821](#)
- [Configuring a Fabric Profile \(CLI\), on page 1821](#)
- [Configuring a Policy Profile \(CLI\) , on page 1822](#)
- [Configuring a Site Tag \(CLI\), on page 1823](#)
- [Configuring a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 1824](#)
- [Configuring a Policy Tag \(CLI\), on page 1824](#)
- [Configuring an AP Profile, on page 1825](#)
- [Configuring Map Server and AP Subnet \(CLI\), on page 1825](#)
- [Configuring Fabric on FiaB Node, on page 1826](#)
- [Configuring a Fabric Edge Node, on page 1832](#)
- [Verifying Fabric Configuration, on page 1839](#)

Introduction to Fabric in a Box with External Fabric Edge

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, the Fabric in a Box (FiaB) topology supports external fabric edge nodes. In a fabric-enabled wireless environment using FiaB (border node, control plane, fabric edge, and wireless controller in the same box), you can expand the network by adding external fabric edge nodes. The external fabric edge helps to increase the port density and extend the wireless reach by adding more APs. The APs and clients can exist on both the FiaB and the external fabric edge nodes. Also, the clients can roam between the APs on the FiaB and the external fabric edge nodes.

Configuring a Fabric Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile fabric <i>fabric-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile fabric test-fabric-profile	Configures the wireless fabric profile parameters.
Step 3	client-l2-vnid <i>client-l2-vnid</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# client-l2-vnid 8189	Configures client L2-VNID. Here, <i>client-l2-vnid</i> refers to the client L2-VNID value. The valid range is from 0 to 16777215.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# description test-fabric-profile	Adds a description for the fabric profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-policy-profile	Configures wireless policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode. Note In Fabric deployments, local mode, local authentication, and local association are not supported.
Step 3	no central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central dhcp	Configures local DHCP mode, where the DHCP is performed in an AP.
Step 4	no central switching Example:	Configures a WLAN for local switching.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# no central switching	
Step 5	fabric <i>fabric-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# fabric test-fabric-profile	Applies the fabric profile.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-wireless-fabric)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a Site Tag (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag site <i>site-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag site default-site-tag-fabric	Configures site tag and enters site tag configuration mode.
Step 3	ap-profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# ap-profile default-ap-profile-fabric	Assigns an AP profile to the wireless site.
Step 4	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-site-tag)# description fabric-site	Adds a description to the AP profile.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring a WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan test-wlan 1 test-wlan	Configures a WLAN and enters WLAN configuration submenu.
Step 3	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy policy-tag-name Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy test-policy-tag	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan wlan-name policy profile-policy-name Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan test-wlan policy test-policy-profile	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-site-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring an AP Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile test-ap-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	ap <i>ap-ether-mac</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# ap 006b.f126.036e	Enters AP configuration mode.
Step 4	policy-tag <i>policy-tag</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# policy-tag test-policy-tag	Specifies the policy tag that is to be attached to the AP.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Map Server and AP Subnet (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless fabric Example: Device(config)# wireless fabric	Enables SD-Access wireless globally.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	wireless fabric name <i>name</i> l2-vnid <i>l2-vnid-value</i> l3-vnid <i>l3-vnid-value</i> ip <i>network-ip</i> <i>subnet-mask</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric name 40_40_0_0-INFRA_VN l2-vnid 8188 l3-vnid 4097 ip 40.40.0.0 255.255.0.0</pre>	Configures AP subnet Layer 2 and Layer 3 VNIDs.
Step 4	wireless fabric name <i>name</i> l2-vnid <i>l2-vnid-value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric name 41_41_0_0-DEFAULT_VN l2-vnid 8189</pre>	Defines client Layer 2 VNID AAA override.
Step 5	wireless fabric control-plane <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless fabric control-plane default-control-plane</pre>	Configures the control plane name.
Step 6	ip address <i>ip-address</i> key <i>shared-key</i> Example: <pre>Device((config-wireless-cp)# ip address 5.5.5.5 key 0 3a18df</pre>	Configures the map server IP address and authentication key shared with the map server.
Step 7	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Fabric on FiaB Node

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>FiaB# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	router lisp Example: <pre>FiaB(config)# router lisp</pre>	Enters LISP configuration mode.
Step 3	locator-table default Example:	Associates a default Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) table through which the routing locator address space is reachable to a

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# locator-table default</code>	router Locator ID Separation Protocol (LISP) instantiation.
Step 4	locator-set <i>locator-set-name</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# locator-set WLC</code>	Specifies a named locator set and enters LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 5	<i>ip-address</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# 5.5.5.5</code>	Specifies an IP address of loopback or other egress tunnel router (ETR) interface.
Step 6	exit-locator-set Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# exit-locator-set</code>	Exits LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 7	locator-set rloc_loopback Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# locator-set rloc_loopback</code>	Specifies an existing locator set and enters LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 8	ipv4-interface <i>interface</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# IPv4-interface Loopback0</code>	Configures a locator address by creating a locator entry.
Step 9	auto-discover-rlocs Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# auto-discover-rlocs</code>	Configures the ETR to auto discover the locators registered by other xTRs. (Ingress tunnel router (ITR) and an ETR are known as an xTR.)
Step 10	exit-locator-set Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# exit-locator-set</code>	Exits LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 11	service ipv4 Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# service ipv4</code>	Enables Layer 3 network services for the IPv4 address family and enters service submode.
Step 12	encapsulation vxlan Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# encapsulation vxlan</code>	Configures VXLAN as encapsulation type for data packets.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 13	itr map-resolver <i>map-resolver-address</i> Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# itr map-resolver 5.5.5.5	Configures map resolver address for sending map requests.
Step 14	etr map-server <i>map-server-address key</i> <i>key-type authentication-key</i> Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# etr map-server 5.5.5.5 key 7 #####	Configures the map server for ETR registration.
Step 15	etr Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# etr	Configures a LISP ETR.
Step 16	sgt Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# sgt	Enables security group tag propagation in LISP-encapsulated traffic.
Step 17	no map-cache away-eids send-map-request Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# no map-cache away-eids send-map-request	Removes the address family-specific map cache configuration.
Step 18	proxy-itr <i>ip-address</i> Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# proxy-itr 5.5.5.5	Enables the Proxy Ingress Tunnel Router (PITR) functionality and specifies the address to use when LISP encapsulating packets to LISP sites.
Step 19	map-server Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# map-server	Configures a LISP map server.
Step 20	map-resolver Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# map-resolver	Configures a LISP map resolver.
Step 21	map-cache away-eids send-map-request Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# map-cache 40.40.0.0/16 send-map-request	Exports table entries into the map cache, with the action set to send-map-request.
Step 22	route-export site-registrations Example:	Exports LISP site registrations to the routing information base (RIB).

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# route-export site-registrations</code>	
Step 23	distance site-registrations <i>num</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# distance site-registrations 250</code>	Configures LISP installed routes of type site registrations.
Step 24	map-cache site-registration Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# map-cache site-registration</code>	Installs the map cache to a map request for site registrations.
Step 25	exit-service-ipv4 Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# exit-service-ipv4</code>	Exits LISP service-ipv4 configuration mode.
Step 26	service ethernet Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# service ethernet</code>	Selects service type as Ethernet and enters service submode.
Step 27	database-mapping limit dynamic <i>limit</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# database-mapping limit dynamic 5000</code>	Configures the maximum number of dynamic local endpoint identifier (EID) prefix database entries.
Step 28	itr map-resolver <i>map-resolver-address</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# itr map-resolver 5.5.5.5</code>	Configures the map-resolver address for sending map requests.
Step 29	itr Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# itr</code>	Enables the LISP ITR functionality.
Step 30	etr map-server <i>map-server-address</i> key <i>key-type authentication-key</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# etr map-server 5.5.5.5 key 7 1234</code>	Configures a map server for ETR registration.
Step 31	etr Example: <code>FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# etr</code>	Enables the LISP ETR functionality.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 32	map-server Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# map-server	Enables the LISP map server functionality.
Step 33	map-resolver Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# map-resolver	Enables the LISP map resolver functionality.
Step 34	exit-service-ethernet Example: FiaB(config-lisp-srv-eth)# exit-service-ethernet	Exits LISP service-ethernet configuration mode.
Step 35	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 101	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.
Step 36	remote-rloc-probe on-route-change Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst)# remote-rloc-probe on-route-change	Configures the parameters for probing of remote routing locators (RLOCs).
Step 37	dynamic-eid <i>dynamic-eid-name</i> Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst)# dynamic-eid 40_40_0_0-INFRA_VN-IPV4	Configures a dynamic EID and enters dynamic EID configuration mode.
Step 38	database-mapping <i>eid locator-set</i> rloc_loopback Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp-dynamic-eid)# database-mapping 40.40.0.0/16 locator-set rloc_loopback	Configures EID prefix and locator-set for dynamic EID.
Step 39	exit-dynamic-id Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp-dynamic-eid)# exit-dynamic-eid	Exits LISP dynamic-eid configuration mode.
Step 40	exit-instance-id Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp-instance)# exit-instance-id	Exits LISP instance-id configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 41	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 101	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.
Step 42	remote-rloc-probe on-route-change Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst)# remote-rloc-probe on-route-change	Configures parameters for probing remote RLOCs.
Step 43	service ethernet Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst)# service ethernet	Enables Layer 2 network services and enters service submenu.
Step 44	eid-table vlan <i>vlan-number</i> Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# eid-table vlan 101	Binds an EID table to VLAN.
Step 45	database-mapping mac locator-set rloc_loopbac Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# database-mapping mac locator-set rloc_loopbac	Configures an address family-specific local EID prefixes database.
Step 46	exit-service-ethernet Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# exit-service-ethernet	Exits LISP service-ethernet configuration mode.
Step 47	exit-instance-id Example: FiaB(config-lisp-inst)# exit-instance-id	Exits LISP instance-id configuration mode.
Step 48	map-server session passive-open <i>server</i> Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp)# map-server session passive-open WLC	Configures a map server with open passive TCP sockets to listen for incoming connections.
Step 49	site <i>site-name</i> Example: FiaB(config-router-lisp)# site site_uci	Configures a LISP site on a map server.
Step 50	description <i>map-server-description</i> Example:	Specifies a description text for the LISP site.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-site)# description map-server configured from Cisco DNA-Center</code>	
Step 51	authentication-key <i>key</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-site)# authentication-key 7 #####</code>	Configures the authentication key used by the LISP site.
Step 52	eid-record instance-id <i>instance-id address</i> accept-more-specifics Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-site)# eid-record instance-id 4097 0.0.0.0/0 accept-more-specifics</code>	Specifies that any EID prefix that is more specific than the EID prefix configured is accepted and tracked.
Step 53	eid-record instance-id <i>instance-id any-mac</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-site)# eid-record instance-id 8188 any-mac</code>	Accepts registrations, if any, for Layer 2 EID records.
Step 54	exit-site Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp-site)# exit-site</code>	Exits LISP site configuration mode.
Step 55	ipv4 locator reachability exclude-default Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# ipv4 locator reachability exclude-default</code>	Configures the IPv4 locator address of the LISP.
Step 56	ipv4 source-locator <i>interface-name</i> Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# ipv4 source-locator Loopback0</code>	Configures the IPv4 source locator address of the interface.
Step 57	exit-router-lisp Example: <code>FiaB(config-router-lisp)# exit-router-lisp</code>	Exits LISP router-lisp configuration mode.

Configuring a Fabric Edge Node



Note You can perform the following configuration tasks only from Fabric Edge Node, and not from your controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: FabricEdge# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	router lisp Example: FabricEdge(config)# router lisp	Enters LISP configuration mode.
Step 3	locator-table default Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# locator-table default	Associates a default VRF table through which the routing locator address space is reachable to a router LISP instantiation.
Step 4	locator-set rloc_loopback Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# locator-set rloc_loopback	Specifies a named locator set and enters LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 5	ipv4-interface interface-num priority priority weight weight Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# IPv4-interface Loopback 0 priority 10 weight 10	Configures the IPv4 address of the interface as locator.
Step 6	exit-locator-set Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# exit-locator-set	Exits LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 7	exit-router-lisp Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# exit-router-lisp	Exits LISP router-lisp configuration mode.
Step 8	interface vlan interface-num Example: FabricEdge(config)# interface Vlan 2045	Configures an interface.
Step 9	description description Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# description Configured from Cisco DNA-Center	Specifies a description text for the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	mac-address <i>mac-address</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# mac-address 0000.0c9f.f85c	Sets an interface MAC address manually.
Step 11	ip address <i>ip-address mask</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.252	Configures an IP address for the interface.
Step 12	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# ip helper-address 9.9.9.9	Specifies a destination address for UDP broadcasts.
Step 13	no ip redirects Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# no ip redirects	Disables sending of ICMP redirect messages.
Step 14	ip route-cache same-interface Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# ip route-cache same-interface	Enables fast-switching cache for outgoing packets on the same interface.
Step 15	no lisp mobility liveness test Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# no lisp mobility liveness test	Removes liveness test on dynamic EID discovered on this interface.
Step 16	lisp mobility <i>dynamic-eid-name</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# lisp mobility 40_40_0_0-INFRA_VN-IPV4	Allows EID mobility on the interface.
Step 17	exit Example: FabricEdge(config-if)# exit	Exits from interface configuration mode.
Step 18	router lisp Example: FabricEdge(config)# router lisp	Enters LISP configuration mode.
Step 19	locator-set <i>locator-set-name</i> Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# locator-set rloc_824ecb7	Specifies a locator set and enters LISP locator-set configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 20	exit-locator-set Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-locator-set)# exit-locator-set</pre>	Exits LISP locator-set configuration mode.
Step 21	service ipv4 Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# service ipv4</pre>	Enables Layer 3 network services for the IPv4 address family and enters service submode.
Step 22	use-petr ip-address Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# use-petr 5.5.5.5</pre>	Configures the loopback IP address of the Proxy Egress Tunnel Router (PETR).
Step 23	encapsulation vxlan Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# encapsulation vxlan</pre>	Selects the encapsulation type as VXLAN for data packets.
Step 24	itr map-resolver map-resolver-address Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# itr map-resolver 5.5.5.5</pre>	Configures the map resolver address for sending map requests.
Step 25	etr map-server map-server-address key key-type authentication-key Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# etr map-server 5.5.5.5 key 7 #####</pre>	Configures the map server for ETR registration.
Step 26	etr map-server map-server-address proxy-reply authentication-key Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# etr map-server 5.5.5.5 proxy-reply</pre>	Configures the locator address of the LISP map server and the authentication key that this router, acting as a LISP ETR, will use to register with the LISP mapping system.
Step 27	etr Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# etr</pre>	Configures a LISP Egress Tunnel Router (ETR).
Step 28	sgt Example: <pre>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# sgt</pre>	Enable security group tag propagation in LISP encapsulated traffic.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 29	no map-cache away-eids send-map-request Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# no map-cache away-eids send-map-request	Removes the address family-specific map cache configuration.
Step 30	proxy-itr ip-address Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# proxy-itr 5.5.5.5	Enables the Proxy Ingress Tunnel Router (PITR) functionality and specifies the address to use when LISP encapsulating packets to LISP sites.
Step 31	exit-service-ipv4 Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# exit-service-ipv4	Exits LISP service-ipv4 configuration mode.
Step 32	service ethernet Example: FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# service ethernet	Selects the service type as Ethernet.
Step 33	itr map-resolver map-resolver-address Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-eth)# itr map-resolver 5.5.5.5	Configures the map-resolver address for sending map requests.
Step 34	itr Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-eth)# itr	Enables the LISP ITR functionality.
Step 35	etr map-server map-server-address key key-type authentication-key Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-eth)# etr map-server 5.5.5.5 key 7 1234	Configures the map server for ETR registration.
Step 36	etr Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-eth)# etr	Enables the LISP ETR functionality.
Step 37	exit-service-ethernet Example: FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-eth)# exit-service-ethernet	Exits LISP service-ethernet configuration mode.
Step 38	instance-id instance Example:	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp) # instance-id 101</code>	
Step 39	remote-rloc-probe on-route-change Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst) # remote-rloc-probe on-route-change</code>	Configures the parameters for probing remote Routing locators (RLOCs).
Step 40	dynamic-eid <i>dynamic-eid-name</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst) # dynamic-eid 40_40_0_0-INFRA_VN-IPV4</code>	Configures a dynamic EID and enters dynamic EID configuration mode.
Step 41	database-mapping <i>eid</i> locator-set rloc_loopback Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-dynamic-eid) # database-mapping 40.40.0.0/16 locator-set rloc_loopback</code>	Configures the EID prefix and locator set for the dynamic EID.
Step 42	exit-dynamic-id Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp-dynamic-eid) # exit-instance-id</code>	Exits dynamic instance submenu.
Step 43	service ipv4 Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst) # service ipv4</code>	Selects service type as IPv4.
Step 44	eid-table default Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst-srv-ipv4) # eid-table default</code>	Binds an EID table.
Step 45	exit-service-ipv4 Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst-srv-ipv4) # exit-service-ipv4</code>	Exits LISP service-ipv4 configuration mode.
Step 46	exit-instance-id Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst) # exit-instance-id</code>	Exits LISP instance-id configuration mode.
Step 47	service ipv4 Example:	Selects service type as IPv4.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# service ipv4</code>	
Step 48	map-cache away-eids map-request Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# map-cache 40.40.0.0/16 map-request</code>	Exports away table entries into the map cache, with the action set to send-map-request.
Step 49	exit-service-ipv4 Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-srv-ipv4)# exit-service-ipv4</code>	Exits LISP service-ipv4 configuration mode.
Step 50	instance-id <i>instance</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# instance-id 8188</code>	Creates a LISP EID instance to group multiple services.
Step 51	remote-rloc-probe on-route-change Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst)# remote-rloc-probe on-route-change</code>	Configures parameters for probing remote RLOCs.
Step 52	service ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst)# service ethernet</code>	Enables Layer 2 network services and enters service submode.
Step 53	eid-table vlan <i>vlan-number</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# eid-table vlan 101</code>	Binds an EID table to VLAN.
Step 54	database-mapping maclocator-set rloc_loopbac Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# database-mapping mac locator-set rloc_loopbac</code>	Configures address family-specific local EID prefixes database.
Step 55	exit-service-ethernet Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst-srv-eth)# exit-service-ethernet</code>	Exits LISP service-ethernet configuration mode.
Step 56	exit-instance-id Example:	Exits from LISP instance-id configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>FabricEdge(config-lisp-inst)# exit-instance-id</code>	
Step 57	ipv4 locator reachability minimum-mask-length <i>length</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# ipv4 locator reachability minimum-mask-length 32</code>	Configures the IPv4 locator address of the LISP.
Step 58	ipv4 source-locator <i>interface-name</i> Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# ipv4 source-locator Loopback0</code>	Configures the IPv4 source locator address of the interface.
Step 59	exit-router-lisp Example: <code>FabricEdge(config-router-lisp)# exit-router-lisp</code>	Exits LISP router-lisp configuration mode.

Verifying Fabric Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the fabric configuration.

To verify the LISP configuration on a device, use the following command:

```
FabricEdge# show running-config | section router lisp
```

```
router lisp
 locator-table default
 locator-set default
  exit-locator-set
 !
 locator-set rloc_loopback
  IPv4-interface Loopback0 priority 10 weight 10
  exit-locator-set
 !
 locator default-set rloc_loopback
 service ipv4
  encapsulation vxlan
  itr map-resolver 21.21.21.21
  itr
  etr map-server 21.21.21.21 key tasman
  etr map-server 21.21.21.21 proxy-reply
  etr
  use-petr 21.21.21.21 priority 1 weight 100
  exit-service-ipv4
 !
 service ethernet
  itr map-resolver 5.5.5.5
  itr map-resolver 21.21.21.21
  itr
  etr map-server 21.21.21.21 key tasman
  etr map-server 21.21.21.21 proxy-reply
```

```

etr
exit-service-ethernet
!
instance-id 0
loc-reach-algorithm lsb-reports ignore
dynamic-eid eid_10_56_25
  database-mapping 10.56.25.0/24 locator-set rloc_loopback
exit-dynamic-eid
!
service ipv4
  eid-table default
  database-mapping 26.26.26.26/32 locator-set rloc_loopback
exit-service-ipv4
!
exit-instance-id
!
instance-id 1
service ethernet
  eid-table vlan 25
  flood arp-nd
  database-mapping mac locator-set rloc_loopback
exit-service-ethernet
!
exit-instance-id
!
instance-id 101
service ipv4
  exit-service-ipv4
!
exit-instance-id
!
instance-id 8188
exit-instance-id
!
loc-reach-algorithm lsb-reports ignore
exit-router-lisp

```

To verify the operational status of LISP as configured on a device, use the following command:

FabricEdge# **show ip lisp**

Information applicable to all EID instances:

```

Router-lisp ID:                                0
Locator table:                                default
Ingress Tunnel Router (ITR):                   enabled
Egress Tunnel Router (ETR):                   enabled
Proxy-ITR Router (PITR):                      disabled
Proxy-ETR Router (PETR):                     disabled
NAT-traversal Router (NAT-RTR):               disabled
Mobility First-Hop Router:                   disabled
Map Server (MS):                             disabled
Map Resolver (MR):                           disabled
Mr-use-petr:                                 disabled
Delegated Database Tree (DDT):                disabled
Publication-Subscription:                    enabled
  Publisher(s):                               *** NOT FOUND ***
ITR Map-Resolver(s):                         21.21.21.21
ETR Map-Server(s):                          21.21.21.21
xTR-ID:                                       0xD89893A6-0x98749B2C-0x89810431-0x92F33C9C
site-ID:                                     unspecified
ITR local RLOC (last resort):                 *** NOT FOUND ***
ITR use proxy ETR RLOC(Encap IID):            21.21.21.21
ITR Solicit Map Request (SMR):               accept and process
  Max SMRs per map-cache entry:              8 more specifics

```

```

Multiple SMR suppression time:      20 secs
ETR accept mapping data:            disabled, verify disabled
ETR map-cache TTL:                  1d00h
Locator Status Algorithms:
  RLOC-probe algorithm:             disabled
  RLOC-probe on route change:       N/A (periodic probing disabled)
  RLOC-probe on member change:      disabled
  LSB reports:                      ignore
  IPv4 RLOC minimum mask length:    /0
  IPv6 RLOC minimum mask length:    /0
Map-cache:
  Map-cache limit:                  32768
  Map-cache activity check period:  60 secs
  Persistent map-cache:             disabled
Source locator configuration:
  GigabitEthernet1/0/1: 24.24.24.24 (Loopback0)
  Vlan25: 24.24.24.24 (Loopback0)
Database:
  Dynamic database mapping limit:    25000

```

To verify the operational status of the map cache on a device configured as an ITR or PITR, use the following command:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id iid ipv4 map-cache
```

```

LISP IPv4 Mapping Cache for EID-table default (IID 0), 5 entries

0.0.0.0/0, uptime: 2w5d, expires: never, via static-send-map-request
  Encapsulating to proxy ETR

10.56.25.0/24, uptime: 2w0d, expires: never, via dynamic-EID, send-map-request
  Encapsulating to proxy ETR

10.56.25.25/32, uptime: 2w5d, expires: 23:10:06, via map-reply, complete
  Locator      Uptime    State  Pri/Wgt    Encap-IID
  21.21.21.21  2w5d      up     0/0        -

22.0.0.0/8, uptime: 2w5d, expires: 00:04:54, via map-reply, forward-native
  Encapsulating to proxy ETR

26.26.26.26/32, uptime: 09:48:33, expires: 14:11:26, via map-reply, self, complete
  Locator      Uptime    State  Pri/Wgt    Encap-IID
  24.24.24.24  09:48:33  up, self  50/50      -

```

To verify the operational status of the database mapping on a device configured as an ETR, use the following command:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id iid ipv4 database
```

```

LISP ETR IPv4 Mapping Database for EID-table default (IID 0), LSBs: 0x1
Entries total 3, no-route 0, inactive 0

10.56.25.27/32, dynamic-eid eid_10_56_25, skip reg, inherited from default locator-set rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:25:11, Last-change: 00:25:11
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator      Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24  10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable

10.56.25.67/32, dynamic-eid eid_10_56_25, inherited from default locator-set rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:24:47, Last-change: 00:24:47
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator      Pri/Wgt  Source      State

```

```

24.24.24.24 10/10 cfg-intf site-self, reachable

26.26.26.26/32, locator-set rloc_loopback
Uptime: 2w5d, Last-change: 00:50:36
Domain-ID: unset
Locator      Pri/Wgt Source      State
24.24.24.24 10/10 cfg-intf site-self, reachable

```

To verify the configured LISP sites on a LISP map server, use the following command:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id iid ipv4 server
```

```

LISP Site Registration Information
* = Some locators are down or unreachable
# = Some registrations are sourced by reliable transport

Site Name      Last      Up      Who Last      Inst      EID Prefix
Register       Registered ID
eca            never     no      --           0         10.56.25.0/24
              04:52:53 yes#    21.21.21.21:40875 0         10.56.25.25/32
              04:07:09 yes#    27.27.27.27:24949 0         10.56.25.64/32
              03:21:16 yes#    24.24.24.24:23672 0         10.56.25.67/32
              04:52:53 yes#    21.21.21.21:40875 0         23.23.23.23/32
              03:47:04 yes#    24.24.24.24:23672 0         26.26.26.26/32
              2w0d      yes#    27.27.27.27:24949 0         29.29.29.29/32
site_uci       never     no      --           4097      0.0.0.0/0

```

To verify the operational status of LISP sites, use the following command in FiaB node:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id 1 ethernet server
```

```

=====
Output for router lisp 0 instance-id 1
=====
LISP Site Registration Information

=====
Output for router lisp 0 instance-id 1
=====
LISP Site Registration Information
* = Some locators are down or unreachable
# = Some registrations are sourced by reliable transport

Site Name      Last      Up      Who Last      Inst      EID Prefix
Register       Registered ID
eca            never     no      --           1         any-mac
              04:10:37 yes#    27.27.27.27:24949 1         00b0.e19c.2578/48
              04:09:20 yes#    22.22.22.22:64083 1         00b0.e19c.fc40/48
              03:24:52 yes#    24.24.24.24:23672 1         dcce.c130.0b70/48
              03:23:39 yes#    22.22.22.22:64083 1         dcce.c130.9820/48

```

To verify the operational status of LISP sites, use the following command in FiaB node:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id 0 ipv4 server
```

```

LISP Site Registration Information
* = Some locators are down or unreachable
# = Some registrations are sourced by reliable transport

Site Name      Last      Up      Who Last      Inst      EID Prefix
Register       Registered ID

```

eca	never	no	--	0	10.56.25.0/24
	6d18h	yes#	21.21.21.21:40875	0	10.56.25.25/32
	01:23:56	yes#	27.27.27.27:24949	0	10.56.25.64/32
	00:24:40	yes#	24.24.24.24:23672	0	10.56.25.72/32
	6d18h	yes#	21.21.21.21:40875	0	23.23.23.23/32
	6d17h	yes#	24.24.24.24:23672	0	26.26.26.26/32
	3w0d	yes#	27.27.27.27:24949	0	29.29.29.29/32

To verify the operational status of LISP sites on IPv4 database, use the following command in fabric edge node:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id 0 ipv4 database
```

```
LISP ETR IPv4 Mapping Database for EID-table default (IID 0), LSBs: 0x1
Entries total 3, no-route 0, inactive 0
```

```
10.56.25.27/32, dynamic-eid eid_10_56_25, skip reg, inherited from default locator-set
rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:25:54, Last-change: 00:25:54
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator    Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24 10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable
10.56.25.72/32, dynamic-eid eid_10_56_25, inherited from default locator-set rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:25:25, Last-change: 00:25:25
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator    Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24 10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable
26.26.26.26/32, locator-set rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 3w5d, Last-change: 6d17h
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator    Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24 10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable
```

To verify the operational status of LISP sites on mac mapping database, use the following command on the FE node:

```
FabricEdge# show lisp instance-id 1 ethernet database
```

```
LISP ETR MAC Mapping Database for EID-table Vlan 25 (IID 1), LSBs: 0x1
Entries total 2, no-route 0, inactive 0
```

```
cc98.911b.73f1/48, dynamic-eid Auto-L2-group-1, skip reg, inherited from default locator-set
rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:00:49, Last-change: 00:00:49
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator    Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24 10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable
dcce.c130.0b70/48, dynamic-eid Auto-L2-group-1, inherited from default locator-set
rloc_loopback
  Uptime: 00:00:50, Last-change: 00:00:50
  Domain-ID: unset
  Locator    Pri/Wgt  Source      State
  24.24.24.24 10/10    cfg-intf    site-self, reachable
```




PART **XVI**

VLAN

- [VLANs, on page 1847](#)
- [VLAN Groups, on page 1857](#)



CHAPTER 173

VLANs

- [Information About VLANs, on page 1847](#)
- [How to Configure VLANs, on page 1851](#)
- [Monitoring VLANs, on page 1855](#)

Information About VLANs

Logical Networks

A VLAN is a switched network that is logically segmented by function, project team, or application, without regard to the physical locations of the users. VLANs have the same attributes as physical LANs, but you can group end stations even if they are not physically located on the same LAN segment. Any controller port can belong to a VLAN, and unicast, broadcast, and multicast packets are forwarded and flooded only to end stations in the VLAN. Each VLAN is considered a logical network, and packets destined for stations that do not belong to the VLAN must be forwarded through a router or a controller supporting fallback bridging. Because a VLAN is considered a separate logical network, it contains its own bridge Management Information Base (MIB) information.

VLANs are often associated with IP subnet. For example, all the end stations in a particular IP subnet belong to the same VLAN. Interface VLAN membership on the controller is assigned manually on an interface-by-interface basis. When you assign controller interfaces to VLANs by using this method, it is known as interface-based, or static, VLAN membership.

Supported VLANs

The controller supports VLANs in VTP client, server, and transparent modes. VLANs are identified by a number from 1 to 4094. VLAN 1 is the default VLAN and is created during system initialization. All of the VLANs except 1002 to 1005 are available for user configuration.

VLAN Port Membership Modes

You configure a port to belong to a VLAN by assigning a membership mode that specifies the kind of traffic the port carries and the number of VLANs to which it can belong.

When a port belongs to a VLAN, the controller learns and manages the addresses associated with the port on a per-VLAN basis.

Table 129: Port Membership Modes and Characteristics

Membership Mode	VLAN Membership Characteristics	VTP Characteristics
Static-access	A static-access port can belong to one VLAN and is manually assigned to that VLAN.	VTP is not required. If you do not want VTP to globally propagate information, set the VTP mode to transparent. To participate in VTP, there must be at least one trunk port on the controller connected to a trunk port of a second controller.
Trunk IEEE 802.1Q) : IEEE 802.1Q—Industry-standard trunking encapsulation.	A trunk port is a member of all VLANs by default, including extended-range VLANs, but membership can be limited by configuring the allowed-VLAN list.	VTP is recommended but not required. VTP maintains VLAN configuration consistency by managing the addition, deletion, and renaming of VLANs on a network-wide basis. VTP exchanges VLAN configuration messages with other controller over trunk links.



Note If a client VLAN has two subnets, a primary subnet and a secondary subnet, the static IP address is not supported on the secondary subnet.

Consider the following SVI configuration example:

```
interface VlanX
ip address a.b.c.254 255.255.255.0 secondary
ip address a.d.e.254 255.255.255.0
```

In this scenario, you can't allocate the secondary subnet for clients with static IP addresses.

VLAN Configuration Files

Configurations for VLAN IDs 1 to 1005 are written to the `vlan.dat` file (VLAN database), and you can display them by entering the **show vlan** privileged EXEC command. The `vlan.dat` file is stored in flash memory. If the VTP mode is transparent, they are also saved in the controller running configuration file.

You use the interface configuration mode to define the port membership mode and to add and remove ports from VLANs. The results of these commands are written to the running-configuration file, and you can display the file by entering the **show running-config** privileged EXEC command.

When you save VLAN and VTP information (including extended-range VLAN configuration information) in the startup configuration file and reboot the controller, the controller configuration is selected as follows:

- If the VTP mode is transparent in the startup configuration, and the VLAN database and the VTP domain name from the VLAN database matches that in the startup configuration file, the VLAN database is ignored (cleared), and the VTP and VLAN configurations in the startup configuration file are used. The VLAN database revision number remains unchanged in the VLAN database.

- If the VTP mode or domain name in the startup configuration does not match the VLAN database, the domain name and VTP mode and configuration for the VLAN IDs 1 to 1005 use the VLAN database information.
- In VTP versions 1 and 2, if VTP mode is server, the domain name and VLAN configuration for VLAN IDs 1 to 1005 use the VLAN database information. VTP version 3 also supports VLANs 1006 to 4094.

**Note**

Ensure that you delete the `vlan.dat` file along with the configuration files before you reset the switch configuration using **write erase** command. This ensures that the switch reboots correctly on a reset.

Normal-Range VLAN Configuration Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when creating and modifying normal-range VLANs in your network:

- Normal-range VLANs are identified with a number between 1 and 1001.
- VLAN configurations for VLANs 1 to 1005 are always saved in the VLAN database. If the VTP mode is transparent, VTP and VLAN configurations are also saved in the running configuration file.
- If the controller is in VTP server or VTP transparent mode, you can add, modify or remove configurations for VLANs 2 to 1001 in the VLAN database. (VLAN IDs 1 and 1002 to 1005 are automatically created and cannot be removed.)
- Extended-range VLANs created in VTP transparent mode are not saved in the VLAN database and are not propagated. VTP version 3 supports extended range VLAN (VLANs 1006 to 4094) database propagation in VTP server mode.

If clients are unable to connect to the controller due to a VLAN failure, try one of the following options:

- Configure *ip4 dhcp required* in the policy profile forcing the client to initiate a DHCP request.
- Configure the RADIUS server to send VLAN group (having the client's static IP VLAN) information allowing the client to use static IP.
- Configure *aaa-override vlan fallback* under the policy profile forcing the controller to check for the client's static IP VLAN in other VLAN groups as well. The client can join the network if the client's static IP VLAN is part of the configured VLAN group under the policy profile.

Extended-Range VLAN Configuration Guidelines

Extended-range VLANs are VLANs with IDs from 1006 to 4094.

Follow these guidelines when creating extended-range VLANs:

- VLAN IDs in the extended range are not saved in the VLAN database and are not recognized by VTP unless the device is running VTP version 3.
- You cannot include extended-range VLANs in the pruning eligible range.
- For VTP version 1 or 2, you can set the VTP mode to transparent in global configuration mode. You should save this configuration to the startup configuration so that the device boots up in VTP transparent

mode. Otherwise, you lose the extended-range VLAN configuration if the device resets. If you create extended-range VLANs in VTP version 3, you cannot convert to VTP version 1 or 2.

Prerequisites for VLANs

The following are prerequisites and considerations for configuring VLANs:

- To configure VLAN through the Web UI, you must change the number of available Virtual Terminal (VTY) sessions to 50. Web UI uses VTY lines for processing HTTP requests. At times, when multiple connections are open, the default VTY lines of 15 set by the device gets exhausted. Therefore, you must change the VTY lines to 50 before using the Web UI.



Note To increase the VTY lines in a device, run the following command in the configuration mode:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# service tcp-keepalives in
Device(config)# service tcp-keepalives out

Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# line vty 16-50
```



Note The maximum number of SSH VTY sessions supported on the standby controller is eight.

- Before you create VLANs, you must decide whether to use VLAN Trunking Protocol (VTP) to maintain global VLAN configuration for your network.
- Before adding a VLAN to a VLAN group, you should first create it on the device.

Restrictions for VLANs

The following are restrictions for VLANs:

- You cannot delete a wireless management interface, if the associated VLAN interface is already deleted. To avoid this scenario, you should delete the wireless management interface before deleting the VLAN interface.
- The device supports IEEE 802.1Q trunking methods for sending VLAN traffic over Ethernet ports.
- When client VLAN is not configured for a policy profile, AP native VLAN is used.
- The behavior of VLAN 1 changes depending on the AP mode. These scenarios are described below:
 - **Local mode AP:** If you use *vlan-name*, clients are assigned to VLAN 1. However, if you use *vlan-id* 1, clients are assigned to the wireless management interface.
 - **FlexConnect mode AP:** If you use *vlan-name*, clients are assigned to VLAN 1. However, if you use *vlan-id* 1, clients are assigned to the native VLAN defined in the flex profile.

By default, the policy profile assigns vlan-id 1 so that clients can use the wireless management VLAN.

- You cannot use the same VLAN on the same SSID for local switching and central switching.

How to Configure VLANs

How to Configure Normal-Range VLANs

You can set these parameters when you create a new normal-range VLAN or modify an existing VLAN in the VLAN database:

- VLAN ID
- VLAN name
- VLAN type
 - Ethernet
 - TrBRF or TrCRF
- VLAN state (active or suspended)
- Parent VLAN number for TrCRF VLANs
- VLAN number to use when translating from one VLAN type to another

You can cause inconsistency in the VLAN database if you attempt to manually delete the *vlan.dat* file. If you want to modify the VLAN configuration, follow the procedures in this section.

Creating or Modifying an Ethernet VLAN

Before you begin

With VTP version 1 and 2, if the controller is in VTP transparent mode, you can assign VLAN IDs greater than 1006, but they are not added to the VLAN database.

The controller supports only Ethernet interfaces.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config) # vlan 20	Enters a VLAN ID, and enters VLAN configuration mode. Enter a new VLAN ID to create a VLAN, or enter an existing VLAN ID to modify that VLAN. Note The available VLAN ID range for this command is 1 to 4094.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	name <i>vlan-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan)# name test20</pre>	(Optional) Enters a name for the VLAN. If no name is entered for the VLAN, the default is to append the <i>vlan-id</i> value with leading zeros to the word VLAN. For example, VLAN0004 is a default VLAN name for VLAN 4.
Step 3	media { ethernet fd-net trn-net } Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan)# media ethernet</pre>	Configures the VLAN media type.
Step 4	show vlan { name <i>vlan-name</i> id <i>vlan-id</i> } Example: <pre>Device# show vlan name test20 id 20</pre>	Verifies your entries.

Assigning Static-Access Ports to a VLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN > VLAN**
 - Step 2** Click the **VLAN** tab.
 - Step 3** To assign **Port Members**, click the interfaces that are to be included as port members from the **Available** list and click on the arrow to move it to the **Associated** list.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Assigning Static-Access Ports to a VLAN

You can assign a static-access port to a VLAN without having VTP globally propagate VLAN configuration information by disabling VTP (VTP transparent mode). For more information on static-access ports, see *VLAN Port Membership Modes*.

If you assign an interface to a VLAN that does not exist, the new VLAN is created.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet2/0/1	Enters the interface to be added to the VLAN.
Step 3	switchport mode access Example: Device(config-if)# switchport mode access	Defines the VLAN membership mode for the port (Layer 2 access port).
Step 4	switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)# switchport access vlan 2	Assigns the port to a VLAN. Valid VLAN IDs are 1 to 4094.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 6	show running-config interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device# copy running-config startup-config	Verifies the VLAN membership mode of the interface.
Step 7	show interfaces <i>interface-id</i> switchport Example: Device# show interfaces gigabitethernet2/0/1	Verifies your entries in the <i>Administrative Mode</i> and the <i>Access Mode VLAN</i> fields of the display.

How to Configure Extended-Range VLANs

Extended-range VLANs enable service providers to extend their infrastructure to a greater number of customers. The extended-range VLAN IDs are allowed for any **switchport** commands that allow VLAN IDs.

With VTP version 1 or 2, extended-range VLAN configurations are not stored in the VLAN database, but because VTP mode is transparent, they are stored in the controller running configuration file, and you can save the configuration in the startup configuration file. Extended-range VLANs created in VTP version 3 are stored in the VLAN database.

Creating an Extended-Range VLAN (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1

Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN**.
- Step 2

In the VLAN page, click **ADD**.
- Step 3

Enter the extended range VLAN ID in the **VLAN ID** field.

The extended range is between range is 1006 and 4094.
- Step 4

Enter a VLAN name in the **Name** field.
- Step 5

Save the configuration.

Creating an Extended-Range VLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# vlan 2000	Enters an extended-range VLAN ID and enters VLAN configuration mode. The range is 1006 to 4094.
Step 3	show vlan id <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# show vlan id 2000	Verifies that the VLAN has been created.

Monitoring VLANs

Table 130: Privileged EXEC show Commands

Command	Purpose
show interfaces [vlan <i>vlan-id</i>]	Displays characteristics for all interfaces or for the specified VLAN configured on the controller.
show vlan [access-map <i>name</i> brief group id <i>vlan-id</i> ifindex mtu name <i>name</i> summary]	Displays parameters for all VLANs or the specified VLAN on the controller. The following command options are available: • brief—Displays VTP VLAN status in brief. • group—Displays the VLAN group with its name and the connected VLANs that are available. • id—Displays VTP VLAN status by identification number. • ifindex—Displays SNMP ifIndex. • mtu—Displays VLAN MTU information. • name—Displays the VTP VLAN information by specified name. • summary—Displays a summary of VLAN information.



CHAPTER 174

VLAN Groups

- [Information About VLAN Groups, on page 1857](#)
- [Prerequisites for VLAN Groups, on page 1858](#)
- [Restrictions for VLAN Groups, on page 1858](#)
- [Creating a VLAN Group \(GUI\), on page 1858](#)
- [Creating a VLAN Group \(CLI\), on page 1859](#)
- [Adding a VLAN Group to Policy Profile \(GUI\), on page 1859](#)
- [Adding a VLAN Group to a Policy Profile, on page 1860](#)
- [Viewing the VLANs in a VLAN Group, on page 1860](#)
- [VLAN Group Support for DHCP and Static IP Clients, on page 1861](#)

Information About VLAN Groups

Whenever a client connects to a wireless network (WLAN), the client is placed in a VLAN that is associated with the policy profile mapped to the WLAN. In a large venue, such as an auditorium, a stadium, or a conference room where there are numerous wireless clients, having only a single WLAN to accommodate many clients might be a challenge.

The VLAN group feature uses a single policy profile that can support multiple VLANs. The clients can get assigned to one of the configured VLANs. This feature maps a policy profile to a single VLAN or multiple VLANs using the VLAN groups. When a wireless client associates to the WLAN, the VLAN is derived by an algorithm based on the MAC address of the wireless client. A VLAN is assigned to the client and the client gets the IP address from the assigned VLAN.

The system marks VLAN as *Dirty* for 30 minutes when the clients are unable to receive IP addresses using DHCP. The system might not clear the *Dirty* flag from the VLAN even after 30 minutes for a VLAN group. After 30 minutes, when the VLAN is marked non-dirty, new clients in the IP Learn state can get assigned with IP addresses from the VLAN if free IPs are available in the pool and DHCP scope is defined correctly. This is the expected behavior because the timestamp of each interface has to be checked to see if it is greater than 30 minutes, due to which there is a lag of 5 minutes for the global timer to expire.

**Note**

The Controller marks the VLAN interface as *Dirty* when three or more clients fail to receive IP addresses through DHCP. The VLAN interface is deemed *Dirty* using a method that involves counting one failure per association per client that surpasses the predefined **IP_LEARN_TIMEOUT** duration of 120 seconds. If a client sends a new association request before the **IP_LEARN_TIMEOUT** elapses, it will not be considered a failed client.

Each client gets a unique hash value derived from its MAC address. This approach ensures that clients belonging to the same vendor, which may differ only by a few bits, do not mistakenly trigger the *Dirty* marking of a VLAN.

Prerequisites for VLAN Groups

- A VLAN should be present in the device for it to be added to the VLAN group.

Restrictions for VLAN Groups

- If the number of VLANs in a VLAN group exceeds 32, the mobility functionality might not work as expected and Layer 2 multicast might break for some VLANs. Therefore, it is the responsibility of network administrators to configure a feasible number of VLANs in a VLAN group.

For the VLAN Groups feature to work as expected, the VLANs mapped in a group must be present in the controller.

- The VLAN Groups feature works for access points in local mode.
- The VLAN Groups feature works only in central switching mode and it cannot be used in FlexConnect local switching mode.
- ARP Broadcast feature is not supported on VLAN groups.
- VLAN group Multicast with VLAN group is only supported in local mode AP. Multicast VLAN is required when VLAN group is configured and uses multicast traffic.
- While you configure VLAN groups with multiple VLANs and each VLAN is used by a different subnet, clients having static IP addresses might be assigned to a wrong VLAN if SVIs are not present on the controller. Hence, for every VLAN that belongs to the VLAN group, ensure that you configure an SVI interface with a valid IP address.

Creating a VLAN Group (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN Group**

- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** Set the **VLAN GROUP** name and the list of **VLANS**.
This can be a range, or comma separated values.
- Step 4** Enter the VLAN name in the **Name** field.
Configure the other parameters if required.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Creating a VLAN Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan group <i>WORD</i> vlan-list <i>vlan-ID</i> Example: Device(config)#vlan group vlangrp1 vlan-list 91-95	Creates a VLAN group with the given group name (vlangrp1) and adds all the VLANs listed in the command. The VLAN list ranges from 1 to 4096 and the maximum number of VLANs supported in a group is 64.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)#end	Exits the global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, press CTRL-Z to exit the global configuration mode.

Adding a VLAN Group to Policy Profile (GUI)

Policy profile broadly consists of network and switching policies. Policy profile is a reusable entity across tags. Anything that is a policy for the client that is applied on the AP or controller is moved to the policy profile. For example, VLAN, ACL, QoS, Session timeout, Idle timeout, AVC profile, Bonjour profile, Local profiling, Device classification, BSSID QoS, etc. However, all wireless related security attributes and features on the WLAN are grouped under the WLAN profile.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** On the **Policy Profile** page, click on a policy profile name.
- Step 3** Click **Access Policies** tab.

- Step 4** Under **VLAN** section, use the **VLAN/VLAN Group** drop-down list to select a VLAN or VLAN Group.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Adding a VLAN Group to a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy my-wlan-policy	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	vlan <i>vlan-group1</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan myvlan-group	Maps the VLAN group to the WLAN by entering the group name.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Exits global configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Viewing the VLANs in a VLAN Group

Command	Description
show vlan group	Displays the list of VLAN groups with name and the VLANs that are configured.
show vlan group <i>group-name</i> <i>group_name</i>	Displays the specified VLAN group details.
show wireless client mac-address <i>client-mac-addr</i> detail	Displays the VLAN group assigned to the client.
show wireless vlan details	Displays VLAN details.

VLAN Group Support for DHCP and Static IP Clients

When a static IP client joins a VLAN group, the controller adds it to a VLAN based on VLAN computation logic. If the client's static IP address isn't part of the VLAN's IP list, the client fails to get internet access, even if the client is authenticated and authorized. The VLAN Group to Support DHCP and Static IP Clients feature aims to handle the network access of such clients. This feature only supports IPv4 clients and is enabled by default. However, ensure that the **ipv4 dhcp required** command is not configured on the wireless policy profile, because this disables the feature, causing the client to be stuck in the IP learn state.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that a switch VLAN interface (SVI) is configured with the IP address.

Restrictions

- FlexConnect local switching and FlexConnect local authentication are not supported. Only Local mode, FlexConnect central switching, and FlexConnect central authentication are supported.
- IPv6 is not supported.
- The peer controller cannot have a VLAN group in the policy profile, because a VLAN group with static IP mobility is not supported.

Supported Features

Table 131: Supported Features

Feature	Support
Guest Anchor	Yes
Mobility	Yes
RLAN	Yes
SVI	Yes Ensure that you configure SVI with an IP address in the same subnet as that of the client's IP address.
IRCM support: Guest AireOS as anchor and Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller as foreign	Yes
IRCM support : Guest AireOS as foreign and Cisco Catalyst 9800 controller as anchor	Yes The client is excluded if there is no match for the SVI.



PART **XVII**

WLAN

- [WLANS, on page 1865](#)
- [WLAN Security, on page 1895](#)
- [Remote LANs, on page 1909](#)
- [RLAN External Module, on page 1927](#)
- [802.11ax Per WLAN, on page 1929](#)
- [BSS Coloring, on page 1933](#)
- [DHCP for WLANs, on page 1941](#)
- [Aironet Extensions IE \(CCX IE\) , on page 1961](#)
- [Device Analytics, on page 1965](#)
- [Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 1971](#)
- [BSSID Counters, on page 1979](#)
- [Fastlane+, on page 1983](#)
- [Workgroup Bridges, on page 1987](#)
- [Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 2011](#)
- [Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles, on page 2013](#)
- [Ethernet over GRE , on page 2023](#)
- [Wireless Guest Access, on page 2041](#)
- [Wired Guest Access, on page 2073](#)
- [User Defined Network, on page 2093](#)
- [Hotspot 2.0, on page 2101](#)
- [Client Roaming Across Policy Profile, on page 2127](#)
- [Assisted Roaming, on page 2135](#)
- [802.11r BSS Fast Transition, on page 2141](#)
- [802.11v, on page 2157](#)

- [Virtual Routing and Forwarding](#), on page 2161
- [Automated Frequency Coordination](#), on page 2171



CHAPTER 175

WLANs

- [Information About WLANs, on page 1865](#)
- [Prerequisites for WLANs, on page 1868](#)
- [Restrictions for WLANs, on page 1869](#)
- [How to Configure WLANs, on page 1870](#)
- [Verifying WLAN Properties \(CLI\), on page 1893](#)
- [Verifying WLAN-VLAN Information for an AP, on page 1893](#)
- [Verifying a WLAN Radio Policy, on page 1893](#)

Information About WLANs

This feature enables you to control WLANs for lightweight access points. Each WLAN has a separate WLAN ID, a separate profile name, and a WLAN SSID. All access points can advertise up to 16 WLANs. However, you can create up to 4096 WLANs and then selectively advertise these WLANs (using profiles and tags) to different access points for better manageability.

You can configure WLANs with different SSIDs or with the same SSID. An SSID identifies the specific wireless network that you want the device to access.



Note The **wireless client max-user-login concurrent** command will work as intended even if the **no configure max-user-identity response** command is configured.



Note We recommend that you configure the **password encryption aes** and the **key config-key password-encrypt key** commands to encrypt your password.



Note From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.7.1 release onwards, only 8 WLANs are broadcasted on 6-GHz band.



Note For C9105, C9115, and C9120 APs, when a new WLAN is pushed from the controller and if the existing WLAN functional parameters are changed, the other WLAN clients will disconnect and reconnect.

Wi-Fi multimedia (WMM) policy

Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) is used to prioritize different types of traffic.

- Disabled: Disables WMM on the WLAN.
- Required: Requires client devices to use WMM. Devices that do not support WMM cannot join the WLAN.
- Allowed: Devices that do not support WMM can join the WLAN but will not benefit from the 802.11n rates.



Note For 802.11ax APs and higher (Cisco Catalyst 9117, 9124, 913x, 916x, 917x APs), WMM can not be Disabled. Only Required or Allowed options are supported.

Band Selection

Band select enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4 and 5-GHz) operations to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested. Clients on this band typically experience interference from Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, and cordless phones as well as co-channel interference from other access points because of the 802.11b/g limit of 3 nonoverlapping channels. To prevent these sources of interference and improve overall network performance, configure band selection on the device.

Off-Channel Scanning Deferral

A lightweight access point, in normal operational conditions, periodically goes off-channel and scans another channel. This is in order to perform RRM operations such as the following:

- Transmitting and receiving Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) packets with other APs.
- Detecting rogue APs and clients.
- Measuring noise and interference.

During the off-channel period, which normally is about 70 milliseconds, the AP is unable to transmit or receive data on its serving channel. Therefore, there is a slight impact on its performance and some client transmissions might be dropped.

While the AP is sending and receiving important data, it is possible to configure off-channel scanning deferral so that the AP does not go off-channel and its normal operation is not impacted. You can configure off-channel scanning deferral on a per-WLAN basis, per WMM UP class basis, with a specified time threshold in milliseconds. If the AP sends or receives, on a particular WLAN, a data frame marked with the given UP class within the specified threshold, the AP defers its next RRM off-channel scan. For example, by default, off-channel scanning deferral is enabled for UP classes 4, 5, and 6, with a time threshold of 100 milliseconds. Therefore, when RRM is about to perform an off-channel scan, a data frame marked with UP 4, 5, or 6 is

received within the last 100 milliseconds, RRM defers going off-channel. The AP radio does not go off-channel when a voice call sending and receiving audio samples is marked as UP class 6 for every active 20 milliseconds.

Off-channel scanning deferral does come with a tradeoff. Off-channel scanning can impact throughput by 2 percent or more, depending on the configuration, traffic patterns, and so on. Throughput can be slightly improved if you enable off-channel scanning deferral for all traffic classes and increase the time threshold. However, by not going off-channel, RRM can fail to identify AP neighbors and rogues, resulting in negative impact to security, DCA, TPC, and 802.11k messages.

DTIM Period

In the 802.11 networks, lightweight access points broadcast a beacon at regular intervals, which coincides with the Delivery Traffic Indication Map (DTIM). After the access point broadcasts the beacon, it transmits any buffered broadcast and multicast frames based on the value set for the DTIM period. This feature allows power-saving clients to wake up at the appropriate time if they are expecting broadcast or multicast data.

Typically, the DTIM value is set to 1 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every beacon) or 2 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every other beacon). For instance, if the beacon period of the 802.11 network is 100 ms and the DTIM value is set to 1, the access point transmits buffered broadcast and multicast frames for 10 times every second. If the beacon period is 100 ms and the DTIM value is set to 2, the access point transmits buffered broadcast and multicast frames for 5 times every second. Either of these settings are suitable for applications, including Voice Over IP (VoIP), that expect frequent broadcast and multicast frames.

However, the DTIM value can be set as high as 255 (to transmit broadcast and multicast frames after every 255th beacon). The only recommended DTIM values are 1 and 2; higher DTIM values will likely cause communications problems.

**Note**

A beacon period, which is specified in milliseconds on the device, is converted internally by the software to 802.11 Time Units (TUs), where 1 TU = 1.024 milliseconds. Depending on the AP model, the actual beacon period may vary slightly; for example, a beacon period of 100 ms may in practice equate to 104.448 ms.

WLAN Radio Policy

The existing WLAN feature allows you to broadcast WLAN on a specified radio on all the applicable slots. With the WLAN Radio Policy feature, you can broadcast the WLAN on the corresponding slot. Note that this option is supported only on 5-GHz band.

Restrictions for WLAN Radio Policy

- WLAN is pushed to all the radios only if the following configuration is used:
 - WPA3 + AES cipher + 802.1x-SHA256 AKM
 - WPA3 + AES cipher + OWE AKM
 - WPA3 + AES cipher + SAE AKM
 - WPA3 + CCMP256 cipher + SUITEB192-1X AKM
 - WPA3 + GCMP256 cipher + SUITEB-1X AKM

- WPA3 + GCMP128 cipher + SUITEB192-1X AKM

Prerequisites for Configuring Cisco Client Extensions

- The software supports CCX versions 1 through 5, which enables devices and their access points to communicate wirelessly with third-party client devices that support CCX. CCX support is enabled automatically for every WLAN on the device and cannot be disabled. However, you can configure Aironet information elements (IEs).
- If Aironet IE support is enabled, the access point sends an Aironet IE 0x85 (which contains the access point name, load, number of associated clients, and so on) in the beacon and probe responses of this WLAN, and the device sends Aironet IEs 0x85 and 0x95 (which contains the management IP address of the device and the IP address of the access point) in the reassociation response if it receives Aironet IE 0x85 in the reassociation request.

Peer-to-Peer Blocking

Peer-to-peer blocking is applied to individual WLANs, and each client inherits the peer-to-peer blocking setting of the WLAN to which it is associated. Peer-to-Peer enables you to have more control over how traffic is directed. For example, you can choose to have traffic bridged locally within the device, dropped by the device, or forwarded to the upstream VLAN.

Peer-to-peer blocking is supported for clients that are associated with local and central switching WLANs.



Note Peer-to-peer blocking feature is VLAN-based. WLANs using the same VLAN has an impact, if Peer-to-peer blocking feature is enabled.

Diagnostic Channel

You can choose a diagnostic channel to troubleshoot why the client is having communication problems with a WLAN. You can test the client and access points to identify the difficulties that the client is experiencing and allow corrective measures to be taken to make the client operational on the network. You can use the device GUI or CLI to enable the diagnostic channel, and you can use the device **diag-channel** CLI to run the diagnostic tests.



Note We recommend that you enable the diagnostic channel feature only for non-anchored SSIDs that use the management interface. CCX Diagnostic feature has been tested only with clients having Cisco ADU card

Prerequisites for WLANs

- You can associate up to 16 WLANs with each access point group and assign specific access points to each group. Each access point advertises only the enabled WLANs that belong to its access point group.

The access point (AP) does not advertise disabled WLANs in its access point group or WLANs that belong to another group.

- We recommend that you assign one set of VLANs for WLANs and a different set of VLANs for management interfaces to ensure that devices properly route VLAN traffic.

Restrictions for WLANs

- Do not configure PSK as this configuration is not supported and impacts client join flow.
- Ensure that TKIP or AES ciphers are enabled with WPA1 configuration, else ISSU may break during upgrade process.
- When you change the WLAN profile name, then FlexConnect APs (using AP-specific VLAN mapping) will become WLAN-specific. If FlexConnect Groups are configured, the VLAN mapping will become Group-specific.
- Do not enable IEEE 802.1X Fast Transition on Flex Local Authentication enabled WLAN, as client association is not supported with Fast Transition 802.1X key management.
- Peer-to-peer blocking does not apply to multicast traffic.
- In FlexConnect, peer-to-peer blocking configuration cannot be applied only to a particular FlexConnect AP or a subset of APs. It is applied to all the FlexConnect APs that broadcast the SSID.
- The WLAN name and SSID can have up to 32 characters.
- WLAN and SSID names support only the following ASCII characters:
 - Numerals: 48 through 57 hex (0 to 9)
 - Alphabets (uppercase): 65 through 90 hex (A to Z)
 - Alphabets (lowercase): 97 through 122 hex (a to z)
 - ASCII space: 20 hex
 - Printable special characters: 21 through 2F, 3A through 40, and 5B through 60 hex, that is: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { | } ~
- WLAN name cannot be a keyword; for example, if you try to create a WLAN with the name as 's' by entering the **wlan s** command, it results in shutting down all WLANs because 's' is used as a keyword for shutdown.
- You cannot map a WLAN to VLAN 0. Similarly, you cannot map a WLAN to VLANs 1002 to 1006.
- Dual stack clients with a static-IPv4 address is not supported.
- In a dual-stack with IPv4 and IPv6 configured in the Cisco 9800 controller, if an AP tries to join controller with IPv6 tunnel before its IPv4 tunnel gets cleaned, you would see a traceback and AP join will fail.
- When creating a WLAN with the same SSID, you must create a unique profile name for each WLAN.
- When multiple WLANs with the same SSID get assigned to the same AP radio, you must have a unique Layer 2 security policy so that clients can safely select between them.

- The SSID that is sent as part of the user profile will work only if **aaa override** command is configured.
- RADIUS server overwrite is not configured on a per WLAN basis, but rather on a per AAA server group basis.
- Downloadable ACL (DACL) is supported only on the central switching mode. It is not supported for Flex Local switching or on the Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller.
- You cannot mix open configuration models with CLI-based, GUI-based, or Catalyst Center-based configurations. However, if you decide to use multiple model types, they must remain independent of each other. For example, in open configuration models, you can only manage configurations that have been created using an open configuration model, not a CLI-based or GUI-based model. Configurations that are created using open configuration models cannot be modified using a GUI-based model, or CLI-based model, or any other model.
- When you are configuring **dot11bg 11g** command and **radio dot11bg** or **radio dot11g** command, the clients can still connect in 5GHz radio. In this scenario, the client association needs to be blocked. This option is only available on a 2.4-GHz radio.
- Wi-Fi 6E APs support up to 8 WLANs. If more than 8 WLANs are already configured under the policy tag and a new 6-GHz WLAN is configured, CAPWAP disconnect is required for a Wi-Fi 6E AP. Otherwise, the newly configured 6-GHz WLAN is not pushed to applicable Wi-Fi 6E APs.

**Note**

After AP reconnects, the controller will re-evaluate the first eight 6-GHz applicable WLANs for Wi-Fi 6E AP. This limitation is irrelevant from the 17.15 release onwards, where the controller supports 16 WLANs on 6-GHz radio.

**Caution**

Some clients might not be able to connect to WLANs properly if they detect the same SSID with multiple security policies. Use this WLAN feature with care.

How to Configure WLANs

WLAN Wizard

A wireless local-area network (WLAN) is a group of devices that form a network based on radio transmissions rather than wired connections. The WLAN Wizard on the WebUI is a simplified workflow designed to help you quickly create a WLAN and setup some primary configurations for your specific deployment.

The Wizard supports the following wireless deployment modes:

- Local mode: In Local mode, the WLAN is broadcast in the campus locally.
- Flex Connect mode: In FlexConnect mode, the WLAN is broadcast remotely across the WAN in a branch.
- Guest CWA mode: In Guest CWA mode, the WLAN is created for guest access with Central Web Authentication (CWA).

There are different authentication methods supported for each deployment mode.



Important The following steps help configure WLANs, otherwise an error might occur.

To configure a WLAN for your preferred wireless deployment mode using the WLAN wizard on the WebUI, go to **Configuration > Wireless Setup > WLAN Wizard**.

You can also navigate to the WLAN Wizard by the following paths:

- On the Toolbar, click on the **Wireless Setup** icon and select **WLAN Wizard** from the drop-down list.
- On the left navigation pane, go to **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs** and click on **WLAN Wizard** on the top-right corner.

On the **WLAN Wizard** page, select a wireless deployment mode for the WLAN to initiate steps for setting up the WLAN with profiles, authentication methods, tags, and APs and other configurations.

Local Mode

The WLAN is deployed in Local mode when the WLAN is present in an office setup with no branch offices. In local mode, an AP creates two CAPWAP tunnels to the controller. One is for management, the other is data traffic. This behavior is known as "centrally switched" because the data traffic is tunneled (bridged) from the AP to the controller where it is then routed by some routing device. Locally switched means the traffic is terminated at the local switch adjacent to the access point.



Authentication Method

To configure a WLAN for local mode, select the preferred authentication method from the left panel. The authentication method sets the method by which a client can access the WLAN and decides the level of security on the WLAN. The options are:

- **PSK:** A Pre-Shared Key (PSK) is a unique key created for individuals or groups of users on the same SSID. A client will have to enter the PSK to be authenticated and allowed to access the WLAN.
- **Dot1x:** The client must go through relevant EAP authentication model to start exchanging traffic in the WLAN.
- **Local Web Authentication:** The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication.
- **External Web Authentication:** The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server for authentication.
- **Central Web Authentication:** The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page for authentication.

WLAN Profile and Policy

After selecting the Authentication method, click on **WLAN** on the left panel to enter the WLAN profile and policy details.

The WLAN profile defines the properties of a WLAN such as Profile Name, Status, WLAN ID, L2 and L3 Security parameters, AAA Server associated with this SSID and other parameters that are specific to a particular WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for a client (with the exception of QoS), which constitute the AP policies as well.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Network Name** section, enter a **WLAN profile name**, which is a unique name for your wireless network. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 2** Enter a valid **SSID** for the WLAN. A valid SSID can be up to 32 characters and can contain spaces. A valid SSID can be ASCII characters from 0 to 31, with leading and trailing spaces. This is the broadcast name for your WLAN.
 - Step 3** Enter the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** In the **WLAN Policy** section, enter the **Policy Profile name**. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 5** Select the **WLAN** to be associated with the Policy Profile from the drop-down list..
 - Step 6** To select an existing Policy Profile for the WLAN, click on **Select Existing** and choose a **Policy Profile** from the drop-down list..
-

Authentication Configurations

Set up the authentication configurations and filters for the WLAN depending on the method you have chosen. These include the keys, filters, ACLs, and parameter maps as applicable to the selected authentication method.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** If you have selected **PSK** as the authentication method, configure the following:
 - a) In the **WLAN > Pre-Shared Key (PSK)** section, select the PSK format. Choose between ASCII and Hexadecimal formats.
 - b) From the **PSK type** drop-down list, choose if you want the key to be unencrypted or AES encrypted.
 - c) In the **Pre-Shared Key** field, enter the pass key for the WLAN.
 - Step 2** If you have selected **Dot1x** as the authentication method, configure the following:
 - a) In the **WLAN > AAA** tab, configure the AAA server list for the WLAN.
 - b) Select any of the available AAA servers to add to the WLAN.
 - c) To add a new AAA server to the list, click on Add New Server and enter the IP address and server-key.
 - d) To use an already configured AAA server list, click on **Use Existing** and select the appropriate list from the drop-down.
 - Step 3** If you have selected **Local Web Authentication** as the authentication method, configure the following:

- a) In the **WLAN > Parameter Map** tab, configure the parameter map for the WLAN. A parameter map sets parameters that can be applied to subscriber sessions during authentication.
 1. In the **Global Configuration** section, configure the global parameter map.
 2. Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address to configure a virtual IP address for redirecting the clients to the login page of the controller.
 3. From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, select the trustpoint for HTTPS login page. The trustpoint corresponds to the device certificate the controller will use in conjunction with the virtual IP and hostname.
 4. In the **WLAN Specific Configuration** section, either create a new parameter map for the WLAN, or select an existing parameter map from the drop-down list.
- b) In the **WLAN > Local Users** tab, enter the username in the local database to establish a username-based authentication system.
 1. Enter the user name to be saved.
 2. From the **Password Encryption** drop-down list, choose if you want the password to be unencrypted or encrypted.
 3. In the **Password** field, specify the password the user must enter to gain access to the switch. The password must be from 1 to 25 characters and can contain embedded spaces.
 4. Click on the + sign to add the credentials to the database. Add as many user credentials as required.

Step 4

If you have selected **External Web Authentication** as the authentication method, configure the following:

- a) In the **WLAN > Parameter Map** tab, configure the parameter map for the WLAN.
 1. In the **Global Configuration** section, configure the global parameter map.
 2. Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address to configure the virtual IP address of the external web authentication login page to which the guest users are redirected.
 3. From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, select the trustpoint for HTTPS login page. The trustpoint corresponds to the device certificate the controller will use in conjunction with the virtual IP and hostname.
 4. In the **WLAN Specific Configuration** section, either create a new parameter map for the WLAN, or select an existing parameter map from the drop-down list.
 5. To create a new parameter map, enter the parameter-map name.
 6. In the **Redirect URL for login** field, enter the URL of the external server that will host the authentication page for login.
 7. In the **Portal IPV4 Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the external server to send redirects. If the external server uses an IPv6 address, in the **Portal IPV6 Address** field, enter the IPv6 address of the portal to send redirects.
- b) In the **WLAN > ACL / URL Filter** tab, configure the ACL rules and the URL filter list.
 1. In the **Pre Auth ACL** section, enter the name of the ACL.

2. In the **IP address** field, enter the source IP address and the destination IP address. This will configure the ACL to permit packet transfer from and to the specified IP address. You can add as many IP addresses as required.
3. In the **URL Filter** section, enter a name for the URL Filter list that you are creating.
4. Use the slider to set the list action to **Permit** or **Deny** the URLs.
5. Specify the URLs in the **URLs** box. Enter every URL on a new line.

Step 5 If you have selected Central Web Authentication as the authentication method, configure the following:

- a) In the **WLAN > AAA/ACL** tab, configure the AAA server list and ACL for the WLAN.
- b) In the **AAA Configuration** section, select any of the available AAA servers to add to the WLAN. This will be the server where the clients will get authenticated.
- c) To add a new AAA server to the list, click on **Add New Server** and enter the IP address and server-key.
- d) To use an already configured AAA server list, click on **Use Existing** and select the appropriate list from the drop-down.
- e) In the **ACL List** section, enter the name of the ACL. This ACL will contain the rules regarding URLs that can be accessed by the client and should match the name configured on the RADIUS server.

Tags

To configure tags on the WLAN, click on **Tags** from the left panel.

A Tag's property is defined by the policies associated to it. This property is in turn inherited by an associated client/AP. There are various type of tags, each associated to different profiles.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Site Configuration** section, either enter a site tag to be added, or select an existing site tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. In the local mode, the site tag contains the AP join profile only.
- Step 2** In the **Policy Tag** section, either enter a policy tag to be added, or select an existing policy tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The policy tag constitutes mapping of the WLAN profile to the policy profile. The WLAN profile defines the wireless characteristics of the WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for the client.
- Step 3** In the **RF Tag** section, either enter an RF tag to be added, or select an existing RF tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The RF tag contains the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz RF profiles.

AP Provisioning

Once the Wireless network and RF characteristics are set up, access points can be added to the local site either using static AP MAC address assignment or by assigning already joined APs to a specific location.

To add tags and associate APs to the WLAN, click on **AP Provisioning** from the left panel.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** The APs already discovered by the controller are listed in the **Provision Joined APs** tab. You can select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
- Step 2** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.
- Step 3** To add APs manually, click on the **Pre-provision APs** tab. You can either add individual MAC addresses of the APs or upload a CSV file with the AP MAC addresses listed. The added APs will be listed in the table below.
- Step 4** Select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
- Step 5** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.
- A table of all the APs and the tags added to them is displayed in the **Selected APs** tab.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
- This will create a WLAN in local mode with the authentication method, authentication filters, tags, and APs configured on it.
-

FlexConnect Mode

FlexConnect is a wireless solution for branch office and remote office deployments. It enables you to configure and control access points (AP) in a branch or remote office from the corporate office through a wide area network (WAN) link without deploying a controller in each office. The FlexConnect access points can switch client data traffic and perform client authentication locally when their connection to the controller is lost. An AP in Flex mode offers network survivability in the event of a loss of connection to the centralized wireless controller.



Authentication Method

To configure a WLAN for FlexConnect mode, select the preferred authentication method from the left panel. The authentication method sets the method by which a client can access the WLAN and decides the level of security on the WLAN.

The options are:

- **Local Web Authentication:** The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the internal web page for authentication.
- **External Web Authentication:** The controller intercepts http(s) traffic and redirects the client to the login page hosted on the external web server for authentication.

- **Central Web Authentication:** The controller redirects all web traffic from the client to the ISE login page for authentication.

WLAN Profile and Policy

After selecting the Authentication method, click on **WLAN** on the left panel to enter the WLAN profile and policy details.

The WLAN profile defines the properties of a WLAN such as Profile Name, Status, WLAN ID, L2 and L3 Security parameters, AAA Server associated with this SSID and other parameters that are specific to a particular WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for a client (with the exception of QoS), which constitute the AP policies as well.

Procedure

-
Step 1	In the Network Name section, enter a WLAN profile name , which is a unique name for your wireless network. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
Step 2	Enter a valid SSID for the WLAN. A valid SSID can be up to 32 characters and can contain spaces. A valid SSID can be ASCII characters from 0 to 31, with leading and trailing spaces. This is the broadcast name for your WLAN.
Step 3	Enter the WLAN ID .
Step 4	In the WLAN Policy section, enter the Policy Profile name . The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
Step 5	Select the VLAN to be associated with the Policy Profile from the drop-down list..
Step 6	To select an existing Policy Profile for the WLAN, click on Select Existing and choose a Policy Profile from the drop-down list..
-

Authentication Configurations

Set up the authentication configurations and filters for the WLAN depending on the method you have chosen. These include the keys, filters, ACLs, and parameter maps as applicable to the selected authentication method.

Procedure

-
Step 1	If you have selected Local Web Authentication as the authentication method, configure the following: a) In the WLAN > Parameter Map tab, configure the parameter map for the WLAN. A parameter map sets parameters that can be applied to subscriber sessions during authentication. 1. In the Global Configuration section, configure the global parameter map. 2. Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address to configure a virtual IP address for redirecting the clients to the login page of the controller. 3. From the Trustpoint drop-down list, select the trustpoint for HTTPS login page. The trustpoint corresponds to the device certificate the controller will use in conjunction with the virtual IP and hostname.

4. In the **WLAN Specific Configuration** section, either create a new parameter map for the WLAN, or select an existing parameter map from the drop-down list.
- b) In the **WLAN > Local Users / Flex** tab, configure a Flex profile and enter the username in the local database to establish a username-based authentication system.
1. In the **Flex Profile** section, enter the name of the new flex profile and the native VLAN ID.
 2. To use an already existing Flex profile, click on **Select Existing** to choose a profile from the drop-down list and enter the native VLAN ID.
 3. In the **Local Users** section, enter the user name to be saved.
 4. From the **Password Encryption** drop-down list, choose if you want the password to be unencrypted or encrypted.
 5. In the **Password** field, specify the password the user must enter to gain access to the switch. The password must be from 1 to 25 characters and can contain embedded spaces.
 6. Click on the + sign to add the credentials to the database. Add as many user credentials as required.

Step 2 If you have selected **External Web Authentication** as the authentication method, configure the following:

- a) In the **WLAN > Parameter Map** tab, configure the parameter map for the WLAN.
1. In the **Global Configuration** section, configure the global parameter map.
 2. Enter an IPv4 or IPv6 address to configure the virtual IP address of the external web authentication login page to which the guest users are redirected.
 3. From the **Trustpoint** drop-down list, select the trustpoint for HTTPS login page. The trustpoint corresponds to the device certificate the controller will use in conjunction with the virtual IP and hostname.
 4. In the **WLAN Specific Configuration** section, either create a new parameter map for the WLAN, or select an existing parameter map from the drop-down list.
 5. To create a new parameter map, enter the parameter-map name.
 6. In the **Redirect URL for login** field, enter the URL of the external server that will host the authentication page for login.
 7. In the **Portal IPv4 Address** field, enter the IPv4 address of the external server to send redirects. If the external server uses an IPv6 address, in the **Portal IPv6 Address** field, enter the IPv6 address of the portal to send redirects.
- b) In the **WLAN > ACL / URL Filter** tab, configure the ACL rules and the URL filter list.
1. In the **Flex Profile** section, enter the name of the new flex profile and the native VLAN ID.
 2. To use an already existing Flex profile, click on **Select Existing** to choose a profile from the drop-down list and enter the native VLAN ID.
 3. In the **Pre Auth ACL** section, enter the name of the ACL.
 4. In the **IP address** field, enter the source IP address and the destination IP address. This will configure the ACL to permit packet transfer from and to the specified IP address. You can add as many IP addresses as required.

5. In the **URL Filter** section, enter a name for the URL Filter list that you are creating.
6. Click on **Add** to add the URLs.
7. Specify the URL to be added to the list and its preference.
8. Use the slider to set the list action to **Permit** or **Deny** the URLs.
9. Click **Save**.

You can add as many URLs to the list as required.

- c) To add a new AAA server to the list, click on **Add New Server** and enter the IP address and server-key.
- d) To use an already configured AAA server list, click on **Use Existing** and select the appropriate list from the drop-down.

Step 3

If you have selected **Central Web Authentication** as the authentication method, configure the following:

- a) In the **WLAN > AAA/ACL** tab, configure the AAA server list and ACL for the WLAN.
- b) In the **AAA Configuration** section, select any of the available AAA servers to add to the WLAN. This will be the server where the clients will get authenticated.
- c) To add a new AAA server to the list, click on **Add New Server** and enter the IP address and server-key.
- d) To use an already configured AAA server list, click on **Use Existing** and select the appropriate list from the drop-down.
- e) In the **Flex Profile** section, enter the name of the new flex profile and the native VLAN ID.
- f) To use an already existing Flex profile, click on **Select Existing** to choose a profile from the drop-down list and enter the native VLAN ID.
- g) In the **ACL List** section, enter the name of the ACL. This ACL will contain the rules regarding URLs that can be accessed by the client and should match the name configured on the RADIUS server.

Tags

To configure tags on the WLAN, click on **Tags** from the left panel.

A Tag's property is defined by the policies associated to it. This property is in turn inherited by an associated client/AP. There are various type of tags, each associated to different profiles.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Site Configuration** section, either enter a site tag to be added, or select an existing site tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. In FlexConnect mode, the site tag contains the AP join profile and the Flex profile.
- Step 2** In the **Policy Tag** section, either enter a policy tag to be added, or select an existing policy tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The policy tag constitutes mapping of the WLAN profile to the policy profile. The WLAN profile defines the wireless characteristics of the WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for the client.
- Step 3** In the **RF Tag** section, either enter an RF tag to be added, or select an existing RF tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The RF tag contains the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz RF profiles.

AP Provisioning

Once the Wireless network and RF characteristics are set up, access points can be added to the local site either using static AP MAC address assignment or by assigning already joined APs to a specific location.

To add tags and associate APs to the WLAN, click on **AP Provisioning** from the left panel.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** The APs already discovered by the controller are listed in the **Provision Joined APs** tab. You can select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
 - Step 2** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.
 - Step 3** To add APs manually, click on the **Pre-provision APs** tab. You can either add individual MAC addresses of the APs or upload a CSV file with the AP MAC addresses listed. The added APs will be listed in the table below.
 - Step 4** Select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
 - Step 5** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.

A table of all the APs and the tags added to them is displayed in the **Selected APs** tab.

- Step 6** Click **Apply**.

This will create a WLAN in FlexConnect mode with the authentication method, authentication filters, tags, and APs configured on it.

Guest CWA Mode

The Guest mode addresses the need to provide internet access to guests in a secure and accountable manner with Central Web Authentication as the security method. The implementation of a wireless guest network uses the enterprise's existing wireless and wired infrastructure to the maximum extent. This solution comprises of two controllers - a Guest Foreign and a Guest Anchor.



Controller Type

To configure a WLAN for Guest CWA mode, select the type of controller configuration you want to set up on the device from the left panel.

The options are:

- **Foreign:** A Foreign is a controller in the WLAN that exists in the enterprise. A client sends a connection request to a Foreign controller to join the WLAN. It is a dedicated guest WLAN or SSID and is

implemented throughout the campus wireless network wherever guest access is required. The Foreign controller manages the anchor controllers.

- **Anchor:** An Anchor is a controller or group of controllers in a WLAN that manage traffic within the network for a guest client. It provides internal security by forwarding the traffic from a guest client to a Cisco Wireless Controller in the demilitarized zone (DMZ) network.

WLAN Profile and Policy

After selecting the Authentication method, click on **WLAN** on the left panel to enter the WLAN profile and policy details.

The WLAN profile defines the properties of a WLAN such as Profile Name, Status, WLAN ID, L2 and L3 Security parameters, AAA Server associated with this SSID and other parameters that are specific to a particular WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for a client (with the exception of QoS), which constitute the AP policies as well.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Network Name** section, enter a **WLAN profile name**, which is a unique name for your wireless network. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 2** Enter a valid **SSID** for the WLAN. A valid SSID can be up to 32 characters and can contain spaces. A valid SSID can be ASCII characters from 0 to 31, with leading and trailing spaces. This is the broadcast name for your WLAN.
 - Step 3** Enter the **WLAN ID**.
 - Step 4** In the **WLAN Policy** section, enter the **Policy Profile name**. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 5** Select the **VLAN** to be associated with the Policy Profile from the drop-down list..
 - Step 6** To select an existing Policy Profile for the WLAN, click on **Select Existing** and choose a **Policy Profile** from the drop-down list..
 - Step 7** If you have selected **Foreign**, in the **Mobility Anchors** section, select the IP address of an available controller to assign it as the mobility anchor for the WLAN. This will extend the configurations on the Foreign controller onto the anchor controllers as well.
-

Authentication Configurations

For the Guest access mode, the authentication method is Central Web Authentication.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **WLAN > AAA/ACL** tab, configure the AAA server list and ACL for the WLAN.
 - Step 2** In the **AAA Configuration** section, select any of the available AAA servers to add to the WLAN. This will be the server where the clients will get authenticated.
 - Step 3** To add a new AAA server to the list, click on **Add New Server** and enter the IP address and server-key.

- Step 4** To use an already configured AAA server list, click on **Use Existing** and select the appropriate list from the drop-down.
- Step 5** In the **ACL List** section, enter the name of the ACL. This ACL will contain the rules regarding URLs that can be accessed by the client and should match the name configured on the RADIUS server.

Tags

To configure tags on the WLAN, click on **Tags** from the left panel.

A Tag's property is defined by the policies associated to it. This property is in turn inherited by an associated client/AP. There are various type of tags, each associated to different profiles.

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Site Configuration** section, either enter a site tag to be added, or select an existing site tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required.
- Step 2** In the **Policy Tag** section, either enter a policy tag to be added, or select an existing policy tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The policy tag constitutes mapping of the WLAN profile to the policy profile. The WLAN profile defines the wireless characteristics of the WLAN. The policy profile defines the network policies and the switching policies for the client.
- Step 3** In the **RF Tag** section, either enter an RF tag to be added, or select an existing RF tag from the drop-down list. You can add as many tags as required. The RF tag contains the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz RF profiles.

AP Provisioning

Once the Wireless network and RF characteristics are set up, access points can be added to the local site either using static AP MAC address assignment or by assigning already joined APs to a specific location.

If you have selected **Foreign**, click on **AP Provisioning** from the left panel to add tags and associate APs to the WLAN.

Procedure

- Step 1** The APs already discovered by the controller are listed in the **Provision Joined APs** tab. You can select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
- Step 2** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.
- Step 3** To add APs manually, click on the **Pre-provision APs** tab. You can either add individual MAC addresses of the APs or upload a CSV file with the AP MAC addresses listed. The added APs will be listed in the table below.
- Step 4** Select the APs to be associated to the WLAN from this table.
- Step 5** To add tags to the selected APs, select the appropriate Policy Tag, Site Tag, and RF Tag from the respective drop-down lists. Click on **Add** to apply the tags.

A table of all the APs and the tags added to them is displayed in the **Selected APs** tab.

Step 6 Click **Apply**.

This will create a WLAN in Guest CWA mode with the authentication method, mobility anchors, authentication filters, tags, and APs configured on it.

Creating WLANs (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** In the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs** page, click **Add**.
The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.
- Step 2** Under the **General** tab and **Profile Name** field, enter the name of the WLAN. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
- Step 3** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Creating WLANs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id [ssid] Example: Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid	Specifies the WLAN name and ID: - For the <i>profile-name</i>, enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. - For the <i>wlan-id</i>, enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. - For the <i>ssid</i>, enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note - You can create SSID using GUI or CLI. However, we recommend that you use CLI to create SSID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		By default, the WLAN is disabled.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Deleting WLANs (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs** page, check the checkbox adjacent to the WLAN you want to delete.
- To delete multiple WLANs, select multiple WLANs checkboxes.
- Step 2** Click **Delete**.
- Step 3** Click **Yes** on the confirmation window to delete the WLAN.
-

Deleting WLANs

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	no wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# no wlan test2	Deletes the WLAN. The arguments are as follows: - The <i>wlan-name</i> is the WLAN profile name. - The <i>wlan-id</i> is the WLAN ID. - The <i>ssid</i> is the WLAN SSID name configured for the WLAN. Note If you delete a WLAN that is part of an AP group, the WLAN is removed from the AP group and from the AP's radio.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Searching WLANs (CLI)

To verify the list of all WLANs configured on the controller, use the following show command:

```
Device# show wlan summary
Number of WLANs: 4
```

WLAN	Profile Name	SSID	VLAN	Status
1	test1	test1-ssid	137	UP
3	test2	test2-ssid	136	UP
2	test3	test3-ssid	1	UP
45	test4	test4-ssid	1	DOWN

To use wild cards and search for WLANs, use the following show command:

```
Device# show wlan summary | include test-wlan-ssid
1    test-wlan          test-wlan-ssid          137    UP
```

Enabling WLANs (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the WLAN name.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, toggle the **Status** button to **ENABLED**.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Enabling WLANs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config) # wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wlan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Disabling WLANs (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	In the WLANs window, click the WLAN name.
Step 3	In the Edit WLAN window, set the Status toggle button as DISABLED .
Step 4	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Disabling WLANs (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config) # wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # shutdown	Disables the WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show wlan summary Example: Device# show wlan summary	Displays the list of all WLANs configured on the device. You can search for the WLAN in the output.

Configuring General WLAN Properties (CLI)

You can configure the following properties:

- Media stream
- Broadcast SSID
- Radio

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN.
Step 4	broadcast-ssid Example: Device(config-wlan)# broadcast-ssid	Broadcasts the SSID for this WLAN.
Step 5	dot11bg 11g Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11bg 11g	Configures the WLAN radio policy for dot11 radios. Also see the section: Configuring a WLAN Radio Policy.
Step 6	media-stream multicast-direct Example:	Enables multicast VLANs on this WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan) # media-stream multicast-direct	
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-wlan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config) # wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	chd Example: Device(config-wlan) # chd	Enables coverage hole detection for this WLAN.
Step 4	ccx aironet-iesupport Example: Device(config-wlan) # ccx aironet-iesupport	Enables support for Aironet IEs for this WLAN.
Step 5	client association limit { <i>clients-per-wlan</i> ap <i>clients-per-ap-per-wlan</i> radio<i>clients-per-ap-radio--per-wlan</i> } Example: Device(config-wlan) # client association limit ap 400	Sets the maximum number of clients, clients per AP, or clients per AP radio that can be configured on a WLAN.
Step 6	ip access-group web <i>acl-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan) # ip access-group web test-acl-name	Configures the IPv4 WLAN web ACL. The variable <i>acl-name</i> specifies the user-defined IPv4 ACL name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	peer-blocking [allow-private-group drop forward-upstream] Example: Device(config-wlan) # peer-blocking drop	Configures peer to peer blocking parameters. The keywords are as follows: • allow-private-group—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the Allow Private Group action. • drop—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the drop action. • forward-upstream—No action is taken and forwards packets to the upstream. Note The forward-upstream option is not supported for Flex local switching. Traffic is dropped even if this option is configured. Also, peer to peer blocking for local switching SSIDs are available only for the clients on the same AP.
Step 8	channel-scan { defer-priority { 0-7 } defer-time { 0 - 6000 }} Example: Device(config-wlan) # channel-scan defer-priority 6	Sets the channel scan defer priority and defer time. The arguments are as follows: • defer-priority—Specifies the priority markings for packets that can defer off-channel scanning. The range is from 0 to 7. The default is 3. • defer-time—Deferral time in milliseconds. The range is from 0 to 6000. The default is 100.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wlan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Advanced WLAN Properties (GUI)

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Tags & Profiles** > **WLANs** .
- Step 2** Click **Add**.

- Step 3** Under the **Advanced** tab, check the **Coverage Hole Detection** check box.
- Step 4** Check the **Aironet IE** check box to enable Aironet IE on the WLAN.
- Step 5** Check the **Diagnostic Channel** check box to enable diagnostic channel on the WLAN.
- Step 6** From the **P2P Blocking Action** drop-down list, choose the required value.
- Step 7** Set the **Multicast Buffer** toggle button as enabled or disabled.
- Step 8** Check the **Media Stream Multicast-Direct** check box to enable the feature.
- Step 9** In the **Max Client Connections** section, specify the maximum number of client connections for the following:
- In the **Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 10000.
 - In the **Per AP Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 400.
 - In the **Per AP Radio Per WLAN** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 200.
- Step 10** In the **11v BSS Transition Support** section, perform the following configuration tasks:
- a) Check the BSS Transition check box to enable 802.11v BSS Transition support.
 - b) In the **Disassociation Imminent** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 3000.
 - c) In the **Optimized Roaming Disassociation Timer** field, enter a value. The valid range is between 0 and 40.
 - d) Select the check box to enable the following:
 - BSS Max Idle Service
 - BSS Max Idle Protected
 - Disassociation Imminent Service
 - Directed Multicast Service
 - Universal Admin
 - Load Balance
 - Band Select
 - IP Source Guard
- Step 11** In the **11ax** section, perform the following configuration tasks:
- a) Select the check box to enable the following:
 - Check the **Enable 11ax** checkbox to enable 802.11ax operation status on the WLAN.
 - Check the **Downlink OFDMA** and **Uplink OFDMA** check boxes to enable downlink and uplink connections that use OFDMA.

Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA) is a channel access mechanism that assures contention-free transmission to multiple clients in both the downlink (DL) and uplink (UL) within a respective single transmit opportunity.
 - Check the **Downlink MU-MIMO** and **Uplink MU-MIMO** check boxes to enable downlink and uplink connections that use MU-MIMO.

With Multiuser MIMO (MU-MIMO), an AP can use its antenna resources to transmit multiple frames to different clients, all at the same time and over the same frequency spectrum.

- Enable the target wake up time configuration on the WLAN by checking the **BSS Target Wake Up Time** checkbox.

Target wake up time allows an AP to manage activity in the Wi-Fi network to minimize medium contention between stations, and to reduce the required amount of time that a station in the power-save mode needs to be awake. This is achieved by allocating stations to operate at non-overlapping times, and/or frequencies, and concentrate the frame exchanges in predefined service periods.

- Check the **Universal Admin** check box to enable Universal Admin support for the WLAN.
 - Enable OKC on the WLAN by checking the **OKC** check box. Opportunistic Key Caching (OKC) allows the wireless client and the WLAN infrastructure to cache only one Pairwise Master Key (PMK) for the lifetime of the client association with this WLAN, even when roaming between multiple APs. This is enabled by default.
 - Check the **Load Balance** check box to enable Aggressive Client Load Balancing. This allows lightweight access points to load balance wireless clients across access points.
 - Check the **Band Select** check box to enable band selection for the WLAN. Band selection enables client radios that are capable of dual-band (2.4 and 5-GHz) operations to move to a less congested 5-GHz access point. The 2.4-GHz band is often congested with interference from other electronic devices as well as co-channel interference from other access points. Band selection helps prevent these sources of interference and improve overall network performance.
 - Enable IP Source Guard on the WLAN by checking the **IP Source Guard** check box. IP Source Guard (IPSG) is a Layer 2 security feature that prevents the wireless controller from forwarding the packets with source IP addresses that are not known to it.
- b) From the **WMM Policy** drop-down list, choose the policy as **Allowed**, **Disabled**, or **Required**. By default, the WMM policy is **Allowed**. Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) is used to prioritize different types of traffic.
- **Disabled**: Disables WMM on the WLAN.
 - **Required**: Requires client devices to use WMM. Devices that do not support WMM cannot join the WLAN.
 - **Allowed**: Devices that cannot support WMM can join the WLAN but will not benefit from the 802.11n rates.
- c) From the **mDNS** drop-down list, choose **Bridging**, **Gateway**, or **Drop**. Multicast DNS (mDNS) provides the ability to perform DNS-like operations on the local link in the absence of any conventional Unicast DNS server.
- **Bridging**: Packets with mDNS multicast IP and multicast mac will be sent on multicast CAPWAP tunnel.
 - **Gateway**: All ingress mDNS packets received from the wired network on a L3 interface (SVI or physical) would be intercepted by the Controller software and processed.
 - **Drop**: All ingress mDNS packets will be dropped.

Step 12 In the **Off Channel Scanning Defer** section, choose the appropriate **Defer Priority** values and then specify the required Scan Defer Time value in milliseconds.

Step 13 In the **Assisted Roaming (11k)** section, choose the appropriate status for the following:

- Prediction Optimization

- Neighbor List
- Dual-Band Neighbor List

- Step 14** In the **DTIM Period (in beacon intervals)** section, specify a value for 802.11a/n and 802.11b/g/n radios. The valid range is from 1 to 255.
- Step 15** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring WLAN Radio Policy (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** On the **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs** page, click **Add** to create WLANs.
- Step 2** In the **General** tab, enter a **Profile Name**, which is a unique name of the your wireless network. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
- Step 3** Enter a valid **SSID** for the WLAN.
A valid SSID can be up to 32 characters and can contain spaces. A valid SSID can be ASCII characters from 0 to 31, with leading and trailing spaces. This is the broadcast name for your WLAN.
- Step 4** Enter the **WLAN ID**. The valid range for the different models are listed below:
- | Model | WLAN ID Range |
|--|---------------|
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller | 1-4096 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller | 1-4096 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller | 1-4096 |
| Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller | 1-4096 |
| Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller for an AP | 1-16 |
- Step 5** Set the **WLAN Status** to Enabled.
- Step 6** To broadcast the SSID of the WLAN, set the status of Broadcast SSID to enabled. By default, this is disabled.
- Step 7** In the **Radio Policy** section, enable the desired radio band for the WLAN.
- 2.4ghz – Configures the policy on the 2.4-GHz radio.
 - 5ghz – Configures the policy on the 5-GHz radio.
- Step 8** If you enable the 5ghz radio band, select the radio slot to broadcast the WLAN on. The options are slot 0, slot 1, and slot 2. You can select multiple slots for the WLAN.
- Step 9** From the 802.11b/g Policy drop-down list, choose the radio policy from the following options:
- 802.11g only

- 802.11b/g

Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring a WLAN Radio Policy (CLI)

Configure WLAN radio policy using commands.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Disables the WLAN.
Step 4	radio policy dot11 {5ghz 24ghz 6ghz } Example: Device(config-wlan)# radio policy dot11 5ghz	Enables the corresponding radio policy on the WLAN. The options are: • 2.4ghz: Configures the WLAN on 2.4-GHz radio only. • 5ghz: Configures the WLAN on 5-GHz radio only. • 6ghz: Configures the WLAN on 6-GHz radio only.
Step 5	slot {0 1 2} Example: Device(config-wlan-radio-5ghz)# slot 1	Configures the WLAN radio policy on the slot that you choose. The options are: • 0: Configures the WLAN on the 5GHz radio with radio slot 0 (if using 5GHz). • 1: Configures the WLAN on the 5GHz radio with radio slot 1. • 2: Configures the WLAN on the 5GHz radio with radio slot 2 (if present).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying WLAN Properties (CLI)

To verify the WLAN properties based on the WLAN ID, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan id wlan-id
```

To verify the WLAN properties based on the WLAN name, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan name wlan-name
```

To verify the WLAN properties of all the configured WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan all
```

To verify the summary of all WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show wlan summary
```

To verify the running configuration of a WLAN based on the WLAN name, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show running-config wlan wlan-name
```

To verify the running configuration of all WLANs, use the following `show` command:

```
Device# show running-config wlan
```

Verifying WLAN-VLAN Information for an AP

To verify the operational WLAN-VLAN mappings per AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name test wlan wlan
```

```
Policy tag mapping
```

```
-----
WLAN Profile Name Name Policy      VLAN    Flex Central Switching  IPv4 ACL  IPv6 ACL
-----
jey_cwa          pp-local-1    46      Enabled                 jey_acl1  Not Configured
swaguest         pp-local-1    46      Enabled                 jey_acl1  Not Configured
```

Verifying a WLAN Radio Policy

To verify the WLAN radio policy configuration status, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 6 | sec Radio Bands
wpa3 enabled wlan:
Configured Radio Bands: All
Operational State of Radio Bands : All Bands Operational

Configured Radio Bands : All
Operational State of Radio Bands
    2.4ghz                : UP
    5ghz                  : UP
    6ghz                  : DOWN (Required config: Disable WPA2 and Enable WPA3 &
dot11ax)

wpa3 not enabled wlan :
Configured Radio Bands : All
Operational State of Radio Bands
    2.4ghz : UP
    5ghz   : UP

5ghz specify slot is enabled :
Configured Radio Bands
    5ghz : Enabled
    Slot 0 : Enabled
    Slot 1 : Disabled
    Slot 2 : Disabled

Operational State of Radio Bands
    5ghz : UP
    Slot 0 : Enabled
    Slot 1 : Disabled
    Slot 2 : Disabled
```




CHAPTER 176

WLAN Security

- [Information About WPA1 and WPA2, on page 1895](#)
- [Information About AAA Override, on page 1896](#)
- [Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security, on page 1899](#)
- [Restrictions for WPA2 and WP3, on page 1900](#)
- [Feature History for Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN, on page 1900](#)
- [Information About Fallback for AAA- Overridden VLAN, on page 1901](#)
- [Configuring Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN \(CLI\), on page 1902](#)
- [Verifying Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN, on page 1902](#)
- [How to Configure WLAN Security, on page 1903](#)

Information About WPA1 and WPA2

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA or WPA1) and WPA2 are standards-based security solutions from the Wi-Fi Alliance that provide data protection and access control for wireless LAN systems. WPA1 is compatible with the IEEE 802.11i standard but was implemented prior to the standard's ratification; WPA2 is the Wi-Fi Alliance's implementation of the ratified IEEE 802.11i standard.

By default, WPA1 uses Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) and Message Integrity Check (MIC) for data protection while WPA2 uses the stronger Advanced Encryption Standard encryption algorithm using Counter Mode with Cipher Block Chaining Message Authentication Code Protocol (AES-CCMP). By default, both WPA1 and WPA2 use the 802.1X for authenticated key management. However, the following options are also available:

- **PSK**—When you choose PSK (also known as WPA preshared key or WPA passphrase), you need to configure a preshared key (or a passphrase). This key is used as the Pairwise Master Key (PMK) between clients and authentication server.
- **Cisco Centralized Key Management** uses a fast rekeying technique that enables clients to roam from one access point to another without going through the controller, typically in under 150 milliseconds (ms). Cisco Centralized Key Management reduces the time required by the client to mutually authenticate with the new access point and derive a new session key during reassociation. Cisco Centralized Key Management fast secure roaming ensures that there is no perceptible delay in time-sensitive applications, such as wireless Voice over IP (VoIP), Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP), or Citrix-based solutions. Cisco Centralized Key Management is a CCXv4-compliant feature. If Cisco Centralized Key Management is selected, only Cisco Centralized Key Management clients are supported.

When Cisco Centralized Key Management is enabled, the behavior of access points differs from the controller's for fast roaming in the following ways:

- If an association request sent by a client has Cisco Centralized Key Management enabled in a Robust Secure Network Information Element (RSN IE) but Cisco Centralized Key Management IE is not encoded and only PMKID is encoded in RSN IE, then the controller does not do a full authentication. Instead, the controller validates the PMKID and does a four-way handshake.
- If an association request sent by a client has Cisco Centralized Key Management enabled in RSN IE and Cisco Centralized Key Management IE is encoded and only PMKID is present in the RSN IE, then the AP does a full authentication. The access point does not use PMKID sent with the association request when Cisco Centralized Key Management is enabled in RSN IE.
- 802.1X+Cisco Centralized Key Management—During normal operation, 802.1X-enabled clients mutually authenticate with a new access point by performing a complete 802.1X authentication, including communication with the main RADIUS server. However, when you configure your WLAN for 802.1X and Cisco Centralized Key Management fast secure roaming, Cisco Centralized Key Management-enabled clients securely roam from one access point to another without the need to reauthenticate to the RADIUS server. 802.1X+Cisco Centralized Key Management is considered as an optional Cisco Centralized Key Management because both Cisco Centralized Key Management and non-Cisco Centralized Key Management clients are supported when this option is selected.

On a single WLAN, you can allow WPA1, WPA2, and 802.1X/PSK/Cisco Centralized Key Management/802.1X+Cisco Centralized Key Management clients to join. All of the access points on such a WLAN advertise WPA1, WPA2, and 802.1X/PSK/Cisco Centralized Key Management/ 802.1X+Cisco Centralized Key Management information elements in their beacons and probe responses. When you enable WPA1 and/or WPA2, you can also enable one or two ciphers, or cryptographic algorithms, designed to protect data traffic. Specifically, you can enable AES and/or TKIP data encryption for WPA1 and/or WPA2. TKIP is the default value for WPA1, and AES is the default value for WPA2.

Information About AAA Override

The AAA Override option of a WLAN enables you to configure the WLAN for identity networking. It enables you to apply VLAN tagging, Quality of Service (QoS), and Access Control Lists (ACLs) to individual clients based on the returned RADIUS attributes from the AAA server.

Configuring AAA Override

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example:	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-wgb	
Step 3	aaa-override Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override	Configures AAA policy override. Note If VLAN is not pushed from the RADIUS server, the VLAN Override feature can be disabled from the RADIUS server.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Information About VLAN Override

The VLAN override requires the AAA Override to be enabled under the Policy Profile.

You can assign VLAN from the RADIUS server in two ways:

- Using IEFT RADIUS attributes 64, 65, and 81—The attribute 81 can be a VLAN ID, VLAN name, or VLAN group name. Both VLAN name and VLAN group are supported. Therefore, VLAN ID does not need to be predetermined on RADIUS.

The RADIUS user attributes used for the VLAN ID assignment are:

- 64 (Tunnel-Type)—Must be set to VLAN (Integer = 13).
- 65 (Tunnel-Medium-Type)—Must be set to 802 (Integer = 6).
- 81 (Tunnel-Private-Group-ID)—Must be set to the corresponding VLAN ID, VLAN name, or VLAN group name.
- Using Aire-Interface-Name attribute—Use this attribute to assign a successfully authenticated user to a VLAN interface name (or VLAN ID) as per the user configuration. When you use this attribute, the VLAN name is returned as a string.

The VLAN ID is 12-bits, and takes a value between 1 and 4094, inclusive. Because the Tunnel-Private-Group-ID is of type string, as defined in [RFC2868](#) for use with IEEE 802.1X, the VLAN ID integer value is encoded as a string. When these tunnel attributes are sent, it is necessary to fill in the Tag field.

Configuring Override VLAN for Central Switching

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# vlan 20	Defines VLANs that can be pushed from the RADIUS server. Note The valid VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4094.
Step 3	name <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-vlan)# name vlan_ascii	(Optional) Changes the default name of the VLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-vlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Override VLAN for Local Switching

If the VLAN name ID mapping under flex profile is newly added or updated, then the WLAN policy profiles having a matching VLAN name configured, must be shut and unshut. This is to ensure that the updated WLAN-VLAN mapping is pushed to the APs and the client receives the IP address from the intended VLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>flex_profile_name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile flex rr-xyz-flex-profile	Configures a Flex profile.
Step 3	vlan-name <i>vlan_name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-name vlan_123	Defines VLANs that can be pushed from the RADIUS server.
Step 4	vlan-id <i>vlan_id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-vlan)# vlan-id 23	Configures VLAN ID. The valid VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4096.
Step 5	end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-vlan)# end	Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

VLAN Override on Layer 3 Web Authentication

The VLAN override can be pushed from the RADIUS server during Layer 3 authentication.

When a client gets connected to the controller and authenticated using the RADIUS server for Local Web Authentication (LWA) and Central Web Authentication (CWA), the RADIUS server pushes back in access-accept the new VLAN. If the RADIUS server pushes back a new VLAN in the access-accept, the client goes back to IP learn state on the controller. The controller de-associates the client while maintaining the client state for 30 seconds. Once the client re-associates, the client lands immediately to the new VLAN and re-triggers a new DHCP request. The client then learns a new IP and moves to the RUN state on the controller.

The VLAN Override on Layer 3 Web authentication supports the following:

- Local clients
- Anchored clients
- FlexConnect central authentication, central or local switching

Verifying VLAN Override on Layer 3 Web Authentication

To display the VLAN override after L3 authentication, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac <mac> detail
[...]
```

```
Vlan Override after L3 Auth: True
```

To display the statistics about client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
[...]
```

Total L3 VLAN Override vlan change received	: 1
Total L3 VLAN Override disassociations sent	: 1
Total L3 VLAN Override re-associations received	: 1
Total L3 VLAN Override successful VLAN change	: 1
[...]	
L3 VLAN Override connection timeout	: 0

Prerequisites for Layer 2 Security

WLANs with the same SSID must have unique Layer 2 security policies so that clients can make a WLAN selection based on the information advertised in beacon and probe responses. The available Layer 2 security policies are as follows:

- None (open WLAN)
- WPA+WPA2

**Note**

- Although WPA and WPA2 cannot be used by multiple WLANs with the same SSID, you can configure two WLANs with the same SSID with WPA/TKIP with PSK and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA)/Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) with 802.1X, or with WPA/TKIP with 802.1X or WPA/AES with 802.1X.
- A WLAN configured with TKIP support will not be enabled on an RM3000AC module.

-
- Static WEP (not supported on Wave 2 APs)

Restrictions for WPA2 and WPA3

- You cannot enable security ft or ft-adaptive without enabling WPA2 or WPA3.
- You cannot enable ft-dot1x or ft-psk without enabling WPA2 or WPA3.
- You cannot enable 802.1x or PSK simultaneously with SHA256 key derivation type without enabling WPA2 or WPA3 on a WLAN.
- You cannot configure PMF on WPA1 WLAN without WPA2 security.
- IOS APs do not support WPA3.

Feature History for Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which it is introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 132: Feature History for Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN	In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.5.1 and earlier releases, if there is a network with a single AAA server dictating policies that need to be applied to a client; and this client moves across different sites that have different policy definitions. If these policy definitions are not defined on the site to which the client needs to connect, the client does not get access to the network. For example, if a client is to be given access in VLAN 1, and VLAN 1 is not defined on the site to which the client connects, the client is excluded and does not get any access to the network. The Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN feature is introduced to allow fallback to policy profile VLAN when the overridden VLAN is not available.

Information About Fallback for AAA- Overridden VLAN

From Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, fallback for AAA-overridden VLAN or VLAN groups is supported on the wireless policy profile.

A new command is introduced in the wireless policy profile to configure the Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN feature. In Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, you cannot configure the Fallback for AAA Overridden VLAN feature using the GUI.

Central Switching and FlexConnect Mode Scenarios

If fallback is enabled for AAA-overridden VLAN or VLAN groups, you might encounter the following scenarios in Central Switching and FlexConnect modes.

Central Switching:

If the AAA server gives a VLAN policy to a client, and the VLAN ID or the VLAN name is defined in the controller, the client is assigned to the VLAN specified by the AAA server. If the VLAN is not defined in the controller, the client is assigned to a VLAN that is configured on the wireless policy profile.

If a VLAN group is configured on a wireless policy profile, the VLAN, as computed by the existing VLAN group logic, is assigned to the client. In the VLAN group case, fallback to policy profile VLAN occurs only when all the VLANs in the group are not configured in the controller, or, if the VLAN group is not defined in the controller.

If both, AAA-overridden VLAN and the VLAN configured on the wireless policy profile are not defined in the controller, the configuration is termed as invalid, and the client is excluded.

If a VLAN policy is not configured, or, if the default wireless policy profile is configured, the client is assigned a VLAN from the management VLAN.

FlexConnect Mode:

If the AAA server assigns a VLAN policy to a client configured in the FlexConnect profile, the VLAN is resolved by the controller. If the VLAN is not configured on the FlexConnect profile, the behavior of the

VLAN name and the VLAN ID is made consistent, with the help of the fallback feature, and the client receives the IP address from the wireless policy profile configuration.

The following points summarize the FlexConnect mode behavior:

- If AAA VLAN is defined in FlexConnect profile, the client is assigned the AAA VLAN.
- If AAA VLAN is not defined in the FlexConnect profile, FlexConnect VLAN Central Switching is configured, and VLAN is defined in the controller, and the client is assigned AAA VLAN and is centrally switched.
- If AAA VLAN is not defined in the FlexConnect profile, FlexConnect VLAN Central Switching is configured, the VLAN is not defined in the controller, and the client is assigned a VLAN from the wireless policy profile.
- If AAA VLAN is not defined in the FlexConnect profile, and FlexConnect VLAN Central Switching is not configured, the client is assigned a VLAN from the wireless policy profile.

Configuring Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy wlan-policy-profile-name	Configures the WLAN policy profile. Enters the wireless policy profile configuration mode.
Step 3	aaa-override vlan fallback Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# aaa-override vlan fallback	Allows fallback to the policy profile VLAN when the overridden VLAN is not available.

Verifying Fallback for AAA-Overridden VLAN

To verify if the fallback for AAA-overridden VLAN is enabled, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile | sec AAA Policy Params
AAA Policy Params
  AAA Override           : DISABLED
  NAC                    : DISABLED
  AAA Policy name        : default-aaa-policy
  AAA Vlan Fallback      : ENABLED
  
```


How to Configure WLAN Security

Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	On the WLANs page, click the name of the WLAN.
Step 3	In the Edit WLAN window, click the Security tab.
Step 4	From the Layer 2 Security Mode drop-down list, select the Static WEP option.
Step 5	(Optional) Check the Shared Key Authentication check box to set the authentication type as shared. By leaving the check box unchecked, the authentication type is set to open.
Step 6	Set the Key Size as either 40 bits or 104 bits . • 40 bits: The keys with 40-bit encryption must contain 5 ASCII text characters or 10 hexadecimal characters. • 104 bits: The keys with 104-bit encryption must contain 13 ASCII text characters or 26 hexadecimal characters.
Step 7	Set the appropriate Key Index ; you can choose between 1 to 4.
Step 8	Set the Key Format as either ASCII or Hex .
Step 9	Enter a valid Encryption Key . • 40 bits: The keys with 40-bit encryption must contain 5 ASCII text characters or 10 hexadecimal characters. • 104 bits: The keys with 104-bit encryption must contain 13 ASCII text characters or 26 hexadecimal characters.
Step 10	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Static WEP Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)

Before you begin

You must have administrator privileges.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device# wlan test4 1 test4	Enters the WLAN configuration submode. <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN. <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The range is 1 to 512. <i>SSID_Name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 4	no security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft	Disables 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security wpa{akm wpa1 wpa2} Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa1 ciphers tkip	Disables the WPA/WPA2 support for a WLAN.
Step 6	security static-wep-key [authentication {open shared}] Example: Device(config-wlan)# security static-wep-key authentication open	The keywords are as follows: • static-wep-key—Configures Static WEP Key authentication. • authentication—Specifies the authentication type you can set. The values are open and shared.
Step 7	security static-wep-key [encryption {104 40} {ascii hex} [0 8]] Example: Device(config-wlan)# security static-wep-key encryption 104 ascii 0 1234567890123 1	The keywords are as follows: • static-wep-key—Configures Static WEP Key authentication. • encryption—Specifies the encryption type that you can set. The valid values are 104 and 40. 40-bit keys must contain 5 ASCII text characters or 10 hexadecimal characters. 104-bit keys must contain 13 ASCII text characters or 26 hexadecimal characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• ascii—Specifies the key format as ASCII. • hex—Specifies the key format as HEX.
Step 8	end Example: Device (config) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Tags and Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to add a new WLAN Profile or click the one you want to edit.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click **Security > Layer2**.
- Step 4** From **Layer 2 Security Mode** drop-down menu, select **WPA + WPA2**.
- Step 5** Configure the security parameters and then click **Save and Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WPA + WPA2 Layer 2 Security Parameters (CLI)



-
- Note** The default values for security policy WPA2 are:
- Encryption is AES.
 - Authentication Key Management (AKM) is dot1x.
-

Before you begin

You must have administrator privileges.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name	Enters the WLAN configuration submode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device# wlan test4 1 test4	• <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The range is 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i> is the SSID that contains 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	security wpa {akm wpa1 wpa2} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa	Enables WPA or WPA2 support for WLAN.
Step 4	security wpa wpa1 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa1	Enables WPA.
Step 5	security wpa wpa1 ciphers [aes tkip] Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa1 ciphers aes	Specifies the WPA1 cipher. Choose one of the following encryption types: • aes—Specifies WPA/AES support. • tkip—Specifies WPA/TKIP support. The default values are TKIP for WPA1 and AES for WPA2. Note You can enable or disable TKIP encryption only using the CLI. Configuring TKIP encryption is not supported in GUI. When you have VLAN configuration on WGB, you need to configure the encryption cipher mode and keys for a particular VLAN, for example, encryption vlan 80 mode ciphers tkip. Then, you need to configure the encryption cipher mode globally on the multicast interface by entering the following command: encryption mode ciphers tkip.
Step 6	security wpa akm {cckm dot1x dot1x-sha256 ft psk psk-sha256} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk-sha256	Enable or disable Cisco Centralized Key Management, 802.1x, 802.1x with SHA256 key derivation type, Fast Transition, PSK or PSK with SHA256 key derivation type. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		- You cannot enable 802.1x and PSK with SHA256 key derivation type simultaneously. - When you configure Cisco Centralized Key Management SSID, you must enable the ccx aironet-iesupport for Cisco Centralized Key Management to work. - WPA3 Enterprise dot1x-sha256 is supported only in local mode.
Step 7	security wpa psk set-key {ascii hex} {0 8} password Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 test	Enter this command to specify a preshared key, if you have enabled PSK. WPA preshared keys must contain 8 to 63 ASCII text characters or 64 hexadecimal characters.
Step 8	security wpa akm ft {dot1x psk sae} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft psk	Enable or disable authentication key management suite for fast transition. Note You can now choose between PSK and fast transition PSK as the AKM suite.
Step 9	security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2	Enables WPA2.
Step 10	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 Example:	Configure WPA2 cipher. aes—Specifies WPA/AES support.
Step 11	show wireless pmk-cache	Displays the remaining time before the PMK cache lifetime timer expires. If you have enabled WPA2 with 802.1X authenticated key management or WPA1 or WPA2 with Cisco Centralized Key Management authenticated key management, the PMK cache lifetime timer is used to trigger reauthentication with the client when necessary. The timer is based on the timeout value received from the AAA server or the WLAN session timeout setting. If you configure 802.1x with session timeout between 0 and 299, Pairwise Master Key

	Command or Action	Purpose
		(PMK) cache is created with a timer of 1 day 84600 seconds. Note • The command will show VLAN ID with VLAN pooling feature in VLAN-Override field. • Sticky key caching (SKC) is not supported.



Remote LANs

- [Information About Remote LANs, on page 1909](#)
- [Configuring Remote LANs \(RLANs\), on page 1911](#)
- [Information About RLAN Authentication Fallback, on page 1924](#)
- [Configuring RLAN Authentication Fallback \(CLI\), on page 1924](#)
- [Modifying 802.1X EAP Timers for RLAN Clients, on page 1924](#)
- [Verifying RLAN Authentication Fallback, on page 1926](#)

Information About Remote LANs

A Remote LAN (RLAN) is used for authenticating wired clients using the controller. Once the wired client successfully joins the controller, the LAN ports switch the traffic between central or local switching modes. The traffic from wired client is treated as wireless client traffic.

The RLAN in Access Point (AP) sends the authentication request to authenticate the wired client. The authentication of wired client in RLAN is similar to the central authenticated wireless client.

For information about APs that support this feature see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/access_point/feature-matrix/ap-feature-matrix.html.

Information About Ethernet (AUX) Port

The second Ethernet port in Cisco Aironet 1850, 2800, and 3800 Series APs is used as a link aggregation (LAG) port, by default. It is possible to use this LAG port as an RLAN port when LAG is disabled.

The following APs use LAG port as an RLAN port:

- 1852E
- 1852I
- 2802E
- 2802I
- 3802E
- 3802I
- 3802P

- 4802

Limitation for RLAN

- RLAN supports only a maximum of four wired clients regardless of the AP model.
- RLAN support with Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) is not available.
- In the Cisco Catalyst 9105 AXW AP operating in OEAP mode, only LAN1 and LAN2 are configured for RLAN, while LAN3 is set as a local-only port and is enabled by default. Consequently, even if LAN3 is disabled from the controller, the payload processing is skipped since LAN3 is designated as a local-only port in OEAP mode.

Limitations for Using AUX port in Cisco 2700 Access Points

- RLAN supports AUX port and non-native VLAN for this port.
- Local mode supports wired client traffic on central switch. Whereas, FlexConnect mode does not support central switch.
- FlexConnect mode supports wired client traffic on local switch and not on central switch.
- AUX port cannot be used as a trunk port. Even switches or bridges cannot be added behind the port.
- AUX port does not support dot1x.

Role of Controller

- The controller acts as an authenticator, and Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) over LAN (EAPOL) messages from the wired client reaching the controller through an AP.
- The controller communicates with the configured Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) server.
- The controller configures the LAN ports for an AP and pushes them to the corresponding AP.



Note

- The RLAN feature is supported on Fabric.
- RLAN is supported in APs that have more than one Ethernet port.
- In RLAN (local mode - local switching mode), if you want to use the AP native VLAN for client IP, the VLAN should be configured as either **no vlan** or **vlan 1** in the RLAN policy profile. For example, if the native VLAN ID is 80, do not use the number 80 in the RLAN policy profile. Also, do not use VLAN name *VLANxxxx* to configure VLAN in the RLAN policy profile.

When a new client is connected to an AP, the client's details are available in the controller initially. However, after the CAPWAP DOWN/UP state, the client details are no longer listed in the controller.
- APs in local mode central switching do not support VLAN tagged traffic from RLAN clients, and the traffic gets dropped.
- The VLAN name (without any numerals) configured in remote-lan-policy does not provide the mapped VLAN ID for central switching.

Configuring Remote LANs (RLANs)

Enabling or Disabling all RLANs

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap remote-lan shutdown Example: Device(config)# <code>[no] ap remote-lan shutdown</code>	Enables or disables all RLANs.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Creating RLAN Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Remote LAN .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter the Profile Name , RLAN ID and enable or disable the Status toggle button. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Creating RLAN Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	ap remote-lan profile-name <i>remote-lan-profile-name rlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan profile-name rlan_profile_name 3	Configures remote LAN profile. • <i>remote-lan-profile</i>—Is the remote LAN profile name. Range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>rlan-id</i>—Is the remote LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 128. Note You can create a maximum of 128 RLANs. You cannot use the <i>rlan-id</i> of an existing RLAN while creating another RLAN. Both RLAN and WLAN profile cannot have the same names. Similarly, RLAN and WLAN policy profile cannot have the same names.

Configuring RLAN Profile Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Remote LAN**.
- Step 2** On the **RLAN Profile** tab, click **Add**.
The **Add RLAN Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab:
- Enter a **Name** and **RLAN ID** for the RLAN profile. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Set the number of client connections per RLAN in the **Client Association Limit** field.
The range depends on the maximum number of clients supported by the platform.
 - To enable the profile, set the status as **Enable**.
- Step 4** In the **Security > Layer2** tab
- To enable 802.1x for an RLAN, set the **802.1x** status as **Enabled**.

Note
You can activate either web or 802.1x authentication list at a time.
 - Choose the authorization list name from the **MAC Filtering** drop-down list.
 - Choose the 802.1x for an RLAN authentication list name from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.
- Step 5** In the **Security > Layer3** tab
- To enable web authentication for an RLAN, set the **Web Auth** status as **Enabled**.

Note

You can activate either web or 802.1x authentication list at a time.

- b) Choose the web authentication parameter map from the **Webauth Parameter Map** drop-down list.
- c) Choose the web authentication list name from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.

Step 6 In the **Security > AAA** tab

- a) Set the **Local EAP Authentication** to enabled. Also, choose the required **EAP Profile Name** from the drop-down list.

Step 7 Save the configuration.

Configuring RLAN Profile Parameters (CLI)

Before you begin

The configurations in this section are not mandatory for an RLAN profile.

In case of central switching mode, you need to configure both central switching and central DHCP.



Note The fabric profile configuration is required only for fabric RLAN support.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	client association limit <i>client-connections</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # client association limit 1	Configures client connections per RLAN. <i>client-connections</i> —Is the maximum client connections per RLAN. Range is from 0 to 10000. 0 refers to unlimited.
Step 2	fabric-profile <i>fabric-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # fabric-profile sample-fabric-profile-name	Configures fabric profile for RLAN.
Step 3	ip access-group web <i>IPv4-acl-name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # ip access-group web acl_name	Configures RLAN IP configuration commands. <i>IPv4-acl-name</i> —Refers to the IPv4 ACL name or ID.
Step 4	local-auth <i>profile name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # local-auth profile_name	Sets EAP Profile on an RLAN. <i>profile name</i> —Is the EAP profile on an RLAN.
Step 5	mac-filtering <i>mac-filter-name</i>	Sets MAC filtering support on an RLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # mac-filtering mac_filter	<i>mac-filter-name</i> —Is the authorization list name.
Step 6	security dot1x authentication-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # security dot1x authentication-list dot1_auth_list	Configures 802.1X for an RLAN. <i>list-name</i> —Is the authentication list name.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list <i>list-name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # security web-auth authentication-list web_auth_list	Configures web authentication for an RLAN. <i>list-name</i> —Is the authentication list name. Note You can activate either web or dot1x authentication list at a time.
Step 8	[no] shutdown Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # shutdown	Enables or disables RLAN profile.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-remote-lan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Creating RLAN Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Remote LAN > RLAN Policy**
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Policy Name**.
 - Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating RLAN Policy Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	ap remote-lan-policy policy-name profile name Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan-policy policy-name rlan_policy_prof_name	Configures RLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.

Configuring RLAN Policy Profile Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Remote LAN**.
- Step 2** On the **Remote LAN** page, click **RLAN Policy** tab.
- Step 3** On the **RLAN Policy** page, click the name of the **Policy** or click **Add** to create a new one.
The **Add/Edit RLAN Policy** window is displayed.
- Step 4** In the **General** tab:
- Enter a **Name** and **Description** for the policy profile.
 - Set **Central Authentication** to **Enabled** state.
 - Set **Central DHCP** to **Enabled** state.
 - Set the **PoE** check box to enable or disable state.
 - To enable the policy, set the status as **Enable**.
- Step 5** In the **Access Policies** Tab, choose the VLAN name or number from the **VLAN** drop-down list.
- Note**
When central switching is disabled, the VLAN in the RLAN policy cannot be configured as the AP's native VLAN. To use the AP's native VLAN for client IP, the VLAN should be configured as either **no vlan** or **vlan 1** in the RLAN policy profile.
- Step 6** From the **Host Mode** drop-down list, choose the **Host Mode** for the remote-LAN802.1x from the following options:
- Single-Host Mode—Is the default host mode. In this mode, the switch port allows only a single host to be authenticated and passes traffic one by one.
 - Multi-Host Mode—The first device to authenticate opens up to the switch port, so that all other devices can use the port. You need not authenticate other devices independently, if the authenticated device becomes authorized the switch port is closed.
 - Multi-Domain Mode—The authenticator allows one host from the data domain and another from the voice domain. This is a typical configuration on switch ports with IP phones connected.
- Note**
- For an RLAN profile with open-auth configuration, you must map the RLAN-policy with single host mode. Mapping RLAN-policy with multi-host or multi-domain mode is not supported.

- The controller does not assign data versus voice VLAN, based on traffic. RLAN only supports multiple VLAN assignments through 802.1x AAA override. You must create data and voice VLANs and then assign these VLANs to respective clients, based on their authentication through the 802.1x AAA override.

Step 7 Configure IPv6 ACL or Flexible NetFlow.

- Under the **Access Policies > Remote LAN ACL** section, choose the **IPv6 ACL** from the drop-down list.
- Under the **Access Policies > AVC > Flow Monitor IPv6** section, check the **Egress Status** and **Ingress Status** check boxes and choose the policies from the drop-down lists.

Step 8 Click the **Advanced** tab.

- Configure the violation mode for Remote-LAN 802.1x from the **Violation Mode** drop-down list, choose the violation mode type from the following options:
 - **Shutdown**—Disables the port
 - **Replace**—Removes the current session and initiates authentication for the new host. This is the default behavior.
 - **Protect**—Drops packets with unexpected MAC addresses without generating a system message.
- Enter the **Session Timeout (sec)** value to define the client's duration of a session.
The range is between 20 and 86400 seconds.
- Under **AAA Policy Params** section, check the **AAA Override** check box to enable AAA override.
- Under the **Exclusionlist Params** section, check the **Exclusionlist** check box and enter the **Exclusionlist Timeout** value.
This sets the exclusion time for a client. The range is between 0 and 2147483647 seconds. 0 refers to no timeout.

Step 9 Save the configuration.

Configuring RLAN Policy Profile Parameters (CLI)

Before you begin

RLAN does not support the following features:

- Central Web Authentication (CWA)
- Quality of Service (QoS)
- Bi-Directional Rate Limiting (BDRL)
- Identity PSK (iPSK)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	central switching Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # central switching	Configures central switching.
Step 2	central dhcp Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # central dhcp	Configures central DHCP.
Step 3	exclusionlist timeout <i>timeout</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # exclusionlist timeout 200	Sets exclusion-listing on RLAN. <i>timeout</i> —Sets the time, up to which the client will be in excluded state. Range is from 0 to 2147483647 seconds. 0 refers to no timeout.
Step 4	vlan <i>vlan</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # vlan vlan1	Configures VLAN name or ID. - <i>vlan</i> —Is the vlan name.
Step 5	aaa-override Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # aaa-override	Configures AAA policy override.
Step 6	session-timeout <i>timeout in seconds</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # session-timeout 21	Configures client session timeout. <i>timeout in seconds</i> —Defines the duration of a session. Range is from 20 to 86400 seconds. Note If the session timeout is less than 300 seconds for Dot1x clients, the session timeout is set as one day that is, equal to 86400 seconds.
Step 7	host-mode {multidomain <i>voice domain</i> multihost singlehost} Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy) # host-mode multidomain	Configures host mode for remote-LAN 802.1x. <i>voice domain</i> —Is the RLAN voice domain VLAN ID. Range is from 0 to 65535. You can configure the following IEEE 802.1X authentication modes: • Multi-Domain Mode—The authenticator allows one host from the data domain and another from the voice domain. This is a typical configuration on switch ports with IP phones connected.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Multi-Host Mode—The first device to authenticate opens up to the switch port, so that all other devices can use the port. You need not authenticate other devices independently, if the authenticated device becomes authorized the switch port is closed. • Single-Host Mode—Is the default host mode. In this mode, the switch port allows only a single host to be authenticated and passes traffic one by one.
Step 8	violation-mode {protect replace shutdown} Example: Device (config-remote-lan-policy) # violation-mode protect	Configures violation mode for Remote-LAN 802.1x. When a security violation occurs, a port is protected based on the following configured violation actions: • Shutdown—Disables the port. • Replace—Removes the current session and initiates authentication for the new host. This is the default behavior. • Protect—Drops packets with unexpected MAC addresses without generating a system message. In the single-host authentication mode, a violation is triggered when more than one device is detected in data VLAN. In a multi-host authentication mode, a violation is triggered when more than one device is detected in data VLAN or voice VLAN.
Step 9	[no] poe Example: Device (config-remote-lan-policy) # poe	Enables or disables PoE.
Step 10	[no] shutdown Example: Device (config-remote-lan-policy) # shutdown	Enables or disables an RLAN policy profile.
Step 11	end Example: Device (config-remote-lan-policy) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Policy Tag and Mapping an RLAN Policy Profile to an RLAN Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy remote-lan-policy-tag	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	remote-lan <i>remote-lan-profile-name</i> policy <i>rlan-policy-profile-name</i> port-id <i>port-id</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan_profile_name policy rlan_policy_profile port-id 2	Maps an RLAN policy profile to an RLAN profile. • <i>remote-lan-profile-name</i>—Is the name of the RLAN profile. • <i>rlan-policy-profile-name</i>—Is the name of the policy profile. • <i>port-id</i>—Is the LAN port number on the access point. Range is from 1 to 4.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring LAN Port (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	ap name <i>ap name</i> lan port-id <i>lan port id</i> {disable enable} Example: Device# ap name L2_1810w_2 lan port-id 1 enable	Configures a LAN port. • enable—Enables the LAN port. • disable—Disables the LAN port.

Attaching Policy Tag to an Access Point (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.
- Step 2** Select the AP to attach the Policy Tag.
- Step 3** Under the **Tags** section, use the **Policy** drop-down to select a policy tag.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Attaching Policy Tag to an Access Point (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# <code>configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap ap-ethernet-mac Example: Device(config)# <code>ap 00a2.891c.21e0</code>	Configures MAP address for an AP and enters AP configuration mode.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# <code>policy-tag remote-lan-policy-tag</code>	Attaches policy tag to the access point. <i>policy-tag-name</i> —Is the name of the policy tag defined earlier.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# <code>end</code>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying RLAN Configuration

To view the summary of all RLANs, use the following command:

```
Device# show remote-lan summary
```

```
Number of RLANs: 1
```

```

RLAN          Profile Name          Status
-----
1              rlan_test_1           Enabled

```

To view the RLAN configuration by ID, use the following command:

Device# **show remote-lan id <id>**

```
Remote-LAN Profile Name      : rlan_test_1
=====
Identifier                   : 1
Status                       : Enabled
Mac-filtering                : Not Configured
Number of Active Clients     : 1
Security_8021X               : Disabled
8021.x Authentication list name : Not Configured
Local Auth eap Profile Name  : Not Configured
Web Auth Security            : Disabled
Webauth Authentication list name : Not Configured
Web Auth Parameter Map       : Not Configured
Client association limit     : 0
Ipv4 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured
Ipv6 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured
```

To view the RLAN configuration by profile name, use the following command:

Device# **show remote-lan name <profile-name>**

```
Remote-LAN Profile Name      : rlan_test_1
=====
Identifier                   : 1
Status                       : Enabled
Mac-filtering                : mac-auth
Number of Active Clients     : 0
Security_8021x_dot1x         : Enabled
8021.x Authentication list name : Not Configured
Local Auth eap Profile Name  : Not Configured
Web Auth Security            : Disabled
Webauth Authentication list name : Not Configured
Web Auth Parameter Map       : Not Configured
Client association limit     : 0
Ipv4 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured
Ipv6 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured
mDNS Gateway Status          : Bridge
Fabric Profile Name          : rlan-fabric-profile
```

To view the detailed output of all RLANs, use the following command:

Device# **show remote-lan all**

```
Remote-LAN Profile Name      : rlan_test_1
=====
Identifier                   : 1
Status                       : Enabled
Mac-filtering                : Not Configured
Number of Active Clients     : 1
Security_8021X               : Disabled
8021.x Authentication list name : Not Configured
Local Auth eap Profile Name  : Not Configured
Web Auth Security            : Disabled
Webauth Authentication list name : Not Configured
Web Auth Parameter Map       : Not Configured
Client association limit     : 0
Ipv4 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured
Ipv6 Web Pre Auth Acl        : Not Configured

Remote-LAN Profile Name      : rlan_test_2
=====
Identifier                   : 2
Status                       : Enabled
Mac-filtering                : Not Configured
```

```

Number of Active Clients           : 1
Security_8021X                    : Disabled
8021.x Authentication list name   : Not Configured
Local Auth eap Profile Name       : Not Configured
Web Auth Security                  : Disabled
Webauth Authentication list name  : Not Configured
Web Auth Parameter Map            : Not Configured
Client association limit          : 0
Ipv4 Web Pre Auth Acl             : Not Configured
Ipv6 Web Pre Auth Acl             : Not Configured

```

Device# **show remote-lan policy summary**

Number of Policy Profiles: 1

Profile Name	Description	Status
rlan_named_pp1	Testing RLAN policy profile	Enabled

To view the LAN port configuration of a Cisco AP, use the following command:

Device# **show ap name <ap_name> lan port summary**

LAN Port status for AP L2_1815w_1

Port ID	status	vlanId	poe
LAN1	Enabled	20	Disabled
LAN2	Enabled	20	NA
LAN3	Disabled	0	NA

To view the summary of all clients, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client summary**

Number of Local Clients: 1

MAC Address	AP Name	WLAN	State	Protocol	Method	Role
d8eb.97b6.fcc6	L2_1815w_1	1	* Run	Ethernet	None	Local

To view the client details with the specified username, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client username cisco**

MAC Address	AP Name	Status	WLAN	Auth Protocol
0014.d1da.a977	L2_1815w_1	Run 1 *	Yes	Ethernet
d8eb.97b6.fcc6	L2_1815w_1	Run 1 *	Yes	Ethernet

To view the detailed information for a client by MAC address, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client mac-address 2cea.7f18.5bb3 detail**

```

Client MAC Address : 2cea.7f18.5bb3
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address : 10.56.33.21
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::d60:2e8:4cc2:6212
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 4ca6.4d22.1a80
AP Name: AP3C57.31C5.799C
AP slot : 16
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : fabric-rlan-policy
Flex Profile : default-flex-profile
Remote LAN Id: 1 <-----
Remote LAN Name: fabric-rlan <-----
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): fabric-rlan <-----
BSSID : 4ca6.4d22.1a81
Connected For : 211 seconds
Protocol : Ethernet <-----

```

```

Channel : 0
Port ID: 1 <-----
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000002
Association Id : 0
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
<-----o/p trimmed ----->

```

To view the summary of all AP tags, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap tag summary
Number of APs: 2

```

AP Name Tag Name	AP Mac Misconfigured	Site Tag Name Tag Source	Policy Tag Name	RF
L2_1810d_1	0008.3296.24c0	default-site-tag	default-policy-tag	
default-rf-tag	No	Default		
L2_1810w_2	00b0.e18c.5880	rlan-site-tag	rlan_pt_1	
default-rf-tag	No	Static		

To view the summary of all policy tags, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless tag policy summary
Number of Policy Tags: 2

```

Policy Tag Name	Description
rlan_pt_1	
default-policy-tag	default policy-tag

To view details of a specific policy tag, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless tag policy detailed <rlan_policy_tag_name>
Policy Tag Name : rlan_pt_1
Description      :

```

Number of WLAN-POLICY maps: 0

Number of RLAN-POLICY maps: 2

REMOTE-LAN Profile Name	Policy Name	Port Id
rlan_test_1	rlan_named_ppl	1
rlan_test_1	rlan_named_ppl	2

To view the fabric client summary, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless fabric client summary

```

Number of Fabric Clients : 0

MAC Address L2 VNID	AP Name RLOC IP	WLAN State	Protocol Method

To view the RLAN client summary, use the following command:

```

Device# show wireless client summary

```

Number of Clients: 1

MAC Address	AP Name	Type	ID	State	Protocol	Method	Role
2cea.7f18.5bb3	AP3C57.31C5.799C	RLAN	1	Run	Ethernet	None	Local

Number of Excluded Clients: 0

Information About RLAN Authentication Fallback

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, Remote LAN (RLAN) ports on OfficeExtend Access Points (OEAPs) support the fallback mechanism for authentication from 802.1X to MAC authentication bypass (MAB) and vice versa. If a client using 802.1X as an authentication method fails to authenticate within the timeout period, the client gets authenticated using the MAB method. Similarly, if the device MAC address is not registered for MAB authentication, the authentication fails, and the client gets authenticated using the 802.1X method.

By default, the RLAN fallback mechanism is disabled. You should explicitly enable it. When both 802.1X and MAB are enabled, the device should pass both authentication methods for successful authentication.

Configuring RLAN Authentication Fallback (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap remote-lan profile-name <i>rlan-profile-name</i> <i>rlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan profile-name rlan_profile_name 3	Configures remote LAN profile.
Step 3	security {dot1x on-macfilter-failure mac-filter on-dot1x-failure} Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# security dot1x on-macfilter-failure	Enables 802.1X authentication on MAC filter failure. Note You can either configure 802.1X authentication on MAC filter failure or MAC filter authentication on 802.1X failure. You cannot configure both.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Modifying 802.1X EAP Timers for RLAN Clients

To adapt the 802.1X EAP timers for RLAN clients, use the following procedure.



Note When you modify the 802.1X EAP timers, ensure that the timer is long enough to allow 802.1X-capable endpoints to authenticate. A timer that is too short may result in 802.1X-capable endpoints being subject to a fallback authentication or authorization technique.

If 802.1X EAP timers are not configured using this procedure, the timer configuration done using the **wireless security dot1x request** and **wireless security dot1x identity-request** commands are applied.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap remote-lan profile-name <i>rlan-profile-name</i> <i>rlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan profile-name rlan_profile_name 3	Configures the remote LAN profile.
Step 3	security dot1x identity-request retries <i>retry-num</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# security dot1x identity-request retries 20	Configures the maximum number of EAP ID request retransmissions. Valid values range from 1 to 20.
Step 4	security dot1x identity-request timeout <i>timeout-value</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# security dot1x identity-request timeout 120	Configures the EAP ID request-timeout value, in seconds. Valid values range from 1 to 120.
Step 5	security dot1x request retries <i>retry-num</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# security dot1x request retries 20	Configures the maximum number of EAP request retransmissions. Valid values range from 0 to 20.
Step 6	security dot1x request timeout <i>timeout-value</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# security dot1x request timeout 120	Configures the EAP request retransmission timeout value, in seconds. Valid values range from 1 to 120.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying RLAN Authentication Fallback

To check the status of the fallback authentication mechanism, use the following command:

```
Device# show remote-lan all
```

```
Remote-LAN Profile Name      : rlan_profile_name
=====
Identifier                   : 3
Status                       : Disabled
Mac-filtering                 : Not Configured
Number of Active Clients     : 0
Security_8021x_dot1x        : Enabled
8021.x Authentication list name : Not Configured
Local Auth eap Profile Name  : Not Configured
Web Auth Security            : Disabled
Webauth Authentication list name : Not Configured
Web Auth Parameter Map       : Not Configured
Client association limit     : 0
Ipv4 Web Pre Auth Acl       : Not Configured
Ipv6 Web Pre Auth Acl       : Not Configured
mDNS Gateway Status         : Bridge
Authentication Fallback Status : MAC-filtering to Dot1X
```




CHAPTER 178

RLAN External Module

- [Information About External Module, on page 1927](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring External Module, on page 1927](#)
- [Configuring External Module \(GUI\), on page 1927](#)
- [Configuring External Module \(CLI\), on page 1928](#)
- [Verifying External Module, on page 1928](#)

Information About External Module

The External Module feature enables traffic to flow in and out from the Cisco Aironet Developer Platform module when an access point (AP) is in both local and flex connect mode.

Prerequisites for Configuring External Module

Before you begin, you must ensure the following:

- The external module is powered on.
- The RLAN status is enabled.

Configuring External Module (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Tags .
Step 2	In the Policy tab, select one of the Policy Tag Name and click Add .
Step 3	In Add Policy Tag page and RLAN-POLICY Maps section, click Add .
Step 4	From the Port ID drop-down list, choose ext-module .
Step 5	From the RLAN Profile drop-down list, choose an RLAN profile.
Step 6	From the RLAN Policy Profile drop-down list, choose an RLAN policy profile.

Step 7 Click the check mark icon.

Configuring External Module (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy default-policy-tag Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy default-policy-tag	Configures a policy tag to the external module for the remote LAN.
Step 3	remote-lan rlan-profile policy rlan-policy ext-module Example: Device(default-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan policy abc ext-module	Configures a remote LAN policy to the external module.

Verifying External Module

To view the external module remote LAN configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap_name lan port summary

LAN Port status for AP ap_name

Port ID      status      vlanId      poe      power-level      RLAN
-----
ext-module   Enabled     39          NA       NA               Enabled
```

To view the external module inventory details, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name abc inventory
NAME: AP3800, DESCR: Cisco Aironet 3800 Series (IEEE 802.11ac) Access Point
PID: AIR-AP3802I-D-K9, VID: 01, SN: xxxxxxxxxxxx

MODULE NAME: Expansion Module, DESCR: Cisco HDK Module (rev2)
PID: Unknown, SN: xxxxxxxxxxxx, MaxPower: 2700mW
VersionID: V22, Capabilities: RLAN (UP)
```



CHAPTER 179

802.11ax Per WLAN

- [Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN, on page 1929](#)
- [Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN \(GUI\), on page 1929](#)
- [Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN \(CLI\), on page 1930](#)
- [Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN, on page 1930](#)

Information About 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN

Prior to Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru Release 17.4.1, the 802.11ax mode was configured per radio band. In this configuration, the 11ax mode was either enabled or disabled for all WLANs (AP) that were configured per radio, all at once. When 11ax was enabled per radio, the 11ac clients were not able to scan or connect to the SSID if the beacon had 11ax information elements. Client could not probe an access point (AP), if the beacon has 11ax IE.

Therefore, a 11ax configuration knob per AP is introduced, from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru Release 17.5.1. This knob is introduced under the WLAN profile. By default, the 11ax knob per WLAN is now enabled on the controller.



Note For 6-GHz radio, the 802.11ax parameters are taken from the multi BSSID profile tagged to the corresponding 6-GHz RF profile of the AP. So, the WLAN dot11ax parameters are overridden by multi BSSID profile parameters in the case of 6-GHz. There are no changes for 2.4 and 5-GHz band WLANs. They continue to use the WLAN parameters for 802.11ax.

Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add WLAN** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.

Step 4 In the **11ax** section, check the **Enable 11ax** check box to enable 802.11ax operation status on the WLAN.

Note

When 11ax is disabled, beacons will not display 11ax IE, and all the 11ax features will be operationally disabled on the WLAN.

Step 5 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-profile-name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-profile	Specifies the WLAN name and enters the WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	dot11ax Example: Device(config-wlan)# dot11ax	Configures 802.11ax on a WLAN.
Step 4	no dot11ax Example: Device(config-wlan)# no dot11ax	Disables 802.11ax on the WLAN profile.

Verifying 802.11ax Mode Per WLAN

To display the status of the 11ax parameter, run the following command:

```
Device# show wlan id 6
WLAN Profile Name      : power
=====
Identifier              : 6
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : power
Status                 : Enabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
Advertise-Apname       : Disabled
Universal AP Admin     : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
.
```

```
.
.
802.11ac MU-MIMO : Enabled
802.11ax parameters
  802.11ax Operation Status : Enabled
  OFDMA Downlink : Enabled
  OFDMA Uplink : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Downlink : Enabled
  MU-MIMO Uplink : Enabled
  BSS Target Wake Up Time : Enabled
  BSS Target Wake Up Time Broadcast Support : Enabled
.
.
.
```




CHAPTER 180

BSS Coloring

- [Information About BSS Coloring](#) , on page 1933
- [Configuring BSS Color on AP \(GUI\)](#), on page 1934
- [Configuring BSS Color in the Privileged EXEC Mode](#), on page 1935
- [Configuring BSS Color Globally \(GUI\)](#), on page 1935
- [Configuring BSS Color in the Configuration Mode](#), on page 1936
- [Configuring Overlapping BSS Packet Detect \(GUI\)](#), on page 1936
- [Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse Globally \(CLI\)](#), on page 1937
- [Configuring OBSS PD in an RF Profile \(GUI\)](#), on page 1937
- [Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse in the RF Profile Mode \(CLI\)](#), on page 1938
- [Verifying BSS Color and OBSS-PD](#), on page 1938

Information About BSS Coloring

The 802.11 Wi-Fi standard minimizes the chance of multiple devices interfering with one another by transmitting at the same time. This carrier-sense multiple access with collision avoidance (CSMA/CA) technology is based on static thresholds that allow Wi-Fi devices to avoid interfering with each other on air. However, with an increase in density and the number of Wi-Fi devices, these static thresholds often lead to CSMA/CA causing devices to defer transmissions unnecessarily.

For example, if two devices that are associated with different BSS, can hear every transmission from each other at relatively low signal strengths, each device should defer its transmission when it receives a transmission from the other. But if both the devices were to transmit at the same time, it is likely that neither would cause enough interference at the other BSS' receiver to cause reception failure for either transmission.

Devices today must demodulate packets to look at the MAC header in order to determine whether or not a received packet belongs to their own BSS. This process of demodulation consumes power, which can be saved if devices can quickly identify the BSS by looking at the PHY header alone, and subsequently drop packets that are from a different BSS. Prior to Wi-Fi 6, there was no provision for devices to do this.

The new 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) standard addresses both of the issues discussed above, through the new BSS Coloring and Spatial Reuse mechanism. BSS Coloring is a new provision that allows devices operating in the same frequency space to quickly distinguish between packets from their own BSS and packets from an Overlapping BSS (OBSS), by simply looking at the BSS color value contained in the HE PHY header. In some scenarios, Spatial Reuse allows devices, to transmit at the same time as the OBSS packets they receive, instead of deferring transmissions because of legacy interference thresholds. Since every Wi-Fi 6 device understands the BSS color, it can be leveraged to increase power savings by dropping packets earlier, and to identify spatial reuse opportunities.

BSS Coloring

BSS Coloring is a method used to differentiate between the BSS of access points and their clients on the same RF channel. Wi-Fi 6 enables each AP radio to assign a value (from 1 to 63), known as BSS color, to be included in the PHY header of all HE transmissions from devices in its BSS. With devices of each BSS transmitting a locally-unique color, a device can quickly and easily distinguish transmissions coming from its BSS from those of a neighboring BSS.

The following platforms support this feature:

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers
- Cisco Catalyst 9115 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9120AX Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9124AX Series Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9130AX Access Points

OBSS-PD and Spatial Reuse

Overlapping BSS Packet Detect (OBSS-PD) is a more aggressive Wi-Fi packet detect threshold for inter-BSS packets, which can be higher than the typical/legacy -82 dBm. Inter-BSS packets are easily identified by comparing the BSS color in the HE PHY header of the packets received with the BSS color of the device.

In OBSS-PD based Spatial Reuse, to improve throughput and network efficiency by increasing transmitting opportunities, a Wi-Fi 6 or 802.11ax device can transmit over an inter-BSS packet with an RSSI that is below the OBSS-PD threshold instead of deferring.



Note Cisco Catalyst 9120AX Series Access Points do not support OBSS-PD.

Configuring BSS Color on AP (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Wireless > Access Points .
Step 2	Click the 5 GHz Radios section or the 2.4 GHz Radios section. The list of the AP radios in the band is displayed.
Step 3	Click the required AP name. The Edit Radios window is displayed.
Step 4	From the Edit Radios window, select the Configure tab. The general information, Antenna Parameters, RF Channel Assignment, Tx Power Level Assignment, and BSS Color are displayed.
Step 5	In the BSS Color area and from the BSS Color Configuration drop-down list, choose Custom configuration

- **Custom:** To manually select the BSS color configuration for the AP radio.
 - a. Click the **BSS Color Status** field to disable or enable the feature.
 - b. In the **Current BSS Color** field, specify a corresponding BSS color for the AP radio. The valid range is between 1 and 63.

Step 6 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring BSS Color in the Privileged EXEC Mode

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz dual-band [slot slot-id] } dot11ax bss-color <1-63> Example: Device#ap name <i>apn</i> dot11 24ghz slot 0 dot11ax bss-color 12 Example: Device#ap name <i>apn</i> no dot11 24ghz slot 0 dot11ax bss-color	Sets the BSS color on the 2.4-GHz, 5-GHz, 6-GHz, or dual-band radio, for a specific access point on the following slots: • 5 GHz: Slot 1 and 2 • 2.4 GHz: Slot 0 • 6-GHz: Slot 3 • Dual-band: Slot 0 Use the no form of this command to disable BSS color.

Configuring BSS Color Globally (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters**.
- Step 2** In the **11ax Parameters** section, enable BSS color globally for the 5 GHz and 2.4 GHz radios by checking the **BSS Color** check box.

Configuring BSS Color in the Configuration Mode

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } dot11ax bss-color Example: Device(config)#[no] ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax bss-color	Enables the 802.11ax BSS color on all 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz or 6-GHz radios. Use the <code>no</code> form of this command to disable BSS color.

Configuring Overlapping BSS Packet Detect (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Radio Configurations > Parameters**.
- The parameters page is displayed where you can configure global parameters for 5 GHz Band and 2.4 GHz Band radios.
- Step 2** In the **11ax Parameters** section, check the **OBSS PD** check box to enable the overlapping BSS packet detect (OBSS PD) feature.
- Step 3** In the **Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Threshold** field, enter the threshold in decibel-milliwatts. Value range is between -82 dBm and -62 dBm.
-

Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse Globally (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz } dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd Example: Device(config)#[no] ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd	Configures 802.11ax OBSS PD based spatial reuse on all 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz radios. Use the no form of this command to disable this feature.
Step 3	ap dot11 {24ghz 5ghz } dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd non-srg-max -82 - -62 Example: Device(config)#[no] ap dot11 24ghz dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd non-srg-max -62	Configure 802.11ax non-SRG OBSS PD max on all 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz radios. The default value is -62.

Configuring OBSS PD in an RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF**.
- Step 2** On the **RF Profile** page, click **Add** to configure the following:
- General
 - 802.11
 - RRM
 - Advanced
- Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, under the **11ax Parameters** section, complete the following:
- a) Use the toggle button to enable or disable the **OBSS PD** field.
 - b) In the **Non-SRG OBSS PD Max Threshold (dBm)**, enter the threshold value. The default value is -62 dBm. Values range between -82 dBm and -62 dBm.
- Step 4** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring OBSS-PD Spatial Reuse in the RF Profile Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 { 24ghz 5ghz 6ghz } rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 24ghz rf-profile rfprof24_1	Configures an RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	[no] dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# [no] dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd	Configures 802.11ax OBSS PD based spatial reuse in the RF profile configuration mode. Use the no form of this command to disable this feature.
Step 4	dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd non-srg-max <i>-82 - -62</i> Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# dot11ax spatial-reuse obss-pd non-srg-max -62	Configure 802.11ax non-SRG OBSS PD max on all 2.4-GHz or 5-GHz or 6-GHz radios. The default value is -62.

Verifying BSS Color and OBSS-PD

To verify if the global per-band BSS color and OBSS-PD are enabled, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz network
802.11b Network                : Enabled
11gSupport                     : Enabled
11nSupport                     : Enabled
.
.
.
802.11ax                      : Enabled
  DynamicFrag                  : Enabled
  MultiBssid                   : Enabled
  Target Wakeup Time           : Enabled
  Target Wakeup Time Broadcast : Enabled
  BSS Color                    : Enabled
  OBSS PD                      : Enabled
  Non-SRG OBSS PD Max          : -62 dBm
802.11ax MCS Settings:
  MCS 7, Spatial Streams = 1   : Supported
.
```

.

.

To view the RF profile OBSS-PD configuration, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name rf-profile-name detail
Description                : pre configured rfprofile for 5gh radio
RF Profile Name            : rf-profile-name
Band                       : 5 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -65 dBm
Min Transmit Power         : 7 dBm
Max Transmit Power         : 30 dBm
.
.
.
802.11ax
  OBSS PD                  : Enabled
  Non-SRG OBSS PD Max     : -62 dBm
  NDP mode                 : Auto
```

To view the BSS color configuration of all the AP radios on a band in the summary list, along with Channel, TX Power and so on, use the following **show** command:

```
Device# show ap dot11 24ghz summary extended
```

AP Name	Channel	Mac Address	Slot	Admin State	Oper State	Width
Txpwr			BSS Color			
Ed2-JFW-AP1		84b2.61ba.4730	1	Enabled	Up	40
1/6 (17 dBm)	(136,132) *					
11AX-9120-AP1		d4ad.bda2.3fc0	1	Enabled	Up	20
1/8 (23 dBm)	(36)		30			
Ed2-JFW-AP2		f8c2.8885.59f0	1	Enabled	Up	20
1/5 (15 dBm)	(40)					

To view the BSS color configuration and the capability of an AP radio, use the following **show** commands:

```
Device# show ap name AP7069.5A74.816C config dot11 24ghz
Cisco AP Identifier        : 502f.a876.1e60
Cisco AP Name              : AP7069.5A74.816C
Attributes for Slot 0
  Radio Type               : 802.11b
  Radio Mode               : REAP
  Radio Role               : Auto
  Radio SubType            : Main
  Administrative State     : Enabled
  Operation State          : Up
.
.
.
Phy OFDM Parameters
  Configuration            : Automatic
  Current Channel          : 6
  Channel Width            : 20 MHz
  TI Threshold             : 1157693440
  Antenna Type             : External
  External Antenna Gain (in .5 dBi units) : 8
.
.
.
!BSS color details are displayed below:
802.11ax Parameters
  HE Capable               : Yes
  BSS Color Capable        : Yes
  BSS Color Configuration  : Customized
  Current BSS Color        : 34
```

```

Device# show ap name AP70XX.5XX4.8XXX config slot 0
Cisco AP Identifier           : 502f.a876.1e60
Cisco AP Name                 : AP70XX.5XX4.8XXX
Country Code                  : US
AP Country Code               : US - United States
AP Regulatory Domain          : -A
MAC Address                   : 7069.5a74.816c
IP Address Configuration      : DHCP
IP Address                    : Disabled
.
.
.
Attributes for Slot 0
  Radio Type                   : 802.11n - 2.4 GHz
  Radio Role                   : Auto
  Radio Mode                   : REAP
  Radio SubType                : Main
  Administrative State         : Enabled
.
.
.
  Phy OFDM Parameters
    Configuration              : Automatic
    Current Channel             : 6
    Channel Assigned By        : DCA
    Extension Channel           : NONE
    Channel Width               : 20
    Allowed Channel List       : 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11
    TI Threshold                : 1157693440
    DCA Channel List            :
    Antenna Type                : EXTERNAL_ANTENNA
    External Antenna Gain (in .5 dBi units) : 8
Diversity                     : DIVERSITY_ENABLED
  802.11n Antennas
    A                           : ENABLED
    B                           : ENABLED
    C                           : ENABLED
    D                           : ENABLED
.
.
.
!BSS color details are displayed below:
802.11ax Parameters
  HE Capable                   : Yes
  BSS Color Capable            : Yes
  BSS Color Configuration      : Customized
  Current BSS Color             : 34
.
.
.

```



CHAPTER 181

DHCP for WLANs

- [Information About Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, on page 1941](#)
- [Restrictions for Configuring DHCP for WLANs, on page 1944](#)
- [Guidelines for DHCP Relay Configuration, on page 1944](#)
- [How to Configure DHCP for WLANs, on page 1945](#)
- [Configuring the Internal DHCP Server, on page 1947](#)
- [Configuring DHCP-Required for FlexConnect, on page 1958](#)

Information About Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol

You can configure WLANs to use the same or different Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) servers or no DHCP server. Two types of DHCP servers are available—internal and external.

Internal DHCP Servers

The device contains an internal DHCP server. This server is typically used in branch offices that do not have a DHCP server.

The internal server provides DHCP addresses to wireless clients, direct-connect APs, and DHCP requests that are relayed from APs. Only lightweight APs are supported. If you want to use the internal DHCP server, ensure that you configure SVI for the client VLAN, and set the IP address as DHCP server IP address.

DHCP option 43 is not supported on the internal server. Therefore, the APs must use an alternative method to locate the management interface IP address of the device, such as local subnet broadcast, Domain Name System (DNS), or priming.

When clients use the internal DHCP server of the device, IP addresses are not preserved across reboots. As a result, multiple clients can be assigned to the same IP address. To resolve any IP address conflicts, clients must release their existing IP address and request a new one.



Note

- VRF is supported in the internal DHCP servers.
 - DHCPv6 is not supported in the internal DHCP servers.
-

General Guidelines

- Internal DHCP server serves both wireless client and wired client (wired client includes AP).
- To serve wireless client with internal DHCP server, an unicast DHCP server IP address must be configured for wireless client. Internal DHCP server IP address must be configured under the server facing interface, which can be loopback interface, SVI interface, or L3 physical interface.
- To use internal DHCP server for both wireless and wired client VLAN, an IP address must be configured under client VLAN SVI interface.
- For wireless client, in DHCP helper address configuration, the IP address of the internal DHCP server must be different from address of wireless client VLAN SVI interface.
- For wireless client with internal DHCP server support, the internal DHCP server can be configured using global configuration command, under the client VLAN SVI interface or under the wireless policy profile.
- An internal DHCP server pool can also serve clients of other controllers .

External DHCP Servers

The operating system is designed to appear as a DHCP relay to the network and as a DHCP server to clients with industry-standard external DHCP servers that support DHCP Relay, which means that each controller appears as a DHCP relay agent to the DHCP server, and as a DHCP server in the virtual IP address to wireless clients.

Because the controller captures the client IP address that is obtained from a DHCP server, it maintains the same IP address for that client during intra controller, inter controller, and inter-subnet client roaming.



Note External DHCP servers support DHCPv6.

DHCP Assignments

You can configure DHCP on a per-interface or per-WLAN basis. We recommend that you use the primary DHCP server address that is assigned to a particular interface.

You can assign DHCP servers for individual interfaces. You can configure the management interface, AP manager interface, and dynamic interface for a primary and secondary DHCP server, and configure the service-port interface to enable or disable DHCP servers. You can also define a DHCP server on a WLAN (in this case, the server overrides the DHCP server address on the interface assigned to the WLAN).

Security Considerations

For enhanced security, we recommend that you ask all clients to obtain their IP addresses from a DHCP server. To enforce this requirement, you can configure all the WLANs with a DHCP Address Assignment Required setting, which disallows client static IP addresses. If DHCP Address Assignment Required is selected, clients must obtain an IP address through DHCP. Any client with a static IP address is not allowed on the network. The controller monitors DHCP traffic because it acts as a DHCP proxy for the clients.

**Note**

- WLANs that support management over wireless must allow management (device-servicing) clients to obtain an IP address from a DHCP server.
- The operating system is designed to appear as a DHCP relay to the network and as a DHCP server to clients with industry-standard external DHCP servers that support DHCP relay. This means that each controller appears as a DHCP relay to the DHCP server and as a DHCP server at the virtual IP address to wireless clients.

You can create WLANs with DHCP Address Assignment Required disabled. If you do this, clients have the option of using a static IP address or obtaining an IP address from a designated DHCP server. However, note that this might compromise security.

**Note**

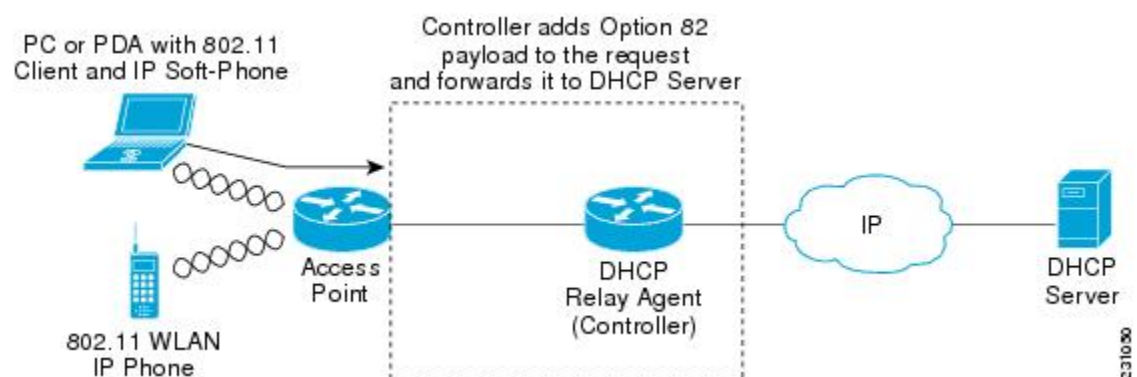
DHCP Address Assignment Required is not supported for wired guest LANs.

You can create separate WLANs with DHCP Address Assignment Required configured as disabled. This is applicable only if DHCP proxy is enabled for the controller. You must not define the primary or secondary configuration DHCP server instead you should disable the DHCP proxy. These WLANs drop all the DHCP requests and force clients to use a static IP address. These WLANs do not support management over wireless connections.

DHCP Option 82

DHCP option 82 provides additional security when DHCP is used to allocate network addresses. It enables the controller to act as a DHCP relay agent to prevent DHCP client requests from untrusted sources. You can configure the controller to add option 82 information to DHCP requests from clients before forwarding the requests to the DHCP server.

Figure 40: DHCP Option 82



The AP forwards all the DHCP requests from a client to the controller. The controller adds the DHCP option 82 payload and forwards the request to the DHCP server. The payload can contain the MAC address or the MAC address and SSID of the AP, depending on how you configure this option.



Note DHCP packets that already include a relay agent option are dropped at the controller.

For DHCP option 82 to operate correctly, DHCP proxy must be enabled.

Restrictions for Configuring DHCP for WLANs

- If you override the DHCP server in a WLAN, you must ensure that you configure the underlying Cisco IOS configuration to make sure that the DHCP server is reachable.
- WLAN DHCP override works only if DHCP service is enabled on the controller.

You can configure DHCP service in either of the following ways:

- Configuring the DHCP pool on the controller.
- Configuring a DHCP relay agent on the SVI. Note that the VLAN of the SVI must be mapped to the WLAN where DHCP override is configured.

Guidelines for DHCP Relay Configuration

Relay Agent Source IP

- If you configure source interface VLAN in the SVI interface, the IP address of the VLAN interface configured as source is used.
- If the Relay Agent source IP is not mentioned, the IP address of the SVI interface created for the corresponding client's VLAN is used.
- If the Relay Agent source IP is not mentioned, the source address specified at the global level is used.



-
- Note**
- The DHCP packets are sourced from the IP address of the Wireless Management Interface (WMI), if VLAN is not configured in the policy profile and AAA override.
 - The SVI interface configuration is mandatory to achieve the DHCP relay functionality in central DHCP or local switching.
 - Even though many interface options are available in the **ip dhcp relay source-interface <>** command, only VLAN interface is applicable.
-

DHCP Server

- If the DHCP server address is configured in the wireless policy profile, the server address configured in the policy profile takes precedence.

- If the DHCP server address is not configured in the policy profile, the server address configured in SVI takes precedence.



Note You can configure two server addresses in the SVI. In this case, the DHCP packets from the client are sent to both the servers.

The Option 82 configured in policy profile, SVI, and globally is considered and honored together.

How to Configure DHCP for WLANs

Configuring DHCP Scopes (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Administration > DHCP Pools .
Step 2	In the Pools section, click Add to add a new DHCP pool. The Create DHCP Pool dialog box is displayed.
Step 3	In the DHCP Pool Name field, enter a name for the new DHCP pool.
Step 4	From the IP Type drop-down list, choose the IP address type.
Step 5	In the Network field, enter the network served by this DHCP scope. This IP address is used by the management interface with netmask applied, as configured in the Interfaces window.
Step 6	In the Subnet Mask field, enter the subnet mask assigned to all the wireless clients.
Step 7	In the Starting ip field, enter the starting IP address.
Step 8	In the Ending ip field, enter the trailing IP address.
Step 9	In the Reserved Only field, enable or disable it.
Step 10	From the Lease drop-down list, choose the lease type as either User Defined or Never Expires . If you choose User Defined, you can enter the amount of time that an IP address is granted to a client.
Step 11	To perform advanced configuration for DHCP scope, click Advanced .
Step 12	Check the Enable DNS Proxy check box to enable DNS proxy.
Step 13	In the Default Router(s) field, enter the IP address of the optional router or routers that connect to the device and click the + icon to add them to the list. Each router must include a DHCP forwarding agent that enables a single device to serve the clients of multiple devices.
Step 14	In the DNS Server(s) field, enter the IP address of the optional DNS server or servers and click the + icon to add them to the list. Each DNS server must be able to update a client's DNS entry to match the IP address assigned by the DHCP scope.
Step 15	In the NetBios Name Server(s) field, enter the IP address of the optional Microsoft NetBIOS name server or servers, such as Microsoft Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) server, and click the + icon to add them to the list.

- Step 16** In the **Domain** field, enter the optional domain name of the DHCP scope for use with one or more DNS servers.
- Step 17** To add **DHCP** options, click **Add** in the **DHCP Options List** section. DHCP provides an internal framework for passing configuration parameters and other control information, such as DHCP options, to the clients on your network. DHCP options carry parameters as tagged data stored within protocol messages exchanged between the DHCP server and its clients.
- Step 18** Enter the **DHCP** option that you want to add.
- Step 19** Click **Save & Apply to Device**.

Configuring DHCP Scopes (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp pool <i>pool-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp pool test-pool	Configures the DHCP pool address.
Step 3	network <i>network-name mask-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# network 209.165.200.224 255.255.255.0	Specifies the network number in dotted-decimal notation and the mask address.
Step 4	dns-server <i>hostname</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# dns-server example.com	Specifies the DNS name server. You can specify an IP address or a hostname.
Step 5	end Example: Device(dhcp-config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under Client VLAN SVI (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Layer2 > VLAN > SVI .
Step 2	Click an SVI.
Step 3	Click the Advanced tab.
Step 4	Under DHCP Relay settings, enter the IPv4 Helper Address .
Step 5	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under Client VLAN SVI (CLI)

Before you begin

- For wireless clients, only two DHCP servers are supported.
- To use the internal DHCP server for both wireless and wired client VLAN, an IP address must be configured under the client VLAN SVI.
- For wireless clients, the IP address of the internal DHCP server must be different from the address of the wireless client VLAN SVI (in the DHCP helper address configuration).
- For wireless clients, the internal DHCP server can be configured under the client VLAN SVI or under the wireless policy profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface loopback interface-number Example: Device(config)# interface Loopback0	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address ip-address Example:	Configures the IP address for the interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255	
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 5	interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 32	Configures the VLAN ID.
Step 6	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.32.100 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 7	ip helper-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip helper-address 10.10.10.1	Configures the destination address for UDP broadcasts. Note If the IP address used in the ip helper-address command is an internal address of the controller an internal DHCP server is used. Otherwise, the external DHCP server is used.
Step 8	no mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the Maintenance Operation Protocol (MOP) for an interface.
Step 9	no mop sysid Example: Device(config-if)# no mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.
Step 10	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 11	ip dhcp excluded-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.32.1	Specifies the IP address that the DHCP server should not assign to DHCP clients.
Step 12	ip dhcp excluded-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.32.100	Specifies the IP addresses that the DHCP server should not assign to DHCP clients.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 13	ip dhcp pool <i>pool-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pool-vlan32	Configures the DHCP pool address.
Step 14	network <i>network-name mask-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# network 192.168.32.0 255.255.255.0	Specifies the network number in dotted-decimal notation, along with the mask address.
Step 15	default-router <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# default-router 192.168.32.1	Specifies the IP address of the default router for a DHCP client.
Step 16	exit Example: Device(dhcp-config)# exit	Exits DHCP configuration mode.
Step 17	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures the WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 18	central association Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central association	Configures central association for locally switched clients.
Step 19	central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central dhcp	Configures the central DHCP for locally switched clients.
Step 20	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Configures WLAN for central switching.
Step 21	description <i>policy-proile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "default policy profile"	Adds a description for the policy profile
Step 22	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 32	Assigns the profile policy to the VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 23	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless profile policy.

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under a Wireless Policy Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click a policy name.
- Step 3** Click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** Under **DHCP** settings, check or uncheck the **IPv4 DHCP Required** check box and enter the **DHCP Server IP Address**.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Under a Wireless Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface loopback <i>interface-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface Loopback0	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	interface <i>vlan</i> <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 32	Configures the VLAN ID.
Step 6	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.32.100 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 7	no mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the Maintenance Operation Protocol (MOP) for an interface.
Step 8	no mop sysid Example: Device(config-if)# no mop sysid	Disables the task of sending MOP periodic system ID messages.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 10	ip dhcp excluded-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.32.100	Specifies the IP address that the DHCP server should not assign to DHCP clients.
Step 11	ip dhcp pool <i>pool-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pool-vlan32	Configures the DHCP pool address.
Step 12	network <i>network-name mask-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# network 192.168.32.0 255.255.255.0	Specifies the network number in dotted-decimal notation along with the mask address.
Step 13	default-router <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# default-router 192.168.32.1	Specifies the IP address of the default router for a DHCP client.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(dhcp-config)# exit	Exits DHCP configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 15	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 16	central association Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# central association</pre>	Configures central association for locally switched clients.
Step 17	central switching Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching</pre>	Configures local switching.
Step 18	description <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "default policy profile"</pre>	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 19	ipv4 dhcp opt82 Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82</pre>	Enables DHCP Option 82 for the wireless clients.
Step 20	ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 ascii</pre>	Enables ASCII on DHCP Option 82.
Step 21	ipv4 dhcp opt82 format vlan_id Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 format vlan32</pre>	Enables VLAN ID.
Step 22	ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid <i>vlan_id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 rid</pre>	Supports the addition of Cisco 2-byte Remote ID (RID) for DHCP Option 82.
Step 23	ipv4 dhcp server <i>ip-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp server 10.10.10.1</pre>	Configures the WLAN's IPv4 DHCP server.
Step 24	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example:	Assigns the profile policy to the VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 32</code>	
Step 25	no shutdown Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown</code>	Enables the wireless profile policy.

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Globally (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > DHCP Pools > Pools**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Create DHCP Pool** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Enter the **DHCP Pool Name**, **Network**, **Starting ip**, and **Ending ip**.
- Step 4** From the **IP Type**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Lease** drop-down lists, choose a value.
- Step 5** Click the **Reserved Only** toggle button.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring the Internal DHCP Server Globally (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface loopback <i>interface-num</i> Example: <code>Device(config)# interface Loopback0</code>	Creates a loopback interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: <code>Device(config-if)# ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.255</code>	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 4	exit Example:	Exits interface configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-if)# exit	
Step 5	interface <i>vlan</i> <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 32	Configures the VLAN ID.
Step 6	ip address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.32.100 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 7	no mop enabled Example: Device(config-if)# no mop enabled	Disables the Maintenance Operation Protocol (MOP) for an interface.
Step 8	no mop sysid Example: Device(config-if)# no mop sysid	Disables the task of sending the MOP periodic system ID messages.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits the interface configuration mode.
Step 10	ip dhcp-server <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp-server 10.10.10.1	Specifies the target DHCP server parameters.
Step 11	ip dhcp excluded-address <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp excluded-address 192.168.32.100	Specifies the IP address that the DHCP server should not assign to DHCP clients.
Step 12	ip dhcp pool <i>pool-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp pool pool-vlan32	Configures the DHCP pool address.
Step 13	network <i>network-name mask-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# network 192.168.32.0 255.255.255.0	Specifies the network number in dotted-decimal notation along with the mask address.
Step 14	default-router <i>ip-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# default-router 192.168.32.1	Specifies the IP address of the default router for a DHCP client.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 15	exit Example: Device(dhcp-config) # exit	Exits DHCP configuration mode.
Step 16	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config) # wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures a WLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 17	central association Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # central association	Configures central association for locally switched clients.
Step 18	central dhcp Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # central dhcp	Configures central DHCP for locally switched clients.
Step 19	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # central switching	Configures local switching.
Step 20	description <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # description "default policy profile"	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 21	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # vlan 32	Assigns the profile policy to the VLAN.
Step 22	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy) # no shutdown	Enables the profile policy.

Configuring IP Reservations in the Internal DHCP Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip dhcp pool <i>pool-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ip dhcp pool dhcp-pool-add	Configures the DHCP pool address.
Step 3	network <i>network-name mask-address</i> Example: Device(dhcp-config)# network 192.168.32.0 255.255.255.0	Specifies the network number in dotted-decimal notation along with the mask address.
Step 4	address <i>ip-address</i> {<i>client-id client-id</i> <i>hardware-address client-mac-id</i>} Example: Device(dhcp-config)# address 209.165.200.224 client-id dhcp-client-id	Configures a reserved address using either the client ID or the MAC address. Note The IP reservation is contingent on the type of identifier, be it the client ID or the MAC address that the client provides. If the client sends its DHCP DISCOVER or REQUEST using the client ID, set your IP reservation using the client ID and not the hardware address.

Verifying Internal DHCP Configuration

To verify client binding, use the following command:

```
Device# show ip dhcp binding
```

```
Bindings from all pools not associated with VRF:
IP address      Client-ID/      Lease expiration        Type      State
Interface
Hardware address/
User name
192.168.32.3    0130.b49e.491a.53    Mar 23 2018 06:42 PM    Automatic Active
Loopback0
```

To verify the DHCP relay statistics for a wireless client, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless dhcp relay statistics
```

```
DHCP Relay Statistics
-----
```

DHCP Server IP : 10.10.10.1

Message	Count
DHCPDISCOVER	: 1
BOOTP FORWARD	: 137
BOOTP REPLY	: 0
DHCPOFFER	: 0
DHCPREQUEST	: 54
DHCPACK	: 0
DHCPNAK	: 0
DHCPDECLINE	: 0
DHCPRELEASE	: 0
DHCPINFORM	: 82

Tx/Rx Time :

 LastTxTime : 18:42:18
 LastRxTime : 00:00:00

Drop Counter :

 TxDropCount : 0

To verify the DHCP packet punt statistics in CPP, use the following command:

Device# **show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature wireless punt statistics**

CPP Wireless Punt stats:

App Tag	Packet Count
-----	-----
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_PROBE_REQ	14442
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_MGMT	50
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_IAPP	9447
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_RFID	0
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_RRM	0
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_DOT11_DOT1X	0
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_CAPWAP_KEEPALIVE	2191
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_MOBILITY_KEEPALIVE	0
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_CAPWAP_CNTRL	7034
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_CAPWAP_DATA	0
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_MOBILITY_CNTRL	0
WLS_SMD_WEBAUTH	0
SISF_PKT_TYPE_ARP	5292
SISF_PKT_TYPE_DHCP	140
SISF_PKT_TYPE_DHCP6	1213
SISF_PKT_TYPE_IPV6_ND	350
SISF_PKT_TYPE_DATA_GLEAN	44
SISF_PKT_TYPE_DATA_GLEAN_V6	51
SISF_PKT_TYPE_DHCP_RELAY	122
CAPWAP_PKT_TYPE_CAPWAP_RESERVED	0

Configuring DHCP-Required for FlexConnect

Information About FlexConnect DHCP-Required

The DHCP-Required knob on a policy profile forces a connected wireless client to get the IP address from DHCP. When the client completes the DHCP process and acquires an IP address, this IP address is learnt by the controller and only then the client traffic is switched on to the network. The DHCP-Required feature is already supported in central switching.

In Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1, the feature is supported on FlexConnect local switching clients. Prior to Release 17.2.1, DHCP-Required was not enforced on FlexConnect local switching clients. The IP address learnt by the AP or the controller for the wireless client is tracked to create an IP-MAC binding. As part of this feature, when a FlexConnect local switching client roams from one AP to another, the client need not do the DHCP again in the same L2 network, because the controller tracks the IP address and pushes the binding to the newly roaming AP.

The FlexConnect DHCP-Required feature can be configured from open configuration models, CLI, and from the GUI. The CLI and GUI configurations are described in this chapter. For more information about the open configuration modes, see the https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/prog/configuration/172/b_172_programmability_cg.html.

Restrictions and Limitations for FlexConnect DHCP-Required

The following are the restrictions and limitations for the FlexConnect DHCP-Required feature:

- The DHCP-Required feature is applicable for IPv4 addresses only.
- The IP-MAC binding can be pushed to other APs only through the custom policy profile. IP-MAC binding is not available in the default policy. The mapping is propagated to all the APs in the same custom policy profile.
- The DHCP-Required feature works on IP-MAC binding basis and is not supported with third party workgroup bridge (WGB), where WGB wired client information is not shared to AP by the WGB.
- Cisco Wave 2 APs take 180 seconds to remove a client entry with static IP, when DHCP-required is enabled.

Configuring FlexConnect DHCP-Required (GUI)

Perform the steps given below to configure the FlexConnect DHCP-Required feature through the GUI:

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	On the Policy window, click the name of the corresponding Policy Profile. The Edit Policy Profile window is displayed.
Step 3	Click the Advanced tab.

Step 4 In the **DHCP** section, check the **IPv4 DHCP Required** check box to enable the feature.

Step 5 Click **Update & Apply to Device**.

Configuring FlexConnect DHCP-Required (CLI)

Perform the procedure given below to configure FlexConnect DHCP-Required through the CLI:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device#configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device#wireless profile policy rr-xyz-policy-1	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	ipv4 dhcp required Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#ipv4 dhcp required	Enables the FlexConnect DHCP-Required feature.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#no shutdown	Saves the configuration.

Verifying FlexConnect DHCP-Required

- To verify the IP address learnt for a client on an IP DHCP-Required policy-enabled WLAN, use the **show wireless client summary** command:



Note The controller or AP does not learn the IP address through other means such as ARP or data gleaning, when IPv4 DHCP-Required is enabled.

```
Device# show wireless client summary
Number of Clients: 1
MAC Address          AP Name              Type ID  State      Protocol  Method
Role
-----
1cXX.bXXX.59XX       APXXXX.7XXX.4XXX    WLAN  3   IP Learn   llac       Dot1x
Local
```

- This example shows that the client IP is in the **Run** state, indicating that the client has received the IP address from DHCP:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
```

```
Number of Clients: 1
```

MAC Address	AP Name	Type	ID	State	Protocol
Method	Role				

5XXX.37XX.c3XX	APXXXX.4XXX.4XXX	WLAN	3	Run	11n (5)
None	Local				



CHAPTER 182

Aironet Extensions IE (CCX IE)

- [Information About Aironet Extensions Information Element](#) , on page 1961
- [Configuring Aironet Extensions IE \(GUI\)](#), on page 1961
- [Configuring Aironet Extensions IE \(CLI\)](#), on page 1962
- [Verifying the Addition of AP Name](#), on page 1963

Information About Aironet Extensions Information Element

The Cisco Aironet Extensions Information Element (IE) is an attribute used by Cisco devices for better connectivity. It contains information such as the AP name, device type, radio type, AP load, and the number of associated clients, in the beacon and probe responses of the WLAN. The Cisco Client Extensions use this information to associate with the best AP.

The Aironet Extensions IE configuration is disabled by default. With this feature you can set the AP name not through enabling the whole IE extension, but by just inserting just the AP name.



Note WLAN shutdown is required only when configuring Aironet Extensions (CCX IE) through the CLI. If CCX IE is enabled via the WebUI, WLAN shutdown is not necessary.

Configuring Aironet Extensions IE (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	In the WLANs window, click Add .
Step 3	In the Add WLAN window, under the Advanced tab, check the Aironet IE check box to enable Aironet IE on the WLAN.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Aironet Extensions IE (CLI)

Perform this procedure to create a WLAN and enable the Aironet Extensions IE feature on the WLAN:



Note For more information about the open configuration models, refer to the Programmability Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.x.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id [ssid] Example: Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid	Specifies the WLAN name and ID: • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>: WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. • <i>ssid</i>: Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note By default, the WLAN is disabled.
Step 3	[no] ccx aironet-iesupport Example: Device(config-wlan)#ccx aironet-iesupport	Configures the Cisco Client Extensions option and sets the support of Aironet IE on the WLAN. (Use the no form of this command to disable the configuration.)

What to do next

1. Create a policy tag. For more information about creating policy tags, refer to *Configuring a Policy Tag (CLI)*.
2. Map the policy tag to the AP. For more information about mapping a policy tag to the AP, refer to *Attaching a Policy Tag and Site Tag to an AP (CLI)*.

Verifying the Addition of AP Name

The following example shows how to verify the addition of the AP Name (using Open Configuration) in the beacon without enabling IE:

```
Device# show wlan id 1
WLAN Profile Name      : wlan-test
=====
Identifier              : 1
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : wlan2
Status                 : Disabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
Advertise-Apname       : Enabled
Universal AP Admin     : Disabled
Max Associated Clients per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP per WLAN : 0
Max Associated Clients per AP Radio per WLAN : 200
OKC                    : Enabled
Number of Active Clients : 0
CHD per WLAN          : Enabled
WMM                   : Allowed
Channel Scan Defer Priority:
  Priority (default)   : 5
  Priority (default)   : 6
Scan Defer Time (msecs) : 100
Media Stream Multicast-direct : Disabled
CCX - AironetIe Support : Enabled
Peer-to-Peer Blocking Action : Disabled
```




CHAPTER 183

Device Analytics

- [Device Analytics](#), on page 1965
- [Adaptive 802.11r](#), on page 1969

Device Analytics

Information About Device Analytics

The Device Analytics feature enhances the enterprise Wi-Fi experience for client devices to ensure seamless connectivity. This feature provides a set of data analytics tools for analyzing wireless client device behavior. With device profiling enabled on the controller, information is exchanged between the client device and the controller and AP. This data is encrypted using AES-256-CBC to ensure device security.

Starting from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, this feature is supported on Intel devices with AC9560, AC8561, AX201, AX200, AX1650, AX210, AX211, and AX1675 chipsets. Device information and other information received from the Intel devices are shared with Cisco Catalyst Center. It will also be used to enhance device profiling on the controller.



Note From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, MacBook Analytics is supported on the controller when the MacBook device sends 11k action frames along with the model information.



Note Apple clients such as iPhones and iPads use 802.11k action frames to send device information to the controller. When they fail to send 802.11k action frames, the controller will not perform device classification based on the 802.11 protocol. Hence, this falls back to legacy device classification which is based on HTTP and DHCP protocols.

Restrictions for Device Analytics

- This feature is applicable only for Cisco device ecosystem partners.
- This feature is supported only on the 802.11ax and Wave 2 APs.

- This feature is supported using central authentication in either local mode or FlexConnect mode.
- To support Intel devices, AP should have PMF capability and PMF should set to optional or required on the WLAN.

Configuring Device Analytics (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the name of the WLAN.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Device Analytics** section, select the **Advertise Support** check box.
- Step 5** Select the **Advertise PC Analytics Support** check box to enable PC analytics on the WLAN.
- Step 6** (Optional) In the **Device Analytics** section, select the **Share Data with Client** check box.
- Step 7** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Device Analytics (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan device_analytics 1 device_analytics	Enters the WLAN configuration sub-mode. • <i>wlan-name</i>—Enter the profile name. The range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>wlan-id</i>—Enter the WLAN ID. The range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID-name</i>—Enter the Service Set Identifier (SSID) for this WLAN. If the SSID is not specified, the WLAN profile name is set as the SSID. Note If you have already configured WLAN, enter wlan wlan-name command.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	client association limit { <i>clients-per-wlan</i> <i>apclients-per-ap-per-wlan</i> radio <i>clients-per-ap-radio-per-wlan</i> } Example: <pre>Device(config)# client association limit 1 1</pre>	Sets the maximum number of clients, clients per AP, or clients per AP radio that can be configured on a WLAN.
Step 4	[no] device-analytics Example: <pre>Device(config)# device-analytics</pre>	This is enabled by default. Enables or disables device analytics. WLANs advertise analytics capability in beacons & probe responses.
Step 5	[no] device-analytics [export] Example: <pre>Device(config)# device-analytics export</pre>	When export option is set, the information from Cisco devices are shared with compatible clients (such as, Samsung devices). Here, information from Cisco devices refer to the Cisco controller details, AP version, and model number. This configuration is disabled by default.
Step 6	device-analytics pc-analytics Example: <pre>Device(config)# device-analytics pc-analytics</pre>	Enables PC analytics on the WLAN. WLANs advertise analytics capability in beacons & probe responses.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.
Step 8	end Example: <pre>Device(config)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Device Analytics

Procedure

-
- Step 1** On the **Monitoring > Wireless > Clients** page, click on a client in the table to view its properties and statistics.
- Step 2** In the **General** tab, click on **Client Properties** to view the **PC Analytics** reports. This section displays the neighbor AP information, candidate BSSIDs, and reports for low RSSI, beacon miss, failed APs, and unknown APs.
-

Verifying Device Analytics Configuration

To view the status of device analytics export, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan 1 test-wlan

WLAN Profile Name      : test-wlan
=====
Identifier              : 1
Description             :
Network Name (SSID)    : test-open-ssid
Status                 : Enabled
Broadcast SSID         : Enabled
Advertise-Apname       : Disabled
Universal AP Admin     : Disabled

Device Analytics
  Advertise Support     : Enabled
  Share Data with Client : Disabled
```

To view client device information, use the following command:

```
Device# show device classifier mac-address 0040.96ae.xxx detail

Client Mac: 0040.96ae.xxxx
Device Type: Samsung Galaxy S10e(Phone)
Confidence Level: 40
Device Name: android-dhcp-9
Software Version(Carrier Code): SD7(TMB)
Device OS: Android 9
Device Vendor: android-dhcp-9
Country: US
```

To view the last disconnect reason, use the following command:

```
Device# show device classifier mac-address 0040.96ae.xxxx detail

Client MAC Address : 0040.96ae.xxxx
Client IPv4 Address : 12.1.0.52
Client IPv6 Addresses : fe80::631b:5b4f:f9b6:53cc
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address : 7069.5a51.53c0
AP Name: AP4C77.6D9E.61B2
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated

Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
EoGRE : No/Simple client
Last Disconnect Reason : User initiated disconnection - Device was powered off or Wi-Fi
turned off
```

To view the per client pc-analytics reports, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 3413.e8b6.xxxx stats pc-analytics

-----
Neighbor APs Info:
-----
Reported time:: 06/21/2021 18:50:34
-----
Roaming Reasons:
```

```
-----
Selected AP RSSI:: -67
Candidate BSSIDs:
-----
```

```
Neighbor AP RSSI(dB)
a4b2.3903.d10e -70
-----
```

```
PC Analytics report stats
-----
```

```
-----
Report Type Processed Reports Dropped Reports
-----
```

```
STA Info 1 0
Neigh AP 1 0
Low RSSI 0 0
Beacon Miss 0 0
Failed AP 0 0
Unknown APs 0 0
```

Adaptive 802.11r

Information About Adaptive 802.11r

The Cisco device ecosystem partner now supports 11r functionality on an adaptive 802.11r SSID. Samsung is one of the partners.



Note The Adaptive 802.11r is enabled by default. This means that when you create a WLAN, the adaptive 802.11r is configured by default.

Client device information such as its model number, supported operating system is shared with the controller and AP while the device receives information such as controller and AP type, software release, etc. Also, this enables 802.11r-compatible devices to benefit from adaptive 802.11r on Cisco networks. This ecosystem comes handy especially for troubleshooting device disconnection from the AP as the controller receives information such as the disconnect reason code from the client device.



Note Devices without 11r support cannot join an SSID where 11r is enabled.

To use the 11r functionality on devices, you need to create a separate SSID with 11r enabled and another with 11r disabled to support the non-11r devices in the network.

Adaptive dot11r is supported by Apple iPad, Apple iPhone, and Samsung S10 devices. However; some software update creates a MIC mismatch error in these devices. But these errors are transient and clients will successfully be able to associate to the SSID in subsequent results.

Configuring Adaptive 802.11r (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the name of the WLAN.
 - Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security > Layer2** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **WPA Parameters** section and **Fast Transition** drop-down list, choose **Adaptive Enabled**.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Verifying Adaptive 802.11r

To view the details, use the following command:

```
Device# show running-config all
wlan test-psk 2 test-psk
  security ft adaptive
  "adaptive" is optional
```



Note The following command is used to enable or disable adaptive 11r:

[no] security ft adaptive

The following command is used to enable or disable 802.11r:

[no] security ft



CHAPTER 184

Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

- [Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 1971](#)
- [Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support, on page 1972](#)
- [Enabling Device Classifier \(CLI\), on page 1975](#)
- [Updating Dynamic XML File, on page 1975](#)
- [Verifying TLV Values, on page 1976](#)
- [Clearing Old Classification Cache, on page 1976](#)

Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 133: Feature History for Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1	Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support	You can do the following: • Add rules, checks, and profile name to an XML file. • Upload the XML file to the device file system. This feature enables better device classification without upgrading the device to a new release. Note Device classifier dynamic XML support is applicable for the following: • Devices that are not classified previously: The classification takes effect from the latest file without any reboot. • Devices that are already classified: The clients have to rejoin for the classification to take effect. • Client previously classified with higher protocol values such as DHCP + HTTP: If the same client wants to be classified with only DHCP, use the clear wireless client device cache command.

Information About Device Classifier Dynamic XML Support

The current device classifier uses static XML file wherein you define checks, rules, and profiles based on MAC, DHCP, and HTTP TLVs in wireless devices. The static XML file is converted to a text file and integrated with the image. When you enable the device classified functionality using **device classifier** command, the contents in the text file is read and populated into the device classifier structures.



Note The subsequent device classification is based on the populated device classifier structures.

Presently, if you find any unclassified devices in a controller, the static XML file is updated with the new rules, checks, and profiles to get the devices classified. You will need to wait till the subsequent release as the static XML file is integrated with the image and cannot be changed from the controller.

Workflow: To Classify Unclassified Devices with Dynamic XML File

1. The dynamic XML filename must be **dc_user_profiles.xml**.



Note Files with any other name are not read and parsed even if they have the correct schema.

2. Copy the sample dynamic XML file to your system using the following command:
copy {flash:} {ftp: | tftp:}
3. Provide a new version for the dynamic XML file:
<Version>1.1</Version>
4. Edit the dynamic XML file with the new rules, checks, and profiles as defined in the schema after examining the TLV values of the unclassified devices.



Note To check the TLV values, use the following command:

show wireless client mac-address *mac* detail

5. Copy the dynamic XML file to the device flash using the following command:
copy {ftp: | tftp:} {flash:}

Once the file is copied to the device file system, the newly connected clients are classified according to the new profiles defined in the dynamic XML file. You need to reconnect the already unclassified devices to send the DHCP and HTTP TLVs, and then classify them according to the new profiles. The already classified devices remain as classified until they are reconnected.

Dynamic XML File

The device classifier dynamic XML support enhancement addresses this problem for device classifier dynamic XML file.

With the introduction of dynamic XML support, you are provided with a new dynamic device classifier XML file support.



Note The filename will be **dc_user_profiles.xml** and you can update the dynamic XML file with the new rules, checks, and profiles based on the devices connected and according to the provided schema. You can then copy this XML file to the device file system to enable better device classification without the need to upgrade the device to a new release.

The static XML file support is still available. If a device is connected, its TLVs are checked with the dynamic XML user profiles first and if it matches it is classified as per that profile. If you search for non-static XML profiles and if it matches it is classified as per that profile.



Note The sample dynamic XML file is available in the device at *flash:dc_profile_dir/*. You can consider the following sample dynamic XML file schema and copy this to your system using **copy {flash:} {ftp: | tftp:}** command, and append or replace the content with your own profiles, rules, and checks:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<DeviceList>
  <CopyRight>Copyright (c) 2021-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights
reserved.</CopyRight>
  <Version>1.0</Version>
  <Device>
    <DeviceType>Sample_Profile_1</DeviceType>
    <RuleName>Sample_Rule_1</RuleName>
    <RuleOperator>OR</RuleOperator>
    <RuleCertaintyMetric>20</RuleCertaintyMetric>
    <Check>
      <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
      <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
      <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
      <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
    </Check>
    <Check>
      <Protocol>HTTP</Protocol>
      <TLV-Type>3</TLV-Type>
      <TLV-Value-Type>Integer</TLV-Value-Type>
      <TLV-Value>23</TLV-Value>
    </Check>
  </Device>
  <Device>
    <DeviceType>Sample_Profile_2</DeviceType>
    <RuleName>Sample_Rule_2</RuleName>
    <RuleOperator>AND</RuleOperator>
    <RuleCertaintyMetric>30</RuleCertaintyMetric>
    <Check>
      <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
      <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
      <TLV-Value-Type></TLV-Value-Type>
      <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
    </Check>
    <Check>
      <Protocol>MAC</Protocol>
      <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
      <TLV-Value>Cisco</TLV-Value>
    </Check>
  </Device>
</DeviceList>
```

Each time you copy a new dynamic XML file, the older user profiles are erased completely and newer profiles are populated. After copying the dynamic XML files, only the newly connected clients are classified based on the new dynamic file whereas the already classified devices still remain as classified with older profiles until they are reconnected.

MAC OUI-Based Profiles

The Organizational Unique Identifier (OUI) of a MAC address is part of the MAC address that identifies the vendor of the network adapter. The OUI is the first three bytes of the six-byte field and administered by the IEEE.

To define MAC-based profiles in the dynamic XML file, see <https://standards-oui.ieee.org/>.

For example, if the Client MAC address is **7035.094d.000**, then OUI is **0x703509**. You can find the corresponding entry in the <https://standards-oui.ieee.org/> as follows:

```
70-35-09    (hex)  Cisco Systems, Inc
703509     (base 16) Cisco Systems, Inc
             80 West Tasman Drive
             San Jose CA 94568
             US
```

Enabling Device Classifier (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	device classifier Example: Device(config)# device classifier	Enables the classification of attached devices.
Step 3	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Updating Dynamic XML File

To classify a device, add the following lines in the dynamic XML file:

```
<DeviceList>
  <CopyRight>Copyright (c) 2021-2022 by Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights
reserved.</CopyRight>
  <Version>1.1</Version>
  <Device>
    <DeviceType>Device-test</DeviceType>
    <RuleName>Rule-Test</RuleName>
    <RuleOperator>AND</RuleOperator>
    <RuleCertaintyMetric>20</RuleCertaintyMetric>
    <Check>
      <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
      <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
      <TLV-Value-Type>String</TLV-Value-Type>
      <TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
    </Check>
  </Device>
  .....
</DeviceList>
```

Verifying TLV Values

To verify the TLV values, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 7035.094d.0001 detail
Client MAC Address : 7035.094d.0001
```

```
.....
Nearby AP Statistics:
```

```
EoGRE : Pending Classification
```

```
Device Classification Information:
```

```
Device Type          : Un-Classified Device
```

```
Device Name          : Unknown Device
```

```
Protocol Map         : 0x000009 (OUI, DHCP)
```

```
Device Protocol      : DHCP                      --> <Protocol>DHCP</Protocol>
```

```
Type                : 12      14                  --> <TLV-Type>12</TLV-Type>
```

```
Data                 : 0e
```

```
00000000 00 0c 00 0a 74 65 73 74 2d 30 30 30 30 31      |...test-00001 |
---><TLV-Value>test</TLV-Value>
```

```
Type                : 60      8
```

```
Data                 : 08
```

```
00000000 00 3c 00 04 74 65 73 74                      |.<...test      |
```

```
Type                : 55      11
```

```
Data                 : 0b
```

```
00000000 00 37 00 07 01 1c 02 03 0f 06 0c              |.7.....      |
```

```
Max Client Protocol Capability: Wi-Fi6 (802.11ax)
```

Clearing Old Classification Cache

If an already classified client uses any of the three type-length-values (TLVs) [OUI, DHCP, or HTTP] and if the combination value is lower, the existing value is ignored. To avoid such a scenario, use the following command:

```
Device# clear wireless client device cache
```



Note The priority of the TLVs is as follows:

- OUI
- DHCP
- HTTP

After executing the clear command, you must rejoin the client to get it classified as per the latest XML file.

BSSID Counters

- [BSSID Counters, on page 1979](#)
- [Enabling BSSID Statistics and BSSID Neighbor Statistics, on page 1979](#)
- [Verifying BSSID Statistics on the Controller, on page 1980](#)

BSSID Counters

This feature helps to retrieve the BSSID statistics when a client is associated with a WLAN for every configured interval. A new configuration is introduced in the controller per AP profile to enable or disable BSSID statistics on the access points. The feature is disabled by default.



Note BSSID counter is not supported on the Cisco Aironet 1800 series APs and Cisco Catalyst 9100 series APs.

Enabling BSSID Statistics and BSSID Neighbor Statistics

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile <i>ap-profile-name</i>	Enters the AP profile configuration submode. <i>ap-profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured AP.
Step 3	bssid-stats Example:	Enables BSSID statistics. Use the no form of the command to disable the feature.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] bssid-stats	
Step 4	bssid-stats bssid-stats-frequency bssid-timer-seconds Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# bssid-stats bssid-stats-frequency 40	Sets the BSSID stats frequency timer. BSSID statistics frequency timer is in the range of 1 to 180 seconds.
Step 5	bssid-neighbor-stats Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] bssid-neighbor-stats	Enables BSSID neighbor statistics. Use the no form of the command to disable the feature.
Step 6	bssid-neighbor-stats interval bssid-interval <1-180> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# [no] bssid-neighbor-stats interval 50	Sets the interval at which BSSID neighbor statistics is sent from the AP. The BSSID neighbor stats interval is in the range of 1 to 180 seconds.

Verifying BSSID Statistics on the Controller

To verify the BSSID statistics on the controller, use the following command:

- **show wireless stats ap name ap-name dot11 24ghz slot 0 wlan-id <wlan-id> statistics**

```
Device# show wireless stats ap name APXXXX.6DXX.58XX dot11 24ghz slot 0 wlan-id 18 stat
BSSID           : 7069.5a38.112e
WLAN ID         : 18
Client Count    : 1
TX Statistics
```

```
-----
Mgmt           Retries           Data Bytes           Data Retries           Subframe Retries
-----
12             18             16081                18                     0
```

RX Statistics

```
-----
Mgmt           Data Bytes
```

```
74             17693
```

Data Distribution

```
-----
Bytes           RX           TX
-----
0-64            55           93
65-128          66           40
129-256         21           5
257-512         10           3
513-1024        1            9
1025-2048       0            1
2049-4096       0            0
4097-8192       0            0
8193-16384     0            0
16385-32768    0            0
```

```

32769-65536          0          0
65537-131072         0          0
131073-262144        0          0
262145-524288        0          0
524289-1048576       0          0
WMM Statistics
-----

```

```

-----
RX          TX
-----
Voice       0          43
Video       0          0
Best Effort 154        39
Background  0          0
MCS
-----

```

```

-----
MCS          RX          TX
-----
mcs0         39          0
mcs1         2          0
mcs2         5          0
mcs3         7          0
mcs4         25         0
mcs5         59         0
mcs6         290        0
mcs7         1148       3
mcs8         2288       0
mcs9         4440       2

```

• **show ap name *ap_name* neighbor summary**

Device#show ap name APXXXX.6DXX.59XX neighbor summary

BSSID	Channel	Channel-width	Slot	RSSI	Last-Heard
	SSID				Neighbour
0008.2f1c.8040 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-39	03/17/2020
	aprusty-un-dot1x				FALSE
0008.2f1c.8041 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-39	03/17/2020
	aprusty-sim-11				FALSE
0008.2f1c.8042 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-39	03/17/2020
	one-ph				FALSE
0008.2f1c.8044 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-38	03/17/2020
	aprusty-test				FALSE
0008.3296.f340 10:39:27	11	20 Mhz	0	-51	03/18/2020
	ewlc-ap-dot1x				FALSE
0008.3296.f341 10:39:27	11	20 Mhz	0	-49	03/18/2020
	vewlc_small_psk				FALSE
002a.1022.d950 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-57	03/17/2020
	ewlc-ap-dot1x				FALSE
002a.105c.bfd0 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-36	03/17/2020
	ewlc-ap-dot1x				FALSE
002a.105c.bfd1 18:25:14	1	20 Mhz	0	-37	03/17/2020
	vewlc_small_psk				FALSE
002c.c864.76d0 10:37:37	11	20 Mhz	0	-61	03/18/2020
	rajwlan				FALSE

BSSID	Channel SSID	Channel-width	Slot	RSSI	Last-Heard Neighbour
002c.c8de.59e0 18:25:14	1 WQ	20 Mhz	0	-48	03/17/2020 FALSE
002c.c8de.5d80 10:39:27	11 ewlc-ap-dot1x	20 Mhz	0	-54	03/18/2020 FALSE
002c.c8de.5d81 10:39:27	11 vewlc_small_psk	20 Mhz	0	-55	03/18/2020 FALSE
002c.c8de.7260 10:39:27	11 ewlc-ap-dot1x	20 Mhz	0	-53	03/18/2020 FALSE
002c.c8de.7261 10:39:27	11 vewlc_small_psk	20 Mhz	0	-54	03/18/2020 FALSE
005d.7390.e1e0 18:25:14	1 rlan	20 Mhz	0	-54	03/17/2020 FALSE
006b.f114.95a0 18:25:14	1 zavc	20 Mhz	0	-60	03/17/2020 FALSE
006b.f114.b0e0 18:25:14	1 ewlc-ap-dot1x	20 Mhz	0	-46	03/17/2020 FALSE
006c.bc61.2340 18:24:44	1 dnac-swim	20 Mhz	0	-63	03/17/2020 FALSE
006c.bc72.5ce0 10:39:17	11 dnac-swim	20 Mhz	0	-58	03/18/2020 FALSE



CHAPTER 186

Fastlane+

- [Information About Fastlane+, on page 1983](#)
- [Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN \(CLI\), on page 1983](#)
- [Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN \(GUI\), on page 1984](#)
- [Monitoring Fastlane+, on page 1984](#)
- [Verifying Fastlane+, on page 1985](#)

Information About Fastlane+

IEEE 802.11ax allows scheduled access-based uplink transmissions by periodically collecting buffer status reports from clients. The Fastlane+ feature improves the effectiveness of estimating the uplink buffer status for clients, thereby enhancing the user experience for latency-sensitive applications. The Fastlane+ feature can be enabled or disabled on a per-WLAN basis. Support for this feature is indicated in the beacons and probe responses transmitted by an AP.



Note This feature works only if Protected Management Frame (PMF) is configured as optional or mandatory for a WLAN.

Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example:	Configures a WLAN and enters WLAN configuration submode. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	If you have already configured a WLAN, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	scheduler asr Example: Device(config-wlan)# scheduler asr	Configures Fastlane+ feature on a WLAN.

Configuring an Fastlane+ on a WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
 - Step 2** Select a WLAN.
 - Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.
 - Step 4** Check the **Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling** check box to enable the feature on a per-WLAN basis.
 - Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Monitoring Fastlane+

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Monitoring > Wireless > Clients**.
 - Step 2** Click a client name from the client list.
The **Client** window with multiple tabs is activated.
 - Step 3** Click **General** tab.
 - Step 4** Click **Client Statistics** tab.
The most recent uplink latency statistics received from the client is displayed in the **Uplink Latency Distribution** section.
 - Step 5** Click **Client Properties** tab.
The Fastlane+ feature-related client capabilities information is displayed at the bottom of the window.
-

Verifying Fastlane+

The following example shows how to verify whether Fastlane+ is enabled or disabled for a WLAN:

```
Device# show wlan 2 | include ASR

Advanced Scheduling Requests Handling : Enabled
```

The following example shows how to verify Fastlane+ capability information and the most recent client uplink latency statistics:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address f45c.89b0.xxxx detail
.
.
.
Regular ASR support: : ENABLED
Non-default Fastlane Profile: : Active
Range Voice Video Background Best-Effort
-----
[0-20ms] 400 300 200 100
[20-40ms] 401 301 201 101
[40-100ms] 402 302 202 102
[>100ms] 403 303 203 103
```

The following example shows how to verify Fastlane+ statistics along with Fastlane+ capability and uplink latency statistics for all the Fastlane+ clients on a WLAN.



Note `show interfaces dot11radio asr-info all` is an AP command, and does not work on the controller.

```
Device# show interfaces Dot11Radio 1 asr-info all

[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0149]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] Client-MAC:[26:52:CF:C8:D0:1C] AID:[3] ASR-Capability:[0x1]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] BE- LAT[0-20]:[267] LAT[20-40]:[57] LAT[40-100]:[32]
LAT[>100]:[26]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] BK- LAT[0-20]:[0] LAT[20-40]:[0] LAT[40-100]:[0] LAT[>100]:[0]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] VI- LAT[0-20]:[0] LAT[20-40]:[0] LAT[40-100]:[0] LAT[>100]:[0]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] VO- LAT[0-20]:[2222] LAT[20-40]:[409] LAT[40-100]:[224]
LAT[>100]:[163]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] HTTP_PEER_DETAILS_TLV:
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] peer_type = 0
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] sw_peer_id = 98
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] vdev_id = 25
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] pdev_id = 0
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] ast_idx = 1187
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] mac_addr = 26:52:cf:c8:d0:1c
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] peer_flags = 0x200006f9
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] qpeer_flags = 0x8
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] HTTP_STATS_PEER_ASR_STATS_TLV
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_bmap: 0x8
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_muedca_update_cnt: 1
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_muedca_reset_cnt: 1
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_ul_mu_bsr_trigger: 2376
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_min_trig_intv- BE:0 BK:0 VI:0 VO:19
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_max_trig_intv- BE:0 BK:0 VI:0 VO:20
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_min_alloc_rate- BE:0 BK:0 VI:0 VO:12
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_su_data_ppdu_cnt- BE:0 BK:0 VI:0 VO:2149
```

```

[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_su_data_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:757546
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_trig_ppdu_cnt- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:5002
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_trig_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:2400960
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_ppdu_cnt- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:2134
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:736578
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_padding_bytes- BE:0      BK:0 VI:0 VO:2953488

```

The following examples show how to verify scheduling statistics along with capability and uplink latency statistics for a given client on a WLAN:



Note The `show interfaces dot11radio asr-info` is an AP command and it will not work on the controller.

```

Device# show interfaces Dot11Radio 1 asr-info 26:XX:CF:XX:D0:XX

[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0149]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] Client-MAC:[26:52:CF:C8:D0:1C] AID:[3] ASR-Capability:[0x1]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] BE- LAT[0-20]:[267] LAT[20-40]:[57] LAT[40-100]:[32]
LAT[>100]:[26]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] BK- LAT[0-20]:[0] LAT[20-40]:[0] LAT[40-100]:[0] LAT[>100]:[0]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] VI- LAT[0-20]:[0] LAT[20-40]:[0] LAT[40-100]:[0] LAT[>100]:[0]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150] VO- LAT[0-20]:[2222] LAT[20-40]:[409] LAT[40-100]:[224]
LAT[>100]:[163]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0150]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] HTT_PEER_DETAILS_TLV:
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] peer_type = 0
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] sw_peer_id = 98
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] vdev_id = 25
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] pdev_id = 0
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] ast_idx = 1187
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] mac_addr = 26:xx:cf:xx:d0:xx
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] peer_flags = 0x200006f9
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] qpeer_flags = 0x8
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206]
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] HTT_STATS_PEER_ASR_STATS_TLV
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_bmap: 0x8
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_muedca_update_cnt: 1
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_muedca_reset_cnt: 1
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_ul_mu_bsr_trigger: 2376
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_min_trig_intv- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:19
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0206] asr_max_trig_intv- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:20
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_min_alloc_rate- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:12
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_su_data_ppdu_cnt- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:2149
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_su_data_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:757546
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_trig_ppdu_cnt- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:5002
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_trig_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:2400960
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_ppdu_cnt- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:2134
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_ppdu_bytes- BE:0          BK:0 VI:0 VO:736578
[*10/12/2020 18:45:21.0207] asr_ul_mu_data_padding_bytes- BE:0      BK:0 VI:0 VO:2953488

```

Workgroup Bridges

- [Cisco Workgroup Bridges, on page 1987](#)
- [Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN, on page 1990](#)
- [Verifying the Status of a Workgroup Bridge on the Controller, on page 1992](#)
- [Configuring Access Points as Workgroup Bridge, on page 1992](#)
- [Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration, on page 2007](#)
- [Configuring Multiple WGBs \(CLI\), on page 2007](#)
- [Verifying WGB Configuration, on page 2008](#)

Cisco Workgroup Bridges

A workgroup bridge (WGB) is an Access Point (AP) mode to provide wireless connectivity to wired clients that are connected to the Ethernet port of the WGB AP. A WGB connects a wired network over a single wireless segment by learning the MAC addresses of its wired clients on the Ethernet interface and reporting them to the WLC through infrastructure AP using Internet Access Point Protocol (IAPP) messaging. The WGB establishes a single wireless connection to the root AP, which in turn, treats the WGB as a wireless client.

Figure 41: Example of a WGB



Starting from Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, WGB is supported on the following Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series Access Points.

- Cisco Catalyst 9105
- Cisco Catalyst 9115
- Cisco Catalyst 9120

Starting from Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.10.1, WGB is supported on the following Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series Access Points.

- Cisco Catalyst 9124
- Cisco Catalyst 9130

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards, WGB supports one radio for uplink (backhaul) connectivity and another radio for serving wireless clients. This feature is supported on the Cisco 11AX APs such as Cisco Catalyst 9105 APs, Cisco Catalyst 9115 APs, Cisco Catalyst 9120 APs.

OPEN and PSK security (WPA2 Personal) based wireless clients can be associated to WGB independent of its uplink connectivity, but they will not be able to pass traffic unless WGB has uplink connectivity. Radius server must be configured and the WGB should have uplink connectivity for authentication of wireless clients to 802.1x security (WPA2 Enterprise) WLAN. Both IPv4 and IPv6 traffic forwarding is supported for wireless clients. Static IP and Passive Client support is enabled by default on these WLANs.

The following features are supported for use with a WGB:

Table 134: WGB Feature Matrix

Feature	Cisco Wave 1 APs	Cisco Wave 2 and 11AX APs
802.11r	Supported	Supported
QOS	Supported	Supported
UWGB mode	Supported	Supported on Wave 2 APs Not supported on 11AX APs
IGMP Snooping or Multicast	Supported	Supported
802.11w	Supported	Supported
PI support (without SNMP)	Supported	Not supported
IPv6	Supported	Supported
VLAN	Supported	Supported
802.11i (WPAv2)	Supported	Supported
Broadcast tagging/replicate	Supported	Supported
Unified VLAN client	Implicitly supported (No CLI required)	Supported
WGB client	Supported	Supported

Feature	Cisco Wave 1 APs	Cisco Wave 2 and 11AX APs
802.1x – PEAP, EAP-FAST, EAP-TLS	Supported	Supported
NTP	Supported	Supported
Wired client support on all LAN ports	Supported in Wired-0 and Wired-1 interfaces	Supported in all Wired-0, 1 and LAN ports 1, 2, and 3
Second radio wireless client support	Supported	Supported on Cisco 11AX APs only.

The following table shows the supported and unsupported authentication and switching modes for Cisco APs when connecting to a WGB.



Note Workgroup Bridge mode is supported on the WiFi6 Pluggable Module from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1.

Table 135: Supported Access Points and Requirements

Access Points	Requirements
Cisco Aironet 2700, 3700, and 1572 Series	Requires autonomous image.
Cisco Aironet 2800, 3800, 4800, 1562, and Cisco Catalyst 9105, 9115, 9120, 9124, and 9130, IW6300 and ESW6300 Series	CAPWAP image starting from Cisco AireOS 8.8 release.

- MAC filtering is not supported for wired clients.
- Idle timeout is not supported for both WGB and wired clients.
- Session timeout is not applicable for wired clients.
- Web authentication is not supported.
- The total number of clients supported by WGB (wired + wireless) is limited to 20 clients.
- If you want to use a chain of certificates, copy all the CA certificates to a file and install it under a trust point on the WGB, else server certificate validation may fail.
- Wired clients connected to a WGB inherit the WGB's QoS and AAA override attributes.
- To enable the WGB to communicate with the root AP, create a WLAN and make sure that Aironet IE is enabled under the Advanced settings.
- WPA2 Enterprise security works only if the uplink WLAN is enabled for FlexConnect local switching or Fabric enabled WLAN.
- Radius override is not supported for wireless clients that are associated with WGB WLANs.
- WGB does not support 802.1X wired client authentication when used with power injector.

The power-injector drops all EAPOL packets received from the wired client and does not forward it to the WGB's wired0 interface. In such cases, use PoE plus hub behind the wired0 interface and connect the wired clients to the hub.

- After WGB reload, the WGB 802.1X wired clients behind a hub do not trigger authentication automatically, unless done manually.

After WGB is reloaded the WGB dot1x wired clients which are behind a hub remain authenticated or connected on their side and do not get notified that the WGB is reloaded. Clients are also not shown on the WGB bridge table. The client interfaces must be manually disabled and enabled back to trigger authentication.

- When the 802.1X wired client Ethernet interface is disabled and then enabled again, client authentication might fail for some of dot1x wired clients, at times.

Configuring Workgroup Bridge on a WLAN

Follow the procedure given below to configure a WGB on a WLAN:

For WGB to join a wireless network there are specific settings on the WLAN and on the related policy profile.



Note For the configuration given below, it is assumed that the WLAN security is already configured.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan WGB_Test	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	ccx aironet-iesupport Example: Device(config-wlan)# ccx aironet-iesupport	Configures the Cisco Client Extensions option and sets the support of Aironet IE on the WLAN.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# exit	Exits the WLAN configuration submode.
Step 5	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example:	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile policy test-wgb	
Step 6	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# description "test-wgb"	Adds a description for the policy profile.
Step 7	vlan <i>vlan-no</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 48	Assigns the profile policy to the VLAN.
Step 8	wgb vlan Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# wgb vlan	Configures WGB VLAN client support.
Step 9	wgb broadcast-tagging Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# wgb broadcast-tagging	Configures WGB broadcast tagging on a WLAN.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Restarts the policy profile.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Exits the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 12	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy WGB_Policy	Configures policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 13	wlan <i>profile-name</i> policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan WGB_Test policy test-wgb	Maps a policy profile to a WLAN profile.
Step 14	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Exits policy tag configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying the Status of a Workgroup Bridge on the Controller

Use the following commands to verify the status of a WGB.

To display the wireless-specific configuration of active clients, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
```

To display the WGBs on your network, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wgb summary
```

To display the details of wired clients that are connected to a particular WGB, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless wgb mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:25:82 detail
```

Configuring Access Points as Workgroup Bridge

Turning Cisco Aironet 2700/3700/1572 Series AP into Autonomous Mode

Before you begin

Download the autonomous image for the specific access point from software.cisco.com and place it on a TFTP server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	debug capwap console cli Example: Device# debug capwap console cli	Enables the console CLI.
Step 2	archive download-sw force-reload overwrite tftp:ipaddress filepath filename Example: Device(config)# archive download-sw force-reload overwrite tftp://10.10.10.1/tftp/c1800.tar	Downloads the autonomous image to the access point.

Configuring Cisco Wave 2 APs or 11AX APs in Workgroup Bridge or CAPWAP AP Mode (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters in to the privileged mode of the AP.
Step 2	ap-type workgroup-bridge Example: Device# ap-type workgroup-bridge	Moves the AP in to the Workgroup Bridge mode.
Step 3	configure ap address ipv4 dhcp or configure ap address ipv4 staticip-address netmask gateway-ipaddress Example: DHCP IP Address Device# configure ap address ipv4 dhcp Static IP Address Device# configure ap address ipv4 static 10.10.10.2 255.255.255.234 192.168.4.1	Configures DHCP or Static IP address.
Step 4	configure ap management add username username password password secret secret Example: Device# configure ap management add username xyz-user password ***** secret cisco	Configures an username for the AP management.
Step 5	configure ap hostnamehost-name Example: Device# configure ap hostname xyz-host	Configures the AP hostname.

Configure an SSID Profile for Cisco Wave 2 and 11AX APs (CLI)

This procedure is an AP procedure. The CLIs listed in the procedure given below work only on the AP console and not on the controller.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure ssid-profile <i>ssid-profile-name</i> ssid <i>radio-serv-name</i> authentication { open psk <i>preshaed-key</i> key-management { dot11r wpa2 dot11w { optional required } } eap profile <i>eap-profile-name</i> key-management { dot11r wpa2 dot11w { optional required } } Example: SSID profile with open authentication. <pre>Device# configure ssid-profile test WRT s1 authentication open</pre> SSID profile with PSK authentication. <pre>Device# configure ssid-profile test WRT s1 authentication psk 1234 key-management dot11r optional</pre> SSID profile with EAP authentication. <pre>Device# configure ssid-profile test WRT s1 authentication eap profile test2 key-management dot11r optional</pre>	Choose an authentication protocol (Open, PSK, or EAP) for the SSID profile.
Step 2	configure dot11radio <i>radio-interface</i> mode wgb ssid-profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11radio r1 mode wgb ssid-profile doc-test</pre>	Attaches an SSID profile to a radio interface.
Step 3	configure ssid-profile <i>profile-name</i> ssid <i>ssid-name</i> dtim-period <i>value in beacon intervals</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure ssid-profile test ssid s1 dtim-period 50</pre>	Configures the DTIM period. Note This command is supported for wireless clients from Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards.
Step 4	configure qos profile <i>qos-profile-name</i> { bronze gold platinum silver } Example: <pre>Device# configure qos profile qos-profile gold</pre>	Creates a gold QoS profile.
Step 5	configure ssid-profile <i>profile-name</i> ssid <i>ssid-name</i> qos profile <i>qos-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure ssid-profile test ssid s1 qos profile qos-profile</pre>	Maps the QoS profile to the SSID profile. Note This command is supported for wireless clients from Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1 onwards.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	configure ssid-profile <i>profile-name</i> delete Example: Device# configure ssid-profile doc-test delete	(Optional) Deletes an SSID profile.
Step 7	show wgb ssid Example: Device# show wgb ssid	(Optional) Displays summary of configured and connected SSIDs.
Step 8	show wgb packet statistics Example: Device# show wgb packet statistics	(Optional) Displays management, control, and data packet statistics.

Configuring the Authentication Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure radius authentication <primary secondary> add <ipv4 ipv6> address radius-server-ip-address port radius-server-port-number secret radius-secret Example: Device# configure radius authentication primary add ipv4 192.168.1.2 port 1812 secret Cisco123	Configures a primary and (or) secondary radius server with an IPv4 or IPv6 IP, port, and secret.

Configuring a Dot1X Credential (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure dot1x credential <i>profile-name</i> username <i>name</i> password <i>password</i> Example: Device# configure dot1x credential test1 username XYZ password *****	Configures a dot1x credential.
Step 2	configure dot1x credential <i>profile-name</i> delete Example: Device# configure dot1x credential test1 delete	Removes a dot1x profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	clear wgb client {all single <i>mac-addr</i> } Example: <pre>Device# clear wgb client single xxxx.xxxx.xxxx.xxxx</pre>	Deauthenticates a WGB client.

Configuring an EAP Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> method {fast leap peap tls} Example: <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap method fast</pre>	Configures an EAP profile.
Step 2	configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> trustpoint default or configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> trustpoint name <i>trustpoint-name</i> Example: EAP Profile to Trustpoint with MIC Certificate. <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap trustpoint default</pre> EAP Profile to Trustpoint with CA Certificate. <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap trustpoint cisco</pre>	Configures an EAP profile with a trustpoint.
Step 3	configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> trustpoint {default name <i>trustpoint-name</i> } Example: <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap trustpoint default</pre>	Attaches the CA trustpoint. Note With the default profile, WGB uses the internal MIC certificate for authentication.
Step 4	configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> dot1x-credential <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap dot1x-credential test-profile</pre>	Configures the 802.1X credential profile.
Step 5	configure eap-profile <i>profile-name</i> delete Example: <pre>Device# configure eap-profile test-eap delete</pre>	(Optional) Deletes an EAP profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	show wgb eap dot1x credential profile Example: Device# show wgb eap dot1x credential profile	(Optional) Displays the WGB EAP dot1x profile summary.
Step 7	show wgb eap profile Example: Device# show wgb eap profile	(Optional) Displays the EAP profile summary.
Step 8	show wgb eap profile all Example: Device# show wgb eap profile all	(Optional) Displays the EAP and dot1x profiles.

Configuring Manual-Enrollment of a Trustpoint for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enrollment terminal Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enrollment terminal	Configures a trustpoint in WGB.
Step 2	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> authenticate Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US authenticate	Authenticates a trustpoint manually. Enter the base 64 encoded CA certificate and end the certificate by entering quit in a new line.
Step 3	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> key-size <i>key-length</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US key-size 60	Configures a private key size.
Step 4	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> subject-name <i>name</i> [<i>2ltr-country-code</i> <i>state-name</i> <i>locality</i> <i>org-name</i> <i>org-unit</i> <i>email</i>] Example:	Configures the subject name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US subject-name test US CA abc cisco AP test@cisco.com	
Step 5	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enrol Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enroll	Generates a private key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR). Afterwards, create the digitally signed certificate using the CSR output in the CA server.
Step 6	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> import certificate Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US import certificate	Import the signed certificate in WGB. Enter the base 64 encoded CA certificate and end the certificate by using quit command in a new line.
Step 7	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> delete Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US delete	(Optional) Delete a trustpoint.
Step 8	show crypto pki trustpoint Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint	(Optional) Displays the trustpoint summary.
Step 9	show crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> certificate Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US certificate	(Optional) Displays the content of the certificates that are created for a trustpoint.

Configuring Auto-Enrollment of a Trustpoint for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enrollment url <i>ca-server-url</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint	Enrolls a trustpoint in WGB using the server URL.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	ca-server-US enrollment url https://cisco/certsrv	
Step 2	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> authenticate Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US authenticate	Authenticates a trustpoint by fetching the CA certificate from CA server automatically.
Step 3	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> key-size <i>key-length</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US key-size 60	Configures a private key size.
Step 4	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> subject-name <i>name</i> [2ltr-country-code state-name locality org-name org-unit email] Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US subject-name test US CA abc cisco AP test@cisco.com	Configures the subject name.
Step 5	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enroll Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enroll	Enrolls the trustpoint. Request the digitally signed certificate from the CA server.
Step 6	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> auto-enroll enable <i>renew-percentage</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US auto-enroll enable 10	Enables auto-enroll of the trustpoint. You can disable auto-enrolling by using the disable option in the command.
Step 7	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> delete Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US delete	(Optional) Deletes a trustpoint.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	show crypto pki trustpoint Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint	(Optional) Displays the trustpoint summary.
Step 9	show crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> certificate Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US certificate	(Optional) Displays the content of the certificates that are created for a trustpoint.
Step 10	show crypto pki timers Example: Device# show crypto pki timers	(Optional) Displays the PKI timer information.

Configuring Manual Certificate Enrolment Using TFTP Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enrollment tftp <i>addr/file-name</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enrollment tftp://10.8.0.6/all_cert.txt	Specifies the enrolment method to retrieve the CA certificate and client certificate for a trustpoint in WGB.
Step 2	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> authenticate Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US authenticate	Retrieves the CA certificate and authenticates it from the specified TFTP server. If the file specification is included, the wgb will append the extension “.ca” to the specified filename.
Step 3	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> key-size <i>key-length</i> Example: Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US key-size 60	Configures a private key size.
Step 4	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> subject-name <i>name</i> [2 <i>ltr-country-code</i> <i>state-name</i> <i>locality</i> <i>org-name</i> <i>org-unit</i> <i>email</i>]	Configures the subject name.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US subject-name test US CA abc cisco AP test@cisco.com</pre>	
Step 5	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> enrol Example: <pre>Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enroll</pre>	Generate a private key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and writes the request out to the TFTP server. The filename to be written is appended with the extension “.req”.
Step 6	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> import certificate Example: <pre>Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US import certificate</pre>	Import the signed certificate in WGB using TFTP at the console terminal, which retrieves the granted certificate. The WGB will attempt to retrieve the granted certificate using TFTP using the same filename and the file name append with “.crt” extension.
Step 7	show crypto pki trustpoint Example: <pre>Device# show crypto pki trustpoint</pre>	(Optional) Displays the trustpoint summary.
Step 8	show crypto pki trustpoint <i>trustpoint-name</i> certificate Example: <pre>Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US certificate</pre>	(Optional) Displays the content of the certificates that are created for a trustpoint.

Importing the PKCS12 Format Certificates from the TFTP Server (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure crypto pki trustpoint <i>ca-server-name</i> import pkcs12 tftp <i>addr/file-name</i> password <i>pwd</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US enrollment tftp://10.8.0.6/all_cert.txt password *****</pre>	Imports PKCS12 format certificate from the TFTP server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	show crypto pki trustpoint Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint	(Optional) Displays the trustpoint summary.
Step 3	show crypto pki trustpoint trustpoint-name certificate Example: Device# show crypto pki trustpoint ca-server-US certificate	(Optional) Displays the content of the certificates that are created for a trustpoint.

Configuring Radio Interface for Workgroup Bridges (CLI)

From the available two radio interfaces, before configuring WGB or UWGB mode on one radio interface, configure the other radio interface to root AP mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure dot11radio radio-int mode root-ap Example: Device# configure dot11Radio 0/3/0 mode root-ap	Maps a radio interface as root AP. Note When an active SSID or EAP profile is modified, you need to reassociate the profile to the radio interface for the updated profile to be active.
Step 2	configure dot11Radio <0 1> wlan add ssid-profile-name ssid-number Example: Device# configure dot11radio 1 wlan add ssid-profile-name ssid-number	Configures the WLAN at the root AP mode radio. Enter the SSID profile name and SSID number between 1 and 16.
Step 3	configure dot11Radio <0 1> wlan delete ssid-profile-name Example: Device# configure dot11radio 1 wlan delete ssid-profile-name	Deletes WLAN from the radio configuration. Enter the SSID profile name.
Step 4	configure dot11Radio <0 1> channel channel-number width Example: Device# configure dot11radio 1 channel 36 80	Configures a radio channel to broadcast the SSID. The channel numbers are between 1 and 173. The channel width values are 20, 40, 80, and 160. Note Only 20MHz channel width is supported on radio 0 (2.4-GHz band).

	Command or Action	Purpose
		If radar is detected on a configured channel on radio 1, then the channel automatically changes to a non-DFS channel with a channel width of 20MHz. The administrator must reset the radio to bring it back to the configured channel.
Step 5	configure dot11Radio <0 1> beacon-period <i>beacon-interval</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11radio 1 beacon-period 120</pre>	Configures the periodic beacon interval in milli-seconds. The value range is between 2 and 2000 milli-seconds.
Step 6	configure dot11Radio <i>radio-int</i> mode wgb ssid-profile <i>ssid-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11Radio 0/3/0 mode wgb ssid-profile bgl18</pre>	Maps a radio interface to a WGB SSID profile.
Step 7	configure dot11Radio <i>radio-int</i> mode uwgb mac-addr <i>ssid-profile</i> <i>ssid-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11Radio 0/3/0 mode uwgb 0042.5AB6.0EF0 ssid-profile bgl18</pre>	Maps a radio interface to a WGB SSID profile.
Step 8	configure dot11Radio <i>radio-int</i> {enable disable} Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11Radio 0/3/0 mode enable</pre>	Configures a radio interface. Note After configuring the uplink to the SSID profile, we recommend that you disable and enable the radio for the changes to be active.
Step 9	configure dot11Radio <i>radio-int</i> antenna {a-antenna ab-antenna abc-antenna abcd-antenna} Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11Radio 0/3/0 antenna a-antenna</pre>	Configures a radio antenna.
Step 10	configure dot11Radio <i>radio-int</i> encryption mode ciphers aes-ccm { Example: <pre>Device# configure dot11Radio radio-int encryption mode ciphers aes-ccm</pre>	Configures the radio interface.
Step 11	configure wgb mobile rate {basic 6 9 18 24 36 48 54 mcs <i>mcs-rate</i>}	Configures the device channel rate.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb mobile rate basic 6 9 18 24 36 48 54</pre>	
Step 12	configure wgb mobile period <i>secondsthres-signal</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb mobile period 30 -50</pre>	Configure the threshold duration and signal strength to trigger scanning.
Step 13	configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio <i>radio-int scan channel-number</i> add Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio 0/3/0 scan 2 add</pre>	Configures the static roaming channel.
Step 14	configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio <i>radio-int scan channel-number</i> delete Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio 0/3/0 scan 2 delete</pre>	(Optional) Delete the mobile channel.
Step 15	configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio <i>radio-int scan disable</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb mobile station interface dot11Radio 0/3/0 scan disable</pre>	(Optional) Disable the mobile channel.
Step 16	configure wgb beacon miss-count <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device# configure wgb beacon miss-count 12</pre>	(Optional) Configure the beacon miss-count. By default, this is set to disabled. Note When you set the beacon miss-count value to 10 or lower, then the beacon miss-count gets disabled. Set the value to 11 or higher to enable this function.
Step 17	show wgb wifi <i>wifi-interface stats</i> Example: <pre>Device# show wgb wifi 0/3/0 stats</pre>	(Optional) Displays the Wi-Fi station statistics.
Step 18	show controllers dot11Radio <i>radio-interface</i> antenna Example:	(Optional) Displays the radio antenna statistics.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show controllers dot11Radio 0/3/0 antenna	
Step 19	show wgb mobile scan channel Example: Device# show wgb mobile scan channel	(Optional) Displays the mobile station channels scan configuration.
Step 20	show configuration Example: Device# show configuration	(Optional) Displays the configuration that is stored in the NV memory.
Step 21	show running-config Example: Device# show running-config	(Optional) Displays the running configuration in the device.

Configuring Workgroup Bridge Timeouts (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure wgb association response timeout <i>response-millisecs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb association response timeout 4000	Configures the WGB association response timeout. The default value is 5000 milliseconds. The valid range is between 300 and 5000 milliseconds.
Step 2	configure wgb authentication response timeout <i>response-millisecs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb authentication response timeout 4000	Configures the WGB authentication response timeout. The default value is 5000 milliseconds. The valid range is between 300 and 5000 milliseconds.
Step 3	configure wgb uclient timeout <i>timeout-secs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb uclient timeout 70	Configure the Universal WGB client response timeout. The default timeout value is 60 seconds. The valid range is between 1 and 65535 seconds..
Step 4	configure wgb eap timeout <i>timeout-secs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb eap timeout 20	Configures the WGB EAP timeout. The default timeout value is 3 seconds. The valid range is between 2 and 60 seconds.
Step 5	configure wgb channel scan timeout {fast medium slow} Example:	Configures the WGB channel scan timeout.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure wgb channel scan timeout slow	
Step 6	configure wgb dhcp response timeout <i>timeout-secs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb dhcp response timeout 70	Configures the WGB DHCP response timeout. The default value is 60 seconds. The valid range is between 1000 and 60000 milliseconds.
Step 7	show wgb dot11 association Example: Device# show wgb dot11 association	Displays the WGB association summary.

Configuring Bridge Forwarding for Workgroup Bridge (CLI)

Before you begin

The Cisco Wave 2 and 11AX APs as Workgroup Bridge recognizes the Ethernet clients only when the traffic has the bridging tag.

We recommend setting the WGB bridge client timeout value to default value of 300 seconds, or less in environment where change is expected, such as:

- Ethernet cable is unplugged and plugged back.
- Endpoint is changed.
- Endpoint IP is changed (static to DHCP and vice versa).

If you need to retain the client entry in the WGB table for a longer duration, we recommend you increase the client WGB bridge timeout duration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure wgb bridge client add <i>mac-address</i> Example: Device# configure wgb bridge client add F866.F267.7DFB-	Adds a WGB client using the MAC address.
Step 2	configure wgb bridge client timeout <i>timeout-secs</i> Example: Device# configure wgb bridge client timeout 400	Configures the WGB bridge client timeout. Default timeout value is 300 seconds. The valid range is between 10 and 1000000 seconds.
Step 3	show wgb bridge Example:	Displays the WGB wired clients over the bridge.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# show wgb bridge	
Step 4	show wgb bridge wired gigabitEthernet interface Example: Device# show wgb bridge wired gigabitEthernet 0/1	Displays the WGB Gigabit wired clients over the bridge.
Step 5	show wgb bridge dot11Radio interface-number Example: Device# show wgb bridge dot11Radio 0/3/1	Displays the WGB bridge radio interface summary.

Information About Simplifying WGB Configuration

From Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1, it is possible to configure WGB in multiple Cisco access points (APs) simultaneously. By importing a running configuration, you can deploy multiple WGBs in a network and make them operational quicker. When new Cisco APs are added to the network, you can transfer an existing or working configuration to the new Cisco APs to make them operational. This enhancement eliminates the need to configure multiple Cisco APs using CLIs, after logging into them.

A network administrator can onboard Cisco APs using either of the following methods:

- Upload the working configuration from an existing Cisco AP to a server and download it to the newly deployed Cisco APs.
- Send a sample configuration to all the Cisco APs in the deployment.

This feature is supported only on the following Cisco APs:

- Cisco Aironet 1562 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 2800 Access Points
- Cisco Aironet 3800 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9105 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9115 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst 9120 Access Points
- Cisco Catalyst IW6300 Series Heavy Duty Access Points

For latest support information on various features in Cisco Wave 2 and 802.11ax (Wi-Fi 6) Access Points in Cisco IOS XE releases, see the [Feature Matrix for Wave 2 and 802.11ax \(Wi-Fi 6\) Access Points](#) document.

Configuring Multiple WGBs (CLI)

Perform the following procedure on the APs in WGB mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enters privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	copy configuration upload {sftp tftp:} ip-address [directory] [file-name] Example: Device# copy configuration upload sftp: 10.10.10.1 C:sample.txt	Creates upload configuration file and uploads to the SFTP or TFTP server using the specified path.
Step 3	copy configuration download {sftp tftp:} ip-address [directory] [file-name] Example: Device# copy configuration download sftp: 10.10.10.1 C:sample.txt	Downloads the configuration file and replaces the old configuration in the AP and reboots the WGB. When the device restarts, new configuration is applied.
Step 4	show wgb dot11 association Example: Device# show wgb dot11 association	Lists the WGB uplink information.
Step 5	show version Example: Device# show version	Displays the AP software information.

Verifying WGB Configuration

After completing the configuration download and reboot of the AP, the WGB rejoins the network. Use the **show logging** command to list and verify the download events that are captured in the debug logs:

```
Device# show logging
```

```
Jan 13 18:19:17 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:17.4880] WGB - Applying download config...
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure clock timezone UTC
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure dot1x credential dot1x_profile username wifiuser
password U2FsdGVkX1+8PWmAOnFO8BXyk5EAphMy2PmhPPhWV0w=
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure eap-profile eap_profile method PEAP
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure eap-profile eap_profile dot1x-credential
dot1x_profile
Jan 13 18:19:18 chpasswd: password for user changed
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7260] chpasswd: password for user changed
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610] Management user configuration saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7610]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650]
```

```
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650] Dot1x credential configuration has
been saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7650]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740] EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7740]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790] EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7790]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7830] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7830]
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile psk ssid alpha_psk authentication
psk U2FsdGVkX18meBfFFeiC4sgkEmbGPNH/ulldne6h/m8= key-management wpa2
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930] Warning!!! Attach SSID profile with the
radio to use the new changes.
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930] EAP profile configuration has been
saved successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.7930]
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile open ssid alpha_open authentication
open
Jan 13 18:19:18 download_config: configure ssid-profile openax ssid alpha_open_ax
authentication open
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.8650] SSID-Profile dot1xpeap has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.8650]
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.9270] SSID-Profile psk has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:18 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:18.9270]
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380] SSID-Profile open has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380] SSID-Profile openax has been saved
successfully
Jan 13 18:19:19 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:19.0380]
Jan 13 18:19:22 download_config: configure wgb broadcast tagging disable
Jan 13 18:19:22 download_config: configure wgb packet retries 64 drop
Jan 13 18:19:22 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:22.9710] Broadcast tagging 0 successfully
Jan 13 18:19:22 kernel: [*01/13/2022 18:19:22.9710]
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure dot11Radio 1 mode wgb ssid-profile open
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure dot11Radio 1 enable
Jan 13 18:19:23 download_config: configure ap address ipv6 disable
```




CHAPTER 188

Peer-to-Peer Client Support

- [Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 2011](#)
- [Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support, on page 2011](#)

Information About Peer-to-Peer Client Support

Peer-to-peer client support can be applied to individual WLANs, with each client inheriting the peer-to-peer blocking setting of the WLAN to which it is associated. The peer-to-Peer Client Support feature provides a granular control over how traffic is directed. For example, you can choose to have traffic bridged locally within a device, dropped by a device, or forwarded to the upstream VLAN.

Peer-to-peer blocking is supported for clients that are associated with local and central switching WLANs.

Restrictions

- Peer-to-peer blocking does not apply to multicast traffic.
- Peer-to-peer blocking is not enabled by default.
- In FlexConnect, peer-to-peer blocking configuration cannot be applied only to a particular FlexConnect AP or a subset of APs. It is applied to all the FlexConnect APs that broadcast the SSID.
- FlexConnect central switching clients supports peer-to-peer upstream-forward. However, this is not supported in the FlexConnect local switching. This is treated as peer-to-peer drop and client packets are dropped.

FlexConnect central switching clients supports peer-to-peer blocking for clients associated with different APs. However, for FlexConnect local switching, this solution targets only clients connected to the same AP. FlexConnect ACLs can be used as a workaround for this limitation.

Configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support

Follow the procedure given below to configure Peer-to-Peer Client Support:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	peer-blocking [allow-private-group drop forward-upstream] Example: Device(config-wlan)# peer-blocking drop	Configures peer to peer blocking parameters. The keywords are as follows: • allow-private-group—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the Allow Private Group action. • drop—Enables peer-to-peer blocking on the drop action. • forward-upstream—No action is taken and forwards packets to the upstream. Note The forward-upstream option is not supported for Flex local switching. Traffic is dropped even if this option is configured. Also, peer to peer blocking for local switching SSIDs are available only for the clients on the same AP.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 5	show wlan id <i>wlan-id</i> Example: Device# show wlan id 12	Displays the details of the selected WLAN.



CHAPTER 189

Deny Wireless Client Session Establishment Using Calendar Profiles

- [Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment, on page 2013](#)
- [Configuring Daily Calendar Profile, on page 2014](#)
- [Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile, on page 2015](#)
- [Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile, on page 2016](#)
- [Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 2017](#)
- [Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 2018](#)
- [Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile, on page 2019](#)
- [Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration, on page 2020](#)
- [Verifying Policy Profile Configuration, on page 2020](#)

Information About Denial of Wireless Client Session Establishment

Denial of client session establishment feature allows the controller to stop client session establishment based on a particular time. This helps control the network in efficient and controlled manner without any manual intervention.

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller , you can deny the wireless client session based on the following recurrences:

- Daily
- Weekly
- Monthly

The Calendar Profiles created are then mapped to the policy profile. By attaching the calendar profile to a policy profile, you will be able to create different recurrences for the policy profile using different policy tag.



Note You need to create separate Calendar Profile for Daily, Weekly, and Monthly sub-categories.

The following is the workflow for denial of wireless client session establishment feature:

- Create a calendar profile.
- Apply the calendar profile to a policy profile.



Note A maximum of 100 calendar profile configuration and 5 calendar profile association to policy profile is supported.

Points to Remember

If you boot up your controller, the denial of client session establishment feature kicks in after a minute from the system boot up.

If you change the system time after the calendar profile is associated to a policy profile, you can expect a maximum of 30 second delay to adapt to the new clock timings.



Note You cannot use the **no action deny-client** command to disable action while associating the calendar profile to a policy profile.

If you want to disable the action command, you need to disassociate the calendar profile from the policy profile, and re-configure again.

Configuring Daily Calendar Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile calendar-profile name <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name daily_calendar_profile	Configures a calendar profile. Here, <i>name</i> refers to the name of the calendar profile.
Step 3	start <i>start_time</i> end <i>end_time</i> Example:	Configures start and end time for the calendar profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 09:00:00 end 17:00:00</pre>	Here, <i>start_time</i> is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in HH:MM:SS format. <i>end_time</i> is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in HH:MM:SS format.
Step 4	recurrence daily Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence daily</pre>	Configures daily recurrences for a calendar profile.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode. Note When the calendar profile kicks in, the AP power profile rules (for example, radio state and USB device state) that are defined for the Ethernet speed are not applied and continue to be as per the fixed power profile.

Configuring Weekly Calendar Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile calendar-profile name <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name weekly_calendar_profile</pre>	Configures a calendar profile. Here, <i>name</i> refers to the name of the calendar profile.
Step 3	start <i>start_time</i> end <i>end_time</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 18:00:00 end 19:00:00</pre>	Configures start and end time for the calendar profile. Here,

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>start_time</i> is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in HH:MM:SS format. <i>end_time</i> is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in HH:MM:SS format.
Step 4	recurrence weekly Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence weekly</pre>	Configures weekly recurrences for the calendar profile.
Step 5	day {friday monday saturday sunday thursday tuesday wednesday} Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# day friday Device(config-calendar-profile)# day monday</pre>	Configure days when the weekly calendar needs to be active. Note You can configure multiple days using this command.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring Monthly Calendar Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile calendar-profile name <i>name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile calendar-profile name monthly_calendar_profile</pre>	Configures a calendar profile. Here, <i>name</i> refers to the name of the calendar profile.
Step 3	start <i>start_time</i> end <i>end_time</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# start 18:00:00 end 19:00:00</pre>	Configures start and end time for the calendar profile. Here,

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<i>start_time</i> is the start time for the calendar profile. You need to enter start time in HH:MM:SS format. <i>end_time</i> is the end time for the calendar profile. You need to enter end time in HH:MM:SS format.
Step 4	recurrence monthly Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# recurrence monthly</pre>	Configures monthly recurrences for the calendar profile.
Step 5	date <i>value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# date 25</pre>	Configures a date for the calendar profile. Note If the requirement is to perform denial of service in certain timing, such as, 2,10, and 25 of every month, all three days need to be configured using the date command. There is no range for date. You need to configure the dates as per your requirement.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-calendar-profile)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Mapping a Daily Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	calendar-profile name <i>calendar-profile-name</i> Example:	Maps a calendar profile to a policy profile. The <i>calendar-profile-name</i> is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_2499.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# calendar-profile name daily_calendar_profile</pre>	Note You need to disable Policy Profile before associating a calendar profile to a policy profile. The following needs to be done: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>
Step 4	action deny-client Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# action deny-client</pre>	Configures deny client session establishment during calendar profile interval. Note Client associations are denied daily between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_2499 .
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-profile-calender)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Mapping a Weekly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	calendar-profile name <i>calendar-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# calendar-profile name weekly_calendar_profile</pre>	Maps a calendar profile to a policy profile. The <i>calendar-profile-name</i> is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_2501 . Note You need to disable Policy Profile before associating a calendar profile to a policy profile. The following needs to be done: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	action deny-client Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-profile-calender) # action deny-client</pre>	Configures deny client session establishment during calendar profile interval. Note Client associations are denied daily between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_2501. On Monday and Tuesday, clients are denied between 17:30:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. On 25th of every month, clients are denied between 18:00:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00.
Step 5	end Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-profile-calender) # end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Mapping a Monthly Calendar Profile to a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile</pre>	Creates policy profile for the WLAN. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	calender-profile name <i>calendar-profile-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy) # calender-profile name monthly_calendar_profile</pre>	Maps a calender profile to a policy profile. The <i>calendar-profile-name</i> is the name of the calendar profile name created in #unique_2503.
Step 4	action deny-client Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-profile-calender) # action deny-client</pre>	Configures deny client session establishment for the defined calendar profile interval. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Every day client associations are denied between timeslot 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. For start and end time details, see #unique_2503. On Monday and Tuesday, clients are denied between 17:30:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00. On 25th of every month, clients are denied between 18:00:00 and 19:00:00 besides regular time 9:00:00 to 17:00:00.
Step 5	end Example: Device (config-policy-profile-calender) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Calendar Profile Configuration

To view the summary of calendar profiles, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile calendar-profile summary
Number of Calendar Profiles: 3
```

```
Profile-Name
-----
monthly_25_profile
weekly_mon_profile
daily_calendar_profile
```

To view the calendar profile details for a specific profile name, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile calendar-profile detailed daily_calendar_profile
Calendar profiles                               : daily_calendar_profile
-----
Recurrence                                     : DAILY
Start Time                                    : 09:00:00
End Time                                      : 17:00:00
```

Verifying Policy Profile Configuration

To view the detailed parameters for a specific policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile
Tunnel Profile
  Profile Name                               : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
  Profile Name                               : monthly_25_profile
  Wlan Enable                                : Not Configured
  Client Block                               : Client Block Configured
-----
  Profile Name                               : weekly_mon_profile
```

```
Wlan Enable           : Not Configured
Client Block          : Client Block Configured
-----
Profile Name          : daily_calendar_profile
Wlan Enable           : Not Configured
Client Block          : Client Block Configured
-----
Fabric Profile
Profile Name           : Not Configured
```

To view the configured calendar profile information under policy profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy all
Tunnel Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
Profile Name : daily_calendar_profile
Wlan Enable : Not Configured
Client Block : Client Block Configured
-----
Profile Name : weekly_calendar_profile
Wlan Enable : Not Configured
Client Block : Client Block Configured
-----
Fabric Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
```



Note The anchor priority is always displayed as local. Priorities can be assigned on the foreign controller.



CHAPTER 190

Ethernet over GRE

- [Introduction to EoGRE, on page 2023](#)
- [Create a Tunnel Gateway, on page 2025](#)
- [Configuring the Tunnel Gateway \(GUI\), on page 2026](#)
- [Configuring a Tunnel Domain, on page 2026](#)
- [Configuring Tunnel Domain \(GUI\), on page 2027](#)
- [Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters, on page 2028](#)
- [Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters \(GUI\), on page 2028](#)
- [Configuring a Tunnel Profile, on page 2029](#)
- [Configuring the Tunnel Profile \(GUI\), on page 2030](#)
- [Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile, on page 2031](#)
- [Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP, on page 2032](#)
- [Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration, on page 2032](#)

Introduction to EoGRE

Ethernet over GRE (EoGRE) is an aggregation solution for grouping Wi-Fi traffic from hotspots. This solution enables customer premises equipment (CPE) devices to bridge the Ethernet traffic coming from an end-host, and encapsulate the traffic in Ethernet packets over an IP Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) tunnel. When the IP GRE tunnels are terminated on a service provider's broadband network gateway, the end-host traffic is forwarded and subscriber sessions are initiated.

Client IPv6

Client IPv6 traffic is supported on IPv4 EoGRE tunnels. A maximum of eight different client IPv6 addresses are supported per client. Wireless controller s send all the client IPv6 addresses that they have learned to the accounting server using the accounting update message. All RADIUS or accounting messages exchanged between controller s and tunnel gateways or RADIUS servers are outside the EoGRE tunnel.

EoGRE for WLAN

To enable EoGRE for a WLAN, the wireless policy profile should be mapped to a tunnel profile, which may contain the following:

- AAA override: Allows you to bypass rule filtering for a client.
- Gateway RADIUS proxy: Allows forwarding of AAA requests to tunnel gateways.

- Tunnel rules: Defines the domain to use for each realm. They also define VLAN tagging for the client traffic towards tunnel gateways.
- DHCP option 82: Provides a set of predefined fields.

EoGRE Deployment with Multiple Tunnel Gateways

The wireless controller embedded wireless controller sends keepalive pings to the primary and secondary tunnel gateways and keeps track of the missed pings. When a certain threshold level is reached for the missed pings, switchover is performed and the secondary tunnel is marked as active. This switchover deauthenticates all the clients to enable them to rejoin the access points (APs). When the primary tunnel come back online, all the client traffic are reverted to the primary tunnel. However, this behavior depends on the type of redundancy.

Load Balancing in EtherChannels

Load balancing of tunneled traffic over Etherchannels works by hashing the source or destination IP addresses or mac addresses of the tunnel endpoint pair. Because the number of tunnels is very limited when compared to clients (each tunnel carries traffic for many clients), the spreading effect of hashing is highly reduced and optimal utilization of Etherchannel links can be hard to achieve.

Using the EoGRE configuration model, you can use the *tunnel source* option of each tunnel interface to adjust the load-balancing parameters and spread tunnels across multiple links.

You can use different source interfaces on each tunnel for load balancing based on the source or destination IP address. For that choose the source interface IP address in such a way that traffic flows take different links for each src-dest IP pair. The following is an example with four ports:

```
Client traffic on Tunnel1 - Src IP: 40.143.0.72  Dest IP: 40.253.0.2
Client traffic on Tunnel2 - Src IP: 40.146.0.94  Dest IP: 40.253.0.6
Client traffic on Tunnel3 - Src IP: 40.147.0.74  Dest IP: 40.253.0.10
```

Use the **show platform software port-channel link-select interface port-channel 4 ipv4 src_ip dest_ip** command to determine the link that a particular flow will take.

EoGRE Configuration Overview

The EoGRE solution can be deployed in two different ways:

- Central-Switching: EoGRE tunnels connect the controller to the tunnel gateways.
- Flex or Local-Switching: EoGRE tunnels are initiated on the APs and terminated on the tunnel gateways.

To configure EoGRE, perform the following tasks:

1. Create a set of tunnel gateways.
2. Create a set of tunnel domains.
3. Create a tunnel profile with rules that define how to match clients to domains.
4. Create a policy profile and attach the tunnel profile to it.
5. Map the policy profile to WLANs using policy tags.



Note The EoGRE tunnel fallback to the secondary tunnel is triggered after the *max-skip-count* ping fails in the last measurement window. Based on the starting and ending instance of the measurement window, the fall-back may take more time than the duration that is configured.

Table 136: EoGRE Authentication Methods

Method Name	First Supported Release	Mode
PSK	17.2.1	Local/Flex (central authentication)
Open	16.12.1	Local/Flex (central authentication)
LWA	16.12.1	Local/Flex (central authentication)
Dot1x	16.12.1	Local/Flex (central authentication)
CWA	16.12.1	Local/Flex (central authentication)

Create a Tunnel Gateway



Note In the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller, a tunnel gateway is modeled as a tunnel interface.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface tunnel <i>tunnel_number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface tunnel 21	Configures a tunnel interface and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	tunnel source <i>source_intf</i> Example: Device(config-if)# tunnel source 22	Sets the source address of the tunnel interface. The source interface can be VLAN, Gigabit Ethernet or loopback.
Step 4	tunnel destination <i>tunnel-address</i> Example: Device(config-if)# tunnel destination 10.11.12.13	Sets the destination address of the tunnel.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	tunnel mode ethernet gre { ipv4 ipv6 } p2p Example: Device(config-if)# tunnel mode ethernet gre ipv4 p2p	Sets the encapsulation mode of the tunnel to Ethernet over GRE IPv4 or Ethernet over GRE IPv6.

Configuring the Tunnel Gateway (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the tunnel gateway:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > EoGRE**.
- Step 2** Click the **Gateways** tab.
The **Add Gateway** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Tunnel Id** field, specify the tunnel ID.
- Step 4** In the **Destination address(IPv4/IPv6)** field, specify the IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- Step 5** From the **Source Interface** drop-down list, select an interface.
- Step 6** In the **AAA Proxy** section, slide the **AAA Proxy** slider to **Enabled**. When AA Proxy is enabled, complete the following steps:
- From the **Encryption Type** drop-down list, select either **UNENCRYPTED** or **AES ENCRYPTION**.
 - In the **Key Phrase** field, specify the key phrase.
- Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring a Tunnel Domain



Note Tunnel domains are a redundancy grouping of tunnels. The following configuration procedure specifies a primary and a secondary tunnel, along with a redundancy model.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	tunnel eogre domain <i>domain</i> Example: Device(config)# tunnel eogre domain dom1	Configures EoGRE redundancy domain.
Step 3	primary tunnel <i>primary-tunnel_intf</i> Example: Device(config-eogre-domain)# primary tunnel 21	Configures the primary tunnel.
Step 4	secondary tunnel <i>secondary-tunnel_intf</i> Example: Device(config-eogre-domain)# secondary tunnel 22	Configures the secondary tunnel.
Step 5	redundancy revertive Example: Device(config-eogre-domain)# redundancy revertive	Sets the redundancy model as revertive. When redundancy is set to revertive and the primary tunnel goes down, a switchover to secondary tunnel is performed. When the primary tunnel comes back up, a switchover to the primary tunnel is performed, because the primary tunnel has priority over the secondary tunnel. When redundancy is not set to revertive, tunnels will have the same priority, and a switchover to the primary tunnel is not performed if the active tunnel is the secondary tunnel and the primary tunnel comes back up.

Configuring Tunnel Domain (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the tunnel domain:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > EoGRE**.
 - Step 2** Click the **Domains** tab.
The **Add Domain** window is displayed.
 - Step 3** In the **Name** field, specify the domain name. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - Step 4** From the **Primary Tunnel Gateway** drop-down list, choose an option.
 - Step 5** From the **Secondary Tunnel Gateway** drop-down list, choose an option.
 - Step 6** Slide the **Status** button to **Enabled**, to activate the domain status.

Step 7 Slide the **Revertive Redundancy** button to **Enabled**, to activate revertive redundancy.

Step 8 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	tunnel eogre heartbeat interval <i>interval-value</i> Example: Device(config)# tunnel eogre heartbeat interval 600	Sets EoGRE tunnel heartbeat periodic interval.
Step 3	tunnel eogre heartbeat max-skip-count <i>skip-count</i> Example: Device(config)# tunnel eogre heartbeat max-skip-count 7	Sets the maximum number of tolerable dropped heartbeats. After reaching the maximum number of heartbeats that can be dropped, the tunnel is declared as down and a switchover is performed.
Step 4	tunnel eogre source loopback <i>tunnel_source</i> Example: Device(config)# tunnel eogre source loopback 12	Sets the tunnel EoGRE source interface.
Step 5	tunnel eogre interface tunnel <i>tunnel-intf</i> aaa proxy key <i>key key-name</i> Example: Device(config)# tunnel eogre interface tunnel 21 aaa proxy key 0 mykey	(Optional) Configures AAA proxy RADIUS key for the AAA proxy setup. Note When the tunnel gateway is behaving as the AAA proxy server, only this step is required for the configuration.

Configuring EoGRE Global Parameters (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the EoGRE global parameters:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > EoGRE**.
The EoGRE **Global Config** tab is displayed.
- Step 2** In the **Heartbeat Interval (seconds)** field, specify an appropriate timer value for heartbeat interval. The valid range is between 60 and 600 seconds.
- Step 3** In the **Max Heartbeat Skip Count** field, specify the maximum heartbeat skip count. The valid range is between 3 and 10.
- Step 4** From the **Interface Name** drop-down list, choose an interface name.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
-

Configuring a Tunnel Profile

Before you begin

Ensure that you define the destination VLAN on the controller. If you do not define the VLAN, clients will not be able to connect.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy eogre_policy	Configures a WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	tunnel-profile <i>tunnel-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# tunnel-profile tunnell	Creates a tunnel profile.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	wireless profile tunnel <i>tunnel-profile-name</i> Example:	Configures a wireless tunnel profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile tunnel wl-tunnel-1	
Step 6	dhcp-opt82 enable Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# dhcp-opt82 enable	Activates DHCP Option 82 for the tunneled clients.
Step 7	dhcp-opt82 remote-id <i>remote-id</i> Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# dhcp-opt82 remote-id vlan	Configures Remote ID options. Choose from the comma-separated list of options such as ap-mac , ap-ethmac , ap-name , ap-group-name , flex-group-name , ap-location , vlan , ssid-name , ssid-type , and client-mac .
Step 8	aaa-override Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# aaa-override	Enables AAA policy override.
Step 9	gateway-radius-proxy Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# gateway-radius-proxy	Enables the gateway RADIUS proxy.
Step 10	gateway-accounting-radius-proxy Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# gateway-accounting-radius-proxy	Enables the gateway accounting RADIUS proxy.
Step 11	rule <i>priority</i> realm-filter <i>realm</i> domain <i>domain-name</i> <i>vlan</i> <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-tunnel-profile)# rule 12 realm-filter realm domain dom1 vlan 5	Creates a rule to choose a domain, using the realm filter, for client Network Access Identifier (NAI), tunneling domain name, and destination VLAN.

Configuring the Tunnel Profile (GUI)

Follow the steps given below to configure the tunnel profile:

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > EoGRE**.

Step 2 Click the **Tunnel Profiles** tab.

- Step 3** Click the **Add** button.
The **Add Tunnel Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 4** Click the **General** tab and complete the following steps:
- In the **Name** field, specify the tunnel profile name. The name can be ASCII characters from 32 to 126, without leading and trailing spaces.
 - In the **Status** field, slide the button to change the status to **Enabled**.
 - In the **Central Forwarding** field, slide the button to **Enabled**, to enable the feature.
 - In the **DHCP Option-82** section, change the **Status** field and the **ASCII** field to **Enabled**, as per requirement.
 - In the **Delimiter** field, specify the delimiter.
 - From the **Circuit ID Available Services** list, select an available services and click the > sign to add the services to the assigned list.
 - From the **Remote ID Available Services** list, select an available services and click the > sign to add the services to the assigned list.
 - In the **AAA** section, choose an appropriate status for the **Radius Proxy** field, the **Accounting Proxy** field, and the **Override** field.
- Step 5** Click the **Rules** tab, and complete the following steps:
- Click the **Add Rules** button.
 - In the **Priority** field, specify the priority of the rule from a range of 1 to 100.
 - In the **Realm** field, specify a realm.
 - From the **Domain** drop-down list, choose a domain.
 - In the **VLAN Id** field, specify the VLAN ID that ranges between 1 and 4094.
 - Click **Save**.
- Step 6** Click **Apply to Device**.

Associating WLAN to a Wireless Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless tag policy eogre_tag	Configures a policy tag and enters policy tag configuration mode.
Step 3	wlan <i>wlan-name</i> policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example:	Maps an EoGRE policy profile to a WLAN profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-policy-tag)# wlan eogre_open_eogre policy eogre_policy	
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-policy-tag)# end	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Attaching a Policy Tag and a Site Tag to an AP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap mac-address Example: Device(config)# ap 80E8.6FD4.0BB0	Configures an AP and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	policy-tag policy-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# policy-tag eogre_tag	Maps the EoGRE policy tag to the AP.
Step 4	site-tag site-tag-name Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# site-tag sp-flex-site	Maps a site tag to the AP.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-ap-tag)# end	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying the EoGRE Tunnel Configuration

The `show tunnel eogre` command displays the EoGRE clients, domains, gateways, global-configuration, and manager information in the local mode.

To display the EoGRE domain summary in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre domain summary
```

```
Domain Name           Primary GW    Secondary GW    Active GW    Redundancy
```

```

-----
domain1          Tunnel1    Tunnel2          Tunnel1          Non-Revertive
eogre_domain     Tunnel1    Tunnel2          Tunnel1          Non-Revertive

```

To display the details of an EoGRE domain in the local mode, use the following command:

Device# **show tunnel eogre domain detailed** *domain-name*

```

Domain Name      : eogre_domain
Primary GW       : Tunnel1
Secondary GW     : Tunnel2
Active GW        : Tunnel1
Redundancy       : Non-Revertive

```

To view the EoGRE tunnel gateway summary and statistics in the local mode, use the following command:

Device# **show tunnel eogre gateway summary**

Name	Type	Address	AdminState	State	Clients
Tunnel1	IPv4	9.51.1.11	Up	Up	0
Tunnel2	IPv4	9.51.1.12	Up	Down	0
Tunnel10	IPv6	fd09:9:8:21::90	Down	Down	0
Tunnel11	IPv4	9.51.1.11	Up	Up	0
Tunnel12	IPv6	fd09:9:8:21::90	Up	Down	0
Tunnel100	IPv4	9.51.1.100	Up	Down	0

To view the details of an EoGRE tunnel gateway in the local mode, use the following command:

Device# **show tunnel eogre gateway detailed** *gateway-name*

```

Gateway : Tunnel1
Mode    : IPv4
IP      : 9.51.1.11
Source  : Vlan51 / 9.51.1.1
State   : Up
SLA ID  : 56
MTU     : 1480
Up Time: 4 minutes 45 seconds

Clients
Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 0
Traffic
Total Number of Received Packets      : 0
Total Number of Received Bytes        : 0
Total Number of Transmitted Packets    : 0
Total Number of Transmitted Bytes      : 0
Keepalives
Total Number of Lost Keepalives        : 0
Total Number of Received Keepalives    : 5
Total Number of Transmitted Keepalives : 5
Windows                               : 1
Transmitted Keepalives in last window : 2
Received Keepalives in last window     : 2

```

To view the client summary of EoGRE in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre client summary
```

Client MAC	AP MAC	Domain	Tunnel	VLAN	Local
74da.3828.88b0	80e8.6fd4.9520	eogre_domain	N/A	2121	No

To view the details of an EoGRE global configuration in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre global-configuration
```

```
Heartbeat interval      : 60
Max Heartbeat skip count : 3
Source Interface       : (none)
```

To view the details of the global tunnel manager statistics in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre manager stats global
```

```
Tunnel Global Statistics
Last Updated              : 02/18/2019 23:50:35
EoGRE Objects
  Gateways                : 6
  Domains                 : 2

EoGRE Flex Objects
  AP Gateways             : 2
  AP Domains              : 1
  AP Gateways HA inconsistencies : 0
  AP Domains HA inconsistencies : 0

Config events
  IOS Tunnel updates      : 806
  IOS Domain updates      : 88
  Global updates          : 48
  Tunnel Profile updates  : 120
  Tunnel Rule updates     : 16
  AAA proxy key updates   : 0

AP events
  Flex AP Join            : 1
  Flex AP Leave           : 0
  Local AP Join           : 0
  Local AP leave          : 0
  Tunnel status (rx)      : 4
  Domain status (rx)      : 1
  IAPP stats msg (rx)     : 3
  Client count (rx)       : 6
  VAP Payload msg (tx)    : 4
  Domain config (tx)      : 1
  Global config (tx)      : 1
  Client delete (tx)      : 1
  Client delete per domain (tx) : 3
  DHCP option 82 (tx)     : 4

Client events
  Add-mobile              : 2
  Run-State               : 3
  Delete                  : 1
  Cleanup                 : 0
  Join                    : 2
  Plumb                   : 0
  Join Errors             : 0
  HandOff                 : 0
```

```

MsPayload                : 2
FT Recover                : 0
Zombie GW counter increase : 0
Zombie GW counter decrease : 0
Tunnel Profile reset      : 88
Client deauth             : 0
HA reconciliation          : 0

Client Join Events
Generic Error             : 0
MSPayload Fail            : 0
Invalid VLAN              : 0
Invalid Domain            : 0
No GWs in Domain          : 0
Domain Shut               : 0
Invalid GWs               : 0
GWs Down                  : 0
Rule Match Error          : 0
AAA-override              : 0
Flex No Active GW         : 0
Open Auth join attempt    : 2
Dot1x join attempt        : 2
Mobility join attempt     : 0
Tunnel Profile not valid  : 2
Tunnel Profile valid      : 2
No rule match              : 0
Rule match                : 2
AAA proxy                 : 0
AAA proxy accounting      : 0
AAA eogre attributes      : 0
Has aaa override          : 0
Error in handoff payload  : 0
Handoff AAA override      : 0
Handoff no AAA override   : 0
Handoff payload received  : 0
Handoff payload sent      : 0

SNMP Traps
Client                    : 0
Tunnel                    : 2
Domain                    : 0

IPC
IOSd TX messages         : 0

Zombie Client
Entries                   : 0

```

To view the tunnel manager statistics of a specific process instance in the local mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show tunnel eogre manager stats instance instance-number
```

```

Tunnel Manager statistics for process instance : 0
Last Updated                               : 02/18/2019 23:50:35
EoGRE Objects
  Gateways                                 : 6
  Domains                                 : 2

EoGRE Flex Objects
  AP Gateways                             : 2
  AP Domains                             : 1
  AP Gateways HA inconsistencies          : 0

```

```

AP Domains HA inconsistencies : 0

Config events
  IOS Tunnel updates          : 102
  IOS Domain updates          : 11
  Global updates              : 6
  Tunnel Profile updates      : 15
  Tunnel Rule updates         : 2
  AAA proxy key updates       : 0

AP events
  Flex AP Join                : 1
  Flex AP Leave               : 0
  Local AP Join               : 0
  Local AP leave              : 0
  Tunnel status (rx)          : 4
  Domain status (rx)          : 1
  IAPP stats msg (rx)         : 3
  Client count (rx)           : 6
  VAP Payload msg (tx)        : 4
  Domain config (tx)          : 1
  Global config (tx)          : 1
  Client delete (tx)          : 1
  Client delete per domain (tx) : 3
  DHCP option 82 (tx)         : 4

Client events
  Add-mobile                  : 2
  Run-State                   : 3
  Delete                      : 1
  Cleanup                     : 0
  Join                        : 2
  Plumb                       : 0
  Join Errors                  : 0
  HandOff                     : 0
  MsPayload                   : 2
  FT Recover                  : 0
  Zombie GW counter increase  : 0
  Zombie GW counter decrease  : 0
  Tunnel Profile reset        : 11
  Client deauth               : 0
  HA reconciliation            : 0

Client Join Events
  Generic Error               : 0
  MSPayload Fail              : 0
  Invalid VLAN                : 0
  Invalid Domain              : 0
  No GWs in Domain            : 0
  Domain Shut                 : 0
  Invalid GWs                 : 0
  GWs Down                    : 0
  Rule Match Error            : 0
  AAA-override                : 0
  Flex No Active GW           : 0
  Open Auth join attempt      : 2
  Dot1x join attempt          : 2
  Mobility join attempt        : 0
  Tunnel Profile not valid     : 2
  Tunnel Profile valid        : 2
  No rule match               : 0
  Rule match                  : 2
  AAA proxy                   : 0
  AAA proxy accounting        : 0

```

```

AAA eogre attributes           : 0
Has aaa override              : 0
Error in handoff payload      : 0
Handoff AAA override          : 0
Handoff no AAA override       : 0
Handoff payload received      : 0
Handoff payload sent          : 0

SNMP Traps
  Client                      : 0
  Tunnel                      : 2
  Domain                      : 0

IPC
  IOSd TX messages           : 0

Zombie Client
  Entries                     : 0

```

The `show ap tunnel eogre` command displays the tunnel domain information, EoGRE events, and the tunnel gateway status on the APs, in the flex mode.

To view the summary information of an EoGRE tunnel gateway in the flex mode, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre domain summary
```

AP MAC	Domain	Active Gateway
80e8.6fd4.9520	eogre_domain	Tunnel1

To view the wireless tunnel profile summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile tunnel summary
```

Profile Name	AAA-Override	AAA-Proxy	DHCP Opt82	Enabled
eogre_tunnel	No	No	Yes	Yes
eogre_tunnel_set	No	No	Yes	No
eogre_tunnel_snmp	No	No	No	No

To view a wireless tunnel profile's details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile tunnel detailed profile-name
```

```

Profile Name : eogre_tunnel
Status : Enabled
AAA-Proxy/Accounting-Proxy: Disabled / Disabled
AAA-Override : Disabled
DHCP Option82 : Enabled
Circuit-ID : ap-mac,ap-ethmac,ap-location,vlan
Remote-ID : ssid-name,ssid-type,client-mac,ap-name

```

Tunnel Rules

Priority	Realm	Vlan	Domain (Status/Primary GW/Secondary GW)
1	*	2121	eogre_domain (Enabled/Tunnel1/Tunnel2)

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel domain's status, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre domain detailed
```

```
Domain : eogre_domain
```

```
AP MAC      : 80e8.6fd4.9520
Active GW   : Tunnel1
```

To view the EoGRE events on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre events
```

```
AP 80e8.6fd4.9520  Event history
Timestamp          #Times  Event                      RC Context
-----
02/18/2019 23:50:26.341 6      IAPP_STATS                 0 GW Tunnel2 uptime:0s
02/18/2019 23:49:40.222 2      CLIENT_JOIN                0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)
02/18/2019 23:48:43.549 1      CLIENT_LEAVE               0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)
02/18/2019 23:47:33.127 1      DOMAIN_STATUS              0 eogre_domain Active GW: Tunnel1
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 4      AP_TUNNEL_STATUS           0 Tunnel2 Dn
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 1      MSG_CLIENT_DEL             0 GW Tunnel2 (IP: 9.51.1.12)
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124 2      TUNNEL_ADD                 0 GW Tunnel2
02/18/2019 23:47:33.120 3      MSG_CLIENT_DEL_PD          0 GW Tunnel1 (IP: 9.51.1.11)
02/18/2019 23:47:31.763 2      AP_DOMAIN_PUSH             0 Delete:eogre_domain_set, 0 GWs
02/18/2019 23:47:31.753 4      AP_VAP_PUSH                0 profile:'eogre_tunnel',
wlan:pyats_eogre
```

To view the summary information of the EoGRE tunnel gateway, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre gateway summary
```

AP MAC	Gateway	Type	IP	State	Clients
80e8.6fd4.9520	Tunnel1	IPv4	9.51.1.11	Up	1
80e8.6fd4.9520	Tunnel2	IPv4	9.51.1.12	Down	0

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel gateway, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap tunnel eogre gateway detailed gateway-name
```

```
Gateway : Tunnel1
Mode    : IPv4
IP      : 9.51.1.11
State   : Up
MTU     : 1476
Up Time: 14 hours 25 minutes 2 seconds
AP MAC  : 80e8.6fd4.9520

Clients
Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 1
Traffic
Total Number of Received Packets      : 6
Total Number of Received Bytes        : 2643
Total Number of Transmitted Packets   : 94
Total Number of Transmitted Bytes     : 20629
Total Number of Lost Keepalive        : 3
```


To view summary information about the EoGRE tunnel gateway status, use the following command:

Device# **show ap tunnel eogre domain summary**

AP MAC	Domain	Active Gateway
80e8.6fd4.9520	eogre_domain	Tunnel1

To view information about EoGRE events on an AP, use the following command:

Device# **show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre events**

AP 80e8.6fd4.9520	Event history		
Timestamp	#Times	Event	RC Context
02/18/2019 23:50:26.341	6	IAPP_STATS	0 GW Tunnel2 uptime:0s
02/18/2019 23:49:40.222	2	CLIENT_JOIN	0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)
02/18/2019 23:48:43.549	1	CLIENT_LEAVE	0 74da.3828.88b0, (eogre_domain/2121)
02/18/2019 23:47:33.127	1	DOMAIN_STATUS	0 eogre_domain Active GW: Tunnel1
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124	4	AP_TUNNEL_STATUS	0 Tunnel2 Dn
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124	1	MSG_CLIENT_DEL	0 GW Tunnel2 (IP: 9.51.1.12)
02/18/2019 23:47:33.124	2	TUNNEL_ADD	0 GW Tunnel2
02/18/2019 23:47:33.120	3	MSG_CLIENT_DEL_PD	0 GW Tunnel1 (IP: 9.51.1.11)
02/18/2019 23:47:31.763	2	AP_DOMAIN_PUSH	0 Delete:eogre_domain_set, 0 GWs
02/18/2019 23:47:31.753	4	AP_VAP_PUSH	0 profile:'eogre_tunnel',

wlan:pyats_eogre

To view the summary information about EoGRE tunnel domain's status on an AP, use the following command:

Device# **show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre domain summary**

AP MAC	Domain	Active Gateway
80e8.6fd4.9520	eogre_domain	

To view the detailed information about EoGRE tunnel domain on an AP, use the following command:

Device# **show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre domain detailed**

```

Domain Name      : eogre_domain
Primary GW       : Tunnel1
Secondary GW     : Tunnel2
Active GW        : Tunnel1
Redundancy       : Non-Revertive
AdminState       : Up

```

To view the summary information about EoGRE tunnel gateways on an AP, use the following command:

Device# **show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre gateway summary**

AP MAC	Gateway	Type	IP	State	Clients
80e8.6fd4.9520	Tunnel1	IPv4	9.51.1.11	Up	1

```
80e8.6fd4.9520 Tunnel2 IPv4 9.51.1.12 Down 0
```

To view detailed information about an EoGRE tunnel gateway's status on an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name ap-name tunnel eogre gateway detailed gateway-name
```

```
Gateway : Tunnel2
Mode    : IPv4
IP      : 9.51.1.12
State   : Down
MTU     : 0
AP MAC  : 80e8.6fd4.9520

Clients
Total Number of Wireless Clients      : 0
Traffic
Total Number of Received Packets      : 0
Total Number of Received Bytes        : 0
Total Number of Transmitted Packets   : 0
Total Number of Transmitted Bytes     : 0
Total Number of Lost Keepalive        : 151
```



CHAPTER 191

Wireless Guest Access

- [Wireless Guest Access, on page 2041](#)
- [Load Balancing Among Multiple Guest Controllers, on page 2045](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Wireless Guest Access, on page 2045](#)
- [Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access \(GUI\), on page 2046](#)
- [Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access \(CLI\), on page 2046](#)
- [Configuring Guest Access Policy \(GUI\), on page 2047](#)
- [Configuring Guest Access Policy \(CLI\), on page 2047](#)
- [Viewing Guest Access Debug Information \(CLI\), on page 2049](#)
- [Verifying Wireless Guest Access Enablement , on page 2049](#)
- [Configure Guest Access Using Different Security Methods, on page 2050](#)

Wireless Guest Access

The Wireless Guest Access feature addresses the need to provide internet access to guests in a secure and accountable manner. The implementation of a wireless guest network uses the enterprise's existing wireless and wired infrastructure to the maximum extent. This reduces the cost and complexity of building a physical overlay network. Wireless Guest Access solution comprises of two controllers - a Guest Foreign and a Guest Anchor. An administrator can limit bandwidth and shape the guest traffic to avoid impacting the performance of the internal network.



Note

- When a client joins through a capwap tunnel from an AP, the RADIUS NAS-Port-Type is set as "wireless 802.11". Here, Point of Attachment (PoA) and Point of Presence (PoP) is the same.
- When a client joins through a mobility tunnel, the RADIUS NAS-Port-Type is set as "virtual". Here, PoA is the Foreign controller and PoP is the Anchor controller as the client is anchored. For information on the standard types, see the following link:

<https://www.iana.org/assignments/radius-types/radius-types.xhtml#radius-types-13>

Wireless Guest Access feature comprises the following functions:

- Guest Anchor controller is the point of presence for a client.

- Guest Anchor Controller provides internal security by forwarding the traffic from a guest client to a Cisco Wireless Controller in the demilitarized zone (DMZ) network through the anchor controller.
- Guest Foreign controller is the point of attachment of the client.
- Guest Foreign Controller is a dedicated guest WLAN or SSID and is implemented throughout the campus wireless network wherever guest access is required. A WLAN with mobility anchor (guest controller) configured on it identifies the guest WLAN.
- Guest traffic segregation implements Layer 2 or Layer 3 techniques across the campus network to restrict the locations where guests are allowed.
- Guest user-level QoS is used for rate limiting and shaping, although it is widely implemented to restrict the bandwidth usage for a guest user.
- Access control involves using embedded access control functionality within the campus network, or implementing an external platform to control guest access to the Internet from the enterprise network.
- Authentication and authorization of guests that are based on variables, including date, duration, and bandwidth.
- An audit mechanism to track who is currently using, or has used, the network.
- A wider coverage is provided by including areas such as lobbies and other common areas that are otherwise not wired for network connectivity.
- The need for designated guest access areas or rooms is removed.



Note To use IRCM with AireOS in your network, contact Cisco TAC for assistance.

Table 137: Supported Controllers

Controller Name	Supported as Guest Anchor	Supported as Guest Foreign
Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller	Yes	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller	Yes	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller	Yes	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller	Yes	Yes
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless Controller for Switch	No	No
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Embedded Wireless Controller on Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series APs	No	No

Following is a list of features supported by Cisco Guest Access:

Supported Features

- Sleeping Clients
- FQDN
- AVC (AP upstream and downstream)
- Native Profiling
- Open Authentication
- OpenDNS
- Supported Security Methods:
 - MAB Central Web Authentication (CWA)
 - Local Web Authentication (LWA)
 - LWA on MAB Failure
 - 802.1x + CWA
 - 802.1x
 - PSK
 - 802.1x + LWA
 - PSK + CWA
 - PSK + LWA
 - iPSK + CWA
 - MAB Failure + PSK
 - MAB Failure + OWE
 - MAB Failure + SAE
- SSID QoS Upstream and Downstream (Foreign)
- AP/ Client SSO
- Static IP Roaming
- Client IPv6
- Roaming across controllers
- RADIUS Accounting



Note

In a guest access scenario, accounting is always performed at the foreign controller for all authentication methods.

- QoS: Client-Level Rate Limiting
- Guest Anchor Load Balancing
- Workgroup Bridges (WGB)



Note To enable the controller to support multiple VLANs from a WGB, use **wgb vlan** command.

Foreign Map Overview

Guest Access supports Foreign Map using Policy Profile and WLAN Profile configuration models in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller.

Foreign Map support in Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller is achieved with the following policy profile and WLAN profile config model.

- Guest Foreign commands:
 - **Foreign1: wlanProf1 PolicyProf1**
 - **Foreign2: wlanProf2 PolicyProf2**
- Guest Anchor commands:
 - **wlanProf1, wlanProf2**
 - **PolicyProf1: Vlan100 - subnet1**
 - **PolicyProf2: Vlan200 - subnet2**

Foreign Map Roaming

Configure two different WLAN profiles on the two Guest Foreigns and seamless roaming is not allowed between them. This is expected configuration. However, seamless roaming is allowed if the same WLAN profile is configured on two Guest Foreigns, but it prevents Foreign Map feature from working.

Wireless Guest Access: Use Cases

The wireless guest access feature can be used to meet different requirements. Some of the possibilities are shared here.

Scenario One: Providing Secured Network Access During Company Merger

This feature can be configured to provide employees of **company A** who are visiting **company B** to access company A resources on company B network securely.

Scenario Two: Shared Services over Existing Setup

Using this feature, you can provide multiple services using multiple vendors piggy backing on the existing network. A company can provide services on an SSID which is anchored on the existing controller. This is while the existing service continues to serve over the same controller and network.

Load Balancing Among Multiple Guest Controllers

- You can configure export anchors to load balance large guest client volumes. For a single export foreign guest WLAN configuration, up to 72 controllers are allowed. To configure mobility guest controllers, use **mobility anchor ip address**.
- You can specify primary anchors with priority (1,3) and choose another anchor as backup in case of failure.
- In a multi-anchor scenario, when the primary anchor goes down, the clients get disconnected from the primary anchor and joins the secondary anchor.
- When the highest priority anchor goes down before the keep-alive timeout completes, the export anchor request for new clients fails, and Foreign selects the next highest priority Anchor in the list to export the clients.

Guidelines and Limitations for Wireless Guest Access

- Match the security profiles under WLAN on both Guest Foreign, and Guest Anchor.
- Match the policy profile attributes such as NAC and AAA Override on both Guest Foreign, and Guest Anchor controllers.
- On Export Anchor, the WLAN profile name and Policy profile name is chosen when a client joins at runtime and the same should match with the Guest Foreign controller.

Troubleshooting IPv6

When a guest export client cannot get a routable IPv6 address through SLAAC or cannot pass traffic when the IPv6 address is learned through DHCPv6, you can use the following workarounds:

- On IPv6 Routers: You can work around the RA multicast to unicast conversion by modifying behavior on the IPv6 gateway. Depending on the product, this may be the default behavior or may require configuration.
 - On Cisco IPv6 Routers
 - Cisco Nexus platform: Has solicited unicast RA enabled by default to help with wireless deployment.
 - Cisco IOS-XE platform: Use the following configuration command to turn on unicast RA to help with wireless deployment:
ipv6 nd ra solicited unicast

- On non-Cisco IPv6 Routers: If non-Cisco network devices do not support configuration command to enable solicited unicast RA then a work around does not exist.

Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configure > Tags and Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** In the **Wireless Networks** area, click the relevant WLAN or RLAN and click **Mobility Anchor**.
- Step 3** In the **Wireless Network Details** section, choose a device from the **Switch IP Address** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Apply**.
-

Configure Mobility Tunnel for Guest Access (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to configure a mobility tunnel.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wireless mobility group name <i>group name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility group name mtunnelgrp	Configures a mobility group.
Step 2	wireless mobility mac-address <i>mac address</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility mac-address 0d:4c:da:3a:f2:21	Configures a mobility MAC address.
Step 3	wireless mobility group member mac <i>mac address</i> ip <i>ip address</i> group <i>group name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless mobility group member mac-address df:07:a1:a7:a8:55 ip 206.223.123.2 group mtgrp	Configures a mobility peer.

Configuring Guest Access Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Name and enable the Central Switching toggle button.
Step 4	In the Access Policies tab, under the VLAN settings, choose the vlans from the VLAN/VLAN Group drop-down list.
Step 5	In the Mobility tab, under the Mobility Anchors settings, check the Export Anchor check box.
Step 6	In the Advanced tab, under the WLAN Timeout settings, enter the Idle Timeout (sec) .
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Guest Access Policy (CLI)

Follow the procedure given below to create and configure the guest access profile policy. Alternately, you may use the existing default policy profile after configuring the mobility anchor to that policy.

You can only configure anchors which are peers. Ensure that the IP address that is used is a mobility peer and is included in the mobility group. The system shows an invalid anchor IP address error message when any other IP address is used.

To delete the mobility group, ensure that the mobility peer which is also a mobility anchor is removed from the policy profile.



Note

- No payload is sent to Guest Foreign to display the VLAN.
 - To avoid a client exclusion from occurring due to VLAN, Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controllers need to define VLAN along with the associated name being pushed from ISE.
-

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy wlan_policy_profile Example:	Configures the policy profile and enters wireless profile configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless profile policy guest-test-policy	Note You can use the default-policy-profile to configure the profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Shuts down the policy if it exists before configuring the anchor.
Step 4	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	(Optional) Enables central switching.
Step 5	Choose the first option to configure the Guest Foreign or second option to configure the Guest Anchor: mobility anchor <i>anchor-ip-address</i> mobility anchor Example: For Guest Foreign: Device(config-wireless-policy)# mobility anchor 19.0.2.1 For Guest Anchor: Device(config-wireless-policy)# mobility anchor	Configures Guest Foreign or Guest Anchor.
Step 6	idle-timeout <i>timeout</i> Example: Device (config-wireless-policy)# idle-timeout 1000	(Optional) Configures duration of idle timeout, in seconds.
Step 7	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 2	Configures VLAN name or VLAN Id. Note VLAN is optional for a Guest Foreign controller.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables policy profile.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Exits the configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	show wireless profile policy summary Example: Device# show wireless profile policy summary	(Optional) Displays the configured profiles.
Step 11	show wireless profile policy detailed <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device# show wireless profile policy detailed guest-test-policy	(Optional) Displays detailed information of a policy profile.

Viewing Guest Access Debug Information (CLI)

- To display client level detailed information about mobility state and the anchor IP address, use the following command:
show wireless client mac-add *mac-address* detail
- To display the client mobility statistics, use the following command:
show wireless client mac-address *mac-address* mobility statistics
- To display client level roam history for an active client in sub-domain, use the following command:
show wireless client mac-address *mac-address* mobility history
- To display detailed parameters of a given profile policy, use the following command:
show wireless profile policy detailed *policy-name*
- To display the global level summary for all mobility messages, use the following command:
show wireless mobility summary
- To display the statistics for the Mobility manager, use the following command:
show wireless stats mobility

Verifying Wireless Guest Access Enablement

To check if wireless guest access is enabled, run the following command.

```
Device# show platform hardware chassis active qfp feature sw client vlan all
```

```
-----
Vlan : 666
Learning Enabled : true
DHCPSN Enabled : true
Non IP Multicast Enabled : false
Broadcast Enabled : false
Wireless Passive Client Enabled : false
Guest-Lan Enabled : true
```

```
MTU : 65535
Input UIDB : 65503
Output UIDB : 65497
Flood List : 0XB8658A0
```

Configure Guest Access Using Different Security Methods

The following sections provide information about the following:

Open Authentication

To configure the guest access with open authentication, follow the steps:

1. Configuring the WLAN Profile
2. [#unique_2533](#)



Note No tag is required unless AVC is enabled.

Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Open Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **SSID** and the **WLAN ID**. Choose the radio policy from the **Radio Policy** drop-down list. Enable or disable the **Status** and **Broadcast SSID** toggle buttons.
- Step 4** Choose **Security > Layer2** tab. Uncheck the **WPA Policy**, **WPA2 Policy**, **AES** and **802.1x** check boxes.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configure a WLAN Profile For Guest Access with Open Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id ssid-name. Example:	Configures the WLAN and SSID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wlan mywlan 34 mywlan-ssid	
Step 3	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 7	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration.

Configuring a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy open_it	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	Choose the first option to configure a Guest Foreign or second option to configure a Guest Anchor: • mobility anchor <i>anchor-ip-address</i> • mobility anchor Example:	Configures Guest Foreign or Guest Anchor.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	For Guest Foreign: Device (config-wireless-policy) # mobility anchor 19.0.2.1 For Guest Anchor: Device (config-wireless-policy) # mobility anchor	
Step 4	central switching. Example: Device (config-wireless-policy) # central switching	Enables Central switching
Step 5	vlan id Example: Device (config-wireless-policy) # vlan 16	Configures a VLAN name or VLAN ID. Note VLAN is optional for a Guest Foreign controller.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device (config-wireless-policy) # no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.

Local Web Authentication

To configure LWA, follow these steps:

1. [Configure the Parameter Map.](#)
2. [Configure the WLAN Profile.](#)
3. [Applying Policy Profile on a WLAN](#)
4. [Configure the AAA Server.](#)

Configure a Parameter Map (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > Web Auth.
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	Enter the Parameter-map name , Maximum HTTP connections , Init-State Timeout(secs) and choose webauth in the Type drop-down list.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configure a Parameter Map (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	parameter-map type webauth global Example: Device(config)# parameter-map type webauth global	Creates a parameter map and enters parameter-map webauth configuration mode.
Step 3	type webauth Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)#type webauth	Configures the webauth type parameter.
Step 4	timeout init-state sec <i>timeout-seconds</i> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)# timeout inti-state sec 3600	Configures the WEBAUTH timeout in seconds. Valid range for the time in sec parameter is 60 to 3932100 seconds.
Step 5	virtual-ip ipv4 <i>virtual_IP_address</i> Example: Device(config-params-parameter-map)#virtual-ip ipv4 209.165.201.1	Configures a VLAN name or VLAN ID.

Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click on the WLAN name.
Step 3	Choose Security > Layer3 .
Step 4	Check the Web Policy check box.
Step 5	Choose a parameter map from the Web Auth Parameter Map drop-down list.
Step 6	Choose an authentication list from the Authentication List drop-down list.
Step 7	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-id ssid-name</i> Example: Device# Device(config)# wlan mywlan 38 mywlan-ssid1	Configures the WLAN and SSID.
Step 3	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables web authentication for a WLAN.
Step 4	security web-auth parameter-map <i>default</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map default	Configure the default parameter map. Note When security web-auth is enabled, you get to map the default authentication-list and global parameter-map . This is applicable for authentication-list and parameter-map that are not explicitly mentioned.
Step 5	security web-auth parameter-map <i>global</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Configure the global parameter map.
Step 6	security web-auth authentication-list <i>LWA-AUTHENTICATION</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list LWA-AUTHENTICATION	Sets the authentication list for IEEE 802.1x.

Configure an AAA Server for Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Security > AAA > AAA Advanced > Global Config**.
- Step 2** Choose the options from the **Local Authentication**, **Authentication Method List**, **Local Authorization** and **Authorization Method List** drop-down lists.
- Step 3** Enable or Disable the **Radius Server Load Balance** using toggle button.

Step 4 Check the **Interim Update** check box.

Step 5 Click **Apply**.

Configure an AAA Server for Local Web Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa authentication login LWA-AUTHENTICATION local Example: Device(config)#aaa authentication login lwa-authentication local	Defines the authentication method at login.
Step 3	aaa authorization network default local if-authenticated Example: Device(config)#aaa authorization network default local if-authenticated	Sets the authorization method to local if the user has authenticated.

Global Configuration

Follow the procedure given below for global configuration:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	username name password 0 clear-text-password Example: Device(config)# #username base password 0 pass1	Sets the clear text password for the user.
Step 3	ip http server Example: Device(config)#ip http server	Enables the HTTP server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ip http authentication local Example: <pre>Device(config)#ip http authentication local</pre>	Sets the HTTP server authentication method to local. Note You will get the admin access rights regardless of the user privilege, if the ip http authentication local is disabled and username is the same as enable password.

Central Web Authentication

To configure CWA, follow these steps:

1. [Configure the WLAN Profile.](#)
2. [#unique_2547](#)
3. [Configure AAA Server](#)
4. [#unique_2549](#)

Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Central Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name , the SSID , and the WLAN ID .
Step 4	To enable the WLAN, set Status as Enabled .
Step 5	From the Radio Policy drop-down list, select the radio policy.
Step 6	To enable the Broadcast SSID , set the status as Enabled .
Step 7	Choose Security > Layer2 tab. Uncheck the WPA Policy , WPA2 Policy , AES and 802.1x check boxes.
Step 8	Check the MAC Filtering check box to enable the feature. With MAC Filtering enabled, choose the Authorization list from the Authorization List drop-down list.
Step 9	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configure a WLAN Profile for Guest Access with Central Web Authentication (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-id ssid-name</i> Example: Device# Device(config)# wlan mywlan 38 mywlan-ssid1	Configures the WLAN and SSID.
Step 3	mac-filtering <i>remote_authorization_list_name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering auth-list	Enables MAB authentication for the remote RADIUS server.
Step 4	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 7	no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Saves the configuration.

AAA Server Configuration (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA > Servers/Groups > RADIUS > Server Groups .
Step 2	Click the RADIUS server group.
Step 3	From the MAC-Delimiter drop-down list, choose an option.
Step 4	From the MAC-Filtering drop-down list, choose an option.
Step 5	Enter the Dead-Time (mins) .
Step 6	From the Available Servers on the left, move the servers you need to Assigned Servers on the right.
Step 7	Click Update & Apply to Device .
Step 8	Choose Configuration > Security > AAA > Servers/Groups > RADIUS > Servers .
Step 9	Click the RADIUS server.
Step 10	Enter the IPv4/IPv6 Server Address , Auth Port , Acct Port , Server Timeout (seconds) and Retry Count .
Step 11	Check or uncheck the PAC Key checkbox and choose the Key Type from the Key Type drop-down list. Enter the Key and Confirm Key .
Step 12	Enable or disable the Support for CoA toggle button.
Step 13	Click Update & Apply to Device .
-

AAA Server Configuration (CLI)



Note Configure AAA server for Guest Foreign only.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	aaa authorization network <i>authorization-list</i> local group <i>Server-group-name</i> Example: Device(config)#aaa authorization network cwa local group ise	Sets the authorization method to local.
Step 3	aaa group server radius <i>server-group-name</i> Example:	Configures RADIUS server group definition. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)#aaa group server radius ise	<i>server-group-name</i> refers to the server group name. The valid range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters.
Step 4	server name <i>radius-server-name</i> Example: Device(config-sg-radius)#server name ise1	Configures the RADIUS server name.
Step 5	subscriber mac-filtering security-mode mac Example: Device(config-sg-radius)#\$mac-filtering security-mode mac	Sets the MAC address as the password.
Step 6	mac-delimiter colon Example: Device(config-sg-radius)#mac-delimiter colon	Sets the MAC address delimiter to colon.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-sg-radius)#end	Saves the configuration, exits configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.
Step 8	radius server <i>name</i> Example: Device(config)#radius server ISE1	Sets the RADIUS server name
Step 9	address ipv4 <i>radius-server-ipaddress</i> auth-port <i>port-number</i> acct-port <i>port-number</i> Example: Device(config-radius-server)#address ipv4 209.165.201.1 auth-port 1635 acct-port 33	Configures the RADIUS server IP address authentication and accounting ports.

Configuring 802.1x with Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-profile wlan-id ssid</i> Example:	Configures the WLAN and SSID.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wlan testwprofile 22 ssid-3	
Step 3	security dot1x authentication-list <i>default</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Configures 802.1X for an WLAN.
Step 4	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for 802.1x security on the WLAN.
Step 5	security web-auth parameter-map <i>global</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Configures the global parameter map.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring Local Web Authentication with PSK Protocol

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-profile wlan-id ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan psksec-profile 22 ssid-4	Configures the WLAN and SSID.
Step 3	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 4	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	security wpa psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Enables the security type as PSK.
Step 7	security wpa psk set-key {ascii hex} key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key ascii 0	Configures the PSK shared key.
Step 8	security web-auth Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth	Enables the web authentication for the WLAN.
Step 9	security web-auth authentication-list default Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for the WLAN.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map global Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map global	Configure the global parameter map.

Central Web Authentication with PSK Protocol

To configure the CWA with PSK security protocol, follow the steps:

1. [Configure the WLAN Profile.](#)
2. [Applying Policy Profile on a WLAN](#)

Configure WLAN Profile for Central Web Authentication with PSK Protocol

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wlan wlan-profile wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan cwasec-profile 27 ssid-5	Configures the WLAN and SSID.
Step 3	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 4	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	security wpa psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk	Enables the security type as PSK.
Step 7	security wpa psk set-key {ascii hex} key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0	Configures the PSK shared key.
Step 8	mac-filtering authorization_list_name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering cwa-list	Enables MAC filtering for PSK web authentication.

Central Web Authentication with iPSK Protocol

To configure the CWA with iPSK security protocol, follow the steps:

1. [Configure the WLAN Profile.](#)

Configure WLAN Profile for Central Web Authentication with iPSK Protocol

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan <i>guest-wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: config# wlan ipsk-cwa-profile 28 ssid-6	Configures guest WLAN.
Step 2	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for 802.1x.
Step 3	security wpa akm psk set-key { <i>ascii</i> <i>hex</i> } <i>key</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key ascii 0	Configures the PSK AKM shared key.
Step 4	mac-filtering <i>authorization_list_name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering cwa-list	Enables MAC filtering for iPSK authentication.

Configure Web Authentication on MAC Address Bypass failure (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Configuration > Tags and Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click **Add** to add a new WLAN Profile or click the one you want to edit.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, complete the following steps:
- Choose **Security > Layer2** and check the **MAC Filtering** check box to enable MAC filtering.
 - From the **Authorization List** drop-down list, select a value.
 - Choose the **Layer3** tab.
 - Click **Show Advanced Settings** and check the **On MAC Filter Failure** checkbox.
-

Configure Web Authentication on MAC Address Bypass Failure (CLI)

You can configure authentication to fall back to web authentication, if a client cannot authenticate using MAC filter (Local or RADIUS), while trying to connect to a WLAN. To enable this feature, configure both MAC

filtering and Web Authentication on the device. This can also avoid disassociations that happen only because of MAC filter authentication failure. To configure this feature, follow the procedure:

Configure a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy cwa	Configures WLAN policy profile and enters the wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 3	central switching Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# central switching	Enables Central switching.
Step 4	Choose the first option to configure a Guest Foreign or second option to configure a Guest Anchor: • mobility anchor <i>anchor-ip-address</i> • mobility anchor Example: For Guests Foreign: Device (config-wireless-policy)# mobility anchor 19.0.2.1 For Guest Anchor: Device (config-wireless-policy)# mobility anchor	Configures Guest Foreign or Guest Anchor.
Step 5	vlan <i>name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 16	Configures a VLAN name or VLAN ID. Note VLAN is optional for a Guest Foreign controller.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.

Configure a WLAN Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	wlan <i>guest-wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: config# wlan test-wlan-guest 10 wlan-ssid	Configures guest WLAN.
Step 2	mac-filtering <i>mac-auth-listname</i> authorization-override <i>override-auth-listname</i> Example: config-wlan# mac-filtering <i>mac-auth-listname</i> authorization-override	Configures MAC filtering support on WLAN.
Step 3	security web-auth Example: config-wlan# security web-auth	Enables web authentication.
Step 4	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: config-wlan# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication if MAC filter authentication fails.

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Pre-Shared Key (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name</i> Example: Device (config) # wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submode. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters.

Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	security wpa psk set-key ascii/hex key password Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 PASSWORD	Configures the PSK AKM shared key.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	security wpa akm psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk	Configures PSK support.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list authorize-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map parameter-map-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device (config-wlan) # no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with OWE (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device (config) # wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device (config-wlan) # mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device (config-wlan) # no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device (config-wlan) # security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	security wpa akm owe Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm owe	Enables WPA3 OWE support.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list <i>authorize-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configure WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Bypass Failure with Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name	Enters WLAN configuration submode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device (config) # wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	• <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured this command, enter the wlan profile-name command.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device (config-wlan) # mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device (config-wlan) # no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device (config-wlan) # security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 6	security wpa akm sae Example: Device (config-wlan) # security wpa akm sae	Enables AKM SAE support.
Step 7	security web-auth authentication-list authenticate-list-name Example: Device (config-wlan) # security web-auth authentication-list default	Enables authentication list for dot1x security.
Step 8	security web-auth authorization-list authorize-list-name Example: Device (config-wlan) # security web-auth authorization-list default	Enables authorization list for dot1x security.
Step 9	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: Device (config-wlan) # security web-auth on-macfilter-failure	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP	Configures the parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring WLAN for Web Authentication on MAC Authentication Failure with Dot1x (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name wlan-id SSID_Name Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-test 3 ssid-test	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. • <i>profile-name</i>: Profile name of the configured WLAN. • <i>wlan-id</i>: Wireless LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 512. • <i>SSID_Name</i>: SSID that can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note If you have already configured a WLAN, enter the profile name of the configured WLAN in the command (wlan profile-name) and continue with the rest of the configuration steps.
Step 3	mac-filtering auth-list-name Example: Device(config-wlan)# mac-filtering test-auth-list	Sets the MAC filtering parameters.
Step 4	security dot1x authentication-list <i>dot1x-authentication-list</i>	Configures 802.1x.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list dot1x-authentication-list</pre>	
Step 5	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authenticate-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth authentication-list default</pre>	Enables the authentication list.
Step 6	security web-auth on-macfilter-failure Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth on-macfilter-failure</pre>	Enables web authentication on MAC filter failure.
Step 7	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# security web-auth parameter-map WLAN1_MAP</pre>	Configures the web authentication parameter map. Note If a parameter map is not associated with a WLAN, the configuration is considered from the global parameter map.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the WLAN.



CHAPTER 192

Wired Guest Access

- [Information About Wired Guest Access, on page 2073](#)
- [Restrictions for Wired Guest Access, on page 2076](#)
- [Configuring Access Switch for Wired Guest Client, on page 2076](#)
- [Configuring Access Switch for Foreign Controller, on page 2077](#)
- [Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication \(GUI\), on page 2078](#)
- [Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication, on page 2078](#)
- [Configuring Foreign Controller with Local Web Authentication \(GUI\), on page 2080](#)
- [Configuring Foreign Controller with Local WEB Authentication, on page 2081](#)
- [Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication \(GUI\), on page 2082](#)
- [Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication, on page 2083](#)
- [Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication \(GUI\), on page 2084](#)
- [Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication, on page 2085](#)
- [Configuring Session Timeout for a Profile Policy, on page 2086](#)
- [Global Configuration \(GUI\), on page 2087](#)
- [Verifying Wired Guest Configurations, on page 2087](#)
- [Wired Guest Access—Use Cases, on page 2091](#)

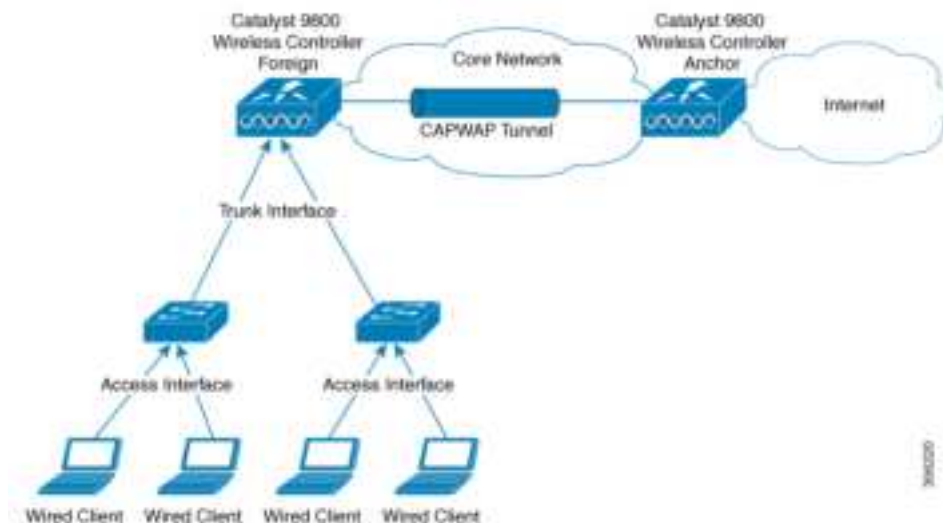
Information About Wired Guest Access

The Wired Guest Access feature enables guest users of an enterprise network that supports both wired and wireless access to connect to the guest access network. The wired guest clients can connect from the designated and configured wired Ethernet ports for the guest access after they complete the configured authentication methods. Wired session guests are directed to a wireless guest controller in a demilitarized zone (DMZ) through a Control And Provisioning of Wireless Access Points (CAPWAP) tunnel.

Wired guest access can be configured in a dual-controller configuration that uses both an anchor controller and a foreign controller. A dual-controller configuration isolates wired guest access traffic from the enterprise user traffic.

The wired session guests are provided open or web-authenticated access from the wireless controller.

Figure 42: Guest Access Architecture



IPv6 Router Advertisement Forwarding for a Wired Guest

Wired clients get the IPv6 based connectivity when they receive the IPv6 Router Advertisement (RA) message. The IPv6 router sends these RA messages and it contains information such as IPv6 prefix and router link-local address.

These RA messages are sent as Unicast or Multicast messages. The Unicast RA messages are routed as same as the client directed traffic. The Multicast RA messages are forwarded to all the clients present in the intended VLAN. RA message forwarding is enabled by default and requires no specific configuration.

Guest Anchor Controller: Guest anchor controller forwards the RA packets, from the receiving VLAN, to all the foreign controllers using the mobility data tunnel. The RA packets are tagged with the anchor VLAN to ensure the message is forwarded to the correct clients using the foreign controller data path.

Guest Foreign Controller: Guest foreign controller forwards the received RAs from the guest anchor to the wired ports on which the wired guest clients are connected. To forward the RAs to the intended clients, the guest foreign controller keeps a track of the wired guest clients—per interface, access VLANs, and anchor VLANs.

Supported Features

- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers-Anchor
- Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers-Anchor
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers-Foreign
- Cisco AireOS Wireless Controllers-Foreign
- Dual controller solution (foreign + anchor) and access switch
- Trunk Ports
- Open Authentication
- Local Web Authentication

To configure Web Authentication, see [Web-based Authentication](#) section of the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Software Configuration Guide.

- Local Web Authentication (web consent).



Note In AireOS, this is referred to as **web pass-through**.

- Local Web Authentication + ISE (External Web Authentication).
- LWA (local web authentication), with a username and a password.
- Web consent (LWA + consent), that is with a username, a password and the check box of acceptance.
- Scale max 2k clients and 5 guest-LANs (5 VLANs max)
- Client IPv6 support
- Idle Timeout and Session Timeout
- Accounting on Foreign



Note Statistics computation not supported.

- Manageability (SNMP/Yang/WebUI)
- QoS Rate-Limiting and MQC Policies (Upstream at foreign, Upstream, and Downstream at the anchor)



Note QoS rate-limiting supports bps rate-limiting, pps rate-limiting is not supported.

- QoS support with AireOS Anchor setup
- Stateful Switch Over (SSO)
- Port Channel support on Anchor and Foreign with no restrictions to the controller's role.
- Access Port on Foreign
- Cisco Umbrella (not supported in AireOS Anchor)
- ACL support at anchor
- Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) URL filtering is supported at Anchor controller.
- IP theft detection
- Sleeping Client

Restrictions for Wired Guest Access

- A maximum of five guest LANs are supported on the foreign controller.
- A maximum of 2000 clients per foreign are supported.
- No Multicast or Broadcast support.
- You can map only one wired VLAN to a guest LAN.
- You can map only one guest LAN to one policy profile.
- Every guest LAN has a unique name and this name cannot be shared with RLAN or WLAN.
- Ensure that the Anchor VLAN ID and the wired VLAN ID configured on the Foreign controller is not the same.
- QoS is not supported on VLAN and on physical interfaces of the controller.

Configuring Access Switch for Wired Guest Client

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#vlan 200	Creates the VLAN ID.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 4	interface GigabitEthernet <i>interface number</i> Example: Device(config)#interface GigabitEthernet1/0/1	Enters the interface to be added to the VLAN.
Step 5	switchport access vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)#switchport access vlan 200	Assigns the port to a VLAN. The valid VLAN IDs range is between 1 and 4094.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	switchport mode access Example: Device(config-if)#switchport mode access	Defines the VLAN membership mode for the port.
Step 7	no cdp enable Example: Device(config-if)#no cdp enable	Disables CDP on the interface.
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-if)#end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Access Switch for Foreign Controller

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#vlan 200	Creates the VLAN ID.
Step 3	exit Example: Device(config)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 4	interface GigabitEthernet<i>interface number</i> Example: Device(config)#interface GigabitEthernet1/0/2	Enters the interface to be added to the VLAN.
Step 5	switchport trunk allowed vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-if)#switchport trunk allowed vlan 200	Assigns the allowed VLAN ID to the port when it is in trunking mode.
Step 6	switchport mode trunk Example: Device(config-if)#switchport mode trunk	Sets the trunking mode to trunk unconditionally.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-if)#end	Saves the configuration and exits configuration mode and returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click on a **Policy Name**.
 - Step 3** Go to the **Mobility** tab.
 - Step 4** In the **Mobility Anchors** section, check the **Export Anchor** check box.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
 - Step 6** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN > Guest LAN Configuration**
 - Step 7** Click **Add**.
 - Step 8** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **Guest LAN ID**, **Client Association Limit**.
 - Step 9** Choose the desired mode from the **mDNS Mode** drop-down list.
 - Step 10** Enable or disable the **Status** and **Wired VLAN Status** toggle button.
 - Step 11** In the **Security** tab, disable the **Web Auth** toggle button.
 - Step 12** Click **Apply to Device**.
 - Step 13** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN > Guest LAN Map Configuration**
 - Step 14** Click **Add Map**.
 - Step 15** In the Add Guest LAN Map window, enter the **Guest LAN Map**.
 - Step 16** Click **Apply to Device**.
 - Step 17** Click **Add**.
 - Step 18** Choose the values from the **Profile Name** and **Policy Name** drop-down lists.
 - Step 19** Click **Save**.
-

Configuring Foreign Controller with Open Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)#wireless profile policy testpro-1	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	mobility anchor <i>non-local-mobility-cntlr-ip</i> priority <i>priority</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#mobility anchor 192.168.201.111 priority 1	Configures the mobility anchor and sets its priority.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#no shutdown	Enables the configuration.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 6	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-profile-name</i> guest-lan-id wired-vlan <i>wired-vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#guest-lan profile-name gstpro-1 1 wired-vlan 25	Configures guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN. Note Configure the wired VLAN only for the Guest Foreign controller.
Step 7	no security web-auth Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#no security web-auth	Disables web-authentication.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#no shutdown	Enables the guest LAN.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 10	wireless guest LAN map <i>gst-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)#wireless guest LAN map gstmap-1	Configures a guest LAN map.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	guest-lan <i>guest-profile-name</i> policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device (config-guest-lan-map) #guest-lan gstpro-1 policy testpro-1	Attaches a guest LAN map to the policy profile.
Step 12	exit Example: Device (config-guest-lan-map) #exit	Returns to configuration mode.

Configuring Foreign Controller with Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Select a **Policy Name**.
- Step 3** Go to the **Mobility** tab.
- Step 4** In the **Mobility Anchors** section, check the **Export Anchor** check box.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
- Step 6** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN > Guest LAN Configuration**
- Step 7** Click **Add**.
- Step 8** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, **Guest LAN ID**, **Client Association Limit**.
- Step 9** Choose the desired mode from the **mDNS Mode** drop-down list.
- Step 10** Enable or disable the **Status** and **Wired VLAN Status** using toggle button.
- Step 11** Go to the **Security** tab.
- Step 12** Enable the **Web Auth** using toggle button.
- Step 13** Choose the values from the **Web Auth Parameter Map**, **Authentication List** and **Authorization List** drop-down lists.
- Step 14** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 15** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN > Guest LAN Map Configuration**
- Step 16** Click **Add Map**.
- Step 17** In the Add Guest LAN Map window, enter the **Guest LAN Map**.
- Step 18** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 19** Click **Add**.
- Step 20** Choose the values from the **Profile Name** and **Policy Name** drop-down lists.
- Step 21** Click **Save**.
-

Configuring Foreign Controller with Local WEB Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)#wireless profile policy testpro-1	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	mobility anchor <i>non-local-mobility-cntlr-ip</i> priority <i>priority</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#mobility anchor 192.168.201.111 priority 1	Configures the mobility anchor and sets its priority.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#no shutdown	Enables the configuration.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 6	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-profile-name</i> guest-lan-id wired-vlan <i>wired-vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#guest-lan profile-name gstpro-2 3 wired-vlan 26	Configures guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN.
Step 7	security web-auth Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth	Enables web-authentication.
Step 8	security web-auth authentication-list <i>auth-list-name</i> Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth authentication-list default	Configures the authentication list for a IEEE 802.1x network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth parameter-map global	Configures the security web-auth parameter map.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#no shutdown	Enables the guest LAN.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 12	wireless guest-lan map <i>gst-map-name</i> Example: Device(config)#wireless guest-lan map gstmap-2	Configures a guest LAN map.
Step 13	guest-lan <i>guest-lan-profile-name</i> policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config-guest-lan-map)#guest-lan gstpro-2 policy testpro-1	Attaches a guest LAN map to the policy profile.
Step 14	exit Example: Device(config-guest-lan-map)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.

What to do next

For more information about Local Web Authentication, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/9800/config-guide/b_wl_16_10_cg/wireless-web-authentication.html

Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name**.
- Step 4** Go to the **Access Policies** tab.

- Step 5** Under the **VLAN** settings, choose the vlans from the **VLAN/VLAN Group** drop-down list.
- Step 6** Go to the **Mobility** tab.
- Step 7** Under the **Mobility Anchors** settings, check the **Export Anchor** check box.
- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 9** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN**.
- Step 10** Click **Add**.
- Step 11** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **Guest LAN ID** and the **Client Association Limit**.
- Step 12** In the **Security** tab, under the **Layer3** settings, disable the **Web Auth** toggle button.
- Step 13** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Anchor Controller with Open Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <code>Device# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: <code>Device(config)#wireless profile policy testpro-2</code>	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	mobility anchor Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)#mobility anchor</code>	Configures the mobility anchor.
Step 4	vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)#vlan 29</code>	Configure a VLAN name or a VLAN ID.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)#no shutdown</code>	Enables the configuration.
Step 6	exit Example: <code>Device(config-wireless-policy)#exit</code>	Returns to configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-profile-name</i> <i>guest-lan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#guest-lan profile-name testpro-2 1	Configures the guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN.
Step 8	client association limit <i>guest-lan-client-limit</i> Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#client association limit	Configures the maximum client connections per guest LAN. The valid range is between 1 and 2000.
Step 9	no security web-auth Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#no security web-auth	Disables web authentication.
Step 10	no shutdown Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#no shutdown	Enables the guest LAN.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-guest-lan)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.

Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **General** tab, enter the **Name**.
 - Step 4** Go to the **Access Policies** tab.
 - Step 5** Under the **VLAN** settings, choose the vlans from the **VLAN/VLAN Group** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Go to the **Mobility** tab.
 - Step 7** Under the **Mobility Anchors** settings, check the **Export Anchor** check box.
 - Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
 - Step 9** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Guest LAN**.
 - Step 10** Click **Add**.
 - Step 11** In the **General** tab, enter the **Profile Name**, the **Guest LAN ID** and the **Client Association Limit**.

- Step 12** In the **Security** tab, under the **Layer3** settings, enable the **Web Auth** toggle button. Choose the Parameter map from the **Web Auth Parameter Map** drop-down list and the authentication list from the **Authentication List** drop-down list.
- Step 13** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Anchor Controller with Local Web Authentication

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)#wireless profile policy testpro-2	Configures the WLAN policy profile.
Step 3	mobility anchor Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#mobility anchor	Configures the mobility anchor.
Step 4	vlan vlan-id Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#vlan 30	Configure a VLAN name or a VLAN ID.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#no shutdown	Enables the configuration.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#exit	Returns to configuration mode.
Step 7	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-profile-name</i> <i>guest-lan-id</i> Example: Device(config)#guest-lan profile-name testpro-2 1	Configure a guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	client association limit <i>guest-lan-client-limit</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#client association limit</pre>	Configures the maximum client connections per guest LAN. The valid range is between 1 and 2000.
Step 9	security web-auth Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth</pre>	Configures web authentication.
Step 10	security web-auth parameter-map <i>parameter-map-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth parameter-map testmap-1</pre>	Configures the security web-auth parameter map.
Step 11	security web-auth authentication-list <i>authentication-list-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#security web-auth authentication-list testlwa-1</pre>	Configures the authentication list for the IEEE 802.1x network.
Step 12	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#no shutdown</pre>	Enables the guest-LAN.
Step 13	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-guest-lan)#exit</pre>	Returns to configuration mode.

Configuring Session Timeout for a Profile Policy

Session Timeout for a wired guest is set to infinite by default. Perform the following procedure to configure the timeout values to the wired guest.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>wlan-policy-profile-name</i>	Configures the WLAN policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config)#wireless profile policy testpol-1	
Step 3	guest-lan enable-session-timeout Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#guest-lan enable-session-timeout	Enables the client session timeout on the guest LAN.
Step 4	session-timeout timeout-duration Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)#session-timeout 1000	Configures the client session timeout in seconds. The valid range is between 0 and 86400 seconds.

Global Configuration (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Administration > User Administration**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** Enter the **Username**, **Password** and **Confirm Password**.
 - Step 4** Choose the desired value from the **Policy** and **Privilege** drop-down lists.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
 - Step 6** Choose **Administration > Management > HTTP/HTTPS/Netconf**.
 - Step 7** In the **HTTP/HTTPS Access Configuration** settings, enable or disable the **HTTP Access**, **HTTPS Access** and **Personal Identity Verification** toggle buttons.
 - Step 8** Enter the **HTTP Port** and **HTTPS Port**.
 - Step 9** Click **Apply**.
-

Verifying Wired Guest Configurations

To validate the wireless configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# wireless config validate
```

```
Wireless Management Trustpoint Name: 'WLC-29c_WLC_TP'
Trustpoint certificate type is WLC-SSC
Wireless management trustpoint config is valid
```

```
Jan 22 07:49:15.371: %CONFIG_VALIDATOR_MESSAGE-5-EWLC_GEN_ERR: Chassis 1 R0/0: wncmgrd:
Error in No record found for VLAN 9, needed by Guest-LAN open-wired
```

To display the summary of all Guest-LANs, use the following command:

```
Device# show guest-lan summary
```

```
Number of Guest LANs: 1
```

GLAN	GLAN Profile Name	Status
1	wired_guest_open	UP

To view the detailed output of all Guest-LANs, use the following command:

```
Device# show guest-lan all
```

```
Guest-LAN Profile Name      : open
=====
Guest-LAN ID                : 1
Wired-Vlan                  : 200
Status                      : Enabled
Number of Active Clients    : 1
Max Associated Clients       : 2000
Security
  WebAuth                   : Enabled
  Webauth Parameter Map     : global
  Webauth Authentication List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
  Webauth Authorization List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
```

To view the guest-LAN configuration by ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show guest-lan id 1
```

```
Guest-LAN Profile Name      : open
=====
Guest-LAN ID                : 1
Wired-Vlan                  : 200
Status                      : Enabled
Number of Active Clients    : 1
Max Associated Clients       : 2000
Security
  WebAuth                   : Enabled
  Webauth Parameter Map     : global
  Webauth Authentication List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
  Webauth Authorization List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
```

To view the guest-LAN configuration by profile name, use the following command:

```
Device# show guest-lan name open
```

```
Guest-LAN Profile Name      : open
=====
Guest-LAN ID                : 1
Wired-Vlan                  : 200
Status                      : Enabled
Number of Active Clients    : 1
Max Associated Clients       : 2000
Security
  WebAuth                   : Enabled
  Webauth Parameter Map     : global
  Webauth Authentication List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
  Webauth Authorization List : LWA-AUTHENTICATION
```

To view the guest-LAN map summary, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless guest-lan-map summary**

Number of Guest-Lan Maps: 2

WLAN Profile Name	Policy Name
open_wired_guest	open_wired_guest
lwa_wired_guest	lwa_wired_guest

To view the active clients, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client summary**

Number of Local Clients: 1

MAC Address	AP Name	Type ID	State
Protocol Method	Role		
000a.bd15.0001	N/A	GLAN 1	Run
802.3	Web Auth	Export Foreign	

To view the detailed information about a client by MAC address, use the following command:

Device# **show wireless client mac-address 3383.0000.0001 detail**

```

Client MAC Address : 3383.0000.0001
Client IPv4 Address : 155.165.152.151
Client Username: N/A
AP MAC Address: N/A
AP slot : N/A
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : guestlan_lwa
Flex Profile : N/A
Guest Lan:
  GLAN Id: 2
  GLAN Name: guestlan_lwa
  Wired VLAN: 312
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID) : N/A
BSSID : N/A
Connected For : 128 seconds
Protocol : 802.3
Channel : N/A
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000002
Association Id : 0
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Session Timeout : 1800 sec (Timer not running)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : clsilver
Input Policy State : Installed
Input Policy Source : AAA Policy
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Disabled
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Power Save : OFF
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
  QoS Average Data Rate Upstream      : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream         : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
  QoS Average Data Rate Downstream     : 0 (kbps)

```

```

QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream           : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream   : 0 (kbps)
Mobility:
  Anchor IP Address                      : 101.0.0.1
  Point of Attachment                    : 0x00000008
  Point of Presence                      : 0xA0000001
  AuthC status                          : Enabled
  Move Count                            : 0
  Mobility Role                          : Export Foreign
  Mobility Roam Type                     : L3 Requested
  Mobility Complete Timestamp            : 05/07/2019 22:31:45 UTC
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client                   : 05/07/2019 22:31:42 UTC
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 125 seconds
Policy Type : N/A
Encryption Cipher : N/A
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : Not Applicable
VLAN : default
Multicast VLAN : 0
Access VLAN : 153
Anchor VLAN : 155
WFD capable : No
Managed WFD capable : No
Cross Connection capable : No
Support Concurrent Operation : No
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment : TenGigabitEthernet0/0/0
  IIF ID               : 0x00000008
  Authorized           : TRUE
  Session timeout      : 1800
  Common Session ID: 00000000000000CB946C8BA3
  Acct Session ID  : 0x00000000
  Last Tried Aaa Server Details:
    Server IP :
  Auth Method Status List
    Method : Web Auth
    Webauth State : Authz
    Webauth Method : Webauth
  Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_guestlan_lwa_local (priority 254)
    VLAN              : 153
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
  Server Policies:
    QOS Level         : 0
  Resultant Policies:
    VLAN Name         : VLAN0153
    QOS Level         : 0
    VLAN              : 153
    Absolute-Timer    : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :

```

```
Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
11v DMS Capable : No
QoS Map Capable : No
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : N/A
FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
FlexConnect Central Association : N/A
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received : 0
  Number of Bytes Sent : 0
  Number of Packets Received : 8
  Number of Packets Sent : 0
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : 0 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 0 dB
  Idle time : 0 seconds
  Last idle time update : 05/07/2019 22:32:27
  Last statistics update : 05/07/2019 22:32:27
Fabric status : Disabled
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
EoGRE : Pending Classification
```

Wired Guest Access—Use Cases

This feature while performing as a guest access feature can be used to meet different requirements. Some of the possibilities are shared here.

Scenario One—Equipment Software Update

This feature can be configured to allow the wired port to connect to the manufacture or vendor website for equipment maintenance, software, or firmware updates.

Scenario Two—Video Streaming

This feature can be configured to allow devices that are connected to a wired port to stream video to visitor information screens.



CHAPTER 193

User Defined Network

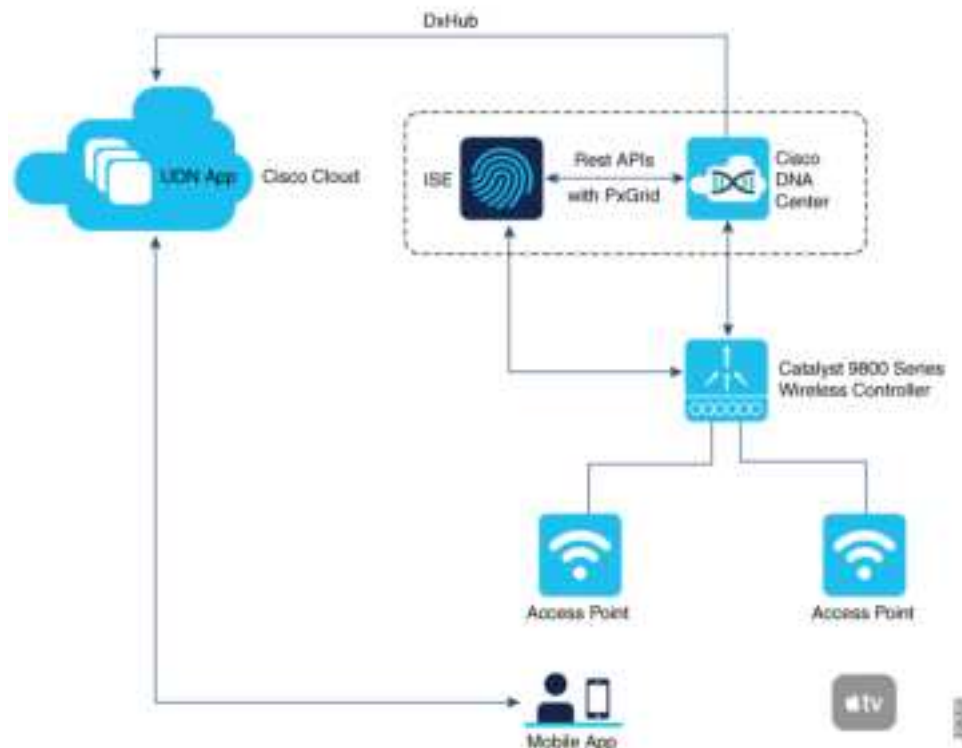
- [Information About User Defined Network, on page 2093](#)
- [Restrictions for User Defined Network, on page 2095](#)
- [Configuring a User Defined Network, on page 2095](#)
- [Configuring a User Defined Network \(GUI\), on page 2097](#)
- [Verifying User Defined Network Configuration, on page 2097](#)

Information About User Defined Network

A user defined network (UDN) is a solution that is aimed at providing secure and remote on-boarding of devices in shared service environments like dormitory rooms, resident halls, class rooms and auditoriums. This solution allows users to securely use Simple Discovery Protocols (SDP) like Apple Bonjour and mDNS-based protocols (Air Play, Air Print, Screen Cast, Print, and so on.), and UPnP based protocols to interact and share information with only their registered devices in a shared environment. It also enables the users to share their devices and resources with friends and roommates securely.

The UDN solution provides an easy way to create a virtual segment that allows user to create a private segment to add their devices. Traffic (unicast, non-Layer 3 multicast, or broadcast) to these devices can be seen only by other devices and users in the private segment. This feature also eliminates the security concern where users knowingly or unknowingly take control of devices that belong to other users in a shared environment. As of now, the UDN is supported only in local mode.

Figure 43: User Defined Network Topology



User Defined Network Solution Workflow

- User Defined Network is enabled on the controller, using policy profile, and the policy configuration is pushed to all the WLANs on a site.
- User Defined Network association is automatically generated by the UDN cloud service and is inherited by all the devices belonging to an user.
- Users can add or modify devices to the User Defined Network assigned to them by using a web portal or a mobile application. Users can also add devices to another User Defined Network, if they are invited to join that User Defined Network.
- The controller is updated with the client or resource information assigned to the User Defined Network.



Note

Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) policy infrastructure is not used to update User Defined Network information. Whenever, there is a change in the User Defined Network, the ISE updates the controller with an explicit or a separate Change of Authorization (CoA) containing only the change of the User Defined Network ID.

Restrictions for User Defined Network

- A user can be associated to only one UDN.
- Roaming across controllers is not supported.
- This feature is not applicable for Cisco Mobility Express and Cisco AireOS platforms. Hence, IRCM is not supported.
- This feature is supported only in local mode on the Wave 2 access points and Cisco Catalyst 9100 series access points.
- This feature is supported only for centrally switched SSIDs.
- This feature is not supported for Flex mode APs.
- This feature is not supported for Fabric SSIDs.
- This feature is not supported for Guest Anchor scenario.
- Layer 2 and Layer 3 roaming is not supported.
- Layer 3 multicast (except SSDP/UPnP) containment using UDN is not supported, L3 multicast will continue to work as it is today.
- It is not recommended to enable user-defined **drop unicast** option in GUI if UDN is disabled.
- It is recommended to disable UDN from policy profile in SSIDs when integrating UDN+ solution with Cisco exclusive partner [Splash Access](#).

**Note**

The UDN+ simplifies the solution and brings the same unique user experience for both Meraki and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller based deployments.

Configuring a User Defined Network

The User Defined Network configuration is site based and is added as part of a policy profile. When applied, the policy is enforced to all the clients or devices in a network for a site, across WLANs.

When enabled, the policy profile also enforces the filtering of mDNS queries based on the UDN-ID.

Before you begin

- RADIUS server should be configured for the UDN solution to work.
- Configure aaa-override in the policy profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-wpn	Creates a policy profile. <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the policy profile.
Step 3	user-defined-network Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# user-defined-network	Enables user defined private-network.
Step 4	user-defined-network drop-unicast Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# user-defined-network drop-unicast	Sets action to drop unicast traffic. By default, unicast traffic is allowed across UDN.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 6	ap remote-lan-policy policy-name <i>policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan-policy policy-name policy-wpn	Configures a remote LAN policy profile.
Step 7	user-defined-network Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# user-defined-network	Enables user defined private-network.
Step 8	user-defined-network drop-unicast Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# user-defined-network drop-unicast	Sets action to drop unicast traffic.

Configuring a User Defined Network (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy .
Step 2	In the Policy Profile window, select a policy profile.
Step 3	In the Edit Policy Profile window, click the Advanced tab.
Step 4	In the User Defined Network section, check the Status check box to enable a user personal network.
Step 5	Check the Drop Unicast check box to set the action to Drop Unicast traffic.
- By default, unicast traffic is not contained.
-

Verifying User Defined Network Configuration

To view the status of the UDN feature (either enabled or disabled) and also information about the drop unicast flag, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed default-policy-profile
```

```
User Defined (Private) Network           : Enabled
User Defined (Private) Network Unicast Drop : Enabled
```

To view the name of the UDN to which the client belongs, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 00:0d:ed:dd:35:80 detailed
```

```
User Defined (Private) Network : Enabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Enabled
Private group name: upn*group*7
Private group id : 7777
Private group owner: 1
Private group name: upn*group*7
Private group id : 7777
Private group owner:
```

To view the UDN payload sent from an AP to the controller, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail | inc udn
```

```
Total udn payloads sent : 1
```

When mDNS gateway is enabled on the controller, the mDNS services are automatically filtered based on the user private network ID for all the clients on the WLANs where user private network is enabled.

To view the service instances of a private network, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache udn 7777 detail
```

```
Name: _services._dns-sd._udp.local
Type: PTR
TTL: 4500
```

```

WLAN: 2
WLAN Name: mdns-psk
VLAN: 16
Client MAC: f4f9.51e2.a6a6
AP Ethernet MAC: 002a.1087.d68a
Remaining-Time: 4486
Site-Tag: default-site-tag
mDNS Service Policy: madhu-mDNS-Policy
Overriding mDNS Service Policy: NO
UDN-ID: 7777
UDN-Status: Enabled
Rdata: _airplay._tcp.local
.
.
.

```

To view the service instances that are learnt from a shared UDN ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache udn shared
```

```

----- PTR Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
9.1.1.7.5.D.E.F.F.F.6.C.7.E.2.1.0.0.0.0.0.0  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local
_services._dns-sd._udp.local                4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ipps._tcp.local
_universal._sub._ipps._tcp.local             4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps._tcp.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_print._sub._ipps._tcp.local                 4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps._tcp.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ePCL._sub._ipps._tcp.local                  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps._tcp.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ipps._tcp.local                            4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps._tcp.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_services._dns-sd._udp.local                 4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ipp._tcp.local
_universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local               4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._tcp.l  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_print._sub._ipp._tcp.local                  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._tcp.l  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ePCL._sub._ipp._tcp.local                   4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._tcp.l  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
_ipp._tcp.local                             4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._tcp.l
.
.
.
----- SRV Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119  0
0 631 HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._http.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119  0
0 80 HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps.  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119  0
0 631 HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._uscan  4500     WLAN      2       10e7.c6d5.7119  0
0 8080 HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local
.

```

```

.
.
----- A/AAAA Records -----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
HP10E7C6D57119-2860.local      4500      WLAN      2      10e7.c6d5.7119
8.16.16.99

----- TXT Records -----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipp._      4500      WLAN      2      10e7.c6d5.7119
[502]'txtvers=1''adminurl=http://HP10E7C6D57119-28
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._http._      4500      WLAN      2      10e7.c6d5.7119
[1]''
HP DeskJet 5000 series [D57119] (3127)._ipps._      4500      WLAN      2      10e7.c6d5.7119
[502]'txtvers=1''adminurl=http://HP10E7C6D57119-28
.
.
.

```

To view the multicast DNS (mDNS) Service Discovery cache detail, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache detail
```

```

Name: _printer._tcp.local
Type: PTR
TTL: 4500
VLAN: 21
Client MAC: ace2.d3bc.047e
Remaining-Time: 4383
mDNS Service Policy: default-mdns-service-policy
Rdata: HP OfficeJet Pro 8720 [BC047E] (2)._printer._tcp.local

```




Hotspot 2.0

- [Introduction to Hotspot 2.0, on page 2101](#)
- [Open Roaming, on page 2103](#)
- [Configuring Hotspot 2.0, on page 2105](#)

Introduction to Hotspot 2.0

The Hotspot 2.0 feature enables IEEE 802.11 devices to interwork with external networks. The interworking service aids network discovery and selection, enabling information transfer from external networks. It provides information to the stations about the networks before association.

Interworking not only helps users within the home, enterprise, and public access domains, but also assists manufacturers and operators to provide common components and services for IEEE 802.11 customers. These services are configured on a per-WLAN basis on the Cisco Wireless Controller (controller).

Hotspot 2.0, also known as HS2 and Wi-Fi Certified Passpoint, is based on the IEEE 802.11u and Wi-Fi Alliance Hotspot 2.0 standards. It seeks to provide better bandwidth and services-on-demand to end users. The Hotspot 2.0 feature allows mobile devices to join a Wi-Fi network automatically, including during roaming, when the devices enter the Hotspot 2.0 area.

The Hotspot 2.0 feature has four distinct parts:

- **Hotspot 2.0 Beacon Advertisement:** Allows a mobile device to discover Hotspot 2.0-compatible and 802.11u-compatible WLANs.
- **Access Network Query Protocol (ANQP) Queries:** Sends queries about the networks from IEEE 802.11 devices, such as network type (private or public); connectivity type (local network, internet connection, and so on), or the network providers supported by a given network.
- **Online Sign-up:** Allows a mobile device to obtain credentials to authenticate itself with the Hotspot 2.0 or WLAN.
- **Authentication and Session Management:** Provides authentication (802.1x) and management of the STA session (session expiration, extension, and so on).

In order to mark a WLAN as Hotspot 2.0-compatible, the 802.11u-mandated information element and the Hotspot 2.0 information element is added to the basic service set (BSS) beacon advertised by the corresponding AP, and in WLAN probe responses.

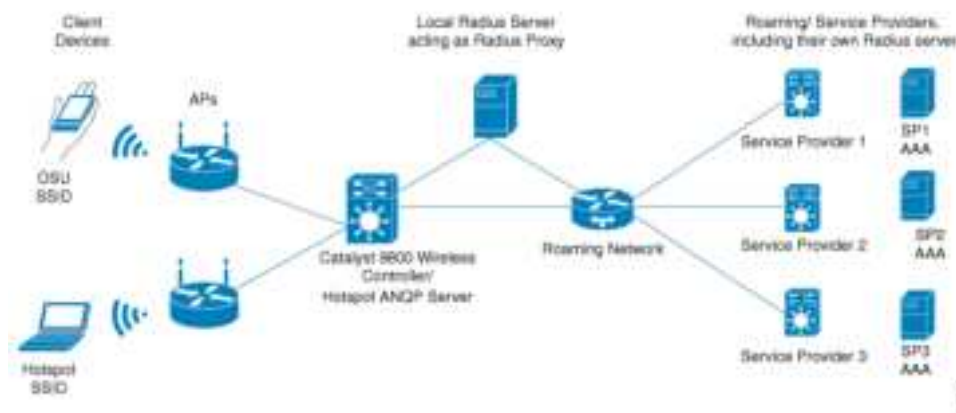


Note The Hotspot 2.0 feature supports only local mode or FlexConnect mode (central switching and central authentication).

FlexConnect local switching is only supported when the Open Roaming configuration template is set up using the **wireless hotspot anqp-server server-name type open-roaming** command. If the configuration diverges from this template, FlexConnect local switching will not be supported.

The following figure shows a standard deployment of the Hotspot 2.0 network architecture:

Figure 44: Hotspot 2.0 Deployment Topology



Hotspot 2.0 Enhancements

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.1, the Hotspot 2.0 feature has been enhanced with the following options:

- New ANQP elements:
 - Advice of charge: Provides information on the financial charges for using the SSID of the NAI realm
 - Operator icon metadata
 - Venue URL: Defines an optional URL for each of the configured venue names
- Introduction of Terms and Conditions: This requires a user to accept certain Terms and Conditions before being allowed internet access, after connecting to a Hotspot SSID.
- Integration of OSEN security and WPA2 security on the same SSID.

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.1 onwards, two encryption methods are supported on a single SSID, namely WPA2 802.1x for Hotspot 2.0 and OSEN for online sign-up. Based on the type of encryption selected during client association, the client will be put on Hotspot 2.0 VLAN or online sign-up VLAN.

In WPA2 802.1x authentication, a client should match the credentials provisioned on a device. In online sign-up, a service provider WLAN is used by a client to perform online sign-up. For Hotspot 2.0 SSIDs, the RADIUS server enforces the terms and conditions before allowing internet connectivity to clients.

This release also supports OSEN-specific VLAN in a policy profile. If an OSEN VLAN is defined in a policy profile, OSEN clients are added to the VLAN. Otherwise, clients are added to the regular policy profile VLAN.

or to the default VLAN. If OSEN is enabled with WPA2 on an SSID, it is mandatory to define an OSEN VLAN in the policy profile. Otherwise, clients cannot join the VLAN.

In FlexConnect mode, if an OSEN VLAN is defined in a policy profile, the same VLAN needs to be added to the flex profile. Failing to do so excludes the clients from the VLAN.



Note When Hotspot 2.0 is enabled in a WLAN, the Wi-Fi direct clients that support cross-connect feature should not be allowed to associate to the Hotspot 2.0 WLAN. To make sure this policy is enforced, ensure that the following configuration is in place:

```
wlan <wlan-name> <wlan-name> <ssid>
wifi-direct policy xconnect-not-allow
```

Restrictions

- Clients are excluded if an OSEN VLAN is not added to a flex profile.
- In FlexConnect mode, clients are excluded if an OSEN VLAN is not added in a flex profile.
- In FlexConnect deployments, the URL filter should reference an existing URL filter (configured using the **urlfilter list** *urlfilter-name* command). Otherwise, a client is added to the excluded list, after authentication.
- Only central authentication is supported.
- Fragmented ANQP replies are not synchronized to the standby controller in high-availability mode. Therefore, clients have to re-issue a query if there is a switchover.

Open Roaming

From Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam Release 17.2.1, the controller supports open roaming configuration, which enables mobile users to automatically and seamlessly roam across Wi-Fi and cellular networks.

The new configuration template of the open roaming ANQP server simplifies the task of setting up a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server. When you configure open roaming, fixed ANQP parameters are automatically populated.

You can configure different identity types by defining roaming organizational identifiers. The organizational unique identifier (OUI) is a three-octet number that identifies the type of organizations available in a given roaming consortium. The OUI list determines the type of identities allowed to roam into the network. The default configuration allows all the identities on the access network. However, access networks can customize the Roaming Consortium Organization Identifier (RCOI) they advertise.

You can configure three types of policies for access networks:

- Allow all: Accepts users from any identity provider (IDP), with any privacy policy.
- Real ID: Accepts users from any IDP, but only with a privacy policy that shares real identity (anonymous not accepted).
- Custom: Accepts users of select identity types and privacy policies associated with the identity types; basically all the other RCOIs.

Users can select the following privacy modes:

- Anonymous
- Share real identity

The list of currently defined organizational identifiers and their aliases are given in the following table.

Table 138: Roaming Organizational Identifiers and Aliases

Description	Roaming Organizational Identifier	WBA Value	Display Name
All	004096	5A03BA0000	All
All with real ID	00500b	5A03BA1000	All with real-id only
All paid members	00500f	BAA2D00000	All paid
Device manufacturer all ID	00502a	5A03BA0A00	Device Manufacturer
Device manufacturer real ID only	0050a7	5A03BA1A00	Device Manufacturer real-id
Cloud or Social ID	005014	5A03BA0200	Cloud ID
Cloud or Social real ID	0050bd	5A03BA1200	Cloud ID real-id
Enterprise Employee ID	00503e	5A03BA0300	Enterprise ID
Enterprise Employee real ID	0050d1	5A03BA1300	Enterprise ID real ID
Enterprise Customer ID	005050	-	Enterprise Customer program ID
Enterprise Customer real ID	0050e2	-	Enterprise Customer program real ID
Loyalty Retail ID	005053	5A03BA0B00	Loyalty Retail
Loyalty Retail real ID	0050f0	5A03BA1B00	Loyalty Retail real ID
Loyalty Hospitality ID	005054	5A03BA0600	Loyalty Hospitality
Loyalty Hospitality real ID	00562b	5A03BA1600	Loyalty Hospitality real ID
SP free Bronze QoS	005073	5A03BA0100	SP free Bronze QoS
SP free Bronze QoS Real ID	0057D2	5A03BA1100	SP free Bronze QoS Real ID
SP paid Bronze QoS	-	BAA2D00100	SP paid Bronze QoS
SP paid Bronze QoS real ID	-	BAA2D01100	SP paid Bronze QoS real ID
SP paid Silver QoS	-	BAA2D02100	SP paid Silver QoS
SP paid Silver QoS real ID	-	BAA2D03100	SP paid Silver QoS real ID
SP paid Gold QoS	-	BAA2D04100	SP paid Gold QoS

Description	Roaming Organizational Identifier	WBA Value	Display Name
SP paid Gold QoS real ID	-	BAA2D05100	SP paid Gold QoS real ID
Government ID free	-	5A03BA0400	Government ID free
Automotive ID free	-	5A03BA0500	Automotive ID free
Automotive Paid	-	BAA2D00500	Automotive Paid
Education or Research ID free	-	5A03BA0800	Education or Research ID free
Cable ID free	-	5A03BA0900	Cable ID free

Configuring Hotspot 2.0

Configuring an Access Network Query Protocol Server

The Access Network Query Protocol Server (ANQP) is a query and response protocol that defines the services offered by an AP, usually at a Wi-Fi Hotspot 2.0.



Note When configuring roaming-oi in the ANQP server, ensure that you set the **beacon** keyword for at least one roaming-oi, as mandated by the 802.11u standard.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 3	description <i>description</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# description "My Hotspot 2.0"	Adds a description for the ANQP server.
Step 4	3gpp-info <i>mobile-country-code</i> <i>mobile-network-code</i>	Configures a 802.11u Third Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) cellular network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# 3gpp-info us mcc</pre>	The <i>mobile-country-code</i> should be a 3-digit decimal number. The <i>mobile-network-code</i> should be a 2-digit or 3-digit decimal number.
Step 5	anqp fragmentation-threshold <i>threshold-value</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# anqp fragmentation-threshold 100</pre>	Configures the ANQP reply fragmentation threshold, in bytes. The ANQP protocol can be customized by setting the fragmentation threshold, after which the ANQP reply is split into multiple messages. Note We recommend that you use the default values for the deployment.
Step 6	anqp-domain-id <i>domain-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# anqp-domain-id 100</pre>	Configures the Hotspot 2.0 ANQP domain identifier.
Step 7	authentication-type { dns-redirect http-https-redirect online-enrollment terms-and-conditions } Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# authentication-type online-enrollment</pre>	Configures the 802.11u network authentication type. Depending on the authentication type, a URL is needed for HTTP and HTTPS.
Step 8	connection-capability <i>ip-protocol</i> <i>port-number</i> { closed open unknown } Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# connection-capability 12 40 open</pre>	Configures the Hotspot 2.0 protocol and port capabilities. Note Hotspot 2.0 specifications require that you predefine some open ports and protocols. Ensure that you meet these requirements in order to comply with the Hotspot 2.0 specifications. See the connection-capability command in the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference document for a list of open ports and protocols.
Step 9	domain <i>domain-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# domain my-domain</pre>	Configures an 802.11u domain name. You can configure up to 32 domain names. The <i>domain-name</i> should not exceed 220 characters.
Step 10	ipv4-address-type <i>ipv4-address-type</i> Example:	Configures an 802.11u IPv4 address type in the Hotspot 2.0 network.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # ipv4-address-type public	
Step 11	ipv6-address-type <i>ipv6-address-type</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # ipv6-address-type available	Configures an 802.11u IPv6 address type in the Hotspot 2.0 network.
Step 12	nai-realm <i>realm-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # nai cisco.com	Configures an 802.11u NAI realm profile that identifies the realm that is accessible using the AP.
Step 13	operating-class <i>class-id</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # operating-class 25	Configures a Hotspot 2.0-operating class identifier.
Step 14	operator <i>operator-name language-code</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # operator XYZ-operator eng	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 operator-friendly name in a given language. Use only the first three letters of the language, in lower case, for the language code. For example, use <i>eng</i> for English. To see the full list of language codes, go to: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/code_list.php . Note You can configure only one operator per language.
Step 15	osu-ssid <i>SSID</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # osu-ssid test	Configures the SSID that wireless clients will use for OSU. The SSID length can be up to 32 characters.
Step 16	roaming-oi <i>OI-value</i> [beacon] Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # roaming-oi 24 beacon	Configures the 802.11u roaming organization identifier. If the beacon keyword is specified, the roaming OUI is advertised in the AP WLAN beacon or probe response. Otherwise, it will only be returned while performing the roaming OUI ANQP query. Note The hex string of a roaming OUI should contain only lowercase letters.
Step 17	venue <i>venue-name language-code</i>	Configures the 802.11u venue information.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device (config-wireless-anqp-server) # venue bank eng	The <i>venue-name</i> should not exceed 220 characters and the <i>language-code</i> should only be 2 or 3 lowercase letters (a-z) in length.

Configuring ANQP Global Server Settings (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
- Step 2** Select an existing server from the list of servers.
- Step 3** Click the **Server Settings** tab.
- Step 4** Go to the **Global Server Settings** section.
- Step 5** From the **IPv4 Type** drop-down list, choose an IPv4 type.
- Step 6** From the **IPv6 Type** drop-down list, choose an IPv6 type.
- Step 7** In the **OSU SSID** field, enter the SSID that wireless clients will use for Online Sign-Up (OSU).
- Step 8** Click the **Show Advanced Configuration** link to view the advanced options.
- In the **Fragmentation Threshold (bytes)** field, enter the fragmentation threshold.
- Note**
Packets that are larger than the size you specify here will be fragmented.
- In the **GAS Request Timeout (ms)** field, enter the number of Generic Advertisement Services (GAS) request action frames sent that can be sent to the controller by an AP in a given interval.
- Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Open Roaming (CLI)

The new configuration template of the open roaming ANQP server simplifies the task of setting up a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server. When you configure open roaming using this template, default ANQP parameters are automatically populated. The default values defined in the template always override any user-defined configuration values. For example, these are the default values enforced with the type open-roaming template:

- nai-realm open.openroaming.org
- eap-method eap-tls
- eap-method eap-ttls
- inner-auth-non-eap mschap-v2
- inner-auth-non-eap pap
- eap-method eap-aka

You can add more fields to the existing template, but ensure that they do not overlap with the existing default values. Also, if you change any of these default values, you will need to re-configure every time you enter in anqp type open-roaming config.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> type open-roaming Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my-server type open-roaming	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server with open roaming.
Step 3	open-roaming-oi <i>alias</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# open-roaming-oi allow-all	Sets the open roaming element alias.
Step 4	domain <i>domain-name</i> Example: Device(config)# domain my-domain	Configures a preferred domain name to ensure that clients roam into a preferred network. You can configure up to 32 domain names. The <i>domain-name</i> should not exceed 220 characters.

Configuring Open Roaming (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add New ANQP Server** window is displayed.
- Step 3** In the **Name** field, enter a name for the server.
- Step 4** In the **Description** field, enter a description for the server.
- Step 5** Check the **OpenRoaming Server** check box to use the server as an open roaming server.
- Note**
You can set the server as an open roaming server only at the time of server creation.
- Step 6** Check the **Internet Access** check box to enable internet access for the server.
- Step 7** From the **Network Type** drop-down list, choose the network type.

Step 8 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring NAI Realms (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.

Step 2 Select an existing server from the list of servers.

Step 3 Go to the **NAI Realms** section.

Step 4 Click **Add**.

The **Add NAI Realm** window is displayed.

Step 5 In the **NAI Realm Name** field, enter an 802.11u NAI realm of the OSU operator.

Step 6 In the **EAP Methods** section, use the toggle button to enable the required EAP methods.

After an EAP method is enabled, a pane is displayed to configure the details. Users are shown a configuration section where they can enable *credential*, *inner-auth-eap*, *inner-auth-non-eap*, *tunneled-eap-credential*. The user can select multiple options for each of the configuration.

- The **Credential** window has options such as certificate, hw-token, nfc, none, sim, softoken, username-password, and usim. Check the corresponding check box.
- The **inner-auth-eap** window has options such as eap-aka, eap-fast, eap-sim, eap-tls, eap-ttls, eap-leap, and eap-peap. Check the corresponding check box.
- The **inner-auth-eap** window has options such as eap-aka, eap-fast, eap-sim, eap-tls, eap-ttls, eap-leap, and eap-peap. Check the corresponding check box.
- The **tunneled-eap-credential** window has options such as anonymous, certificate, hw-token, nfc, sim, softoken, username-password, and usim. Check the corresponding check box.
- Click **Save**.

Step 7 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Organizational Identifier Alias (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.

Step 2 Select an existing server from the list of servers.

Step 3 In the **Roaming OIs** area, enter an 802.11u roaming organization identifier in the **Roaming OI** field.

Step 4 Check the **Beacon State** check box to enable the beacon.

If the beacon is specified, the roaming OUI is advertised in the AP WLAN beacon or probe response. Otherwise, it will only be returned while performing the roaming OUI ANQP query.

Note

Only three OUIs can be enabled in the beacon state.

- Step 5** Click **Add** to add a roaming OI.
 - Step 6** In the **Available OpenRoaming OI** window, a list of organizational identifiers are displayed, along with the ones you have added. Select an organizational identifier and click the right arrow to add an **OpenRoaming OI**.
 - Step 7** In the **Domains** area, enter an 802.11u domain name in the **Domain Name** field.
 - Step 8** Click **Add** to use the domain name that you have entered as the preferred domain.
 - Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WAN Metrics (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
 - Step 2** Select an existing server from the list of servers.
 - Step 3** Click the **Server Settings** tab.
 - Step 4** Go to the **WAN Metrics** area.
 - Step 5** In the **Downlink Load** field, enter the WAN downlink load.
 - Step 6** In the **Downlink Speed (kbps)** field, enter the WAN downlink speed, in kbps.
 - Step 7** In the **Load Duration (100ms)** field, enter the load duration.
 - Step 8** In the **Upload Load** field, enter the WAN upload load.
 - Step 9** In the **Upload Speed (kbps)** field, enter the WAN upload speed, in kbps.
 - Step 10** From the **Link Status** drop-down list, choose the link status.
 - Step 11** Use the **Full Capacity Link** toggle button to enable the WAN link to operate at its maximum capacity.
 - Step 12** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring WAN Metrics

This procedure shows you how to configure the Wide Area Network (WAN) parameters such as uplink and downlink speed, link status, load, and so on.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 3	wan-metrics downlink-load <i>load-value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics downlink-load 100	Configures the WAN downlink load.
Step 4	wan-metrics downlink-speed <i>speed</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics downlink-speed 1000	Configures the WAN downlink speed, in kbps.
Step 5	wan-metrics full-capacity-link Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics full-capacity-link	Configures the WAN link to operate at its maximum capacity.
Step 6	wan-metrics link-status { down not-configured test-state up } Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics link-status down	Sets the WAN link status.
Step 7	wan-metrics load-measurement-duration <i>duration</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics load-measurement-duration 100	Configures the uplink or downlink load measurement duration.
Step 8	wan-metrics uplink-load <i>load-value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# wan-metrics uplink-load 100	Configures the WAN uplink load.
Step 9	wan-metrics uplink-speed <i>speed</i> Example:	Configures the WAN uplink speed, in kbps.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # wan-metrics uplink-speed 1000	

Configuring Beacon Parameters (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
 - Step 2** Select an existing server from the list of servers.
 - Step 3** Click **Server Settings** tab.
 - Step 4** Go to the **Beacon Parameters** section.
 - Step 5** In the **Hess id** field, enter the homogenous extended service set identifier. The Hess ID can be either in `xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx`, `xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx`, or `xxxx.xxxx.xxxx` format.
 - Step 6** In the **Domain id** field, enter the domain's identifier.
 - Step 7** From the **Venue Type** drop-down list, select the venue.
Choosing a venue activates the subvenue type.
 - Step 8** From the **subvenue-type** drop-down list, select the sub-venue.
 - Step 9** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring Authentication and Venue (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
 - Step 2** Select an existing server from the list of servers.
 - Step 3** Click the **Authentication/Venue** tab.
 - Step 4** Under the **Network Auth Types** section, check the **DNS Redirect**, **Online Enrolment**, **HTTP/HTTPS Redirect**, **Terms and Conditions** check boxes.
For **HTTP/HTTPS Redirect** and **Terms and Conditions**, the URL field is enabled after selecting them.
 - Step 5** Add the URL for the corresponding authentication type.
 - Step 6** Click **Apply**.
 - Step 7** Go to the **Venues** section and click **Add**.
The **Venue Details** pane is displayed.
 - Step 8** In the **Language Code** field, enter the language code.

Use the first two or three letters of the language, in lower case, for the language code. For example, use *eng* for English. To see the full list of language codes, go to:
http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/code_list.php.

Step 9 In the **Venue URL** field, enter the URL of the venue.

Step 10 In the **Venue Name** field, enter the name of the venue.

Step 11 Click check mark icon to add the venue details.

Step 12 Go to the **Connection Capability** section and click **Add**.

The **Connection Capabilities** pane is displayed. See the **connection-capability** command in the [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference](#) document for a list of open ports and protocols.

Step 13 In the **Port Number** field, enter the port number.

Step 14 From the **Connection Status** drop-down list, choose a connection status.

Step 15 In the **IP Protocol** field, enter the IP protocol number.

Hotspot 2.0 specifications require that you predefine some open ports and protocols. Ensure that you meet these requirements in order to comply with the Hotspot 2.0 specifications. See the **connection-capability** command in the [Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Command Reference](#) document for a list of open ports and protocols.

Step 16 Click the check mark icon to add the connection details.

Step 17 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring 3GPP/Operator (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.

Step 2 Select an existing server from the list of servers.

Step 3 Go to the **3GPP/Operator** tab.

Step 4 In the **Operating Class Indicator** field, enter the operating class identifier and click the + icon.

The operating class identifier is added and displayed in the pane below. Use the delete icon to delete them, if required.

Note

Class IDs should be in the following ranges: 81-87, 94-96, 101-130, 180, and 192-254.

Step 5 Go to the **3GPP Cellular Networks** section and click **Add**.

The **3GPP Network Details** pane is displayed.

Step 6 In the **Mobile Country Code (MCC)** field, enter the mobile country code, which should be a 3-digit decimal number.

Step 7 In the **Mobile Network Code (MNC)** field, enter the mobile network code, which should be a 2 or 3-digit decimal number.

For the list of Mobile Country Codes (MCC) and Mobile Network Codes (MNC), see the following links: <https://www.itu.int/pub/T-SP-E.212B-2018> or <https://www.mcc-mnc.com>.

- Step 8** Click check mark icon to add the network details.
- Step 9** Go to the **Hotspot 2.0 Operators** section and click **Add**.
The **Operator Details** pane is displayed.
- Step 10** In the **Language Code** field, enter the language code.
Use only the first three letters of the language, in lower case, for the language code. For example, use *eng* for English. To see the full list of language codes, go to: http://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/code_list.php.
- Step 11** In the **Name** field, enter the name of the OSU operator.
- Step 12** Click check mark icon to add the operator details.
- Step 13** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring OSU Provider (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming**.
- Step 2** Select an existing server from the list of servers.
- Step 3** Go to the **OSU Provider** tab.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
The **General Config** pane is displayed.
- Step 5** In the **Provider Name** field, enter the OSU provider name.
- Step 6** In the **NAI Realm** field, enter the Network Access Identifier (NAI) realm of the OSU operator.
- Step 7** From the **Primary Method** drop-down list, choose the primary supported OSU method of the OSU operator.
This activates the **Secondary Method** drop-down list. If you choose *None* as the primary supported OSU method, you will not get the secondary method.
- Step 8** (Optional) From the **Secondary Method** drop-down list, choose the secondary supported OSU method of the OSU operator.
- Step 9** In the **Server URI** field, enter the server Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) of the OSU operator.
- Step 10** Click **Icon Config** tab.
- Step 11** Click **Add**.
- Step 12** From the **Icon Name** drop-down list, choose the icon name.
- Step 13** Click **Save**.
- Step 14** Click **Friendly Names** tab.
- Step 15** Click **Add**.
- Step 16** In the **Language** field, enter the language code.
- Step 17** In the **Name** field, enter the name of the OSU operator.

- Step 18** In the **Description** field, enter the description for the OSU operator.
- Step 19** Click **Save**.
- Step 20** Click the check mark icon to save.
- Step 21** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring an Online Sign-Up Provider

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot icon bootflash:system-file-name media-type language-code icon-width icon-height Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot icon bootflash:logo1 image eng 100 200	Configures an icon for Hotspot 2.0 and its parameters, such as media type, language code, icon width, and icon height.
Step 3	wireless hotspot anqp-server server-name Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 4	osu-provider osu-provider-name Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# osu-provider my-osu	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 OSU provider name.
Step 5	name osu-operator-name lang-code description Example: Device(config-anqp-osu-provider)# name xyz-oper eng xyz-operator	Configures the name of the OSU operator in a given language. The <i>osu-operator-name</i> and <i>description</i> should not exceed 220 characters. The language code should be 2 or 3 lower-case letters (a-z).
Step 6	server-uri server-uri Example: Device(config-anqp-osu-provider)# server-uri cisco.com	Configures the server Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) of the OSU operator.
Step 7	method {oma-dm soap-xml-spp} Example:	Configures the primary supported OSU method of the OSU operator.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-anqp-osu-provider)# method oma-dm	
Step 8	nai-realm <i>nai-realm</i> Example: Device(config-anqp-osu-provider)# nai-realm cisco.com	Configures the Network Access Identifier (NAI) realm of the OSU operator. The <i>nai-realm</i> should not exceed 220 characters.
Step 9	icon <i>file-name</i> Example: Device(config-anqp-osu-provider)# icon xyz.jpeg	Configures the icon for the OSU provider. The <i>file-name</i> should not exceed 100 characters.

Configuring Hotspot 2.0 WLAN

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan hs2 1 hs2	Configures a WLAN and enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	security wpa wpa2 gtk-randomize Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 gtk-randomize	Configures random GTK for hole 196 mitigation. Hole 196 is the name of WPA2 vulnerability.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Configuring an Online Subscription with Encryption WLAN

Online subscription with Encryption (OSEN) WLAN is used to onboard a Hotspot 2.0 network (to get the necessary credentials) in a secure manner.



Note You cannot apply a policy profile to the OSEN WLAN if a Hotspot 2.0 server is enabled on the WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan hs2 1 hs2	Configures a WLAN and enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	security wpa osen Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa osen	Enables WPA OSEN security support. Note OSEN and robust security network (RSN) are mutually exclusive. If RSN is enabled on a WLAN, OSEN cannot be enabled on the same WLAN.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Attaching an ANQP Server to a Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy policy-profile-name ssid Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-hotspot	Configures a policy profile.
Step 3	shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown	Disables the policy profile.
Step 4	hotspot anqp-server server-name Example:	Attaches the Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server to the policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-policy)# hotspot anqp-server my-server	
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the policy profile.

What to do next

Attach the policy profile to the WLAN to make the WLAN Hotspot 2.0 enabled.

Configuring Interworking for Hotspot 2.0

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 3	network-type allowed <i>network-type</i> internet-access {allowed forbidden} Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# network-type guest-private internet-access allowed	Configures a 802.11u network type.
Step 4	hessid <i>HESSID-value</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# hessid 12.13.14	(Optional) Configures a homogenous extended service set.
Step 5	group <i>venue-group venue-type</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# group business bank	Selects a group type and venue type from the list of available options.

Configuring the Generic Advertisement Service Rate Limit

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap profile <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap profile hs2-profile	Configures an AP profile and enters AP profile configuration mode.
Step 3	gas-ap-rate-limit <i>request-number interval</i> Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# gas-ap-rate-limit 20 120	Configures the number of Generic Advertisement Services (GAS) request action frames sent to the controller by an AP in a given interval.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-ap-profile)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	wireless hotspot gas-rate-limit <i>gas-requests-to-process</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot gas-rate-limit 100	Configures the number of GAS request action frames to be processed by the controller.

Configuring Global Settings

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Wireless > Hotspot/OpenRoaming > Global Settings**.
- Step 2** In the **Gas Rate Limit (Requests per sec)** field, enter the number of GAS request action frames to be processed by the controller.
- Step 3** Go to the **Icons Configuration** area.
- Step 4** Click **Add**.
The **Add Global Icon** window is displayed.
- Step 5** From the **System Path** drop-down list, choose the path.
- Step 6** In the **Icon Name** field, enter the icon name.
- Step 7** In the **Icon Type** field, enter the icon type.

- Step 8** In the **Language Code** field, enter the language code.
- Step 9** In the **Icon Height** field, enter the icon height.
- Step 10** In the **Icon Width** field, enter the icon width.
- Step 11** Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring Advice of Charge

Use the following procedure to configure the advice of charge information for using the SSID of the Network Access Identifier (NAI) realm.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 3	advice-charge <i>type</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server) # advice-charge data	Configures advice of charge for data usage. Advice of charge provides information on the financial charges for using the SSID of the NAI realm.
Step 4	plan <i>language currency info plan-info-file</i> Example: Device(config-anqp-advice-charge) # plan eng eur info bootflash:plan_eng.xml	Configures advice of charge information, which includes language, currency, and plan information. Note You can configure up to 32 plans.
Step 5	nai-realm <i>nai-realm</i> Example: Device(config-anqp-advice-charge) # nai-realm cisco	Configures NAI realm for this advice of charge. Note You can configure up to 32 realms.

Configuring Terms and Conditions

Before you begin

Define a URL filter list, as shown in the following example:

```

urlfilter list <url-filter-name>
  action permit
  filter-type post-authentication
  url <allow-url>

```

For information on configuring an URL list, see the *Defining URL Filter List* section.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless hotspot anqp-server my_server	Configures a Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server.
Step 3	terms-conditions filename <i>file-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# terms-conditions filename xyz-file	Configures the terms and conditions filename for the clients.
Step 4	terms-conditions timestamp <i>date time</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# terms-conditions timestamp 2020-02-20 20:20:20	Configures the terms and conditions timestamp.
Step 5	terms-conditions urlfilter list <i>url-filter-list</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-anqp-server)# terms-conditions urlfilter list filter-yy	Configures the terms and conditions URL filter list name.

Defining ACL and URL Filter in AP for FlexConnect

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	sequence-number permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps	Defines an extended UDP access list and sets the access conditions to match only the packets on a given port number of bootstrap protocol

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 10 permit udp any eq bootpc any eq bootps</pre>	(BOOTP) clients from any source host to match only the packets on a given port number of the bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) server of a destination host.
Step 3	<i>sequence-number permit udp any eq bootps any eq bootpc</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 20 permit udp any eq bootps any eq bootpc</pre>	Defines an extended UDP access list to forward packets and sets the access conditions to match only the packets on a given port number of bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) server from any source host to match only the packets of a given port number of the bootstrap protocol (BOOTP) clients of a destination host.
Step 4	<i>sequence-number permit udp any eq domain any eq domain</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 30 permit udp any eq domain any eq domain</pre>	Defines an extended UDP access list to forward packets and sets the access conditions to match a destination host Domain Name Service (DNS) with only the packets from a given port number of the source DNS.
Step 5	<i>sequence-number permit ip any host dest-address</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 40 permit ip any host 10.10.10.8</pre>	Defines an extended IP access list to forward packets from a source host to a single destination host.
Step 6	<i>sequence-number permit ip host dest-address any</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# 50 permit ip host 10.10.10.8 any</pre>	Defines an extended IP access list to forward packets from a single source host to a destination host.
Step 7	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-ext-nacl)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 8	wireless profile flex flex-profile-name Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile flex test-flex-profile</pre>	Configures a new FlexConnect policy and enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 9	acl-policy acl-policy-name Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# acl-policy acl_name</pre>	Configures an ACL policy.
Step 10	urlfilter list url-filter-name Example:	Applies the URL filter list to the FlexConnect profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# urlfilter list urllist_flex	
Step 11	vlan-name <i>prod-vlanID</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# vlan-name test-vlan	Configures a production VLAN. Ensure that filter-type post-authentication configuration is in place for the URL filter to work. For information on configuring URL filter list, see the <i>Defining URL Filter List</i> section of the chapter DNS-Based Access Control Lists.
Step 12	vlan-id <i>prod-vlanID</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-flex-profile-vlan)# vlan-id 10	Creates a new production VLAN ID.
Step 13	vlan-name <i>OSU-vlanID</i> Example: vlan-name test-vlan	Configures an OSU VLAN.
Step 14	vlan-id <i>OSU-vlanID</i> Example: vlan-id 20	Creates an OSU VLAN ID.

Configuring an OSEN WLAN (Single SSID)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>wlan-name wlan-id ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan hs2 1 hs2	Configures a WLAN and enters WLAN configuration mode.
Step 3	no security ft over-the-ds Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables fast transition over the data source on the WLAN.
Step 4	no security ft adaptive Example:	Disables adaptive 11r.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wlan)# no security ft adaptive	
Step 5	security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2	Enables WPA2 security.
Step 6	security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Enables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 7	security wpa osen Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa osen	Enables WPA OSEN security support.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 9	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 10	wireless profile policy <i>policy-profile-name</i> <i>ssid</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy policy-hotspot	Configures a policy profile.
Step 11	hotspot anqp-server <i>server-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# hotspot anqp-server my-server	Attaches the Hotspot 2.0 ANQP server to the policy profile.
Step 12	vlan <i>vlan</i> encryption osen Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# vlan 10 encryption osen	Configures the VLAN ID with OSEN encryption for single SSID.

Verifying Hotspot 2.0 Configuration

Use the following **show** commands to verify the quality of service (QoS) and AP GAS rate limit.

To view whether a QoS map ID is user configured or the default one, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile <profile name> detailed
```

```
QoS Map : user-configured
```

To view the QoS map values used and their source, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap profile <profile name> qos-map
```

```
QoS Map : default
```

```
DSCP ranges to User Priorities
```

User Priority	DSCP low	DSCP high	Upstream UP to DSCP
0	0	7	0
2	16	23	10
3	24	31	18
4	32	39	26
5	40	47	34
6	48	55	46
7	56	63	48

```
DSCP to UP mapping exceptions
```

DSCP	User Priority
0	0
2	1
4	1
6	1
10	2
12	2
14	2
18	3
20	3
22	3

To view the AP rate limiter configuration, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP0462.73e8.f2c0 config general | i GAS
```

```
GAS rate limit Admin status : Enabled
Number of GAS request per interval : 30
GAS rate limit interval (msec) : 100
```

Verifying Client Details

To verify the wireless-specific configuration of active clients based on their MAC address, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac 001e.f64c.1eff detail
```

```
.
.
.
Hotspot version : Hotspot 2.0 Release 2
Hotspot PPS MO ID :
Hotspot Terms and Conditions URL :
http://host1.ciscohspot.com/terms.php?addr=b8:27:eb:5a:dc:39&ap=123
.
.
.
Policy Type : OSEN (within RSN)
Resultant Policies:
  VLAN Name : VLAN0010
  VLAN : 10
```




CHAPTER 195

Client Roaming Across Policy Profile

- [Information about Client Roaming Policy Profile, on page 2127](#)
- [Configuring Client Roaming Across Policy Profile, on page 2128](#)
- [Verifying Client Roaming Across Policy Profiles, on page 2129](#)

Information about Client Roaming Policy Profile

In Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless controller, each WLAN must be associated to a policy profile using a policy tag. Since the policy profile represent the policy defined by the administrator, the general rule is that the controller will not allow seamless roaming between same WLAN associated with different policy profile. The client will be disconnected hence disrupting seamless roaming and client will be required to join again and the new policy can be evaluated and implemented.

When you enable roaming across policy profile, if the two policy profiles differ only in the settings as listed, then client seamless roaming is allowed to same wlan associated to different policy profiles.

A typical use case is when clients roaming across two APs that belong to different policy tag and have WLAN associated with different policy profiles with different VLAN setting for each policy profile. If roaming across policy profile is enabled, the controller allows seamless roaming to another policy profile even if the VLAN is different and the client retains the original IP address. The controller applies all other attributes except VLAN from the new policy profile to which client has joined.

Client roaming across policy profiles is not allowed if there are different policy profile configurations. However; the following are the exceptions:

- Accounting list
- CTS
- DHCP-TLV-caching
- Dot11 5 Ghz airtime-fairness
- Dot11 24 Ghz airtime-fairness
- ET-analytics enable
- http-TLV-caching
- Idle-threshold
- Idle-timeout

- MDnS-SD service policy
- IPv4 ACL
- IPv6 ACL
- QBSS load
- RADIUS profiling
- Session timeout
- SIP CAC disassociation client
- SIP CAC send-486busy
- VLAN

You must execute the configuration in the global configuration mode. When a client roam across policy profile is attempted, the roam is either a success or a failure. However; the total roam across policy profiles counter under client global statistics section increments. But when the roam across policy profile is denied then roam across policy profile deny delete reason counter is incremented.



Note This feature is not supported on fabric and on Cisco 9800 FlexConnect.

The following is an example in which case a client roams across policy profiles PP1 and PP2 will be denied.

```
wireless profile policy PP1
vlan 42
no shutdown
wireless profile policy PP2
aaa-override
vlan 43
no shutdown
```

Configuring Client Roaming Across Policy Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enables configuration mode
Step 2	wireless client vlan-persistent Example: Device(config) # wireless client vlan-persistent	Enables client roaming across different policy profiles.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	end Example: Device(config) # end	Ends the session.

Verifying Client Roaming Across Policy Profiles

The following shows the client roaming from policy profile PP1 configured with VLAN 42 to policy profile PP2 configured with VLAN 43.

The following is the sample output of the **show wireless client mac-address xxxx.xxxx.xxxx detail** command that shows the client is connected to policy profile PP1.

```
Device#show wireless client mac-address xxxx.xxxx.xxxx detail

Client MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client IPv4 Address : 169.254.189.170
Client Username : cisco
AP MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
AP Name: vinks_ios
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : PP1
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 3
WLAN Profile Name: prateekk_dot1x
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): prateekk_dot1x
BSSID : 0081.c4f6.6bfb
Connected For : 688 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ac
Channel : 161
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Idle state timeout : N/A
Re-Authentication Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1112 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : client-default
Input Policy State : Installed
Input Policy Source : QOS Internal Policy
Output Policy Name : client-default
Output Policy State : Installed
Output Policy Source : QOS Internal Policy
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
    U-APSD value : 0
    APSD ACs : BK, BE, VI, VO
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m8 ss1
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:
    Move Count : 0
    Mobility Role : Local
    Mobility Roam Type : None
```

```

Mobility Complete Timestamp : 07/13/2020 02:00:22 UTC
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client : 07/13/2020 02:00:22 UTC
Client State Servers : None
Client ACLs : None
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time : 688 seconds
Policy Type : WPA2
Encryption Cipher : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x
User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type : EAP-FAST
VLAN Override after Webauth : No
VLAN : 42
Multicast VLAN : 0
WiFi Direct Capabilities:
  WiFi Direct Capable : No
Central NAT : DISABLED
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment : capwap_90400006
  IIF ID : 0x90400006
  Authorized : TRUE
  Session timeout : 1800
Common Session ID: 3C2A090900000000E45E6D59E
  Acct Session ID : 0x00000000
  Last Tried Aaa Server Details:
    Server IP : 9.10.8.247
  Auth Method Status List
    Method : Dot1x
    SM State : AUTHENTICATED
    SM Bend State : IDLE
  Local Policies:
    Service Template : wlan_svc_PP1_local (priority 254)
    VLAN : 42
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
  Server Policies:
  Resultant Policies:
    VLAN Name : VLAN0042
    VLAN : 42
    Absolute-Timer : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request : Not implemented
  Short Preamble : Not implemented
  PBCC : Not implemented
  Channel Agility : Not implemented
  Listen Interval : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout : 0
11v BSS Transition : Not implemented
11v DMS Capable : No
QoS Map Capable : No
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status : N/A
FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
FlexConnect Central Association : N/A
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received from Client : 19442

```

```

Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 3863
Number of Packets Received from Client : 197
Number of Packets Sent to Client : 36
Number of Policy Errors : 0
Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -39 dBm
Signal to Noise Ratio : 55 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
Radio Measurement Enabled Capabilities
  Capabilities: None
Client Scan Report Time : Timer not running
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
EoGRE : Pending Classification
Device Type      : Apple-Device
Device Name      : APPLE, INC.
Protocol Map     : 0x000001 (OUI)
Max Client Protocol Capability: 802.11ac Wave 2
Cellular Capability : N/A
Apple Specific Requests(ASR) Capabilities/Statistics Summary
  Regular ASR support: : DISABLED

```

The following is the sample output of the **show wireless client mac-address xxxx.xxxx.xxxx detail** command after client has roamed to a policy profile PP2.

```

Client MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client IPv4 Address : 9.9.42.236
Client Username : cisco
AP MAC Address : xxxx.xxxx.xxxx
AP Name: prateekk_cos_1
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : PP2
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 3
WLAN Profile Name: prateekk_dot1x
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): prateekk_dot1x
BSSID : a0f8.4985.0029
Connected For : 11 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ac
Channel : 36
Client IIF-ID : 0xa0000001
Association Id : 1
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Idle state timeout : N/A
Re-Authentication Timeout : 1800 sec (Remaining time: 1789 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : client-default
Input Policy State : Installed
Input Policy Source : QOS Internal Policy
Output Policy Name : client-default
Output Policy State : Installed
Output Policy Source : QOS Internal Policy
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Enabled
  U-APSD value : 0
  APSD ACs : BK, BE, VI, VO
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m9 ss3
Supported Rates : 9.0,18.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
Mobility:

```

```

Move Count                : 0
Mobility Role              : Local
Mobility Roam Type         : L2
Mobility Complete Timestamp : 07/13/2020 02:12:19 UTC
Client Join Time:
  Join Time Of Client      : 07/13/2020 02:12:19 UTC
Client State Servers       : None
Client ACLs                : None
Policy Manager State       : Run
Last Policy Manager State  : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time   : 728 seconds
Policy Type                : WPA2
Encryption Cipher          : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management : 802.1x
User Defined (Private) Network : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type                   : EAP-FAST
VLAN Override after Webauth : No
VLAN                       : 43
Multicast VLAN             : 0
WiFi Direct Capabilities:
  WiFi Direct Capable      : No
Central NAT                 : DISABLED
Session Manager:
  Point of Attachment      : capwap_90000005
  IIF ID                   : 0x90000005
  Authorized               : TRUE
  Session timeout          : 1800
Common Session ID: 3C2A090900000000E45E6D59E
Acct Session ID            : 0x00000000
Last Tried Aaa Server Details:
  Server IP                : 9.10.8.247
Auth Method Status List
  Method                   : Dot1x
    SM State                : AUTHENTICATED
    SM Bend State           : IDLE
Local Policies:
  Service Template         : vlan-42-template (priority 200)
    VLAN                    : 42
  Service Template         : wlan_svc_PP2_local (priority 254)
    Absolute-Timer          : 1800
Server Policies:
Resultant Policies:
  VLAN Name              : VLAN0042
  VLAN                  : 42
  Absolute-Timer           : 1800
DNS Snooped IPv4 Addresses : None
DNS Snooped IPv6 Addresses : None
Client Capabilities
  CF Pollable              : Not implemented
  CF Poll Request          : Not implemented
  Short Preamble           : Not implemented
  PBCC                     : Not implemented
  Channel Agility          : Not implemented
  Listen Interval          : 0
Fast BSS Transition Details :
  Reassociation Timeout    : 0
11v BSS Transition        : Not implemented
11v DMS Capable           : No
QoS Map Capable           : No
FlexConnect Data Switching : N/A
FlexConnect Dhcp Status   : N/A

```

```

FlexConnect Authentication : N/A
FlexConnect Central Association : N/A
Client Statistics:
  Number of Bytes Received from Client : 23551
  Number of Bytes Sent to Client : 12588
  Number of Packets Received from Client : 239
  Number of Packets Sent to Client : 71
  Number of Policy Errors : 0
  Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -28 dBm
  Signal to Noise Ratio : 60 dB
Fabric status : Disabled
Radio Measurement Enabled Capabilities
  Capabilities: None
Client Scan Report Time : Timer not running
Client Scan Reports
Assisted Roaming Neighbor List
Nearby AP Statistics:
  prateekk_cos_1 (slot 1)
    antenna 0: 13 s ago ..... -25 dBm
    antenna 1: 13 s ago ..... -25 dBm
EoGRE : No/Simple client
Device Type      : Apple-Device
Device Name      : APPLE, INC.
Protocol Map     : 0x000001 (OUI)
Protocol         : DHCP
Type             : 0      0
Data             : 00

Max Client Protocol Capability: 802.11ac Wave 2
Cellular Capability : N/A
Apple Specific Requests(ASR) Capabilities/Statistics Summary
  Regular ASR support: : DISABLED

```

The following is the sample output of the **show wireless stats client detail** command that displays that client roam across policy profile is attempted and roam across policy is not denied.

```

Device #show wireless stats client detail | in Roam
Total Roam Across Policy Profiles : 1
Roam across policy profile deny : 0

```




CHAPTER 196

Assisted Roaming

- [802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming, on page 2135](#)
- [Restrictions for Assisted Roaming, on page 2136](#)
- [How to Configure Assisted Roaming, on page 2136](#)
- [Verifying Assisted Roaming, on page 2138](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming, on page 2138](#)

802.11k Neighbor List and Assisted Roaming

The 802.11k standard allows an AP to inform 802.11k-capable clients of neighboring BSSIDs (APs in the same SSID). This can help the client to optimize its scanning and roaming behavior. Additionally, the Assisted Roaming Prediction Optimization feature can be used with non-802.11k clients, to discourage them from roaming to suboptimal APs.



Note We recommend not configuring two SSIDs with the same name in the controller, which may cause roaming issues.

Prediction Based Roaming - Assisted Roaming for Non-802.11k Clients

You can optimize roaming for non-802.11k clients by generating a prediction neighbor list for each client without sending an 802.11k neighbor list request. When prediction based roaming enables a WLAN, after each successful client association/re-association, the same neighbor list optimization applies on the non-802.11k client to generate and store the neighbor list in the mobile station software data structure. Clients at different locations have different lists because the client probes are seen with different RSSI values by the different neighbors as the clients usually probe before any association or re-association. This list is created with the most updated probe data and predicts the next AP that the client is likely to roam to.

The wireless infrastructure discourages clients from roaming to those less desirable neighbors by denying association if the association request to an AP does not match the entries on the stored prediction neighbor list.

- Denial count: Maximum number of times a client is refused association.
- Prediction threshold: Minimum number of entries required in the prediction list for the assisted roaming feature to activate.

For more information, see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/wireless/controller/8-5/Enterprise-Mobility-8-5-Design-Guide/Enterprise_Mobility_8-5_Deployment_Guide/Chapter-11.html#pgfld-1140097.

Restrictions for Assisted Roaming

- This feature is supported only on 802.11n capable indoor access points. For a single band configuration, a maximum of 6 neighbors are visible in a neighbor list. For dual band configuration, a maximum of 12 neighbors are visible.
- You can configure assisted roaming only using the device CLI.

How to Configure Assisted Roaming

Configuring Assisted Roaming (GUI)

Assisted roaming allows clients to request neighbor reports containing information about known neighbor access points that are candidates for a service set transition.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an AP Join Profile prior to configuring the primary and backup controllers.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLAN and click Add to add a WLAN or select an existing WLAN.
Step 2	On the Advanced tab, go to the Assisted Roaming (11K) and select the Prediction Optimization checkbox to optimize roaming for non 802.11k clients by generating a prediction neighbor list for each client without sending an 802.11k neighbor list request.
Step 3	Select the Neighbor List checkbox to optimize roaming for 802.11K clients by generating a neighbor list for each client without sending an 802.11k neighbor list request. By default, the neighbor list contains only neighbors in the same band with which the client is associated. However, if you select the Dual Band Neighbor List checkbox, it allows 802.11k to return neighbors in both bands.
Step 4	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring Assisted Roaming (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias dBm Example: Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias 20	Configures neighbor floor label bias. The valid range is from 5 to 25 dBm, and the default value is 15 dBm.
Step 3	wlan wlan-id Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan1	Enters the WLAN configuration submode. The <i>wlan-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 4	assisted-roaming neighbor-list Example: Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming neighbor-list	Configures an 802.11k neighbor list for a WLAN. By default, assisted roaming is enabled on the neighbor list when you create a WLAN. The no form of the command disables assisted roaming neighbor list.
Step 5	assisted-roaming dual-list Example: Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming dual-list	Configures a dual-band 802.11k dual list for a WLAN. By default, assisted roaming is enabled on the dual list when you create a WLAN. The no form of the command disables assisted roaming dual list.
Step 6	assisted-roaming prediction Example: Device(wlan)# assisted-roaming prediction	Configures assisted roaming prediction list feature for a WLAN. By default, the assisted roaming prediction list is disabled. Note A warning message is displayed and load balancing is disabled for the WLAN if load balancing is already enabled for the WLAN.
Step 7	wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum count Example: Device# wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum	Configures the minimum number of predicted APs required for the prediction list feature to be activated. The default value is 3. Note If the number of the AP in the prediction assigned to the client is less than the number that you specify, the assisted roaming feature will not apply on this roam.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum <i>count</i> Example: Device# wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum 8	Configures the maximum number of times a client can be denied association if the association request is sent to an AP does not match any AP on the prediction. The valid range is from 1 to 10, and the default value is 5.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying Assisted Roaming

The following command can be used to verify assisted roaming configured on a WLAN:

Command	Description
show wlan id <i>wlan-id</i>	Displays the WLAN parameters on the WLAN.

Configuration Examples for Assisted Roaming

This example shows how to configure the neighbor floor label bias:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming floor-bias 10
Device(config)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to disable neighbor list on a specific WLAN:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan test1
Device(config) (wlan)# no assisted-roaming neighbor-list
Device(config) (wlan)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to configure the prediction list on a specific WLAN:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wlan test1
Device(config) (wlan)# assisted-roaming prediction
Device(config) (wlan)# end
Device# show wlan id 23
```

This example shows how to configure the prediction list based on assisted roaming prediction threshold and maximum denial count on a specific WLAN:

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming prediction-minimum 4
```

```
Device(config)# wireless assisted-roaming denial-maximum 4  
Device(config) (wlan) # end  
Device# show wlan id 23
```




CHAPTER 197

802.11r BSS Fast Transition

- [Feature History for 802.11r Fast Transition, on page 2141](#)
- [Information About 802.11r Fast Transition, on page 2142](#)
- [Information About 802.11r Fast Transition for SAE \(FT-SAE\) Authenticated Clients, on page 2143](#)
- [Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition, on page 2144](#)
- [Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition \(CLI\), on page 2145](#)
- [Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN \(CLI\), on page 2146](#)
- [Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN \(CLI\), on page 2147](#)
- [Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security-Enabled WLAN \(CLI\), on page 2149](#)
- [Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a SAE Security-Enabled WLAN \(GUI\), on page 2150](#)
- [Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on an SAE Security-Enabled WLAN \(CLI\), on page 2150](#)
- [Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition \(GUI\), on page 2152](#)
- [Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition \(CLI\), on page 2152](#)
- [Verifying 802.11r Fast Transition SAE, on page 2152](#)

Feature History for 802.11r Fast Transition

This table provides release and related information about the feature explained in this section.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 139: Feature History for 802.11r Fast Transition

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	802.11r Fast Transition for SAE (FT-SAE) Authenticated Clients	From Cisco-IOS XE 17.9.1 release onwards, the Fast Transition supports SAE-based Fast Roaming support along with PMK caching. This feature is an addition to the existing PMK caching-based fast roam support.

Information About 802.11r Fast Transition

802.11r, which is the IEEE standard for fast roaming, introduces a new concept of roaming where the initial handshake with a new AP is done even before the corresponding client roams to the target access point. This concept is called Fast Transition. The initial handshake allows a client and the access points to do the Pairwise Transient Key (PTK) calculation in advance. These PTK keys are applied to the client and the access points after the client responds to the reassociation request or responds to the exchange with new target AP.

The FT key hierarchy is designed to allow clients to make fast BSS transitions between APs without requiring reauthentication at every AP. WLAN configuration contains a new Authenticated Key Management (AKM) type called FT (Fast Transition).

Client Roaming

For a client to move from its current AP to a target AP using the FT protocols, message exchanges are performed using one of the following methods:

- **Over-the-Air**—The client communicates directly with the target AP using IEEE 802.11 authentication with the FT authentication algorithm.
- **Over-the-Distribution System (DS)**—The client communicates with the target AP through the current AP. The communication between the client and the target AP is carried in FT action frames between the client and the current AP and is then sent through the device.

Figure 45: Message Exchanges when Over-the-Air Client Roaming is Configured

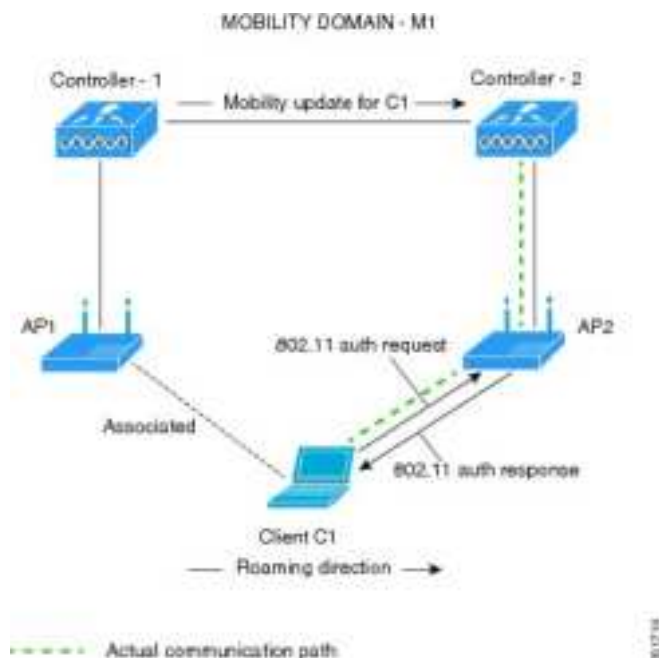
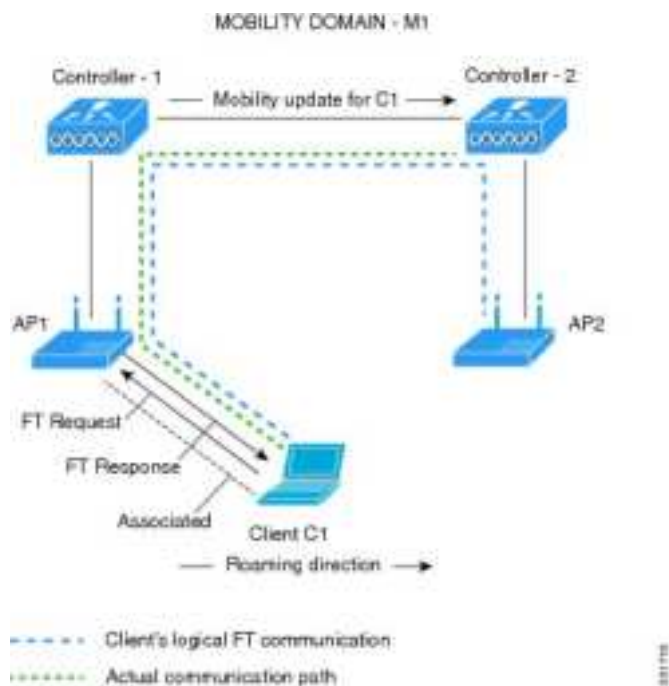


Figure 46: Message Exchanges when Over-the-DS Client Roaming is Configured



Note The 802.11r Fast Transition for SAE (FT-SAE) is not restricted to inter controller roaming.

Information About 802.11r Fast Transition for SAE (FT-SAE) Authenticated Clients

From Cisco-IOS XE 17.9.1 release onwards, the Fast Transition feature supports Simultaneous Authentication of Equals-based (SAE-based) fast roaming support along with Pairwise Master Key (PMK) caching.

This feature is an addition to the existing PMK caching-based fast roaming support.

Fast Transition Protocol

During a Base Station Subsystem (BSS) transition, the Fast BSS transition feature reduces the connectivity time loss between an Station (STA) and Direct Switching. The Fast Transition protocols are part of the reassociation service, and apply to the STA transitions between the APs in the same mobility domain and Extended Service Set (ESS). The Fast Transition protocols need information to be exchanged during the initial association (or a later reassociation) between an STA and an AP. The initial exchange is referred to as the *FT initial mobility domain association*. Similarly, subsequent reassociations to the APs in the same mobility domain use the Fast Transition protocols.



Note STA is known as Fast Transition Originator.

The following are the FT protocols:

- **Fast Transition Protocol:** This protocol is executed when a Fast Transition Originator makes a transition to a target AP and does not require a resource request before its transition.
- **Fast Transition Resource Request Protocol:** This protocol is executed when a Fast Transition Originator requires a resource request prior to its transition.
- **Over-the-Air:** The Fast Transition Originator communicates with the target AP using IEEE 802.11 authentication with Fast Transition authentication algorithm.
- **Over-the-DS:** The Fast Transition Originator communicates with the target AP using the current AP. The communication between the Fast Transition Originator and target AP is carried in Fast Transition action frames between the Fast Transition Originator and the current AP.

The Fast Transition feature supports a new AKM for FT-SAE, specifically the **00-0F-AC:9**.

Fast Transition Initial Mobility Domain Association

An STA includes Mobility Domain Element (MDE) and Robust Security Network Element (RSNE) in the (re)association request frame. The AP responds by including FTE, MDE, and RSNE in the (re)association response frame.

That is, an STA initiates the Fast Transition initial mobility domain association procedures by performing an IEEE 802.11 authentication using the SAE algorithm.

After successful SAE authentication, the STA and AP perform a Fast Transition four-way handshake.



- Note**
- If the MDE that is received by an AP or a controller does not match the contents advertised in the beacon and probe response frames, the AP or controller rejects the (re)association request frame with the STATUS_INVALID_MDE code.
 - If an MDE is available in the (re)association request frame and the contents of RSNE do not indicate a negotiated SAE AKM of Fast BSS Transition (00-0F-AC:9 suite type), the AP rejects with STATUS_INVALID_AKMP code.

After an SAE authentication, the controller receives the PMK, resulting in the successful completion of SAE.

Restrictions for 802.11r Fast Transition

- EAP LEAP method is not supported.
- Traffic Specification (TSPEC) is not supported for 802.11r fast roaming. Therefore, RIC IE handling is not supported.

- If WAN link latency exists, fast roaming is also delayed. Voice or data maximum latency should be verified. The Cisco WLC handles 802.11r Fast Transition authentication requests during roaming for both Over-the-Air and Over-the-DS methods.
- Legacy clients cannot associate with a WLAN that has 802.11r enabled if the driver of the supplicant that is responsible for parsing the Robust Security Network Information Exchange (RSN IE) is old and not aware of the additional AKM suites in the IE. Due to this limitation, clients cannot send association requests to WLANs. These clients, however, can still associate with non-802.11r WLANs. Clients that are 802.11r-capable can associate as 802.11i clients on WLANs that have both 802.11i and 802.11r Authentication Key Management Suites enabled.

The workaround is to enable or upgrade the driver of the legacy clients to work with the new 802.11r AKMs, after which the legacy clients can successfully associate with 802.11r-enabled WLANs.

Another workaround is to have two SSIDs with the same name, but with different security settings (FT and non-FT).

- Fast Transition resource-request protocol is not supported because clients do not support this protocol. Also, the resource-request protocol is an optional protocol.
- To avoid any Denial of Service (DoS) attack, each Cisco WLC allows a maximum of three Fast Transition handshakes with different APs.
- Non-802.11r-capable devices will not be able to associate with FT-enabled WLAN.
- We do not recommend 802.11r FT + PMF.
- We recommend 802.11r FT Over-the-Air roaming for FlexConnect deployments.
- FT-SAE Over-the-DS roam is not supported in FlexConnect local authentication mode.
- 802.11r ft-over-ds is enabled by default, when a WLAN is created in the controller. In Cisco Wave 2 APs, local switching local authentication with 802.11r is not supported. To make the local switching local authentication work with Cisco Wave 2 APs, explicitly disable 802.11r in WLAN. A sample configuration is given below:

```
wlan local-dot1x 24 local-dot1x
no security ft over-the-ds
no security ft adaptive
security dot1x authentication-list spwifi_dot1x
no shutdown
```

Monitoring 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI)

The following command can be used to monitor 802.11r Fast Transition:

Command	Description
show wlan name <i>wlan-name</i>	Displays a summary of the configured parameters on the WLAN.

Command	Description
show wireless client mac-address <i>mac-address</i>	Displays the summary of the 802.11r authentication key management configuration on a client. <pre> Client Capabilities CF Pollable : Not implemented CF Poll Request : Not implemented Short Preamble : Not implemented PBCC : Not implemented Channel Agility : Not implemented Listen Interval : 15 Fast BSS Transition : Implemented Fast BSS Transition Details : Client Statistics: Number of Bytes Received : 9019 Number of Bytes Sent : 3765 Number of Packets Received : 130 Number of Packets Sent : 36 Number of EAP Id Request Msg Timeouts : 0 Number of EAP Request Msg Timeouts : 0 Number of EAP Key Msg Timeouts : 0 Number of Data Retries : 1 Number of RTS Retries : 0 Number of Duplicate Received Packets : 1 Number of Decrypt Failed Packets : 0 Number of Mic Failed Packets : 0 Number of Mic Missing Packets : 0 Number of Policy Errors : 0 Radio Signal Strength Indicator : -48 dBm Signal to Noise Ratio : 40 dB </pre>

Configuring 802.11r BSS Fast Transition on a Dot1x Security Enabled WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	client vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120	Associates the client VLAN to this WLAN.
Step 4	local-auth <i>local-auth-profile-eap</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# local-auth	Enables the local auth EAP profile.
Step 5	security dot1x authentication-list default Example: Device(config-wlan)# security dot1x authentication-list default	Enables security authentication list for dot1x security. The configuration is similar for all dot1x security WLANs.
Step 6	security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# security ft	Enables 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN.
Step 7	security wpa akm ft dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft dot1x	Enables 802.1x security on the WLAN.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-z to exit global configuration mode

Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition in an Open WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	client vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120	Associates the client VLAN to the WLAN.
Step 4	no security wpa Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa	Disables WPA security.
Step 5	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 6	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 7	no wpa wpa2 ciphers aes Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2 ciphers aes	Disables WPA2 ciphers for AES.
Step 8	security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# security ft	Specifies the 802.11r Fast Transition parameters.
Step 9	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# shutdown	Shuts down the WLAN.
Step 10	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-z to exit global configuration mode

Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a PSK Security–Enabled WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submenu. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	client vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: Device(config-wlan)# client vlan 0120	Associates the client VLAN to this WLAN.
Step 4	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 5	security wpa akm ft psk Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft psk	Configures Fast Transition PSK support.
Step 6	security wpa akm psk set-key {ascii {0 8} hex {0 8}} Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm psk set-key ascii 0 test	Configures PSK AKM shared key.
Step 7	security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# security ft	Configures 802.11r Fast Transition.
Step 8	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-z to exit global configuration mode

Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on a SAE Security-Enabled WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add .
Step 3	In the General tab, enter the Profile Name , the SSID , and the WLAN ID .
Step 4	Choose Security > Layer2 tab.
Step 5	Click the WPA3 radio button as security mode.
Step 6	Check the required WPA Parameters check boxes and the AES(CCMP128) check box.
Step 7	From the Status drop-down list, choose Enabled .
Step 8	Check the FT+SAE check box.
Step 9	Enter the Pre-Shared Key .
Step 10	From the PSK Format drop-down list, choose PSK Format and from the PSK Type drop-down list, choose PSK Type .
Step 11	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring 802.11r Fast Transition on an SAE Security-Enabled WLAN (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example:	Enables configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	wlan wlan-name wlan-id ssid Example: Device(config)# wlan wlan-ft-sae 10 wlan-ft-sae	Configures the WLAN and SSID.
Step 4	security ft Example: Device(config-wlan)# security ft	Enables 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN.
Step 5	no security wpa wpa2 Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa wpa2	Disables WPA2 security.
Step 6	security wpa psk set-key ascii ascii/hex key Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa psk set-key ascii 0 123456789	Configures the preshared key on a WLAN. Note WPA preshared keys must contain 8 to 63 ASCII text characters or 64 hexadecimal characters.
Step 7	no security wpa akm dot1x Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security wpa akm dot1x	Disables security AKM for dot1x.
Step 8	security wpa akm ft sae Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa akm ft sae	Configures 802.11r Fast Transition on an SAE security-enabled WLAN.
Step 9	security wpa wpa3 Example: Device(config-wlan)# security wpa wpa3	Enables WPA3 support.
Step 10	security pmf mandatory Example: Device(config-wlan)# security pmf mandatory	Requires clients to negotiate 802.11w PMF protection on a WLAN.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN.

Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** On the **WLANs** page, click the WLAN name.
- Step 3** In the **Edit WLAN** window, click the **Security > Layer2** tab.
- Step 4** From the **Fast Transition** drop-down list, choose **Disabled**. Note that you cannot enable or disable Fast Transition, if you have configured an SSID with Open Authentication.
- Step 5** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Disabling 802.11r Fast Transition (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device# wlan test4	Enters WLAN configuration submode. The <i>profile-name</i> is the profile name of the configured WLAN.
Step 3	no security ft [over-the-ds reassociation-timeout <i>timeout-in-seconds</i>] Example: Device(config-wlan)# no security ft over-the-ds	Disables 802.11r Fast Transition on the WLAN.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying 802.11r Fast Transition SAE

To view the Fast Transition SAE details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client summary
Number of Clients: 1
```

```
MAC Address AP Name Type ID State Protocol Method Role
```

```
2c33.7a5b.8fc5 APF4BD.9EBD.A66C WLAN 10 Run 11n(2.4) FT-SAE Local
```

```
Number of Excluded Clients: 0
```

To view the client summary details from an AP, use the following command:

```
AP# show client summary
```

```
Radio Driver client Summary:
```

```
=====
```

```
apr0v1
```

```
-----
```

```
apr0v4
```

```
-----
```

```
ADDR AID CHAN TXRATE RXRATE RSSI MINRSSI MAXRSSI IDLE TXSEQ RXSEQ CAPS XCAPS ACAPS ERP STATE
```

```
MAXRATE(DOT11) HTCAPS VHTCAPS ASSOCTIME IEs MODE RXNSS TXNSS PSMODE
```

```
a0:fb:c5:ab:c3:41 1 11 114M 97M -47 -60 -40 0 0 65535 EPSs BORI NULL 0 f 286800 AP 1g
```

```
00:19:53 RSN WME IEEE80211_MODE_11AXG_HE20 2 2 1
```

```
LM BRP BRA
```

```
RSSI is combined over chains in dBm
```

```
Minimum Tx Power : 0
```

```
Maximum Tx Power : 0
```

```
HT Capability : Yes
```

```
VHT Capability : No
```

```
MU capable : No
```

```
SNR : 48
```

```
Operating band : 2.4GHz
```

```
Current Operating class : 0
```

```
Supported Rates : 2 4 11 22 12 18 24 36 48 72 96 108
```

```
Channels supported : 2412 2417 2422 2427 2432 2437 2442 2447 2452 2457 2462 2467 2472
```

```
Max STA phymode : IEEE80211_MODE_11AXG_HE20
```

```
apr1v1
```

```
-----
```

```
apr1v4
```

```
-----
```

```
WCP client Summary:
```

```
=====
```

```
mac radio vap aid state encr Maxrate Assoc Cap is_wgb_wired wgb_mac_addr
```

```
A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 0 4 1 FWD AES_CCM128 MCS92SS HE HE false 00:00:00:00:00:00
```

```
Assoc time:
```

```
=====
```

```
mac assoc_time
```

```
A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 00d:00h:19m:55s
```

```
Datapath IPv4 client Summary:
```

```
=====
```

```
id vap port node tunnel mac seen_ip hashed_ip sniff_ago confirm_ago
```

```
A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 4 apr0v4 6.4.26.28 - A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 192.100.2.153 10.0.21.68 0.110000  
0.100000
```

```
Datapath IPv6 client Summary:
```

```
=====
```

```
client mac seen_ip6 age scope port
```

```
1 A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 fe80::c2f:f0c4:9fa5:2608 1 link-local apr0v4
```

To view FlexConnect-related details from an AP, use the following command:

```
AP# show flexconnect dot11R
```

```
Total number of DOT11R cache entries: 1
```

```
HW Address Life Time(s) BSSID R0KhId R1KhId vlanOverride aclOverride ipv6AclOverride
qosOverride iPSK
A0:FB:C5:AB:C3:41 558 2C:57:41:59:F5:C4 239.13.224.36 45:49:7B:38:11:6A N/A 0 \<>
```

To view the authentication key management details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address 28c2.1f54.e6d6 detail
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Authentication Key Management : FT-SAE
FlexConnect Authentication : Central
```

To verify whether AKM Fast Transition-SAE is enabled or not, use the following command:

```
Device# show wlan name [wlan-profile-name]
```

```
Auth Key Management
FT SAE : [Enabled | Disabled]
```

To verify the PMK cache details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless pmk-cache
.....
Type Dot11R
.....
```

To view the WPA3 SAE details, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless stats client detail
```

```
Total FT/LocalAuth requests                : 20
Total 11r ft authentication requests received : 9
Total 11r ft authentication response success  : 9
Total 11r ft authentication response failure  : 0
Total 11r ft action requests received         : 17
Total 11r ft action response success          : 8
Total 11r ft action response failure          : 9
Total 11r PMKRO-Name mismatch                : 0
Total 11r PMKR1-Name mismatch                : 5
Total 11r MDID mismatch                      : 9
Total roam attempts                          : 15
    Total 11r roam attempts                   : 15
.....
.....
Total WPA3 SAE attempts                      : 0
Total WPA3 SAE successful authentications     : 0
Total WPA3 SAE authentication failures        : 0
    Total incomplete protocol failures         : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages received       : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages rejected       : 0
    Total unsupported group rejections         : 0
    Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hash to Element commit received : 0
Total PWE method mismatch for SAE Hunting And Pecking commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE commit messages sent           : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages received      : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages rejected      : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE message confirm field mismatch : 0
    Total WPA3 SAE confirm message invalid length : 0
Total WPA3 SAE confirm messages sent          : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Open Sessions                  : 0
Total SAE Message drops due to throttling     : 0
```

```
Total WPA3 SAE Hash to Element commit received : 0
Total WPA3 SAE Hunting and Pecking commit received : 0
.....
Total Flexconnect local-auth roam attempts      : 8
  Total 11r flex roam attempts                  : 0
....
...
Total client delete reasons
  SAE authentication failure                    : 0
  DOT11 SAE invalid message                    : 0
```




CHAPTER 198

802.11v

- [Information About 802.11v, on page 2157](#)
- [Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v, on page 2158](#)
- [Restrictions for 802.11v, on page 2158](#)
- [Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management, on page 2158](#)
- [Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management \(GUI\), on page 2159](#)
- [Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management \(CLI\), on page 2159](#)

Information About 802.11v

The controller supports 802.11v amendment for wireless networks, which describes numerous enhancements to wireless network management.

One such enhancement is Network assisted Power Savings which helps clients to improve the battery life by enabling them to sleep longer. As an example, mobile devices typically use a certain amount of idle period to ensure that they remain connected to access points and therefore consume more power when performing the following tasks while in a wireless network.

Another enhancement is Network assisted Roaming which enables the WLAN to send requests to associated clients, advising the clients as to better APs to associate to. This is useful for both load balancing and in directing poorly connected clients.

Enabling 802.11v Network Assisted Power Savings

Wireless devices consume battery to maintain their connection to the clients, in several ways:

- By waking up at regular intervals to listen to the access point beacons containing a DTIM, which indicates buffered broadcast or multicast traffic that the access point delivers to the clients.
- By sending null frames to the access points, in the form of keepalive messages— to maintain connection with access points.
- Devices also periodically listen to beacons (even in the absence of DTIM fields) to synchronize their clock to that of the corresponding access point.

All these processes consume battery and this consumption particularly impacts devices (such as Apple), because these devices use a conservative session timeout estimation, and therefore, wake up often to send keepalive messages. The 802.11 standard, without 802.11v, does not include any mechanism for the controller or the access points to communicate to wireless clients about the session timeout for the local client.

To save the power of clients due to the mentioned tasks in wireless network, the following features in the 802.11v standard are used:

- Directed Multicast Service
- Base Station Subsystem (BSS) Max Idle Period

Directed Multicast Service

Using Directed Multicast Service (DMS), the client requests the access point to transmit the required multicast packet as unicast frames. This allows the client to receive the multicast packets it has ignored while in sleep mode and also ensures Layer 2 reliability. Furthermore, the unicast frame is transmitted to the client at a potentially higher wireless link rate which enables the client to receive the packet quickly by enabling the radio for a shorter duration, thus also saving battery power. Since the wireless client also does not have to wake up at each DTIM interval in order to receive multicast traffic, longer sleeping intervals are allowed.

BSS Max Idle Period

The BSS Max Idle period is the timeframe during which an access point (AP) does not disassociate a client due to nonreceipt of frames from the connected client. This helps ensure that the client device does not send keepalive messages frequently. The idle period timer value is transmitted using the association and reassociation response frame from the access point to the client. The idle time value indicates the maximum time that a client can remain idle without transmitting any frame to an access point. As a result, the clients remain in sleep mode for a longer duration without transmitting the keepalive messages often. This in turn contributes to saving battery power.

Prerequisites for Configuring 802.11v

- Applies for Apple clients like Apple iPad, iPhone, and so on, that run on Apple iOS version 7 or later.
- Supports local mode; also supports FlexConnect access points in central authentication modes only.

Restrictions for 802.11v

Client needs to support 802.11v BSS Transition.

Enabling 802.11v BSS Transition Management

802.11v BSS Transition is applied in the following three scenarios:

- Solicited request—Client can send an 802.11v Basic Service Set (BSS) Transition Management Query before roaming for a better option of AP to reassociate with.
- Unsolicited Load Balancing request—If an AP is heavily loaded, it sends out an 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request to an associated client.
- Unsolicited Optimized Roaming request—If a client's RSSI and rate do not meet the requirements, the corresponding AP sends out an 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request to this client.



Note 802.11v BSS Transition Management Request is a suggestion (or advice) given to a client, which the client can choose to follow or ignore. To force the task of disassociating a client, turn on the disassociation-imminent function. This disassociates the client after a period if the client is not reassociated to another AP.

Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs .
Step 2	Click Add to create WLANs. The Add WLAN page is displayed.
Step 3	In the Advanced tab and 11v BSS Transition Support section, select the BSS Transition check box to enable BSS transition per WLAN.
Step 4	Enable the Dual Neighbor List check box to include the neighbors of other radio slots of the same AP in the BSS transition response. Note This is applicable only for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz radio slots.
Step 5	Enable the BSS Max Idle Service check box to help clients and APs efficiently decide how long to remain associated when no traffic is being transmitted. The device uses this information to preserve device battery life.
Step 6	Enable the BSS Max Idle Protected check box to enable the AP to accept only authenticated frames (encrypted with Robust Security Network (RSN) information) from the client to reset the BSS Max Idle period counter. Without protected mode, any data or management frame (encrypted or unencrypted) sent by the client will reset the idle timer for the client.
Step 7	Enable the Directed Multicast Service check box to request the AP to send a multicast stream as unicast, to any DMS capable client on this WLAN.
Step 8	Click Save & Apply to Device .
-

Configuring 802.11v BSS Transition Management (CLI)

802.11v BSS Transition is applied in the following three scenarios:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters the global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan test-wlan	Configures WLAN profile and enters the WLAN profile configuration mode.
Step 3	shut Example: Device(config-wlan)# shut	Shutdown the WLAN profile.
Step 4	bss-transition Example: Device(config-wlan)# bss-transition	Configure BSS transition per WLAN.
Step 5	bss-transition disassociation-imminent Example: Device(config-wlan)# bss-transition disassociation-imminent	Configure BSS transition disassociation Imminent per WLAN.
Step 6	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wlan)# no shutdown	Enables the WLAN profile.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-wlan)# end	Return to privilege EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can press CTRL + Z to exit global configuration mode.



CHAPTER 199

Virtual Routing and Forwarding

- [Information About VRF Support, on page 2161](#)
- [Use Cases, on page 2162](#)
- [Guidelines and Restrictions for VRF Support, on page 2162](#)
- [Create a VRF Instance, on page 2163](#)
- [Map VRF to SVI, on page 2164](#)
- [Adding VRF Name Through Option 82 for DHCP Relay, on page 2164](#)
- [Adding VRF Name to DHCP Server for DHCP Relay, on page 2165](#)
- [Verify VRF Support, on page 2166](#)

Information About VRF Support

Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) is a logical representation or grouping of Layer 3 entities, such as IP address, routes, and so on. The VRF Support feature provides the controller with the capability to split the control plane and data plane into multiple segregated logical instances within the same controller platform and make these planes VRF aware.

VRF plays a crucial role in the following use cases:

- Enabling flexible routing in infrastructure services such as AAA, DHCP, DNS, and more.
- Facilitating support for overlapping IP addresses.



Note Direct route leakage between VRFs is not permitted. It should proceed from VRF A to GRT, then to the intended destination, VRF B.

For a multitenant network such as an airport, this allows you to provide wireless services to different tenants (including airlines and shops) at the airport by supporting two clients with different MAC addresses using the same IP address. With VRF support, AP in local mode or AP in FlexConnect mode with central switching policy can have two clients with the same IP even if they belong to different VRFs.

**Note**

- From Cisco IOS XE Dublin 17.12.1, overlapping IP address can be supported without disabling device tracking, by using VRF.
- The configuration of VRF is not exclusive to this release, but its effectiveness begins from this release.

VRFs Supported Per Platform

- Cisco Catalyst 9800-80 Wireless Controller: 8181
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-40 Wireless Controller: 8181
- Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller: 8181

Use Cases

Route leak between two VRFs (VRF-A and VRF-B) is possible using a Global Routing Table (GRT). That is, you can permit the traffic from VRF-A to VRF-B using GRT.

**Note**

The direct route leak between VRFs are not supported.

Guidelines and Restrictions for VRF Support

- Supports only Local mode and FlexConnect mode (central DHCP and central switching).
- Supports only one VRF per WLAN.

**Note**

The maximum number of VRFs supported on a platform depends on the number of WLANs supported on the hardware platform.

- Supports static VRF ID allocation. All the configured VRFs should be associated with an SVI.
- Supports switch virtual interfaces (SVI) other than Wireless Management Interface (WMI).
- Supports only external DHCP servers.
- mDNS gateway is not supported.
- We recommend using commands to configure the feature because all VRF configurations are currently not supported through GUI.

Create a VRF Instance

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	vrf definition <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config)# vrf definition red-vrf	Configures a VRF instance and enters VRF configuration mode.
Step 3	address-family ipv4 Example: Device(config-vrf)# address-family ipv4	Sets an IPv4 address family.
Step 4	exit-address-family Example: Device((config-vrf-af)# exit-address-family	Exits from VRF address-family configuration submode.
Step 5	address-family ipv6 Example: Device(config-vrf)# address-family ipv6	Sets an IPv6 address family.
Step 6	exit-address-family Example: Device((config-vrf-af)# exit-address-family	Exits from VRF address-family configuration submode.
Step 7	end Example: Device(config-vrf)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Map VRF to SVI

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface <i>interface-type-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan181	Configures VLAN to be associated with the VRF and enters the interface configuration mode.
Step 3	vrf forwarding <i>vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-if)# vrf forwarding red-vrf	Associates the VRF with the Layer 3 interface. This command activates multiprotocol VRF on an interface.
Step 4	no ip proxy-arp Example: Device(config-if)# no ip proxy-arp	Disables proxy ARP.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-if)# no shutdown	Enables the interface.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Adding VRF Name Through Option 82 for DHCP Relay

To enable the transmission of VRF name through Option 82 during DHCP relay, follow this procedure.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy red-vrf</pre>	Enables configuration for the specified profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>	Shuts down the wireless profile policy.
Step 4	ipv4 dhcp opt82 VRF Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp opt82 VRF</pre>	Enables VRF based Sub Option 151.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown</pre>	Enables the wireless profile policy.
Step 6	end Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# end</pre>	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Adding VRF Name to DHCP Server for DHCP Relay

When implementing DHCP relay, this procedure allows you to configure the DHCP server's VRF separately from the VRF of the client.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy red-vrf</pre>	Enables configuration for the specified profile policy.
Step 3	shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# shutdown</pre>	Shuts down the wireless profile policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	ipv4 dhcp server <i>ip-address vrf vrf-name</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# ipv4 dhcp server 1.2.3.4 vrf red-vrf	Configures the WLAN's IPv4 DHCP server IP address and VRF name.
Step 5	no shutdown Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# no shutdown	Enables the wireless profile policy.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verify VRF Support

Use the following commands to verify the VRF support.

```
Device# show wireless client mac-address aaaa.facc.cccc detail
```

```
Client MAC Address : MAC XX
Client MAC Type : Universally Administered Address
Client DUID: NA
Client IPv4 Address : IP XX
Client Username : vrf1
AP MAC Address : aaa.bbb.ccc
AP Name: VRF_TEST_AP
AP slot : 1
Client State : Associated
Policy Profile : VRF_TEST_1
Flex Profile : N/A
Wireless LAN Id: 111
WLAN Profile Name: VRF_TEST_1
Wireless LAN Network Name (SSID): VRF_TEST_1
BSSID : aaa.bbb.ccc
Connected For : 543 seconds
Protocol : 802.11ax - 5 GHz
Channel : 44
Client IIF-ID : xxx
Association Id : 2
Authentication Algorithm : Open System
Idle state timeout : N/A
Re-Authentication Timeout : 43200 sec (Remaining time: 42670 sec)
Session Warning Time : Timer not running
Input Policy Name : None
Input Policy State : None
Input Policy Source : None
Output Policy Name : None
Output Policy State : None
Output Policy Source : None
WMM Support : Enabled
U-APSD Support : Disabled
Fastlane Support : Disabled
Client Active State : Active
```



```

Power Save : OFF
Current Rate : m11 ss2
Supported Rates : 24.0,36.0,48.0,54.0
AAA QoS Rate Limit Parameters:
QoS Average Data Rate Upstream      : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Burst Data Rate Upstream        : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Upstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Average Data Rate Downstream    : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Average Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
QoS Burst Data Rate Downstream      : 0 (kbps)
QoS Realtime Burst Data Rate Downstream : 0 (kbps)
Mobility:
Move Count                          : 0
Mobility Role                       : Local
Mobility Roam Type                  : None
Mobility Complete Timestamp         : 01/09/2025
Client Join Time:
Join Time Of Client                 : 01/09/2025
Client State Servers                : None
Client ACLs                         : None
Policy Manager State: Run
Last Policy Manager State           : IP Learn Complete
Client Entry Create Time            :
Policy Type                         : WPA2
Encryption Cipher                   : CCMP (AES)
Authentication Key Management       : 802.1x
Transition Disable Bitmap           : None
User Defined (Private) Network      : Disabled
User Defined (Private) Network Drop Unicast : Disabled
Encrypted Traffic Analytics         : No
Protected Management Frame - 802.11w : No
EAP Type                           : PEAP
VLAN Override after Webauth         : No
VLAN : VRF_TEST_1
Multicast VLAN                      : 0
VRF Name : VRF_TEST_1

```

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database mac
```

MAC	VLAN	IF-HDL	VRF-Name	IP
6c40.088c.a452	16	0x9040000e	red-vrf	9.10.16.64

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed test
```

```

Policy Profile Name      : test_vrf
Description              :
Status                  : ENABLED
VLAN                    : 1
Multicast VLAN          : 0
OSEN client VLAN        :
Wireless management interface VLAN : 40
Multicast Filter         : DISABLED
QBSS Load               : ENABLED
Passive Client           : DISABLED
ET-Analytics            : DISABLED
StaticIP Mobility        : DISABLED
WLAN Switching Policy
Flex Central Switching   : ENABLED
Flex Central Authentication : ENABLED
Flex Central DHCP        : ENABLED

```

```

Flex NAT PAT : DISABLED
WLAN Flex Policy
WLAN based Central Switching : DISABLED
WLAN ACL
IPv4 ACL : Not Configured
IPv6 ACL : Not Configured
Layer2 ACL : Not Configured
Preauth urlfilter list : Not Configured
Postauth urlfilter list : Not Configured
WLAN Timeout
Session Timeout : 28800
Idle Timeout : 300
Idle Threshold : 0
Guest LAN Session Timeout : DISABLED
WLAN Local Profiling
Subscriber Policy Name : Not Configured
RADIUS Profiling : DISABLED
HTTP TLV caching : DISABLED
DHCP TLV caching : DISABLED
DOT11 TLV accounting : DISABLED
CTS Policy
Inline Tagging : DISABLED
SGACL Enforcement : DISABLED
Default SGT : 0
WLAN Mobility
Anchor : DISABLED
AVC VISIBILITY : Disabled
IPv4 Flow Monitors
Ingress
Egress
IPv6 Flow Monitors
Ingress
Egress
NBAR Protocol Discovery : Disabled
Reanchoring : Disabled
Classmap name for Reanchoring
Reanchoring Classmap Name : Not Configured
QOS per SSID
Ingress Service Name : Not Configured
Egress Service Name : Not Configured
QOS per Client
Ingress Service Name : Not Configured
Egress Service Name : Not Configured
Umbrella information
Cisco Umbrella Parameter Map : Not Configured
DHCP DNS Option : ENABLED
Mode : ignore
Autoqos Mode : None
Call Snooping : Disabled
Tunnel Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
Calendar Profile
Fabric Profile
Profile Name : Not Configured
Accounting list
Accounting List : Not Configured
DHCP
required : DISABLED
server address : 1.2.3.4
Opt82
DhcpOpt82Enable : DISABLED
DhcpOpt82Ascii : DISABLED
DhcpOpt82Rid : DISABLED
APMAC : DISABLED

```

```

SSID : DISABLED
AP_ETHMAC : DISABLED
APNAME : DISABLED
POLICY_TAG : DISABLED
AP_LOCATION : DISABLED
VLAN_ID : DISABLED
VRF_NAME : ENABLED
.
.
.

```

To check VRF and client overlap IP address, use the following commands:

```
Device# show wireless device-tracking database mac
```

```
MAC VLAN IF-HDL IP ZONE-ID/VRF-NAME
```

```
-----
6038.e0dc.317e 172 0x90400004 172.172.172.254 red-vrf
```

```
60f8.1dce.39b0 173 0x90000006 172.172.172.254 blue-vrf
```

```
Device# show wireless cli summary detail
```

```
Number of Clients: 2
```

MAC Address	SSID	AP Name	State	IP Address	Device-type	VLAN	VRF Name	BSSID
Auth Method		Created						
6038.e0dc.317e	UI_172	AP9120	Run	172.172.172.254	172		red-vrf	
7c21.0d31.dcef	[PSK]	02:09:08						
60f8.1dce.39b0	UI_173	AP2702I	Run	172.172.172.254	173		red-vrf	
80e0.1d81.c64f	[PSK]	07:41						

Connected	Protocol	Channel	Width	SGI	NSS	Rate	CAP	Username	Rx packets	Tx packets	Rx bytes
Tx bytes	6E capability										
02:09:11	11n(5)		36	40/40	Y/Y	2/2	m15	E	19214	12028	2300155
1939782	N										
07:44	11ac		36	20/80	Y/Y	3/3	m8ss3	E	29165	25429	5110
	N										



CHAPTER 200

Automated Frequency Coordination

- [Feature History for Automated Frequency Coordination, on page 2171](#)
- [Information About Automated Frequency Coordination, on page 2172](#)
- [Onboarding the Cloud Controller, on page 2175](#)
- [Configuring DNA Services \(GUI\), on page 2176](#)
- [Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile \(CLI\), on page 2177](#)
- [Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile \(GUI\), on page 2178](#)
- [Configuring AP Parameters \(GUI\), on page 2178](#)
- [Configuring AP Parameters, on page 2179](#)
- [Verifying AFC Details, on page 2180](#)

Feature History for Automated Frequency Coordination

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 140: Feature History for Automated Frequency Coordination

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE 17.12.3	Automated Frequency Coordination	Automated Frequency Coordination (AFC) is an advanced system for coordinating the allocation and utilization of spectrum for access points (APs) that operate within the 6-GHz band. This feature is supported on the following APs: • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9136I Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9163E Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166D Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9166I Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9162I Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9164I Access Point • Cisco Catalyst Wireless 9167IW IIoT Access Point

Information About Automated Frequency Coordination

Automated Frequency Coordination (AFC) is an advanced system for coordinating the allocation and utilization of spectrum for access points (APs) that operate within the 6-GHz band. The AFC system utilizes the Universal Licensing System (ULS) as a regulatory database, which is updated daily by the FCC, the regulatory body. This database encompasses a wide range of frequency bands used by various radio frequency services within a specific region. This extensive database ensures seamless and efficient management of spectrum resources, enabling optimal utilization of spectrum and minimizing the chances of interference among different radio frequency services.

The FCC's decision to open the 6-GHz band for unlicensed Wi-Fi usage brings about significant advantages, including accelerated connectivity and expanded capacity. By unlocking the potential of the 6-GHz band, you can experience unprecedented performance and seamless connectivity, effortlessly engage in data-intensive activities and enjoy immersive online experiences.

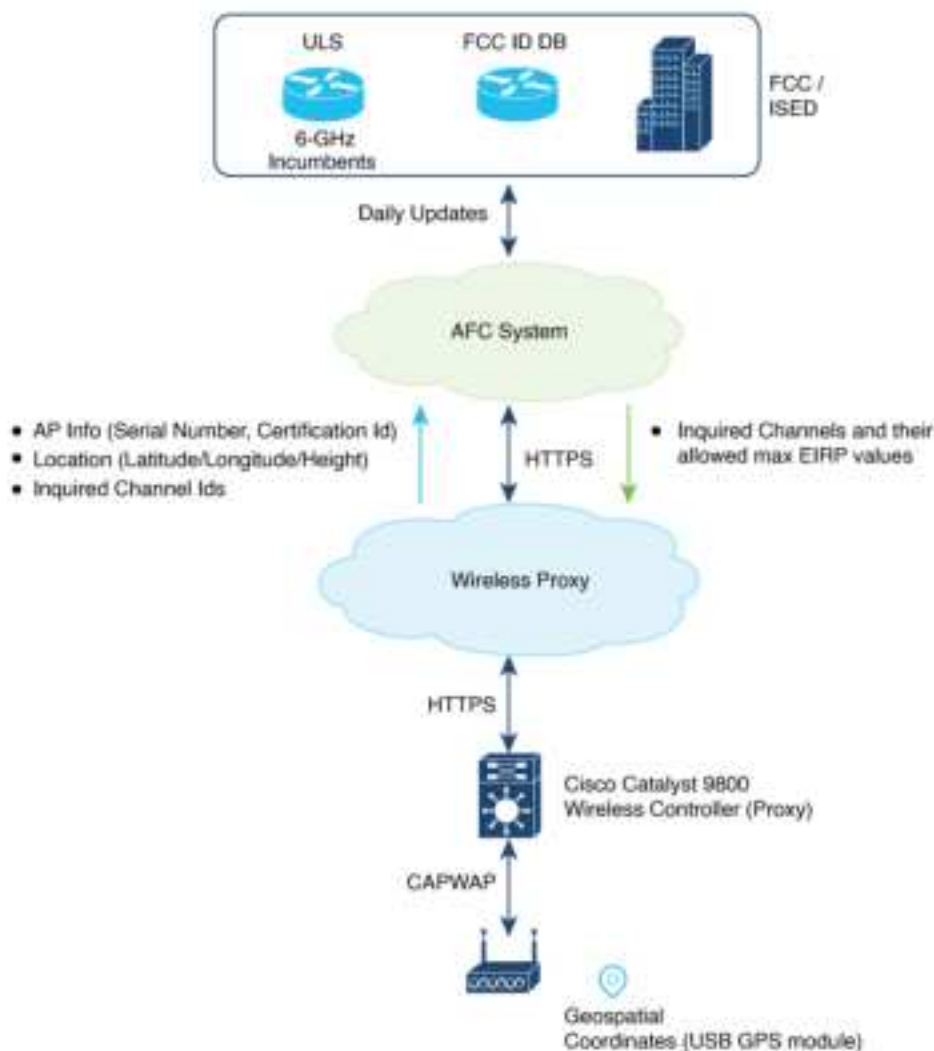
Several other technologies, including fixed satellite services (FSS) used in the broadcast and cable industries, are already active in the 6-GHz band. To ensure that the new unlicensed Wi-Fi entrants do not interfere with current services, FCC has implemented the AFC system for Wi-Fi operation within this band. Indoor APs operate at reduced power levels and are less likely to interfere with current 6-GHz users. The outdoor or standard power APs have a higher probability of causing interference with the existing 6-GHz users. These APs are permitted to operate only within the frequency ranges allocated to each country. For example, in the US, APs are authorized to function in the 5.925-6.425 GHz and 6.525-7.125 GHz bands.

Under the AFC system, a new wireless device is required to verify its compatibility with the existing services. This is done by accessing a registered database of the local AFC system provided by an AFC service provider before starting data transmission. This compatibility check ensures that the device's operation does not cause any interference with the current services. To facilitate the compatibility check, the AFC provider maintains an extensive database containing information about the existing 6-GHz operators, including geolocation details, frequencies in use, power levels, antenna coverage, and other relevant data. For areas where an AFC

service is available, outdoor or standard power 6-GHz Wi-Fi deployments are only authorized if they comply with the AFC guidelines.

Individual standard power APs are exempt from interfacing directly with the AFC system, if the necessary registration data is communicated by a proxy device such as the wireless controller. Still, APs are responsible for providing their precise location information. In return, they receive a designated set of available frequencies suitable for that specific location.

Figure 47: AFC Architecture



For the Cisco Catalyst APs, the AFC architecture includes the following components:

- Cisco Catalyst APs supporting 6-GHz
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller acting as AFC proxy
- A cloud-based wireless proxy tunneling the communication between the AFC proxy and the AFC system
- AFC System

6-GHz AFC Workflow'

The information flow is briefly explained here:

1. A standard power AP joins the system. Before enabling standard power, the AP must get the available frequencies and the power in each frequency range from the AFC system.
2. The AFC proxy sends the AP information to the AFC system.
3. The AFC system computes the available frequencies and maximum allowable power based on the information provided by the regulatory body (FCC for United States).
4. The response is sent back to controller, which may assign a standard power channel to the AP based on the allowed channel list returned by the AFC system.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that there is cloud connectivity from the controller to the cloud, with a DNS entry in place. AFC operates through either the management port or data ports.

The AFC request is sent only when the controller is onboarded with cloud. This is automatic for hardware platforms like 9800-80, 9800-40 and 9800-L. For cloud controller, you have to manually enter a one-time password (OTP). See *Onboarding the Cloud Controller*.

- Before sending an AFC request, check whether the AFC service can be requested by using the **show wireless afc ap** command. If command output shows *yes* or *up* status for all the parameters of an AP, then request is sent out.
- Standard APs must register with the AFC system by providing the following parameters:
 - Geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude)
 - Antenna height above ground level and tolerance as uncertainty height
 - FCC identification number
 - Manufacturer's unique serial number
 - **Firewall Requirements:** Ensure your network firewall allows outbound traffic to:
 - dnaservices.cisco.com on port 443
 - commercial.ocsp.identrust.com on port 80

Restrictions

AFC is not supported on Embedded Wireless Controller (EWC).

Supported APs

Table 141: Supported APs

AP Model Minimum difference	91361	91661	9163	9166-D	9164	9162	91781	91761 9176D1	91721
First Supported Release	17.13.1 17.12.3	17.13.1 17.12.3	17.13.1 17.12.3	17.14.1 17.12.3	17.14.1 17.12.3	17.14.1 17.12.3	17.15.2	17.15.2	17.15.2b 17.17.1
6E slots in AP	3	2	2	2	2	2	3	2	2
LPI and SP Support	LPI SP	LPI SP	SP only	LPI SP	LPI SP	LPI SP	LPI SP	LPI SP	LPI SP
AP Type	Indoor	Indoor	Outdoor	Indoor	Indoor	Indoor	Indoor	Indoor	Indoor
GNNS	External	External	External	External	External	External	Internal	Internal	External



Note The Cisco Wireless 9178I, 91761, 9176D1, and 91721 Wi-Fi 7 Access Points are not applicable for 17.16.1 release.

Onboarding the Cloud Controller

Onboarding the cloud controller requires the generation of a one-time password (OTP). Controller must register with cloud framework to access any cloud service. The cloud service provides identity management services to the controller and securely authenticates the device.



Note These steps apply only to the Cisco Catalyst 9800-CL Wireless Controller for Cloud, and are not applicable to the hardware-based Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controllers.

Procedure

- Step 1** Go to **Cisco DNA portal**.
- Step 2** Click **Application/Products**.
- Step 3** Select **Region** using the drop-down and click **Register**.
- Step 4** Click **Register**.
- Step 5** Enter the product details such as **Host Name/IP**, **Product Name**, and **Description**.

Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile (CLI)

You can allow or disallow standard power mode in configuration per RF profile. However, the operating mode for each RF profile is determined based on the configuration, the capabilities of the AP, and the response from the AFC system regarding channel and transmit power values. If there is no connection with the AFC system or if the received Tx power values are extremely low, the AP might automatically switch from standard-power mode to low-power mode as a fallback.

If the standard power granted by the AFC server is greater than the low power, the radio is switched to standard power mode in the case of mixed-mode APs. If the granted standard power is equal to or greater than the low power, the radio is switched to standard power mode.



Note As outdoor APs operate only in standard power mode, the RF profile configuration for the standard power mode is not evaluated.



Note We recommend using standard power indoors for unparalleled speed and coverage. While the client and vendor ecosystem is evolving, the current Cisco standard power technology continues to provide advantages for existing standard power and dual-mode clients. Low-power clients will default to 2.4/5GHz until they are fully upgraded to standard power by the client vendors.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile <i>rf-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap dot11 6ghz rf-profile prof-afc	Configures the RF profile and enters RF profile configuration mode.
Step 3	tx-power standard Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# tx-power standard	Configures standard-power mode for 6-GHz band for APs that are capable of low power (LP) and standard power (SP). APs that support only SP mode are not affected by this setting (SP mode is always enabled).
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-rf-profile)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Configuring Power Mode per RF Profile (GUI)

Procedure

Step 1 Go to **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > RF/Radio**.

Step 2 Click **RF** tab.

To add a new RF profile, see *Configuring an RF Profile (GUI)*. To modify an existing RF profile, select the required RF profile.

Step 3 Enable **Standard-Power Service** to allow dual-power (low power or standard power) mode APs to operate as standard power APs in the 6-GHz spectrum.

The AP can access the external AFC service through cloud. Based on geographical coordinates and spectrum-inquiry requests from APs, the AFC provides responses on the available frequencies and the maximum permissible power in each frequency range.

Note

- This setting is available for the 6-GHz band radio and standard-power supported APs only.
- DNA services need to be configured to connect to AFC. You can configure DNA services in **Configuration > Services > Cloud Services > DNA Services** page.

Step 4 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring AP Parameters (GUI)

AFC requires the longitude, latitude, and height of the AP to determine the geolocation of the AP. Longitude and latitude of the AP will be automatically calculated based on one of the following methods:

- From an internal or external GPS attached to the AP.
- From another AP with GPS (also known as anchor AP) and the distance between the two APs.



Note Only a few APs on a floor require the GPS unit. The remaining APs can derive their location from the AP with the GPS unit.

You can use bulk AP provisioning to configure multiple AP parameters for multiple APs simultaneously. GUI path is **Configure > Wireless > Bulk AP Provisioning**.

Procedure

Step 1 Go to **Configuration > Wireless > Access Points**.

Step 2 In the **All Access Points** section, select a supported AP.

Step 3 In the **Geolocation** tab, enter the following details:

- a) In the **Height Configuration** section, enter the above ground level height in meters. The range is from -100 to 1000. Enter the tolerance as uncertainty height in meters. The range is from 1 to 100.
- b) In the **GNSS External Antenna Configuration** section, enter the cable length in meters. The range is from 1 to 100, with a default of 10. We recommend that you keep the default value of 10 meters with the Cisco provided external antenna.

Note

This option is available on selected models that support an external antenna.

Step 4 Click **Apply to Device**.

Configuring AP Parameters

To configure the height and gnss antenna details of the AP, use the following procedure:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
Step 2	ap name <i>ap-name</i> geolocation height <i>height</i> uncertainty <i>uncertainty</i> Example: Device# ap name cisco-ap1 geolocation height 100 uncertainty 10	Configures the AP Above Ground Level (AGL) height in meters. The value range for height is -100 to 1000 meters. The valid range for height uncertainty is 1 to 100 meters.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> geolocation gnss antenna external cable-length <i>length</i> Example: Device# ap name cisco-ap1 geolocation gnss antenna external cable-length	(Optional) Configure AP GNSS antenna external cable length, in meters. The value range for cable length is 1 to 100, with a default value of 10. Note This configuration step is required only if GNSS is using an external antenna.

Verifying AFC Details

To see AFC statistics information, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc statistics

Total number of 6GHz APs : 4
Number of APs requiring AFC service : 4
Messages sent to AFC : 229
Successful messages received from AFC : 229
Errored AFC messages : 0
AFC messages pending : 0
Last InquiredChannel message sent:
requestId : 12195125900336565222
AP MAC : 10f9.20fd.54e0
Sent timestamp : 08/09/2023 15:14:20
Last InquiredChannel message received:
requestId : 12195125900336565222
AP MAC : 10f9.20fd.54e0
Received timestamp : 08/09/2023 15:14:21
Minimum response time (ms) : 337
Maximum response time (ms) : 40842
Average response time (ms) : 1315
Health check query : Idle
Health check status : OK
Health check timestamp : 08/09/2023 14:58:50
Number of times health check went down : 0
```

```
Health check event history
Timestamp #Times Event State RC Context
-----
```

```
---
08/09/2023 14:58:50.348063 53 Response received OK 0
08/09/2023 14:58:48.271529 58 Scheduled 0 Timer: 3600s
08/09/2023 14:58:48.271507 53 Sent 0
08/07/2023 09:33:55.990412 6 Not sent No token 0
```

To see information of AFC channels, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc channels 20mhz

802.11 6ghz : 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
Channel IDs : 1 1 2 2 2 3 3 4 4 4 5 5 6 6 6 7 7 8 8 8 9 9 0 0 0
(20MHz width) : 1 5 9 3 7 1 5 9 3 7 1 5 9 3 7 1 5 9 3 7 1 5 9 3 7

-----:++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-++-
AP687D.B45C.08F0 : 36 33 36 36 35 36 36 36 26 27 36 36 36 36 36 36 33 33 36 36 36 36 36 36
36
AP687D.B45C.1824 : 36 33 36 36 35 36 36 36 24 26 27 36 36 36 36 36 33 33 36 36 36 36 36 36
36

! Due to space constraints, the channel IDs (for 2-digit and 3-digit channel IDs)
! are given vertically in the output. The output is also truncated to fit the page width.
```

To see status of the request sent to AFC, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc request

-----
```

AP Name Timestamp	Radio MAC	Last AFC Request Sent to AFC Service:		Status
		Request Id	AFC Request	
APCC9C.3EF1.1620 13:20:39	10f9.20fe.36a0	12195125900336565035	Response Received	08/07/2023
AP687D.B45C.17AC 16:07:01	687d.b45f.1af0	12195125900336565037	Response Received	08/07/2023
AP687D.B45C.321B 17:36:11	fc58.9a18.c840	12195125900336566836	Sent	08/07/2023
AP687D.B45C.321F 17:36:08	fc58.9a18.c850	12195125900336566832	Timeout	08/07/2023
.				
.				
.				

To see AFC response to requests, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc response
```

AP Name Response Code	Radio MAC	Request Id	Expire Time	Last Rcvd Time
AP687D.B45C.16A4 SUCCESS	687d.b45f.0e90	1	11/14/2021 21:56:29	11/14/2021 17:56:29
AP687D.B45C.17AC SUCCESS	687d.b45f.1af0	2	11/14/2021 21:56:30	11/14/2021 17:56:29
AP687D.B45C.2276 INVALID VALUE	687d.b45f.3190	3	11/14/2021 21:56:30	11/14/2021 17:56:29

! See the Response Code column.

To check whether AFC service request can be sent, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc ap
```

AP Name Radio	Radio MAC RF-Profile	AFC AFC Country	Power Mode Location	Current Height	AP Admin State	6GHz Admin
State	Admin State	tx-power	std	allowed	known	known
APCC9C.3EF1.1620 Yes	10f9.20fe.36a0 Yes	Inactive Yes	SP/LPi Yes	LPi Yes	Up	Down
AP687D.B45C.17AC Yes	687d.b45f.1af0 Yes	Active Yes	SP/LPi Yes	SP Yes	Up	Up
AP-ARCTIC Yes	fc58.9a18.c890 Yes	Inactive Yes	SP/LPi Yes	LPi No	Up	Up

To see AFC geolocation information to be used in an AFC Request, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless afc geolocation
```

AP Name Orientation	Radio MAC Area-of-uncert	Location Height	Longitude Uncertainty	Latitude (degrees)	Major-axis (meters)	Minor-axis (meters)
(degrees)	(sq. meters)	Type	(meters)	(degrees)	(meters)	(meters)
AP687D.B45C.16A4	687d.b45f.0e90	Lin Polygon	-122.400140	37.794910		

```

1122          AGL      150      6
                                -122.399340 37.795020
                                -122.399180 37.794390
                                -122.400040 37.794270
AP687D.B45C.17AC 687d.b45f.1af0 Ellipse -73.977760 40.760168 9 9
5.340000 254          AGL      129      3

```

! The afc geolocation information given in the output refers to coordinates to be used for future AFC requests.

! They do not represent the coordinates used by past AFC requests; for such info see AFC responses in 'show wireless afc response' command.

.
.
.

To see geolocation information of a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.17AC afc geolocation
```

```

Location type           : Ellipse
Center ellipse - longitude : -73.977769
Center ellipse - latitude  : 40.760168
Ellipse major-axis (meters) : 8
Ellipse minor-axis (meters) : 8
Ellipse orientation       : 2.5
Height (meters)          : 129
Uncertainty (meters)     : 3

```

To see the response from AFC for a service request from an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.17AC afc response
```

```

AP name           : AP687D.B45C.17AC
AP MAC Address    : 687d.b45f.1af0
Response Code     : SUCCESS
Request ID        : 2
Expire Time       : 11/14/2021 21:56:30
Last Rcvd Time    : 11/14/2021 17:56:29
Global Operating Class : 131
  Channel Cfi / Max Eirp :
    1      / 36.000000
    5      / 33.668693
    9      / 36.000000
   13      / 36.000000
   17      / 35.223532
   21      / 36.000000
   25      / 36.000000
   29      / 36.000000
   33      / 26.664962
   37      / 27.799478
   41      / 36.000000
   45      / 36.000000
   49      / 36.000000
   53      / 36.000000

```

.
.
.

To see the details of an RF profile, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap rf-profile name default-rf-profile-6ghz detail
```

```
Description : default rfprofile for 6GHz radio
```



```

RF Profile Name           : default-rf-profile-6ghz
Band                     : 6 GHz
Transmit Power Threshold v1 : -70 dBm
Min Transmit Power       : -10 dBm
Max Transmit Power       : 30 dBm
Operational Rates
  802.11 6GHZ 6M Rate      : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 9M Rate      : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 12M Rate     : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 18M Rate     : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 24M Rate     : Mandatory
  802.11 6GHZ 36M Rate     : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 48M Rate     : Supported
  802.11 6GHZ 54M Rate     : Supported
Max Clients               : 200
Trap Threshold
  Clients                 : 12 clients
  Interference             : 10%
  Noise                   : -70 dBm
  Utilization              : 80%
Multicast Data Rate       : auto
Rx SOP Threshold          : auto
Load Balancing
  Window                  : 5 clients
  Denial                   : 3 count
Coverage Data
  Data                    : -80 dBm
  Voice                   : -80 dBm
  Minimum Client Level    : 3 clients
  Exception Level         : 25%
RSSI Settings
  RSSI Low Check          : Disabled
  RSSI Threshold          : -127 dbm
DCA Channel List          :
Unused Channel List       :
PSC Channel List          :
DCA Bandwidth             : best
DBS Min Channel Width     : 20 MHz
DBS Max Channel Width     : MAX ALLOWED
DCA Foreign AP Contribution : Enabled
State                     : Up
  Client utilization threshold : 5%
  Client Reset count         : 1
Client Network Preference : default
802.11ax
  OBSS PD                 : Disabled
  Non-SRG OBSS PD Maximum : -62 dBm
  SRG OBSS PD             : Disabled
  SRG OBSS PD Minimum     : -82 dBm
  SRG OBSS PD Maximum     : -62 dBm
  Broadcast Probe Response : Disabled
  FILS Discovery           : Disabled
  Multi-BSSID Profile Name : default-multi-bssid-profile
NDP mode                  : Auto
Guard Interval            : 800ns
PSC Enforcement           : Disabled
Standard-Power mode       : Allowed

```

To see AFC power-mode of a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```

Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.17AC dot11 6ghz power-mode

Standard-power mode      : Allowed

```

To see the 802.11 parameter configuration of a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.1908 config dot11 6ghz
```

```
AP 6GHZ Power Mode           : Low Power Indoor
Low Power Indoor Capable     : Yes
Standard Power Capable       : Yes
```

To see detailed information about AFC events for a Cisco AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap name AP687D.B45C.1908 afc detail
```

AFC event history

Timestamp	Event	AFC Status	Context
08/07/2023 16:07:01.244077	AFC_EVT_REQ_RESP_RECEIVED	Active	ReqId
12195125900336565037	Response code: 0; SUCCESS		
08/07/2023 16:06:55.491957	AFC_EVT_REQ_SENT	Inactive	ReqId
12195125900336565037	Sent to AFC System		
08/07/2023 16:06:51.823938	AFC_EVT_REQ_QUEUED	Inactive	AFC request queued:
	immediate scheduling		
08/07/2023 15:28:54.608117	AFC_EVT_REQ_INACTIVE	Inactive	No location
	information available; No height information available;		



PART XVIII

Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour

- [Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview, on page 2187](#)
- [Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains, on page 2199](#)
- [Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2241](#)
- [Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2261](#)
- [Configuration Example for Local Mode - Wireless and Wired, on page 2283](#)
- [Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired, on page 2301](#)



CHAPTER 201

Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview

- [About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution, on page 2187](#)
- [Solution Components, on page 2188](#)
- [Supported Platforms, on page 2189](#)
- [Supported Network Design, on page 2190](#)

About the Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution

The Apple Bonjour protocol is a zero-configuration solution that simplifies rich services and enables intuitive experience between connected devices, services, and applications. Using Bonjour, you can discover and use IT-managed, peer-to-peer, audio and video, or Internet of Things (IoT) services with minimal intervention and technical knowledge. Bonjour is originally designed for single Layer 2 small to mid-size networks, such as home or branch networks. The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour solution eliminates the single Layer 2 domain constraint and expands the matrix to enterprise-grade traditional wired and wireless networks, including overlay networks such as Cisco Software-Defined Access (SD-Access) and industry-standard BGP EVPN with VXLAN. The Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series LAN switches, Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches, and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller follow the industry standard, RFC 6762-based multicast DNS (mDNS) specification to support interoperability with various compatible wired and wireless consumer products in enterprise networks.

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center enables mDNS service routing to advertise and discover services across enterprise-grade wired and wireless networks. The new-distributed architecture is designed to eliminate mDNS flood boundaries and transition to unicast-based service routing, providing policy enforcement points and enabling the management of Bonjour services.

The following figure illustrates how the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application operates across two integrated service-routing domains.

Figure 48: Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Solution Architecture



- **Local Area Service Discovery Gateway Domain - Unicast Mode:** The new enhanced Layer 2 unicast policy-based deployment model. The new mDNS service discovery and distribution using the Layer 2 unicast address enables flood-free LAN and wireless networks. Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches and Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller in Layer 2 mode introduce a new service-peer role, replacing the classic flood-n-learn, for new unicast-based service routing support in the network. The service-peer switch and wireless controller also replace mDNS flood-n-learn with unicast-based communication with any RFC 6762 mDNS-compatible wired and wireless endpoints.
- **Wide-Area Service Discovery Gateway Domain:** The Wide Area Bonjour domain is a controller-based solution. The Bonjour gateway role and responsibilities of Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches are extended from a single SDG switch to an SDG agent, enabling Wide Area Bonjour service routing beyond a single IP gateway. The network-wide distributed SDG agent devices establish a lightweight, stateful, and reliable communication channel with a centralized Catalyst Center controller running the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application. The SDG agents route locally discovered services based on the export policy.

**Note**

The classic Layer 2 multicast flood-n-learn continues to be supported on wired and wireless networks with certain restrictions to support enhanced security and location-based policy enforcement. The Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches at Layer 3 boundary function as an SDG to discover and distribute services between local wired or wireless VLANs based on applied policies.

Solution Components

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour solution is an end-to-end solution that includes the following key components and system roles to enable unicast-based service routing across the local area and Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- **Cisco Service Peer:** Cisco Catalyst Switches and Cisco Wireless Controllers in Layer 2 access function in service peer mode to support unicast-based communication with local attached endpoints and export service information to the upstream Cisco Catalyst SDG agent in the distribution layer.



Note Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches don't support unicast-based service routing with downstream Layer 2 access network devices.

- **Cisco SDG Agent:** Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches function as an SDG agent and communicate with the Bonjour service endpoints in Layer 3 access mode. At the distribution layer, the SDG agent aggregates information from the downstream Cisco service peer switch and wireless controller, or local Layer 2 networks, and exports information to the central Catalyst Center controller.



Note Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches don't support multilayer LAN-unicast deployment mode.

- **Catalyst Center controller:** The Catalyst Center controller builds the Wide Area Bonjour domain with network-wide and distributed trusted SDG agents using a secure communication channel for centralized services management and controlled service routing.
- **Endpoints:** A Bonjour endpoint is any device that advertises or queries Bonjour services conforming to RFC 6762. The Bonjour endpoints can be in either LANs or WLANs. The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application is designed to integrate with RFC 6762-compliant Bonjour services, including AirPlay, Google Chrome cast, AirPrint, and so on.

Supported Platforms

The following table lists the supported controllers, along with the supported hardware and software versions.

Table 142: Supported Controllers with Supported Hardware and Software Versions

Supported Controller	Hardware	Software Version
Catalyst Center appliance	DN2-HW-APL DN2-HW-APL-L DN2-HW-APL-XL	Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.7.6
Catalyst Center on ESXi	—	Catalyst Center, Release 2.3.7.6
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center	—	2.4.718.75196
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center on ESXi	—	2.718.77018

The following table lists the supported SDG agents along with their licenses and software requirements.

Table 143: Supported SDG Agents with Supported License and Software Requirements

Supported Platform	Supported Role	Local Area SDG	Wide Area SDG	Minimum Software
Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches	SDG agent Service peer	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9200L Series Switches	SDG agent Service peer	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9300 and 9300-X Series Switches	Service peer SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9400 and 9400-X Series Switches	Service peer SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9500 and 9500-X Series Switches	Service peer SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9500 High Performance Series Switches	Service peer SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9600 and 9600-X Series Switches	Service peer SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9800 Wireless Controller	Service peer	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Catalyst 9800-L Wireless Controller	Service peer	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco IOS XE Release 17.11.1
Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches	SDG agent	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco DNA Advantage	Cisco NX-OS Release 10.2(3)F

Supported Network Design

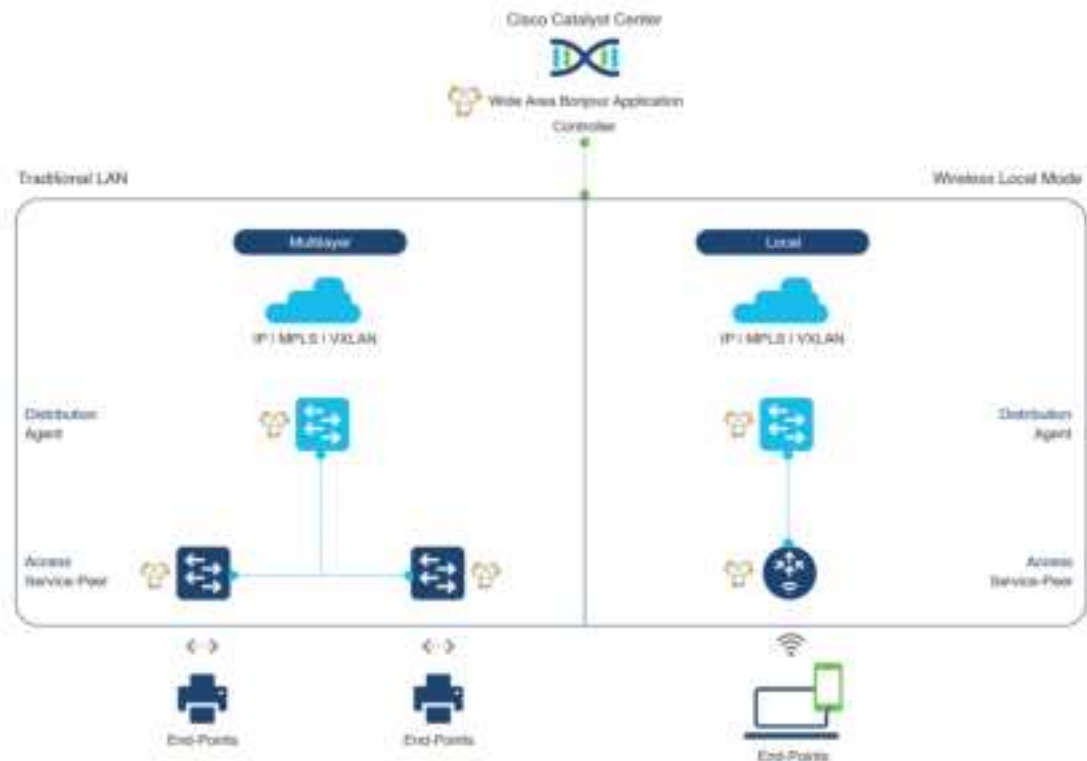
The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports a broad range of enterprise-grade networks. The end-to-end unicast-based Bonjour service routing is supported on traditional, Cisco SD-Access, and BGP EVPN-enabled wired and wireless networks.

Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks

Traditional networks are classic Layer 2 or Layer 3 networks for wired and wireless modes deployed in enterprise networks. Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports a broad range of network designs to enable end-to-end service routing and replace flood-n-learn-based deployment with a unicast mode-based solution.

The following figure illustrates traditional LAN and central-switching wireless local mode network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise.

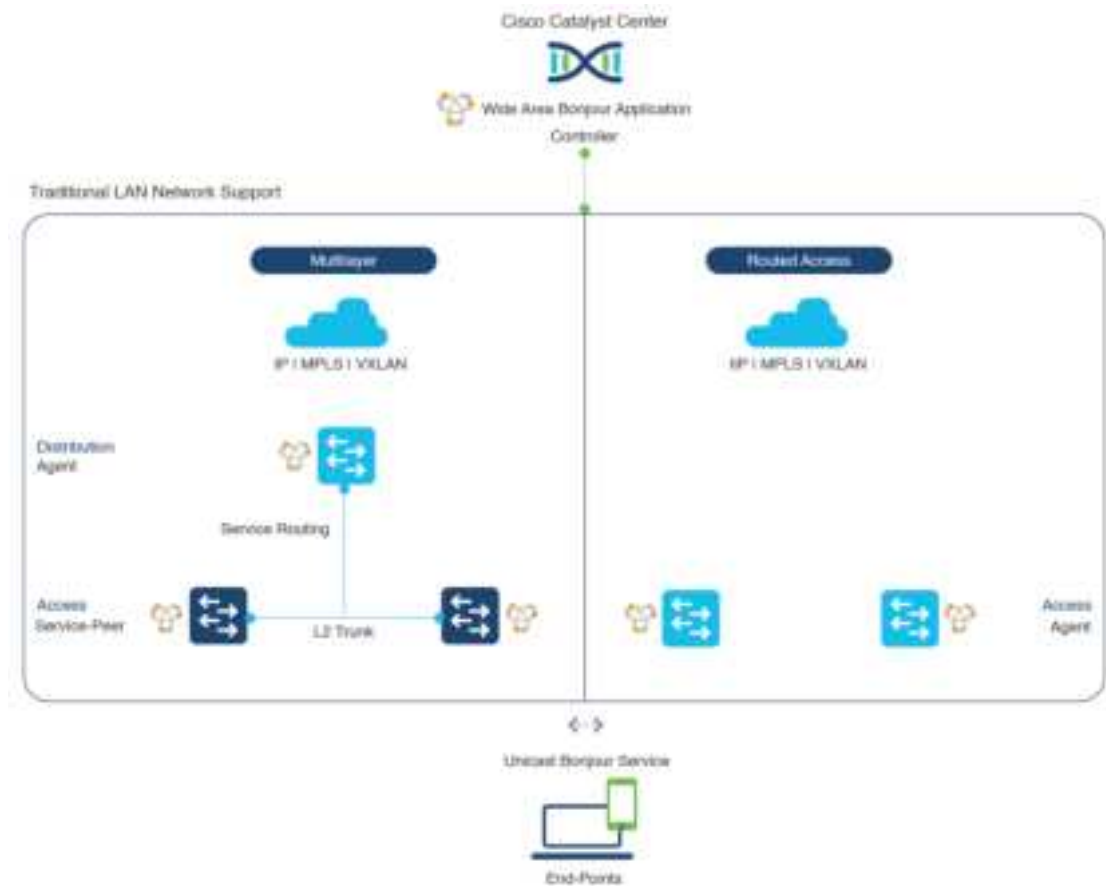
Figure 49: Enterprise Traditional LAN and Wireless Local Mode Network Design



Wired Networks

The following figure shows the supported traditional LAN network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise.

Figure 50: Enterprise Wired Multilayer and Routed Access Network Design



The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches in SDG agent role that provide Bonjour gateway functions are typically IP gateways for wired endpoints that could reside in the distribution layer in multilayer network designs, or in the access layer in Layer 3 routed access network designs:

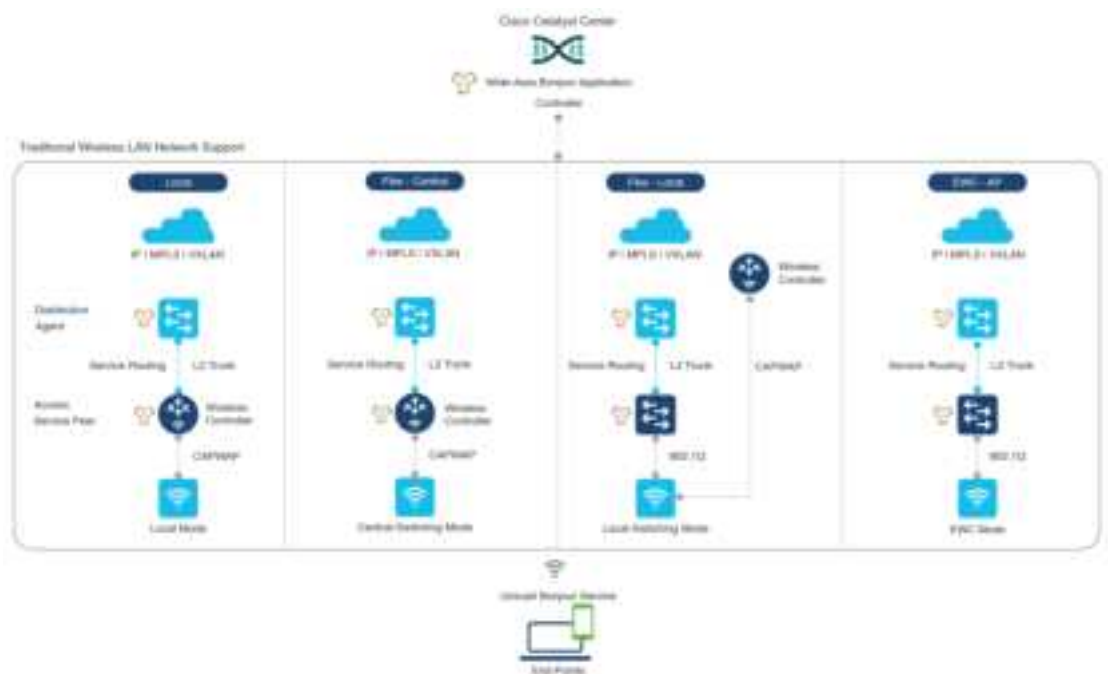
- **Multilayer LAN—Unicast Mode:** In this deployment mode, the Layer 2 access switch provides the first-hop mDNS gateway function to locally attached wired endpoints. In unicast mode, the mDNS services are routed to the distribution layer systems providing IP gateway and SDG agent mode. The policy-based service routing between the SDG agents is performed by the Catalyst Center controller.
- **Multilayer LAN—Flood-n-Learn Mode:** In this deployment mode, the Layer 2 access switch or wireless controller are in mDNS passthrough modes with the Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switches operating in the SDG agent mode. The mDNS gateway function at distribution layer in a network enables inter-VLAN mDNS local proxy. It also builds stateful Wide Area Bonjour unicast service routing with the Catalyst Center to discover or distribute mDNS services beyond a single IP gateway.
- **Routed Access:** In this deployment mode, the first-hop Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus 9300 Series Switch is an IP gateway boundary and, therefore, it must also perform the SDG agent role. The policy-based service routing between the SDG agents is performed by the Catalyst Center controller.

Wireless Networks

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour extends the single wireless controller mDNS gateway function into the Wide Area Bonjour solution. The mDNS gateway on Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller can be deployed in an enhanced mode as a service peer. In this mode, the wireless controller builds unicast service routing with an upstream Cisco Catalyst gateway switch for end-to-end mDNS service discovery. It replaces the classic flood-n-learn mDNS services from wired network using mDNS AP or other methods.

The following figure shows the supported traditional wireless LAN network designs that are commonly deployed in an enterprise. Based on the wireless network design, the mDNS gateway function may be on the wireless controller, or first-hop Layer 2 or Layer 3 Ethernet switch of an Access Point in local-switching mode.

Figure 51: Enterprise Traditional Wireless LAN Network Design



The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports the following modes for wireless LAN networks:

- Local Mode:** In the central switching wireless deployment mode, the m-DNS traffic from local mode Cisco access points is terminated on the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller extends the mDNS gateway function to the new service peer mode. The wireless controller can discover and distribute services to local wireless users and perform unicast service routing over a wireless management interface to the upstream Cisco Catalyst Switch in the distribution layer, which acts as the IP gateway and the SDG agent.
- FlexConnect—Central:** The mDNS gateway function for Cisco access point in FlexConnect central switch SSID functions consistently as described in **Local Mode**. The new extended mDNS gateway mode on the Cisco Wireless Controller and upstream service routing with SDG agent operate consistently to discover services across network based on policies and locations.
- FlexConnect—Local:** In FlexConnect local switching mode, the Layer 2 access switch in mDNS gateway service peer mode provides the policy-based mDNS gateway function to locally attached wired and wireless users. The Cisco Catalyst Switches in the distribution layer function as SDG agents and enable

mDNS service-routing across all Layer 2 ethernet switches to support unicast-based service routing to LAN and wireless LAN user groups.

- **Embedded Wireless Controller—Access Point:** The Layer 2 access switch in service peer mode provides unified mDNS gateway function to wired and wireless endpoints associated with Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller on Cisco Catalyst 9100 Series Access Points. The SDG agent in the distribution layer provides unicast service routing across all Layer 2 service peer switches in the Layer 2 network block without any mDNS flooding.

Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Networks

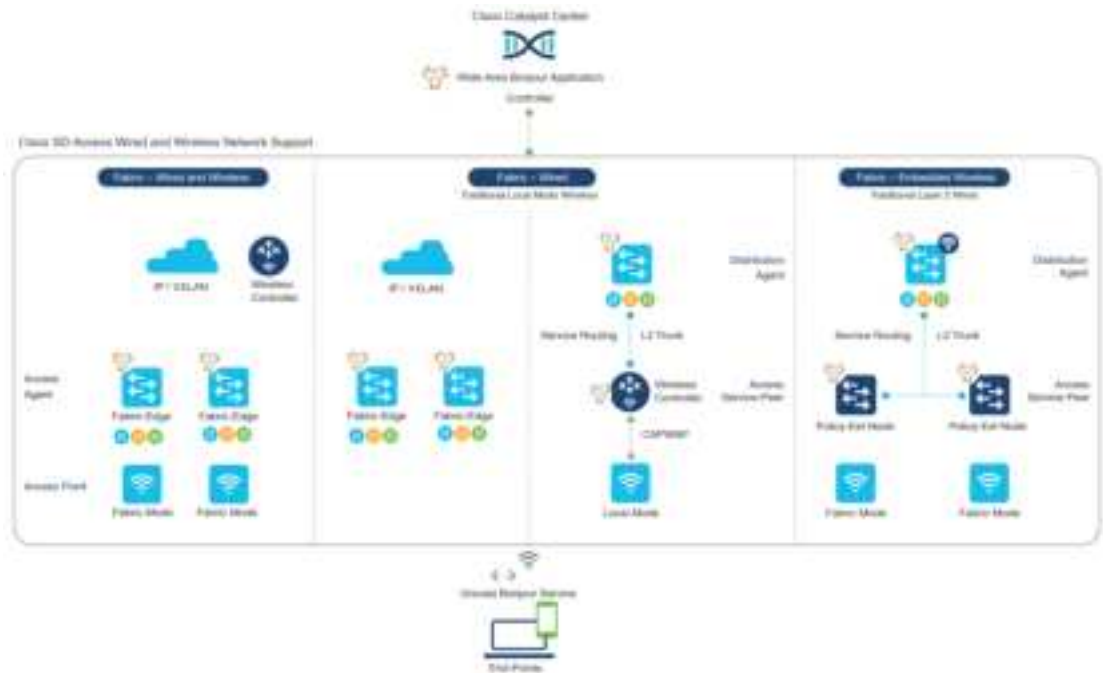
Cisco SD-Access-enabled wired and wireless networks support Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour across fabric networks. The Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches support VRF-aware Wide Area Bonjour service routing to provide secure and segmented mDNS service discovery and distribution management for virtual networks. The VRF-aware unicast service routing eliminates the need to extend Layer 2 flooding, and improves the scale and performance of the fabric core network and endpoints.

Figure 52: Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Network Design



Cisco SD-Access supports flexible wired and wireless network design alternatives to manage fully distributed, integrated, and backward-compatible traditional network infrastructure. Wide Area Bonjour service routing is supported in all network designs providing intuitive user experience. The following figure illustrates the various SD-Access enabled wired and wireless network design alternatives.

Figure 53: Cisco SD-Access Wired and Wireless Network Design Alternatives



The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour for SD-Access enabled wired and fabric, or traditional mode-wireless networks use two-tier service routing providing end-to-end unicast-based mDNS solution. Based on the network design, each solution component is enabled in a unique role to support the Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- Fabric Edge SDG Agent:** The Layer 3 Cisco Catalyst Fabric Edge switch in the access layer configured as SDG agent provides unicast-based mDNS gateway function to the locally attached wired and wireless endpoints. The VRF-aware mDNS service policy provides network service security and segmentation in a virtual network environment. The mDNS services can be locally distributed and routed through centralized Catalyst Center.
- Policy Extended Node:** The Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst access layer switch enables first-hop mDNS gateway function without flooding across the Layer 2 broadcast domain. The unicast-based service routing with upstream Fabric Edge switch in the distribution layer enables mDNS service routing within the same Layer 2 network block. It can also perform remote service discovery and distribution from centralized Catalyst Center.
- Cisco Wireless Controller:** Based on the following wireless deployment modes, Cisco Wireless Controller supports unique function to enable mDNS service routing in Cisco SD-Access enabled network:
 - Fabric-Enabled Wireless:** Cisco Wireless Controller doesn't require any mDNS gateway capability to be enabled in distributed fabric-enabled wireless deployments.
 - Local Mode Wireless:** As Cisco Wireless Controller provides central control and data plane termination, it provides mDNS gateway in service peer mode for wireless endpoints. The wireless controller provides mDNS gateway between locally associated wireless clients. The wireless controller builds service routing with upstream SDG agent Catalyst switch providing IP gateway and service routing function for wireless endpoints.
 - Embedded Wireless Controller—Switch:** The Cisco Embedded Wireless Controller solution enables the lightweight integrated wireless controller function within the Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series

Switch. The Cisco Catalyst switches in the distribution layer function as SDG agents to the wired and wireless endpoints. The SDG agent in the distribution layer provides unicast service routing across all wireless access points and Layer 2 service peer switches without mDNS flooding.

- **Catalyst Center Controller:** The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application on Catalyst Center supports policy and location-based service discovery, and distribution between network-wide distributed Fabric Edge switches in SDG agent mode.

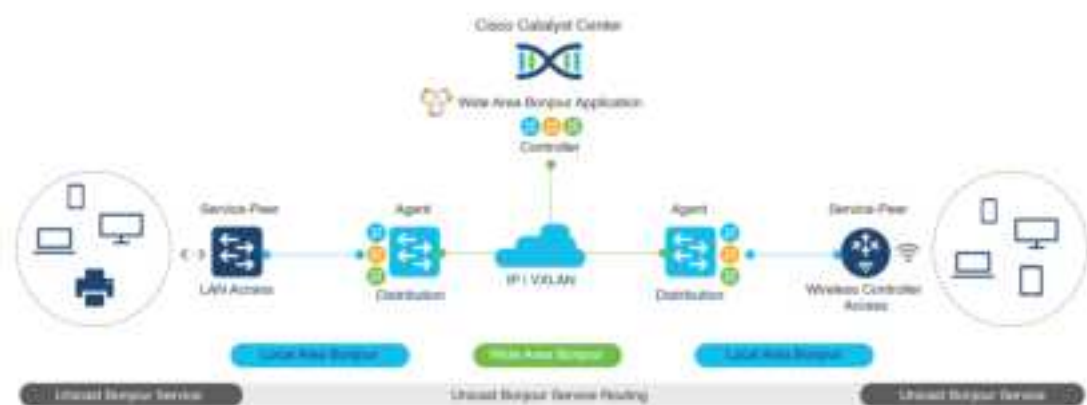
The Wide Area Bonjour communication between the SDG agent and controller takes place through the network underlay. Based on policies, the SDG agent forwards the endpoint announcements or queries to the Catalyst Center. After discovering a service, the endpoints can establish direct unicast communication through the fabric overlay in the same virtual network. The inter-virtual network unicast communication takes place through the Fusion router or external Firewall system. This communication is subject to the configured overlay IP routing and Security Group Tag (SGT) policies.

BGP EVPN Networks

The BGP EVPN-based technology provides a flexible Layer 3 segmentation and Layer 2 extension overlay network. The VRF and EVPN VXLAN-aware Wide Area Bonjour service routing provides secure and segmented mDNS service solution. The overlay networks eliminate mDNS flooding over EVPN-enabled Layer 2 extended networks and solve the service reachability challenges for Layer 3 segmented routed networks in the fabric.

The following figure shows the BGP EVPN leaf switch in the distribution layer, supporting overlay Bonjour service routing for a BGP EVPN-enabled traditional Layer 2 wired access switch and traditional wireless local mode enterprise network interconnected through various types of Layer 2 networks and Layer 3 segmented VRF-enabled networks.

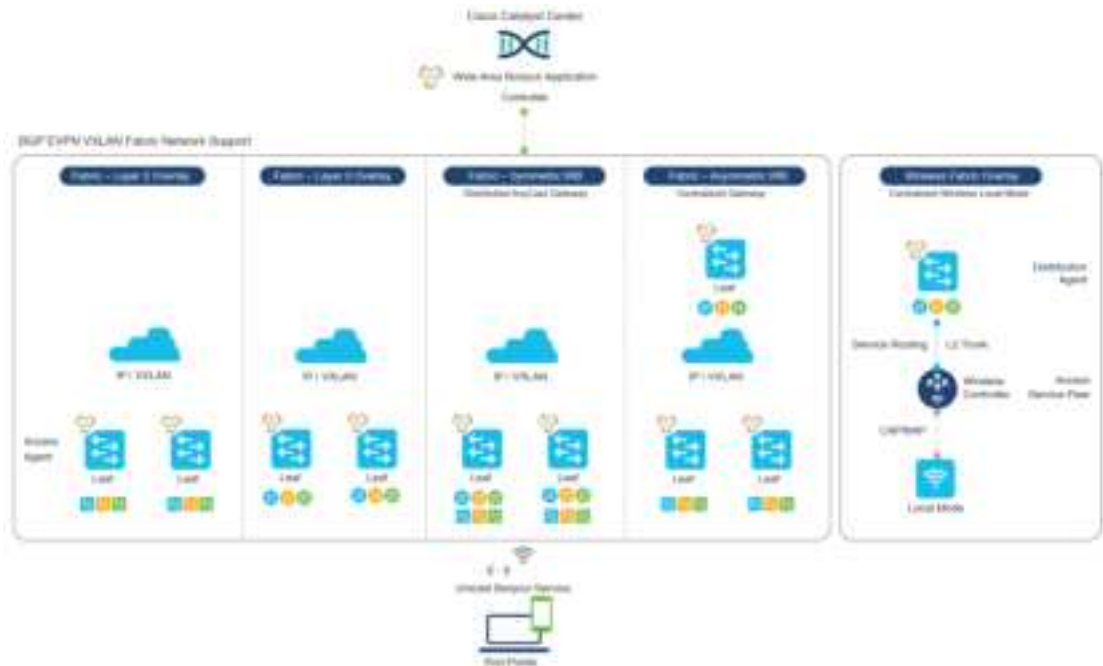
Figure 54: Overlay Bonjour Service for a BGP EVPN-Enabled Enterprise Network



Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports all the industry-standard overlay network designs enabling end-to-end unicast-based mDNS service routing, and preventing flooding and service boundary limitation across wired and wireless networks.

The following figure illustrates the various BGP EVPN VXLAN reference overlay network design alternatives. This network design enables end-to-end mDNS service discovery and distribution based on overlay network policies.

Figure 55: BGP EVPN VXLAN Wired and Wireless Design Alternatives



The Cisco Catalyst and Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches can be deployed in Layer 2 or Layer 3 leaf roles supporting mDNS service routing for a broad range of overlay networks. In any role, the mDNS communication is limited locally and supports end-to-end unicast-based service routing across Wide Area Bonjour domain:

- **Layer 2 Leaf SDG Agent:** The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus switches can be deployed as Layer 2 leaf supporting end-to-end bridged network with IP gateway within or beyond BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric network. By default, the mDNS is flooded as Broadcast, Unknown Unicast, Multicast (BUM) over the fabric-enabled core network. This mDNS flooding may impact network performance and security. The Layer 2 leaf, enabled as SDG agent, prevents mDNS flooding over VXLAN and supports unicast-based service routing.
- **Layer 3 Leaf SDG Agent:** The Cisco Catalyst or Cisco Nexus switches can be deployed as SDG agent supporting Layer 3 overlay network in BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric. The IP gateway and mDNS service boundary is terminated at the SDG agent switches and remote services can be discovered or distributed through centralized Catalyst Center.
- **Local Mode Wireless:** The centralized wireless local mode network can be terminated within or outside the EVPN VXLAN fabric domain to retain network segmentation and service discovery for wireless endpoints. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller in service peer mode can build unicast service routing with distribution layer IP and SDG agent Cisco Catalyst switch to discover services from BGP EVPN VXLAN fabric overlay network.
- **Catalyst Center:** Catalyst Center supports Wide Area Bonjour capability to dynamically discover and distribute mDNS services based on Layer 2 or Layer 3 Virtual Network ID (VNID) policies to route the mDNS services between SDG agent switches in the network.

For more information about BGP EVPN networks, see [Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x \(Catalyst 9600 Switches\)](#).



CHAPTER 202

Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains

- [Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview](#), on page 2199
- [Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains](#), on page 2211
- [Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware \(HSRP-aware\) mDNS Service-Routing on SDG](#), on page 2230
- [Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware \(HSRP-aware\) mDNS Service-Routing on Service-Peer \(CLI\)](#), on page 2230
- [Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS Mode for LAN and Wireless Networks](#), on page 2231
- [Additional References for DNA Service for Bonjour](#), on page 2237
- [Feature History for Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour](#), on page 2237

Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview

Restrictions

- Cisco Service Discovery Gateway (SDG) and Wide Area Bonjour gateway function is supported on Cisco Catalyst Switch and Cisco ISR 4000 series routers. See [Solution Components](#), on page 2188 for the complete list of supporting platforms, software versions and license levels.
- Cisco IOS supports classic and new method of building local Bonjour configuration policies. The classic method is based on **service-list mdns-sd** CLI whereas the new method is based on **mdns-sd gateway**. We recommend using the new **mdns-sd gateway** method since the classic configuration support will be deprecated in near future releases.
- The classic to new method CLI migration is manual procedure to convert the configuration.
- The Bonjour service policies on Cisco SDG Gateways are effective between local VLANs. In addition to these, a specific egress policy controls the type of services to be exported to the controller. The Layer 2 Multicast-DNS Bonjour communication between two end-points on same broadcast domain is transparent to gateway.
- To enable end-to-end Wide Area Bonjour solution on Wireless networks, the Cisco WLC controller must not enable mDNS Snooping function. The upstream IP gateway on the dedicated Cisco Catalyst switch must have the Bonjour gateway function enabled for wireless clients.

- Cisco Wireless LAN Controller must enable AP Multicast with unique Multicast group. Without AP joining WLC Multicast group the mDNS messages will not be processed between client and gateway switch. Multicast on Client SSID or VLAN is optional for other multicast applications and not mandatory or required for Bonjour solution.
- Cisco Catalyst 9800 WLC can be configured as mDNS Gateway. In this mode, the Cisco Catalyst 9800 WLC supports Local-Area Bonjour gateway solution limited to Wireless only networks. Cisco Catalyst 9800 does not support Wide Area Bonjour. For end-to-end Wired and Wireless Bonjour support, we recommend using upstream Cisco Catalyst Switch as IP and Bonjour gateway.

Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Service Workflow

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour solution follows a client-server model. The SDG Agent functions as a client and the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application Cisco Catalyst Center functions as a server.

The following sections describe the workflow of service announcement and discovery in the IP network.

Announcing Services to the Network

- The endpoint devices (Source) in the Local Area Bonjour domain send service announcements to the SDG Agent and specify what services they offer. For example, `_airplay._tcp.local`, `_raop._tcp.local`, `_ipp._tcp.local`, and so on.
- The SDG Agent listens to these announcements and matches them against the configured Local Area SDG Agent policies. If the announcement matches the configured policies, the SDG Agent accepts the service announcement and routes the service to the controller.

Discovering Services Available in the Network

- The endpoint device (Receiver) connected to the Local Area SDG Agent sends a Bonjour query to discover the services available, using the mDNS protocol.
- If the query conforms to configured policies, SDG Agent responds with the services obtained from appropriate service routing via the Wide Area Bonjour Controller.

Wide Area Bonjour Multi-Tier Policies

The various policies that can be used to control the Bonjour announcements and queries are classified as the following:

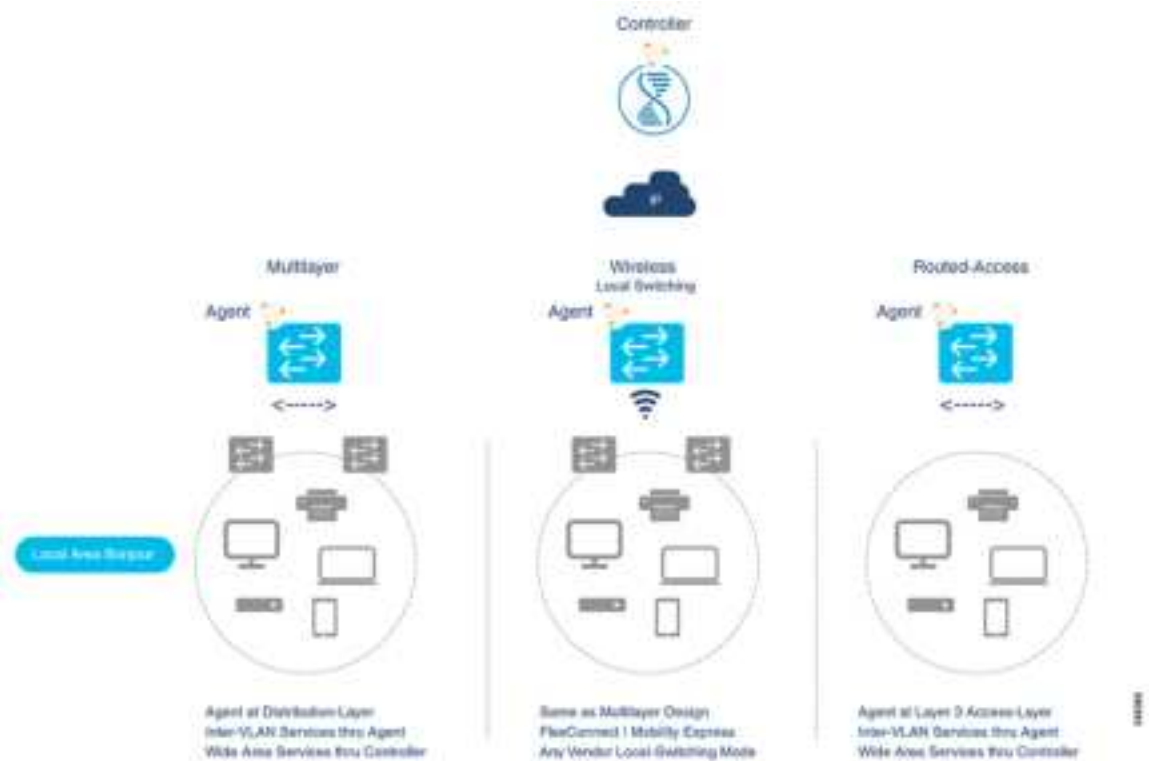
- **Local Area SDG Agent Filters:** Enforced on the SDG Agent in Layer-2 Network Domain. These bi-directional policies control the Bonjour announcements or queries between the SDG Agents and the Bonjour endpoints.
- **Wide Area SDG Agent Filters:** Enforced on the SDG Agent for export control to the Controller. This egress unidirectional policy controls the service routing from the SDG Agent to the controller.
- **Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Policy:** Enforced on Controller for global service discovery and distribution. Policy enforcement, between the controller and the IP network is bi-directional.

Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Supported Network Design

Traditional Wired and Wireless Networks

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour supports various LAN network designs commonly deployed in the enterprise. The SDG Agent providing Bonjour gateway functions is typically an IP gateway for wired end-points that could be residing in the distribution layer in multilayer network designs, or in the access layer in routed access network designs.

The following figure shows various topologies which are explained further in the section.



- **Multilayer LAN:** In this deployment mode, the Layer 2 Access switch provides the transparent bridging function of Bonjour services to Distribution-layer systems that act as the IP gateway and SDG Agent. There is no additional configuration or new requirement to modify the existing Layer-2 trunk settings between the Access and Distribution Layer Cisco Catalyst Switches.
- **Routed Access:** In this deployment mode, the first-hop switch is an IP gateway boundary and therefore, it must be combined with the SDG Agent role.

The Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour also supports various Wireless LAN network designs commonly deployed in the Enterprise. The SDG Agent provides consistent Bonjour gateway functions for the wireless endpoints as in wired networks. In general, the IP gateway of the wireless clients is also a Bonjour gateway. However, the placement of the SDG Agent may vary depending on the Wireless LAN deployment mode.

Cisco SD Access Wired and Wireless Networks

In Cisco SD-Access network, the Fabric Edge switch is configured as the SDG Agent for fabric-enabled wired and wireless networks. Wide Area Bonjour policies need to be aligned with the SD-Access network policies with respect to Virtual Networks and SGT policies, if any.



Wide Area Bonjour uses two logical components in a network:

- **SDG Agent:** The Fabric Edge switch is configured as the SDG Agent, and the configuration is added only after the SD-Access is configured.
- **Wide Area Bonjour Controller:** The Wide Area Bonjour application in the Cisco Catalyst Center acts as the Controller.

The Wide Area Bonjour communication between the SDG Agent and the Controller takes place through the network underlay. The SDG Agent forwards the endpoint announcements or queries to the Controller through the fabric underlay. After discovering a service, a Bonjour-enabled application establishes direct unicast communication with the discovered device through the fabric overlay. This communication is subject to any configured routing and SDG policies.

Local and Wide Area Bonjour Policies

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour policy is divided into four unique function to enable policy based Bonjour services discovery and distribution in two-tier domains. The network administrator must identify the list of Bonjour services that needs to be enabled and set the discovery boundary that can be limited to local or global based on requirements. Figure below illustrates enforcement point and direction of all four types of Bonjour policies at the SDG Agent level and in Cisco Catalyst Center Wide Area Bonjour application:

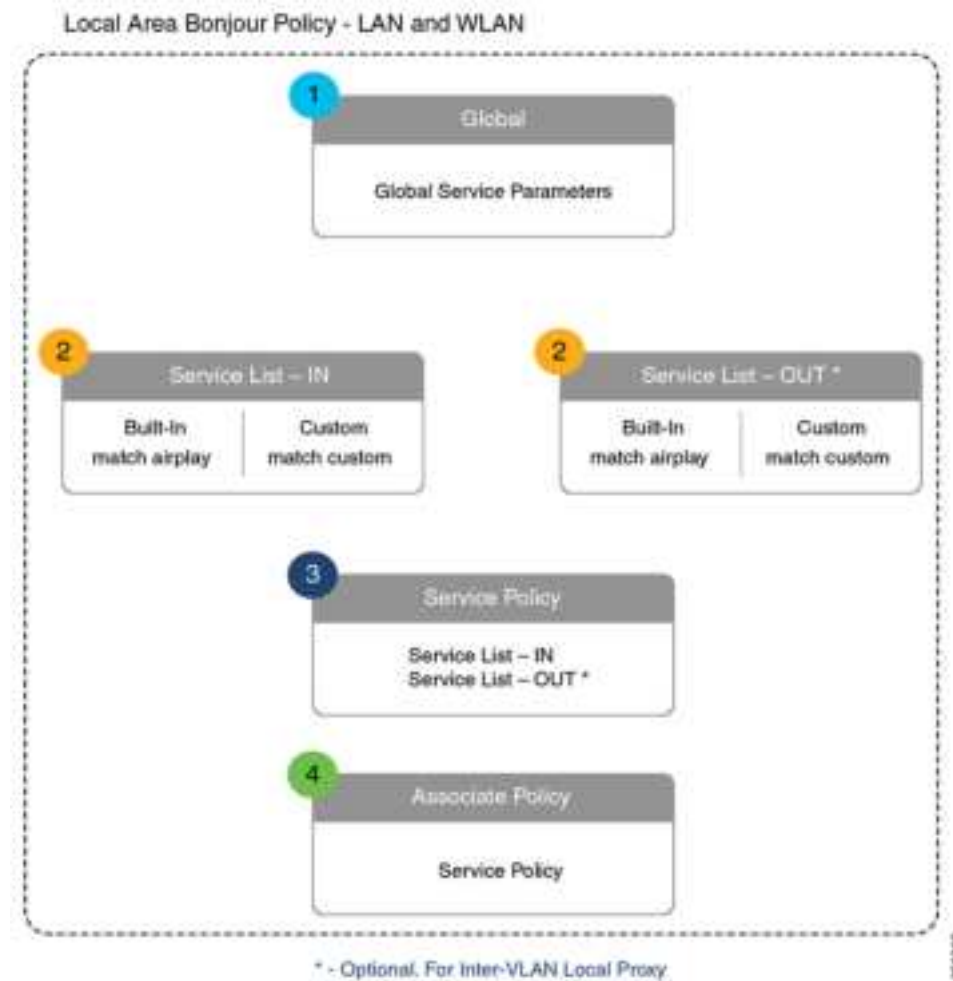


Local Area Bonjour Policy

The Cisco IOS Bonjour policy structure is greatly simplified and scalable with the new configuration mode. The services can be enabled with intuitive user-friendly service-type instead individual mDNS PoinTeR (PTR) records types, for example select AirPlay that automatically enables video and audio service support from Apple TV or equivalent capable devices. Several common types of services in Enterprise can be enabled with built-in service-types. If built-in service type is limited, network administrator can create custom service-type and enable the service distribution in the network.

The policy configuration for the Local Area Bonjour domain is mandatory, and is a three step process. Figure below illustrates the step-by-step procedure to build the Local-Area Bonjour policy, and apply to enable the gateway function on selected local networks:

Figure 56: Local Area Bonjour Policy Hierarchy



To configure local area Bonjour policies, enable mDNS globally. For the device to receive mDNS packets on the interface, configure mDNS gateway on the interface. Create a service-list by using filter options within it allow services into or out of a device or interface. After enabling mDNS gateway globally and on the interface, you can apply filters (IN-bound filtering or OUT-bound filtering) on service discovery information by using **service-policy** commands.

Built-In Service List

The Cisco IOS software includes built-in list of services that may consist of one more Bonjour service-type. A single service-list may contain more than one service-type entries with default rule to accept service announcement from service-provider and the service query request from receiver end-points. If selected service-type contains more than one Bonjour service-types (PTR), then a service announcement or a service query is honored when the announcement/query is for any one of these included Bonjour service-types. For example, Apple Time Capsule Data service-type consists of both `_adisk` and `_afpovertcp` built-in PTRs, however if any end-point announces or requests for only `_afpovertcp` service, then SDG Agent will successfully classify and process the announcement or request. The service-list contains implicit-deny for all un-defined built-in or custom services entries.

Table below illustrates complete list of built-in Bonjour services that can be used to create policies in local area Bonjour.

Table 144: Cisco IOS Built-In Bonjour Service Database

Service	Service Name	mDNS PTRs
Airplay	airplay	_airplay._tcp.local
Apple TV	apple-tv	_airplay._tcp.local _raop._tcp.local
Audinate	audinate	_dante-safe._udp.local _dante-upgr._udp.local _netaudio-arc._udp.local _netaudio-chan._udp.local _netaudio-cmc._udp.local _netaudio-dbc._udp.local
AirServer Mirroring Service	airserver	_airplay._tcp.local _airserver._tcp.local
Apple AirTunes	airtunes	_raop._tcp.local
Amazon Fire TV	amazon-fire-tv	_amzn-wplay._tcp.local
Apple AirPrint	apple-airprint	_ipp._tcp.local _universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local
Apple TV 2	apple-continuity	_companion-link._tcp.local
Apple File Share	apple-file-share	_afpovertcp._tcp.local
Apple HomeKit	apple-homekit	_homekit._ipp.local _hap._tcp.local
Apple iTunes Library	apple-itunes-library	_atc._tcp.local
Apple iTunes Music	apple-itunes-music	_daap._tcp.local
Apple iTunes Photo	apple-itunes-photo	_dpap._tcp.local
Apple KeyNote Remote Control	apple-keynote	_keynotecontrol._tcp.local _keynotepair._tcp.local
Apple Remote Desktop	apple-rdp	_afpovertcp._tcp.local _net-assistant._tcp.local
Apple Remote Event	apple-remote-events	_eppc._tcp.local

Service	Service Name	mDNS PTRs
Apple Remote Login	apple-remote-login	_sftp-ssh._tcp.local _ssh._tcp.local
Apple Screen Share	apple-screen-share	_rfb._tcp.local
Google Expeditions	google-expeditions	_googexpeditions._tcp.local
Apple Time Capsule Data	apple-timecapsule	_adisk._tcp.local _afpovertcp._tcp.local
Apple Time Capsule Management	apple-timecapsule-mgmt	_airport._tcp.local
Apple MS Window File Share	apple-windows-fileshare	_smb._tcp.local
Fax	fax	_fax-ipp._tcp.local
Google ChromeCast	google-chromecast	_googlecast._tcp.local _googlerpc._tcp.local _googlezone._tcp.local
Apple HomeSharing	homesharing	_home-sharing._tcp.local
Apple iTunes Data Sync	itunes-wireless-devicesharing2	_apple-mobdev2._tcp.local
Multifunction Printer	multifunction-printer	_ipp._tcp.local _scanner._tcp.local _fax-ipp._tcp.local
Phillips Hue Lights	phillips-hue-lights	_hap._tcp.local
Printer – Internet Printing Protocol	printer-ipp	_ipp._tcp.local
Printer – IPP over SSL	printer-ipp	_ipps._tcp.local
Linux Printer – Line Printer Daemon	printer-lpd	_printer._tcp.local
Printer Socket	printer-socket	_pdl-datastream._tcp.local
Roku Media Player	roku	_rsp._tcp.local
Scanner	scanner	_scanner._tcp.local
Spotify Music Service	spotify	_spotify-connect._tcp.local
Web-Server	web-server	_http._tcp.local
WorkStation	workstation	_workstation._tcp.local

Custom Service List

The Custom service list allows network administrator to configure service if built-in Bonjour database does not support specific service or bundled service types. For example, the file-sharing requirement demands to support Apple Filing Protocol (AFP) between macOS users and Server Message Block (SMB) file transfer capability between macOS and Microsoft Windows devices. For such requirements the network administrator can create an custom service list combining AFP (`_afpovertcp._tcp.local`) and SMB (`_smb._tcp.local`).

The Service-List provides flexibility to network administrator to combine built-in and custom service definition under single list. There is no restriction on numbers of custom service definitions list and association to single service-list.

Policy Direction

The Local Area Bonjour policy in Cisco IOS provides flexibility to network administrator to construct service policies that can align service announcement and query management in same or different local networks. The service-policies can be tied to either ingress or egress direction to enforce service control in both directions. The following sub-sections provide more details on service policy configuration.

Ingress Service Policy

The ingress service policy is a mandatory configuration element that is used to permit the processing of incoming mDNS service announcement and query requests. Without ingress service policy, the Bonjour gateway function on a targeted Wired or Wireless network is not enabled. The ingress service policy provides flexibility to permit service announcement and query on each user-defined service-types, i.e. permit accepting AirPlay service announcement and query request, but enable Printer service query request only.

Egress Service Policy

The egress service policy is an optional configuration and not required in following two conditions:

- The egress service policy is not applicable in local VLAN where the expected Bonjour end-points are service-provider only, i.e. Service-VLAN network may contain only IT managed service-provider end-points such as Apple TV, Printers etc. as these end-points do not query for other service-types in the network.
- The Wired or Wireless users must receive services only from Wide Area Bonjour domain by Cisco Catalyst Center, and not from other Bonjour end points connected to the same SDG Agent.. The egress service policy configuration is only required when an SDG-Agent must distribute locally discovered Bonjour services information from one VLAN to other. For example, based on ingress service policy the SDG-Agent discovered and cache the AirPrint capable Printer from VLAN-A, if the receiver endpoint in VLAN-B wants to discover Printer information from VLAN-A then the SDG-Agent must have ingress and egress service policy permitting AirPrint service on both VLANs.

Conditional Egress Service Policy

The network administrator can optionally customize the egress service policy to enable conditional service response from sourced from specific VLAN network. For example, based on ingress service policy the SDG-Agent may discover AirPrint capable Printers from VLAN-A and VLAN-C networks. With conditional Local Area Bonjour egress service policy rule, the network administrator may limit distributing Printer information discovered from VLAN-A to the receivers in VLAN-B network and automatically filters VLAN-C Printers. The conditional egress service policy support is optional setting and only applicable on out direction service policy.

Service Status Timer Management

The Bonjour service-provider end-points may announce one or more services in the network combining mDNS records and time-to-live (TTL) service timers for each record. The TTL value provides assurance of end-point availability and serviceability in the network. The SDG Agents ensure that it contains up-to-date information in its local and updates global services in the Controller based on TTL and other events in the Local Area Bonjour domain. The network administrator must configure the service status timer where service-provider endpoint discovery is permitted.

Wide Area Bonjour Policy

The SDG-Agent mandatorily requires the controller bound Wide Area Bonjour service export policy to control routing local services and discover remote services from the Cisco Catalyst Center. As the Cisco Catalyst Center and SDG-Agent build a trusted communication channel, the remote service response from the Wide Area Bonjour App is implicitly permitted at the SDG-Agent. Hence the Wide Area Bonjour policy is unidirectional; it only requires egress service policy towards the controller.

The Wide Area Bonjour policy hierarchy and structure is identical as described in the Local Area Bonjour Policy structure section. The following sub-section provides step-by-step reference configuration to build and enforce the policy to enable the successful communication with the Wide Area Bonjour App in the Cisco Catalyst Center.

Service List – Built-In and Custom

The network administrator must create a new controller-bound egress service list for the Wide Area Bonjour domain. In most common network deployment models, the Wide Area Bonjour service list may contain the same service-types as the Local Area Bonjour to implement common services between both domains. Based on requirements, certain services can be limited to the Local Area and prevented from being routed in the Wide Area Domain, then by default only allowed service list entries are permitted and the rest are dropped with an implicit deny rule.

Ingress Policy Direction

The ingress service policy for the Wide Area Bonjour domain is not required and cannot be associated to the controller.

Egress Policy Direction

As described, the Bonjour policy structure between the Local Area and Wide Area is consistent, however the enforcement point is different. We recommend configuring separate Service-List and Service-Policy for the Wide Area Bonjour domain as it may help building a unique policy set for each domain.

Conditional Egress Service List

The Wide Area Bonjour egress service list configuration can be customized to conditionally route the service or query request to the Cisco Catalyst Center. With this alternative configuration settings, the network administrator can route the service or query the request in the Wide Area Bonjour domain from a specific local source VLAN network instead of globally from the entire system.

Wide Area Bonjour Service Status Timer Management

The Cisco Catalyst Center centralizes the services information from large-scale distributed SDG-Agents across the network. To maintain a scale and performance of the controller, the services routing information is transmitted and synchronized periodically by each SDG-Agent network devices. To protect system and network performance, the scheduler-based service information exchange allows a graceful and reliable way to discover and distribute Bonjour services across the Wide Area Bonjour domain.

In most large-scale network environment, the default Bonjour service timers on SDG-Agents are by default fine-tuned and may not need any further adjustments. Cisco recommends retaining the interval timer values to default and adjust only based on any user experience issue and consider modified parameters do not introduce scale and performance impact.

Default mDNS Service Configurations

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, an intuitive approach to configuring mDNS services, known as the default mDNS service configuration is introduced. The default service configuration contains a default service policy that creates a service list with default service-types that is automatically enforced in the ingress or egress direction. The following figure illustrates the default mDNS service configurations:

Figure 57: Default mDNS Service Configurations



The default mDNS service configurations accelerates solution adoption, increases user productivity, and reduces operation overhead. Additionally, you can define a custom policy and service list with custom-defined service types, and enforce it in the ingress or egress direction.

HSRP-Aware mDNS Service-Routing

Starting from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware (HSRP-aware) mDNS Service-Routing is supported between Service Peers and SDG agents in a multilayer network. During a changeover, that is when the primary SDG agent fails and the secondary SDG agent becomes the new primary, the service-routing session between the Service Peer and the SDG agent remains uninterrupted. The new primary SDG agent establishes a session with the Service Peer and cache information is resynced.

The HSRP virtual IP address of the management VLAN is enabled on the SDG agent using the **standby group_number ip ip_address** command. The HSRP virtual IP address needs to be configured on the Service Peer as the IP address of the SDG agent.



Note The HSRP virtual IP address must be reachable and in active state during a changeover.

The following figure illustrates a wired and wireless network that supports HSRP-aware mDNS Service-Routing:

Figure 58: HSRP-Aware mDNS Service-Routing



The HSRP offers the following advantages:

- Automatic gateway selection.
- Rapid switchover.
- Reduces service convergence.

mDNS Service-Gateway SSO Support

Starting from Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1, mDNS Stateful Switchover (SSO) is supported on network devices configured in Service Peer role. In SSO-enabled devices, one device is selected as an active device and the other as a standby device. The cache information learnt by the active device is synced with the standby device. When the active device fails, the standby device becomes the new active device and continues the mDNS service discovery process.

Figure 59: mDNS Service-Gateway SSO



Configuring Local and Wide Area Bonjour Domains

How to configure Multicast DNS Mode for LAN and Wired Networks

This section provides information about how to configure Local Area Bonjour in multicast DNS mode.

Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device

To configure mDNS on the device, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS on the device and enters mDNS gateway configuration mode. Enter the following commands in mDNS gateway configuration mode to enable the respective functionalities: • air-print-helper: Enables IOS devices like iPads to discover and use older printers that support Bonjour • cache-memory-max: Configures the percentage memory for cache • ingress-client: Configures Ingress Client Packet Tuners • rate-limit: Enables rate limiting of incoming mDNS packets • service-announcement-count: Configures maximum service advertisement count • service-announcement-timer: Configures advertisements announce timer periodicity • service-query-count: Configures maximum query count

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• service-query-timer: Configures query forward timer periodicity The following CLIs are effective only in service-peer mode: • query-response • sdg-agent • service-announcement-count • service-announcement-timer • service-mdns-query • service-query-count • service-query-timer • service-receiver-purge • active-response Note For cache-memory-max, ingress-client, rate-limit, service-announcement-count, service-announcement-timer, service-query-count, and service-query-timer commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS > Service Policy > Service Definition**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
- Step 3** Enter the **Service Definition Name** and **Description**.
- Step 4** Enter the **Service Type** and click the + icon.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Custom Service Definition

Service definition is a construct that provides an admin friendly name to one or more mDNS service types or PTR Resource Record Name. By default, a few built-in service definitions are already predefined and available for admin to use. In addition to built-in service definitions, admin can also define custom service definitions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-definition <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition CUSTOM1	Configures mDNS service definition. Note All the created custom service definitions are added to the primary service list. Primary service list comprises of a list of custom and built-in service definitions.
Step 4	service-type <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _custom1._tcp.local	Configures mDNS service type.
Step 5	Repeat step 4 to configure more than one service type in the custom service definition.	
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit	Exit mDNS service definition configuration mode.

Creating Service List (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS > Service Policy > Service List**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** Enter the **Service List Name** and choose the direction from the **Direction** drop-down list.
 - Step 4** Click **Add Service**.

- Step 5** Choose the service from the **Available Services** drop-down list and the message type from the **Message Type** drop-down list.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.
- Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.

Creating Service List

mDNS service list is a collection of service definitions. To create a service list, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-list in	Configures mDNS service list.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement	Matches the service to the message type. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. If the mDNS service list is set to IN, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }]. If the mDNS service list is set to OUT, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] [location-filter <i>location-filter-name</i>] [source-interface { <i>mDNS-VLAN-number</i> <i>mDNS-VLAN-range</i> }].

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in) # exit	Exits mDNS service list configuration mode.

Creating Service Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **mDNS** > **Service Policy** > **Service Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click **Add**.
 - Step 3** Enter the **Service Policy Name**.
 - Step 4** Choose the service list input from the **Service List Input** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Choose the service list output from the **Service List Output** drop-down list.
 - Step 6** Choose the location from the **Location** drop-down list.
 - Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Service Policy

A Service Policy that is applied to an interface specifies the allowed Bonjour service announcements or the queries of specific service types that should be processed, in ingress direction or egress direction or both. For this, the service policy specifies two service-lists, one each for ingress and egress directions. In the Local Area Bonjour domain, the same service policy can be attached to one or more Bonjour client VLANs; however, different VLANs may have different service policies.

To configure service policy with service lists, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures mDNS service policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list in Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN300-list out	Configures service lists for IN and OUT directions.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# exit	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

Associating Service Policy to an Interface

To configure mDNS on the device, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	interface <i>interface-name</i> Example: Device(config)# interface Vlan 601	Enters interface mDNS configuration mode and enables interface configuration.
Step 4	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-if)# mdns-sd gateway	Configures mDNS gateway on the interface. Enter the following commands in the interface mDNS gateway configuration mode to enable the respective functionalities: • active-query: Sets the time interval for SDG agent to refresh the active status of connected Bonjour client services. The timer value ranges from 60 to 3600 seconds. Note This configuration is mandatory only on VLANs whose Bonjour policy is configured to accept Bonjour service announcements from connected Bonjour

	Command or Action	Purpose
		clients. If the VLAN is configured to only accept Bonjour queries but not Bonjour service announcements, this configuration is optional. • service-instance-suffix(Optional) : Appends the service instance suffix to any announced service name that is forwarded to the controller. • service-mdns-query [ptr all] : Configures mDNS query request message processing for the specified query types. This command is applicable when the controller is in service-peer mode. Note By default, the service-mdns-query command allows only PTR queries. If you need to respond to all (PTR, SRV, and TXT) queries, you need to execute the following command: service-mdns-query all • service-policy <i>policy-name</i>: Attaches the specified service policy to the VLAN. Bonjour announcements, and queries received by and sent from the VLAN are governed by the policies configured in the service policy. This configuration is mandatory for all VLANs. Note Service policies can only be attached at interface level. • transport [all ipv4 ipv6] (Optional): Configures BCP parameter. It is recommended to use transport ipv4 command, except in those networks where the Bonjour clients send only IPv6 announcements and queries.
Step 5	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-if-mdns-sd) # exit</pre>	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

How to Configure Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS Mode for Wireless Networks

The configuration of local area Bonjour on a switch that acts as the SDG Agent in a wireless network involves the same set of procedures that are used to configure local area Bonjour on a switch that acts as the SDG Agent in a wired network.

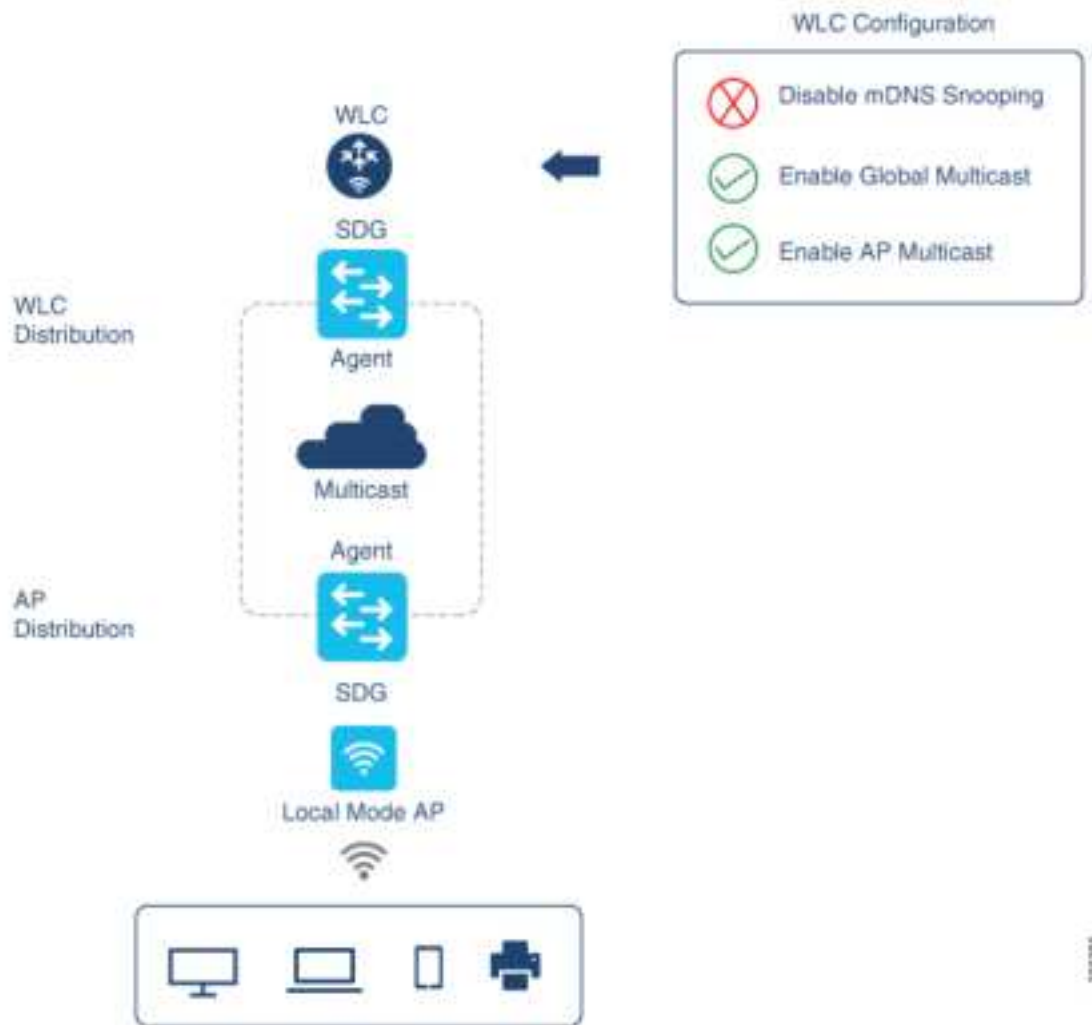
The Bonjour protocol operates on service announcements and queries. Each query or advertisement is sent to the mDNS IPv4 address 224.0.0.251 and IPv6 address FF02::FB. The mDNS messages are carried over well-known industry standard UDP port 5353, over both Layer 3 transport types.

The Layer 2 address used by the Bonjour protocol is link-local multicast address and therefore it's only forwarded to the same Layer 2 network. As multicast DNS (mDNS) is limited to a Layer 2 domain, for a client to discover a service, it has to be a part of the same Layer 2 domain. This isn't always possible in a large-scale deployment or enterprise.

To enable mDNS communication between Wireless endpoints and Cisco Catalyst switch that acts as an SDG Agent, the intermediate WLC must transparently allow the network to transmit and receive mDNS messages.

Hence, for a Multicast DNS Mode Wireless network deployment, disable the mDNS Snooping on Cisco AireOS based WLC and enable mDNS Gateway feature on Cisco Catalyst 9800 series WLC and set the AP Multicast Mode to Multicast.

Figure below illustrates a prerequisite configuration for Wireless network to enable seamless communication between SDG-Agent switches and Wireless endpoints.



The Cisco WLC and Access Points by default prevent the forwarding of Layer 2 or Layer 3 Multicast frames between Wireless and Wired network infrastructure. The forwarding is supported with stateful capabilities enabled using AP Multicast. The network administrator must globally enable Multicast and configure a unique Multicast Group to advertise in the network. This multicast group is only required for Cisco Access Points to enable Multicast over Multicast (MCMC) capabilities across the LAN network. The Bonjour solution doesn't require any Multicast requirements on Wireless Client VLAN; thus, it's optional and applicable only for other Layer 3 Multicast applications.

The core network must be configured with appropriate Multicast routing to allow the Access Points to join WLC Multicast Group. The Multicast configuration must be enabled on Cisco WLC management VLAN and on the Cisco Access Points of their respective distribution layer switch.

Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device

To configure mDNS on the device, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS on the device and enters mDNS gateway configuration mode. Enter the following commands in mDNS gateway configuration mode to enable the respective functionalities: • air-print-helper: Enables IOS devices like iPads to discover and use older printers that support Bonjour • cache-memory-max: Configures the percentage memory for cache • ingress-client: Configures Ingress Client Packet Tuners • rate-limit: Enables rate limiting of incoming mDNS packets • service-announcement-count: Configures maximum service advertisement count • service-announcement-timer: Configures advertisements announce timer periodicity • service-query-count: Configures maximum query count • service-query-timer: Configures query forward timer periodicity The following CLIs are effective only in service-peer mode: • query-response • sdg-agent • service-announcement-count • service-announcement-timer

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• service-mdns-query • service-query-count • service-query-timer • service-receiver-purge • active-response Note For cache-memory-max, ingress-client, rate-limit, service-announcement-count, service-announcement-timer, service-query-count, and service-query-timer commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Creating Custom Service Definition

Service definition is a construct that provides an admin friendly name to one or more mDNS service types or PTR Resource Record Name. By default, a few built-in service definitions are already predefined and available for admin to use. In addition to built-in service definitions, admin can also define custom service definitions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-definition <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition CUSTOM1	Configures mDNS service definition. Note All the created custom service definitions are added to the primary service list. Primary service list comprises of a list of custom and built-in service definitions.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	service-type <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def) # service-type _custom1._tcp.local	Configures mDNS service type.
Step 5	Repeat step 4 to configure more than one service type in the custom service definition.	
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def) # exit	Exit mDNS service definition configuration mode.

Creating Service List

mDNS service list is a collection of service definitions. To create a service list, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-list in	Configures mDNS service list.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement	Matches the service to the message type. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. If the mDNS service list is set to IN, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }].

	Command or Action	Purpose
		If the mDNS service list is set to OUT, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] [location-filter <i>location-filter-name</i>] [source-interface { <i>mDNS-VLAN-number</i> <i>mDNS-VLAN-range</i> }].
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# exit	Exits mDNS service list configuration mode.

Creating Service Policy

A Service Policy that is applied to an interface specifies the allowed Bonjour service announcements or the queries of specific service types that should be processed, in ingress direction or egress direction or both. For this, the service policy specifies two service-lists, one each for ingress and egress directions. In the Local Area Bonjour domain, the same service policy can be attached to one or more Bonjour client VLANs; however, different VLANs may have different service policies.

To configure service policy with service lists, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures mDNS service policy.
Step 4	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list in Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN300-list out	Configures service lists for IN and OUT directions.
Step 5	exit Example:	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-mdns-ser-pol) # exit	

Associating Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy

A default mDNS service policy is already attached once the wireless profile policy is created. Use the following steps to override the default mDNS service policy with any of your service policy:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures wireless profile policy.
Step 4	mdns-sd service-policy <i>custom-mdns-service-policy</i> Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# mdns-sd service-policy custom-mdns-service-policy	Associates an mDNS service policy with the wireless profile policy. The default mDNS service policy name is default-mdns-service-policy .
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Exits wireless profile policy configuration mode.

Configuring Wide Area Bonjour Domain

The Wide Area Bonjour domain configuration specifies the parameters of the controller, that is the Wide Area Bonjour Application running on Cisco Catalyst Center, as well as the service types that need to be exported to it from the SDG Agent. Configuring Wide Area Bonjour Domain involves creating service-lists and service policy similar to those created in Local Area Bonjour configuration; however, only egress policy from SDG Agent to controller is applicable.

Enabling mDNS Gateway on the Device

To configure mDNS on the device, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS on the device and enters mDNS gateway configuration mode. Enter the following commands in mDNS gateway configuration mode to enable the respective functionalities: • air-print-helper: Enables IOS devices like iPads to discover and use older printers that support Bonjour • cache-memory-max: Configures the percentage memory for cache • ingress-client: Configures Ingress Client Packet Tuners • rate-limit: Enables rate limiting of incoming mDNS packets • service-announcement-count: Configures maximum service advertisement count • service-announcement-timer: Configures advertisements announce timer periodicity • service-query-count: Configures maximum query count • service-query-timer: Configures query forward timer periodicity The following CLIs are effective only in service-peer mode: • query-response • sdg-agent • service-announcement-count • service-announcement-timer

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• service-mdns-query • service-query-count • service-query-timer • service-receiver-purge • active-response Note For cache-memory-max, ingress-client, rate-limit, service-announcement-count, service-announcement-timer, service-query-count, and service-query-timer commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment.
Step 4	exit Example: Device (config-mdns-sd) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Creating Custom Service Definition

Service definition is a construct that provides an admin friendly name to one or more mDNS service types or PTR Resource Record Name. By default, a few built-in service definitions are already predefined and available for admin to use. In addition to built-in service definitions, admin can also define custom service definitions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-definition <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device (config) # mdns-sd service-definition CUSTOM1	Configures mDNS service definition. Note All the created custom service definitions are added to the primary service list. Primary service list comprises of a list of custom and built-in service definitions.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	service-type <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _custom1._tcp.local	Configures mDNS service type.
Step 5	Repeat step 4 to configure more than one service type in the custom service definition.	
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit	Exit mDNS service definition configuration mode.

Creating Service List

mDNS service list is a collection of service definitions. To create a service list, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-list in	Configures mDNS service list.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement	Matches the service to the message type. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. If the mDNS service list is set to IN, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }].

	Command or Action	Purpose
		If the mDNS service list is set to OUT, the applicable command syntax is: match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type { any announcement query }] [location-filter <i>location-filter-name</i>] [source-interface { <i>mDNS-VLAN-number</i> <i>mDNS-VLAN-range</i> }].
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# exit	Exits mDNS service list configuration mode.

Creating Service Policy

A Service Policy that is applied to an interface specifies the allowed Bonjour service announcements or the queries of specific service types that should be processed, in ingress direction or egress direction or both. For this, the service policy specifies two service-lists, one each for ingress and egress directions. In the Local Area Bonjour domain, the same service policy can be attached to one or more Bonjour client VLANs; however, different VLANs may have different service policies.

To configure service policy with service lists, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures mDNS service policy.
Step 4	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list in Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN300-list out	Configures service lists for IN and OUT directions.
Step 5	exit Example:	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# exit	

Associating Service Policy with the Controller in Wide Area Bonjour Domain

In Wide Area Bonjour, the service policy is configured globally and does not get associated with a VLAN as in the case of Local Area Bonjour.

To configure service policy globally, follow these steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	service-export mdns-sd controller <i>controller name</i> Example: Device(config)# service-export mdns-sd controller Cisco Catalyst Center- BONJOUR-CONTROLLER	Specifies a name for the controller and enters service-export mode
Step 4	controller-address <i>ipv4-address</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-sd-se)# controller-address 199.245.1.7	Specifies the controller address.
Step 5	controller-port <i>port-number</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-sd-se)# controller-port 9991	Specifies the port number on which the controller is listening.
Step 6	controller-source-interface <i>interface-name</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-sd-se)# controller-source-interface Loopback0	Specifies the source-interface for the controller.
Step 7	controller-service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> out Example: Device(config-mdns-sd-se)# controller-service-policy policy1 OUT	Specifies the service policy to be used by the controller. Note Only OUT policy is applicable for Wide Area Bonjour.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit	Exits controller service export configuration mode.
Step 9	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enters mDNS gateway configuration mode.
Step 10	ingress-client query-suppression enable Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# ingress-client query-suppression enable	Enables ingress query suppression for better scale and performance.
Step 11	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware (HSRP-aware) mDNS Service-Routing on SDG

For information, see the following guides:

- [Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x \(Catalyst 9300 Switches\)](#)
- [Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x \(Catalyst 9400 Switches\)](#)
- [Software Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.x \(Catalyst 9600 Switches\)](#)

Configuring Hot Standby Router Protocol-aware (HSRP-aware) mDNS Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd gateway Example:	Enables mDNS on the device and enters mDNS gateway configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	
Step 3	mode service-peer Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# mode service-peer	Enables mDNS gateway in service-peer mode.
Step 4	source-interface vlan vlan-interface-number Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# source-interface vlan 23	Configures source interface to communicate between SDG Agent and service-peer. Note <i>vlan-interface-number</i> - The valid range is from 1 to 4094.
Step 5	sdg-agent ip-address Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# sdg-agent 9.6.16.10	Configures SDG agent IPv4 or IPv6 address. Note The <i>ip-address</i> refers to the HSRP-enabled IP address.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# end	Exits server group configuration mode and enters privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS Mode for LAN and Wireless Networks

This section shows how to verify Local Area Bonjour in Multicast DNS mode for LAN and Wireless networks.

Verifying SDG-Agent Status

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns-sd service-list** *service-list-name* {**in** | **out**} command.

```

Name                Direction  Service    Message-Type    Source
=====
VLAN100-list        In         Printer    Announcement     -
                   In         Airplay    Query             -
                   In         CUSTOM1    Any               -
VLAN300-list        Out        Printer    Announcement     V1200

```

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns-sd service-definition** *service-definition-name* **service-type** {*custom* | *built-in*} command.

```

Service                PTR                                Type
=====
apple-tv                _airplay._tcp.local              Built-In

```

	_raop._tcp.local	
apple-file-share	_afpovertcp._tcp.local	Built-In
CUSTOM1	_custom1._tcp.local	Custom
CUSTOM2	_customA._tcp.local	Custom
	_customA._tcp.local	

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns-sd service-policy-name interface interface-name** command.

Name	Service-List-In	Service-List-Out
mdns-policy-1	VLAN100-list	VLAN300-list
mdns-policy-2	VLAN400-list	VLAN400-list

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns-sd summary** command.

```

mDNS Gateway: Enabled
Mode: Service Peer
Service Announcement Periodicity(in seconds): 30
Service Announcement Count: 50
Service Query Periodicity(in seconds): 15
Service Query Count: 50
Active Response Timer (in seconds): Disabled
ANY Query Forward: Disabled
SDG Agent IP: 9.8.57.10
Active Query Periodicity (in minutes): 30
mDNS Query Type: PTR only
Transport Type: IPv4
mDNS AP service policy: default-mdns-service-policy

```

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics** command.

```

mDNS SP Statistics
last reset time: 07/27/21 15:36:33
Messages sent:
Query : 122
ANY query : 35
Advertisements : 12
Advertisement Withdraw : 1
Service-peer cache clear : 0
Resync response : 3
Srv Discovery response : 0
Keep-Alive : 2043
Messages received:
Query response : 0
ANY Query response : 0
Cache-sync : 9
Get service-instance : 0
Srv Discovery request : 0
Keep-Alive Response : 2042

```

Verifying Wide Area Bonjour Controller Status

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns controller summary** command.

```
Device# show mdns controller summary
```

Controller Summary

```
=====
Controller Name   : Cisco Catalyst Center-BONJOUR-CONTROLLER
Controller IP     : 10.104.52.241
State             : UP
Port              : 9991
Interface         : Loopback0
Filter List       : policy1
Dead Time         : 00:01:00
```

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns controller export-summary** command.

```
Device# show mdns controller export-summary
```

Controller Export Summary

```
=====
Controller IP     : 10.104.52.241
State             : UP
Filter List       : policy1
Count             : 100
Delay Timer       : 30 seconds
Export            : 300
Drop              : 0
Next Export       : 00:00:01
```

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns controller statistics** command.

```
Device# show mdns controller statistics
```

```
Total BCP message sent           : 47589
Total BCP message received        : 3
Interface WITHDRAW messages sent : 0
Clear cache messages sent         : 0
Total RESYNC state count          : 0
Last successful RESYNC             : Not-Applicable
```

Service Advertisements:

```
IPv6 advertised           : 0
IPv4 advertised           : 300
Withdraws sent            : 0
Advertisements Filtered   : 0
Total service resynced     : 0
```

Service Queries:

```
IPv6 queries sent         : 0
IPv6 query responses received : 0
```

```

IPv4 queries sent           : 0
IPv4 query responses received : 0

```

The following is a sample output of the **show mdns controller detail** command.

Device# **show mdns controller detail**

```

Controller : Cisco Catalyst Center-BONJOUR-CONTROLLER
IP : 10.104.52.241, Dest Port : 9991, Src Port : 0, State : UP
Source Interface : Loopback0, MD5 Disabled
Hello Timer 0 sec, Dead Timer 0 sec, Next Hello 00:00:00
Uptime 00:00:00
Service Announcement :
Filter : policy1
Count 100, Delay Timer 30 sec, Pending Announcement 0, Pending Withdraw
0
Total Export Count 300, Next Export in 00:00:16
Service Query :
Query Suppression Disabled
Query Count 50, Query Delay Timer 15 sec, Pending 0
Total Query Count 0, Next Query in 00:00:01

```

Verifying mDNS Cache Configurations

The following show commands display cache from both Active and Standby devices using the chassis option:

Device# **show mdns-sd cache chassis active R0**

```

----- PTR Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
_home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local

----- SRV Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001  0
0 5353 AP6B8B4567-sta00001.local

----- A/AAAA Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001
9.2.57.106

----- TXT Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001

```

```
[14] 'model=MacMini'
```



Note Alternatively, you can issue the **show mdns-sd cache** command to display the cache from the Active controller.

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache chassis standby R0
```

```
----- PTR Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
_home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local

----- SRV Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001    0
0 5353 AP6B8B4567-sta00001.local

----- A/AAAA Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001
9.2.57.106

----- TXT Records
-----
RECORD-NAME          TTL      TYPE      ID      CLIENT-MAC
RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
AP6B8B4567-sta00001._home-sharing._tcp.local      4500     WLAN      1       0205.2c23.0001
[14] 'model=MacMini'
```

Verifying Additional mDNS Cache Configurations

To verify the cache from the Active DB, use the following commands:

```
show mdns-sd cache ap-mac 0a0b.0cf0.000e chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache client-mac 0269.fe06.0023 chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache glan-id <> chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache glan-id <> detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache location-group <> chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache location-group <> detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache mdns-ap <> detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache mdns-ap <> chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache rlan-id <> detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache rlan-id <> chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache type TXT chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache type A-AAAA detail chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache wired chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache wired detail chassis active R0
```

```
show mdns-sd cache wlan-id 10 chassis active R0
show mdns-sd cache wlan-id 1 detail chassis active R0
```

To verify the cache from the Standby DB, use the following commands:

```
show mdns-sd cache ap-mac <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache client-mac <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache glan-id <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache glan-id <> detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache location-group <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache location-group <> detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache mdns-ap <> detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache mdns-ap <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache rlan-id <> detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache rlan-id <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache type [A-AAAA|PTR|SRV|TXT] chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache type [A-AAAA|PTR|SRV|TXT] detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache wired chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache wired detail chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache wlan-id <> chassis standby R0
show mdns-sd cache wlan-id <> detail chassis standby R0
```

Verifying Local Area Bonjour Configuration for LAN and Wireless Networks

The following is a sample output of the **show run** command.

```
mdns-sd gateway
```

```
mdns-sd service-definition custom1
  service-type _airplay._tcp.local
  service-type _raop._tcp.local
```

```
mdns-sd service-list list1 IN
  match custom1
mdns-sd service-list list2 OUT
  match custom1
```

```
mdns-sd service-policy policy1
  service-list list1 IN
  service-list list2 OUT
```

```
service-export mdns-sd controller Cisco Catalyst Center-CONTROLLER-POLICY
controller-address 99.99.99.10
controller-service-policy policy1 OUT
controller-source-interface Loopback0
```

Additional References for DNA Service for Bonjour

Related Topic	Document Title
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide	Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 1.3.1.0

MIBs

MIB	MIBs Link
CISCO-SDG-MDNS-MIB	This MIB module defines objects describing the statistics of 63 local area and wide area mDNS SDG agent. Statistics could be 64 either global or per interface specific.

Feature History for Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour

The following table provides release information about the feature or features described in this module. This table lists only the software release that introduced support for a given feature in a given software release train. Unless noted otherwise, subsequent releases of that software release train also support that feature.

Release	Modification
Cisco IOS 15.2(6) E2	Cisco DNA Service for Local Area Bonjour and Wide Area Bonjour was introduced on the following platforms: • Cisco Catalyst 2960-X Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 2960-XR Series Switches
Cisco IOS 15.5(1)SY4	Cisco DNA Service for Local Area Bonjour and Wide Area Bonjour was introduced on Cisco Catalyst 6800 Series Switches.
Cisco IOS XE 3.11.0 E	Cisco DNA Service for Local Area Bonjour and Wide Area Bonjour was introduced on the following platforms: • Cisco Catalyst 4500-E Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 4500-X Series Switches

Release	Modification
Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.1	Cisco DNA Service for Local Area Bonjour and Wide Area Bonjour was introduced on the following platforms: • Cisco Catalyst 3650 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 3850 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switches - High Performance • Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switches • Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers • Cisco 5500 Series Wireless Controllers • Cisco 8540 Wireless Controllers • Cisco 4000 Series Integrated Services Routers (ISR)
Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.1.1	Cisco DNA Service for Local Area Bonjour and Wide Area Bonjour was introduced on Cisco Catalyst 9200 Series Switches.
Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.2.1	Introduced Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour support for the following: • SD-Access network • Unicast mode for LAN network
Cisco IOS XE Amsterdam 17.3.2a	Introduced Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour support for the following: • Multilayer networks • Location grouping in wired networks • mDNS AP group in wireless networks

Release	Modification
Cisco IOS XE Bengaluru 17.6.1	Introduced support for the following features for Local Area Bonjour in Unicast Mode for LAN networks: • Default mDNS Service Configurations • HSRP-Aware mDNS Service-Routing • mDNS Service-Gateway SSO Support



CHAPTER 203

Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

- [Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2241](#)
- [Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2241](#)
- [Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2242](#)
- [Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2242](#)
- [Configuring Wireless AP Multicast, on page 2243](#)
- [Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode, on page 2246](#)
- [Verifying mDNS Gateway Configuration, on page 2257](#)
- [Reference, on page 2259](#)

Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller introduces unicast mode function in Local Area Bonjour network domain. The enhanced gateway function at the first hop of Wired and Wireless networks communicates directly with any industry standard RFC 6762 compliant Multicast DNS (mDNS) end point in Layer 2 Unicast mode. The controller also introduces new service-peer mode expanding classic single-gateway controller to end-to-end service-routing with upstream SDG agent switch to enable unicast-mode, increased scale, performance and resiliency in the network.

Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller must be successfully configured and be operational before implementing Cisco Local Area Bonjour for local mode wireless networks.

The following list provides the prerequisites for the controller that is to be deployed in service-peer mode:

- Ensure that the targeted controller for the service-peer role has the required Cisco IOS-XE software version. See *Supported SDG Agents with Supported Licenses and Software Requirements* table in Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour Solution Overview chapter.
- Ensure that the controller runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.
- Ensure that the upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst switch in SDG agent mode runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.

- Ensure that the controller is interconnected as Layer 2 trunk in static 802.1Q mode, when Layer 2 Unicast service-routing is running between SDG agent in distribution-layer and the controller service-peer.
- Ensure that the controller has IP reachability to upstream Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches in SDG agent mode over same the IPv4 wireless management subnet.
- Ensure that global multicast is enabled on the controller and AP is set to multicast mode. All local mode APs must join the multicast group in the network to successfully process mDNS messages.

Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

- Controller management port is not supported for service-routing with upstream Catalyst SDG Agent switch.
- The controller in service peer mode supports location-based service for access points in local mode and FlexConnect central switching mode.
- The controller supports location-based capabilities only between wireless connected service provider and the receiver.
- The controller does not support service-routing configuration using GUI.

Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

The traditional wireless controller supported mDNS snooping function with various advancements for wireless networks. As the enterprise requirements expands, it drives the IT organization to introduce new network deployment models, supporting mobile devices and distributed zero-configuration services following increased scale, granular security control and resiliency for mission critical networks. The unified Cisco IOS-XE operating system across Cisco Catalyst 9000 series LAN switches and Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller enables distributed Bonjour gateway function at the network edge. With end-to-end Wide Area Bonjour service-routing, the new solution enables service-oriented enterprise networks with intuitive user-experience.

The following figure illustrates the controller platform supporting mDNS gateway function to wireless users in local mode and builds service-routing peering with upstream Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch for network-wide services discovery and distribution based on IT-managed granular policies and locations. The unicast based service-routing between the controller in service-peer mode and upstream SDG-Agent switch eliminates mDNS flooding over Layer 2 trunk ports and provide increase bandwidth and eliminates mDNS flood over wireless networks and Layer 2 trunk to upstream network.

Figure 60: Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controller Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode



Configuring Wireless AP Multicast

The controller and AP by default prevents forwarding of Layer 2 or Layer 3 Multicast frames between wireless and wired network infrastructure. The forwarding is supported with stateful capabilities enabled using AP multicast. To allow mDNS message processing over a wireless network, multicast must be enabled and unique AP multicast group must be configured on the controller to advertise in IP core network. This AP multicast group is only required for APs to enable Multicast over Multicast (MCMC) capabilities in the network. The Bonjour solution do not require any other multicast requirements on wireless client VLAN; thus, it is optional and applicable only for other Layer 3 multicast applications.

The figure given below illustrates end-to-end wireless multicast configuration requirement to ensure wireless APs successfully join the controller-announced multicast group.

Figure 61: Multicast Routing in IP Core Network



Configuring Wireless AP Multicast (GUI)

This procedure configures wireless AP multicast on a controller in service-peer mode.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > Multicast**.
- Step 2** Set the **Global Wireless Multicast Mode** to **Enabled**.
- Step 3** From the AP Capwap Multicast drop-down list, select **Multicast**.
- Step 4** Enter a unique IP address at **AP Capwap IPv4 Multicast group Address**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.

Configuring Wireless AP Multicast (CLI)

This procedure configures wireless AP multicast on a controller in service-peer mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless multicast Example:	Enable global IP multicast processing.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# wireless multicast	
Step 3	wireless multicast <i>IPv4-multicast-address</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless multicast 239.254.254.1	Enables AP CAPWAP mode to Multicast with unique IPv4 multicast address configurations.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Multicast in IP Network (CLI)

This procedure configures IP Multicast under AP VLAN, Management VLAN and IP core interfaces on upstream Catalyst LAN distribution-layer switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ip multicast-routing Example: Device(config)# ip multicast-routing	Enables IP multicast processing.
Step 3	interface <i>interface-id</i> Example: Device(config)# interface TenGigabitEthernet 1/0	Selects an interface that is connected to hosts and network devices on which PIM can be enabled.
Step 4	ip pim sparse-mode Example: Device(config-if)# ip pim sparse-mode	Enables IP Multicast on Layer 3 interfaces of distribution and core layer network switches: • AP VLAN– Enables IP multicast on SVI interface on VLAN assigned to wireless APs of wireless AP distribution layer switch. • Management VLAN– Enables IP multicast on SVI interface on VLAN assigned to controller management VLAN of wireless distribution layer switch.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Layer 3 Interface– Enable IP multicast routing on all core network devices and Layer 3 interfaces.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-if)# exit	Exits interface configuration mode.
Step 6	ip pim rp-address <i>rp-address</i> Example: Device(config)# ip pim rp-address 239.254.254.100	Configures IP Multicast RP address on core and distribution network switches. IP network may have alternate multicast routing method.

Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless Local Mode

This section provides configuration guidelines to implement Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller as mDNS gateway and enable service-peer mode to enable service-routing with upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch in SDG-Agent mode to build Local Area Bonjour.

Configuring mDNS Service Policy (GUI)

The mDNS service policy consists of creating a service-list to permit built-in or user-defined custom service-types, associate service-list to a service-policy to enforce in ingress or egress direction and apply the service-policy to targeted Wireless Profile. This configuration is common on the controller in service peer or single-gateway solution for wireless networks.

This procedure configures mDNS Service-Policy on a controller in service-peer mode.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Services > mDNS .
Step 2	Set the mDNS Gateway button to Enabled .
Step 3	Click Service Policy Tab.
Step 4	Click Service List and click Add . This activates the Service List window.
Step 5	In the Service List Name field, enter a unique name with alphanumeric value.
Step 6	From the Direction drop-down list, select service list policy direction. Use IN for ingress or OUT for egress mDNS message matching policy.
Step 7	Click +Add Services to add mDNS service-types in selected service list.
Step 8	From the Available Services drop-down list, select built-in or custom mDNS service-type.

- Step 9** From the **Message Type** drop-down list, select **Announcement** to accept service advertisement or **Query** to permit service discovery from the network. Default message-type is **any**.
- Step 10** Click **Save** button to add mDNS service-type entry.
- Note**
Repeat Step-7 to Step-9 to add more mDNS service-types in selected service list.
- Step 11** Click **Apply to Device**.
This creates a new mDNS Service List for selected direction.
- Note**
Repeat Step-5 to Step-11 for bi-directional service list.
- Step 12** Click **Service-Policy** tab.
- Step 13** Click **+Add** to create new mDNS service-policy.
- Step 14** In the **Service Policy Name** field, enter a unique mDNS service policy name.
- Step 15** From the **Service List Input** drop-down list, select ingress mDNS service list input to enforce mDNS policies on ingress direction from wireless networks.
- Step 16** From the **Service List Output** drop-down list, select mDNS policies on egress direction to wireless networks.
- Step 17** Click **Apply to Device**.
This creates a new mDNS service policy.
- Step 18** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**
- Step 19** Choose or create a new **Policy Profile**.
- Step 20** Click **Advanced** tab.
- Step 21** From the **mDNS Service Policy** drop-down list, select an mDNS service policy.
Refer to Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Guide to configure other policy profile parameters.
- Step 22** Click **Apply to Device** button.
This creates a new policy profile or updates an existing policy profile with mDNS service policy.
- Step 23** Click **Save**.

Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI)

This procedure builds and applies service-policies on target wireless profile in service-peer mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out</pre>	Configures mDNS service-list to classify one or more service-types. Unique service-list is required to process incoming mDNS message and outbound response to requesting end points.
Step 3	match service-definition-name [message-type { any announcement query }] Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement</pre>	Matches inbound service-list. The controller validates to accept or drop incoming mDNS service-type (for example, Apple TV) advertisement or query matching message type. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end. Default message-type is “any”.
Step 4	match service-definition-name [message-type { any announcement query }] Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS</pre>	Matches an outbound service-list. The controller provides local service proxy function by responding matching service-type to the requesting end points. For example, the Apple-TV and Printer learnt from VLAN 100 will be distributed to receiver in same VLAN 100. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end. The message-type for outbound service-list is not required.
Step 5	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 6	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY</pre>	Creates a unique mDNS service-policy.
Step 7	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out</pre>	Configure mDNS service-policy to associate service-list for each direction.
Step 8	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# exit</pre>	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	wireless profile policy <i>policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless profile policy WLAN-PROFILE</pre>	Configures unique wireless profile policy name to associate mDNS service-policy.
Step 10	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY</pre>	Associates mDNS service-policy to configured VLAN IDs. Note This step requires wireless profile policy to be administratively shutdown prior association service-policy and re-activate with no shutdown to make service-policy effective.
Step 11	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit</pre>	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Custom Service Definition (GUI)

The Cisco IOS-XE supports various built-in well-known mDNS service-definition types mapping to key mDNS PTR records to user-friendly names. For example, built-in Apple-TV service-type is associated with `_airplay._tcp.local` and `_raop._tcp.local` PTR records to successfully enable service in the network. The network administrator can create custom service-definition with matching mDNS PTR records to enable end mDNS service-routing in the network.

This procedure configures custom mDNS service definition and applies it to policy.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
- Step 2** Set the mDNS Gateway button to **Enabled**.
- Step 3** Click **Service Policy** Tab.
- Step 4** Click **Add** to create new custom mDNS service-list definition.
- This activates Service Definition window.
- Step 5** In the **Service Definition Name** field, enter a unique alphanumeric value.
- Step 6** (Optional) In the **Description** field, enter a description for the service definition.
- Step 7** In the **Service Type** field, enter single mDNS PoinTeR (PTR) record entry in `_<service-type>>._<protocol>.local` regular expression format. For example, `_airplay._tcp.local`
- Step 8** Click **+** to add custom mDNS service-type in selected definition list.
- Note**
Repeat Steps 7 and Step 8 to add more custom service-type in selected definition list.

- Step 9** Click **Apply**.
- Step 10** Perform steps give in *Configuring mDNS Service Policy (GUI)* by selecting built-in or custom service-type to configure service list.
- Step 11** Click **Save**.

Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI)

This procedure creates custom service-definition configuration to discover mDNS services from local wireless networks.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-definition-name <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition APPLE-CLASSROOM	Creates unique service-definition name for custom service-types.
Step 3	service-type <i>custom-mDNS-PTR</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _classroom._tcp.local	Configure an regular-expression string for custom mDNS PoinTeR(PTR) record.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on WLAN (GUI)

The mDNS gateway activation on targeted WLAN is required to start processing incoming mDNS messages from associated wireless clients. To activate mDNS gateway the WLAN must be administratively shutdown and re-enable thus it may require network downtime planning.

This procedure configures custom mDNS gateway and required policies.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.

- Step 2** Click to enable the mDNS Gateway on existing **WLAN** row of Catalyst 9800 controller. Click + **Add** button to create new WLAN if required. Refer to Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller Configuration Guide for step-by-step WLAN configuration.
- Step 3** Click **Advanced** tab.
- Step 4** From the **mDNS Mode** drop-down list, select **Gateway** to activate mDNS Gateway on the selected WLAN.
- Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
- Step 6** Click **Save**.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on WLAN (CLI)

This procedure implements mDNS gateway on a targeted WLAN of the controller in service-peer mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan profile-name WLAN-ID SSID-name Example: Device(config)# wlan WLAN-PROFILE 1 blizzard	Creates a unique WLAN.
Step 3	mdns-sd-interface gateway Example: Device(config-wlan)# mdns-sd-interface gateway	Configure mDNS gateway on targeted WLAN. Note This step requires wireless profile policy to be administratively shutdown prior association service-policy and re-activate with no shutdown to make service-policy effective.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer

The controller deployed in Service-Peer mode extends mDNS service discovery and distribution boundary beyond single controller to global IP network using on unicast based service-routing. The controller service peer must establish IP based unicast service-routing with Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch in distribution layer network for global service-routing.

This procedure configures the controller in service peer mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS and enters in mDNS gateway configuration mode. The following optional parameters are available: • active-query: Periodic mDNS query to refresh dynamic cache. • active-response: Periodic active mDNS response instead per request processing. • mode: Set Catalyst 9800 in service-peer mode. • sdg-agent: Unicast service-routing with targeted SDG-Agent. • service-announcement-count: Configures maximum advertisements in service-routing to SDG-Agent. • service-announcement-timer: Configures advertisements announce timer periodicity in service-routing to SDG-Agent. • service-query-count: Configures maximum queries in service-routing to SDG-Agent. • service-query-timer: Configures query forward timer periodicity in service-routing to SDG-Agent. • service-type-enumeration: Configures service enumeration. • source-interface: Configures the source interface. If the source interface is configured, it will be used for all mDNS transactions. By default, wireless management interface will be used. • transport: Use IPv4 (default) or IPv6 transport for mDNS messaging to end points. Note

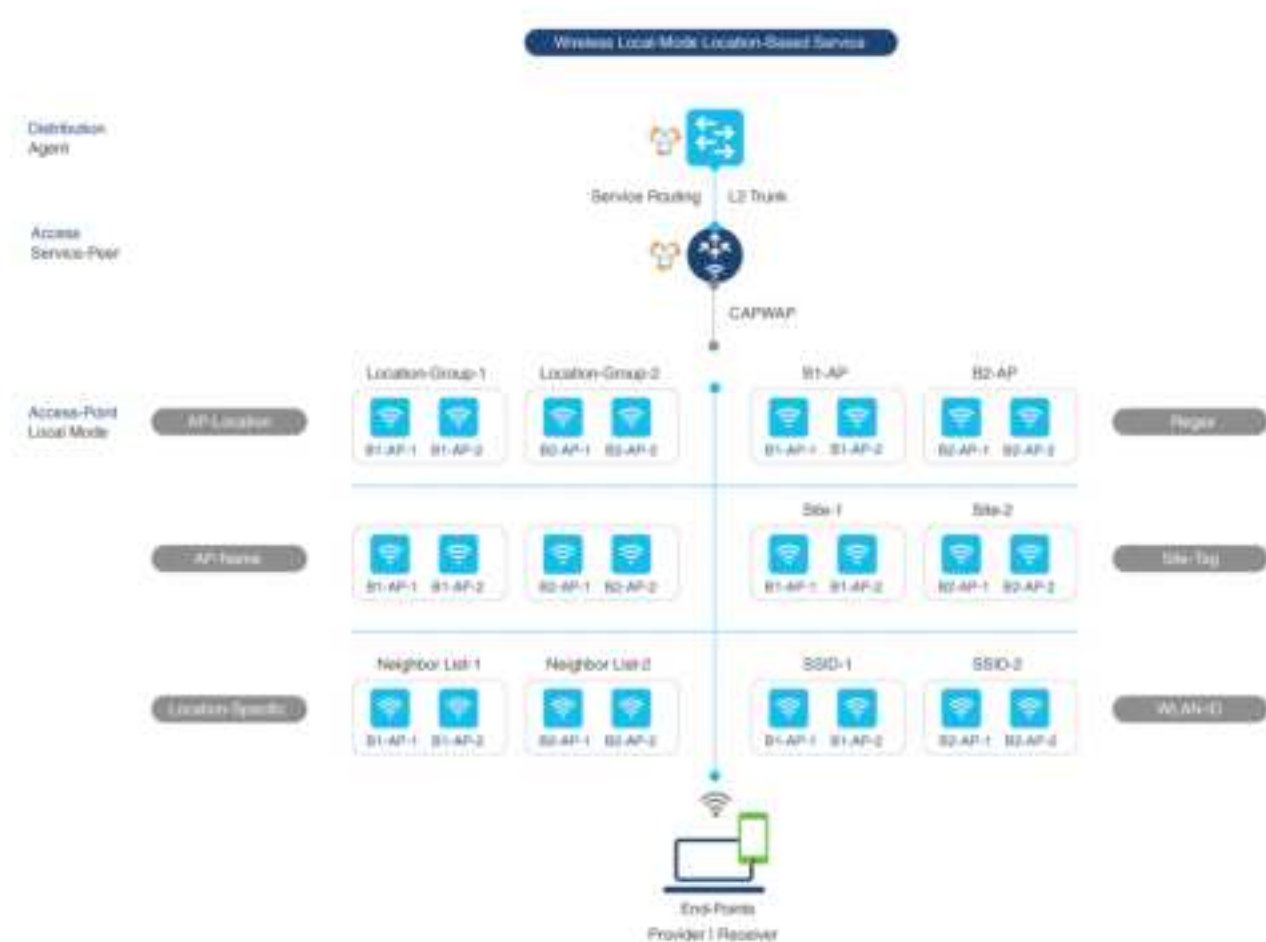
	Command or Action	Purpose
		For rate-limit , service-announcement-count , service-announcement-timer , service-query-count and service-query-timer commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment.
Step 3	mode [service-peer] Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# mode service-peer	Configure mDNS gateway in service-peer mode.
Step 4	sdg-agent [IPv4 Address] Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# sdg-agent 10.0.2.254	Configure SDG Agent IPv4 address. Typically, the management VLAN gateway address. If FHRP mode, then use FHRP Virtual-IP address of management VLAN.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring Location-Based mDNS on Service-Peer (GUI)

Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller supports location-based mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver endpoints. The location-based mDNS service support can be implemented using multiple supporting AP classification methods to implement policy-based service distributions in wireless networks. The location-based mDNS service is effective and supported on wireless APs in Local-Mode or FlexConnect Central Switching modes.

The figure given below illustrates various LSS based mDNS service mode discovery and distribution support:

Figure 62: Location-Based mDNS Gateway



This procedure configures location-based mDNS service policy.

Procedure

- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
- Step 2** Set the mDNS Gateway button to **Enabled**.
- Step 3** Click **Service Policy** Tab.
- Step 4** Click **Service List** and click **Add**.
This activates the Service List window.
- Step 5** In the **Service List Name** field, enter a unique name with alphanumeric value.
- Step 6** From the **Direction** drop-down list, select service list policy direction. Use **IN** for ingress or **OUT** for egress mDNS message matching policy.
- Step 7** Click **+Add Services** to add mDNS service-types in selected service list.
- Step 8** From the **Available Services** drop-down list, select built-in or custom mDNS service-type.

- Step 9** From the **Message Type** drop-down list, select **Announcement** to accept service advertisement or **Query** to permit service discovery from the network. Default message-type is **any**.
- Step 10** Click **Save** button to add mDNS service-type entry.
- Note**
Repeat Step-7 to Step-9 to add more mDNS service-types in selected service list.
- Step 11** Click **Apply to Device**.
This creates a new mDNS Service List for selected direction.
- Note**
Repeat Step-5 to Step-11 for bi-directional service list.
- Step 12** Click **Service-Policy** tab.
- Step 13** Click **+Add** to create new mDNS service-policy.
- Step 14** In the **Service Policy Name** field, enter a unique mDNS service policy name.
- Step 15** From the **Service List Input** drop-down list, select ingress mDNS service list input to enforce mDNS policies on ingress direction from wireless networks.
- Step 16** From the **Service List Output** drop-down list, select mDNS policies on egress direction to wireless networks.
- Step 17** Click **Apply to Device**.
This creates a new mDNS service policy.
- Step 18** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**
- Step 19** Choose or create a new **Policy Profile**.
- Step 20** Click **Advanced** tab.
- Step 21** From the **mDNS Service Policy** drop-down list, select an mDNS service policy.
Refer to Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Configuration Guide to configure other policy profile parameters.
- Step 22** Click **Apply to Device** button.
This creates a new policy profile or updates an existing policy profile with mDNS service policy.
- Step 23** Click **Save**.

Configuring Location-Based mDNS on Service-Peer (CLI)

This procedure implements LSS based mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless endpoints on the targeted WLAN of the controller in service-peer mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY</pre>	Creates a unique mDNS service-policy.
Step 3	location { ap-location ap-name lss regex site-tag ssid } Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# location ap-location</pre>	Creates a unique mDNS service-policy. • ap-location: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to one or more AP configured in the same location name. The mDNS services from non-matching AP location is automatically filtered. • ap-name: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to single AP matching same AP name. The mDNS services from non-matching AP name is automatically filtered. • lss: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to same and neighboring one or more AP based on RRM. The mDNS services from non-matching AP neighbor-list is automatically filtered. • regex: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to one or more AP configured within matching AP name or AP Location name using regular-expression string. The mDNS services from non-matching AP names is automatically filtered. • site-tag: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to one or more AP configured same site tag name. The mDNS services from non-matching site tag is automatically filtered. • ssid: Enables mDNS service discovery and distribution between wireless service provider and receiver connected to one or more AP configured same SSID name. The

	Command or Action	Purpose
		mDNS services from non-matching SSID is automatically filtered.
Step 4	exit Example: <code>Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# exit</code>	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

Verifying mDNS Gateway Configuration

This section provides guidelines to verify various Local Area Bonjour domain mDNS service configuration parameters, cache records, statistics and more on the controller in service peer mode.

Table 145:

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd cache { ap-mac client-mac detail glan-ID mdns-ap rln-id statistics type udn wired wlan-id }	Displays available mDNS cache records supporting multiple following variables providing granular source details: • ap-mac: Displays one or more mDNS service instance cache records discovered from provided AP MAC address. • client-mac: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from service provider wireless client MAC address. • detail: Displays mDNS record detail information combined with client and network attributes and other service parameters. • glan-ID: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from provided Wired Guest LAN ID MAC address. • mdns-ap: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from provided Wireless mDNS AP MAC address. • rln-id: Displays one or more mDNS service instances(s) cache records discovered from provided Wired Remote LAN ID. Range 1-128. • statistics: Displays detail global bi-directional mDNS statistics for IPv4 and IPv6 transports with packet processing count for each mDNS record-type. • type: Displays one or more service-instance(s) cache records matching mDNS record-type, i.e., A-AAAA, PTR, SRV and TXT. • udn: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from segmented Wireless service provider in User-Defined-Group (UDN) or shared-services. • wired: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from upstream Layer 2 wired network. • wlan-id: Displays one or more mDNS service instance(s) cache records discovered from matching provided wlan-ID. Range 1-4096.

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd statistics { debug flexconnect glan-id rlan-id wired wlan-id }	Displays detailed mdns statistics processed bi-directionally by system on each mDNS gateway enabled VLAN configured mDNS in Unicast mode. The expanded keyword of mDNS statistics can provide detail view on interface, policy, service-list and services.
show mdns-sd summary	Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status on all VLANs and interfaces of the system.

Verifying Catalyst WLC Service-Peer Configuration

This section provides guidelines to verify service peer service configuration and statistics.

Table 146:

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics	Displays mDNS service-routing statistics between Catalyst 9800 service-peer and upstream SDG Agent switch for global service discovery and distribution.
show mdns-sd summary	Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status and parameters of the system.

Reference

Table 147:

Related Topic	Document Title
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9600 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide	Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.2.2



CHAPTER 204

Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

- [Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2261](#)
- [Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2261](#)
- [Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2262](#)
- [Understanding mDNS Gateway Alternatives for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2262](#)
- [Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2264](#)
- [Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode, on page 2266](#)
- [Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode, on page 2278](#)
- [Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode, on page 2280](#)
- [Reference, on page 2282](#)

Overview of Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller introduces unicast mode function in Local Area Bonjour network domain. The enhanced gateway function at the first hop of Wired and Wireless networks communicates directly with any industry standard RFC 6762 compliant Multicast DNS (mDNS) end point in Layer 2 Unicast mode. The controller also introduces new service-peer mode expanding single-gateway to end-to-end service-routing with upstream SDG-Agent switch to enable unicast-mode, increased scale, performance and resiliency in the network.

Restrictions for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

- In FlexConnect mode network deployments, the mDNS gateway and service-peer mode on the controller must not be configured and must be in disabled state.

Prerequisites for Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

The Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller must be successfully configured and operational before implementing Cisco Local Area Bonjour for FlexConnect mode wireless networks.

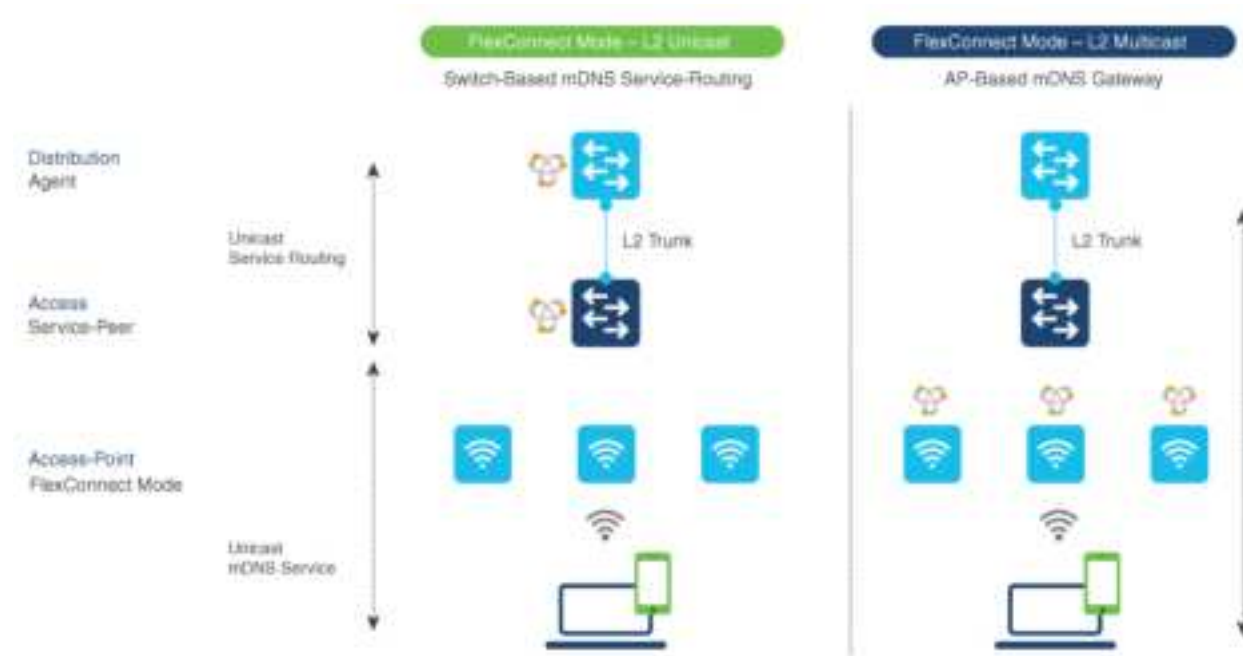
The following list provides the prerequisites for the controller that is to be deployed to enable successful mDNS gateway solution for Wireless FlexConnect:

- Ensure that the targeted Layer 2 Catalyst 9000 Series Ethernet switch is configured in service-peer role and running the required Cisco IOS-XE software version.
- Ensure that the Catalyst 9000 Series Ethernet switch runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.
- Ensure that the upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst switch for Wired and FlexConnect Local Switching Wireless networks is configured in SDG-Agent mode and runs a valid Cisco DNA-Advantage license.

Understanding mDNS Gateway Alternatives for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

The controller continues to innovate mDNS gateway function to address evolving business and technical requirements in the Enterprise networks. The FlexConnect Local Switching based wireless networks implement mDNS gateway using the following two methods depicted in the figure:

Figure 63: mDNS Gateway Alternatives for FlexConnect Mode



Based on the operating network environment, the mDNS gateway for FlexConnect mode wireless network can be implemented in one of the following modes to address service discovery and distribution:

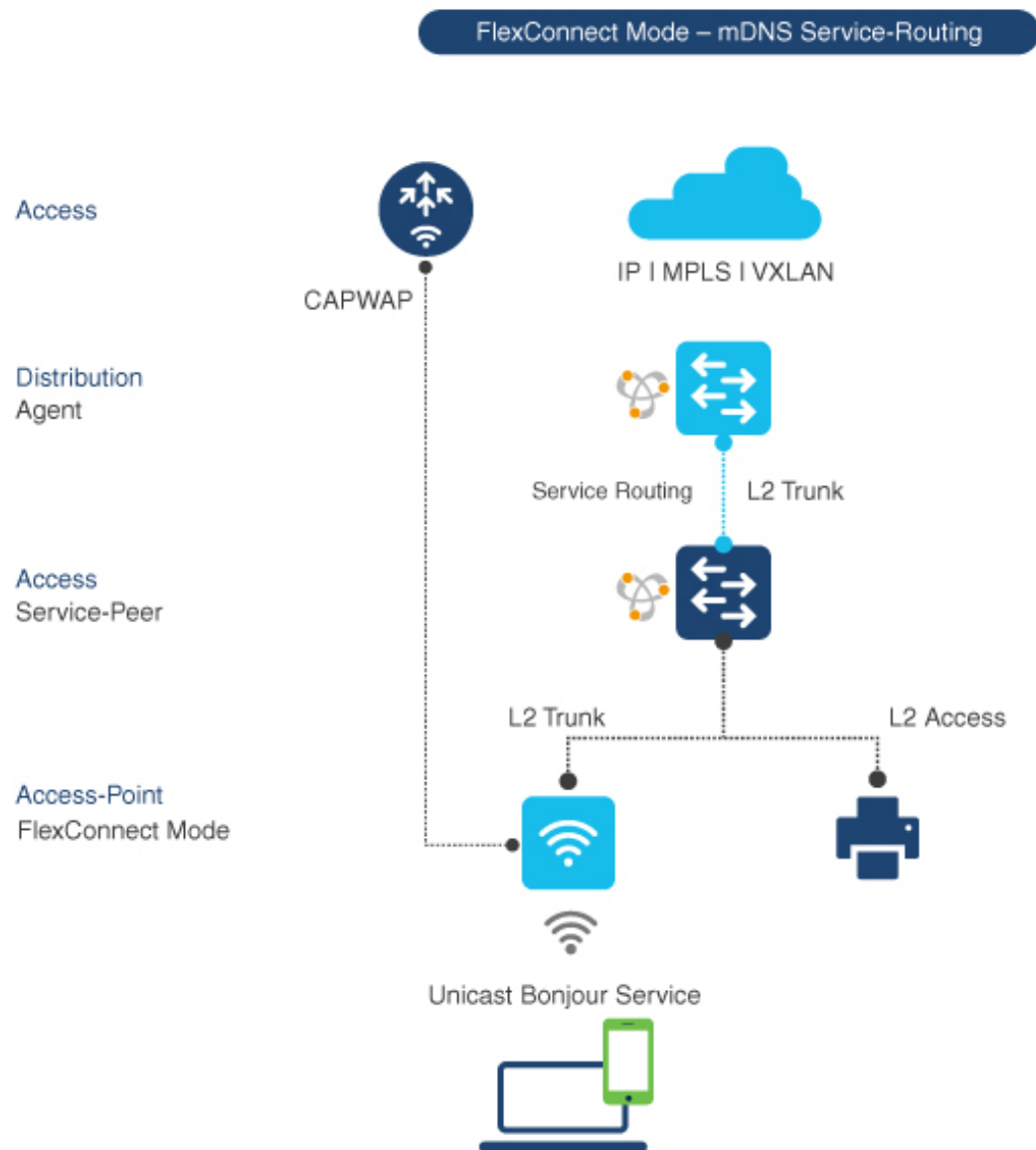
- **Switch Based mDNS Gateway**—In Layer 2 access, the Cisco Catalyst 9000 series Ethernet switch must be implemented as mDNS gateway in Service-Peer role. The following are the key benefits:
 - Replaces flood-n-learn with the new enhanced Unicast-based mDNS communication with FlexConnect mode wireless users.
 - Eliminates mDNS flood with Unicast service-routing to LAN distribution. The Unicast service-routing between LAN distribution and Layer 2 access layer switches forms Local Area Bonjour domain to enable policy and location-based service discovery and distribution. The Unicast based service-routing over Layer 2 trunk eliminates mDNS flood-free and enables service-oriented wireless networks.
 - Eliminates the requirement to forward wired network traffic to wireless Access Points improving wireless scale, performance, and network reliability.
- **AP Based mDNS Gateway**—The Cisco FlexConnect mode wireless access points can alternatively be implemented as mDNS gateway when connected to unsupported LAN access switch. In this method, the mDNS service discovery and distribution follows flood-n-learn mechanism over the Layer 2 wireless network. To implement AP based mDNS gateway, see the [Multicast Domain Name System](#) chapter.

Understanding Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

The controller supports mDNS gateway function with various advancements for broad range of wireless networks. As the enterprise requirements expands it drives IT organization to introduce new network deployment models, supporting mobile devices and distributed zero-configuration services following increased scale, granular security control and resiliency for mission critical networks. The common unified Cisco IOS-XE operating system across Cisco Catalyst 9000 series LAN switches and Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller enables distributed Bonjour gateway function at network edge. With end-to-end Wide Area Bonjour service-routing, the new solution enables service-oriented enterprise networks with intuitive user-experience.

The following figure illustrates how the controller connected to wireless access points support mDNS gateway function to wireless users in FlexConnect Local Switching mode.

Figure 64: Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Controller Local Area Bonjour for Wireless - FlexConnect Mode



357160

The Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches in the Layer 2 access layer and Layer 3 distribution layer must be configured in the following mDNS gateway mode to enable Unicast-based mDNS service-routing between wired and FlexConnect Local Switching mode wireless users within the same Layer 2 network block:

- **Service-Peer** - The Layer 2 access switch connecting wireless access point in FlexConnect Local Switching mode must be configured with mDNS gateway in Service-Peer mode. Each Layer 2 access switch provides mDNS gateway function between locally attached wired and FlexConnect mode wireless users. The Unicast-based mDNS service discovery and distribution within same or different VLANs is supported with bi-directional mDNS policies on single Layer 2 access switch.
- **SDG Agent** - The mDNS flood-n-learn based method in Layer 2 network is replaced with simple Unicast based service-routing between Layer 2 access switch in Service-Peer mode and upstream distribution-layer

in mDNS gateway SDG Agent mode. The Unicast based mDNS service-routing eliminates mDNS flood over Layer 2 trunk ports providing increased bandwidth, enhanced security, location-based services, and flood control management in wired and FlexConnect wireless network.

Configuring Local Area Bonjour for Wireless FlexConnect Mode

This section provides configuration guidelines to implement Cisco Catalyst 9000 series Ethernet switch as mDNS gateway and enable service-peer and SDG Agent mode to enable service-routing with upstream distribution-layer Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switch in SDG Agent mode to build Local Area Bonjour.

Configuring mDNS Gateway Mode (CLI)

To enable mDNS gateway and Service-Peer mode on Layer 2 access switch and SDG Agent mode on Layer 3 distribution layer switch, perform the following:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS on the Layer 2 Catalyst switch and enters the mDNS gateway configuration mode. (Optional) You can configure the following additional parameters: • air-print-helper: Enables communication between Apple iOS devices like iPhone or iPad to discover and use older printers that does not support driverless AirPrint function. • cache-memory-max: Configures the percentage memory for cache. • ingress-client: Configures Ingress client packet tuners. • rate-limit: Enables rate limiting of incoming mDNS packets.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• service-announcement-count: Configures maximum advertisements. • service-announcement-timer: Configures advertisements announcement timer periodicity. • service-query-count: Configures maximum queries. • service-query-timer: Configures query forward timer periodicity. • service-type-enumeration: Configures service enumeration. Note For cache-memory-max, ingress-client, rate-limit, service-announcement-count, service-announcement-timer, service-query-count, service-query-timer, and service-type-enumeration commands, you can retain the default value of the respective parameter for general deployments. Configure a different value, if required, for a specific deployment.
Step 4	mode {service-peer sdg-agent} Example: Device(config-mdns-sd) # mode service-peer Device(config-mdns-sd) # mode sdg-agent	Configure mDNS gateway in one of the following modes based on the system settings: • service-peer– Enables Layer 2 Catalyst access switch in mDNS Service-Peer mode. • sdg-agent– Default. Enables Layer 3 distribution layer Catalyst switch in SDG Agent mode to peer with central Cisco Catalyst Center controller for Wide Area Bonjour service routing.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sd) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Service Policy (CLI)

You need to perform the following to configure an mDNS service policy:

1. Create service-list to permit built-in or user-defined custom service types.
2. Associate service-list to a service-policy to enforce ingress or egress direction.

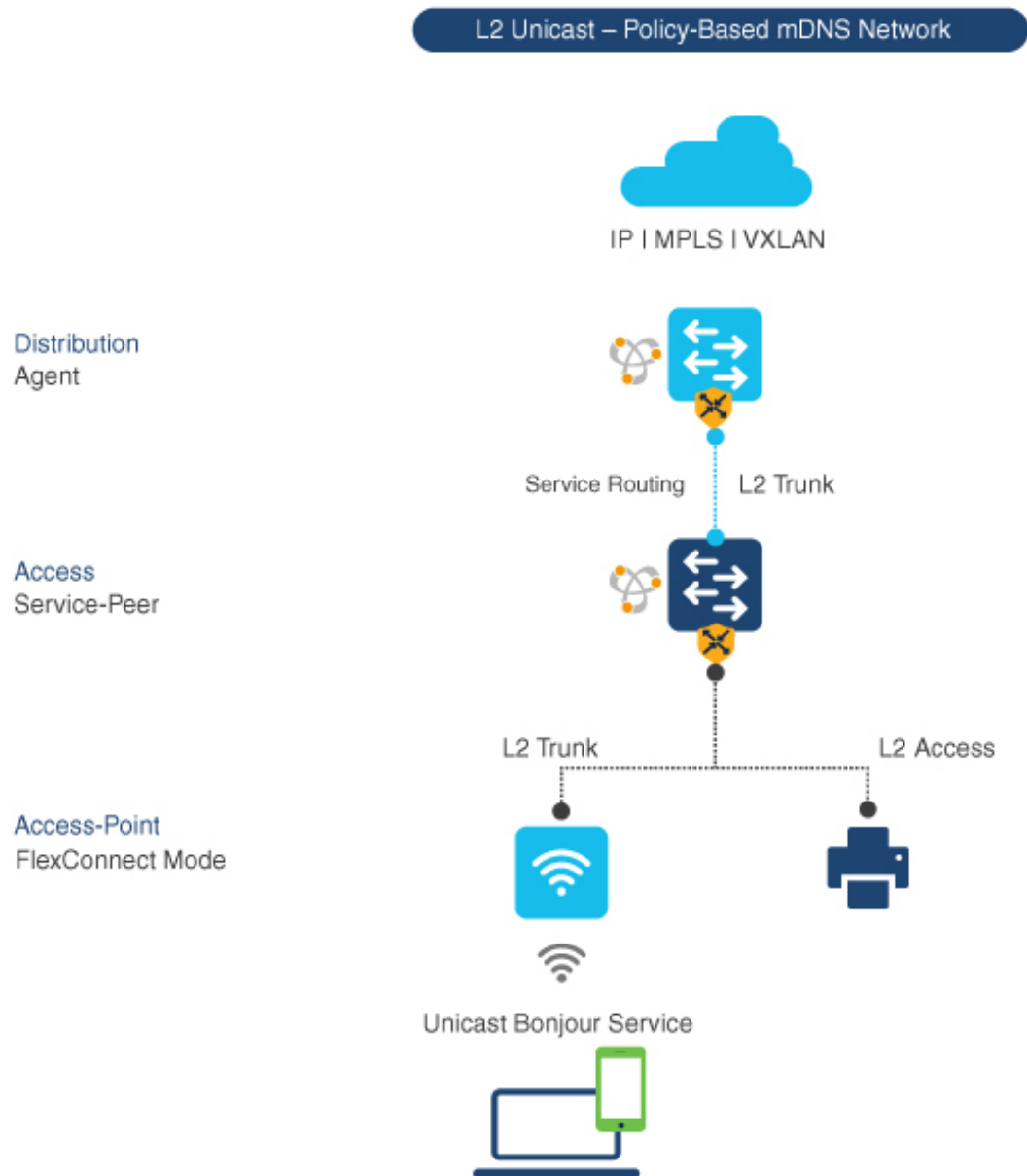
3. Apply the service policy to the new VLAN configuration mode.



Note You will need this configuration in Service-Peer mode for Layer 2 Catalyst switch and SDG agent mode for Layer 3 Catalyst switch.

The following figure shows how to configure mDNS policies on Catalyst switch in Service-Peer and SDG agent modes.

Figure 65: mDNS Service Policy Configuration on Catalyst Switch in Service-Peer and SDG Agent Modes



357161

This procedure builds and applies service-policies on target VLAN in service-peer and SDG agent modes.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> {in out} Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out	Configure mDNS service-list to classify one or more service types. Unique service-list is required to process incoming mDNS message and outbound response to request locally connected wired or FlexConnect wireless end points.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type {any announcement query}] Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS message-type announcement	Matches inbound service-list. The Catalyst switch validates to accept or drop incoming mDNS service-type (such as, Apple TV) advertisement or query matching message type from locally connected wired or FlexConnect wireless end points. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end. The default message-type used is any .
Step 5	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type {any announcement query}] Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match APPLE-TV Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match PRINTER-IPPS	Matches outbound service-list. The Catalyst switch provides local service proxy function by responding matching service-type to the requesting end point(s). For example, the Apple-TV and Printer learnt from VLAN 100 will be distributed to FlexConnect wireless receiver in same VLAN 100. The service-list contains implicit deny at the end. The message-type for outbound service-list is not required.
Step 6	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY	Creates unique mDNS service-policy in global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> { in out } Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-IN in Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out</pre>	Configures mDNS service-policy to associate service-list for each direction.
Step 8	vlan configuration <i>ID</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# vlan configuration 100</pre>	Enables wired or wireless FlexConnect user VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. One or more VLANs can be created for the same settings. Here, <i>ID</i> refers to the VLAN configuration ID. The range is from 101 to 110 and 200. This range allows to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID(s).
Step 9	mdns-sd gateway Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan)# mdns-sd gateway</pre>	Enables mDNS gateway on configured wired or FlexConnect wireless user VLAN ID(s).
Step 10	service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan-mdns)# service-policy VLAN100-POLICY</pre>	Associates mDNS service-policy to the configured wired or FlexConnect wireless user VLAN ID(s).
Step 11	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan-mdns)# exit</pre>	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Location-Filter (CLI)

Optionally, you can configure mDNS location-filter to allow service discovery and distribution between locally configured VLAN IDs associated to FlexConnect wireless user networks.

The following figure illustrates and references location-filter policy on Catalyst switch in Service-Peer mode permitting to discover and distribute mDNS services between wired and FlexConnect wireless user VLANs.

Figure 66: Catalyst Service-Peer mDNS Location-Filter Configuration



To enable local service proxy on Cisco Catalyst switch in Service-Peer mode and discover mDNS services between local wired and wireless FlexConnect user VLANs, perform the following:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd location-filter <i>location-filter-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd location-filter LOCAL-PROXY	Configures a unique location-filter in global configuration mode.
Step 4	match location-group {all default ID} vlan [ID] Example:	Configures the match criteria to mutually distribute the permitted services between grouped VLANs. For example, mDNS services can be discovered and distributed using the

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>Device(config-mdns-loc-filter)# match location-group default vlan 100 Device(config-mdns-loc-filter)# match location-group default vlan 101</pre>	Unicast mode between wireless FlexConnect user VLAN ID 100 and wired user VLAN ID 101.
Step 5	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> {in out} Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out</pre>	Configures the mDNS service-list to classify one or more service types. The service-list configuration is required to process any incoming or outgoing mDNS messages.
Step 6	match <i>service-definition-name</i> [message-type {any announcement query}] Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out Device(config-mdns-sl-out)# match APPLE-TV location-filter LOCAL-PROXY</pre>	Associates location-filter to one or more service types to enable local proxy between local VLANs. For example, the Apple-TV learnt from VLAN 100 and VLAN 101 will be distributed to receiver in VLAN 100. Note You do not require a message-type for the outbound service-list.
Step 7	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY</pre>	Creates unique mDNS service-policy in global configuration mode.
Step 8	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> {in out} Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy VLAN100-POLICY Device(config-mdns-ser-policy)# service-list VLAN100-LIST-OUT out</pre>	Configures mDNS service-policy to associate service-list for each direction.
Step 9	vlan configuration <i>ID</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# vlan configuration 100</pre>	Enables VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. You can create one or more VLANs with the same settings. Here, <i>ID</i> refers to the VLAN configuration ID. The range is from 101 to 110 and 200. This range allows to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID(s).
Step 10	mdns-sd gateway Example: <pre>Device(config-vlan-config)# mdns-sd gateway</pre>	Enables mDNS gateway on configured VLAN ID(s).
Step 11	service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example:	Associates mDNS service-policy to the configured VLAN ID(s).

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd) # service-policy VLAN100-POLICY	
Step 12	exit Example: Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Custom Service Definition (CLI)

The Cisco IOS-XE supports mapping of various built-in well-known mDNS service-definition types to key mDNS PTR records and user-friendly names. For example, built-in Apple-TV service-type is associated with `_airplay._tcp.local` and `_raop._tcp.local` PTR records to successfully enable service in the network. Network administrators create custom service-definition with matching mDNS PTR records to enable end mDNS service-routing in the network.

The custom service-definition can be associated to the service-list as described in the following steps:

Procedure

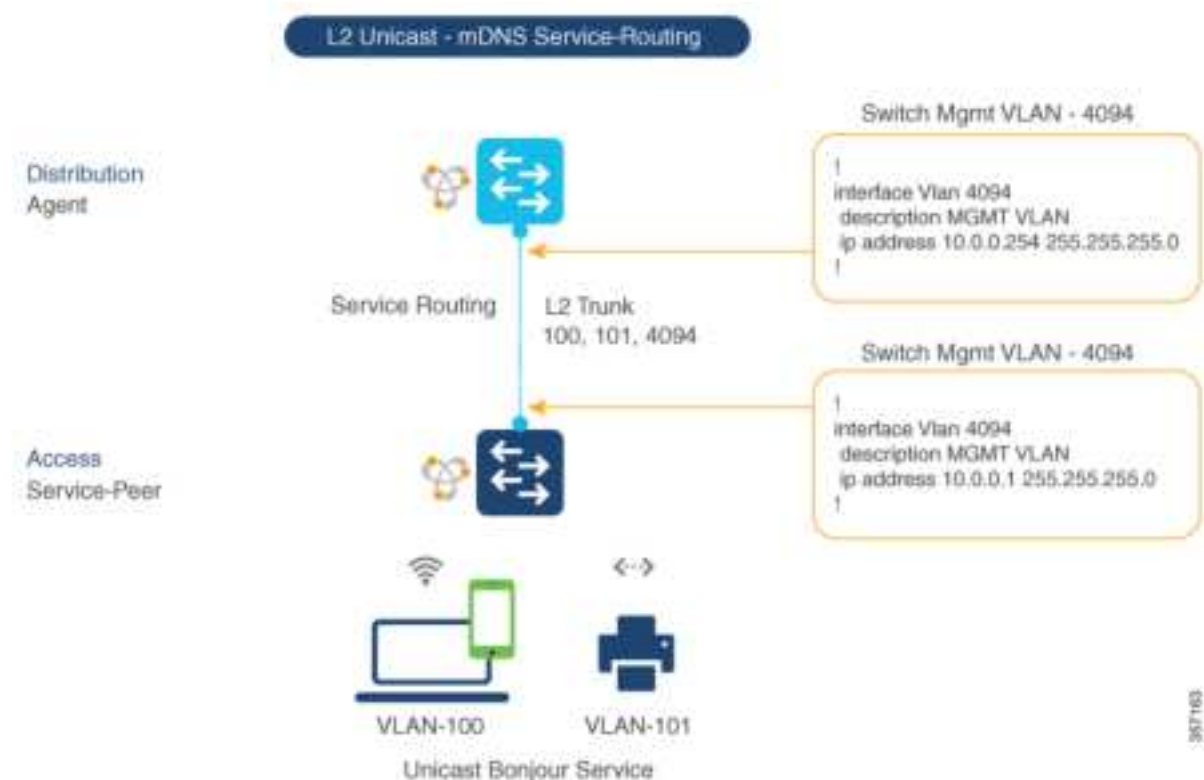
	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-definition <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config) # mdns-sd service-definition APPLE-CLASSROOM	Creates a unique service-definition name for custom service-types.
Step 4	service-type <i>custom-mDNS-PTR</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def) # service-type _classroom._tcp.local	Configures a regular-expression string for custom mDNS PoinTeR(PTR) record.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def) # exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Service-Routing on Service-Peer (CLI)

The Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst switch in Service-Peer mode builds a service-routing with an upstream distribution-layer switch in the SDG Agent mode. To build service-routing, the Layer 2 Cisco Catalyst switch requires at least one interface with valid IP address to reach the upstream SDG Agent Catalyst switch. The switch management port is unsupported.

The following figure illustrates the topology to enable unicast-based service-routing over Layer 2 trunk between access-layer Catalyst switch in the Service-Peer mode and distribution-layer Catalyst switch in SDG Agent mode.

Figure 67: Catalyst Service-Peer Service-Routing Configuration



To enable service-routing on Cisco Catalyst switch in Service-Peer mode and setup mDNS trust interface settings, follow the procedure given below:

Procedure

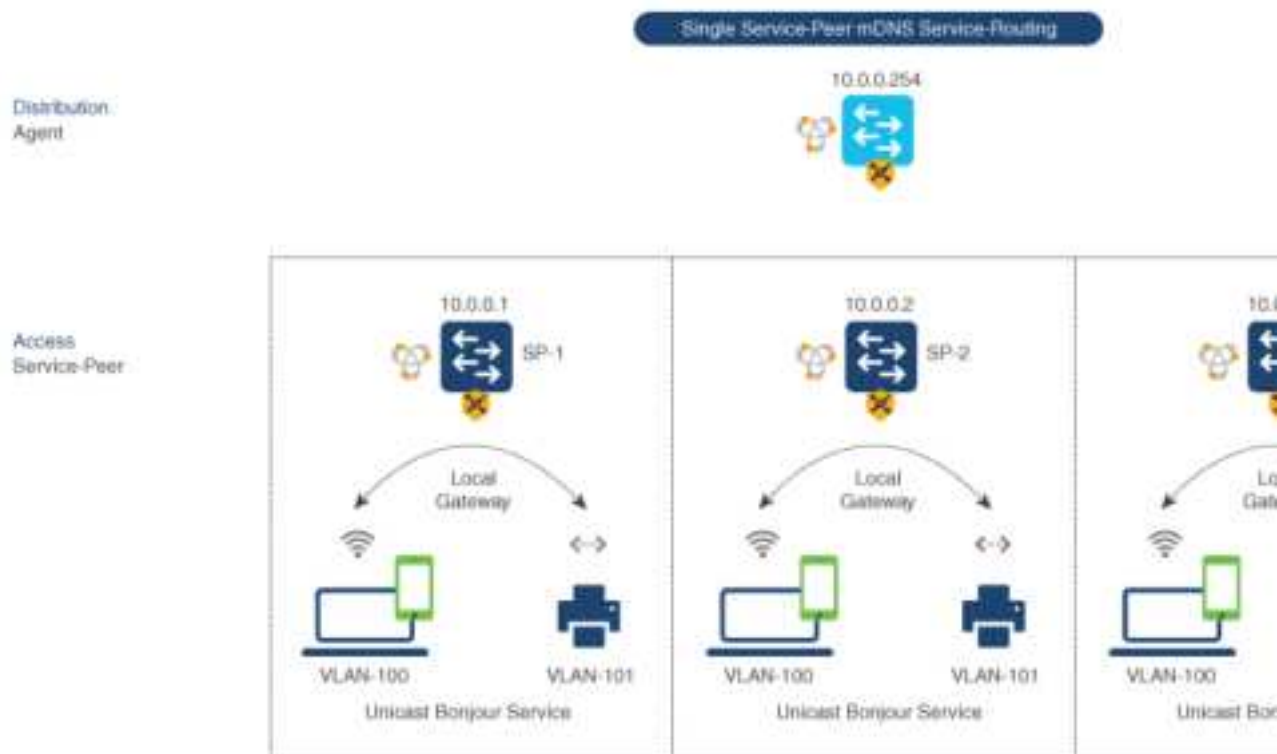
	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables Privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example:	Enters the global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	vlan configuration <i>ID</i> Example: Device(config)# vlan configuration 100	Enables Wired and FlexConnect user VLAN configuration for advanced service parameters. One or more VLANs can be created for the same settings. Here, <i>ID</i> refers to the VLAN configuration ID. For example, <i>vlan configuration 101-110, 200</i> range, allows to configure consecutive and non-consecutive VLAN ID(s).
Step 4	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-vlan-config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway on configured VLAN ID(s). To enable the respective functionalities, enter the following commands in the mDNS gateway configuration mode: • active-query timer [sec]: Configure to enable refresh discovered services and their records with periodic mDNS Query message for permitted service types. The valid range is from 60 to 3600 seconds. The recommended value is 3600 seconds. • service-mdns-query {ptr srv txt}: Permits processing specific Query type. The default query type is PTR. • transport {ipv4 ipv6 both}: Permits processing for IPv4, IPv6, or both. It is recommended to use one network type to reduce redundant processing and respond with the same information over two network types. The default network type is IPv4.
Step 5	source-interface <i>ID</i> Example: Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# source-interface vlan 4094	Selects the interface with a valid IP address to source service-routing session with the upstream Cisco Catalyst SDG Agent switch. Typically, the management VLAN interface can be used.
Step 6	sdg-agent [<i>IPv4_address</i>] Example: Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# sdg-agent 10.0.0.254	Configures the SDG Agent IPv4 address, typically, the management VLAN gateway address. If FHRP mode, then use the FHRP virtual IP address of the management VLAN.
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-vlan-mdns-sd)# exit	Exits the mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Configuring Location-Based mDNS

By default, the Layer 2 Catalyst switch in the Service-Peer mode enables per-switch mDNS discovery and distribution in FlexConnect wireless users attached locally to the switch. This default per-switch location-based mDNS is supported even when the FlexConnect user VLANs may be extended between multiple Layer 2 Catalyst switches for user mobility purpose. The mDNS service-policy configuration SDG Agent is required to accept policy-based mDNS service provider and receiver information from downstream Service-Peer access-layer switch.

Figure 68: Per-Switch Location-Based FlexConnect Configuration



Note Configure the mDNS service policy on the distribution layer SDG Agent switch before proceeding to the next configuration step. For more information, see the [Configuring mDNS Service Policy](#) section.

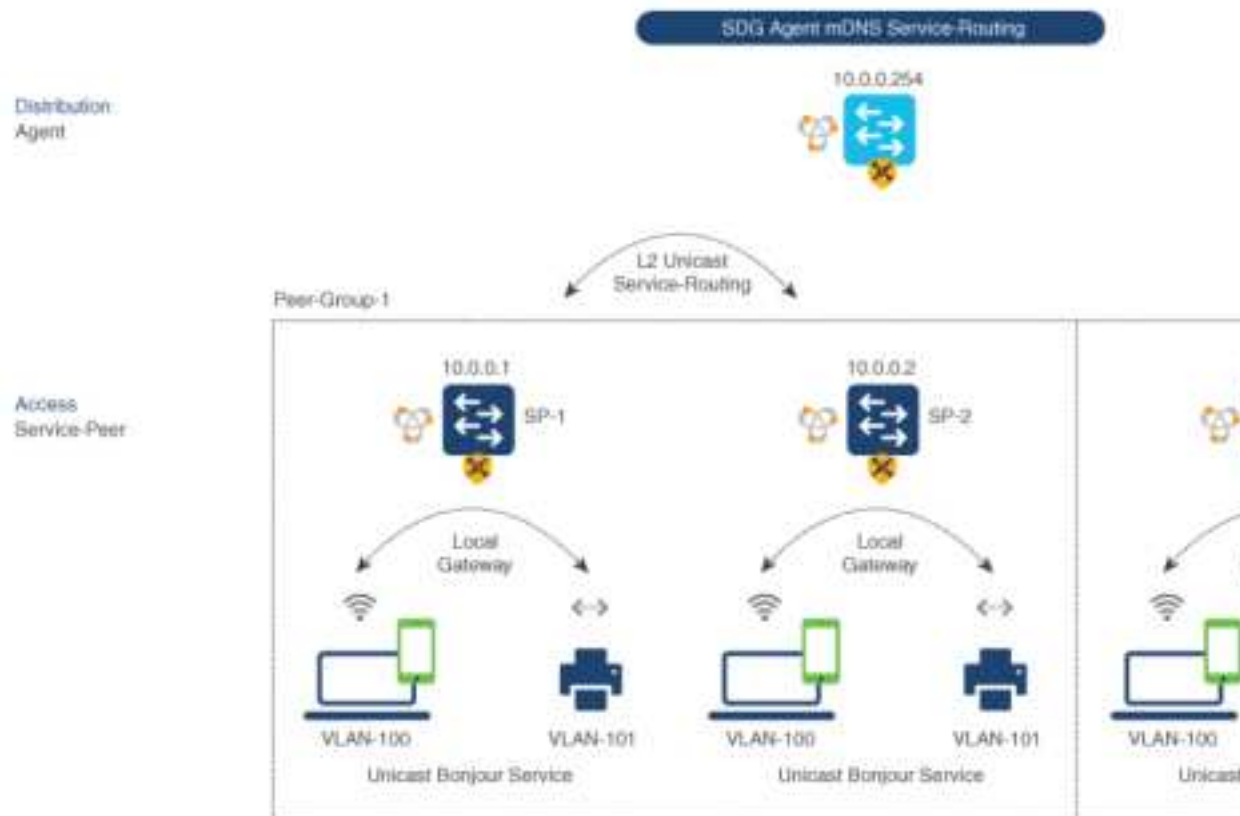
Configuring Service-Routing on SDG Agent (CLI)

The Cisco Catalyst 9000 series switches support SDG Agent mode automatically at the distribution layer and enables Unicast mode Bonjour service-routing with the downstream Layer 2 access-layer Ethernet switches connected to the FlexConnect wireless users. The SDG Agent must be configured with mDNS service-policy on wireless FlexConnect user VLAN to accept mDNS service cache from downstream Service-Peer switches.

This section provides step-by-step configuration guidelines to enable policy-based service discovery and distribution between locally paired Layer 2 access network switches in the Service-Peer mode.

The following figure illustrates unicast service-routing on SDG Agent and downstream Layer 2 access network switches in the Service-Peer mode.

Figure 69: Catalyst SDG Agent Service-Routing Configuration



Note Configure the mDNS service policy on the distribution layer SDG Agent switch before proceeding to the next configuration step. For more information, see the [Configuring mDNS Service Policy](#) section.

To enable the mDNS service policy and peer-group on SDG Agent switch, and enable Unicast mode service-routing with Layer 2 access network switches in Service-Peer mode, perform the following:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device# enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 3	mdns-sd service-peer group <i>service-peer-group-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-peer group group_1	Configures a unique Service-Peer group.
Step 4	peer-group [ID] Example: Device(config-mdns-svc-peer)# peer-group 1	Assigns a unique peer-group ID to the Service-Peers pair permitting mDNS service discovery and distribution within the assigned group list. The valid peer-group range is from 1 to 1000 for each SDG Agent switch.
Step 5	service-policy service-policy-name Example: Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-policy VLAN100-POLICY	Associates an mDNS service policy to accept service advertisements and query from the paired Service-Peers.
Step 6	service-peer [IPv4_address] location-group {all default id} Example: Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-peer 10.0.0.1 location-group default Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# service-peer 10.0.0.2 location-group default	Configures at least one Service-Peer to accept the mDNS service advertisement or query message. When a group has more than one Service-Peers, the SDG Agent provides Layer 2 Unicast mode routing between the configured peers. For example, the SDG Agent provides Unicast based service gateway function between three (10.0.0.1 and 10.0.0.2) Layer 2 Service-Peer switches matching the associated service-policy. The mDNS service information from the unpaired Layer 2 Service-Peer (10.0.0.3) cannot announce or receive mDNS services with the other grouped Service-Peers (10.0.0.1 and 10.0.0.2).
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-svc-peer-grp)# exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.

Verifying Local Area Bonjour in Service-Peer Mode

This section provides guidelines to verify various Local Area Bonjour domain mDNS service configuration parameters, cache records, statistics and more on the controller in service-peer mode

Table 148:

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd cache {all interface mac name service-peer static type vlan}	Displays available mDNS cache records supporting multiple variables providing granular source details received from wired or wireless FlexConnect user VLANs. The variables are as follows: • all – Displays all available cache records discovered from multiple source connections of a system. • interface – Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 3 interface. • mac - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified MAC address. • name - Displays available cache records based on the service provider announced name. • service-peer - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 Service-Peer. • static – Displays locally configured static mDNS cache entry. • type – Displays available cache records based on the specific mDNS record type, such as, PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA. • vlan - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 VLAN ID in the Unicast mode.
show mdns-sd service-definition {name type}	Displays built-in and user-defined custom service-definition that maps service name to the mDNS PTR records. The service-definition can be filtered by name or type.
show mdns-sd service-list {direction name}	Displays inbound or outbound direction list of configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction.
show mdns-sd service-policy {interface name}	Displays list of mDNS service-policy mapped with inbound or outbound service-list. The service-policy list can be filtered by an associated specified interface or name.

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd statistics {all cache debug interface service-list service-policy services vlan}	Displays detailed mDNS statistics processed bi-directionally by the system on each mDNS gateway enabled VLAN configured mDNS in Unicast mode. The expanded keyword for mDNS statistics can provide detailed view on interface, policy, service-list, and services. Note This command displays all mDNS packets received from directly connected (Local Mode) or Flex clients in WLAN.
show mdns-sd summary {interface vlan}	Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status on all wired and wireless FlexConnect user VLANs, and interfaces of the system.

Verifying Local Area Bonjour in SDG Agent Mode

This section provides guidelines to verify various Local Area Bonjour domain mDNS service configuration parameters, cache records, statistics and more on the controller in SDG Agent mode

Table 149:

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd cache {all interface mac name service-peer static type vlan vrf}	Displays available mDNS cache records supporting multiple variables providing granular source details. The variables are as follows: • all – Displays all available cache records discovered from multiple source connections of a system. • interface – Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 3 interface. • mac - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified MAC address. • name - Displays available cache records based on the service provider announced name. • service-peer - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 Service-Peer. • static – Displays locally configured static mDNS cache entry. • type – Displays available cache records based on the specific mDNS record type, such as, PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA. • vlan - Displays available cache records discovered from the specified Layer 2 VLAN ID in the Unicast mode. • vrf - Displays per-VRF available cache records based on specific mDNS record type, i.e., PTR, SRV, TXT, A or AAAA.
show mdns-sd service-definition {name type}	Displays built-in and user-defined custom service-definition that maps service name to the mDNS PTR records. The service-definition can be filtered by name or type.
show mdns-sd service-list {direction name}	Displays inbound or outbound direction list of the configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction.
show mdns-sd service-policy {interface name}	Displays list of mDNS service-policy mapped with inbound or outbound service-list. The service-policy list can be filtered by an associated specified interface or name.

Command or Action	Purpose
show mdns-sd statistics {all cache debug interface service-list service-policy services vlan}	Displays detailed mDNS statistics processed bi-directionally by the system on each mDNS gateway enabled VLAN configured mDNS in Unicast mode. The expanded keyword for mDNS statistics can provide detailed view on interface, policy, service-list, and services.
show mdns-sd summary {interface vlan}	Displays brief information about mDNS gateway and key configuration status on all VLANs and interfaces of the system.

Reference

Table 150:

Related Topic	Document Title
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9600 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide	Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.2.2



CHAPTER 205

Configuration Example for Local Mode - Wireless and Wired

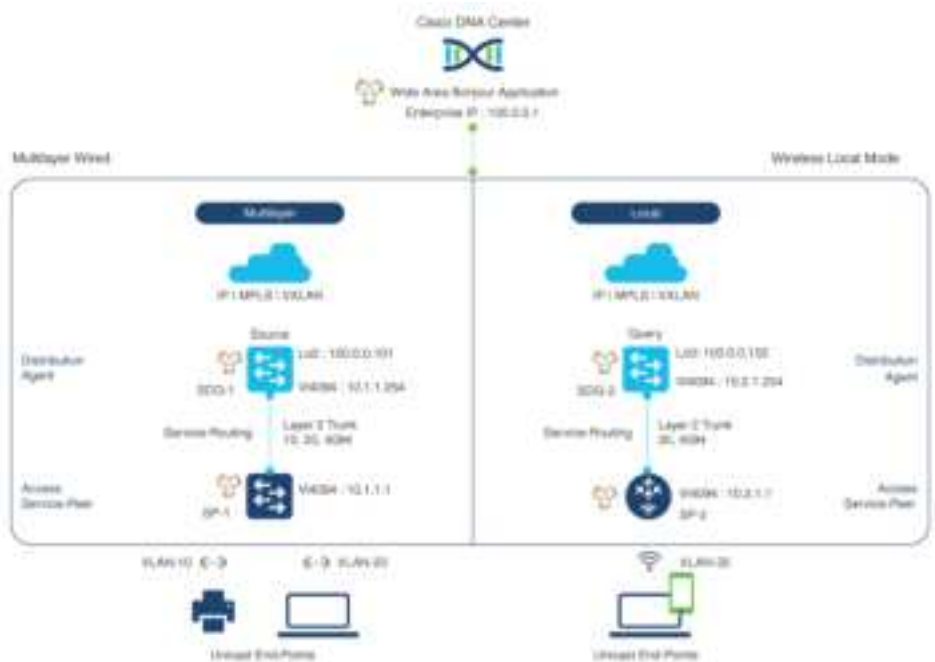
- [Overview, on page 2283](#)
- [Configuring Wireless AP Multicast Mode, on page 2284](#)
- [Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Endpoints, on page 2285](#)
- [Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Endpoints, on page 2287](#)
- [Cisco Catalyst Center Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless Configuration, on page 2290](#)
- [Verifying Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Local Mode, on page 2292](#)
- [Reference, on page 2299](#)

Overview

This chapter provides configuration guidelines to implement Wide Area Bonjour enabling end-to-end policy-based mDNS service discovery and distribution across multilayer wired and wireless local mode. The first hop mDNS gateway at Layer 2 access switch and the controller must be implemented in service peer mode and paired with LAN and wireless distribution-layer switch in SDG agent role. The network-wide distributed SDG agent must be paired with the Cisco Catalyst Center to enable mDNS service-routing across IP core network based on multiple services and network attributes.

The following figure illustrates unicast mode bonjour network environment with AirPrint capable printer and user computer (macOS, Microsoft Windows, etc.) connected to same Ethernet switch. The computers and mobile devices of the wireless user are associated to wireless AP in local mode across multi-hop IP boundary from printers.

Figure 70: Wide Area Bonjour Service-Routing Multilayer Wired and Wireless Local Mode



Configuring Wireless AP Multicast Mode

This procedure configures wireless AP multicast on the controller for local mode APs and IP network.

The controller must be configured with unique IP multicast address for wireless AP in local mode to permit mDNS communication across wired and wireless networks.

Step	Controller Service Peer Configuration
Step-1 Enable global IP Multicast on Cisco Catalyst 9800 series controller.	<pre>! wireless multicast !</pre>
Step-2 Configure Wireless AP mode to Multicast with unique IP Multicast address.	<pre>! wireless multicast 239.254.254.1 !</pre>

The following table provides step-by-step IP multicast configuration guidelines on SDG agent (SDG-1 and SDG-2) at the distribution layer network.

Step	Switch SDG Agent Configuration	WLC SDG Agent Configuration
Step-1 Enable IP multicast-routing on distribution layer switches connecting Cisco Wireless Local Mode Access Point and Cisco Wireless LAN Controller.	<pre>! ip multicast-routing !</pre>	<pre>! ip multicast-routing !</pre>
Step-2 Configure IP PIM Rendezvous-Point (RP) on distribution layer switches.	<pre>! ip pim rp-address 10.150.255.1 !</pre>	<pre>! ip pim rp-address 10.150.255.1 !</pre>
Step-3 Enable IP PIM on SVI Interface of distribution layer switches connected Cisco Wireless Local Mode Access Point and Cisco WLC Management VLAN.	<pre>! interface Vlan 101 description CONNECTED TO WIRELESS AP - LOCAL MODE ip pim sparse-mode !</pre>	<pre>! interface Vlan 4094 description CONNECTED TO WIRELESS MGMT - WLC ip pim sparse-mode !</pre>
Step-4 Enable IP PIM on Layer 3 uplink Interface of distribution layer switches connected Cisco Wireless Local Mode Access Point and Cisco WLC Management VLAN.	<pre>! interface range FortyGigabitEthernet 1/1/1 - 2 description CONNECTED TO IP CORE NETWORK ip pim sparse-mode !</pre>	<pre>! interface range FortyGigabitEthernet 1/1/1 - 2 description CONNECTED TO IP CORE NETWORK ip pim sparse-mode !</pre>

**Note**

IP Multicast must be enabled in the Layer 3 core network to allow Cisco wireless APs in local mode to successfully join the WLC announced multicast group. For more information, refer to the Cisco online documentation to implement IP multicast networks.

Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Endpoints

This section provides guidance on configuring Service-Peer, SDG Agent, and Cisco Catalyst Center, allowing the wired and wireless endpoints to dynamically discover default service list using Layer 2 unicast and policy.

Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of wired and wireless controller access layer service peer.

Table 151: Configuring Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SP-1 Service-Peer Configuration	Sample Configuration: SP-2 Service-Peer Configuration
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode. Note In wireless controller, service peer mode is enabled by default with mDNS gateway configuration.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !</pre>
Step-2: Activate unicast mDNS gateway and attach service policy on wired VLAN and wireless FlexConnect user VLAN of SP-1 and SP-2 Layer 2 access switch.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !</pre>	<pre>! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !</pre>
Step-3: Enable unicast service routing between wired and wireless service peer and SDG agent using wired management source VLAN ID and IP address.	<pre>vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !</pre>	<pre>! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !</pre>

Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of distribution layer SDG agent.

Table 152: Configuring Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode. The default mode is sdg-agent.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-2: Activate unicast mDNS gateway on wired VLAN and wireless user VLAN on SDG agents.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-3: Configure the service peer-group and attach service-policy on the SDG agent distribution switch and enable service-routing between the assigned Service Peer switch group.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-peer group peer-group 1 service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-peer 10.1.1.1 location-group default service-peer 10.1.1.2 location-group default !</pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-4: Associate outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>
Step-5: Enable Wide Area Bonjour service-routing with service export configuration association controller IP Address, source interface for stateful connection, and mandatory egress policy for Wide Area service-routing.	<pre>! service-export mdns-sd controller DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY controller-address 100.0.0.1 controller-source-interface LOOPBACK 0 controller-service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY !</pre>

Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Endpoints

This section provides guidance on configuring Service-Peer, SDG Agent and Cisco Catalyst Center, allowing the wired and wireless endpoints to dynamically discover printer using Layer 2 unicast and policy.

Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of wired and wireless controller access layer service peer.

Table 153: Configuring Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: Switch Service Peer	Sample Configuration: Wireless Controller Service Peer
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode. Note In wireless controller, service peer mode is enabled by default with mDNS gateway configuration.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-2: Create unique mDNS inbound policy to permit ingress AirPrint service announcement on the Catalyst Switch and wireless controller in service peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: Switch Service Peer	Sample Configuration: Wireless Controller Service Peer
Step-3: Create unique mDNS outbound policy to permit egress AirPrint service response on the Catalyst Switch and wireless controller in service peer mode	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-4: Associate inbound and outbound service list to a unique service policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>	<pre>mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>
Step-5: Activate unicast mDNS gateway and attach service policy on wired VLAN and WLAN. • Switch: Activate mDNS gateway per VLAN. • Controller: Activate mDNS gateway per WLAN policy profile and SSID	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 20 mdns-sd gateways service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !</pre>	<pre>! wireless profile policy WLAN-PROFILE shutdown mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY no shutdown ! wlan WLAN-PROFILE 1 blizzard shutdown mdns-sd-interface gateway no shutdown !</pre>
Step-6: (Optional) Enable service routing on wired service peer mDNS between local VLANs. Also, enable location-based wireless service on the controller. • Switch: Configure location filter group to discover and distribute between paired local VLAN. • Controller: Configure wireless location-based services.	<pre>! mdns-sd location-filter LOCAL-PROXY match location-group default vlan 10 match location-group default vlan 20 ! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT OUT match printer-ipps location-filter LOCAL-PROXY !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY location ap-location !</pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: Switch Service Peer	Sample Configuration: Wireless Controller Service Peer
Step-7: Enable unicast service routing between wired and wireless service peer and SDG agent. • Switch: Configure SDG agent IP and wired management source VLAN ID and IP address. • Controller: Configure SDG Agent IP and wireless management source VLAN ID and IP address.	<pre> vlan configuration 10, 20 mdns-sd gateways source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 ! </pre>	<pre> ! mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.2.1.254 ! </pre>

Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of distribution layer SDG agent.

Table 154: Configuring Distribution Layer SDG Agent

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: Wired SDG Agent	Sample Configuration: Wireless SDG Agent
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode.	<pre> ! mdns-sd gateway ! </pre>	<pre> ! mdns-sd gateway ! </pre>
Step-2: Activate unicast mDNS gateway on wired VLAN and wireless user VLAN on respective SDG agents.	<pre> ! vlan configuration 10, 20 mdns-sd gateway ! </pre>	<pre> ! vlan configuration 30 mdns-sd gateway ! </pre>
Step-3: Create unique controller bound mDNS policy to permit egress AirPrint service discovery and distribution from Catalyst Switch in SDG agent mode. Inbound policy towards controller is not required.	<pre> ! mdns-sd service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp ! </pre>	<pre> ! mdns-sd service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp ! </pre>
Step-4: Associate outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre> ! mdns-sd service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT ! </pre>	<pre> ! mdns-sd service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT ! </pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: Wired SDG Agent	Sample Configuration: Wireless SDG Agent
Step-5: Enable Wide Area Bonjour service-routing with service export configuration association controller IP Address, source interface for stateful connection and mandatory egress policy for Wide Area service-routing.	<pre>! service-export mdns-sd controller DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY controller-address 100.0.0.1 controller-source-interface LOOPBACK 0 controller-service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY !</pre>	<pre>! service-export mdns-sd controller DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY controller-address 100.0.0.1 controller-source-interface LOOPBACK 0 controller-service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY !</pre>

Cisco Catalyst Center Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless Configuration

Configuring Service Filters for Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode (GUI)

This procedure implements global service filters, which permit the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application to dynamically discover and distribute service information between trusted Cisco Catalyst SDG agent switches across the IP network.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Navigate to the **Configuration** tab in the Wide Area Bonjour application.
 - Step 2** From the sidebar, select the subdomain for which you want to create the service filter.
 - Step 3** Check the **Service Filter** box.
 - Step 4** Click **Service Filter** icon from the topology to view a list of the service filters for the selected domain. You can also manually edit existing service filters from this list.
 - Step 5** Click **Create Service Filter**.
 - Step 6** From the **Network Mode** drop-down list, choose **Traditional** (the default mode).
 - Step 7** Enter a unique name for the service filter.
 - Step 8** (Optional) Enter a description for the service filter.
 - Step 9** Select one or more service types to permit announcements and queries.
 - Step 10** Enable or disable service filters after creating them. By default, service filters are enabled.
-

Configuring Source SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode (GUI)

This procedure configures discovery of wired printer sources from the LAN distribution switches paired with Layer 2 Catalyst Switches in a service peer role. The wireless distribution switches paired with a controller in a service peer role receive query responses for wired printers and distribute the responses to querying devices over the wireless local mode network.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Click Add in the upper-right portion of the Catalyst Center Policy screen.
Step 2	Select the Query SDG agent radio button. By default, the Source radio button is selected.
Step 3	From the SDG Agent/IP drop-down list, select an SDG agent (100.0.0.101) which announces the services, for example, Printer.
Step 4	Select Peer from the Service Layer drop-down list.
Step 5	Uncheck the box Any . By default, this is enabled.
Step 6	Select the query VLAN (Vlan-10) to distribute services (Printer) from a specific network.
Step 7	Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv4 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
Step 8	Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv6 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
Step 9	Enter the service peer IPv4 address (10.1.1.1).
Step 10	Click the + icon to add more service peers, if any. Select Any to accept services from any peer on a selected VLAN.
Step 11	(Optional) Click Add Next to add more source SDG agents. (Repeat the preceding steps.)
Step 12	Click DONE .
Step 13	Click CREATE .
-

Configuring Query SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless - Local Mode (GUI)

This procedure configures distributed services to query SDG agents connected to a controller in service peer mode, based on a policy.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Click Add in the upper-right portion of the DNA-Center Policy screen.
Step 2	Select the Query SDG agent radio button. By default, the Source radio button is selected.
Step 3	From the SDG Agent/IP drop-down list, select an SDG agent (100.0.0.102) that receives queries for the services (Printer).
Step 4	Select Peer from the Service Layer drop-down list.
Step 5	Uncheck the box Any . By default, this is enabled.

- Step 6** Select the query **VLAN** (Vlan-30) to distribute services (Printer) to a specific network.
- Step 7** Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv4 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
- Step 8** Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv6 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
- Step 9** Enter the **service peer IPv4 address** (10.2.1.254).
- Step 10** Click the **+** icon to add more service-peers, if any. Select **Any** to accept services from any peer on a selected VLAN.
- Step 11** (Optional) Click **Add Next** to add more query agents. (Repeat the preceding steps.)
- Step 12** Click **DONE**.
- Step 13** Click **CREATE**.

Verifying Wide Area Bonjour Between Multilayer Wired and Wireless Local Mode

This section provides step-by-step mDNS configuration and service discovery and distribution status based on applied policy on Wired Layer 2 access switch in service peer and SDG agent mode.

Verifying Wired Service-Peer Configuration

Use the following commands on the Cisco Catalyst switch in service peer (SP-1) mode to determine the operational status after applying configuration and discovering the AirPrint service from the local network.

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary vlan 10
```

```
VLAN: 10
=====
mDNS Gateway: Enabled
mDNS Service Policy: LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
Active Query: Enabled
               : Periodicity 3600 Seconds
Transport Type: IPv4
Service Instance Suffix: Not Configured
mDNS Query Type: ALL
SDG Agent IP: 10.1.1.254
Source Interface: Vlan4094
```

```
Device# show mdns-sd service-policy name LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
```

```
Service Policy Name Service List IN Name Service List Out Name
=====
LOCAL-AREA-POLICY      LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN      LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT
```

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache vlan 10
```

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id/ Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
_universal._sub._ipp. _tcp.local	PTR	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. _ipp._tcp.local

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id/ Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
_ipp. _tcp.local	PTR	4500/4486	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local	SRV	4500/4486	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. local
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN.local	A	4500/4486	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	10.153.1.1
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN.local	AAAA	4500/4486	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	2001:10:153: 1:79: A40C:6BEE: AEEC
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local	TXT	4500/4486	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	(451)'txtvers=1"priori ty=EPSON WF-3620 usb_MFG=EPSON" usb_MDL=W~'

Device# **show mdns-sd statistics vlan 10**

mDNS Statistics

V110:

```

mDNS packets sent           : 612
  IPv4 sent                  : 612
    IPv4 advertisements sent : 0
    IPv4 queries sent        : 612
  IPv6 sent                  : 0
    IPv6 advertisements sent : 0
    IPv6 queries sent        : 0
Unicast sent                 : 0
mDNS packets rate limited    : 0
mDNS packets received        : 42
  advertisements received    : 28
  queries received           : 14
    IPv4 received            : 42
      IPv4 advertisements received: 28
      IPv4 queries received      : 14
    IPv6 received            : 0
      IPv6 advertisements received: 0
      IPv6 queries received      : 0
mDNS packets dropped         : 0

```

```

=====
Query Type                   : Count
=====
PTR                           : 12
SRV                           : 0
A                             : 0
AAAA                          : 0
TXT                           : 0
ANY                           : 3
=====

```

```

PTR Name                     Advertisement      Query

```

```
=====
_ipp. _tcp.local          9          4
```

Verifying Wired SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status

This section provides information on mDNS configuration and service-routing on Wired SDG Agent (SDG-1) with locally attached Layer 2 access switches in Service-Peer (SP-1) mode and with centrally paired Cisco Catalyst Center for Wide Area Bonjour service-routing.

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary vlan 10
```

```
VLAN: 10
```

```
=====
mDNS Gateway           : Enabled
mDNS Service Policy    : LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
Active Query           : Disabled
Transport Type         : IPv4
Service Instance Suffix : Not-Configured
mDNS Query Type        : ALL
SDG Agent IP           : Not-Configured
Source Interface       : Not-Configured
```

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache vlan 10
```

```
VLAN: 10
```

```
=====
mDNS Gateway           : Enabled
mDNS Service Policy    : LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
Active Query           : Disabled
Transport Type         : IPv4
Service Instance Suffix : Not-Configured
mDNS Query Type        : ALL
SDG Agent IP           : Not-Configured
Source Interface       : Not-Configured
```

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id /Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
_universal. _sub._ipp ._tcp.local	PTR	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local
_ipp. _tcp.local	PTR	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN. _ipp. _tcp.local	SRV	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	0 0 631 Bldg-1-FL1-PRN. local
Bldg-1-FL1 -PRN.local	A	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	10.153.1.1

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id /Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN.local	AAAA	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	2001:10:153: 1:79: A40C:6BEE: AEEC
Bldg-1-FL1- PRN._ipp. _tcp.local	TXT	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	(51) was priority=30 ty=EPSON WF-3620 Series" to MGHEONMD-W

Device# **show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics**

```

                                One min, 5 mins, 1 hour
Average Input rate (pps)      : 0,          0,          0
Average Output rate (pps)    : 0,          0,          0
Messages received:
  Query                       : 15796
  ANY query                   : 0
  Advertisements              : 28
  Advertisement Withdraw      : 0
  Interface down              : 0
  Vlan down                   : 0
  Service-peer ID change      : 0
  Service-peer cache clear    : 12
  Resync response             : 6
Messages sent:
  Query response              : 5975
  ANY Query response          : 0
  Cache-sync                  : 61
  Get service-instance        : 0

```

Device# **show mdns-sd controller detail**

```

Controller: DNAC-Policy
IP: 100.0.0.1, Dest Port : 9991, Src Port : 42446, State : UP
Source Interface : Loopback0, MD5 Disabled
Hello Timer 30 sec, Dead Timer 120 sec, Next Hello 00:00:24
Uptime 2d05h (17:02:37 UTC Jan 15 2021)
Service Buffer: Enabled

Service Announcement:
Filter: DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY
Count 50, Delay Timer 30 sec, Pending Announcement 0, Pending Withdraw 0
Total Export Count 56, Next Export in 00:00:24

Service Query:
Query Suppression Enabled
Query Count 50, Query Delay Timer 15 sec, Pending 0
Total Query Count 15791, Next Query in 00:00:09

```

Verifying Wireless Service-Peer Configuration and Service Status

The command given below helps determine the operational status after applying configuration and discovering the AirPrint service from the remote network.

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary
```

```
mDNS Gateway: Enabled
Mode: Service Peer
Service Announcement Periodicity (in seconds): 30
Service Announcement Count: 50
Service Query Periodicity (in seconds): 15
Service Query Count: 50
Active Response Timer (in seconds): Disabled
ANY Query Forward: Disabled
SDG Agent IP: 10.2.1.254
Source Interface: Vlan4094
Active Query Periodicity (in minutes): 15
Transport Type: IPv4
mDNS AP service policy: default-mdns-service-policy
```

```
Device# show wireless profile policy detailed WLAN-PROFILE | sec mDNS
```

```
mDNS Gateway
  mDNS Service Policy name      : LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
```

```
Device# show mdns-sd statistics wlan-id 1
```

```
mDNS Packet Statistics
-----
mDNS stats last reset time: 01/10/21 21:38:19
mDNS packets sent: 4592
  IPv4 sent: 4592
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 4592
    IPv4 queries sent: 0
  IPv6 sent: 0
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 0
    IPv6 queries sent: 0
  Multicast sent: 0
    IPv4 sent: 0
    IPv6 sent: 0
mDNS packets received: 297
  advertisements received: 80
  queries received: 217
  IPv4 received: 297
    IPv4 advertisements received: 80
    IPv4 queries received: 217
  IPv6 received: 0
    IPv6 advertisements received: 0
    IPv6 queries received: 0
mDNS packets dropped: 297
Query Type Statistics
  PTR queries received: 1720
  SRV queries received: 8
  A query received: 8
  AAAA queries received: 8
  TXT queries received: 97
  ANY queries received: 153
  OTHER queries received: 0
```

```
Device# show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics
```

```
mDNS SP Statistics
```

```

last reset time: 01/10/21 21:37:36

Messages sent:
  Query                : 12675
  ANY query            : 0
  Advertisements       : 24
  Advertisement Withdraw : 0
  Service-peer ID change : 0
  Service-peer cache clear : 7
  Resync response      : 5
Messages received:
  Query response       : 4619
  ANY Query response   : 0
  Cache-sync          : 48
  Get service-instance : 0

```

```
Device# show mdns-sd query-db
```

```
MDNS QUERY DB
```

```

Client MAC: 4c32. 7593.e3af
Vlan ID: 30
Wlan ID: 1
Location Group ID: 0
PTR Name(s):
  _ipp. _tcp.local

```

Verifying Wireless SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status

This section provides information on mDNS configuration and service-routing on Wireless SDG Agent (SDG-2) with locally attached controller in service peer (SP-2) mode and with centrally paired Cisco DNA-Center for Wide Area Bonjour service-routing.

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary vlan 30
```

```

VLAN: 30
=====
mDNS Gateway           : Enabled
mDNS Service Policy    : LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
Active Query           : Disabled
Transport Type         : IPv4
Service Instance Suffix : Not Configured
mDNS Query Type        : ALL
SDG Agent IP           : Not Configured
Source Interface       : Not Configured

```

```
Device# show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics
```

```

One min, 5 mins, 1 hour
Average Input rate (pps) :0,      0,      0
Average Output rate (pps):0,      0,      0
Messages received:
  Query                : 12191
  ANY query            : 0
  Advertisements       : 0
  Advertisement Withdraw : 0
  Interface down       : 0
  Vlan down            : 0
  Service-peer ID change : 0
  Service-peer cache clear : 18
  Resync response      : 10

```

```

Messages sent:
Query response           : 1975
ANY Query response       : 0
Cache-sync               : 19
Get service-instance     : 0

Device# show mdns-sd controller detail

Controller: DNAC-Policy
IP: 100.0.0.1, Dest Port : 9991, Src Port : 42931, State : UP
Source Interface: Loopback0, MD5 Disabled
Hello Timer 30 sec, Dead Timer 120 sec, Next Hello 00:00:19
Uptime 2d05h (17:10:18 UTC Jan 15 2021)
Service Buffer: Enabled

Service Announcement:
Filter: DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY
Count 50, Delay Timer 30 sec, Pending Announcement 0, Pending Withdraw 0
Total Export Count 0, Next Export in 00:00:19

Service Query:
Query Suppression Enabled
Query Count 50, Query Delay Timer 15 sec, Pending 0
Total Query Count 17093, Next Query in 00:00:19

```

Verifying Cisco Catalyst Center Configuration and Service-Routing Status

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application supports comprehensive assurance capabilities to manage service-routing with network-wide distributed Cisco Catalyst switches in SDG-Agent role and mDNS services discovered over Wide Area Bonjour domain. The assurance capabilities in Cisco Wide Area Bonjour provides ability to determine service-routing state, mDNS service state and many more information at various levels for day-2 operations, analysis and troubleshooting. Each category serves unique function to manage and troubleshoot Wide Area Bonjour service-routing for day-2 operation.

This sub-section provides brief overview for each category of monitor function:

- **Dashboard:** The landing page of Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application provides key statistics in various formats to quickly determine service-routing health across the network. The network administrator can monitor operational status of service-routing with SDG Agent devices, historical chart of service discovery request, processing and drops from network-wide distributed devices and top five talkers across the network.
- **Sub-Domain 360°:** The network administrator can briefly collect statistics and status counts in 360° view. The left-panel monitoring, and configuration bar is automatically open upon clicking selected sub-domain to verify configured policies, discovered service-instances on per sub domain basis of the configuration section.
- **Monitor:** A comprehensive 3-tier monitoring and troubleshooting function of Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application for various day-2 operations. The detail view of SDG Agent, Service-Instance and advanced Troubleshooting capabilities allows network administrator to manage and troubleshoot Wide Area Bonjour domain with single of glass on Cisco Catalyst Center.

For more information, see [Cisco Wide Area Bonjour on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.3.3](#) guide. The assurance capabilities and operation details are explained in Monitor the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application chapter to manage Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application with various supporting service-routing assurance function.

Reference

Table 155:

Related Topic	Document Title
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9600 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide	Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.2.2



CHAPTER 206

Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired

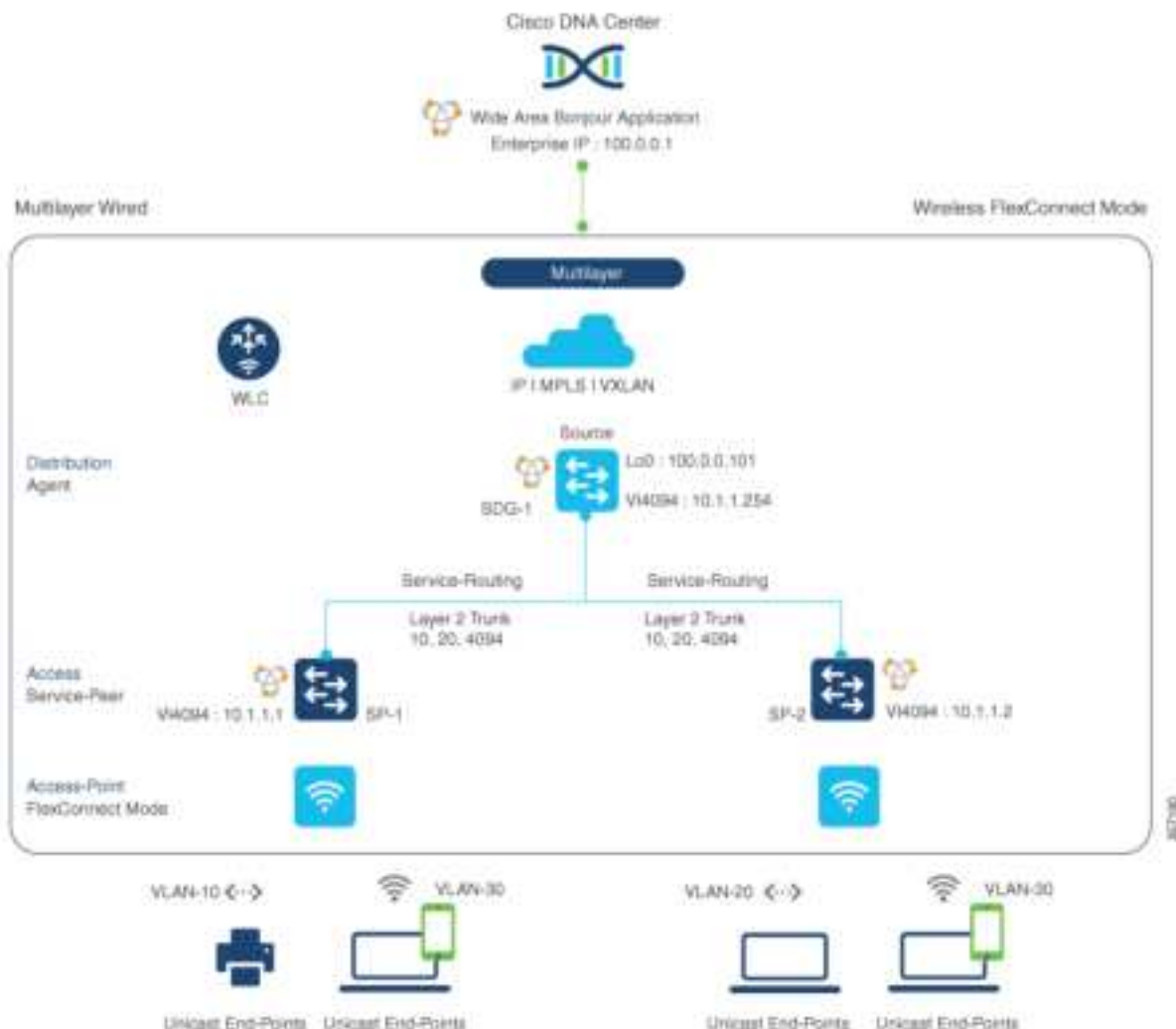
- [Overview, on page 2301](#)
- [Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired, on page 2302](#)
- [Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired, on page 2305](#)
- [Verifying Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired, on page 2309](#)
- [Reference, on page 2313](#)

Overview

This chapter provides configuration guidelines to implement Local Area Bonjour enabling end-to-end policy-based mDNS service discovery and distribution across multilayer wired and wireless FlexConnect local-switching mode. The first hop mDNS gateway at Layer 2 access switch must be implemented in service peer mode and paired with common distribution-layer switch in SDG agent role IP gateway function to wired and wireless clients. The network-wide distributed SDG agent can be paired alternatively with the Cisco Catalyst Center to enable mDNS service-routing across IP core network providing mDNS service assurance, monitoring and troubleshooting.

The following figure illustrates unicast mode bonjour network environment with AirPrint capable printer and wireless user computer (macOS, Microsoft Windows, and so on.) connected to the same Ethernet switch. The network administrator implements the policy permitting additional endpoints associated to nearby location Ethernet switch to discover and use remote AirPrint capable Printer without flooding mDNS over wired and wireless networks.

Figure 71: Local Area Bonjour Service-Routing Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode



Configuration Example for Default Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired

This section provides guidance on configuring Service-Peer, SDG Agent, and Cisco Catalyst Center, allowing the wired and wireless endpoints to dynamically discover the default service list using Layer 2 unicast and policy.

Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of wired and wireless controller access layer service peer.

Table 156: Configuring Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SP-1 Service-Peer Configuration	Sample Configuration: SP-2 Service-Peer Configuration
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode.	! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !	! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !
Step-2: Create unique mDNS inbound policy to permit ingress AirPrint service announcement and query on the Catalyst Switch in service peer mode.	! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !	! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !
Step-3: Create unique mDNS outbound policy to permit egress AirPrint service response on the Catalyst Switch in service peer mode	! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !	! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !
Step-4: Associate inbound and outbound service list to a unique service policy.	! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !	mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !
Step-5: Activate unicast mDNS gateway and attach service policy on wired VLAN and wireless FlexConnect user VLAN of SP-1 and SP-2 Layer 2 access switch.	! vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !	! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !
Step-6: Enable service routing on wired service peer mDNS between mDNS source and receiver local VLANs. Note This step is optional for SP-2 switch as it does not have local mDNS service provider endpoints or VLANs.	! mdns-sd location-filter LOCAL-PROXY match location-group default vlan 10 match location-group default vlan 30 ! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT OUT match printer-ipps location-filter LOCAL-PROXY !	
Step-7: Enable unicast service routing between wired and wireless service peer and SDG agent using wired management source VLAN ID and IP address.	! vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !	! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !

Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of distribution layer SDG agent.

Table 157: Configuring Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode. The default mode is sdg-agent.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-2: Create a unique mDNS inbound policy to permit ingress AirPrint service announcement and query the Catalyst Switch in Service-Peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-3: Create a unique mDNS outbound policy to permit egress AirPrint service response on Catalyst Switch in Service-Peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-4: Associate the inbound and outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>
Step-5: Activate unicast mDNS gateway on wired VLAN and wireless user VLAN on SDG agents.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-6: Configure the service peer-group and attach service-policy on the SDG agent distribution switch and enable service-routing between the assigned Service Peer switch group.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-peer group peer-group 1 service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-peer 10.1.1.1 location-group default service-peer 10.1.1.2 location-group default !</pre>
Step-7: Create a unique controller bound mDNS policy to permit egress AirPrint service discovery and distribution from Catalyst Switch in SDG agent mode. Inbound policy towards controller is not required.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-8: Associate outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-9: Enable Wide Area Bonjour service-routing with service export configuration association controller IP Address, source interface for stateful connection, and mandatory egress policy for Wide Area service-routing.	<pre>! service-export mdns-sd controller DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY controller-address 100.0.0.1 controller-source-interface LOOPBACK 0 controller-service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY !</pre>

Configuration Example for Customized Service List and Policy in FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired

This section provides guidance on configuring Service-Peer, SDG Agent, and Cisco Catalyst Center, allowing the wired and wireless endpoints to dynamically discover printer using Layer 2 unicast and policy.

Example: Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of wired and wireless controller access layer service peer.

Table 158: Configuring Wired and Wireless Access Layer Service Peer

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SP-1 Service-Peer Configuration	Sample Configuration: SP-2 Service-Peer Configuration
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway mode service-peer !</pre>
Step-2: Create unique mDNS inbound policy to permit ingress AirPrint service announcement and query on the Catalyst Switch in service peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-3: Create unique mDNS outbound policy to permit egress AirPrint service response on the Catalyst Switch in service peer mode	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-4: Associate inbound and outbound service list to a unique service policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>	<pre>mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>

Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SP-1 Service-Peer Configuration	Sample Configuration: SP-2 Service-Peer Configuration
Step-5: Activate unicast mDNS gateway and attach service policy on wired VLAN and wireless FlexConnect user VLAN of SP-1 and SP-2 Layer 2 access switch.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !</pre>	<pre>! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY active-query timer 3600 !</pre>
Step-6: Enable service routing on wired service peer mDNS between mDNS source and receiver local VLANs. Note This step is optional for SP-2 switch as it does not have local mDNS service provider endpoints or VLANs.	<pre>! mdns-sd location-filter LOCAL-PROXY match location-group default vlan 10 match location-group default vlan 30 ! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT OUT match printer-ipps location-filter LOCAL-PROXY !</pre>	
Step-7: Enable unicast service routing between wired and wireless service peer and SDG agent using wired management source VLAN ID and IP address.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !</pre>	<pre>! vlan configuration 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway source-interface vlan 4094 sdg-agent 10.1.1.254 !</pre>

Example: Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent Configuration

The following table provides a sample configuration of distribution layer SDG agent.

Table 159: Configuring Wired and Wireless Distribution Layer SDG Agent

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-1: Enable mDNS gateway and set the gateway mode. The default mode is sdg-agent.	<pre>! mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-2: Create a unique mDNS inbound policy to permit ingress AirPrint service announcement and query the Catalyst Switch in Service-Peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN in match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-3: Create a unique mDNS outbound policy to permit egress AirPrint service response on Catalyst Switch in Service-Peer mode.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>

Configuration Step	Sample Configuration: SDG-1 – SDG Agent
Step-4: Associate the inbound and outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN service-list LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>
Step-5: Activate unicast mDNS gateway on wired VLAN and wireless user VLAN on SDG agents.	<pre>! vlan configuration 10, 20, 30 mdns-sd gateway !</pre>
Step-6: Configure the service peer-group and attach service-policy on the SDG agent distribution switch and enable service-routing between the assigned Service Peer switch group.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-peer group peer-group 1 service-policy LOCAL-AREA-POLICY service-peer 10.1.1.1 location-group default service-peer 10.1.1.2 location-group default !</pre>
Step-7: Create a unique controller bound mDNS policy to permit egress AirPrint service discovery and distribution from Catalyst Switch in SDG agent mode. Inbound policy towards controller is not required.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT out match printer-ipp !</pre>
Step-8: Associate outbound service-list to a unique service-policy.	<pre>! mdns-sd service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY service-list WIDE-AREA-SERVICES-OUT !</pre>
Step-9: Enable Wide Area Bonjour service-routing with service export configuration association controller IP Address, source interface for stateful connection, and mandatory egress policy for Wide Area service-routing.	<pre>! service-export mdns-sd controller DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY controller-address 100.0.0.1 controller-source-interface LOOPBACK 0 controller-service-policy WIDE-AREA-POLICY !</pre>

Cisco Catalyst Center Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless Configuration

Configuring Service Filters for Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)

This procedure implements global service filters, which permit the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application to dynamically discover and distribute service information between trusted Cisco Catalyst SDG agent switches across the IP network.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Navigate to the **Configuration** tab in the Wide Area Bonjour application.

- Step 2** From the sidebar, select the sub-domain for which you want to create the service filter.
 - Step 3** Check the **Service Filter** box.
 - Step 4** Click **Service Filter** icon from the topology to view a list of the service filters for the selected domain. You can also manually edit existing service filters from this list.
 - Step 5** Click **Create Service Filter**.
 - Step 6** From the **Network Mode** drop-down list, choose **Traditional** (the default mode).
 - Step 7** Enter a unique name for the service filter.
 - Step 8** (Optional) Enter a description for the service filter.
 - Step 9** Select one or more service types to permit announcements and queries.
 - Step 10** Enable or disable service filters after creating them. By default, service filters are enabled.
-

Configuring Source SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)

This procedure configures discovery of wired printer sources from the LAN distribution switches paired with Layer 2 Catalyst Switches in a service peer role. The wireless distribution switches paired with a controller in a service peer role receive query responses for wired printers and distribute the responses to querying devices over the wireless FlexConnect local switching mode network.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Click **Add** on the upper-right of Cisco Catalyst Center.
 - Step 2** Click the **Source** radio button to select a source SDG agent. By default, this radio button is selected.
 - Step 3** From the **SDG Agent/IP** drop-down list, select an SDG agent (100.0.0.101) which announces the services, for example, Printer.
 - Step 4** Select **Peer** from the **Service Layer** drop-down list.
 - Step 5** Uncheck the box **Any**. By default, this is unchecked.
 - Step 6** Select the query **VLAN** (Vlan-10) to distribute services (Printer) from a specific network.
 - Step 7** Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv4 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
 - Step 8** Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv6 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
 - Step 9** Enter the **service peer IPv4 address** (10.1.1.1).
- Note**
Select **Any** to accept services from any peer on a selected VLAN.
- Step 10** (Optional) Click **Add Next** to add more source SDG agents. (Repeat the preceding steps.)
 - Step 11** Click **DONE**.
 - Step 12** Click **CREATE**.
-

Configuring Query SDG Agents in Traditional Multilayer Wired and Wireless FlexConnect Local-Switching Mode (GUI)

This procedure configures distributed services to query SDG agents connected to a controller in service peer mode, based on a policy.

If you are using wide area network, see the *Cisco Wide Area Bonjour on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide* at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/cloud-systems-management/dna-center/products-user-guide-list.html>.

Procedure

-
Step 1	Click Add on the upper-right of Cisco Catalyst Center.
Step 2	Select the Query SDG agent radio button. By default, the Source radio button is selected.
Step 3	From the SDG Agent/IP drop-down list, select an SDG agent (100.0.0.102) that receives queries for the services (Printer).
Step 4	Select Peer from the Service Layer drop-down list.
Step 5	Uncheck the box Any . By default, this is enabled.
Step 6	Select the query VLAN (Vlan-30) to distribute services (Printer) to a specific network.
Step 7	Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv4 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
Step 8	Enable or disable services from the selected query IPv6 subnet. By default, this is enabled.
Step 9	Enter the service peer IPv4 address (10.2.1.254).
Step 10	Click the + icon to add more service-peers, if any. Select Any to accept services from any peer on a selected VLAN.
Step 11	(Optional) Click Add Next to add more query agents. (Repeat the preceding steps.)
Step 12	Click DONE .
Step 13	Click CREATE .
-

Verifying Configuration Example for FlexConnect Mode - Wireless and Wired

This section provides step-by-step mDNS configuration and service discovery and distribution status based on applied policy on Wired Layer 2 access switch in service peer and SDG agent mode.

Verifying Wired Service-Peer Configuration

Use the following commands on the Cisco Catalyst switch in service peer (SP-1 and SP-2) mode to determine the operational status after applying configuration and discovering the AirPrint service from the local network.

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary vlan 10
```

```
VLAN: 10
=====
mDNS Gateway: Enabled
mDNS Service Policy: LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
```

```

Active Query: Enabled
               : Periodicity 3600 Seconds
Transport Type: IPv4
Service Instance Suffix: Not Configured
mDNS Query Type: ALL
SDG Agent IP: 10.1.1.254
Source Interface: Vlan4094

```

```
Device# show mdns-sd service-policy name LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
```

```

Service Policy Name      Service List IN Name      Service List Out Name
=====
LOCAL-AREA-POLICY        LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-IN    LOCAL-AREA-SERVICES-OUT

```

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache vlan 10
```

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id/ Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
_universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local	PTR	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._
_ipp._tcp.local	PTR	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local	SRV	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	0 0 631 Bldg-1-FL1-PRN
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN.local	A	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	10.153.1.1
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN.local	AAAA	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	2001:10:153: 1:79:A40C
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local	TXT	4500/4486	Vl10	ac18.2651.03fe	(451)'txtvers=1"priority= ty=EPSON WF-3620 Ser usb_MFG=EPSON" usb_MDL=W~'~

```
Device# show mdns-sd statistics vlan 10
```

```
mDNS Statistics
```

```

Vl10:
  mDNS packets sent      : 612
    IPv4 sent            : 612
      IPv4 advertisements sent : 0
      IPv4 queries sent    : 612
    IPv6 sent            : 0
      IPv6 advertisements sent : 0
      IPv6 queries sent    : 0
  Unicast sent           : 0
  mDNS packets rate limited : 0
  mDNS packets received  : 42
  advertisements received : 28
  queries received       : 14
    IPv4 received        : 42
      IPv4 advertisements received: 28
      IPv4 queries received   : 14

```



```

IPv6 received           : 0
IPv6 advertisements received: 0
IPv6 queries received   : 0
mDNS packets dropped    : 0
=====
Query Type              : Count
=====
PTR                     : 12
SRV                     : 0
A                       : 0
AAAA                   : 0
TXT                     : 0
ANY                     : 3
=====
PTR Name                Advertisement      Query
=====
_ipp._tcp.local         9                4

```

Verifying Wired SDG Agent Configuration and Service-Routing Status

This section provides information on mDNS configuration and service-routing on Wired and Wireless SDG Agent (SDG-1) with locally attached Layer 2 access switches in Service-Peer (SP-1 and SP-2) mode and with centrally paired Cisco Catalyst Center for Wide Area Bonjour service-routing.

Device# **show mdns-sd summary vlan 10**

VLAN: 10

```

=====
mDNS Gateway           : Enabled
mDNS Service Policy    : LOCAL-AREA-POLICY
Active Query           : Disabled
Transport Type         : IPv4
Service Instance Suffix : Not Configured
mDNS Query Type        : ALL
SDG Agent IP           : Not-Configured
Source Interface       : Not-Configured

```

Device# **show mdns-sd cache vlan 10**

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id /Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
_universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local	PTR	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local	PTR	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local	SRV	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	0 0 631 Bldg-1-FL1-PRNlocal
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN.local	A	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	10.153.1.1

Name	Type	TTL/ Remaining	Vlan-Id /Interface-name	MAC Address	RR Record Data
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN.local	AAAA	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	2001:10:153:1:79 A40C:6BEE:AEEC
Bldg-1-FL1-PRN._ipp._tcp.local	TXT	4500/4500	V110	ac18.2651.03fe	(51)mes-lpity=30 ty=EPSON WF-3620 Series" uMGEHMDW

Device# **show mdns-sd sp-sdg statistics**

```

                                One min, 5 mins, 1 hour
Average Input rate (pps)      : 0,          0,          0
Average Output rate (pps)    : 0,          0,          0
Messages received:
  Query                       : 15796
  ANY query                   : 0
  Advertisements              : 28
  Advertisement Withdraw      : 0
  Interface down              : 0
  Vlan down                   : 0
  Service-peer ID change      : 0
  Service-peer cache clear    : 12
  Resync response             : 6
Messages sent:
  Query response              : 5975
  ANY Query response          : 0
  Cache-sync                  : 61
  Get service-instance        : 0

```

Device# **show mdns-sd controller detail**

```

Controller: DNAC-Policy
IP: 100.0.0.1, Dest Port : 9991, Src Port : 42446, State : UP
Source Interface: Loopback0, MD5 Disabled
Hello Timer 30 sec, Dead Timer 120 sec, Next Hello 00:00:24
Uptime 2d05h (17:02:37 UTC Jan 15 2021)
Service Buffer: Enabled

Service Announcement:
Filter: DNAC-CONTROLLER-POLICY
Count 50, Delay Timer 30 sec, Pending Announcement 0, Pending Withdraw 0
Total Export Count 56, Next Export in 00:00:24

Service Query:
Query Suppression Enabled
Query Count 50, Query Delay Timer 15 sec, Pending 0
Total Query Count 15791, Next Query in 00:00:09

```

Verifying Cisco Catalyst Center Configuration and Service Routing Status

The Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application supports comprehensive assurance capabilities to manage service routing with network-wide distributed Cisco Catalyst switches in SDG Agent role and mDNS services discovered over Wide Area Bonjour domain. The assurance capabilities in Cisco Wide Area Bonjour provides the ability to determine service routing state, mDNS service state, and many more information at various levels for day-2 operations, analysis and troubleshooting. Each category serves unique function to manage and troubleshoot Wide Area Bonjour service routing for day-2 operation.

This sub-section provides brief overview for each category of monitor function:

- **Dashboard:** The landing page of Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application provides key statistics in various formats to quickly determine service routing health across the network. The network administrator can monitor operational status of service routing with SDG Agent devices, historical chart of service discovery request, processing and drops from network-wide distributed devices and top five talkers across the network.
- **Sub-Domain 360°:** The network administrator can briefly collect statistics and status counts in 360° view. The left-panel monitoring, and configuration bar is automatically open upon clicking selected sub-domain to verify configured policies, discovered service-instances on per sub-domain basis of the configuration section.
- **Monitor:** A comprehensive 3-tier monitoring and troubleshooting function of Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application for various day-2 operations. The detail view of SDG Agent, Service-Instance, and advanced Troubleshooting capabilities allows network administrator to manage and troubleshoot Wide Area Bonjour domain with a single pane of glass on Cisco Catalyst Center.

For more information, see [Cisco Wide Area Bonjour on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.1.2](#) guide. The assurance capabilities and operation details are explained in **Monitor the Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application** chapter to manage Cisco Wide Area Bonjour application with various supporting service routing assurance function.

Reference

Table 160:

Related Topic	Document Title
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9600 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9600 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9500 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9500 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9400 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9400 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
DNA Service for Bonjour Deployment on Cisco Catalyst 9300 Switch	Cisco Catalyst 9300 Series Switch Software Configuration Guide, Release 17.5.X
Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide	Cisco Wide Area Bonjour Application on Cisco Catalyst Center User Guide, Release 2.2.2



PART **XIX**

Multicast Domain Name System

- [Multicast Domain Name System, on page 2317](#)



CHAPTER 207

Multicast Domain Name System

- Introduction to mDNS Gateway, on page 2318
- Guidelines and Restrictions for Configuring mDNS AP, on page 2318
- Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI), on page 2320
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (GUI), on page 2320
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI), on page 2321
- Creating Default Service Policy, on page 2322
- Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI), on page 2323
- Creating Custom Service Definition, on page 2323
- Creating Service List (GUI), on page 2324
- Creating Service List, on page 2325
- Creating Service Policy (GUI), on page 2326
- Creating Service Policy, on page 2327
- Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy, on page 2328
- Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI), on page 2329
- Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI), on page 2329
- Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI), on page 2330
- Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI), on page 2330
- Enabling the mDNS Gateway on the VLAN Interface, on page 2331
- Location-Based Service Filtering, on page 2332
- Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering, on page 2339
- Configuring mDNS AP, on page 2349
- Enabling mDNS Gateway on the RLAN Interface, on page 2350
- Enabling mDNS Gateway on Guest LAN Interface, on page 2353
- Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI), on page 2354
- Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy, on page 2354
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI), on page 2356
- Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN, on page 2356
- mDNS Gateway with Guest Anchor Support and mDNS Bridging, on page 2357
- Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor, on page 2358
- Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest LAN), on page 2358
- Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor, on page 2359
- Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest WLAN), on page 2360
- Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations, on page 2360

Introduction to mDNS Gateway

Multicast Domain Name System (mDNS) is an Apple service discovery protocol which locates devices and services on a local network with the use of mDNS service records.

The Bonjour protocol operates on service announcements and queries. Each query or advertisement is sent to the Bonjour multicast address ipv4 224.0.0.251 (ipv6 FF02::FB). This protocol uses mDNS on UDP port 5353.

The address used by the Bonjour protocol is link-local multicast address and therefore is only forwarded to the local L2 network. As, multicast DNS is limited to an L2 domain for a client to discover a service it has to be part of the same L2 domain, This is not always possible in any large scale deployment or enterprise.

In order to address this issue, the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controller acts as a Bonjour Gateway. The controller then listens for Bonjour services, caches these Bonjour advertisements (AirPlay, AirPrint, and so on) from the source or host. For example, Apple TV responds back to Bonjour clients when asked or requested for a service. This way you can have sources and clients in different subnets.

By default, the mDNS gateway is disabled on the controller. To enable mDNS gateway functionality, you must explicitly configure mDNS gateway using CLI or Web UI.

The source IP address of all outgoing mDNS packets use the mDNS source interface VLAN SVI IP address. By default, wireless management interface will be the source interface.

Guidelines and Restrictions for Configuring mDNS AP

- Cisco recommends deploying scalable Wide Area Bonjour to route mDNS service between Wired and Wireless networks. Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) introduces a new mDNS gateway called Service-Peer mode to replace the classic mDNS flood-n-learn to support Enterprise-grade scalable, stateful, and reliable complete unicast-based mDNS service-routing with upstream gateway Cisco Catalyst 9000 Series Switches. For more information, see [Part: Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour](#).
- The mDNS AP (classic flood-n-learn based feature) is enhanced with complete unicast-based service-routing using Cisco Wide Area Bonjour supporting flood-free Wired and Wireless networks to overcome several operational, scalable, and service resiliency challenges.
- The mDNS AP extends the mDNS flood from Wired VLANs to AP and further extends over the CAPWAP tunnel to WLC for central processing across Core network. Cisco recommends that the mDNS AP must be considered only for small network environments.
- The mDNS AP is supported only in Local and Monitor modes. If Cisco Wireless AP is in FlexConnect mode, the Fabric mode AP does not support mDNS AP feature. For more information on how to enable the mDNS service-routing for various distributed Wireless modes, see [Part: Cisco DNA Service for Bonjour](#).
- Wireless users connected to mDNS AP may not be able to browse the Wired mDNS services across flooded Wired VLAN to mDNS AP.
- The Wired mDNS service-provider VLANs must be extended to flood the mDNS traffic up to mDNS AP ethernet port in trunk mode settings. The Wired VLAN extension to mDNS AP may include other Wired flood traffic, such as Broadcast, Unknown Unicast, and Layer 2 Multicast that impacts the mDNS AP scale and performance.

- It is recommended to have minimum one mDNS AP for each Layer 3 Access switch. All Wired mDNS traffic is flooded using alternate L2 methods, if single mDNS AP is shared between multiple Layer 3 Access switch.
- The maximum mDNS AP scale limit for each Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) is limited.
- The maximum mDNS Wired VLAN count for each WLC is limited.
- The old Wired mDNS service entry continues to be advertised to all Wireless users up to 4500 seconds based on the mDNS cache timers on WLC. The stale entries require manual clearing from local cache in WLC.
- The mDNS AP does not support mDNS Query packet suppression or rate-limiter in AP. The Wired mDNS flood from all Wired VLAN is extended to WLC for central processing of policy enforcement.
- The maximum number of flooded packets for each second processing from Wired VLANs to mDNS AP is limited. The mDNS AP performance and reliability may get compromised in large network environments.
- A maximum of 10 Wired VLANs' mDNS flood can be extended to mDNS AP. Combined large Wired VLAN and mDNS AP scale may impact scale and performance in AP and WLC.
- Only one mDNS AP is supported for each Wired VLAN. Multiple mDNS APs cannot be configured to map the same Wired VLAN ID as it causes service instability and duplicate processing.
- High Availability is not supported in multiple mDNS AP. The mDNS services across Wired and Wireless network gets disrupted when connectivity to mDNS AP is lost due to any kinds of failures.
- Only one Wired mDNS service-policy is supported for all network-wide mDNS AP.
- The following limitations hold true when mDNS AP introduces LSS-based mDNS service filtering between flooded Wired VLANs to Wireless:
 - A single mDNS AP with LSS enabled can distribute Wired mDNS services only to nearby limited APs in neighbor list. The Wireless users connected to the non-neighbor list may not be able to discover any Wired mDNS services.
 - Only one mDNS AP can be deployed in each Wired VLAN. The Wired VLANs need to be reconfigured across LAN network to enable unique LSS-based mDNS AP in locations. For instance, to achieve mDNS service discovery in each floor, the Wired VLAN or Subnet must be on each floor with one mDNS AP per floor to discover all other APs as neighbor in the same floor.
- The mDNS AP do not support IPv6 for Wired mDNS service-provider or service-receiver. Only IPv4 is supported.
- The mDNS AP do not support role-based mDNS service filtering between Wired and Wireless networks.
- The mDNS AP do not detect and auto-resolve duplicate mDNS service-instance names across Wired VLANs. The Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless LAN Controller (WLC) discovers and records the first service instance with unique name in its local cache database. If a duplicate service instance name is discovered, the WLC rejects the duplicate name and does not distribute it to the Wireless clients.
- Wireless multicast link-local is enabled by default. When wireless link-local is enabled, only mDNS Bridging mode is supported. If you require mDNS Gateway for wired services, disable wireless link-local.

- In the mDNS gateway mode, controller does not support service discovery from the mDNS messages using multiple IP fragments.
- If you have a FlexConnect AP as an mDNS gateway, ensure that you do not use "." in the service provider name, as it is not supported.

Enabling mDNS Gateway (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **mDNS**.
- Step 2** In the **Global** section, toggle the slider to enable or disable the **mDNS Gateway**.
- Step 3** From the **Transport** drop-down list, choose one of the following types:
- **ipv4**
 - **ipv6**
 - **both**
- Step 4** Enter an appropriate timer value in **Active-Query Timer**. The valid range is between 1 to 120 minutes. The default is 30 minutes.
- Step 5** From the **mDNS-AP Service Policy** drop-down list, choose an mDNS service policy.
- Note**
Service policy is optional only if mDNS-AP is configured. If mDNS-AP is not configured, the system uses default-service-policy.
- Step 6** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration** > **Services** > **mDNS** > **Global**.
- Step 2** Enable or disable the **mDNS Gateway** toggle button.
- Step 3** Choose **ipv4** or **ipv6** or **both** from the **Transport** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Enter the **Active-Query Timer**.
- Step 5** Click **Apply**.
-

Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway (CLI)



Note

- mDNS gateway is disabled by default globally on the controller.
- You need both global and WLAN configurations to enable mDNS gateway.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway.
Step 4	location {ap-location ap-name location-group lss regex site-tag ssid} Example: Device(config-mdns-sd)# location site-tag	Filters mDNS gateway based on location. Here, • ap-location signifies location-based filtering using AP location. • ap-name signifies location-based filtering using AP name. • location-group signifies location-based filtering using location group. • lss signifies location-based filtering using Location Specific Services (LSS). • regex signifies location-based filtering using Regular Expression. • site-tag signifies location-based filtering using site tag. • ssid signifies location-based filtering using SSID.

Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The lss is the default location filter, if mDNS gateway is configured globally.
Step 5	transport {ipv4 ipv6 both} Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sd)# transport ipv4</pre>	Processes mDNS message on a specific transport. Here, ipv4 signifies that the IPv4 mDNS message processing is enabled. This is the default value. ipv6 signifies that the IPv6 mDNS message processing is enabled. both signifies that the IPv4 and IPv6 mDNS message is enabled for each network.
Step 6	active-query timer <i>active-query-periodicity</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sd)# active-query timer 15</pre>	Changes the periodicity of mDNS multicast active query. Note An active query is a periodic mDNS query to refresh dynamic cache. Here, <i>active-query-periodicity</i> refers to the active query periodicity in Minutes. The valid range is from 1 to 120 minutes. Active query runs with a default periodicity of 30 minutes.
Step 7	source-interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sd)# source-interface vlan 101</pre>	Configures the source interface to communicate between SDG agent and service peer. By default, wireless management interface is used. The interface that you configure will be used for all mDNS transactions.
Step 8	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sd)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Creating Default Service Policy

When the mdns gateway is enabled on any of the WLANs by default, mdns-default-service-policy is associated with it. Default service policy consists of default-service-list and their details are explained in this section. You can override the default service policy with a custom service policy.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Create a service-definition if the service is not listed in the preconfigured services.
 - Step 2** Create a service list for IN and OUT by using the service-definitions.
 - Step 3** Use the existing service list to create a new service. For more information, refer to *Creating Service Policy* section.
 - Step 4** Attach the mdns-service-policy to the profile or VLAN that needs to be enforced.
 - Step 5** To check the default-mdns-service list, use the following command:
show mdns-sd default-service-list
-

Creating Custom Service Definition (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
 - Step 2** In the **Service Definition** section, click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service Definition** page that is displayed, enter a name and description for the service definition.
 - Step 4** Enter a service type and click **+** to add the service type.
 - Step 5** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Custom Service Definition

Service definition is a construct that provides an admin friendly name to one or more mDNS service types or A pointer (PTR) Resource Record Name.

By default, few built-in service definitions are already predefined and available for admin to use.

In addition to built-in service definitions, admin can also define custom service definitions.

You can execute the following command to view the list of all the service definitions (built-in and custom):

```
Device# show mdns-sd master-service-list
```

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode.
	Example:	Enter your password, if prompted.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device> enable	
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-definition <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-definition CUSTOM1	Configures mDNS service definition. Note • All the created custom service definitions are added to the primary service list. • Primary service list comprises of a list of custom and built-in service definitions.
Step 4	service-type <i>string</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# service-type _custom1._tcp.local	Configures mDNS service type.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-def)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Creating Service List (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
- Step 2** In the **Service List** section, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service List** page that is displayed, enter a name for the service list.
- Step 4** From the **Direction** drop-down list, choose **IN** for inbound filtering or **OUT** for outbound filtering.
- Step 5** From the **Available Services** drop-down list, choose a service type to match the service list.
- Note**
To allow all services, choose the **all** option.
- Step 6** Click **Add Services**.
- Step 7** From the **Message Type** drop-down list, choose the message type to match from the following options:
- **any**—To allow all messages.
 - **announcement**—To allow only service advertisements or announcements for the device.
 - **query**—To allow only a query from the client for a service in the network.

Step 8 Click **Save** to add services.

Step 9 Click **Apply to Device**.

Creating Service List

mDNS service list is a collection of service definitions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> {IN OUT} Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list Basic-In IN Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list Basic-Out OUT	Configures mDNS service list. • IN: Provides inbound filtering. • Out: Provides outbound filtering.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> message-type {announcement any query} Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match CUSTOM1 message-type query	Matches the service to the message type. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. If the mDNS service list is set to IN, you get to view the following command: match service-definition-name message-type {announcement any query} . If the mDNS service list is set to Out, you get to view the following command: match service-definition-name . (OR)

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	match all message-type {announcement any query} Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# match all message-type query</pre>	Matches all services to the message type. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. If the mDNS service list is set to IN, you get to view the following command: match all message-type {announcement any query}. If the mDNS service list is set to OUT, you get to view the following command: match all. In case of IN or OUT filter, if any of the service contains the same or subset of the message type (query or announcement), the match all is not allowed unless the existing services are removed.
Step 6	show mdns-sd service-list {direction name }	Displays inbound or outbound direction list of the configured service-list to classify matching service-types for service-policy. The list can be filtered by name or specific direction.
Step 7	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sl-in)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Creating Service Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
 - Step 2** In the **Service Policy** section, click **Add**.
 - Step 3** In the **Quick Setup: Service Policy** page that is displayed, enter a name for the service policy.
 - Step 4** From the **Service List Input** drop-down list, choose one of the types.
 - Step 5** From the **Service List Output** drop-down list, choose one of the types.
 - Step 6** From the **Location** drop-down list, choose the location you want to associate with the service list.
 - Step 7** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Creating Service Policy

mDNS service policy is used for service filtering while learning services or responding to queries.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1</pre>	Enables mDNS service policy.
Step 4	location {ap-location ap-name location-group lss regex site-tag ssid} Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location lss</pre>	Filters mDNS service types based on location filter. Note • If location filter is not applied during service policy, the global location filter (default=lss) will be considered. • The location filter from the service policy takes precedence even if the global location filter is configured. • In Location Specific Services (LSS) based filtering, the mDNS gateway responds with the service instances learnt from the neighboring APs of the querying client AP. Other service instances for the rest of APs are filtered. • In Site tag based filtering, the mDNS gateway responds with the service instances that belong to the same site-tag as that of querying client. • The mDNS gateway responds back with wired services even if the location based filtering is configured.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	service-list <i>service-list-name</i> {IN OUT} Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list IN</pre>	Configures various service-list names for IN and OUT directions. Note If an administrator decides to create or use a custom service policy, then the custom service policy must be configured with service-lists for both directions (IN and OUT); otherwise, the mDNS Gateway will not work (will not learn services if there is no IN service-list, or will not reply or announce services learned if there is no OUT service-list).
Step 6	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring a Local or Native Profile for an mDNS Policy

When an administrator configures local authentication and authorization and does not expect to get any mDNS policy from the AAA server, the administrator can configure a local or native profile to select a mDNS policy based on user, role, or device type. When this local or native profile is mapped to the wireless profile policy, mDNS service policy is applied on the mDNS packets that are processed on that WLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	service-template <i>template-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# service-template mdns</pre>	Configures the service-template or identity policy.
Step 3	mdns-service-policy <i>mdns-policy-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-service-template)# mdns-service-policy mdnsTV</pre>	Configures the mDNS policy.
Step 4	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-service-template)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
Step 1	Choose Configuration > Services > mDNS .
Step 2	In the mDNS Flex Profile section, click Add . The Add mDNS Flex Profile window is displayed.
Step 3	In the Profile Name field, enter the flex mDNS profile name.
Step 4	In the Service Cache Update Timer field, specify the service cache update time. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.
Step 5	In the Statistics Update Timer field, specify the statistics update timer. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.
Step 6	In the VLANs field, specify the VLAN ID. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs separated by commas, or enter a range of VLAN IDs. Maximum number of VLANs allowed is 16.
Step 7	Click Apply to Device .
-

Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd flex-profile <i>mdns-flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd flex-profile <i>mdns-flex-profile-name</i>	Enters the mDNS Flex Profile mode.
Step 3	update-timer service-cache <i>service-cache timer-value <1-100></i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# update-timer service-cache 60	Configures the mDNS update service cache timer for the flex profile. The default value is 1 minute. Value range is between 1 minute and 100 minutes.
Step 4	update-timer statistics <i>statistics timer-value <1-100></i> Example:	Configures the mDNS update statistics timer for the flex profile. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# update-timer statistics 65	
Step 5	wired-vlan-range <i>wired-vlan-range value</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-profile)# wired-vlan-range 10 - 20	Configures the mDNS wired VLAN range for the flex profile between 10 - 20.

Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Flex**.
- Step 2** Click **Add**.
The **Add Flex Profile** window is displayed.
- Step 3** Under the **General** tab, from the **mDNS Flex Profile** drop-down list, choose a flex profile name from the list.
- Step 4** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Applying an mDNS Flex Profile to a Wireless Flex Connect Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile flex <i>wireless-flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device# wireless profile flex <i>wireless-flex-profile-name</i>	Enters wireless flex profile configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd <i>mdns-flex-profile</i> Example:	Enables the mDNS features for all the APs in the profile

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-wireless-flex-profile)# mdns-sd <i>mdns-flex-profile-name</i>	

Enabling the mDNS Gateway on the VLAN Interface

This procedure configures the mDNS service policy for a specific VLAN. This allows the administrator to configure different settings to the mDNS packets on per VLAN interface basis and not on per WLAN basis.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	interface vlan <i>vlan-interface-number</i> Example: Device(config)# interface vlan 200	Configures a VLAN ID and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	ip address <i>ip-address subnet-mask</i> Example: Device(config-if)# ip address 111.1.1.1 255.255.255.0	Configures the IP address for the interface.
Step 4	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-if)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS configuration on a VLAN interface.
Step 5	service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-if-mdns-sd)# service-policy test-mDNS-service-policy	Configures the service policy. Note If specific <i>service-policy-name</i> is not defined, the VLAN will use the default-mdns-service-policy by default. By default, default-mDNS-service-policy gets created in the system and it will use default-mDNS-service-list configuration for filtering mDNS service announcement and queries.
Step 6	end Example: Device(config-if-mdns-sd)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Location-Based Service Filtering

Prerequisite for Location-Based Service Filtering

You need to create the Service Definition and Service Policy. For more information, see [Creating Custom Service Definition](#) section and [Creating Service Policy](#) section.

Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using SSID

When a service policy is configured with the SSID as the location name, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on that SSID.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures the service policy.
Step 3	location ssid Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ssid	Configures location-based filtering using SSID.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Name

When a service policy is configured with the AP name as the location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on that AP.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures the service policy.
Step 3	location ap-name Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ap-name	Configures location-based filtering using an AP name.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using AP Location

When a service policy is configured with location as the AP-location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on all the APs using the same AP "location" name (not to be confused with "site-tag").

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures the service policy.
Step 3	location ap-location Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ap-location	Configures location-based filtering using the AP location.
Step 4	end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol) # end	Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Regular Expression

- When a service policy is configured with the location as a regular expression that matches the corresponding AP name, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on a group of APs based on the AP name.
- When a service policy is configured with the location as a regular expression that matches the corresponding AP location, the response to the query will be the services that were learnt on a group of APs based on the AP location.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures the service policy.
Step 3	location regex {<i>ap-location regular-expression</i> <i>ap-name regular-expression</i>} Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol) # location regex ap-location dns_location Device(config-mdns-ser-pol) # location regex ap-name dns_name	Configures location-based filtering using regular expression.
Step 4	end Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol) # end Note To filter the services for which AP names have the specific keyword such as <i>AP-2FLR-SJC-123</i> , you can use the regex AP name as <i>AP-2FLR-</i> to match the services that are learnt from the set of access points.	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group

Feature History for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)

This table provides release and related information for the feature explained in this module.

This feature is also available in all the releases subsequent to the one in which they are introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 161: Feature History for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.9.1	mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)	The controller is enhanced to support microlocation from wireless clients tagged with the location group (mDNS Group ID) tag. From Cisco IOS-XE 17.3 onwards, location grouping is done based on AP names. From Cisco IOS-XE 17.9 onwards, location grouping is extended to AP location.

Information About mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)

In the context of Apple Bonjour, Microlocation refers to the smaller subset of a wireless location. This is also referred to as mDNS AP Group or Location Group.

To create an mDNS AP location group, perform the following procedure:

1. Define multiple rules with priority in the wireless rule-based mDNS application.



Note The rules have AP microlocation grouping as AP name or AP location.

2. Match the highest priority rule-based on the configured regular expression with AP name and AP location-based grouping.
3. Map an AP to a location group (mDNS Group ID).



Note When you delete or modify a rule, the corresponding APs are revalidated (using the **capwap restart** command) to apply the updated configuration.

AP Microlocation Support Based on AP Location

From Cisco IOS-XE 17.3 onwards, AP location is configured using the **ap name name location location** command.

From Cisco IOS-XE 17.9 onwards, AP location is leveraged to group APs belonging to a location to form a location group.

By default, AP microlocation, based on either AP name or AP location, is disabled.

Use Cases for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)

- Restricts services across departments.
- Shares files across building or sites.
- Teachers or students, doctors or patients, employees or groups need service visibility in contained environment without intervening with IT to change to L2 or L3 networks.

Prerequisites for mDNS Location-Based Filtering Using Location Group (Microlocation)

You must have configured the mDNS rule. By default, the AP name-based microlocation grouping is used.

Enabling Location Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd service-policy service-policy-name Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy mdns-policy1	Configures mDNS service policy.
Step 3	service-list service-list-name {in out} Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN100-list in Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list VLAN300-list out	Configures service lists for IN and OUT directions.
Step 4	location location-group Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location location-group	Configures location-based filtering using location group.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Adding APs to a Location Group (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless rule application mdns Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless rule application mdns</pre>	Configures wireless rule-based MDNS application.
Step 3	rule-priority rule_priority rule-name rule_name Example: <pre>Device(config-app-rule)# rule-priority 2011 rule-name R2011</pre>	Configures rule priority. Here, • <i>rule_priority</i>: The valid range is from 0 to 4096. Note 0 is the lower priority number and 4096 is the higher priority number. • <i>rule_name</i>: The rule name can be between 1 to 32 characters. Note When you configure the rule priority, you will be prompted as follows: Changing regex string or other rule configuration may cause associated APs to rejoin When you see this prompt, enter Y to continue with the configuration.
Step 4	regex regular_expression_string Example: <pre>Device(config-rule-params)# regex AP_Name</pre>	Configures rule-based on AP name or AP location to match the regular expression.
Step 5	action-type grouping Example: <pre>Device(config-rule-params)# action-type grouping</pre>	Groups APs based on the filter string.
Step 6	group-id location_group_identifier Example:	Configures the mDNS location group identifier. Valid range for <i>location_group_identifier</i> is 1 to 4096.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config-rule-action-mdns)# group-id 44	
Step 7	group-method ap location Example: Device(config-rule-action-mdns)# group-method ap location	Configures AP location-based grouping. Note If you consider group-method as ap location , the regex captures the <i>AP_LOC_NAME</i> . By default, the group-method is configured with <i>AP_NAME</i> .
Step 8	group-name location_group_name Example: Device(config-rule-action-mdns)# group-name G2011	Configures mDNS location group name.
Step 9	end Example: Device(config-rule-action-mdns)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Verifying AP Location

To verify the mDNS location Group ID associated with an AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general | sec MDNS | AP Name
Cisco AP Name      : AP2800
MDNS Group Id      : 101
MDNS Rule Name     : R101
MDNS Group Method  : AP Location
```

To verify all the APs associated with the configured mDNS rule name, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless associated-ap mdns-rule-name R1
AP MAC      AP Name
-----
0cd0.f894.a840  AP0CD0.F894.083C
4001.7a03.8560  APA023.9F66.4F96
-----
```

To verify all the APs associated with the configured mDNS location group ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless associated-ap mdns-group-id 1
AP MAC      AP Name
-----
0cd0.f894.a840  AP0CD0.F894.083C
4001.7a03.8560  APA023.9F66.4F96
-----
```

To verify the mDNS group method detail for each AP, use the following command:

```
Device# show ap config general | inc MDNS|AP Name|Location
Cisco AP Name      : AP-1
MDNS Group Id      : 100
```

```
MDNS Rule Name           : R100
MDNS Group Method        : AP Location
```

To verify the mDNS group method detail for each rule, use the following command:

```
Device# show wireless rule application mdns
Rule Name       : R100
Rule Priority    : 100
Regular Expression : AP0
Action Type     : MDNS Grouping
  MDNS Group ID : 100
MDNS Group Name : G100
MDNS Group Method: AP Location
```

Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

Feature History for Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

This table provides release and related information for features explained in this module.

These features are available on all releases subsequent to the one they were introduced in, unless noted otherwise.

Table 162: Feature History for Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

Release	Feature	Feature Information
Cisco IOS XE Cupertino 17.8.1	Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering	This feature supports the following functionalities: • Nearest mDNS based wired service filtering. (Supported in Central switched Local mode.) • Custom wired service policy support for FlexConnect mode. • VLAN and MAC based wired service filtering. (Supported in Central switched Local mode.)

Information About Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

Prior to Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 release, the wireless clients discover the following:

- All wired services from mDNS-AP.
- Service providers on VLANs visible to the controller.



Note The current filtering is supported only for wireless services.

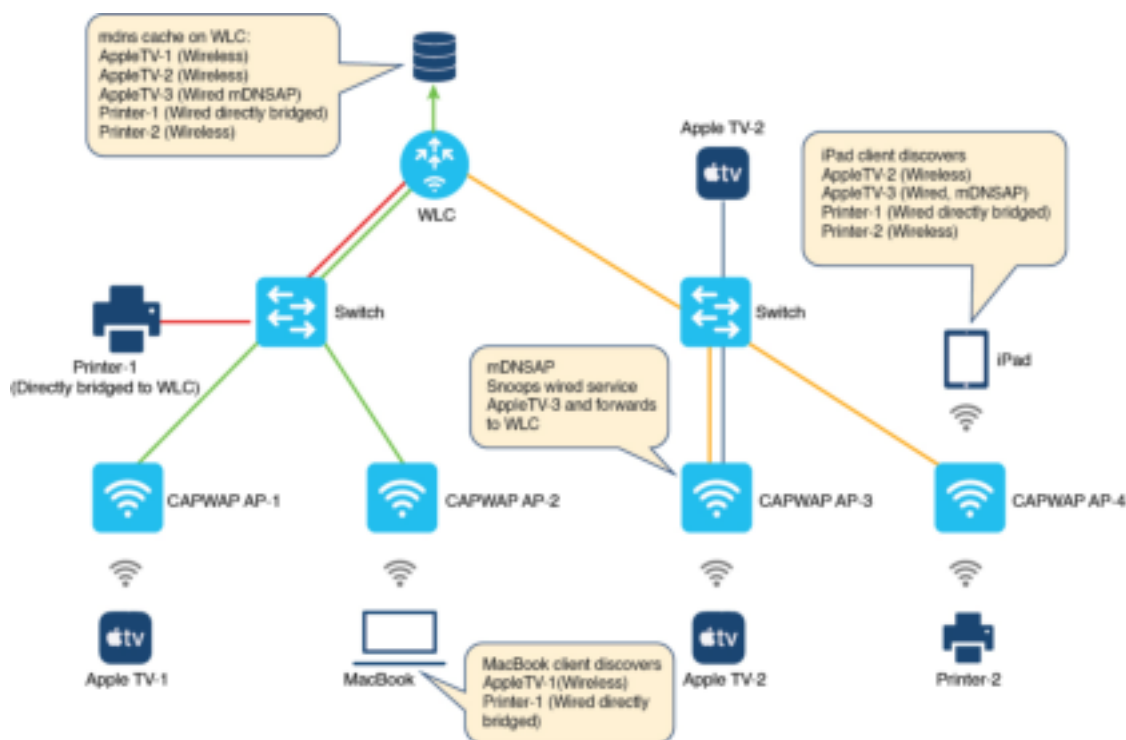
From Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 onwards, the wireless clients are enhanced to support filter-based on the nearest wired service provider.



Note The controller classifies the wired services as the nearest wired services once the LSS is enabled. The mDNS-AP forwards or advertises the nearest wired services.

The following figure illustrates the nearest wired service provider and discovery:

Figure 72: Nearest Wired Service Provider and Discovery



As per the figure, the controller is associated with the following four APs:

- CAPWAP AP-1
- CAPWAP AP-2
- CAPWAP AP-3
- CAPWAP AP-4

The client connected to CAPWAP AP-1 is wireless and advertises the service Apple TV-1.

Similarly, the client connected to CAPWAP AP-2 is wireless and advertises the service MacBook query client.

The CAPWAP AP-3 is enabled as an mDNS-AP. This AP then discovers the wired services on VLANs and forwards them to the controller. In this case, the client advertising the service AppleTV-3 is a wired service. The client is then discovered by CAPWAP AP-3 and forwarded to the controller. You will also view another client connected to CAPWAP AP-3 that is wireless and advertises the service AppleTV-2.

The client connected to CAPWAP AP-4 is wireless and advertises the service Printer-2 and iPad query client.

Also, a client is connected directly to the controller, which advertises the Printer-1.

The controller covers cache populated from both wireless and wired service providers.

The controller populates the following cache:

- AppleTV-1 (Wireless service from CAPWAP AP-1)
- AppleTV-2 (Wireless service from CAPWAP AP-3)
- AppleTV-3 (Wired service from mDNS-AP enabled AP-3)
- Printer-1 (Wired service from directly bridged service provider)
- Printer-2 (Wireless service from AP-4)

When LSS is enabled, AP-1 and AP-2 discover each other as LSS neighbors. Similarly, AP-3 and AP-4 discover each other as LSS neighbors.

MacBook discovers the following services:

- AppleTV-1 (Wireless service from AP-1)
- Printer-1 (Wired service from the directly bridged service provider)



Note MacBook does not discover the wired service AppleTV-3 (forwarded by mDNS-AP AP-3). The AP-2 does not see AP-3 as the LSS neighbor. Thus, the controller does not classify the wired service AppleTV-3 as nearby.

iPad discovers the following services:

- AppleTV-2 (Wireless service from AP-3)
- AppleTV-3 (Wired service from mDNS-AP enabled AP-3)
- Printer-1 (Wired service from directly bridged service provider)
- Printer-2 (Wireless service from AP-4)



Note iPad discovers the wired service AppleTV-3 (forwarded by mDNS-AP AP-3). The AP-4 sees AP-3 as the LSS neighbor. Thus, the controller classifies the wired service AppleTV-3 as nearby.



Note This feature supports only the wired services advertised by mDNS-AP in centrally switched local mode.

Information About Custom Wired Service Policy Support for FlexConnect Mode

From Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 release onwards, the custom service policy for wired services is supported in a Flex profile. Here, the service policy refers to the mDNS service policy.

Information About VLAN and MAC Based Wired Service Filtering

Prior to Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 release, service filtering was based on service types, location type, and location filter. These filters are applicable for wireless services. However, they are not supported for wired services.

From Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 release onwards, the VLAN and MAC based filtering is supported for wired services.

**Note**

- In case of wired services, the VLAN and MAC based filtering is applicable for OUT direction filter advertised by mDNS-AP and directly bridged wired services.
- The VLAN and MAC based filtering is applicable for centrally switched local mode.

Prerequisite for Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

- Enable the mDNS gateway on the controller.

Use Cases

The following are the use cases:

- Nearest mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering.
- Custom Wired Service Policy Support for FlexConnect Mode.
- VLAN and MAC Based Wired Service Filtering.

While migrating from AireOS wireless controllers to the Cisco Catalyst 9800 Series Wireless Controllers, the following limitations occur:

- The wireless clients discover all the wired services and not just the nearby service from the wired service provider when central switched local mode and LSS is enabled.

The wired services belong to the forwarded mDNS-AP and directly bridged ones.

- There is no provision to apply the custom service policy for wired services when locally switched FlexConnect mode is enabled.

The mDNS flex profile must have the custom wired service policy as well.

- There is no provision to filter based on the VLAN and MAC address for wired services in centrally switched local mode.

Configuring Wired Service Policy Support in Flex Profile

Creating Service List (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: <pre>Device> enable</pre>	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: <pre>Device# configure terminal</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> IN Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list srvc_list_in IN</pre>	Configures mDNS service list for inbound filtering.
Step 4	match <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# match airplay</pre> Example: <pre>Device(config)# match printer_ipp</pre>	Matches the service to the service definition name. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. The same set of service list will be used for both IN and OUT filters.
Step 5	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> OUT Example: <pre>Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list srvc_lst_out OUT</pre>	Configures mDNS service list for outbound filtering.
Step 6	match <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-mdns-sl-out)# match airplay</pre>	Matches the service to the service definition name. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on. Note To add a service, the service name must be part of the primary service list. The same set of service list will be used for both IN and OUT filters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-out)# exit	Exits mDNS service list configuration mode.

Creating Service Policy (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy service-policy-name Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy custom_wired_policy	Configures mDNS service policy.
Step 4	service-list service-list-name {in out} Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list srvc_list_in IN Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list srvc_list_out OUT	Configures service lists for IN and OUT directions.
Step 5	location lss Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location lss	Enables Location Specific Services (LSS) for the mDNS service.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# exit	Exits mDNS service policy configuration mode.

Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Services > mDNS**.
- Step 2** In the **mDNS Flex Profile** section, click **Add**.
- Step 3** In the **Add mDNS Flex Profile** window that is displayed, enter the Flex mDNS profile name in the **Profile Name** field.
- Step 4** In the **Service Cache Update Timer** field, specify the service cache update time. The value range is between 1 and 100 minutes.
- Step 5** In the **Statistics Update Timer** field, specify the statistics update timer. The value range is between 1 and 100 minutes.
- Step 6** In the **VLANs** field, specify the VLAN ID. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs separated by commas or enter a range of VLAN IDs. Maximum number of VLANs allowed is 16.
- Step 7** Enter or select a **Wired Service Policy** from the drop-down list to associate a Wired filter to mDNS Flex-Profile. In addition to filtering mDNS service queries based on the static default service list, wired filter will support filtering based on custom service lists.

The new wired service-policy will be added to flex-profile construct to support the custom wired service-policy. The AP will apply this configuration for wired services and the respective IN and OUT filters will be used for advertisements and queries only if the custom wired service-policy is configured in mDNS flex-profile.

In case a custom service-policy is removed from the mDNS flex-profile, the AP will remove the custom service-policy and apply the default service-policy for wired services. This feature is supported only in locally switched FlexConnect mode.

- Step 8** Click **Apply to Device**.
-

Configuring an mDNS Flex Profile (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	mdns-sd flex-profile <i>mdns-flex-profile-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd flex-profile custom_flex_profile	Configures an mDNS Flex profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	update-timer service-cache <i>timer-value</i> <i><1-100></i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-prof)# update-timer service-cache 15	Configures the mDNS update service cache timer for the flex profile. The default value is 1 minute. Value range is between 1 minute and 100 minutes.
Step 5	update-timer statistics <i>statistics timer-value</i> <i><1-100></i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-prof)# update-timer statistics 10	Configures the mDNS update statistics timer for the flex profile. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 to 100 minutes.
Step 6	wired-vlan-range <i>wired-vlan-range value</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-prof)# wired-vlan-range 30	Configures the mDNS wired VLAN range for the flex profile. The default value is 1 minute. The valid range is from 1 minute to 100 minutes.
Step 7	wired-service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-prof)# wired-service-policy custom_wired_policy	Associates the wired service policy with mDNS flex profile. Note Here, <i>service-policy-name</i> refers to the mDNS service policy created earlier. For more information, refer to Creating Service Policy (CLI).
Step 8	end Example: Device(config-mdns-flex-prof)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Configuring VLAN and MAC Based Wired Service Filtering (CLI)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: Device> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password, if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	mdns-sd wired-filter <i>wired-filter-name</i> Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd wired-filter WIRED_FILTER_APPLE_TV	Configures an mDNS wired filter.
Step 4	match mac <i>service-provider-mac-address1</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-wired-filter)# match mac a886.ddb2.05e9	Matches the wired filter with the MAC address of the wired service.
Step 5	match vlan <i>range</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-wired-filter)# match vlan 100	Matches the wired filter with the VLAN of the wired service.
Step 6	exit Example: Device(config-mdns-wired-filter)# exit	Exits mDNS gateway configuration mode.
Step 7	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 8	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> IN Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list srvc_lst_in IN	Configures mDNS service list for inbound filtering.
Step 9	match <i>service-definition-name</i> Example: Device(config)# match airplay	Matches the service to the names of the services. Here, <i>service-definition-name</i> refers to the names of services, such as, airplay, airserver, airtunes, and so on.
Step 10	mdns-sd service-list <i>service-list-name</i> OUT Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd service-list srvc_lst_out OUT	Configures mDNS service list for outbound filtering.
Step 11	match apple-tv wired-filter <i>wired-filter-name</i> Example: Device(config-mdns-sl-out)# match apple-tv wired-filter WIRED_FILTER_APPLE_TV	Matches the Apple TV related wired filter.
Step 12	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example:	Enables mDNS service policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device(config)# mdns-sd service-policy custom_policy	
Step 13	service-list service-list-name {IN OUT} Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list srvc_lst_in IN Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# service-list srvc_lst_in OUT	Configures various service-list names for IN and OUT directions. Note If an administrator decides to create or use a custom service policy, then the custom service policy must be configured with service-lists for both directions (IN and OUT); otherwise, the mDNS Gateway will not work (will not learn services if there is no IN service-list, or will not reply or announce services learned if there is no OUT service-list).
Step 14	location ap-group Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# location ap-group	Configures AP location based filtering.
Step 15	end Example: Device(config-mdns-ser-pol)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Verifying mDNS-Based Wired Service Filtering

To view the wired service list IN and OUT details, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns status
```

```
Global mDNS gateway:Enabled
```

```
vap_id      ssid mdns_mode
  0  myFisaiC   Bridge
  1  rquestcpC  Bridge
  2    RK-FLEX  Bridge
  3    RK-MDNS  Gateway
  4  GUHOAsaiC  Bridge
  5          -   Bridge
  6          -   Bridge
  7          -   Bridge
  8          -   Bridge
  9          -   Bridge
 10          -   Bridge
 11          -   Bridge
 12          -   Bridge
 13          -   Bridge
 14          -   Bridge
 15          -   Bridge
Active query interval:30
vap          service_list_in      service_list_out location
  0 default-mdns-service-list_IN default-mdns-service-list_OUT      0
  1 default-mdns-service-list_IN default-mdns-service-list_OUT      0
```

```

2 default-mdns-service-list_IN default-mdns-service-list_OUT      0
3 default-mdns-service-list_IN default-mdns-service-list_OUT      0
4 default-mdns-service-list_IN default-mdns-service-list_OUT      0
Wired vlan configuration:
mdns stats timer: 1
mdns cache timer: 1
AP Sync VLAN: 1
Wired service list IN: RK-IN_IN
Wired service list OUT: RK-OUT_OUT

```



Note This command must be executed on the Flex AP. Also, this applies to the custom wired service policy support in FlexConnect mode.

To verify the VLAN and MAC based wired service filtering, use the following command:

```

Device# show running-config mdns-sd wired-filter
mdns-sd wired-filter WIRED_FILTER_APPLE_TV
match mac a886.ddb2.05e9
match vlan 100
!

```

To verify the wired service policy support in Flex Profile, use the following command:

```

Device# show running-config mdns-sd flex-profile
mdns-sd flex-profile custom_flex_profile
update-timer service-cache 15
update-timer statistics 10
wired-vlan-range 30
wired-service-policy custom_wired_policy
!

```

To verify whether LSS is configured or not, use the following command:

```

Device# show running-config mdns-sd service-policy
mdns-sd service-policy custom_policy
service-list svc_lst_in IN
service-list svc_lst_out OUT
location lss
!
mdns-sd service-list svc_lst_in IN
match apple-tv
!

mdns-sd service-list svc_lst_out OUT
match apple-tv wired-filter WIRED_FILTER_APPLE_TV
!

```

Configuring mDNS AP

In most of the deployments, the services may be available in VLANs that the APs can hear in the wired side (allowed in the switchport where the AP is directly connected: its own VLAN, or even more VLANs if switchport is a trunk).

The following procedure shows how to configure mDNS AP:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config)# mdns-sd gateway	Configures the mDNS gateway.
Step 3	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mdns-ap enable vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap enable vlan 22	Enables mDNS on the AP, and configures a VLAN for the mDNS AP.
Step 4	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mdns-ap vlan add <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap vlan add 200	Adds a VLAN to the mDNS AP. <i>vlan-id</i> ranges from 1 to 4096.
Step 5	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mdns-ap vlan del <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap vlan del 2	Deletes a VLAN from the mDNS AP.
Step 6	ap name <i>ap-name</i> mdns-ap disable Example: Device# ap name ap1 mdns-ap disable	(Optional) Disables the mDNS AP.
Step 7	end Example: Device# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode. Note You can configure a maximum of 10 VLANs per AP.

Enabling mDNS Gateway on the RLAN Interface

By configuring the mDNS gateway mode on the RLAN interface, you can configure the mDNS service policy for a specific RLAN.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	ap remote-lan profile-name <i>remote-lan-profile-name rlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan profile-name rlan_test_1 1	Configures a remote LAN profile. • <i>remote-lan-profile</i>: Remote LAN profile name. Range is from 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters. • <i>rlan-id</i>: Remote LAN identifier. Range is from 1 to 128. Note You can create a maximum of 128 RLANs. Also, you cannot use the <i>rlan-id</i> of an existing RLAN while creating another RLAN.
Step 3	mdns-sd-interface {gateway drop} Example: mdns-sd-interface Device(config-remote-lan)# mdns-sd-interface gateway	Enables mDNS configuration on an RLAN interface.
Step 4	no shutdown Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# no shutdown	Restarts the RLAN profile.
Step 5	exit Example: Device(config-remote-lan)# exit	Exits remote LAN configuration mode.
Step 6	ap remote-lan-policy policy-name <i>profile name</i> Example: Device(config)# ap remote-lan-policy policy-name rlan_named_pp1	Configures the RLAN policy profile and enters wireless policy configuration mode.
Step 7	mdns-sd service-policy <i>service-policy-name</i> Example: Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# mdns-sd service-policy mdnsTV6	Enables an mDNS service policy.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 8	central switching Example: <pre>Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# central switching</pre>	Configures the RLAN for central switching.
Step 9	central dhcp Example: <pre>Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# central dhcp</pre>	Configures the central DHCP for centrally switched clients.
Step 10	vlan <i>vlan-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# vlan 141</pre>	Assigns the profile policy to a VLAN.
Step 11	no shutdown Example: <pre>Device(config-remote-lan-policy)# no shutdown</pre>	Restarts the RLAN profile.
Step 12	wireless tag policy <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: <pre>Device(config)# wireless tag policy rlan_pt_1</pre>	Configures a policy tag.
Step 13	remote-lan <i>remote-lan-profile-name</i> policy <i>rlan-policy-profile-name</i> port-id <i>port-id</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan_test_1 policy rlan_named_pp1 port-id 1 Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan_test_1 policy rlan_named_pp1 port-id 2 Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan_test_1 policy rlan_named_pp1 port-id 3 Device(config-policy-tag)# remote-lan rlan_test_1 policy rlan_named_pp1 port-id 4</pre>	Maps the RLAN policy profile to the RLAN profile. • <i>remote-lan-profile-name</i>: Name of the RLAN profile. • <i>rlan-policy-profile-name</i>: Name of the policy profile. • <i>port-id</i>: LAN port number on the access point. Range is from 1 to 4.
Step 14	exit Example: <pre>Device(config-policy-tag)# exit</pre>	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 15	ap <i>mac-address</i> Example: <pre>Device (config)# ap 0042.5AB6.0EF0</pre>	Configures the AP and enters the AP tag configuration mode. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Use the Ethernet MAC address.
Step 16	policy-tag <i>policy-tag-name</i> Example: Device (config-ap-tag)# policy-tag rlan_pt_1	Maps a policy tag to the AP.
Step 17	end Example: Device(config-guest-lan)# end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode.

Enabling mDNS Gateway on Guest LAN Interface

By configuring the mDNS gateway mode on a Guest LAN interface, you can configure the mDNS service policy for a specific Guest LAN interface.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest_lan_profile_name num wired-vlan</i> <i>wired_vlan_num</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-lan profile-name open 1 wired-vlan 666	Configures guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN. Note Configures the wired VLAN only for the Guest Foreign controller. • <i>num</i>: Guest LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 5. • <i>wired_vlan_num</i>: Wired VLAN number. The valid range is from 1 to 4094.
Step 3	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest_lan_profile_name num</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-lan profile-name open 1	Configures the guest LAN profile without a VLAN for the Guest Anchor controller.
Step 4	mdns-sd-interface {gateway drop} Example: Device(config-guest-lan)# mdns-sd gateway	Configures the mDNS gateway for a Guest LAN. Note

	Command or Action	Purpose
		You need to enable mDNS gateway globally for the Guest LAN to work.
Step 5	end Example: Device(config-guest-lan) # end	Returns to privileged EXEC mode. Alternatively, you can also press Ctrl-Z to exit global configuration mode.

Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > Policy**.
 - Step 2** Click the **policy profile** name.
 - Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, choose the mDNS service policy from the **mDNS Service Policy** drop-down list.
 - Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Associating mDNS Service Policy with Wireless Profile Policy



Note You must globally configure the mDNS service policy before associating it with the wireless profile policy.

A default mDNS service policy is already attached once the wireless profile policy is created. You can use the following commands to override the default mDNS service policy with any of your service policy:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wireless profile policy <i>profile-policy</i> Example: Device(config)# wireless profile policy default-policy-profile	Configures wireless profile policy. Here, <i>profile-policy</i> refers to the name of the WLAN policy profile.

	Command or Action	Purpose																		
Step 3	mdns-sd service-policy <i>custom-mdns-service-policy</i> Example: <pre>Device(config-wireless-policy)# mdns-sd service-policy custom-mdns-service-policy</pre>	Associates an mDNS service policy with the wireless profile policy. The default mDNS service policy name is default-mdns-service-policy. Note The default-mdns-profile-policy uses default-mdns-service-list configuration for filtering mDNS service announcement and queries. In wireless network, the mDNS packets are consumed by the mDNS gateway and clients or device is deprived of learning this service. To share the service with the device and provide ease of configuration to the administrator, a list of few standard service types are shared by default on the wireless network. The list of such standard service types is termed as default service policy that comprises a set of service types. The table covers a sample service list in the default service policy. Table 163: Default Name and mDNS Service Type <table><tr><th>Default Name</th><th>mDNS Service Type</th></tr><tr><td>Apple TV</td><td>_airplay._tcp.local _raop._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Apple HomeSharing</td><td>_home-sharing._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Printer-IPPS</td><td>_ipps._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Apple-airprint</td><td>_ipp._tcp.local _universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Google-chromecast</td><td>_googlecast._tcp.local _googlerpc._tcp.local _googlezone._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Apple-remote-login</td><td>_sftp-ssh._tcp.local _ssh._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Apple-screen-share</td><td>_rfb._tcp.local</td></tr><tr><td>Google-expeditions</td><td>_googexpeditions._tcp.local</td></tr></table>	Default Name	mDNS Service Type	Apple TV	_airplay._tcp.local _raop._tcp.local	Apple HomeSharing	_home-sharing._tcp.local	Printer-IPPS	_ipps._tcp.local	Apple-airprint	_ipp._tcp.local _universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local	Google-chromecast	_googlecast._tcp.local _googlerpc._tcp.local _googlezone._tcp.local	Apple-remote-login	_sftp-ssh._tcp.local _ssh._tcp.local	Apple-screen-share	_rfb._tcp.local	Google-expeditions	_googexpeditions._tcp.local
Default Name	mDNS Service Type																			
Apple TV	_airplay._tcp.local _raop._tcp.local																			
Apple HomeSharing	_home-sharing._tcp.local																			
Printer-IPPS	_ipps._tcp.local																			
Apple-airprint	_ipp._tcp.local _universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local																			
Google-chromecast	_googlecast._tcp.local _googlerpc._tcp.local _googlezone._tcp.local																			
Apple-remote-login	_sftp-ssh._tcp.local _ssh._tcp.local																			
Apple-screen-share	_rfb._tcp.local																			
Google-expeditions	_googexpeditions._tcp.local																			

	Command or Action	Purpose	
		Default Name	mDNS Service Type
		Multifunction-printer	_fax-ipp._tcp.local
			_ipp._tcp.local
			_scanner._tcp.local
		Apple-windows-fileshare	_smb._tcp.local
		Note • Location would be disabled on mDNS default service policy. • You cannot change the contents of the mDNS default service policy. However, you can create separate mDNS service policies and associate them under the wireless policy profile.	
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.	

Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN (GUI)

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Choose **Configuration > Tags & Profiles > WLANs**.
- Step 2** Click on the WLAN.
- Step 3** In the **Advanced** tab, choose the mode in **mDNS Mode** drop-down list.
- Step 4** Click **Update & Apply to Device**.
-

Enabling or Disabling mDNS Gateway for WLAN



Note Bridging is the default behaviour. This means that the mDNS packets are always bridged.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	wlan <i>profile-name</i> <i>wlan-id</i> <i>ssid-name</i> Example: Device(config)# wlan test 24 ssid1	Specifies the WLAN name and ID. • <i>profile-name</i> is the WLAN name which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters • <i>wlan-id</i> is the wireless LAN identifier. The valid range is from 1 to 4096. • <i>ssid-name</i> is the SSID which can contain 32 alphanumeric characters. Note Global configuration must be in place for mDNS gateway to work.
Step 3	mdns-sd-interface {gateway drop} Example: Device(config-wlan)# mdns-sd gateway Device(config-wlan)# mdns-sd drop	Enables or disables mDNS gateway and bridge functions on WLAN.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wlan)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.
Step 5	show wlan name <i>wlan-name</i> show wlan all Example: Device# show wlan name test show wlan all	Verifies the status of mDNS on WLAN.
Step 6	show wireless profile policy Example: Device# show wireless profile policy	Verifies the service policy configured in WLAN.

mDNS Gateway with Guest Anchor Support and mDNS Bridging

When mDNS Gateway is enabled on both Anchor and Foreign controller, the mDNS gateway functionality is supported in guest anchor deployment where clients on guest LAN or WLAN with guest anchor enabled will be responded with any services or cache from export foreign controller itself. All advertisements received

on Guest LAN or WLAN on export foreign are learnt on the export foreign itself. All queries received on guest LAN or WLAN are responded by the export foreign itself.

When mDNS Gateway is enabled on Anchor and Disabled on Foreign controller [Bridging Mode], the mDNS gateway functionality is supported in guest anchor deployment where clients on guest LAN or WLAN with guest anchor enabled will be responded with any services or cache from export Anchor even though the clients are connected on Foreign. All advertisements received on guest LAN or WLAN on export foreign is forwarded to Anchor and the cache is stored on the Anchor itself. All queries received on guest LAN or WLAN are responded by the export Anchor itself.

**Note**

- You must configure the guest-LAN to a wireless profile policy which is configured with the required mDNS service-policy.
- To configure non guest LAN mDNS gateway, see the [mDNS Gateway](#) chapter.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-lan-profile-name</i> <i>guest-lan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-lan profile-name g-lanpro 2	Configures the guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-guest-lan)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway on the guest LAN.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest LAN)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example:	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Device# configure terminal	
Step 2	guest-lan profile-name <i>guest-lan-profile-name</i> guest-lan-id wired-vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-lan profile-name g-lanpro 2 wired-vlan 230	Configures guest LAN profile with a wired VLAN. Note Configure the wired VLAN only for the Guest Foreign controller.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-guest-lan)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway on the guest LAN.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Anchor

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	guest-wlan profile-name guest-lan-profile-name <i>guest-wlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-wlan profile-name g-lanpro 2	Configures the guest WLAN profile with a wired VLAN.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-guest-wlan)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway on the guest WLAN.

Configuring mDNS Gateway on Guest Foreign (Guest WLAN)

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: Device# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	guest-wlan profile-name <i>guest-lan-profile-name guest-wlan-id</i> wired-vlan <i>vlan-id</i> Example: Device(config)# guest-wlan profile-name g-lanpro 2 wired-vlan 230	Configures guest WLAN profile with a wired VLAN. Note Configure the wired VLAN only for the Guest Foreign controller.
Step 3	mdns-sd gateway Example: Device(config-guest-wlan)# mdns-sd gateway	Enables mDNS gateway on the guest WLAN.
Step 4	exit Example: Device(config-wireless-policy)# exit	Returns to global configuration mode.

Verifying mDNS Gateway Configurations

To verify the mDNS summary, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd summary
mDNS Gateway: Enabled
Active Query: Enabled
  Periodicity (in minutes): 30
Transport Type: IPv4
```

To verify the mDNS cache, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache
----- PTR Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                                TTL      WLAN  CLIENT-MAC      RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
_airplay._tcp.local                        4500     30    07c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST1._airplay._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local                            4500     30    04c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST3._ipp._tcp.local2
_ipp._tcp.local                            4500     15    04c5.a4f2.dc01   CUST3._ipp._tcp.local4
```

```

_ipp._tcp.local          4500    10    04c5.a4f2.dc01    CUST3._ipp._tcp.local6
_veer_custom._tcp.local  4500    10    05c5.a4f2.dc01
CUST2._veer_custom._tcp.local8

```

To verify the mDNS cache from wired service provider, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache wired
```

```

----- PTR Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC      RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
_airplay._tcp.local        4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local
_raop._tcp.local          4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local

----- SRV Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC      RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local  4500     16        0866.98ec.97af    0 0 7000
wiredapple.local
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local  4500     16        0866.98ec.97af    0 0 7000
wiredapple.local

----- A/AAAA Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC      RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
wiredapple.local          4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
2001:8:16:16:e5:c446:3218:7437

----- TXT Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                TTL      VLAN      CLIENT-MAC      RR-RECORD-DATA
-----
wiredapple._airplay._tcp.local  4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
[343]'acl=0'deviceid=08:66:98:EC:97:AF'features=
086698EC97AF@wiredapple._raop._tcp.local  4500     16        0866.98ec.97af
[193]'cn=0,1,2,3'da=true'et=0,3,5'ft=0x5A7FFFF7

```

To verify the mdns-sd type PTR, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache type {PTR | SRV | A-AAA | TXT}
```

```

RECORD-NAME                TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-----
_custom1._tcp.local        4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local
_custom1._tcp.local        4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
vk11._custom1._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local            4500     2         c869.cda8.77d6
service-4._ipp._tcp.local

```

To verify the mdns-sd cache for a client MAC, use the following command:

```

Device# show mdns-sd cache {ap-mac <ap-mac> | client-mac <client-mac> | glan-id <glan-id>
| mdns-ap <mac-address> | rlan-id <rlan-id> | wlan-id <wlan-id> | wired}
RECORD-NAME                TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-----

```

```

_custom1._tcp.local          4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local
_custom1._tcp.local          4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6
vk11._custom1._tcp.local
_ipp._tcp.local              4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6
service-4._ipp._tcp.local

----- SRV Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                    TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-----
service-4._ipp._tcp.local      4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6  0 0 1212
mDNS-Client1s-275.local
vk11._custom1._tcp.local      4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6  0 0 987
mDNS-Client1s-275.local
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local 4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6  0 0 197
mDNS-Client1s-275.local

----- A/AAAA Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                    TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-----
mDNS-Client1s-275.local      4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6  120.1.1.33

----- TXT Records
-----
RECORD-NAME                    TTL      WLAN      CLIENT-MAC
RR-Record-Data
-----
service-4._ipp._tcp.local      4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6  'CLient1'
vk11._custom1._tcp.local      4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6
'txtvers=11'
service_t1._custom1._tcp.local 4500      2          c869.cda8.77d6
'txtvers=12'

```

To verify the mdns-sd cache with respect to the RLAN ID, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd cache rlan-id 1 detail
```

```

Name: _printer._tcp.local

Type: PTR
TTL: 4500
RLAN: 1
RLAN Name: rlan_test_1
VLAN: 141
Client MAC: 000e.c688.3942
AP Ethernet MAC: 0042.5ab6.0ef0
Remaining-Time: 4485
Site-Tag: default-site-tag
mDNS Service Policy: mdnsTV6
Overriding mDNS Service Policy: NO
UPN-Status: Disabled
Rdata: printer._printer._tcp.local

Name: lab-47-187.local
Type: A/AAAA
TTL: 4500
RLAN: 1
RLAN Name: rlan_test_1
VLAN: 141

```

```

Client MAC: 000e.c688.3942
AP Ethernet MAC: 0042.5ab6.0ef0
Remaining-Time: 4485
Site-Tag: default-site-tag
mDNS Service Policy: mdnsTV6
Overriding mDNS Service Policy: NO
UPN-Status: Disabled
Rdata: 10.15.141.124

```

To verify the mdns-sd cache with respect to mDNS-AP, use the following command:

```

Device# show mdns-sd cache mdns-ap 706b.b97d.b060 detail
Name: _printer._tcp.local

```

```

Type: PTR
TTL: 4500
VLAN: 145
Client MAC: 0050.b626.5bfa
mDNS AP Radio MAC: 706b.b97d.b060
mDNS AP Ethernet MAC: 706b.b97c.5208
Remaining-Time: 4480
mDNS Service Policy: mdnsTV
Rdata: printer._printer._tcp.local

```

```

Name: Client-46-153.local
Type: A/AAAA
TTL: 4500
VLAN: 145
Client MAC: 0050.b626.5bfa
mDNS AP Radio MAC: 706b.b97d.b060
mDNS AP Ethernet MAC: 706b.b97c.5208
Remaining-Time: 4480
mDNS Service Policy: mdnsTV
Rdata: 10.15.145.103

```

To verify the mdns-sd cache in detail, use the following command:

```

Device# show mdns-sd cache detail

```

```

Name: _custom1._tcp.local
Type: PTR
TTL: 4500
WLAN: 2
WLAN Name: mdns120
VLAN: 120
Client MAC: c869.cda8.77d6
AP Ethernet MAC: 7069.5ab8.33d0
Expiry-Time: 09/09/18 21:50:47
Site-Tag: default-site-tag
Rdata: service_t1._custom1._tcp.local

```

To verify the mdns-sd cache statistics, use the following command:

```

Device# show mdns-sd cache statistics

```

```

mDNS Cache Stats

```

```

Total number of Services: 4191

```

To verify the mdns-sd statistics, use the following command:

```

Device# show mdns-sd statistics

```

```

-----

```

Consolidated mDNS Packet Statistics

```
-----  
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35  
mDNS packets sent: 61045  
  IPv4 sent: 30790  
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 234  
    IPv4 queries sent: 30556  
  IPv6 sent: 30255  
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 17  
    IPv6 queries sent: 30238  
Multicast sent: 57558  
  IPv4 sent: 28938  
  IPv6 sent: 28620  
mDNS packets received: 72796  
  advertisements received: 13604  
  queries received: 59192  
  IPv4 received: 40600  
    IPv4 advertisements received: 6542  
    IPv4 queries received: 34058  
  IPv6 received: 32196  
    IPv6 advertisements received: 7062  
    IPv6 queries received: 25134  
mDNS packets dropped: 87  
-----
```

Wired mDNS Packet Statistics

```
-----  
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35  
mDNS packets sent: 61033  
  IPv4 sent: 30778  
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 222  
    IPv4 queries sent: 30556  
  IPv6 sent: 30255  
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 17  
    IPv6 queries sent: 30238  
Multicast sent: 57558  
  IPv4 sent: 28938  
  IPv6 sent: 28620  
mDNS packets received: 52623  
  advertisements received: 1247  
  queries received: 51376  
  IPv4 received: 32276  
    IPv4 advertisements received: 727  
    IPv4 queries received: 31549  
  IPv6 received: 20347  
    IPv6 advertisements received: 520  
    IPv6 queries received: 19827  
mDNS packets dropped: 63  
-----
```

mDNS Packet Statistics, for WLAN: 2

```
-----  
mDNS stats last reset time: 03/11/19 04:17:35  
mDNS packets sent: 12  
  IPv4 sent: 12  
    IPv4 advertisements sent: 12  
    IPv4 queries sent: 0  
  IPv6 sent: 0  
    IPv6 advertisements sent: 0  
    IPv6 queries sent: 0  
Multicast sent: 0  
  IPv4 sent: 0  
  IPv6 sent: 0  
mDNS packets received: 20173  
-----
```

```
advertisements received: 12357
queries received: 7816
IPv4 received: 8324
  IPv4 advertisements received: 5815
  IPv4 queries received: 2509
IPv6 received: 11849
  IPv6 advertisements received: 6542
  IPv6 queries received: 5307
mDNS packets dropped: 24
```

To verify the default service list details, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd default-service-list
-----
mDNS Default Service List
-----

Service Definition: apple-tv
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local
              _raop._tcp.local

Service Definition: homesharing
Service Names: _home-sharing._tcp.local

Service Definition: printer-ipp
Service Names: _ipp._tcp.local

Service Definition: apple-airprint
Service Names: _ipp._tcp.local
              _universal._sub._ipp._tcp.local

Service Definition: google-chromecast
Service Names: _googlecast._tcp.local
              _googlerpc._tcp.local
              _googlezone._tcp.local

Service Definition: apple-remote-login
Service Names: _sftp-ssh._tcp.local
              _ssh._tcp.local

Service Definition: apple-screen-share
Service Names: _rfb._tcp.local

Service Definition: google-expeditions
Service Names: _googexpeditions._tcp.local

Service Definition: multifunction-printer
Service Names: _fax-ipp._tcp.local
              _ipp._tcp.local
              _scanner._tcp.local

Service Definition: apple-windows-fileshare
Service Names: _smb._tcp.local
```

To verify the primary service list details, use the following command:

```
Device# show mdns-sd master-service-list
-----
mDNS Master Service List
-----

Service Definition: fax
Service Names: _fax-ipp._tcp.local
```

```

Service Definition: roku
Service Names: _rsp._tcp.local

Service Definition: airplay
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local

Service Definition: scanner
Service Names: _scanner._tcp.local

Service Definition: spotify
Service Names: _spotify-connect._tcp.local

Service Definition: airtunes
Service Names: _raop._tcp.local

Service Definition: airserver
Service Names: _airplay._tcp.local
               _airserver._tcp.local

.
.
.

Service Definition: itune-wireless-devicesharing2
Service Names: _apple-mobdev2._tcp.local

```

To verify the mdns-sd service statistics on the controller, use the following command:

Device# **show mdns-sd service statistics**

Service Name	Service Count
-----	-----
_atc._tcp.local	137
_hap._tcp.local	149
_ipp._tcp.local	149
_rfb._tcp.local	141
_smb._tcp.local	133
_ssh._tcp.local	142
_daap._tcp.local	149
_dpap._tcp.local	149
_eppc._tcp.local	138
_adisk._tcp.local	149

To verify the mDNS-AP configured on the controller and VLAN(s) associated with it, use the following command:

Device# **show mdns-sd ap**

Number of mDNS APs..... 1

AP Name	Ethernet MAC	Number of Vlans	Vlanidentifiers
-----	-----	-----	-----
AP3600-1	7069.5ab8.33d0	1	300

Further Debug

To debug mDNS further, use the following procedure:

1. Run this command at the controller:

```
set platform software trace wncd <0-7> chassis active R0 mdns debug
```

2. Reproduce the issue.

3. Run this command to gather the traces enabled:

```
show wireless loadbalance ap affinity wncd 0
```

AP MAC	Discovery Timestamp	Join Timestamp	Tag	Vlanidentifiers
0cd0.f894.0600	06/30/21 12:39:48	06/30/21 12:40:02	default-site-tag	300

